

COSMOGRAPHIE,
IN FOUR BOOKS
CONTAINING THE
Chorographie and Historie
OF THE WHOLE
WORLD,
AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

With an accurate and an approved INDEX of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Islands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Forests, &c. of any Remarque in the whole World; Much wanted and desired in the former, and now annexed to this last Impression, Revised and Corrected by the Author himself immediately before his death.

Acts 17. 24, 26.

Deus qui fecit mundum, & omnia quæ in eo sunt; fecit ex uno omne genus hominum, inhabitare super universam faciem terræ, definens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.

Plin. in Proem. l. 7.

MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Mæria, Insulæ, insignes Urbes, ad hunc modum se habent.

LONDON,

Printed for Anne Seile, and are to be sold at her Shop over against St. Dunstons Church in Fleet-street, M.DC.LXVI.

January 1. 1664.

Imprimatur,

WILL. MORICE.

Whitchall Jan. 26. 1664.

Let this Book be Printed.

HEN. BENNET.

An Advertisement to the Reader concerning this large and exact Table, much wanted and desired in the first and second, and now annexed to the third Impression of this Book.

How well it is observed that *Humane Industry cannot begin and finish any thing at one and the same time*, this famous Book may be an instance; whose first Edition was but the *Monogram and rude draught* to a more exact Composure; the second adding much Matter and Method to the first, and now the third adding Matter, Method, and a most Exact and full Table of both to the second; containing all the Provinces, Kingdoms, States, Principalities, Continents, Isles, Promontories, Isthmuses, Seas, Rivers, Havens, Mart Towns, Cities, Strong Holds, with their Longitudes, Latitudes, Scituations, Plantations, Inhabitants, Ancient and Modern Names, and the Book and Page where they are satisfactorily discoursed of.

A Table (that notwithstanding every Methodical Book such as this is, is its own Index; every Great Memory, like that of *Cesar*, carrieth a Table of all Books in his Brain, and every hopeful Student makes his own Table to all Classical Authors) that carrieth with it its own Commendation; 1 To those that have not time to read Books but Indexes. 2 To those that have not patience to go through the whole *body*, and yet curiosity to observe the Remarkable parts of Geographie. 3 To those that would recollect what they have forgotten of their reading. 4 To those that upon any emergent occasion would see the Scituation, Rivers, Havens, Strong Holds, Garrisons, Longitudes, Latitudes, Commodities, Products, Curiosities, Inhabitants, Genius, Condition, and History of any place in the World. 5 To those that read any Ancient or Modern Histories, or other Authors, and would be satisfied in the *Scene* of the actions they read of, and the scituation of the places there mentioned. 6 To those that aiming at exactness this way, would compare all the Ancient and Modern Geographers. And 7 to all the Perusers of this Book that complained of the intolerable defects of former Tables and Indexes; of which number the learned Compiler of this Table, who drew it up for his own satisfaction, and publisheth it for the Publick, is one who wisheth others as much benefit in the easie way of perusing it, as he had in the more toilsome way of Collecting it.

The Matter added to this Impression is much; the Errors corrected, more; and all under the Authors own hand not long before he died, putting to it (as he said truly to his Friend that was with him in the perusal of it) his *last hand*: which I the rather mention, because there is an Impression crept out this very Year 1666. without any of these Additions and Corrections before mentioned, against the Authors last Will, (whose Relict and Widow is at this time in Law with the *bold Man* that durst print it) wishing so well to Learning, that no such imperfect, and uncorrected Impression should impose upon ingenuous Gentlemen, that wants both the Authors Corrections and Additions, and this Excellent Personages Table.

To the READER,

The AUTHOR rendreth this Account of his Undertaking and Performance in the following Work.



It is a great complaint with many, that they want time, either to undertake great matters, or to accomplish those they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not so much want, as waste it. *Non parum temporis habemus, sed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle out too much of our precious time, as he well observeth, *Aut male agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or else things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want things convenient to perform those duties, which are expected from us, in our several places. Nor have we only time enough to spend, but some time to spare; some privacies and retreats from business, some breathing fits from the affairs of our *Vocations*: and even of them, those times of leisure and recess, we are to render an Account in *Cato's* judgement, *Opti reddendam rationem judicabat*. *Cato*, as we read in *Tullie*. In which Account, as all men generally are concerned, so am I interested therein as much as any. For being by the unhappiness of my Destiny, or the infelicity of the times, deprived of my preferments, and divested of my Ministerial Function, (as to the ordinary and publique exercise thereof) I cannot choose but say I have leisure enough; the opportunity of spending more idle hours (if I were so minded) than I ever expected or desired. And though perhaps I could have spent those times of leisure, which the change of my affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my self, and more to the advantage of my private fortunes: yet that of *Cato* did so over ballance me, that I was willing to do somewhat which might witness to ensuing times, how I had passed away those hours, and employed that leisure. And when I was considering of some particulars within the compass of my power, and answerable to that small stock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me and disposed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requested by some friends of no common quality, to review my *Geographie*; to make it more complete and useful to an English Reader: My vacancy from business, used by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when first made, with neglect enough, my desuetude from those younger Studies, my great want of Books, the sad complexion of the times, and the unhandson entertainment which my endeavours for the publick had lately met with, seeming sufficient to dissuade me from the undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to enjoy my own; or to employ my self in order to a publick service, when not alone my private fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church was destroyed and dissipated. But afterwards being pressed unto it by some Members of Parliament, whom I found loth to be denied, and by some others of great rank, but such different *Interesses*, that I wondered how they could all center upon the same *Proposal*: I thought it at the last a more *Christian* duty to satisfy the honest desires of so many men, than to sacrifice any longer to my own privacy and retiredness, to which I had intended to devote my self. So I resolved to venture on it, though well I saw that my condition in so doing might be resembled unto that of the *Israelites* in the Land of *Egypt*: of whom the *Task-masters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denied them their accustomed allowance of *Straw and Stubble*. My case in this not much unlike to that of the Duke of *Alva*; Who being under the displeasure of the King of *Spain* in quality of a prisoner, without the least assurance of recovering the Kings favour, or his own liberty, and yet employed in that Conjunction, for the conquest of *Portugal*, was wont to say, *That he was sent to conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on*.

And here I cannot but remember a pretty accident which befel me in the month of *January*, An. 1640. at what time it had been my ill fortune to suffer under some misapprehensions which had been entertain'd against me, and to be brought before the Committee for the Courts

of Justice, on the complaint of Mr. *Pygme*, then newly return'd from his confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, I confess, I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience, but most despitely reviled and persecuted with excessive both noise and violence, by such as thronged about the doors of that *Committee*, to expect the issue: it being as natural to many weak and inconsiderate men, as it is to Dogs, to bark at those they do not know, and to accompany each other in those kinds of clamors. And though I had the happiness to come off clear, without any censure, and to recover by degrees, amongst knowing men, that estimation which before had been much endangered: yet such as took up matters upon trust and hear-say, looked on me as a person forfeited, and marked out for ruin. Amongst others, I was then encountered in my passage from *Westminster* to *White-hall*, by a tall big Gentleman, who thrusting me rudely from the Wall, and looking over his shoulder on me in a scornful manner, said in an hoarse voice these words, *Geographie is better then Divinity*; and so passed along. Whether his meaning were, that I was a better *Geographer* than *Divine*; or that *Geographie* had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of men, than *Divinity* was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But sure I am, I have since thought very often of it, and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on those younger studies, in which I was resolved to have dealt no more: and thereto, in the Preface to my *Microcosm*, had obliged my self.

And it is possible enough, that in respect of that general promise, I may lie under the censure of inconstancy and breach of *Covenant*, in that I had solemnly declared in the aforesaid Preface, that the Reader should not fear any further enlargements, which might make him repent his (then) present Markers; that it had received my last hand, and that from thenceforth, I would look upon it as a *Stranger* only. But it was meant withal, and expressed accordingly, unless it were for the amending of such Errors, of which by the strength of mine own judgement, or any ingenuous information, I should be convicted. And Errors I must needs say, I have found so many on this last perusal, and those not only verbal, but material too; as did not only free me from that *Obligation*, but did oblige me to a further Review thereof. For being written in an age, on which the pride of youth and self-opinion might have some predominancies, I thought it freer from mistakes than I since have found it: And those mistakes, by running through eight Editions (six of them without my perusal or super-vision) so increased and multiplied, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that in case the importunity of friends had not enforced me, in a manner, upon this Employment, the necessity of consulting my own fame, and leaving the Work far behind me to succeeding times, would have persuaded me in the end to do somewhat in it. Which though the last, was not the least of those inducements which inclined me to the undertaking of this present Work.

Having thus plainly and ingenuously laid down the reasons which did induce, though not encourage me, unto this performance: it is now fit I should declare what I have done in it, and what the Reader may expect from so great enlargements. And first the Reader is to know, that my design originally, was only to look over the former Book, to give it a Review, to purge it of the Errors which it had contracted, and not so much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more seriously considered of it, I found sufficient reason to change that purpose, to make it new both in form and matter, and to present it to the world with all those advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived would the benefit be which might from thence redound to those who should please to read it: And I would willingly so far comply with all expectations, that the short Taper of my life should give light to others in the consuming of it self. *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, may well become a *Christians* mouth, though an Heathen spake it. But if all expectations be not satisfied in the complements of the work, as I fear they will not, I desire it may not be ascribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties which I was to struggle with. Books I had few to help my self with of mine own; nor live I near so rich a *Clergie* (most of the Benefices of these parts being poor and mean) as to supply my self from them with such commodities. The greatest helps I had was from *Oxford Library*, which though but nine or ten miles off from my present dwelling, yet the charge and trouble of the journey, with the loss of time, made my visits to that place less frequent, and consequently the Neighbourhood thereof less useful to me, than the generality of the design might well comport with. So that when all things are considered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondered at by an equal Reader, how I could come to write so much, with so little helps, upon a subject of such a large and diffused variety, than that in any part thereof I have writ too little. And to say truth, the work so prospered in my hand, and swelled so much

much above my thought and expectation, that I hope I may with modesty enough use those words of *Jacob*, *Voluntas Dei fuit, ut cito occurreret mihi quod volebam*; The Lord God brought it to me, as the *English* reads it.

In the pursuance of this Work, as I have taken on my self the parts of an *Historian* and *Geographer*; so have I not forgotten that I am an *English-man*, and which is somewhat more, a *Church-man*. As an *English-man* I have been mindful upon all occasions to commit to memory the noble actions of my Country; exploited both by Sea and Land, in most parts of the World, and represented on the same *Theaters*, upon which they were acted. And herein I have followed the example of the great *Annalist*, *Baronius*; Who pretending in that great and laborious Work, a sincere History of the Church, and no more than so; yet tells the Pope in his Epistle, that he principally did intend the same, *pro Sacrarum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Auctoritate Romanæ Ecclesiæ*; to manifest therein the Antiquity of such Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this day are taught and exercised in the Church of *Rome*. And so much I may also say of my self in this performance, though without any by-design to abuse the Reader, that though the *History* and *Choregraphy* of the World be my principal business, yet I have apprehended every modest occasion, of recording the heroic Acts of my native Soil, and filing on the Registers of perpetual Fame the Gallantry and brave achievements of the People of *England*; Exemplified in their many victories and signal services in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Scotland*, *Belgium*, in *Palestine*, *Cyprus*, *Africa* and *America*, and indeed where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great zeal and piety in converting to the Faith so many of the *German* and Northern Nations; *Franconians*, *Thuringians*, *Hassians*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, *Frisons*; as also amongst the *Scots* and *Picts*, together with those of *Lithuania* and the people of *Norway*: by that means more enlarging Christs Kingdom than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to record the Actions, so have I been as careful to assert the Rights of the *English* Nation: inherent personally in their Kings, by way of publick interests in the Subject also; as the whole body doth partake of that sense and motion, which is originally in the Head. And of this kind I reckon the true stating of the Title of the Kings of *England* to the Crown of *France*, demonstrating the Vassalage of the Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*; vouching the legal Interests of the *English* Nation, in right of the first Discovery or *Primer Seizure*, to *Essoiland*, *Terra Cartierialis*, *New-found-Land*, *Novum Belgium*, *Guiana*, the Countries near the *Cape of good Hope*, several of the *Indian* Islands, and some other places, against all Pretenders: insinuating the precedence of the *English* Kings before those of *Spain*: their Sovereignty and Dominion in the *British* Ocean, with the great benefit which might from thence arise unto us, invaded and almost ingrossed by the *Hanse* and *Hollanders*. And yet there is another thing which speaks me more an *Englishman*, than all these together; which I shall fall on soon enough, and indeed too soon, the sadnesses of the subject being well considered.

Next, as a *Church-man*, I have taken more especial notice of the ancient and present face of *Christianity*, in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the *Heterodoxies* and opinions of those several Sects into which it now doth stand dismembred. By which it will appear most clearly amongst other things, that the Doctrine and Government of the Church were of equal standing; that this Government was no other than that of *Bishops*, and that wherefoever *Christianity* did find any admittance, *Episcopacy* was admitted also as a part thereof: the Gospel being in most places first preached by *Bishops*, or growing to esteem and strength under their Authority. And it is found on these *Recherches*, that as *Episcopacy* was co-eval with the Church it self: so the Subordination of *Bishops* to their several *Primates*, and the Coordination of those *Primates* among themselves in the common Government thereof, was of such antiquity (as being settled and confirmed in *St. Cyprians* time, who flourished in the year 250.) that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it. *Debere* *Episcopos in commune Ecclesiam regere*, is a noted *Maxime* in *St. Hierome*; but practically true in the *Communicatorie* and *Formate*, of the elder Ages: Which happy course had it been preserved, *Episcopacy* had been so far from being made a stirrup for Antichrist to mount into his Throne, as the *Smectymniuses* falsely charge it; that it had served rather as a *Martingal* to have kept him down from lifting up his head too high above the rest of his Brethren. And that this course was not preserved, came not intentionally from the Popes (for that by *Antichrist* they mean the Popes of *Rome*, is a thing past question) but from the Inundations of the barbarous Nations: though I confess the Popes were apt enough to make the best advantage of those various Accidents, which the distresses of the Church did present unto them. For by the overflowing of the barbarous Nations, *Christianity* was either quite extinguished, or the authority of the *Primates* trodden under foot; or that intelligence

and commerce which had been anciently amongst them, interdicted on good reasons of State, by such *Heathen* or *Mahometan* Princes, under whom they lived. And then, how easie was it for the Pope in the new planting of the Gospel in these Western parts, (done either by his Ministers, or by his encouragement) to give unto the Bishops of his own appointing such a limited power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his commands, and afterwards to lessen their Authority, as he saw occasion, by granting large *Exemptions* to Monasteries, Convents and Cathedrals; with *Jurisdiction* over the *Parochial* Churches which belonged unto them? So that it is most evident in the course of Story, that the Popes never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superstitions and Novations on the Church of *CHRIST*; till they had weakened, by degrees, the *Episcopal* power. Followed in that design, though on different ends, by *Wicliff*, and some others in the Ages since; who have driven on their private projects under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Episcopacy* as it was co-eval with the Church of *CHRIST*, so was it the best and strongest *Buttress* in that sacred building. The weakening or subverting of which Primitive Order, did either prostitute the Church to the lust and tyranny of that proud *Usurper*, or expose the *Patrimony* thereof unto spoyl and rapine; or finally subject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiousness of *Heterodoxies* and confused Opinions. But I fear I have digressed too far in this speculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact, in giving unto every Province its peculiar bounds, in laying out their several Land-marks, tracing the course of most of the principal Rivers, and setting forth the situation and estate of the chiefest Towns; and did once think of beautifying the Work with as many Maps as the several States and Kingdoms which are here described. But upon further consideration, how much it would increase the Book both in bulk and price, and consequently make it of less publick use than I did intend it; I laid by those thoughts, and rested satisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World: by which the Reader may discern how each Countrey lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much less all the Towns and Cities which are here expressed; and on the other side may meet with many Towns of inferior note which are here omitted. And herein I have took some pains in searching out the first Inhabitants of each several Country, as far as I could see by the light of Letters, or go by probable conjectures, in finding out the place of such ancient Cities as are now decayed, not easily visible in their ruins; and adding to such Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Original names. A thing as necessary to the understanding of the Histories of those elder times, as the knowledge of the present names is to the more delightful reading of our modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be specified & insisted on in a work of this nature; yet would I not have the Reader look for such a punctual enumeration and description of them, as he may meet withal in those who have written the *Cherography* of some Country only; or think himself unsatisfied in his expectation, if he find not here the situation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering place of every Company or Troop of Soldiers, which are presented to him in the Weekly News-books. In all Countries there are many places which either by the advantage of their situation, or some present exigency of affairs, are fortified and made Towns of War; or otherwise remarkable for some signal battel, in these late bustles and commotions of the Christian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and consequently not within the compass of this Discourse: and yet perhaps may grow as famous and considerable in the times to come as many of the mightier Cities now decayed & ruined. He that shall think the work imperfect (though I confess it to be nothings but imperfections) for some deficiencies in this kind, may be likened to the Country-Fellow in *Aristophanes*, (if my memory fail not) who picked a great quarrel with the Map, because he could not find where his own Farm stood. And such a Country-customer I did meet with once a servant of my elder Brothers, sent by him with some *Horses* to *Oxen*, to bring me and a friend of mine unto his house. Who having lost his way as we passed through the Forrest of *Whitchwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Track, did very earnestly intreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him past the Woods to the open Fields. Which when I had refused to do, as I had good reason, alleading that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him: *That's strange*, said he, *I have heard my old Master your Father say, that you made a Book of all the World, and cannot you find your way out of the Wood?* Which being spoken out of an honest simplicity, not out of any pretence to wit, or the least thought of putting a blunt jest upon me, occasioned a great deal of merriment for a long time after; but I hope to meet with no such Readers. The greatness of the bulk, and consequently of the price, makes me somewhat confident that none but men of judgment and understanding will peruse these Papers: and such as they will look for no more

more particulars, than the nature of a general Discourse will fitly bear. Perfection and exactness is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is observed by *Aristotle* in his second Book of his *Ethicks*, *ἡ ἐν τῷ ἀποδύσει τῷ πρῶτῳ ἐν τῷ ἀποδύσει*, as far forth as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And so much if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reason be expected from me. To look for more were as improper and absurd (in the words of *Aristotle*) as for an *Artist* to expect Tropes of Rhetorick from a Mathematician, or Demonstrations from an Orator.

Lastly, as an *Historian*, I have traced the affairs of each several Country from the first Inhabitants thereof, (such as the *Latines* call *Aborigines*, and the *Greeks* *Ἀυτοχθόνες*) till these later times. Which that I might be sure to do on a good foundation, I have took more than common care, to settle all the first Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*) in their right Plantations: and that too in the way of an *Introduction*, that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs with the less disturbance. The rest of their Occurrences I have summed into so short an *Abstract*, as may be useful to the learned in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the less knowing man, in the way of a Tutor; Brevity in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but so as to avoid all obscurity also. Nor have I only kept my self to the story of Kingdoms, or the greater *Signeries*, Estates, or Nations, which are or have been of the greatest consideration in the sway of the world: but looked on the Estates of such *Dukes*, *Earls*, and inferior Princes, as in their times have had the Government of those parts which gave Title to them; whose actions and successions are distinctly specified, and all such alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruine of such Estates, or the translating of them from one House to another. The Catalogues and Successions of which royal and illustrious Families, I have drawn down unto the year 1648. towards the expiring of which year, I began to set my self upon this employment. And there I fix as on the top of some dreadful *Precipice*, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of such a nature, that either to speak of them, or to hold our peace is alike unsafe. In such a case it is best to keep at a distance. For though truth be the best Mistress which a man can serve, (*Magis amica Veritas*, said the great Philosopher;) yet it is well observed withal, that if a man follow her too close at the heels, she may chance to kick out his teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as also out of that compassionate affection which a true *Englishman* ought to bear his native Country, although in my approaches towards these present times, I have took notice in some other places of such battles, sieges, and successes in the chances of War, as have hapned in these later days: I have forbore to take the least notice of those Tragedies of blood and death which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confess, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars amongst our selves: in which there have been more pitched fields, more strong pieces taken, more notable traverses of State, and exploits of war, than all the world can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *English* bowels to please my self in the recital, or to look back on those unfortunate Adventures, which I should rather choose to cover with the *Ass of Oblivion*, or bury in the grave of perpetual silence. How gladly I could have recorded these exploits of war, had they been exercised on a subject more proper for them; my willingness to take notice upon all occasions, of the actions and achievements of the *English* Nation, will bear witness for me. But the employing of that valour against our selves, as if not to be conquered but by one another, strikes such horror in me, that I cannot think thereof without much afflictment, nor intimate thus much of it without great reluctances. I fear it may be said too truly of our late embroylements, as the *Historian* of the Civil Wars betwixt *Caesar* and *Pompey*; *Causa hujus Belli eadem qua omnium, nimia felicitas*; that they were principally occasioned by a surfeit of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own prosperities; and that prayer and passage in the publick Liturgy (*Give peace in our time O Lord*) did not relish with us: how happy had it been if we had found some other field to have tried our valour in? and made some foreign Country that *Aceldama*, which so fatally was made at home? The dishonour which we suffered in the Isle of *Re*, when bear thence ingloriously by the *French*; the forcible and long detention of the *Palatinate* by the power of the *Spaniards*; the barbarous butchery at *Amoy-na*; and the bearing up of the *Spanish* Fleet within the protection of our Castles, by those of *Holland*; the insolencies of the *Scots*, and the rebellions of the *Irish*, might well have stirred some indignation in an *English* breast. And had we fought upon those scores, or on none but them, our victories had deserved the honour of a solemn triumph; denied by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civil War: But our infelicity (as it seems) was like that of *Rome*, in following those unnatural wars with such animosities; when the unrevengeed death of *Crassus*, the blood

To the Reader.

of so many thousand of their slaughtered Citizens, and the shameful loss of so many of the *Roman* Ensigns, should rather have invited them to the conquest of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which thus feelingly the Poet;

*Cumque superba foret Babylon spolianda Trophaeis,
Bella geri placuit, nullos habitura Triumphos.*

And when proud *Babylon* should have been constrain'd
To give us back our Ensigns lately gain'd;
We rather chose such Quarrels to pursue,
For which no *Triumph* could be justly due.

But such is the condition and vicissitude of humane affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much less of certainty. The greatest Monarchies of the world, the *Babylonian*, *Persian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their *periods*, nothing remaining of them now but the name and memory. And what is now become of those mighty Cities of the East, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Ecbatana*, *Susa*, with the rest mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Classical* Authors? are not their very ruins now become invisible? Where are the puissant Families of the *Achamenides* of *Persia*, the *Seleucidae* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolomies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæsars* of *Italy*, the *Merovingians* and *Carolingians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets* of *England*? are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by the benefit of story, and some ancient monuments? And if it be so, as it is, with the greatest Monarchies, the most mighty Cities of the world, we must not think that smaller Kingdoms and Estates can either be so evenly ballanced, or so surely founded, as not to be obnoxious also to the same vicissitudes. And being that saying of *Opiatus* is most undoubtedly true, *Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Common-wealth, we must not hope to find it in a better posture than the Civil State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it subsists and flourisheth. The Church must needs miscarry in the ruin of the *Civil State*, and may miscarry many times, although the *Civil State* receive no such alterations. Compared for this reason to the Moon by the ancient Fathers, who had observed her in her prime, in her Increase and her Full; and finally, had not only seen her in the *Wane* also, but sometimes too under some horrible *Eclipses*. Which various condition of the *Militant Church*, the Scriptures and succeeding Stories have set forth so fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonstrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philistines*, the Temple destroyed by the *Chaldeans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apostasy of ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a short time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and estate of the *Jewish Church*. And find we not the same for the *Christian* also, in the removing of the *Candlestick* from the *Asian Churches*; and making them, together with those of *Greece* and *Egypt*, and all the flourishing Churches in the East and South, to languish and decay remedilessly under the merciless incroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He must be more than blind that sees not, more savage than those merciless men that grieves not at their sad condition: but a dead member, at the most of *Christ's* mystical Body, who feels not in himself the sufferings of those wretched *Christians*.

If now we look into the causes of that desolation which hath hapned in the Civil State of those mighty Empires; to what can we impute it but their crying sins? the pride of the *Babylonians*, the effeminacy of the *Persians*, the luxury of the *Greeks*: and such an aggregation of vices amongst the *Romans* (or western *Christians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a scandal unto *Christianity*. *In nobis passitur Christus opprobrium, in nobis passitur lex Christiana maledictum*, as the devout *Salvian* then complained. Thus also in reference to the Church, did not the Idolatries of the ten Tribes hasten in the *Assyrians*? the shedding of the blood of so many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldeans* first, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do we not find the *Arianism* of the Eastern Churches to usher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatism* of the South to have set open a wide Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianism*, as soon almost as entertained amongst the *Britans*? If so, as most undoubtedly it was in the days of old, why should we think but that the Superstitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the sacrilege and faction of the Churches of the Reformation, shall at the last receive the like Retribution? Or that the Divine Justice is so fast asleep that our sins must cry as loud as the Priests of *Baal* did unto their god, before it be awakened by us? Assuredly we are no less sinners than any of those on whom the Tower of the Divine vengeance hath so heavily fallen, whose blood the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their solemn and religious sacrifices: and therefore have no cause to hope, but that *unless we do repent*, we shall likewise perish.

The

To the Reader.

The serious consideration of all these particulars hath made those alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongst our selves, the less strange unto me. For is there any of these things, whereof it may be said, *Ecce hoc est novum, Behold this is new? Eccl. 1. 10.* Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not find it positively affirmed by the wisest man that ever was, *That which hath been is now, and that which is to be hath already been; Nihil enim novum est sub sole*, for there is no new thing under the Sun, *Eccl. 3. 15.* & 1. 11. And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably say thus much of my self, that the observation of the fall of so many great and puissant Empires, the Extirpation of so many mighty and renowned Families, the desolation of so many flourishing *Christian Churches*, as the composing of this Book did present me with, (though formerly no strangers to me in the course of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my soul under the mighty hand of God than either the sense of my own own misfortunes or any other moral consideration which had come before me. And I could wish the Reader may receive so much benefit by it (besides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the mighty man may learn hereby not to glory in his greatest strength, nor the wise to glory in his wisdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great designs. Let the great Leaders of these times in the Art of War, consider the sad ends of *Joab* the General of *David's* Forces, & of *Belisarius* the Commander of *Justinian's* Armies: whereof the one was slain ingloriously at the *Horns* of the *Altar*, after all his services; the other forced to beg his bread at the *Gates of the Temple*. Let the great Masters of Wit and State-craft have before their eyes, the unsuccessful ends of *Achitophel*, the Oracle of the times he lived in; and of *Cæsar Borgias*, propoed by *Machiavel* for the pattern of a Politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent hands upon himself, because his Counsel was not followed; the other after the default of all his projects, and a long imprisonment to boot, forced to flee his Country, and slain obscurely in an Ambush. Let all men lay unto their hearts the ebbs and floods, those alternations and vicissitudes, to which all humane power is subject; the slippery foundations of that might and greatness, which is not laid upon the Principles of Justice, and regulated by the *Maxims* of *Christian Piety*; and that even those which have dominion over others, have a God too above themselves, to whom they are to render an account of all their Actions. Not such a God as that of *Lewis* the 11th of *France*; of whom it is reported that he wore a Leaden Medal in his Bonnet in the form of a *Crucifix*: which, when he had caused any man to be killed whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands and kiss it, desiring it to pardon him that one murder more, & it should be the last which he would commit. Such mockeries as these may be well put on a Leaden god; but the God of Heaven and Earth will not be so mocked: who being *totus oculus*, and *totum lumen*, as the Father calleth him, can easily discern our intents and purposes, notwithstanding those disguises which are put upon them; and see the nakedness of sin in its ugliest shape, though apparelled with the *Fig-leaves* of the best pretences, which the self-deceiving wit of man can patch up together. God is the same God now as in former times, *Primus ad extremum similis sibi*, Yesterday, and to day, and the same for ever; and will not put up those affronts which the impieties of men do afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience and long-suffering, they may flatter their poor souls, and say, *Tush, God doth not see it*.

Lastly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other *Patron* then himself, to whom to dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and encouragement in it. The time was when I might have said with *Seneca*, *Unus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one man was to me in stead of all men: the Powers of all the People being virtually united in him. But now, as the case stands, I must be fain to invert those words, *Populus mihi est pro uno*, the Body of the Nation is to me, in this respect, as the Head before. Unto them therefore I present it, and that not improperly: A General survey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Successes of it requiring a more general *Patron* than particular Tractates. But because all the People in the Body *Collective* have not abilities to read, and much less to judge; and that many of those who can do both, may neither have the list nor leisure to peruse these Papers: I look on the Nobility, Clergy, Gentry, as their Representatives in this kind; to whose favourable and ingenuous acceptance I submit the same. Which if I can attain unto it, it is all I aim at. And it will be no small comfort to me in the midst of so many sorrows as are round about me, that I have been useful to the publick, or added any thing by my Studies unto the honour and content of the *English* Nation: whose peace and happiness is heartily commended to Almighty God, by

The Author of these following Papers,

PETER HEYLYN.



To my Brother the AUTHOR.

These verses prefix'd before the second Edition of the former Book, An. 1624. I have made bold to borrow and imprint with this, to preserve the memory of the Author, who dyed in February, 1640.

THY first prest-grapes did yield approved Wine,
Such as did praise it self; yet to indear
Our Approbation, thou dost here refine
Those former Fruits; and for our better Chear
Present'st us with a pure and stronger Vine:
Lest else some curious tast might it disfast.
If so, what needs my second Bush? 'Tis Wast.

Yet well thy choice Minerva merits this,
This Ivie-Garland, everlasting green;
Which like the Muses cup proportion'd is,
Whereout thou drink'st, wherein their Liquors beem.
Nor wouldst thou scape the lash of Nemesis,
If with Diogenes thou shouldst refuse,
To let the thirsty drink therehence. 'Twere News.

Thy Book's an Ark which all the World contains,
And well may bear a short Encomion.
'Tis slender meed, yet who such pay disdains?
Good Wine may have a Bush, thought is need none.
Nor let these lines of mine seem partial strains.
Thy Work ingenious is; and Vertues brood
Like it, increaseth with due praise. 'Tis Good.

Much pains it cost, much cost, And labour more;
Fames breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchase Praise;
The Muses seat ascends an hundred score,
And Honours journey lies not in plain water.
Who to Parnassus high-crown'd top will fore,
Must with elaborate Quill climb up; and such
Thy tender Genius beaſteth thee. 'Tis Much.

Too much indeed it were, but that in part
The Guerdon of well-doing is the doing.
Fame and Reward but wait upon thine Art;
Which yet deserves that in this Forward going,
Thy Fortunes may even-balance thy Desires.
But Fortune's base, and sets the Wages due
To Worth, unto her Favourites. 'Tis True.

The Earth thy Ground-plot is, Geographi'd;
Kings sometimes are thy subjects peopling it.
Thy story, History hath beautif'd;
Ren'd by the vigour of an Home-bred wit;
Whose Art hath travell'd all the World beside,
And can of every Country well declare
Th' Occurrences; Nature, Site, Bounds. 'Tis Rare.

Thus that the Earth, so young thou compass't hast:
'Tis Rare, True, Much, Good, News; and my Bush Wast.

Edw. Heylyn J. C.
Soc. Int. Temp.



A GENERAL INTRODUCTION to the following Work:

Containing the Creation of the World by Almighty God, and the Plantation of the same by the Sons of men; the necessary use of History and Geography, as well for understanding the Affairs of the Ages past, as for converse and correspondence with the Nations present; together with a brief view of some General Præcognita which necessarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.



WIT great both Piety and Prudence did the Apostles in their Summary of the Christian Faith joyn our Belief in God the Father Almighty, with that clause or Article of making or Creating the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (Is not he thy Father which hath made thee? saith the Prophet Moses, Deut. 32. v. 6.) to who but an Almighty Father could by his meer Word, without any preexistent Matter, create that goodly Edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with so much wonder and applause? A work to full of wonder to the ancient Gentiles, that some of them made the World a God. *Via illum (i.e. Deum) mundum vocare? non falleris;* as it is in Seneca: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the World, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the World a God, as God to be the Soul of the World, yet might they very well have said as one since hath done, That the World is nothing else but God unfolded and manifested in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus universus quam Deus explicatus,* as Cusanus a late Cardinal hath it. For certainly the special motives which did induce God unto this great work, were a desire and purpose to manifest his Power, to exercise his Providence, and declare his Goodness. Not that God needed to have made the World in regard of himself; for the World we know was made in the beginning of time, but God is infinite and eternal before all times: but that it seemed good to him to create it last, as a thing most conducive to his praise and glory; the Heavens declaring the glory of God, and the Earth shewing his handy-work, saith the Royal Psalmist. Some measuring the God of Heaven by their own affections, and finding nothing so agreeable to their own dispositions as to be in company, conceive that God being at last weary of his own solitude, did create the World, that he might have the company of the Angels in Heaven, and make a start into the Earth (when he saw occasion) to recreate himself with the sons of men. *Qua beata esse solitudo queat?* What happiness (saith Hortensius) can there be in solitude? To which Lactantius, Lib. 1. cap. 7. not being furnished with a better, doth return this Answer; That God cannot be said to be alone; *habet enim Ministros quos vocamus Nuntios,* as having the society of the Angels. But then Lactantius must suppose that the Angels were co-eternal with God himself, (which were to make all Gods, and no God at all;) or else his Answer is no Answer, as to that Objection. How much more appositely might he have thus replied unto Hortensius, That the supreme contentment possible to Almighty God is by reflecting on himself, and in himself contemplating his own infinite glories: which being co-eternal with himself, even from all Eternity, he needed no more company before the World was made, than he hath done since. Lactantius being himself a man of a very great reading, (though indeed a better Humanitarian than Divine) could not but know those sweet delights which a man habited in Learning takes in Contemplation, and the good society he hath of his own dear thoughts, when he is most retired from the sight of men. And if the wise Gentle could affirm so sadly, *numquam minus solus quam cum solus esset,* that he was never less alone than when he was by himself, what need can any rational man suppose in Almighty God, of having more company than himself, to delight himself in? If this suffice not for an answer to that needless question,

What God did before he made the World; let him take that of *Augustine* on the like occasion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is said to have returned this Answer; *fabricasse inferus curiosis*, that he made Hell for all such troublesome and idle *Questionists*. Which resolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late Dutch Poet, moulded into this handsome Epigram.

*Dum Christum Libycis Pater Augustinus in oris
Afferit, & peragis munus in ade summi;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi,
Esse docens verbo cuncta creata Dei;
Impius assurgit, verbisq; procaecibus, Ater,
Ergo Opifex verum quid faciebat, ait,
Aut quibus intentus fellebas tempora curis,
Mundus adhuc nondum cum fabricatus erat?
Praeful ad hac Libycus, fabricavit tartara, dixit,
His quos servari talia mente juvat.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

When reverend *Austin* did in *Africk* preach,
And in Gods House the ruder people reach,
As he the Worlds Creation prov'd and taught
That God made all things by his Word, of nought:
A sawcy Swain upstarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time bestow;
And what to spend his thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made:
To which the Father tartly thus; He then
Made Hell for thee, and such audacious men.

But not to spend more time in answering so vain a caption, suffice it us to know, that it pleased God at last, when it seemed best unto his infinite and eternal Wisdom, to create the World, and all things visible and invisible in the same contained. A time it had, in which it first began to be, which before was not; This *Moses* calls *Principium* a beginning simply. In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth, in the first words of the Book of *Genesis*: which is all one as if he had said, the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that this unformed *Mass* or *Chaos* which he entitleth there by the name of *heaven and earth*, was the beginning or first draught of those several things which after were created in their proper times; that is to say, the first in order of time, because made before them, not in order of causality, as the causes of them. *Caelum & terra in principio*, i. e. *ante omnia facta sunt*, saith *Simon Potius* in his *Scholies* on *S. Johns Gospel*. So that whether we do expound those words, that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that *Moses* by these words did mean, that out of that matter which he calls *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning, or first matter, all things were created, it comes all to one: because it is thereby acknowledged that the first matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of necessity to have a beginning. And to this truth we have not only the authority and consent of Scripture, but of the greatest part of the old *Philosophers*; guided thereto by this impossibility in nature, that any visible work, whether it be natural or artificial, should either give it self a being, or have that being which it hath from no cause precedent. For from that Principle *Tully* argueth very rightly in his most excellent Book de *Natura Deorum*, that as a man coming into a goodly house, in which he found nothing but Rats and Mice, could not conceive that either the house had built it self, or had no other maker but those Rats and Mice which were nested in it; so neither can it be imagined, that either this World should be eternal, of a self-existence; or was composed by any natural Agent of what sort soever. And this is that which is more briefly and expressly said by the Apostle, *viz. that every house is built by some man, but he that built all things is God*, Heb. 3. v. 4. It is true, that *Aristotle* being a very great enquirer into the works of Nature, conceived the World to be eternal; and yet not always constant unto that opinion. But then it is as true withall, that there was something else that inclined him to it, than a meer admiration of the works of Nature. *Democritus* and some others had been of opinion, that the World was made in the beginning, *fortuitis atomorum concursibus*, by the accidental union or conjunction of those several parcels, of which the Universe consisted; and that man himself was but *voluntaria elementorum concretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the elements, as *Aminius* hath observed out of their writings. To which absurd opinion (as it was no better) though it found a general imbracement amongst many of the old *Philosophers*, when *Aristotle* knew not how to submit his most exquisite judgement; and yet was destitute of such further light, as might more fully have instructed him in its true Original: he rather chose to grant the world to be eternal, than to be made of such ridiculous, and unsound, though eternal *Atoms*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab aeterno esse, quam aliquando ex aeterna deformitate emersisse*. *Valesius* in his Book de *Sacra Philosophia* so pleads the case in his behalf; and I thank him for it: who am (I must confess) a great friend of *Aristoteles*, whom some account for the *Praefator* of our Saviour Christ in *rebus naturalibus*, as *John the Baptist* was in *divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reason tell us only this, that the whole World had a beginning; but by the help of Scripture, and the works of some learned men, we are able to point out the time when it did begin; or to compute how many years it is precisely from the first beginning, without any notable difference in the calculation. For though it be most truly said, *Cittius inter Horologias*

quam

quam *Chronologias*, that *Clocks* may sooner be agreed than *Chronologers*, yet most *Chronologers* in this point come so near one another, that the difference is scarce observable. From the beginning of the World to the Birth of *Christ*, in the account of *Beroaldus*, are 3928 years; 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*; 3960 in the esteem of *Luther*; and 3963 in the calculation of *Metanichon*: between whom and *Beroaldus* (being the least and the greatest) there is but 35 years difference, which in so long a course of time can be no great matter. Now if unto the calculation made by *Beroaldus*, which I conceive to be the truest, we add 1648 since the Birth of *Christ*, the total of the time since the worlds creation, will be 5576 years, neither more nor less. A thing which I the rather have insisted on, because that from this *Epoche* or *Era* of the Worlds creation, we shall compute the times of such Kings and Princes, as reigned and flourished in the world before the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour.

It being then resolved as a thing undoubted, that God made the World, and that he made it in such time as himself pleased; let us next look upon the matter and the method which it pleased the Divine Majesty to make use of in this wondrous work.

First, for the matter, out of which all things were created, I take it, as before was said, to be that which *Moses* in the first words of *Genesis* calls the *Heaven and the Earth*, because they were so in *potentia*; but after telleth us more explicitly, that that which he calleth *Earth*, was *inanis & vacua*, without form and void; and that which he calleth *Heaven* was but an overcast of darkness, or *tenebrae super faciem Abyssi*, as the vulgar reads it. Of which *Chaos* or confused *Mass* we thus read in *Ovid*, who questionless had herein consulted with the works of *Moses*, being before his time communicated to the learned Gentiles:

*Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Caelum,
Unus erat toto natura vulnus in Orbe,
Quem dixere Chaos, rudis indigestaq; moles,
Nec quicquam nisi pondus iners, congestaq; eodem
Non bene junctarum discordia semina rerum, &c.*

Which I shall English from *G. Sandys* with some little change.

Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,
One face had Nature, which they *Chaos* named;
An indigested lump, a barren load,
Where jarring seeds of things ill-joyn'd abode.
No Sun as yet with light the world adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waning horns;
Nor hung the self poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,
Nor had the Ocean the vast shores embrac'd.
Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt; the Earth untable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one assign'd;
This that relits; for in one body joyn'd
The cold and heat, the dry and humid fight,
The soft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or first matter, did God raise the World, according to those several parts and lineaments which we see it in, not as out of any pre-existent matter which was made before, and had not God for the Author or first Maker of it; but as the first preparatory matter which himself had made, including in the same potentially both the form and matter of the whole Creation, except the Soul of man only, which God breathed into him. And therefore it is truly said, that God made all things out of nothing; not out of nothing as the matter out of which it was made, for then that nothing must be something; but as the *terminus a quo*, in giving them a real and corporal being which before they had not, and did then first begin to have by the meer force and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be a *Maxim* in the Schools of Philosophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*, that nothing can be made of nothing; that every thing which hath a being doth require some matter, which must be pre-existent to it; yet this must either be condemned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divinity, or else be limited and restrained to *Natural agents*, which cannot go beyond the sphere of their own activity. *Invisible and supernatural Agents* are not tied to Rules, no nor in the production of the works of Nature; though Nature constituted and established in a certain course, work every thing by line and measure as a certain Rule. And so it was with God in the Worlds Creation; he did not only make the world, but he made it out of nothing, by his Word alone: *Dixit & facta sunt*, he spake the word and they were made, saith the royal *Psalmist*, *Psal. 33. v. 9*. There went no greater pains nor matter to the whole Creation, but a *Dixit Deus*: And this not only said by *Moses*, but by *David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati sunt Caeli, & Spiritu oris ejus omnis virtus eorum*, v. 6. i. e. by the Word of the Lord were the heavens made, and all the hosts thereof by the breath of his mouth. In which it is to be observed, that though the Creation of the World be generally ascribed to God the Father, yet both the Son and the Holy Ghost had their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the Word of the Lord were the Heavens made, saith the Prophet *David*: In the beginning was the Word; all things were made by him, and without him was nothing made, saith *S. John* the Apostle. The Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters, saith *Moses* in the book of the Law: *Et spiritus oris ejus*, and by the breath (or Spirit) of his mouth

were all the Hosts of Heaven created, faith *David* in the Book of *Psalms*; Made by his *Word*, and yet not made together in one instant of time. In the first day he laid the foundation and no more; in the five next he raised the building: and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words and actions; and to set forth withall unto us both his Power and Wisdom. His Power he manifested in the *Method* of the whole Creation, in that he did produce what effects he pleased, without the help of natural causes: as giving Light unto the World before he had created either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitful, and to bring forth plants, without the influence or motion of the Heavenly bodies. And for his *Wisdom* he expressed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the very Beasts of the field before he had provided them of fodder and sufficient herbage; nor made *Man* after his own Image, before he had finished all the rest of his works, fitted his House, and furnished it with all things necessary both for life and pleasures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at last comes *Man* into the world; and he doth make his entrance with a greater pomp than any of the rest of the Creatures which were before him. They came in with no other Ceremony, than a *Dixit Deus*; but in the workmanship of *Man*, there was a Consultation held by the blessed Trinity. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make *Man*; each Person contributing somewhat (as it were) to his composition. For God the Father as the chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him form and feature; in which he did imprint his own heavenly Image. The Son who is the living and eternal Word, gave him voice or speech, that so he might be able to set forth Gods praises. The Holy Ghost, the Lord and giver of life, (as the *Nicens* Fathers truly call him) breathing into his nostrils the breath of life, whereby he became a living Spirit. In this one Creature did God shew the excellency of his power and wisdom, in printing on him his own Image, and giving him Dominion over all the works of his hands; which Image of God they look for in a very wrong place, who hope to finde it in mans Body, though of a gallant composition, and erected structure. The Heathen Oratour was able in this point to inform some erroneous *Christians*, *Ad Divinam imaginem proprius accedit humana virtus quam figura*, *Man* doth approach more near to the Image of God, in the endowments of his Minde, than in the structure of his Body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that Dominion which God gave him over the works of his hands, the Patent is at large laid down in the first of *Genesis*. For God no sooner said, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make *Man* after our own Image, but presently he adds this Charter of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over the Fish of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the Cattel, and over all the Earth*. A more particular explication of those several points, wherein that Image and this Power do consist especially, I shall not take upon me or endeavour now; as being not of this place and purpose: Which only is to shew, that as man in the very act of his Creation participated more of the Divine Image, than all other Creatures; so was he by Gods special grant endow'd with a larger power, than any of the rest could pretend unto. *Man*, though made lower than the Angels, is in this above them; that all the Creatures of the World were made to be his servants, and to attend upon his pleasure. And yet this great and mighty Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Creatures in it (setting aside the dignity of his first Creation) doth come into the world in a worse condition, than any of the Creatures which were made to serve him: naked, and impotent, and speechless, without use of reason; neither of power to help himself, or ask help of others. Whereof *Lactantius* in my minde gives a very good reason, who telleth us, that God sends man into the world, *nudum & inermem*, naked, and weak, and undefenced against all violences and dangers; whereas all Creatures else, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata sunt*, are naturally both armed and clothed, and able to relieve themselves. And this he doth unto this end, that man being naturally destitute of those outward helps, might make use of his inward faculties of judgment, wit and understanding, in furnishing himself with that which he wants by nature. For hereunto the first original of all Manufactures and mechanick Arts is to be referred, as is most plain and evident from the Book of God; in which we see, that presently upon the procreation of Mankind, *Abel* betook himself unto keeping sheep, and *Cain* to husbandry; *Jubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and such Musical Instruments; and *Tubal-Cain* to work upon Brasse and Iron, two metals very necessary to most kinde of Trades. The like may be supposed in all other Mysteries and Arts of living, though there be no express mention of them in those early dayes; except it be the Art of Building, or the Carpenters Trade, which no question is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain's* City, and *Noah's* Ark is most clearly evidenced. God made the World, and fitted it with all things necessary for the life of man, leaving man to provide himself of such Additions, as rather serve for comforts and conveniencies in the way of his living, than the necessities of his life.

Here then we have the works of God, and the works of men to be considered in pursuit of our present Argument. The works of God, in shadowing the Earth with Trees and Forests, interlacing it with Chrystal Streams, and capacious Rivers; enriching it with fruitful and delicious Vales, adorning it with lofty Mountains, and stocking both the Hills and Vales with all sorts of Cattel. But nothing more sets forth the Power and Wisdom of Almighty God, as it relates to these particulars, than that most admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffique and Commerce with one another: some Countreys being destitute of those Commodities, with which others abound; and being plentiful in those, which the others want. Inasmuch that as in the Body of man, that *Microcosm*, or little World, the Head cannot say that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other members of the rest: so neither in the Body

of

of the World, can Europe say to Asia, or Spain to England, I have no need of your Commodities; or am not wanting in those things, whereof thou boastest an abundance. Something there is in every Countrey, which may be spared to supply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandize: Of which, thus *Du-Bartas* in his Colonies.

Hence come our Sugars from Canary Isles.
From Candie, Currans, Muscadels, and Oyls.
From the Moluccoes, Spices; Balsamum
From Egypt; Odours from Arabia come.
From India, Gums, rich Drugs and Ivory.
From Syria, Mummie; black, red Ebony
From burning Chus; from Peru, Pearls and Gold;
From Russia Furs, to keep the rich from cold.
From Florence, Silks; from Spain, Fruit, Saffron, Sacks;
From Denmark, Amber, Cordage, Firs, and Flax.
From France and Flanders, Linnen, Wood, and Wine;
From Holland, Hops; Horse from the banks of Rhine.
From England Woolle, All lands, as God distributeth,
To the Worlds treasure pay their sundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* speaks of the present times, so questionless the same, or the like Commerce held good in the first Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furnishing all Countreys from the first beginning with some Staple-commodities, for the benefit of themselves and others; for the maintaining of that intercourse between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the closer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end also serve those several Manufactures wherewith some Countreys do abound in respect of others; but looked on in the present Book as the works of men. And of this kinde also are the several Politie and forms of Government. For though all Magistracy in it self be from God originally, and that the Monarchical form comes nearest to the Government used by God himself: yet being that some Politie are merely but humane inventions, all Government or Magistracy is called an Ordinance of man in holy Scripture, 1 Pet. ii. v. 13. But those particular Works of men which are the most considerable part of our present subject, are Castles, Towns, and Cities of most eminent note; which thrive and prosper in the World, according as they do partake of those Conveniencies, which conduce most to their Magnificence and Greatness. Of these *Boterus* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of those many we shall touch upon the principal only; passing by those of lesser note, as pleasantness of Site, fruitfulness of Soyl, salubrity of Air, and such like obvious Observations. First then, there is required to the Magnificence and Splendour of Cities, a Navigable River, or some such easie passage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourse and trade of Merchants; as at Venice, London, Amsterdam. Secondly, some Staple-Manufactures or Commodities, which will draw the like resort of Merchants, though the conveniency of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in Nuremberg in Germany, a dry Town, but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; For *ubi Imperator, ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all sorts of Trades: And by this means Madrid, not long since a poor beggerly Village, is grown the most populous City in all Spain. Fourthly, the Residence of the Nobility, beautifieth a City with stately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of Italy so much excell ours in England, their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the most part in their Countrey-houses. Fifthly, the Seats, or Tribunals of Justice, on which both Advocates and Clients are to give attendance; as in the Parliamentary Cities in France, and Spires in Germany. Sixthly, Universities and Schools of Learning, to which the Youth from all parts are to make resort; which hath been long the chief cause of the flourishing of Oxford, Cambridge, Bononia in Italy, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; most men being most desirous to inhabit there, where their Incomer will be greatest, their Priviledges largest, and their Disbursements least: So Naples, Florence, Venice, having been desolated by Plagues, were again sodainly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And last of all, the opinion of Sanctity, either for the Reliques of Saints, or some noted Shrines, or the residence of some Famous man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the least *Adamant* which draws people to it, to the great enriching of some Cities: And of this, Rome it self can give us two most pregnant evidences: the one in reference to the Popes, and these latter times, that famous Town not otherwise subsisting now, than by the constant residence of the Popes and Cardinals; whose absence while the Papal Sea was kept at Avignon, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almost in its own sad ruins. The other, in the person of *Titus Livius* the Historian, to see which man, there came so many from the Coasts of France and Spain, that S. Hierome elegantly saith, *Quos ad sui contemplationem Roma non traxerat, unius huius hominis fama perduxit; qui jam urbem tantam ingressi, aliud extra Urbem quaerent.*

Such are the causes of the Greatness and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might possibly be looked at by the first builders of Cities, I mean by *Cain* before the Flood, and by *Nimrod* after it; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and self-preservation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular wealth of those amongst whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expressly in the Book of God, That being possessed with this fear, that every one that found him would lay hands upon him and slay him, in revenge of the blood of Abel; He builded a City and called it

by the name of his son Enoch. Gen. 4. 17. *Builded a City?* For what reason? To fortifie and secure himself against all revenge; as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppress his Neighbours, as Josephus witnesseth. Neither was this the only City of the first Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture saith of *Jubal*, that he was the *Father of such as dwell in Tents*, and of such as have Cattel; that is to say, he was the first of those which lived upon Pasturage, and followed their Cattel up and down with their moveable Tents, not having any certain home or habitations, as the wilde *Arabs* now, and the ancient *Nomades*: is proof sufficient, that the residue of all Mankind lived a more civil kinde of life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in these things, I think he is) he will inform us, that the City of *Joppa* was built before the Flood; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of stone. But whether this be so, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the West, whereon *Joppa* stood, as the *Land of Nod* on the East side of *Paradise*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Flood: and so were most of the other parts of the World besides. And if well peopled in all, or most parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, *Towns* and *Cities* too, as well for necessary habitation, as for strength and safety. Now that the World was thoroughly peopled before the Flood, seems clear to me by that great and universal Deluge, which God was pleased to bring upon the Face of all the earth: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people, of it guilty of oppression, in the sight of God? Besides, it is expressly said in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the Flood, in the largest account, and not 300 in the shortest; there were Kings of *Egypt*, and of the *Philistines*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinar*, *Ellasar*, *Ellan*, and of the *Nations*, who questionless had their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldeas*, and *Mesopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham*, had their several Cities; as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan* in the other; and that *Damascus* the chief City of *Syria* was then founded also: Not to say any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the land of *Shinar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Resen*, *Rehoboth*, and *Chalab* in the land of *Assyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10. of *Genesis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Assyrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having subdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia*, invaded *Bactria* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 10000 armed Chariots; and was encountered by *Zoroaster* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thousand. The credibility whereof, if it were disputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Ctesias* for his Author, *Semiramis* the Wife of *Ninus* invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of men, and upwards; and yet was over-marched, and slain by an *Indian* King. If then within the space of 400 years, we finde the Eastern parts to be so well planted, so many Kings possessed of their Regal Thrones, and many of them able to impress such infinite Armies; why may we not conclude, that in the course of 1656 years (for so long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; especially considering the long lives of men, amounting to 800, or 900 years, and consequently the long time they had to apply themselves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Mercators* opinion; who placing the 16 Dynasties of the Kings of *Egypt* (where *Eusebius* begins to calculate the *Egyptian* times) at the first planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*; reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the Flood, and to reach very near the times of the first Creation. That *Misraim* the Son of *Ham* was possessed of *Egypt* within two hundred years after the Flood, is a truth undoubted. Nor see I any cause to doubt, but that in the like space of time from the first Creation, it might be planted also by the Sons of *Adam*: considering, as we ought to do, that in the Infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were most perfect, and of greatest vigour, they observed no degree of Kindred or Consanguinity; nor tied themselves so strictly to one woman, as they should have done. And for the names of all the Kings of those several Dynasties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, such as that of *Seth*; or upon Altars of stone, as in those of *Joppa*; or *Misraim* might have them by tradition from the hands of *Noah*; and so deliver them by tale unto his posterity: the *Egyptians* being generally very good *Heralds*, and standing very much on their own Antiquity. And if this may be said of *Egypt* (as for my part I see no reason but it may) then may the like be said of all Countreys else, that they had their several Kings and Rulers, and set forms of Government: The Fathers of Families in those times, having the command and sovereignty over all that descended of them. Nor make I any question of it, but they had several Languages and forms of Speech, at least as to the *Dialect* and pronunciation; although the *Radicals* of the Language might remain the same. But being there are no Reminders of this first Plantation, (unless we will give credit to some *Jewish* Fables, who tell us of some Giants who saved themselves upon Mount *Sin*; or that of *Nicholas Damascenus*, who speaks of some that saved themselves on an high Hill called *Baris*, in some part of *Armenia*) I shall the less insist upon it. Nor had I stood so long upon these first Ages, which *Moses* passeth over with so short a Narrative; but that it is affirmed by *Petrus*, a right learned *Hebrew*, that neither *Egypt* nor *Assyria*, nor the rest of the World was planted and inhabited before the Flood; and that upon no stronger reason, for ought I can finde, but that it is affirmed in the last words of the tenth of *Genesis*, That, by these (that is to say, by the posterity of the Sons of *Noah*) were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood. Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo significatur talem divisionem non fuisse ante diluvium*; By which it doth appear (saith he) that in the times before the Flood was no such division.

*Tis

'Tis true, that this division of the world by the Sons of *Noah*, hath the best evidence in Scripture; because there is expresse Text for it, which is not for the first Plantations. But looking on the great increase of mankind before the Flood, that saying of *Berosus* will prove tantamount to a Text of Scripture, *Ad comparandas novas sedes necessitatem compulisse*, that they were driven by necessity to seek new dwellings; the necessity of providing victuals for themselves and their families, being as strong a motive unto such dispersals, as the Confusion of Tongues was afterwards. The difference is, that that which such necessity would have done in long tract of time, the confusion of Tongues did in an instant: not only making those proud Builders to give over the finishing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themselves with such, whose language came most near to that which themselves were Masters of. It was high time, no question, to delist from this proud attempt, when the Labourer understood not what the Workman called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But because some Plantations had no reference to the Confusion of Tongues, but were made before it, or on the sending out of such Colonies as were nearest to the place where the Ark did rest; I think it not amiss to resolve that question touching the resting of the Ark; on which the Plantations of the East have so great dependence. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the Ark reited on the Mountains of *Ararat*; but where those Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Josephus*, and some other, of more eminent note, (but such as ground themselves upon his authority) affirm those Mountains of *Ararat* to be the hills of *Armenia*. Which they do chiefly on these Reasons: First, because *Armenia* is called *Ararat* in the Book of God, as it is confessedly; and secondly, because of an old Tradition, countenanced by *Berosus*, and some others of the ancient Writers cited by *Josephus*, affirming, that on the *Gordian* Mountains in *Armenia major*, some of the Reliques of the Ark were remaining in their times, and used as a preservative against Inchantments. Which notwithstanding I incline rather to the opinion of *Gorgopius Becanus*, (who amongst many strange whimsies broached some notable truths) by whom the Ark is said to rest on the top of Mount *Caucasus* in the Confines of *Tartary*, *Persia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greatest consequence: the first whereof is grounded upon evident reason; the second on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon reason, is the exceeding populousity of those Eastern Countreys, into which none of those by whom the world was planted after the Confusion of Languages, are yet reported to have travelled with their several Colonies, by any who have took most pains in this discovery. Those infinite numbers which *Strabon* (one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians* brought into the field against *Semiramis*; and the vast Army of *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province against *Ninus*; are proof enough, that those Countreys were of an elder Plantation, than to be a second or third Casting of some other *Swarm* settled in *Persia*, or *Assyria*, after the Confusion. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I must needs look upon it, as a thing impossible, that those vast Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raise: out of all her Dominions, should be encountered by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; If that one King, and those his Subjects had been some late Colony of those new Plantations, and not possessed of a Country peopled and inhabited before that Confusion. Nor was it but upon some good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucasus*) were generally esteemed the most ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitors with this publick Verdict, *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*: which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the Ark unto them (though perhaps that ground long since forgotten, was not stood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his children near the place of the Ark, till numbers, and necessity compelled them to enlarge their Borders. And in the enlarging of their Borders, I shall make no question, but that such parts as lay nearest, were peopled and possessed before those which lay furthest off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages since. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument; yet it falls short of that which comes from the Text it self, both in authority and weight; where it is said of the Heads of those several Families which afterwards joyned together in the building of *Babel*, that, *As they went from the East, they found a Plain in the Land of Shinar; and there they abode*, Gen. 11. v. 2. If then they came from the East to the Land of *Shinar*; as the Text saith plainly that they did; it might well be that they came from those parts of *Asia*, on the South of *Caucasus*, which lie East of *Shinar*, though somewhat bending to the North; impossible they should come from the *Gordian* Mountains in the greater *Armenia* (supposed to be the Hills which the Ark did rest on) which lie not only full North of *Shinar*, but many degrees unto the West. For *Babylonia*; or *Shinar*, is situate in the Latitude of 35, and the Longitude of 79, and 80: the Latitude of the *Gordian* Mountains in 41, and their Longitude in 75. By which account those Mountains are 6 Degrees more Northwards; and 5 Degrees more Westwards than the Land of *Shinar*: by no means to be reckoned on the East of that Valley, except we make *Moses* (whose hand God guided in his Books) to speak God knows what; or in plain terms, to speak plain non-sense. And though this Scripture be so clear; that it needs no Commentary, yet the perplexities I finde amongst those of the other opinion, in shifting out of the authority of so plain a Text; do add in my conceit some moment and weight unto it. For some will have the Mountains of *Ararat* to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinar*, but with some bending towards the East; which were it true, as nothing is more cruelly false, *Moses* had never told us that they came from the East; but from some Countreys of the North, which lay toward the East. Others will have a double progress of the Heads of those several Families: First, from the Mountains of *Ararat*; or the Plains of *Armenia*, to the Fields of *Assyria*, and *Susiana*; And secondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinar*. But of this first journey, there is *ne gryn quidem*, not so much as any one syllable in all the Scripture; besides the needlessness of making them go so far about, and to cross over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and

and *Tigris*; whereas they had a shorter, and an easier passage. *Capellus*, singular by himself, quarrelleth with the Translation (received without dispute by all other Critics) and will not have the *Hebrew Kedem*, to be rendred *East*, but to signifie that Region, whatsoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedem* the son of *Ismael*, of whom we finde mention, *Gen. 25. 15*. But then besides his quarrel with all other Translations, he supposeth a former progress from the Mountains of *Ararat* to that land of *Kedem*; and consequently falleth into a part of the Error before refuted. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Assyrians* called all those parts of their Empire beyond *Tigris*, the Eastern, and those on this side of it, the Western; would thence conclude, that these *Heads* may be said by *Moses* to have come from the *East*, because they came from one of the Eastern Provinces of the *Assyrian* Empire. Every way faulty in this point: For besides that the greatest part of *Armenia* lieth on the North of *Tygris*, and the least part of it on the West, and therefore not within the compass of the Eastern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this division was in use in the time of *Moses*; we may as rationally conclude, and with less absurdity, that the first Inhabitants of *Britain*, might have been said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the West (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly *East* of it) because *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the West parts of the Empire.

Having thus fortified our opinion both with Scripture and Reason, the Arguments produced against us will be easily answered. For though *Armenia* be granted to be the Countrey of *Ararat*; yet the Mountains of *Ararat* may extend beyond the Countrey. That mighty Ridge of Mountains which beginning in *Asia* the less, run as far as *India* (by the Ancients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Moses* the Mountains of *Ararat*, because that was the first Countrey of the greater *Asia* by which they passed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly. Just as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it washed many Shores besides: Or as some Hills with us are called *Malvern* Hills, because they are highest near that Village, though they extend themselves into other Lordships. And as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Testimony of humane Writers, which (as before was said) are brought in for an help, touching some Reliques of the *Ark* to be seen on the *Gordian* Mountains; I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For first *Berosus* (followed herein by all the rest) reports it only on the ground of uncertain hear-say; which is a weak staff for so heavy a cause to rely upon. Secondly, to balance the authority of *Berosus* (if of any credit in this case) we have the testimony and authority of *Portius Cato*, as ancient almost as he, affirming positively, in *Scythia Saga* renatum esse mortale genus, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Scythia* which after was possessed by the *Sacani*: And they, we know, dwelt in those parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Persian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucasus*. And Thirdly, unto one Tradition to oppose another; those of Mount *Caucasus* do aver, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah's* Plantation; Of which we shall speak more when we come to *Tartary*.

It is now time I should go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide dispersions; for whom it was high time to comfort themselves with such as they could understand; the necessity of discourse and conference on that fatal Accident, making them lay aside their old acquaintances, and joyn themselves to others of their own new Language. I know that many learned men, according to the number of names laid down in the tenth of *Gen.* being 70, have made so many Languages to have been spoken upon that Confusion: And that of those, 26 being the Posterity of *Sem*, dispersed themselves about *Asia* the greater, 30 others of the loyns of *Cham*, peopled *Africk*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the 14 which remain, being the issue of *Japhet*, withdrew themselves towards *Europe*, and the lesser *Asia*. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a vein conceit; though many, more improbable, have passed for current. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongst them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the Land of *Canaan*. And as for *Jokan* and his Sons, being 13 in number, considering that he was the younger brother of *Phaleg*, in whose time this Confusion hapned; it is most probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the design for the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and consequently could not be within the curse of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the 70 to be taken off; as possibly might all the Sons of *Misraim* be, if it were worth the while to insist upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the dispersion into the said three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but false enough, if understood of any present separation of the Sons of *Noah* into parts so far remote and distant from one another. For what needed any such remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and so enjoy that civil intercourse, and mutual society which the nature of Mankind doth most delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joyning themselves to men of the same Language with them, did first set down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinar*: and from thence propagated and dispersed themselves into further Countreys, as either the necessity of providing of Victuals; or seeking better and more fruitful habitations for themselves and theirs; or the desire of being out of the reach of some potent Neighbours, whose yoke they found too heavy for their necks to bear; did enforce them to it. And being so settled to their mindes, the addition of a few more years brought the like necessity of sending Colonies further off, as they grew more or less populous in their generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongst whom one *Swarm* sends out another, that begets a *Casting*, till the whole ground or Garden grow too small to hold them. For thus (to seek no further for an instance of it) the *Gauls* first planted *Britain*, the *Britains* *Ireland*, the *Irish* *Scotland*, and the

the *Iles*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to sustain, and too narrow to contain their multitudes, *angustos se fines habere arbitantes*, as in *Cassius Commmentaries*, intended to plant themselves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phenicians* flying the dreadful sword of *Josiah* the son of *Nun*, sought them out dwellings further off from the present danger, whereof we shall speak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the first people after the Flood, distribute and disperse themselves into several parts, as their posterities have done since, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability: Giving their own names, or some names of their own imposing, upon the Countreys planted or discovered by them. And though the length, and confusing nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the names imposed by the first Adventurers, I mean the first Planters after the Flood: yet all the Footsteps of Antiquity are not so defaced, but that some Nations and Cities have preserved the memory of their first Founders and true Parents. In the discovery whereof, as *Josephus* in his Book of *Jewish Antiquities* did first lead the way, and gave good light to those who have travelled in it: So a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the tenth of *Genesis*, Sir *Walter Raleigh* in his excellent History, and lately by *Bochartus* a French Writer in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. Out of whose learned labours, and some Animadversions of mine own, I shall here say somewhat concerning the Plantation of the world by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctual description of it unto the History of those several Lands and Countreys which were planted by them.

First therefore to begin with the posterity of *Sem*, as those who fixed themselves in *Asia*, without wandering further, we finde *Sem* to have had five sons, that is to say, *Elam*, *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, and *Aram*, of whom there is no issue on Record in holy Scripture, but only of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*; and of these two there are but four Sons given to *Aram*, viz. *Uz*, *Hul*, *Geiber*, and *Mesoch*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*. To *Selah* was born *Heber*; to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Ancestor of *Abraham*, and *Joktan* the father of those thirteen sons, whose names we shall rehearse hereafter, if occasion be. From *Elam* who is first named, did descend the *Elamites*, a people bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times joyned together in the Scriptures, as, *Go up, O Elam; beseege, O Media, Es. 21. v. 2*. And all the Kings of *Elam*, all the Kings of the *Medes*, *Jer. 25. v. 25*. And in the second of the *Acts*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in rank and file, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this people was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the second of *Maccab. cap. 6. v. 2*. sufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there consecrated to *Diana*. A City seated on the banks of the River *Euleus*, and neighbouring close to *Susiana*, which therefore is sometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan. 8. v. 2*. *I mas* (saith he) in the Palace of *Susa*, in the Province of *Elam*; where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination unto all those Nations whom they after mastered. The second son of *Sem* is *Assur*, of whom there is no question made amongst the Learned, but that he was the Father of the *Assyrians*, called *Assyres* in some old Greek Writers: Not of the whole people of that great and unwieldy Empire, who sometimes generally pass by the name of *Assyrians*; but of the people of *Assyria* strictly and properly so called, as it denotes the Countrey about *Ninive* (the Regal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Iuxta hunc circutum Adiabene*, *Assyria priscis temporibus vocata*, as in *Ammianus Marcellinus*, lib. 33. *Arphaxad* comes next after *Assur*, and him *Josephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldeans*, called anciently *Arphaxadei*, if he tell us true. But others tell us, and that more probably perhaps, that he planted in that part the *Assyria* which was first called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arrapachitis*; by which name it occurth in the Tables of *Ptolemy*. *Lud* the fourth son is generally said to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a people of *Asia* the less, the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or *Adia*, as the *Gracians* call them) being much alike. And it is possible enough that some of the posterity of this *Lud* might afterwards settle in those parts, and call the Countrey by the name of *Lud* their common Ancestor; as the posterity of *Abraham* took unto themselves the name of *Hebreus* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their Father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* should in person go so far from the rest of the sons of *Sem*, I cannot easily imagine. For *Aram* the first and last (as they stand in order of the Text) sets himself down close by his Brethren in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Arameans* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the several Provinces which were hence denominated, we shall hereafter speak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Only take now this testimony and acknowledgment from the pen of *Strabo*, *Quos nos Syros vocamus, ipsi Syri Aramensis & Arameos vocant*. Those (saith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themselves *Arameans*, or *Arameniens*. In, and about the same parts, did the four sons of *Aram* set themselves and their Families; *Uz* in that part of *Syria* which is called *Syria Damascena*, or *Aram Damascen*: the building of the great City of *Damascus* being generally ascribed unto him: and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damascus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hul*, or *Chul*, the next son of *Aram*, whom both *Josephus* and *St. Hieron* settle in *Armenia*, or *Aramenia*, as in *Strabo*: And that not improbably, considering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* calls *Cholobetene*; and divers Cities in that tract, which still preserve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholus*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimna*, *Colsa*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolemy*. For *Geiber*, the third son of *Aram*, it is not yet agreed on where to finde his dwelling. *Josephus*, contrary to all reason, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer* with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*, and *Acanthia* of *Greece*. *Junius* sets him down in the Province of *Cassitis*, and *Selenis*, near his Father *Aram*, where *Ptolemy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nation called by *Pliny* *Gindareni*: *Bochartus* on the banks of the River *Centris*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjectureth it might be, the contro-

versis

verſie were at an end. But being that we finde in *Protony*, a City of *Albania* (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the ſame Countrey called *Getras*; I ſee no cauſe why we ſhould ſeek further for the ſear of *Getar*; though the *Greek* Copies (more ſubject to corruption in the times of ignorance, than the *Latin* were) in ſtead of *Getara* read *Gagara*. But if this be too far to ſet him, we ſhall finde *Mas* or *Meſch*, the laſt Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern parts of *Syria*, towards *Meſopotamia*, near the Hill called *Maſius*: at the foot whereof there is a people, which *Stephanus* calls *Maſieni*; and thereabouts a River, which in *Xenophon* is named *Maſca*. Both which do evidently declare from what root they come.

Come we next to the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*; whom we left ſetled in the Region of *Arrapachitis*, in, or near *Aſſyria*. Not far from which in *Suſiana*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Protonies* Tables; and the 23 Book of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. Adde unto this the authority of *Eufſtathius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, *Sela* *de* *Suſanidis*. The People of *Suſiana* came from *Sela*. But this, as I conceive, muſt be underſtood only of that part of this people, which lived in and about the City of *Sela*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Suſians*, or *Suſani*; which borrowed their denomination from another root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the people of the *Hebrai*, or *Hebreues* do derive their name. And to him *Phaleg* his firſt-born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, ſituate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Seleucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book of *Urbiſus*, and by *Protonie* in his Geography; where it is placed right on the banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chaboras* mingles waters with it; but there corruptly called *Pharga*, in ſtead of *Phalga*.

But the great increaſe of *Sem's* poſterity came by *Joktan*, the ſecond Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whoſe names are on record in the tenth of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid, that their dwelling was from *Meſha*, as thou goeſt to *Sephar*, a Mount in the Eaſt. And here I muſt crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath thronged *Joktan* and his Sons into a little corner of *Arabia Felix*, where I can finde no room for them, and leſs reaſon to place them. For being that *Chus* the ſon of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his poſterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himſelf confeſſeth, it muſt needs be, that they had ſpread themſelves over all the Countrey before any of the ſons of *Joktan* were of age ſufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Joktan* is credibly ſuppoſed not to have been born when ſuch of *Noah's* poſterity as are mentioned *Gen. 10.* diſperſed themſelves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two ſeveral places. Firſt, granting that neither *Phaleg*, nor *Joktan* were preſent at the building of *Babel*, multo minus *Joktanis filii poſt aliquot annos geniti*; much leſs the ſons of *Joktan* begot many years after; *Lib. 1. cap. 16.* And ſecondly, affirming that *Joktan* and his children came not within the curſe of Confounded Languages, quia nondum erant geniti, becauſe then unborn, *Cap. 15.* Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable that *Joktan* and his children ſhould finde room in the beſt parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his poſterity had inhabited ſo long before. And as it is improbable that the ſons of *Chus* would plant themſelves in the worſt part of the Countrey for ſo many Ages; and leave the beſt and richeſt of it for ſome new Adventurers: So it is impoſſible that the ſons of *Joktan* ſhould either be removed ſo far from the reſt of the houſe of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the Eaſt of the River *Tygris*, as was before ſhewed; or that they ſhould be able, had they been ſo minded, to break through the whole Countreys of the *Aſſyrians*, *Chuſites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmoſt corners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, muſt have a ſtronger Faith than mine; but it ſhall never conduce any thing to his juſtification. Nor am I moved at all at that which ſeems to me to be his weightieſt Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joſeph Ben Abdallatif*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers affirm, that *Joktan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine and ſervant of *Abraham*; becauſe that people ſo report it for their greater glory.

And for the ſeveral Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whoſe original he aſcribes to the ſons of *Joktan*, I ſee ſo many tranſpoſitions of Syllables, alterations even of Radical Letters, ſuch and ſo many wreſted Originations, as by the like liberty of making quilibet ex quolibet, it were no difficult matter to finde place for them in any Countrey whatever. For how extorted and unnatural are the derivations of the *Alumacota* from *Almodad*, of the *Manita* from *Abimail*, of the *Jobaria* from *Jobab*? How impoſſible is it that *Jarech* ſhould give name to the Iſle which *Protonie* calleth *Niſos* *Agathus*, *Inſula* *Teracum*, or *Accipitrum*, as the *Latine* hath it, that is to ſay, the Iſle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks* which were thereinbred: There being another Iſland of the ſame name near unto *Sardinia* (ſo called for the ſelf ſame reaſon) and a Town called *Jerax* in *Hammoniacia* a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jarech* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Teracum*, or *Accipitrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* ſhould give name to *Myſephre*, a poor Iſle of the Red Sea, *Obal* to *Sinns* *Avalites* in *Aethiopia*, on the other ſide of that Gulf? Or that *Diela* muſt be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reaſon, but becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm-tree*, of which that Countrey yields good plenty; as if ſome other Countreys did not yield as much? Theſe and ſome other reaſons hereafter following have made me bold to differ from that learned man in this particular, whoſe induſtry and abilities I do otherwiſe honour; and rather to look for *Joktan* and his ſons in the Eaſt part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with reference to the Wilderneſs, or Land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Geneſis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet ſo far I muſt

muſt yield to that learned man, that ſome of the Deſcendants of *Joktan* in long tract of time, moved with the rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themſelves upon the Sea-coaſts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this day, moved with the wealth and trade of *India*, have poſſeſſed themſelves of many of the Ports and pieces on the Shores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sons of *Joktan*, that their dwelling was from *Meſha*, as thou goeſt to *Sephar*, a Mount of the Eaſt; ſo that by theſe two boundaries, *Meſha* and *Sephar*, their habitation muſt be found. I know *Bochartus* would have *Meſha* to be *Muſa*, a noted Port-town on the South-weſt of *Arabia Felix*; and *Sephar* to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-Eaſt of that Countrey; that City giving name to ſome Mount adjoining. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Meſis* wrote, I cannot ſee how this poſition can agree with the word of Scripture; and therefore we muſt look for both in ſome other place. And firſt to find out *Meſha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himſelf, who maketh *Meſh*, the laſt of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem* (according to the general opinion of moſt writers elſe) to be planted in the Mountainous tracts of *Meſopotamia*, from him called *Mons Maſius*; more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a Mount of the Eaſt; if it be the Southern part of Mount *Imani*, by *Protonie* named *Bitiga*, by the Moderns *Gatay*, extending from Mount *Caucasus* to the Cape *Comari* in the higher *India*, as *Poſſellus* a right learned man doth conceive it to be; We have without more difficulty found out the dwellings of the ſons of *Joktan*, according to the bounds laid down in holy Scripture. But for fear this may not ſatisfie, for want of ſome Seconds to *Poſtellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Aria*, directly Eaſt from *Mons Maſius*, or the dwellings of *Meſh*; both in the Eaſt parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Moſes* writ: *Mons Maſius* being placed by *Protonie* in the 74 degree of Longitude, and the 37 of Latitude; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more toward the Eaſt, but with no more than two degrees of Latitude ſuper-added to it. And this agreeth to the poſition assigned to the ſons of *Joktan*, by *Joſephus*, *Eufſebius*, and *S. Hierome*; the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Joſephus* that the *Joktanites* poſſeſſed all that Tract, *and Kophen* a River of *India*, together with ſuch parts of *Syria* as did border near it. Theſe words being borrowed from *Joſephus* both by *Eufſebius* and *S. Hierome*; the firſt inſtead of *Syria* reads *Seria*, and the other *Seria*, but neither rightly: there being no ſuch place in the world as *Seria*; and *Syria* and *Seria* (or the Countrey of the *Seris*) lying too far off to border on *Cophenus* a River of *India*. *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we ſhould there read *Aria*; and withall granting, as he may, that *Aria* in the largeſt latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Paropamiſus* and *Arachofia*, extendeth as far Eaſtward as the River *Cophenus*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the Sons of *Joktan*, betwixt *Mons Maſius* and *Siphare*, a Town of *Aria*: which probably might give name to ſome Mount adjoining, as *Sephar* by *Bochartus* is ſuppoſed to do ſome of the *Arabian* hills bordering near unto it. And as theſe ſituations do agree exactly with the meaning of thoſe ancient Writers; ſo is it alſo very ſutable to the other Plantations of the Sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all diſpute, that *Phaleg* and *Joktan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when ſo many of the reſidue of *Noah's* poſterity removed toward *Shinar*; kept themſelves under the tuition of their Grandfather *Noah*; or at leaſt wandered not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*: till *Joktan's* Sons being grown to be Fathers of Families, were forced to caſt about for new habitations. And when neceſſity compelled them to ſeek new ſeats, I would fain know why they ſhould think of making themſelves a way to *Arabia Felix*, through Countreys peopled and poſſeſſed a long time before; when they had Elbow-room enough on the Eaſt of *Tygris*, and the unpeopled Countreys of ſome parts of *India* lay ſo near at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence and as little forced for ſome of their Plantations in the Eaſtern parts, as *Bochartus* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodad* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the Metropolis of *Meſopotamia*, not far from *Meſha* or *Mons Maſius* the Weſtern Boundary: and *Jarech* of the Nation of the *Arachofians* inhabiting near *Siphare* the Eaſtern limit, assigned unto the Sons of *Joktan*. With what an eaſie change might *Obal* or *Chubal* be ſuppoſed to be the Father of the *Cabolites* of *Paropamiſus*? *Hadoram* of the *Orites* an *Indian* people near unto the other? But theſe North-eaſtern parts being peopled, or not very pleaſant, how many of the Sons of *Joktan* ſhall we finde in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bochartus* himſelf confeſſeth that the Land of *Ophir* (another of the Sons of *Joktan*) was a part of *India*, but whether *Sumatra*, *Taprobane*, or *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I diſpute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whoſe name are found in *Sabalalla* one of the mouths of the River *Indus*, *Sabana*, a City of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, a River in the ſame Tract named *Sabannus*, and a City called *Saba*: beſides the whole Nation of the *Sabai* mentioned by *Dionyſius* in his *Periegeſis*. And though ſome late Criticks read it *Siba* in ſtead of *Sabai*, (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Siba*, is confeſſed on all ſides;) yet ſeeing *Eufſtathius* findes the *Saba* in this Countrey alſo, I cannot ſee but that there ſhould be room enough in *India* for both people to dwell in. For *Abimail* another of the Sons of *Joktan* we finde more evident footſteps of him in the *Mali* or *Malli* an *Indian* people, in *Maleta* and *Muliba* two Towns of *India*, in *Malau* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally in *Malai* Colon a Promontory of *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, than in the *Manita* of *Bochartus*. For if *Abimail* ſignifie the Father of the *Mali*, as he ſaith it doth; he was more like to be the Father of the *Mali*, commonly and literally ſo called, whom we finde in *India*; than that we ſhould be forced to look for them in the *Manita*, or look for the *Manita* in the houſe of *Abimail*. If *Diela* muſt be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reaſon, than becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Countrey; I doubt not but to finde as many *Palm-trees* to plant by amongst the

the Indians, as Bochartus doth among the Arabians. And finally, if *Chatriamie*, or *Chatriamitis* an Arabian Region, have such resemblance to the name of *Chatsarmaveth*, as to take that Appellation from him, as Bochartus telleth us it did: we may conclude with equal, if not better reason, that the *Chadramatita* and *Indim* people, seated upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whose streams some of the residue, of his Brethren had their habitations, had their first Original from that *Chatsarmaveth*. For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the Ancients generally set him in the *Indies* also, not far from *Saba* and *Ophir*: two of his Brethren: to whose authority I submit, because I finde a Province in the Golden *Chersonese*, called the Kingdom of *Asa*, and thought to be so called from this very man. And I conceive the like also of the rest of the *Joktanites*, whose habitations might be found in *India*, or near *Mes* and *Se-phar*, if one would take that liberty of Criticizing, altering and transposing letters, as Bochartus doth, only to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this short Essay may inform the Reader; that Bochartus was too confident a lover of his own opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium Se-phar nemine, nec ulla posterorum Joktan in Aria aut India vestigia jam superesse*; that is to say, that there is no such place as *Se-phur*, nor any track or footstep of the Sons of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is so clearly evidenced.

These were the Generations and Dispersions of the Sons of *Sem*, contracted in a narrower compass than either the Posterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*: of whom the first, besides the great footing which he had in *Asia*, did possess all *Africa*, and the other, besides his share in the greater *Asia*, filled almost all the lesser *Asia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe* with the Isles thereof, with his fruitful Proge-ny. And first beginning with *Cham*, we finde him the Father of four sons, that is to say, *Cush*, *Mizraim*, *Phut*, and *Canaan*; of which only *Phut* the third son hath no issue assigned him. To *Cush* the eldest Son were born *Seba* and *Havilah*, and *Sabtah*, *Nimrod*, *Sabtecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Deban*. And unto *Mizraim* the second Son were born *Ludim*, and *Amamim*, *Lehabim*, *Naphubim*, *Pathrusim*, *Cophthorim*, and *Casluhim*, who was the Father of *Philistim*. Of *Canaan* and his issue we shall speak hereafter: In the mean time we will dispose of these first branches of the stock of *Cham*, beginning first with *Cush* the eldest, and so descending to the rest of this first Line. And first for *Cush*, though it be generally said both by the Greek and Jewish Writers, that he was the Father of the *Ethiopians* in the heart of *Africa*; yet upon better search he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, possessing himself of a good part of that which is called *Petrea*, and some part of *Arabia Felix*. For whereas *Zippora* the wife of *Moser*, was daughter unto *Jethro* the Priest or Prince of *Medians*, *Exod. 2. v. 16*, &c. and yet is called an *Ethiopian woman*, in the 12. of *Num. v. 1*. it must needs be, that by *Ethiopian* in the last place, must be meant an *Arabian*: for *Median* doubtless was a City of *Arabia* near unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Josephus* for the *Jewes*, *Ptolomy* for the *Gracians*, and *S. Hierome* for the *Latine Writers*. But we shall canvass this more thoroughly in its proper place: the strength of reason serving for a supplement of that one defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the name of *Cush* in any of the Cities, Promontories, Hills or Rivers of all that Countrey, by which his plant- ing there might be made more evident. *Seba*, the eldest Son of *Cush*, sets himself down on the shores of the *Red Sea*, as near his Father as he could; becoming the Original of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Sabaeans*: the so much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the best Frankincense, being their Metropolis or head City. A Nation seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsule*, sub- ject in *Salomon's* time to that famous Lady called in the old Testament from her Countrey, the Queen of *Sheba*; and in the new Testament from the situation of it, the Queen of the *South*: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable testimony.

For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the second of the Sons of *Cush*, most probable it is that he possessed him- self of that part of *Arabia*, which lay nearest unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Pison* is said to encompass, *Gen. 2. v. 21*. Some footsteps of his name remain in the *Chaulotei* of *Eratostrates*, the *Chaulasii* of *Festus Avienus*, but more plainly in the *Chavelei* of *Pliny*; being all three but one people, though thus diversly named; and all of them planted towards the *Persian Gulf*, and so to *Babylon*. On the same shore of the *Persian Gulf*, we are to look for *Sabta* the third son of *Cush*, where *Ptolomy* informs us of a City called *Saphia*, and of an Island in the same Gulf called *Saphia* also. From whence in probability some of this people might pass over into *Persia*, on the other side of the Gulf, and there give name to the *Sabtei* which by the transposition of the letter *T*. are by *Ptolomy* called the *Stabai*. That *Nimrod* the fourth Son of *Cush* did first plant him- self in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is so plain and positive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabtecha* the fifth son, I confess I can finde no track in any of the ancient Authors. For why we should admit of so great a change, as first, of *B*. into *M*, and then, of *T*. into *D*. (which could not easily be done by very careless Transcribers) and so finde *Stabecan* in *Samidace*, a City or Countrey of the *Carmanians* on the *Persian* side of the Gulf, I can see no reason: And therefore rather chuse to mingle him and his Posterity with the son of *Sabta*, and the children of his brother *Regma*, all planted on the same shore of the *Persian Gulf*. For that *Regma* (our English Bibles call him *Raama*) was settled on the banks of the Bay *Persia*, hath so good authority, that there is no dispute to be made of that: *Pto- lomy* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regama* it is called in the *Latine Translation*) by which name it occurreth in *Stephanus* also in his Book *De Urbibus*, καὶ Πύλαι αὐτῆς τῶν Περσῶν πόλιν. And *Regma*, on the *Persian Gulf*, as his words there are. And not far thence we are to look for his son *Sheba*; both being joyned together in the Book of *God*; and both there said to bulie and employ themselves in the Trade of Merchandizing; *The Merchants of Shebah and Raamah* (saith the Text) they were thy Merchants; they occupied in thy Fairs with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold, *Ezek. 27. v. 22*. So that the Nations of the *Sabaeans*, though descended

descended at the first from several parents, inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix* from one Sea to the other; as evidently appeareth by those words of *Pliny*; where he informeth us most truly, that the *Sabaens*, an Arabian people, well known for their abundance of Frankincense, ad utraque maria porrectis gentibus habitare, had spread themselves over all the Countrey, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Persia*. Finally, in the same track we find *Deban* the other son of *Regma*, and the last of all the sons of *Cush*: there being on the mouth of the *Persian Gulf* (but on the Arabian coast there- of) not only a City, but a Province called by the name of *Deban*, which both *Ortelius*, and some other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than so, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joyns him with his brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the same trade of Merchandize; *The men of Deban were thy Merchants*, chap. 27. 15. *Sheba*, and *Deban*, and the Merchants of Tarshish, cap. 38. 13. They brought thee horns of Ivory, and Ebony, saith the Prophet in the former Text.

The head of the next house of the race of *Cham*, was *Misraim*, the second son, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder brother *Cush* and his posterity, in the rich and delectable Countreys of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylonia*, or the land of *Shinar*, he went with his own sons and his brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no question amongst the Learned, though all the tracks and footsteps of *Misraim* be quite worn out: unless any thing of it were preserved in the word *Mesori*, by which the *Egyptians* antiently called the first Month in the year; or in that of *Mesre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt*, to this day: But being *Egypt* is called *Misraim* in the Hebrew Bibles, that only is sufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*, let us look after his son *Ludim*, whom he sent to people *Ethiopia*, the next Countrey to him. For that this *Ludim*, was the Father of those *Ethiopians*, many good reasons are alleged. First, from the Texts of *Esaiah*, chap. 66. 19. and *Jer. 46. 9*. where *Lud* is said to be very skillfull in drawing the Bow; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Ethiopians* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the antient Writers. Secondly, from the joyning of the children or people of *Ludim* with those of *Phul*, in the place of *Esaiah* before cited: which *Phul* may very probably be the City which the *Gracians* call *Phile*, situate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Ethiopia*, and antiently inhabited both by the *Ethiopians* and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and some others of the Antients witness. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the children of *Lud* or *Ludim*, with those of *Cush*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and those of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other side of Mount *Atlas*, both next neighbours to them; as in *Ezek. 30. ver. 5*, and that of *Jer.* above mentioned; (where our English very strangely rendereth *Ludim* by the name *Lydians*) which dwell too far off both from *Chush* and *Phut*, to be joyned together in one action. But of this, more than enough already, the Arguments being so strong, and so most demonstrative. I go on therefore to the next; only observing by the way, that the *Ethiopians* mentioned in the Texts of our English Bibles, are not these of *Africa*, but the *Chusites* of *Arabia Felix*; our Translators always rendring *Chus* by *Ethiopia*. The *Anamim*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unless they were the same with the *Anantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammantes* of *Pliny*, a people seated on the sea-side near the greater *Syris*, to which the neighbourhood of the *Lehabim* may give some countenance; who seem to be the same with the people of *Lybia*, a Province seated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenaea*, and were called *Lybiegyptii* by the old Geographers, to dis- ference them from the inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, whereof more hereafter. For the *Naphubim*, I am also at a loss, unless we find them somewhere in *Cyrenaea*; and that some remnant of the name be in *Apuchianum*, which occurs in *Ptolome*. But for the *Pathrusim*, I think no question need be made, but that they were the people of that province of *Egypt*, which in divers places of the Scrip- ture is called *Pathros*, as *Esa. 11. 11. Jer. 44. 1. Ezek. 29. 14*, and seems to be that part of *Egypt*, which is called *Thebais*, where *Ptolome* placeth *Pathyrus*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebe*. (And *Patharis* the Greek, or *Septuagint* term that, which in the Hebrew is called *Pathros*.)

Hitherto we have found the Nations which descended from the sons of *Misraim*, in *Egypt*, and the Countreys adjoining to it. And there, or thereabouts, we are to look for *Cophthorim*, and *Casluhim*, the two sons remaining. I know there hath been great pains taken to find the *Casluhim* in *Colchia*, and the *Cophthorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus*, not far from *Trabezond*; where notwithstanding there is no track of the names remaining. But this being so far off from *Egypt*, in, and near which both *Misraim* himself, and all the rest of his sons were planted; I can by no means yield to it, though to content such learned men as would fain have it so, I think it possible enough that some of the *Egypti- ans* in succeeding times, moved with the fame of that great wealth which *Colchis* was supposed to yield to some Adventurers; might leave their native soyl to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the learned *Junius*, that the *Casluhim* were first planted in the Region of *Cassotis* (not far from *Damiata*, a chief town of *Egypt*) which retains somewhat of the name; and so doth *Coptus*, an old City of *Egypt*, of the name of *Cophthorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Cophth*, which at this day is given to the Christians of *Egypt*, may not be thought to have its first rise from *Cophthorim*, rather than that they are so called quasi *Egypthii*, corruptly for *Egyptii*, I must needs say I am not satisfied. Besides, it being clear in Scripture, that the *Casluhim* and *Cophthorim* dwelt near to- gether, and that the *Philistims* are said to descend from *Casluhim*; if *Casluhim* should go for *Colchis*, and *Cophthorim* for *Cappadocia*, we must first carry them I know not how far off from the rest of their Brethren, against the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philistims* back again from *Col- chis*, to find a dwelling on the borders of the land of *Egypt*, from whence their Ancestors and Allies were so far remote. Whereas by setting these two Nations amongst the rest of their Brethren, the journey of the *Philistims* unto *Canaan*, and settling themselves in the possessions of the *Avim* (a *Canaan- itish*

nitish people) whom they had subdued, *Deut.* 2. 25. is both easie and natural. But before we follow these *Philistines* further in their new Plantation amongst the *Canaanites*, we will first see what became of *Phut*, the third son of *Cham*. And if we guide our selves in this *Labyrinth* by the clew of Antiquity, we shall find him settled West of his Brother *Misraim*, and so to the *Atlantick* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their dominions. Some Relicks of the name there were in the time of *Josephus*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Plinie* makes mention of it, also *Ptolome* takes notice of a River in those parts called *Phutib*, which comes very near it. And so doth *Isidore*, Origin. l. 2. But *St. Hierome* in my mind puts it out of doubt, whose words I shall put down, and so leave *Africa*; *Phut* *Lybia*, *aque et Mauritanie fluvius usque ad praesens Phut dicitur, omnique circa cum Africa cuius rei multi Scriptores tam Graeci quam Latini testes sunt.* Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*; and many antient Writers both *Greek* and *Latin* called to witness to it.

And now we should proceed to *Canaan* and his sons (eleven in all) being the fourth and last branch of the house of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or near the land of *Canaan*, we shall find him there; or meet with them in such Plantations and Colonies as they sent abroad, under the title of *Phenicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whose *Tents* God promised to enlarge, as indeed he did; spreading his branches over *Europe*, the lesser *Asia*, and a great part of the greater also. To him were born seven sons in all, that is to say, *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal*, *Mesech*, and *Thyras*: Of which, the Issue of two only are upon record, viz. *Aschenaz*, *Riphat*, and *Togarma*, the sons of *Gomer*; *Elisha*, *Tarshish*, *Kittim*, and *Dedanim*, the sons of *Javan*. And first for *Gomer* and his sons, the first possessed themselves of convenient dwellings in the greater, and the lesser *Asia*. *Gomer* himself first planting in the mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long retained his name; and after changing that unpleasant, and unfruitful dwellings for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeris*, in the dayes of *Plinie*, did preserve his memory. For that the posterity and people of *Gomer*, called at first *Gomerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimbri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongst the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himself in the Greater *Phrygia*, so did his eldest son *Aschenaz* in *Phrygia minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, spreading himself along upon the *Hellspont*, and those *Greekish* Seas, as far as *Bithynia*. In all which places there were left some memory of this Plantation. For in *Bithynia* there is a Bay called *Sinus Ascanius*, together with a River, and a Lake of the same name also. And in the lesser *Phrygia*, and the Country of *Troas*, there was both a City and a Province adjoining, antiently known by the name of *Ascania*; and the *Ascania Insula* also on the coast thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in honour of this *Aschenaz*, the Kings and great men of those parts, took the name of *Ascanius*. Of which name, besides *Ascanius* the son of *Aeneas*, we find a King mentioned in the second of *Homer's Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the siege of *Troy*. In the same quarters of the World we find *Riphat* also, the founder of the *Riphei*, a people dwelling in the East parts of *Bithynia*, and spreading also over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are some remnants of his name to be found amongst the Antients. For besides that *Josephus* saith expressly, that the *Paphlagonians* antiently were called *Riphei*; there is mention in *Apollonius Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebans*, which rising in *Bithynia*, emptieth it self into the *Pontus Euxinus*, near to *Paphlagonia*, of which River *Plinie* also doth inform us: and *Stephanus* doth not only acquaint us with the River it self, but tells us also of a Region on the same name, and of a people thereabouts, which are called *Rhebati*. Nor need we look much further to find out the seat of *Togarma* the third son of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joyneth with his Father as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judea*; *Gomer* and all his bands, the house of *Togarma* in the North quarters and all his bands, cap. 38. 6. So that they do not guess amiss, who place *Togarma* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Country not only bordering near to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the north of the land of *Canaan*, but very well stocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horses, as *Strabo* testifieth in the 11 Book of his *Geography*; with which commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the same Prophet tells us of them, chap. 27. 14. But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarma* dwelling must be found in *Cappadocia*; we must first know that the *Greek* Translators call him generally by the name of *Torgama*; and then, that antiently there was a people in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trocmi*, and *Tully*, *Trogmi*; by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmeni*, and *Trogmades* in the Council of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyrillus* Bishop of the *Trogmades* (*Κυρίλλος Τρογμάδων*) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the sons of *Gomer*, we will next pursue the rest of the sons of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his four sons we will keep together. And the next son of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much dispute and difference amongst our Antiquaries some making him the Father of the *Scythians*, and some of the *Goths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that such terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but such terrible Nations. And possible enough it is, that some of his posterity in succeeding times, finding their own seats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be the founders of some *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nations; but that *Magog* himself in his first Plantation, should wander so far out of the way from the rest of his brethren, when he had elbow-room enough amongst them, I cannot easily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogarcus*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Plinie*, that the City of *Carlo-Syria*, which the *Grecians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themselves called *Magog*: I shall not trouble my self to look for *Magog* any where else, than in those Countreys where they have left such evident Land-marks to discern themselves by.

But

But this we shall the better see by looking out the dwellings of his two brethren, *Mesech* and *Tubal*, who being joyned together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek* cap. 38. 2. and 39. 1. are very unlike to have their dwellings far asunder: or that they could concur in any publick Action against the *Jews*, according to the scope and purpose of the holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Mesech*, whom the Antients named *Mosch*, seated himself on the North and North-East of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and so unto the *Caspian*, or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that tract runs a ridge of Hills; which *Plinie*, *Ptolome*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moschidi*, determining *Colchis* from *Armenia*; and both from *Iberia*; and most like to be the dwelling of *Mesech* or *Mosch*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, because *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally joyn together with *Mesech*, is by most Writers said to have settled himself in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Josephus* also telling us, that antiently the *Iberi* were called *Thobelli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on some new occasion. And hereunto the constant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives some good authority, who boast of their descent from *Tubal*: which can no otherwise be granted, then as they were a Colony of these *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principal Rivers is still called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Son of *Japhet*, it is most plain by the authority of Scripture (were there no proof else) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who in the book of *Daniel*, and that of *Hester*, are represented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of those who fixt themselves in either, or in both the *Asias*; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the sonnes of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the lesser *Asia*, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous progenies. And first beginning with *Javan* as the Elder brother, most Authors make him the Original of those *Greek* Nations which pass under the general names of *Iones*; and there is very good ground for the assertion, considering that the *Greek* Translators of the Bible in stead of *Javan*, read *Iovan*, and that all those who elsewhere ordinarily are called *Iones*, are by *Homer*, one of the antientest of the *Greeks*, named *Iavoni*. Now *Javan* and *Ivan* sound so like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the same. A name not only proper to the *Athenians*, and their Colonies, (though probable enough first belonging to them of *Attica*) but comprehending the *Baotians* and *Achaens* also; yea, and extending also into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan.* 8. 21. where *Alexander* the Great, in the *Hebrew* is called King of *Javan*, which we *English* *Grecia*. Nor do we much disjoyn *Javan* from the rest of that stock, by carrying him cross the Seas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his second Plantation; And leaving him well settled in the greater *Phrygia*, and his son *Askenaz* in the lesser; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) pass over the *Hellspont*, and plant himself in *Attica*, called at first *Ionia*, saith *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus*. Or if any one notwithstanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecataeus*, that the *Iones* came out of *Asia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpose) I shall not much contend against that opinion; so it be also granted on the other side, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the shores of *Asia*, passed over into *Greece*, as a land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Elisha* his eldest son, the Father of the *Eliens*, or *Elians*, on the *Asian* side, as *Josephus* hath it; and the founder of *Elis* in *Peloponnesus*, and planter of the *Grecian* Isles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, 27. 7. are called the Isles of *Elisha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Isles of *Greece*, which by the Prophet is affirmed of the Isles of *Elisha*; namely, that the inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blew* and *Purple*: in which some of the *Grecian* Isles were such excellent Artizans, that *Carparchus* had the name of *Porphyri*, and *Cithera* was called *Porphyriana*; only from the abundance of *Purple*, which they had amongst them. Not to say any thing of *Cos*, *Nisyros*, and *Gyarus*, and some other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors for that commodity.

A shorter journey, but withall a far shorter Territory fell to the lot of *Tarshish* the second son; whom *Javan* when he travelled further upon new discoveries, left settled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the lesser *Asia*; where either he, or some of his Posterity, in honour of him, built the City of *Tarsus*, the principal City of that Province. For that *Tarshish* in those early dayes should go into *Spain*, and there build *Tartessus*, I take to be a strange (if not idle) Romance; that Town being built by the *Phenicians*, many ages after, without relation unto *Tarshish*, or his memory either. What Voyages or Plantations those of *Cilicia* or *Tarsh* made in times succeeding, as I nowhere finde, so it is not material to my present purpose; which principally is to settle the sons of *Noah* in their first habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim* the third son of *Javan*, whom *Josephus* settleth first in the Isle of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Cittium*, the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, thence surnamed *Knidus*. *Josephus* is herein followed by *St. Hierome* in his Notes on *Genesis*, in whose time (as *Plinie* telleth us in his comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Cittium* was still standing; so do *Eusebii* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* sets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. After that (saith the Author) *Alexander* the son of *Philip*, went forth of the land of *Cherthim*, and slew *Darius* King of the *Perians* and *Medes*, cap. 1. v. 1. And after in the 8. Chapter of the same Book, verse 5. *Perseus* King of *Macedon* is called King of the *Cittians*. But this doth no way contradict that of his first planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reason of the neighbourhood of his brother *Tarshish* (*Cilicia* and the City of *Tarsus* lying near unto it;) But finding in time that Island to be either too barren, or too small for his people; and that the other parts both of *Greece* and *Asia* were taken up already by the first Adventurers, he might finally fix himself, or some of his posterity, in *Macedonia*, as a spare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he or any of his sons planted first in *Italia*, which I see *Bochartus* would fain have, were against the method of Plantations; and he must give them wings to

C 2

By

fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the use of shipping, or not accustomed at least to make long voyages. But that in course of time, as the World grew fuller, and that Greece was not able to contain its multitudes, some of the race of *Cittim* might pass over into Italy, the passage thither from some of the Ports of Greece being short and easie, I am apt enough to believe, and in its proper place shall declare my self for it. Nor can I otherwise agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom against all right and reason he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Countrey, to be named of him; whom the Greeks, mistaking the letter *D* for that of *R* (as indeed the letters are so like, that one may very easily be mistook for the other) most commonly prefer unto us by the name of *Rhodanim*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to settle *Rhodanim* for a while in the Isle of *Rhodes*, lying so near the dwellings of his other brethren; till wanting room for the increase of his posterity in so small an Island, he might coast along the shores of *Peloponnesus*, and fix himself finally in *Epirus* by his brother *Elisha*; where in the Province of the *Molossians*, we shall find a City called *Dodona*, without any such mistake or change of letters, as before is mentioned. For that the three furthest parts of *Europe* in respect of Asia, should be planted all at once by these sons of *Javan*, is so incredible an imagination, that he must have a very strong fancy, or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally as for *Thyras* the last son of *Japhet*, having accompanied his brother *Javan* to the shores of *Asia*, and seeing him passed over the seas to Greece, he took the opportunity of the next strait or *Fretum* (since called *Thracius Bosphorus*) and fixed himself in *Thrace*, which Country he gave name unto, as most Writers testify. Nor want there such apparent footsteps of the name of *Thyras*, besides the name of *Thracia* (as some spell the word) which may add good authority to this general testimony; there being both a River and an Haven-town not far from *Bizantium*, which *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Mela* call *Athyras*; a River and Town called *Tyras* in the Province of *Moesia*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof most of all the old Geographers have taken notice; and finally the *Thracians* calling their God *Mars*, by the name of *Thyras*. Not to say any thing of *Teremus*, *Therops*, and some others of the Kings of *Thrace*; whose names come very near unto that of *Thyras*, as the first founder of their Nation.

Thus have we seen the several Generations and Dispersions of the Sons of *Noah*, so far forth as their names are registred in holy Scripture: these being the Heads and Leaders of those several Tribes which joyned together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards dispersed themselves, as before was shewn. But that no more than these (I mean Heads of Families) descended in so long a time from the loyns of *Noah*; that they should have towards the new peopling of the world, in an hundred years (for so long it must be at least from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more than sixteen sons in all; and ten of those sixteen go childless also to the grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the people which were born since the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by inspiration; or being met, would joyn together in a work of so little profit; or that if *Noah* or *Sem* had been there amongst them, they would not have dissuaded them from that foolish enterprise. And therefore I should rather be of their opinion, which think that *Noah* fixed himself in those parts, which lay nearest to the place where the Ark took land: and having planted as far Eastward as he thought convenient, sent out the surplusage of his people under the Conduct of one or more of these Undertakers; directing them perhaps to the land of *Shinaar*, where himself had dwelt before the Flood. Where being come, and destitute of graver and more sober counsels, they fell upon that vain attempt which became their ruine; and made them scatter and disperse themselves into so many Companies. For in my mind Sir *Walt. Raleigh* pleads the point exceeding strongly, that it must needs be that *Noah* was settled in the East, and had well peopled all those parts which lay nearest to him, before he sent his Troop abroad upon new discoveries. For being it is expressly said in holy Scripture, that as they went from the East, they found a plain in the Land of *Shinaar*; it must needs follow without controverlie, that they came from the East Countreys into *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, and not from any part of *Armenia* (as the Vulgar opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countreys whence they came were not left utterly desolate upon this remove, but very sufficiently provided both of men and Cities, appeareth by those huge Armies which *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*, and *Stanrobates* a King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the field. Of whom the first being invaded by *Ninus* the Assyrian Monarch, encountered him with an Army of 400000. fighting men; the other on the like occasion out-vied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did consist, as we read in *Diodorus Siculus*, of three millions and a half of men, besides 10000. armed Waggons; whereof if we believe but the third part, it may serve to prove that the East must needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For considering that *Ninus* the husband of *Semiramis* was but the third in descent from *Nimrod*, (that is to say, the son of *Belus*, the son of *Nimrod*) it had been a most impossible thing that such a vast increase should be made only out of Colonies in so short a time, as needs must be between the planting of the Countreys before specified, and these two great actions, unless God raised them out of stones, or by some such miracle, to abate the pride of these Usurpers over other Nations. Without a miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wise man would expect to find) it is I say, a thing impossible that *Stanrobates* should exceed *Semiramis* in number of men, as *Diodorus* saith he did; he being but a Casting of a second Swarm, and the great Commanders of that part of the world from whence he came upon a second or a third Plantation. Add unto this, that those who have recorded the Acts of *Alexander* the great, assure us that he found more Cities, and sumptuosities in that little Kingdom of *Perus*, which lay side by side to the East of the River *Indus*, than in all his other travells and undertakings: And this may serve in stead of a further evidence, that the East Countreys were

not

not planted after this dispersion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under forms of Government, as soon as any in the World. Nor know I else where to find either *Noah* himself, or *Sem* and *Japhet*, unless they staid behind with their Father *Noah*, or were disposed of by themselves in their several quarters: there being none of those, though most diligent men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this dispersion, that either speak of any Nations planted by them, or of their settling in the Colonies of any one of their descendants. Which is to me a very strong Argument that they came not with the rest to the Plains of *Shinaar*, but tarried still in those habitations wherein God had placed them.

Against this I can see but two Objections of any moment; one from the Text, the other from an old Tradition amongst the Jews. That from the Text is gathered from those words of *Mose*, where having made his Catalogue of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, he adds, And by these were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood, Gen. 10. v. ult. But these words, as I take it, do relate only unto that division which was made upon occasion of the confusion of Languages, when they were forced to give over their works, and for themselves into several Companies; and not to such Plantations as were made before: who being all of one tongue, though in divers dwellings, could not be looked upon as several and divided Nations. For the Tradition of the Jews, 'tis this, that from the beginning of the world to the building of *Babel*, that language which in after-times was called the *Hebrew*, was the common language of Mankind; and that it did continue uncorrupt in the house of *Eber*, (whence it had the name) because he joyned not with the rest in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may possibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-spring of *Noah*, which came not with the rest to the Plains of *Shinaar*, and consequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curse of confounded Languages, but must needs speak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as those descended of the loyns of *Eber*. But against this Tradition, and the consequences of it, there are some things to be objected. For first it is but a Tradition, and therefore of no sure foundation to build upon. And secondly it is such a Tradition as holds no good coherence with the truth of Story; it being a most clear and demonstrative truth, that the *Hebrew* Tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Mesopotamia*, but that which he found spoken in the land of *Canaan* at his coming thither, to which both he and his Posterity did conform themselves. Or had it been the Language of *Eber*, as they say it was, (but most undoubtedly was not) yet, thirdly, had this been a privilege conferred on *Eber*, that he and his Posterity should speak the Original Language without alteration or corruption, it must have been extended to all those of the house of *Jokan* which descended from him; as also to the house of *Luban* in *Padan Aram*, and to the *Moabites* and the *Ammonites* as the seed of *Lut*; and finally to the *Ismaelites* and *Idumians*, descended of *Abraham* and *Esau*; and not be limited and confined only to the house of *Jacob*. Either all these must be partakers of so great a privilege, because their Father *Eber* had obtained it for himself and his; or else it was not such a privilege, or given so universally and incommunicably to the house of *Eber*, as they say it was. So the Tradition falls to ground as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that those who staid behinde with *Noah* spake the same Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the *Hebrew*, or what else soever it was) I see no reason to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into several Languages or Dialects of the same one Language, by the commerce and intercourse which they had with Nations of a different speech; as well as those of *Judah* in so short a time as the Captivity of *Babylon*, had lost the purity of that Language which they so much brag of; and could not understand their own Bibles at their coming home, but by an Interpreter. Of which see *Nehem.* c. 8. v. 7, 8.

But to proceed: On this dispersion of the Families of the sons of *Noah*, it came to pass, that though they all descended from one common Root, yet by the situations of their several dwellings, they came to be of several tempers and affections; in which they were so different from one another, that it might seem they had been made at first out of several Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Dn Barias*.

O see how full of wonders strange is Nature,
Sith in each Climate, not alone in stature,
Strength, colour, hair; but that men differ do
Both in their humors, and their manners too.
The Northern man is fair, the Southern foul;
That's white, this black, that smiles, and this doth scowl.
Th' ones blithe and frolick, th' other dull and froward;
Th' ones full of courage, th' other a fearfull coward, &c.

The ground or reason of which difference is to be attributed to the different tempers of those Countries in which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on those several Countries, which do continue still the same, though many times the Countries do shift and change their old inhabitants. *Hinc illa ab antiquo vitia, & patria sorte durante, quae totas in historia gentes antecendentem aut notant, saith a Modern, but judicious Author.* Two or three evidences of this truth will make it clear and evident to a practical judgement, which otherwise might appear obscure in the search of causes. *Florus* hath told us of the Gauls, *Primum eorum impetum esse majorem quam virorum, secundum minorem quam faminarum.* Which is the same which *Rob. Dallington* hath told us of the Modern French, That he begins an action like thunder, and ends it in a smother. *Us sunt Gallorum subitua ingenia,*

ingenia, saith *Cæsar* of the ancient *Gauls*: and I believe the present *French* are altogether as rash and barebraind, as the other were. *Gallia facunda Confidit* was part of the Character of the *Gauls* in the time of *Juvenal*; and it is told us of the *French* by some late Observers, that there are commonly more Law-trials amongst them in one year, than have been in *England* since the Conquest. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholly rooted out of the Country, the severall Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britons*, *Normans*, and *Goths* being in possession of their severall dwellings. Thus also it is said by *Tacitus* of the ancient *Germani*, *Dum barbarie continetur potando, nihil oporitur*; that it was no disgrace to any, to spend the whole day and night in drinking: and more than so, *De jungendis affinitatibus, de bello denique & pace in curiosis conspectibus*, that they consulted over their Cups of their weighty business. Since which time through all *Germany* hath shifted almost all her old inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Swedes*, *Italians*, *Thuringians*, *Danish*, *Saxons*, *Huns*, *Saxons*, and other Nations; yet still those ill customs are as much in use amongst them, as ever formerly. To go a little further off; the old Philosophers *Apocbar* & *scellus* of the ancient *Grecians*, that at the beginning of their Feasts they used little *Koblets*, and *Drinks* in *honour* of *them*, and greater towards the end, when they were almost drunken to which custom still remains amongst them, as *G. Sandys* observeth, notwithstanding the great length of time; and all the other changes of State and people, which have happened since. I shall not speak here of the effeminateness of the *Africans*, or the cruelty or implacableness of the *African* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithstanding the great and numerous Plantations on the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, successively, and respectively, in these severall Countreys. And therefore I conclude this point in these words of *Burley*, *Hæret itaque in omni gente vis quedam inconcessa, qua hominibus pro conditione terrarum in quibus nasci contigerit sua fata dividit*.

Nor is this all the consequence of this dispersion of the Families of the *sonnes* of *Noah*; the separation of their persons producing, first, an alteration of affections; and that engendering natural animosities; which seconded by their severall interesses and Reasons of State, hath left almost no people without some such enemy which doth particularly and perversely cross them in all their Counsels. Concerning which, take here the Observation of that notable Statesman and Historian, *Philip de Comines*; which though it be with reference to the *Meridian* of his own time only, yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages, "In rebus humanis ita comparaturum est; ut nullus ferat se populum quem non amulus aliquis exerceat &c. It is (saith he) so ordered in the State of humane affairs; that there is almost no Nation without a more particular Enemy. The *English* hate enemies to the *French*, the *Scots* to the *English*; the *Portuguese* have the like inveterate hatred against the *Spaniards*. The *Princes of Italy* enjoy great possessions without any good title; but are continually opposed by the more potent Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Lucca*. The *Arrogant* Kings of *Naples*, have found perpetual Enemies of the Dukes of *Anjou*; as have the Dukes of *Milaine*, of the house of *Orleans*. The *Princes of Italy*, and the *Florentines*, have a stitch at *Venice*; as the States of *Genoa*, and *Sienna*, have against the *Florentines*. In *Germany* the animosities have been great and of long continuance, between the houses of *Austria*, and *Buraria*; the hatred grown beyond all hopes of reconciliation which is between the *Switzers*, and the *Austrian* Family. The Dukes of *Cleves*, and *Gulick*, are always upon ill terms with their neighbours of *Golderland*: and in the North, the Cities on the *Baltick* Seas have their continual quarrels with the Kings of *Denmark*. Nor are the enmities any thing less, if they be not greater, which are discernible amongst the people of *Asia* and *Africa*, than those that are above remembred. So far and to this purpose saith that notable and judicious Writer.

The consideration of which points, if there were no other, were of it self sufficient to shew the necessary use of *History* and *Geography*, as well for the understanding the affairs of the Ages past, as for commerce and correspondency with the Nations present. For had no *Histories* been written in the former times, in what dull ignorance had we lived of all those occurrences which do so much concern the wholestate of Mankind, and are our principall directors in life and action? in which respect the Orator most truly calleth it, *Magistram vite*. For upon the credit of this *History*, the examples of our Ancestors, the grounds of civil prudence, and the fames of men do most especially depend. And certainly to draw back the mind to the contemplation of matters long ago passed; to search out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expression, such things as are found out on a diligent search; to represent unto our eyes the changes of times, the characters of Persons, the uncertainties of Counsels, and the Conveyances of Actions, the subtilties of Pretensions, and the secrets of State; must of necessity be a work of as publique use, as it is of great both pains and judgement. Besides, it gives a kind of eternity to all such men, who by their Counsels or Achievements have deserved nobly of those Kingdoms, and Common-wealths, wherein they lived. And thereupon the Orator doth not only call it *Magistram vite*, but *Lucem veritatis*, *Testem temporis*, *Nuntium vestrae*, & *Vite memoriam*. According to which character, I find these Verses set before a Chronicle of some Kings of *England* (more worth than all the Book besides;)

For though in these dayes Miracles be fled,
Yet this skull of good Histories be fed,
They call back time that's past, and give life to the dead.

Nor want there other motives to endear unto us the use of *History*, besides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding times; and the eternity (if I may say so) which it conferreth

on

on the *Actions* themselves, by the preservation of their names from the ruines of time, and the pit of Oblivion. For first, it stirreth men to Vertue, and deters them from Vice, by shewing forth the glorious memories of vertuous men, and the ill favour which is left behind men of ungodly life; and especially keeps persons of most eminent place from letting loose the reins unto all licentiousness, by representing this to their consideration, that all their actions shall be laid open one day to the view of the *Vulgar*. Secondly, it hath been a principal Conservator of most Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of so many of the old Philosophers; out of which a perfect body of *Philosophy*, and others of the *Liberal* Arts hath been collected and digested. Thirdly, it is the best School-master in the Art of War and teacher of *Stratagems*; and in that respect affordeth more punctual directions, than can be otherwise obtained; and with all this best Assistant to the Statesman or Politician, who from hence draw their Observations and Conclusions; and become thereby serviceable to their Prince and Country, though never travelled more than amongst their Books. So *Achilles* in his study, and *Dionysius* in his Orators Gownd endangered more the enemies of their severall Countreys, than the *Athenians*, or *Syraculans*, did by dint of sword. And last of all, besides these civil benefits and considerations, and the great help which it affords in the way of discipline, there is no particular branch of Knowledge more useful for the rude and perfect understanding of Holy Scripture, than that of Ecclesiastical and Profane History; or which gives clearer light to many dark passages thereof, especially in the Propheticall writings of either Testament. This, as it shewes the necessary use and benefit which redounds from *History*, so doth it serve to stir in that commendation which belongs to the study of *Geography* also; without some knowledge wherein, the study of *History* is neither so pleasant, nor so profitable; as a judicious Reader would desire to have it. 'Tis true, *Geography* without *History* hath life and motion, but very unstable and at random; but *History* without *Geography*, like dead carcasses, hath neither life, nor motion at all, or moves at least but slowly on the understanding. For what delight or satisfaction can any man receive from the reading of Story, without the know somewhat of the places, and the conditions of the people, which are therein mentioned? In which regard *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Historian, hath deserved very well of all his Readers; premising to the Actions of every Countrey, some brief description of the place, and chief Towns therein. For though the greatness of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place, which adds delight and satisfaction unto the reading of the Story, which conveys it to us. *History* therefore and *Geography*, like the two Lovers of *Marcellus* which Philosophers call *Euphrates* and *Pollux*, if joyned together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threaten both with a certain shipwreck; and are like two Sisters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almost said impiety) to be kept asunder. So as that which *Sir Philip Sidney* said of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

Her being was in him alone,
And she not being, he was none;

may be as justly said of *History* and *Geography*, as of those two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the study of *Geography*, which is exceeding useful to the reading of the Holy Scriptures, as in discovering the situation of *Paradise*, the bounds and borders of those Countreys which are therein mentioned; especially with relation to the travels of the *Plantarachs*, *Prophets*, *Evangelists*, and *Apostles*; yea of *Christ* himself; not otherwise to be comprehended and understood, but by the help of *Geographical* Tables and descriptions. Besides this, it is useful to most sorts of men, as to *Astronomers*, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in several Countreys; their several influences and aspects, their rising and setting, according to different *Horizons*. Secondly, to *Physicians*, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of mens bodies, according to the Climes they live in; the nature and growth of many *Simple* and *Medicinal* Druggs, whereof every Countrey under Heaven hath some more natural and proper to it self, than to any others. Thirdly, to *States-men*, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and disposition of those people with whom they are to negotiate; the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms, and the Neighbouring Countreys, with the extent of their respective Dominions by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which, there would be a perpetual Seminary of wars and discord. Fourthly, to *Merchants*, *Mariners*, and *Souldiers*, the several Professors of which kinds of life, finde nothing more necessary for them in their several callings, than a competent knowledge in *Geography*, which presents to them many notable advantages, both for their profit and contentment. Finally, by the study of *Geography*, a man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far less danger and expence, acquaint himself with the particular descriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns and Castles, with all things considerable in the same, together with the customs, manners, and dispositions of all Forain Nations; and that too in as full a manner, as if he had survey'd the one, and observed the other, by a personal visit of the places represented to him.

Such is the necessary use which men of ingenious Studies, and Professions, do and may make of *History* and *Geography*, in the course of their callings and employments. And there are some things also necessary to the knowledge of each, that we may study them with the greater benefit and contentment. To *History* it is only requisite that it be defined, distinguished from such writings as do seem to challenge the name of *History*; and that somewhat be premised of those several *Epoques*, from which all people do begin their computations. But to *Geography* it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate those Terms, or second *Notions*, which are not obvious to the under-

under-

As concerning the situation of Islands, whether commodious or not, this is my judgement. I finde in *Machiavel*, that for a City whose people covet no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; because in such seats they are compelled to work and labour, by which they are freed from idleness, and by consequence from riotousness: But for a City whose inhabitants desire to enlarge their confines, a fertile place was rather to be chosen than a sterile, as being more able to nourish multitudes of people. The like I say of Islands. If a Prince desire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Island; as being by it self and nature sufficiently defensible. But if a King be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Island is no fit seat for him; because partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longfomness of the waies, he is not so well able to supply and keep such forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the most puissant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the causes above mentioned, cannot shew any of her winnings on the firm land, though she hath attempted and achieved as many glorious exploits, as any Country in the World.

The Continent and Island are sub-divided into $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Peninsula.} \\ \text{Isthmus.} \\ \text{Promontorium.} \end{array} \right.$

Peninsula, quasi pene *Insula*, is a tract of land, which being almost encompassed round by water, is joyned to the firm land by some little *Isthmus*; as *Peloponnesus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*. *Isthmus* is that narrow neck of land, which joyneth the *Peninsula* to the Continent; as the Straights of *Dariene* in *America*, and of *Corinth* in *Greece*.

Promontorium, is a high mountain which shooteth it self into the Sea, the outmost end of which is called a *Foreland*, or *Cape*; as the *Cape of Good Hope* in *Africk*, *Cape Comari* in *India*, &c.

The *Imaginary* parts of the Earth are such which not being at all in the Earth, must yet be supposed to be so, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, answerable to them in Heaven, in name.

These Circles are either the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Greater,} \\ \text{Lesser,} \end{array} \right.$ in both which there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater then those in the lesser; and every Degree in the greater is 60 miles.

The greater Circles are either $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Immutable, as the } \textit{Equator.} \\ \text{Mutable, as the } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Horizon.} \\ \textit{Meridian.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

The *Equator* is a great Circle going round about the Terrestrial Globe from East to West. It passeth through *Habassia*, *Sumatra*, *Gulana*, &c. The use of it is to shew the *Latitude* of any Town, *Promontory*, &c. Now the *Latitude* is the distance of a place South or North from the *Equator*, or middle of the World; and must be measured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a man liveth; but the chief and first *Meridian* passeth through the Island *St. Michael*, one of the *Azores*. The use of it is to shew the *Longitude* of any place. Now the *Longitude* of a City, *Cape*, &c. is the Distance of it East and West from the first *Meridian*, and is usually measured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Equator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, designing so great a space of the earth, as a quick sight can ken in an open field. The use of it is to discern the divers risings and settings of the Stars.

The lesser Circles either are $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Noted with} \\ \text{some name, as } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Tropical of } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Cancer.} \\ \text{Capricorn.} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{Polar, either } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Arctic.} \\ \text{Antarctic.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right. \\ \text{Noted with no distinct name, and are the } \textit{Parallels.} \end{array} \right.$

The *Tropick of Cancer* (so called of the celestial sign *Cancer*) is distant from the *Equinoctial* 23. Degrees Northward, and passeth through *Barbary*, *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hispania*.

The *Tropick of Capricorn*, equally distant from the *Equator* Southward, passeth through *Ethiopia inferior*, and the midst of *Peruana*. And this is to be observed in these *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropick of Cancer*, our dayes are at the longest; and when he is gone back to the *Tropick of Capricorn*, the dayes are at the shortest. The first they call the Summer, the last they call the Winter Solstice; the first happening on, or about *St. Barnabys* day in *June*; the last on, or about *St. Lucies* day in *December*.

The *Arctic* Circle (so called for that it is correspondent to the Constellation in Heaven called the *Bear*, in Greek *Arctos*) is distant from the *Tropick of Cancer* 45 Degrees, and passeth through *Norway*, *Muscovy*, *Tartary*, &c.

The *Antarctic* (so called because opposite to the other) is as much distant from the *Tropick of Capricorn*, and passeth through *Terra Australis Incognita*. The use of these four Circles is to describe the *Zones*.

The

The *Zones* are spaces of earth included betwixt two of the lesser nominate Circles. They are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Turrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually scorched with the presence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are situate between the two *Polar* Circles, and the very *Poles*, continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two temperate *Zones*, are betwixt the *Tropick of Cancer*, and the *Arctic*; and 'twixt the *Tropick of Capricorn*, and the *Antarctic* Circles; enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; so that the parts next the *Turrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

These five *Zones* are disposed according to the order of the *Zones* in heaven; of which thus *Ovid Metamorph. l.*

Utque duae dextra calum, totidemq; sinistra
Parte secant Zonae, quinta est ardentior illis;
Sic omnis inclusum numero distinxit eodem
Cura dei, totidemq; plaga tellure premuntur.
Quarum quae media est, non est habitabilis astra;
Nix tegit alta duas: totidem inter utramq; locavit,
Temperiemq; dedit, mista cum Frigore Flamma.

And as two *Zones* do cut the Heavens right-side,
And likewise other two the left divide,
The midst in heat excelling all the rest;
Even so it seem'd to the Creator best,
That this our World should so divided be,
That with the Heavens in *Zones* it might agree.
The midst in heat; the outwardmost excell
In Snow and Ice, scarce fit for men to dwell.
Betwixt these two extremes, two more are fixt,
Where heat with cold indifferently is mixt.

Parallels, called also *Aequidistants*, circle the Earth from East to West, and are commonly ten Degrees asunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are set down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another sort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Climate*. These are called *Artificial* *Parallels*, because they shew the difference of the *Artificial* daies; and are of an unequal breadth, as we shall see in the Table following. The use of these lesser *Parallels* is to shew the *Climates*.

Now a *Climate*, or *Climata*, is a space of the Earth contained betwixt three *Parallels*, the middlemost whereof divideth it into two equal parts; serving for setting out the length and shortness of the dayes in every Countrey. For under the *Equator* the dayes are of the just length of 12 hours; but afterwards they increase the length of half an hour for every *Climate*, till they come to the length of 24 hours, without night at all; which length attained, they increase no more by hours, but by weeks and moneths, till they come to the length of half a year. So that we are to reckon 24 *Climes* Northward, and as many Southward: Those Northward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle *Parallel* of the *Climate* doth pass; as *Dia Mauros*, *Dia Syenes*, &c. Those on the South by the same names, with the condition of *Anti*, as *Anti-Dia-Syenes*, *Anti-Dia-Mauros*, &c. 'Tis true, the ancient *Cosmographers* made but seven *Climes* in all; at the most but nine; Nor needed they to add more, as the cause stood with them; the extent of the habitable World towards each of the *Poles*, not being so fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, because those *Climes* are not of equal breadth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard it impossible to describe them under any Rule; I have thought fit to add this ensuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the works of *John de Sacro Bosco*, and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of the use of the Globes*. The whole divided into 7 Columns. In the first whereof is shewed what *Climes* are inhabited by the *Amphibiscii*, *Periscii*, and *Heteroscii*, which termes we shall anon expound; in the second is set down the number of the *Climes* themselves; In the third the number of the *Parallels*; In the fourth the length of the dayes in Summer; In the fifth the distance of every *Climate* and *Parallel* from the *Equator*; in the seventh the name of the Town or place, through which the middlemost of the three *Parallels* doth pass in this manner following.

Here

And first *Oceanus*, the *Ocean*, is that general Collection of all waters, which encompasseth the Earth on every side. A point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laugh't at by *Herodotus* in the former times; who counted it a grosse absurdity for any man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or encompassed about with the main *Ocean*. But modern Navigations have found that to be true, which he held ridiculous; and which the most learned in those times knew rather by conjecture, than by demonstration. Nor were those Ages so acquainted with those ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all those other Seas and Rivers which have intercourse with it, as the meanest Sailor at the present. The natural causes of the which seeming so full of difficulty to the best of the Antients, Experience hath taught us to ascribe wholly to the *Moon*; at whose *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever highest, and the Sea most furious. For as soon as the *Moon* cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to swell, and floweth towards the East, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her company) till she come unto the height of our *Meridian*: after which till her setting or Western fall, the Sea abateth or decreaseth; which we call the *Ebb*. And when the passeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*, the *Ocean* begins to swell till the height of *Midnight*, and coming towards our *Hemisphere* doth again abate. In brief, from the *New Moon*, till the first quarter the Sea decreaseth, from the first quarter to the *full* it is said to *spring*: from the *full* to the last quarter it is said to *nepe*; and from the last quarter to the *prime* it springs again. As for the uncertainty of the *Tides*, varying every day, it is not so perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof, know well when to look for it; the next day's Tide coming for the most part, one hour to minutes after the time it hapned on the day fore-going.

2. *Mare*, the *Sea*, is a part of the main *Ocean*, to which we cannot come but through some *Fretum* or *Straight*; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, First, either from the adjacent shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coast of *Tuscanie*; Or, Secondly, from the first Discoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus*, who first found it; Or, Thirdly, from some remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus*, the son of *Dadalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Straight* is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into some Sea, or out of some Sea into the *Ocean*; as the *Straight of Hellespont*, *Gibraltar*, *Fretum Davies*, &c.

Sinus, a *Creek* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling shore, wherewith it is almost environed; as *Sinus Persicus*, *Corinthiacus*, &c. and this is sometimes called a *Gulf*, as the *Gulf of Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great body or collection of waters, which hath no visible intercourse with the Sea, or influx into it; as the *Lake of Thrasymene* in *Italy*, the *Lacus Asphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea* in the Land of *Canaan*. And of this kinde properly is the *Mare Caspium*, though by reason of the greatness of it, it is called a *Sea*.

6. *Flumina*, or *Fluvium*, is a watercourse continually running, whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a standing Pool, issuing from some Spring or Lake, and emptying it self into some part of the Sea or some other great River; the mouth or out-let of which is called *Ofium*: *Tiberinag*; *longe Ofia*, as the Poet hath it. These are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual sustentance from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or *Chasms* of the Earth, and congealed by the extreme cold of that Element, dissolves into water (as we see the Air in winter-nights to be melted into a pearly dew, sticking on our glasse-windows): and being grown to some quantity, will (like *Animal* in the *Alpes*) either finde a way, or make a way, to vent its superfluity. Which beginning is seconded by the *Ocean*, which running through the hidden passages of the Earth, joyneth it self with this aerial vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it self of a salt and brackish favour, yet) passing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleasantness; and by how much the spring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by so much usually are their waters affected with a delightful relish. Rivers having thus entred themselves into a good course, are never without the assistance of neighbouring springs and waters; by whose addition they augment their streams, till they dischannel, themselves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble use. First, that out of them drink may be afforded to man and beast; Secondly, that running through the Earth, as blood through the body, by interlacing it, and sometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce those fruits which are necessary for the life of man. The last use of Rivers, is, easiness and speediness of conduct; and hereto are required four conditions. First the *depth*, because deep waters sustain the bigger burdens, and on them navigation is more safe. Secondly, *pleasantness*, whereby the passage is easie both with the stream and against it: whereas in Rivers of a violent current, or such as fall down by great locks or *Cataracts*, the sayling or rowing up the water is as dangerous, as laborious. Thirdly, the *thickness* of the water; for by how much the more slimy and gross a water is, by so much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for navigation, by reason of its fatness, than the pure and thin waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, the *broadness* of the channel, that ships and other vessels may conveniently winde and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philosophers* reputed this conduct so dangerous, that one of them being asked whether he thought the living or the dead were the greater number, would not declare himself, because he knew not in which rank to place such as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that men never committed greater folly in their lives, than in venturing to go by water, when they might have gone by land. I am none of that Sect; yet I cannot but hold with him that said, *Dulcissima est ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio iuxta terram*.

The chief Rivers of *Europe*, are *Danubius* and the *Rhene*; of *Africa*, *Nilus*, and *Niger*; of *Asia*, *Ganges*,

Ganges, and Euphrates; of America, Orenoque, and Maragnan. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over these particulars both of *Earth* and *Water*, which are considerable in *Geographie*, and come within the compass of those *Annexaries* of each, which *Ptolomy* calleth *ἡ κορυφαία*: And having so done, may discover where the difference lieth between *Geographie* and *Chorographie*, which to some men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, seem to be the same. For howsoever a *Chorographer* doth describe a Countrey by the bounds, rivers, hills, and most notable Cities; yet it is still but the description of some place or Countrey, and not of the whole *Earth* universally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorographie* differeth from *Geographie* as a part from the whole: that being as *Ptolomy* doth very handsomely express it, like the painting of an eye or an ear, or some other member; this, as the picturing of the head, or whole body of Man. But *Geographie* in its full latitude comprehendeth not *Chorographie* only, but *Topographie* and *Hydrographie* also. Of these the last is the delineation of the Sea by its several names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks and other affections; as also of great Lakes and Rivers: which is most necessary for the use of *Mariners*, and is best done by *Petrus de Medina*, *Peter Nonnius* in his *Regule Artis Navigandi*, and *Johannes Amigatus* in his *Speculum Nauticum*; the chief writers in the Art of *Pilots*.

2. *Topographie* is the description of some particular place or City; of which kind was the Book of *Stephanus de Asia*, or *Urbibus*, among the Antients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Brutius* in their later times; *Stow's* Book of the Survey of London, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and such as these. And of this kinde is the description of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and those of the *Elysian* fields, the gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Hesperides* in the antient Poets.

3. *Chorographie* (as before was said) is the exact description of some Kingdome, Countrey, or particular Province of the same; unless this last may fall more properly under the notion of *Topographie*. Of this kinde the description of the several estates of *Greece* written by *Pausanias*, is of most use and reputation of all the Antients: as that of *Camden* *Clarenceux*, for the Isle of *Britain*; of *Lewis* *Guicciardine*, for the Low-Countreys; *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongst the Moderns.

4. *Geographie*, finally is an aggregate of all these together, borrowing from *Hydrographie* the description of Seas and Waters; from *Topographie*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular places; and from *Chorographie*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces, and Kingdomes, which brought into a body, make up that Portraiture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every considerable part thereof, in writing; which, according to *Ptolomies* definition before mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geographie*. In the advancement of which studies, those which have took most pains, with the greatest benefit to Posterity, are the said *Ptolomie*, *Plinie*, and *Strabo* for the elder times; *Mercator*, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius*, for the later Ages. Of which the two first lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the Roman Emperour, Anno Chr. 141. or thereabouts; the other in the reign of *Tiberius Cesar*, the unworthy Successor of *Augustus*: the three last flourishing in the daies of our Fathers, about some 80. years ago.

Thus have I briefly summed up those general *Præcognita*, which I conceive are necessary to the knowledge and understanding as well of *Historie* as of *Geographie*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariseth that universal Comprehension of *Natural* and *Civil* story, which by a proper and distinct name may be termed *Cosmographie*. And this may well be reckoned amongst mixed stories; for it hath from *Natural History* or *Geographie*, the Regions themselves, together with their Sites, and several Commodities; from *Civil History*, Habitations, Governments, and Manners; and from the *Mathematicks*, the *Climates* and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coasts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the Utility and excellency of which study I need say no more, than what hath been already spoken of the several parts, whereof this is only the Result: desiring pardon of the Reader, that I have Christened these imperfect and unworthy Papers by so noble a name; which I desire they may deserve, though I fear they will not. However I will give the venture, and make as speedy and as profitable a discovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the most observable things therein; according to the best light which the reading of *Histories* and *Geographical* discourses hath supplied me with; beseeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him seems best, to bless me in the undertaking; and furnish me with fit Abilities both of strength and judgment to go through with it. *Ipse enim est qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*; as the Scripture hath it: And so on in God's name.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The First Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE

AND

HISTORIE

OF

ITALIE, the ALPINE Provinces, FRANCE,
SPAIN, and BRITAIN; with the
ISLES thereof.

By PETER HERLYN.

Florus in Proœm. l. 1.

Populus Romanus à Rege Romulo ad Cæsarem Augustum ita latè per orbem
terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non unius Populi, sed generis
humani facta discant.

Velleius Patercul. Hist.

Quemadmodum Urbium Imperiorumque, ita & Gentium nunc floret fortuna,
nunc senescit, nunc interit.



LONDON,

Printed for A. S. over against St. Dunstons Church in Fleetstreet.
M. DC. LXV.





COSMOGRAPHIE.

The First Book,

Containing the *CHOROGRAPHIE* and *HISTORIE*
of *ITALIE*, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*,
and *BRITAIN*, with the *ISLES* thereof.

OF THE WORLD,

And first of

EUROPE.



Of the Creation of the World by Almighty God, and the Plantations of the same by the sons of Men, sufficient hath been spoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all those parts united into one *Compositum*; called therefore by the *Grecians*, *Τὸ Πᾶν*, & *Τὸ Ὀν*, because the *Summa totalis*, and general comprehension of all things existent. In which respect called by the *Latins* *Universum*, a name of multitude, but of a multitude united, (*Universi qui in uno loco versantur*, say the old *Grammarians*.) The great body of the World, like the body of Man, though it have many parts and members, is but one body only. A body of so perfect and exact a form, of so compleat a *Symmetrie* in respect of the particular parts, and all those parts so beautified and adorned by the God of Nature; that from the elegance and beauties of it, it was called *Kosmos* by the *Grecians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*; both names declaring the Composure of it to be full of Ornament; and all those Ornaments conducting mankind to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Christian Advocate* reasoneth very strongly,) As he which comes into an house, and seeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comely order; *utrisque præstare crederet Dominum*, &c. must needs conceive, both that the house had some wife Lord and Master who had so contrived it, and that such Lord and Master of it was of more worth and excellency than the house and furniture: So (saith he) whosoever doth observe the most eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, must needs conceive there is some great and more glorious power who did first create it; disposing of all things therein in such excellent manner.

This contemplation, together with the notions of a *Deity*, which naturally are ingrafted in the soul of man; hath trained up all men in the practise of some Religion, though few (comparatively) so happy as to be practised in the true. For though the knowledge and worship of the true God, by reason of some accessions in *America*, and the *Indies*, be more generally diffused than in former times; yet is the least part of the World possessed by them who make profession of that Worship. For dividing the whole World into 30 parts, it hath been found by such as have laboured in this search, that 19 of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worship stocks and stones for Gods, even the work of mens hands. Of the 11 parts which are remaining, six are possessed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Saracens*; who though they have the knowledge of the God that made them, yet abnegating, not worshipping the Lord that bought them, they have no part or portion in the true Religion. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion, the other three being

being divided betwixt those of the Church of *Rome*; and such as otherwise differing in some opinions, pass generally by the name of *Protestant*, or reformed Churches. Which as it sheweth how small a portion of the World is possessed by *Christians*, who only (though not all of them) have reason to pretend to the true Religion: So doth it shew (I note this only by the way) how falsely those of *Rome* make Multitude of Professors to be a sign of the True Church; and then conceive themselves to be such a multitude, as corresponds unto that sign. Faulty alike both in the *Position* and the *Application*. For if the multitude of Professors be a sign of the Church, the true Church should be found rather amongst the *Heathens* or *Mahometans*, than amongst the *Christians*: or if they do restrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to those who make profession of the *Christian* faith; those of the *Greek* Communion, possessing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the members of the Church of *Rome*, though possibly of less esteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that Brag of *Bellarmino* (though otherwise more modest than the rest of the *Jesuits*) affirming positively and expressly, *Romanam Ecclesiam universum plane orbem possidere*; i. e. That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it self. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more special notice of the state of Religion in the several Provinces of the World, to which now I hasten; premising first this scheme of those several parts, into which it doth now stand divided.

The World is divided into two parts;
 { Unknown, or not fully discovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Australis*: the last taking up the whole Southern Continent; the other lying on the North of Europe and America; whereof we shall say somewhat at the end of this Work.
 { Known, either { Anciently, as Europe, Asia, Africa.
 { Lately, as America.

Europe is joyned to *Asia*, by that space of earth which is between the heads of *Tanais* and *Daunia*; *Asia* is joyned to *Africa*, by the *Egyptian Isthmus*; *America* is divided (as most conjecture) from all of them. Europe is separated from *Asia*, by a line drawn from the Bay of *St. Nicolas*, to the head of *Tanais*, from thence by that River it self all the length of his course; then by *Palus Meotis*, the *Eufrates* Sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Hellepont*, and the *Aegean*. *Asia* is parted from *Africa* by the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: and *Africa* from Europe by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than Europe, *Asia* than *Africa*, *America* than *Asia*.

They which have entertained a fancy of resembling every Countrey to things more obvious to the sight and understanding, have likened Europe to a *Dragon*; the head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two wings *Italy*, and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiously impertinent, in resembling *France*, to a *Lozenge* or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium* to a *Lyon*; *Britain*, to an *Ax*; *Ireland*, to an *EGge*; *Peloponnesus*, to a *Plantane* leaf; *Spain*, to an *Oxe* hide spread on the ground; *Italy* (which indeed holds best proportion) to a mans *Leg*; with divers the like *Phantasies* of a capricious brain; these Countreys no more resembling them, than pictures made when painting was in her infancy, under which they were fain to write, *This is a Lion*, and *this is a Whale*, for fear the spectators might have taken one for a *Cock*, and the other for a *Car*.

EUROPE, though the least (as being in length but 2800, in breadth but 1200 miles) is yet of most renown amongst us. First, because of the temperature of the Air, and fertility of the soyl; Secondly, from the study of *Arts*, both ingenious and mechanical; Thirdly, because of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies: Fourthly, from the purity and sincerity of the *Christian* Faith; Fifthly, because we dwell in it, and to first place it.

EUROPE is generally said to be so called from *Europa*, the daughter of *Agenor*, King of the *Phenicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the shape of a *Bull*; or as some Histories say, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others, in a ship whose beak had the portraiture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Isle of *Crete*, should give denomination to the whole Continent of Europe, whereof that Island is so inconsiderable and so small a part, I must confess I see no reason. *Goropius Becanus*, who holds the high Dutch to be the primitive language, which was spoke in *Paradise*, and loves to fetch all names from thence; not thinking it convenient, that Europe being first inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, should be beholding to the *Grecians* for its name: will have it called Europe, quasi *Ver-hop*, by the transposition of the two last letters; *Ver* signifying excellent, and *Hop* a multitude (whence we use to say, as thick as Hops) because Europe contains a multitude of excellent people. And on the other side, *Bochartus*, a French Writer, loving as much to bring all names from the *Phenician* or *Punic* tongue, will have it called Europe from *Ur-appa*, which signifieth in that language, a beautiful Countenance; because the Europeans much excell'd the Africans in whiteness of skin, and clearness of complexion. But in my minde *Herodotus* hath best determined of the controversy, who telleth us plainly, *Ἐὐρώπη ἡ ἡμετέρα γῆ, ὅτι οὕτως ἦν ὁ δῆμιος*, &c. That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of Europe, and who first called it so. And yet considering there is a Province in *Thrace* called Europe, (whereof more hereafter) why might not the *Asiaticks* give the name of Europe to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay nearest to them; as the *Romans* did the name of *Africa* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they first brought under their obedience? Or

Or as the Europeans gave the name of *Asia*, to the greatest of the three known parts of the World; which properly and originally belonged unto *Asia Minor* (as it since was called;) or rather to those parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place.

The first inhabitants of Europe, as hath been shewn in part already, and shall be shewn more fully in its proper place, where the sons of *Japhet*; amongst whom, as the Scripture telleth us, the Isles of the *Gentiles* were divided, Gen. 10. v. 5. which includes all the Continent of Europe and the Isles adjoining. For besides that it is compassed about with the *Cyclades* and other Isles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Isles of *Candia*, *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, the Isles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; Europe it self was formerly taken for an Island, as being invironed round with water, saving where it is joyned on the North-East to *Asia* the great, which very few of the Ancients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countreys of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the posterity of *Japhet*, but so many *Peninsula's* or *Demy-Islands* invironed almost round with one Sea or other? Nor was the name and memory of *Japhet* so much forgotten by the Children rained it a long time in their *Lapetus*, whom they make to be the son of *Colum* and *Terra*, and the father of the wife *Promethews*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *Janus Lapetus*, in the first Book of his *Metamorphosis*. So that we see how punctually the first part of Gods blessing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would enlarge the borders of *Japhet*, Gen. 9. 27. The second part thereof, that he should dwell in the Tents of *Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accomplishment, yet it came at last; and that both in the literal and mystical sense. First in the literal, when the posterity of *Japhet*, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, made themselves Masters of *Judea*, or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eastern parts, promised to and possessed by the seed of *Sem*: Next in the mystical, when God was pleased to break down the partition-wall, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the house of *Japhet*, into the body of the Church; which for a long time was restrained to the Line of *Sem*.

Europe may be considered as it stands divided into the Continent and the Islands: the Continent lying all together; the Islands as they are dispersed in the *Greek*, *Aegean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *British* and *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we shall discover them, and discourse of them in this following order, dividing Europe into 1. *Italy*, 2. the *Alpes*, 3. *France*, 4. *Spain*, 5. *Britain*, 6. *Belgium*, 7. *Germany*, 8. *Denmark*, 9. *Swethland*, 10. *Russia*, 11. *Poland*, 12. *Hungary*, 13. *Slavonia*, 14. *Dacia*, and 15. *Greece*; and speaking of the several Islands, as they relate to some or other of these greater Countreys.

In all which Countreys and Islands belonging to them, besides the *Latine* Tongue which is now rather *Scholastic*, than *National*; and besides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spanish*, being but as so many corruptions of the *Latine*: and besides the *English* which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latine*, and *French*; there are in all 14 Mother-Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to say, 1. *Irish*, spoken in *Ireland*, and the West of *Scotland*, 2. *British*, or *Welsh*, in *Wales*, and some parts of *Cornwall*; 3. *Cantabrian*, or *Basquish*, in *Biscay*, about the *Pyrenean* Hills, and near to the *Cantabrian* Ocean, 4. *Arabick*, in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Apuxarras*; 5. *Finnick*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*: 6. *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swethland*; 7. *Cauchian*, which the *East Friezlanders* (or *Canchi*) speak amongst themselves, though to strangers they speak the Common *Dutch*; 8. *Slavonish*, in *Slavonia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and almost all the parts of the *Turkish* Empire; 9. *Ilyrian*, on the East side of *Istria*, and the Isle of *Veggia*: 10. *Greek*, in most Provinces and Isles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themselves; 11. *Hungarian*, and 12. *Epirotique*, in the mountainous places of those Countreys. 13. *Jazygian*, on the North-side of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*, and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, and other European parts of that barbarous people. And this shall serve for Europe in the general notion. Descend we now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Islands of it; beginning first of all with *Italie*, contrary to the usage of most Geographers; who commonly begin with *Spain*, or *Ireland*, as being the furthest Countreys Westward, and consequently nearest to the first *Meridian*, from whence the *Longitude* was reckoned. Which we shall do by reason of that great influence which the *Romans* had in most parts of Europe, and many parts of the World besides, in matters as well *Civil* as *Ecclesiastical*, which much depended on the power of that Empire formerly, and on the usurpations of that Church in the later days.

Italy was anciently divided, as most Countreys else, into Tribes and Nations, as the *Latines*, *Sabines*, *Tuscanes*, *Samnites*, *Campani*, *Picentini*, *Piceni*, *Ligures*, *Tarentini*, *Lucani*, and others of inferior note; whom we shall meet with in the description of those several States into which it doth now stand divided. But all those Nations being severally vanquished by the Roman puissance; and made up into one body, whereof Rome was the head; it pleased *Augustus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was said, that is to say, *Liguria*, *Hetruria*, *Lutium*, *Campania*, *Umbria*, *Samnium*, the *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia Transpadana*, *Ventia*, and *Histria*. In the time of the Emperour *Antoninus*, the Provinces of Italy were increased to sixteen, the bounds of the former Regions being somewhat altered; and the three Isles of *Sicily*, *Corfica*, and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhatia*'s; first and second, added to the number. But this distribution also received some change in the time of *Constantine* the Great, who altering both the names and bounds of the former Provinces, and adding one more to them, made seventeen in all, that is to say, 1. *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, 2. *Picenum Subarbitarium*, 3. *Campania*, 4. *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Samnium*, 7. *Lucania* and the *Bruttii*, 8. *Sicily*, 9. *Corfica*, and 10. *Sardinia*, which made up the prefecture of the City of Rome: 11. *Flaminia* and *Picenum Annonarium*, 12. *Ventia*, 13. *Emilia*, 14. *Liguria*, 15. *Alpes Cottia*, 16. *Rhatia prima*, and 17. *Rhatia secunda*, which made up the Diocese of Italy, properly and especially so called, whereof *Milain* was first the Metropolitan City, *Aquileia* afterwards.

The Language heretofore was divers, according to the several Provinces and people of it. In *Apulia*, they used the *Messapian* tongue; in that which is now called *Calabria*, they spake the *Greek*; in *Hetruria*, they used the *Tuscan*; and the *Latin* in *Lutium*: which last so altered in short time, by reason of the commerce they had with the conquered Nations, that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, at the expulsion of the *Tarquins*, could not be understood (as *Polybius* saith) by the best Antiquaries of his time. And yet the time between the making of those Articles, and the time of *Polybius*, who was contemporary with *Scipio Africanus*, passed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* tongue was afterwards at any time spoke generally in all parts of the Roman Empire, or of Italy it self, as I see some hold, I can by no means be persuaded; it being by special favour granted to the *Cumans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the walls of Rome, that they should use the Roman Language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* people dwelling out of *Lutium* had used it formerly. And yet this hapned not above 140 years before the times of the Emperours, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of Italy, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and great part of Spain. It's true, the *Latin* tongue insucceeding times came to be understood in most parts of Italy, by reason of the Roman Colonies which were planted amongst them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continual resort to Rome on their several businesses: it being a great point of the Roman State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgement pronounced by the *Prætors* for the several Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the subject Nations, save only in the *Latin* tongue, their own proper language. Yet for all this, it never grew to such extent as to be the Language of the whole Empire, no nor of Italy it self, no more than the *English* tongue is natural or national to the *Welsh*, or *Irish*, though it be generally understood (for the very same reasons) by all of the better sort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French*, and *Spanish*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* tongues, occasioned by the innovations of the barbarous Nations: But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impression which the *Latin* tongue had made amongst them, whilst they were under the obedience of that puissant Empire; and that the *Italian* tongue, as it is now spoken, could not receive so great a change from the barbarous Nations, none of which carryed long amongst them, but the *Goths*, and *Lombards*; nor they so long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eastern parts) as to be either the occasions or authors of the alteration. So that the present language of Italy is a compound, made up especially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*: some notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the North, and West, some of the *Gothish*, in the midst, about Rome it self; and not a little of the *Greek*, in the East of Naples.

And as the Language, so the Religion of the Countrey hath received some change. The *Christian* Faith was first preached in Rome it self, and in Rome first preached by Saint Peter who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two Apostles Peter and Paul, are generally said by the ancient Writers, to be the first who preached the Gospel in that City. *A doctus Apostolus* Petrus & Paulus, Roma fundata & constituta est Ecclesia, saith the old Father *Irenæus*, Lib. 4. cap. 3. To one of these the first preaching of the Gospel there is to be referred; both being Bishops of that City: That is to say, St. Peter of the Churches of the *Circumcision*; St. Paul of those which consisted specially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Gospel was preached there before Paul's coming, is evident by his Epistle written to the *Romans*, at *Cenchrea* the Port Town of Corinth, six years at least before his being brought to Rome; in which he testifieth that their Faith was famous over all the World; and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as St. Peter was the first Preacher of the Gospel at Rome, so sent he his Disciples to promulgate it in most parts of Italy. The Roman Martyrologies reckon up eight Bishops of St. Peter's making, for so many of the principal Cities of this Countrey: that is to say, *Epaphroditus* (not he whom St. Paul speaks of in his Epistle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*, of old called *Antur*, *Hermagoras* for *Aquileia*, *Paulinus* for *Luca*, *Apollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Atina*, *Prodocimus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracuse*, and *Pancratius* for *Tancomenium* in the Isle of *Sicily*. But whether St. Peter planted it, or St. Paul watered it, certain I am that GOD only gave it the increase. It could not

else

else have prospered under such a Tyranny, as many, if not most of the Roman Emperours did earnestly endeavour to suppress it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum semina Ecclesie*; the watering of it with the blood of so many Martyrs, made it grow the faster. And this small grain of Mustard-seed waxed to great a Tree, as over-shadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only stand it out against all Tempests, but in conclusion did suppress that Superstition and Idolatry, for whose sake all those Princes till the time of *Constantine*, did, more or less, labour to destroy it. How much it hath receded since those times from its primitive purity, and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the design and arts of those who boast themselves to be Successors to that great Apostle, shall be a little touched at in the story of the Roman Papacy. Suffice it in this place to say, that all the people of this Countrey, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the *Inquisition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the Protestant Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monstrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of Rome.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternal life, have either been stopped, or else corrupted by the Popes of Rome; the Rivers which do water this most flourishing Garden, still preserve their beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the same channels, as before they did. And of these Italy hath as many as any one Countrey, but none of any long course, by reason that all parts of it are so near some Sea; most of which rising from the Alps, or the Apennine Hills, by melting of the Snows in Winter, and casualty of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often over-flow the Countrey, and for the most part leave an ill Air behind them. Those of chief note are, 1. The River Po, or *Padus* (the *Greeks* call it *Eridanus*) into which *Phæton* is said to have been drenched when he fell from Heaven. It riseth in the Alps, runneth through *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Cispadanum* and *Transpadanum*; and having taken in 30 lesser streams, falls with seven mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea, not far from *Venice*. 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Pissatello*, anciently the North-bound of Italy; *Hic fluvius quondam Italia finis*, as it is in *Pliny*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Rimini*, or *Ariminum*, now the Port-town to *Ravenna*, the Haven of *Ravenna* being long since choaked; but of this River more in another place. 3. *Arno*, which riseth in the Apennine falleth into the *Tuscan* Sea, and anciently divided Italy on that side from the *Cisalpin* Galls; on the banks hereof standeth the fair City of *Florence*. 4. *Ticinus*, which gave name to the City of *Pavia*, called of old *Ticinum*; it riseth in the Alps, and emptieth it self into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5. *Liris*, now called *Gargilis*, stained with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards*, in their quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*; and no less unfortunately memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medici*. 6. *Cnique fuit rerum promissa potentia*, *Tibris*;

And Tiber, unto which was given
The power of all things under Heaven.

It riseth from the Apennine Hills, not far from *Aretium* (now *Arezzo*) a Town of *Tuscany* (which it parted from the Roman *Lutium*, and the Land of the *Sabines*) and gliding gently near *Cita de Castello*, *Perugia*, and the old *Oriculum*, passeth by Rome, and falleth into the *Tuscan*, or lower Sea, at *Offida*. Here is also, 7. The Lake of *Thracymene*, near which *Annibal* defeated *Flaminius* the Consul and his whole Army, opening thereby his passage to the gates of Rome: and 8. The famous River of *Metaurus*, where the *Romans* overcame *Asdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*; and thereby made a way to the ruine of *Carthage*. Others of less note shall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Countrey, those of most note are the Alps, and the Apennine, of which the residue in a manner are but spurs and branches. Of these the Alps being also appertaining to *France* and *Germany*, or rather containing many large and entire Provinces which belong to neither, deserves a Treatise by it self. The Apennine, being proper only to this Countrey, but so that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, shall be spoken of here. A ledge of Hills which take beginning near *Savona*, a Town of the Commonwealth and Country of *Genoa*, situate on the Mediterranean, and fetching a little compass Northwards, extend to the furthest part of Italy, dividing it almost in the very midst: that part thereof which lyeth towards the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuscan* Sea, being called *Cisapennina*; *Transapennina*, that which lay towards the *Adriatick*. Passing in one entire body as far as *Ascoli*, a Town of *Marca Anconitana* (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the highest; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereof one runs out to the mount of *Gargano*, and so unto the Land of *Otranto*; the other spreadeth it self as far as *Calabria*, those being the most Eastern Provinces of this noble Continent. Called the Apennine, as some say, *a Penna*, by which word the *Latins* used to signify the top or summit of an Hill; by reason of the height and sharp points thereof: as others say, *quasi Alpes Penina*, because first overcome by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the Roman Writers call by the name of *Pæni*. The Inhabitants hereof, by *Virgil* named *Apenninicolæ*; but otherwise reducible to some of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain most of the Hills of Italy from *Savona* Eastwards, are but the excursions; which being of less note, shall be spoken of as they lye before us in the way.

To proceed now to so much of the History of Italy as concerns the generals; we are to know that the first Inhabitants of it (not to say any thing of the fictions of *Fryer Annus* under the name of *Be-rofus*, who will needs have *Noah* himself come hither shortly after the Flood) were doubtless of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth son of *Javan*, one of the sons of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of Greece, which was since called *Macedon*, and after spreading themselves further

The Kings of Rome.

- A. M.
 3213. 1 *Romulus*, the Founder of *Rome*; he made peace with *Tatius* King of the *Sabines*, coming against him to revenge the ravishment of their women; incorporating him and his into his new City, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory, 37.
 3251. 2 *Numa*, the first Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies, 43.
 3294. 3 *Tullus Hostilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the Conquest of *Alba*, the mother City of the *Latins*, and vanquished the *Fidenates*, 32.
 3326. 4 *Anicius Marcius*, who built *Ostia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City, 24.
 3350. 5 *Tarquinius Priscus*, who subdued many of the *Tuscan* Nations, increased the number of the *Tribes* and *Senators*, and added the triumphal ornaments, 38.
 3388. 6 *Servius Tullus*, who first caused the people to be enrolled, and brought into *cenſe*, 44.
 3432. 7 *Tarquinius Superbus*, son to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquished the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Ardea*, *Otriculum*, and *Suessa Pameſia*: but for his own insolent behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatine* by his son *Sexsus*, he and his whole Race were driven out of the Town, Anno Mundi. 3457. V. C. 268.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, caused two Officers to be chosen out of the *Patricii*, or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Consuls*, à *consulendo*, from counselling of, and consulting the good of the Commonwealth, *ut consulerent se suis civibus meminerint*, saith the Historian, their name being a *Memento* of their charge or duty. And in this office they resolved to have always two; and those but only for a year, *Ne vel solitudine vel morâ potestas corrumpatur*. And though some had the fortune to be *Consuls* two or three years together, yet every new year they were anew chosen, and so their Offices reckoned as several; neither do we find any to have been elected for less than a year, unless upon the death or deposition of a former; until the Civil Wars. But then, *cum belli civilis premia festinari ceperunt*, when the services done in the Civil Wars required a quicker turn in requital, the *Consulship* was given only for some part of the year, and ordinarily for two Months: the first *Consuls* being named *Ordinarii*, in whose names the writings made for the whole year were dated; the other *Minores*, or *Honorarii*, which only served to make up a number. For so ambitious were the *Romans* of this honour, that when *Maximus* died in the last day of his *Consulship*, *Caninius Rebilus* petitioned *Cæsar*, for that part of the day that remained: whence that so memorated Jest of *Tully*, *Oviganthem Consulens, qui toto consulatus sui tempore somnum oculis non vidit*! And when *Cecina* was by the Senate degraded from this honour on the day in which he was to have resigned it, one *Rosticus Regulus* obtained the Office from *Vitellius* for the day remaining: but as the Historian noteth, *magno cum irrisu accipientia, tribuentisque*. Now as the *Romans* did thus exceed the first number of *Consuls*, so sometimes fell they short of it. The first that was sole *Consul* was *Pompey*, in the beginning of the Civil Wars, viz. A.V.C. 403. The next, one *Varanes*, A.C. 410. This Office, from the first Institution to the final period of it, continued at the least in name (for the Emperours had of long time assumed the Power and Prerogatives appertaining to it) the space of 1084 years, though not without many intermissions of the name and Title, by the several interpolings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Consular Tribunes*, of which more anon. The last *Consul* was one *Basilus*, in the time of *Justinian*, A. Ch. 542. The two first, *Collatinus* the husband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whose intigation the people had took Arms against the house of the *Tarquins*. A man so zealous in defence of the common liberty, so resolutely bent to make good what he had begun, and so extremely opposite to the Royal Race, that he not only caused *Collatine* to resign his Office within the year, because he was of the blood of the *Tarquins*, but executed his own sons for holding correspondence and intelligence with them. But though the Government were changed, the old design was followed, which the Kings had laid for the enlarging of their Empire; but followed with so slow a pace, by reason of their factions and divisions, that it was full 500 years before they could be Masters of *Italy*. A matter not unworthy of our consideration, that the *Italians* should hold out so long a time against the puissance of the *Romans*; when in less then half that time ensuing, they did possess themselves of almost all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdoms and Provinces both in *Asia* and *Africa*. So difficult a thing it was (as is said by *Florus*) *dare caput Italie*, to contract the many limbs of *Italy* into one body, and unite them under one head.

But to proceed, after *Italy* was fully conquered by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their nearest neighbours; whose overthrow in the end of the first *Punic* war, A.V.C. 512. gave them the full possession of *Sicily*, (except the State of *Syracusa*) and the Isle of *Sardinia*. After that being molested in their Trade by the *Ithyrian* Pirates, and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War against her, and brought that puissant people to become their Tributaries, A.V.C. 525. The second *Carthaginian* War, managed by *Annibal* in the bowels of *Italy*, had almost put a period to the glories of their Commonwealth. But that being also ended to their advantage by the conquest of *Spain*, they quarrelled *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace on their own terms, and after oured his son *Perseus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the rest of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a quarrel with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*; made him abandon his possession of the Lesser *Asia*; and finally prevailed so successfully in all their actions, that there was neither King nor Commonwealth that could stand in their way, until the State being burthened with its too much greatness, began to totter of it self.

Two

Two things there were, which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their power and greatness, besides the Providence of God which had so disposed it: which were the great encouragements which they gave their Souldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they used to bestow upon their *Generals* when they returned home with honour and victory. For when any of their *Generals* did so return, he was permitted to enter sitting on a glorious Chariot, the spoils which he had got in war being carried before, the prisoners he had taken following bound at the heels of his chariot; his Souldiers compassing him about with their several Crowns, according to the quality of their well-deservings; and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Priests and principal Ladies going out to meet him. The first beginning of which custome is ascribed to *Romulus*, who in the War with *Acron* King of the *Ceninenſes* made against him in revenge of the rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine* women, seeing his people give ground, called for help to *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Acron*, to offer up his armour to him. *Acron* being vanquished, the Conquerer cutteth down a fair young Oak and hangeth on it all the armour of the vanquished King: then girding his Gown close unto him, and putting on his head a Garland of Lawrel, he laid the Oak upon his shoulders and marched towards the City, his Army following, and singing an *Epinicion*, or song of victory. To this we must refer the original and beginning of *Triumphs*. But *nihil est inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the saying is. *Tarquinius Priscus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the purple Robe, and the triumphal Chariot drawn with four horses. The other pomps came afterwards, as they grew both in power and pride. Now of these *Triumphs* there were two sorts; the Greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*; and the Lesser, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumstances. For, 1. The *Triumph* made his entrance in a Royal Chariot, and was met by the Senators in their Robes; but the *Ovator* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2. The *Triumph* had a Lawrel Crown, and entred with a noise of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovator* had only a Garland of Fir, with Flutes and *Haultboyes* playing before him. 3. The *Triumph* was attyred in a Garment of State, which they called *Vestis Trabeata*; but the *Ovator* in a plain purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph* the Souldiers cried out, *Io Triumph*; but in an *Ovation* they ingeminated only *O, O, O*, from the often doubling of which word, it had (as some think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5. And lastly, the *Triumph* used to sacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovator* a Sheep only, from whence the name is properly to be derived.

Now there were three cases in which the Conquerer was to be content with this lesser *Triumph*. 1. If the number of the enemies whom he slew in battel exceeded not 5000 men; or that he had not so much overcome them by force, as by perswasion or subtilty. 2. If the War had been slight, cursory, or not lawfully managed: And 3. If it were against an Ignoble Enemy. And of this last we have a fair instance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the victory in the *Servile* war, (a victory of great importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*; *ne Triumphi dignitatem Servili inscriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumphs* they were indeed very full of magnificence; the pomp whereof, who list to see, may find it in the *Triumph* of *Paulus Aemilius* described by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been said, we may conjecture somewhat at the glories of it.

And yet this honour was not always vouchsafed to those who had best deserved it, there being many wayes whereby it might be forfeited or denied in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatness of the men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it was denied a victorious General, by the strength of a contrary Faction; and so *Pompey* denied *Mællus* the honour of a *Triumph* for the conquest of *Crete*. 2. Sometimes the Conquerer himself is willing to decline it, for fear of envy: And so *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his conquest of *Sicily*, having triumphed twice before, refused that honour, his reason was, *et edior & exet & deia & deia*, for fear his third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3. Sometimes the Souldiers having been ill paid, or otherwise not well treated by their Commanders, opposed them in their suit for it: and this was the case of *Paulus Aemilius*, who questionless had merited this honour, for not dividing amongst them the Spoils of *Greece*, as he once had promised, if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own case, had not itckled hard for him with the Souldiers. 4. It was sometimes denied, because the General had born no publick Office in the Commonwealth: for so in *Livy*, when *Lentulus* coming *Proconsul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the *Fathers* answered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that honour, but that they had no precedent for it, *ut qui neque Consul, neque Dictator, neque Prætor res gessisset* *Triumpharet*. 5. Sometimes the *Generals* themselves omitted it for the furtherance of some of their other purposes: And so *Cæsar* coming towards *Rome* a Victor, at the same time the *Consuls* were to be chosen, laid aside his demand of the *Triumph* to sue for the *Consulship*; it being the custome that such as demanded the *Triumph* should abide without the City, and such as sued for the *Consulship* must of necessity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denied, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the Senate: in which respect the *Triumph* was denied unto *Mællus* on the conquest of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargement of their Empire, *quia causum Belli Senatus non approbavit*, because he had no Commission from the Senate for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been Civil, because in all such Wars whosoever was Conquerour, the Commonwealth was a loser by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Mællus* having vanquished *Sertorius* and his Party in *Spain*, would have it called a *Foreign*, not a Civil War, because they would not lose their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quam Civile videri voluerunt, ut triumpharent*. 8. If the Victory had not been obtained without great loss on the *Romans* side; in which regard *Valerius* after his conquest of the *Galls* was denied this honour, *quia magis dolor civibus amissis, quam gaudium fusi hostibus prevalevit*, saith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9. And lastly, the *Triumph* was denied a General, if the service had not

E 3

been

been performed in his own Province: And so we find that when *Livius* and *Nero*, being Consuls, had vanquished *Adrubal*, *Livius* only had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the man that had won the day; because the field was fought in the Province of *Livius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Accessory*, or assistant to him.

And these are all, or at the least the principal causes of hindering or omitting this great honour, indeed the greatest that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after when the Common-wealth was changed into a *Monarchy*, it began to be laid aside for altogether, as too great for Subjects; and was first purposely neglected by *Vispanius Agrippa*, the Establisher of *Augustus* in the *Roman Empire*, who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Africa*, and his quiet settling of that Country; to give Posterity an example, refused to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occasioned that this custom was in short time quite laid aside; and that no man under the degree of an *Emperour* triumphed solemnly; all others from thenceforth, being content with the *Triumphal Ornaments*, *ut vultus tantis divitiis natus*, in the words of *Dion*. And though *Bellisarius* having subdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africa*, is said (600 years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph*; yet in propriety of speech, it was nothing but an honourable presenting of himself and his prisoners before the *Emperour*; and was so far from the magnificence of a *Roman Triumph*, that it wanted many of the solemnities used in an *Ovation*. Nor did the *Emperours* themselves much affect this honour, either because too popular, or too chargeable, or that they thought it was beneath the *Imperial Majesty*; the last (as I remember) that made use thereof to set forth his glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his victories over the *Germans*, and the *Blemys*, a people of *Africa*, in or about the year 284 of our Saviours birth.

In the next place look we on the encouragements and rewards of the Common Souldiers: For besides the setting out of Lands and dwellings for the poorer sort, in which they might rest themselves when they were past service; and besides the large *donatives* which the *General* in his *Triumph* did bestow upon them; they had their *mural Crown* for him that first scaled the Walls, a *naval Crown* for him that first boarded the Enemies ships, a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Castrensis*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy; a *City Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preserved the life of a *Roman Citizen*. Not to say any thing of those Chains and Bracelets which Souldiers of inferior merit were adorned withal. By which encouragements, and the good conduct of their Counsels in the Senate, the *Roman* affairs succeeded so prosperously, and their Dominions were enlarged so immensly, that never any Common-wealth had so large a growth.

And yet the greatness of this state is neither totally, nor only to be attributed to the *Consular Government*. For though the Walls of this great building were raised by the *Consuls*, yet the foundation of the same was laid by the *Kings*, and the roof thereof laid on by the *Emperours*. Nay, be it spoken to the honour of *Monarchical Government*, whensoever any great and imminent danger did seem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aside their confidence in the rule of their *Consuls*, and betake themselves to the Command of one Sovereign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and other the changes hapning in the State of *Rome*, take this short abstract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "*Urbeni Romanæ a principio Reges habuere, &c.* The City of *Rome* was in the beginning governed by *Kings*. Liberty and the *Consulship* *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dictators* were chose but for a time: The *Decemviri* passed not two years, neither had the *Consular* authority of the *Tribunes* of the Souldiers any long continuance, nor *Cinna* nor *Syllas* dominion. *Pompey* and *Crassus* quickly yielded to *Cæsars* forces; *Lepidus* and *Antony* to *Augustus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of these publick changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were instituted only on a particular occasion for the reforming of the Laws by those of *Athens*; and the *Military Tribunes* of *Consular Authority* ordained to divert common people from seeking after the *Consulship*; I shall here say nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a Supreme power, and such as made way for the *Emperours* in the close of all; I shall enlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators à Dictando*, because they prescribed what they pleased unto the people; which they were bound to execute and not dispute. Hence that memorable jest of *Julius Cæsar*, who being told that *Sylla* had resigned his *Dictatorship*, though by decree of *Senate* made perpetual to him; returned this Answer, that *Sylla* was an unlearned man, *dicere nesciit*, and therefore knew not how to *dicere*, or to play the *Dictator*. They were also called *Populi Magistris*, or the peoples Masters, because from them lay no appeal unto the people (as did from all the rest of the *Roman Magistrates*) during the whole time of their Command, which ordinarily continued for six months; yet so, that if they did in the mean time settle the affairs of the Common-wealth, they resigned it sooner; if the necessities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were chosen again. The names of as many of them as I have met withal, I have here subjoyned, together with the services they did the Publick in the time of their Office.

The Dictators of Rome.

- A.V.C.
- 253. 1 *Titus Lartius*, chosen upon occasion of a general War made by the *Latines* upon *Rome*; the first that ever had this Office.
 - 257. 2 *Aulus Posthumius*, chosen to pursue that War, which he ended with the slaughter of 30000 of the *Latins*.
 - 295. 3 *L. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, chosen to this Office from the Plough, overcame the *Volsi*; chosen again A.V.C. 314. to suppress the sedition raised by *Sp. Melius*.
 - 318. 4 *Emilius Mamercus*, overcame the *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven years called unto this Office.

338.

- 338. 5 *Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquished the *Fidenates* and the *Lavicans*.
- 354. 6 *Enrius Camillus*, who finally destroyed the City of the *Petr*, and being chosen a second time, A.V.C. 562. preserved his Country from the *Galls*: thrice chosen after this upon new occasions.
- 375. 7 *Tit. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, chosen in the War against the *Latins*.
- 385. 8 *L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous pestilence, to find a way for the appealing of the gods.
- 396. 9 *C. Sulpitius*.
- 418. 10 *Martius Rutilius*, the first *Dictator* chosen out of the *Commons*.
- 11 *L. Papyrius* subdued the *Samnites*.
- 438. 12 *Cassius*, by whom the *Samnites* were again vanquished.
- 13 *Emilius*, who also overcame the *Samnites*.
- 14 *Lentulus*, who triumphed also over the *Samnites*.
- 451. 15 *I. Bubulcius*, who finally subdued the *Æqui* and the *Volsi*.
- 16 *Corn. Rufinus*.
- 467. 17 *Q. Hortensius*, chosen for appealing a difference betwixt the Senate and the *Commons*, who had fortified himself in *Janiculus*, one of the Hills whereon *Rome* stood.
- 505. 18 *Cl. Glizius* forced to resign his office to
- 19 *Atilius Colatinus*, the first that exercised his office out of *Italy*: he was chosen in the first *Punic War*.
- 536. 20 *Fabius Maximus*, chosen in the War against *Annibal*.
- 537. 21 *M. Junius*, chosen upon the great defeat which the *Roman Forces* had at the battle of *Canna*.
- 545. 22 *L. Manlius Torquatus*, chosen upon the death of *Marcellus* the Consul slain by *Annibal*.
- 672. 23 *L. Syllas*, (descended from that *Corn. Rufinus*, who had been formerly in this Office) having by force of Arms suppressed the Faction of *Marcius* and *Cinna*, made himself Master of the City, and caused himself to be chosen *Perpetual Dictator*, after the Office had been intermitted, for the space of 127 years: which Office having exercised with a great deal of cruelty, he resigned with as great a confidence.
- 707. 24 *C. Julius Cæsar*, descended from *Iulus* the son of *Ascanius*, who was the second King of the *Trojan* race, having conquered *Britain*, and added all *Gaul* *Transalpine* to the *Roman Empire*; and finding himself unworthily requited by the Faction of *Pompey*, passed with his Army after him into *Greece*; and having vanquished him in the fields of *Pharsalia*, and made himself absolutely Master of the *Roman Empire*; took to himself the supreme Government thereof, under the title of *Dictator*; which having managed for the space of five years, he was murdered in the Senate house by *Brutus* and *Cassius*.

Before the time of these perpetual *Dictators*, the *Romans* having some enemies or other that opposed the progress of their fortunes, had not the leisure to contend with one another in a publick way; or if they did, their differences and seditions were soon composed. But being grown so great as to fear no Enemy; and the Estate to vast, that it was grown too mighty for a popular Government; then they began to practise on the peoples patience, and to project the sharing of the Empire amongst the great ones. Concerning which, take here this short *Epitome*, which I find in *Tacitus*. "*Rebus modicis equalitas facile habebatur, &c.* While (saith he) our Dominions were but small, Equality was easily maintained among us. But after we have subdued the World, and destroyed all Kings and Cities that stood in our way, or might work our annoyance; when we had leisure to seek after Wealth without peril; there arose hot contentions betwixt the Nobility and *Commons*. Sometimes the factious *Tribunes* carried it away, sometimes the *Consuls* had the better: and in the City and common *Forum*, some little skirmishes (the beginning of our Civil Wars) were sometimes seen. Afterwards *C. Marius* one of the meanest of the Commonalty, and *L. Syllas* the most cruel of all the Nobility, by force of Arms overthrowing the *Free-State* reduced all to an absolute Government. To them succeeded *Cn. Pompeius* a little closer in his projects, but nothing better minded to the Common-wealth: *Et nunquam posset nisi de Principatu quæstium*, and never after that was any other point debated, than who should get the Sovereignty unto himself. So *Tacitus*, and he stateth it rightly. For after *Pompey* had revived the controversy, and had found *Cæsar* a better Disputant than himself; *Augustus Antony*, and *Lepidus* (on the death of *Cæsar*) made good the Argument, attracting all power unto themselves by the name of *Triumviri*: till *Augustus* having out-witted *Lepidus*, and vanquished *M. Antony* at the battle of *Actium*, became sole Sovereign of the State, by the name of Prince; *Et cuncta bellis civilibus fessa, nomine Principis sub imperium accepit*, as that Author hath it.

But touching those great alterations in the State of *Rome*, the contentions for the chief command, and the Reduction of it to a *Monarchy* by *Augustus Cæsar*, I published a Discourse in the year 1631. (but written many years before) under the title of *AUGUSTUS*, or an Essay of those means and Counsels whereby the Common-wealth of *Rome* was altered, and reduced to a *Monarchy*. Which being but short, so pertinent to the Present business, and so well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to subjoin it here. The Reader may either peruse it, or prater-mint it, as his phantasie guides him. And here it followeth in these words:

They

Antony answer, though it shew but a delay, was in effect a denial; insinuated into the acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capital Enemy of *Antony*; by whose means the *Lords of the Senate* began to cast great affection towards him. Next in a solemn Oration to the *People*, he let them know, how he intended to have distributed his Fathers wealth among them; and how *Antony* did unjustly detain it from them both. Certainly there is not any thing prevaileth sooner with the ignoble many than hope of gain. No sooner had he finished his speech, and given away that to them, which he thought impossible to get for himself, but all was in a tumult. None was so sparing of his words, but he had some curse in store for *Antony*: every one vowing the destruction of that man, whom they supposed to deprive them of *AUGUSTUS* Donative.

7. In this hurly burly *Antony* quits the Town, and is by the general voyce of both Houses declared an Enemy to the State. An Army is given to *Hircius* and *Pansa*, then *Consuls*: *AUGUSTUS*, aged but 18. years, being proclaimed *Imperator*, and made head of the League against the common Foe. *AUGUSTUS*, as he loved not to absent from a necessary war, so he always used to reserve himself from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole enterprise unto the *Consuls*: well knowing that though the Officers and Souldiers took most pains to get the Victory, yet would the honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas, if any thing fell out to the Army not well, his being a Non-agent in the business, would bring his honour off without stain. The *Consuls* therefore proceeded in the War against *Antony*: who seeing little possibility of prevailing, resolved to sell the loss of his own liberty and his Souldiers lives, at a dear rate. And indeed the fortune of the day was so equally shared, that as the *Consuls* might boast of the vanquishment of *Antony*, so *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Consuls*.

AUGUSTUS had now as much as he could desire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his service. He therefore applies himself so to them, that giving that among them which he had in present; and promising them greater favours, according as his fortune and their valour should advance him, he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of allegiance, and made them the first step by which he ascended the Royalty. The *Lords of the Senate* hearing of the young mans fortune, thought it best to strangle these hopes even in their Cradles; and to that end, decree the honour of overcoming *Antony*, not to belong to *AUGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whose defence (being besieged by *Antony* in *Antina*) their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this frost of unexpected unkindness, sufficient to nip the blossome of his hopes; but they denied him the *Consulship*. These harsh proceedings compelled *AUGUSTUS* (his honour now lying at stake) to enter Rome as Conquerour, and force the *Fathers* to grant him his desires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at; he generally shewed himself grateful to all, and particularly to some of the Souldiers, paying them what was behind by promise, and openly protesting that without their aid he durst not have adventured into the Capitol. So by keeping his day with the Military men, and shewing his noble and generous nature in a thankful commemoration of their service; he added stronger bonds to such as were already his own, and won many dayly to his side, which before were either neutrals, or adverse parties.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was not idle; but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puissant Army, he posted thither, and so far prevailed with the Souldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp; where the General entertained him with all expressions of love and welcome. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, soon perswaded him to lead his forces into *Italy*; promising him no less than the Lordship of the World, if he durst but shew his face to the *Romans*. *AUGUSTUS* having continual news of this combination, and fearing much the provokes of *Antony*, now strengthened; conceived no course so fitting and convenient to his ends, as to joyn friendship, and to enter into confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either; but because being destitute of means to resist them, and also to revenge the death of his Father *Julius*, which he much laboured; he might with their forces oppress *Cassius* and *M. Brutus*, and as occasion fell out, deal with them being severed. This League was solemnly confirmed by a bloody *Proscription* immediately following. Wherein to be revenged on their enemies, they betrayed their friends. A lamentable and ruthless time, good and bad, rich and poor, being alike subject to the slaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Cæsars* Government thought to be the Golden Age; and every one began to curse *Brutus* and *Cassius* as the Authors of these present miseries; whom they but lately honoured as the Restorers of the Common liberty. Nay the very Kings were deemed tolerable, and such as lived in their dayes, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the Tyranny, but the Tyrants: Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us men, that we know not our own happiness in the fruition, but the want. Two of these *Triumvirs* glutted themselves with blood, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the *People*. *Augustus* on the contrary, shewed himself much grieved at this barbarous cruelty; so that his consent seemed rather forced then voluntary. But this *Proscription*, though in it self cruel and tyrannical, produced some good and profitable effects in the *Republick*. For when by this *Proscription* and the ensuing Civil War, the stoutest of the Nobles and Commons were made away, few being left which durst endeavour to recover the old Liberty; *Augustus* did the more easily establish his Monarchy, and restore peace to the City. Moreover the prosecution of this cruelty so incensed the people against *Antony* and *Lepidus*, that *Augustus*, whom most held excusable, found them always his fast friends, if not for love to him, yet in spite to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *Augustus* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joyned forces march against *Brutus* and *Cassius*, both overthrown by *Antony*; whom *AUGUSTUS* did therefore put upon that service, as well to diminish *Antony*'s forces, as to keep his own entire. As for him-

himself, either he in policy suffered himself to be driven out of the field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or else indeed durst not abide the Battell. Such end had *Brutus* and *Cassius*, two men whom fortune seemed to be in love with on the sudden; and did as suddenly forsake them. *Brutus* the more accomplished man; *Cassius* the more expert Souldier. I pass over *AUGUSTUS* Wars in *Italy*, *Antony* in *Asia*, the discontents between them; and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, sister to the one, and wife to the other *Emperor*. As also how joyning forces together to oppress *Sexsus*; then Lording it over the Sea, and proud with the conquest of *Sicily*; they received him into the *Consulship*, and joyned the Island of *Sardinia* to his other conquests. To recompence which kindness, *Sexsus* invited the two Generals aboard his *Admiral Galley*; and after a bountiful entertainment, returned them safe to their Camps. I scarce have ever heard of so great an over-sight among so many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my self, upon what confidence *AUGUSTUS* and *Antony* durst so far trust their persons to a reconciled Enemy: or oh what reason *Sexsus* having both of them in his power, would let slip so slightly that advantage, greater than which was never offered to a discontented and ambitious person. This I am sure of, that he afterward repented it; and could have wished that he had hearkened to the voice of *Menas* his old servant, who had perswaded him to make his best of that opportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Arragon*, of old Enemies made new Friends, had the like interview at *Savona*: which that notable Historiographer and States-man *Guicciardini* describeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet in the like case, have many, and as I think worthily condemned *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, and *Charles* of *Burgundie*, the Arch-politicians of those dayes; in that *Lewis* at *Peronne* put himself into the hands of *Charles* his Enemy, who also after a short restraint, dismissed him.

10. These solemn expressions of amity between the three Generals being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*, *AUGUSTUS* then began to contrive his establishment in the State, though with the ruine of his Colleague. He beginneth first with *Sexsus*, having by gifts and promises drawn *Maximus* unto his side; who by reason of his inwardness with his Master, knew most of his designs. By the directions of this *Menas*, and the assistance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sexsus*; who flying death in Europe by the hand of *AUGUSTUS*, found it in *Asia*; by the command of *Antony*. After this victory, *AUGUSTUS*, either having or pretending a quarrel against *Lepidus*, entred into his Camp, seizeth his person, and depriving him of all honours, confineth him to Rome. A man that half against his will, stumbling upon the Government, had beyond any desert of his, enjoyed ten years continuance of Empire and prosperity. An action of a very high nature, and such as *AUGUSTUS* durst not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italy*. He therefore advisably removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the same. It hath been ever a chief Maxim in Court-policy, to remove that out of the way, under pretence of some honourable charge, whom we intend either to cast from his present honours, or else to make less potent with Prince and People. For which cause also *AUGUSTUS* perswaded *Antony*'s absence from the City, to bring him at the last into disrepute and contempt. For well he knew that his dorage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many inconveniences; neither could his neglecting the State, to riot with his *Leumann*, be other than distasteful to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his sister *Octavia* to leave her husband *Antony*'s house; yet privately he perswaded her to live there still, and bring up his children; that so the *Romans*, seeing her noble demeanour and love to her husband, might the more heartily detest him; who so ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more fuel to this flame of hatred, he readeth *Antony*'s Will unto the people, in which many of the *Roman* Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra*'s children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewise preferred many Bills against *AUGUSTUS*, as that he had deposed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italy* amongst his own Souldiers only; that he had not restored the ships borrowed to make War against *Sexsus*.

11. These discontents seconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both resolute to refer all to the decision of a Battell. *Antony* had a Fleet consisting of 500 ships, high built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph than a Fight. His Land Forces consisted of 160000 Foot, and 12000 Horse. *AUGUSTUS* had the like number of Horsemen, 80000 Foot, and 250 good Men of War, snug and close, built more for use then ostentation. The Rendezvous is *Actium*, a place seeming to be marked out for notable designs: here being fought also in our Fathers dayes, that famous battell, wherein the *Venetians* gave the World to understand, that the *Turk* Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the Offensive side, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onset by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whose words were Oracles, perswaded him to the Sea-fight; not that she thought it more safe, but that if *Antony* lost the day, she might with more facility escape: To this resolution, when most of the Captains had for fear agreed; one of the old Souldiers thus bluntly gainesaid it. "What a miserable security art thou possessed with, most noble Emperor? Where is that ancient fore-sight wherewith thou hast formerly prevented all disasters, and turned the Enemies devices on their own heads? Consider with thy self, most noble General, what uncertain friends the Wind and Sea are? To how fickle an Element thou dost trust thy fortunes? Let the Egyptians and Phœnicians, old Mermaids, born and nurt up in the Sea, follow this kind of Warfare. But let us thy true Roman spirits trie our valour on the firm Land, and there fight for thy Empire and our own Lives. Perhaps thou dost mistrust our faith; Look here, *Antony*, (with that he opened his bosome) and thou shalt see many an honourable scar got in thy service. We are now too old to learn new Treasons: Alter therefore thy resolution, and to please a woman cast not away so many of thy faithful Followers." Certainly the irresistible powers of Heaven when they decree a mans destruction;

Augustus.

destruction, overthrow those Counsels by which he should escape it. *Antony* turneth a deaf ear to this Souldiers wholesome advice, and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three kisses (as if from the Fountain of her lips he had derived all his courage) without any more ceremony prepareth himself unto the battel.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other side, seeing a necessity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Vessels were more useful and better manned, though fewer than his Enemies: that his men to him were faithful, and by reason of their many Victories, in good heart: From *Antony* were daily revolted some Kings and Captains of note, to the great encouragement of the one side, and disheartning of the other. The whole charge of the War he committed to *M. Vipsanius Agrippa*; who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Gallies whatsoever might be impediments to the valiant, or shelter for the cowardly; all that was cumbersome to his own men, or advantageous to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the battels ready to joyn, *Augustus Caesar* standing where he might see and be seen of all, is said to make this or the like Oration. "Fellows and Companions in Arms, I suppose it needeth to hearten you, which never were acquainted with fear; or bid you overcome, which never yet knew what it was not to vanquish. Conquest hath alwayes sat upon the edges of your swords, and victory been written in your foreheads. Be not now backward to add this one to your other Triumphs. When after the death of my Father *Julius* of famous memory, I first dealt in matters of War, I rather found than made you good Souldiers. And during this twelve year service under me, neither have you been wanting in the duty of faithful followers; nor (I hope) of a vigilant and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expressed my self as far as I could, and more I would, had I been able. Let not the number, nor the greatness of the adverse Gallies any wayes affright you. The hugeness of their Bulks maketh them unapt for employment; and the multitude, one clogging and hindring the others, may as much further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us in multitudes of Men, we them in number of Souldiers. The meaning of the word *Pilot* is unknown among them. And for their *Mariners*, the best of them are but *Carriers, Reapers, and Harrow-men*, raked out of the field; the rest the excrement of common Prisons, wherewith their Vessels are loaded, not manned. The General is indeed a fit Captain for such a selected Company. It is the same *Antony* whom you once drove out of the Field, before *Mutina*. I verily persuade my self, that neither he dares think of recovering, or you of losing your former glories. It is the same *Antony*, who being shamefully chased out of *Parthia*; onely in that he was not vanquished, proclaimed himself *Victor*. It is the same *Antony*, who intended to make *Rome* subject to the *Egyptians*; and to distribute the *Provinces* purchased with the blood and vertue of our Ancestors, amongst *Israel* and her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay indeed, it is not *Antony* at all, but the shadow only of that substance, which now is hid in *Cleopatra's* Cabbins. Courage then brave men of Arms; be, as you have still been, *Conquerours*. To speak more, were to detain you from Victory. Only this, Call to mind your ancient valour. Remember that I am *Caesar*, you *Romans*."

13. This Speech animated the new Souldiers, and confirmed the old; so that with a general acclamation they gave the assault. Death, wounds, and blows, dished in divers fashions, and served in by several men, were the best delicacies prepared for these unwelcome visitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battel, and doubting the success, through the thickest of *Antony's* Fleet, made away with the 60. Gallies appointed for her Guard. This disorder made the breach, at which the Victory entred. *Antony* seeing her flight, left his Squadron also; and being taken into her Galley, hoysed sail for *Egypt*: Herein playing the part of a cowardly Souldier, whilst each of his Souldiers executed the Office of a courageous General. For they so absolutely persisted in the fight, that *AUGUSTUS* was fain to offer them mercy sooner then they would demand it, and divers times before they would accept it. At last they all swore Allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AUGUSTUS* (no loser of advantages) speedeth into *Egypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a Province; making the People pay for fine, twenty millions of Gold. By receiving this money, he so weakened them that they had no ability to raise an after-war; and by distributing part of it among his Souldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he seeing his fortunes desperate, redeemed the honour lost in his life, by a noble and heroic death. And *Cleopatra* ended her life not long after also. A Woman more well-favoured, than fair; well-spoken, rather than either. *Antony's* Courtiers had seen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; men being chained to her by the ears, rather than the eyes.

14. I willingly omit *AUGUSTUS* entry into *Rome*; as also the state and magnificence of his Triumph. His Victory he used so justly, that none felt the fury of the War, but such as were slain in the Battel. To assure himself of *Antony's* adherents, was his first care: to which end he burnt in the Common Forum, the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his friends in *Rome* had been inclosed: well-knowing that as long as any thought themselves suspected Adversaries, they would never shew themselves true Friends. To the *Senators* and *Magistrates* he made sumptuous feasts; to the Common People he exhibited magnificent and pleasing Stage-plays; and with all variety of pleasure, banished from both, as well sorrow for the old *Persecution*, as fear of a new. But this was only as a preparation to his main design. There were two men most dear unto him, and privie to his Counsels, *Mecenas* and *Agrippa*; which in the object of their love, differed only in this, *Mecenas* was a lover of *AUGUSTUS*, *Agrippa* of the Emperour. *Mecenas* was of the rank of *Knights*, a man of good and bad parts equally compounded. When his business required care, vigilant and circumspect; at leisure time, excessively riotous. *Agrippa* was the first of his house; a man alike fit for Camp and Counsel; one neither careless of a good name, nor covetous of a great.

For

Augustus.

For although he only was the man which vanquished *Sextus*, and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the humours of Princes, he gave *Augustus* the honour of all his Conquests; making the vertue, not the reward, the end of his actions. So by doing nobly, and speaking modestly of it, he was without envy, but not without glory. With these two *AUGUSTUS* withdrew into a private Cloister; and then brake unto them in this sort. He made first unto them a long discourse of the Civil Wars; Then added, "That having by his fortune, and the valour of his Souldiers, put an end to the troubles; he was unresolved what to doe; Whether to resign the Empire to the People; or retain it still in his own hands: That in a business of such importance, he durst not rely altogether on his own wisdom; That he had made them his Judges, as men that could speak soundly, and durst speak freely: That he knew them to have more care of his honour, than profit; but of the Common-wealth, more than both: That his Counsels, which course soever he took, would not be by them eliminated. He therefore intreated them to consider what was to be done, and to give up their opinions in it."

15. *Agrippa* after a short silence thus began. "I know, thou canst not but marvel, O *Caesar*, that I who under thine Empire, am sure to be beyond precedent exalted; should persuade thee to live private. But I esteem more thy honour, than my profit; the publick good, than my particular preferment. And yet perhaps my Counsel shall be as profitable, if not as plausible as the contrary. I know thee to be no way delighted with lies and flattery; and will therefore deal with thee freely and plainly. Thou hast indeed put a period to the Civil Wars; but to what end, unless thou dost restore unto the Common-wealth that Liberty for which the Wars were raised? What benefit can the people reap from thy Victory, if thou dost use it only as an instrument, for their greater bondage? Dost thou think that the *Romans* having so many hundred years maintained their Liberty, will now be willing to forgo it? No, *Caesar*, no; Flatter not thy self with these hopes. *Marius* the younger, and *Sertorius*, were quickly cut off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius* thy Father of happy memory, did not long live, after his actions seemed to bring the Common Liberty in hazard. And shall we think that there is no true Roman spirit surviving? No *Brutus* living to attempt the like against thee? Believe me *Caesar*, believe me, it is far better not to meddle with the Empire at all, than to be forced to abandon it. But say Divine Providence will so protect thee, that thou mayest out-live such practices; shalt thou also not out-live thy glories? This present age perchance will not censure thine actions, because it dares not: But Posterity, free from all respects of love or hatred, cannot but call them into question, and brand thy enterprise with Ambition, and perhaps Tyranny. If thy deligins prosper, they will judge thee to have risen unjustly; if otherwise, to have fallen deservedly. How much better then were it, now when thine honour is without blemish, and thy reputation untainted, to resign thy authority. Indeed when *Sextus* lorded it over the Sea, and *Antony* over *Egypt*, it might have been thought want of spirit, to have deposed thy self from the Government. But now to do it, when thou art without Rival in the Empire; now, when thou art sole Commander of the Worlds Forces; now when the People and Senate lie prostrate at the feet of thy mercy; were to strike dumb detraction, and to make future Ages admire thy Temper. Thou art at this present the joy and comfort of the World; there is wanting to thee neither Wealth nor Fame. Here then fix thy foot. For go but one step beyond this *Non ultra*, and thou wilt run into a boundless Ocean of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy life and reputation."

16. "Not so, excellent *Agrippa*, replied *Mecenas*. I never heard good *Pilot* finde fault with *Sea-room*; or of more vessels cast away in the Ocean, than in the Straights, and narrow passages. Our Republick is a Ship fraught with divers Nations. She hath been long tossed on the waves of Civil dissensions, long driven up and down with the Wind of ambition; and there is now no place so fit for her safety, as the unlimited Ocean of one mans power. This Empire at first rising, seemed hot to require a Monarch; but it is now grown too unwieldy, to be without one. Take then upon thee, O *Caesar*, this Empire; or to say better, do not forsake it. I should never thus advise thee, did I conceive any possible inconveniences. The Senate doth allow thee a competent guard of valiant and faithful Souldiers; whom then shouldst thou fear? Nay, ill may I prosper, if I see any cause of fear, were thy Guard cashiered. Enemies thou hast none. For such as were, are either already slain by thy valour, or made thy fast friends, by thy bounty and clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will a little touch at thy Father *Julius*. He too good a Souldier to be a Statist, was too heady and violent in establishing his Government. Nor could he cunningly temporize, and suffer the people insensibly, and by degrees, to drop into bondage; but oppress them all at once. Again, he committed a great Solecism in State, when discharging his Guard, he fought to retain that Empire by fair means, which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, O *Caesar*, to be of a more wary and cunning behaviour. Learn also to work out thine own safety, by *Pompey's* misfortunes. He after the finishing of the Pontick War, at *Brundisium*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited to be accounted an honest and moderate man. Certainly, he shewed himself in the course of this action, rather virtuous than fortunate or politicke. For presently he began to be contemned, and by his improvident weakening of himself, made an open passage to his own ruine. I commend his modesty, more than his brain; neither did he himself, on better considerations, approve his own doings; and therefore he resolved, had he been *Victor* in *Pharsalia*, never to have committed the like oversight. So it is, and so it will fall out with thee, O *Caesar*, if in this action thou propose him to be thy pattern. It is not safe, *Agrippa* saith, to take the Empire; less safe it is to refuse it."

F

A

Augustus.

"A sated and innative vice it is in man, never to endure that any not above our own rank should over-top us. *Rome's* second founder *Camilus*; *Scipio*, that scourge of *Carthage*, were disgraced; and *M. Cæcilianus* banished by our Ancestors: only because their worth had lifted them above the ordinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fare better than thy Predecessors. Heretofore, perchance, thou mightest have sought the *Empire*, to satisfy thy ambition. The *Empire* must now be thy refuge and *Asylum*. Credit me, the *Lords of the Senate*, after so many years of *Obedience*, know not how to *Govern*; neither canst thou having so long been a *Governor*, learn *Obedience*. True it is, that in matters of domestical business, a man may stop and desist where he will: But in the getting of an *Empire*, there is no mean between the death of an *Enemy* and the life of a *Prince*. Thou hast already gone too far to retire. Now thou must resolve to be *Cæsar* or nothing. To say more were superfluous. Thine own discretion will suggest unto thee better Arguments. Only this, I know that thou hast in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an *Emperor*.

17. *AUGUSTUS* seemed to incline to this latter opinion, whether moved with *Mecenas* Orations, especially his instance in *Pompey*; or that he was before resolved to follow that course, is uncertain. Howsoever, seeming with great attention to observe their speeches, and gathering their several reasons and motives together; he made this reply. "A most hard thing it is, for a divided mind to make a well-joyn'd Answer. Divided I am, and troubled between your two opinions; loth to follow either, since in so doing I must offend one. Yet since there is a necessity of Resolution, I intend, though I like well of thy advice, *Agrippa*; to follow thine, *Mecenas*. In doing which, I am but an instrument of the *Destinies*, to put their wills in execution. Often have I heard my Father *Octavius* report, how *Nigidius*, famous for his skill in *Judiciary Astrology*, told him once in open *Senate*, "That he had begotten an *Emperor* for the *Romans*. As also, how *M. Cicero*, so renowned for Wit and Eloquence, dreamed, that he saw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the *Capitol*, with a Whip in mine hand. Certainly, if the Powers of Heaven promise me so great an *Empire*; I will not be wanting to my self; but will add by my industry, to their influence. To further my designs, I do desire you, nay I conjure you both, that as you have been ever ready in your Counsels; so you would not now be backward in any necessary assistance. This said, they presently enter into a new conference, how to manage a business of this weight; what *Senators* to acquaint with their intent; how to dispose of the *Army*, not yet cashiered: with what Plummet it were best to found the minds of the common people, and to oblige all forts unto him. This Consultation ended, *AUGUSTUS* continued his affability to the *People*, and respect to the *Nobles*. An opportunity he had to express himself to both. There was at that time a Famine, which shrewdly raged among the *Commons*. To the poorer sort, he distributed Corn, gratis; to others at a mean price. Riches and honours he communicated to both forts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the ancient freedoms. Such parts of the *City* as were destroyed by casualty of fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil Wars*, he re-edified. Houses of *Common-Assemblies* he repaired; Temples, consecrated to the gods, he spared no cost to adorn and beautify. And finally, to freely diffused his bounty, that there was no part or member of the *City* which had not some taste of it. Next, he dismissed his Souldiers, assigning them Lands and habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That so the *People* might conceive his *Resignation* to be real; and yet, if need were, his forces might be quickly re-assembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* wanting for their parts, to promote the cause: but carefully acquainted some of the *Senate* with it, who stood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had stood indifferent.

18. The foundation thus laid, and the *Senate* sate, *AUGUSTUS* rose from his seat, and spake to this, or the like effect. "When I consider with my self the infinite extent of the *Roman Empire*; I protest I stand at a maze: marvelling how such, as heretofore have raised combustions in the State, durst undertake the sole administration of it. What Nation in the World hath not either begged their Peace at our Gates; or felt the fury of our Wars at their own? What Countreys have we not harried with Fire and Sword; making the rising and setting of the Sun the bounds of our Dominions? It must questionless proceed from an over-weening conceit in them, of their own abilities; who thought themselves so fit to undergo that burden, which none but the immortal gods can carry. Of my self I will not say much. Only, I hope I may say with modesty, that I am not inferior to *Cinna*, nor it may be to *Sylla*: Yet have I found in my self, by late experience, how unable I was to manage the affairs of State, even then when I had two *Conditors*. There is no *Atlas* of strength sufficient, to bear up this *Heaven*; No *Star* of influence sufficient, to animate this *Sphere*; No one form of virtue sufficient, to actuate this *matter*. Neither indeed is it fit, that the *Republick* which ought to be immortal, should depend only on the life and welfare of one man. There never was, since the beginning of time, a *City* replenished with greater store of worthy and able men, either to consult or execute. Never was there seen so grave and discreet a *Consistory*; Never so many of both sorts, so fit to govern. I have by your Directions, and the Valour of your Souldiers, put an end to all homebred quarrels. I have been your instrument to reduce Peace internal and external, to your *City*; and desire now no other *Guerdon*, or recompense for any former services, than a quiet and a private life; free from all such dangers and inconveniences, as are inseparably annexed to the Sovereignty. Now therefore, and may my action be auspicious and fortunate to my Countrey, do I resign my authority; committing my self, and the *Common-wealth* into the hands of the *Senate* and *People* of *Rome*.

19. This Oration ended, there followed a soft and silent buzzing in the house. Some supposed this speech

Augustus.

speech not to have so much truth, as art and cunning: yet smothered their conceits for fear of after-claps. Others were creatures of his own making; and they hoping to rise in the fall of their Countrey, would not hear of a *Resignation*. Some few of the wiser sort thought it not expedient, to put the *Reins* again into the hands of the *Multitude*. The rest out of a sluggish and phlegmatick Constitution, chose rather the present estate with security, than to strive to recover the old with danger. All therefore with a joyn't consent proclaim him sole *Emperor*; and solemnly entreat him to save the *Common-wealth*, otherwise running to inevitable ruine. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly persisted to desire him. At last, wearied with the clamours of all in general, and importunity of some in particular; he by little and little yielded to their requests, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten years, with this Proviso; that if before that time expired, he could fully settle and order the present State, he would give up his charge. This he gave out, not with a purpose of performance; (for at the end of every *Decennium* he renewed his Lease of the Government;) But that the people seeing so high a possibility of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practise against him. Whereas, had he for term of life received the supreme Authority, he had no doubt hastned his own overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithete *Perpetual*, was the destruction of *CÆSAR*: And yet a great respect was had also in the choice of the Title. The name of *King* he refused, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much desired it; lest they should suppose that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the people called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments; desiring them to discharge him of a name so hated; and being once called Lord, (*Domini*) he forbade also that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted: well knowing, that the like glorious attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which least loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred, he might the sooner be dispatched. Nor was he ignorant that the *Common people* led more by appearances, than truth; discerned names more plainly than executions: and that the only course to make greatness stand firmly, was to receive extraordinary power under a Title not offensive. The name also of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been something in him more than mortal) he refused not; as a Title expressing more dignity and reverence than authority. And having pleased himself in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the establishment of his power, which he thus pursued.

20. When first at the hands of the *Lords of the Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts of Praetorian Souldiers* for the guard of his person; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double wages of a *Legionary* souldier, to make them the more vigilant and heedful in their charge. Over these he appointed two *Prefects* or *Governors*, (*Captains of the Guard* we may best term them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed danger; to more, confusion. *Agrippina*, to settle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom she had at her devotion, the sole Captain: and *Nymphidius*, fallen from his hopes of setting *Galba* besides the quishon; desired the command of the *Guard*, as the next step to Sovereignty. In choice of these Captains, he observed two Rules. First, he ever chose them, *ex ordine Equestris*, not *Senatorial*; lest that so high a dignity joyned to so high a birth, might startle their resolutions to some designs against his quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two such, as were of contrary humours, and somewhat at odds; that so the ill intents of the one (if they should harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both, in a noble emulation, should contend to be most forward in his service. The next course which he took for his own security, was a law he made to curb the wills and attempts of the great ones. For whereas it had been formerly unlawful to question a *Bondman*, in matters concerning the life and death of his Lord; *AUGUSTUS* passed an Act, that all such *Bondmen* should be first sold to him, or the *Common-wealth*. By means whereof he kept the *Lords*, before presuming on the secrecies of their slaves, from all close and private Conspiracies against him. Having thus strengthened his person, he assumed to himself the *Imperial, Censorial, and Tribunitian* authority, together with the *Sacerdotal* dignity. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could press Souldiers, raise Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very best and stoutest of the *Senators*. As *Censor*, it was in his power to reform corrupt manners, enquire after mens carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he listed; to place and displace the people from a more honourable Tribe, to a less honourable. Yet would he not be called *Censor*, as a name too inferior; but accepted the *Prerogatives* of it; after the surrendry of *Manlius*, and his associate; two men so unfit for that *Magistracy*, that they could object no crime to old or young, of which themselves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian* authority enabled him to hinder any thing attempted against his liking. It preserved his person from all contumely and injury; giving him power to punish, as an execrable person, (yea, and without any formality of the Law) whosoever had offended him either in word or deed. As for the *Pontifical* Dignity, it made him a little more revered, not more potent. Only it added to his title the title of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Bishop*; and made him of authority amongst the Priests, and in sacred matters, things that concerned *Religion*. The light of Reason taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a *Prince*, to have command on all his people; He had been else but half a *Monarch*, such as some Princes are with us; who quit their *Clergy* to be governed by a *Foreign Head*.

21. These several *Prerogatives* annexed together, seemed not yet sufficient; and therefore he so cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the *Coactive power* of the Law. Which once obtained, he seriously bends his thoughts to settle the *Common-wealth*; and so to settle it, that by uniting all parties, and giving satisfaction to all Interests, it might not be obnoxious to such frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein, when he

Augustus. had consulted the ancient *Platforms*, he found no small difficulty. The Form described by *Plato*, shewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Aristotle*, though bred in the *Free States of Greece*, was a friend to *Monarchy*; but his discourses dark, and speculative, and not easily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority, the Nobles too little, the King none. The old *Carthaginian Legislator* attributed too much to Riches, too little to Virtue. The *Persian* Law-makers indulged the King too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other side, *Lycurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, ascribed too little to the King, and too much to the Senate. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of some particular Lawes, than the Framers of a Commonwealth. *Phœbus*, and *Hippadamus*, as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old *Patterns* did come home to his purpose; and withall considering with himself, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by consequence subject unto change: he resolved to frame his Commonwealth out of the perfections of the three good Forms, their imperfection being rejected, reserving to himself the Supreme Majesty, to the Senate eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a just and fit proportion. And to say truth, he did so mix the Sovereignty of one, with the Liberty of all; that both the Lords and People, without fear of bondage or sedition, enjoyed their accustomed *Freedoms*. The Consuls and Nobles of the City assembled as formerly they used; matters of State they handled by themselves; Ambassadors of foreign Nations they heard, and dispatched. The Commons assembled in the *Comitia*, to enact Lawes and elect Magistrates, as in the free Commonwealth. Yet so that nothing was done without the consent and privy of the Prince, who for the most part, nominated the successive Magistrate, leaving the confirmation of him to the people. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the silent approbation of both Estates, as seeming to consist more in the alteration of the Magistrate, than of the Lawes.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the first care he took, was to confirm Religion in the same State in which he found it. I mean Religion, as the Romans used the word, for those particular, though Idolatrous Forms of Worship, which to their several gods had been used among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or chief Bishop of the City; yet very wisely he forbore it. It is not safe for Princes that are seated in a long descent of Government, to be too active, in such changes: But it is dangerous to attempt it in a green State, and in an Empire not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more sensible of the smallest alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raise more frequent broils about it. The Romans specially were exceeding tender in this point. The ancient *Ædiles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external either gods or Ceremonies, to be introduced into the City. And by *Æmilius* it was enacted for a Law, That none should offer sacrifice in any publick place, after a new and Foreign fashion. Excellent therefore was the counsel which *Mæcenas* gave him, when he first undertook the Empire, viz. "That he should follow constantly the Religion which he found established, and compell others also to do the like. For Foreign and strange Rites (saith he) will offend the people, work many inconvenience alterations in the Civil State; yea and most likely will occasion many both seditions and conspiracies. Words which he spake not to the air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehensive of the best advice. Nor did *AUGUSTUS* ever shew himself more careful in any one Art of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mæcenas* noted, we finde true in these later Ages; in times more skillful of obedience, than the most quiet hour of *AUGUSTUS* Government. No one thing more hath caused so frequent and so general Rebellions in the States of *Christendome*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious resolution in a late mighty Monarch: Better some few corruptions should be suffered in a Church, than still a Change.

23. Religion thus established, in the next place the welfare of the whole Empire consisted chiefly in reforming of the City; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the City the corruption was most apparent in the Senate it self. With them therefore he begetteth, well knowing that crimes in men of eminent place end not in themselves; but by degrees become diffused among their Clients and Followers. Now in the Senate were many and deservetless men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour such as were most potent. Of these he expelled none by his own power; but making a speech to them in the Senate, of the ancient order and present confusion of the house, he first exhorted them to look back on their former lives, and to judge of their own abilities and merits, for so honourable a room. Then he desired some of them to pick out such among them, as were in disposition fawning, and in life faulty, but loth to conceive so ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that the great Thief leadeth the less to the Gallies; and as *Commynes* observeth, that after the Battel of *Monliherry*, Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on such as ran ten miles beyond them: So remained many in the Senate, neither less vicious, nor less violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than some others whom they had removed. *AUGUSTUS* therefore joyning to him *Agrippa*, proceedeth to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the settling of his affairs, that none should have a voice in that famous Council, but such as were of able judgements, honest repute, and well-affected to his Service and the Commonwealth. An enterprise which he esteemed so dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no Senator till he were searched: himself wearing a Brigandine under his Gown; and being environed with ten of the most courageous and best beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kinde inexcusable, he discharged from their attendance; electing such in their places, which were either ennobled for their wisdom, of noted moderation, or otherwise strong in their de-

Augustus. dependants. Yet so that greatness of Revenue was esteemed neither a fit Patronage for any, if they were offensive; nor a just cause to challenge interest in the house. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the minde, than those of fortune, he relieved with honourable Penions: and finally he bestirred himself so resolutely, that all confessed that they had need of such a wife Physician, to cure that dull Consumption, whereinto the Commonwealth was fallen.

24. In other things he seldom did proceed against them as of himself; but when that any of them had conspired his ruine, he referred them to the judgement of their fellowes. And this he did partly to reserve unto the Court the ancient Prerogative; partly not to be Judge and party in his own cause: but principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretched contempt of his adversaries, used when he was least suspected, under-hand, and by publick Officers, to work their destruction. Many also of them whom the Senate had condemned, he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the questioning of men of high calling, would produce as much terror, though it argued not so much rigour as the punishment. Yet if extremity of law was used towards some few, it was to settle quietness in the whole; and as it were a particular blood-letting for the general health. Those who had followed the factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not so only, but by manifesting his words by his deeds, and adding trusts and honours to his pardons; he made his Chair of State more settled, and immoveable. So *Cæsar* by erecting the slain and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own statues stand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the Nobles, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italie*. For well he knew, that an Empire unsettled, and Provinces not quieted; the preference and authority of men of that rank, might raise greater troubles, than could be easily suppressed. Examples he wanted not, that especially of *Cato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, stirred such a War against *Cæsar* in *Africa*, that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to imprison them, he licensed them at their pleasure, to visit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonnoise*, Provinces close to the Continent of *Italie*, altogether unfurnished for Wars; and indeed such, as by reason of the variety of pleasures in them used, were more likely to weaken their mindes, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the Senate some sweet meat to their fowre sawce; he as much honoured and revered that Order, as ever it was in the Free-State: submitting himself to their Judgements, and appearing of his own accord, at most of their dayes of Session. Out of those he chose 15 alterable every half year, to be of his Privy Council; but then changing them for others: that so all of them might participate that honour; and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his secrets. At his entrance into the Senate, he used courteously to salute the Lords; and so likewise at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*, so much to sleight the Lords of that House, as he always did: never making to them any obeysance, no not then, when they came to tell him what honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the great Ones, soon made the lower sort more careful; both to observe good order, and to learn obedience. Yet did not *AUGUSTUS* refer all to President, but somewhat to Precept. The Roman Knights he enforced to yield an account of their lives; a course full of health and wisdom: Idleness being the root of all private vices, and publick disorders. To the Commons in their *Comitia* and other meetings, he prescribed Lawes and Orders as himself listed. The old authority of the Tribunes, dashed in the *Dictatorship* of *Sylla*, he would not restore. He suffered them to intercede for the People, but not to prefer or hinder any Bill, to the advancement or the prejudice of their Estate. Without this curb, the Common sort would never have suffered him to sit fast in the Saddle. For had the people had their Tribunes, and had the Tribunes had their ancient dignity and power, which they had usurped; there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the Common-people, especially if nuzled in a factious Liberty, from the designs of Sovereign Princes.

26. The City thus reformed in the principal errors and defects of it; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleasures; as shewes of Fencers, Stage-plays, Combats of wilde beasts, publick Dancings, with variety of other delightful spectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as fearing lest their cogitations, for want of other objects, would fix themselves upon his actions, and the old freedoms. And therefore when some of his more severe and rigid Counsellors advised him to interdict all such publick pastimes, alleging, that the meetings of the people at those sports, and in so great numbers might at last end in some great tumult and sedition to the endangering of his person, and destruction of his whole Estate; it was thus over-ruled by *Mæcenas* (his most trusty Favourite) *Ex-pedit tibi, O Cæsar, plebem sic occupatam esse*, that it best agreed with his affairs, to have the minds of the people taken up with these sports and pastimes, by which being sweetened and appeased, they were the less sensible of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horse-races, Tilts, and Tournaments, as he gladly cherished them, so he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That so that City being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be stored with good Horses, and expert Riders. Such of the Commons as were behinde hand, he relieved: and when that many of them had made him Heir to their goods; he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any Prince but a Tyrant, presently restored to the Children of the deceased the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AUGUSTUS*; as true a Guardian of Orphans, as a Father of his Countrey. Such Princes as gape covetously after other mens possessions, seldom enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treasures of Kings are then greatest, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he seemed to leave unto the people, which they thought most pleasing; Liberty of Speech.

Augustus. Wherein sometimes they were so licentious, that they spared not *Agrippa* himself; so potent with the Emperor. But he, good man, never using the Princes favour to the prejudice of any, seemed not to mark their taunts and slanders; whether with greater moderation or wisdom, I cannot tell. Neither did *AUGUSTUS* scape their foolish *Pasquils* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing that contumelies of that nature slighted and contemned, soon vanish of themselves; but if repined and stormed at, seem to be acknowledged. A temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of wisdom in both of them. It is the misery of the best Princes, even when they do well to be ill spoken of. And therefore many times such follies are with more policy dissembled than observed, by the greatest Kings.

27. As for this Lavishness of the tongue, it is a humour that springeth for the most part, rather from a delight in prating, than any malice of the heart: and they which use it are more troublesome than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the fat men, but the lean and spare. And so *AUGUSTUS* thought, that not men liberal of speech, but silent, close, and sparing of their words, were most likely to raise tumults. Moreover, as long as the Common People retained this Liberty of speech, they were the less sensible of the loss of Liberty in State. Whereas in the days of *Domitian*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their secret sighs and tears were registered, then began they to look back with a serious eye on the old and Common Liberty. *Neglect* is the best remedy for this Talking vein. When the humour is spent, the People will cease on their own accords: till then, no forces can compell them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping by force to hinder the continual reports of *Vespasians* revolt; that being the only way to increase, not diminish the rumour. And as much he extolleth (I will not say how fitly) the Reign of *Prince Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the subject to think what he would, and speak what he thought.

28. These courses though he took to rectifie the Senate, and content the people, yet he stayed not here. There were too many of both sorts, dangerous and unquiet spirits, who stomached his proceedings; and under pretence of the ancient Liberty, were apt to any bold attempt, and sudden alteration. These as he winked at for the present, so he employed them (as occasion served) in his foreign Wars. Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Souldiers had displeased him, in their Mutinies and Tumults, would lead them presently unto some desperate and dangerous service: So weakening both his Foes which lay next unto him, and punishing those Souldiers which had disobeyed him. For though *AUGUSTUS* had thrice shut the Temple of *Janus*, and cherished Peace, no Emperor more, of so large a Territory: yet when he saw his times, and that mens mindes were active, and their thoughts disquieted; he could find presently occasion for some new employment. In this a Body Politick may be compared most fitly to the Body Natural. When we are full of blood, and our spirits boyling, there is not any Physick better then Phlebotomy. But if a vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our estate commonly is dangerous, and almost incurable. So Princes, when their people are tumultuous and apt to mischief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkning after action: do commonly employ them in some service far from home; that there they may both vent their Anger, and employ their Courage. For let them stay at home to confirm their practices, and grow at last into a Faction; the State will suffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer instance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth *Henry*, and the times next following: Whose foreign Wars kept us all quiet here at home, wasted those humours, and consumed those fiery spirits; which afterwards, the wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29. But his main work was to content the Souldiers, and to make them sure. Some of which he dispersed as before I said, all about Italy, in 32 Colonies; as well for the defence of the Countrey, as for their more speedy reassembly, if need should require. Abroad amongst the Provinces were maintained upon the common charge 23 Legions with their aids; besides 10000 of his Guard, and those which were appointed for the bridling and safety of the City. As to all of them, he shewed an excellent thankfulness for their faithful services; so in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whose name the Histories of that Age have not remembered. This latter had valiantly behaved himself at the battel of *Actium*: and being summoned to appear before the Lords of the Senate, in a matter which concerned his life, cried to *AUGUSTUS* for succour; who assigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breast, and shewing him the marks of many wounds; These (quoth he) have I received *AUGUSTUS* in thy service, never supplying my place by a Deputy. Which said, the Emperor descending to the Bar, pleaded the Souldiers cause, and won it. Never did Sovereign Prince, or any that command in Chief, lose any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly spreading it self over all the Provinces, did so indeed him to the Military men, that they all thought their services well recompensed, in his graciousness to that one man. And now were they so far given over to him, that the honours conferred on *Agrippa*, could not increase their love; well it might their admiration. *Agrippa* was of a mean and common Parentage. But supplying the defects of his Birth, with the perfections of his Mind; he became very potent with *AUGUSTUS*; who not only made him Consul, but his companion in the Tribunitian authority, and Provoost of the City. So many titles were now heaped on him, that *Mecenas* perswaded the Prince, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife: affirming it impossible for *Agrippa* to live safe, considering how open new Creatures lie to the attempts of malicious men, unless he were ingrafted into the Royal Stem of the *Cæsars*. On which cause questionless, for the stronger establishment of his new Honours; *Sejanus* afterwards attempted, but not with the like success, the like match with *Livia*, *Tiberius* Daughter-in-Law.

30. The Senate, People, and Men of War, thus severally reduced to a Mediocrity of power and content; the

Augustus. the next labour is to alter the old, and establish a new Government of the City it self. To effect which, he dashed all former Laws, by which the Allies and Confederates of the State were made free Denizens of the Town. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole Empire into one City; and by the monstrous growth and increase of that, to make poor the rest. Therefore this privilege he communicated unto a few only: partly that in the times of dearth, the City might not so much feel the want of sustenance; and partly that so ancient an honour might not be disesteemed; but principally lest Rome replenished with so huge a multitude of stirring and unruly spirits, should grow too headstrong to be governed in due order. The greatest and most populous Cities, as they are prone unto faction and sedition; so is the danger greatest, both in it self, and the example, if they should revolt. This provident course notwithstanding, there were in Rome men more than enough; and among them not a few male-contented and murmurers at the present state, such as contemned the Consul, and hated the Prince. To keep these in compass, *AUGUSTUS* (it being impossible for him to be still resident at Rome, and dangerous to be absent) constituted a Provoost of the City for the most part chosen out of the Senators: assigning him a strength of 6000 men, called *Milites Urbani*, or the City-souldiers. To him he gave absolute and Royal authority, both in the Town and Territory neer adjoining, during his own absence. To him were appeals brought from the other Magistrates; and finally to his Tribunal were referred all causes of importance, not in Rome only, but the greatest part of Italy. *Mestalla* was the first Provoost, but proof being had of his insufficiency, the charge was committed to *Agrippa*: who did not only settle and confirm the City, but did the best he could to free the adjoining parts of Italy from Thieves and Robbers; and stopped the courses of many other troublers of the present State. And yet he could not with that power either so speedily, or so thoroughly reform all those mischiefs; which in the late unsettled times were become predominant, as he did desire.

31. It is recorded that in the Civil wars of *Marius* and *Sylla*, one *Pontius Telesinus* of the *Marian* Faction, told his General, that he did well to scour the Countrey; but Italy would never want Wolves as long as Rome was so fit a Forrest, and so neer to retire unto. The like might have been spoken to *Agrippa*; That he did well to clear the common Rodes and Passages, but Italy would never want Thieves, whilst Rome was so good a place of Refuge. For though he did, as far as humane industry could extend, endeavour a general Reformation both within the City and without; yet neither could he remedy, nor foresee all mischiefs. Still were there many, and those great disorders committed in the night season; when as no eye, but that to which no darkness is an obstacle, could discern the Male-factors. For in the first Proscription, many men used to walk the streets well weaponed; pretending only their own safety, but indeed it was to make their best advantage of such men, as they met either in unfrequented Lanes and Passages, or travelling as their occasions did direct them, in the Night. To repress therefore the foul insolencies of these Sword-men, *AUGUSTUS* did ordain a Watch, consisting of 7000 Free-men, their Captain being a Gentleman of Rome. In the day time, the Guard of the Town was committed to the Provoost, and his City Souldiers; These *Vigils* resting in their standing Camps. In the night season, one part took their stations in the most suspicious places of the City; another, in perpetual motion traversed the streets: the rest lying in the Corps de Garde, to relieve their Companions. By which means he not only remedied the present disorders, but preserved the City from danger of Fire also: Yea and secured himself from all Night-rumults, which carry with them (though but small) more terror and affrightment, than greater Commotions in the day. Never till now were the common people Masters of their own, both Lives and Substance. And now was travel in the Night, as safe, though not so pleasant, as at Noon.

32. The People and City thus settled, his next study is to keep the Provinces in a liking of the Change. But little Rhetorique needed to win their liking, who had long desired the present form of Government: mistrusting the Peoples Regiment, by reason of Noblemens factions, covetousness of Magistrates, the Laws affording no security, being swayed hither and thither by ambition and corruption. These Provinces when he first took the Government, he thus divided. Asia, Africa, Numidia, Beticæ, Narbonensis, Sicilia, Corsica, Sardinia, all Greece, Crete, Cyprus, Pontus, and Bithynia, being quiet and peaceable Provinces, of known and faithful obedience, he assigned unto the Senate. But the new conquered Regions, such as had not digested their loss of liberty, with whom any Rebellion or War was to be feared; he retained under his own command. Such were *Tarracensis*, *Lusitanica*, *Lugdunensis*, *Germania*, *Belgica*, *Aquitania*, *Syria*, *Silicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Mysia*, *Pannonia*, &c. And this he did, as he gave out, to sustain the danger himself alone, leaving unto the Senate all the sweets of ease: but the truth was, to keep them without Arms, himself always strong and in a readiness. The notable effects of which Counsell did not discover themselves only, by the establishment of the Empire in his own person during life, and the continuance of it in the house of the *Cæsars* (though men of most prodigious Vices) after his decease: but in some of the Ages following also. For when the Family of the *Cæsars* was extinct in *Nero*, the Imperial Provinces being so strong, and perceiving the Consular so weak; assumed to themselves the creating, and establishing of the following Princes. Thus *Galba* was made Emperor by the Spanish and French Legions, *Vitellius* by the German, *Vespasian* by the Syrian and Pannonian: The Consular Provinces never stirring, either to prevent their attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could do, was but to betray the poor old man and all his Family to a tragick end. And yet he did not so appropriate those Provinces to the Senate, but that they also (as well as those which he reserved unto himself) were specified particularly in his private Register. In which (the better to manage the affairs of the Empire) he had set down what Tributes every of them payed, what Presents they sent.

Augustus. sent in, what *Customs* in them were levied. That book also comprehended the wealth of the public *Treasury*, and necessary charge issuing out of it: What number of *Citizens* and *Allies* there were in Arms; what strength there was by Sea: with all other circumstances, the extent, strength, riches, and particulars of his estate. *Williams of Normandy* did the like at his first entrance into *England*, when he composed that *Censal Roll* of all this Kingdom, which we call *Dooms-day Book*, or the *Roll of Winton*; according unto which, *Taxations* were imposed, and *Aids* exacted. The greatest *Princes* have not thought it a disparagement to be good *Husbands*; to know the riches of their *Crowns*, and have an eye to their *Intrado*.

33. *Britain* was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either because from hence there neither was much hope of profit, nor much fear of hurt; or else because being more desirous to keep than enlarge the *Monarchy*, he thought it most expedient to confine it within the bounds appointed by Nature. *Danubius* on the North, *Mount Atlas* on the South, *Euphrates* on the East, and the main Ocean on the West, did both bound his *Empire* and defend it. Some *Kingdoms* have their limits laid out by Nature, and those which have adventured to extend them further have found it fatal. The *Persians* seldom did attempt to stretch their *Territory* beyond *Oxus*, but they miscarried in the action. And what was that poor River, if compared unto the Ocean? Many who loved *allion*, or expected preferment by the Wars, incited him unto the conquest and plantation of these *Countreys*. Affirming, "That the barbarous people were naturally bad Neighbours; and though for the present not very strong, nor well skilled in Arms, yet might a weak Enemy in time gather great strength. That he ought to pursue the War for his Father *Julius* sake, who first shewed that Island to the *Romans*: that it yielded both refuge and supply to Malecontents of *Gaul*, and Enemies in *Germany*: That he would lose the benefit of a wealthy *Countrey*, stored with all manner of provision; and the command of a valiant Nation, born (as it were) unto the Wars. That it was an Apostasie from honour, to lie still, and add nothing to the conquest of his Ancestors: That he was in all equity bound as far as in him was, to reduce to *Civility* from *Barbarism*, so many proper and able men. But to these motives he replied, "That he had already refused to wage War with the *Parthians*, a more dangerous neighbour, and far worse enemy than the *Britains*: That he had waite and desert ground enough in his own *Dominions*, for many a large *Plantation*, when he saw it needful: That he had constantly refused, though with great facility he might, to conquer any more of the barbarous Nations: That as in the *Natural body*, a surfeit is more dangerous than fasting; so in the *Body Politick*, too much is more troublesome than too little: That the *Roman Monarchy* had already exceeded the *Persian*, and *Macedonian*; and to extend it further, was the next way to make it totter and fall by its own weight. That he had learned in the *Fable* not to lose the substance by catching at the shadow. And finally, "that many puissant Nations lay in and about *Britany*, against whom *Garrisons* must be kept; and he feared the *Revenues* would not quit the *Cost*. And so the enterprize of *Britain* was quite laid aside.

34. For the assurance of the *Provinces* already conquered, he dispersed into them 23 *Legions*, with their *Aids*; whose pay only, besides provision of Corn, and Officers wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our *English* pounds, and somewhat more, were so duly paid unto the *Armies*, that we read seldom in the Histories of that *Empire*, of any *Mutiny* among the *Souldiers*, for want of pay. An happiness whereof these ages have been little guilty. For the amassing of this treasure, and defraying of this charge, *AUGUSTUS* made not use only of his own *Revenue*. Wars which are undertaken, and *Souldiers* that are levied for the common safety, ought in all reason to be maintained on the common purse. The Grandeur and security of an *Empire*, concerns in all respects, as much the *People* as the *Prince*. For which cause he erected an *Exchequer* in the City, which was called *Ærarium militare*, or the *Souldiers Treasury*; whereto the twentieth part of every mans Estate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was esteemed a heavy burden at the first, and indeed it was, but that the people felt the sweetness and effects of it in the common safety. In that respect, the interest was greater than the principal. *Subjects* that have a care either of the common peace or honour, will not repine at payments and taxations, though more than ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that *Princes* either are able or obliged, to maintain the Wars without assistance from their people: or that the treasures which in these respects they give the *King*, they do not give unto themselves. I may perhaps repute him for a cunning *Sophister*, but never for a faithful Subject, which coyns distinctions betwixt the welfare of the *King*, and the weal of the *Kingdome*. These *Legions* he employed as occasion was, either to curb the *Natives*, or secure the *Borders*. The *Roman Empire* seldom had such perfect peace, but that there were employments always for the *Souldiers*. If that they had in any place a short cessation from the Wars, yet they were not idle. Idleness doubtless is the greatest enemy to *Martial Discipline*. Therefore he kept them at such times perpetually busied, either in paving *Bogs*, or in draining *Marshes*. By means whereof, he made not only many of the *Barbarous Countreys*, both fruitful in themselves, and profitable to the *Chequer*: but thereby also he secured his own affairs, and disarmed his enemies. For many times the *Barbarous people* trusting to such advantages, were apt too often to rebel; and having got themselves within those *Mynes* and *Fastnesses*, stood on their *Guard*, as in some fashionable or defensible *Forreys*. The surest means to keep a conquered people from all occasion of revolting, is to lay waste their *Wood-Lands*, and makes all parts passable. The opportunity of a safe retreat, makes not more *Theatres* than *R-bels*.

35. Those whom he placed over his *Provinces* and *Armies*, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer stay might teach them too much cunning,

Augustus. in practising on the dispositions of the people, and perhaps prompt them to work into the favour of the *Natives*, and the Men of War; and so at last to establish in themselves a *Sovereignty*. *Cæsar* long stay in *Gaul*, (a second five years being added unto that which was first allowed him) made him so potent with the *People*, and gracious with the *Souldiers*, that in the end he brought the *Roman Empire* under his subjection. And on the other side, to take them from their charges under three years continuance, were to have called them home, before they were well learned in the *Customs* and the nature of the *Provinces*; so making them unable to instruct their *Successors*. As for the men whom he employed in those commands, he culled them always out of the most valiant and upright in the *Camp* and *Senate*. A *Prince* more willing and desirous not to employ men likely to offend, than after the offence to punish and chastise them for it.

36. Besides his forces by Land, he also maintained at Sea two invincible *Armadoes*. The one lay at Anchor near *Ravenna*, in the upper Sea, to awe and defend *Dalmatia*, *Crete*, *Greece*, *Cyprus*, *Asia*, &c. The other at *Misenum* in the lower Sea, to protect and keep under *Gaul*, *Spain*, *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, &c. Neither was this the only use of two such puissant *Fleets*, but in all probability they were to cleanse the Sea of *Pirates*; to have a care to the conducting of the *Tributes* and *Customs* into the *Exchequer*; and served also for transporting *Corn*, and other necessary provisions, for the sustenance and relief of the City. In the ensuing *Civil Wars*, these two Navies proved to be of great importance: The revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one side, as a comfort to the other. The principal assurance of *Otho* in his Wars, was the immovable fidelity of the *Misenian Fleet*; and the siding of the other with *Vespasian*, brake the hearts of *Vitellius* best followers.

37. Now as he thus strengthened the *Provinces* in general, so did he cast an especial eye on three particulars, viz. *Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Egypt*. *Italy* rounded Rome the *Metropolis* of the *Empire*; and therefore he ought to be well assured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Bellum Sociale* raised by the people of that *Countrey*, in the *Free State*, more shook and endangered the *Empire*, than the *Invasions* of *Pyrrius* or *Annibal*. Therefore as formerly he planted in it two and thirty *Colonies*, of old and trusty *Souldiers*, to keep it sure unto himself; so now he did divide it into eleven *Regions*, each having peculiar *Magistrates* and *Under-Officers*. This not so much to ease the *City* *Pretor*, although he had employment enough at *Rome*; but because it was thick set, and as it were overlaid with *People*, whose rising might endanger the *Common-wealth*. So by his *Colonies* he kept a *Garrison* upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt: and by his *Officers* and *Judiciaries* (as I may call them) he set so strait a Watch about them, that they durst not practise.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile *Countrey*, stored with a people, valiant in all attempts, and in many desperate. A people with which the old *Romans* fought rather to maintain their own liberty, than to encrease their *Dominions*; a Tribe or Colony of which had sacked the City of *Rome*, and endangered the *Capitol*. A people finally with whom the *Romans* durst not make war, till they had almost all the residue of the World in subjection. Remembrance of their ancient Reputation, and store of money, might occasion many desperate practices against the quiet of the *Empire*. The readiest way to keep them in obedience, was to keep them poor: for without wealth high *stomachs* may well feed on the hope of *Liberty*, but digest it never. *Licinius* his *freed-man*, was the fittest fellow for such an Office, who is presently made the *Tauk-master* of the *Province*. The *Gauls* used to pay a Monthly *Tribute*, which he much inhauced (besides private and petty means of proling) by making fourteen Moneths in a year. The *Solicitors* of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AUGUSTUS*. He sometimes yielded unto them, sometimes excused his *freed-man*; some things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he dissembled. *Licinius* to make up his peace, sent to the Emperor all his treasure, and that huge Mass of Gold and Silver by those unlawful means heaped up together: which he not only willingly received, but his turn being served, and the *Gauls* not a little impoverished; he recalled *Licinius*, and sent *Tiberius* to settle the *Province*. So old and common a thing it is with great *Princes*, to suffer their *Vice-Roys*, and *Under-Officers*, to suck like *Sponges*, the Wealth of the *Subject*, till they are quite full; and then to squeeze them into their own *Coffers*.

39. But the *Province* whose tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt*; not so much for the valour and courage of the *Inhabitants*, as the natural strength and situation of the place. *Alexander* of *Macedon* having annexed it to his *Empire*, never committed the entire Government and Jurisdiction thereof, to one man; fearing lest he presuming on the wealth of the *People*, and size of the *Countrey*, would settle the possession in himself. And so *AUGUSTUS* calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconstancy of the *Natives*; that it was very rich in coyn; and the *Roman Granary* (as serving the City four Moneths yearly with *Corn*) not only trusted nor the rule thereof into the hands of any of the *Senators*, but expressly forbid any of that Order (without his special permission) to sojourn there. It is a principle in *State*, never to license men of great houses, and credit among the people, to have free access into that *Countrey*, whose revolt may endanger the whole *Empire*. Wherefore it was a weakness doubtless in the Council of *King Henry* the sixth, to suffer *Richard Duke of York*, to pass at pleasure into *Ireland*; where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought supply both of Men and Money. But to return to *Egypt*, *Germanicus* entering once into *Alexandria*, only to see the *Antiquities* of it, and return; stirred such suspicions, and distractions in the jealous head of *Tiberius*, that he spared not sharply to rebuke him for it. *Vespasian* also being by the *Syrian Legions* chosen Emperor, first assured himself of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land; with a small power, against a strong host easily defended. This place he resolved to make his *Sanctuary*, if his designs succeeded not luckily. And to this place he hastened, after the defeat

AUGUSTUS.

defeat of the Vitellian Army; that so detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by Famine compel the City of Rome to stand at his devotion. The Government of this Province was by AUGUSTUS always committed to some one of the Roman Gentry, as less able, by reason of his low condition, to work against the Princes safety. Neither would he allow his Deputy the glorious attributes of Lieutenant, Legatus, Proconsul, or Prætor. Captain or President of Egypt was their highest Title; there being even in Titles no small motives to Ambition.

40. AUGUSTUS having by these means reduced both the City and Provinces under his absolute command, and being now declining in strength, by reason of a sudden and violent sickness; began to call his wits to Council, how to dispose of the Estate after his decease. Male-child he never had any. His Daughter Julia, a woman of immodest carriage, never made further use of her fathers greatness, than that she satisfied her Lusts with the greater insolence. Marcellus, his Sisters son, and Julias husband, was a young man of an ingenious disposition, and seemingly capable of the fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, AUGUSTUS preferred to the Pontifical dignity, and Adulthood: Yet once upon his sickness, he privately determined to choose a Successor in the Common-wealth, rather than his own Family; and not to leave the Empire to Marcellus, whom he held unable to undergo it, but to his companion in Arms, Agrippa; a man daunted neither with adverse, nor altered with prosperous fortunes. This Marcellus afterwards so stomached, that he began to grutch at Agrippas greatness, and to bear a vigilant eye on his plots and actions. Contrarily, Agrippa unwilling to offend him, under whose future Government he was in all likelihood to end the rest of his dayes, with much ado obtained leave to retire unto Lesbos: that so his absence either might allay, or remove the displeasure, conceived against him by the young Prince. An action full of wisdom, and magnanimity. For though AUGUSTUS chief end was, to discountenance the popular dependencies of his son, by the favours heaped on his servant: yet did Agrippa know, that a Favourite ought to have so much in him of the Persian Religion, as to worship the Rising Sun also; and that he should resemble old Janus with the two faces, with th'one looking on the King regnant, with th'other on the Prince successor.

41. Marcellus being dead, Agrippa returning married his Widow, and on her begat two Sons, Caius and Lucius; whose actions afterward afforded such variety for censure, that there was wanting neither much reason to commend, nor little to condemn them. On these two, or at the least one of them, AUGUSTUS now grown aged, resolves to settle the Estate; and if they failed, upon such others, as by the liberty of the Laws, he might adopt: Adoption, in the estimation of the Roman Laws, being indeed another Nature. Posterity, whether it be natural, or only legal, is the best supporter of the Arms Imperial. Such as both fortifies the Prince, and assures the Subject. Yet this he did not without much reluctance, and a great conflict in his minde. "Sometimes his thoughts suggested to him, that the deligned Successors draw to them all the attendance and respect, from the Prince in possession; That they have always a lingering desire to be actually seated in the Throne; That they suppose the life of the present Prince too tedious, not caring by what means it were shortened; That sometime it is pernicious, yea even to the appointed Successor himself also. On the other side, his better thoughts prompted him to consider, in what a miserable distraction he should leave the Empire, if sudden death should take from him an ability to nominate his heir; The fear conceived in the whole City, at his last sickness; That Pyrrhus of Epirus, was of all hands condemned, for leaving his Kingdom to the sharpest sword; That the Common-wealth fallen into dissensions, could not be settled again without a lamentable War, and a bloody Victory; That the people seeing him childless, would not only condemn him, but perhaps endeavour to recover the old liberty, though with the ruin of the State; That it was the custom of Tyrants, to desire the eternizing of their deaths, by the downfall of their Countreys. His mind thus distracted and perplexed, at last he brake in this manner. "Thou hast, Octavian, a Wolf by the ears, which to hold still, or to let go, is alike dangerous. Many inconveniences may ensue, if thou dost not declare thy Successor; more, if thou dost. The good of the Republique consisteth in knowing the future Prince; Thine own welfare dependeth on the concealment. The Common good is to be preferred before any private; Yet ought Charity to begin at home. No, Octavian, no; As thou hast receiv'd, so shew thy self worthy of the Title of Pater Patriæ. Yea, and perhaps this designation may secure thine own Estate. For what will it profit the people to conspire against thee; when they shall see a Successor at hand, either of thine own body, or thine own appointment, ready to take thy place, and revenge thy wrongs?"

42. Thus resolved, he adopteth Caius and Lucius; desiring, though he made shew to the contrary, they should be Consuls Elect; and called Princes of the Youth. Yet wisely forecasting the dangers incident to himself, if they should make their abode in Rome; he sendeth them with honourable charge into the Provinces abroad: as well to exercise them in feats of War, as to take away all cause of faction in the Court, and sedition in the City. Which mystery of State as it was anciently practised by most Princes, so at this day by the Grand Seigneur: who always sendeth his eldest son unto Amasia, as Governour thereof; from whence till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In these journeys dyed the two young Princes; a misfortune which AUGUSTUS bare nobly; neither banishing grief, with a Stoical Apathy; nor spending the time in womanish lamentations. Having performed due Rites to the dead, he adopted his Wives Son Tiberius. A man for the conveniency and ripeness of his age, not unfit; in feats of Arms, nor unexpert; in humane learning, not ignorant; but withall suspected to be cruelly given, and possessed with the hereditary pride of the Claudian Family. A strange medley of vertuous and vicious qualities. Tiberius, such was the

will

AUGUSTUS.

will of his Father, to establish the succession, with more stayes than one, adopted Germanicus, his Brother Drusis Son; then commanding over eight Legions in Germany: which done, he speedeth to his charge in Illyricum. This man AUGUSTUS appointed to be his Successor, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the party; but to win honour to himself: and to make the Roman people again wish for him; when they should see that infinite disproportion in all Royal and Kingly qualities, between the old and new Emperors. A fetch after imitated by Tiberius, in the adoption of Caius Caligula.

43. The last (though not the least) help of the Empires establishment, was the long life and reign of our AUGUSTUS: as having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the Sovereignty, by the Senate and people. All the young men in the City were born after the first Decennium of the Monarchy. Most of the old men during the Civil Wars. Few had seen what was the ancient form of Government in the Common-wealth; many did not desire it. For at the present, enjoying Peace both at home and abroad; and hearing what sad and tragical reports their Fathers made of the former troubles and proscriptions: they contented themselves with the new Government; as more esteeming a secure and happy subjection, than a dangerous and factious liberty. By which long time of Empire, and the policies already recited, besides many others, which I can neither learn by relation, nor gather by presumptions; did AUGUSTUS so firmly settle the Roman Monarchy, that it continued some hundred of years without alteration: though all his immediate Successors were in a manner Monsters, incarnate Devils, and indeed any thing rather than men: Tiberius, Caius, Claudius, Nero, Gallus, Otho, and Vitellius, both by their own Tyrannick and their Bondmens Extortions; would have ruined any Monarchy not founded by AUGUSTUS.

44. To speak concerning the Domestical affairs of this Emperor, is beyond my Theme. As either how far he suffered himself to be ordered by his Wife Livia; or whether he used variety of women, not so much to satisfy an inordinate appetite, as by so many women to fill out the secret designs of many men. He was too exact a Statesman to be perfect in Souldiery; and in all his Wars was prosperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his Captains Valour than his own. The Common-wealth which he found weak and in Rubbish, he left Adamantine, and invincible. In behaviour he was affable and gracious; in his discourse, sententious; to the good, of a most sweet disposition; to the lewd and dishonest, harsh and unpleasant. Friendship he contracted with few, and that slowly; but to them, whom he once loved, constant and bountiful to the last. Finally, such a one he was, of whom I will only say what I finde spoken of Severus; It had been an ineffable benefit to the Common-wealth of Rome, if either he had never dyed, or never been born.

Thus having drawn the Picture of this puissant and prudent Prince (though I confess with too much shadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the Roman Emperors: in which I shall take notice of such of their Actions only as had relation to the Publick, either in the improvement or decrease of their Power and Empire; or point to any signal matter which concerns the Church.

The Roman Emperours.

A. M.

- 3918 1 Julius Caesar the last of the Dictators, and the first of the Emperours, in memory of whom the following Emperours were called *Cæsars*, till the time of Adrian; when it became the title of the heir apparent, or designed Successor; the first who had it in that sense being *Ælius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.
- 3923 2 C. Octavianus Caesar, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Augustus*; who added unto the Roman Empire the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhætia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdom of *Egypt*. In his time the Lord CHRIST was born: 56.
- A. C.
- 17 3 Tiberius Nero, the Son in Law of *Augustus*, subdued many of the German Nations; and added *Galatia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire. In his time CHRIST suffered: 23.
- 39 4 Caius Caligula, the Son of *Germanicus* (Son of *Drusus*, the brother of *Tiberius*) and of *Agrippina* Niece to *Augustus Caesar*, by his daughter *Julia*: 3.
- 43 5 *Claudius Caesar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, Brother of *Germanicus*, and Son of *Drusus* by *Antonia* Niece to *Augustus* by his Sister *Octavia*; added *Brittain*, and *Mauritania*, to the Roman Empire: 13.
- 57 6 *Domitius Nero*, Son of *Ænobarbus*, and *Agrippina* Daughter to *Germanicus*; the last of the *Cæsars*. He made the *Coelian Alpes* a Province of the Empire, and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the Roman Emperours; and was the first that raised any publick persecution against the Christians. An. 67. 13.
- 70 7 *Sergius Galba*, chosen by the French and Spanish Legions.
- 8 8 *Salvius Otho*, made Emperour by the *Prætorian* Souldiers.
- 9 9 *Aul. Vitellius*, elected by the German Legions.
- 71 10 *Flavius Vespasianus*, chosen by the Syrian and Judæan Armies, subverted utterly the Common-wealth of the Jews, by the valour and prowess of his Son *Titus*; and brought *Æthiopia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria Comagene*, under the form of Roman Provinces: 9.
- 80 11 *Titus Vespasianus*, the fortunate Conqueror of the Jews.
- 82 12 *Fl. Domitianus*, who raised the second persecution against the Christians. An. 96. 15.
- 97 13 *Nerva Cocceius*, a noble Senator, but no Roman born; as all the rest had been before him, but not many after him.

- 99-14 *Ulpianus Trajanus*, by birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*: he made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire; carried the Roman Armies over *Euphrates*, subduing *Armenia*, *Adiabene*, and *Affria*; and raised the third Persecution against the *Christians*. An. 110. 19.
- 118-15 *Elisus Adrianus*, who utterly exterminated the *Jewish Nation*, and continued the Persecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.
- 138-16 *Antoninus Pius*, whose friendship was sought by the very *Indians*. 24.
- 162-17 *Marcus Antoninus*, surnamed the Philosopher, associated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whose valour he subdued the *Parthians*. He raised the fourth Persecution against the Church. An. 167. 19.
- 181-18 *L. Antoninus Commodus*, Son to *Marcus*, the first Emperour that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.
- 194-19 *Elisus Pertinax*, made Emperour against his will.
- 217-20 *Didius Julianus*, who bought the Empire of the Souldiers.
- 195-21 *Septimius Severus*, took *Ctesiphon* from the *Parthians*, subdued the Province of *Ostrome*; and raised the fifth Persecution. An. 195. 18.
- 213-22 *Bassianus Caracalla*, Son to *Severus*.
- 220-23 *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperour by the men of War.
- 221-24 *Varus Heliogabalus*, the supposed Son of *Caracalla*.
- 225-25 *Alexander Severus*, Cousen of *Varus*.
- 238-26 *Maximinus*, a fellow of obscure birth; who being advanced to the Empire, raised the sixth Persecution. An. 237.
- 241-27 *Gordian*, elected by the Senate against *Maximinus*. 6.
- 247-28 *Philip*, an *Arabian*, supposed by some to be a *Christian*. 5.
- 252-29 *Decius*, slain in war against the *Goths*; the Author of the seventh Persecution raised against the Church. An. 250. 2.
- 254-30 *Gallus Hostilianus*. 2.
- 256-31 *Emilianus*, the *Moor*.
- 256-32 *Valerianus*, the Author of the eighth Persecution, An. 259. He was taken prisoner by *Sapor*, King of *Persia*, and made to serve him for a footstool.
- 33 *Gallienus*, Son to *Valerianus*, in whose time the 30 Tyrants ingrossed unto themselves several parts of the Empire.
- 271-34 *Claudius II.* who after a short and troublesome time, left it to
- 272-35 *Quintillus* his Brother, who enjoyed the same but 17 days.
- 273-36 *Valer. Aurelianus*, restored again the ancient discipline, suppressed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquished the *Goths*; but was a great persecutor of the Church, An. 278. 6.
- 279-37 *Annianus Tacitus*, descended from *Tacitus* the Historian.
- 38 *Florianus*, an Emperour of two months only.
- 280-39 *Valerius Probus*. 6.
- 286-40 *Aurelius Carus*, together with his two Sons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.
- 288-41 *Diocletian*, first associated *Maximinianus* by the name of Emperour, or *Augustus*; and afterwards *Galerius* of *Dacia*, and *Constantius Chlorus*, by the name of *Cæsars*. He had continual Wars against the *Persians*, and raised the tenth Persecution against the Church, An. 295. Which held so long, and was so vehement withall, that as *St. Hierome* writes, there were 5000 slain for every day in the year, save the first of *January*. He afterwards resigned the Empire, and lived in private at *Salona*. 20.
- 308-42 *Constantius Chlorus*, a friend to *Christians*. 2.
- 310-43 *Constantine*, Son of *Chlorus*, surnamed *Magnus*, or the Great, the first Emperour that countenanced the Gospel, and embraced it publicly; which he is said to have done on this occasion. At the same time that he was saluted Emperour in *Britain*, *Maxentius* was chosen at *Rome* by the *Prætorian* Souldiers; and *Licinius* named Successor by *Maximinus*, the associate of his Father *Chlorus*. Being penfive and solicitous upon these distractions, he cast his eyes up towards Heaven, where he saw in the Air a lightsome Pillar in the form of a Cross, wherein he read these words, *In æto viv, in hoc vince*; and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Vision, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he should overcome all his Enemies. This he performed, and was accordingly victorious, from which time he not only favoured the *Christians*, but became a very zealous Professor of the Faith and Gospel. Know *Zosimus* an Heathen Historian, partly out of malice to the *Christians* in general, and partly a particular grudge to the Emperour *Constantine*; reporteth otherwise of the causes of his Conversion: But the authority and consent of all *Christian Writers*, who deliver it as before is told, is far to be preferred before the testimony of one single Heathen, had he not been biased (as he was) by his disaffections.

Before this time it is observed, that few (if at all any) of the Roman Emperours dyed a natural death, as after they generally did. From *Julius Cæsar* unto *Constantine* there were 40 in all. Of which *Julius* was openly murdered in the Senate; *Augustus* made away by his wife *Livia*; as *Tiberius* afterwards by *Macro*; *Caligula* was slain by *Cassius Chæreas*; *Claudius* poysoned by his wife *Agrippina*; *Nero*,

Nero, and *Otho*, laid violent hands upon themselves; *Galba*, and *Vitellius*, massacred by the Souldiers; *Domitian* by *Stephanus*, *Commodus* by *Letus* and *Eleëtus*, *Pertinax* and *Julianus* by the Souldiers of their Guard; *Caracalla* by the command of *Macrinus*; *Macrinus*, *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Maximus*, and *Balbinus*, successively by the men of War; *Gordianus* by *Philip*, *Philip* by the Souldiers; *Hostilianus* by *Gallus*, and *Emilianus*; and they by the Souldiers; *Valerianus* dyed a Prisoner in *Parthia*; *Florianus* was the Author of his own end; *Aurelianus* murdered by his household servants; *Gallienus*, *Quintillus*, *Tacitus*, and *Probus*, by the fury of the military men. And yet I have omitted out of this Account such of the Emperours as were cumuloously made by the Army, without the approbation of the Senate; as also the *Cæsars*, or designed Successors of the Empire; most of which got nothing by their designation and adoption, but *ut citius interficerentur*. Some of these were cut off for their misdemeanours: some, for seeking to revive again the ancient Discipline; and some, that others might enjoy their places. The chief cause of these continual massacres, proceeded originally from the Senate, and Emperours themselves. For when the Senators had once permitted the Souldiers to elect *Galba*, and had confirmed that election; *Evulga*to (saith *Tacitus*) *imperii arcano, principem alibi quam Romæ fieri posse*: more Emperours were made abroad in the field by the Legions, than at home by the Senators. Secondly from the Emperours alone, who by an unseasonable love to their Guard-Souldiers, so strengthened them with priviledges, and nullified them in their licentious courses; that on the smallest rebuke, they which were appointed for the safety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their ruin: so truly was it said by *Augustus* in *Dion*, *Metuendum est esse sine custode, sed multo magis a custode metuendum est*. The last cause (be it *causa per accidens*, or *per se*) was the largess which the new Emperours used to give unto the men of service; a custom begun by *Claudius Cæsar*, and continued by all his Successors: inasmuch that the Empire became saleable, and many times he which had most had it. As we see in *Dion* when *Sulpicianus* offering twenty *Sesteriums* to each souldier, was (as if they had been buying a stock at *Gleick*) out-bidden by *Julianus*, who promised them five and twenty *Sesteriums* a man. So that *Herodian* justly complaineth of this Donative. *Id initium causæ; militibus fuit, ut etiam in posterum turpissimi contumacissimiq; evaderent, sic ut avaritia indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad sanguinem usq; proveherent*. That is to say; From this occasion and beginning, the Souldiers every day grew more shameless, and less regardful of their Prince: so that their covetousness encreasing, and the contempt they had of their Emperours waxing more and more, ended at last in the frequent shedding of their bloods, in hope to have a better Market of the next Successor: So as the Emperour *Constantine* wanted not good reason, besides their siding against him for *Maxentius*, to cashier these Guards, as grown more dangerous than useful to Imperial Majesty. And so accordingly he did; levelling their *standing Camp* to the very ground, disbanding the whole company, or putting them under other Officers, and to other Services; by means whereof they were not able to create the like disturbances, or dispose of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of these Guards which before were two (*Præfetti Prætorio* in the Latine) he encreased their number unto four (one for each quarter of the Empire) giving them a Civil Jurisdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before, and casting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own devising.

As for the extent and latitude of the Roman Empire, whilst it remained one intire Body (as it was before the time of *Constantine*, who at his death divided it among his sons) it was in length about three thousand miles; namely from the Irish Ocean West, to the River *Euphrates* on the East; and in breadth, it reached from the *Danubius* Northward, to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thousand miles. And though the Romans had extended their Dominions sometimes farther East, and North; yet could they never quietly settle themselves in those conquests. Nature (it seemeth) had appointed them these bounds, not so much to limit their Empire, as to defend it. For the enemies found those Rivers, by reason of the depth of the Channel, and violent current of the stream, as a couple of impregnable Fortresses; purposely (as it were) erected to hinder them from harrying the Roman Countreys.

The Revenues of it *Lipsius* in his Tract de *Magnitudine Romanæ*, esteemeth to be about one hundred and fifty millions of Crowns; and that they were no less, may be made more than probable by these reasons. 1. It is affirmed by divers, and among others by *Boterus*, that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount to one hundred and twenty millions of Crowns. And if this be true (as few question it) we cannot in proportion guess the whole Empire of the Romans to yield less than one hundred and fifty millions; especially considering what Arts-Matters the Romans were, in levying and raising their Taxes and customary Tributes. 2. The *Legionary* Souldiers which were dispersed over the *Provinces*, received in ordinary pay, (besides provision of corn, apparel, and Officers wages) five millions, 516062. pounds and ten shillings of our money; which amounteth unto sixteen millions of Crowns or thereabout. In the City it self were kept in continual pay, seven thousand souldiers of the Watch, four thousand or six thousand for the defence of the City; and ten thousand for the Guard of the Emperours person. The two first had the same wages, the last the double wages of a *Legionary* Souldier. Add hereto the expences of the Palace; and other means of disbursements, and I think nothing of the sum can be abated. 3. We read that *C. Caligula* spent in one year two millions and one hundred thousand of *Sesteriums*; how *Nero* most lavishly gave away two millions and one hundred thousand of *Sesteriums*; and how *Vitellius* in few months, was nine hundred thousand *Sesteriums* in Arrearages; every *Sesterterium* being valued at seven pound sixteen shillings three pence: all of them huge and infinite sums. 4. When *Vespasian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was so impoverished, that he professed in open Senate, that he wanted to settle the Common-wealth forty millions of *Sesterteriums*, amounting to three hundred and twelve millions of our English money; which Prostration (saith *Sueton*) seemed probable, *Quia & male partis optimè usus est*. Now unless the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have spoken; by what means could this extraordinary sum be raised. 5. We may guess at the general Revenue by the moneys issuing out of particular Provinces; and it is certain, that *Egypt* afforded the *Ptolemies* twelve thousand talents yearly: neither had the Romans less; they being

being more perfect in inhabiting, than in abating their Intrado. France was by *Cæsar* felled at the yearly tribute of twenty millions of Crowns. And no doubt the rest of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6. And lastly the infinite sums of money given by the Emperours in way of largesse, are proofs sufficient for the greatness of the in-come. I will instance in *Augustus* only, and in him, omitting his Donatives at the victory of *Actium*, and the rest, I will specify his Legacy at his death: He bequeathed (by his Testament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common sort, and the rest of the people, three pound eight shillings a man; to every souldier of the *Prætorian* bands, seven pounds sixteen shillings three pence; and to every *Legionary* souldier, of the *Roman* Citizens, four pound ten shillings six pence: which amounted to a mighty mass of money.

The Arms or Ensign of this Empire when it was up and in the flourish, was the Eagle: not born, as now, in colours, and a banner; but in an Image or Portraiture on the top of a Spear, or other long piece of wood, to be fixed in the earth at pleasure. This Ensign, Spear & Eagle together, they called the *Labarum*: *Que signa, quod quasi labantia hastis appenderentur labara dixerunt*, saith *Lipsius*, *Epist. Quæst. Ep. 5*. The use as of this, so of other standards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the second of *Numb.* namely, *ut ad cornu aspectum, bellatores dividantur & uniantur*, to call together, and distribute the souldiers according to occasions. And certainly for this end and purpose were those Ensigns first invented. Afterwards they were applied to the distinguishing of Tribes and Families; and at last bestowed by Kings and Princes as the honorary marks of well-deserving: those which had been the Ensigns of War, so becoming the Ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in colours, I have not yet read. It is now an Eagle *Saturus*, in a Field *Sol*; which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *mostrich*. It was first born by *Cæ. Marius* in his second Consulship, and in his Wars against the *Cimbrii*, from him conveyed to *Cæsar*, who was allied to him in design and person, and so derived unto the Emperours, his Successors.

But to proceed, *Constantine* having settled his affairs in peace, and cashiered the *Prætorian* Guards, fell to new modelling the Empire; which he conceived to be too cumbersome and unwieldy to be governed by the former Polity, as indeed it was. And first of all he augmented the *Roman* Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts; over every one of which he ordained a particular *Præfatus*, that had his residence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced these Provinces under fourteen *Dioceses*, (for so he called the greater distributions of his Empire) seven of which were in the East parts thereof, that is to say, the *Diocese* of Egypt, of the Orient, of Asia, of Pontus, Thracia, Dacia, and Macedonia: and as many also in the West, viz. the *Præfecture* of the City of Rome, (which I count for one) the *Diocese* of Italy, Africa, and Illyricum, of France, Spain, and Britain. Finally in stead of the two *Præfatus* *Prætorio* which had the command of the *Prætorians*, he ordained four for the quarters of the Empire: that is to say, the *Præfatus* *Prætorio Italia*, under whom were the *Dioceses* of Italy, Africa, and Illyricum; 2. *Præfatus* *Prætorio Galliarum*, who had under him the *Dioceses* of France, Spain, and Britain; 3. The *Præfatus* *Prætorio Orientis*, who had command over the *Dioceses* of Egypt, the Orient, the Asian, the Pontick and Thracian *Dioceses*; And 4. the *Præfatus* *Prætorio Illyrici*, under whose super-intendence, besides Illyricum it self, were the *Dioceses* of Macedonia and Dacia only; each of these *Præfatus* having a *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant in the several *Dioceses* under his authority, who fixed their residence in the head City of the *Diocese*. And this I have the rather noted, because of the relation which the Polity of the Christian Church had to this Division: it being so ordered in the best and purest times thereof, that in every City where the Emperours had an Officer, whom they called *Defensor Civitatis*, the Christians should have a *Bishop*; in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan*; and over every *Diocese* an *Archbishop* or *Primate*, from whom lay no Appeal unto any other. And so far *Constantine* did well; if at the least the casting of the Empire into so many *Dioceses* was of his devising. But I have no reason to believe that it was more ancient: the Patriarchs or Primates of Rome, Carthage, Alexandria, Antioch, and other of the greater Churches, being settled in a preeminence of jurisdiction over the Provinces, and *Metropolitans* assigned to them long time before the Council of Nice, and consequently before the Empire (nay the birth) of *Constantine*, who possibly might add no more in this great business, than the assigning of a *Præfatus* *Prætorio* to each several quarter, and the allotting of the *Dioceses* unto each *Præfatus*. But whether it were so or not, certain it is, that he committed divers errors, which did more prejudice the Empire, than any thing that had been done by his Predecessors. First in translating the Imperial Seat from Rome to *Byzantium*; by which transplantation the Empire lost much of its natural vigour: as we see by experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their natural growth, lose much of their virtue which was formerly in them. On which reason, *Camillus* would not suffer the Romans to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Vesii*, newly conquered by him: but to prevent them in it he fire on the Town, and so consumed it, *ut nunc Veios fuisse laboret Annalium fides*, as my Author hath it. A second fault of this *Constantine*, was the dividing the Empire amongst his sons, which only concerned himself. For though it was quickly reunited in the person of *Constantinus* (his brethren dying without issue) yet his example being followed by others; the Empire was after torn into many pieces to the destruction of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperours used sometimes to associate some partner with them; but so that they did manage it as one sole Estate: *Constantine* (if I remember rightly) being the first which parcelled it into several sovereignties, each independent of the other, allotting to *Constantinus*, Greece, Thracia, and all the Provinces of the East; to *Constans*, Italy, Illyricum, Africa; to *Constantine*, Gaul, Spain, and Britain. The third fault of this Emperour was his removing the *Legion*, and *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eastern parts of his dominions; pretending to use them as a Bulwark against the *Persians*; playing thereby those passages open, at which not long after the barbarous Nations entered, & subdued the West. For though instead of these *Colonies* he planted Garrisons and Forts in convenient places, yet these being filled with Souldiers, for the most part out of other Countreys, fought not as in defence of their native Soil, (as the *Colonies* would and must have done) but on the first onset of those Barbarians abandoned them to the will of the enemy. So that *Zosimus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he

he bewrayeth much malice) doth call him, not untruly, the first Subverter of that flourishing Monarchy. To these three we may adde a fourth, which concerns the Emperours in general; namely their stupid negligence and degenerate spirits, which shewed it self most visibly in the last of

The Western Emperours.

- 341 1 *Constans*, the youngest son of *Constantinus Magnus*, his brother *Constantine* being dead, in the third year of his reign, remained sole Emperour of the West. 13.
- 354 2 *Constantius*, the other of *Constantines* sons, succeeded *Constans* in his part; after his decease, uniting the divided Empire into one Estate.
- 3 *Valentinian* Emperour of the West, his brother *Valens* ruling in *Constantinople*, and the Eastern parts.
- 4 *Valentinian* II. youngest son of the former *Valentinian*.
- 399 5 *Honorius* the second son of *Theodosius* the Emperour, (his elder brother *Arcadius* reigning in the East) in whose time *Alarick* with the *Goths* invaded Italy, sacked Rome, and made themselves Masters of the Countrey, which afterwards they left in exchange for Spain. 26.
- 425 6 *Valentinian* III. during whose time *Attila* and the *Hunnes* made foul work in Italy, and the *Vandals*, seized upon Africa, as they did on Italy and Rome also after his decease: Murdered by *Maximus* a Roman (whose wife he had trained into the Court, and ravished) as shall be shewn hereafter on another occasion. He was son unto *Constantinus Cæsar* by *Placidia* Sister to *Honorius*, and Widow of *Anthaulfus* King of the *Goths*.
- 455 7 *Maximus* having slain *Valentinian* the third, succeeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Eudoxia* the wife of *Valentinian* (who had some inkling of the manner of her husbands death) had drawn into Italy, he was stoned to death by his own souldiers. 1.
- 456 8 *Avitus*, chosen Emperour in a military tumult.
- 457 9 *Majoranus*. 4.
- 461 10 *Severus*. 6.
- 467 11 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five years was slain (as were the three before him) by *Recimer* (a *Suevian* born) the chief Commander of the Armies; who had again to get the Empire for himself, but dyed as soon as he had vanquished and slain *Anthemius*.
- 471 12 *Olybrius*, an Emperour of four months only.
- 472 13 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As also was
- 14 *Julius Nepos*, deposed by *Orestes* a noble Roman, who gave the Empire to his son called at first *Momillus*, but after his assuming the Imperial title he was called as in contempt *Augustulus*.
- 473 15 *Augustulus*, the last of the Emperours who resided in Italy, vanquished by *Odoacer* King of the *Herni* and *Turingians*. An ominous thing, that as *Augustus* raised this Empire, so an *Augustulus* should ruin it.

But though *Augustulus* lost the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not suffered to enjoy it long: *Zeno* the Emperour of the East sending *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*, to expel him thence; and to possess himself of Italy, the reward of his valour. And this the Emperour did the rather, partly because the *Goths* were Christians, and in good terms of correspondency with him: but principally to remove that active Nation somewhat further off, who lay before too near the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might dismiss them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodoric* a *Patrician* of the Roman Empire; an honour first devised by the Emperour *Constantine*; and of so high esteem from the first Institution, that they who were dignified therewith, were to have precedence of the *Prætorii Præfatus*, who before took place next to the Emperour himself. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* set upon it any lower estimate, in case he did not adde much unto it; when to the Title of Emperour of the Romans he added that of a *Patrician* in the style Imperial. *Theodoric* thus authorized and encouraged, marches toward Italy; and having vanquished *Odoacer*, secures himself in his new Conquests by divers politick proceedings; first by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortresses at home. To fortifie himself abroad, he took to Wife *Adelheida*, daughter to *Clodoveus* (or *Clovis*) King of the *French*; marrying his sister *Hermisfride* to *Thorismond*, King of the *Vandals* in Africa; *Amalasanta* a second daughter to *Embaricus* a Prince of the *Goths* in Spain; and *Amnelberge* his Niece, to *Hermisfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus backed with these Alliances with his Neighbour Princes, (all equally concerned in the subverting of the Roman Empire) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alpes*, and the shores of the *Adriatick*, to impeach the passage of the barbarous Nations into Italy. His Souldiers and Commanders he dispersed into most parts of the Countrey; partly to keep under the *Italians*, of whose wavering and unconstant nature he was somewhat doubtful; partly to unite both people in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Customs; and partly that he might more easily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. Italy, which before was made a thorough-fare to the barbarous Nations, and quite disordered by the frequent inundations of Lust and Rapine; he reduced to such a peaceable and settled Government, that before his death they had quite lost the memory of their former miseries: in stead whereof a general felicity had diffused it self over all the Countrey. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, strengthened, and beautified. In his wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of peace, and in his private carriage discreet and affable. Finally (as *Velleius* saith of *Morobodanus*) he was *Natione magis quam ratione Barbarus*: And went the most judicious way to establish his dominion in Italy, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the Roman Provinces, which he left thus confirmed and settled unto his Successors.

The Kings of the *Goths* in Italy.

- 495 1 *Theodoric* of whom before; who to his conquest of Italy added that of Illyricum, as also the appendant Islands to both those Countreys, and wrested Provence in France, from the *Goths* of Spain.

- 527 2 *Athalaricus*, Nephew to *Theodoric* by his daughter *Amalasunta*, who in the minority of her son managed the affairs of the *Goths* in *Italie*. Fearing some danger out of *Greece*, she restored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilful in the Languages of all those Nations which had any commerce with the *Roman* Empire, inasmuch, that *pro miraculo fuerit ipsam audire loquentem*, saith *Procopius* of her.
- 534 3 *Theodatus*, the son of *Hamulfride*, the Sister of *Theodoric*, succeeded on the untimely death of *Athalaricus*. Who being in War with the *Romans*, (or rather with the *Greek* Emperours, endeavouring to recover *Italie* from the hands of the *Goths*) and desiring before hand to know his success; was killed by a *Jew* to shut up a certain number of Swine, and to give to some of them the names of *Goths*, and unto others the names of *Romans*. Which done, and going to the styes not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothish* faction all slain, and those of the *Roman* half unbristled: and thereupon the *Jew* foretold, that the *Goths* should be discomfited, and the *Romans* lose a great part of their strength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called *Oscuaria*, and hath been prohibited by a General Council. The loss of this battle (won by *Belisarius* Commander of the Armies of the Emperour *Justinian*) drew on the loss of *Rome*, and the East parts of *Italie*, (with the Realm of *Naples*) and occasioned the death of *Theodatus*, slain shortly after these great losses by the *Goths* themselves.
- 537 4 *Vitiges*, chosen by the *Goths*, besieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the said *Belisarius*.
- 540 5 *Idobaldus*, Governour of *Verona*, on the calling home of *Belisarius*, chosen by the *Goths*, and by them not long after slain.
- 541 6 *Ardaricus*, of whom nothing memorable.
- 542 7 *Totilas*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predecessors, and sacked *Rome* in the light of *Belisarius*, then returned into *Italie*, and not able to hinder him. Vanquished and killed in fight by *Narses*, in the 11. of his reign.
- 553 8 *Tyas*, the last King of the *Goths* in *Italie*, who being vanquished by *Narses*, in the fourteenth year of his Reign, submitted himself to the *Eastern* Emperours: but after breaking out again, he was finally discomfited, and slain by *Narses*, not far from the City of *Nocera*, An. 567. After which time the *Goths* and the *Italians* mingled in blood and language, became one Nation.

But the miseries of *Italie*, and those Western parts were not so to end. No sooner had God freed them from the rod of his visitations, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Perfection*, formerly remembered, and given them peace within their dwellings; but they became divided into *schisms* and *factions*: and after wallowed in those sins, which a continual surfeit of prosperity hath commonly attending on it. Inasmuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about these times, complains of that high hand of wickedness, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the lives of *Christians* being grown so deplorably wicked, that they became a scandal to the Faith and Gospel. *In nobis patitur Christus approbrium, in nobis patitur lex Christiana maledictum*, saith that godly Bishop. So that their sins being ripe for vengeance, God sent the barbarous Nations, as his Executioners, to execute his divine justice on the impenitent men; and made them sensible, though *Heathens*, that it was Gods work they did, and not their own, in laying such afflictions on these Western parts. *Ipsi fatentur non sum esse quod facerent, agnimus se perurgeti divino iussu*, as the said godly Bishop doth inform us of them. On this impulsion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they first wasted *Spain*, and then harried *Africa*: And at the same did *Attila* the *Hun* insert into his Royal Titles the stile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*; acknowledging thereby his own apprehension of some special and extraordinary calling to this publick service. Nay, as *Jornandes* doth report, some of these barbarous people did not stick to say, that they were put on this employment by some Heavenly visions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In prosecution of the which, in less time than the compass of 80 years, this very *Italie* (though antiently the strength and seat of that Empire) was seven times brought almost unto desolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, viz. First by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*, who sacked *Rome*; *Naples*, &c. 2. By *Attila* King of the *Huns*, who razed *Florence*, wasted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of Pope *Leo*. 3. By *Genseric* King of the *Vandals*, who also had the sackage of *Rome* it self. 4. By *Biorgus* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperour *Majoranus*. 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Hervuli*, who drove *Augustulus*, the last Western Emperour out of his estate; and twice in thirteen years laid the Countrey desolate: 6. By *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*, called in by *Zeno* Emperour of *Constantinople* to expel *Odoacer* and the *Hervuli*. And 7. by *Gundebald* King of the *Burgundians*, who having rancked all *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving possession to the *Goths*. As for these *Goths*, being the first and last of those barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the spoil of *Italie*, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the space of 72 years, they were at last subdued by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, two of the bravest Souldiers that had ever served the *Eastern* Emperours; and *Italy* united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Justinian*. But *Narses* having governed *Italie* about 17 years, and being after such good service most despitfully used by *Sophia* (never the wiser for her name) the wife of the Emperour *Justinus*, abandoned the Countrey to the *Lombards*. For the Emperors envying his glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government; but sent him word, That he would make the Eunuch (for such he was) come home; & spin among her maids. To which the discontented man returned this answer, That he would spin her (such a web, as neither he nor any of her minions should ever be able to unweave. And thereupon he opened the passages of the Countrey to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then possessed of *Pannonia*; who coming into *Italie* with their Wives and Children, possessed themselves of all that Countrey which antiently was inhabited

inhabited by the *Cisalpine Galls*, calling it by their own names *Longobardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy*. Nor staid he there, but made himself master of the Countreys lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the borders of *Apulia*: and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedomes, 1. of *Friuli* at the entrance of *Italy*, for the admission of more aids if occasion were; or the keeping out of new Invaders. 2. Of *Turin*, at the foot of the *Alpes* against the *French*: 3. Of *Benevento*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, against the incursions of the *Greeks*; then possessed of *Apulia*, and the other Eastern parts of that Kingdome: And 4. of *Spoleto*, in the midst of *Italy*, to suppress the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his Successors.

The Lombardian Kings of Italy.

A. C.	1	Alboinus. 6.	679.	12	Garibaldus, mens. 3.
568.	2	Clephes. 1.	679.	13	Portarichus. 18.
574.	3	Autharis. 7.	698.	14	Canibertus. 12.
586.	4	Agilulfus. 25.	710.	15	Liutbertus. 1.
593.	5	Adoaldus. 10.	711.	16	Rainbertus. 1.
618.	6	Arioldus. 11.	712.	17	Arelbertus II. 12.
628.	7	Richarius, or Rotharis.	723.	18	Asprandus, mens. 3.
639.	8	Radoaldus. 5.	723.	19	Liutprandus. 21.
655.	9	Aribertus. 9.	744.	20	Hildebrandus m. 6.
660.	10	Gundibertus. 1.	744.	21	Rachisus. 6.
669.	11	Grimoaldus. 9.	750.	22	Alfuphus. 6.
670.	12	Desiderius. 23.	756.	23	Desiderius. 23.

whom more anon. In the mean time we will look into the story of some of the former Kings, in which we find some things deserving our consideration. And first beginning with *Alboinus*, the first of this Catalogue, before his coming into *Italy* he had waged war with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepids*; whom he overthrew, and made a drinking Cup of his Skull. *Rostmund* daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that drested Cup; which she so stomacked, that she promised one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her self and the Kingdome of *Lombardy*. This when he had consented to, and performed accordingly, they were both so extremely hated for it, that they were fain to fly to *Ravenna*, and put themselves into the protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a desire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be possessed of that mass of Treasure which she was said to bring with her; but principally hoping by her power and party there, to raise a beneficial War against the *Lombards*; persuaded her to dispatch *Helmichild* out of the way, and take him for her husband; to which she willingly agreed. *Helmichild* coming out of a Bath called for drink, and she gives him a strong poison; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the strange operation of it how the matter went, he compelled her to drink the rest: so both dyed together. 2. *Clephes* the second King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*: but was so tyrannical withal, that after his death, they resolved to admit of no more Kings, distributing the Government among 30 Dukes. Which division, though it held not above 12 years, was the chief cause that the *Lombards* failed of being the absolute Lords of all *Italy*. For the people having once cast off the yoke of obedience, and tasted somewhat of the sweetness of licentious Freedom; were never after so reduced, to their former duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in such Atchivements as tended more unto the greatness of the King, than the gain of the subject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14. King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly required. For being to encounter with *Alachius* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled against him: one of the Clergy knowing that the Kings life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thrust himself into the head of the Enemy, where he lost his own life, but saved the Kings. 4. *Aribert* the 17. King, gave the *Coltian Alpes* containing *Piemont*, and some part of the Duchy of *Millain* to the Church of *Rome*: which is observed to be the first Temporal Estate, that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the foundation of that greatness which they after came to. 5. The 19. King was *Liutprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia*, and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchate*; having first won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchy* thereof. An. 741. the last *Exarch* being called *Eutichius*. But the *Lombards* long enjoyed not his Conquests. For *Pepin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen* the third, solicited to come into *Italy*; overthrew *Alfuphus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The last King was *Desiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the first, and besieging him in *Rome*; was by *Charles* the great, Successor to *Pepin*, besieged in *Pavia*, and himself with all his children taken prisoners, An. 774. And so ended the Kingdome of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italy* 206 years. *Lombardy* was then a Province of the *French*, and after of the *German* Empire: many of whose Emperours used to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Bishops of *Millain*, with an Iron Crown; which was kept at *Modocum*, now called *Monza*, a small Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Fathers former donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marca Anconatina*, and the Dukedome of *Spoleto*. For these and other kindneses, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo* the fourth, on *Christmas* day crowned Emperour of the West, An. 801. whose Successors shall be reckoned when we come to the story of *Germany*. At this division of the Empire, *Irene* was Emperess of the East; to whom and her Successors was no more allotted than the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, (the East parts of the Realm of *Naples*) being then in possession of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperour and his father, almost all the Lands which they possess at

this day, though afterwards extorted from them by the following Emperors, or under colour of their Title: by many several wayes and means brought again unto them, as shall be shown hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *sui iuris*. The rest of *Italie*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuscany*, *Friuli*, *Trevigina*, and whatsoever is at this day in the possession of the Dukes of *Millaine*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Admifferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piemont*, together with *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*; was reserved by *Charles* unto himself, and in his life-time given by him to *Pepin* his second son, with the title or title of King of *Italie*. But long it did not rest in the house of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wresting it from the line of *Charles*, and after weakning and dividing it by their several factions; till in the end, instead of an united Kingdom, there rose up many scattered Principalities, as shall hereafter be declared. But first we must proceed to the Kings of *Italie*, of which we shall endeavour as exact a Catalogue, as the confusions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italie*, of the *French*, *Italian*, and *German* Lines.

- 1 *Pepin* son of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
- 2 *Barnard*, son of *Pepin*.
- 3 *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
- 841 4 *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldest son of *Ludovicus*. 15.
- 856 5 *Ludovicus II.* Emperor, eldest son to *Lotharius*. 20.
- 876 6 *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the youngest son of *Ludovicus Pius*. 2.
- 7 *Caroloman*, nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his second son, surnamed the *Antient*.
- 8 *Carolus Crassus*, or the Fat, Emperor, brother of *Caroloman*, the last King of *Italie* of the house of *Charles*, he died Anno 888.
- 888 9 *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, both of the *Longobardian* Race, for the Kingdom of *Italie*; and in fine carrieth it against him.
- 894 10 *Lambert*, the son of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Formosus*.
- 11 *Ludovicus*, son of *Bojon*, Earl of *Ardenne*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by some Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italie*; and is made King.
- 917 12 *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, vanquisheth *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italie*; and at last overcome by the *Hungarians*; who having wasted the Countrey returned back again.
- 13 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy Trans-jurane*, called into *Italie* against *Berengarius*, resigned it in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Cousen.
- 926 14 *Hugh D'Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdom of *Italie* upon this resignation; but after many troubles, was at last outed of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France*.
- 946 15 *Berengarius II.* son of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the son of *Hugh*; besieging *Adelbais* the next heir of *Italie* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken prisoner by the Emperor *Otho*.
- 16 *Otho*, called into *Italie* by *Adelbais*, daughter to *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italie*; married the Lady, and in her right is King of *Italie*.
- 974 17 *Otho II.* son of the former *Otho*, married *Theophania* neece to *Nicophorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Constantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dower. 20.
- 984 18 *Otho III.* Emperor, and King of *Italie*, in whose minority the Kingdom was usurped by
- 19 *Harduicus*, a man of great power in *Italie*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*; till being broken with long wars by *Henry* the succeeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
- 20 *Henry*, the second Emperor of that name, having thrice vanquished *Harduicus*, got the Kingdom of *Italie*, and left the same unto the Emperors his Successors: the Title of *Italie* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Countrey governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by such Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time sent thither. But long it staid not in that state. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Polity, to weaken the Imperial Power in *Italie*, without which their own Grandour could not be maintained; stirred up continual factions and wars against them; and by that means, and by the Censures of the Church which they denounced according as they saw occasion; did so astonish and distract them; that in the end the Emperors began to lay aside the affairs of *Italie*, by which they reaped more trouble than the profit came to. Inasmuch that *Rodolphus Habsburgensis*, a valiant and a politic Prince, finding the ill success which *Henry* the fourth and fifth, and *Frederick* the first and second, Emperors of more puissance than himself, had found in their *Italian* actions and pretensions; resolved to rid his hands of that troublesome and fruitless Province; and to that end made as much money as he could of that commodity, which he saw he was not like to keep. And yet he sold good penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but six thousand Crowns, the Citizens of *Luca* ten thousand; others as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reason, why he went not into *Italie* to look to the affairs thereof, as his Predecessors had done before him: he is said to have returned for answer that conceit of the *Fox*, for his not going to attend (as the other beasts did) at the Lions Den:

— *Quia*

*Quia me vestigia terrent
Omnia me adversum spectantia, nulla retrorsum.*

That is to say,

I dare not go, because no track I see
Of any beast returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident resolution being followed by too many of his Successors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for; of making themselves the great disposers of the affairs of *Italie*; but many petit Princes thereby took occasion of getting all they could lay hold on for themselves, and others. For by this means, the *Sealigers* made themselves Masters of *Verona*, the *Passariens* of *Mantua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Bailions* of *Bononia*; and by the same the *Florentines* got *Pistoia*, and *Ferrara* was possessed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry* the 7. provoked by these indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities to their former obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron Crown; as were also *Ludovicus Bavaria*, and *Charles* the 4. two of his Successors: yet found they in conclusion such small benefit by the enterprise, as did not quit the charge and trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italie* was left wholly in a manner to the Popes disposing, who gave away to others what they could not manage; or otherwise confirmed those men in their usurpations, whom they found already possessed of the Emperors Countreys: and bound them by that means the faster to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their estates in fee; the Emperors having nothing left them but the empty Title, nor exercising the Imperial Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms into Marquises, and Marquises into Dukedoms, which they often did for ready money, or reward of Service, or to preserve some shadow of their ancient Interest.

And now we are to look on *Italie* as under a new face of things, not only in regard of several Principalities and forms of Government; but as replenished with new Colonies or sets of people, differing from the old in manners as well as language. And though the Soyl be now as it was before, yet hath that also found some change in the different production of the natural Fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and works of Art. For now besides their Corn and Wine, which anciently were the staple Commodities of this Countrey; they supply the rest of Christendom with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffeties, Satrans, Grograins, Rashi, Fustians, Goldwire, Allom, Armour, Glasses, and such like commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy; who being for the most part, Gentlemen of noble houses, not only lose not the esteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandise (as in other places;) but by reason that they are possessed of estates in land, which they manage by their Bayliffs and other Servants, they are become the wealthiest Merchants in all Christendom.

Nor do the Gentry come behind them in all manner of affluence, which can be possibly enjoyed in so rich a Soyl. Their Lands they set not at a rent, but at thirds and halves, according as the Soyl is more or less fruitful; seldom abiding in the Countrey, but only for a moneth or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themselves with their Musick and Mistresses under the fragrant hedges and shady bowers, in as much solace and delight as may be desired. The residue of the year they spend in Cities, and places of the most resort, for change of company. But on the other side the Countrey Farmer lives a drudging and laborious life, liable to all the Taxes and Impositions which are laid on the Land; the Landlords part coming in clearly without any disbursements or defalcations; inasmuch that it is proverbially, but most truly said, that the rich men in *Italie* are the richest, and the poor men the poorest, in all the world.

The people generally are grave, respectful, and ingenious. Excellent men (said once an *Hispaniolian* and *Italian*) but for these three things; that is to say, in their lusts they are unnatural, in their malice unappeasable, in their actions deceitful. To which might be added, that they will blaspheme rather than swear, and murder a man sooner than slander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of some particulars: it being observed by moderate and impartial men, that they are obedient to their Superiors, to Inferiors courteous, to their Equals full of all Civilities, to Strangers affable, and most delicious by all fair and friendly offices to win their loves. In apparel they are said to be very modest, in the furniture of their houses sumptuous, at their Tables neat, sober of speech, enemies of all ill reports of others; and of their own reputation so exceeding tender, that whosoever slandereth any one of them, if it come unto the parties ear, he is sure to die for it. Of money and expence he is very thrifty, and loves to beat no more cost, than he is sure to save by, or receive great thanks for: but otherwise for civil carriage and behaviour, surpassing all the Gentry of the World besides. Only in strictness to their wives they exceed all reason, of whom they are so extremely jealous, that they shut them up all day from the common view, and permit them liberty of discourse with few or none. The lock used by a Gentleman of *Venice* to be assured of his wives chastity in the time of his absence, is so known a story, that it needs no report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous humor in most Southern Nations, we shall speak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet if that be true, which is proverbially spoken of the women of *Italie*, the husbands have more reason for this strict restraint, than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the most part witty in speech; and

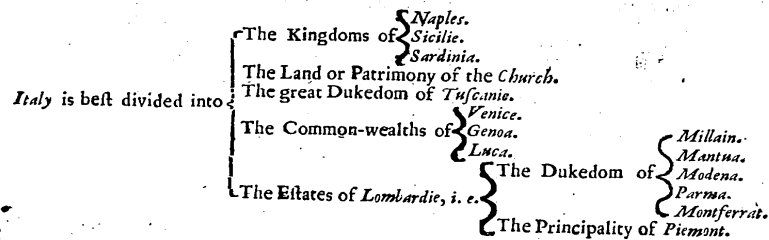
modest

modest, in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is said of them in the way of proverb, that they are as Magpies at the door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devils in the house, Angels in the streets, and Sirens in the windows, not wanting on this ground to set out themselves with all advantages of Art, there being few amongst them who use not painting, and other the sophistical helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a saying, that, if God make them tall and fat, (for the title of a goodly woman is much prized among them) they will make themselves fair.

The language of both Sexes is very Courty and fluent, all of them speaking the *Courtezan*, or Court language; notwithstanding the diversity of Dialects which is amongst them. For though there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Millanese* and the *Roman*, the *Napolitan* and the *Genoese*; yet it is hard to be discerned by the tone or pronunciation, what language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is best spoken in the great Dukes Countrey, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Sienna*, but in *Florence* especially; in which City *Guicciardini* the Historian, *Boccace* the Author of the *Decameron*, and other great Masters of the *Italian* language, did live and flourish in their times.

For other men of note both for Arts and Arms, *Italy* hath afforded many since the fall of the Empire, viz. *Aeneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the name of *Pius* the second; 2. *Marsilius Patavinus*, a stout defender of the Imperial Rights; 3. *Petrarch*, a Roman born; 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Restorer of polite Literature in *Italy*; 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*; and 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians; 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Astrologer; 8. *Ariosto*, and 9. *Tasso*, the most renowned Poets of their times, and the later never followed since; 10. *Sixtus Senensis*, one of the best Antiquaries of the Nation, and a great Divine; 11. *Bellarmino*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Buttrisses and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms, 1. *Ludovicus Conius*, the first Restorer of the honour of the *Italian* Souldiery; 2. *Forti-Bracchio*, and 3. *Nicolas Piccinino*, two of his training up in the feats of Chivalry; 4. 5. *Sforza* the father and the son; of which the son attained by his valour to the Dukedom of *Milain*; 6. *Christopher Columbus*, a *Genoese*; *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebastian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Discoverers of *America*; 9. *Andrea D'Orta*, Admiral of the Navies to *Charles* the fifth; and 10. *Ambrose Spinola* (both *Genoese*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*: Which last being once upbraided by *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, as issued from a Race of Merchants (though otherwise of a very ancient and noble Family) returned this tart and sudden Answer, that he thought it a greater honour to him, being a Merchant, to have the command of so many Princes; than it could be unto the other, though a Prince by birth, to be under the command of so many Merchants.

The usual Division of *Italy* is into six parts, 1. *Lombardy*, 2. *Tuscanie*, 3. the Land of the Church, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviera de Genoa*, and 6. the Land of *Venice*: and of them there is passed this Censure according to the principal Cities, i. e. *Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Milain* for beauty, *Genoa* for stateliness, *Florence* for Policy, and *Venice* for riches. But take it as it stands at the present time, and



The Kingdome of NAPLES.

THE Kingdom of *NAPLES* is invironed on all sides with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tuscan* Seas, excepting where it joynerh on the West to the Lands of the Church: from which separated by a line drawn from the mouth of the River *Tronto* (or *Druentus*) falling into the *Adriatick*, to the Spring-head of *Axofenus*. By which account it taketh up all the East of *Italy*; the compass of it being reckoned at 1468. miles.

It hath been called sometimes the Realm of *Pouille*, from *Pouille* or *Apulia*, a chief Province of it; the first possession of the *Normans* (the Founders of this Kingdome) in these parts of *Italy*: but called most commonly the Realm of *Sicil*, on this side of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Isle of *Sicil*, lying on the other side of the *Phare* or Strait of *Messana*. The reason of which improper appellation proceeded from *Roger* the first King hereof, who being also Earl of *Sicil*, and keeping there his fixed and ordinary residence; when he obtained the favour to be made a King, desired (in honour of the place where he most resided) to be created by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and ancient name of the Kingdome, the name or title of King of *Naples* not

not coming into use till the *French* were dispossessed of *Sicil* by the *Aragonians*; and nothing left them but this part of the Kingdome, of which the City of *Naples* was the Regal Seat, called therefore in the following times, the Kingdom of *Naples*; and by some of the *Italian* Writers, the Kingdome only.

This is esteemed to be the most fertile place in all *Italie*, abounding in all things necessary for the life of man, and in such also as conduce to delight and Physick; viz. Many Springs, and Medicinal waters, Baths of divers vertues, sundry Physical herbs. It hath also an excellent breed of Horses, which may not be transported but by the leave of the King, or at least the *Vice-roy*; great store of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choicest Wines, called anciently *Vina Massica*, and *Falerina*, frequently mentioned by the Poets. And as for Merchandise, to *Alexandria* they send Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wine, and to *Venice* Oyl, &c.

The Noblemen or Gentry hereof, live of all men the most careless and contented lives; and like the Tyrant *Polyrates* in the elder stories, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckoned in this Realm in the time of *Ortelius*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marquesses, 90 Earles, and 800 Barons; and those not only Titular, as in other places, but men of great power and revenue in their several Countreys; infomuch that the yearly income of the Prince of *Bisignan* is said to be an hundred thousand Crowns, one year with the other; the Princes of *Salerno*, and *St. Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to serve the King in his Wars, which gives them many privilegedges, and great command over the common Subject: whereby as they were made the abler to assist the King, upon any foreign invasion; so are they in condition also of raising and countenancing such defections as have been made from King to King, and from one Family to another, as sorted best with their ambitions and particular interrestes. For not alone the Nobles, but in general as many of the common people as can be spared from husbandry; are more addicted to the Wars than they are to Merchandise. The Nobles in pursuit of honour, and the *Paissant* out of desire of being in action; so that the greatest part of the Forces which serve the *Spaniard* in the Low-Countreys, are sent from hence. To which, the humor which they have from the highest to the lowest, of going bravely in Apparel, serves exceeding fitly. An humor which is so predominant in both sexes, that though the *Paissant* lives all the rest of the week in as great servility and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity; yet on the *Sundays* and *Saint-days*, he will be sure to have a good suit to his back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his belly. And for the women, she that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be so pranced up on the *Sundays* and other Festivals, or when she is to shew herself in some publick place; that one who did not know the humor, might easily mistake her for some noble Lady.

The principal Rivers of this Kingdome are, 1. *Sybaris*, 2. *Basentus*, 3. *Pescara*, 4. *Trontus*, 5. *Ausidus*, 6. *Salinellus*, 7. *Vomanius*, 8. *Salinus*, and 9. *Gargilian*. The most famous of which, are *Ausidus* and *Gargilian*. The first as being the only River of *Italie*, which rising South-side of the *Apennine*, forceth a breach through it to the upper Sea: but more for the great battel fought on the banks thereof, called the battel of *Cannus*, or which more hereafter. The other no less famous for those many battels, which have been fought near it between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, for the Kingdome of *Naples*: especially that famous battel between the Marquess of *Saluzzes*, General of the *French*, and *Gonsalvo*, Leader of the *Spaniards*; the loss of which Victory by the *French*, was the absolute confirmation of the Realm of *Naples* to the *Spaniards*. More famous is this River for the death of *Peter de Medices*, who being banished his Countrey at the coming of King *Charles* the 8. into *Italie*, and having divers times in vain attempted to be reimpatriate, followed the *French* Army hither, and after the loss of the day, took ship with others, to fly to *Cajeta*; but over-charging the vessel, she sunk and drowned them all. But most famous is it, in that *Marius*, that excellent, though unfortunate Captain, being by *Silla's* faction driven out of *Rome*, hid himself stark naked in the dirt and weeds of this River: where he had not layen long, but *Sylla's* Souldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the *Minturnians*, being not far off. These men, to please *Sylla*, hired a *Cimber* to kill him, which the fellow attempting (such is the vertue of Majesty even in a miserable fortune) run out again, crying, he could not kill *C. Marius*. This River was of old called *Liris*; and towards its influx into the Sea expatiated into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of *Minturni*, from a City of that name adjoining.

It is divided into the Provinces of 1. *Terra di Lavoro*, 2. *Abruzzo*, 3. *Puglia*, or *Apulia*, 4. *Terra de Otranto*, 5. *Calabria Superior*, 6. *Calabria Inferior*, and 7. the Isles of *Naples*. Some of which have some smaller Territories adjoining to them, which we shall meet withal as they come in our way.

TERRA DI LAVORO is bounded on the North with *Abruzzo*, from which separated by the *Apennine* Hills; on the East with the River *Silurus*, which parteth it from the lower *Calabria*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan* Sea, and on the West with *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*; from which divided by the river *Gargilian*; called anciently *Campagna Felix*, in regard of the wonderful fertility of it, and that it was the seat or dwelling of the *Campans*; by some modern Latinists called *Campagna Antiqua*, to difference it from *Latium*, which they now call *Campagna di Roma*, or *Campagna Nova*. And for the other name of *Terra di Lavoro*, or *Terra Laboratoris*, it was given to it, from the continual labour of the Husbandman in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof; but neither the reason, nor the name so new, as some men suppose. But I am sure, as old as *Pliny*, who calleth these parts sometime by the name of *Laboria*, sometimes of *Campus Laborinus*; and gives this reason of the name, *quod ingens in eo colendo sit Labor*, because of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

The Countrey foceeding, fruitful in Wines and Wheat, that by *Florus* the Historian it is called

led *Cereris & Bacchi certamen*, and deservedly too. For in this noble Region one may see large and beautiful fields overhaded with rich Vines, thick and delightful Woods, sweet Fountains, and most wholesome Springs of running waters; useful as well for the restoring of mans health, as delight and pleasure: and in a word, whatsoever a covetous minde can possibly aim at, or a carnal cover.

Towns of note here were many in the elder times. The principal whereof, 1 *Cajeta*, seated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedness whereof it is thought by *Strabo*, to have took the name; the word in the *Laconian* language signifying crooked. Others will have it so called from *Kala, Uro*, with reference to the burning of the Fleet of *Aeneas* by the *Trojan Ladies*; for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been so extremely tossed in their former voyages. But why that Fact committed on the furthest coasts of *Sicily*, should be so solemnly commemorated here on the shores of *Italy*, I can see no reason, and therefore we may far more probably derive it from *Cajeta*, the nurse of *Aeneas*; in memory of whom, being buried here, or hereabouts, *Aeneas* is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, *Æneid. lib. 7.*

*Tu quoque Littoribus nostris, Eneia nutrit,
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, dedisti.*

That is to say,

Aeneas Nurse, *Cajeta*, by her death,
Did to these shores an endless fame bequeath.

But on what ground soever it first had this name, it is assuredly a place of great strength and consequence; and of so special importance for the estate of this Kingdom, that (as *Cominius* hath observed) if King *Charles* the 8. had but only fortified it, and the *Cattle of Naples*; the Realm had never been lost. 2. *Naples*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, a beautiful City, containing seven miles in compass. It was once called *Parthenope*, and falling to ruine, was new built, and called *Neapolis*. Among other things, here is an Hospital, the revenues whereof is 60000-Crowns yearly, wherewith, besides other good deeds, they nourish in divers parts of the Kingdom, 2000 poor Infants. In this City, the disease called *Morbus Gallicus*, or *Neapolitanus*, was first known in *Christendom*. This City is seated on the Sea-shore, and fortified with four strong Castles, viz. 1. *Castle Capodua*, where the Kings Palace was; 2. *Ermo*; 3. *Castle del Ovo*, or the Castle of the Egge, and 4. *Castle Novo*, or the new Castle. But nature hath not done much less to her Fortifications, than the hand of Art; the Town being for the most part environed by Sea, or Mountains not to be ascended without great difficulty and disadvantages. Which Mountains, as they serve on that side as a bank to the City, so do they furnish the Citizens with most generous Wines; and being once ascended yield a gallant prospect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the seat of the *Vice-roy*, and the continual resort, if not constant residence of most of the great men of the Realm; which makes the private buildings to be very graceful, and the publick stately. And yet it had increased much more in buildings, than it is at present, if the King had not forbidden it by special Edict. And this he did, partly at the perswasion of his Noblemen, who feared that if such a restraint were not laid upon them, their vassals would forsake the Countrey to inhabit here, so to enjoy the privileges and exemptions of the Regal City: but principally upon jealousy and point of State, the better to prevent all revolts and mutinies, which in most populous Cities are of greater danger. 3. *Capua*, once the head of the *Campanians*, seated in a delicious and luxurious soyl, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the seat of the Empire, the other two being *Carthage*, and *Corinth*. Being distressed by the *Samnites*, they were fain to cast themselves into the Arms of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but suffered them to live according to their own Laws, as a Free Common-wealth; rather like a Confederate than a Subject-State. Which freedom they enjoyed, till after their revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when being reduced to their obedience by force of Arms, they lost all their Liberties, and hardly scaped its fatal and final ruin: drawing the whole Nation of the *Campanians*, with divers lesser States, which depended on them, into bondage with it, *A.V.C. 542. Appius and Flaccus* being Consuls. The pleasures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after the great defeat given to *Tarentina Varro* at the Battell of *Canna*; whence came the saying, *Capua melle Cannas Annibali*. 4. *Cuma*, a City once of great power and beauty, till *Campania* was subdued by the *Romans*; after which it decayed in both. Near hereunto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Sibyls*, called from hence *Cumæa*; and not far off the Lake called *Lacum Avernum*, the fink whereof is said to have poisoned Birds as they flew over it; supposed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally, from this place it was, that *Aeneas* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernal Ghosts, to talk with his Father. 5. *Nola*, where *Marcus* discomfited the Forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to understand, that he was not invincible. 6. *Puteoli*, a small Town standing on a Creek of the Sea, just opposite to *Baia*, on the other side of it; from which distant about three miles and an half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridge built betwix them by *Caligula*, composed of sundry vessels joyned together in such sort, that there was not only fair and large passage over it, but victualling houses on both sides of it: Over which Bridge thus made, he marched and remarched in triumphal Robes, as if not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made subject to him. And this he did (as himself afterwards affirmed to some of his friends) to awe the Ocean; and imitate (if not exceed) the like acts of *Xerxes* and *Darius*,

Darius, mentioned in the ancient Writers; as also to terrifie the *Britains* and the *German Nations*, with the report of such a notable exploit; or (as some thought) to fulfil the Prophecie of one *Thrasibulus* a fortune-teller of those times, who had been often heard to say in the life time of *Tiberius* (his next immediate Predecessor) that it was impossible for *Caius* to succeed in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on Horseback from *Baule* to *Puteoli*. 7. Not far hence, on a Semicircular Bay, stands the City of *Baia* (whereof *Baule* before mentioned is a part) so called, as they say, from *Baius*, one of the companions of *Ulysses* in his Navigations. A City in the flourish of the *Roman Empire* of five miles in length, and two in breadth; so wonderfully endued by nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the world was thought comparable to it:

Nallus in Orbe locus Baiis præluet amœniæ.

Few places in the world there are
With pleasant *Baia* to compare.

As it is in *Horace*.

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitudes of Baths, or *Bannias*, Imperial Palaces, stately buildings, and the adjoining Mannor-houses of the principal *Romans*, whom the pleasures of the place invited hither; and was indeed too great and sensible a monument of the lasciviousness and luxury of that prosperous people, of which the *Ambubaie* mentioned in the *Satyrist* is sufficient proof; (though some fetch the *Etymologie* of the word far enough from *Rome*, deriving it from *Ambub*; a Syrian word signifying a Pipe, from whence the *Latines* give this name to their Minstrels) now so demolished by War, and devoured by Water, that there is nothing of it to be seen but some scattered ruins. 8. *Misenum*, seated near a great hill or Promontory of the same name, at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious harbour; where *Augustus* keeping one Navy, and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole *Roman Empire*. But these were places of renown in the former times, all which, excepting *Naples*, are now only known by what they have been, not by what they are. The principal Cities at this time, are (next to *Naples* it self) *Sessa*, the *Simessa* or *Snissa* of the ancients; and now the title of a Dukedom to the house of *Cordova* in *Spain* derived from *Gonsalvo* the great Captain, of whom more hereafter. 2. *Aversa*, a Town of great strength and consequence, second to few in all the Kingdom; but forced to yield (though the Earl of *Monsperier* then Vice-roy of the Realm for *Charles* the 8. were in person in it) to the good fortune of *Gonsalvo*, spoken of before: the whole Kingdom following shortly after. 3. *Ceano*, 4. *Salvi*, 5. *Venasfre*, and 6. *Caserte*, with others, to the number of 22, besides 166 Castles or defensible places. Here is also in this Tract the Hill called *Gallianum*, where *Annibal* that great Master in the Art of War, frighted that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the stratagem of two thousand Oxen, carrying fire in their horns; by which device he freed himself out of those difficult Straights, in which he was at that present. And in this Countrey there is also the Hill *Vesuvius*, that cateth out flames of fire, the smoke of which stifled *Pliny* the younger, coveting to search the cause of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly also during the reign of *Titus*, calking out not only such store of smoke, that the very Sun seemed to be in the Eclipse, but also huge stones: and of ashes such plenty, that *Rome*, *Africk*, and *Syria*, were even covered; and *Herculanum*, and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italy*, were overwhelmed with them. There were heard dismal noises all about the Province; and Giants of incredible bigness seen to stalk up and down, about the top and edges of the mountain; which extraordinary accident, either was a cause, or preface of the future Pestilence, which raged in *Rome* and *Italy* long after.

On the East side of this *Campania*, and properly (as anciently it was esteemed) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonso* King of *Naples* caused to be called the *Principate*; bounded upon the East with *Calabria inferior*, or that part thereof which is called the *Basilicate*; from which parted by the River *Silarus*. It extends 33 miles in length, and 10 in breadth: and was of old the seat of the *Picentini*, a colony of the *Piceni* dwelling on the *Adriatick*, Principal places of it, 1. *Misfi*, by the *Italians* called *Mafso*, of more note for the Hills adjoining, than any great beauty or antiquity it hath in it self. Those hills now called *Monte Mafso*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Montes Mafficii*; of special estimation for the rich Wines, called *Vina Maffica*. 2. *Nucerina*, nine miles from the Sea, in a very plentiful and delicious soyl. 3. *Rivelli*, a City not long since built, which for the elegance of the buildings hardly yields to *Naples*. 4. *Melfi*, or *Amalphi*, an Arch-bishops See, in which it is supposed that the *Mariners* Compass was first found out. It is situate on the Sea-side, and giveth name to the coast of *Amalfi*, fenced with Hills or Mountains of so great a height, that to look down into the Valleys or the Sea adjoining, makes men sick and giddy. A Town of great note (were there nothing else to commend it to our observation) for the finding out of the *Mariners* Compass, (as before is said) devised and contrived here about the year 1300. by one *John Flavio*, a native or inhabitant of it. 5. *Salerno*, about a mile from the Sea, the title of the Prince of *Salerno*, and an University, but chiefly for the study of *Physick*, the Doctors of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerni*, dedicated to a King of *England*: not to *K. Henry* the 8. as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it, written by *Arnoldus Villanovanus*, (who lived about the year 1313) must needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated either to King *Richard* the first, or King *Edward* the first, who in their journeys towards the *Holy Land*, might bestow a visit on this place, and give some honourary encouragement to the Students of it. Besides these there are said to be in this small Territory, fifteen other good Towns, and two hundred and thirteen Castles or walled places; but these the principal.

II. North of *Campania*, lyeth the Province now called *ABRUZZO*, bounded on the East with *Puglia*,

Abruzzo.

Puglia, or *Apulia*; on the West, with *Marca Anconitana*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea; and on the South, with the *Apennine*. It is called, *Apurum* by the *Latins*, but the reason of the name not agreed upon: divided anciently between the *Picentes* and the *Samnites*: the *Picentes* taking up those parts which lay next the *Adriatick*; the rest (being far the greater part) was possessed by the *Samnites*. These last (for of the others we shall speak elsewhere) a people which held longer wars with the state of *Rome*, than almost all *Italy* besides; as keeping them in continual action for the space of 70 years together, besides many after-claps. In which long course of Wars, the *Romans* were so hardly put to their shifts, that they were four times fain to have recourse to the last refuge; which was the choosing of *Dictators*; and yet came off so often with success and victory, that it afforded them the honour of thirty Triumphs. But these *Samnites*, as they were a potent, so they were also a compound Nation; consisting of the *Ferentani*, *Caraceni*, *Peligni*, *Preacini*, *Vestini*, *Hirpini*, and *Samnites* properly so called; into which name the rest of the inferior Tribes were after swallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Samnium*, whence they had their name; which in the conclusion of the War was so defaced by *Papirius* the *Roman* Consul, *ut hodie Samnium in ipso Samnio requiratur*; that not improperly (saith *Florus*) a man might ask where *Samnium* stood, even in the middle of the City. Which hapned *A. V. C. 481*.

The River of *Pescara* runneth through the midst of it, and divideth it into two parts, whereof the one containeth 5 Cities, and 150 Castles, or walled places; the other, 184 Castles, and 4 Cities. The principal Cities of the whole, 1 *Arpinum*, once the chief Town of the *Arpinates*, and the Countrey of *M. Tullius Cicero*, that famous Orator, now a poor Village called *Arpino*. 2 *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we finde in *Pliny*, because the Winds hereabouts were so fierce and violent, that men could not sit upon their Horses; but had at last that name of *Beneventum*, from the pleasant Plains and spacious Valleys which lye round about it; in like manner as the Countrey of the old *Allobroges*, exchanged the name of *Malvo*, into that of *Salvo*. It was one of the four Dukedomes which the *Lombards* erected, when they first came into *Italy*, for the better assuring of their Conquest; and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo* the ninth to the Church of *Bamberg*; where the said Emperor was born; and is still under the command of the Popes of *Rome*. 3 *Aquila*, built by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, King of *Naples*, to assure the Realm upon that Quarter. 4 *Lanciano*, four miles from the *Adriatick*; a Town of great Trade, and much resorted to by Merchants at her Annual Fairs. 5 *Ortona*, the Port-town unto *Lanciano*. 6 *Teranum*, or *Teran* (*Ptolemy* calls it *Inter-amna*) anciently the Metropolis of the *Preacini*. 7 *Cittadi Chieti*, situate on a Hill some seven miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. 8 *Aguino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas* the great School-man, who first brought the scattered limbs of Popery into a body. Here stood also the old Town *Cosinum*, the chief City of the *Peligni*, made good a while by *Domitius Enobarbus* against *Julius Caesar*, in his first following after *Pompey*, then retired from *Rome*. And seven miles hence, 10 *Sulmo*, honoured with the birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himself testifieth,

*Sulmo mihi Patria est, gelidis uberrimus undis,
Mellia qui nonies distat ab Urbe decem.*

Full of cool streams *Sulmo*, my native land,
From the great City ninety miles doth it stand.

There belongeth also to *Abruzzo* the Countrey of *Molise*, in which are 104 walled places or Castles, and four considerable Towns; the principal of which is *Bovianum*, or *Boiano*, now a Bishops See, in former times a Colony of the *Romans*, by *Pliny* called *Bovianum Undecumanorum* to difference it from another in this Tract of the same name, which he calls *Bovianum vetus*. 2 *Luparetha*, of which little memorable. In this Countrey also (I mean *Abruzzo*) are the straights called *Furca Caudina*, in which when the *Samnites* and their confederates had so inclosed the *Romans*, that there was no possibility to escape, they sent to *Herennius*, a man for his Age much honoured, and for his Wisdom much followed by them, to know what they should do with the captive Enemy. Word was returned, that they should send them home safe, and without dishonour. Thinking the old man had not been well informed of the state of the business, they sent to him again, and he advised, that they should put them all to the sword. These contrary answers made them judge amiss of the old mans brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they spoyled the *Romans*, and disarmed them, and despitfully used them, and so sent them home. Which when *Herennius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of so rash an action; but much more the destruction of this Countrey, as a consequent of it. Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a safe and honourable deliverance from the present danger, they had made them their friends for many Ages; or had they put unto the sword for many of their Souldiers and chief Commanders, they had disabled them for long time from pursuing the War: The middle course which they had taken, would be their undoing; and so accordingly it proved. For the *Romans* not being made their Friends by so odious a benefit, but hatching revenge for the disgrace, soon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papirius* subdued the Countrey, and handled the poor conquered people with the like despight. An excellent Precedent unto Princes and those in power, how to proceed towards men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under; which must be, either not to strike at all, or to strike home and to the purpose. *Nic. Machiavil* in his *Florentine History* taxeth *Rinaldo* of *Albizi* for committing a great *Solacism* in point of State, in that hating *Cosmo*

Apulia.

de *Medicis*, and desiring to remove him from his publik managery of affairs, he thought it was sufficient to procure his banishment: which *Cosmo*, afterwards returning, paid in better coyn. Whereupon he inferreth this notable *Aporism*, that Great persons must not at all be touched, or if they be, must be made sure from taking Revenge. Yet do I not interdict a Prince, or any supreme Governours, the use of *Mercy*. I know it is the richest Jewel which adorns the Crown. Nor dare I take upon me to direct the use of that excellent verue. Only I shall observe what usage hath been commonly afforded towards such persons after their Delinquencies; whose liberty or life may create danger to the publick. The first is present Execution; for *Mortui non mordeant*, as the saying is: a course more to be allowed of where it cannot, then commended where it may be spared. The second is either close imprisonment under trusty Guards, or else confinement to the house and custody of some trusty Statesman: in which great caution also is to be observed. For besides that nothing is more ordinary than the escape of great Prisoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their Keepers; We find in our Histories, how *Dr. Morison* Bishop *Ely*, being committed to the custody of the Duke of *Buckingham* by King *Richard* the 3. not only procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary faction. The last, which is in all times the gentlest, and in some cases the safest, is not only an absolute pardon of life, and a grant of liberty; but an endearing of the party delinquent, by giving him some place of honour, or committing unto his fidelity some office of trust; it being the nature of most men, that where they are not trusted, they are never true; and that as long as they lie under suspect and jealousies, they will be apt to entertain some thoughts of their lost condition. And of this kinde of dealing with a person Delinquent, we have a pregnant instance in the Emperor *Otho*: who not only pardoned *Marius Celsus* one of *Galba's* faction, and a chief one too; but put him in place nearest to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders, in the following War against *Vitellius*. His reason was, *Ne hostis metum Reconciliat* onis adhiberet, lest lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but badly made up. And on the other side, *Marius Celsus* proved so sensible of the obligation, that he continued faithful to him to the very last; and lost his life in the pursuance of his quarrel: shewing thereby, that persons of a generous and noble disposition, are more obliged by favours, than restrained by terror. But it is now time I should free my self of these *Furca Caudina*, and sport my self a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

But I must note, before I take my leave hereof, that these two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo*, make up the greatest, richest, and best peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority, both of claim and power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to those two for wealth and greatness, and were assigned over to the *Spaniards*, as lying most conveniently for the Realm of *Sicilie*.

III. *PUGLIA* is bounded on the West, with *Abruzzo*; on the East, with *Terra di Otranto*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Countrey called of old *Apulia*; from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians*, and the *Pouille* of the *French* are to be derived.

The whole Countrey containeth in it besides Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Castles and walled places, with 13 Cities of good note. The most considerable of which we shall meet withall in our *Chorography* of the several parts, divided antiently by *Ptolemy*, and since him, by *Leander*; into *Apulia* *Dannia*, and *Apulia* *Peuceetia*: the former subdivided into the *Capitanate*, and *Pouille* the Plains; the later into *Bari*, and the Land of *Otranto*. For that the land of *Otranto*, (though now a Province of it self) did sometimes pass in the account of *Apulia*; seems to me most probable, in that all the East parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors (after the coming in of the *Lombards*) by no other names then those of *Apulia* and *Calabria*; and by no other names then those were assigned over unto *Otho* the 2 of *Germany*, on his marriage with *Theophania*, Niece to one of those Emperors. And I conceive that it was then laid unto *Apulia*, rather then to *Calabria*, first, in regard that the old inhabitants were the same in both; the *Iapyges*, *Messapians* and *Salentini*, possessing promiscuously all this Tract from Mount *Garganus* in *Dannia*, to the Promontory called *Iapygium* in the most Eastern angle of the Land of *Otranto*. And secondly, in regard that the people of both, have a disease peculiar only to themselves, occasioned by the biting of a little Serpent called a *Tarantula*, not curable but by musick only. This said, we will proceed in our Survey of the parts. And first,

APULIA DANNIA, is that part hereof which lieth next to *Abruzzo*, from which parted by the River *Phiternus* (now called *Fortore*) and so extending East-wards to the River *Ausidus* (*Losonto*, the *Italians* call it) where it meets with *Peuceetia*. The reason of the name is not yet agreed on. But I finde no more probable conjecture of it, than that it should be called thus of *Dannus*, the son of *Danae* by *Pilamnius*, once the King of this Countrey; it being reported in the Legends of those elder times, that *Danae* being delivered of *Perseus* whom she had by *Jupiter*, was by his Father the King *Acristus*, exposed to the mercy of the Seas; by which she was wafted with her young son to the coasts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fisher, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became so enamoured of her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Dannus*. But *Dannus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by force or composition, he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Etolia*: who at the end of the *Trojan* War, wherein he was principal Actor, hearing of the libidinous courses of his Wife *Agiale*, abhorred the thought of living with her; and so came with his people to this Countrey, where he fixt his dwelling, and built the City of *Argirypa*, whereof more anon. But as for *Dannus*, though he was not able to keep the possession of this Countrey, yet he bequeathed his name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with such of his subjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief head of the *Ru-*

By which we also may conclude, that it took this name with reference to some Town of *Etolia*, which was the native Countrey of *Diomedes*. For although I know that many of the ancient Writers, suppose it to have been first called *Argos Hippium*, with relation to a famous City of that name in *Peloponnesus*; and afterby contradiction or corruption to be named *Argrippam*; yet these words of *Patrie de nomine gentis*, do perswade me otherwise. *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Countrey of *Argolis*, where that City stood; nor in the whole demy-Island of *Peloponnesus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called also *Diamedia*, and *urbis Diomedis*, because of his foundation, and his Royal Seat, after his fixing in this Countrey; but at the last it came to be called *Aryp*, and by that name was known in the time of the *Romans* greatness; Now nowhere to be found but in the ruins of time.

The chief Towns are, 1 *Lecci*, *Altinum* in Latine, a rich Town well built, and very well peopled. 2 *Castro*, a Sea Town, but not well fenced by Art or nature, which hath made it very often a prey to the *Turks*. 3 *Gallipolis*, a Town built on so craggy a rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4 *Brundisium*, the head Town of the *Salentini*, once glorying in the most capacious Haven of all the world; from whence there was continual passage into *Dalmatia*, *Epirus*, *Macedon*, and the rest of *Greece*. Here was it that *Pompey* took ship to flee from *Cesar*, and *Cesar* took shipping also to pursue after him: when to encourage the Pilot who was afraid of the storm, he cried out, *Cæsarem uisus es* after him: when to encourage the Pilot who was afraid of the storm, he cried out, *Cæsarem uisus es*

*Terra di
Otranto:*

Calabria fortunam ejus. It was first built by the *Ætolians*, under the conduct of one *Diomedes*, and called *Brontesfon*, which in the *Mæssapian* Tongue signifieth the horn or head of a Stag, which it much resembles: from whence the *Latines* give it the name of *Brundisium*. At this day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being so choaked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very ancient Town, and yet still reasonably well peopled, having a strong a Cattle upon a Rock for its defence, and a capacious Port for Traffique; the principal at the present of all the Province, which is therefore called *Terra Hydruntina*, by our modern *Latinists*. It is now called *Otranto*, and is a place of such importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the Great, *An. 1481.* put all Italy into such a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandoned. Not well inhabited again till the expulsion of the *Turks* in the year next following.

Pass we on next to the two *Calabrias*, so called from the *Calabri* an ancient people of this Tract, inhabiting that part hereof which formerly had been called *Magna Grecia*, now *Calabria Superior*, with a part of the Country of the *Salentini*, lying on the Northern side of the Gulf of *Tarento*, now called by the name of *Otranto*. But the *Greek* Emperors being possessed of these parts of Italy, when the more Western parts thereof were under the *Goths* and *Lombards*, extended the name of *Calabria*, as far as to the Strait of *Messina*, taking the County of the *Bruttii*, now *Calabria Inferior*, into the account: and making but two Provinces of their whole Estate which was left in this Continent by the names of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which *Apulia* conveyed all the Country on the coast of the *Adriatick*, from *Abruzzo* to the extreme point or Promontory in the land of *Otranto*, called anciently *Iapygium*, now the Cape of *St. Mary*; *Calabria*, all the rest of these parts of Italy, which lie between the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Bay of *Tarentum*. So that the ancient *Calabria*, was burpart of this; and of that *Ennius* the old Poet was a Native, as is affirmed by *Ovid* in his 3 de *Arte*.

Ennius emeruit Calabris in montibus hortos.

Old Ennius his Garden tills
Among the steep Calabrian Hills.

Now called the *Basilicate*, and reckoned as a member of the lower *Calabria*.

But leaving these matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Country as it standeth at the present; divided of late times into *Inferior* and *Superior*, in which distinct capacities we shall look upon it. Premising only by the way, that this Countrey is the title of the eldest Son of the Kings of *Naples*; who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that before it was subjected to these Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holofernes*, whose daughter *Flora* was married unto *Godfre* of *Bovillon*, being King hereof, *An. 1098*.

V. CALABRIA SUPERIOR, called formerly *Magna Grecia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Grecians*, hath on the East the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea; on the West *Lucania*, from which it is divided by the *Apennine* and the River *Crathis*; on the North, *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarento*; and on the South and South-East, *Calabria inferior*, and *Golfo di Squillacy*, of old called *Sinus Scyllæticus*. The principal Cities at this time are, 1. *Belcastro*, eight miles from the Sea, where once stood *Petilia*. 2. *Bisignano*, the title of a Prince, fortified with a very strong Cattle, and endowed with the best Revenues of any principality or other Noble-man of Title in all the Kingdom. 3. *Macerata*, an Arch-bishops See, a rich Town, and well peopled. 4. *Rossano*, three miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and situate in a very fruitful and pleasant Soil. 5. *Altavilla*, which giveth title also to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*, given with the title of Duke to *Gonsalvo Fernandez de Cordova*, commonly called the great Captain, as a reward of his signal service in the conquest of the Realm of *Naples*: and still enjoyed (together with the title of Duke of *Sessa*) by the house of *Cordova*.

As for the chief Cities of the *Greeks* in the former times, they were *Locris* founded by the *Locrians*, a people of *Achæa*. Here lived the Law-maker *Zaleucus*, who ordering Adultery to be punished with the loss of both eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Son, as the first offender. Therefore to shew the love of a Father, and the sincerity of a Judge, he put out one of his Sons eyes, and one of his own. He also provided in his Laws that no woman should be attended in the street with more than one Maid, but when she was drunk; that she should not go abroad at night, but when she went to play the Harlot; that she should not wear gold or embroidered apparel, but when she meant to set her self to open sale; and that men should not wear Rings and Tissues, but when they went about the prostituting of some woman; and many others of this mould. By means whereof both men and women were restrained from all extraordinary trains of Attendants, and excess of Apparel; the common consequents of a long and prosperous tranquillity. It was also famous in old times for the victory which *Ennomus* an excellent *Musician* obtained against *Arifonius* of *Rhegium*, another of the same profession. For though *Arifonius* had made his prayers to *Apollo* the god of *Musick* for his good success; yet *Ennomus* plainly told him, that Nature was against them in this contention, which had made all the *Grashoppers* mute on that side of the water. And so accordingly it hapned. For when the day appointed came, *Ennomus* had the ill hap to break one of his Harpstrings, even in the middle of his *Musick*; when presently a *Grashopper* leaped upon his Harp, and supplied most melodiously the place of the broken string; and by that means obtained the victory to *Ennomus*. An accident not unworthy of the Muse of *Strada*, in his personating of the Poet *Clandian*. And though I bind

bind not any man to believe this Tale (though of *Strabo's* telling) yet there are very good Authors for thus much thereof, that on the one side of the River, *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from *Rhegium*, the *Grashoppers* do merrily sing; but on the other side, which is that towards *Rhegium*, they are always silent. 2. *Tarentum*, a Town of no less note, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*; first built by the *Spartans*: the people whereof having a great command on the Country adjoining, were one of the last Italian Nations taken in by the *Romans*. *Nam quis post Tarentinos auderet*: For who durst stir when once the *Tarentines* were vanquished? faith the Historian. For in the ruin of this Estate, the *Apulians*, *Lucani*, *Bruttii*, and the neighbouring *Calabrians* being all confederate together in defence thereof, were brought under the command and power of *Rome*, *A.V.C. 578*. all which (from the beginning of the *Tarentine* war some nine years before) were either a free people, or in a kind of subjection to this mighty City; but never felt the force of the *Roman* puissance. So that the war began but on to this City; and ended in the total subjection of these several Nations, *An. 481*. *Papyrius* *Cursor*, *A.V.C. 472*. and ended in the second time *Consul*, as before was said. In the defence of this people, and *Sp. Carvilius* being then the second time *Consul*, as before was said. In the defence of this people, did *Pyrhus* war against the *Romans*; the hope of getting this place by *Annibal*, was the loss of *Capua*; and finally here lived *Archytas* so famous for his flying Dove. 3. *Crotana*, the Inhabitants whereof were once so active, that at one *Olympick* meeting the *Victors* were all of this one Town. Their glory much decayed in a battle against the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thousand of them and their Confederates, were vanquished by fifteen thousand of the enemy. 4. *Amyle*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoras*, who having been often terrified with a false report of the approach of their Enemies, published a Law prohibiting all such reports. By which means, their Enemies coming unawares possessed themselves of it. Hence grew the proverb, *Amyclas silentium perdidit*; and hence that notable saying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be silent, returned this answer: *Mihi necesse est loqui, scia enim Amyclas silentio perisse*. 5. *Sybaris*, a City built by the *Grecians* after the destruction of *Troy*; the people whereof were Lords of 25 good Towns, and could Arme 30000 men. A people so effeminate, that they permitted no Smith nor Brazier, no nor so much as a cock to live amongst them, because they would not have their sleeps disturbed: but the Fiddlers, and Mulicians were in high request, which advantage the *Crotonians* taking, (with whom then in hostility) they entered the Town in the habit of Mulicians, and so mastered it. Before which accident there had been a Prophecy, that the Town should never be taken, till men were more esteemed than the Gods themselves. It hapned that a slave being grievously beaten by his Master, and obtaining no pardon for the Gods sake, upon whom he called, fled to the monument of some of his Masters Ancestors, and was pardoned by him; which coming to the ears of *Amrys* the Philosopher, he forsook the Town, most men holding him mad in a time of no danger to leave so delicate a seat: whence came the Proverb, *Amrys insani*, applied to such as under the pretence of madness or folly do provide for their safety.

VI. CALABRIA INFERIOR is bounded on the North with *Calabria Superior*, from which parted by the River *Crathis*, and a branch of the *Apennine*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Strait of *Messina*; on the West with that part of *Campania* which is called the *Principate*: and on the East with a part of the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea. It was antiently the habitation of the *Bruttii*, whom the *Greek* Writers generally call *Bretti*; and their Country *Britania*; upon which ground, some of our modern Criticks (envying so great an honour to the Isle of *Great Britain*) have transferred to this Province the birth of *Constantine*, the first *Christian* Emperour. These *Bruttii* being first conquered by the *Romans*, with the rest of Italy, after the defeat of *Canna*, took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Annibal*, whom the *Romans* had shut up in this corner. A Country not much short in fruitfulness of the rest of the Kingdom; and having the advantage of so much Sea, is the better situate for Traffique. At one extremity hereof, is the Promontory called by *Ptolomy*, *Leuco Petra*, now *Labo di Spartimento*; all along which, especially in the month of *May*, are taken great store of *Tunnies* (a fish which much resembleth mans flesh) which being barrelled up are sold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers also of a very strange nature; of which the one called *Crathis*, makes a mans hair yellow, and dyeth silke white; the other named *Buseantus*, causeth both hair and silke to be black and swarthy.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Consentia*, an antient Town, comprehending seven little Hills, and a Cattle on the top of one of them, which commandeth both the Town and Country adjoining. It is built betwixt the said two Rivers, and is still reasonably rich, though not so wealthy now as in former times. 2. *Rhegium*, or *Rhezo*, on the Sea-shore, opposite to *Messina* in the Isle of *Sicily*, which is supposed to have been broken off from the rest of Italy, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the *Greek* word *ῥήγιον*, which signifieth to break off, or to tear asunder. A Town in former times very well traded, but left desolate in a manner since the year 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3. *Castrovillare*, seated upon the top of a very high Mountain 4. *Belmont*, and 5. *Altomonte*, two very fair Towns, whose names sufficiently expresse their pleasant and lofty situations. 6. *St. Euphemie*, from whence the Bay which antiently was called *Sinus Lamestinus*, or *Lamestinus*, is now called *Golfo di St. Euphemie*. 7. *Nicastro*, three miles from the Sea, the same with *Newcastle* in *England*.

On the West side of this *Calabria*, and properly a part thereof, but reaching to the North as far as *Apulia*, standeth that mountainous Country, which in the subdivision of these Provinces by King *Alfonso*, was called the *BASILICATE*; antiently the seat of the *Lucani*, and therefore called *Lucania* by the elder *Latinists*. Divided from the *Principate*, or West parts of *Campania*, by the River *Silarus*. A Country heretofore very unsafe for Travellers, by reason of the difficult ways, and assured company of Thieves; but now reduced to better order. It containeth in 93 walled places,

Naples. places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are, *Possidonia*, or *Pest*, a City situate in solement and benign a soil, that Roses grow there thrice a year. 2. *Polycastro*, on the Sea-shore, as the former is, honoured with the title of a Dukedom. And *Dian* or *Diamus*, a more midland City, near which there is Valley 20 miles in length, and four miles in breadth; which for all manner of delights, and fruitfulness, yields to none in *Naples*.

VII. The ISLES of *NAPLES* are either in the *Adriatick*, and *Tuscan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteoli*. In the *Adriatick* Sea, are the Islands of *Diomedes*, right against *Apulia*, where it encountereth with *Abruzzo*: so called from *Diomedes* King of *Etolia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War, (in which he was so great a stickler) fettered himself in some part of *Apulia*; the principal whereof are, *St. Maries*, *St. Dominico*, and *Tremitana*. 2 The Island of *Acates*, over against the Town of *Gallipoli*. 3 *St. Andrews*, in the Bay of *Tarentum*. 4 And finally, the two Islands of *Dioscoros* and *Calypso*, over against the Cape of *Lacinia*, now called *Colonne*, in the upper *Calabria*. Of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas, are the Islands of *Pontia* and *Panditaria* (now called *Palmarde*) as little famous as the other; save that the last is memorable in the *Roman* Stories, for the confinement of *Agrippina* the wife of *Germanicus*, and mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperor *Tiberius Nero*.

Those in the Gulf or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note. The principal whereof are 1 *Ischia*, heretofore called *Oenotris*, from its plenty of Wine, wherewith it aboundeth to this day; as also with Allom, Sulphur and most excellent fruits. It is in compass 18 miles, and so begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is accessible at one entrance only; and that too fortified with a strong and impregnable Citadel: and therefore chosen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of refuge, when he was outed of his Kingdom by *Charles* the 8. Here is also good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2 *Prochita*, now called *Prochita*, about six miles in circuit, wherein are very wholesome Bathes, good store of Conies, Hares, and Pheasants; the shore replenished with Fish, and the land with Fountains. *John de Prochita*, who plotted the *Sicilian Vespers*, was once Lord of this place; but afterwards for a reward of that service, made *Vice-roy of Valencia*, a Kingdom of *Spain*. 3 *Capree*, a small rocky Island having no Haven, nor convenient station for Ships, but of a mild and temperate Air; much beautified by *Augustus Caesar*, in regard that an old sapless tree upon his casual landing here, did bud forth afresh. After that, it was much honoured by his retirement from affairs of State; and as much dishonoured by *Tiberius* his next Successor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theater of his Cruelties, and most filthy Lulls. It hath a little City of the same name, having a fortress, and a Bishops See; and another Town called *Anacapa*, inhabited by Fishermen, and Ship-wrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Island they used to confine offenders in former times, and sometimes also at this day. 4 *Anaria*, a small Island given by *Augustus* to the *Neapolitans* in exchange for *Capree*, whose before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun, who have suffered under more changes and alterations of State, than the Inhabitants of this Kingdom. For being at the first a mixture of several Nations, some of them preyed upon the others, till they were all subdued (as hath been shewn before) by the power of *Rome*. In the declining of her fortunes, they followed for the most part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*; and he being called home, they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italy* was subdued by the *Goths*, it became subject to that people, as *Sicily*, and the rest of those Islands did; and when the *Lombards* Lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands, except *Apulia* and *Calabria*; which the *Greek* Emperors having conquered from the *Goths* with the rest of *Italy*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themselves. In the division of the Empire betwixt *Carolus Magnus* and *Irene*, these two last Provinces only were assigned to the *Constantinopolitans*, the rest to *Charles*, and his Successors: both outed of their several parts by the prevailing *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Sabba*, and other successive Generals. These partly dispossessed by the Emperor *Otho* the first, and his *Amain* forces; challenging a right herein, as King of *Italy*; that right confirmed and enlarged by the marriage of *Otho* the 2. with *Theophania*, Niece to *Nicephorus Phocas* the Eastern Emperour, who brought *Apulia* and *Calabria* for her Dower or Portion. But long the *Germans* had not held it, when they were again expelled by the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, joyning together against them as a common Enemy; who afterwards held bitter wars against one another, for the sole command. During these wars, it hapned that one *Drangot* a Gentleman of *Normandy*, having in the presence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conqueror) slain one *Reposfel*, a Gentleman of like quality; to avoid the justice of the Prince, and the practices of *Reposfel*'s kindred, fled into this Countrey, attended by such of his followers, as either did depend upon his fortunes, or had been meddlers in the Fray. Where being come, the Duke *Benevent*, *Vicegerent* to the Eastern Emperour, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raised withal that the *Greeks* hearkned after men of valour and action; caused many private Gentlemen to pass over the *Alpes*, and there to hew themselves out a more prosperous fortune, than formerly they had enjoyed. The fortunate success of which last Adventurers, drew thither also *Tancred*, the Lord of *Hauteville*, who with his twelve sons came into *Apulia*, An. 1008. and in short time not only drove the *Saracens* thence, but the *Grecians* also, as men that had broke Covenant with them in the division of the Booty. For *William* the son of *Tancred*, combining with *Melroco*, Governour of *Apulia* for the *Greek* Emperour, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salerno*, men of power and honour, for the conquest of *Sicily* (which the *Saracens* then wholly held) agreed amongst themselves to divide the places conquered by them into four equal parts; one, for each Adventurer. But when the *Saracens* were driven out, *Melroco* having new sup-

plies sent him out of *Greece*, seized on the possession of the whole Island in the Emperors name. Which injury *William* commonly dissembled till *Melroco*'s Forces were dispersed, and then he suddenly set upon him; first took the City of *Melfe*, and after by degrees, most of the Towns and places which the *Greeks* held in *Italy*: of which both he and his Successors kept possession by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* only. Of these (though all of eminent virtue) there were two besides this *William*, of special fame. 1. *Robert Guiscard*, the third son of *Tancred*, the most valiant Captain of his time, and chief establisher of the *Normans* power in *Italy*; to which he added in conclusion the Isle of *Sicily*, together with the City of *Naples* it self, and all the Lands which lie betwixt it and *Rome*. 2. *Bohemund* the eldest son of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey of Bovillon* and others of the *Western Christians* to the Holy Land, was for his signal merit invited with the Kingdom of *Antioch*; inherited by his children after his decease.

But to proceed, this *Guiscard* at his death, (but not without some wrong to the children of his Brother *William*, whom he had dispossessed of all by the Popes Authority) gave *Sicily*, with the title of Earl, to his son *Rogero*; and his estates in *Italy*, to his other son *William*: who going to *Constantinople* to marry with the Emperors daughter, was outed of his part by his brother *Rogero*; made not long after, by the Pope, the first King of this Family.

The Kings of Naples of the Norman Line.

- 1125 1 *Rogero*, Earl of *Sicily*, created by Pope *Anacletus* 2 King of both the *Sicilies* at the town of *Benevent*; which City, in requital of so great a favour, he restored again unto the Church, from which it had been taken (after the first Donation of it) by the *German* Emperors. 24.
- 1149 2 *William*, the son of *Rogero*, who to assure himself of his Kingdoms, was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian* the 4. to be holden for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.
- 1170 3 *William* II. son of the former *William*, who left a daughter called *Constance*, who became a Nun. 26.
- 1196 4 *Tancred*, the base son of *William* the 2. excluded his Sister from the Crown, but was sententially deposed by Pope *Celestine* the 3. who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himself. But when he saw that *Tancred* was too strong for him, out of meer fright to be defeated of his purpose, he called in the *Germans*, the ancient enemies of his See; and gave the Lady *Constance*, then almost fifty years of age, in marriage unto *Henry* the 6. 2.

The German Line.

- 1198 5 *Henry*, the sixth of that name, Emperor, and Duke of *Schwaben*, succeeded on his marriage with the Lady *Constance*. 4.
- 1202 6 *Frederick*, son of the Emperor *Henry* and Queen *Constance*, crowned at the age of three years; afterwards Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the 2. He had to wife the daughter of *John di Bren*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever since had the Title of Kings; and in the rights of this Kingdom, the Kings of *Spain*.
- 1250 7 *Conrade*, the son of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, as also Emperor and Duke of *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*; poisoned (as it was conceived) by his base brother *Manfred*. 4.
- 1254 8 *Manfroy* or *Manfred*, base son of *Frederick*, and Duke of *Benevent*, first governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine*, the son of *Conrade*; but after took it to himself against the will of Pope *Urban* the 4. who being weary of the *Germans*, called in *Charles* Duke of *Anjou*, and the Earl of *Provence*, brother to *Lewis* the 10. of *France*: it being usual with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well observeth) to call new men into *Italy*, and stir up new wars for their own ambition; not suffering any to possess that long which themselves (through their weakness) could not hold, and practising the overthrow of those very men, whom themselves had raised to power and greatness.

The French Line.

- 1261 9 *Charles*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after Crowned by Pope *Vrbane* the 4. who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his Successors should assume the Empire; and that they should pay fifty thousand Crowns per annum as a Rent to the Church. This *Charles* did also vanquish *Conradine* the son of *Conrade*, the last of the royal house of *Suevia*, whom he caused to be beheaded at *Naples*. After which bloody Act, neither he nor any of his posterity, did either quietly or long enjoy these Kingdoms. For in his owntime *Peter* King of *Aragon*, claimed the Kingdom of *Naples*, in right of *Constance* his wife, the daughter of *Manfred*: betwixt whom and *Charles*, a single combat was appointed to be fought in *Bourdeaux*, before King *Edward* the first of *England*, to decide the Controversie. But whilst *Charles* there expected him, he seized on *Sicily*, An. 1281. This *Charles* reigned three and twenty years.
- 1284 10 *Charles* II. son of *Charles* the first, formerly prisoner in *Sicily* to *Peter* of *Aragon*, was ransomed by the procurement of King *Edward* above named for 30000 Marks. By *Mary*, daughter of *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen children: the most pertinent of which

Naples.

which (to our purpose) were *Charles* surnamed *Martel*, King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother; *Robert* King of *Naples*, *John* of *Durazzo*; and a daughter (whose name I finde not) married to *Charles*, Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Anjou*. 26.

- 1310 11 *Robert*, the second son of *Charles* the 2. 32.
 1342 12 *Joane*, the Niece of *Robert* by his son *Charles*, first married *Andrew*, the second son of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, whom she hanged at her window for insufficiency; and for her second husband had *Lewis*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-straining himself to satisfy her carnal appetite, died. Her third husband was *James*, Prince of *Majorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom she beheaded for lying with another woman. Her fourth, *Otho* of *Brinswick*, a tough Souldier, who had the good fortune to outlive her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdome by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, brother of *Andrew* her first husband: restored the first time by the power of *Pope Clement* the sixth; but at the second time taken and hanged at the same window where she had hanged her first husband. But first, out of an hatred to her next heirs of the house of *Hungary*, she adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, (descended from *Charles* Earl of *Valois* spoken of before) for her heir and successor.

The Hungarian Line.

- 1371 13 *Charles* III. son to *Lewis*, and nephew of Prince *John* of *Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, and the favour of *Pope Urban* the fifth, was made King of *Naples*. He overthrew and killed in battel Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*, his competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis* of *Hungary*, succeeded in that Kingdome also; but long he had not reigned therein, when poisoned (as it was supposed) by the old Queen Mother, to advance her daughter to that Throne. 15.
 1386 14 *Ladislaus*, son of *Charles* the 3. having a quarrel with the Pope, made a voyage Royal unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: on which displeasure the Pope called in *Lewis* 2. Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladislaus* a great overthrow. Inasmuch, as *Ladislaus* used to say, that if *Lewis* had followed his Victory the first day, he had been master of his Kingdome and Person too; if the second, of his Kingdome, but not of his Person: but not pursuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flee to *Rome*, and give over the enterprise. 29.
 1415 15 *Joane* II. Sister of *Ladislaus*, of as much levity, but not altogether of so ill a fame as the former *Joane*, observing the unprosperous successes of the house of *Anjou*, she adopted for her heir, *Alphonso* the fifth of *Aragon*; who had some claim unto the Kingdome as the direct heir of *Pedro*, or *Peter* the 3. and *Constance* the daughter of King *Manfred*, spoken of before. But finding him to stand too much on his own right, and to be too forwards in taking a possession of it, before her death; she revoked that Adoption, and made a new grant of that Estate to *Lewis* the fourth, Duke of *Anjou*, and after his decease to his brother *Rene*, or *Renatus*: both vanquished by the *Aragonians*.

The Aragonian Line.

- 1434 16 *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, partly by Conquest, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdome; left it well settled unto *Ferdinand*, his natural son. 24.
 1458 17 *Ferdinand*, the base son of *Alfonso* (the lawful sons inheriting the Realm of *Aragon* *Sicily*, &c.) succeeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.
 1494 18 *Alfonso* II. Son of *Ferdinand*, in whose time the French began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his two Predecessors were of the Order of the Garter.
 1494 19 *Ferdinand* II. Son of *Alfonso* the second, outed of his Estate and Kingdome by *Charles* the eighth, son of King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France*, whom *Rene* the last Duke of *Anjou* had made the sole Heir of all his Titles, and Possessions. And though *Charles* upon his Conquest was solemnly crowned, yet posting back again into *France* before he had settled his affairs in this Kingdome, and having much discontented the chief men of *Anjou* in Faction; she lost it suddenly to the same *Ferdinand* from whom he had so suddenly won it.
 1497 20 *Frederick* II. brother of *Alfonso* the second, and uncle of this last *Ferdinand*, succeeded him in his Estates; and was the sixth King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compass of three years: that is to say, *Ferdinand* the first, *Alfonso* the second, *Ferdinand* the second, *Charles* of *France*, the second *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himself betrayed by the *Spaniards*, he submitted himself to *Lewis* the XII. King of *France*, and yielded up his Kingdome to him. And indeed what else could that poor Prince do, when he saw his own blood, and such as had taken his Realm into their protection, conspiring against him?

For when *Charles* made his passage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholick, sent *Gonsalvo*, (who was afterward for his valour surnamed the Great Captain) with some Forces to resist the French Invaders. But when the French were expelled, *Gonsalvo* would not leave the Country, because his Master had not as yet sent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between *Lewis* of *France*, and this Fer-

Fer-

Sicily.

Ferdinand, that they should joyntly set upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: That having won it, the French should possess *Abruzzo*, and *Lavoro*; the *Spaniards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabrias*: That the first should be entituled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apulia*. This Confederacy was kept secret till the French Forces were come to *Rome*; and *Gonsalvo* possessed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvel that they made themselves Masters of the Country. An Action in which the French dealt very unadvisedly, in bringing into *Italy* where he was before the sole Moderator, another King as great as himself; to whom as to his Rival, his enemies might have recourse on all occasions; and the *Spaniards* as unnaturally, in betraying for the moiety of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own blood, under pretence and promise of succours. But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnership. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their advantages, soon picked a quarrel with the French, within two or three years drove them out of all, and to this day keep it: though both this *Lewis*, and his successors *Francis* the first, and *Henry* the second, have divers times, and with great effusion of blood, attempted the recovery of it.

The Spanish or Castilian Line.

- 1503 22 *Ferdinand* III. surnamed the Catholick, King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 131.
 1516 23 *Charles* V. Emperor, King of *Spain*, and the IV. of that name in *Naples*. 43.
 1558 24 *Philip* the 2. of *Spain*, and the first of *Naples*. 40.
 1598 25 *Philip* II. of *Naples*, 3. of *Spain*. 22.
 1621 26 *Philip* III. of *Naples*, 4. of *Spain*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, Seme of *Flower de Lys*, Or, a File of three Labels, *Gules*. The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-rent; and the rest so exhausted in maintaining Garrisons upon the Natives, and a strong Navy against the *Turks*, that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part of *clero*.

Here are in this Kingdom
 Arch-Bishops 20. Bishops 127.

The Kingdom of SICILIA.

Before we can come into the Isle of *Sicily*, we must first cross that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Fare*, or Strait of *Messana*; where the passage is so strait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and a half. In other parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is distant from the main land of *Italy* near 300 miles; that is to say, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicily*, to the City of *Naples*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is so called because it interlaceth the midst of the earth; extending from the Straights of *Gibraltar* on the West, to the Coast of *Palestine* on the East; and so dividing *Africk* both from *Europe*, and *Asia Minor*. In the Scriptures, *Joel* 1. 4. it is called by the name of *Mare magnum*, or the great Sea: great in the comparison of the dead Sea, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other side of the land of *Palestine*; but small enough if compared to the Ocean, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Besides which general name of the *Mediterranean*, it hath also many particular names, as the *Adriatick*, *Ægean*, *Ionian*, and *Carpathan* Sea, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Lybicum*, where it runneth by the shores of *Africk*: with reference to *Italy* called in some places, *Mare Tyrrhenum*, in others *Mare Ligusticum*; in some parts *Mare Siculum*, and in others *Mare Sardinum*, &c. And as the *Chameleon* is said to apply it self to the colour of the nearest adjacent body; so this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the nearest shores. These Seas are also called by some modern Writers, in imitation of the French, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*; because in respect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, &c. they lie toward the East; the word *Levant* signifying in the French, a rising up, and more especially the Sun-rising. The principal Islands of this Sea which relate to *Italy* (for of others we shall speak in their proper places) are those of *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica* and some Isles adjoining unto these.

SICILY environed round with the lower, or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, contains seven hundred miles in compass; and is supposed to have been joyned to *Italy* in former times, being then a Peninsula, or *Demy-Island*, such as *Peloponnesus*; and joyned to the Continent by as narrow an *Isthmus*. The reason of that name we shall see anon.

The separating of it from the main Land of *Italy*, is by the Poets ascribed to *Neptune*, who with his three-forked Mace or *Trident* broke it off from the land, in favour of *Joculus* the son of *Æolus*; that so he might inhabit there with the greater safety, being environed round with waters. Which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with some help from the Mythologists, may be made a story. For if by *Æolus*, and *Neptune*, we understand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the rest of *Italy*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of some Earthquakes, to which this Island is still subject; which might in time consume and wear away the Earth. Nor want there very good reason for this supposition; as, 1. the narrowness of the Straight, exceeding not a mile and a half; inasmuch as at the taking of *Messana* by the *Carthaginians*, many of the people saved themselves by

Sicil.

by swimming over this Strait, into the opposite parts of Italy. 2. The shallowness of it, being found upon a diligent sounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Then 'tis observed, that the land on both sides is very brittle, full of caves and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this separation; and that on the Italian coast where the Strait is narrowest, there stands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which signifieth a breach or cutting off, from the Greek word *Phrygus*, which signifies to break off, or violently to pull asunder; and is supposed to be so called upon this occasion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is so great and dangerous in this narrow channel, so subject unto blustering winds issuing out of the hollow caverns of the earth; that the breaking off of this Island from the rest of Italy, is a thing most credible. Which dangerous nature of the passage, being also full of Rocks, and unsafe by reason of the Whirl-pools, occasioned it to be called by *Florus* the Historian, *Fabulosus infame monstrosus fretum*; chiefly so called with reference to *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, of which so many fabulous things are reported by the ancient Poets. Of these, *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on Sicilie side, which violently attracting all vessels that come too nigh it, devourereth them, and casteth up their wracks at the shore of *Tauromenium*, not far from *Catana*. Opposite to this in Italy, standeth the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks shoot out; on which the water strongly bearing, making that noise, which the Poets feign to be the barking of dogs. The passage between these two being to unskilful Mariners exceeding perillous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who seeks *Charybdis* for to shun,
Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made Sicilie famous in old times, besides these two, as viz. the punishment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt against the gods: the frequent burnings of *Aetna* (under which he is fabled to be shut up) being supposed to proceed from his sulphurous breath. Secondly, the birth of *Ceres* in this Isle; and thirdly, the Rape of *Proserpine*. To these two last the Isle was consecrated in those dayes; to *Ceres*, in regard she first taught the people to sow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often used in the Poets to signifie Bread, and other necessary provisions for life, as *Sine Cere & Baccho frigis Venus*: To *Proserpine*, because bestowed upon her by *Pluto*, to please her after the Ravishment committed on her.

It is situate under the fourth Climate, the longest day being 13 hours and an half. And was once called *Trinacria*, because it shoots forth into the Sea with three Capes or Promontories: viz. 1. *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Foro*, to the North; 2. *Pachinnus*, now *Capo Passaro*, to the West; and 3. *Lilybaeum*, now *Capo Boii*, or *Capo Caro*, to the South. This last looketh towards *Carthage*, and the shores of *Africk*, from which distant 180 miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a man of quick and strong sight getting up into a Watch-tower that stood in this Cape, descried a Fleet setting sayl out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybitians* their bigness and number. That this is true, I dare not say: for besides the unlikelyhood of kenning at so great a distance; we are taught by Philosophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular form, wellerth it self into the fashion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-sight. From these three corners, this Countrey was (as we have said) called *Trinacris* or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*.

*Terra trilus scopulus vastum procurrit in agnor;
Trinacris a positu, nomen adepta, loci.*

An Island with three corners braves the main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The first Inhabitants that we finde to have dwelt in this Countrey, are the huge Giants so often mentioned in the *Odysses* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Laestrygones* and *Cyclopes*; of which last rank was the so much famous *Polypheumus*, who with so much humanity entertained *Ulysses* and his companions. These were afterward rooted out by the *Sicani*, a people of Spain, who called it *Sicania*. As for the name of *Sicilia*, some derive it from *Sicleus*, a supposed King of Spain, who is fabled to have conquered this Countrey. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Island: to which, having Mastered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the West and the Northern part, to the East and South, they left their name. At their first landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Messana*, together with *Nea*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another Italian people named the *Morgetes*, being driven thence by the *Oenstrians*; and sat down in that part of the Island where stood the City of *Morgentum*, built by them at their first arrival. The first of all the Greeks who set footing in it (not to say any thing of the coming of *Minos* hither, in the pursuit of *Daedalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Historical truth) were the *Chalcidians*, a people of the Isle *Embasa*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Architas* of *Corinth*, with his fellow adventurers, by whom *Syracuse* was either first built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* sent some Colonies hither, the first Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agigentum*: And not long after a new Plantation sent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens of

Sicil.

of *Megarus*, another state of Greece, sent a Colony also, who built *Selinus*. And so did those of *Messene* also, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it so repaired the name of *Messana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phoenicians*, being so great undertakers of publick business, and very powerfull in shipping, would sit still, when so fair a booty did invite their industry: who sailing on the Promontories of *Pachinnus* and *Lilybaeum*, and some of the adjoining Islands; did fortifie them for the better securing of the Trade which they had in Sicily. But all these several Adventurers having several interestes, joyned not together in the work of an absolute Conquest; but planting themselves only on the Sea-shores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither.

The people are ingenious, eloquent, and pleasant, but withall very unconstant, and so full of talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerra Sicula*. They are also said to be of a very envious, suspicious, and distrustfull nature, incapable of injuries, and vehement in pursuit of revenge, as appears by that great slaughter which they made of the French: yet withall courteous enough to strangers, and Parasiticall enough to their superiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable inventions, *Aristotle* ascribing to them the Art of Oratory, and first making of *Pastoral Eclogues*; *Pliny* of Clocks (or rather of Hour-glasses; for Clocks were but a late invention, and that of the *Flemmings*) and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which last were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Christian Faith was first preached here, by some of the Disciples of St. Peter, whom he sent hither at his first coming to Rome; of which *Pancratius* (whom we call commonly St. Pancrace) is said to have been the first Bishop of *Tauromenium*, and *Marianus* of *Syracuse*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of Rome; that of the Greek Church being rather connived at than allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be ten thousand souls, but looked on by the rest as schismaticall people. For the most part they use the Italian Language, but very much altered, by the Greek, Arabian, Norman, French, and Spanish tongues; to which Nations they have been severally subject, since the time of the Romans. The totall number of the people is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The soyl is incredibly fruitfull in Wine, Oyl, Honey, Minerals of Gold, Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which last commodity the Natives sell in the Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is refined; and thereby letting strangers go away with the best part of their gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize, which they permit to be exported, rather than put themselves to the trouble of Trafficking abroad in Foreign Nations. There are also Gems of *Agates*, and *Emeralds*. It yeeldeth also great store of the richest Silks, which grow plentifully about *Messana*; variety of most excellent and delicious fruits, both for taste and colour: with such abundance of all sorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romanum*, or the Granary of the Roman Empire; and doth now furnish some parts of Italy, Spain, and Barbary, besides *Malta*, and the adjacent Isles, with that which can spare of her superfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and store-house of the City of Rome, in regard of Corn, but addes that it was accounted for a well-furnished Treasury; as being able of it self without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain, and furnish the greatest Army, with Leather, Corn and Apparell. And if *Diadormis Siculus* may be credited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and some other places, Wheat did grow of it self, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in some parts of the Isle, the soyl is so exceeding fruitful, that it yeelds unto the Husbandman an hundred measures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Countrey must needs yeeld a wonderfull increase, the King of Spain receiving an hundred thousand Crowns yearly for the Custome of Wheat. In this Countrey is the Hill *Hybla*, so famous for Bees and Honey; neer which there was a City of the same name also, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is also the Hill *Aetna*, now called *Mont-gibel*, which continually sendeth forth flames of Fire, to the astonishment of all beholders. The most famous conflagrations in the former times were presently before the breaking out of the War in Sicily, which the Roman Writers call *Bellum servile*; not pacified but by the slaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms against Rome; and shortly after the death of *Julius Caesar*, portending those proscriptions and bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day such extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it self is of that height, that it is ten miles from the top to the bottom, and may be easily discerned by Saylers at an hundred miles distance: the lower parts thereof being very fruitful, the middle shaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the year, notwithstanding the frequent vomiting of flames and cinders. But these eruptions of fire are not now so ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being wasted by continual burnings; so that the flames which issue hence are hardly visible but by night; though the smook shew it self the most part of the day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four years, it falleth in great flakes on the Vales adjoining, to the destruction of the Vintage, and great loss of the Countrey. But that, they say, is recompensed by the plenty of the following years; the ashes thereof so barling and enriching the soyl, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongst our selves, that the Turf taken from the ground and burnt to ashes, and so spread on land and ploughed into it, doth yeeld a very great improvement, even to barren soyls. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonshire* of land, because there first used; but in *Hampshire* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a stranger there) by the name of burning and beaking. But to return again to *Aetna*; Into this fiery Furnace the Philosopher *Empedocles* cast himself, that he might be reputed a God.

Dcus

Sicil.

Deus immortalis haberi
Dum cupit Empedocles, ardentem fervidus Aetna
Insultat
as Horace in his Book de Arte Poetica.

Empedocles to be a God desires,
And casts himself into th' Aenean fires.

The reason of these fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimstone, contained in the bosome of the Hill; which is blown by the wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth, as by a pair of bellows. Through these chinks also there is continually more fuel added to the fire, the very water adding to the force of it: as we see that water cast on coals in the Smiths Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reason of this flame is thus set down by Ovid.

Ista bitumineæ rapiunt incendia vires,
Luteaq; exiguis ardescent sulphura flammis.
Atq; ubi terra cibos alimentaq; debita flamma
Non dabit, absumpsit per longum viribus ævum,
Naturæq; summi nutrimentum decrit edaci,
Non feret Aetna famem, desertaq; deseret ignes.

A rozen mould these fiery flames begin,
And clayie brimstone aids that fire within:
Yet when the slimie soyl consumed, shall
Yeeld no more food to the feed fire withall,
And Nature shall restrain her nourishment,
The flame shall cease hating all famishment.

Under this Hill some Poets feign the Gyant Enceladus to have been buried, as before is said, whose hot breath fired the mountain lying on his face. Others suppose it to be the Shop of Vulcan, and the Cyclops; and the grofs Papists take it for the place of Purgatory; all alike unfallible.

The principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Taranta*, anciently called *Terisus*. 2. *Himera*, neighboured by Mount *Hybla*, much famed for Honey. 3. *Isaurus*. 4. *Hypsa*. 5. *Acausius*, of great note for its precious stones. None of them much observable for length or breadth, but that defect supplied by the commodiousness of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Island; and by the benefit of Fountains and fresh-water Lakes. Most memorable amongst these, 1. The Lake called *Palicorus*, (now *Napibia*) which for three moneths doth cast forth water very hot, but of very ill smell; of which there is mention made in *Pliny*, by the name of *Ephintia*. 2. A Fountain near the foot of *Aetna*, the water whereof is sharp like *Vinegar*; and sometimes boyleth; into which a piece of cloth cast, being before steeped in water mixed with Gall, becomes suddenly black. 3. Another Fountain near *Drepanum*, the water of which, as soon as drunk, provoketh looseness. All which effects proceed from that sulphureous and bituminous matter, of which the whole Island is exceeding full. 4. *Arethusa*, of greater fame among the Ancients, than all the rest, especially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of Greece) having swallowed up one hundred and forty lesser streams, and losing it self under the ground, is thought to empty it self into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both; and seems to be sufficiently proved, by the several instances of a wooden dish or cup lost in the River *Alpheus*, and found rising up in this River; and by the leaves of certain trees growing on the banks of that Greek River, and swimming on this in great abundance; there being none of these trees in all Sicily. *Dicitur Alpheus (scilicet Aetna) se non confociare pelago; sed subter maria, terrasq; depressus, hinc agere alveum, atq; hic se rursus extollere.*

This Island is famous for the worthy Scholars she once produced, viz. *Aeschylus*, the first Tragedian of fame; who being bald through age, once walked in the fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald pate for a white Rock, let a shell-fish fall on it, of that bigness that it beat out his Brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus*, that famous Historian. 3. *Empedocles* the first inventor of Rhetorick; and his fellow *Gorgias*. 4. *Euclide*, the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megaris*. 5. *Archimedes*, a most worthy Mathematician, the first Author of the Sphere; of which instrument he made one of that art and bigness, that one standing within, might easily perceive the several motions of every celestial orb. He made also divers military Engines, which in the siege of *Syracusa* sorely vexed the Romans (and was at last slain in his study by a common Souldier in the sack of the Town, to the great grief of the General *Marcellus*. 6. *Epicharmus*, the first inventor of Comedies; and 7. *Theocritus*, the first Author of Pastoral Eclogues. In the latter times, *Nicolas* Abbot of *Palermo*, a learned Canonist, and Cardinal of the Church of *Rome*, commonly called *Panormitanus*, was of greatest fame.

In *Plinius* time there were reckoned in this Island seventy two Cities, of which only twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three small Provinces, that is to say, 1. *Val de Noto*. 2. *Mazara*, 3. and *Mona*; to which the Isles adjoining may add a fourth.

1. *VALLIS DE NOTO* taketh up the Eastern parts of the Island. The chief Cities of which are, 1. *Syracusa*, once the Metropolis of the whole Island, and a most flourishing Common-wealth, it was (as *Tully* reports) the greatest and goodliest City of all that were possess'd by the Greeks, for

Sicil.

for situation very strong; and of an excellent prospect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both sides of it, was for the most part environed with beautiful buildings; and that part of it which was without the City, was on both sides banked up, and sustained with very fair walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodliest City of the Greeks, as *Tully* tells us, but one of the greatest also in the World, as is said by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmost wall thereof, (for it was environed with three Walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compass, which of our measure cometh to eighteen miles. It was compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to say, *Insula* (or the Isle) *Acradine*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*; besides the Port called *Hexapla*, which commanded the rest; the greatness of all which, the ruines and foundations of it do still demonstrate. It standeth North of the Promontory called *Pachinus*, and was built by *Architas* of *Corinth*, about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judah*; who being for an unnatural Rape, committed on a young Gentleman, banished his Country, together with his friend and Companion *Miscellus*; consulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they should dispose of themselves. The Oracle demanding whether they most affected wealth, or health: *Miscellus* answered health, and *Architas* wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to settle himself at *Crotone* in *Italy*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reason of its beautiful and commodious Port, proving of greatest trade and wealth next to *Carthage* it self, in those times of the World. It was the custom of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive leaf; which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to banishment for five years, and was called *Petalisme*, from the Greek word *Πτελον*, signifying a leaf. Yet could not this device so well secure them in the possession of their so much desired Freedom, but that this City fell oftner into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Augustus*, who after a second destruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, sent a Colony hither, and built upon the Isle and the parts near unto it. But now the whole Isle (*Ortygia* the Ancients called it) is taken up with a very strong Castle; the whole City also being very well walled, and held by a Garrison of Spaniards. 2. *Noto*, which gives name to this whole Division. A City which heretofore contended with *Syracusa* in point of greatness: situate on a very high Rock, unaccessible on all sides but by one narrow passage; and having under the Cape of *Passari* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of Sicily on that side. 3. *Augusta*, situate on the shore also, and of so large a Haven that it could never be fortified. 4. *Castro Giovannis*, a Town of about four thousand Families, situate in a wholesome air, and a fruitful soil, which they hold to be the very Navel and exact middle of the Island. It is also much prized for Mines of most excellent Salt. 5. *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whose fishing is farmed for eighteen thousand Crowns yearly. It was anciently called *Leontium*, and stood somewhat North of *Syracusa*; with which continually in war, either to preserve their own Liberties, or get the Sovereignty of the other. 6. *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pinto* is said to have ravished *Proserpine*: In after times the dwelling of that *Syrus Ennius*, who stirred up the Roman Slaves against their Lords; and having broke open the common Prisons, and received all such as came unto him, patched up an Army of forty thousand. This War the Roman Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at last, but with no small difficulty, by the valour and good fortune of *P. Rutilius*.

2. *MAZARA* containeth all the West parts of the Island. The chief Cities whereof, 1. *Agri-gentium*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Ball, which he had made for the destruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*,

—Nec enim lex iustior ulla est,
Quam necis Artifices arte perire sua.

Most just it is a Man should be tormented
With that, which first his cruel Wit invented.

It was said anciently of the people of this City, that they built as if they should never die, and eat as if they were sure to live no longer. 2. *Palermo*, anciently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phœnicians*; now the chief City of Sicily, and the Seat of the Spanish Vice-roy. Situate on the West Cape of the Island looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate buildings, strong walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no natural Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* serving anciently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*; a work of vast expence, and worthy of the greatness of *Rome*. It is also an Arch-bishops See, and an University. 3. *Monreale*, commonly called *Morreale*, famous for the Church, the Arch-bishops See. It is called in *Latine*, *Mons Regalis*. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trapani*, situate on a Promontory thrusting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybium*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill neighbourhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on these coasts; and having the Command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are said to be the best Seamen of Sicily. 5. *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, situate South of *Lilybium*, and not far from *Selinus*. 6. *Eryx*, situate on a Mountain over-looking the Sea, said by the Ancients to have took this name from *Eryx* the son of *Venus*, slain here by *Hercules*: memorable in those elder times for being the Seat of *K. Acistes*, who so kindly entertained *Aeneas*, and his wandering *Trojans*; and a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worshipped, who from thence was called *Erycina*; as *Sive tu mavis Erycinam ridens*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the last Town which the *Carthaginians* held in Sicily. On the furrendry whereof by *Anilcar* the

Sicil.

Father of *Annibal*; at the end of the first *Punic War*, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongst other things, that the *Carthaginians* should relinquish all the claim or title which they had to any part of this Island; which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracusa* excepted only.) Who, whatsoever colour they were pleased to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by ambition and covetousness. And therefore in my mind *Florus* states it rightly, who saith, that it was undertaken *specie quidem jurandi Sociis, re autem sollicitante prada*; i.e. under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themselves into their protection, but in plain terms to get possession of the Island which lay fit for *Italy*. Now and long since a ruine only, the place on which it stood being called *Mount St. Julian*. 7. *Segesta*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Eryx*, near unto which the *Trojan Ladies* weary of their many long and dangerous voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Aeneas*; on which occasion it was built. Peopled at first by such of the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longevusque senes, & fessas agere matres*, as the Poet hath it) who chose rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Aeneas*, in his quest of *Italy*. Called then *Acesta*, in honour of King *Acestes* spoken of before, part of whose Kingdom it was made; afterwards *Egesta*, from *Egestas* one of *Trojan* race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at last *Segesta*.

3. *MONA* lieth on the North-east of the Island, opposite unto *Palis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nicosia*, in the mid-land. 2. *Milase*, on the Northern Promontory. 3. *Messana*, a City of great strength and beauty, just opposite to *Rhezo* in *Italy*. It was the first Town which the *Romans* had in this Island, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Souldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City; who finding themselves too strong for the *Citizens*, made themselves Masters of the place; but being withal too weak to hold it, chose rather to surrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper Owners. Hence the beginning of the first War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the most beautiful building of any in *Sicily*; and peopled by the wealthiest sort both of Merchants and Gentlemen, who live here in great pleasure (if not voluptuousness) as having plenty of all necessary provisions, fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and Snow to moderate and qualifie the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elsewhere in the Country. On the West side there stands a strong Citadel, highly mounted, and well Garrisoned, which commands the Town: and not far off a very high Lanthorn, where lights are kept burning all night long, for the direction of such Mariners, as are to pass those dangerous Straights; which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare of Messana*. The Haven of this Town is the fairest of *Sicily*, whose entrances are so strongly fenced and bulwarked, that the people let their Gates (in derision of the *Turks*) stand alwayes open. It is also an Arch-bishops See. 4. *Catanara*, so often vexed by *Dionysius* the Tyrant of *Syracuse*; more ancient then beautiful: seated on the North side of a great (but hollow) Bay, not easily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Garrison, nor much traded by Merchants; the riches of the place consisting principally in the fruitfulness of the soil, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a small University. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And so was also *Tauromenium*, the fifth Town of note in this part of the Island, called sometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a ruine only of what was in the former dayes; a place by nature of great strength, but over-topped by *Syracusa* and *Messana*, betwixt which it standeth. It was in this part of the Country that the *Cyclops* dwelt, there being three little rocky Islands (now not inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclops Scopuli*.

4. On the West part of *Sicily* lie the *ÆOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Islands, heretofore only seven, and all almost of equal bigness; now eleven in number. The first name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them; who being well skilled in divining from what coasts the Winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the smok ascending from them) occasioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan* the God of Fire; by reason of the continual flames of fire from thence evaporating in those elder dayes. But now the matter of those flames being waited in long tract of time, there is only one of them which burneth, now called *STOMBOLO*; by some Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundness of it. An Island of about ten miles compass, but such as seems to be no other then a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof issueth continually a flame like a burning Beacon, easily discernible far off, but at nights especially: a place so full of horror to the neighbouring Islanders, that they and many others of the *Romish Catholics* conceive it to be Hell it self. And yet in those parts where the rage of the fire offendeth not, it is of a very fruitful soil, and apt for tillage.

2. But the fairest and best peopled of those Islands, is that of *LIPARA*, some ten miles in circuit, (from whence the rest are called the *Liparian Isles*) so named from *Lipara* the chief Town, said to be built in the time of *Josiah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Bishop, under the Arch-bishop of *Messana*. The Island generally fruitful, well furnished with *Allom*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*; and with some hot medicinal Batches, which are much frequented, and from thence called *Thermessa*, by the ancient Writers. It was formerly of so great wealth, that falling into the displeasure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuse*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the sum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which sum they had no sooner paid, but the Tyrant for a farewell, robbed their very Temples. Unprosperous in his Actions always after that adventure. Nor sped it better with the *Turks*, who in the year 1544. laid the Country desolate; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the sixth replenished it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very strongly against all invasions.

3. Not far off lieth another of these Islands, now called *FAVOGANA*, or *Fauciana*, but anciently *Ægusa*, conceived to be the same which *Livy* and *Florus* call *Ægates*; in which there

is

Sicil.

is a fair and capacious Bay, able to receive the greatest Navies; and near to which *Lucretius Catulus* the Consul gave the *Carthaginians* their last blow at Sea, which drew along with it the surrendry of *Eryx*, and the loss of *Sicily*. *Dedyne*, *Ericosa*, *Eunymos*, and *Phenicusa*, four other of these Islands, but of lesser note, I pass over willingly; and make haste to

4. *HIERO*, the seventh and last of these Islands of any consideration, and the eighth in tale, called also *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worshipped; said to have first appeared above the water at such time as *Scipio African* died. A barren, stony, and uninhabited place, by reason of the fires which formerly have flamed so hideously (especially in the year 1444.) that it made not only the rest of these Islands, but all *Sicily* tremble. Near unto this Isle was fought the first Naval fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. Before which time the *Romans* had never used the Seas, as being totally employed in the conquest of *Italy*; inasmuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were fain to exercise their men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats near the water with Oars in their hands. Which notwithstanding, having devised an Engine like a Grapling hook, they so fastned the Adverse Fleet unto them, that the whole fight seemed a Land-battel fought upon the Sea. The victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duilius* the Consul then commanding in Chief; and honoured with the first Naval triumph that was ever solemnized at *Rome*.

After this Island was once known to the *Greeks*, they sent from all their chief Cities several Colonies, who planted in the Sea-coasts of the Country, as before noted. But so as they never united themselves in a body together, but had their several estates and particular ends; whereby they came to be divided into many factions, and at last made themselves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* lording it at *Agrigentum*, *Penates* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuse*, *Cleander* at *Gela*; and when one Faction grew too weak to resist the other, they called in several Foreign Nations to abet their quarrel. For on this ground the *Carthaginians* were first called into *Sicily* by the *Messanians*, against the *Aggrigentines*. And on the same was managed here a great part of the *Peloponnesian Wars*: the *Athenians* siding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Syracusans*: in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land; and their two Generals *Nicias* and *Demosthenes*, murdered in prison. But because *Syracuse* was a City of the greatest Authority, and of greatest influence over theret of *Sicily*, we shall more punctually insist on the State affairs thereof. The Government of which at first was popular, as it was in most of the *Greek Colonies*, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Aristocratical*, when *Gelon* made himself King of it, about 26. years after the expulsion of the *Tarquins* at *Rome*; whom with as many as succeeded in the Royal dignity, take along as followeth.

The Tyrants, or Kings of *Syracuse*.

- A.M.
3465 1 *Gelon*, the Prince or Lord of *Gela*, taking advantage of the quarrels in *Syracusa*, betwixt the Magistrates and People, made himself Master of the City; and was chosen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 *Carthaginians* were slain in battel, for their first welcome into *Sicily*. 7.
3472 2 *Hiero*, the brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King also, but a rude and coverous man, whereby he lost the love of his people. 11.
3484 3 *Thrasybulus*, brother of *Hiero*, whose Government proved so cruel and unsupportable, that he held it not above 10 Moneths; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracusans*, the people did a while enjoy their liberty; but withal fell into those Factions, which after 60 years made them lose it again.
3544 4 *Dionysius*, that so famous Tyrant, from being General of the Forces of the *Syracusans*, made himself their King: A man of great vices, but great virtues withal. He brought almost all *Sicily* under his obedience, and the Town of *Rhegium* in *Italy*, reigning in all 38 years.
3582 5 *Dionysius II.* succeeding his Father in his Kingdom and vices, but not in valour or wisdom, was first outed by *Dion* a noble Gentleman of *Syracuse*; and afterward taken Prisoner by *Timoleon* of *Corinth*, to which City he was sent, and there died in Exile.
3635 6 *Agathocles*, by trade a Potter, after that a Souldier; 20 years after the death of *Timoleon*, made himself King of *Syracuse*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*, he passed over into *Africk*, and besieged *Carthage*; which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune. 29.
3681 7 *Hiero II.* of a Commander of their Armies chosen King of *Syracuse*, by a Party which he had made amongst them. In his time brake out the first *Punic War*, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mamertines*, who held *Messana* against the *Carthaginians*; the Lords at that time of the greatest part of the Island. 56.
3737 8 *Hieronymus*, the son of *Hiero*, after whose death *Syracuse* and all *Sicily* became subject to *Rome*, by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of these eight Kings, the six first commonly pass under the name of *Tyrants*; from whence, and from some others of like disposition, who lorded it over the rest of the free Cities of *Sicily*, the name of *Siculi Tyranni* grew into a Proverb. But of all none more hated than the two *Dionysii*, who were so odious, that there were continual execrations poured on them; only one old woman praying for the life of the later. Who being asked the cause, made answer, that she knew his Father to have been a monstrous and wicked Tyrant; on whom when the curses of the people had prevailed, and obtained his death; this his son succeeded, worse by far than he; for whose life she was resolved to

Sicil.

pray, left after his death the Devil himself should come amongst them. But to proceed, after these Tyrants, as they called them, were rooted out, and the Island was conquered by *Marcellus*, it always followed the fortune of the *Roman Empire*; till in the partition of that Empire, it fell together with *Apulia* and *Calabria*, into the power of the *Greeks*. In the declining of whose greatness, this Island having been miserably pillaged and spoiled by the Emperor *Constantine*, An. 669, became a prey to the *Saracens*; from them recovered again by the help of the *Normans*, who held both this and the Realm of *Naples*, in Fee of the Church, under the title of Kings of both *Sicils*. From that time forwards it ran the fortune of that Kingdom, subject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* lines, till the death of *Conrade*, no interruption intervening. After whose death when *Manfroy* or *Maufrede*, the base son of the Emperor *Frederick*, and brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himself King of these Countries; it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother to *Henry* the third of *England*: a Prince of such riches, that he was able to dispend an hundred Marks *per diem*, for ten years together; which according to the Standard of those times, was no small sum. But the conditions which the Pope proposed were so impossible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well say to his Master, *I will give thee the Moon; climb up, catch, and take it*. The Earl refusing it, it was offered the King for his second son *Edmund*, who was invested by the gift of a Ring, and money was coined in his name by the Pope's appointment, with the inscription of *Almudus Rex Sicilia*. But the King not being able to pursue the business, because then overburthened by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having sucked no small store of Treasure from him; it was in the year 1261. given unto *Charles* Earl of *Provence* and *Anjou*, brother to *Lewis* the 10. Under him those Countries jointly continued subject till the year 1281. in which his Competitor, *Peter* of *Aragon*, claiming it in right of his wife the daughter of *Manfroy* before mentioned, promising him to fight a single combat before our *K. Edward* the first, at *Bordeaux*, fail'd of his Word; and in the mean time so contrived it, that at the sound of a Bell tolling to prayers, all the *French men* in *Sicily* were cruelly massacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Vesperis Sicilis*; and was managed by *John de Prochita*, a Gentleman of the Realm of *Naples*, whom *Charles* had dispossessed of the Isle of *Prochita*, whereof he had been formerly Lord; and not content to do him such a piece of injustice, added a further infolency to it, in the forcing his Wife. Provoked with these two injuries, the abused Gentleman plots with King *Pedro* of *Aragon*, to make him Master of the Isle of *Sicily*, where he had very good intelligences; and where the *French* by reason of their Lusts and Infolencies had so exasperated the Natives; that they were capable enough of any such impressions, as a man sharing with him in his sufferings, could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* rigged out his Navy, under pretence of some exploit against the *Moors*, and anchoreth in the Port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out so agreeably to his expectation, that in one instant as it were, on the signal given, the *French* were universally murdered in all parts of the Island: the people being so enraged, that they would not spare women great with child, if supposed to have been got by any of that hated Nation; and *Pedro* coming in with his Navy as the deed was done, was by the general consent of all sorts of people, crowned King of *Sicily*. A bloody policy, I confess, which as the Actors learned of the *English Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*; so did they teach it to the *French*, who practised it on the *Hugonots* of *France* in that horrid Massacre of *Paris*, An. 1572. An Act which so provoked the Pope, that he solemnly accursed the King, and caused many of the neighbouring Princes to arm against him. But the Fox fare'd never the worse for that: who did so order his affairs, that he did both clear his own Country of those Enemies which on the Popes curse had come in against him; and settled *Sicily* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Island hath belonged to the House of *Aragon*, but not always in possession of the Kings thereof, being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whose succession followeth.

Kings of Sicily of the House of Aragon.

1281. 1 *Pedro*, or *Peter* the third King of *Aragon* by birth, of *Sicily* in the right of his wife, the choice of the people, and the Legacy of *Corradine* (the last of the Royal line of *Suevia*) but principally by the power of the sword.
1285. 2 *James*, the second son of *Pedro*, King of *Sicily*; after the death of his brother *Alfonso*, succeeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Isle of *Sardinia*.
1291. 3 *Frederick*, the brother of *James*, on his brotherstakeing the Crown of *Aragon*, got possession of *Sicily*. By *Frederick Alfonso*, a younger son of this *Frederick*, the title of Duke of *Athens* came into this Family.
1336. 4 *Peter*, or *Pedro* II. Son of *Frederick*.
1342. 5 *Frederick* II.
- 6 *Peter*, or *Pedro* III.
- 7 *Lewis*, son to *Peter* III.
- 8 *Frederick* III. in the life of *Lewis* his brother called Duke of *Athens*; after his death succeeded in the Kingdom of *Sicily*.
1389. 9 *Martin*, son to *Martin* the first, King of *Aragon*, succeeded in the right of his wife *Blanch*, daughter of *Frederick* the third; and dying without issue, gave the Kingdom unto *Martin* his Father.
1409. 10 *Martin* II. of *Sicily*, and the first of *Aragon*, of which last he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his son. After which time the Isle of *Sicily* being again united

Sardinia.

united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never separated from it; except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his son, the better to fit him for the bed of *Isabel* Princess of *Castile*, with whom the match was then in treaty; and when the Emperor *Charles* the fifth gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip* his eldest son, on his marriage with *Mary* Q. of *England*, who thereupon was stiled King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Hierusalem*. But this held only for a year; his Father shortly after resigning to him all his Kingdoms; whereby it became joyned to *Spain* again.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are by some said to be but 800000, but as others say, a million of Ducats; most of which is again disbursed on the entertainment of the *Vice-roy*, and the defence of the Island. The Arms are, Or, four Pallets *Gules* (being those of *Aragon*) betwixt two *Flanches Argent*, charged with as many *Eagles Sable*, beaked *Gules*, which was the bearing of *Manfroy* King of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, spoken of before, who gave those Arms with reference to his descent from the *German* Emperours.

This Island for the number of its Nobility compares with *Naples*; as having in the time of *Ortelius*, 80. years ago, 7 Princes, 13 Marquesses, 14 Earls, 1 Vicount, 48 Barons: Men of authority and power in their several Territories, and therefore not permitted to live much in the Island; the greatest part of their time being spent in the Court of *Spain*; but more to satisfy that King upon reason of State, than any affection of their own to so long an exile. And for the Government of the Church;

Here are
Archbishops 3. Bishops 9

The Kingdom of SARDINIA.

THE Island and Kingdom of *SARDINIA* lieth West from *Sicily*; from the nearest point whereof called *Cape Boti*, or *Cape Coro*. It is distant about 200 miles. It is in length 180 miles 90 in breadth, 560 in the circuit; and is situate under the 4. Climate, the longest day being 14 hours.

In the time of *Aristotle* it was called *Ichnusfa*, next *Sandaliotis*; from the resemblance which it hath to a mans Shooe or Sandals; and finally *Sardinia* from *Sardus* the son of *Hercules*, who coming out of *Africk* possessed the same. For this there is sufficient authority amongst the Ancients. Of the first names saith *Pliny* in as plain terms as may be, that *Timaeus* called *Sardinia Sandaliotis*; and *Myrsilus*, *Ichnusfa*, from the similitude which it hath to the Shooe-sole, or impression of a mans foot on the ground; *Sardiniam* *Timaeus* Sandaliotin appellavit ab effigie sole; *Myrsilus*, *Ichnusam* a similitudine vestigii. And for the last nothing can be more plain than that of *Pausanias*, who tells that the first who came by shipping unto *Sardinia*, were certain *Africans* under the conduct of *Sardus* the son of *Maceris*, whom the *Egyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who coming into this Island then called *Ichnusfa*, τὸ ἐν τῷ ἑνὶ Σάρδου τέρῳ περιβαλὼν τὸν ποταμὸν, caused it after his own name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the people in the *Latin* tongue are called *Sardi*; the adjoining Sea, *Mare Sardonum*. And to this name it was so constant, that no following Plantations from other Countries, were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Antica*, led by *Iolani*, came and settled here, where they built *Olbia*, and *Agrillia*: leaving a memory of *Iolani* their Captain in some places, which remained in the time of *Pausanias*, called *Iolania*; and taking to themselves for his sake the name of *Iolatenenses*. And after the destruction of *Troy*, some of that scattered Nation came and planted in some void parts of the Island, kept to themselves the name of *Iienenses*, and by that name are mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Livy*. But neither of these Nations did attempt the change of the name, because not of ability to suppress or out-power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puissant Nation then the former were; and such as by the nearness of their habitation (*Sardinia* being distant but 160 miles from *Africk*) had all advantages to make (as at last they did) a full Conquest of it: building therein the Cities of *Charmis*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulchi*; and holding it until it was unjustly extorted from them by the *Romans*, at the end of the first *Punic* War: at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*; and so not able to resist.

But of the name and first Plantations of this Island we have said enough. Let us now look upon the place; in which it is reported that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venomous nor hurtful Beast, but the Fox only, and a little Creature like a Spider, which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pools it hath, and those very plentiful of Fish; but generally so destitute of River water, that they are fain to keep the rain which falls in Winter for their use in Summer. By means whereof, and for that there is no passage for the Northern winds, being obstructed by the high Mountains near *Cape Lugadori*, the air is generally unhealthy if not pestilential: Inasmuch that *Tully* writing to his brother *Quintus* being then in this Island, adviseth him to remember, as in point of health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and speaking of *Tigellus* a *Sardinian* born, saith of him, that he was more pestilent than the Country which bred him.

The soyl is very fertile in respect of *Corfica*, but barren if compared with *Sicil*; which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman; than any natural defect in the soyl itself. Well stored with all sorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheese and Hides which

Sardinia.

which are sent hence yearly into Italy and other places. The horses hereof, hot, head-strong, and hard to be broken, but will last long. The Bulls naturally amble, so that the Countryman rideth them as familiarly as they do in Spain on Mules and Asles. Here is also the Beast called *Mufrones*, or *Musfrignes*, found in *Corfica* also, but in no other part of Europe; somewhat resembling a Stag, but of so strong an hide, that it is used by the *Italians* in stead of Armour: Of the skin of which carried to *Cordova* in Spain, and there dressed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is said he will dye with laughter; Whence came the Proverb, *Risus Sardonicus*. The truth of which report I shall not dispute, though it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poysonous nature, causeth men to dye with such a Convulsion or attraction of Sinews, that they seem to grin, or laugh at the time of their death.

The people are small of stature, of complexion inclining unto swarthynefs, and that either by reason of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their African extraction: their behaviour much participating of that people also. So slothful in the times of the *Romans*, that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now esteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to hunting, and so prone to Rebellion, that the *Spaniards* permitteeth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable among themselves, and in some measure courteous unto Strangers also. Their Language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their diet on meats common and gross; their apparel in the Towns (especially that of the women) gorgeous, in the Villages fordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make most shew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their neighbourhood to the Pope, and their subjection to the *Spaniard*, have imposed upon them. But in their practice of it they are loose enough, going to Mass on Sundays and Saints dayes; which done they fall a dancing in the midst of the Church, singing in the mean time songs too immodest for an Alehouse. Nay, it is thought that their Clergy it self is the most rude, ignorant and illiterate of any people in Christendom; saying their Masses rather by rote, than reason, and utterly unable to give any account of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, viz. Cape *Longudori*, towards *Corfica*, and Cape *Cagliari*, towards *Africk*: the first the least, and withal mountainous and barren; the last the larger, level, and by much more fruitful. Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Calari*, first built by the *Carthaginians*, and situate in that point of the Island which lieth nearest to *Africk*; which from hence took the name of Cape *Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of such fame, when it was first taken by *Gracchus* for the use of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs Urbium*; and was destroyed by the said *Gracchus*, the better to disable the Natives from rebelling against the Conquerors. Being new built again in more settled times, it was a second time destroyed by the *Saracens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Pisians*, at such time as they were Masters of this part of the Island. Very well fortified by Nature, as seated on the top of an Hill; and hath under it a spacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchant. The Town it self adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the See of an Arch-bishop, many fair Turrets, and the constant residence of the Vice-roy: from whose authority it is exempt by especial privilege, as to the legal Government of it, and ordered by a Common-Council of its own Citizens. 2. *Bessa*, on the West side of the Island, another Arch-Episcopal See. 3. *S. Reparata*, on the North, looking towards *Corfica*. 4. *Aguilastra*, on the Western shores. 5. *Sassari*, a Town of consequence, where they have an *Aqueduct* twelve miles long, reaching from thence unto *S. Gavina*. *Algher-Busa*, a good Town, situate in a wholesome air, and a fertile soyl; and having a fair Haven of six miles in length, in which the Ships of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do most commonly ride. 7. *Oressagne*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reason of a bad air which proceeds from the Fens; the Country about which gives title to the Marquess of *Oressagne*. 8. *Turrita*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better then a ruine; yet giving title to the third Archbishop of this Island, who is called in Latine *Turritanus*. Here are also in divers parts of this Island the remainders of sundry Towers and Forts which the people call *Noracks* from *Nora*, one of the sons of *Geryon*; who (as they think) came into this Country, and built the first dwelling or mansion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath so much in it of Historical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from Spain came and placed here, under the conduct of one *Nora*; somewhat before the expedition of the *Aticks* under *Iolan*, as *Paulinus* testifieth.

This Island taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is said, was first under the immediate Jurisdiction of the *Præfitt* of the City of *Rome*: but after by *Iustinian* was made a Province of his new Dioceses of *Africk*; and as a part thereof, or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Saracens*, Anno 807. From them recovered by the joyn't forces of the *Pisians* and *Genoese*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called Cape *Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Pisians*, and the Northern towards *Corfica*, to those of *Genoa*. But the *Genoese* not content with the partage, (their portion of the Island being less in quantity, and worse in quality) began to quarrel with the *Pisians*, and at the last to break into open Wars. To part the Fray, Pope *Boniface* the 8. bestowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoese*, Anno 1324. became Master of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend some Title to it, in right of the Kingdom of *Sicily*, then in his possession; to some preceding Kings whereof it had once been subject: and having backed that Claim by the Popes Donation who challenged it as a part of St. *Peters* Patrimony; incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Barbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpose of performance; that being only a device to fetch him off from the party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered;

Land of the Church.

adhered; and was as suddenly laid by, as if it had done the feat intended in the Proposition.

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who resides at *Calari*, and must of necessity be a *Spaniard*, under whom are two Deputy Governours, *Spaniards* also; the one for Cape *Cagliari*, the other for Cape *Longudori*. Inferior Officers of Command may be of the Natives. What profits arise hence to the Crown of Spain, I have no where found. The Arms hereof are said to be Or, a Cross Gules, betwixt four *Saracens* heads Sable, curled Argent. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but first taken (as some say) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occasion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found severed from their bodies in the Battel of *Alcoraz*, Anno 1094, won by Don *Pedro* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers small Islands about *Sardinia*, as 1. *Isola Rossa*, heretofore called *Phintania*. 2. The Isle of *Hercules*, now called *Asinaria*. 3. St. *Peters*, anciently *Hieracum*, or *Accipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which, as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Island,
Archbishops 3. Bishops 15.

The Land of the CHURCH.

WEST of the Realm of *Naples*, lyeth the LAND OF THE CHURCH, extended North and South, from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuscan* Seas. Bounded on the North-east with the River *Trontus*; on the South-east, with the *Asofennus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-west by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which separated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-west with the River *Pisces*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuscany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this Accompt the Popes Dominion taketh up the whole middle of Italy; having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other above two hundred miles, and in the length along the *Adriatick*, to the furthest parts of *Romandiola*, above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth most fitly for the command of all the rest, it being very easie for the Popes to convey their forces by Sea or Land, into what part thereof they please. And were it not that the Popes commonly are of several factions; and that the Successor pursueth not the designs of his Predecessors, but hath his own ends to himself, which for the most part are driven on without consideration of increasing the publick Patrimony; it is not possible, but that the Pope long before this time, had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, considering the extraordinary fertility of the soyl, able to spare provisions for the greatest Armies; the multitudes of people which it may afford, in regard they are so seldom consumed by Wars; and that the men of this Dominion (but chiefly those of *Rome*, and the parts adjoining) are conceived to be the best Souldiers of Italy; as retaining some sparks of their Ancestors valour, together with their gravity, magnificence, and a certain greatness of courage, which seems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preserve also to this day so much of the ancient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of life, before Trades or Merchandise. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dressed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry; yet for their Manufactures they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both sides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little cost might be made very useful: yet do they no way improve their fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of Traffick; which is the main defect of the Papal Politie, and filleth a rich Country full of poor and indigent persons. But to proceed to the description of the Popes Estate, it containeth the Provinces of 1. *Romandiola*, 2. the Territory of *Ferrara*, 3. the Estate of *Urbine*, 4. *Marcia*, *Anconita*, 5. *Ducato Spoletano* with *Sabinia*, 6. *S. Peters* Patrimony, and 7. *Campagna di Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Isanrus* (now called *Foglio*) by which parted from the Dukedom of *Urbine* on the East, to the Dukedom of *Parma* on the West, from which parted by the River *Panaro*, called of old *Scultenna*; and from the *Apennine* on the South, to *Padua*, and the *Adriatick*, on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the *Roman* Consul, who having won it from the *Galls* planted Colonies in it; and had the honour (though he pursued this War against the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better partage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Causeway, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*. Chief Rivers hereof, besides those spoken of already, which are only borderers. 1. *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Pissatello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Bononia*, (or *Bologna*) seated in a spacious Plain near the *Apennine* hills, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building Antick, seeming for the most part to be the work of the *Lombards*, the foundation of the houses of Free-stone, the rest of Bricks; built with arched Cloysters towards the street, under which one may walk dry in the greatest rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief University of Italy, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much studied here, inasmuch that from hence proceeded the famous Civilians *Johannes Andreæ*, *Asa*, *Bartholæus*, and *Sociinus*. I believe they have built Castles in the air, which ascribe the founding of this University to *Theodosius* the 2. The Charter of whose foundation

As

A.C.

570	1	Longins.	21.	645	9	Theodorum Calliopa.	16.
591	2	Smaragdus.	4.	655	10	Olympius.	2.
595	3	Romanus Patricius.		657	11	Theodorum Calliopa II.	36.
596	4	Gallinicus.	13.	687	12	Joh. Platina.	15.
609	5	Smaragdus.	3.	702	13	Theophylactus.	25.
612	6	Joh. Lamigita.	4.	727	14	Paulus.	
616	7	Eleutherius.	5.	728	15	Enrichus.	12.
621	8	Isaacus Patricius.	24.				

By *Charles the Great*, and by him given to the Bishops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*, as a requital for the Kingdom of *France*, confirmed unto King *Pepin* his Father, by the consent and authority of the Popes. The donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarchs*, and partly to make the people obedient to those Prelates; changed the name of the Country from *Flaminia* (by which name it was formerly known) to *Romandiola*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithstanding which Donation, or Original Grant, the Popes enjoyed not long the possession of it: The Emperours of *Germany*, and their Vice-gerents in *Italy*, wresting it by strong hand out of the possession of the Church; and giving it to such as deserved well of them, and were most likely, or most able to uphold their Faction. And so it stood, till the last Popes conspiring with the *French Kings Lewis* the 12. and *Francis* the first, brought them into *Italy*, Anno 1509. and by their aids, and by the censures of the Church, so prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and some other places, out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many petty Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to *St. Peters* Patrimony; and thereby got possession of all those Territories, which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches* of *Ancona*.

2. The Territory of *FERRARA* lieth in the very skirts of *Romandiola* towards the *Venetian*; extending one hundred and sixty miles in length, and about fifty in breadth: the soil thereof exceeding rich, but subject to the overflowings of the River *Po*; which makes the air in many places to be somewhat unwholsome. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof, have been at great charge in raising high Banks and Ramparts to keep in the waters: yet could not this resist the violence of the River, falling from so high a Spring, and seconded with so great Land-floods (as sometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do they what they can. The places of most note herein, are 1. *Grassano* in the borders of *Tuscany*, near the *Apennine*. 2. *Carpi*, a place of great importance, seated in the midst of this Dukedom; belonging heretofore to the house of the *Pici*. But partly by exchange made with *Marcus Pico*, partly for one hundred thousand Crowns ready money, given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lord hereof; it was by *Charles* the 5. incorporated into this estate. 3. *Commachia*, seated in the Marshes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Este*, were at first called only Lords of *Commachia*; a place which yielded great profit to the former Dukes, by the fishing of Eels. 4. *Saxole*, given by Duke *Alphonso* in exchange for *Carpi*.

Ferrara.

Carpi. Here is also the Territory and Lordship of the *Polesin*, the cause of so many quarrels and contentions between the ancient Dukes of *Ferrara* and the State of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom is in the Capital City, that which denominates the whole. *Ferrara*, a City of five miles in compass, so called from the Iron mines which are about it; commodiously seated on the River *Po*, which by reason of its breadth, depth, and violent swiftness of the current, is a sufficient rampart to it on that side; the other sides being fortified with a strong wall, and a spacious moat. In the middle of the City is a fair and spacious Market-place, into which do open on all sides about twenty streets, all of them half a mile in length; and all so straight and evenly built, that the furthest end of each of them may be easily seen. Near to this Market-place is a little Island, in which the former Dukes had a stately Palace, called *Belvedere*, from the fair Prospect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North side of the City a large Park for pleasure. The other houses are for the most part built of fair Free-stone, not joining unto one another as in other Cities, but at a pretty distance with neat Gardens between. *Ariosto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioso*, and *Hierome Savanarolo* the Prophetic Fryer, were both of them natives of this place: of which the first lieth here entombed, the last for preaching against the Pope, was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the Power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City together with *Faenza* was given by *Desiderius* their last King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by so great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperours of the house of *Schwaben*, it was again recovered by the prowess of the Countess *Mathildis*, Anno 1107. who took it, with many other Towns in *Italy*, from the Emperour *Henry* the 4. and at her death conferred the same upon the Church. The Popes once more possessed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the House of *Este*, a man of great sway in the affairs of *Italy*, who valiantly had defended it against *Ezzelinus*, Vicegerent of *Frederick* the 2. This was the first of this Family who had *Ferrara* in propriety: His Ancestors being called before the Marquesses of *Este*, and sometimes Marquesses of *Ferrara*, (but in title only) as Governours hereof in behalf of the Pope of *Rome*. *Obizzo* the Grandchild of this first *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the first, (who was willing to make what money he could of his lands in *Italy*) the Cities of *Rhegium* and *Modena*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legat of Pope *Benedict* the ninth, with the Popes consent, Anno 1304. Other improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of War; but none of them continued constant in their possession, but these three Cities and the Territories adjoining to them. As for this Family *de Este* (*Familia Aetfina* it is called in *Latine*) it took this name from *Este*, or *Aetfe*, a small Town in the Siegneury of *Venice*, conferred upon the Ancestors of this *Azo*, by *Charles* the Great. And for the Chiefs or Princes of it, they have been of great authority and power in their several times, commanding sometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and sometimes the Popes: great favours of learned men, and advancers of learning; inasmuch that the *Reinaldo's* and *Rogero's* of *Este*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Ariosto* and *Tasso*, two of the greatest wits of *Italy*; and finally allied to many of the best Houses of Christendom. The Catalogue of whom, since they were made the Hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here subjoined.

The Dukes and Marquesses of Ferrara.

- 1236 1 *Alcius*, or *Azo de Este*, the ninth of that name, but first Hereditary Marquess of *Ferrara*, by the Grant of the Pope.
- 1264 2 *Obizzo*, the sixth of that name, Grand-son to *Azo* by his son *Reinaldo*, second Marquess of *Ferrara*.
- 1293 3 *Azo* the tenth of *Este*, and II. of *Ferrara*, son to *Obizzo*.
- 1308 4 *Francisco*, brother to *Azo* the 2. after whose death, Anno 1312. *Ferrara* for a time was under the command of the Popes.
- 1312 5 *Albrandinus*, brother of *Franciscus*, who had the Title to, but not the possession of *Ferrara*.
- 1315 6 *Reinaldo* the 3. of *Este*, and the first of *Ferrara*, recovered *Ferrara* from the Pope, and cast out his Garrisons. 1317.
- 1335 7 *Obizzo* II. brother of *Reinaldo*.
- 1352 8 *Albrandino* II. son of *Obizzo*.
- 1361 9 *Nicolas* the 2. of *Este*, and first of *Ferrara*, brother of *Albrandino*, whose children being young, he disposed of the Estate.
- 1388 10 *Albertus*, brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of the University of *Ferrara*, Anno 1392.
- 1393 11 *Nicolas* II. base son of *Albertus*.
- 1441 12 *Leonellus*, the base son of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful Wedlock, invaded the Estate, and held it.
- 1450 13 *Borsius*, another of the base sons of *Nicolas* 2. succeeded *Leonel* in the Estate; who being made Duke of *Mutina* by *Frederick* the 3. was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of *Ferrara* also, Anno 1470.
- 1471 14 *Hercules*, the lawful son of *Nicolas* the 2. made Knight of the Garter, by King *Edward* 4.
- 1505 15 *Alphonso*, the son of *Hercules*.
- 1534 16 *Hercules* II. son of *Alphonso*.
- 1559 17 *Alphonso* II. who dying without lawful issue, Anno 1595. Pope *Clement* the 8. challenged

Urbine.

lenged this Estate in the right of the Church; and partly by force, partly by composition (whereof we shall say more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thousand Crowns; now not so much worth unto the Pope, by reason of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

The Arms of these Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illustrious Family, and for the strangeness of the Coat, I shall here put down) were Pale-wise of three pieces, 1. *Partie per Fesse*, in a chief *Or*, an Eagle displayed *Sable*, membred, langued, and crowned *Gules*; and in Base *Azure*, three Flowers de *Lys Or*, within a Border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2. *Gules*, two Keys in *Saltier*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, charged in *Fesse* with an Esccheon of pretence *Azure*, supporting an Eagle of the third, membred and crowned of the second. Over all in chief a Papal Crown *Or*, garnished with sundry Gems *Azure* and *Purple*. The 3. as the first Counter-placed. Which Coat upon the falling of the House of *Ferrara*, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as descended it.

3. From the Territory of *Ferrara* proceed we to the Estate of *Urbine*; both Dukedoms and distinct Estates till these later times: this last the younger of the two, and consequently (as in the ordinary course of Nature) the survivor also; but swallowed at last into the Popedom as the other was. Bounded on the West with the River *Isaurus* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from *Rumandiola*, on the East from *Marca Anconitana*, on the North with the *Adriatick*, and on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from *Tuscany*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60. miles, 35. in breadth: Some pieces and Estates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Signeuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The soyl is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oyl, plentiful of Figs and other fruits of most pleasant taste; and in a word, affording all things necessary for the life of man. But the air is generally unwholesome, especially about *Pesaro* and *Fossombrone*, by reason of the low flats and overflows of the water. The Principal commodities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Pesaro*, sold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dried Figs, which they vend unto *Bologne*, and other places.

The most famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Metrimo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reason of that great battel fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Asdrubal* the brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Consuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which, after a long and hot dispute, the victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* slain, (as *Livius* writeth) and 5400 taken prisoners. *Polybius* speaks of a less number both slain and taken; and like enough it is, that *Livius*, to advance the honour of that Family, might enlarge a little. But whatsoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this victory turned the tide of the *Roman* Fortune, which from this time began to flow again upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to trade and traffick, to follow their affairs, and make contracts and bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do; and that with as secure a confidence, as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italy*. This famous River riseth in the *Apennine* hills, and passing by *Fossombrone*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom seven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Episcopal Sees) and three hundred Castles. The principal of which are, 1. *Urbine*, one of the most ancient Cities of *Italy*, which both *Tacitus* and *Pliny* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Dukes ordinary seat in Summer. It is seated at the foot of the *Apennine* hills, in a very rich and pleasant soyl, built in the fashion of a *Miter*, and therefore called *Urbinas*, quod urbes binus continere videbatur. *Francisco Ubaldo* the first Duke, built here a very sumptuous Palace, and therein founded a most excellent Library, replenished with a great number of rare Books, covered and garnished with gold, silk, and silver; all scattered and dispersed in the time that *Cesar Borgia* seized on the Estate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the History of *England*, which passeth under his name, was a Native here: an History of worth enough as the times then were, except only in such passages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whose *Peter-pence* he was then in *England*) whose credit and Authority he preferred sometimes, before truth it self. 2. *Pisaurum*, now called *Pesaro*, the strongest Town of all the Dukedom, two miles in compass, and fortified according to the modern Art of War: the fortifications of it being first begun by *Francisco Maria*, and perfected by *Guido Ubaldo*, his son and successor; the ordinary seat of the Duke in Winter, well Garrisoned, and therefore trusted with the publick Armory. It is seated near the shore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Isaurus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handsome buildings, and a very strong wall, the soyl exceeding rich, but the air so bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating of too much fruits, nothing is more frequent here then Funerals, especially in the moneth of *August*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3. *Senigallia*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, (*Gallica* being added to it to difference it from another of that name in *Tuscany*) a strong and well fenced City near the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge consisting of eighty Arches; made of that length, not so much in regard of the breadth of the Channel, as the frequent overflowings of that turbulent Water. 4. *Fussombrone*, called in old Authors *Forum Sempronii*, for air and soyl of the same nature with *Pisaurum*; bought by *D. Frederick* of *Galeazzo Malatesta*, for thirteen hundred Florins of Gold. 5. *Cabo* or *Cagli*, on the Sea. 6. *S. Leon*, a good Town, and the chief of the Country of *Montefeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7. *Fano*, not far from the Sea, an Episcopal City, and anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*: of old times called *Fanum fortuna*, from a Temple there erected to Goddess Fortune (*Te facimus Fortuna deum*, as the Poet hath it.) 8. *Engubium* (now called *Anguico*) a Town belonging

Urbine.

longing to these Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoletan* Dukedom; and there we shall hear further of it. Of the Castles the principal are *Marivola*, and the Rock of *S. Leon*, which were the last that held good for Duke *Guido Ubaldo* against *Cesar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinus*, son to Pope *Alexander* the sixth; and the first which did return again under his obedience. For which cause when he fled the second time from the said *Borgia*, he dismantled all his other Castles, as being more likely to admit than resist the Invader; and these two last being very well fortified, he left to keep possession of the Country for him.

Here is also within the limits of this Estate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINO*, an ancient and well peopled Town, of a strong natural situation amongst the Hills: an Estate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Varena*, till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julia di Varena* the heir hereof, conveyed it by marriage unto *Guido Ubaldo* Duke of *Urbine*. But the Pope pretending an Escheat for want of heirs males, made himself Master of it by force of Arms: and gave it to his son *Piero Farnese*, whom afterwards with the consent of the Colledge of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and settled *Camerino* on the Church, as it still continues.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently the habitation of the *Senones*; a Nation of the *Cisalpine Galli*, who only had the honour of sacking *Rome*, to which City it continued subject, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at last (of which more in *Lombardie*) and the Country peopled with *Roman* or *Latine* Colonies, it followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Italy*, till the time of *Conradin*, the last Duke of the Imperial House of *Schwaben*, when *Urbine* was first subdued by the Earls of *Montefeltre*, whose Successors increasing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Eugubio* to it. And in the bustles betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperour, and Pope *Clement* the sixth, Anno 1345. *Gelasio di Montefeltre* held it by no other Title, but as the Emperours Vicegerents. This Family enjoyed it till the year 1444. by the Title only of Earls of *Montefeltre*, and Lords of *Urbine*; when *Frederick Ubaldo*, for his singular and surpassing valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the first Duke hereof: to hold as Feudatories of the Church, and paying 2240 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of such repute for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the sixth, made Knight of the Garter; in recompence of which high honour, the *English* to this day enjoy many priviledges in these Dominions. *Guido Ubaldo* this Dukes son lost his Estate to *Cesar Borgia*; after whose death he did recover it again by the power and favour of Pope *Julio* the second, to whom succeeded *Francisco Maria di Rovero*, his sisters son, in whose Family it continued till now of late, as will appear by this ensuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of Urbine.

- 1444 1 *Frederick Ubaldo*, of the ancient Family of *Montefeltre* the first Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the Garter.
 2 *Guido Ubaldo*, son of *Frederick*, for a while outed of this Dukedom by *Cesar Borgia*. He was Knight also of the Garter.
 3 *Francisco Maria di Rovero*, sisters son and next heir to *Guido Ubaldo*, was in his own right Lord of *Sengallia*, and had *Pisauro* from the Pope in reward of his many services done unto the Church; dispossessed for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.
 4 *Laurence de Medices*, Father of *Catharine di Medices* the French Queen, and of *Alexander* the first Duke of *Florence*; was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the tenth, (being of that Family) but lost it shortly after to Duke *Francisco*, who after the death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his Estates again, and died possessed of the Dukedom.
 1538 5 *Guido Ubaldo II.* son of Duke *Francisco*.
 6 *Francisco Maria II.* son of *Guido* the second, whose line expired, it escheated not long since (for want of heirs male) to the Church of *Rome*.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns per annum; but might have been raised to a greater sum, had not the Dukes preferred the love and ease of their Subjects, before the filling of their own Coffers. He was able to raise 1200 good Souldiers out of this Estate; and more the people would supply, if they had occasion. The Arms hereof *Azure*, a Tower *Argent*, environed with Flower de Lyces Or.

4. *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bounded on the West with the State of *Urbine*; on the East, with the River of *Trontus*, or *Druentus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the South, with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the North, with the *Adriatick*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, possessed all these parts on the Coasts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the East, to that of *Anfidus* on the West. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their War against *Rome*, they were invaded and subdued by the *Romans*, A.V.C. 485. which was about five years before the first *Punic* War, under the Conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were so great and multitudinous a Nation, that they were numbered to amount to 260000, which were then brought under the Command and Vassalage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italy* was divided into no more than eight Regions, these *Picentes* only made up one; so did they also when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonini*, they made up one of the sixteen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by those Emperours; and the same repute it held in the time of *Constantine*, *Picenum* making alwayes one: *Asculum caput gentis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the head of their Nation, being the Metropolis of the Province. Called in those times *Picenum Annonarium*, partly

by

Anconitana.

by reason of the abundance of grain which it did produce; and partly to distinguish it from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearness unto *Rome*, had the name of *Picenum Suburbicarium*; that part of *Campania* at this time, which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire, it was first called *Marcha Firmiana*, from *Firmo*, once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of most importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief seat from *Firmo* to *Ancona*, in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, besides those named already, which are only borderers, are, 1 *Chientius*, 2 *Sentinus*, and 3 *Potentia*; all rising in the *Apennine*, and passing with a swift course to the *Adriatick*.

The chief Towns, 1 *Ancona*, seated on the Hill *Cimmerius*, shooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperour; one of the fairest in the world, not so much for capacity, as the pleasantness and beauty of it: the descents down unto the water being made of Marble, and very delectable walking on all sides of it. The City it self is begirt with hills, on one of which Pope *Clement* the seventh built a very strong Castle, Anno 1532. under pretence of defending the Town against the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the people in more full subjection, who till that time, did yearly choose their own Magistrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Common-wealth. 2 *Recanati* (heretofore *Alia Recina*) seated upon the banks of the River *Mulso*, renowned for the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of *Europe*, at her Annual Markets; and a vein of the most excellent Wines. 3 *Firmo*, furnished the *Strong*, in former times of most esteem in all the Province which was hence called *Marca Firmiana*; and to this day, a place of great strength and consequence; and an Archbishops See. 4 *Macerata*, now of most credit, by reason that the Popes Legat keeps his residence there, and with him the Chancery for his Marquisate. 5 *Loretto*, called in *Latin* *Lauretana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified against the *Turks*, and other Pirates who once spoiled the same, and might be easily tempted thither on the like occasions: The Church here being admirably rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their devotions unto our Lady of *Loretto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the removal of whose Chamber hither, in our description of *Palestine*, you shall meet with a very proper Legend. 6 *Ascoli*, furnished the *Fair*, seated at the influx of the River *Druentus*, and on the furthest side of it towards *Abruzzo*, to which by some it is ascribed. Anciently the chief City of the *Picentes*, as before is said, and then called *Asculum*, conquer'd by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Sempronius*, A.V.C. 485. Nigh unto this City, was fought the second battel between *C. Fabricius* and the *Romans* on the one side, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirates* on the other; wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having slain 6000 of his Enemies; but yet with such loss on his side also, that he ascribed to some of his friends and followers, that such another Victory would quite undo him; and with such appearance of valour and virtue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this acclamation; *O quam facile esset orbem vincere, aut mihi, Romanis militibus, aut me rege, Romanis!* This Town also was the seat of the War called *Bellum sociale*, raised by the people of *Italy* against the *Romans*; *Popedius* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They, for a while, sorely flaked the state of *Rome*; but at last were vanquished, and this Town by *Strabo Pompeius* forced and spoiled. 7 *Adria*, now not otherwise famous, than that it gave denomination to the adjoining Sea, and the Emperour *Adrian*. 8 *Humana*, which together with *Ancona*, was given to Pope *Zachary*, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The succeeding Popes after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

5 Having surveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we must next cross the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedom of *SPOLETO* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians* call it) which takes up the Western part of that Province, which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*; and therefore before we come to the description of this, we must a little look on the state of that. A Country bounded on the East with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the East parts of *Latium*; on the West with *Tuscia* or *Hebruria*; on the North, with the *Apennine*; on the South, with the reaches or windings of the *Tiber*, the main body of *Latium*, and with that part of *Tuscanie*, which is now called *S. Peters Patrimony*. So called, because being situate under the shade of the *Apennine* Hills, it was *Regio Umbrosa*. Some give another reason of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, quasi *Opusgi*, as men that had escaped the Deluge; because so ancient a people, that no body could tell the original of them.

But whatsoever was the reason of the name, they were a stout and valiant people, and gave the first check to *Annibals* career, after his great Victory at *Thrasymene*; repelling him with loss and shame from the walls of *Spoleto*: yet not of power sufficient, for all their valour, to preserve their Country. From the *Tuscans*, who are said to have destroyed in it 300 good Towns. Made by that means, if not plainly subject, yet so obnoxious to the will and pleasure of the *Victors*, that at their instance or command they sided with them in a war against the *Romans* (whom formerly they had found very quiet neighbours); and by the *Romans* were subdued together with the rest of the Confederates then in Arms against them, A.V.C. 458. *Decius* and *Qu. Fabius* then the fifth time Consuls, which was about 77 years before *Annibal* fell into their Country. After which time in such esteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italy* was divided by *Augustus Caesar*; and finally together with *Tuscia*, made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, it taketh up the Western parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was said, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which last (now called *Nera*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabines*. The Countrey of a mixt nature, equally composed of very rough hills, and yet most delectable vallies; exceeding plentiful of all neces-

K

saries,

Spoleto.

faries, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fecundity of the women. The Wine hereof is much commended by Martial, as the best of Italy.

*De Spoletanis quæ sunt cariola lagenis
Mallueris, quam si musta Falerna bibas.*

That is to say,

If with Spolet bottles once you meet,
Say that Falerno Must is not so sweet.

Places of greatest note herein, 1 *Spoleto*, built partly on the hill, and partly on the lower ground; the residence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Lombardians*, who governed as Vice-roys, or Lord Presidents, of the remoter parts of that Kingdom: from whence the Country round about it was called *Ducato Spoletano*. It is still a Town of good esteem, populous, and of handsome building; and hath a strong Fortrefs for defence thereof, built upon the ruins of an old Amphitheatre: to which men pass over a great bridge of stone, upheld by 24 great pillars, which joyns two Mountains together; having between them a deep Vally, but narrow and without any water. *Theodorick the Goth* built a fair Palace in this City, rebuilt by *Narses*, but since ruined. 2 *Æugubium* (now called *Æugubio*) seated on the foot of the *Apennine*; in or near that place where anciently stood that City which *Pliny* calls *Juginium*; *Ptolomy*, *Isuuius*, utterly subverted by the *Goths*. A Town well seated in a fruitful and wealthy soyl, and blessed with an industrious people: acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that estate was swallowed up into the Popedom. 3 *Nuceria*, (now *Nocera*) in *Plinius* time called *Alfatena*, at the foot also of the *Apennine*; the people of which in former times much traded in their wooden vessel. 4 *Assisium*, or *Assise*, destroyed almost to nothing in the Civil Wars of Italy, and only famous at this time, for a See Episcopal, and being the birth-place of *S. Francis*; the Founder of the *Franciscans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the *French* call them, but we in *England* the *Gray Friars*. 5 *Citta de Castello*, anciently *Tipherdum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6 *Tudertum*, now called *Todi*, seated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful hill.

The rest of *Umbria* towards the East, not being within the compass of the *Spoleto* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, because the dwelling in times past, of the ancient *Sabines*: who being taken into *Rome*, and made Free Denizens of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded betwixt him and *Tatius*, then the King of this people, for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City. But after joyning with the *Latins* in a War against it, they were subdued by *Curius Dentatus* the Roman Consul, and made a subject Province of that Common-wealth, *A. V. C. 463*. But though the *Sabines*, at this time bare away the name, yet were they not sole Masters of it in these elder times; the greatest part hereof being possessed by some Nations of the *Umbri*, whom by a general name they called *Vilumbri* (the *Sabines* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a member of that body, subdued together with the rest of the *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the division of Italy made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nursia*; and in that made by *Constantine*, it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*, *Reate* being the Metropolis, or head City of both. A Territory of no great circuit, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines and Fig-trees: watered with the River *Farfarus*, which cutteth through the very midst of it; and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Lago di Podesluco*) esteemed to be the Centre or Navel of Italy by some ancient Writers; the waters of which are of such a nature, that in short time they will clothe a piece of wood with a coat of stone, and yet yieldeth excellent Trouts, and other good Fish. The Towns and Cities of most note, are, 1 *Reate* (now called *Reite*) an ancient City, and the Metropolis heretofore of all this Tract; as well when it was called *Nursia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2 *Nursia*, a City no less ancient, seated amongst the Hills, which for the most part are covered with snow; from which Town, being heretofore of more reputation, the Province of *Nursia*, spoken of in the *Itinerarie* of *Antoninus*, took denomination. 3 *Magliano*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory. 4 *Oriculum*, built amongst many fruitful hills, a mile from *Tiber*. 5 *Narnia*, the Country and Birth-place of the Emperor *Nerva*, the first of all the Emperors not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The soyl about it is of so different and strange a nature, that it is said to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and dusty by Rain: the City well-peopled, and a Bishops See, seated upon a very steep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*; of which the Popes of *Rome* having got possession, never left practising till they had got into their power all the rest of the Country. Little else famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Western part thereof, is the Lake called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *Ameria*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom, where *Dilobella* overthrew such of the *Senones*, a valiant Nation of the *Galls*, as had escaped the Sword of *Camillus*, *Quinctius*, *Corius*, and other fortunate Commanders in the wars against them; *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (saith the Historian) *qui incensam à se Romanam gloriaretur*: a former slaughter being made of them by *Camillus*, on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eastern limit of these *Umbri*.

S. Peters
Patrimony.

5. *S. PETERS PATRIMONIE*, properly and specially so called, is that part of *Tuscanie*, which appertains unto the Church; bounded upon the East with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*: on the West, with the River *Pisio*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario*, and parteth it from the estate of the great Duk of *Tuscanie*; on the North, with the *Apennine*, and the *Spoleto* Dukedom on the South, with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name presently on the donation of the Countess *Mathildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, *An. 110*. (*Paschal* the second sitting in the Chair of *Rome*) to be the *Patrimony* of *S. Peter*, and his successors in that See. A Countrey not inferior unto any in Italy, for the fertility of the soyl: but for the most part of an unhealthy Air, by reason of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanse it.

The principal Cities, and places of most observation, are, 1 *Perugia*, formerly called *Perusia*; a famous Town; in which *Augustus* besieged *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*; who, when they had in vain attempted to seduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which also at the last, yielded to the more fortunate Emperor. *Augustus* afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, caused it to be called *Augusta*; but it returned not long after, to its ancient name. It is seated very pleasantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitful soyl; well built both for the publick and private structures; a Bishops See, and made an University, *An. 1090*. In the distractions of Italy betwixt the Emperours and the Popes, this City was seized on by the *Bailions*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Oddier*, an opposite Faction to them, having got together a strong party of Malecontents, so suddenly entered one night into the City, that the *Bailions* began to fly: nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Masters of the Palace, but the chain which was drawn cross the gate. One of the Souldiers going about to cut this chain, and wanting room to wield his arm, cryed aloud, *Give back*: which words being heard, but not well understood by those furthest off, put them to their heels; and the foremost, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was saved. 2 *Orvieto*, seated on so high a Rock, that it is no small terror to look down from the top of it, into the vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightness, and yet the windows of the same (if we may credit *Adrianus* who reports it) are made of *Alabaster*, instead of *Glass*. 3 *Viterbo*, famous for the long residence of the Popes, at such time as they were affronted by the *Roman* Senators. 4 *Civitas Vecchia* (called anciently *Centumcella*) the only useful Haven that belongeth to *Rome*; which being ruined by the *Saracens*, was rebuilt by the Popes, new named, and fortified with a very strong Castle for the defence of their Shipping. 5 *Porto*, seated on the mouth of *Tiber*, over against *Osia*; but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both; a Bishops See, who is one of the seven Cardinals which is always assitant to the Pope. 6 *Farnese*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Farnesis*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7 *Bracciano*, which gives the title of a Duke to a branch of the *Ursini*, a well-known Family of those parts. 8 *Bacchano*, near the last in found, although not in fire: compassed round about with Hills in form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the midst; out of which runneth the River *Cremara*, near which the *Fabii* were slain.

Here was in this Country also the City of the *Veii*, affirmed to be as big as *Athens*, but questionless of great wealth and power; in a War against which, managed for the most part by the aforesaid *Fabii*, 306 of them were slain in a day, at the battel of *Cremera*, a petit River of the *Tuscans*: only one little child of them being left at home, who reitored the house; and was the Ancestor of that *Fabius Maximus* who preserved Italy, in the wars with *Annibal*. Of which great slaughter, thus saith *Ovid*,

— — — *Veientibus Arvis*
Ter centum Fabii, ter cecidere duo.

— — — On the *Veientine* plain
Three hundred and six *Fabii* were slain.

This City of the *Veii* was at last, after a ten years siege, taken by *Furius Camillus*, and by him levelled with the earth; because he found that the common people of *Rome* had a mind to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is also that fatal River of *Alia*, nigh unto which *Brennus* and his *Galls*, (that people, as shall be shewn hereafter, having 200 years before been drawn into Italy by the sweet taste of the *Italian* Wines) slaughtered the *Romans*: the *Roman* Army at that time consisting of 40000 Souldiers, most of them being raw and unexperienced; the *Galls* not more in number, but naturally of a more fierce and hardy courage, and withal so big-boned, that it seemeth they were born to be the terror of mankind, and the ruin of Cities. Which overthrow at *Alia*, and the vanquishment of the *Fabii*, hapning in one day, though in divers years, occasioned the old *Romans* to put that day among those unfortunate dayes, on which they never did attempt any business of importance. The like custom, whether on superstition, or fear of ill luck, is used by many *Christians*; and especially on *Childermas* day: on which *Philip de Comines* telleth us that *Lewis* the 11. used not to debate of any matter, but accounted it a sign of some great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his affairs; and would be marvellously displeased with those that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatsoever. In this particular, little less superstitious (if not more) than the ancient *Romans*. And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thrasymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the nearness

Campagna
di Roma.

of it to that City) where *Annibal* slew *Flaminius* the Consul, and 15000 of his *Romans*: which fight continued three hours, with so great an eagerness, that the Souldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time happened.

6 *CAMPAGNA DI ROMA*, containeth that part of *Italy*, which anciently was called *Latium*, the habitation of the *Latins*, and seat of *Rome*; so called, for that it is adjoining to that famous City, as the more proper Territory, and precinct thereof. It is sometimes also called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly so called; the seat and dwelling of the *Campans*. It is bounded on the East with the said *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Acrofenus*; on the West, with *Tiber*; on the North, with *Umbria*, or the now *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South, with the *Tyrrenian*, or *Tuscan* Sea; and came unto the Popes by no other Title, than as they had the Sovereignty and possession of the City of *Rome*, to which it always did belong.

The old Inhabitants were the *Latins*, as before is said, but subdivided into many petite and inferior Tribes, such as the *Equi*, *Volsci*, *Fidenates*, and others of as little note, to the number of thirty, all vanquished piecemeal by the *Romans*, first under the conduct of their Kings, and then of their Consuls and Dictators. Broken at last by *L. Quintius* the Dictator, *A. V. C.* 295. they became associates with the *Romans*, and so continued for the space of 100 years and upwards. But growing insolent on the sack of that City by the *Galls*, and impudently requiring that one Consul yearly should be chosen by and from themselves, they drew the *Romans* into Arms: by whom subdued under the leading of *Manlius Torquatus*, and *Decius Mus*, then Consuls, *A. V. C.* 413. Subject from that time forwards to the state of *Rome*, but enjoying greater privileges than the rest of the conquered Nations did; excepting such to whom the like were granted by especial favour.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat-royal of the *Latin*, or *Sylvan* Kings, ruined by *Tullus Hostilius* the third King of *Rome*, in which war *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the stake, the whole action was committed by the *Romans* to the *Horatii*; to the *Curatii*, by the *Albani*, being three Brethren of each side; in which it hapned that two of the *Horatii* were first slain, and the third counterfeiting a flight severed his enemies, and so flew them; whereby the *Albani* ever after became subject to *Rome*. 2 *Lavinium*, built by *Æneas* in honour of his wife *Lavinia*. 3 *Antium*, honoured many times with the seat and retirement of the Emperors: the Countrey round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very strong in shipping, till the taking of the Town by *Mævinus* a *Roman* Consul, who having broke their Forces at Sea, brought with him into *Rome*, the Beaks of their Ships and other Vessels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*) which have generally ever since been called *Rostra*. This was the chief City of the ancient *Volsci*, a people very strong in shipping, though without an Haven: afterwards much frequented by the principal *Romans* in their retirements from the City, so that for pompous and stately buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the ruins of this Town long ago destroyed, sprang the new City called *Nepesinum*, situate on a Rock near unto the Sea, the steepness of which gives it natural strength enough; and yet it is fortified besides with two strong Castles, surveying the Sea, and commanding the shore. 4 *Ardea*, the chief Town of the *Rutuli*, and seat of *Turnus*, the Rival and Competitor of *Æneas*: afterwards taken by *Superbus* the last King of the *Romans*; to which when the *Galls* had taken *Rome*, the miserable Citizens were compelled to fly. 5 *Gabii*, taken also by the same *Superbus*, whose son *Sexsus* counterfeiting some dislike of his Fathers cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*, by whom improvidently entrusted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6 *Offia*, anciently the Port-town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tiber*, by *Ancus Martinus*, the 4th King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long since dammed up, to stop the passage of the enemies Ships unto the City. The Bishop of this Town useth to consecrate the Pope. 7 *Præneste*, first conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Cincinnatus* the Dictator. Nothing so much endamaged this City as its natural and artificial Fortifications: for when the *Romans* in the times of sedition abandoned the Town, they used to make this place their refuge. Among others, *Marius* the younger made it the seat of war, against *L. Sylla*: but perceiving the unsuccessfulness of his affairs, here killed himself; and *Sylla* entering it as conquerour, put 12000 of the Citizens to the sword. It hath since been so often sacked, that it is very short now of its former lustre; but still it holds the reputation of a Bishops See. 8 *Tibur*, an ancient City also, and seated in a healthy Air. It is now called *Tivoli*, where there is a Fountain, which with artificial Engines moved with water, representeth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it seemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reporteth it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almost all Civil Nations may pretend a share; so I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*, whose Malter-pieces in this kind do far exceed the rest of *Europe*. For in the Kings house at *St. Germain*, seven miles from *Paris* (if it be lawful for me to digress a little on this Argument) one may behold the *Statua* of a *Nymph*, sitting before a pair of *Organs*: whose fingers by the help of water, are taught to manage the keys in so due an order, and the instrument to yield such a *Musick* to it, as comes exceeding near the *Organ*, if it be not the same; her head in the mean time jolting from one shoulder to another, like an old Fiddlers as a *Wake*; there being also not far off, the counterfeits of divers *Mills*, who very busily plyed their work till the *Musick* founded, and then stood still as if enchanted with the noise. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may see two *Titrons* riding on their *Dolphins*, in a Sea of water; each of them with a shell in his hand, which interchangeably and in turns served in stead of Trumpets. In a third, the story of *Perseus* and *Andromeda* most lively acted; and in a fourth

Campagna
di Roma.

fourth *Orpheus* in *Sylvia posita*, *Orpheus* playing on a Viol, the Trees moving, and the wilde Beasts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificial guidance of the waters only; the pretty Birds in every place so chirping out of their several and respective notes, that the hearer would conceive himself to be in some pleasant Grove. But it is time to go from *Tivoli* to *Velitri* (called anciently *Velitra*, and then a City of the *Volsci*) famous for the birth of the Emperor *Augustus*, and the dwelling of the *Æavian* Family; a place most delectably seated amongst the Vines, which yield as rich Wines as most in *Italy*, to *Anxur*, so called of the Temple which was here dedicated to *Jupiter*, surnamed *Anxur*; that is, *Beardless*; first built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the severity of *Lycurgus* his Laws, did here fear themselves, after a Colony of the *Volsci*, and at last of the *Romans*. But this town being destroyed by the tyranny of time, there started up 11 *Taracina* in the place thereof, seated upon a Mountain; but near the Sea, which it embraceth like a half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mola*): this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Cajeta* on the other; which is the first Port-town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Countrey hereabouts hath most pleasant Orchards, of Citrons, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the same time both ripe and Green Fruits, and represents a kinde of Summer in the dead of Winter.

Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than they are at the present, are 1 *Tusculum*, a Village which belonged to *Tully*, who here composed his excellent Book, called the *Tusculan Questions*. 2 *Formia*, built by the *Lacicians*, heretofore the delight and solace of the ancient *Romans*, now visible only in its ruins. 3 *Prævernium*, once the chief City of the *Volsci*, and the seat of *Camilla*, a noble Amazonian Lady; who aided *Turnus* the *Rutulan*, in his sharp war against *Æneas* and the *Trojans*, where she lost her life. 4 *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now stands *S. Felix*) the habitation of *Circe*, that so much celebrated Sorceress; of whom, and her chanting of *Ulysses* and his companions, there is so much upon record, in the ancient Poets. Near to which is the head-land called the *Circean Promontory*, the repercussion of the Waves by whose Southern *Basis* makes a dreadful noise; and gave occasion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lions, howling of Dogs, &c. which were heard about that Witches dwelling.

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed not of *Italy* only but of all the World, was that the famous City of *ROME* was seated in it, being built on the East side of *Tiber*; now much enlarged by the increase of 42 lesser streams or Rivers. It is distant from the Sea about 15 miles, first built, as *Fryer* *Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma*, Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forsaken and forlorn, by reason of the unwholsom air coming from the Fens; was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleased with the natural strength of the situation, and therefore like to make a good Town of war. And this tradition I should rather subscribe unto, than that it was called *Rome* from *Romulus*; who had he pleased to challenge the honour to himself, might better have caused it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samites*) than to call it *Roma*. But whatsoever greatness it did after come to, it was small enough (God knows) at first; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* only, and therefore not a mile in compass: the Territory not extending, as *Strabo* witnesseth, above six miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the first general Muster, amounting at the most to 3300 men. So inconsiderable they were, as well in quality as numbers, that their neightbors thought it a disparagement to bestow their daughters on them; and therefore they were faine to get themselves wives by a sleight of wit: proclaiming solemn Playes and Pastimes to be held in *Rome*; and ravishing the women which came thither to behold the sports. The Kings succeeding much enlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the hill *Janiculum* on the other side of the water, being walled and added to it by *Ancus Martinus*; as *Quirinalis*, *Esquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullius*; *Capitolinus* and Mount *Colinus*, came not in till afterwards. But at the last it was improved to such an height, that in the flourishing times of that Common-wealth, the men increased to the number of 463000, and the compass of the Town unto 50 miles; there being on and about the walls 740 Turrets. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither fervants, women, nor children, but men able to bear Arms, *Ætæ Danicæ*, and such as were inrolled into *Cense*, or the Subsidie Books. To which if we should add their wives, children, and servants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and so *Lippius* is of opinion, in his Tract de *Magnitudine Romana*. The most memorable buildings of it, were first the *Capitol*, founded by *Tarquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the spoils of their conquered Neighbourhood; saved from the fury of the *Galls* by the cackling of Geese. *Tacitus* calleth this house, *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, aspicatæ à majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civil Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the Wars of *Vespasian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Vespasian* carried the first basket of earth; after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the service: and perhaps the custom of laying the first stone in a building, or driving the first nail in a timber-work, by him whose edifice it is; hath from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2 Here was the Temple of *Janus*, open in the time of wars; and shut in the time of peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned but thrice: namely, during the reign of *Augustus*, after the first *Punic* War, and in the time of *Numa*. 3 Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Horatius Cocles* resisted the whole Army of King *Porcena*, *Tarquinius*, and the *Tuscan*; till the Citizens behind had broken down the bridge, received him swimming to the bank with joyful acclamations, and saved their City from present ruine. Here lived the famous Warriors, so much renowned in the stories of elder times; here flourished the exact Martial discipline, so memorized by ancient Historiographers: and finally here were laid up the spoils and Trophies of all *Europe*.

ROME, as now it standeth lower on the bank of *Tiber*, upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was built

ROME. built after the inundation of the *Goths and Vandals*) is in compass about eleven-miles, within which compass is not a little waste ground. The Inhabitants of all sorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergy-men and Courtiers; that is to say, such as have their dependance on the Court of *Rome*, either by holding offices and places of employment under the Popes, or by attending on his person, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates who are there abiding; or otherwise being of the retinue of such Foreign Ambassadors as are always commorant in the City to follow the Negotiations of their several Masters; all which must needs amount to a very great number. It was first built on the East-side of the River, in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins; and here and there some Churches and scattered houses (except it be a little on the North-East of the River, from the Gate called *Del Popolo*, to the Island of *Tiber*): the rest, especially toward the South, being taken up with Pastures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it stands, is on the West-side of the water, and the *Holy Island*; consisting of three distinct parts or members. Of these the least is that which they call *La Isola*, but anciently the *Holy Island*; first made an Island by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquins*, which the Senate not vouchsafing to convert to any publick or private use, commanded to be flung into the River; where it sunk and settled to an Island, called afterwards the *Holy Island*, from a Temple herein built unto *Esculapius*, brought hither from *Epidaurum*, in the shape of a Serpent. This Island is not above a quarter of a mile in length, and hardly half so much in breadth; but full of stately Churches and beautiful houses. Next to this is that which they call *Trastevere*; or *Trans-Tiberina*, but of old *Janiculum*, from the Mountain of that name included in it: Called also *Civitas Ravennatium*, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Souldiers which *Augustus* kept at *Ravenna* against *Antonius*; and after placed in this part of the City, which by reason of the unwholsomness of the air, is inhabited only by *Artizans* and poor people; yet compassed about with walls, except on that side next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and some handsome buildings. But the chief glory of the City consisteth in that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North side of the other, but disjoined from it; compassed about with wals by Pope *Leo* the 4. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1. the Church of *S. Peter*, which were it once finished, would be one of the rarest buildings in all the World. 2. The Castle of *S. Angelo*, impregnable unless by Famine. 3. The Popes Palace, called *Belvidere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compassed about with a very high wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the 5. and had his name from the fair prospect which it hath: in the same sense, as *Belvoir* Castle here in *England*; the Barony and Manſion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4. The Library of the hill *Vatican*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican Library*: a Library first founded by *Sixtus* the 4. who not only stored it with the choicest Books he could pick out of *Europe*; but allowed also a large revenue for the perpetual augmentation of it. *Bibliothecam Palatinam in Vaticano, toto terrarum orbe celebrem, aduēctis ex omni Europa libris construxit; proventusq; certos, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Burbon* sacked *Rome*, Anno 1527, it was much defaced and ransacked; but by the succeeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an University; which was founded by *Urban* the fourth, at whose request *Thomas Aquinas* professed here. Pope *Nicolas* the fifth was a special benefactor to the same; and after him, *Leo* the tenth, who revived the *Greek Learning* and Language, which were in these parts almost forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the treasures of those parts of Christendom subject to the Popes authority: partly for the expence of strangers, which do there remain on their several pleasures or occasions; and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained, for the Investitures of Bishopricks, and Buis of Benefices, Indulgences and other matters of Court-holy-water; and partly in the Pensions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Ministers of those Kings and Princes, which know best how to make their ends of the Popes ambitions. So that it may be truly said, there came not more Tributes into *Old Rome* from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the *New* from the subject Churches, which have submitted to the power of the *Roman Prelates*: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of Religion, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it said by *Proper* of *Aquitane*, (if my memory fail not).

Roma caput mundi, quicquid non possidet Armis,
Religione tenet.

That is to say,

What *Rome* subdu'd not with the Sword,
She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the ancient City, the power and natural courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the same against the bravery and assaults of all Foreign Enemies: this City during the time of the ancient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Galls*; but since *Pontifical*, it hath been made a Prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was besieged by any that did not take it. In a word, the City of *Rome* as now it standeth, is but the carcass of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruins, and the cause of them, her sins.

The Popes much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the authority of *S. Peter*; whose being there is indeed constantly attested by most ancient Writers; inſomuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet *propter Scriptorum consensum*, in regard of the unanimous consent of

of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The silence of the Scriptures is a *Negative Argument*, and concludes nothing to the contrary; against so great a Cloud of unquestioned Witnesses, as soberly and positively have affirmed the same. And yet I would not have it thought by the captious *Romanists*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Popes Supremacy, because he sits in *Peter's* seat: no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the story) to attain *Tullies* eloquence, or *Cæsars* power, because he married *Tullies* widow, and bought *Cæsars* chair: though the poor Gentleman did beſool himself with this opinion, that he should be Master of them both. Of which see *Lib. LVII*. And yet the Popes rely so much upon this fancy, of being the direct heirs of *S. Peter*, and all his prebeminences, that all things which they say or do, must be entituled to *S. Peter*. Their Throne must be *S. Peters Chair*; their Church *S. Peters Ship*, their Lands *S. Peters Patrimony*, their Tributes and exactions must be called *Peter-pence*, their Excommunications fulminated in *S. Peters* name; and all their Buis and Faculties sealed *Annulo Piscatoris*, with *S. Peters* Signet. Nay they went so far at the last, that Pope *Steven* not being contented to be *Peters* Successor, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter* himself. For being distressed by *Astolphus* King of the *Lombards*, he sends for aid unto King *Pepin* in the following stile. *Petrus Apostolus JESU CHRISTI, &c. i. e. Peter the Apostle of JESU CHRIST to you the most illustrious King Pepin, and to all Bishops, Abbots, &c. I the Apostle Peter, whose adopted sons you are, admonish you that you presently come and defend this City, &c. And doubt you not, but trust assuredly, that I myself, as if I stood before you, do thus exhort you, &c. and that I Peter the Apostle of God, will at the last day yield you mutual kindnesses, and prepare you Tabernacles in the heavens.* Baronius who records this Letter, Anno 755. num. 17. was it seems, pretty well persuaded of it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Paranesis* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon some differences with Pope *Paul* the fifth, he stileth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus idem, Petrus vicem Christi agens in terris, i. e. Paul, who is also Peter, and Christs Vicegerent*. But leaving these imaginary claims and challenges of *S. Peters* privileges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages: two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and discerning times of *Christianity*. Of which the principal, was the Orthodoxy of the Bishops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and sincere profession of the Faith of *Christ*; when almost all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schisms*, or waited and subverted by the fraud of *Heresie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the communion of it much desired by all true *Christians*; and a repair thither for relief and shelter in the times of trouble, made by the *Orthodox* Professors under persecution. And of these times, and this condition of that Church, we are to understand such passages of the Ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and set it above all the batteries and assaults of *Heresie*. Such is that passage of *S. Cyprian*, *Romanos esse ad quos perfidia non potest habere accessum*, lib. 1. ep. 3. and that of *Hierome*, *Romanam fidem (i. e. Romanorum fidem) Apostolica voce laudatam, cunctis mediis preſtigias non recipere*, in *Apol. cont. Rufin.* and many others of that kinde. Which passages it were as foolish and ridiculous to apply to all following times; the condition of that Church being different, from what then it was; as to accommodate all those *Elogies* and commendations to the present City of *Rome*; which the Orators and *Panegyrist*s of the elder times have hyperbolically ascribed to old *Rome*, in her greatest glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it such a multitude of suiters and attendants from all parts of the world, could not but add much to the power and reputation of those Prelates, who had the happiness and honour to be resident there: and thereby opportunity to gain more *Disciples*, to solve more doubts of conscience, and decide more controversies, than any other could expect. And so we are to understand that passage in *S. Irenæus*, in which he saith, *Ad hanc Ecclesiam propter potentiorum Principalitatem, necesse est omnino convenire Ecclesiam, i. e. eos qui sunt undiq; Ecclesia*. And so they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent Principality than other Cities. But when that more potent Principality failed to be at *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial See, first to *Constantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*; then did the Bishops of *Constantinople* and *Ravenna*, dispute with those of *Rome* for Superiority: the chief seat of Religion most commonly following the seat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Bishop of *Constantinople* prevailed so far, that with the permission of *Mauritius* the Emperor, he took upon him the title of *Universal Patriarch*. *Gregory* the Great (of whom it is said that he was the worst Bishop of all that went before him, and the best of all that came after him) was at that time Bishop of *Rome*; who sharply inveighed as well against the Emperor, as the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, for this Title; and plainly maintained, that whatsoever called himself *Universal Bishop*, was the fore-runner of *Antichrist*. As for himself, it is probable that he took the title of *Servus servorum Dei*, more in opposition to him of *Constantinople*, than with an intent to be so truly. To which though those of *Rome* reply, that *Gregory* did not absolutely condemn this Title, but only blame *John* the *Constantinopolitan* Patriarch, for assuming to himself that attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be. For then either in the old Buis of the former Popes, we should find mention of this Title; or else Pope *Gregory* would have assumed it to himself, that the world might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but one succeeded *Gregory*, having further aims, applied himself to *Phocas* that bloody Tyrant: who having murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, his wife and children, and thereby got the general hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to assure himself of *Italy*, which he feared was ready to revolt, declared this *Boniface* to be the *Oecumenical Bishop*, and Head of the Church. To such a good beginning, such a gracious Patron, do the Popes stand indebted for that power and Empire, which now they challenge to themselves over all the Church.

Now

Now as the Bishop of *Constantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency; of the Popes of *Rome*; by reason that they were respectively honoured with the Seat *Imperial*: so were there divers other Bishops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Millain*, which claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yield them any superiority. For trial of whose claim, we must look back on somewhat which hath been said before; where it is shewn that the *Roman Empire* was divided into fourteen *Dioceses*, each *Diocese* being subdivided into several Provinces, each Province comprehending many several Cities: then that in every of those Cities, where the *Romans* had their *Defensores*, the *Christians* also had a Bishop; in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the seat of the *Roman President*, the *Christians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principal City of each several *Diocese*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Diocese* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Christians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous *Maxim of Optatus*, *Respublica non est in Ecclesia, sed Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth, and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Council of *Chalcedon*, raised this superstructure, *Εκκλησιαστικὴν τὴν τιμὴν, &c.* that the honours of the Church should be accommodated unto those in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equal power, each of them limited and restrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he presumed once to act, he moved *irregularly*, and in his *Eccentricities*. And for those *Primates*, I shall give you once for all this general Muster, that is to say, the Patriarch or Pope of *Rome*, for the *Diocese* or *Præfecture* of that City; the *Primate* or *Archbishop* of *Millain*, for the *Diocese* of *Italy*; of *Syrium*, for that of *Illyricum*; of *Lyons*, for that of *France*; of *Tork*, for *Britain*; of *Toledo*, for *Spain*; and of *Carthage*, for *Africa*. Then for the East parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, for the *Diocese* of *Egypt*; of *Antioch*, for that of the *Orient*; the *Primate* or *Archbishop* of *Ephesus*, for the *Diocese* of *Asia*; of *Nicomedia*, for that of *Pontus*; of *Bizantium*, or *Constantinople*, for that of *Thrace*; of *Thessalonica*, for the *Diocese* of *Greece*, and of *Justiniana prima*, for that of *Dacia*. Amongst all which there was a mutual correspondence and Co-ordination, for the general Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourse, which they called *Literas Formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no subordination, and much less subjection, unto one another, as doth appear most evidently by the Canons of the Council of *Nice*, assigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the custome of the former times. As for the *Diocese* or *Patriarchate* of the Popes of *Rome*, it contained in it those ten Provinces, which were immediately subject to the *Præfect* or *Provoost* of that City (an Officer first instituted by *Augustus Cæsar*) that is to say, the Provinces of *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, *Picennum Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Savennium*, *Lucania* and the *Bruttii*, in the main Land of *Italy*; and the three Islands of *Sicily*, *Corfica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of those Provinces by the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicariae*, by *Ruffinus* an Italian Writer; so anciently the Pope himself was called *Urbicus*, or the City-Bishop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zepherinus*, *Zepherinus Urbicus*. But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up daily by a iteddy and constant watchfulness upon all occasions, to encrease the Grandour of that See; and taking to themselves the honour to be *Vindices Canonum*, the strict and punctual preservers of the ancient Discipline, which took extremely well with all sorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindices Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters, and at last the Rulers, or rather the *Over-rulers* of the *Canons*; and from chief Labourers in the Vineyard, they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at last obtained by the foresaid *Boniface*, whom that cruel and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the *Head of the Church*, the sixty sixth Bishop and first Pope of *Rome*: the *Latine* word *Papa* coming from the old *Greek* *πάππας*, signifying a Father. A Title at the first common unto other Bishops, as is evident to any one, who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this appropriated unto those of *Rome*. Of these Popes, their Succession, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to see, agreeing exactly with another. The reasons whereof, as I conceive, are, 1 The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2 the many *Schisms* which have hapned in it; and 3 the *Anti-Popes* in them created: the Writers of those times accounting him only among the Popes, to whose faction they were most devoted. This Catalogue ensuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvicus*, *Freigius*, *Bill. rsmine*, and *Onuphrius*, whose differences I have reconciled as well as possibly I could: premonishing the Reader, that where the number of years which every Pope is found to sit in the *Papal Chair*, makes not up the full number from his first admission, to the coming in of his Successor; it must be understood of some *Schism* or *Vacancy*, hapning in the Interval, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occur amongst the Antients, in the first Succession, some placing of them thus, *Linus*, *Cletus*, *Clemens*; some *Linus*, *Clemens*, *Cletus*; and finally some others putting *Clemens* the first: I know no better way to compose the same, than to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that *S. Peter* and *S. Paul* were Co-founders of the Church in *Rome*; *S. Peter* of the Church of the *Circumcision*, and *S. Paul* of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Bishop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succession in this manner following.

The

The Bishops of Rome.

A. Ch.		A. Ch.		A. Ch.	
44	1 S. Peter, Bishop of the Churches of the Circumcision.	59	1 S. Paul Bishop of the Churches of the Gentiles.		
70	2 Cletus, or Anacleus, Successor to S. Peter in the Churches of the Circumcision. 23.	70	2 Linus, Successor to S. Paul in the Church of the Gentiles. 11.		
		81	3 Clemens, having succeeded Linus first in the Church of the Gentiles, did after, An. 93. succeed Cletus also in the Church of the Jews, reckoned by some the next Successor to S. Peter, because the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the Gentiles not being founded, or not distinguished from the other, till some years after Peters coming.		
103	4 Anacleus 9	275	27 Eutychanus 8	492	49 Gelasius 4
112	5 Evaristus 9	283	28 Cains 13	597	50 Anastasius II. 2
121	6 Alexander 16 m. 5 d.	296	29 Marcellinus 8	499	51 Symmachus 15
131	7 Sixtus 10	304	30 Marcellus 5	514	52 Hormisdas 9
142	8 Telephorus 12	309	31 Eusebius 2	523	53 Joannes 2 m. 9 d.
154	9 Hyginus 4	311	32 Aditiades 3	526	54 Felix IV. 4
158	10 Pius 9	314	33 Sylvester 22	530	55 Bonifacius II. 1
167	11 Anceus 8 m. 9	336	34 Marcus m. 8	532	56 Joannes II. 3
175	12 Soter 4	337	35 Julius 15 m. 5	535	57 Agapetus 1
179	13 Eleutherius 15	352	36 Liberius 15. cui vivo	536	58 Sylvester 1
194	14 Victor 9		Felix successus.	537	59 Vigilius 18
203	15 Zepherinus 18	367	37 Damasus 18	555	60 Pelagius 5
221	16 Calistus 5	385	38 Syricus 13	560	61 Joannes III. 13
226	17 Urbanus 6 m. 7 d.	398	39 Anastasius 4	573	62 Benedictus 4
233	18 Pontianus 5	402	40 Innocentius 15	578	63 Pelagius II. 12
238	19 Anterus 1	417	41 Zosimus 1 m. 4	590	64 Gregorius Mag. 14
239	20 Fabianus 14	419	42 Bonifacius 5	605	65 Sabinianus 1. the last of the Roman Bishops, not having that arrogant Title of Universal Bishop, or Head of the Church.
253	21 Cornelius 2	424	43 Celestinus 8 m. 5		
255	22 Lucius 1 m. 8	432	44 Sixtus III. 8		
256	23 Stephanus 3 m. 3	440	45 Leo magn. 21		
260	24 Sixtus, or Xistus II. 2	461	46 Hilarius 6 m. 10		
262	25 Dionysius 10	468	47 Simplicius 15 m. 5		
272	26 Felix 2 m. 5 d	483	48 Felix III. 9		

The Popes of Rome challenging a supremacy over all the Church.

606	1 Bonifacius III. 3	757	29 Paulus I. 10	903	56 Leo V. d. 40
607	2 Bonifacius IV. 8	767	30 Constant II. 1	903	57 Christophorus m. 7
615	3 Damas. dedit 3.	768	31 Stephanus IV. 4	903	58 Sergius III. 7.
618	4 Bonifacius V. 5 m. 10	772	32 Adrianus I. 23	910	59 Anastasius III. 2
624	5 Honorarius 13	796	33 Leo III. 10	912	60 Lando m. 6
634	6 Severinus 2	816	34 Stephanus V. m. 7	912	61 Joannes XI. 15
639	7 Joannes IV. 2	817	35 Paschalis 7	928	62 Leo VI. m. 6
641	8 Theodorus 7 m. 5	824	36 Eugenius II. 3	929	63 Stephanus VIII. 2
649	9 Martinus 6	827	37 Valentinus d. 4	931	64 Joannes XII. 5
654	10 Eugenius 2 m. 9	827	38 Gregorius IV. 16	936	65 Leo VII. 4.
657	11 Vitalianus 14	843	39 Sergius II. 3	940	66 Stephanus IX. 3
671	12 A-Deo-datus	846	40 Leo IV. 8	943	67 Martinus III. 3
677	13 Dominus 1 m. 5 d.	854	41 Joannes VIII. vulgo	946	68 Agapetus II. 9
679	14 Agatho 4		POPE JOANNE 2	956	69 Joannes XIII. 8
683	15 Leo II. m. 10	856	42 Benedictus III. 2	964	70 Leo VIII. 1
684	16 Benedictus II. 1	858	43 Nicolas 10	965	71 Benedictus V. 1
685	17 Joannes V. 1	868	44 Adrianus II. 5	966	72 Joannes XIV. 7
686	18 Canon m. 11	873	45 Joannes IX. 10	973	73 Benedictus VI. m. 6
688	19 Sergius 13	883	46 Martinus II. 1	974	74 Dominus II. 1 m. 3
701	20 Joannes VI. 3.	884	47 Adrianus III. 1.	975	75 Bonifacius VII. 1
704	21 Joannes VII. 3	885	48 Stephanus VI. 6	976	76 Benedictus VII. 8
707	22 Sisinus d. 20	891	49 Formosus 4	984	77 Joannes XV. 1
707	23 Constantinus 7	895	50 Bonifacius VI. d. 15	985	78 Joannes XVI. 10
714	24 Gregorius II. 17	896	51 Stephanus VII. 1.	995	79 Joannes XVII. 4
731	25 Greg. III. 10 m. 9	897	52 Romanus m. 4	996	80 Gregorius V. 3 m.
742	26 Zacharias 10	897	53 Theodorus II. d. 20	999	81 Sylvester II. dictus
752	27 Stephanus II. d. 4	897	54 Joannes X. 2		Necromanticus 4
752	28 Stephanus III. 5	899	55 Benedictus IV. 2	1003	82 Joannes XVIII. m. 5

83 Joannes

The Papacy.	1003	83	Joannes XIX. 6	1188	115	Clemens III. 3	1410	148	Joannes XXIII. 5
	1009	84	Sergius IV. 3	1191	116	Celestine III. 6	1417	149	Martin V. 13
	1012	85	Benedictus VIII. 12	1198	117	Innocent III. 17	1431	150	Eugenius IV. 16
	1024	86	Joannes XX. 8 m. 9	1216	118	Honorius III. 10	1447	151	Nicolaus V. 8
	1033	87	Benedictus IX. 12	1227	119	Gregorius IX. 14	1455	152	Callistus III. 3
	1045	88	Silvester III. m. 1	1241	120	Celestin IV. d. 17	1458	153	Pius II. ante dictus
	1045	89	Benedictus X. m. 1	1243	121	Innocent IV. 11			Ennea Silvius. 6
	1045	90	Gregorius VI. 1 m. 7	1254	122	Alexander IV. 6	1464	154	Paulus II. 7
	1047	91	Clemens II. m. 9	1261	123	Urbanus IV. 3.	1471	155	Sixtus IV. 12
	1047	92	Damasus II. d. 23	1265	124	Clemens IV. 3	1484	156	Innocent VIII. 7
	1049	93	Leo IX. 5	1271	125	Gregorius X. 14	1492	157	Alexander VI. 11
	1055	94	Victor II. 2	1275	126	Innocent V. m. 5	1503	158	Pius III. d. 26
	1057	95	Stephanus X. 1 m. 6	1276	127	Adrian V. d. 19	1503	159	Julius II. 10
	1059	96	Nicolaus II. 2 m. 6	1276	128	Joannes XXI. d. 8	1513	160	Leo X. 9
	1062	97	Alexander II. 11	1277	129	Nicolaus III. 4	1522	161	Adrian VI. 2
	1073	98	Gregorius VII. dictus	1281	130	Martinus IV. 4	1524	162	Clemens VII. 10
			Hildebrandus 12.	1285	131	Honorius IV. 4	1534	163	Paulus III. 15
	1086	99	Victor III. 1	1288	132	Nicolaus IV. 4	1550	164	Julius III. 5.
	1087	100	Urbanus II. 12	1294	133	Celestin V. m. 6	1555	165	Marcellus II. d. 22
	1099	101	Paschalis II. 18	1295	134	Bonifacius VIII. 8	1555	166	Paulus IV. 5
	1118	102	Gelasius II. 1	1303	135	Benedictus IX. m. 8	1560	167	Pius IV. 6
	1119	103	Calistus II. 6	1305	136	Clemens V. 9	1567	168	Pius V. 5
	1125	104	Honorius II. 5	1316	137	Joannes XXII. 18	1572	169	Gregorius XIII. 13
	1130	105	Innocent II. 13	1334	138	Benedict. X. 7	1585	170	Sixtus V. 5.
	1143	106	Celestin II. m. 5	1342	139	Clemens VI. 10	1590	171	Urban. VII. d. 12
	1144	107	Lucius II. m. 11	1352	140	Innocent VI. 10	1590	172	Gregorius XIV. m. 9
	1145	108	Eugenius III. 8	1362	141	Urban V. 8	1591	173	Innocent IX. m. 1
	1153	109	Anastafius IV. 1	1371	142	Gregorius XI. 7	1592	174	Clement VIII. 13
	1154	110	Adrian IV. 4	1378	143	Urban VI. 11	1605	175	Leo XI. d. 16
	1159	111	Alexand. II. 22	1389	144	Bonifacius IX. 14	1605	176	Paulus V. 2
	1181	112	Lucius III. 4	1404	145	Innocent VII. 2	1621	177	Greg. XV. 2
	1185	113	Urban III. 2	1406	146	Gregorius XII. 2	1623	178	Urban VIII. 21
	1187	114	Gregorius VIII. m. 2	1409	147	Alex. V. m. 10	1644	179	Innocent X. now living.

To these 179 Popes, add the 65 Bishops which preceded that arrogant title of *Universal*, and they make up the full number of 244. How many are to come, he must be a cunning man that can determine. And yet such cunning men there have been, who have determined positively, but withal, Prophetically, of the number of Popes; by name S. Malachy one of the first Apostles of the Irish Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Massingham's* collection of the Irish Saints, a certain number of *Mottoes*, in the Latin tongue; agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes successively to one another, according to the order of those several *Mottoes*: and thereunto this Prophecy annexed, that when so many Popes had sat in S. Peter's Chair, either the World should end, or the Popedom fail. The Book was shewed to me by the Author, when I was at Paris, and the Popes names in order joyned to every *Motto*, as far as to the time of Urban, who last deceased; which I compared as well as memory would serve me, and found the *Mottoes* and the Popes to be very answerable. The *Motto* for Pope Urban, which I took most notice of, was, *Lilium & Rosa*: a *Motto* very suitable to the principal Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the English Rose, and the French Lily; in the Marriage of Charles King of England, and Madam Henrietta Maria the Princess of France; which that Pope earnestly promoted, in his speedy and cheerful granting of the Dispensation. And to take from me all suspicion of Imposture, this *Massingham* shewed me an old Book written by one *Pion a Fleming*, and printed near 200 years before his Collection; in which the *Mottoes* stood as in his they did, and comparing the *Mottoes* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of Urban, and that *Motto*, to jump even together. From Urban downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottoes* more to come; by consequence if this Malachy were as true a Prophet as one Malachy was, just so many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his Elect's sake will abridge those days, and not permit the superflitions and corruptions of that Church to endure so long; nor so many Affertors and Defenders of those Roman Heterodoxies, to be added to the former number. Out of the stories of all which (preremitting many things of less consideration) I will only select some few passages, for the better understanding of their state and story.

1. Pelagius the first, ordained that *Hereticks* and *Schismaticks* should be punished with temporal death; which severity continueth still: and that none should be preferred to Ecclesiastical dignities by Gifts, and Bribes; which pious order is long since antiquated.

2. Vitalianus, first brought *Organs* into the divine service of the Church of Rome, to be used with the singing or vocal Music formerly in use; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes succeeding.

3. Constantine was so generally beloved of all men, that going to Constantinople, Justinian the second kilt his feet in sign of honour, which some of the ambitious Popes in times succeeding, drew into example, and at last brought into a custome as it still continueth.

4. Pas-

4. Pascal the first, caused the Priests of certain Parishes in Rome, by reason of their nearness to his person, their presence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now mates for Kings, and numbered about 70. but more or fewer at the sole pleasure of the Popes.

5. Eugenius the second took to himself within the Territories of the Church, the Authority of creating, Dukes, Earls, and Knights; as the *Exarch of Ravenna* had used to do.

6. Sergius the second, was the first that changed his name. For, thinking his own name, *Bocca di Porco*, or *Swine's mouth*, not consonant to his dignity, he caused himself to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Successors following, do also vary their names. So that if one be a Coward, he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clemens*; if an Atheist, *Pius*, or *Innocent*; if a Rustick, *Urbanus*; and so of the rest.

7. John the eighth is by most men confessed to be a woman, and is usually called Pope *Joane*. To avoid the like disgrace, the *Porphyry Chair* was ordained; *Ubi ab ulisq; diacono, &c.* so that both in a literal and mystical sense, this woman may not unfitly be called, *The Whore of Babylon*. The name of this Female Pope, the *Romish Chronologers* have not inserted into the Catalogue; the reason, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & sexum muliebrem*. And from hence it is that in the common Catalogues, these Popes that have called themselves *Johns*, are so ill ordered; some making that *John* which succeeded *Adrian* the second, An. 872. to be the 8th. and others the 9th. *Platina* only of all the *Pontificians* reckoneth Pope *Joane* as the 8th. of the *Johns*, and so forward: in which particular I have followed his authority. And it is probable enough that God might suffer that proud See to fall into such an infamy, the better to humble the ensuing Popes, in the times of their greatest ruff and flourish; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succession, they so much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the story in matter of Fact) he that lists to see, may satisfy himself in Mr. *Cook's* Book of Pope *Joane*; who most indolently hath answered all objections, which have been made against it by those of Rome.

8. Nicolaus the first, the better to fasten the Clergy to the See of Rome, and make them the less obnoxious to their natural Princes; was the first who did by Law restrain them from marriage. Saying that it was the more honest to have to do with many women privately, than openly to keep a wife: and some of his Successors followed it so close, that a Priest of *Placentia* being accused to have wife and children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that she was the wife of another man, and his *Strumpet* only, he was again restored unto it.

9. Adrian the third ordained, that the Emperour from thenceforth should have no more to do with the Election, or confirmation of the Pope; but that it should be left wholly to the *Romish Clergy*.

10. *Formosus* was so ill beloved, and of such a general disesteem, that Pope *Steven* the seventh caused his body to be unburied, all his A&S reversed, two of his fingers to be cut off; and then the mangled carcase to be again interred among the *Laity*. And though these Acts of *Steven* were adjudged illegal, both by *John* the tenth, and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Successors; and the doings of *Formosus* justified: yet *Sergius* the third caused his corrupt and putrified body to be taken once more out of the grave; and his head to be cut off, as if still alive. So little did the infallibility of St. Peter's Chair prelerve these Popes from falling into gross and irreconcilable contradictions.

11. John the twelfth, was the next after *Sergius* the second, that changed his name; a very wicked, cruel, and libidinous man: who coming to that place by his Fathers greatness, cut off the Nose of one Cardinal, and the hand of another, for that they had signified to the Emperour *Orto* the first, what a scandal all the Church did suffer by his detestable life; and finally being taken in Adultery, was slain by the husband of the woman.

12. Gregory the fifth, finding the power of the Emperour, as long as it continued in a way of succession, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withal incensed against the *Romans*, who till that time retained some shadow of an Empire; projected the election of the future Emperours, by the Princes of Germany; by which the Germans were distracted into Factions, and the Romans weakened; and so a door left open to the Popes of Rome, to make their ends upon them both.

13. Steven the tenth brought the Church of *Millain* to be under the obedience of the Popes of Rome, which till that time had challenged an equality with them; as before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for some time had challenged the precedence of them.

14. Gregory the seventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet man, who first adventured to draw the premises laid down by some of his Predecessors into a conclusion: Excommunicating the Emperour Henry the fourth, for meddling with the Investitures of Bishops, and causing *Rodolph Duke of Suevia* to rebel against him. A man much favoured against the Princes of her own House by the Countess *Mahilda*; who is said to be so much his friend, that for his sake she left the company of her husband, and disherited her right Heirs, settling her whole estates in Italy on the See of Rome. And though the Emperour had the better of this Pope, and made him fly out of Rome, and dye in exile; yet he was slain at last to submit himself to Pope *Paschal* the second; (who had armed his own son against him) to attend bare-foot at his own door and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third, ordained the bearing of Candles, in the Feast of the Purification of the Virgin Mary, thence called *Candlemas's day*.

16. *Sergius* the fourth was the first that on *Christmas's* night, with divers Ceremonies did consecrate Swords, Roses, or the like; to be sent as tokens of love and honour to such Princes as deserved best of

The Papacy

The Papacy.

of them, or whom they desired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth sent a consecrated Rose to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requesting him to banish *Luther*: and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to engage him in a war against *Henry* the 8th. who had then withdrawn himself and his Kingdom, from the Popes commands.

17. *Nicolas* the second took from the *Roman* Clergy the election of Popes, and gave it to the College of Cardinals.

18. *Celestine* the second, was the Inventer of that mad manner of cursing, or Anathematizing, by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third, pursuing the desperate course of *Gregory* the seventh, excommunicated the Emperor *Frederick* the first; and by railing war against him in every place, brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to prostrate himself at his feet: when the Pope treading on his neck, said aloud *Super Aspidem & Basiliscum*, &c. profanely applying those words to the present occasion. And when the Emperor, to put the better colour on his disgrace, meekly replied, *Non tibi sed Petro*; the Pope not willing to lose his part of so great a glory, subjoyned as angrily, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Council in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope should have the correction of all *Christian* Princes; and that no Emperor should be acknowledged, till he had sworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*; who when he hath dined, commands his Trumpeters to sound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may sit down to dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Transubstantiation*, and ordained that there should be a *Pix* made to cover the consecrated (but now *transubstantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is also said to have first imposed *Auricular Confession* upon the people.

21. *Nicolas* the third was the first Pope who practised to enrich his kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuscany*; and to raise the rest to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavel* very well observeth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Popes kinsfolks or posterity; so afterwards they studied no one thing more than to preferre their own blood; inasmuch that they have not only laboured (as he saith) to make them Princes, but if it were possible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For so dearly do they love their Nephews (by which name they use to call their Bastards) that it was very justly said by Pope *Alexander* the third, *The Laws forbid us to get Children, and the Devil hath given us Nephews in their stead*.

52. *Boniface* the eighth, of whom it is said, that he entered like a Fox, reigned like a Lyon, and dyed like a Dog; by his general Bull, exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and Payments, unto Temporal Princes. Which being complied with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward* the first put them out of his protection; and so the Popes Bull left roaring here. He caused the Book of the *Canon Law*, called the *Decretals*, to be first set out: and instituted the Feast of *Jubilee*, to be held in *Rome* every hundredth year; but by *Clement* the sixth it was brought unto the fiftieth year, and since reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourse of people which repaired to *Rome*, to observe his new Feast of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remission of all his sins) shewed himself one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperor; and caused two Swords to be born before him every day, in sign that all power Ecclesiastical and Temporal did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the fifth was the first that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* saleable. For seeing (said he) that one drop of our Saviours blood had been enough to have saved all Mankind, and yet that all his blood was shed; the over-plus was left to the Church as a standing Treasure, to be disposed of by St. Peter and his Successors. And hereunto, to make his Treasure the more inexhausted, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the insolencies of the people of *Rome*, he removed the Papal See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the space of seventy years.

24. *Clement* the sixth had an ill time of it. For in his Papacy the Emperor gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church, to such as formerly had usurped them; to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which title the *Maltesi* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordalassi* of *Forli*, the *Vareni* of *Cambrino*, the *Benivolieri* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Estates were never recovered to the Church, till the time of Pope *Julio* the second; though conquered from the present owners in the time of *Alexander* the sixth, by *Cesar* *Borgias* his son; who had an aim of selling them, and perhaps the Papacy it self; on the *Borgian* Family.

25. *Gregory* the eleventh returned the Papal Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himself by Sea, in private, for fear of being withheld by the *French*: and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City so over-grown with briers and bushes, and the principal buildings of it so decayed and ruinous, that a little longer absence would have made it desolate.

26. *Paul* the second endeavoured to encrease the Majesty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and exceeded all his Predecessors in pomp and shew: causing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphirs, Emeralds, and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the splendour of the Cardinals with a scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the 4th. had graced with red Hats before. He brought the *Jubilee* from 50 years to 25.

27. *Sixtus* the fourth ordained a constant Guard to attend his person. He very much beautified and repaired the City of *Rome*, and was the first founder of the *Vatican* Library. But on the other side

he

The Papacy.

he is said by some, to have set all Offices and preferments to sale, and to have builded in *Rome* Stewes of both sexes, to bring in Beads, and to authorize our Ladies *Palter*.

28. *Alexander* the sixth, setting aside all modesty, was the first that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Bastards) to be his Sons. By one of which, the *Cesar* *Borgias* before named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, and many other estates from the present owners, on a design of settling them in his own Family, as before is said; and to that end called in the *French*, who after made such foul work in *Italy*.

29. *Julio* the second had more in him of the Soldier, than the Prelate, recovering many Towns unto the Church which had been formerly usurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cesar* *Borgias*; and keeping *Italy* in his time in continual wars. This is the Pope who passing over the Bridge of *Tiber*, brandished his Sword, and threw his Keyes into the River; saying, that if *Peters* Keyes would not serve his turn, then *Pauls* Sword should do it.

30. *Leo* the tenth was indeed a great Favourer of Learning, but of great prodigality, and vast expence. For maintenance whereof, he sent his saleable *Indulgences* into *France*, and *Germany*: which business being indiscreetly handled by his Ministers, occasioned *Luther* in *Germany*, and *Zuinglius* amongst the *Switzers*, first to write against them; and afterwards to question many points of Popish Doctrine. In pursuance of which quarrel, the Pope of *Rome* burnt *Luthers* Books, whom he declared for an Heretick; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg*, with the Popes *Canon Law*, whom he declared to be a Persecutor, a Tyrant, and the very *Antichrist*. Which flame encreased so fast and enlarged so far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. *Pius* the fourth continued the Council formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the third, but interrupted and layd aside from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby settled and confirmed the *Interests* of the Church of *Rome*, caused it to be received as *Oecumenical*: though the *Italian* Bishops being most of them the Popes creatures, did more than double the number of all the rest; and yet some of the rest also were but merely *Titulars*. He added also a new Creed consisting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apostles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. But of the words and actions of these Ghostly Fathers we have said enough; if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinal, for giving to St. *Peters* picture too much of the red, replied, that he had made him so, as blushing at the lives of those who were called his Successors.

As for the Temporal power and greatness of the Popes of *Rome*, there is a pretended *Donation* of the Emperor *Constantine*; by which the City of *Rome* it self, most part of *Italy*, and *Africa*, and all the Islands of those Seas are conferred upon them: the forgery whereof is very learnedly shewn by our learned *Cracamborpe*, in his discourse upon that subject. But that *Donation* might most justly be suspected of Fraud and Forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the same; considering how fearful the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof disputed: inasmuch that many leaves are razed out of *Guicciardine* by the *Inquisition*, where it had been questioned. For in that place the Historian not only denyeth the said feigned *Donation*, but affirms that divers learned men reported, that *Constantine* and *Sylvester* (to whom it is said to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then sheweth, how base and obscure the Authority of the Pope was in *Rome* it self, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of *Italy*. 2 That in the institution of the *Exarchate*, the Popes had nothing to do with the Temporal Sword, but lived as subject to the Emperours. 3 That they were not very much obeyed in matters *Spiritual*, by reason of the corruption of their manners. 4 That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperours now neglecting *Italy*, the *Romans* began to be governed by the advice and power of the Popes. 5 That *Pepin* of *France*, and his Son *Charles* having overthrown the Kingdom of the *Lombards*; gave unto the Popes, the *Exarchate*, *Istria*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns and Territories about *Rome*. 6 That the Popes in all their Bulls and Characters, expressed the date of them in these following words; *Such a one our Lord the Emperor reigning*. 7 That long after the translation of the Empire from *France* to *Germany*, the Popes began to make open protestation, that the *Pontifical* dignity was rather to give Lawes to the Emperours, than receive any from them. 8 That being thus raised to an earthly power, they forgot the salvation of souls, sanctity of life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards men: And that to raise Arms, to make war against *Christians*, to invent new devices for getting of money, to profane sacred things for their own ends, and to enrich their kindred and children, was their only study. And this is the substance of *Guicciardine* in that place: an Author above all exception. He was a man whom the Popes employed in many businesses of principal importance; so that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of *Rome*, so unlikely is it to have been given by *Constantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charles* his Son, (though more beholding to the Popes than that Emperor was) could be induced to part with it. *Lewis* furnished *Pius* is said to have been the first Donor of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third Book of *Volaterran*; subscribed by the Emperor, his three Sons, ten Bishops, eight Abbots, fifteen Earls, and the Popes Library-Keeper: yet notwithstanding it is thought, by many very learned and judicious men, that really there was no such matter; but that all this was forged by *Anastasius* the Popes *Bibliothecarian*, or Library-Keeper, who is cited as a witness to the *Donation*. And yet to put the matter further out of question, let us next hear what that great Politian and Statesman, the Recorder of *Florence*, *Nic. Machiavel* hath observed in this case. *Rome* (saith he) was always subject to the Lords of *Italy*, till *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* removed his Seat to *Ravenna*; for thereby the *Romans* were enforced to submit themselves to the Bishops, *An. 430.* or thereabouts. And talking of the estate

of

"of the Popedom, *An. 931.* he states it thus. In *Rome* were elected yearly out of the Nobility two *Consuls*, who according to the ancient Custom ruled that City. Under them was appointed a Judge to minister justice to the people. There was also a Council of twelve men, which gave Governours unto the Towns subject to *Rome*. And for the Pope, he had in *Rome* more or less Authority, according to the favour which he found with the Emperours, or others then most mighty; but the leaving of *Italy* by the *German* Emperours, settled the Pope in a more absolute Sovereignty over the City. And yet it seems they were not of such absolute power, but that the *Romans* tugged hard with them for their Liberties. Concerning which he tells us in another place, That the ambition of the people of *Rome* did at that time (*viz. An. 1010.*) make much war with the Popes; and that having helped the Pope to drive out the Emperour, and altered the Government of the City as to them seemed good, suddenly they became Enemies to him; and the Popes received more injuries at their hands, than at any other *Christian* Princes; and that even in those days when the Censures of the Popes made all the West of the World to tremble, yet even then did the people of *Rome* rebell, and both the Popes and the people studied for nothing so much, as how one of them might overthrow the Authority and Estimation of the other.

But for the method and degrees by which the Popes ascended to their temporal greatness, take here an extract of the Story collected out of the best Authors, by the most reverend Father in God the late Lord Arch-bishop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work against *Fisher the Jesuit*. The Pope (saith he) being chosen anciently by the *Clergy* and people of *Rome*, used always to receive from the Emperours hands a ratification of that choice: insomuch that about the year 579. when all *Italy* was on fire with the *Lombards*, and *Pelagius* the second contrained through the necessity of the times, to enter upon the Popedom without the Emperours leave; *S. Gregory* then a Deacon, was shortly after sent in an *Embassy* to excuse it. But when the *Lombards* grew to great in *Italy*, and the Empire was so infested with the *Saracens*, and such changes hapned in all parts of the world, as that neither for the present the *Homage* of the Pope was useful to the Emperour, nor the *Protection* of the Emperour, available for the Pope: by this means was the Bishop of *Rome* left to play his own game by himself. A thing which as it pleased him well enough, so both he and his Successors made great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the Emperours, and the greatness of that City and place of his abode; he then found himself the more free, the greater the Tempest was that beat upon the other. And then first he set himself to alienate the hearts of the *Italians* from the Emperour; in which he did prevail so far, that *Theophylact* the *Exarch* coming into *Italy*, was opposed by the Souldiers, who wished better to the Pope, than to the Emperour; and the Emperours own Governour was fain to be defended from his own Souldiers by the power of the Pope, who had gotten an interest in them against their own Master. Next he opposed himself against him; and about the year 710. Pope *Constantine* the first did openly affront *Philippicus* the Emperour, in defence of *Images*, as *Onuphrius* telleth us. After him *Gregory* the 2d and 3d. took up his example, and did the like by *Leo Isaurus*. By this time the *Lombards* began to pinch very close, and to vex on all sides not only *Italy* but *Rome* too. This drives the Pope to seek a new Patron, and very fitly he meets with *Charles Martel* in *France*, that famous Warrior against the *Saracens*. Him he employeth in defence of the Church against the *Lombards*; and the Address seems very advicedly taken, it proved so fortunate to them both. For in short time it dissolved the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having then stood two hundred and four years, which was the Popes security: and it brought the Crown of *France* into the House of *Charles*, and shortly after the Western Empire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed. For by the bounty of *Pepin*, the son of *Charles*, that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was given to the Pope; that is to say, the *Exarchate*, and all that lay betwixt the *Apennine* and the River of *Po*. So that now he became a Temporal Prince. But when *Charles* the great had set up the Western Empire, then he resumed the Ancient and Original power, to govern the Church, to call Councils, and to order Papal Elections. And this power continued for a time in his posterity; for *Gregory* the seventh was confirmed in the Popedom by the same *Henry* the fourth, whom he afterwards deposed. And it might have continued longer, if the succeeding Emperours had had *Abilities* enough to secure, or vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a strong Council about him, and meeting with some weak Princes, and those oft-times distracted with great and dangerous wars, grew stronger till he got the better; yet was it carried in succeeding times with great changes of Fortune, and different success; the Emperour sometimes plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperour; winning and losing ground, as their spirits, abilities, aids and opportunities were; till at last the Pope settled himself on the grounds laid by *Gregory* the seventh, in that great power which he now useth in and over these parts of the *Christian* World. A power first exercised (saith he in another place) by this Pope *Gregory* the seventh, and made too good upon the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, as by Pope *Adrian* the fourth, *Alexander* the third, with some others, upon *Frederick Barbarossa*. And others of the Emperours were alike served when they did not submit. And for this I hope his Holiness was not to be blamed. For if the Emperour kept the Pope under for divers years together, against all reason, the Pope, as *Bellarmino* affirms, being never subject to the Emperour, and wanting force to stand on his own *Prerogative*: I hope the Pope having now got power enough, may keep the Emperours under foot, and not suffer them any more to start before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great power of the Church of *Rome* was first obtained; let us next consider of those policies, by which this *Papal* Monarchy hath been so long upheld in esteem and credit. We may divide them into three heads. 1 Those by which they have

insinuated and screwed themselves into the affections and affairs of the greatest Princes: 2 Those by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to secure their estate; And 3 those by which they keep the people in obedience and ignorance.

1. Concerning the first. First the Donation of several Kingdoms to them which have no right title, but by these Grants of the Pope, cannot but binde them fast to uphold that power, without which they could lay no claim to that which they are possessed of. Of which sort was the confirmation of the Kingdom of *France* to the house of *Pepin*; of *Naples* to the house of *Schabens*; and *Anjou*; of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2 The readiness of their Ministers to kill such as resist them; and cannot but necessitate Princes to seek their friendship, and hold fair with them: especially since by a writ of Excommunication, they can arm the Subjects against their Sovereign; and without the charge of levying one Souldier, either destroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent Wars raised by them against the Emperours of *Germany*, and that against King *John* in *England*, by these *Papal* fulminations only; the poisoning of the said King *John* by a Monk of *Swinstead*, and killing of King *Henry* the third of *France*, by *Jacques Clement*; are full proofs of this. 3 Then followeth their allowance of Marriages prohibited both by God and Nature; the issue of which cannot but uphold the Popes Authority, without which their birth would be illegitimate, and consequently themselves unlawful Marriages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawful Marriage of his own. Not about the Marriage of her Mother to King *Henry* the eighth; the lawfulness of which depended chiefly on the dispensation of Pope *Julio* the second. 4 Then cometh in their dispensing with the Oaths and break off those Treaties, which have been solemnly made and sworn betwixt them and their Neighbour. By means whereof, such Princes think themselves not perjured, because dispensed with by the Pope; and commonly get something in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot becometh the chooling of the younger Sons of great Princes, into the rank of *Cardinals*; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the *Papal* Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes as by these courses he holds in with all *Christian* Princes generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; so hath he fastned more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we shall speak further when we come to that Country.

2. Concerning the second. So it is that their Estate hath the firmest foundation of any, as being built on the Consciences of men possessed with an opinion of their *Infalibility*, and that undoubted power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but also over Hell and Purgatory. 2 Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their disposing, for men of all humours and affections; as having in their power the disposing of almost all the Benefices and Bishopricks in *Italy*, half of those in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*: which keepeth the *Clergy*, and all such as are that way studied, in a perpetual dependence upon that See; especially injoying by it many notable Privileges; which those of the *Temporality* are not capable of. 3 Consider next the multitude of Monks and Friars, whose very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every Monastery and Convent being a Garrison (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a *Militia* of *Spiritual* Janissaries; men most affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of these it is conceived that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at least may be fit for action; and all maintained at other mens cost; themselves not disbursing a penny towards it. 4 Their *Pardons* and *Indulgences* are a great increase to their Revenue: some of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the eighth, which was for 82000 years to all that could say such a Prayer of *S. Augustines*; and that for every day, *Toties quoties*. 5 Their practising on Penitents, whom they persuade in the very agony of their souls, that there is no salvation for them, but by giving part of their Estates unto the Church. 6 Nor have they found any small advantage to their Power and Patrimony, by the invention of *Spiritual* Fraternities; which are Appurtenances (as it were) to the Orders of Friars, and may in number perhaps equal them. Into these the Lay-people of all sorts, men and women, married and single, desire to be inrolled; as hereby injoying the *Spiritual* prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more speedy dispatch out of Purgatory.

3. Concerning the third. 1 They deter the people from reading the Scripture, alleading unto them the perils they may incur by mis-interpretation. 2 They breed an Antipathy between the *Papists* and the *Protestants*; insomuch that a *Papist* may not say *Amen*, unto a *Protestants* *Deo gratias*. 3 They debar them from all fund of the Religion, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers; and hiding their own Treatises, in which the Tenet of the *Protestants* is recited only to be confuted; insomuch that in all *Italy* one shall seldom meet with *Bellarmino*s works, or any of the like nature to be sold. 4 They have under pain of Excommunication prohibited the *Italians* from Travell and Traffick with *Heretical* Countreys, or such places, where those contagious sounds and lights (as they term them) might make them return infested. 5 The Severity, or Tyranny rather of the *Inquisition*, but the smallest suspicions of being this way addicted. And 6 the People thus retrained from Travell (of which we shall speak more at large when we come to *Spain*) crusheth not only the beginnings, well, are taught to believe that the *Protestants* are Blasphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables, the people grown barbarous and eat young Children; that *Geneva* is a professed Sanctuary of Roguery, and the like. We have yet two later examples of their dealing in this kind. First, the gross slander of the *Apostase* (or as they call it; the *Retconciliation*)

The Papacy.

and other Ministers, keep their coffers low; the entertainment of their ordinary *Nuncios* in the Courts of *Christian* Princes, amounting to no less than 1200 Crowns a month to each. And 3 their greedy desire to enrich their Sons or Kinsmen with the treasures of the Church (with which humour Pope Sixtus the fifth, being of poor and obscure birth, was never touched) keeps them always bare. Add unto these the excessive gorgeousness of the Papal vestments (in which vanity every one seeketh to excell the other) especially that of their *Triple Crown*; which must needs put them to great charge, and continual issues of their treasure. And for an evidence of this last, we finde that *Clement* the fifth, who first transferred his See to *Avignon*, to shew his gallantry to the *French* (probably unacquainted with the like fine lights) had his Crown thick set with *Carbuncles* and precious stones; one of which being lost by a fall from his Horse, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the Forces of the Church, the Pope is able to impress as great a number of Land-souldiers out of his estate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of *Italy*. *Paul* the 3d sent to the aid of *Charles* the 5th in the Wars of *Germany*, 12000 Foot, and 500 Horse; and yet raised his own Family to the Dukedom of *Parma*. *Pius* the fifth sent to the aid of *Charles* the ninth, against the *Hugonots*, 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horse; which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when *Clement* undertook the War of *Ferrara*, he raised out of his estate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, in less than a month; which was more than most Princes in *Europe* could possibly have done. And for the valour of his Souldiers, and ability of his Commanders, they retain to much (as before was said) of their Ancestors virtues; that there are thought to be many Families in the estate of the Church, able to furnish all the Common-wealths and Princes of *Christendom*, with sufficient Captains. What; and how little he is able to do by Sea, may be best seen out of the aid which he sent to the *Venetians*, at the famous Battel of *Lepanto*, wherein he furnished them with no more than twelve Gallies; and those too hired of the Duke of *Florence*: The *Venetians* in the *Adriatick*, and the *Florentines* in the *Tuscan* Seas, having all the Trade, and consequently all the power in the Seas of *Italy*. 'Tis true, the Pope was bound by the capitulation, to bear the fifth part of the charge of the War, and with the help of the rest of the Princes of *Italy* (who were to march under his colours) to set forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horse: which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by Land, as the other is of his weakness at Sea.

Having a purpose in the prosecution of this Work, to mention such particular Orders of Knight-hood, as most Countreys have given beginning to; I will here set down the Orders of such *Papish Spiritual Knights* or *Friers*, which his holy benediction hath erected, and for allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the original of a *Monastical life*; and then we will make special mention of some of the *Romish* Votaries of both sexes. Know then, that under the seventh persecution raised against the Church by *Decius*, one *Paulus*, born at *Thebes* in *Egypt*, retired to a private cave under the foot of a Rock, Anno 260. Here he is said to have lived one hundred years, and to have been seen of no man but one *Anthony*, who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the first that followed the example of *Paulus*; a man of a noble house, and one that sold all his estate, that he might the more privately enjoy himself. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the Father of the *Monks*. To these beginnings, doth *Polydore Virgil* refer the original of the *Monks*, and religious orders; the name *Monk* coming from the *Greek* *μῆν*, because of their lonely and solitary lives. Those of the Religious Orders are called *Fraters*, and in *English* *Friers*, from the *French* word *Frere*, which signifieth a Brother; and that either because of their brotherly cohabitation; or else because they are *Fraters in malo*, brethren in mischief and delinquency.

The foundation of *Monastical* life thus laid by *Paulus*, and *Anthony*; the world increased so fast in *Monks* and *Eremites*, that it seemed necessary to prescribe them Orders. Hereupon *Saint Basil* gathered them together, living formerly dispersed; and is said to be the first that built them *Monasteries*. He is also said to have ordained the three Vowes of Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience; to have instructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the service of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this Order there are not many in the *Latin* Church, but good plenty of them in the *Greek*. They are bound to abstain from all kinde of flesh, and are called *Monks* of *S. Basil*, by the name of that Father; amongst the Writings of which Father, the Rules for these *Monasticks* are set down at large.

2 The next who prescribed Orders was *S. Augustine*, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of age, is said to have obtained a Garden without the walls of *Hippo*, for private contemplations. Twelve only he assumed into his society, living with them in all integrity, and wearing a leathern Girdle to distinguish them from *Monks*. Branched afterwards into two several and distinct Orders, the one called by the name of *Canons Regular*, whose chief House here in *England* was *St. John* near *Colchester*; the other called commonly *Austrian Friers*, or the *Eremites* of *S. Austin*, as others call them; Of such esteem formerly in the University of *Oxford*, that all who took the Degree of a Master of Arts, were to submit themselves to their *Oppositions* in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, in *Augustinus* *hinc responderit vel opposuerit*, still retained among them. Their house in *London* stood in *Broadstreet*, of which a part of the Church still standeth, converted to a Church for the use of the *Dutch*; the rest demolished, and in the place thereof a stately Mansion erected by *Sir William Paulet* the first Marquis of *Winchester*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*. These make the first Order of the *Friers Mendicants*. The first Monastery of them was erected at *Paris* by *William Duke of Guien*, Anno 1155; and Anno 1200, they began to flourish in *Italy*, by the favour of *John Lord of Mantua*. The other branches of this Tree, are 1 the *Monks* of *S. Hierom*, 2 the *Carmelites*, 3 the *Crouchet Friers*, and 4 the *Dominicans*.

1 The

The Papacy.

1 The *Monks* of *S. Hierom* challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church, so called. They flourish especially in *Spain*, where there are thirty two Monasteries of them; their chief House being *St. Bartholomews of Lupiana*; and have taken unto themselves the Rule of *St. Austin*. Their Robe is a white Cassock, under a tawny Cloak.

2 The *Carmelites*, so called from Mount *Carmel* in *Syria*, pretend their original from *Elias*, and *John the Baptist*. They only allowed at first the Rule of *S. Basil*; and were confirmed in *Europe* by *Honorius* the third. They are by some called *Jacobines*, from a Church dedicated to *S. James*, where they had their first Convent; and by us, the *White Friers*, from the colour of their habit. Their House in *London* stood in *Fleetstreet*, converted since into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, besides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of *S. Austin*, by *Donna Eresba* (or *Teresa*) a Spanish woman; who made them also certain Constitutions, confirmed by *Pius* the fourth, Anno 1565.

3 The *Friers* of *S. Crosse*, *Crossed*, or *Crouched Friers*, were first ordained by *Cyriacus* Bishop of *Hierusalem*, who shewed to *Helena* the place where the Cross was hidden; hence this Order; which being almost decayed, was reformed first by *Urban* the second, and afterwards by *Innocent* the third, under the Rule of *S. Austin*. Their Robe is Watcher, and in their hands they carry the figure of the Cross. Their house in *London* near the Tower, still retains its name.

4 The *Dominicans*, or *Friers Preachers*, were instituted by *S. Dominick*, a Spaniard. He put himself in this Order with sixteen of his Disciples, under the Rule of *S. Austin*, Anno 1206, and had his device confirmed by *Honorius* the third. Their duty is to preach the Gospel in all places unto the farthest parts of the world; which both they did, and their successors since have done, not at home only, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black Friers*, from the colour of their habits, and are the third Order of *Friers Mendicants*. Their house in *London* stood near *Ludgate*, and took up the whole Precinct which is still called *Black Friars*; though nothing be remaining of it but the very name.

3 The third that prescribed Orders was *S. Benedikt*, born at *Nursia*, in the *Duchy* of *Spoleto*, Anno 472. He gathered the *Monks* of *Italy* together, gave them a Rule in writing, caused them to be called *Benedictines*, or *Monks* of *S. Benedikt*; and lived till he had seen twelve Monasteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew so populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbishops, 4000 Bishops, besides some thousands of Canonized Saints, which they use to brag of. Their habit is a loose Gown of black, reaching down to the ground, with a Hood of the same; an under-garment of white woollen, and boots on their legs. The other principal streams of this Fountain are, 1 the *Monks* of *Clugnie*, 2 of *Carthusia*, 3 of *Citeaux*, 4 the *Celestines*.

1 The *Monks* of *Clugnie*, are so called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*; the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the first that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity, Anno 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperours, that all such Abbies as would come under the compass of his Reformatory (which were in all about two hundred) should be called the *Congregation of Clugnie*, and that they might call their Chapters, and dispatch their common businesses, when and as often as they pleased.

2 The *Carthusians* were first instituted by one *Bruno*, a German Doctor of Divinity, at the Town of *Carthusia* in *Dauphine*, Anno 1080. His followers, which were at the first but six, have at this day 93 Monasteries. They eat no flesh, live by couples, labour with their hands, watch, pray, and never meet together but on Sundays. Their house in *London* by corruption and long tract of time, got the name of the *Charter-house*, (the *Monks* themselves being corruptly called the *Charter-house Monks*;) now better known by the name of *Suttons Hospital*; from the Hospital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of *London*.

3 The *Monks* of *Citeaux* were first instituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Moleme*, Anno 1090, or thereabouts; who together with 21 of the most religious of his Convent, retired to *Citeaux* in *Burgundy* *Dutchy*; hence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order; who built and repaired for them 160 Abbeys. Their Robe is a white Cassock, girt with a Girdle of wooll, the rest black. They were by us called *White Monks*; and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their habits.

4 The *Celestines* owe their original to *Peter de Moron* a *Samnite*, born Anno 1250; who being afterwards for his sanctity chose Pope, was called *Celestine* the fifth. He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory* the 11th. There are at this present 124 Monasteries of them.

4 The fourth and last that prescribed new Orders to the *Monasticks*, was *St. Francis* of *Assis* in the *Duchy* of *Spoleto*. He fell from Merchandize, which was his first profession, unto the study of Religion, going barefoot, and behaving himself very penitently: whereupon, great store of Disciples following him, he gave them a Rule in writing; by which they are bound to profess absolute beggary, and are not permitted to carry any money about them, or more victuals than will for the present serve themselves and their Brethren. This they observe punctually in their own persons, but give themselves leave to have a Boy with them, to do both without scruple. *S. Francis* desired they should be called *Minors*, to shew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciscans* by the name of their Founder. By the *French* called *Cordeliers*, because of the knotty Cord which they wear about them instead of a Girdle; by us, the *Gray Friers*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their house in *London* stood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloysters, and some other the publick Offices do still stand entire; the whole converted to an Hospital for poor Children by King *Edward* the sixth,

The Signeury of VENICE.

North of the Lands of the Church from *Romandiola* to the *Alpes*, lie the Italian Provinces of the State of *VENICE*; bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the rest of *Romandiola*; on the West, with the Dukedom of *Millain*; on the North, with the main body of the *Alpes*; and on the East, with the *Adriatick* and the River *Arfia*, by which last parted from *Liburnia*, a *Slavonian* Province. Besides which it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Islands of *Candi*, *Corfu*, *Ithaca*, *Zanti*, *Cithera*, and certain others of less note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thousand miles, but the breadth not answerable.

The nature of the soyl, and the principal Rivers which refresh it, we shall see anon in the description of the Provinces into which divided. According to which Provinces and the chief Cities of them, the Character of the people may best be taken: it being said proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themselves are stately, crafty, and greedy; the *Veronians*, studious and faithful; the *Paduans* fierce, the *Vincenians* eager on revenge; those of *Friuli*, grateful, but inconstant; those of *Hirving* silver; those of *Trevizo* fowls; that the *Brescians* are fit to dig in trenches, those of *Venice* lay ambushes, those of *Padua* to manage horses. And of the women it is said, that those of *Crema* are deceitful, those of *Venice* insolent, those of *Vincenza* constant, those of *Verona* gracious, those of *Treviso* jealous, those of *Brescia* diligent, and the *Bergomans* crafty.

But not to dally longer in these proverbial characters (though they carry a great deal of truth in them) certain it is that the *Venetians* themselves do affect a great deal of gravity in their actions, speak very little at the table; very severe where they have authority, and many times in the excess. And yet such is the constant temper of their Government, and their impartiality in doing Justice, that they are very well obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their subjects (notwithstanding the heavy prebonds by Sea and Land, maintaining wars continually with the *Turks* in *Palestine*; the Emperors of *Constantinople* in *Greece* it self; the *Genoese* by Sea, and their neighbours of *Italy* in this Continent. But of late times they have more studied to preserve, than enlarge their Dominions; and that too rather by expence of money, than the loss of blood; and by wit rather than by valour. So fortunate in this last kind of practice, that *Machiavel* observed of them in his time, that *whatsoever they lost by War, they recovered by Treaty*. A pregnant evidence whereof we shall see anon.

To proceed now to the description of such of the Provinces and Estates of this Common-wealth, as pafs under the accompt of *Italy*, they are these that follow, that is to say, 1 *Marca Trevigiana*, 2 *Friuli*, 3 *Hiria*, 4 the *Italian* Isles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in order; leaving the other Members of this Estate to be considered in their proper places.

1 *MARCA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South, with the River *Athesis*, and the most Northern branch of the *Po*, which from some lime-kills near adjoining, they now call *Fornaces*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the rest of *Romagna*; on the West, with the Rivers *Minus* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, (now called *Lago de Garda* from a little Town of that name adjoining) by which parted from the Dutchy of *Millain*; on the East, with *Friuli*, and the Gulf of *Venice*; and on the North, with the *Alpes* which divide it from *Tirolis*, a Province of *Germany*. In the time of great *Augustus Cesar*, this tract together with *Friuli* the next neighbouring Province had the name of *Venetia*, from the *Veneti*, the old inhabitants hereof; and by that name made one of those eleven Regions, into which he then divided *Italy*. How it obtained this new name, we shall see anon.

The principal Rivers of this Tract are, 1 *Brenta*, called anciently *Meduacus Major*, which rising in the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and watering the fields of *Padua*, passeth into the Sea, near the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malamocco*. 2 *Bachilio*, called anciently *Meduacus Minor*, which riseth also in the *Alpes*, and passing by *Vincenza*, emptieth it self into the *Brenta*. And 3 *Athesis*, now called *Adige*, which springeth also out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many lesser streams into its channel, passeth by *Verona*, and after is divided into two great branches; whereof the one falls into the Sea, the other loseth it self in the midst of the Marishes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1 *Vincenza*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuscan*, or *Hetrurians* on this side of the *Apennine*; pleasantly seated on the banks of the River *Bachilio*, and another navigable water called *Retone* (*Erorenus* formerly.) The Territory of the City not more large than fruitful, abounding with all store of fruits, and yielding an excellent kinde of Wine, which from thence is vendued unto *Venice*. The buildings of it for the most part of polished stone, whereof the fields adjoining afford special Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an industrious people, making great quantity of Silks, with which they do adorn themselves, and supply their Neighbours. 2 *Trevizo*, seated on the banks of the River *Silus*, (which runneth through the middle of it) in the midst of a large and spacious plain, abounding even to admiration, with most excellent wheat, and all other necessaries. A City of no ancient name, nor mentioned by *Polomy*, or others of the old Geographers: but of sufficient note in the later times, for being the residence or seat of those Provincial Governors (*Marquesses* they are sometimes called) which the *Lombardian* Kings sent hither to defend their borders. Hence it gave name to all the Countrey, in *Latine* called *Marca Trevigiana*, or *Tarvisiana*, as some call it: taken by the *Venetians*, and lost again divers times; but was finally conquered Anno 1380. or thereabout, *Antonio Venieri* being Duke of *Venice*. 3 *Padua*, formerly called *Patavinum*, built by *Antenor*, whose

Tomb

Tomb is still here to be shown. From him named *Antenor*, as some report, but after called *Patavinum* quasi *Padavinum*, from its nearness to the River *Po*, and the Fens thereof. Situate in so delectable and sweet a soyl, that *Constantinus Palaeologus* was used to say, that did not the authority of the Scriptures persuade him otherwise, he should look for *Paradise* no where else, than in *persuavi* *Patavina amoenitate*, amongst the flourishing and delightful sweetnes of the *Paduan* field. The Town of great esteem in the time of the *Romans*, who much resorted to the same: and much frequented at the present for the University here established Anno 1220. famous for Physicians, who have here a Garden of *Similes*; of good name also for the birth of *Livy* the Historian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Co-temporary, *L. Aruntius Stella*, and *C. Valerius Placcus*, two famous Poets celebrated by *Marial*; and in the later times, of *Marsilius Patavinus* a Minorite Frier, who wrote so learnedly in behalf of the Emperour, against the Pope; *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savanorela* the Physician, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the humanity of the men, and chastity of the women; which last to eminent and famous, that as *chaste as one of Padua*, grew into a Proverb. Hereunto alludeth *Marial*, speaking of his lascivious writings;

*Tu quoq; nequitias nostri lapsusq; libelli,
Idda puecla leger, sis Patavina licet.*

Young Maids my wanton lines will long to see,
And read them o're, though *Patavines* they be.

The City after much vicissitude of Fortune, fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compass one hundred and eighty miles, Anno 1400. *Michael Seneo* then Duke of *Vincenza* being won about the same time also. 4 *Brescia*, the second City for bigness and beauty in all *Lombardy*. It is also the seat of an Arch-bishop, who is an Earl, a Marquess, and a Duke. Her Territories are in length one hundred, in breadth fifty miles; which the Citizens, together with their freedom, bought of *Otho* the German Emperour, but lost it to *Philip Maria Visconti*, Duke of *Millain*, Anno 1421. to whom they yielded upon certain conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they gave themselves unto the Signeury of *Venice*, Anno 1434. *Francis Foscari* being then Duke; under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the air sound and good, the soyl exceeding plentiful of Corn, wine and fruits; and having in it Mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great enriching of the people. It was anciently the chief of the *Centomani*, who coming out of *Gaul*, drove the *Tuscan* hence, and seated themselves in their habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*. It is situate on a little River called *Garcia*, which runneth through the middle of it; and is said to contain at this time 50000 Inhabitants. 5 *Verona*, so called (as some conceit it) quasi *vere una*; or as others, quasi *Brenonia*, because built by *Brennus*; both false and frivolous alike. It is situate on the banks of the River *Athesis*, and is counted the first City of the second rank of the Cities of *Italy*: proud in the birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet, and in an Amphitheatre (a remainder of the *Roman* greatness) able to contain 80000 persons. The Territories hereof are sixty five miles in length, forty miles in breadth; enriched with many medicinal herbs, (especially on Mount *Baldus*, an hill therein) where the Physicians go a Simpling. 6 *Berbricum*, or *Bedriacum*, as some Writers call it, two dayes march from *Verona*, now a small Burrough named *Labinia*, and never of any great note when it was at the best. Remarkable in the *Roman* stories, for the defeat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho's* Army; and after, by *Vespasians* forces unto those of *Vitellius*. By *Tacitus* called in that regard *dnalus Romanis cladibus notus & infaustus Vicus*. 7 *Crema*, a Town of no great Antiquity, but situate in a wealthy soyl, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices: so strongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the Signeury of *Venice*, against the *Millanese*, on the borders of which State it standeth. First built about the year 970. by some remnants of the *Anthropomorphites*, who on the destruction of *Parnassus* (a Town of *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their heresie, and were permitted to build here. Honoured in succeeding times with a See Episcopal; and either the birth-place or preferment of *John Cremenfis*, a *Roman* Cardinal. Who being by Pope *Honorius* sent into *England*, Anno 1225, to dissuade the Clergy-men from Marriage; and having in a Convocation of the Clergy called for that purpose, highly advanced the honour of the single life, and shewed the inconvenience and unfitness of Marriage, in men preferred unto *Holy Orders*; was the night following (to the great discredit both of his cause and person) taken in Adultery. 8 *Bergomo*, a right ancient Town, but very well built, seated upon the side of an hill, and having a very large and beautiful Suburb; the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggy Mountains, the Spurs and excursions of the *Alpes*; but withall many rich and delightful valleys, intermingled with them. The people of this City and Countrey are said to speak the coarsest language of any in *Italy*; but to have as fine wits as the best. Places of more inferior note are, 1 *Este*, (*Ateste* in most *Latine* Writers) whence came the Family *D'Este*, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2 *Lincium*, a strong Garrison on the borders of *Mantua*; as 3 *Cassel-France* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4 *Seravalle*, of most remarkableness for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5 *Feltri*, which still preserves its old name of *Feltria*; most memorable at the present for a See Episcopal. 6 *Altina*, a Bishops See also, but destroyed and ruined.

This Province being anciently a part of the *Cisalpine Gaul*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punic* war: and being conquered by the *Romans*, did continue theirs, till first the *Goths*, and afterwards the *Lombards* became Masters of it. Afterwards in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, it fell first unto the *French*, and after to the *German* Empire; from which by many mean conveyances,

Friuli.

ances, it came at last to *Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*, who bought the same of *Ulricus* the last Duke of *Carinthia*: whose Predecessor probably had been seized hereof, from the time that *Henry* son of *Engelbert*, Præfect of *Histria*, adopted by *Henry* of *Epstein* Duke of *Carinthia*, or *Karnten*, succeeded him in that Estate. Upon a reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarus* and *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg* (then Emperor of *Germany*) it was added (together with *Austria* it self) unto the Patrimony of that Family, sold by Duke *Leopold* the ninth, to the *Cararars*, then Lords of *Padua*; in the ruine of whose Estate and Family, it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who still hold the same.

2 *FRIULI* hath on the East the River *Formio*, which parteth it from *Histria*; on the West, *Marca Trevisana*, and a branch of the *Alpes*; on the North, the main body of the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the South, the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine* (of which that of *Friuli* is derived) from *Julius Cæsar*, who conducting his Armies this way, built the Town to named; and from that march of his, the *Alpes* adjoining, as 'tis thought, had the name of *Julia*. By some Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquilegensis*, as appertaining for the most part, by the gift of the Emperours *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; and by the common people of *Venice* for the most part, *Patria*, or the Countrey; because from these parts they derive their first Original. In which regard part of the Region of *Venetia*, as before was said.

The Countrey is in a manner square, each side fifty miles; watered with the Rivers of 1 *Hydra*, heretofore of no small fame for the silver Mines. 2 *Tilaventum*, rising from the *Alpes*, and navigable towards the latter end of its course: but broken into many channels (seven at least in number) which makes it not so navigable as it would be otherwise; most of these channels being shallow, and easily forded, but swift and violent withall, by reason of their fall from the neighbouring hills. 3 *Natisso*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4 *Timavus*, mentioned in the first of the *Æneids*, which rising out of the *Alpes*, and running under ground for the space of 330 furlongs, breaketh out again; and being branched into nine Channels, falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieste*. By *Niger* it is now called *Larcina*; but by *Leander* named *Timavo*. The Soil sufficiently fruitful, except towards the *Alpes*, and yielding a very pleasant Wine, which *Pliny* did prefer before any in *Italy*.

Towns herein of most note and consequence, 1 *Aquileia*, or *Aquilegia*, as some call it, made the Metropolis first of the Province of *Histria* and *Venetia*, by the Emperor *Antoninus*; as afterwards of the whole Diocese of *Italy*, by the Western Emperors. Honoured in that regard with the feat of the *Præfatus Prætorius*, or of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant: translated from *Millain* to this City, as the Gate of *Italy*, by which the barbarous Nations were to make their entrance; never so like to be shut out, as by the power and presence of so great an Officer. After this time, and on this occasion the Bishop hereof had the title of Patriarch. And here the Patriarchal See had not long continued when the City was destroyed by *Attila*, that furious Hun; 37000 of the Citizens being slain with the sword, the rest removing to some places of more safe abode. Re-edified afterwards by *Nursis*, but never able to recover its former lustre. After which time fearing the like miseries from the hands of the *Lombards*, the Patriarchal See was removed to *Venice*, as the safer place, and settled in the Isle of *Grada*; yet so, that the succeeding Bishops of *Aquileia* (for they stayed at *Venice* only till the times were quiet) do still retain the dignity and name of Patriarchs, as well as those of *Grada* do, and with better reason. For besides the honour which it had in being made the seat of the *Præfatus Prætorius*, it had been formerly more honoured with the residence of *Augustus Cæsar*, who here kept his Court; whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a second *Rome*; and of *Tiberius* who lived here with *Julia* the daughter of the said *Augustus*, before his coming to the Empire. As for the City it self, it is situate on the River *Natisso*, but not well inhabited at the present; partly because of the ill Air, partly by the removal of the Patriarch thence, drawn by the *Venetians* of late times, for good reasons of State, to fix his dwelling in their City, and drawing after him a great resort of Bishops, and others of the Clergy of his Jurisdiction, principally by the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it self. Most memorable in old story for enduring that famous siege against *Maximianus*, for the safety of the Empire of *Rome*, and her Emperors *Maximianus* and *Ballianus*. In whose cause the Citizens hereof were so resolutely faithful, that they bereaved the women (willing to lose that invaluable ornament of their sex, for the common good) of the hair of their heads, to make Bow-strings withall. Nor did this pious constancy of theirs want an happy issue. For they beheld the Tyrant headless under their walls (slain by the hands of his own Souldiers) and saw the Metropolis of the World preserved by their loyalty. And yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant; the Souldiers and people laying hands on his children also, and putting all unto the sword. Of which cruelty being asked the reason, they returned this Answer, *That not a whelp was to be spared of so ill a litter*; none of the brood of such a Cur; or in the language of the Author, *Pessimi Canis Catulus non est relinquendus*. 2 *Trieste*, of old called *Tergetum*, from whence a spacious Bay adjoining had anciently the name of *Sinus Tergetinus*, and is now called *Golfo di Trieste*. The Bay replenished principally with the water of the River *Timavus*, which with many streams doth fall into it; and is therefore by the inhabitants of that Gulf or Bay, called *Fons Maris*, as *Polylus* in *Strabo* telleth us. The Town of greater Antiquity than observation, mentioned by *Pliny* and some others of the Ancient Writers, but not else considerable. 3 *Monifalcon*, famous for its medicinal herbs. 4 *Porto Grunare*, of old called *Portus Romantinus*, an Haven-town, as the name importeth. 5 *Concordia*, in former times of no small esteem; but so demolished by *Attila* the Hun, that it is now nothing but a ruin. The people hereof betaking themselves to the Islands in the Marshes of *Venice*, where they planted in *Torrebellan*, *Mariano*, *Constantiana*, and some others were adjoining to them,

Histria.

them, of which more hereafter. 6 *Udina*, or *Uden*, the fairest and largest at this time of all the Province, containing about five miles in compass, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Honoured for a time with the Patriarchal See, removed hither from *Aquileia*, at some siege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is still the ordinary seat of the *Procurator* or Provincial Governour, sent from *Venice* hither. 7 *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer since than the year 1183, but held to be the best fortified of any in *Italy*. 8 *Cividad d'Austria*, first built by *Julius Cæsar*, in some of his marches towards *Gaul*, by whom it was called *Julium*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Disfridus Foro-Julienfis*, as the *Latins* call it) came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by some Princes of the *Austrian* Family (on the borders of whose Estate it standeth) it got this new name of *Cividad d'Austria*.

This Province anciently was the seat of the *Euganei*, inhabiting this tract and part of *Marchia Trevigiana*. But those being vanquished by the *Veneti*; and the *Veneti* by the *Cisalpine Gauls*, it became finally subject to the State of *Rome*, and in the fall of that great Empire was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*, when they conquered *Italy*: the other three being *Turin Benevent*, and *Spoleto*. The Family of the *Benregarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of special fame; and two of them Competitors for the Kingdom of *Italy*. But this Family being suppressed by the Emperor *Otho*, he gave a great part of the Countrey to the Church of *Aquileia*; to which almost all the rest was added by the Emperor *Conrad*; yet so that there were divers petty Lords, who had good estates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto some of the ancient race. One of which named *Luitprandus*, envying to the *Venetians* their increase of Dominion, made war against them; which ended in the loss of his Countrey, Anno 1020, or thereabouts; ever since subject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquileia* (whose authority in this Countrey began to decline, in the rising of the state of *Venice*) surrendering all his interests also to that powerful *Signemur*, as better able to defend it against all Pretenders, Anno 1420. But notwithstanding this surrendry, the Patriarch hath still large possessions and revenues here, and still retains his Jurisdiction over the Prelates of this Countrey, and those of *Histria* and *Trevigiana* (20 in all, or thereabouts) fixt only which are those of the Isles of *Venice*, continuing at this day under him of *Grada*.

HISTRIA is environed on the East, West, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-Island, or *Peninsula*, save where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North, is parted from *Carinthia*; with the *Alpes* of *Germany*. The Countrey very woody, and full of Quarries, affording materials to *Venice* both for ships and houses; not comparable for fertility to the rest of *Italy*; and of air so sickly and unwholesome, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large immunities. It is two hundred miles in compass, watered with the Rivers of *Formio*, which they now call *Risano*; 2 *Nauportus*, called at this day *Quietus*; and 3 *Arfis*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Cornero*, called anciently *Sinus Flanaticus*, and divides this Countrey from *Lithuania*, a *Slavonian* Province.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Cape de Istria*, called in *Plinius* time *Ægide*; and being afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Justin*, was called *Justinopolis*. But being taken and destroyed by the *Genoese*, and re-built again, it took the name of *Cepus Histria*, or *Cape d'Istria*; because the principal of the Province, and a Bishops See. Of this See was *Vergerius* Bishop, about the time of *Luthers* first preaching in *Germany*; who with *Antonio de Dominis* Arch-bishop of *Spalato*, were of most note of any of these parts of the world, that fell off from the Church of *Rome* to the Protestant party, and therefore shall be spoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place, and *Vergerius* here. Being a man of great industry, and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany*, against *Luther*. In which negotiation he behaved himself with such dexterity, and gave such content unto the Pope, that *Paul* the third, Anno 1541. intended to have made him Cardinal; had not some who envied him that honour, accused him of *Lutheranism*. To purge himself he began to write a Book, entitled, *Against the Apostata's of Germany*; in the pursuit whereof, pondering *Luthers* reasons he became of his opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Justinople*. He submitted himself and his cause to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the D. of *Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no where finding protection, he retired unto the *Grifons*; and there preached; till *Christopher* Duke of *Wittenberg*, Anno 1548, placed him in his University of *Tubing*, and there allowed him a sufficiency of maintenance. It was built by *Justinus* (as before) the Nephew of *Justinian* the Emperor, as a fortress against the incursions of the barbarous people. 2 *Pola*, built by the *Colchians*, at their first coming hither; the name in their language importing as much as the place of banishment. It was after made a Roman Colony, and called *Pietas Julia*: but being first destroyed by *Attila*, after by the *Genoese*, it recovered the old name again; and still continueth with the title of a See Episcopal. It abuteth upon *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Gulf of *Queroero*. 3 *Parente*, 4 *Plin*; 5 *Cita Nova*, all of them seated in the Mid-lands, and not much observable, but that *Parente*, and *Cita Nova* are Episcopal Sees: this last being anciently called *Emonia*, whence the Bishop hath the name of *Emonensis*. 7 *Rovigno*, in a little Island, and mounted on an high hill, not unfruitful in Olives; beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended also by a very strong Castle. The Town but poor, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which distant not above twenty miles; inhabited for the most part by Mariners, and skilful Pilots, hired by such ships as are bound for *Venice*, to conduct them safely over ther Bars of *Malamocco*. The Countrey adjoining mountainous and somewhat wilde, but those mountains covered on the outside, with *Physical* Simples; and yielding many Quarries of most excellent Marble, which to adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

The Adriatic Isles of Venice.

It is recorded that the *Histrans* were a people of *Colchis*, who being sent by King *Aetias* to pursue *Jafon* and the *Argonauts*, were driven up this Gulf: and either for fear of the Kings anger, or not daring to venter their weak vessel to so long a voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came; stayed in this Countrey. It was after that time called *Iapigia*, from *Iapis* an *Ætolian*, who first planted here; and took the name of *Istria* from the *Istri*, a people on the banks of *Ister*, or *Danubius*; who made up a considerable part of this plantation. Siding with the *Ætolians* in their Wars against the *Romans*, and making many inroads and excursions on them; they were invaded first by *Manlius*, without leave of the Senate: and him they charged with such a fury that they beat him out of his Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all store of Provisions, they fell round to it; till *Manlius* having rallied his men again, charged them in their Cups, and killed 8000 in the place; their miserable King being so hotly pursued by the Victors, that he was fain to kill himself for fear of Captivity. This was in Anno V. C. 575. Cl. Pulcher the next Consul perfected the conquest. *Sempronius* long time after that, sc. Anno V. C. 625. reduced it to the form of a Province. So it continued to the time of *Augustus* *Cæsar*, who joyning it to that of *Venice* (or *Venetia*) made out of both the eleventh and last Region of *Italy*. Under the *Romans* they continued whilst that Empire stood, and after the decay thereof regained their liberties; which they enjoyed till by Piracy molestings the *Venetians*, they lost many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Condiano*, Anno 938; and the whole Countrey was made Tributary, by the valour of the Duke *Henry Dandolo*, about the year 1190. After which many times rebelling, they were still re-conquered.

4. The fourth member of this estate with respect to *Italy*, are some ISLANDS in the *Adriatick*; which being principally under the command of this Common-wealth, is commonly called the *Gulf of Venice*; a Gulf extending in length 700 miles, in breadth 140 miles, in some places less; so called of *Adria* once a famous Haven-town (as before was said) at the mouth of *Eridanus* or *Po*. Concerning which we are to know, that though this Gulf or Bay of the *Adriatick* extending no farther than the Eastern parts of *Dalmatia*, where the Sea beginneth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea was of greater length. Extended by the Ancients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-west-ward till it meeteth with the *Tyrrhen* Seas; and South-wards, till it come to the coast of *Africa*; inasmuch as *Mare Libycum*, or the Sea of *Africa*, is by *Orosius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For speaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africa*) properly and especially so called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*; as he doth the Isle of *Crete*, on the South side of it, with the *Libyan* Sea, *Quod & Adriaticum vocant*, which they also call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are. The like might also be made evident out of other Authors both *Greek* and *Latin*: which I note here, because *Pauls* being tossed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is said *Act. 27. 27.* and being after cast on shore in the Isle of *Malta*; occasioned some to think this *Melitæ*, or *Malta*, to be that Island of *Dalmatia* which is now called *Melida*; being seated in the Bay or Gulf of *Adria*: whereas the Text speaks plainly of that Isle of *Malta*, which lieth in the furthest parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the coasts of *Africa*. But to return to this Gulf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempestuous and unsafe, as appeareth by *Improbui racundior Adria*, in *Horace*; the *Minax Adriaticum*, in *Caullus*, and the *Ventosi tumor Adria*, in *Seneca* *Thyestes*. But when the Emperess *Helena* had found the Cross on which *CHRIST* suffered, she caused one of the three Nails with which his body was fastened to it, to be thrown of purpose into this Sea; since which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the life of Pope *Sylvester* (and cites Saint *Ambrose* for his Author) it hath been very calm and quiet; the second nail being made into a Bridle for her Son *Constantines* Horse, and a Crest for his Helmet of the third. But not to trust too much to the truth of this miracle, certain it is that the *Venetians* are Lords of it, by reason of their Naval power: and that it is every year espoused to the Duke of *Venice*, by the solemn casting in of a Wedding-Ring; and every year Baptized on *Epiphany* day, by the Bishop of *Zant*. When this last ceremony took beginning, I am yet to seek. But for the first, which is performed with a great deal of state, every *Holy-Thurs*day, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos* being rowed in the *Bucantaur* (which is a rich and stately Gallie made for such solemnities, and capable of 200 persons, whence it had the name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the third. Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, fled unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sebastia Cyani* being then Duke: in prosecution of whose quarrel, the *Venetians* encountered *Otho* the Emperors son, vanquished him, and restored the Pope; The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royal Prisoner, was thus saluted by the Pope; *Cyani take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this day (the Ascension day) shall be yearly observed, both by thee and thy Successors; thus so posterity may know that you have purchased the dominion thereof by your valour, and made it subject to you, as a Wife to her Husband.*

The principal Islands of this Sea, lye on the other side thereof, on the coast of *Dalmatia*. Some few there are upon this side (but those, as well as these under the command of this *Sigmeury*) neither great, nor famous. Of these the chief are, 1. *MALAMOCO*, in *Latin* *Mechnacum*, situate at the South-west end of the bank or causey called *Il Lido*; now only considerable for the Haven, which is large and deep made by the influx of *Meduans* before mentioned; in which the greater ships do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to cross the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Dukes Palace, and an Episcopal See: the See of *Padua* being translated hither, at the sack of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Dukes Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Episcopal See to the Island of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the most part by none but Sea-men. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the same name, honoured with a Bishops See, (the Bishop of *Altina* with much people with him, for fear of the said *Lombards* retiring hither) but by reason

Venice.

reason of the ill air, not very well peopled. 3. *MIRANUM*, or *MIRIANO*, three miles in compass, and but one from *Venice*, of a sound air, and very well inhabited; the people whereof make the best *Venice* Glasses, so much used in all parts. 4. *CHIOGGIA*, called in *Latin* *Fossa Clodia*, a little West of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Marishes from the *Adriatick*; distant from *Venice* 25 miles; to which it serveth in stead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in it of the same name, to which the Bishops See was removed from *Malamocco*, Anno 1103, and near to which are many Saltpitrs, which yield great gain unto the people, and as much unto the Common-wealth. Near to this Island, the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Venetians* in a fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Island following shortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoese* being grown too insolent on their good success, made the City desperate; who putting all to hazard led again upon them, beat them, pursued them home, and there utterly crushed them; as we shall tell you more at large, when we come to *Genoa*. 6. *POVEGLIA*, five miles from the City, first peopled by some who had raised a commotion in the City, on the death of *Pietro Tradonico* the thirteenth Duke. After which much increased both in wealth and buildings, till destroyed by the *Genoese*. It is called *Pupilia* by the *Latins*. 6. *FUDECHA* (in *Latin* called *Judicia*) so named from the *Jews* who did there inhabit: not above half a mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furnished with most pleasant gardens. These and the rest reckoned as members of *Trevigiana* or appendants on it.

Between these Islands and the main land of *Friuli*, lyeth a shoal of little Isles, in and amongst which standeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italy*. These Isles 72 number, but joynt together by many Bridges, of which here are said to be 4000 at least, besides 10000 boats for passage from one Isle to the other. The compass of the whole aggregate body said to be eight miles, the buildings fair, and generally adorned with glass windows; an Ornament not common in *Italy*; where the windows for the most part, are made with paper to let in the light: and that paper oyled all over, to keep out the wet. The number of the inhabitants estimated at 300 thousand. By the situation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old *Latin* signifieth the seething or frothing of the Sea. *VENETIA maris exsuffatio est quæ ad litus veniat*, saith the old *Gloss* upon *Isidore*, out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was so called from the *Veneti*, the old inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*; who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns* then threatening *Italy*, abandoned the main land and built this City in the bogs and marishes of the Sea adjoining. And that it might afford them the greater safety, they not only built it in the most inward part of the *Adriatick* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midst of many Lakes of Salt-water, extending ninety miles in compass, and having on the East the said *Adriatick* Sea for the length of 550 miles: betwixt which and the said Lakes, there is a bank or causey which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by nature, to defend the Islands which lye in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A causey of 35 miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in seven places only; which serve as well to keep the Lakes always full of water, as for the passage of Vessels to and from the City: known by the names of the Ports of 1. *Brondolo*, 2. *Chiocci*, 3. *Malamocco*, 4. the three Castles, or the Castles of *Lio*. 5. *S. Erasmus*, 6. *Lito Maggiore*, or the great shore; and 7. the *Trepors*: of which that of *Brondolo* lieth most to the South-west, and that of *Trepors* to the North-west of the said great Causey. And through every one of these there is safe passage for Ships and Barks of smaller burden: the bigger being compelled to lye at Anchor, on the South side of the City, near to the ports of *Malamocco*, and the Castles of *Lio*, which are very well fortified; and there must remain till they are brought in by skillful Pilots, who know the passages, which, by reason of the shifting of the sands, change very often. On the West and North sides, it is compassed with very deep Marishes, about five miles distant from the land; and on the South with many Islands, in which are several Churches and Monasteries, like so many Forts; which lie between it and those parts of *Italy*; which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth. So that it is impossible to be taken; but by an Army which can stretch 150 miles in compass. It is built, as before is said, on 72 Islands, 60 of which lye close together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater distance. Of these the principal, 1. *Heraclea* near the Firm Land of *Trevigiana*, peopled at first by such as followed *Magnus* Bishop of *Uderna*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here: calling the Island and the Town which they founded in it by the name of *Heraclea*, in honour of *it* *Heracles* the Eastern Emperor, in whose time it happened. Made by this means a Bishops See, and being grown populous which it was honoured with the first seat of the Dukes of *Venice*, removed by *Theodorus* the seventh Duke to *Malamocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Destroyed by *Papin* King of *Italy*, son of *Charles* the Great; it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Patitatio* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the antiquity of the Bishops See, than the number of Citizens. 2. *Jussalam*, neighbouring to *Heraclea*, first planted by some Countrey people, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares and of Horses, whence it had the name of *Equilene*, or *Equilia*. Made afterwards a Bishops See also, by the name of *Jesulanus* or *Equilenfis*. 3. *Grada*, on the same part of the City also, but more towards the North, inhabited at first by such of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themselves thither to avoid the tyranny of the *Hunnes*; but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, transported to this Island the Relicks and Treasures of his Church; and settled where the Church of *S. Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helie* who succeeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* the 2. Anno 580 that the Bishops of *Grada* should from thenceforth have the title of *Patriarchs*, and be esteemed the *Metropolitans* of the City and Countrey of *Venice*: yet the *Aquileian* would not so be robbed of his ancient privileges, and therefore stirred up many suites and disputes about it. The business compr-

Venice.

The *Hiftrians* had before infested them with Piracy, and were punished for it, in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loss of many of their Towns; but in the year 1390, the whole Countrey is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padua* with a great Part of *Trevigiana* then appendent on it, they extorted from the noble family of the *Carari*, An. 1400. The City of *Vicentia* they possessed themselves of in the same year also; and not long after fully perfected their Conquest of *Hiftria*, with the revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they most improved their estate was by a constant watching of their opportunities, taking advantage of the factions and fractions amongst their neighbours, and working their own greatness out of others ruins. By means whereof they came possessed of many places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome*; as also of some Towns, pertaining to the Dutchy of *Millain*; and four of the best Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving aid to any of their distressed neighbours, without the mortgage or direct sale of some piece or other. Which sordid kinde of Merchandizing, drew all the Princes, of those parts, (confederated together in a league at *Cambray*, Anno 1508) to make war upon them; every one to recover by strong hand, what the *Venetian* had extorted from them, in their necessity. And the confederates thrived so well, that *Maximilian* the Emperor recovered to the Empire, the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vicentia*, *Verona*, *Triest*, *Friuli*, and whatsoever else he laid claim unto; the Popes in right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Rimini* (or *Arminum*) and *Faventia*; *Lewis* the 12 of *France*, in right of the Dutchy of *Millaine*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Crenona*, *Brixia*: the King of *Spain* in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Andredonia*, *Trona*, *Barlette*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Rovigo*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the town of *Asulia*. So that the *Venetians* being (like the Jay) stripped of all their feathers, were fain to quit the firm land, and betake themselves unto the Isles and Marishes of their City; having not one foot of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italy*, but their Seas and Islands. And yet in very little time, partly by working on the Pope to whom they quitted all their interest in the Towns aforesaid; and partly by dividing the rest of the confederates from one another; they recovered all that they had lost, in a little time: except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The Government is *Arifocratical*, managed only by the principal men of all the City, both for birth and breeding; the common people having no authority in affairs of State. The chief Officers at the first were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that confusion, which a multitude of Governours carrieth for the most part with it, in the year 709. they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their Duke. Under these Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now enjoy: The authority of which Dukes was at first more absolute, but by degrees restrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beholderth him in his Robes, his gravity and outward Port, and the respect given him by the people, would think no Prince could be more absolute and supreme. But look upon him in the exercise and power of Government, and he is nothing in the world but an empty Title. For notwithstanding that he enjoyeth so great a dignity, yet hath he a full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the presence of his *Counsellors* (being six in number) who always sit with him, and dispatch affairs both publick and private; as namely, giving audience to Ambassadors from Forain States, receiving Letters from their own Ministers, granting of Privileges, and the like; in which the Duke can do just nothing, if four (at least) of these *Counsellors* be not present with him. And yet these *Counsellors* without him may conclude of any thing. Nay he is so retrained in all things to the power of the Senate, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their consent; and by them is prescribed an Order in his own Apparel. So that he is but little better than a Prisoner, when within the City; and a Traytor, if he stir abroad: at the best but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treasury, no more than 40000 *Ducats* a year, towards his expence and entertainment. As for the Sovereignty of the State, that resides wholly in the Senate; but representatively in the Duke, the six *Counsellors*, and the three Heads or Presidents of the *Porty*; which are those Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The Senate or Great Council, consists of all the Gentlemen of *Venice*, above five and twenty years of age, which may amount to the number of 2500. though seldom half that number do assemble at once, by reason of their several employments in affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places: who usually do meet together every Sunday morning, and on the morning of other *Festivals*, where they choofe Magistrates, and distribute Governments, and other matter of the State. But because such great bodies move but slowly, and are not very capable of trust and secrecy, they parcel this great council into lesser Members; whereof the principal are the *Pregadi*, and the Council of Ten. That of the *Pregadi* consisteth of 120 in which they treat of, and determine matters of the greatest importance; and therein Conclude commonly of such principal points, as formerly have been proposed and treated of in the great Assembly: And in this Council besides the 120 before mentioned, the Duke, the six *Counsellors*, and the Council of Ten, and all such as have born any publick Office, have their voice or suffrage. This is that Council which properly and more specially is called the Senate; in which nothing is to be concluded or passed into Acts, except four of the six *Counsellors* be present at them, and that sixty at the least of the whole number, give their suffrage to it. Then for the Council of Ten, their power is universal, over all affairs, such as the other Councils may not meddle with, as to conclude of war, or peace, to put in execution what they think most necessary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment: which

Venice.

which if they were first treated of in the General Council or Assembly, and after in that of the *Pregadi*, as they ought to be in common course; could not be possibly managed with such speed and secrecy, as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Council, with the Prince and his six Assitants, the Supreme Majesty of the State doth reside especially. Some other Officers there are, and those of great authority and reputation, as the *Procurators* of *S. Mark*, which have the charge of the publick Treasures; and the *Avogadori*, or *Tribunes* (as one might call them) of the people, being three in all; one of which must be always present in all consultations, lest any thing should pass to the prejudice, and infringement of the Privileges of the common people.

For the whole body of the City consisteth either of the Gentlemen, or of Artificers and Commons. These last are the defendants and progeny of such as came to settle here when the State was fixed; invited to dwell here, and to follow their occupations, by several Privileges and Immunities which were offered to them; and these they neither admit into any of their Councils, nor into any of the Offices of Trust and Power, except it be two; that namely of the Chancellor, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the people. The other are the issue or descendants of those, who first laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth: and these they have in such respect, and so high esteem, that to make any Stranger (how great and eminent soever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greatest honour they can bestow; and not bestowed but upon the best deserver. *Henry* the 3 of *France* taking this City in his way out of *Poland*, thought himself graced with this attribute, which they are very dainty and sparing of, it being the highest honour which they vouchsafe to import to such commanders of their own, and Ambassadors of other Princes, as have well deserved it. And that this honour may be kept up to the very height, and their Nobility grow not too cheap, by being too numerous; neither the younger sons of these Gentlemen within the City, or of the Noblemen in the Countrey, are permitted to marry. But otherwise they suffer them to satisfy their lusts, with too much impunity; and for their fakes allow of *Stews*, as an evil not to be voided on the former grounds.

Now as *Otho* in *Tacitus* said to the *Pretorian* Souldiers, *Principes à Senatu oritur, Senatus à vobis*: so out of these Gentlemen are chosen the Senators, out of them the Duke. His election by *Contarenius* is described in this manner. In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty years of age are assembled. So many as meet, cast their names into a pot; and in another, are just so many balls, of which thirty only are guilt. Then a child draweth for each, till the thirty guilt ones be all drawn; for which thirty the child draweth again the second time out of another pot, that hath only nine guilt balls. The nine so drawn, nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again selected by the same kinde of lot. These twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by lot set apart. These nine nominate five and forty, who are by lot again reduced unto eleven. These eleven choofe forty one of the best and chiefest of the Senators; who after an oath taken severally, to choofe whom they judge worthiest, write in a scrole every one whom he best liketh. The scrols are mingled together and then drawn; the fitness of the persons then drawn is discussed; and he that hath most voyces above five and twenty, is the man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudge with due solemnities to be created their Duke. By the like kinde of Lottery do they choofe Gentlemen in the Senate, and make publick officers; insumch that *Contarenius*, who hath committed unto writing these publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not say how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato's* platform.

But whether this be so or not, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus constituted, and modelled, as before is said; hath lasted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the world, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preserved it self in the same condition, but may most justly be accompted one of the strongest Bulwarks of *Christendome* against the incroachments of the *Turks*: the wars whereof hath procured peace; and the peace thereof procured plenty, to the rest of *Europe*. Insumch, that it may well be said, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italy* the Face of *Europe*; so *Venice* is the eye of *Italy*; the fairest, strongest, and most active part in that powerful Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome* by some *Pythagorical* transmigration had passed into the body of this powerful State; and animated it with all the vertues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and constant temper. From so base and abject a beginning, is this City grown to be one of the best Supporters of the Arms of *Europe*.

As for the religion of this State, they to lerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themselves profess no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with such caution and respect to their own authority, that they suffer not the Clergy to enjoy those privileges, which they possess in other Countreys, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the quarrel betwixt them, and Pope *Paul* the fifth; in which the Signeury stood stiffly to their ancient Rights, and caused Mass to be duly said, notwithstanding all their Churches were under the Interdict; banished the *Jesuites* for ever out of their Dominions, for sticking too busily in behalf of the Pope: and in the end prevailed so far by their constant courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the cause, and reconcile them to the Church, without any submission. A notable example to all *Chriitian* Princes, how to behave themselves towards those of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon, but by such resistances. So easie a thing it is for men of constancy and courage, to shake off that yoke, which Papal Ty ranny and Superstition hath imposed upon them.

In managing their wars they antiently observed two Rules, which most conduced to the enlargement and security of their Common-wealth. The first was the exempting of their own Citizens from the wars (not out of jealousy, but care of their preservation) unless compelled to the contrary by extreme necessity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the *Provincial* Subjects, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof, they did not only keep their City in the same condition, able at any

time,

Venice.

time, and at all times, to give Law to the rest of their Dominions: but waited the hot and boiling spirit of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwise might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of some neighbouring Prince to be the General of their Forces; whom in the conclusion of the service they dismissed with honour and reward. And by this course they avoided faction, and prevented servitude: Either or both of which might have happened by employing any of their own great ones in the chief command; who (after the example of *Julius Caesar* in the state of *Rome*) having a strong party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himself their Prince. But this was only in the conduct of their wars in *Italy*, and in such times when the State was not so well balanced as it hath been since.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea, or Land. Their Land-forces which they have in continual pay, for defence of their Dominion, consist of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers enrolled and paid; and besides those they have a choice band of 4000 Musquetiers: for exercising of which they keep yearly Musters, as well to improve them in experience, as to proportion them some gratuities, according to their well-deservings. And as for Horse, they maintain constantly 6000 men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italy*. And yet besides this constant and ordinary establishment, they are able to bring great Forces into the field; as appeareth by their Army against *Lewis* the twelfth: in which without disarming any of their Forts and Garrisons, they had 2000 men of Arms, 3000 light Horse, 30000 Foot, most of their own natural Subjects; saving that they were interlined with some bands of *Swissers*; to which people they give yearly pensions, to be assured of their aid upon all occasions. Then for the Sea-forces, besides that they keep fifty Gallies in continual action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no less than 200 more laid up in the *Arsenal*, with all manner of tackling and ammunition appertaining to them: they have 10000 men enrolled to serve at the *Oar*, and may raise as many as they please for those kind of services, out of those parts of *Sclavonia*, which are subjected to them. But the great evidence of the power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet set out against the *Grand Seigneur* for the War of *Cyprus*, *An. 1570*. in which they manned out one great Gallion, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of lesser burden; being in all one hundred and eighty seven sail, fit for present service. To give the total sum in brief, they held a war by Sea and Land for seven years together, against all the Princes of *Christendome* (excepting *England*) confederated against them by the League of *Cambray*; in all which time they neither wanted men nor money; and in the end, were the least losers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture also at the greatness of the publique Treasury, and of the yearly income which supplies the same. For though it be conceived that their ordinary standing Revenue be but four millions of *Ducats* yearly (which yet is more than any Christian Prince can boast of, except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other wayes to advance their Treasury, by laying new Imposts on commodities, as they see occasion; Which needs must rise to vast and most considerable sums, in a City of the greatest Traffick of any in *Europe*; and perhaps in all the world besides. And yet besides such Customs and Imposts as they lay on Merchandize, there is nothing which the people do eat or drink, for which they pay not something to the publique Treasury: over and above which, the poorest Labourer in the whole *Signeury* payeth his *Poll-money* also. Infomuch, that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Christians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turks*, than under the *Venetians*. Without such helps, (though heavy and burdensome to the Subject) they could not possibly have spent twelve millions in the war against *Selimus* the second; and as many a little before that, in the enterprise of *Ferrara*, and the war raised against them by the League of *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembered.

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Sovereign Princes*, nor such as do succeed each other in the right of inheritance: yet being they are always men of most eminent note, and that in their names all the business of State is acted, and all writings dated, I will subjoin a Catalogue of them to this present; to the end that meeting with their names in the course of *History*, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The Dukes of Venice.

697	1	<i>Paulus Anafestus</i>	20	859	14	<i>Ursus Partitarius</i>	1003	28	<i>Otho Urscola</i>
718	2	<i>Marcel Tegalio</i>	10	876	15	<i>John Partitarius</i>	1020	29	<i>Petro Barbolani</i>
727	3	<i>Hippatus Ursus</i>	11	881	16	<i>Petro Candiano</i>	1021	30	<i>Dominico Flabenco</i>
<i>An Interregnum of six years.</i>					17	<i>Dominico Tribuno</i>	1031	31	<i>Dominico Cantareni</i>
742	4	<i>Theodatus Hippatus</i>			18	<i>Petro Tribuno</i>	1059	32	<i>Dominico Silvio</i>
755	5	<i>Galla of Malamocco</i>		905	19	<i>Ursus Badoarius</i>	1072	33	<i>Vitalis Ealerius</i>
756	6	<i>Dominico Monegarta</i>		925	20	<i>Petro Candiano II.</i>	1084	34	<i>Vitalis Michaeli</i>
760	7	<i>Maurice Galbata</i>		932	21	<i>Petro Badoario</i>	1090	35	<i>Ordelafus Ealerius</i>
783	8	<i>John Galbata</i>		935	22	<i>Petro Candiano III.</i>	1105	36	<i>Dominico Michaeli</i>
799	9	<i>Obeherius</i>		950	23	<i>Petro Candiano IV.</i>	1118	37	<i>Petrus Polanus</i>
804	10	<i>Angelus Partitarius</i>		970	24	<i>Petro Urscola</i>	1136	38	<i>Dominico Morosini</i>
822	11	<i>Justinian Partitarius</i>		972	25	<i>Vital Candiano</i>	1143	39	<i>Vitalis Michaeli II.</i>
824	12	<i>John Partitarius</i>		973	26	<i>Tribuno Meme</i>	1160	40	<i>Sebastian Ziani</i>
823	13	<i>Petro Tradonico</i>		985	27	<i>Petro Urscola II.</i>	1165	41	<i>Auria Maripiere</i>

42 Henrico

Tuscany.

1179	42	<i>Henrico Dondolo</i>	1355	61	<i>Andrea Contarene</i>	1533	80	<i>Francisco Donati</i>
1193	43	<i>Petro Ziani</i>	1371	62	<i>Michael Morosini</i>	1540	81	<i>Antonio Trevisani</i>
1216	44	<i>Jacobo Tepuli</i>		63	<i>Antonio Penieri</i>	1541	82	<i>Francisco Vivieri</i>
1236	45	<i>Marino Morosini</i>	1389	64	<i>Michael Steno</i>	1543	83	<i>Lorenzo Prioli</i>
1240	46	<i>Renieri Zeno</i>	1402	65	<i>Thomazo Micenico</i>	1547	84	<i>Hierome Prioli</i>
1256	47	<i>Lorenzo Tepuli</i>	1412	66	<i>Francisco Foscar</i>	1555	85	<i>Petro Loredani</i>
1263	48	<i>Jacobo Contareni</i>	1447	67	<i>Paschal Malipiere</i>	1560	86	<i>Lewis Mucenico</i>
1267	49	<i>Giovanni Dondolo</i>	1452	68	<i>Christophoro Moro</i>	1567	87	<i>Sebastian Penieri</i>
1276	50	<i>Petro Gradonico</i>	1461	69	<i>Nicholao Troni</i>	1578	88	<i>Nicola di Pont</i>
1298	51	<i>Marino Georgio</i>	1463	70	<i>Nicolao Marcelli</i>	1586	89	<i>Paschal Cicogne</i>
1299	52	<i>John Sourance</i>	1464	71	<i>Petro Mocenici</i>	1596	90	<i>Marino Grimani</i>
1315	53	<i>Francisco Dondolo</i>	1465	72	<i>Andrea Vendramine</i>	1606	91	<i>Leonardo Donati</i>
1329	54	<i>Barthol. Gradonico</i>	1467	73	<i>John Mocenico</i>	1612	92	<i>Antonio Memmo</i>
1330	55	<i>Andrea Dandolo</i>	1474	74	<i>Marco Barbadoico</i>	1615	93	<i>Giovanni Bembo</i>
1342	56	<i>Marinus Falerius</i>		75	<i>Augustino Barbadoico</i>	1618	94	<i>Nicholao Donati</i>
	57	<i>John Gradonico</i>	1489	76	<i>Leonardo Loredani</i>	1618	95	<i>Antonio Prioli</i>
1343	58	<i>John Dauphin</i>	1509	77	<i>Antonio Grimani</i>	1623	96	<i>Francisco Contareno</i>
1348	59	<i>Lorenzo Celso</i>	1511	78	<i>Andrea Gritti</i>		97	<i>Giovanni Corrello</i>
1352	60	<i>Marco Cornaro</i>	1527	79	<i>Petro Lande</i>		98	<i>Francisco Erizzo now living, An. 1648.</i>

The principal Orders of *Knighthood* in this *Republick* are, 1. Of *S. Mark*, who is the Patron of this City, instituted in the year 1330. and renewed again (being grown somewhat out of use) *An. 1562*. The honour is commonly bestowed on the person present, sometimes by Letters Patents on a party absent; as lately upon *Daniel Heinsius*, one of great eminence for learning in the *Netherlands*. The person chosen is to be of noble blood, at the least a Gentleman; the Word of Motto or the Order, is, *Pax tibi Mact.*

2. Of the glorious *Virgin*, first instituted by *Bartholomew of Vincentia*, *An. 1222*. Their charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italy*. It was allowed of by *Pope Urban* the fourth, 1262. *An.* The Arms of this Order, are a Purple Cross, between certain Stars. The habit a white Surcote over a Ruffet Cloak; and seems to be as well a Religious, as a Military Institution, like to the *Spanish Orders*, and that of *Malta*.

There are in the Provinces of this
Common-wealth, before
described,
Patriarchs 2. Bishops 16.

The great Dukedom of TUSCANIE.

HAVING thus run along the Coast of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church, unto the *Alpes*, which divide *Italy* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuscan* or *Lower Sea*, from the said Lands of the Church, to that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italy* from *France*. And in the first place we meet with the Dukedom of *Florence*, or the Estate of the great Duke of *Tuscany*; divided on the East from *S. Peters Patrimony*, by the River *Pisto*; on the West, from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Macra*, and the strong Fort of *Sarazena*; on the North from *Romandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*, by the *Apennine Hills*; and on the South side it is bounded with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian Seas*.

It taketh up the greatest and goodlyest part of all that which antiently was called *Tuscany*, from the *Greek* word *Σύμ*, which signifieth to sacrifice; of which act of Religious Worship, or rather of some superstitious Ceremonies appertaining to it they are conceived to be the Authors. And to some say truth they were much given to *Sooth-sayings*, and Divinations, and such like vanities of *Geniis*: *Tages*, that *Merlin* of the old World, first appearing here, from whom they learned the greatest part of their Superstitions. So that this name was adventitious and accidental. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenian*, from *Tyrrhenus* the son of *Alys* King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in these parts about the time that *Gedon* judged the Tribes of *Israel*. But these names signified the same both Country and people, though in divers Languages, and with respect to different Originations: the name of *Tyrrheni*, and *Tyrrhenia* being most used by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tysci*, and *Tyscia*, by their neighbours of *Rome*, who also called the people *Heurysci*; and the Country *Heururia*, from a particular Province of it which was so intitled. Antiently it extended as far Eastward as the banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the present; and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation. Who not content to be restrained within the *Apennine* and the *Tiber*, wasted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation: and built twelve Cities on the other side of the Mountains; that is to say, *Adria*, *Verona*, *Vincencia*, *Trent*, *Bergamo*, *Mantua*, *Comio*, *Vercelle*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*; all of esteem and reputation to this very day. They were the first Nation that carried an Offensive War to the Gates of *Rome*.

Tuscany. Rome, when they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porfena*; and held it out on the *Defensive* as long as any: No people in all *Italy* standing more stilly in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Falisci*, and *Veientes*, two *Hebrman* Tribes. But nothing could withstand the fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations of them were brought under by *Tarquinius Priscus*, who from hence brought to Rome, the *Eastes* and *Triumphal* Ornaments, and other embellishments of State: the *Vesii* and *Falisci*, by the Sword of *Camillus*, the Conquest perfected by the conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Publ. Cornelius* A.V.C. 455. So the *Tuscan* were subdued at last, after they had been governed by their own Kings 113 years; that is to say, from *Tarchon Priscus* their first King, A.M. 2550, to *Tuilius* the last King, A.M. 3668.

The chief Towns of it in those times were 1 *Vesii*, and 2 *Perusia*, spoken of before. 3 *Fesula*, then of very great fame, now a poor Village hard by *Florence*. 4 *Agellina*, situate not far from the Lake of *Thrasimene*, which from hence was called *Vatum Agellinum*: the chief Town of the *Tuscan* at the coming of *Aeneas* into *Italy*; and the Seat Royal of *Miternus* that noted Tyrant, so often mentioned by *Virgil*. First built by the *Pelasgi*, a Greek people, and by them thus named; afterwards by mistake called *Cere*: by like mistake as *Peru*, *Jucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces, got their present names: as shall there be shewn. For the *Tuscan*, or the *Romans* as others say, demanding in their language of a Country fellow, the name of the place; was answered in his language, *Carē*, that is to say, God save you, or God speed you: which word they taking for the name of the Town, did ever after call it *Cere*. Memorable in old time for the Burls adjoining, from hence called *Balnea Carolina*; more for the preservation of the *Vestal* Fire, and the other holy things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*. Rewarded hereupon with all the privileges of *Rome*, except right of Suffrage: from whence the Tables, in which the *Roman* Censors used to enroll the names of those, whom they deprived of their votes in Senate, or any other publick Council, were called *Cariæ Tabule*. 5 *Phaleria*, on the sea-side, the principal Town of the *Falisci*, of which there is some remainder extant in the Village called *Falaris*. 6 *Clusium*, the Seat-royal of King *Porfena*, for aiding which against the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themselves the fury of that turbulent people. *Pisa*, *Arretinum*, and such others as are still in being, we shall speak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the soyl do remain as formerly, though the first altered in their names. The principal of which are, 1 *Arnus* spoken of before, in the general survey of *Italy*. 2 *Sercius*, by *Ptolomy* called *Boathis*, a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes some amends, unto the people for its violent Land-floods. 3 *Palis*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not so profitable; which falleth into *Tiber*, near *Orviette*. 4 *Martha*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ofa*. Here is also the Lake *Volsinus*, which is twenty four miles in compass; and that called antiently *Sabatinus*, but now *Lacus Braciani*, from which water was conveyed to *Rome*. By reason of these and other Lakes, and the frequent over-flowings of the Rivers, the Country in former times was full of Bogs, which made the air unhealthy, and the ways unpassable; it being in the Flats and Marishes of *Hebrmania*, that *Annibal* was so tormented, losing herein the greatest part of his Elephants, and one of his eyes. But since those times past by the industry of the people, and the great providence of the Princes; the Fens in most places are well drained, and the Bogs converted to firm land; whereby the air is rectified, and the ways made pleasant; care being also taken, by great banks and ramparts, to keep the Rivers for the most part within their channels. So that the Country is now full of very fruitful fields, and fruitfull vallies, swelled here and there with pleasant mountains, little inferior in fertility to the richest vales; abundantly well stored with delicious wines, and plentiful, in a word, of all the blessings of nature: save that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is supplied from the fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themselves and their neighbours; though so such superfluity, as to spare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the story, *Tuscany* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the second of those eleven Regions, into which *Italy* was divided by *Augustus Caesar*. In the division of it made by *Antoninus*, and in that of *Constantine*, it made with *Umbria* one of the ten Provinces, which was immediately subject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, it became a member of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German* Empire: during which times it was governed by an Officer of trust and power, whom I find sometimes called the *Margues*, sometimes Duke of *Tuscany*; who had here more or less authority, as they could work on the necessities of their several Princes. *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards* had been Duke of *Tuscany*, and so was *Albericus* in the time of the *Berengarii*; and *Guido* is called *Marquess* of it, under the reign of *Henricus Auceps* the *German* Emperor. Afterwards as the Popes grew in power and greatness, so they made bold to intermeddle in the affairs of this Province: giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*; another while to the Dukes of *Anjou*, making some challenge to that Kingdom. In which distractions the *Florentines* first bought their own liberty, of the Emperor *Rodolphus Habspargensis*; and after purchased the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*; that of *Arezzo*, for 40000 *Florins*, of Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*. After this time they husbanded their affairs so well, that they became one of the most considerable Estates in *Italy*; and at the last by taking in *Pisa* and *Sienna*, they got the absolute dominion of the best and largest part of *Tuscany*: which now is under the command of the great Duke, and may be branched most stily into these four parts; that is to say, the Cities and Territories of 1 *Florence*, 2 *Pisa*, 3 *Sienna*, and 4 the *Islands* situate in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

1. And first the Territory or Estate of *Florence*, taketh up the North part of this great Dukedom, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Estates of *Pisa* and *Sienna* on the South. So called from

from the Cry of *FLORENCE*, situate nigh unto the conflux of the Rivers *Arnus* and *Chianus*; the former passing through the middle of the City, which is joyned together with four Bridges of stone: environed with mountains, which do serve as a Fortress against Invasions, and for defence against the Winds. First built by *L. Sylla* that bloody Dictator; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumviri*, *Augustus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*; from the flourishing situation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards* upon some displeasure razed it to the ground, but it was rebuilt by *Charlemagne*; to whom and whose Successors they continued faithful, as long as they had any thing to do with the State of *Italy*: but after, they betook themselves to the *Papal* faction, and were as rigid *Guelfs* as any. On this foundation it now stands, and is indeed a very fair and flourishing City, agreeable unto the name; the streets being very straight and large, paved with square stone, and always kept exceeding clean: the ordinary buildings beautiful above any in *Italy*, besides many fair and stately Palaces adorned with Statues. The principal of the Palaces is that of the Great Duke, taking up the room of 50 houses which were wont to stand there; capable of a great retinue: and for the largeness of the building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as also for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Accellaries, equalling, if not surpassing the goodliest Palaces in all *Europe*. The like may also be affirmed of the Cathedral, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanship, but that especially of the Steeple, which both for stuff and structure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*; and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence*; in which City there are besides so many excellent pieces and curious rarities, that the Arch-Duke *Charles* was wont to say, that it was a City not to be seen but on Holy-days. As for the Inhabitants of this City and the parts adjoining, they are a very industrious people, and generally said to be of a very great wit, subtle heads and of great insight into business: and yet Count *Imbalt*, a French Gentleman, was used to say, *Non sapevo dove confisasse l'ingegno tanto celebrato di Fiorentini*; that he should never find where that great wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guicciardini* the Historian, was without doubt a notable Statesman; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a man of as shrewd a brain as any; and so were the two *Cosmo's* of the house of the *Medices*: but whether all the *Florentines*, or the major part of them, be of such extraordinary wits as they say they are, I am not very well resolved of; nor is it much material to enquire into it.

The other Cities and chief places of this first division, are 1 *Fesula*, once a *Roman* Colony, now a small Village called *Fiesoli*; situate in the straights of the *Apennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have risen chiefly from the ruins of it: most memorable for the great defeat here given by *Stilico*, to the great Army of the *Goths*, conducted into *Italy* under *Rhadagisus*. 2 *Pirozia*, or *Pistia*, seated on the foot of the *Apennine*, but ruined with its own dissensions: of which the greatest and most lasting, were those betwixt the *Neri* and *Bianchi* (or the black men and the white) which divided *Florence*; and that between the *Guelfs* and *Gibellins*; which here took beginning, and for a long time exercised the peace of *Christendome*. This last began (as some say) upon the quarrel of two brothers, of which the one named *Gnello*, stood for the Pope; the other named *Gibellino*, declared for the Emperor. The quarrel spreading into parties, called the *Guelfs* and the *Gibellins*, became at last the wonder and amazement of all good people: inasmuch as some are of opinion, that the fiction of the *Elfs* and *Goblins*, wherewith we use to fright young childrer, was derived from hence. As for the City it self, it is seated in a fair and goodly plain, compassed with mountains; the streets paved with free-stone, and the Church (which is Cathedral) with Marble. It was first walled by *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province; but for all that was forced to submit it self to the power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was subdued A. 1150. when as yet themselves were not the absolute Masters of their own City. 3 *Volterra* built among the mountains, the birth-place of *Linus* successor to *St. Peter* in the See of *Rome*. It standeth on the top of an hill, the walls thereof made of square stone six foot long, which are very nearely joyned together without Mortar: and in those Walls five Gates for entrance, each Gate having near to it a very fair Fountain. The Marble Statues, and some Epitaphs in *Tuscan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very antient. In this town was born *Rodolphus Volterrannus*, one of the greatest Reitorers of Learning in the West parts of the World. 4 *Monte Pulciano*, in Latin called *Alnus Politianus*, a well fortified City, and the birth-place of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the Latin or *Roman* Elegancies. 5 *Prato*, another strong piece of this part also. Neighbouring by a retiring place of the Great Dukes, called *Pratoline*, a right pleasant Village, beautified with a magnificent Palace; in which besides many other singularities, are most curious Water-works, equal, if not superior unto those of *Tivoli*. 6 *Cortona*, an antient City of the *Tuscan*, situate at the foot of the *Apennine*; sold to the *Florentines*, by *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*. 7 *Arezzo*, or *Arezzo*, one of the antient Cities of the *Tuscan* also, and sold to the *Florentines* as the other was; this being bought for 40000 *Florins* of *Lewis* of *Anjou*, then the Popes Viceroy in this Country. 8 *Borgo San Sepulcro*, seated on the *Tiber*, near; or within the *Spoletan* Dukedom; added to this Signeury by *Cosmo de Medices*, the first of that name; by whom bought of Pope *Engegnus* the fourth for the sum of 25000 *Florins*, and laid unto the Patrimony of this Common-wealth; to which it serveth for a Bulwark on that side of this Country.

To this Division also we may best refer the small, but rich Signeury of *Massa*, situate on the borders of the state of *Genoa*. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Massa* it self, which gives the title of a *Marquess* to the Lord hereof, of the the Family of the *Malespines*. 2 *Carara*, three miles off from *Massa*, and more neer the Sea; of great fame for its Quarries of whitest Marble (much used in the time of the *Roman* greatness) and a breed of the fairest Women in *Italy*. The Prince hereof a Feudatary to the Duke of *Florence*, but amongst his own vassals absolute enough.

Pisa and
Sienna.

2. The second member of this estate, is the City and Territory of *PISA*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoese* on the West, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the East. The City first built by the *Pisa*, a people of *Etruria* in *Greece*: who following old *Nestor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the wind driven upon this coast; and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serchio*, did erect this Town. In the distractions of the Empire it stood up for itself, and grew so potent, that at one time they waged War both with the *Venetians*, and *Genoese*. They were once Masters of *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, and the *Baleares*; but finally being discomfited by the *Genoese* near the Isle of *Giglio*, *An. 1369*, they submitted themselves to the protection of *Charles* the fourth, by whom it was made free. Not long after, it was taken by *John* *Geleazzo* the first Duke of *Millain*, *An. 1404*, by *John* *Mario*, his son and Successor sold unto the *Florentines*; from whose command they freed themselves by a popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this besieged them, and brought them to such extremity of hunger, that they were ready to be starved. Yet such was the humanity of the Besiegers, that when they entered the Town, every man carried victuals in his hand in stead of weapons, to beget, as it were, new life in that rebellious people. This victory the *Florentines* got by the valour and conduct of Sir *John* *Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Aguto*; who being first a *Taylor* in *Essex*, afterwards served *Edward* the third in his *French* Wars, where he was Knighted. And when, upon the peace concluded after the battle of *Poitiers*, he wanted employment; he entered with his Regiment into *Italy*, and put himself into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in War with this City: who for his valour have honoured him with a very fair Tomb and Monument. When *Charles* the 8th went into *Italy*, the *Pisans* again revolted; and were not without much labour and great charges, reduced to their former obedience. As for the City itself, it is almost as big as *Florence*; this being five miles in compass, and that but fix; but very short of it in the numbers of people, *Florence* being said to contain 90000 souls, *Pisa* not a third part of that proportion; yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to say, the publick Arsenal for shipping, an University for Students, and the See of an Archbishop: the Cathedral Church of which is a very beautiful piece of work, the Gates thereof are brass, and the Steeple of it of such artificial and exquisite building, that it sheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholfomeness of the air over-balanceeth all these fair advantages.

The next place of importance within the Territory of this City, is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn* (*Liburnum* it is called in *Latin*) seated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified against the *Genoese*, by whom the works were once slighted, *An. 1297*. Upon a Reconciliation made between those States it returned again to its old Masters. And when the *Pisans* were fold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of *Millain*; *Thomas* *Fregosa* Duke of *Genoa*, seized upon this place, and sold it also to the same Chapter, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Cosmo* and his two sons, it is much improved in strength and beauty; and so well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the strongest Cities in *Christendom*: Cities I say, and not Castles, the Castles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain*, being held to be the strongest Forts in the World. After this comes in 3 *Pira Sancta*, on the West side of the *Arno*, a place of great consequence and strength; one of the best pieces of the *Pisans* when a Free-estate, against their old enemies the *Genoese*, towards whom it standeth. 4 *Terracola*, Eastward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5 *Castellana*, an Episcopal See. And 6 *Porto Berrato* bordering on the Signeury of *Sienna*; now nothing but a station for Ships (nor much used for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the best Cities of the *Tuscans*, called *Populonia*.

3. The third member of this Dukedome is the City and Territory of *SIENNA*, lying betwixt the Estate of *Pisa*, and the land of the Church. The City said to be built by *Brennus*, who did there put his old sickly men to sojourn, and called it *Sena*: the birth-place of *Aeneas Silvius*, called afterwards Pope *Pius* the second; of *Francis Piccolomini*, after Pope *Pius* the third; and of *Sixtus* (hence surnamed) *Senensis*, the greatest Scholar of the three, if not of all the age he lived in. By *Antonine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Sena Julia*; to difference it perhaps from another of that name near the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallia*. Built near the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Treiffa*; but built (which makes the situation of it exceeding pleasant) upon an high hill, on which there is a Castle that commands the Town; the streets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and spacious Market-place; near to which is a very fair Palace, used for a Senate-house in the Free-Commonwealth; and on the South side near the Walls, the Cathedral Church, reputed to be one of the fairest in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an ascent by fair Marble stairs, of which the Pavement is made also. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperial faction, it bought its liberty at an easie rate, of the Emperour *Rodolphus* the first. After it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally was made over to *Cosmo de Medicis* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, *An. 1558*. In consideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French*; and other services expected for the time to come. *Cosmo* being thus invested in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the first Prince who had the absolute command of it, after the constitution of their Common-wealth: neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their several factions; and suffered to have Garisons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their party. And to say truth, it stood with good reason of State, that the *Florentine* should use all his wit to get this City; and having got it, use all means to assure it to him. For besides that great accession which it made unto his Estate; by adding thereunto the yearly income of an hundred and fifty thousand Ducats, above all expences: it was also to be carefully looked on as a Rival, which had long time stood in competition with it, for the sovereign command of *Tuscany*. Besides there had been mighty animosities be-

The Tuscan
Islands.

between the Cities; the *Florentine* being always of the *Guelphes*, and the *Siennays* of the *Gibelline* faction. A faction at last so generally distasteth in all *Italy*, and so abominable to the Popes, that on an *Ashwednesday*, when the Pope being to cast *Ashes* on the heads of the Cardinals, was to have said, *Memento O homo quod cinis es*, & in cinerem converteris: according to the usage of the Church of *Rome*: seeing a *Gibelline* amongst them, he forgot himself, and said thus unto him, *Memento O homo quod Gibellinus es*, & cum Gibellinis morieris. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1 *Montalcino* (*Mons Alcinus* in *Latin*) a place of great strength both by industry and situation. 2 *Castro Cartaldo*, seated upon a lofty hill, most memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John* *Boccaccio*, one of the best wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declareth; buried here with a sorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of transcribing. 3 *Soana*, an Episcopal City; as also are 4 *Pienza*, 5 *Crosetto*, and 6 *Chiusi*; this last the Clusium of the ancient *Tuscans* spoken of before. Besides these are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great observation in the course of business.

There belonged also unto this Common-wealth, when a State distinct, some Ports and Peeces on the Sea, which when it was configned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniard*: partly thereby to keep those Princes at his devotion; but principally that by holding so many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his girdle the Keys of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramount of those Seas. Of those the principal, if not all, 1 *Piombino*, in *Latin* called *Plumbinum*, from some Mines of Lead; adorned with a strong Castle, and a plentiful Territory: the Castle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in possession of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole rents of the Estate. 2 *Porto Telamon*, Eastward of *Piombino*, so called of old from *Telamon*, an adjoining Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*. Accounted the chief City of *Tuscany* in those elder times, but most remarkable for the great battle fought near unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Galls*, *A.V.C. 529*. The Army of the *Galls* consisting of 70000 Horse and Foot; that of the *Romans* little (if at all) inferior to it. A fight in which *Atilius*, one of the Consuls being slain, the Victory was gotten by *Emilius* his Colleague, with the slaughter of 40000 of the Enemies, and the taking of 10000 Prisoners: *Anerocstus* and *Congolanius* two Kings of the *Transalpine Galls* being slain or taken. A Victory which drew after it a total subjugation of the *Cisalpine Galls*, which followed within three years after. 3 *Orbitello*, drawing more towards the East, the *Cossa* of the ancient Writers. 4 *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontory or Peninsula, thrusting it self into the Sea, over against *Orbitello*; by the *Latins* called *Mons Argentarius*: and thought by some, who have observed the situation, strength and extent thereof, to be the fittest place for a Royal City to be built in, to command those Seas. 5 *Porto Hercule*, which still retains its ancient name, imparted to it from some Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in it; situate near the Eastern Isthmus of the said Peninsula. 6 *Porto-Longone*, a piece of special consequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cause of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the conquest of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now possess it.

The fourth and last member of this Estate, are the Islands in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principal whereof is 1 *Elva*, not above ten miles from *Piombino*; called anciently *Ethalia*, by the vulgar *Elva*. *Pliny* affirmed it to contain in compass a hundred miles, but it proves upon a just measurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furnished with Corn, and less with fruits; but plentiful in Mines of Iron, as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, especially for Steel, of great esteem in the time of *Virgil*, as appeareth by that passage in the tenth of the *Aeneid*, where it is called

Insula inexhaustis Chalybum generosa metallis.

A noble Isle, and known full well,
For unexhausted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is supplied by Iron; which Iron is of so strange a nature, that every 25 year it reneweth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilst it is in the Island, but must be carried somewhere else. It affordeth also Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in some parts, the Loadstone also. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it against the *Turks*, if they should at any time invade it; resigned it, by the Counsel of *Charles* the fifth, unto *Cosmo di Medicis* the Duke of *Florence*: reserving to themselves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns and Villages therein, except those that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that should come thither; and therefore if the *Turks* and *Moors* had been Masters of it, they might easily have commanded all the coasts adjoining, as well in *Provence* as *Italy*. For the defence hereof, there are two strong Castles, situate on two little Mountains, on each side one; so fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable; having also good store of Canon, and all sorts of Warlike Ammunition. And not far off stands a strong Town built by the same Duke *Cosmo*, and by him called *Cosmopolis*; well fortified, and made the seat of his new Order of *St. Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The second Island of note is *Giglio*, called *Igium* anciently, just opposite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having some 25 miles in compass; near unto which the *Genoese* so discomfited the *Pisans* in a Fight at Sea, that they were never able to recover their former puissance. 3 *Capraria* not far from *Ligorn*, so called from its abundance of Goats; and for the same reason *Egiora*, by the *Greek* Geographers:

The Tuscan Islands. as 4 *Gallinaria* not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the rest nothing memorable, but that some of them do occur in the ancient Writers; of which sort are *Meloria*, heretofore *Lancellum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2 *Lanusa*, formerly *Artemisia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3 *Gurgona*, 4 *Troia*, and 5 the small Islands which are called *Formica*. 6. To these may be added also the Isle of *Planasia*, more memorable than the rest, for the banishment and death of *Agrippa Posthumus*, the Nephew of *Augustus Cæsar* by his daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State Imperial: situate somewhat nearer unto *Corfica*, than the rest of these Islands.

of the three Islands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whose posterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the *Free State* Nobility; *Maachiavel* informs us in his *Florentine History* accounted in the chief rank of the Popular Nobility: (then those being such of the ancient Nobles, as to be capable of the Magistracy, and publick Offices (then wholly shared among the Commons) had as it were degraded themselves, and became part of the Commonalty. About the year 1410. *John de Medicis*, (the first great raider of this house) stoutly maintaining the Liberties of the People against the great ones; was by them so honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great party, but almost a Sovereignty in the City. To him succeeded his son *Cosmo*, one of the greatest Statesmen of those Times; who did not only much reform the Civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Casentino*, *Burgo*, *St. Sepulchro*, and some other pieces. Dying in the year 1464, he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medicis* his son, whose whole time was consumed in suppressing such Factions, as had at home been raised against him: and at his death left all his power, and the great wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater measure of his Fathers virtues) to *Lawrence* and *Julian* his two sons. The people after his decease, either desirous of Novelties, as most people are; or fearing to be made hereditary to this powerful Family; seemed to incline to one of the *Soderinis*, a man of plausible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciously considering, that new houses as they are easily honoured, so are they as soon abandoned by the fickle multitude; conferred all the dependences which were cast upon him, on these two young men of the *Medices*: as being descended from a Family which had long governed the City. Against these two, the *Pazzi*, a potent house in *Florence*, conspired, and at last they slew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* escaped: the blows which were struck at him, being received by one of his servants, whom two days before he had delivered out of prison. For this Fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Archbishop of *Pisa*, who had been of the conspiracy. To revenge the death of this Bishop, Pope *Paul* the 2. excommunicated the *Florentines*; and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo* to divert this mischief, went in person to *Naples*: where he grew so much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetual League made between them. After his death 1492. his son *Peter*, having very improvidently delivered *Pisa* and *Ligorn*, with other pieces, to the *French* King; was, together with his whole Family, banished. *John de Medicis* the son of *Lawrence*, and brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the name of *Leo* the 10. restored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exil'd. This disgrace *Julia de Medicis* son to the above-named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement* the 7. not enduring, procured *Charles* the fifth to besiege it: which request was granted, and the City after two years resistance, yielded. The Emperor then gave it to *Alexander Medicis* (Grandchild to *Peter*, by his son *Lawrence*) Anno 1531. And he to restrain the insolencies of the people, built a strong Citadel in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of good parts enough, had he not been too much addicted to Lust and Wantonness; which being observed by *Lawrence de Medicis* his own Cousin, he trained him to a secret place, under colour of bringing him to the bed of a beautiful Lady, and there basely murdered him. Which done, instead of calling the people to take Arms for recovery of their lost liberty, as he first intended; he fearfully left the City, and fled towards *Venice*. So that before the people had notice of the accident, the heads of the *Medices* consulted together, and sent for *Cosmo de Medicis* dwelling in the Country with his mother (and then about 18 years of age) to be their Prince: as being next Heir-male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperour. This *Cosmo* proving an excellent Statesman, and a fortunate Commander, so swayed the affairs of *Italy*, that *Philip* the second of *Spain* to be assured of his friendship, gave him the Signeury of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the *French*; and *Pius* the 4. had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuscany*. But *Philip* of *Spain* (though otherwise his special friend) thwarted that intent, as loath to have in *Italy* any more Kings than himself. After in the year 1570 *Pius* the fifth crowned the said *Cosmo* in the Court of *Rome*, with the title of Great Duke of *Tuscany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Dukes Coronet he caused to be engraven these words, *Pius quintus Pont. Max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis catholicæ zelum, præcipuamque justitiæ studium, donavit.* Thus forward were these Popes to honour this Family; but their Successors have been otherwise affected to it. For when one of Duke *Cosmo's* Successors did since intreat a succeeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuscany*; the Pope not liking so Lordly a title, made answer, that he was content, *He should be a King of Tuscany, but not King of Tuscany.* A Scholar-like distinction, but not so satisfactory to the point proposed.

The Princes of the house of *Medices*, in the *Free-estate*.

- 1410 1 *John di Medices*, the first advancer of the Family to publick greatness.
1433 2 *Cosmo di Medices*, the son of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.

ITALIE.

1464 3 *Peter, the son of Cosmo.*
1472 4 *Lawrence di Medices, son of Peter, the great advancer of Learning in Italy.*
1492 5 *Peter di Medices II. exiled upon the coming in of Charles the 8.*
6 *Lawrence di Medices II. son of Peter, exiled together with his Father; made Duke of Urbino by Pope Leo the 10. He was Father of Catharine di Medices, French Queen.*

The Dukes of *Florence*, and *Great Dukes of Tuscany*.

- | | | |
|------|---|---|
| 1531 | 1 | <i>Alexander di Medices</i> , the son of <i>Lawrence</i> , the first Duke of <i>Florence</i> . |
| 1537 | 2 | <i>Cosmo II.</i> the next heir of <i>Alexander</i> , deceased from <i>Lawrence</i> , a brother of the first <i>Cosmo</i> ;
the wisest Statesman of his time. |
| 1574 | 3 | <i>Francis di Medices</i> , son of <i>Cosmo</i> the 2. Father of <i>Mary</i> the French Queen. |
| 1587 | 4 | <i>Ferdinand di Medices</i> , the Brother of <i>Francis</i> . |
| 1609 | 5 | <i>Cosmo III.</i> son of <i>Ferdinand</i> . |
| 1621 | 6 | <i>Ferdinand II.</i> son of <i>Cosmo di Medices</i> , the twelfth of this Family, the sixth Duke of <i>Florence</i> ,
and the fifth of <i>Tuscany</i> . |

The length of this Eitate is 200 miles, the breadth in some places not much inferiour, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which tract, the *Great Duke* hath but one considerable Port on the main Land, which is that of *Ligorn*; so that his strength in shipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffick; and not suffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Country) and carried thence in foreign Vessels. For otherwise being an indutrious people, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at Sea must needs be greater than it is: the *Great Dukes* Fleet consisting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliaelles. And for his power by Land, he hath in readiness sixteen thousand Foot of his own Subjects, well trained and mustered under experienced Commanders, to serve him upon all occasions; and a hundred men at Arms, and 400 Light-horsmen, well paid, as well in times of Peace as in time of War. And besides these, he keeps so many Forts and Towns in continual Garrison, that his Eitate is said to be made of Iron.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the *Free-Estate*, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifest, in that having in those five years, wherein they waged War against the Duke of *Milain*, spent three millions and an half of *Florens*; their Treasury was so far from being exhausted, that the next year they befieged and endangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Commonwealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of a Territory and City of *Sienna*; the *Revenues* of the Duke are conceived to be a million and an half of *Ducats* yearly. Of which 60000 *Crowns* are raised yearly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*; 15000 more out of that of *Sienna*: the customs arising out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yearly to 130000 *Ducats*, the toll of *Millitones* only unto 160000; that of Salt, Mines, and Iron, falls not short of that: in all a million and 200000 *Ducats*. Then hath the Duke his stock going amongst the Bankers, and trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countries he loseth the privileges of a Nobleman, that betakes himself to Trade and Merchandize. He useth also to buy up almost all the Corn which is brought into the Country out of other parts, and sell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be sold till all his be vendid. The rest is made up by *Excise* upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs, and Salads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor especially: inasmuch that it was rarely paid, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui sub Medicis vivit, misere vivit*: infomach that it was rarely paid, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui sub Medicis vivit, misere vivit*; applying an old Rule in a new sense.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Empire, is that of *St. Stephen*, instituted by *Cosmo di Medici*; *An. 1561*. and dedicated to *St. Stephen*; because upon the Festival of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the 6. of *August*, he won the famous battel of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius* the fourth confirmed it the same year, and granted them all the priviledges which they of *Malta* enjoy: conditioned that those of this Order should make a vow of Chariy, of conjugal Chastity, and obedience. They are to be nobly born, and in lawful Wedlock; of the *Romish* Church; and without note of infamy. The Robe is of white *Chamlet*, with a red Crofs on their left side, as well upon their military Garments, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally against the *Turks* and *Moor*s, for which cause fetled first at *Pisa*, being near the Sea; but after at *Cosmopolis* in the Isle of *Illa*. The number of them is uncertain, the *Great Duke* the Supream Master of it. Other Orders are commonly simple, but this mixt; being partly religious, partly honorary.

The Arms are *Or*, five Torteaux *Gules*, two, two, and one, and one in chief *Azure*, charged with three Flower de Lyces of the first.

Here are in this Estate
Archbishops 3. Bishops 26.

The State of LUCA.

IN the West part of *Tuscany*, betwixt the Estate of the *Great Duke*, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *Lucca*, so called from *Lucumo*, a King of the *Tuscans*, who is said to have built it: situate on the River *Serchio*, not far from the mountains of *Luna*, whence the Country

N

•

Luca.

is at this day called *Lunagiana*. It is about three miles in compass, and contains about 24000 Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modest people, men of good judgment, and discreet, and by their wisdoms have preserved themselves a free Common-wealth, notwithstanding the attempts of more powerful neighbours: and they are very industrious also, and well seen in *Manufactures*, especially in weaving Silks and cloth of Gold, which they taught the *Florentines*. The City seated in a plain, compassed with Mountains on all sides except towards *Pisfoia*: so strongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the *Isle of Candy*, and the Town of *Livorno*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was less known) to be the four strongest Towns in the *Christian World*. The streets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad Free-stone, and most easily to walk on: the buildings very fair, built of Free-stone also, and beautified with stone, and pleasant Gardens. On the North-west stands a very strong Castle, near which lieth the Cathedral, pleasantly paved with Marble, but very dark, as most of the *Popish Churches*, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the three great Captains, *Cæsar*, *Pompey*, and *Crassus*, so pernicious to the *Roman Republick*. For *Pompey* desirous to maintain his authority, *Cæsar* to get honour, and *Crassus* to encrease his wealth, here united their Counsels: *Pompey's* authority to be upheld by *Cæsar's* Arms, and *Crassus* his riches; *Cæsar's* continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey's* power, and *Crassus* his money; and *Crassus* his estate to be secured by *Pompey's* greatness, and *Cæsar's* military reputation. This done, they made a partition of the *Roman Provinces* among themselves, assigning *Gaul* to *Cæsar*, *Spain* to *Pompey*, and to *Crassus*, *Syria*: which strong confederacy was the cause of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Crassus* being slain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cæsar* wanting a third man to poize the balance, fell first to discontents, then to civil Wars; which at last made *Cæsar* Lord of *Rome*. Upon which meeting, and the breach which succeeded afterwards, was grounded that so memorated speech of *Cicero*, that is to say, *Utinam Pompeius cum Cæsare societatem antequam iniisset, aut nunquam diremisset*.

But to return again to the affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire, it became possessed by the *Goths*, from them recovered by *Narses* with the rest of *Italy*. After this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface*, the Father of that notable *Virago*, the Countess *Mathildis*: who being deceased without issue, and the Emperours pretending to it as to an *Escheat*, the Citizens made a Common-purse, and bought their Liberty of the Emperour *Rodolphus* for 10000 Crowns. Some say the money was disbursed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithstanding this purchase and their title by it, the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* seized upon it again, under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Castruccio*, who had made himself absolute Master of it. By a *German Garrison* there left, it was sold to the *Genoese*; and having passed through many hands, the Emperour *Charles* the fourth got it once again: of whom they once more purchased their desired Liberties, for 25000 *Florens* of Gold; and to secure themselves thereof, demolished the Castle built by *Castruccio*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper strength, they have put themselves under the protection of their Potent neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conduced most to their preservation: and finding no security from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they severally tried; they put themselves at last into the Protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain*.

The Territories of this City extend in compass eighty miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* it self, being that of *Luni*, a Bishops See; all the rest ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good air, and very well peopled: which yield a Revenue to the publick Treasury of 80000 Crowns per annum; and out of which the State is able to raise (if there be occasion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. A great strength for so small a Signiory, but all too weak to save them from the Great Dukes clutches, if he did seriously attempt to force it, and would venture on the displeasure of the Catholic King: besides that, it is thought that he receives more profit thence in gifts and presents, by letting it stand as it is; than it would yield (considering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principal Magistrature is called the *Gonfalonere*, changeable every second month; assisted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every sixth month also; during which time they live together in the Palace, or Common Hall. Other inferior Officers I insist not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Bishops only, which acknowledge the Archbishop of *Florence* for their Metropolitane.

The Commonwealth of GENOA.

Directly West of *Tuscany*, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lyeth the Country anciently called *Liguria*, now *Riviera di Genoa*, the coast of *Genoa*, because it lyeth all along the Sea of *Genoa*; and by some *Il Genovesate*, from *Genoa* the Metropolis of this Country and Commonwealth. A Commonwealth once of a larger reputation and authority, than it is at the present; commanding heretofore the Islands of *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*, in the *Mediterranean*; *Lesbos*, and *Chio*, with some others in the *Greekish Seas*; the Town of *Capha*, or *Theodosia*, in the *Taurican Chersonese*; *Pera*, on the other side of *Constantinople*; and a good part of *Tuscany*.

It was also then so strong both in men and shipping, that they sent seven several Armies to the Wars of

Liguria.

of the *Holy Land*: and in the space of three dayes only armed once upon occasion of present service, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Pamphyli* (being vessels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and sixty Oars apiece;) and at another time, one hundred and sixty six Gallies, at a sudden pinch. By the advantage of this strength, they beat the *Pisans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corfica*, and the *Baleares*; compelling them to pay 135000 Crowns for their peace; they got a good share in the division of the Empire of *Constantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latins*; and held a very strong hand over the *Venetians*. These last they had once in so great an exigence, having vanquished their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Island of *Chioggia*, not far from *Venice*; that the Senate sent them a blank Charter, bidding them write down what conditions they pleased, which should be readily condescended to. But *Peter Doria*, Admiral of the *Genoan Fleet*, unreasonably proud of his advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own disposal. Whereupon the *Venetians* now made desperate, assailed the secure *Genoese*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they always had the worst, losing their Islands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capha*, and *Pera*, with their Islands in the *Greek Seas*, to the Great Turk; most of their holds in *Tuscany*, to the *Florentines*: their power at the last being so broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to set out a Navy fit for any enterprise. But these misfortunes were occasioned principally by their own divisions; the City being miserably torn in pieces by continual factions: first betwixt the *Doria* and *Spinoli*, on the one side, the *Filigi* and *Grimaldi* on the other, Anno 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri* and *Mollani*, against the *Salvatici* and *Embrici*, Anno 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spinoli* and *Doria* themselves, Anno 1336. And fourthly, between the Nobility and the Commons, 1339. Which Factions did so weaken them both at home and abroad, that having lost the greatest part of their Estate, they were fain to put themselves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the rest; having now nothing left them but *Liguria*, and the *Isle of Corfica*.

LIGURIA hath on the West, the River *Varus*, rising about the edge of *Provence* in *France*; on the East, the River *Macra*, by which parted from *Tuscany*: on the North, the *Apennine hills*; and on the South, the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian Seas*. It is in length an hundred and forty miles; that is to say, from the Port of *Luna* in the East, to that of *Monaco* in the West, which lyeth near to *Provence*; but the breadth not answerable to the length: and is divided generally into two parts or Provinces, the East, and the West, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians* were a stout and Warlike Nation, light and swift of body, well practised in laying Ambushes, and not discouraged by any overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the Nature of their Country served them very well, being rough, mountainous, and woody, and full of straight and dangerous passages; and in this Tract few open Towns, but many well-fortified Castles, so that without much labour they could neither be taken nor besieged. And if at any time they were vanquished in the open field, they had recourse unto these Castles, and other Fastnesses, hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains; in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decenti*, *Oxili*, *Eubariades*, and *Inganni*; all at last vanquished by the *Romans*, after the second *Punic War*: but not without much labour and pains, by reason of the Woods, Marshes, and Mountains, within and behind which they retired and saved themselves. Inasmuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quam vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times after this much molest the *Romans*, till at last *Posthumius* so disarmed them, that he scarce left them instruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Masters. In the division of whose large Territories by *Augustus Cæsar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italy*; as it was also one of the seventeen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by the Emperour *Constantine*: *Millain* at that time the Metropolis or Head-City of it. What kind of men they were in the breaking of the Western Empire, may be known by their actions both by Sea and Land, spoken of before: now more added to Merchandize than War, but most of all to Usury. A Vice which the Christians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the saying of a merry fellow, that in Christendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when Answer was made, that of all these there was rather too great a plenty than any scarcity; he replied, that if there were Scholars enough, so many would not be double or treble benefited; if Gentlemen enough, so many Peasants would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jews* enough, so many Christians would not profess *Usury*. The women are very fair and comely, wearing for the most their hair in tresses which they call over their backs: they wear no upper Garments but of cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under Garments of the purest stuff. The women here are privileged above all in *Italy*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publicly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at such time as the *French* were Masters of this Estate; who do allow their wives such excess of liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Cortezan*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the women of the Country or the City it self, do abuse this liberty, yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be past all shame; as they esteem the *Genoan Merchants*, (who make little reckoning of their promises, if not bound by writing) to be men without faith. Of which and other things concerning this Estate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne senza legni*, &c. that is to say, *Mountains without wood, Seas without fish, Men without faith, and Women without shame*.

The Country, as before said, is very mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy rocks towards the Sea: so that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidst those Hills are Vallies as rich a vein, as most others in *Italy*, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, Oranges, and the like fruits;

Genoa.

with such variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are seldom unfurnished of them in the month of December. It yieldeth also great plenty of most pleasant wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermazza*; and another which they call *Le lagrime di Christo*, or *Lachryma Christi*: this last so pleasing to the taste, that it is said, a Dutchman tasting of it as he travelled in these parts, fetcht a great sigh, and brake out into this expression; How happy had it been with us, *Si Christus lachrymatu esset in nostris Regionibus*, if CHRIST had shed some of his tears in the Country of Germany! Their greatest want is that of Corn, and therewith they do supply themselves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eastern part, are, 1 *Savona*, a strong Fortrefs against the *Florentines*, and one of the best pieces of this Republick. 2 *Pontremuli* (*Pons Remuli*, as the *Latins* call it) of as great consequence as that, but possessed by the *Spaniards*. 3 *Lerici*, an Haven in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. 4 *Sestri*, a reasonable good place, remarkable for as white bread, and as pleasant wine, as any in Italy. 5 *Fino*, a Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, anciently called *Portus Delphinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatness: but they are set so thick, and intermingled with so many goodly houses both on the hills and the vallies, that for the space of twenty miles, the whole Country seems to be one continual building.

In the west part the Towns of most importance are, 1 *Monaco*, of old called *Monocem*, and *Portus Herculis*, beautified with a commodious Haven: belonging not long since to the *Spaniards*, who bought it for 100000 Crowns of the *Grimaldi* then its proper Owners, but of late gotten by the *French* under colour of a later contract. 2 *Ventimiglia*, a good Town, and sweetly seated. 3 *Savona*, taken by the *Genoese*, Anno 1250. before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the interview betwixt *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, and *Lewis* the 12th. of *France*, Anno 1507. Who having been deadly enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniards*, met at this Town, and here most strangely relied upon one another: *Lewis* first boarding *Ferdinand's* Gallie; and *Ferdinand* for divers days feasting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his possession, as Protector of the Estate of *Genoa*. Which kind of interviews (I note this only by the way) as they chance but seldom; so when they do, they prove for the most part dangerous unto one of the parties: great enmities not being easily forgot by persons of a publick Interest. Nay, that notable Statesman *Philip de Comines* utterly disliked all such meetings of Princes, though in amity and good correspondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis* the 11th. of *France*, and *Henry* of *Castile*; who meeting purposely, Anno 1463. to change some friendly words together, took such dislike at each others person and behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an interview betwixt *Edward* the fourth of *England*, and the same King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Fredrick* the Emperour, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; with divers others. His reasons I purposely omit, as not pertinent to my present undertaking, and make haste again unto the Town; which is about a mile and an half in circuit, and hath many stately buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: being taken from the *Genoese* by the *Visconti*, and the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Milain*, from them by the *French*, and at last recovered again by those of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yielded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, viz. *Gregory* the 7th. *Julio* the 2d. and *Sixtus* the 4th. which is as much as *Genoa* it self can brag of. 4 *Nola*, upon the Sea side, a commodious Haven. 5 *Finali*, a goodly Port Town also, and very well fortified; honoured a long time with the title of a Marquise, one of the seven founded by the Emperour *Otho*, (of which more hereafter;) but taken from the last Marquess by the Count of *Fuenter*, then Governour of *Milain* for the King of *Spain*, and garrisoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*, the poor Marquess being put off with an Annual Pension, Anno 1602. 6 *Milefino*, a small Town adjoining upon the same right by the *Spaniards* also; who by these pieces hath a strong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7 But the great Ornament of those parts of Italy, is the City of *Genoa*, first built, say some, by *Jannus* the son of *Saturn*; as others say, by *Jannus Genius Priscus*, an Italian or *Tuscan* King. But by whomsoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miserably destroyed by *Mago* the brother of *Annibal*, repaired by *Lucretius Sulpicius*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whose cause and quarrel it was ruined: once again spoiled and wasted by *Rotharis* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, Anno 660. or thereabouts; but built more beautiful than before by *Charles* the Great. On his Foundation it now stands, situate on the shore of the *Ligurian* or *Ligurian* Seas, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an hill, full of stately Palaces, it giveth a most pleasant and magnificent prospect. It is in compass six miles, of an orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art; towards the Land by Art and Nature, there being but one way to come to it by Land, and that over steep and craggy Rocks. The streets are narrow, paved with Flint, and most of them on the sides of the hill; which is the reason that they use Horse-litters here in stead of Coaches, and most of the better sort are carried on mens shoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs: which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada Nuova*, or the New-street, reaching from the West to North-east, is of a very fair breadth: each house whereof is built with such Kingly magnificence, that it is thought to be the fairest street in the World. In all the rest the buildings for the height of two stories are made of Marble, curiously wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be used any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, safe from the violence of Tempests, and well fortified: so that the *Spaniards* use to say, that were the Catholic King absolute Lord of *Marseilles* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in Italy, he might command the whole world. After the re-edifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the people here continued subject to his Successors; till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of Italy, made them free, Anno 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318. when being shrewdly weakened in their Estate, they were fain to give themselves to Pope *John* the 2d. after to *Robert* King of *Naples*. But being

Corsica.

being soon weary of a foreign Government, the people in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Bocca Negra*, to be their Duke, Anno 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Guelfian* Faction, in the reign of *Charles* the 7th. under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many insolencies, they put themselves under the protection of the Dukes of *Milain*, Anno 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of those Princes, in great tranquility, who never carried towards them any rigorous hand; save that once *D. Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great mass of money. But as the tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the house of a *Genoese*, and walking in a Garden with him, was shewed an herb growing there called *Basil*, which stroaking gently, he smelt thence a most pleasing savour, but as unfavourable a smell when he strained it hard. The *Genoese* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently stroke the hand of his puissance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by obedience; but may chance to prove rebellious, if he do oppress it. But *Lodowick* being taken prisoner by King *Lewis* the 12th. they first came under the command of the *French*, and then of the *Spaniards*; according as those Nations had possession of the State of *Milain*; and after many changes and alterations, obtained again their freedom of King *Francis* the first. Which being not able to preserve by their proper strength, they finally put themselves under the shelter of the *Spaniards*, who is now their Protector, and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, Anno 1600. a Million and a half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Popes Authority; that so the King might be indebted to that See; for most of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Masters of this City. The same course of non-payment the King took with the rest of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the rest, insomuch that it was commonly said in Italy, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange in one day, than *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter, had ever made good in all his life. And thus you see this great City which commanded the Ocean, the Lady of so many Islands, and a great Moderator of the affairs of Italy, fain to put her self into the protection of a foreign Prince; and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treasure; which he continually raiseth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a sorry Pay-master. And if the Wars he had with *England* did so drain their purses (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him so indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no question but the revolt of *Catalogne*, and the lasting Wars made against him by the *French* in so many places, have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithstanding this people do so thrive under his protection, and draw so great commodity from their Trade with *Spain*, that it is thought their private men were never richer, the publick Treasury never fuller then it is at the present.

CORSICA is an Island in the *Ligurian* or *Ligurian* Sea, opposite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is distant about sixty miles; and lying just North of the Isle of *Sardinia*, from which it is distant seven miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty miles, seventy in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longest day being almost fifteen hours.

The people are stubborn, poor, unlearned; supposed to be more cruel than other Nations, and so affirmed to be by *Cesar* his Book of Commentaries; the Progeny, as some say, of the 52 daughters of *Thespius*, who being all got with child in one night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Island, after peopled by them. From one of these sons named *Cyrnus*, the Island had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurreth in some old Greek Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annian* his Authors. And that of *Eusebius*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corsica* from a woman so named, dwelling in the coast of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the first that discovered it. But these Originals I look on, the first especially, as the worst kind of Romances: the name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Punic* *Keranos*, which signifies a horn or corner, by reason of the many Promontories with which it shoots into the Sea. *Corsica insula multis promontoriis angulosa est*, as it is in *Isidore*, Lib. 15. cap. 6. And for the name of *Corsica*, I should derive it rather from the *Corfi* (by which name the Inhabitants hereof are called in most Latin Writers) one of the two Nations of most note in the neighbouring Island of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi in ea populi Balari, & Corfi*, as we find in *Pliny*. Which *Corfi*, or some of them, being overborn by some new Invaders (which the Island of *Sardinia* was seldom free of) were fain to shift their seat, and came over hither.

This Country yieldeth excellent Dogs for game, good Horses, fierce Mastiffs; and a beast called *Mus-fol*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Island, and *Sardinia* only, but there called *Alufones*, or *Alufriances*, (for I conceive they are the same under divers names) said to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; which skin is of such incredible hardness, that the beast being cast headlong against a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimble flies from his Enemy to his den.

The soil by reason of the mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitful; producing Corn in less plenty, but the best Wines, and such as the old *Romans* well relished, in good measure. It produceth also Oyl, Figs, Raisins, and Honey: the first three in a mediocrity of goodness, the last somewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholesome. It aboundeth also with *Alum*, Box-tree, Iron Mines, and the Tree called *Taxus*, whose poisonous Berries, though in taste pleasing, are much fed on by Bees; and therefore thought to be the cause of the bitterness of the Honey. In some few places where the Rivers have their currents, especially towards *Liguria*; it recompenseth by its fertility in bearing all manner of grain, the barrenness of the mountains. Which mountains cutting through the midst it, divide the whole Island into *Cismontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and *Transmontanum*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet so, that the people on each side call themselves the *Cis-*

Corfica.

montanes, and the other the *Tramontanes*. Both of them speak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spanish*.

For Rivers, there are none of note, the principal of those which the Island yields, being called *Gelo*, and *Travignano*. And as for Cities, some of the Ancients reckoned 33, which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Castles only; there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies, the one planted by *Marinus*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of some Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Bishops See. But now the place of most importance, is the Town of *Bastia*, seated in the North-east part of the Island, opposite almost unto *Alleria*; with a commodious Haven to it, and a strong Garrison to defend it: as being the ordinary seat of the Governour sent thither from *Genoa*; and of the Bishop of *Alleria*, who makes there his residence. 2. *Aiazze*, a reasonable strong Town, and a Bishops See; and so is also 3. *Nebbia*, called *Cheridenza*. 2. *Aiazze*, a reasonable strong Town, and a Bishops See; and so is also 3. *Nebbia*, called *Cheridenza*. Then there is 4. *Porto Vecchio*, built not long since in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony sent from *Genoa*. 5. *St. Florence*, a Port-town in the Northern part in the midst betwixt *Nebbia* and *Mariana*: and 6. *St. Boniface*, called by *Ptolomy*, *Portus Syracusanus*, just opposite unto it in the South corner of the Isle; both of them places of good safety, and capable of the greatest vessels that frequent those Seas.

Who were the first Inhabitants is not easily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had some footing here, is manifest by that of *Callimachus* an old Greek Poet, who calleth it *Ἰσολία Κίπῳ*, the *Phœnician Cymus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which questionless he mistook for *Tyrii*) call the *Phœnices* out of this Island. But whether these *Phœnices* did first inhabit it, or only had a Colony in some part thereof, is not demonstrable from those Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a conquest of it, and held it till the time of the first *Punic War*; when they were driven thence by the valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally subdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province, till some time after; when it was fully conquered by *C. Papirius*, A.P.C. 541. This Island and *Sardinia* at the first being joyned together, and governed by one *Prætor* only; but afterwards made two distinct Provinces, immediately subject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*, and consequently members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire, it became a prey unto the *Vandals*, who used to send their condemned persons out of *Africa* thither, to fell Timber for shipping; the Country even till then being very much over-grown with woods. Afterwards with the rest of the Islands of the *Mediterranean*, it was under the power of the *Saracens*, against whom *Ademar* the Count or Governour of *Genoa* armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquished them in a fight at Sea, but lost his life in the action: which notwithstanding the *Genoese* followed their good fortune, seized on the Island, and carried thence 13 of the Enemies Ships. The *Pisans* after this got possession of it, but being vanquished by the *Genoese* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerours. Since that it hath always followed the fortune of *Genoa*, save that it remained somewhat longer than that City did in the hand of the *French*, who in the year 1554, seized on it by the aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great dishonour of Christianity) they entertained in their wars against *Charles* the fifth; but in the end, restored it to the Common-wealth, upon the peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno 1559. And for securing of this Island to the State of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handsome project: employing none but natural *Genoese* to serve in the Garrisons of the Island, the better to keep under this untractable people; and filling all their Garrisons upon the Continent with natural *Corficans*, whereby the Island is unfurnished of its ablest men, who also serve for hostages of the publick faith.

Having thus took a brief view of the several parts and members of this Common-wealth, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. First for the Government, the principal of their Magistracies hath the name of Duke; as titular as the Duke of *Venice*, but of less esteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called most properly the *Mayor of Genoa*. For these two years he dwells in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *Germans* for the Guard of his person; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth some resemblance of a *Negative voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his house as a private person, but so, that during life he hath the office of a *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are assistant eight principal Officers, who sit upon the same Form with him, and continue in their Office for two years also; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeury*: but he and they in matters of most weight and moment, subordinate to the *General Council*, consisting of 400 persons, all of them Gentlemen of the City; who with the nine before remembered do constitute the body of the Common-wealth. Under this form they have continued ever since by the power and goodness of *Andreas Doria* (who might have made himself their Prince) they were discharged of their subjection to the *French*, Anno 1528. never in danger of relapsing to their former servitude, but in the reasonable practice of the *Elischi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to possess themselves of the Principality under protection of the *French*, had so laid their plot, that *Augustine di Elischi*, who was designed to be their Duke, had in the night time seized on the Navy, and slain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one *Gallie* to another to make sure of all, stumbled and fell into the Sea, where he and his ambitious treasons were both drowned together.

As for their Forces, there are within the *Signeury* 10000 men ready to arm at any time, as they see occasion; 25 Gallies always ready in the publick *Arsenal*, and four continually at Sea for defence of their Trading. Sufficient strength to save them from a petty force, though not to guard them from the power of a strong Invader. But the chief strength which they rely on, is the King of *Spain*; whose

whose

Lombardie.

whose protection, though it costs them dear, is worth their money; and they have prospered so well by it, that notwithstanding all the losses which they have sustained, it is supposed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth (besides the Treasury of *S. George*, which is very rich, and managed as a distinct body from the Publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no less than 430000 Crowns per annum.

As for the Treasury of *S. George*, though it contain no part of the publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State distinct: yet is it of such ready use, so able at all times to furnish the Republick with vast sums of money; that the security and preservation of this Common-wealth depends much upon it. The Institution and Administration whereof, together with the benefit which from hence redoundeth unto this Estate, I cannot better present to the Readers view, than in the words of *Machiavel* the greatest Politick of his times; who in his History of *Florence* hath expressed it thus. "Post distinsum illud bellum quod Genoveses multis abhinc annis cum Venetis gesserunt, &c. After that tedious War between the *Genoese* and *Venetians* was ended in the year 1381. and that the *Genoese* found themselves unable to repay those moneys, which they had taken up of their private Citizens in pursuance thereof, they thought it best to assign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that so in tract of time the whole debt might be satisfied; and for that end allotted them a Common Hall, there to deliberate and determine of their affairs. These men thus made the Masters of the publick Taxes, elect among themselves a Common-Council of an hundred; and over them eight Officers of especial power, to order and direct the rest, and to dispose of the *Intrade*: which Corporation so established, they entitled *St. Georges Bank*. It happened afterward, that the Republick wanting more moneys, was glad to have recourse unto *St. George*; who growing wealthy by the orderly managing of his stock, was best able to relieve them in their necessities: and as before they assigned their Taxes over to him, so now, *ditionem suam oppignorabant*, they Mortgaged all their Deniain. So that *St. George* continually waxing richer, and the State poorer, this Corporation became possessed at last, of almost all the Towns and Territories of the Common-wealth: all which they governed by their own Magistrates, chosen by common suffrage from among themselves. It followed hereupon, that the common People bearing less respect unto the Publick, applied themselves unto *St. George*: this being always orderly and prudently governed, that many times inclining to Tyranny: this never changing Officers, or form of Government, that subject to the proud ambitious lusts of each Usurper, whether Domestical or Foreign. Inasmuch that when the two potent Families of the *Fregosi* and *Adorni*, contended for the Sovereignty in this Estate, most of the People looked upon it as a Quarrel which concerned them not: *St. George* not meddling more in it, than to take an Oath of the prevailing Faction, to preserve his liberties. *Rarissimo sane exemplo, &c.* A most excellent and rare thing (saith he) never found out by any of the old Philosophers in their imaginary Forms of a Common-wealth: that in the same State, and the same People, one may see at the same time, both Tyranny and Liberty, Justice and Oppression, Civility and Misgovernments: This only Corporation preserving in the Common-wealth its ancient lustre. So that in case *St. George* should in the end become possessed of the remainder of the Patrimony and Estate thereof, as it is possible it may; the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpose that great Master of *State-craft*; a man of less impiety, and more regular life, than some of those who have traduced him for an Atheist.

Here are within this Common-wealth,
Archbishops 1. Bishops 14.

The Estates of LOMBARDIE.

LOMBARDIE is bounded on the East with *Romandiola*, and the Estate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the West, with that part of the *Alpes*, which divides *Italy* from *France*; on the North; (reckoning *Marca Trevigiana* within the bounds hereof) with that part of the *Alpes* which lyeth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Cisalpina*, whereof we shall speak more anon; and took this new name from the *Lombards*, or *Longobardi*, a people of *Germany* (of whom we have already spoken, but shall speak more at large when we come to *Hungary*;) who coming out of *Pannonia* possessed themselves of a great part of *Italy*, but left their name to this Tract only. A tract of ground of which it may be truly said, that as *Italy* is the garden of *Europe*, so *Lombardy* is the garden of *Italy*, or the fairest flower in all that garden. A Country of so rich a mixture, that such another piece of ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for Fields and Pastures shaded with such excellent fruits, for plenty of Fowl, Fish, Corn, and Wine, cannot be found again in our Western World. So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain*, have strived so eagerly and with such an effusion of Christian blood for the Dutchy of *Milain*, a part only (though the richest part) of this goodly Country; and but a poor of Earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing besides the Principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the name of *Gallia Cisalpina*: called *Gallia* from the *Galls*, who being drawn over

W
Lombardie.

over the *Alpes* by the taste of the sweet *Italian Wines*, in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus* King of *Rome*, under the conduct and command of *Belovesus* son of *Ambigatus* Kings of the *Celte*, subdued the *Natives*, and possessed themselves of all the Country, from the *West* parts of the *Tuscan Sea* and *Apennine hills* to the *Adriatick*; and from the *Alpes* to the River *Rubicon* on the North-east, and the River *Arno* on the South-east. *Cisalpine* was called because it lay on that side of the *Alpes* which was next to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other side of the Mountains, which had the name of *Transalpine*. It was also called *Gallia Togata*, because the people of it being civilized, conformed themselves to the *Roman habit*: that on the other side of the *Alpes* being called *Braccata*, because they kept themselves to their former Mantles (resembling those now worn by the vulgar *Irish*) which by the *Latines* were called *Bracca*. For though the word *Bracca* in some of our common Dictionaries be rendered Gally-slops or Breeches (and possibly the word *Breeches* may be thence derived) which made me conceive that the habit heretofore of those *Galls* was a kind of *Trowsers*, such as those usually worn by the *Irish Foot-men*: yet when I find in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sago imposita*, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Cassocks, I conceive I had good reason to translate it otherwise.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to say, 1. The *Insulres*, inhabiting from the *Alpes* to the River *Arno*, and consequently spreading over the Dukedoms of *Millaine*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Adrianus*, *Piemont*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Florence*: 2. The *Cenomani* who lay next the *Insulres* possessing the greatest part of *Trevigiana*: 3. The *Boii*, taking up the rest of *Trevigiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and so much of *Romandiola* as lyeth on the North-west side of the River *Rubicon*: 4. The *Senones* who passing over the *Rubicon* inhabited the rest of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Urbine*. Of these the *Senones* (or *Sennones* as *Ptolomie* calls them) were of greatest fame. These were the men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman Armies* at the battle of *Allia*, followed their victory unto *Rome*, which they sacked and burned: nothing made good in all the City but the *Capitol* only, which also had been taken by them, *ni Anseres diis dormientibus vigilassent*, as *S. Augustine* scoffs it, if the Geese had not been more watchful than their Gods, or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 1000 pound weight of Gold to forsake the City: but before the money was received, they were assaulted by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town and vanquished in a set battle, about eight miles off; who is therefore called *Romes second Founder*. This happened, Anno *V.C.* 364. Vanquished again at the River *Aniene*, by *T. Quintius* the Dictator; and after that Anno *V.C.* 404. by the said *Camillus*, being then 80 years of age, in the *Pontine fields*: they got the *Boii* to assist them, and after joyned with the *Samites*, *Tuscans*, and other Nations in a common War. But being for the most part beaten, and the War carried to their own doors a little before the coming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italy*, by *M. Curius*, the Consul: they were by him driven out of their own Country; and finally so slaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Adimion*, Anno *V.C.* 470. that there was scarce any left of all that Nation, to brag that any of their Ancestors had set fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus destroyed, the *Romans* suffered the rest of the *Gallick Nations* to remain in quiet till the end of the first *Punic War*, when being grown of more strength, and at very good leisure, they took up Arms against the *Boii*, who fearing the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their aid both the *Insulrians* and *Transalpines*; making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horse. Anno *V.C.* 528. Discomfited by *Emilius* the *Roman Consul*, near *Telamon* a City of *Tuscany*, with the slaughter of 40000 of their men; they were set upon in their own Country shortly after by the Consul *Flaminius*, vanquished and mulcted with the loss of one half thereof: most of them after this disaster passing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Insulres* and the *Cenomani*, being thus left unto themselves (the remainders of the *Transalpines* excepted only) they were invaded the next year after, (Anno *V.C.* 431.) under the Consuls *M. Claudius Marcellus* and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loss of their Armies, and some of their best Towns, they did yield themselves: the *Romans* so becoming Masters of all this Country. And yet it was accomplished as a Province distinct from *Italy*, until the settling of the Empire in *Augustus Caesar*, who dividing *Italy* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Cisalpine*; that is to say, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Transpadana*: as afterwards it made up four of the seven Provinces of the *Diocesi* of *Italy*, according to the distribution of it which was made by *Constantine*. How it came with the rest of *Italy* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the rest of that Kingdom, hath been shewn already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the *Kings of Germany*; it did so far preserve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperours were sometimes Crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*: as at *Aken* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a silver Crown for the Realm of *Germany*: and with a golden Crown at *Rome*, for the sacred Empire. But the Emperour being weakened by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it; and parcelled in conclusion, amongst many Princes, as it still continueth.

The *Lombards* being Masters of it, and having given it their own name, divided it by the River *Po*, into *Longobardia Cispadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Apennine Mountains*: and *Transpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alpes*: the first of which the old *Romans* called *Emilia*, from *Emilius Lepidus*, the Founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconsul of it. In the division of *Italy* by *Augustus Caesar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the name of *Italia Transpadana*, by which name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentissimum Italia latus*, the most flourishing part of all *Italy*. But this division being long since worn out of use, and the whole Country being cantoned into many Estates, as before was said; we

we will consider it at the present as it stands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Trevigiana*, described already, make up *Transpadana*: and those of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Monteferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Cispadana*.

W
Millain.

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THE Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the East, the Estates of *Mantua* and *Parma*; on the West, *Piemont*, and some part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North, *Marca Trivigiana*; and on the South, the *Apennine* which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Insulres*, originally a Tribe of the *Hedui* inhabiting in those parts of the *Gallia* beyond the *Alpes*, which now make up the Dukedom of *Burgundie*: but crossing the Mountains with the rest of the *Gallick Nation* spoken of before, they settled here, built the City of *Millain*, and finally became one of the greatest Tribes of the *Cisalpine Galls*: from thence this Country hath the name of *Insulbria Ducatus* in some of the nearer Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanensis*, from *Mediolanum*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1. *Padus*, 2. *Addua*, 3. *Ollus*, and 4. *Ticino*; of which somewhat hath been said already; and besides those it hath also in it the Lake called anciently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Como* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 miles in length.

The chief Cities and places of note are, 1. *Modocum*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatness; the fame thereof arising from the Iron Crown (kept in a Monastery here) wherewith some of the Emperours have been crowned by the Archbishops of *Millain*. A custom taken up from the Kings of the *Ostrogothes*, who are said to have first used the same, in testimony that they had won their Estates by Iron. 2. *Pavia*, or *Papia*, seated on the Flood *Ticino*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeazzo*, the first Duke thereof; made an University by *Charles* the fourth, Anno 1361. and famous for the battle, in which *Francis* the first of *France* was taken prisoner by *Charles* the fifth, Anno 1525. It is seated, as before was said, on the Flood *Ticino*, about four miles from the *Po*, or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City so great a breadth, that the Bridge over it is no less than 200 walking paces long; built of Free-stone, and covered over head with a roof supported all along with Pillars. From this River the City it self was anciently called *Ticinum*; and took the name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or as some say, *quasi Patria piorum* (the two first syllables of those words being joyned together) by reason of the many godly men it did produce. It lyeth in length from East to West, a new fair street dividing it in the very midst: on the West side whereof are two handsome Market-places, and a strong Castle built by *Valentius* the first Duke of *Millain*; whose Tomb, together with that of *Luithprandus* King of the *Lombards*, are here still remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being so pleased with the situation of the place, that they made it the Seat-royal of their Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the best endowed in *Italy*, if not in *Europe*; the Revenues of it amounting to 300000 Crowns per annum. 3. *Como*, the Birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handsome Town situate on the South side of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the name of *Lago di Como*: into which Lake and through it runs the *Addua*, and yet the waters do not mingle: that of the River passing over those of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair houses and handsome Villages, which do much beautify the place; and in the midst thereof an Island called *Comacina*, in which there was a strong Fortrefs in former times, wherein the *Longobardian Kings* did preserve their Treasury. 4. *Lodi*, or *Lauda* in the *Latin*, seated in a prosperous soyl, and blessed with a painful and industrious people. 5. *Novara*, situate upon an high hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families: of right belonging to the *Spaniard*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Maginus* wrote, consigned over upon some conditions to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is situate within the Dukedom of *Montferat*; and so is 6. *Alexandria* also, once a poor small Village, known by the name of *Roboretum*, from a Grove of Oaks adjoining to it: afterwards being raised to its present greatness, by the joyned purses of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*, in honour of the Emperour it was called *Cæsarea*. But in short time these people siding with the Popes, drew on themselves the anger of the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*: who having in a manner desolated the City of *Millain*, the people thereof at the destruction of the City; retired to this Town; calling it in honour of Pope *Alexander* the third, whose part they then took against the Emperour, by the name of *Alexandria*, which it still retaineth. It is now the strongest outwork of the whole *Duchy*, well fortified against all assaults and batteries, which may come from *France*. 7. *Marignano*, situate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers*, by King *Francis* the first; and now the title of a Marquess. 8. *Cremona*, situate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthy soyl; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this day; and of such fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the name of *Cremona* the faithful. It was built in the first year of the second *Punic War*, and burnt to the ground by *Vespasian* Souldiers, after the defeat of *Pitellius* his Forces: which defeat was given under the Walls of this Town. For when *Antoninus Vespasian* General, first after his Victory entred into it, he went into a Bath to wash away the sweat and blood from his body: where finding the water somewhat too cold, he said by chance, that it should anon be made hotter. Which words the Souldiers applying to their greedy desires, set fire on the Town; and spent four days in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Vespasian* it was again

Millain. again re-edified, and is now grown famous for the high Tower; from which the by-word, *Una turris in Cremona, unus Petrus in Roma, unus portus in Ancona.* 9 *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Diocese of *Italy*; called therefore *Milvianus* & *Imilias*, the Metropolis or Mother City of *Italy*, as *Dionysius* one of the B Shops hereof is called the Metropolis of *Italy* by St. *Athanasius*. At this time the fairest and the biggest of all *Lombardy*, having a Castle so strongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable. A City very populous, containing 200000 persons; and of great trade, here being private shops equalling the publick Store-houses of other places; the people consequently so rich, that the wife of every mechanic will flant it in her silks and taffeties. This City is said to have been built by the *Galls*, 359 years before Christ. It is seven miles in circuit, and honoured with an University, wherein flourished *Hermolani Barbarus*, *Calius Rhodiginus*, and *Cardanus*. Seated it is in as commodious a soyl as any in *Italy*, environed with water by two great channels; the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Tesio* or *Athesio*; which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in so great abundance, that things there are at very cheap rates; and add much also to the industry of the Inhabitants in the vending and dispersing of their Manufactures, which are of great esteem in most parts of the World. The buildings of the City generally are fair and stately, but three especially commended for their magnificence; that is to say, the Castle, the Hospital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth use to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apostle was its first Bishop, and St. *Ambrose* one of his Successors; that formerly their Bishop stood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much privileged as that; and that since those times they have given unto the World four Popes, that is to say, *Alexander* the 2^d. *Urban* the 3^d. *Celestine* the 5th. and of late, *Gregory* the 14th.

As for the fortunes of it, it continued in the power of the *French*, and the Kings of *Italy* of that Nation, from the destruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of *Italy* fell from the house of *Charles* the Great, and came at last into the hands of the *German* Emperours. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, from whose obedience it revolted Anno 1161. in behalf of Pope *Alexander* the third; the Emperour divers times defacing the City, and the people still ministring fresh occasions of dislike and quarrel. *Beatrice* the wife of *Frederick*, coming to see the City, without any ill intentions to it; was by the irreverent people first imprisoned, and then most barbarously used. For setting her upon a Mule, they turned her face towards the tail, which they made her hold in stead of a bridle; and having thus shewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible affront, the Emperour besieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the people to die without mercy, but such as would undergo this ransom. Between the buttocks of a skittish and kicking Mule, there was fattened a bunch of Figs; one or more of which, such as desired to live must snatch out with their teeth, their hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing through the streets. A condition which most of them accepted; and thereupon gave occasion to the custom used among the *Italians*: who when they intend to scoff or disgrace a man, are wont to put their thumb betwixt two of their fingers, saying *Ecco la Fico*; a disgrace answerable to that of making Horns (in *England*) to him that is suspected to be a Cuckold. The City after this, rebelling and again taken by the Emperour, he levelled it unto the ground, pulled down the walls; and caused the whole ground on which it stood, to be ploughed up, and sowed with salt; seeming to threaten by that Emblem, that it should never be re-edified. Which notwithstanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope with the help of these *Millanese* and the *Venetians*, had at last the better of the Emperour; whom he enjoyed, after a vile submission, to undertake a journey to the *Holy Land*. Freed from the Emperour, they began to live after the form of a Republick; in which condition they continued about 56 years: when *Otho*, surnamed *Vesconti* (*quasi* his *Comes*, because he was Lord of *Millain* and *Angerona*) assumed the title to himself, and settled it upon that Family after his decease; but so that for the most part they were under the command of the *German* Emperours, and to them accountable. *Galeaz* the first, so called (as some write) because the Cocks crowed more then ordinarily at the time of his birth, added to the Estate hereof the Cities of *Crema*, and *Cremona*. In the person of *John Galeaz* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperour *Wenceslaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready money; which *John* increased so mightily in wealth and power, that he had 29 Cities under his Command; and died as he was going to *Florence* to be crowned King of *Tuscany*. To him succeeded *John Maria*, and after him his brother *Philip*: who in his life had married his only daughter (but illegitimate) to *Francisco Sforza*, the best Commander of his times; and at his death appointed *Alfonso* of *Aragon*, King of *Naples* for his Heir and Successor. Before *Alfonso* could take any benefit of this designation, *Sforza* was quietly possessed both of the City and the loves of the people. This *Francis Sforza* (I must needs crave leave to tell this story) was the son of *James Attendulo*, a plain Country-man, who going to his labour with his Axe in his hand, whilst a great Army was passing by him, compared the misery and unpleasingness of his present condition, with those fair probabilities which a Martial life did present unto him. And being in a great dispute within himself what were best to do, he presently fell upon a resolution of putting the question to the determination of the Heavenly Providence; by calling his Axe unto the top of a tree next to him: conditioning with himself, that if the Axe came down again, he would contentedly apply himself to his wonted labour; but if it hung upon the boughs, he would betake himself unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in passage. He did so, the Axe hung upon the boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived so well in that employment, that he became one of the best Captains of his time; surnamed *de Cotoniogla* from the place of his dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatness of his noble courage. By *Antonia* the Daughter of *Francis di Casale*, the Lord of *Cortona*, he was the Father of this *Francis Sforza*.

Sforza whom now we speak of; who was so fortunate a Commander in the wars of *Italy*, that to oblige him to his party, *Philip* the Duke of *Millain* bestowed his daughter upon him, and thereby a fair title to this great Estate, which he successively obtained against all pretenders. In his line it continued till the coming of *Lewis* the twelfth of *France*, the son of *Charles*, and nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* the sole daughter of *John Galeaz* the first Duke: who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* (be trayed by the *Switzers*) into his hands, carried him prisoner into *France*, and possessed himself of the estate. Outed not long after by the confederate Princes of *Italy*, who were jealous of so great a neighbour; he left the cause and quarrel unto *Francis* the first, his next successor in that Kingdom: in pursuance whereof, it is said by *Bellay* a *French* Writer, that the use of Muskets was first known. But *Francis* being in conclusion taken at the battle of *Pavia*, and carried prisoner into *Spain*; for his release, was forced to release all claim unto this Estate. A release long before endeavoured by some *French* Politicians, because the pretensions hereunto had brought such damage to that Crown: and no less eagerly opposed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the same reason that *Scipio Nasica* did oppose the destruction of *Carthage*, that is to say) because it did not only keep the *French* Nation in continual discipline of War; but served for a purgation of idle and superfluous people. Yet notwithstanding this release, *Francis* renewed the War again; and laid siege to *Millain*, then under the command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a *Spanish* Garrison: during which war, the wretched *Millanese* endured the worst of miseries. For first the Governor, under colour of Providing pay for his souldiers, got all the victuals of the Town into the Castle, to be sold again at his own price: which many of the poorer sort not able to pay, perished of famine in the streets. And on the other side, his souldiers which were quartered in most parts of the City, used when they wanted money, to chain up their Hosts, and then to put them to a ransom. Such as upon this barbarous usage fled out of the City, had their Goods confiscate: on which there followed such a disconsolate defolation, that the chief streets were over-grown with nettles and brambles. In this miserable estate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperour having totally driven out the *French*, restored it to *Francis Sforza*; brother to the last Duke *Maximilian*, and son of that *Lodowick*, who to advance himself unto this Estate, had most improvidently taught the *French* the way into *Italy*. But this *Francis* dying without issue, and the house of *Sforza* failing in him; the Emperour entred on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the same to his successors in the Realm of *Spain*. This said, we will sum up the whole story of this Estate, in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

- 1277 1 *Otho Visconti* Archbishop of *Millain*.
- 1295 2 *Matthew*, Brothers son to *Otho*, confirmed in his command of *Millain* by *Albertus* the Emperour.
- 1323 3 *Galeaz Visconti*, son of *Matthew*, disseized of his command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperour.
- 1329 4 *Attilio Visconti*, son of *Galeaz*, confirmed in his Fathers power by the same *Lewis* the Emperour.
- 1339 5 *Luchino Visconti*, brother to *Galeaz*.
- 1349 6 *John Visconti*, the brother of *Luchino*.
- 1354 7 *Galeaz* II. son of *Stephen*, the brother of *John*.
- 1378 8 *John Galeaz*, son of the first *Galeaz*, created by the Emperour *Wenceslaus*, the first Duke of *Millain*, An. 1395.
- 1402 9 *John Maria*, son of *John Galeaz*, slain by the people for his horrible tyrannies.
- 1412 10 *Philip Maria*, the last of the *Visconti*, which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great power in swaying the affairs in *Italy*. He died An. 1446; the *Millanese* for some years resuming their former liberty.
- 1446 11 *Francis Sforza*, in right of his wife *Blanch* the base daughter of *Philip*, seconded by the power of the sword, admitted Duke by the general consent of the people of *Millain*; one of the Knights of the noble Order of the *Garter*.
- 1461 12 *Galeaz Sforza*, a valiant, but libidinous Prince, cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
- 1477 13 *John Galeaz Sforza*, privately made way (as it was supposed) by his Uncle *Lodowick*.
- 1494 14 *Lodowick Sforza*, the son of *Francis*, and brother of *Galeaz*, who to secure himself of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the *French* into *Italy*.
- 1501 15 *Lewis* the XII. of *France*; son unto *Charles*, and nephew to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*; by *Valentina* daughter to *John* the first Duke of *Millain*; vanquished *Lodowick*, carried him prisoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himself.
- 1513 16 *Maximilian Sforza*, the son of *Lodowick*, restored to the Dukedom by the power of the *Switzers*, and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis* the first, Son-in-law and Successor to King *Lewis* the 12th in the Kingdom of *France*.
- 1529 17 *Francis Sforza*, brother of *Maximilian*, restored to the Estate, and the *French* expelled by the puissance of *Charles* the 5th; who after the death of this Duke *Francis* (the last of the *Sforzas*) Anno 1535, united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of such great extent, and power, as in former times; there being but nine Cities remaining of those 29, which were once under the command of the Dukes hereof; the rest being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*, the Dukes of *Atantha*, and *Parma*. And yet is this accounted the prime Dukedom of *Christendom* (as *Flanders* was accounted the prime Barlond of it) affording the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue, might it come

Mantua.

come clear unto his Coffers. But what with the discharge of his Garrison-souldiers, the defraying of his Vice-roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Ministers; it is conceived that he spends more on it than he getteth.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Serpent *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; in his Gorge an Infant *Gules*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Saracen*, vanquished by *Otho* the first of the *Visconti* in the *Holy-land*.

There are in this Dukedom,
Archbishop 1. Bishops 6.

The Dukedom of MANTUA.

THE Dukedom of *MANTUA*, is bounded on the West, with *Millain*; on the East, with *Romandi-ala*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Country about *Mantua* is reasonably good, and yieldeth all sorts of Fruits being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Pastures, the very High-ways by the fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place, as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be so civil, and well-bred, as the rest of *Italy*; childlike in their apparel, without manly gravity, poor in the entertainment of their friends, and exacting all they can from strangers.

The places in it of most note are, 1 *Mercaria*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2 *Bozilia*, a small, but pleasant habitation, belonging to some Princes of the Ducal family; built with fair Cloysters towards the street, in which passengers may walk dry in the greatest rain. 3 *Petula*, a small Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born: but generally said to be born in *Mantua* (*Mantua* *Virgilio gaudet*, as the old Verse is) because this Village is so near the City of *Mantua* (being but two miles distant) that his birth might very well be ascribed unto it. 4 *Mantua*, seated on the River *Nincius*, now called *Sarca*; which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a passage unto *Venice*. By nature strong, environed on three sides with a running water, half a mile in breadth; and on the fourth side with a wall. The Dukes to take their pleasure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucantore*, five stories high, and capable of two hundred persons (whence it had the name) furnished very richly both for state and pleasure. *Ocnus* the son of *Manto* the Prophetess, the daughter of *Tiresias*, is said to have been the founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mothers name; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil* a Native of those parts do report it so; this City being one of those which the *Tuscan*s built beyond the *Apennine*, as the foundest Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whomsoever built at first) in the declining times of Christian purity, for a Council holden in it, Anno 1061. wherein it was decreed, that the choosing of the Pope should from thenceforth belong unto the Cardinals. A Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was first by *Constantine* the third surnamed *Pogonatus*, given to the Clergy and people of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict* the second, Anno 684. resumed by *Charles* the Great, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the Colledge of Cardinals. But to return unto the Town, on the East-side of a bridge of about 500 paces long, covered over head, and born up with Arches, stands the Dukes Palace for the City; and not far thence the *Domo*, or Cathedral Church of *St. Peter*. The Palace very fair and stately, but far short for the pleasures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Mirmirolo*, five miles from the City: which though it be of a low roof (after the manner of ancient buildings) yet it is very richly furnished, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens; able to lodge, and give content to the best Prince in Christendom. Here are also many other Towns, as 5 *Caprara*, and 6 *Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be observed that *Mantua* followed for long time the fortunes of the *Western* Empire; till given by *Otho* the second son to *Theobald* Earl of *Canosse* for the many good services he had done him. *Boniface* who succeeded him, had to Wife *Beatrice* the sister of *Henry* the second; and by her was the Father of *Matilda*, that famous Warriouress, who carried so great a stroke in the state of *Italy*. Being dispossessed of her Estate by *Henry* the third, she joyned in faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and dismembred from the Empire many goodly Territories, which at her death (having had three husbands, but no issue) she gave in fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, Anno 1115. After her death *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that protection failing them, by little and little it was brought under by the family of the *Bonacelsi*: who Lording it over a Free-people with too great severity, contracted such a general hatred, that *Passarino* the last of them, was slain in the Market-place by the people, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman; who presently with great applause took to himself the Government of the Estate, Anno 1328. which hath continued in his house to this very day, with a great deal of lustre. Who successors take here as followeth, under the several titles of

The Lords, Marquesses, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

A. Ch.

1328 1 *Lewis Gonzaga*, the first of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.

1366 2 *Guido*, son of *Lewis*.

1369

Modena.

- 1369 3 *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* II. son of *Guido*.
1382 4 *Francis Gonzaga*, son of *Lewis* 2^d, highly extolled by *Pagio* the *Florentine* for his Wisdom and Learning; who valiantly repulsed the attempts made against his Estate, by *John Galeaze*, the first Duke of *Millain*.
1407 5 *John Francisco Gonzaga*, created the first Marquess of *Mantua*, by the Emperor *Sigismund*.
1444 6 *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* III. son of *John Francisco*, who entertained the Emperor *Frederick*, and the King of *Danemark*, with great magnificence.
1478 7 *Frederick* son of *Lewis* the third.
1484 8 *Francis* II. son of *Frederick*.
1519 9 *Frederick* II. Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles* the fifth with great solemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua*, 1530, and declared Marquess of *Montferrat*, in right of his wife.
1540 10 *Francis* III. son of *Frederick* the second Duke of *Mantua*, and Marquess of *Montferrat*.
1550 11 *William* the brother of *Francis* the third, created the first Duke of *Montferrat*.
1587 12 *Vincent*, son of *William*. Duke of *Mantua*, and *Montferrat*.
13 *Francis* IV. son of *Vincent*, had to wife *Margaret* the Daughter of *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a daughter named *Mary*; in whose behalf, the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the war against her Uncle, for *Montferrat*.
1613 14 *Ferdinand*, the brother of *Francis* the fourth, succeeded him in both Estates, notwithstanding the opposition of the Duke of *Savoy*.
15 *Vincent* II. the brother of *Ferdinand* and of *Francis* the fourth.
1628 16 *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers* in *France*, by his Mothers line; and of *Mantua* and *Montferrat* by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Son of *Frederick* the first Duke of *Mantua*; succeeded on the death of *Vincent* the second: but not without great opposition of the *Spanish* Faction, who sacked *Mantua*, distressed *Casal*, and much impoverished both Estates. But the business was at last composed by the power of the *French*, and the investiture conferred upon him, by the hands of the Emperor.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* also) are in circuit nigh unto those of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much short, which amount to about 500000 *Ducats* only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burdensome to his subjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all sides land-locked from navigation and traffick.

The chief order of Knighthood in these Dukedoms, is, of *The blood of our Lord JESUS Christ*, instituted An. 1608. The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Marriage was solemnized between his son *Francis*, and the Lady *Margaret* daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It consisteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantua* Dukes are Sovereigns; and was allowed by Pope *Paul* the fifth. The Collar hath threads of Gold laid on fire, and inter-woven with these words, *Domine probasti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, supporting three drops of blood, and circumscribed with, *Nihil ista tristique recepto*. It took this name, because in *St. Andrews* Church in *Mantua*, are said to be kept as a most precious Relique, certain drops of our Saviours Blood (thou canst not, O Reader, but believe it) with a piece of the sponge.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Cross *Patee Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, membred of the second, under an Escoccheon in *Fesse*, charged quarterly with *Gules* a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom
Archbishops 1. Bishops 4.

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THE Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoining to them: both of them situate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Cispadana*; and consequently partake of the pleasures and commodities of it.

The people of this Dukedom are said to be better-natured than most of *Italy*: those of *Modena* being quick in their resolution; easie to be pacified when wronged; and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers: the *Reggians* being affable, of present wits, and fit for any thing they can be employed in: the women in both Towns of a milde disposition, neither too courtly, nor too forward, as in other places.

The first principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the name of *Mutina*, and famous in those times for the first battel betwixt *Antony* and *Augustus Caesar*; this latter being then not above eighteen years of age, and yet made head of a new League against *Antonius*, whom the Senate and people looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Hirtius* and *Pansa* then Consuls; the fortune of the day so equal, that *Antony* left the field, and the Consuls their lives; leaving *Augustus* the absolute command of a powerful Army, into whose favours he so cunning did work himself, that he made them the foundation of his future greatness. It was at that time a *Roman* Colony, but being ruined by the fury of the *Goths* and *Lombards*, was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, situate near the *Apennine* in a very good
O 2
foyl,

PARMA.

foyl, and of indifferent fair buildings. In the distractions of Italy betwixt the Emperors and the Popes, Guido the Popes Legat, and then Bishop thereof, consigned it over to Azo of the house of Este, Lord of Ferrara, Anno 1304. the Pope himself consenting to it, upon the payment of a yearly tribute of 10000 Crowns: since which time it hath been for the most part in the power of that house: Borfius the Marquess of Ferrara, being by Frederick the third made Duke of Modena. 2 Reggio, the second Town of note, hath tasted much of the same fortune; at first a Roman Colony called Regium Lepidi, afterwards ruined by the Gothes when they came first into Italy; repaired and compassed with a Wall by its own inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of Canossa. But being weary of that yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in those bustling times, they gave themselves unto Obizzo the Father of Azo, Anno 1292, and after that in the year 1326, to the See of Rome. Passing through many other hands, it was at last sold for 60000 Ducats to the Visconti, Lords of Millain, Anno 1370, and in the end recovered by the house of Este, Anno 1409, and gave the title of a Duke to the aforesaid Borfius, whom Frederick the third made Duke of Modena, and Reggio, 1452.

The successors of this Borfius are before laid down in the succession of Ferrara; who held the whole estate together till the death of Alphonso the last Duke. He dying without lawful issue, Anno 1595. left his estate to Cesar de Este, his Nephew by a base son, called Alphonso also; betwixt whom and Pope Clement the 8th. a war was threatened for the whole: but at last compromised upon these conditions, that the Church of Rome should have Ferrara, with all the Lands and Territories appertaining to it, as an Estate anciently holden of that See; and that Modena, and Reggio, being Imperial Feifer, should remain to Cesar; but to be held in fee of the Papal Throne. Duke Cesar to have leave to carry away all his movable goods, to sell such of his lands as were not of the ancient domain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordinance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of Modena and Reggio, became a new erected State, distinct, and independent of any other: each City being well fortified, and garrisoned, and furnished with Ordinance for defence thereof. But what they yield unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raise out of his Estates, I cannot positively determin: but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of Modena, and the rich Territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of Ferrara; I conceive they cannot yield less than 100000 Crowns of yearly In-come. The Arms of this Duke the same with those of Ferrara, before blazoned.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE Dukedom of PARMA hath on the North the Dukedoms of Millain and Mantua, from which it is parted by the Po; on the South, the Apennine, which divideth it from Liguria; on the East, the Countrey of Modena, and Romandiola, from which last parted by the River Scultenna now called Panaro; on the West, Montferrat: situate, as Modena is, in Lombardia Cispadana; and much of the same nature both for soyl, and air, and other the commodities of those parts of Italy.

The principal Cities of it are, 1 Parma, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the Romans at the end of the second Punic War; as Mutina and Aquileia at the same time were. It is seated on a small River of the same name, which runneth almost through the midst of it; beautified with very handsome buildings, and peopled by a race of ingenious men, whether they do betake themselves unto Arts or Arms. The grounds about this City are of excellent pasture, and yield great plenty of the Cheese which is called Parmesan. 2 Placentia, seated on the Po, one of the first Colonies which the Romans planted amongst the Cisalpine Galls; and famous for the resistance which it made both to Annibal, and Asdrubal, who severally in vain besieged it: made afterwards the Metropolis, of the Province of Emilia, yet nothing the less beautiful for so great an age. The fields adjoining have the same commendation with those of Parma, for most excellent Cheese; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth. 3 Mirandola, a proper Town built in the time of Constant the son of Constantine the Great: the Patrimony of the noble Family of the Pici (of which was Picus de Mirandola that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudatories to the Dukes of Parma. 4 Briscello, called anciently Briscellum, not far from the chief City Parma; of no great note at the present time, but memorable in the Roman story for the death of the Emperor Otho, who here killed himself. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by Valens, and Cecina, Commanders of the Forces of Vitellius, then his Competitor for the Empire; he rather chose to fall by his own sword, than that the Romans should be forced, for his sake, to renew the war. And this he did with so much honour to himself, that many of his souldiers flew themselves at his Funeral Pile; not out of consciousness of crime, or for fear of punishment, but to testify their affections to him, and to follow such a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly say of him, as he is said by Tacitus to have said of himself, viz. Alii divinus imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit. 5 Monticella, in the middle way almost between Parma and Placentia, and opposite unto Cremona, a chief Town of the Duchy of Millain, from which parted by the River Po.

These Towns (as others in these parts) have been partakers of the diversities of fortune, as being (after the declining of the Western Empire) sometimes under the Venetians, most times under the Millanoy; and at last conquered by Pope Julius the 2d in the confusions and distractions of the Dukedom

PARMA.

dom of Millain, under the two last Princes of the house of Sforza. By Paul the third, being of the house of the Farnesis, the Cities of Parma and Placentia with their Appendices, were given unto his son Petro Aleigi (or Petrus Aloysius, as the Latins call him) with the title of Duke, Anno 1549. The Signeury of Camerine, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of Urbino, being given in recompence to the Church. This Petro being a man of most vicious life, had amongst other villanies committed an unspeakable violence, on the person of Cosmus Chirini the Bishop of Fano; and soon after poysoned him. For which most detestable fact, he received no other chastisement of his Father than this, *Hec vitia me non committantore didici*, that he was sure he had not learnt those vices by his example. But going on in these wicked courses, he was slain at last by Count John Aguzzola; and Placentia, after a short siege, yielded to Ferdinand Gonzaga (Vice-roy in Millain for the Emperor Charles the fifth) conceived to be privy to the murder. Octavian the son of Petro Luigi, hearing what had hapned, fortified himself in Parma as well as he could: but being hated by the new Pope, and distrustful, not without good cause, of the Emperors purposes, he had quite lost all, if Henry the second of France, had not taken him into his protection. For the Emperor Charles fully determined (notwithstanding that Octavian had married his base daughter) to have made himself Lord of the Town: and the French King was loth to see so great a strength added to the Emperors possessions in Italy. When the war had now lasted four years, Philip the second (who afterwards succeeded Charles) considering how necessary it was for his affairs in Italy, to have this Octavian his friend, restored unto him the City of Plaisance or Placentia, and so withdrew him from the French faction, Anno 1557. Yet because he would be sure to keep his house in a perpetual dependence on Spain, he restored it not absolutely at the present, but held the Citadel thereof with a Spanish Garrison, till the year 1583: when in regard of the good services, which Alexander Prince of Parma had done him in his Wars against the Hollanders, and others of the revolted Provinces; he caused it to be surrendered into the hands of his Father Octavian. By which, and by his settling upon this house the Town and Territory of Novara, in the Dukedom of Millain, and other personal favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it; the Kings of Spain seem to have given some satisfaction to this house for stepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of Portugal; to which they might have made such a probable title, as would have troubled his Estate, had they stood upon it.

The Dukes of Parma.

- 1549 1 Petro Luigi Farnesis, son to Paul the third, made by the Pope, his Father, the first Duke of Parma.
- 1550 2 Octavian Farnesis, son to Petro Luigi, married Margaret base daughter to Charles the fifth; afterwards Governours of the Netherlands.
- 3 Alexander, son of Octavian and Margaret of Austria, one of the most renowned Souldiers of his time, Governor of the Netherlands for King Philip the second.
- 1592 4 Rainutio Farnesis, son of Alexander and Mary of Portugal, eldest daughter of Edward son to King Emanuel; one of the competitors for that Crown.
- 5 Odoardo Farnesis, son of Rainutio.

Of the Revenues and Forces of these Princes I have little to say, but think them to be of good consideration in both respects: their Territories lying in the best and richest part of Italy, and their Estates, environed by more puissant neighbours; which both necessitate and enable them, to defend their own.

The Dukedom of MONTFERRAT.

THE Dukedom of MONTFERRAT, is situate betwixt Lombardy and Piemont, on the Rivers of Tenarus and Po, on the East, and West: extended North, and South, in a line or branch, from the Alpes to the borders of Liguria; of which last it was sometimes counted part, and called Liguria Cisalpennina for distinction sake.

It took this name either à Monte ferrato; from some Mountain of it stored with Iron; or else à Monte feraci, as some rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains. And to say truth, though the whole Countrey seem to be nothing else than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of such wonderful fruitfulness, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in Europe.

The principal River of it is the Tenarus, above mentioned, which springing out of the hills about Barceis, a Town of the Marquissate of Saluzzes, falleth into the Po not far from Pavie. The principal Cities of it are; 1 Alba, called by Pliny, Alba Pompeia, situate on the banks of the said River, in a rich and fertile soyl, but a very bad air: near to which, in a poor village called Zobia, the Emperor Pertinax was born. Who being of mean and obscure Parents, after the death of Commodus, was called by the Conspirators to the Roman Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Souldiers, he was by the Praetorian Guards (hating their Princes for their virtues, as much as formerly for their vices) most cruelly murdered; and the Imperial dignity sold to Julianus, for 25 Sester-

Montferrat. *tium* a man. 2 *Casul*, vulgarly called *Saint Vus*, from the Church there dedicated to *Saint Evafius* (or *Saint Vus*, as they speak it commonly) the strongest Town in all this Countrey; well built, and peopled with many ancient and noble Families, of which the Family of *St. George* is one of the principal; and made a Bishops See by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, Anno 1474. It was in former times, the chief seat of the house of *Montferrat*, and for that cause compassed with a strong wall, and a fair Castle: but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and strengthened with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzago*, as the surest Key of his estate; in which new Citadel the Governor of the Province holds his usual residence. 3 *Aigue*, in Latin *Aquensis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and medicinal waters. 4 *Saint Savours*, where there is a very strong Fortrefs, as there is also in 5 *Ponfure*, or *Pont di Stura*, so called of the River *Stura*. 6 *Osoniano*, anciently *Occimianum*, the old seat of the first Marquesses of this *Montferrat*. 7 *Villanova*. 8 *Belzale*, 9 *Liburn*, and many others of less note.

Here are also within the limits of this Dukedom, the Towns of *Asti*, *Cherim*, and *Chivasso*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the description of whose Countrey we may speak more of them; together with *Novara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Milain*, which we have spoken of already. And hereunto also I refer the strong (and in those times) impregnable Fortrefs, by the *Latin* Historians called *Fraxinetum*, from some Grove of Ashes near unto it: situate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the Sea, by consequence better able to defend itself and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens*, at such time as they had footing in these parts of *Italy*. First took and fortified by them in the year 891. recovered afterwards by the prowess and good fortune of *Otho* the Emperor, deservedly surnamed the Great, about sixty years after. Of great note in the stories of those middle times. By *Luiprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*, by *Blondus*, and *Leander* near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvii*; and finally by *Sigonius* in the *Coftian Alpes*: and so most fit to be referred unto this Countrey, though now so desolated that there is no remainders of the ruins of it.

This Countrey was made a Marquifare by *Otho* the second, Anno 985. one of the seven by him erected and given to the seven sons of *Waleran* of *Saxony*, who had married his daughter *Adelheide*. A Military Family, conspicuously eminent in the Wars of *Greece*, and the *Holy-land*; where they did many acts of singular merit: inasmuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, issuing from a second branch hereof, were made Kings of *Hiernusalem*; and *Boniface* one of the Marquesses, got the Kingdom of *Thessaly*, and many fair Estates in *Greece*. But the Male-iffue failing in Marquess *John*, the Estate fell to *Iohannus Paleologus*, of the Imperial family of *Constantinople*, who had married the Heir-general of the house; continuing in his name till the year 1534. when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the person of Duke *William Gonzaga* raised to the honour of a Dukedom, as it still continueth; the best and richest part of that Dukes Estate, and the fairest flower in all his Garden. The residue of the story may be best collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marquesses of *Montferrat*.

- A. C.
- 985 1 *William*, one of the sons of *Waleran* and *Adelheide*, made the first Marquess of *Montferrat*.
 - 2 *Boniface*, the son of *William*.
 - 3 *William II.* who accompanied the Emperor *Conrade* the III. and *St. Lewis* of *France*, to the *Holy-land*.
 - 1183 4 *Boniface II.* son of *William* the II. his younger Brother *William* being designed King of *Hiernusalem*, and *Reyner* another of them made Prince of *Thessaly*, succeeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the son of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Hiernusalem*; he was took prisoner by *Guy* of *Enghien*; Competitor with him for that title.
 - 5 *William III.* son of *Boniface*, poisoned in the *Holy-land*, where he endeavoured the restoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languishing Kingdom.
 - 6 *Boniface III.* son of *William* the third, for his valour in taking of *Constantinople*, made King of *Thessaly*.
 - 1254 7 *Boniface IV.* son of *Boniface* the third, added *Vercelli* and *Epoedim* unto his Estate.
 - 8 *John*, surnamed the *Just*, the last of this house.
 - 9 *Theodore Paleologus*, son of the Emperor *Andronicus Paleologus* the elder, and *Yoland* his wife, daughter of *Boniface* the fourth.
 - 10 *John Paleologus*, son of *Theodore*.
 - 11 *Theodorus II.* son of *John*, a great builder and endower of Religious houses.
 - 12 *Jacobus Johannes*, son of *Theodore* the second.
 - 13 *John III.* eldest son of *Jacobus Johannes*.
 - 1464 14 *William IV.* brother of *John* the third, founder of the City and Monastery of *Casal*.
 - 1487 15 *Boniface V.* brother of *John* and *William*, the two last Marquesses, invested by the Emperor *Frederick* the fourth, *Blanca Maria* the daughter of *William* surrendering her Estate unto him.
 - 16 *William V.* son of *Boniface* the fifth.
 - 1518 17 *Boniface VI.* son of *William* the fifth.
 - 1530 18 *John George*, brother of *William* the fifth, succeeded his Nephew in the Estate; which he held

held but four years. After whose death, Anno 1534, this Marquifare was adjudged to *Frederick* the first *Montferrat*. Duke of *Mantua*, who had married *Margaret* daughter of *William* the fifth, and next heir to *George*. Whose successors may be seen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Estate.
Archbishops 0 Bishops 4.

And now according to my method, I should proceed to the description and story of the Principality of *Piemont*, the last and most Western part of *Italy*. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Cottie*, and is now part of the Estate of the Duke of *Savoy*: we will defer till we come to those *Alpine Provinces*, which are next to follow. And so much shall suffice for *Italy*, in which there are, besides those of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3
Archbishops 35 Bishops 292
Universities 17.

viz.

In the Land of the Church,
Rome.
Bononia.
Ferrara.
Perugia.
In *Sicily*,
Palermo.
Catana.

In the Signeury of *Venice*,
Venice.
Padua.
Verona.
In the Dukedom of *Tuscanie*,
Florence.
Pisa.
Sienna.

In *Naples*,
Naples.
Salerno.
In *Lombardie*,
Milain.
Pavia.
Mantua.
And so much for *Italy*.

OF THE ALPES.

BEfore we can come out of Italy into France, we must cross the *Alpes*; a ridge of Hills where-with (as with a strong and defensible Rampart) Italy is assured against France and Germany. They are said to be five dayes journey high, covered continually with snow from the whiteness whereof they took this name: that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latine* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Liguistick* Seas, and crossing all along the borders of France and Germany, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Cornero*, in the Province of *Istria*; and are in several parts called by several names, which we will muster up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to the *Adriatick*. And first those which lie nearest to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cause called *Maritima*, from the nearness to *Liguria*, called by some *Liguistica*. 2 Then follow those called *Cottia*, from *Cottius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: And 3 those named *Graia*, from the passage of *Hercules* and his *Gracian* followers; of which, both amongst the Poets and Historians, there is very good evidence. 4 After we come to the *Panina*, so named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latine* Writers call by the name of *Pani*; or from the Mountain-God *Paninus*, worshipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5 Next come we to the *Lepontia*, so named from *Lepontii*, who did there inhabit: As 6 the *Rhetica*, which lie next to them, from the *Rhati*, once a powerful people of that mountainous tract. 7 Then follow those called *Julia*, from the passage of *Julius Caesar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*: and so at last we come unto those called *Carnica*, extending to the shores of the *Adriatick*; denominated from the *Carni* who did here inhabit, and who gave name also to *Carniola*, an adjoining Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of these mountainous Countreys, besides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Lepontii*, *Rhati*, and *Carni*, spoken of before; were the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valenses*, *Vacontii*, and divers others of less note and estimation: all vanquished by the indefatigable industry of the *Romans*. After whose subjugation, and the settlement of the *Roman* Empire, these Mountains, and some part of the vales adjoining, made five several Provinces; viz. The Province of the *Cottian Alpes*, containing *Wallisland*, and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rhetia Prima*, comprehending the *Grisons*, and part of the Dukedom of *Millain*, now in possession of the *Switzers*; both which were members of the Diocese of Italy. Thirdly, of the *Alpes Maritima*, now part of *Dauphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, of the *Graia* and *Panina Alpes*, and the greatest part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including some part of *Savoy*, and most part of *Switzerland*; both which were members of the Diocese of *Gaul*. And fifthly, of *Noricum Mediterraneum*; comprehending *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts neer hand; which were members of the Diocese of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The people antiently, as now, by reason of their drinking snow-water, dissolving from the tops of the hills, and sometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nilus* are said to do; were generally troubled with a swelling in the throat, which the *Latines* call *Struma*: being the same with that, which we call the *Kings Evil*; because by special privilege curable by the Kings of France, and England. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of these vast hills, the lowest are the *Carnica* and *Maritima*, lying neere to the several Seas before remembered: The *Cottia* and the *Graia* not so high, but that the passages lie open for the most part of the year. The rest, by reason of their deep and dreadful precipices, their tedious and steep ascents, narrow wayes, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce whirlwinds, and huge balls of snow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains; are hardly passable by Horse, not at all by Waggon. And yet amongst these dreadful hills, there are observed to be some Vallies of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulness to the best in Europe; and for the sweetness of the temperature going much beyond them. With such an equal hand, doth the heavenly providence dispense the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation; that plenty bordereth upon want, and pain on pleasure.

And

And yet for all the difficulty and danger of these *Alpine* passages, coverousness, or curiosity, or desire of conquest, have found a way to make them passable in many places; and that not only for private and particular passengers, but for vast multitudes and numerous Armies, such as those led by *Annibal* and *Julius Caesar*. But especially the barbarous people found out five wayes to break into Italy, which have been since much travelled by divers Nations; of which three be out of France, and two out of Germany. The first from France is through *Provence*, and so close to the *Liguistick* Seas; easiest for private Passengers, but too strait and narrow for great Armies: there being many passages in the Countrey of *Nizza*, so narrow, that ten men may make head against ten thousand: as in that called the *Pace of the Virgin*, for one. The second is over the hills called *Genevre*, into the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, and so to the other parts of *Lombardie*; which was the way that *Charles* the eighth marched towards *Naples*; and by the *Italians* is called commonly *Strada Romana*, because the ordinary passage betwixt France and Rome. The third way is over the greater *Cenis*, (which some call the lesser *S. Bernard*) so to *Aost*, or *Tuoin*; which (if we may believe Antiquity) was first opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*: who found the passages so closed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with fire and vinegar; whence that so memorable saying, *Viam Annibal aut inveniet aut faciet*. From the passage of those Worthies, this tract, and that adjoining were called *Alpes Graia*, and *Panina*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is most certain that he took in his march; then these *Panina* must take name from the passage of *Aidubal*, or of some part of *Annibals* Army, which probably was too great to go all one way: or else from the Mountain-God *Paninus*, as before was said.

The first way out of Germany into Italy, is through the Countrey of the *Grisons*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniard* seized into his hands. So that by the keeping of the *Velllyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuentes*, which he also erected; he was in this manner the Lord of this passage: not only to the discontent of the Natives, but to the distast of his neighbours the *Savoyards*, and *Venetians*. The other way out of Germany into Italy, is through the Countrey of *Tirolis*, by the Towns of *Innspruck* and *Trent*. This passage is commanded by the Castle and Fort of *Eresberg*, seated on the confines of this Countrey towards *Suevia*, and from *Innspruck*, is two dayes journey distant. Which Fort, in the War which the Protestant Princes made against *Charles* the fifth, was surprized by Captain *Schersteline*, so to hinder the coming of the Popes Forces into Germany: for which the Emperor so hated him, that when all the rest of that faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proscript*, his head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking also of this Fort, and the Castle adjoining, by *D. Maurice* of Saxony, made the said *Charles* then being in *Innspruck*, to fly out of Germany; and shortly after to resign his Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of these Mountains rise the springs of many of the most renowned Rivers of these West parts of the world; as, 1 The *Rhene*, which springeth from two several Fountains, the one which they call the *Neerer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontia*; and the other which they term the *Fordar*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rhetica*; which meet together about a Dutch mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Grisons*, and so go on by *Constance* to Germany. 2 *Rhofne*, which riseth in that part of the *Lepontia*, which is called *Die Furche*, about two Dutch miles from the head of the *Neerer* or *Hinder Rhine*, and so through *Wallisland* into France. 3 *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Cottian* or *Celtian Alpes*, heretofore called *Mons Vesulus*, and so through *Piemont* into Italy. Out of them also spring the Rivers of *Rasse*, *Durance*, and *Achevis*; the first a Dutch, the second a French, and the third an Italian River also; not to say any thing of others of inferior note. The great Lakes which are found in this mountainous Tract, we shall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countreys and Eitates here situate, which bordering upon Italy, France, and Germany, and partaking somewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themselves to be free and absolute Eitates, Supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of these *Alpine* Countreys, which are under the command of the German Princes, as some parts of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the rest which belong to *Austria*, shall be considered in the History of those States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the rest, which as they lie intire together without intermixture, so they are absolute in themselves, and owe nor suit nor service unto any other; we will consider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* then, or the *Alpine* Provinces, call them which you will, are bound on the East with *Tirol* in Germany, and the Dukedom of *Millain* and *Montferrat* in Italy; on the West with *Provence*, *Dauphine*, and *La Bresse*, parts of the Continent of France; on the North with the County of *Burgundy* in France, and *Suevia*, or *Schwaben* in High Germany; and on the South with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea. Called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, because it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jour*. A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Basle*, and not far from the *Rhene*, passeth South-westward by the Lakes of *Biel*, *Zee*, *Nuwenburger-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almost unto the *Rhofne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, from the County of *Burgundy*.

It lieth under the sixth Climate, and some part of the seventh, so that the longest day in Summer is fifteen hours, and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soil and People; which will best shew it self in the Survey of the several Provinces, into which divided; that is to say, 1 the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2 the Signeury of *Geneva*, 3 the Resorts of *Wallisland*, 4 the Cantons of the *Switzers*, and 5 the Leagues of the *Grison*. Which several States, though they be reckoned to be-

belong to the *German Empire*, and that the B^{ish}ops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Basil* are generally accounted for Princes of it : yet they neither come unto the *Diets* , nor are subject to the publick Taxes ; nor comprehended within any of those ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein spoken, partakes somewhat of all three, as before was said : the *French* being wholly spoke in *Savoy*, the lower *Wallisland*, and generally by the *Switzers* bordering on the Lake *Lemane* ; the *Dutch* being common to the greatest part of the *Switzers*, the *Grifons* about *Chur*, and the upper *Wallisland* : and finally the *Italian*, used by the generality of the *Grifons*, the *Præfectures* appertaining unto them and the *Switzers* both in *Piemont*, and those parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

The principal Souldiers of these mountainous Provinces, 1 *Rodolph*, Earl of *Halspurg*, the Founder of the present *Austrian* Family. 2 *Thomas*, and 3 *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, this last surnamed *Charlemain* the second. 4 *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes hereof, Commander of the Armies of the King of *Spain*. 5 *John Tzerclas*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, General of the Imperial Armies in the War of *Germany*. For Scholars of more special note for which we are beholding to these Countreys, we have 1 *Philip Theophrastus Bombasius à Buebnam*, commonly called *Paracelsus*, the Author, or *Instaurator* of *Chymical Physick*; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he saith himself: a man of most prodigious parts, and of no mean vices. 2 *Zwinglius* one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3 *Musculus*, and 4 *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his seconds. 5 *Henry Bullinger*, one of the same profession also. 6 *Sebastian Castilio*, of as much learning as the best of them; though of different judgement. 7 *Dan. Tossanus the Hebrician*. To which we may adde 8 *Calvin* also, who though he had his birth in *France*, had his being here; and never grew to any enmity in Fame or Learning, till he was felled in *Geneva*.

For matter of *Religion*, it is of a very mixt condition also, in all these Countreys: that of the *Romish* only having publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but so that the Reformed is tolerated in some parts thereof, especially in the next parts *Dauphine*, to which the neighbourhood of *Geneva* gives a great encrease. In *Switzerland* there are four *Cantons* which are wholly for the Reformation, viz. *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Basle*, and *Schaffhausen*: Seven that stand wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, i. e. *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburg*, and *Solothurn*: in *Apenzel*, and *Glaris*, they allow of both. The *Grisons* are confusedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the *Italian* Praefectures admit no other but the *Romish*. The cause of which division came upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*, a Canon of the Church of *Zurich*: who being animated with *Luther's* good success in *Germany*, began about the year 1519 to preach against the *Masse*, and *Images*, and other the ceremonies of the Church of *Rome*. In which, his party so increased, that on a publick Disputation which was held at *Zurich*, the *Masse* was abrogated in that *Canton* by the authority of the Senate, Anno 1526. and *Images* destroyed at *Bern*, 1528. After which prosperous beginnings, the Reformation began to spread it self amongst the *Confederates*; and had prevailed further both in *France*, and *Germany*, but for a difference which arose betwixt him and *Luther* about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which *Luther* did not only maintain a *Real presence*, but a *Consubstantiation* also in the sacred Elements; which *Zuinglius* maintained to be only a bare sign and representation of Christs blessed body, For reconciling of this difference, wherein the enemies of both did extremely triumph; a conference was held between them at *Mompurg*, a Town of *Hassia*, by the procurement of that *Lantgrave*, but without success: *Luther* professing that he durst not agree in that point with *Zuinglius*, ne Principes suos interpretatione tantopere Pontificis exosa, magis in suis redderet; for fear of drawing too great hatred, on the Princes of his own profession. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally callt upon one another; to the great hinderance of the cause, which they had in hand: yet so that the *Lutheran* opinions got ground in *Germany*, the *Zuinglians* amongst these Mountains, and in *France* it self; and finally prevailed by the means of *Calvin* in many parts in *Germany* also. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the story of those Countreys, before they were divided into so many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered severally by the *Romans*: as shall be shewn in the description of the several Provinces. Won from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*, in the time of *Honorius* the Western Emperour, they became a member of their Kingdom; except the Country of the *Grisons*, and some parts of *Switzerland*, which fell under the *Alems*: united afterwards in the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, of the French erection, when subdued by that Nation. But *Charles the Bald*, the last of the French Kings of *Burgundy*, having united it to the Kingdom of *France*, divided that Kingdom into three Estates; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Saône*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Saône*, and the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. This last containing the greatest part of all these *Alpine* Provinces (except *Piemont* only) was by the said *Charles* given to *Conrade* a *Saxon* Prince: the son of *Wiskind* the third, and younger brother of *Robert*, the first Earl of *Anjou*; by the name of Earl of *Burgundy Transjuran* or *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. *Rodolph* his son and successor, by *Eudes* the King of *France*, his Cousin German, was honoured with the title of King: to make him equal at the least, with *Boson* Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Saône*, whom *Charles the Grasse*, about the same time had made King of *Arles*. But *Rodolph* finding it offensive to the *German* Emperours, abandoned it on the death of *Eudes*, and took to himself the title of Duke. The residue of the story we shall have in the following Catalogue of

The Earls, Dukes, and Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*.

- 1 *Conrade the first Earl of Burgundy Transjurane.*
 890 2 *Rodolph, Earl, King, and Duke of Burgundy Transjurane.*
 912 3 *Rodolph II. elected King of Italy against Berengarius; which title he exchanged with Hugh de Arles, who was chosen by another Faction, for the possession of the Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy; on the assuming of which Crown, he resigned this Dukedom to his Brother Boson.*
 4 *Boson the Brother of Rodolph the second, succeeded his brother in the Dukedom of Burgundy, beyond the Joux; as afterwards he succeeded Rodolph, his Brothers son, in the Kingdom of Arles and Burgundy.*
 965 5 *Conrade II. son of Boson, King of Arles and Burgundy, and Duke of Burgundy Transjurane.*
 990 6 *Rodolph III. son of Conrade, who dying without issue, left his estates to Henry surnamed the Great, who was afterwards Emperor and King of Germany.*

Black, the son of his sister *Gisela*, by *Conrad* the second Emperour and King of *Germany*: united so unto the Empire, till by the bounty and providence of some following Emperours, it was cantoned into many parts; of which more anon. It is now time to lay aside this discourse as to the general condition and affairs of these *Alpine* Provinces; and to look over the particulars: beginning first with the estate of the Duke of *Savoy*, situate wholly in these Mountains, and lying next to *Italy*, where before we left.

The Dukedom of SAVOY.

THE Dukedom of *SAVOR* is bounded on the East, with *Millain* and *Monferrat* in *Italy*; on the West, with *Dauphine* in *France*; on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; and on the South, with *Provence*, and the *Mediterranean*. The Countrey of so different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one character: and therefore we must look upon it in the several parts into which divided; that is to say, 1 the *Principality of Piemont*, and 2 *Savoy*, especially so called.

called. **1** *PIEMONTE*, in *Latine* called *Regio Pedemontana*, because situate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bounded on the East, with *Milain*, and *Montferrat*; on the West, with *Savoy*, on the North, with the *Switzers*; and on the South, it runneth in a narrow valley, to the *Mediterranean*, having *Montferrat* on the one side, *Provence* and a part of the *Alpes* upon the other. The Countrey wonderfully fertile compared with *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferior to the rest of *Italy*. It containeth, besides Baronies, and Lordships, 15 Marquissates, 52 Earldoms, 160 Castles or walled places: and is so populous wihal, that once a *Piemontese* being demanded the extent of his Countrey, made answer, that it was a *City of 300 miles compass*.

miles compass.

The principal Cities of it are, 1 *Turin*, called of old *Augusta Taurinorum*, because the head City of the *Taurini*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract : from which *Taurini* it deriveth the name of *Turin*; and not as some conceive from the River *Duria*, on whose banks it standeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of *Savoy*, (who is the Lord of this Countrey) the See of an Archbishop, and an University, in which the renowned Scholar *Erasmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is situate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of *Italy*; for which cause the *Romans* sent a Colony hither; and the *Lombards* made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoining to it is a Park of the Dukes of *Savoy*, watered with the *Duria*, *Sture*, and *Po*, six miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleasant Fountains; which make it one of the sweetest situations in *Europe*. 2 *Mondenti*, seated on the swelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of *Savoy* built a Church and Chappel to the blessed Virgin; intended for the burial place of the Ducal Family. It is the best peopled Town, for the bigness of it, of any in *Italy*. 3 *Angusta Pratorial*, now called *Aost*, situate in the furthest corner of *Italy* to the North and West. 4 *Vercelli*, a strong Town bordering upon *Millain*, to which it formerly belonged; and was given first in Dower with *Blanch* the daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, to *Amadee* the third Duke of *Savoy*; and antiently the chief Town of the *Lilyci*, who together with the *Salassi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Countrey. 5 *Inuria* called by *Polomy* *Eparodia*, situate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Episcopal City. 6 *Nicea*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from *Provence*; beautified with a Cathedral Church, the Bishops Palace, a Monastery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place so naturally strong, that when at lace, a Monastery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place so naturally strong, that when at lace, yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it resisted the whole Forces of *Barbarossa* the Turkish Admiral, An. 1543. lying before it with a Navy of two hundred sayl, and battering it continually with incredible fury. First fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occasion of some words of the Duke of *Burbon*, who passing this way with his Army, Behold, saith he, a situation of which they know not the importance: who passing this way with his Army, Behold, saith he, a situation of which they know not the importance: the Citadel being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and garrisoned for the most part with 400 soldiers. 7 *Suse*, seated in the ordinary thorough-fare betwixt France and Italy, called of old *Sigovio*; and honoured in those times with a stately Sepulchre of K. *Cottius*, King of the *Allobroges*: one

Savoy. one of the seven Marquises in the middle times erected by the Emperour *Otho*. 8 *Pignarolle*, fortified with a Cattle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoining valleys; sold by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to *Levis* the 13th of *France*, together with the Fort and valley of *Peronsa*, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the sum of 494000 Crowns, to be for ever in the propriety and Sovereignty of the Kings of *France*; and thereby giving to the *French* commodious pass from *Dauphine* into *Italy* upon all occasions, and no small influence and command on his own Estates. 9 *Quier*, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10 *Ville Franche*, a place of great strength, more towards the sea. 11 *Savillan*, seated in so pleasant a Country, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpose to settle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Estate. 12 *Buigne*, a Marquise, another of the seven erected for the sons of *Waleran*. 13 Hereunto we may add the City of *Ast* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) antiently a Colony of the *Romans*; and now to be compared, for the greatness and beauty of her Palaces, to the most stately Cities of *Lombardy*; situate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarius*, very rich, and populous.

Here is also in this Country the Marquise of *Saluzzes*, (of the same erection as the former, but a greater Estate) the cause of so many differences betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The principal Town whereof is called also *Saluzzes* (from the *Salassi* questionless who dwelt hereabouts) seated about the Spring of the River *Po*: reasonably big, and fortified with a very large Castle, fitted with rooms for all uses, and for every season. 2 *Courmayoula*, which gave name to that famous Captain who carried so great a sway in the Wars of *Italy*. A Town so fortified and stored with all sorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3 *Ravalle*, a well-fortified place. 4 *Doglian*, the thorough-fare for the greatest part of the trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont*, and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms hereof *Argent*, a Chief *Gules*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Salassi*, *Libyici*, and *Taurini*, as before is said; all vanquished by the *Romans*, and their Country made a Province of that Empire, by the name of the Province of *Alpes Cottie*, in the time of *Nero*; of which *Genoa* was the Metropolis or principal City. The present are descended, for the most part, of the *Heruli*, who under the Conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italy*; whereof he was proclaimed King by the *Romans* themselves, but *Odoacer* being vanquished near *Verona*, by *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*, the *Heruli* had this Country allotted to them by the Conqueror, for their habitation. They had not held it long when subdued by the *Lombards*, of whose Kingdom it remained a part, till given by *Aripert* the seventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of *Rome*; affirmed by some to be the first temporal Estate that ever the Popes of *Rome* had possession of. But lying far off, and the donation not confirmed by the Kings succeeding, the Popes got little by the gift: so that in the subverting of the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of *Italy*, of the house of *Charles* the Great; and afterwards of his successors in the Empire, by whom distracted into several Estates and Principalities. *Thomas*, and *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210. the later in the year 1256. Since that time the first son of *Savoy* is styled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquise of *Saluzzes*, containing almost all the rest, was added by the marriage of a daughter of this Marquise, with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, An. 1481. Of which marriage though there was no issue, yet the *Savoyards* always held it as their own; till the *French* upon as good a title possessed themselves of it: Recovered by the *Savoyards*, An. 1588. the Civil Wars then hot in *France*. But finding that he was not able to hold it against *Henry* the fourth (who looked upon it as a door to let his forces into *Italy*) he compounded with him, An. 1600. the Country of *Bresse* being given in exchange for his Marquise: Of which, together with the residue of *Piemont*, and some pieces of importance in the Dukedom of *Montferrat*, that noble Family of *Savoy* doth now stand possessed.

The Arms of this Principality are *Gules*, a Croffe *Argent*, charged with a Label of three points *Azure*.

2 *S A V O Y*, strictly and specially so called, is bounded on the East with *Wallisland*, and part of *Piemont*; on the West, with *Dauphine*, and *La Bresse*; on the South, with some parts of *Dauphine* only; and on the North with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Country is for the most part hilly and Mountainous, overspread with the branches of the *Alpes*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill-countries are, but not very fruitful; except some of the vallies which lie nearest to the Western Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian* Lake, lying towards *Geneva*. By reason of the difficult and narrow wayes, and those full of Theeves, it was once called *Malvoy*: but the passages being opened by the cost and industry of the people, and purged of theeves by good Laws and exemplary justice, it gained the name of *Savoy*, or *Salvoy*, quasi *salva via*: as *Maleventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like considerations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latines* of these later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the antient Writers; who knew it by no other name than that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The common people are naturally very dull and simple, so grofs of understanding for all their continual converse with other Nations, who take this Country in their way to *Italy*; that they believe the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greatest Prince in the World: and so unwarlike, that a few men of another Nation well trained and disciplined, will make a great number of them flee. But on the other side, the Gentry are of a very pleasing conversation, civil, ingenious, and affecting all good exercise: so as there may be dayly seen in *Chambéry* as much good company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the best Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both sorts taking in *Piemont* (who are not interested in the first part of this character) are thought to be 800000.

The

Savoy. The chief Cities are, 1 *Chambéry*, situate on the banks of the River *L'Arch*, in a very pleasant valley, compassed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedom on that side of the *Alpes*: honoured with the Dukes Court when he resideth in this Country, the ordinary seat of Justice, and many neat houses which belong to the Gentry: fortified of late with a strong Castle and sufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received An. 1600. when it was forced by King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2 *Tarentaise*, an Arch-bishops See, situate in the midst of the Mountains; heretofore the Metropolis of the Province of the *Alpes Graie*, and *Pennine*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the *Centrones* who inhabited about this Tract. 3 *Lunenburg*, in the Country of the old *Medulli*; betwixt which and *Suse*, a Town of *Piemont*, lyeth the most ordinary road betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4 *Ague belle*, situate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5 *Rapaille*, a sweet and fruitful situation, on the South-side of the Lake *Lemmanus*, the chief Town of the Signeury of *Fossigny*: were *Amadee* the first Duke of *Savoy*, having given over his Estate, lived a Monastick life, and was thence chosen Pope by the Fathers of *Basil*, An. 1440. 6 *Nun* or *Nevidum* (by some of the old *Latins* called *Noviodunum*) an antient City, layd desolate, in, or before the time of *Julius Caesar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Vespasian*; the seat of late times of the Bishops of *Geneva*, since their expulsion out of that City. 7 *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhofne*. 8 *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9 *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwise of small importance. 10 *Anneciana*, not much observable, but for being the seat or place of Solemnities, for an order of Knights called by that name. 11 *Maurienne*, or *St. John de Maurienne*, an Arch-bishops See, situate in a Valley of the *Alpes* so called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt hereabouts; from whence the Princes of this house were first entituled Earls of *Maurienne* only. 12 *Charbonnery*, a well-fortified place. Here is also the strong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four months against *Henry* the fourth, and many thousand shot of *French* Cannon, An. 1600. and the impregnable Forts of *St. Catharines*, which yet submitted to that King; the Government whereof being denyed to the Duke of *Byron*, plunged him in discontent and treason, to the loss of his head.

The many Tribes in and about this mountainous Country, of which we have mentioned some before, pass generally in most antient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*; because the most powerful of them all. Of whom the first mention which we find in story, is the Atroement made by *Annibal* in his passage this way, between *Bruncus* and his Brother, about the succession of the Kingdom. Afterwards siding with the *Salii* a *Gallick* Nation, in a War against *Marselles*, then a confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their backs: by whom they were in fine subdued, with the loss of no less then 120000 *Galls*, under the several conducts of *Cn. Domitius Aenobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*; by which last, *Bituitus*, or *Bitultus* King of the *Auverni*, one of the confederates, was led in triumph unto *Rome*. The Country and people at that time were much alike, *Columi atroci* *præcaci ingenio*, a sharp air, and a stubborn people, as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages, for discovering *Catiline's* conspiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruin. After which we find *Cottius* one of the Kings of these *Allobroges*, to have been in special favour with *Augustus Caesar*: affirmed to be the founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous tract, whence it had the name of *Alpes Cottie*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and passed with other rights of that falling Kingdom, to the Emperors of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the last King. To them it did continue subject till the year 999. in which *Berard* of *Saxony*, son of *Hugh* of *Saxony* (which *Hugh* was son of *Otho*, and brother to *Otho* the third) for killing *Mary* the lascivious Wife of his Uncle, fled from *Germany*; and settled himself here, near *France*. His son *Humbert*, (surnamed *Blanchmanis*, that is *White-hand*) was by the special favour of the Emperor *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Country, An. 1027. And by this marriage with *Adela*, the daughter and heir of the Marquise of *Suse*, added that noble Marquise (one of the seven erected by *Otho* the second, and given amongst the sons of *Waleran*) unto his estate. *Humbert* the second gained by conquest the Town and Territory of *Tarentaise*; as *Ame*, or *Amadee* the third did the Counties of *Vaulx*, and *Chablais*, An. 1240. or thereabouts. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the fourth, by the Marriage of *Sibille* daughter and sole heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Bresse*, added that Earldom to his house: as *Ame*, or *Amadee* the ninth, did the town and Territory of *Vercelli*; upon the contract betwixt *Philibert* his son and Successor, with *Blanch* the base daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, who afterwards was married unto *Francis Sforza*. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the second Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, invested with the title of Earl of *Savoy*; and *Amadee* the eighth, created the first Duke, by the Emperor *Sigismund*, An. 1397. But the main improvement of the power and patrimony of this House, came by the valour and good success of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210. and *Peter* one of his sons and successors (for his manifold Conquests, surnamed *Charlemaine the Junior*) An. 1256. by conquest got a great part of *Piedmont*; to which the Marquise of *Saluzzes*, containing almost all the rest, was united by a Marriage of the daughter of the Marquise, to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*: and though he dyed without issue by her, An. 1489. yet his successors still kept the possession of it, till *Francis* the first, pretending some title to it in the right of his Mother (a daughter of the house of *Savoy*) laid it unto the Crown of *France*: from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the *French* Civil Wars; An. 1588. and now is peaceably possessed. The Country of *Bresse* being given to the *French*, for their pretension to this Marquise, An. 1600. These Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the faction of *Spain*, especially since the *French* Kings took in the lesser states bordering

Savoy.

bordering of them, as *Burgundy, Bretagne, &c.* Charles the third sided so constantly with the Emperor Charles the fifth, that denying *Francis* the first a passage for his Army through the Countrey into *Italy*; he was by the said King dispoyle of his Estates, *An. 1536.* The Emperor to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the *French* encountering his force in the open field, vanquished them, with the slaughter of fifteen thousand of his men. In the year 1558. peace being made between *Henry*; and *Philip*, successors to those great Princes: *Emanuel Philibert*, son to Duke *Charles*, was restored to all his Rights. His son and successor having married *Catharine* the daughter of King *Philip* the second, depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithstanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his sons receiving thence many great pensions and preferments. For at the same time Prince *Amadee Victorio* the second son, during the life of *Philip* his elder Brother, was chief Commander of that Kings Gallies; and had in pension a hundred thousand Crowns per annum; *Philibert* the third son, was Vice-roy of *Sicily*: *Maurice* the fourth a Cardinal had a moiety of the Revenues of the Arch bishoprick of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomas*, though then young, had his pensions also. But *Amadee Victorio*, who succeeded him, marrying *Madam Christiane*, a daughter of King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, changed his dependences; and held more close to *France* than any of his Predecessors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Estates, future times will shew. For leaving his Heir a Minor, in the hands of his Mother; the *French* upon pretence of preserving the Countrey for him, against the incroachments of the *Spaniards*, have made themselves matters of the greatest parts of it: which when they will restore to the proper owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

Earls and Dukes of Savoy.

- 999 1 Beral of Saxony.
- 1027 2 Humbert, the first Earle of Maurienne.
- 1048 3 Ame, or Amadee I.
- 1076 4 Humbert II.
- 1109 5 Ame, or Amadee II. the first Earl of Savoy.
- 1154 6 Humbert III.
- 1201 7 Thomas, son of Humbert.
- 1234 8 Ame, or Amadee III.
- 1246 9 Boniface, son of Ame III.
- 1256 10 Peter, a young son of Earl Thomas, called Charlemagne the less, whom Turin, Vaulx, &c.
- 1268 11 Philip, brother of Peter.
- 1285 12 Ame, or Amadee IV. Nephew of Thomas the 7th. Earl, by a son named Thomas.
- 1323 13 Edward, son of Ame IV.
- 1329 14 Ame, or Amadee V. the brother of Edward.
- 1342 15 Ame, or Amadee VI.
- 1385 16 Ame, or Amadee VII.
- 1397 17 Ame, or Amadee VIII. the first Duke of Savoy.
- 1434 18 Lewis, son of Ame VIII.
- 1461 19 Ame, or Amadee IX.
- 1475 20 Philibert, son of Ame 9th.
- 1481 21 Charles, brother of Philibert.
- 1489 22 Charles II.
- 1495 23 Philip II. son of Lewis, the second Duke.
- 1496 24 Philibert, II.
- 1504 25 Charles III. the brother of Philibert, outed of his Estate by King Francis the first.
- 1559 26 Emanuel Philibert, restored upon his Marriage with Margaret the daughter of King Francis the first, made Knight of the Garter by Q. Mary.
- 1580 27 Charles Emanuel.
- 28 Ame X. called also Amadee Victorio, son of Charles Emanuel, married Christiane the daughter of King Henry the fourth.
- 1637 29 Charles Emanuel II. son of Amadee Victor, or Ame the 10th. at the age of three years succeeded his Father.

The Forces of this Duke consist especially in his Forts, and Garrisons, whereof he hath good store in *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*, well fortified and plentifully furnished with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him so to have, considering what dangerous neighbours he hath near him, and that his Countrey is a continual thorow-fare, for the Armies both of *France*, and *Spain*, upon all occasions. Nor doth it less conduce to his preservation, that he hath so many retreats of natural strength, as are not easily accessible by a conquering Army: of which last fort is, amongst many others, the valley of *Aost* (which some reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and some of *Piedmont*) so strong by reason of the narrow entries, the uneasy passages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that those who have made themselves matters of the rest of the Countrey, durst never attempt it. And of the first, besides those formerly described, is the Town of *Nizze*, so fortified and flanked upon all accesses, that it seems rather to be an assembly of Forts, than a single Fortress. Out of which Garrisons, the Duke is able to draw great Forces for present service;

Geneva.

service, besides the readiness of the *Piedmontese* upon all occasions, which are for the most part given to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue, of this Dukedom (taking *Piedmont* in) are said to be above a Million of Crowns per annum. But his extraordinary is so great, that Duke *Charles Emanuel*, during his Wars with *Henry* the fourth, in a very few years drew out of *Piedmont* only eleven Millions of Crowns; besides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Souldiers. By which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want money to serve their turns, when they shall desire it of the Subject; and yet not charge them more then they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes Estate is that of the *Annunciada* ordained by *Amadee* the first Duke, at what time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, *An. 1409.* Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to shew the fifteen myseries of the Virgin: at the end is the portraiture of our Lady, with the history of the *Annunciation*. In stead of a Motto, these letters, *F. E. R. T. id est, Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenet*, are engraven in every plate or link of the Collar: each link being interwoven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights is fourteen, besides the Duke, who is the Sovereign of the Order: the solemnity was held anciently on our Lady-day, in the Castle of *Saint Peter* in *Turin*: But of late time in the Town of *Annunciada*, from hence so denominated. So from this victory (for every repulse of the besieger, is a victory to the besieged) there arose a double effect; first, the institution of this Order; secondly the assumption of the present Arms of this Dutchy, where are *G. a Cross, & A.* This being the Cross of *Saint John* of *Jerusalem*, whose Knights at that time were owners of the *Rhodes*. Whereas before, the Arms were *Or*, an Eagle displayed with two heads, *Sable*, Armed *Gules* supporting in *Fesse*, an Escutcheon of *Saxony*, that is Barrowise six pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*: A Coat belonging to the Emperors of the house of *Saxony*, from whom the first Earls of *Savoy* did derive themselves.

3. The Signeury of GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, formerly subjects to its Bishops, acknowledging the Dukes of *Savoy* for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-Estate*, bordering close upon the *Switzers*, and with them confederate; and so more properly within the course and compass of the *Alpine* Provinces. It is situate on the South-side of the Lake *Lemane*, opposite to the City of *Lozanne* in the *Canton* of *Bern*, from which it is distant six Dutch miles: the River *Rhosne* (having passed through the Lake with so clear a colour, that it seemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) runneth through the lower part thereof, over which there is a passage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is seated on a flat or level, the rest on the ascent of an hill: the buildings fair and of freestone, well fortified on both sides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretensions of the Duke of *Savoy* (whom they suffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealousies of State. The compass of the whole City is about two miles, in which there are supposed to be about sixteen or seventeen thousand souls. One of their Bridges is more antient, and better fortified than the other, belonging antiently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians*, the old inhabitants of that tract) but broken down by *Julius Caesar*, to hinder them from passing that way into *Gallia*.

The people of the Town are generally of good wits in the managery of publick businefs, but not very courteous towards strangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modest and thrifty in apparel, and speak for the most part the *Savoyard*, or worst kind of *French*. So that the great resort of young Gentlemen thither, is not so much to learn that Language (which is nowhere worse taught) as out of an opinion which their parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is nowhere so purely practised and professed as there. By means whereof, the *free* or *seminary* of our Gentry being seasoned in their youth with *Genevan* Principles; have many times proved disaffected to the forms of Government (as well *Monarchical* as *Episcopal*) which they found established here at home: to the great imbroilment of the State, in matters of most near concernment. The women are said to be more chaste (or at least more reserved) than in any other place in the World: which possibly may be ascribed to that severity, with which they punish all offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick, or private; *Adultery* expiated by no less than death: *Fornication*, for the first offence with nine days fasting upon bread and water in prison; for the second, with whipping; for the third with banishment. But notwithstanding this severity, they make love in secret, and are as amorous in their dalliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very small, extending not above two Leagues and an half from any part of the Town: but the soyl, if well manured, bringeth Grain of all sorts; and great store of Wine: There is likewise plenty of pasture and feeding grounds, which furnish the City with flesh-meats, butter and cheese, at very reasonable rates: the nearness of the Lake affording them both Fish, and Wild-fowl in good measure; and amongst others (as some say) the best *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main improvement of this State is by the industry of the people, and the convenient situation of the City it self: the City being situated very well for the trade of Merchandise, in regard it is the ordinary passage, for transporting Commodities out of *Germany*, to the *Marts* at *Lyon*; and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and some parts of *Italy*; And for the industry.

Wallisland.

ner of Ammunition appertaining to them; and on the Lake some Gallies in continual readiness, against the dangers threatned them by the Dukes of Savoy. And for the greater safety of their Estate, and the preservation of their Religion, they joyned themselves in a constant and perpetual League with the Canton of Bern, Anno 1528, communicating to each other the Freedom of their several Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a member of the Common-wealth of the *Switzers*, which is no small security to their affairs. But their chief strength, as I conceive, is that neighbouring Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke; or any other Potentate of more strength than he. Inasmuch that when that Duke besieged it, Anno 1589, they were aided from Venice with four and twenty thousand, and from England, with thirteen thousand Crowns, from Florence with Intelligence of the Enemies purposes. Another time, when the Pope, the French King, the Spaniard, and Savoyard had designs upon it; the Emperor offered them assistance both of Men and Money: yea and sometimes the Dukes of Savoy have assisted them against the others, as being more delicious that the Town should remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for such petit States, to be more safe by the interests of their jealous neighbours, than any forces of their own.

The Armies of Geneva, when under the command of the Earls thereof, were Or, a Cross Azure. But for the title of Geneva after it had been born a while by the Earls of Savoy, it was given to Philip youngest son of Anne or Amadee the first Duke, to Janus the third son of Lewis the second Duke; and finally to Philip Duke of Nemours, the fourth son of Philip the seventh Duke of Savoy, in whose posterity (Dukes of Nemours) it doth still continue.

4. WALLISLAND.

EASTWARD from Savoy, in a long and deep bottom of the *Alpes Penina*, lyeth the Country of *WALLISLAND*: so called either *quasi Wallensland*, or the land of the *Valenses*, once the inhabitants of the Country about *Martinacht*, a chief town hereof; or *quasi Vallisland*, or the Land of *Vallies*, of which it totally consists. It reacheth from the Mountain *de Furken*, to the Town of *St. Maurice*, where again the hills do close, and shut up the valley; which is so narrow in that place, that a bridge laid from one hill to another (under which the River *Rhosne* doth pass) is capable of no more than one Arch only, and that defended with a Castle and two strong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continual wall of steep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a crust of Ice; not passable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by single passengers; so that having but that one entrance to it, which before we spake of, no Citadel can be made so strong by Art, as this whole Country is by Nature. But in the bottom of those craggy and impassable Rocks, lies a pleasant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and most delicate fruits; and happily enriched with Meadows, and most excellent Pastures, which yeeld a notable increase of Cheese and Butter: And in the Country about *Sion* they discovered in the year 1544. a Fountain of Salt: and have also many hot Bathes, and medicinal waters very wholesome. Of Springs, and River-water, they are very destitute; having scarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhosne*, with a great deal both of charge and trouble (the common people using snow-water for the most part for domestick uses): which made one pleasantly observe, that they pay dearer for their Water, than they do for their Wine. Cattel they have sufficient to serve their turn, and amongst others, a wild Buck, equal to a Stag in bigness, footed like a Goat, and horned like a fallow Deer, leaping with wonderful agility from one precipice to another, and so not easily caught but in Summer time; for then the heat of that season makes him blinde.

It is divided into the *Upper* and the *Lower Wallisland*: the *Upper* lying towards the Mountain *de Furken*, in the very bottom of the Valley; and the *Lower* stretching out to the Town of *St. Maurice*, which is at the opening of the same: the length of both said to be five ordinary dayes journey, but the breadth not answerable. The *Upper Wallisland* containeth the seven *Resorts* of 1 *Sion*, or *Sedune*; 2 *Lenck*; 3 *Brig*; 4 *Nies*; 5 *Rawren*; 6 *Sider*; 7 *Gomber*; in which are reckoned thirty Parishes: the *Lower* comprehending the six *Resorts* of 1 *Gurdis*; 2 *Ardoz*; 3 *Sallien*; 4 *Martinacht*; 5 *Turemont*; and 6 *St. Maurice*: in which are 24 Parishes. The people in both parts said to be courteous towards strangers, but very rough and churlish towards one another.

The several resorts before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns: which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1 *Sedunum*, *Sition* or *Sion*, a Bishops See, suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Tarentinise*; the chief of all this little Country: of no great beauty in it self, but neat and gallant in respect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhosne*, under a Mountain of two tops; on the one of which being the lower, is seated the Cathedral Church, and the Canons houses; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very strong Castle, the dwelling place of the Bishop in the heats of Summer: which being built upon an hill of so great an height, and so hazardous an ascent, is impossible almost to be took by force; the sharpness of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of assaults, and the highness of the hill from the reach of the Gun-shot. 2 *Marchinacht*, by *Cesar* called *Obedurus*, and *Civitas Valensium* by *Antonius*, remarkable for its antiquity only. 3 *Saint Maurice*, or *Saint Moritz*, anciently *Auganum*, the Key of the whole Country; but in Winter especially, when all the

other

Switzer-land.

other passages are frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town; which for that cause is very well manned and fortified to avoid surprisal; and therefore also chosen for the seat of the Governour of the *Lower Wallisland*.

This Country now called *Wallisland*, is in most *Latin* Writers called by the name of *Valesia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Valensia*, as the *Dutch* or *English* name for *Wallensland*: which name I should conceive it took from the *Valenses*, the old inhabitants of this valley, of whom *Obedurus* (now called *Marchinacht*) is by *Antonius* made to be the *Metropolis*, or principal City. It was made subject to the *Romans* by *Julius Cesar*, at such time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Western parts of the *Roman Empire* unto *Charles the great*, was by him given to *Theodulus Bishop of Sion*, Anno 805. Under his successors they continue to this very day; but so, as that the Deputies of the seven *Resorts* have not only voices with the *Canons* in his Election, but being chosen and invested unto the place, they joyn with him also in the *Diets* for choosing Magistrates, redressing grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Wallisland* obeyeth the upper, made subject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no sway in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governours agree of. The same Religion is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintenance whereof they combined themselves with the seven Popish Cantons of *Switzerland*, Anno 1572, or thereabouts: as also for their mutual defence and preservation against Foreign Enemies, and keeping amity and concord amongst one another.

5. SWITZERLAND.

NEXT unto *Wallisland* lyeth the Country of the *SWITZERS*, having on the East, the *Grisons*, and some part of the *Tirol*, in *Germany*; on the West, the Mountain *Jura*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; which parts it from *Savoy*, and *Burgundy*; on the North, *Suevia* or *Swabens*, another Province also of the upper *Germany*; and on the South, *Wallisland* and the *Alpes*, which border on the Dukedom of *Millain*.

The whole Country heretofore divided into three parts only, that is to say, 1 *Argow*, so called from the River *Aaz*, whose chief Town was *Lucern*: 2 *Wistisburgergow*, so called from *Wistisburg* an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*: And 3 *Zurichgow*, so named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this present the Town of most note in all this Tract; but since the falling of these Countreys from the house of *Austria*, divided into many Cantons, and other members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner over-grown with craggy Mountains, but such as for the most part have grassie tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nourishing pastures, which breed them a great stock of Cattel, their greatest wealth. And in some places yeelds plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increase of Corn also, if care and industry be not wanting on the Husband-mans part; but neither in so great abundance, as to serve all necessary uses, which want they do supply from their neighbouring Countreys. And though it stand upon as high ground as any in *Christendom*, yet is no place more stored with Rivers, and capacious Lakes; which do not only yeeld them great abundance of Fish, but serve the people very well in the way of Traffick, to disperse their several Commodities from one Canton to another. Of which the principal are, *Bodensee*, and the Lake of *Cell*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genfer-see*, or the Lake of *Geneve*, by the *Rhosne*; *Walldster-see*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Russe*; *Namunburgur* and *Bieter-see*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurich-see*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Lima-chus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the highest Country in *Europe* (as before is said) the Rivers which do issue from it running through all quarters of the same; as *Rhene*, through *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Po*, through *Italy* to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of *France*, to the Western Ocean; and the *Imm*, which falling into the *Danubius* passeth through *Germany*, and *Hungary*, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Country is, such are the Inhabitants, of rude and rugged dispositions, more fit for Armes than any civil occupations; capable of toyl and labour, which the necessities of their Country do inure them to, notable otherwise to afford them an hungry livelihood: the poverty whereof makes them seek for service, which they shift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their superfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to spare greater multitudes to a Foreign War, than a man would easily imagine. In a word, the people are naturally honest, frugal and industrious, impartial in the administration of Justice, and great lovers of Liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of such a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles of Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himself able to take the field, or stand his own ground in defence of his Dominions if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italy* about the Dutchy of *Millain*, served exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Country, they could be hired better cheap by the *French*, or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of *France*, or *Spain*. And having had some good successes to increase their fame, they grew so terrible at last; that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guien* were more afraid of one band of *Switzers*, than of all the rest of the *French Army*. But being found withall to be false and treacherous, and

easily

Switzer-
land.

calily bought off by the better purse (which they most evidently discovered in betraying Duke Lodovick Sforze, who had put himself and his estate into their hands); and those Italian Wars growing into an end, they did decay so fast in their reputation, that first the neighbouring Princes could do well without them; and at last used them not at all, or at least very sparingly. And now it is their honour that they are chosen of the Guard to the French King, and the Popes of Rome, and the Dukes of Genoa; and that the greatest Princes of Europe give them yearly pensions. Which pensions were given heretofore to be assured of their aid upon all occasions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other side.

For matter of Religion it is proportionably mixt; some of the Cantons being wholly Popish, some wholly Protestant; in others both Religions used promiscuously. At first the differences were so eagerly pursued on both sides, that notwithstanding the mediation of some potent neighbours, it broke out into a Civil War; the Cantons of Switz, Uren, Underwald, Lucern, and Zug (which the Latin Writers of this story call the *Quinquagici*) arming against Zurich, Bern, and others which adhered to Zuinglius. In the beginning of which War, the Protestant party was discomfited, Zuinglius himself slain in the head of the battle, and his body burnt: his heart remaining in the midst of the fire, whole and untouched (as Archbishop Trammes also did) when all the rest of his body was consumed to ashes. But those of the Reformed party would not so give over. Another field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverse party. Wearied at last with reciprocal defeats, they agreed the business, indulging each to other the free exercise of their own Religions. So it continueth at this day, diversity of opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick interests, nor giving any interruption to that bond of peace which was so firmly knit amongst them in their first confederacies.

Now for the body of their State, it consists of three distinct parts, or members, which are to be considered in this discourse; viz. the *Swisse* themselves, the *Præfectures* which are subject to them, and the States that are confederate with them. The *Swisse* are subdivided into thirteen Cantons, that is to say, Switz, Uren, Underwald, Lucern, Zug, Bern, Zurich, Basle, Friburg, Solothurn, Apenzel, Glaris and Schaffhausen. These properly make the body of that Common-wealth, enjoying many rights, privileges and preeminences which the others do not; as power to determine of war and peace, to dispose of the *Præfectures*, and divide amongst themselves the spoil of the Enemy. The first confederacy was made betwixt the Cantons of Switz, and Underwald, Anno 1315. Of which the Switz being the most potent, the most exasperated, and that which did most hotly prosecute the combination, gave to the rest the name of *Switzers*, first made for ten years only, in defence of themselves against the violence of Albert the first, Emperor and Duke of Austria; intending to alienate them from the Empire, and add them by strong hand to his own Estates, Anno 1309. but made perpetual after their great victory obtained against Duke Leopold, the son of Albert, in the fields of *Mortgarten*, of which more anon. Lucern was added to the three, Anno 1332. Zug, Zurich, and Glaris, came not into the confederacy till the year 1352; nor Bern until the year next after. Friburg and Solothurn came in Anno 1481. Basle and Schaffhausen united with them in the year 1501. and Apenzel, which was the last which was admitted into their confederacy, Anno 1513. So that there passed within little of two hundred years, from the first beginning of these Leagues, to the finishing of them.

The second Member of this body, are the Towns and States, *Confederates* with them, for the preservation of their common Liberties, viz. the Town and Abbot of Saint Gall, the Towns of Rotwel, Mulhausen, Nuenburg, and Biel, situate on the Lake thence named: (of which the first belonged heretofore to the Earls of Longeville in France, the latter to the Bishops of Basle) with the City and Signeury of Geneva: And of these, Rotwel and Mulhausen are confederate with all the Cantons; the rest, with some particulars only. The Abbot of St. Gall first entered into League with Zurich, Lucern, Switz, and Glaris, for the preservation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with Zurich, Bern, Switz, Lucern, Zug, and Glaris, the better to preserve themselves from the power of their Abbot, who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in Anno 1452. Rotwel, and Mulhausen, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schawlen*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the Cantons; the first, Anno 1515. the other, Anno 1519. Neuenberg, Biel, and Geneva, with Bern only.

As for the *Præfectures* of the *Switzers*, they are such lesser parcels and additaments, as have accrewed to their Estate, and are subject unto their authority; either by gift, purchase, or the chance of war: some lying in *Switzerland* itself, some amongst other parts of the *Alpes*, and some in *Italy*. These are the Towns and Countreys of Baden, Brengarten, Mellingen, Rappenswill, Wagenhall, interposed here and there amongst the *Switzers*: the Town and Countrey of Sargans, lying amongst the *Rhetian Alpes*, not far from the *Grifons*; and Rhineck, lying in a valley of the *Alpes*, on the left shore of the *Rhene*, near the Lake of *Constance*; and finally the valleys of Lucarno, Magia, and Lugano, Mendrisio, and Belinzana, situate in and amongst the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Millain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of Baden and Mellingen appertain to the eight first Cantons: Wagenhall, the Sargans, and Rhineck to the seven first Cantons; Rappenswill to Uren, Switz, Underwald, and Glaris; and Thurgow, unto the ten first Cantons: Belinzana to the three first only; and all the rest of the Italian *Præfectures* to the Cantons generally, excepting Apenzel, which was not entred into the confederacy when these *Præfectures* were given unto the *Switzers* by Maximilian Sforza Duke of *Millain*; which was in Anno 1513. some months before the taking in of Apenzel to the rest of the Cantons.

Such is the number of the Cantons, *Præfectures*, and States confederate, amongst all which there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Town in the Cantons of Switz, Uren, Underwalden, Glaris Apenzel, nor in any of the States confederate situate amongst the *Switzers*, but Saint Gall only; nor in any of the *Præfectures* but that of Baden. So that the places worthy of con- sideration are not like to be many.

Of those that are, the principal are, 1. Zurich, a large City, and a renowned University, situate on both sides of the River *Liman*, where it issueth out of the Lake called *Zurich-See*. It had anciently two Monasteries in it, in one of which *Huldrych Zuinglius* was a Canon, slain near this Town in the battle spoken of before, Anno 1531. now giving name to the most honourable of the Cantons, to which belongeth the authority of summoning the general *Diet* as of those also of the *Protestants*; the Legats thereof presiding in both assemblies. 2. Friburg, situate on the River *Sane*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky hill, founded by Berthold the fourth Duke of *Zeringen*. 3. Solothurn, (the *Solothurnum* of *Antoninus*) on the River *Aar*, famous for the Martyr-*Zeringen*. 4. Basle, so called either of a *Baslik* slain at the building of the City, or of the time of *Abraham*. 5. Lucern, situate on both sides of the *Russe*, where it issueth and the lesser lying towards *Germany*. 6. Bern, compassed almost round with the River *Aar*, and whosoever seeth him shall die that year. 7. Lausanna, the only Town of all the Cantons, which the East side only, which is towards *Italy*. 8. Schaffhausen, the only Town of all the Cantons, which lyeth on the other side of the *Rhene*; of right belonging unto *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*, a Province of *Germany*, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this confederacy. Next for the *Præfectures*, and confederate States, they have not many Towns of note (excepting Rotwel, and Mulhausen, two Imperial Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of those which be, the principal amongst the *Confederates*, lying within the bounds of this Countrey, is the Town of Saint Gall (*Sengall* as they corruptly call it) an Imperial City, situate amongst the Mountains near the *Boden-See*. A rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking name from the Monastery of S. Gall, a famous *Scott*, and the Apostle of those parts, Anno 630, or thereabouts; the Abbot of which having great possessions in this tract (before Apenzel, and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptists* were once very prevalent here, in so much that one of them cut off his brother's head in the presence of his Father and Mother; and said (according to the humor of that sect, who boast much of dreams, visions, and *Enthusiasms*) that God commanded him so to do. The principal amongst the *Præfectures* is the Town of Baden, or (to difference it from Baden a Marquisite in the middle *Germany*) the *Upper Baden*; seated on a little Mountain near the River *Limat*, almost in the middle of the Countrey: and for that cause the place of meeting for the Council of Estate of all the *Confederates*. It taketh name from the Baths here being, two of which only are publick, the rest in private houses: conscious, as it is thought, to much lasciviousness. For whereas it is said of *Adrian*, that *Lucas vacra pro sexibus separavit*; here men and women promiscuously bathe together; and which is worst, in private: where, as *Monaster* telleth us, *Cernunt viri uxoribus tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem solam cum solo*; and yet are not any of them disturbed with jealousy. The Baths are much frequented, yet not so much for health as pleasure. Their chiefest vertue is the quickning power they have upon barren women. But as the *Friers* use to send men whose wives are fruitless, in pilgrimage to Saint Joyce, the Patroness of fruitfulness; and in the meantime to lie with their Wives: so it may be with good reason thought, that in a place of such Liberty as this is, the lusty young gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation of barren women, than the waters of the Bath itself. No other Town of eminent note amongst the *Præfectures* of the *Swissers*, except Rhineck, itself, the seat of the Governour for the *Switzers*, situate near the Lake of *Constance*: and none of any note at all amongst the Italian *Præfectures*, except Belinzana, and Lucarno; neither of them containing 400 Houses; and those none of the handomest.

Switzer-
land.

Switzer-
land;

Within the limits of this Country, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons of Aargau, Schwyz, Unterwald, Glarona, and Lucern*; with some of the adjoining parts of *Germany*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*; did sometimes stand the famous and renowned Castle of *HABSPURG*: from the Lords whereof the house of *Austria*, and most of the Kings and Princes of the Christian World do derive themselves. First founded, as some say, by *Ottobert* the third Prince of this line, at or before the year 700; as other say, by *Rapato* the son of *Betzeline*, about the year 1000. Situate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latins* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now decayed, that there is no tracing of the ruins. Preserved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, descended in a direct line from *Sigibert* the eldest son of *Theodebert* King of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*; first seated in these parts by *Clotaire* the second, King of the *French*, with the title, as some say, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is now called *Saxony* or *Schwaben*, an adjoining Province of *Germany*). Being soon weary of that empty, but invidious title, they were sometimes called *Barks of Habsburg*, by the name of this Castle; sometimes Earls of *Altemburg*, another Castle not far off of their own foundation. And after closing in with the Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*, and the *German* Emperors, they received of them a great part of the Country of *Argow*; from which some of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known distinctly by the title of Earls of *Habsburg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned; when those of *Altemburg* and *Argow* became discontinued. However we will here lay down the whole succession of this famous family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of

The Earls of Habsburg.

635. 1. *Sigibert*, son of *Theodebert* King of *Metz*, by *Clotaire* the second of that name, *French* King, dispossessed of the Kingdom of his Father; and afterwards by him endowed with a great part of those Countreys, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.
2. *Sigibert* II. son of *Sigibert* the first, Duke of *Upper Almain*.
3. *Ottobert*, or *Othert*, the son of *Sigibert* the second, the founder, as some say, of the Castle of *Altemburg* and *Habsburg*, of which promiscuously called Earl.
4. *Beho*, the son of *Ottobert*, the last Duke of *Upper Almain*; which title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habsburg*.
5. *Robert*, or *Rotber*, as some call him, the son of *Beho*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
766. 6. *Hertbert*, the son of *Robert*, who added unto his Estate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Brissgau*.
7. *Rampert*, the son of *Hertbert*, who flourished *Anno* 814, at what time he procured the Canonization of *S. Trutpertus*.
8. *Guntram*, the son of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg*.
9. *Luitbard*, the son of *Guntram*.
909. 10. *Luitfride*, the son of *Luitbard*.
929. 11. *Hunifride*, the son of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Estates the Territory now called *Sun-gow*, bordering on *Alsacia*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his decease by the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
950. 12. *Guntram* II. son of *Hunifride*, the first who took unto himself the title of Earl of *Argow*: from whose second son named *Berthilo*, descended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, possessed of almost all *Brissgau*, and good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the son of *Gebiro* the third son of *Guntram*; Who having founded the Castle of *Zeringen*, and acquired great possessions in the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his decease (being childless) to *Berthold* the son of *Berthilo*, and his Cousen German.
13. *Betzo*, or *Betzeline*, the eldest son of *Guntram* the second, Earl of *Argow*.
14. *Rapato*, son of *Betzeline*, the founder or repairer of the Castle of *Habsburg*, from whence both he and his successors were constantly called Earls of *Habsburg*. Great Grand-father by *Theodorick*, his youngest son, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Rhinefelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperor (at the instigation of the Pope) against *Henry* the fourth.
15. *Warner*, by some called *Berenger*, or *Berengarius*, the son of *Rapato*.
1096. 16. *Otho*, the son of *Warner* or *Berenger*.
1108. 17. *Warner* II. son of *Otho*, enriched by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, with some fair Estates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben*.
18. *Albert*, the son of *Warner* the second, surnamed the *Rich*.
19. *Albert* II. surnamed the *Wise*, son of *Albert* the first, added to his Estates a great part of the *Upper Alsacia*; which he had by the right of *Hedwigis* his wife, one of the daughters and heir of *Simon* the last Earl thereof.
1238. 20. *Rodolph*, the fortunate son of *Albert* the second, added to his estate the rest of the *Upper Estate*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, *Anno* 1273. Of which he made to good advantage, that he added unto his Estates the great Dukedom of *Austria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and laid the first foundation of the *Austrian* greatness; of which more in *Germany*. Here only note, that besides the following Princes of the house of *Austria*, those of the line Collateral still retained the title of Earls of *Habsburg* (according to the ill custom of *Germany*) increased with the addition of the Earl-

dom

Switzer-
land.

Earldom of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter: and so continued till the expiring of that line in the person of *Rodolph* the fourth, the last that bare the title of Earl of *Habsburg*, *Anno* 1356. by whose death many fair Estates were added to the *Austrian* Family.

Having on the occasion of these Earls of *Habsburg*, beheld so much of the affairs of this Country, as related unto that puissant and illustrious family, let us go forward to the rest: first taking in our way the ancient estate hereof in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous tract, containing many several Nations (some of them spoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greatest and most populous of all the rest: so called, as *Versegan* will have it, *Quasi Hil-vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Cimbrick Chersonneft*, which is now called *Switzerland*; and from those dwelling in the middle, betwixt both extremes in the little Province still called *Vosland*. Grown by long peace, and want of opportunity by traffick into foreign parts, to so great a multitude, that the Country barren of it self, was no longer able to maintain them; they set fire on their Towns and Houses, and with a general resolution went to seek new dwellings. The total number of men, women and children, which went upon this desperate action, are said to have amounted to the number of 368000, whereof 90000 were fighting men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Cassius* a *Roman* Consul, slain the Consul himself, and sold his Souldiers for Bond-slaves: upon the apprehension of which good success, they thought no body able to withstand them. But they found *Cassius* of a stronger metal than *L. Cassius*. Who having stopped their passage by hewing down the bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown strong enough to bid them battle; so waited them in several skirmishes and defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild those Towns and Villages which they had destroyed before this enterprise: which he upon delivery of Hostages, did vouchsafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the least two Millions of them perished in this journey, and not so much by the sword (though that spared them not) as for want of necessities. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian* the third, by the *Burgundians* and *Almans*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Rust* parting their dominions. From them being taken by the *Frank*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; some parts first taken out, and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habsburg*, as before was noted. Given with the rest of that Kingdom to the Emperor *Conrade* the second, by *Rodolph* the last King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperors (as their custom was) into divers States; most of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schwaben*, the Earls of *Habsburg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenberg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Austria*. By means of which united titles the *Austrian* family was possessed of so much of this Country, as now makes up five Cantons, and as many of the principal Prefectures; that is to say, the Cantons of *Zug*, *Glarona*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffhausen*; the Prefectures of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Mellingen*, *Wagonshall*, *Rapperswyll*; together with a great part of the Country of *Targow*, wherein stands the City of *S. Gall*, now a Confederate with the *Switzer*; some of the rest, as *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, being brought under by the power of the Emperor *Albert*, the son of *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, who had a purpose to unite them to the house of *Austria*; because obnoxious also to the power of those Princes. But the people being at last over-burthened by the tyranny of those Governors, whom the Dukes of *Austria* and their other Lords had sent among them; seeing withall the Empire by the Popes Fulminations distracted into many Factions, and the *Austrian* Family weakened by a sub-division of that great Estate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League amongst themselves, for defence of their Liberty: into which first entred those of *Switz*, *Oren* and *Underwald*, *Anno* 1385. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1513, as before was noted. At their first beginning to take Arms, *Frederick*, one of the many Dukes of *Austria* (to whose share they fell) sent his Brother *Leopold* against them with a puissant Army which they encountered near *Morigarten* a village of the now Canton of *Underwalden*; and there overthrew him: but more by the convenience of those narrow passages, through which his Army was to march, than by any valour. In which it was no small help to them, that the ways were all so filled with Ice, that he was able to do no service with his Horse; and his Souldiers so amazed at the present difficulties, that the Confederates only casting stones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoining. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this success, they brought the new Canton of *Lucern* into their confederacy by the force of Arms, *Anno* 1332. and that of *Zurich* by their reputation and like hope of Liberty, *Anno* 1351. in which year those of *Zug*, and *Glaris* invaded by the former five, and willing to discharge themselves of their Lordly Masters, were united to them, as was the new Canton of *Bern* in the year next following. In the year 1381. the Towns of *Solothurn* and *Friburg*, descended from the house of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that line) upon those of *Habsburg*, revolted from their natural Lords and admitted Cantons; occasioned *Lepold* son of *Albert* the fourth, and brother of *Albert* the fourth, Dukes of *Austria*, to make War upon them: in which War being vanquished and slain near *Sempach* a village of the Canton of *Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry, *Anno* 1386, and the succeeding Dukes not venturing any more against them, the residue of the Cantons and Confederates were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themselves of the House of *Austria*, they continued free and unmolested, but never came to any reputation for their valour, till the War made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they discomfited in three great batels, and slew him also in the third. A war commenced by him at the first on small occasions, and less hopes: the Country being so barren and the people

The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THE Country of the GRISONS comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lieth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Athesia*, and *Adna*: being bounded on the East, with the Country of *Tirol*; on the West, with *Switzerland*; on the North, with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more mountainous than any of this *Alpine* tract, and having less natural commodities to boast it self of, more than the Fountains of those Rivers before mentioned.

The People of it by most *Latin* Writers of these times, are called by the name of *Rheti*, the Country *Rhetia*: and so far properly enough, as that the ancient *Rheti* did inhabit all the lands possessed by the *Grisons*: though the *Grisons* do not inhabit a fourth part of those Lands, which were possessed heretofore by the ancient *Rheti*: For anciently the *Rheti* did extend their dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of *Italy*, to the River of *Danow*; comprehending besides this of the *Grisons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and so much also of the *Switzers*, as was not in possession of the old *Helvetii*. Within which Tract there were not only many rich valleys and fruitful fields; but a most pleasant race of Wines called *Vina Rhetica*, much drank of by *Augustus Caesar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no man can conceive to grow in this barren Country. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, Mountainous Fields, which the continual Snow made look of an hoary hue: and by allusion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the present by the name of *Grampuntner*, that is to say, the hoary or gray Confederates.

As for the *Rheti*, take them in the former latitude, they were subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius* the Sons-in-law and adopted children of *Augustus Caesar*, A.V. C. 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, viz. *Rhetia prima*, and *Rhetia secunda*, both of them appertaining by *Constantine's* new model, to the *Dioecesis* of *Italy*. A Nation in the first Original, of *Italian* race, and so more properly to be assigned to that *Dioecesis*; but had inhabited this tract, from the time that *Bellovesus* the *Gall* seized on part of *Tuscany*, expelling thence the ancient inhabitants thereof: who under the conduct of *Rhemus*, a great man amongst them, possessed themselves of these Mountains, and afterwards of the Vales adjoining, which they called *Rhetia*, by the name of their Captain General. This happened in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, in the first cradle, as it were, of the *Roman* Empire: in the declining age whereof, during the reign of *Valentinian* the third, and *Anastasius*, those parts which lay nearest unto *Germany*, and were worth the conquering, were subdued by the *Almaini*, and *Boiarians*; by them incorporated with the rest of their several States. The residue of this Mountainous Tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a member of the Empire; till given by *Charles* the Great to the Bishop of *Chur*; whose successors, being several ways molested by their potent neighbours, confederate with the *Switzers* for their mutual aid and preservation, Anno 1497. By whose aid they so valiantly made good their ground against the *Austrians*, that at the last, after the loss of 20000 men on both sides, the points in difference were accorded, and a peace concluded.

This is the substance of this story, as to former times; to which there cannot much be added in the way of *History*; little or no alteration happening in their affairs, but a more perfect settling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we must observe that this whole Tract is cast into three Divisions; that is to say, the *Upper League* or *Liga Grisa*; 2 *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League* of the house of God; 3 The *Lower League*, called also *Liga Distura*, or the *League* of the ten *Communalities*. The eight *Italian Prefectures* will make a fourth. Their buildings generally in the three first being cold and mountainous, are of free-stone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with Snow: the windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the said three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of Glafs, and presently shut it close again; the outside of the windows having leaves of wood, to keep the heat of their Stoves from going out, or any cold from coming in. And as for travelling, the ways are for the most part unsafe and dangerous, by reason of the straight passages, dreadful precipices, and those almost continual Bridges which hang over the terrible falls and Cataracts of the River *Rhene*, descending with great violence from the highest Mountains: huge hills of Snow tumbling into the Valleys, with a noise as hideous as if it were a clap of thunder.

For the particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the highest and most mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of *Italy*, having therein those vast Mountains of *Locknannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two streams of the *Rhene* have their first Original. By the French it is called *Liga Grise*, or the *Gray League*, (the word *Grise*, or *Grift*, in that Language, being *Gray* in ours) in the same sense as the *Dutch* call it *Grampuntner*, that is, *Confederati cani*, which we may render properly the *Confederate Gristle-pates*: either because the mountains are continually covered with a perriwig of hoary *Isicles*, or from the heads of the people, *Gray* before their time. It consisteth of nineteen *Resorts* or *Communalities*, according to the number of their Vales and Villages; of which four only speak the *Dutch*, all the rest a corrupt *Italian*: and was the first which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the name of *Grisons* came unto the rest, who after joyned with them in the same confederacy.

confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of note. The principal of those that be, are 1 *Flanzer*, the place sometimes of the *General Diets* for these *Leagues*. 2 *Diferntis*, where is a very rich Monastery. 3 *Saint Bernardino*, situate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4 *Mafox*, sometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley of *Mafoxer-tal*. 5 *Galanckter*, whence the Vale fo named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6 *Ruffla*, situate on the River *Muesfa*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of *Italy*.

2 The second *League*, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League* of the house of God, so called because it was the proper Patrimony of the Bishop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the middle *League*, as being situate between the *Upper League* on the West, and the *Lower League* upon the East. It is the greatest of the three, containing twenty one *Resorts* or *Communalities*: of which nine lie on this side the tops of the Mountains towards *Germany*, the rest towards *Italy*: and yet two only speak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of most note are, 1 *Tintzen*, the *Tinnetio* of *Antoninus*, seated amongst high and inaccessible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2 *Mur*, (called *Murus* by the same *Antoninus*) in the Valley of *Bergel*; a valley extending from the head of the River *Maira*, towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian Prefectures*. 3 *Stalla*, called *Revis* by the *Italians*, because the way doth in that place divide it self. 4 *St. Jacomo* (in the valley of *Compolschin*) called *Travafede* by *Antoninus*. 5 *Sinnada*, in the valley of *Engadin*. And 6 *Chur*, by some *Coira*, but more truly *Curia*, so called from the long stay that *Constantine* the Great made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended against the *Germans*; built afterwards by some part of his Forces which continued here, Anno 357. about half a *Dutch* mile from the meeting of the two streams of the *Rhene*, in form triangular, the buildings indifferent in themselves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill, in one corner of which itandeth the *Clofe*, and therein the Cathedral Church, a stately Edifice, but more in account of the Natives who have seen no fairer, then it is with strangers: and near the Church the Bishops Palace, and the houses of the *Canons*, all well built, and handsomely adorned. The Bishop of this City, and of all the Country of these *Leagues* (for they received their Bishop and the Faith together, Anno 489.) acknowledgeth the Archbishop of *Meyra* for their Metropolitan; is reckoned for a Prince of the Empire, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole *League*: but on the introduction of the Reformed Religion, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themselves from their obedience to the Bishop, and govern the City in the manner of a Free State. So far conformable to him, for their own preservation, that as the Bishop and his *Canons*, with the rest of this *League*, upon occasion of the wrongs done them by the House of *Austria*; Lords of the neighbouring *Tirol*; joyned in confederacy with the seven first Cantons of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498.) So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themselves from the command of their Bishops, concur with them at last in that mutual *League*.

3 The third *League* of these *Grisons*, is the *Lower League*, called also *Liga Distura*, or the *League* of the ten *Jurisdiccions*; situate close upon *Tirol*, in the North-east part of the whole Country. Of all the ten, two only, which are those of *Malans* and *Meienfeld*, obey the joyned commands of the three *Leagues* of the *Grisons*: the other eight being subject to the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, under whom they are suffered to enjoy their ancient privileges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common *League*, Anno 1436. conditioning their mutual defence against all Enemies, preservation of their peace, and maintenance of their privileges; reserving notwithstanding their obedience to their natural Lords. In which respect, and by reason of the interests and society which they have with the rest of the *Grisons*, they are in friendship with the *Swiss*, but in no confederacy. City or Walled-Town they have none. The chief of those they have, are 1 *Castels*, the seat of the Governour for the Arch-Duke of *Austria*. 2 *Malans*, and 3 *Meienfeld*, both bordering upon the *Rhene*. 4 *Tanaas*, giving name to the first and greatest of the ten *Jurisdiccions*, the chief Town of this *League*, in which are held the *General Diets* for the same; and where are kept Muniments and Records which concern their Priviledges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhetico-mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Prettigower-berg*, because it is at the end of the valley which the *Dutch* call *Prettigow*.

4 As for the *Italian Prefectures*, they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Grisons* by *Maximilian Sforze* Duke of *Milain*, Anno 1513. at such time as he gave the like present to the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Of these the first is called *Plura*, so called from the chief Town of the same name, in *Latine Plura*, once seated in a Plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of sundry Villages lying in the same bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomless Gulf. For on the 26 of August 1617. an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinkling of an eye 1500 people, and left no sign or ruine of a Town there standing; but in the place thereof a great Lake of some two miles length. 2 *Chiarama*, situate in a pleasant valley so called, near the River *Maira*, and ten *Italian* miles from the Lake of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the *Dutch*, *Clewmer-tal*, or the valley of *Cleven*, more near unto the ancient name. 3 The *Valtolina*, *Valia Telina* in the *Latine*, a pleasant valley, extending threescore miles in length, from the head of the River *Aada*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently transported on this side the *Alpes*. It is divided into six *Prefectures*, according to the names of the principal Towns. The chief whereof, are 1 *Bormio*, seated near the head of the River *Aada*. 2 *Telo*, the chief Fortrefs of the whole valley. 3 *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the Seat of the Governour, or Lieutenant General of the whole Country. This valley lying opportunely for the passage of the King of *Spain's* Forces, out of *Milain* into

Grifons.

Germany, by the practices and treasons of *Radolphus Planta*, one of the Natives of it, and of the *Romish* Religion; was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Millain*, Anno 1622. the whole Country brought under the obedience of that King, *Chur* it self forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* settled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joynt Forces of the *French*, *Venetians*, and *Savoyard*, the whole Valley was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Grifons* re-estated in their just possessions, Anno 1630. save that the *Spaniard* still holds the Fort of *Fuentes*, for the safer passage of his Forces, if occasion be.

Such is the state of the three Leagues, considered severally and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government, or Common-wealth; for ordering whereof they hold a *General Diet*, once in every year, consisting of threescore and three Commissioners: that is to say, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the House of God*, and 14 from the *League of the Jurisdictions*. These have authority to determine of Appeals from the common *Præfectures*, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Ambassies, and Lawes, which concern the publick: yet so, that in a point of *Judicature*, it is lawful to appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have authority if need be, to reverse the sentence; the causes being severally proposed, and passed by the major part of voyces. The Government of each *League*, popular, as amongst the *Switzers*.

There are in these *Alpine* Provinces

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.

Universities 4

i. e.

1 *Turin*. 3 *Basil*.
2 *Geneva*. 4 *Zurich*.

OF



OF FRANCE.

Having thus crossed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently dispose our selves for *France* or *Germany*. But we will follow the course and fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which first passed into *France*, before it medled with the *Germans*; and had brought *Spain* and *Britain* under the form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a greater distance.

FRANCE then according to the present dimenions of it, is bounded on the East with a branch of the *Alpes*, which divide *Dauphine* from *Piemont*; as also with the Countries of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and some parts of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*; on the West with the *Aquitain Ocean*, and a branch of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North with the *English Ocean*, and some parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the rest of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and the *Mediterranean*.

The Figure of it is almost square, each side of the *Quadrature* being reckoned 600 miles in length. But they that go more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be 660 *Italian* miles, the breadth 570 only, the whole *Circumference* to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern temperate Zone, between the middle *Parallel* of the fifth *Clime*, where the longest day is 15 hours, and the middle *Parallel* of the eighth *Clime*, where the longest day is 16 hours, and an half.

It hath this present name of *France*, from the *Franci* or *Franks*, a people of *Germany*, who seized upon those parts of it which lay nearest to the *Rhene*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third; and having afterwards subdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-Royal of their growing Empire, they caused the Country thereabouts to be called *France*. Which name, as they enlarged their borders, they imposed on, or communicated rather, to the rest of this Country; and to those parts of *Germany* also which were conquered by them. At which time, for distinction sake, they called the East parts of their whole Empire by the name of *Ostern-reich* or *Austrasia*, lying now wholly out of *France*, in *Germany*, and that part of *Belgium* which is subject to the King of *Spain*: and for the West parts thereof, they had the name of *Westen-reich*, or *Westrasia*, (in the barbarous *Latin* of that Age) *West France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which the name of *France* was at last appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Anciently it was called *Gallia*, and the people *Galli*, and by that name occurs most commonly in the Writers of the *Roman* story; and *Gallia Transalpina*, because situate on the further side of the *Alpes* from *Italy*, to difference it from the Country of those *Gauls* which being planted in those parts which we now call *Lombardy*, was called *Cisalpine*. Sometimes it was called *Galatia* also, and by that name known amongst the *Greeks*: by *Ptolomy* called *Celto-Galatia*, or the *Galatia* of the *Celts*, a potent nation of old *Gaul*; to distinguish it from *Galatia*, one of the Provinces of *Asia minor*, denominated from the *Galatians* or *Gauls* of this Country. Whence it became so named, is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia*, from the *Greek* word *Γαλα*, (*Gala*) signifying milk, *quia Lacteos*, i. e. *albos homines producebant*, for the milky and white complexion of the people, compared to the *Greeks* and *Romans* who first imposed it. Others, and amongst them *Diodorus Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a son of *Hercules*; to which that of *Galatia* comes as near as may be. That *Hercules* was sometimes in this Country, is affirmed also by *Ammianus Marcellinus*; who further adds, That after he had suppressed those Tyrants which oppressed the People, he begat many Children on the principal Women; *Et eos, partes quibus imperitabant, nominibus suis appellasse, Lib. XL.* Who gave their own names to those parts over which they ruled. But in another place acknowledging that the *Grecians* call this People *Galata* (*ita enim Gallos sermo Græcus appellat*) he telleth us from *Timogenes* an ancient Author, one very diligent in the search of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines* or first Inhabitants hereof, called themselves *Celts*, by the name of one of their Kings, whom they highly honoured. *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galatas, et Galata* from the name of his mother *Galata*: who probably enough might be a daughter of *Hercules*, mistook by *Diodorus* for one of his sons.

Of the Original of this People more anon. In the mean time we may take so much notice of the ancient *Gauls*, as to affirm him (out of *Cæsar* and other Authors) to be quick witted, of a sudden and nimble apprehension, but withal very rash and hair-brained, (*ut sunt subita Gallorum ingenia*, is a note set upon them by the pen of *Cæsar*:) so full of Law-suits and contentions, that their Lawyers never wanted work.

work. *Gallia Cisalpinus*, &c. this Poet hath it: of vehement affections, and precipitate in all their actions, as well Military as Civil; falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and presently going off in Smoke. *Primus impetus major quam virorum, secundus minor quam feminarum*, was a part also of their Character in the time of *Florus* the Historian. And though the present French be generally of another Original; yet there is so much of the old Gaul still left among them, either by the Impression of the Heavenly Bodies, or by inter-marriages with the Gauls, as they overcame them, that all these qualities are still predominant in the French, not differing from the ancient Gaul, but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Comparison, homely I must confess, but to the life expressing the nature of the French, compared with the Dutch and Spanish, in matters of War. The French is said to be like a Flea, quickly skipping into a Country, and soon leaping out of it, as was the Expedition of Charles the eighth into Italy. The Dutch is said to be like a Louse, slowly mastering a place, and as slowly (yet at last) driven out of their hold, as was their taking and losing of *Ostend* and *Gulick*. The Spaniard is said to be like a Crab, or *Pediculus inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is so rooted there, that nothing but the extremity of violence can fetch him out again. In which I think I need not instance, it being generally observed, that the Spaniards will endure all possible hardship, before they will part with any thing that they are possessed of. It is used also for a By-word, that the Italian is wise before hand, the Dutch in the time of action, and the French after it is done; a wisdom much like that of the ancient Gauls. Nor are they less Litigious than the old Gauls were: Inasmuch as it is thought that there are more Law-suits tried among them in seven years, than have been in England from the Conquest till the time of King James. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of Religion, as appeareth by the story of a Gentleman lying sick on his death-bed; who when the Priest had perswaded him that the Sacrament of the Altar was the very Body and Blood of CHRIST, refused to eat thereof because it was Friday. Nor can I forget another in the same extremity, who seeing the Host (for so they call the Consecrated Elements) brought unto him by a lubberly Priest, said that CHRIST came to him, as he entered into Hierusalem, riding upon an Ass. As for the Women, they are said to be witty, but apish, wanton, and incontinent: where a man at his first entrance may find acquaintance, and at his first acquaintance may find an entrance. So *Dallington* in his *View of France*, describeth them. But I have since heard this *Confure* condemned of some uncharitableness, and the French Gentlemen highly magnified for all those graces which may beautify and adorn that Sex. And it is possible enough that it may be so in some particulars, though it be more than any man would guess at, that cometh amongst them. For generally at the first sight, you shall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle; and are so full of Chat and Tattle, even with those they know not, as if they were resolved sooner to want breath than words, and never to be silent but in the Grave.

As to the persons of this People, they are commonly of a middle stature, and for the most part of a slight making; their complexion being generally hot and moist, which makes them very subject to the heats of lust, and easily inclinable unto those diseases which are concomitants thereof. Their constitution somewhat tender, if not delicate, which rendreth them impatient of Toil and Labour; and is in part the cause of those ill successes which have hapned to them in the Wars; in which they have lost as much for want of constancy and perseverance in their Enterprizes, as they have gained by their courage in the undertaking. And for the Women, they are for the most part very personable, of frail bodies, slender waists, and a fit Symmetry of proportion in all the rest; their hands white, long, and slender, and easily discernable to be so; for either they wear no Gloves at all, or else so short, as if they were cut off at the hand-wrist. To these the Complexion of their faces, and the colour of their hair, too much inclining to the black, holds no true Decorum. 'Tis true the Poets commend *Leda* for her black hair, and not unworthily; *Leda fuit nigris conspicienda comis*, as it is in *Ovid*. But this was specially, because it set off with the greater luitre, the amiable sweetness of her Complexion: for in that case the Hair doth set forth the Face, as shadows commonly do a picture; and the Face so becometh the Hair, as a Field Argent doth a Sable bearing, which kind of Coat our Critical Heralds call the most fair. But when a Black Hair meets with a Brown or Swarthy Complexion, it falls short of that attractiveness of Beauty, which *Ovid* being to great a Crafts-Master in the Art of Love, did commend in *Leda*.

The chief exercises they use, are 1 Tennis; every Village having a Tennis-court, Orleans 60. Paris many hundreds. 2 Dancing, a sport to which they are so generally affected, that were it not so much enveighed against by their trait-laced Ministers, it is thought that many more of the French Catholics had been of the Reformed Religion. For so extremely are they bent upon this sport, that neither Age nor Sickness, nor poverty it self, can make them keep their heels still, when they hear the Musick. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches, or go as if they were troubled all day with a Sciatica, and perchance have their raggs hang so loose about them, that one would think a swift Galliard might shake them into their nakedness, will to the Dancing Green howsoever, and be there as eager at the sport, as if they had left their several infirmities and wants behind them. What makes their Ministers (and indeed all that follow the Genevian Discipline) enveigh so bitterly against Dancing, and punish it with such severity when they find it used; I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this discourse. But being it is a Recreation which this people are so given unto, and such a one as cannot be followed but in a great deal of company, and before many witnesses and spectators of their carriage in it; I must needs think the Ministers of the French Church more nice than wife, if they choose rather to deter men from their Congregations by so strict a Stoicism, than indulge any thing unto the jollity and natural gaiety of this people, in matters not offensive, but by accident only.

The Language of this people is very voluble and pleasant, but rather Elegant than Copious, and there-

therefore much troubled for want of proper words to find out Periphrases; besides that very much of it is expressed in the action; the head and shoulders move as significantly toward it, as the lips and tongue; and he that hopeth to speak it with any good grace, must have somewhat in him of the Mimick. A Language enriched with great plenty of Proverbs, consequently a great help to the French humour of Scoffing; and so naturally disposed for Courtship, as makes all the people complementary; the poorest Candler in the Parish hath his Court-crings, and his Eau de vie de Cour, his Court-holy-water (as they call it) as perfectly as the best Gentleman-Huissier in Paris. Compared with that of other Nations, the Language of the Spaniards is said to be Manly, the Italian Courty, and the French Amorous. A sweet Language it is without question, the people leaving out in their pronunciation many of their Consonants, and thereby giving occasion to this By-word, that the Frenchman pronounceth not as he writes, singeth not as he pricketh, nor speaks as he thinketh. In the Original thereof it is a compound of the old Gallick, German, and Latin Tongues: the old Gallick being questionless the same with the Welsh or British, as appeareth clearly by these reasons: 1 The Latin words are known to have been received from the Romans; and the German words at the coming in of the Franks and Burgundians; but of the Welch words which they have, we can give no reason, but that they are the remainder of their ancient Language; of which Welch words which still continue in that Language, *Camden* in his *Britannia* reckoneth not a few. 2 It is said by *Tacitus* that the Britans were the Descendants of the Gauls, and this he proveth as by other Arguments, so from the identity or near resemblance of the Language which both Nations speak. *Utinsque sermo haud multum diversus*, as his own words are. And 3 it is said by *Cæsar*, That the Gauls used to pass into Britain, to be instructed in the Rites and Learning of the Druides; which sheweth that both People spake but one common Tongue, there being in those times no one learned Language which other Nations studied besides their own.

The soyl is extraordinary fruitful, and hath three Load-stones to draw riches out of other Countries, Corn, Wine, and Salt; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into France 1200000 li. Sterling, the Custom of Salt only to the King being estimated at 700000 Crowns per annum. And indeed the benefit arising on this one commodity is almost incredible; it being constituted by the Kings Edict (which is all in all) that no man shall have any Salt for Domestick uses (except by special privilege, and that dearly paid for) but what he must buy of the Kings Officers; and that upon such prices too as they please to sell it. Nor can it but be very well stored with Fish; for besides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are said to be 135000. Their other Merchandises are Bees, Hogs, Nuts, Woad, Skins, vast quantites of all sorts of Linnen. And to say truly, there are not many Countries in the Christian World, to which Nature hath been so prodigal of her choicest blessings, as she hath to this; the fields thereof being large and open, and those so intermingled with Corn and Vines; and every hedge-row so beset with choice of Fruits, that never any covetous or curious eye had a fairer object. And yet so miserable is the condition of the common Peasant, partly by reason of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the King, and partly by those great, but uncertain Rents which are set upon him by his Landlord (for the poor Husbandman is Tenant only at the will of his Lord) that there is many one amongst them, who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, nor eats good Bread, from one end of the year unto the other.

The Christian Faith was planted first amongst the Gauls, by some of St. Peters Disciples, sent hither by him at his first coming to Rome: *Xystus*, *Fronto*, and *Julianus*, the first Bishops of *Rhemes*, *Perigord*, and *Mantz*, (*Cenomanensium* in the Latine) being said to be of his ordaining in the Martyrologies. The like may be affirmed (but on surer grounds) of *Trophimus* the first Bishop of *Arles*. For on a controversy betwixt the Archbishops of *Vienna* and *Arles*, for the dignity of Metropolitan, in the time of Pope *Leo* the first; it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Bishop of *Arles*, quod prima inter Gallias, &c. That *Arles* of all the Cities of Gaul, did first obtain the happiness of having *Trophimus*, ordained Bishop thereof by the hands of St. Peter. Nor is St. Paul to be denied the honour of sending some of his Disciples thither also to preach the Gospel: *Crescens* sent by him, as he telleth us 2 Tim. 4. into *Galatia*, being the first Bishop of *Vienna*, spoken of before; as not the Martyrologies only, but *Ado Viennensis*, an ancient Writer of that Church, doth expressly say. And that it was into this Country that he sent that *Crescens* at that time, and not unto *Galatia* in *Asia minor*; the testimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret* which affirm the same, and that which hath been said before of this name of *Galatia*, may confirm sufficiently. But Christianity being destroyed by the French at their first coming hither, was again planted by the industry of S. Remigius the first Bishop of *Rhemes*; *Clovis* or *Clodivus* the fifth King of the French; giving way unto it for his Wives sake, who was zealous in it; and after taking on himself that holy calling, on a great victory which he won against the *Alemanni*: By whom being overlaid in the day of Battle, he made his prayers to CHRIST, whom his Wife *Clothilda* worshipped; vowing to be of that Religion if he gat the Victory; which vow he had no sooner made (as the Story telleth us) but *Alemanni* invasse timor, a sudden fear fell upon the *Alemanni*, and the French were Conquerours.

At this time they are divided in Religion, as in other places; some following the Doctrine of the Church of Rome, and others that of those Reformed Churches which adhere to Calvin. But this division is more ancient than Calvin's dayes; the same opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the Romish Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenses*, the *Waldenses*, or *Pawperes de Lugduno* (the *Vandoyes*, as the French Writers call them) of whom we shall speak more when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, that the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches was not new in France, when *Zuinglius* first preached against the superstitions of the Mass; and the worship of Images; and Calvin

the *French* in time to come should conquer, and consequently unto *France* when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all subordinate Estates which were holden of it. If unto all Estates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give sentence in behalf of *Charles of Blais*, against *John de Montfort*, in the succession to the Dukedom of *Bretagne*: *Charles of Blais* claiming by his mother, the Niece of *Arthur* the second, by his second son *Guy*: whereas *John de Montfort* was the third son (and the next Heir-male) of the said Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of *France*, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true heirs of *Anne* the Dutchess: whose Daughter and Heir the Lady *Claude*, being married unto *Francis* the first, had issue *Henry* the second, and other Children. Which *Claude*, besides *Francis* the second, *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* the third, and *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, all dying without issue, had a Daughter named *Isabel* or *Elizabeth* married to *Philip* the second King of *Spain*, by whom she was made the mother of *Isabella*, the late Arch-Dutchess, and of *Katharine* the Wife of *Charles Emmanuel* the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to say any thing of the pretensions of the house of *Lorraine*, descending from the Lady *Claude*, the second Daughter of King *Henry* the second, and sister of *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth* Queen of *Spain*. Nor do we find that the *French* to stand upon this Law, as not to think that a Succession by and from the Females, is in some cases their best Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thrust his Master *Childerick* into a Monastery, to make good his Title to the Crown (or some colour for it) derived his Pedegree from *Plythild*, one of the Daughters of *Clovis* the first, married to *Ansbert* the Grandfather of that *Arnulphus*, who was the first *Mayre* of the Palace of *Pepin*: Family. As also how *Hugh Capet*, putting aside *Charles of Lorraine* the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawless Action the more seemingly lawful, drew his descent from some of the Heirs General of *Charles* the Great; his Mother *Adelheid*, being the Daughter of the Emperour *Henry* the first, surnamed the *Fowler*; who was the son of *Otto* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgarde* the Daughter of the Emperour *Arnulph*, the last Emperour of the *Romans* (or *Germans*) of the house of *Charles*. And it is said of *Lewis* the ninth, so renowned for sanctity amongst them, that he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet conscience, till it was proved unto him that by his Grandmother, the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainault*, he was descended from *Hermingrade* the Daughter of *Charles of Lorraine*. Adde here, that this supposed *Salique Law* not only crossthe received Laws of all Nations else, which admit of Women to the succession in their Kingdoms, where the Crown descends in a succession: and have a great respect both unto their persons and posterities in such Kingdoms also, where the Kings are said to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*: but that even *France* it self hath submitted to the Imperious command of two Women of the *Medices*; and at the present to the Government of a *Spanish* Princess. So that it is evident that this Law, by whomsoever made, and how far soever it extended, is of no such force, but that the Labels of it may be easily cut in pieces by an *English* sword well whetted; if there were no other bar to the title of *England*, then the authority and antiquity of the *Salique* Law.

Law. But for my part (if it be lawful for me to dispute this point) I am not satisfied in the right of the *English* title; supposing the *Salique* Law to be of no fuch force, as the *French* pretended; and meafuring the fucceffion in the Crown of *France*, to be according to fucceffions in the Realm of *England*, on which King *Edward* the third feemed to ground his claim. For if there were no *Salique* Law to exclude fucceffion by the *Females*, as the *English* did pretend there was not: yet could not *Edward* coming from a fifter of the three laft Kings, which reigned fucceffively before *Philip of Valois*, againft whom he claimed, be ferved in court, before the daughters of thofe Kings (or the *Males* at leaft defending of them) had had their turns in the fucceffion of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren, two left ifue, viz. *Lewis*, and *Philip*. *Lewis* firmed *Hutin*, fon of *Philip* the fair, and *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip* Earl of *Encreux*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his wife; from which marriage ifued all the fucceeding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the houfe of *Burbon*. *Philip*, the fecond brother, firmed the *Long*, by *Joan* the daughter of *Othelin* Earl of *Burgundy*, had a daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*; from whom defended thofe great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the houfe of *Spain*. If then there were no *Salique* Law to exclude the Women and their fons, *Charles* King of *Navarre* the fon of Queen *Joan* and of *Philip* de *Encreux*, defended from *Lewis* *Hutin* the elder brother; and *Lewis* de *Malaine* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the fon of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the daughter of *Philip* the *Long*, the fecond brother, muft have precedence of title before King *Edward* the third of *England* defended from a fifter of the faid two Kings; their ifue, feverally and refpectively, before any claiming or defending from the faid King *Edward*. So that *K. Edward* the third had fome other claim than what is commonly alledged for him in our *English* Hiftories; or elfe he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive fo wife a King, would not have ventured on a bufinefs of fo great confequence, without fome colourable title; though what this title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore that he went upon fome other grounds, than that of ordinary fucceffion by the Law of *England*, and claimed that Crown, as the eldeft heir-male and neareft Kinfman to the laft King. For being fifters fon to the King deceased, he was a degree nearer to him than either the King of *Navarre*, or the Earl of *Flanders*, who were the Grandchildren of his Brethren: and having priority of either in refpect of age, had a fair title before either, to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on thefe grounds King *Edward* might the rather go, becaufe he found it a ruled cafe, in the difpute about the fucceffion in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For though King *Edward* the firft meafuring the order of fucceffion by the Laws of *England*, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who fhould hold it of him; gave fentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grandchild of the eldeft daughter of the Earl of *Huntingdon*:

foxes, that all the Rhetorick in the world cannot get it out of him. Next in their Fashion and Apparel, the French wears his hair long, the Spaniard short; the French goes thin and open to the very shirt, as if there were continual Summer, the Spaniard so wrapt up and close, as if all were Winter; the French begins to burton downward, and the Spaniard upwards; the last always constant to his Fashion, the first intent so much on nothing as on new fancies of Apparel. Then for their Gait, the French walk fast, as if pursued on an Arrest, the Spaniard slowly, as if newly come out of a Quagmire; the French go up and down in clusters, the Spaniards but by two and two at the most; the French walk the march in the Rere, and the Spaniards always in the Van; the French sings and danceth as he walks the streets, the Spaniard in a grave and solemn posture, as if he were going a Procession. The like might be observed of their Tune, their Speech, and almost every passage in the life of Man: for which I rather chuse to refer the Reader to the ingenious James Howell's Book of Instructions for Travel, than insist longer on it here. Only I add, that of the two so different humours, that of the Spaniard seems to be the more approvable. Inasmuch as the Neapolitans, Milanese, and Sicilians, who have had trial of both Nations, chuse rather to submit themselves to the proud and severe yoke of the Spaniards, than the lust and insolencies of the French, not sufferable by men of even and well-balanced spirits. And possible enough it is, that such of the Netherlands, as have of late been won to the Crown of France, will find so little comfort in the change of their Matters; as may confirm the residue to the Crown of Spain, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Country, next to the Pyrenees which part France from Spain; the Jura or Jura, which separates it from Savoy and Switzerland; and the Vange or Voges, which divides it from Lorren; are those which Caesar calleth Gebenna, Ptolomy Cimmeni; being the same which separate Auvergne from Languedoc, called therefore the Mountains of Auvergne; the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of France, which for the most part is plain and champaign; the others before mentioned, being common unto this, with the bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully stored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1. Sequana or Seine, which arising in Burgundy, watering the Cities of Paris and Roan, and receiving into it nine navigable streams, disburdeneth it self into the British Ocean. 2. Some, in Latine called Samona, which rising near the Town of St. Quintin, first cutteth between Picardy and Artoys, afterwards passeth through the fair City of Amiens, and the goodly Town of Albeville, and finally having received eight lesser streams, loseth it self in the same Sea also. 3. Legeris or Loire, on which are seated Nantes, and Orleans. It riseth about the Mountains of Auvergne, (being the greatest in France) and having run 600 miles, and augmented his channel with the entertainment of 72 lesser rivulets, minglenth his sweet waters with the brackish Aquitane Ocean. 4. Rhodanus, or the Rhosne, which springeth from the Alpes, three Dutch miles from the head of the Rhene, passeth by Lyons and Avignon; and having taken in thirteen lesser Brooks, falleth into the Mediterranean Sea, not far from Arles. 5. The Saone, by the old Latins called Araris, which rising out of the Mountain Vogesus or Vange, in the borders of Lorren and Alsatia, divideth the two Burgundies from each other; and falleth into the Rhosne at the City of Lyons. 6. Garumna or the Garonne, which issuing out of the Pyrenean Mountains, passing by Tholose and Bourdeaux, and having swallowed up sixteen lesser Rivers (of which the Dordonne is the chief) disburdeneth it self into the Aquitane Ocean, near the Town of Blay: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River Dordonne, being called the Gironne. Of these it is said proverbially, that the Seine is the richest, the Rhosne the swiftest, the Garonne the greatest, and the Loire the sweetest. And by these and many other Rivers this Kingdom is enriched with 34 excellent Havens, having all the properties of a good Harbour; that is to say, 1. Room, 2. Safety, 3. Easiness of defence, 4. Resort of Merchants.

As for so much of the Story hereof as concerneth the whole, it was first peopled, if we may give credit to Annius, (as I think we may not in this point) by Samothres the sixth son of Japhet (affirmed by them, and such as adhere unto them, to be that son of his, who in the Scripture is called Mesech) in the year of the World 1806. But those which are better conversant in the course of History, have utterly laid aside this device of Annius. Even Funetius, though a great Berossian, doth confess ingenuously, *Quis hic Samothres sit incertum est*, that it is unresolved who this Samothres was. And Vignier a French Antiquary doth confess with Funetius, *Mais on ne sçay qui il estoit*, that nobody can tell us who he was. They who have better studied this point than Annius, derive the Gauls from Gomer, Japhet's eldest son, whose off-spring were first called Gomerians, afterwards Cimmerians, at last Cimbr: first planted (as before was said) in the Mountainous places of Albania, where the Mountains called Cimmerii long preserved his memory; and after changing that unfruitful and unpleasant dwelling for the Plains of Phrygia, wherein the City Cimmeria did retain somewhat of his name, in the times of Pliny. Afterwards his posterity proceeded further in the lesser Asia, and in long tract of time filled Germany, and Gaul, and Britain, with his numerous issues: the Gauls and Cimbr being clearly of the same Original, though known amongst the Romans by two different names. From whence they had the names of Gauls, and Celtae, and Galata, hath been shewn before. It shall suffice us now to add, that being originally of the Cimbr, and having somewhat in them of the blood of Hercules; they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whose love, no King could secure himself from imminent dangers. They were very sparing in their diet, and used to fine any one that out-grew his girdle. With these men the Romans fought at first for their own preservation, rather than out of any hope by the conquest of them to improve either their fame or their dominions. Inasmuch that when they had invaded Italy with a numerous Army, in favour of the Cisalpine Gauls, under the conduct of Ambracius and Congelanus, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as Telamon a City of Tuscany; the Romans thought they had

had done enough in discomfiting their Forces, and clearing their own Provinces of them; not holding it for a point of wisdom to pursue them, or invade their Country; though by the conquest of Liguria but few years before, they had enlarged their Dominions to the borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great achievements in the Wars, these were they who under the conduct of Bellovesus passing over the Alpes, conquered the nearest parts of Italy, called afterwards Gallia Cisalpina; and under that of Segovesus, over-run all Germany; and following their successes as far as Scythia, founded the potent Nation of the Celto-Scythae. These were the men, whose issue under the command of Brennus, discomfited the Romans, at the River Allia; sacked the City, and besieged the Capitol. An. M. 3577. V. C. 365. In which action they so terrified the Romans, that after their expulsion from Rome by Camillus, there was a Law made, that the Priests, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, should be compelled to the War, if ever the Gauls came again. And finally these were the men, who under the command of Belgus and another Brennus, ransacked Illyricum, Pannonia, Thrace, and Greece, in which they spoiled and plundered the Temple of Delphos; for which Sacrilege they were visited with the Pestilence. Such as survived this Plague, went into Asia, and there gave name to that Country now called Galatia; of whom thus Du Bartas:

The ancient Gaul in roving every way,
As far as Phœbus darts his Golden Ray;
Seiz'd Italy: The Worlds proud Mistress sackt;
Which rather Mars than Romulus compact.
Then spoils Pisidia, Mysia doth intral;
And mid'st of Asia plants another Gaul.

Yet at last the Romans undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almost all the residue of the (then known) World. Attempted first by Fulvius Flaccus, a Roman Consul, called in by the Massiliens to assist them against the Salii their unquiet Neighbours, A. V. C. 628. that part hereof which afterwards was called Narbonensis, being brought into the form of a Roman Province at the conclusion of the War against the Allobroges, and Arverni (undertaken on the like complaint of the Hædus) about five years after. Not totally subdued until the time of Julius Caesar, and not easily then. For though the War was managed then by the ablest Captain that ever the State of Rome gave life to; yet was it not more easily vanquished, by the valour and fortune of the Romans, than by want of good intelligence and correspondence amongst themselves. Nor did they sell their liberty so good cheap, as those other Nations, with whom the Romans had to deal; Caesar himself affirming, That he had slain 1192000 of them, before they would submit to the Roman Yoke. But at the last they were brought under the power of Rome, by whom the whole Country was divided into these four parts, viz. 1. Narbonensis, called so from the City of Narbon, then a Roman Colony, containing Languedoc, Provence, Dauphine, and some part of Savoy; called also Braccata at the first conquest by the Romans, from the usual habit of the People (resembling the Mantles used by the Wild Irish) called in Latin Bracca: attempted first by Fulvius Flaccus, in his War against the Salii, as before is said; and finally subdued, A. V. C. 633. by Fabius Maximus, and Cn. Domitius Enobarbus, in their War against the Allobroges, and their Confederates, before mentioned, about 70 years after the coming in of Julius Caesar. 2. Aquitanica, so called from the City of Aqua Augustæ (now D'Agen, in Guienne) lying upon the Pyrenees; and the wide Ocean; which comprehended the Provinces of Gascony, Guienne, Xaintonge, Limosin, Quercy, Perigord, Berry, Burbonnoys, and Auvergne; extending from the Pyrenees to the River of Loire, and consequently stretching over all the middle of Gaul. 3. Celtica, so named from the valiant Nation of the Celte; (called also Lugdunensis, from the City of Lyons; and Comata from the long hair worn amongst this people) extending from the Loire to the British Ocean, and comprehending the Provinces of Britagne, Normandy, Anjou, Tourin, Main, La Beausse, the Isle of France, part of Champagne, the Dukedom of Burgundy, and the County of Lyonnoys. 4. Belgica, from the Belge, a potent Nation of that tract, taking up all the East parts of Gaul, viz. Picardy, the rest of Champagne, the County of Burgundy, together with so much of Germany and the Netherlands, as lyeth on this side of the Rhene, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of Spain. In the new modelling of the Empire by Constantine the Great, Gaul was appointed for the seat of one of the four Præfetti Pretorio, designed for the four Quarters of it. His Title Præfictus Pretorio Galliarum; his Government extending over the Dioceses of Gaul, Spain, and Britain: this Diocese of Gaul being cast into seventeen Provinces, that is to say, Lugdunensis Prima, 2. Secunda, 3. Tertia, 4. Quarta, 5. Belgica Prima, 6. Secunda, 7. Germanica Prima, 8. Secunda, 9. Narbonensis Prima, 10. Secunda, 11. Aquitania Prima, 12. Secunda, 13. Novempopulonia, 14. Viennensis, 15. Maxima Sequanorum, 16. Alpes Graia & Pennina, 17. Alpes Maritimæ. Of these seventeen, Germanica Prima & Secunda, all Belgica Prima, and a great part of Secunda, all that of the Alpes Graia & Pennina, and so much of Maxima Sequanorum, as lyeth in Switzerland; are now dismembered from the name and account of France. What principal Nations of the Gauls, and what Provinces of the present France, the rest contained; shall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it stood not in this state: For within sixty years after the death of Constantine, during the Reigns of Honorius and Theodosius, the Burgundians, a great and populous Nation, were called in by Stilico, Lieutenant to Honorius the Western Emperour, to keep the borders of the Empire against the French; then ready with some other of the Barbarous Nations to invade the same. The Goths not long

France.

long after by agreement with the same *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were vested in *Gaul Narbonensis*, by the gift of that Emperour; with a good part of *Tarracensis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added, in regard of the service they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impression on that Countrey. And in the reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long hovered on the banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the distractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; first made themselves Masters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after spread themselves over all the rest of the Provinces which had not been subdued by the *Goths*, and *Burgundians*: excepting a small corner of *Armorica*, then possessed by the *Britanni*. So that the *Romans* being ousted of all the Countrey, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality than could be imagined: The *Goths* possessing all *Aquidain*, and *Narbonensis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*, *Languedock*, *Gascoigne*, *Guenne*, *Xaintoigne*, *Poitou*, *Berry*, *Limousin*, *Perigord*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their share the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolais*, *Forrest*, the Countreys of *Lyonnais*, *La Bresse*, *Daulphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them so denominated. The rest (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was possessed by the *French*, who in short time repulsed the *Visigoths* or *Western Goths* (then busie in the Conquest of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the *Roman Aquitain*, by the valour of *Clovis* the Great, their first Christian King, before they could challenge a Prescription of 60 years. Nor was it long before *Provence* also was resigned to *Theodorick* the French King, of *Mets* by *Amalsunta*, Qu. of the *Ostro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, nothing being left unto that Nation of all their *Gallick* Conquests but *Languedock* only. In which respect, the *Gothish* Provinces of *Gall* (except *Provence* only) together with so much of the *Burgundians* which was after layd to West *France*, shall pass in the account of this Countrey; the rest of the *Burgundian* Conquests which lie within the bounds of the modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) shall be considered by themselves in the description and affairs of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; a distinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but piece-meal, and by several titles (and yet not wholly so neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themselves, and the succession of their Kings, we will speak at last, when we have brought all the chief parts and Provinces of this flourishing Countrey, into their possession. The principal Provinces are, 1 *France*, specially so called, 2 *Champagne*, 3 *Picardy*, 4 *Normandy*, 5 *Bretagne*, 6 The *Estates of Anjou*, with its members, 7 *La Beaulle*, 8 *Nivernois*, 9 The Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependent on it, being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the first acquets of the *French*. Then follow the chief Provinces of the *Gothish* Kingdom, that is to say, 10 *Berry*, 11 *Poitou*, 12 *Limousin*, 13 *Perigord*; and 14 *Quercu*, 15 *Aquitain*, with the members of it, and 16 *Languedoc*: And last of all the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Counties of 17 *Provence*, 18 *Daulphine*, 19 *La Bresse*, 20 *Lionnois*, 21 The *Dutchy*, and 22 the County of *Burgundy*, 23 The Islands in the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick* Ocean, in the close of all. Of some of which *La Nove*, a *French* Author hath passed this censure: The men of *Berry* are Leachers, they of *Tourein* Thieves, they of *Languedoc* Traytors, they of *Provence* Atheists, they of *Rhemes* (or *Champagne*) superstitious, they of *Normandy* insolent, they of *Picardy* proud, & sic de ceteris. But here we are to understand, that all these Provinces (though passing by the name and account of *France*) are not under the command of the *French* King; the Isles of *Jersey* and *Guernsey* being possessed by the *English*; the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Charolois* by the King of *Spain*; the *Dutchy* of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorraine*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the House of *Nassau*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of *Rome*. And on the other side, the *French* Kings are possessed of some Towns and Cities, not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperial Cities of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; lying within the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, the Fort and Pass of *Pignerolle* in the Dukedom of *Savoy*: and the Port of *Monaco*, in *Liguria*; *Bast Navarre*, in *Spain*: not to say anything of their late acquets in *Spain*, and *Flanders*; which I look not on as parts of the *French* Dominions.

FRANCE, specially so called.

THE first place which the *Franks* or *French* had for their first habitation, was by that people honoured with the name of *FRANCE*; the first green turf of *Gallick* ground, by which they took *livery* and *seisin* of all the rest. A Province now bounded on the East with *Champagne*, on the North with *Normandy*, on the West and South with *La Beaulle*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called the *Isle of France*; as being circled almost round with several Rivers: that is to say, the *Oise* on the North, the *Eure* on the West, the *Seine* on the East, and a vein-river of the *Seine*, towards the South. A Countrey not so large as many of the *French* Provinces, but such as hath given name unto all the rest; it being the Fate of many small, but puissant Provinces, to give their name to others

The Isle of France.

others which are greater then they, if conquered and brought under by them. For thus we see the little Province of *Poland*, to have mastered and given name to the *Mazovii*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia Europea*; as that of *Mosco*, to the Provinces of *Asiatica*. And thus have those of *Sweden* conquered and denominated almost all the great Peninsula of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the smallest Provinces. And thus this Island being the seat Royal of the *French*, in *Gallia*, gave name to all the residue of it, as they made it theirs. A Countrey generally so fruitful and delectable, (except in *Gastinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equal to the Vallies in most places of *Europe*; but the vale of *Montmorency* (wherein *Paris* standeth) scarce to be followed in the world. An argument whereof may be, that when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their Confederates, besieged that City with an Army of 100000 men; neither the Assailants without, nor the Citizens within, found any scarcity of victuals; and yet the Citizens, besides Souldiers, were reckoned at 50000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica secunda*, and *Lugdunensis quarta*, the chief inhabitants thereof being the *Parisi*, the *Bellocaci*, and the *Silvanctes*: and is now divided into four parts, that is to say, the Dukedom of *Valois*, 2 *Gastinois*, 3 *Hennepin*, and that which is properly called the *Isle of France*, by some the *Prevostie*, or County of *Paris*.

The Dukedom or County of *VALOIS*, lyeth towards *Picardy*, the principal Cities of it, 1 *Senlis*, (in *Latin Silvanctium*) a Bishops Sec. 2 *Compeigne* (*Compendium*) seated on the River *Oise*, a retiring place of the *French* Kings for hunting, and other Countrey pleasures. 3 *Beauvois*, the chief City of the *Bellocaci*, by *Prology* called *Cesaromagus*, a fair, large, well-traded Town, from which the Countrey round about hath the name of *Beauvoisin*. The Patrimony in former times of *Rogery*, the third Son of *Theobald*, the second Earl of *Blais*, and younger Brother of *Odon* the first Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the Title of Earl of *Beauvois*: and at his death gave it for ever to the Bishops hereof; for antiently this City was a See Episcopall; the Bishop whereof is one of the twelve Peers of *France*. Philip one of the Bishops here in times succeeding, a Military man, and one that had much damnified the *English* Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard* the first. The Pope being made acquainted with his imprisonment, but not the cause of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an Ecclesiastical person, and one of his beloved Sons: The King returned unto the Pope the Armour which the Bishop was taken in, and these words engraven on the same, *Vide an hac sit tunicia filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* children spake unto him, when they presented him with the Coat of their Brother *Joseph*: which the Pope viewing, swore, That it was rather the Coat of a Son of *Marr*, than a Son of the Church; and so left him wholly to the Kings pleasure. 4 *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County *Beauvoisin*: memorable for giving the Title of Earl of *Clermont*, to *Robert* the fifth Son of the King *St. Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*; afterwards to the eldest Sons of that Princely Family: and finally to *Catharine de Medices*, created Countess of *Clermont* and *Boulogne*, at her marriage with *Henry* Duke of *Orleans*, Successor to King *Francis* the first in the Realm of *France*. 5 *Luxarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Seissons*. 6 *Brenouville*. 7 *St. Loap*, on the Confines of *Picardy*, so called from a Monastery dedicated to *S. Leger*, Bishop of *Troy*; in *Champagne*, sent into Britain with *St. Germanus* to suppress the *Pelagian* Heresies, which were there beginning. But of this part of *France* nothing more observable, then that it gave denomination to the Royal Family of the *French* Kings (13 in number) from hence entituled *de Valois*: beginning in *Philip de Valois*, An. 1328. and ending in *Henry* the third, An. 1589. As for the Earls hereof (from whom that Adjunct or denomination had its first Original) the first who had the Title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the second Son of *Philip* the third, in right of his Wife, Earl of *Anjou* also: After whose death it descended upon *Philip de Valois* his eldest Son, who carried the Crown of *France* from our *Edward* the third. On his assuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his second Brother: and he deceasing without issue, An. 1391. to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Son of *Charles* the fifth, amongst the Titles of which house he lay dormant, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis* the twelfth; and lately given unto the *Monseigneur*, or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis* the 13th, and Uncle to *K. Lewis* the 14th, now reigning, upon the first reconciliation made betwixt him and his Brother: adding thereby to his Estate no less than 100000 pounds Sterling of yearly Rents, which make up 100000 *Frank*s or *Livres* in the *French* account. I only add that *Charles* the first Earl of this Family, as he was the Son of *Philip* the third, Brother of *Philip* the fourth, surnamed the Fair; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: So was he Uncle to *Lewis* Hutin, *Philip* the Long, and *Charles* the Fair, all in their other Kings of *France*. In which regard, it was said of him, That he was the Son, Brother, Father, and Uncle of Kings; yet no King himself.

2 The second part of this Province is called *HEUREPOIX*, beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris* on the River of *Seine*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verine*, which divides it from *Gastinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Charenton*, three miles from *Paris*, where the *French Protestants* of that City have their Church for Religious exercises, it being not permitted them to hold their Assemblies in any Walled Cities, or Garrison Towns, for fear of any sudden surprize, which so great a multitude might easily make. Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Parisians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mayenne*s death, slain at the siege of *Montalban*, Anno 1622. was presently re-edified by the command of the Duke of *Mombazon*; then Governor of the Isle of *France*, at the charge of the State: to let those of the Reformed party understand, that it was their disobedience and not their Religion, which caused the King to arm against them. 2 *Corbeil*, seated on the confluence of *Seine*, and *Essons*. 3 *Morris*, which gives the Title of an Earl

The Isle of
France.

to one of the natural sons of Henry the Fourth, begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4 Melun, by Cesar called Melodunum, and the seat of the Bailif for this Tract. Here is also in this part the Royal Palace of Fountain-bel-eau, so called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongst which it standeth; but otherwise seated in a solitary and woody Country, fit for hunting only: and for that cause much visited by the French Kings in their times of leisure; and beautified with so much cost by King Henry the fourth, that it is absolutely the statelyest and most magnificent pile of building in all France.

3 GASTINOIS, the most drie and barren part of this Province, but rich enough if compared with other places; lieth between Paris and the Countrey of Orleans. The chief places of it are, 1 Estampes, in the middle way betwixt Paris and Orleans, on the very edge of it towards La Beaulle, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a Colledge of Chanoins, with the ruins of an ancient Castle: which together with the Walls and demolished Fortifications of it, shew it to have been of great importance in the former times. Given with the title of an Earl by Charles Duke of Orleans, then Lord thereof, to Richard the third Son of John of Montford, Duke of Bretagne, in marriage with his Sister the Lady Marguerite; from which marriage issued Francis Earl of Estampes, the last Duke of Bretagne. 2 Montcherri, famous for the battle betwixt King Lewis the eleventh, and Charles Earl of Charolois (after Duke of Burgundy) in which both sides ran out of the field, and each proclaimed it self the Victor. It standeth in the road betwixt Paris and Estampes. And so doth 3 Castres, of the bigness of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a Chamber or Branch of the Court of Parliament, here settled by King Henry the 4th, for the use and benefit of his Subjects of the Reformed Religion; in Latin called Camera Castellensis. 4 Nemours upon the River of Loyre, the chief of Gassinois in name, but not in beauty, (wherein inferior to Estampes) a Town which hath given the title of Duke to many eminent persons of France. Here is also in this part the County of Rochford, and the Towns of Milly, 2 Montargis, &c. More there occurreth not worth the noting, in this part of the Countrey, but that being part of the possessions of Hugh the Great, Constable of France, and Earl of Paris: it was given by him together with the Earldom of Anjou, to Geoffrey surnamed Gryffogonelle, a right Noble Warrior, and a great stickler in behalf of the house of Anjou, then aiming at the Crown it self, which at last they carried. Continued in his line till the time of Fulk the second (the fifth Earl of Anjou of this Family) who gave it back again to King Philip the first; that by his help he might possess himself of the Earldom of Anjou, from his part wherein he was excluded by his elder Brother. Never since that dismembred from the Crown of France, in Fact or Title.

4 But the great glory of this Province, is that which is more properly called the ISLE OF FRANCE, and sometimes *l'Île de France*, the Isle, caused by the Circlings and embracements of the Rivers of Sein and Marn; the abstract of the whole beauties, and glories of France, which in this rich and pleasant Valley are summed up together.

Chief places in it, S. German, seated on the ascent of an hill, seven miles from Paris, down the water: a pretty neat and handfom Town, honoured with one of the fairest Palaces of the French Kings; which being built (like Windsor) on the top of a fine mountaine on the Rivers side, affordeth an excellent prospect over all the Countrey. The excellent water-works herein, have been described on occasion of those of Trevi, a Town of the Popes in Champaigna di Roma, so much extolled by the Italians. It was first built by Charles the fifth, surnamed the Wise; beautified by the English when they were possessed of this Countrey; but finally re-edified and enlarged by King Henry the Fourth, who brought it into that magnificence in which now we see it. It took name from S. German Bishop of Auxerre, companion with S. Lupus before mentioned, in the British journey against Pelagius. 2 Poissie upon the same River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the Marn which falleth into the Sein; situate not far from S. German, a Bayliwick belonging to the Provost of Paris, and one of his seven daughters, as they use to call them. 3 Chantilly, the chief seat of the Dukes of Montmorency, the ancientest and most noble Family of all Christendom: whose Ancestors were the first fruits of the Gospel in this part of Gaul, and used to style themselves *Les premiers Chrétiens et plus vieilles Barons de la France*, i. e. The first Christians and most ancient Barons of France. A Family that hath yielded unto France, more Admirals, Constables, Marshals, and other like Officers of power, than any three in all the Kingdom: now most unhappily extinct in the person of Henry the last Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinal of Richelieu, for siding with the Monsieur (now Duke of Orleans) against King Lewis the 13th, his Brother. The Arms of which illustrious and most noble Family (for I cannot let it pass without this honour) were Or, a Crofs Gules, cantonné with sixteen Allions Azure, four in every Canton. What these Allions are, we shall see in Lorraine; take we notice now, that from the great possessions which this noble Family had in all this tract, it was, and is still called the Vale of Montmorency. 4 S. Denis, some three miles from Paris, so called of a Monastery built here by Dagobert King of France, about the year 640. in memory of S. Denis, or Dionysie, the first Bishop of Paris, martyred (on Mont-martyr an hill adjoining) in the time of Domitian. Some of the French Kings because it lay so neer to Paris, bestowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defensible: nor otherwise of any consideration, but for a very fair Abby of Benedictines, and therein the Sepulchres of many of the French Kings and Princes; neither for workmanship, nor cost, able to hold comparison with those at Westminster. But being the sepulture of their Kings, the Frenchmen use to say facetiously, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town also is the Church of S. Maclon, where the Kings with a Fast of nine days and other Penances, use to receive the famous Gift of healing the Kings-Evil, with nothing but a Touch: a priviledge enjoyed only by those Kings, and the Kings of England. 5 St. Cloud (or the Town of St. Claudus) un-

The Isle of
France.

unfortunately memorable for the murder of King Henry the third: who lying here at a siege of Paris, from whence he was compelled to flee by the Guisian Faction, was wretchedly assassinated by Jacques Clement a Monk, employed in that service by the heads of the Holy League. 6 P A R I S, the chief City not of this Isle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By Cesar, and Ammianus Marcellinus, called Civitas Parisiorum, from the Parisians, a Nation of Gaul-Celtick, whose chief City it was: by Strabo called Lutetia, Lucotetia by Ptolomy, *quæ in Luto sita*, as some conjecture from the dirtiness of the soyl in which it standeth. A soyl so dirty (as commonly all rich Countreys are) that though the streets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of King Philip Augustus) yet every little dash of rain makes them very slippery; and worse than so, yields an ill savour to the nose. The Proverb is, *Il deslains comme la fange de Paris*, it stineth like the dirt of Paris: but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il pent*, &c. It stinks like the dirt of Paris; no stink being more offensive than those streets in Summer. It is in compass about eight miles, of an Orbicular form, pleasantly seated on the divisions of the Sein: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far short of the brags which the French make of it. It was thought in the time of King Lewis the eleventh to containt 500000 people of all sorts and Ages; which must be the least: the same King at the entertainement of the Spanish Ambassadors, shewing 140000 of this City in Arms, all in a Livery of red Caslocks with white Crosses. A gallant sight, though possibly the one half of them were not fit for service: The Parisians being for the most part an effeminate people, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occasions, but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their suffering K. Henry the 4th to hold S. Dennis so long against them, with no considerable Garrison, and by that means to shut them up from all relief on that side of their City. And yet their multitudes, which since the time of that King, must needs be very much encreased, are the chief strength of the Town; the fortifications being weak and of ill assurance: Insomuch, that when once a Parisian bragged that their Town was never took by force; an English man returned this Answer, That it was, because on the least distress it did use to capitulate. It is seated (as before was said) on the River Sein, which serveth it with Boats and Barges (as the Thames weitward doth London) the River ebbing and flowing no higher than Pont del Arche, 75 miles distant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts, the Town, the City, the University, and the Suburbs. La Ville, or that part of it which is called The Town, is situate on the North side of the River; the biggest, but poorest part of the four, inhabited by Artizans and Tradesmen of the meaner sort. In this part are the *Hôtel de Ville*, or the Guild-hall for the use of the Citizens; the *Arsenal*, or Armory for the use of the King; and that magnificent building called the *Place Royal*, new built and beautified at the charges of King Henry the fourth for Tilts and Turnements, and such solemnities of State. And in this also neer the banks of the River, stands the Kings Palace of the *Louvre*, a place of more fame than beauty, and nothing answerable to the report which goes commonly of it. A building of no elegance or uniformity, nor otherwise remarkable but for the vast Gallery begun by King Henry the 4th, and the fine Gardens of the *Tuileries* adjoining to it. The City is that part of it which takes up the circumference of a little Island, made by the embracements of the Sein; joynted to the other parts on both sides, by several Bridges. The Paris or *Lutetia* of the old Gauls was no more than this: the Town on the one side, and the University on the other, being added since. This is the richest part, and best built of the whole *Compostum*. And herein stand the Palace, or Courts of Parliament; the Chapel of the Holy Ghost, and the Church of *Nostre-dame*, being the Cathedral; of ancient times a Bishops See, but of late raised unto the dignity of a Metropolitan. On the South-side of the River lyeth that part which is called the University, from an University here founded by Charles the Great, An. 792. at the perswasion of Alcuinus an Englishman, the Scholar of Venerable Bede, and the first Professor of Divinity here. It consisteth of 52 Colleges or places for study, whereof 40 are of little use; and in the rest the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at Oxon, or *Innes of Court* or *Chancery* at London; there being no endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the Colledge of *Navarre*. Which possibly may be the reason why the Scholars here are generally so debauched and insolent: a ruder rabble than the which are hardly to be found in the Christian World. Sensible of this mischief and the cause thereof, Francis the first, whom the French call the Father of the *Muses*; at the perswasion of *Reuchline* and *Budant*, those great restorers of the Greek and Hebrew Languages, intended to have built a Colledge for 600 Students; and therein to have placed Professors for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yearly Revenue, for their constant maintenance. But it went no further than the purpose; prevented by the inevitable stroak of death from pursuance of it. In bigness this is little inferior to the Town or Ville, and not superior to it for wealth and beauty; few men of any wealth and credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of so little Government. The fourth and last part is the Suburbs, (or the *Faux-bourgs* as the French call them) the principal whereof is that of S. German (so called from an ancient Abby of that name:) the best part of the whole body of Paris, for large Streets, sweet Air, choice of the best Company, magnificent Houses, pleasant Gardens; and finally, for all those contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of most populous Cities.

Here are also in this Isle the Royal House of Madrid, a retiring place of the Kings, built by King Francis the first, at his return from his imprisonment in Spain. 2 Ruall, a sweet Countrey house of the late Queen Mothers: And 3 *Bois de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our Henry the 5th. I add this only and so end, That this Isle hath always followed the Fortune of the Crown of France; never dismembred from the Sovereignty of the same, though sometimes out of the possession of the French Kings; as when the English kept it against Charles the 7th, and the *League* against Henry the

Champagne. the 4th. A thing which hardly can be said of any other of the Provinces of this flourishing Country: the French Kings of the race of *Merovee*, and *Charles* the great, alienating from the Crown many goodly Territories; contented only with a bare and titular *Homage* from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was shared first amongst the great Princes of the French: which afterwards by inter-marriages, and other titles fell into the hands of strangers; most of them enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandeur and power thereof. Which kept the French Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiscations, Marriages, and such other means, they reduced all these *Rivulets* to their first and original *Channel*; as shall be shewn in the pursuance of this work.

2. CHAMPAGNE.

CHAMPAGNE is bounded on the North, with *Picardie*; on the South with the Dukedom of *Burgundie*; on the East, with *Lorraine*; on the West, with *France* specially so called.

The Country for the most part very plain and pleasant (whence it had the name) adorned with shady Woods and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat in elder times of the *Tricasses*, *Catalauni*, *Rhemi*, the *Lingones*, and *Senones* (of which last Tribe or Nation were those *Cisalpine Gauls* who sacked *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*;) part of them *Celts*, and part *Belgians*, and so accordingly disposed of: the *Belgians* into the Province of *Belgica secunda*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Rhemes*; the *Celts* into *Lugdunensis quarta*, of which the *Metropolis* was *Sens*; both Cities seated in this Country. The chief Rivers of it *Bloise*, 2 *Marne*, 3 *Tonne*, 4 *Sault*.

Chief places of that part hereof which belonged to *Belgica secunda*, or the Province of *Rhemes*, are 1 *Chalon* on the River *Marne*, an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Rhemes*; called anciently *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2 *Joinville*, situate on the same River, belonging to the house of *Guise*; the eldest Son of which Family is called *Prince* of *Joinville*: in the Castle whereof seated upon an high and inaccessible Hill, is to be seen the Tomb of *Claude* the first Duke of *Guise*; the richest Monument of that kinde, in all *France*. The Barony of *William* Lord *Joinville*, third Son of *Enſace* Earl of *Boulogne*, and of *Ida* his wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, for her Dowry or portion; and brother of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorraine* and Kings of *Hierusalem*. But whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, or that he had it by his Wife, a daughter of *Theobald* Earl of *Champagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his decease to *Godfrey* his youngest son (*Thierry* the eldest son succeeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*): upon the failure of whose line, it fell unto the Dukes of *Lorraine* as next heirs thereof, and so unto the Dukes of *Guise*, as descended from them. 3 *St. Urban*, a Town of the Territory of *Joinville*, from which it is about two leagues distance. 4 *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Castle of so great strength, that in the civil Wars of *France*, Anno 1614, it endured 1100 shot of Canon, and yet was not taken. 5 *Vassy*, upon the River *Bloise*, a Town of as sweet a situation as most in *France*. These last situate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*: so named, as I conceive, from the River *Vasle*. 6 *Vitrey*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* and *Marne*, the chief Town and Balliage of that part which is named *Parthois* (*Ager Perienſis* in the *Latine*); so called of 7 *Perie* another Town thereof, but now not so eminent. 8 *Chaumont* upon the *Marne*, the chief Town of *Bassigni*; and strengthened with a Castle mounted on a craggy Rock. 9 *Desier*, or *St. Desier* (*Fanum Sancti Desiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, Anno 1544. 10 *Rhemes* (*Durcoriorum Rhemorum*) an Archbishop's See, who is one of the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, situate on the River of *Vasle*. At this City the Kings of *France* are most commonly crowned, that so they may enjoy the Union of a sacred Oyl, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof, which, as they say, came down from Heaven, and never decreaseth. How true this is may be easily seen, in that *Gregory of Tours*, who is so prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it: but specially (for *Argumentum ab autoritate negativè parum valet*) since the Legend informeth us that this holy Oyl was sent from Heaven, at the anointing of *Clodius*, the first Christian King of the French. Whereas *Du Haillan*, one of their most judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the great, to have been their first anointed King; and that there was none of *la premiere lignee oint, ny sacré à Rhemes, ny ailleurs*, none of the first or *Merovingian* line of Kings, had been anointed at *Rhemes* or elsewhere. But sure it is (let it be true or false, no matter) that the French do wonderfully reverence this (their sacred) Oyl; and fetch it with great solemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, sitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent: the Archbishop hereof (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and such Bishops as are present, going to the Church-doors, to meet it, and leaving for it with the *Prior*, some competent pawn; and on the other side, the King when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himself before it with great humility. But to return unto the Town: it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of these parts, whose chief City it was; and now an University of no small esteem: in which among other Colleges there is one appointed for the education of young English Fugitives. The first Seminary for which purpose (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Doway*, Anno 1568. A second at *Rome*, by Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth. A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain*, by K. *Philip* the second; A fourth in *Louvain*, a Town of *Brabant*; and a fifth, here (so much do they affect the gaining of the English to the *Romish* Church) by the Dukes of *Guise*. 11 *Ligni*, upon the River *Sault*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunensis quarta*, or the Province of *Sens*, the places of chief

note

Champagne. note are, 1 *Sens*, *Civitas Senonum* in *Antoninus*, anciently the *Metropolis* of that Province, by consequence the See of an Archbishop alſo. The Country hereabouts called *Le Pais Senonis*, was part of the habitation of the ancient *Senones*, some of which passing over the *Alpes* with other nations of the *Gauls*, planted those parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallia Cisalpine*. Of which the *Senones* were the most valiant, though far less in numbers: as those which had not only the honour of sacking *Rome*, but of managing an offensive War against that State for the space of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them hath been shewn already, when we were in *Lombardy*. 2 *Langres*, or *Civitas Lingunum*, (by *Polonius*, called *Automatunum*) situate in the confines of *Burgundy*, not far from the fountain or spring-head of the *Seine*: the See of a Bishop, who is one of the *Twelve Peers* of *France*. 3 *Troy*, *Civitas Tricassinum*, seated on the *Seine*, a fair, strong, and well traded City, honoured with the title of the Daughter of *Paris*; See Episcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne*, next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our French and English Histories, for the meeting of *Charles* the sixth, and *Henry* the fifth, Kings of *France*, and *England*; in which it was agreed, That the said King *Henry* espousing *Katharine* Daughter of that King, should be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of *France*; into which he should succeed on the said Kings death, and be the Regent of the Realm for the time of his life: with divers other Articles, best suiting with the will and honour of the Conqueror. 4 *Provins* (by *Cæſar* called *Agendicum*) seated upon the *Seine*, in a pleasant Country, abounding in all fragrant flowers; but especially with the sweetest Roses, which being transplanted into other Countreys are called *Province Roses*. 5 *Meaux*, seated on the River *Marne*, anciently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny* and others of the old Writers mention in this tract: now honoured with a Bishops See, and neighboured by 6 *Montecaux*, beautified with a magnificent Palace built by *Katharine de Medices*, Queen Mother of the three last Kings of the house of *Valois*. 7 *Montereau*, a strong Town on the confluence of the *Seine* and the *Yonne*. 8 *Chasteau-Thierry*, (*Caſtrum Theodorici*, as the *Latins* call it) situate on the River *Marne*. These five last situate in that part of *Champagne*, which lieth next to *France* specially so called, known of long time by the name of *Brie*: which being the first or chief possession of the Earls of *Champagne*, occasioned them to be sometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and sometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here, 9 *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, but now part of *Champagne*, of which more hereafter. And 10 *Fontenay*, a small Town in *Auxerrois* in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great battle fought near unto it, Anno 841. between the sons and Nephews of *Lotharius* Pius, for their Fathers Kingdoms. In which so many thousands were slain on both sides, that the forces of the French Empire were extremely weakened; and had been utterly destroyed in pursuit of this unnatural War, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a peace between them; allotting unto each some part of that vast estate, dismembered by that means into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorraine*, and *Burgundy*; never since brought into one hand, as they were before.

Adjoining unto *Champagne* alſo where it looks towards *Lorraine*, lies the Country and Duchy of *BAR*; belonging to the Dukes of *Lorraine*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of *France*. The Country commonly called *BARRAIS*, environed for the most part with the two streams of the River *Marne*; of which the one rising in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the Borders of *Lorraine*, do meet together at *Chalons* a City of *Champagne*. Places of most importance in it, 1 *Bar le Duc*, so called to distinguish it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*, and *Bar* upon the River *Alli*; a well fortified Town. 2 *La Motte*. 3 *Ligni*. 4 *Argu*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what Antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom first founded and made an absolute Estate, I am yet to seek, though probable it is that it might take its first rise (as many other petit Signeuries did) out of the ruin and dismembering of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*; or otherwise might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of some part of that Estate. But whether it were so or not, certain it is that it came first to the present house of *Lorraine*, by the gift of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, &c. who succeeded in it in the right of *Toland* or *Violant* his Mother, Daughter of *Don John* the first King of *Aragon* and of *Toland* or *Violant* the Heir of *Bar*: and dying gave the same, together with the Towns of *Lambesque* and *Orgon*, to *Rene* Duke of *Lorraine* his Nephew, by the Lady *Violant* his Daughter. From this *Rene*, it was taken by *Lewis* the eleventh, who having put a Garrison into *Bar*, repaired the Walls, and caused the Arms of *France* to be set on the Gates thereof. Restored again by *Charles* the eighth, at his going to the Conquest of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means (if I guess aright) of his pretensions to that Kingdom, which were fair and specious; since which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorraine*, till the year 1633. when seized on by *Lewis* the thirteenth, upon a Judgement and Arrest of the Court of *Parliament* in *Paris*, in regard the present Duke had not done his Homage to the King, as he ought to have done.

The Arms hereof are Azure, two Barbels back to back, Or; Seme of *Croſſe Croſſets Fitché*, of the second.

But to return again to *Champagne*, it pleased *Hugh Capet* at his coming to the Crown of *France*, to give the same to *Eudes* or *Odon*, Earl of *Blais*, (whose Daughter he had married in his private fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom) with all the rights and privileges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odon*, was the Son of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble Dane, to whom *Charles* the Simple gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 920. and not long after the time, that he conferred the Country of *Neustria* upon *Rolla* the *Norman*, whose Kinsman and assistant this *Gerlon* was in harassing and waſting the coasts of *France*. In the person of *Theobald* the third, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, descended on him in right of the Lady *Blanch* his Mother, Sister and Heir of King *Sancho* the eighth. Anno 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, and Countess of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the fourth of *France*, surnamed the Fair, both these Estates were added to the

the

Picardie.

the Crown of France: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without some prejudice to the Lady Joan, Daughter and Heir of Lewis Hutin. But the three Brethren being dead, and Philip of Valois succeeding in the Crown of France, he restored the Kingdom of Navarre to the said Lady Joan: and for the County of Champagne (which lay too near the City of Paris to be trusted in a foreign hand) he gave unto her and her Posterity, as in the way of exchange, some certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to so rich a Patrimony.

Count Palatines of Champagne.

- 999 1 Odo, Earl of Champagne, Brie, Blais, and Toureine, Son of Theobald the elder, Earl of Blais.
 1032 2 Stephen, Earl of Champagne, and Blais, Father of Stephen Earl of Blais, and King of England.
 1101 3 Theobald, eldest Son of Stephen.
 1151 4 Henry, Son of Theobald, a great adventurer in the Wars of the Holy Land.
 1181 5 Henry II. an Associate of the Kings of France and England in the Holy Wars; King of Hierusalem, in right of Isabel his Wife.
 1196 6 Theobald II. Brother of Henry, added unto his house the hopes of the Kingdom of Navarre, by his Marriage with the Lady Blanche, Sister and Heir of Sancho the 8th.
 1201 7 Theobald III. Earle of Champagne, Son of Theobald the 2d, and the Lady Blanche, succeeded in the Realm of Navarre, Anno 1234.
 1269 8 Theobald IV. Son of Theobald the 3d, King of Navarre, and Earl of Champagne and Brie.
 1271 9 Henry IV. Son of Theobald the 4th, King of Navarre, and Earl of Champagne, &c.
 1284 10 Philip IV. King of France, in right of Joan his Wife King of Navarre, and Earl of Champagne.
 1313 11 Lewis Hutin, Son of Philip, King of France and Navarre, and Earl of Champagne.
 1315 12 Philip the Long, Brother of Lewis Hutin, King of France and Navarre, and Earl of Champagne.
 1320 13 Charles the Fair, Brother of Philip King of France and Navarre, and the last Earl of Champagne; united after his decease by Philip de Valois to the Crown of France: the Earldom of March, near Angouleme, being given for it in exchange to the Lady Joan, Daughter of King Lewis Hutin, and Queen of Navarre married to Philip Earl of Evreux, in her right honoured with that Crown, from whom descend the Kings of France and Navarre of the House of Bourbon.

The Arms of these Palatines of Champagne, were Argent, two Bends cotized, potencee and counter-potencee of three pieces, Or.

3. PICARDIE.

PICARDIE hath on the East, the Dukedoms of Luxemburg, and Lorrein; on the West, some part of Normandy, and the English Ocean; on the North, the Counties of Artois, and Hainal; and on the South, Champagne, and France strictly and specially so called. A Countrey so well stored with Corn, that it is accounted the Granary or Store-house of Paris; but the few Wines which it produceth are but harsh, and of no good relish, especially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the Sueffiones, Ambiani and Veromandani, considerable Nations of the Belge; and therefore reckoned into the Province of Belgica secunda: but why they had the name of Picards, I am yet to seek. Omitting therefore the conjectures of other men, some of the which are groundless, and the rest ridiculous; I only say, as Robert Bishop of Avranches hath affirmed before me, *Quos itaq; atq; nostra Picardos appellat, verè Belgæ dicendi sunt, qui postmodum in Picardorum nomen transfugerunt.*

The whole Countrey as it lieth from Calais to the Borders of Lorrein, is divided into the Higher and the Lower: the Lower subdivided into Sainterree, Ponthieu, Boulognois, and Guisnes; the Higher into the Vidamates of Amiens, Veromandois, Rethelois, and Terafche; in every of which there are some places of importance and consideration.

In LOWER PICARDIE and the County of GUISNES, the chief Towns, 1 Calais, by Cesar called *Portus Ictius* (as the adjoining Promontory, *Promontorium Ictius*, by Ptolomy) a strong Town close upon Artois, at the entrance of the English Channel: taken by Edward the third after the siege of 11 moneths, Anno 1347. and lost again by Queen Mary in less than a fortnight, Anno 1557. So that had Monsieur de Cordes then lived, he had had his wish; who used to say, that he would be content to lie seven years in Hell, on condition that Calais were taken from the English. The loss of which Town was a great blow to our Estate, for till that time we had the Keyes of France at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Q. Mary, who sickning presently upon it, said to those which attended her, that if she were opened, they should finde Calais next her heart. 2 Hamme, a strong piece, one of the best Out-works of Calais. 3 Fiennes, on the borders toward Artois, which with the Countrey joyning to it made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times past of the Earls of S. Paul, by whom given to Theobald the younger Brother of Lewis Earl of S. Paul and Constable of France, (of whom more hereafter) and from that Family conveyed to the house of Egmond by the marriage of Francis heir hereof to John Earl of Egmond, who died in the year 1548. and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of

Alva,

Picardie.

Alva, Anno 1568. 4 Ardres, more towards the Borders of Boulognois, memorable for the interview of Henry the eighth, and Francis the first; and many meetings of the English and French Commissioners. 5 Guisnes, which gives name to this Division, called the County of Guisnes (of which the Land of Oye whereon Calice stood (by the French called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was esteemed a part.) The Earldom anciently of the illustrious house of Craie, of which more anon.

2. In BOULOGNOIS, neighbouring on the Countrey of Guisnes, the places of most note, 1 Black-nest, a strong Fort on the Sea-side, betwixt Calice and Boulogne. 2 Chastillon, opposite to Boulogne on the other side of the water. 3 Boullenberg, more within the Land, an Out-work to Boulogne. 4 Boulogne, by Pliny called *Portus Gesforiacus*, part of the Countrey of the Morini, spoken of by Cesar; divided into the Base or Low Town lying on the shore side, well built, and much frequented by Passengers, going to, or coming out of England; and the High Town standing on the rise of an Hill, well garrisoned for defence of the Port beneath it, and honoured with a Bishops See, translated hither from Tournay when that City was taken by the English. The Town and Countrey taken by King Henry the eighth, with infinite expence of treasure, Anno 1544. but yielded not long after by K. Edward the sixth: the French redeeming it at less than a fourth part of the money, which the gaining of it had cost the Crown of England. As for the fortunes of this Countrey, it was once an Earldom of it self, during which time it gave one King unto Hierusalem, and another to England. The first Earl of it which we meet with, was that Eustace, who by his marriage with Ida, the Daughter of Geoffrey or Godfrey the second, Duke of Lorrein, added the Duchy of Bovillon in Gaul-Belgick to his Earldom of Boulogne. To him succeeded in both these Titles and Estates, Godfrey, surnamed of Bovillon his eldest son: who after the death of Godfrey the third his Cousen-german attained unto the Dukedom of Lorrein, and finally was the first and most renowned King of the Western Christians reigning in Hierusalem. Godfrey being dead, Eustace the youngest of his Brethren became Earl of Boulogne: whose daughter Maund brought this Estate and Title to Steven of Blais, who afterwards was King of England. Eustace the only Son of Steven dying without issue, the rights hereof remained in his sister Mary, the Abbess of Ramsey, married to Matthew Brother of Philip of Elstet Earl of Flanders. And though Matthew was commanded by the Pope to restore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her; yet he kept this Countrey for her children. Conveyed to Philip second son of Philip Augustus K. of France, by another Maund (he dying without issue) to Alfonso of Portugal, who succeeding after in that Kingdom, sent her back to Boulogne: and finally by Joan daughter and heir of William, this Alfonso Grandchilde to Philip Earl of Artois, the son of Eudes Duke and Earl of Burgundy; to whom she brought Philip their only son, successor to his Grandfather in the said Estates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceasing without issue, Anno 1361. and Joan not leaving any children by King John of France, whom she married after the death of her first Husband, it fell by some other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tour* of Avern (the Ancestors of the now Dukes of Bovillon) continuing in that Family till the year 1477. when bought by Lewis the 11th of France of Bertrand de la Tour, the better to assure his Kingdom on that side against the English then possessed of the Countrey of Guisnes. The purchase being made, Lewis the now Proprietar, did Homage for it to the Virgin Mary, in the chief Church thereof called *Nostre Dame*, bare-headed, on his knees, without spurs or girdle: and offered to her Image a massie Heart of gold of 2000 ounces; capitulating that from thenceforth he and his Successors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vassal present her with the golden heart of the same weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of France; nor giving title unto any but to Katharine de Medices wife of Henry the 2d, created Countess of Boulogne and Clermont, when first married to him, he being then Duke of Orleans only.

The Arms hereof under the ancient Earls of Boulogne were Or, a Banner Gules, tufted Purple: those of De la Tour, being a Tower embattell'd Sable; but the colour of the Field I do no where finde.

3 PONTHEU, so called from the River Some, upon the River Some, for conveniency of passage over the moorish Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the English; to whom it came by the Marriage of Eleanor, Daughter of Ferdinand of Castile, by Joan the daughter and Heir of Simon the last Earl hereof, to King Edward the first. Towns of most note in it, 1 Abbeville, seated on the Some, well fortified, and as strongly garrisoned, as a Frontier Town upon Artois: on one side unsailable by reason of a deep and moorish Fen, which comes up close to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatia Villa in Latin*) and the See of a Bishop. 2 Montreuille, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt Abbeville and Boulogne, and a strong out-work unto Paris. 3 Crecie, where King Edward the 3d defeated the great Army of Philip de Valois, in the first onsets for that Kingdom, Anno 1343. And 4 Treport, a small Haven on the East of S. Valerius. Some place the Earldom of S. Paul in this Countrey of Ponthieu; others more rightly in Artois, where we mean to meet with it. The Arms hereof were Or, three Bends Azure.

4. And as for the Countrey of SAINTERREE, which is the fourth part of the Lower Picardie, the chief Towns of it are 1 Peronne, upon the River Some, where Lewis the 11th, the greatest Master of Statecraft for the times he lived in, put himself most improvidently into the hands of Charles of Burgundy, who as improvidently dismissed him. 2 Roy, and 3 Mont Didier, (*Mons Didierii in Latin*) both of them strong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwise of little fame in former Stories.

In the Higher Picardie being that part of this Countrey which lieth furthest from the Sea, the first division which occurreth, is the Vidamate of AMIENS, so called of the fair City of Amiens, and the Vidame or chief Governour of it. Which honour as it is peculiar to the French only; so Miles in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue of Honour*, will have but four at all in France, viz. this of Amiens, Chalons, Gerbecroy,

Picardie. heroy, and that of *Chartres*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them; as at *Rhemes*, *Mans*, &c. and formerly as many as it had Bishops; the *Vice-dominus* or *Vice-dame*, being to the Bishop in his *Temporals*, as the Chancellor in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Vicounts*) were anciently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature; or to give you an example nearer home and of more resemblance, these *French Vidames* were unto their several and respective Bishops, as the *Temporal Chancellor* (in this Realm) of the Bishoprick of *Durham*, or the *High Steward* of the Bishoprick of *Ely*, to those several Bishops.

Places of most note herein, 1 *Corbie*, a Town of great importance, and strongly Garrisoned, situate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*; 2 *Chaume*, on the same Frontier also, but of less consideration, the Honorary seat and Title of the present *Vidame*; 3 *Piquigni*, situate on a pretty ascent of ground overlooking the *Some*, on the left hand of the River betwixt *Amiens* and *Abbeville*, the ordinary seat of the former *Vidames*; more famous for the interview of *Edward* the 4th of *England*, and *Lewis* the 12th, than for giving the name of *Picardie* to all the Province; which *Mercator* only of all Writers, doth ascribe unto it. 4 *Crouy*, an obscure Village now, but formerly of special note for a goodly Castle, commanding over the adjoining Territory, and giving name to the illustrious Family, hence surname of *Crouy*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Archoburg*, and Princes of *Chimay* in the *Netherlands*; before their translating to which Countreys by the Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were entituled Earls of *Guise*. 5 *Amiens* it self, seated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many Streams for the use and service of the Town; well built, with very strong walls and deep ditches: the loss whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, much hazarded the affairs and reputation of King *Henry* the 4th; and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the *Cathedral*, the fairest and most lovely structure in the West of *Europe*: so beautified within and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Cost and Architecture, seem to be met together in the composition. The Fronts of our *Cathedrals* of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glass in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the costly Imagery, and arched Buttresses in the Chappel at *Westminster* (before the late defacements of those *Cathedrals*) might serve as helps to set forth the full beauties of it. The Town and Territories anciently under the command of the Bishops of it, whose Officers for the Temporal government hereof called *Vice-dominus* or *Vidames*, were at first eligible by the Bishops, and accountable to them, but by degrees engrossing all power unto themselves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidames* to this part of *Picardie*. The present *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaume*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Monseigneur de Luynes* (chief favourite to King *Lewis* the 13th) obtained in marriage the daughter and heir of the former *Vidames*, with whom he had the Town and Castle of *Piquigni*, the chief command of these parts, and a rent of 9000*l.* per annum, honoured thereupon by the power and favours of his Brother with the title of the Duke of *Chaume* and Peer of *France*, Anno 1620. or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, pass we on next to *VEROMANDOIS*, the ancient habitant on of the *Veromandui*: the fairest and largest part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferior to the best of *France*, in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1 *Soissons*, called anciently *Augusta Sueffonum*, the chief City of the *Sueffones* or *Sueffones*: and the last Hold which the *Romans* had in all *Gaul*; lost by *Sigisunt*, Governor for the Western Emperor, to *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*. In the division of his Kingdom, made the Seat Royal of *Clovis* the son of this *Clovis*; and of *Aripert*, and *Chilperick*, the sons of *Clovis*, from hence entituled Kings of *Soissons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica secunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardy* and *Champagne*, as we call them now. But *Soissons* having long since lost the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of late times been made the honorary Title of the Counts of *Soissons*, a branch of the Royal stock of *Bourbon*; a Bishops See, and situate on the River of *Aisne*. 2 *Laon*, a Bishops See also, the Bishop whereof is one of the Twelve Peers of *France*, and Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latine*, *Laodunum*. 3 *Noyon*, in *Latine*, *Noviodunum*, an Episcopal See also. 4 *Chapelle*, a strong piece, one of the best out-works of *Paris* against the *Netherlands*. 5 *D'Ourlans*, 6 *La Fere* and *Han*, places of great strength also, but more near the Frontiers. And 7 *S. Quintin*, anciently the chief City of the *Veromandui*, then called *Augusta Veromandurum*: called afterwards *S. Quintin*, from that Saint here worshipped, as the Patron and *Deus Tutelar* of it. A place of great importance for the Realm of *France*; and so esteemed in the opinion of the Earl of *Charolois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) and King *Lewis* the 11th: the first of which never digested the restoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no less than 400000 Crowns; the later never would forgive the Earl of *S. Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his service. A Town of greater note in succeeding times, for the famous batel of *S. Quintin*, Anno 1557. wherein King *Philip* the second of *Spain*, with the help of the *English*, under command of the Earl of *Pembroke*; overthrew the whole Forces of the *French*, made themselves Masters of the Town, and thereby grew so formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guise* was in post hast sent for out of *Italy*, (where his affairs began to prosper) to look unto the safety of *France* it self. As for the Fortunes of this part, it was once an Earldom of it self, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the most in *France*; it being one *Herbert* or *Edmont* Earl of *Veromandois*, who in pursuance of the quarrel of the house of *Anjou* surprized *Charles* the Simple, and carried him prisoner to *Peronne*, where he after dyed; for which deservedly hanged by *Lewis* surname *Transmarine* the son of *Charles*, when he became possessed of his Fathers Kingdom; by the daughter and heir of another *Herbert*, conveyed in marriage unto *Hugh* surname the Great, one of the younger sons of King *Henry* the first of *France*, succeeding in her right into

into the title and estate of Earl of *Veromandois*, and by that name renowned in the first wars for the Holy Land. By *Elizabeth* the Niece of this *Hugh*, the daughter of *Rodolphus* his eldest son married to *Philip* of *Alsace* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that estate; but shortly after given by the same *Philip* (having no children of his own) in Dower with *Isabel* his Niece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault*, unto *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, and since united to that Crown, not giving since that time the title of Earl or Duke to any, for ought I can find.

III. More towards *Hainault* and *Lorraine* lyeth the Country of *RETHELOIS*, so called of *Reisel* the chief Town: well fortified as the rest of the Frontier places; but of most note amongst the *French*, in that the eldest sons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have usually been intituled Earls and Dukes of *Reisel*; united to that Family by the marriage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Reisel*, An. 1312, or thereabouts. 2 *St. Monband*, a Town of consequence and strength. 3 *Sygnis*, a strong piece belonging to the Marquess of *Vienville*. 4 *Chasteau-Portion*, of more beauty, but of like importance. The Armes of the Earls and Dukes of *Reisel* were *Gules*, three Rakes-heads indented Or.

IV. Finally in the Dutchy of *TERASCHE*, the last part of the higher *Picardy*, we have the Town of *Guise*, of some note for the Castle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorraine* (on the borders whereof it standeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guise*. A Family which within a little compass of time produced two Cardinals, the one entituled *Guise*, the other of *Lorraine*; six Dukes, that is to say, the Dukes of *Guise*, *Mayenne*, *Amal*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguillon*, and *Chevreuse*; the Earl of *Samarive*; and besides many daughters married into the best houses in *France*, one married to *James* the fifth King of the *Scots*. The first, and he that gave the rise unto all the rest of this potent Family, was *Cland*, son to *Rene* the second Duke of *Lorraine*, who passing into *France* to take possession of the Patrimony allotted to him, followed King *Henry* the first in the war of *Italy*, where he behaved himself so valiantly at the batle of *Marignano*, in which he had the chief command of the *German* Auxiliaries, that the King always after held him in a great esteem, and married him to *Anto* Rette of *Burbon*, daughter of *Francis*, Earl of *Vendome*; in respect of which alliance, and his other merits, he was honoured with the title of Duke of *Guise*. The Father (amongst other children) of *Mary* Qu. of *Scots*, wife of *James* the fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the sixth, the first Monarch of *Brittain*. The second was *Francis*, who endangered the Realm of *Naples*, resisted the siege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Metz*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calice* from Q. *Mary*, and was at last treacherously slain at the siege of *Orleans*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Poltro*. (On the instigation of some of the chiefs of that faction) Anno 1463. The third was *Henry* that great enemy of the Protestants, who contrived the great Massacre at *Paris*, and almost dispossessed *Henry* the third of all *France*; He began the holy league, and was finally slain at *Blis*, by the command of King *Henry* the third. But we must know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorraine*: and had given the title of Earl of *Guise* to *Frederick* the second son of *John*, and *Charles* the third son of *Rene*, both the first of those names; before *Cland* of *Lorraine* was advanced to the title of Duke: as being part of the Estate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Joinville*, of whom we spake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of most note next to *Guise* it self, is 2 *Ripemont* on the South of *Guise*. 3 *Chastelet* upon the border towards *Luxembourg*, a strong Town, and one of the best out-works of *France*. 4 *Mexiers*, upon the *Mas* or *Messe*, a place of great strength and like importance; belonging properly to the Dukes of *Nevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their descent from the house of *Reisel*: fortified with a strong Citadel for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garrisoned by the *French* King, for defence of this border: layed to the Government of *Champagne* though a Town of *Picardy*, and therefore made by some to belong to that Province also.

As for the state of this whole Province, I do not find that it was ever passed over by the *French* Kings unto any one hand: as almost all the rest of *France* had been at some time or other, but distracted into divers Seigneuries and several Lordships (all of them absolute in themselves, and scarce affording to the *French* King the slight tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have seen before: some of which fell to the Crown of *France* by confiscations, some by lawful marriages, and others by conquest; some held of *England*, some of the Earls of *Artois*, and others of *Flanders*, and lastly of the Dukes of *Burgundy*, as Lords of those Provinces: those which depended upon *England*, being seized on by *Charles* the 7th. on the loss of *Normandy* by the *English*; as those which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his son, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the batel of *Nancie*, Anno 1476.

4. NORMANDIE.

NORMANDIE is bounded on the East with the River *Some* and part of *Picardy*; on the West with *Bretagne* and some part of the Ocean; on the North, with the *English* channel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* specially so called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunensis secunda*, in the time of the *Romans*; the Metropolis whereof was *Reven*: and in the greatness of the *French* Empire had the name of *Neustria*, corruptly so called for *Westria*; the name of *Westria* or *Westenrich*, being given by some to this part of the Realm of *West-France*, as that of *Austria* or *Osternich* to that part of East *France*. Afterwards being bestowed upon the *Normans* by *Charles* the Simple, it was called *Normandie*.

This flourishing and rich Dukedom of *Normandy*, for largeness of Extent, multitudes of People, number and stateliness of Cities, fertility of Soyl, and the commodiousness of the Seas, may worthily be accounted the chief Province of *France*. Well watered with the River *Seine* which runneth quite through

Normandy.

through it; as do also the *Orne*, and 3 the *Aven*: not to say any thing of 4 *Robee*, 5 *Antes*, and 6 *Reinelle*, and many others of less note. In length it reacheth about 170 miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narrowest: containing in that round the largest and fairest Corn-fields that are to be seen in all France. Of all other natural commodities it is extrem plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldness of the Climate admits not of, or sparingly at the best, and of no perfection. The people of it formerly renowned for fears of Armes, the Conquerours of England, Naples, Sicily, and the Kingdom of Antioch in the East: at this time thought to be of a more sharp and subtil wit, than the rest of the French; *Scavans an possible en procesces & plaideries* (saith Ortelius of them) especially in the quilliers and quirks of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*, the *Lower* containing the Sea-coasts, and the *Higher*, the more In-land parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1 *Constance* a Bishops See, the Spire or Steeple of whose Cathedral, is easily discernable afar off, both by Sea and Land; and serveth Saylers for a Land-mark. From hence the Countrey hercabouts hath the name of *Constance*. 2 *Auranches*, situate on a Rock with a fair prospect over the English Channel, but more near to *Bretagne*, than the other; the chief City of the *Abrincantes*, called *Ingena* by *Pisomy*; now a Bishops See. 3 *Caen*, (*Cadomum* in *Latin*) an Episcopal See, as the other; strong, populous, and well built, seated upon the River *Orne*, second in reputation of the whole Province: but more especially famous for the Sepulchre of *William* the Conquerour, the University founded here by King *Henry* the fifth of England, and for the long resistance which it made against him, in his Conquest of Normandy. 4 *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baiocassium* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Countrey round about hath the name of *Bessin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Episcopal. One of the Bishops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William* the Conquerour, by the Mothers side, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards on some just displeasure committed prisoner. For which, when quarrelled by the Pope, (the Clergie being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this answer, That he had committed the Earl of *Kent*; not the Bishop of *Bayeux*: By which distinction he avoided the Popes displeasure. 5 *Rouen*, of old *Rotomagus*, pleasantly seated on the *Seine*, and watered with the two little Riverets of *Robee*, and *Reinelle*, which keep it very sweet and clean. The City for the most part well built, of large circuit and great trading; the second for bigness, wealth, and beauty, in all France: anciently the Metropolis of this Province, and an Archbishops See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the twelfth, Anno 1501. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a Reverend, but no beautiful Fabrick) is to be seen the Sepulchre of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of France for King *Henry* the sixth: which when an envious Courtier perswaded *Charles* the eighth to deface; *God forbid* (said he) that I should wrong him, being dead, whom living, all the power of France was not able to withstand; adding withal, That he deserved a better Monument than the English had bestowed upon him. And to say truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, short of the merits of the man, and carrying no proportion to so great a vertue. 6 *Falaise*, upon the River *Ante*, once of strength and note; the dwelling place of *Arlesius*, a Skinners daughter, and the mother of *William* the Conquerour: whom Duke *Robert*, passing through the Town took such notice of, (as he beheld her in a Dance amongst other Damozels) that he sent for her to accompany him that night in bed, and begot on her *William* the Bastard, Duke of Normandy, and King of England. Her immodesty that night laid to be so great, that either in regard thereof, or in spite to her Son, the English called all Strumpets by the name of Harlots, the word continuing to this day. 7 *Vernonville* (*Vernodium* in *Latin*) in former times accepted one of the Bulwarks of Normandy, against the French. Of which it is reported, that when news was brought to *Richard* the first, that *Philip* (sur-named *Augustus*, the French King had laid siege unto it, he should say these words; *I will never turn my back till I have confronted those cowardly French-men*. For performance of which Princely word, he caused a passage to be broken through the Palace of *Westminster*, and came so unexpectedly upon his enemies, that they raised their siege, and hastened homwards. 8 *Alanson*, of most note for giving the title of Earl and Duke, to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*; beginning in *Charles de Valois*, the father of *Philip de Valois*, French King, and continuing for eight successions till the death of *Charles* the fourth Duke of this line: conferred occasionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9 *Lysieux*, on the North-east of *Alanson*, a Bishops See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*; as 10 *Caux*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cæsar* in these parts. 11 *Eureux*, an Episcopal See also, by *Pisomy* called *Mediolanium*, the chief city anciently of the *Eburones*, and still a rich and flourishing Town: the third in estimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the person of *Lewis* a younger son of *Philip* the third; whose son called *Philip* by his marriage with *Joan* daughter of *Lewis* *Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town with many fair Estates in this Countrey which depend on it, being seized on by the French in the time of *Charles* the son of this *Philip*, for some practices against that Kingdom; there was after given to *Charles* the third and last King of this house in compensation for the same, Anno 1406. the title of Duke of *Nemours*, with a good sum of ready money, and a pension of 1200 l. sterling yearly, issuing out of the Revenues of *Brie* and *Champagne*. 12 *Guifors*, a strong Frontier Town towards France, whilst *Normandy* was in the hands of the English, or under its own Dukes and Princes; notable for the many repulses given unto the French: And 13 *Pontyfe*, another Frontier Town upon France, so called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyfe*, (which divides France from Normandy) on which the Town is situate, and by which well fortified on that side, but taken at the second coming of *Charles* the 7th. after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noise onely of the coming of the Duke of *Tork*, Commander at that time of the Province, and the English Forces. 14 *Albemarl*, contraſtably *Aumerl*, most memorable for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Family *De Forſibus*, Lords of *Holdernes* in England; and of Duke, to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland* after

Normandie.

after Duke of *Tork*. More towards the Sea, 15 *S. Valeris*, seated on a small but secure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-Haven*. 16 *Dieppe*, at the mouth of a little River so named, opening into a large and capacious Bay; a Town of Trade, especially for the *Newfound-Land*: remarkable for its fidelity to *Henry* the 4th in the midst of his troubles; When the Confederates of the *Guisian* faction called the *Holy League*, had outed him of almost all the rest of his Cities, compelled him to betake himself hither, (from whence he might more easily hoist Saile for England) and called him in derision the King of *Dieppe*. 17 *New-Haven*, the Port Town to *Rouen* and *Paris*, situate at the mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence by great Ships navigable as far as *Rouen*; by lesser unto *Pont de l'Arch*, 70 miles from *Paris*: the Bridge of *Rouen* formerly broken down by the English, to secure the Town, lying unprepared to this day by means of the *Parisians*, for the better trading of their City. By the French it is called *Havre de grace*, and *Franciscopolis* by the *Latines*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the English) by King *Francis* the first, and from thence so named. Delivered by the Prince of *Conde* and his faction into the hands of *Q. Elizabeth* of England, as a Town of caution, for the landing of such forces as she was to send to their relief, in the first civil War of France about Religion: and by the help of the same faction taken from her again, as soon as their differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weakened for the present, but made incapable of any succours out of England for the time to come: and the next year were again warred on by their King; with more heat than formerly. 18 *Hanſew*, and 19 *Honſew*, both situate on the banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the present, because not capable of any great shipping, nor useful in the way of Trade by reason of the interposition of *New-Haven*, betwixt them and the Sea; the former famous notwithstanding in our English Stories; as the first Town which that victorious Prince *K. Henry* the fifth attempted and took in, in France. 20 *Cherbourg* (the *Latines* call it *Cæsaria Burgum*) on the Sea-side also, the last Town which the English held in the Dukedom of Normandy: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Burenx*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; till aliened by *Charles* the third of *Navarre*, on the composition before mentioned; but being garrisoned by the English for *K. Henry* the sixth, it held out a siege of seven months against the forces of France.

Here are also in this Dukedom, the Towns of 21 *Tankerville*, and 22 *Ewe*, which have given the title of Earls, to the Noble Families of the *Greyes*, and *Bourchiers* in England: as also those of 23 *Harcourt*, 25 *Longueville*, and 25 *Amal*, which have given the title of Duke and Earl, to some of the best Houses in France.

In this Countrey also is the little Seigneury of *IVIDOT*, heretofore said to be a free and absolute Kingdom; advanced to that high dignity by *Clotaire*, the seventh King of the French; Who having abused the wife of one *Gautier* de *IVIDOT* (so called because of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent revenge) killed the man himself; to make some satisfaction to his Family for so great an injury, erected the Lordship of *IVIDOT* to the estate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walter*) all the prerogative of a free and absolute Monarch; as to make Laws, coyn Money, and the like. From hence the French call a man that hath but small demains to maintain a great title, a *Roy d'IVIDOT*. At last, but at what time I know not, fell again to a Lordship, and belongeth now to the house of *Bellay*, in *Bretagne*.

There belonged also to this Dukedom, but rather as subject to the Dukes of Normandy than part of Normandy itself the County of *PERCH*, situate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beausse*, of which now reckoned for a part: and was divided into the higher, and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1 *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch* *Gouet*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rotrou* the second Earl of this County, the Founder or repairer of it; to difference it from another of that name, called *Nogent le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*. 2 *Mortaigne*, or *Moriton*, of most note in the higher *Perch*, especially for giving the title of an Earl, to *John*, the youngest Son of *K. Henry* the second, after King of England; as in the times succeeding to the Lord *Edmond Beaufort*, after Duke of *Somerset*. The whole first made a distinct estate, in the person of *Arnulph* of *Heslin* the first Earl hereof. Whose son and successor named *Rotrou* (of great note in the wars of *Spain* against the *Moor*s in behalf of *Alfonso* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, An. 1110) by *Maud* the natural daughter of *Henry* the first of England, unfortunately drowned with her Brother *William* as they crossed the Seas, had one only daughter named *Magdalen*, (or as some say *Margarite*) the wife of *Garcia* the seventh King of *Navarre*; and Mother of *K. Sancho* furnished the *Wife*, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have since descended. But this Family being extinct in a short time after, the Estate fell unto the English as Dukes of Normandy, and so continued till the seizure of Normandy by the French in the time of *K. John*. After which time the title of Earl of *Perch* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Valois* and *Alonso*, Father of *Philip de Valois*, French King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, and of *Charles de Valois* Earl of *Alanson*; in which house of *Alanson* it continued, and was commonly the title of the eldest sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Countrey of Normandy, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Caletes*, *Eburones*, *Lexovii*, *Abrimantes*, spoken of before; the *Bellocaſsi*, or *Fewlocaſsi*, about *Rouen*; the *Salares* and *Baiocenses* about *Sees* and *Baieux*: all conquered first by the powerful *Romans*, the *Romans* after by the French, and the French by the Normans. These last a people of the North, inhabiting those Countreys which now make up the Kingdoms of Denmark, Swethland, and Norway: united in the name of Normans; in regard of their Northernly situation; as in our History and description of those Kingdoms we shall shew more fully. Out of those parts they made their first irruptions about the year 700. when they so ransacked and plagued the Maritime Towns of France and Belgium, that it was inserted in the *Lettins*, *From Plague, Pestilence, and the fury of the Normans*, good Lord, &c. To quiet these people; and to secure himself, *Charles* the Simple, gave them a part of *Nemfria* (from them since called *Normannia*) or

Normandie. Normandie, together with the Sovereignty of *Bretagne*, enjoyed by them and their posterity for many ages. Their first Duke was *Rollo*, An. 912. from whom in a direct line, the sixth was *William* the Bastard, Conqueror, and King of England, An. 1067. After this, *Normandie* continued English till the dayes of King *John*: when *Philip Augustus* seized on all Estates in France, as forfeitures, An. 1202. The English then possessing the Dukedoms of *Normandie* and *Aquitaine*; the Earldoms of *Anjou*, *Tourene*, *Maine*, *Poitou*, and *Limousin*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Countrey, than the Kings of France themselves possessed. The English after this recovered the Dukedom by the valour of King *Henry* the sixth: the fifth, and having held it 30 years, lost it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the sixth: the English then distracted with domestick factions. After which double Conquest of it from the Crown of England, the French distrusting the affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withal a stubborn and untractable people, have miserably oppressed them with tolls and taxes, keeping them alwayes poor and in low condition: in somuch as it may be said of them, that they are the most beggerly people that ever had the luck to live in so rich a Countrey. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of Normandie.

- 912 1 *Rollo* of Norway, made first Duke of Normandie, by *Charles* the Simple; by whose perswasion baptized, and called *Robert*.
- 917 2 *William* surnamed *Longespee*, from the length of his Sword.
- 942 3 *Richard* the Son of *Longespee*.
- 980 4 *Richard* the II. Son of the former.
- 1026 5 *Richard* the III. Son of *Richard* the second.
- 1028 6 *Robert* the Brother of *Richard* the third.
- 1035 7 *William* the bafe Son of *Robert*, subdued the Realm of England; from thence called the Conqueror.
- 1093 8 *Robert* II. eldest Son of *William* the Conqueror, put by the Kingdom of England by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refused the Crown of *Hierusalem*, then newly conquered by the forces of the Christian Princes of the West. Outed at last, imprisoned and deprived of sight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miserable life in the Cattle of *Cardiffe*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Glocester*.
- 1102 9 *Henry* the first King of England.
- 1135 10 *Stephen* King of England, and D. of Normandie.
- 1161 11 *Henry* Plantagenet D. of Normandie, and after King of England, of that name the second.
- 1161 12 *Henry* the III. surnamed *Court-mantle*, Son of *Henry* the second, made D. of Normandie by his Father.
- 1189 13 *Richard* IV. surnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, King of England and D. of Normandie, Son of *Henry* the second.
- 1199 14 *John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of England, and D. of Normandie, outed of his estates in France by King *Philip Augustus*, An. 1202. before whom he was accused of the murder of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the ditches of the Castle of *Rowen*, where he was imprisoned; but sentenced *causa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this Normandie still remained united to the Crown of France (the title only being born by *John de Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the 5th (during the life time of his Father) till the Conquest of it by the valour of *K. Henry* the 5th, An. 1420. which was 218 years after it had been seized on by King *Philip Augustus*; and having been holden by the English but 30 years, was lost again, An. 1450. in the unfortunate reign of King *Henry* the 6th. Never since that dismembered from the Crown of France; saving that *Lewis* the 11th, the better to content the confederate Princes, conferred it in Appennage on his Brother *Charles* Duke of Berry, An. 1465. but within two Moneths after took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, which lay further off from his Associates.

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times, I can hardly say. That they were very fair and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who saith, that he had seen raised in Normandie, 95000 l. sterling money, which was a vast sum of money in those times. As also by this testimony of the D. of *Burgundie*, who held King *Lewis* the 11th to be weakened a whole third part in his estate, by giving Normandie in portion to the D. of Berry. Now they amount unto as much, as the Kings Treasurers and Tollmasters are pleased to draw out of it.

The Arms of Normandie were Gules, two Leopards Or, which with the single Leopard, or Lyon, being added for the *Dutchy of Aquitaine*, make the Arms of England.

5. BRETAGNE.

BRETAGNE is bounded on the East with Normandie, and the County of *Maine*; on the South with *Anjou*, and *Poitou*; on all other parts with the English, or Gallick Ocean. Watered upon the South side with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but so as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lieth on the South side of that River, betwixt it and *Poitou*.

It was first called *Armorica* from its situation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new name, is not well agreed on. The general opinion is

is, that it took this name from the neighbouring Britans, broug it over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling against the Emperor *Gratian*, Anno 385. by whom this Province was subdued, and from them named *Britannia Minor*, Little Britain. An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of this people hath still no small affinity with the *Welsh* or *British*; there being a tradition also, that the Britans who first came over hither and married the Women of this Countrey, cut out their tongues for fear they should corrupt the Language of their Posterity. And to this Conquest by the Britans, these old Verses give some further countenance.

Vicit Aremoricas animosa Britannia Gentes,
Et dedit impostis, nomina prisca, jugo.

That is to say,

Gaul-Armorick, the Britans overcame,
And to the conquered Province gave their name.

Notwithstanding, the most probable opinion seemeth to be, that it took this name from the Britanni; an old Gallick People, mentioned by *Plinie* in *Gaul-Belgick*; retiring hither on the invasions and incursions of the barbarous Nations: though possibly those Britanni of *Gallia-Belgica* might be as well some Colony of the Island-Britans, as the *Belge* a great Nation in the Isle of Britain, are said to have been a People of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reason is, because there was no Author before *Geoffrey* of *Monmouth* who takes notice of this transporting of the Insular-Britans by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no ancient Author Greek or Latin making mention of it. And for the *Welsh* or *British* words which are still remaining in the language, they are conceived to be no other than a remainder of the old Gallick tongue; which was originally the same with the ancient British, as is elsewhere proved.

The Province is in compass 200 French Leagues: Pleasant and fruitful, beautified with many shady Woods, and spacious Downs; sufficiently well stored with all manner of grain, but destitute of Wine and the choicer fruits, by reason of the Northerly situation of it. Divided commonly into *Hault* or *High Bretagne*, and *Basse* or *Low Bretagne*: the first containing the more Eastern, and the last the Western parts hereof. Neither of the two much furnished with navigable or notable Rivers; the defect of which, the neighbourhood of the Sea supplieth, affording more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens, those of most note in the Higher Bretagne, are 1 *S. Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every high-water it is incompassed. A Bishops See, and a Port very much frequented by the French, and Spanish, who use here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes spoyled by the English, in the Wars with France, especially since the time of King *Henry* the seventh. 2 *Blavet*, a safe but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the same name also. Impregably fortified by the Spaniard, An. 1590. when taking opportunity of the broil in France, and pretending a good title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the male issue of King *Henry* the second, he thought by this door to have entred on the whole Estate, but quitted it again on the general peace made between the Crowns. 3 *S. Briens*, (by the Latines called *Fannus Sancti Briaci*) a Bishops See, and a well-traded Port, seated upon the English Channel. 4 *Vannes*, a Bishop: See also, situate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Vilain*; the chief Town of the *Peniti*, whom *Cesar* placeth in this tract; and makes them to be the mightiest People of all the *Americans*, strongest in shipping, and best seen in Affairs at Sea. 5 *Croissie*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the Gallick Ocean. Then in Low Bretagne, or the more Western parts hereof, there is 6 *Brest*, seated upon a spacious Bay of the Western Ocean; the Key and Bulwark of this Countrey, and the goodliest Harbour of all France. 7 *Morlais*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8 *S. Pol de Leon*, and 9 *Triguier*, both Bishops Sees, both situate on the Sea-shore, and both the chief Towns of the *Ossismi*, whom *Ptolomy* and *Strabo* place upon this Coast: the first of them neighbored by the *Promontory* which they call *Le Four*, the *Gouven* of *Ptolomy*. 10 *Kemper* *Corentin*, a Bishops See also, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cornouaille* (and called so for the same reason as *Cornwall* in England is) situate not far from the Foreland which they call *Penmarch*, opposite to *Le Four* spoken of before. A Sea Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can find. 11 *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not far from *Brest*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1 *Nantes*, the principal City of the *Nunetes* (by *Ptolomy* called *Condivincinum*) a large, fair, strong, and populous City, seated upon the *Loir*; a Bishops See, and the *M. tropalis* of Bretagne. 2 *Rene*, anciently the chief Town of the *Rhedones*, (called *Cadute* by *Ptolomy*) now a Bishops See, and the Parliament City for this County, established here An. 1553. which maketh it very populous, and of great Resort, though not fully two miles in compass. 3 *Dol*, an Episcopal City also, but unwholly seated amongst Marshes. 4 *Dinan*, a rich and pleasant Town on the River *Rance*. 5 *L' Amballe*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliates*, spoken of by *Cesar*. 6 *Rohan*, the title and inheritance of the Dukes of *Rohan*, descended from a branch of the Ducal Family of Bretagne, by *Mary* the second Daughter of Duke *Francis* the first, and Wife of *John* then Viscount of *Rohan*. 7 *Ansis*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendosme*, and the head of his Estates in Bretagne. Of which possessed in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of the Duke of *Mencour* by the Heir of *Maritignies*, another of the branches of this Ducal Family. 8 *Chasteau-Briant*, a strong piece on the borders of Normandie. 9 *Cliffon*, the chief Town of the *Dutchy of Raiz*, being that part of Bretagne which lieth on the South side of the *Loir*; a strong Town, and fortified with a very good Cattle.

Bretagne.

The Britons, who ever they were in their first Original, were unquestionably one of the first Nations that possessed any part of Gaul, after the Conquest of the Romans. Governed at first by their own Kings, the most considerable of which was that *Aldroenus* or *Auldran*, the Son of *Solomon*; who at the time of the *Insular Britons*, then distressed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, as (*Geoffrey of Monmouth* telleth the story) sent over *Constantine* his Brother with a complete Army to their aid; who having valiantly repulsed the Enemy, was made King of Britain, *An. 433*. Of whose posterity more there. Those of *Armorica* being broken by the puissance of *Charles the Great*, abandoned the name of Kings, and satisfied themselves with the title of Earls; assumed first by *Alain le Rebre*, *An. 874*. but as some say, *An. 859*. which was somewhat sooner. By *Peter of Dreux*, the sixteenth Earl, challenging his Estate in right of *Alice* his Wife, and the half Sister of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Constance*, by *Guy of Thouars* her third Husband, the better to secure his title, this Earldom was made subject to the Vassallage of the Crown of France, in the time of *Lewis* the ninth; by whom *John* called the Red, the Son of this *Peter*, was created the first Duke of Bretagne; as being of the Blood Royal of France, descended lineally from *Robert* the first Earl of *Dreux*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the Gross. Yet notwithstanding this subjection to the Kings of France, the Dukes hereof reserved to themselves the Sovereign power, as to write themselves, By the Grace of God, the privilege of coining Gold, &c. and stood so high upon their terms, that *Francis* the last Duke, denied to do his homage to *Charles* the seventh, either upon his Knees, or without his Sword, according to the former custom. For which being quarrelled by *Lewis* the eleventh, the Son of *Charles*, who was at better leisure to pursue the business than his Father was, he joyned himself with *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundie* in a War against him; and thereby drew upon himself that ruin, which he endeavoured to avoid. For in conclusion, *Charles* of *Berry*, as it was thought, was poisoned; *Charles* of *Burgundie* lost his life at the Battel of *Nancie*, 1476. and a great part of his Estate was conquered by the French King. And *Francis* this Duke having embarked himself in the same troublous Ocean, must needs suffer shipwrack with his Copartners. The French King invadeth Bretagne; The Duke overcharged with melancholy, dies, 1488. leaving *Anne* his Daughter and Heir, in the power of *Charles* the eighth, the Son and Successor of *Lewis*: who contracts a marriage with the Orphan, and uniteth Bretagne to France. There were many impediments which might have hindered this marriage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. First, *Charles* himself had been formerly contracted to the Archduke *Maximilian* Daughter; but this he held void, because the young Lady was not of age, at the time of the Contract. 2 *Anne* the Dutchess was also contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held invalid also, because that being his Homager, she could not bestow her self without his consent. 3 *Maximilian* had by proxy married her, which marriage he consummated by a Ceremony in those daies unusual. For his Ambassador attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the same within the Sheets of the Dutchess, taking possession thereby of her Bed and Body. But *Charles* consulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Consummation was rather an invention of Court, than any way firm by the Laws of the Church, and therefore of no power to hinder his pursuit of this marriage, so advantageous to his Crown. What else remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of France, we shall see anon: having first looked over the Succession of those Princes, who under several Titles have governed the Estate thereof; according to the best light we can get from Story.

Kings of the Britons of Gaul-Armoric.

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|--|----|--|
| 385 | 1 | <i>Conan</i> placed here by <i>Maximus</i> . | 7 | <i>Hoel</i> II. Son of <i>Hoel</i> the first. |
| | 2 | <i>Grallon</i> , Son of <i>Conan</i> . | 8 | <i>Alain</i> , Son of <i>Hoel</i> the second. |
| | 3 | <i>Solomon</i> , Son of <i>Grallon</i> . | 9 | <i>Hoel</i> III. Son of <i>Alain</i> . |
| | 4 | <i>Auldran</i> , or <i>Aldroenus</i> , the Son of <i>Solomon</i> . | 10 | <i>Solomon</i> II. Son of <i>Hoel</i> the third. |
| | 5 | <i>Bodis</i> , Son of <i>Auldran</i> . | 11 | <i>Alain</i> II. Grandchild to <i>Solomon</i> the second, the last King of Bretagne, of the race of <i>Conan</i> : who dying without Issue, left his Kingdom unto many Competitors, by whom distracted into many petit Tyrannies, and at last subdued by <i>Charles</i> the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom, in the time of <i>Lodovicus</i> Pius, who next succeeded; yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Infomuch, as after the murder of two or three Usurpers of the royal title, <i>Alain</i> , surnamed <i>Le Rebre</i> , laid aside that invidious name of King, and would be called only Earl of Bretagne. His Successors follow. |
| | 6 | <i>Hoel</i> , Son of <i>Bodis</i> . | | |

Earls and Dukes of Bretagne.

- | | | | | |
|-----|---|--|----|--|
| 874 | 1 | <i>Alain le Rebre</i> . | 9 | <i>Hoel</i> , Sisters Son of <i>Conan</i> the second. |
| | 2 | <i>Indicael</i> and <i>Colodock</i> Sons of <i>Alain</i> . | 10 | <i>Alain</i> IV. called <i>Fergent</i> , Son of <i>Hoel</i> . |
| | 3 | <i>Mathrudon</i> , Son in Law of <i>Alain le Rebre</i> . | 11 | <i>Conan</i> III. Son of <i>Alain</i> . |
| | 4 | <i>Alain</i> II. Son of <i>Mathrudon</i> . | 12 | <i>Eudon</i> , Husband of <i>Bertha</i> , Daughter of <i>Conan</i> . |
| | 5 | <i>Conan</i> , descended from King <i>Solomon</i> the third. | 13 | <i>Conan</i> IV. Son of <i>Eudon</i> . |
| | 6 | <i>Geoffry</i> , Son of <i>Conan</i> . | 14 | <i>Geoffry</i> II. Son of <i>Henry</i> the third, King of England, Husband of <i>Constance</i> , Daughter and Heir of <i>Conan</i> the fourth. |
| | 7 | <i>Alain</i> III. Son of <i>Geoffry</i> . | | |
| | 8 | <i>Conan</i> II. Son of <i>Alain</i> . | | |

1186

Anjou.

- | | | | | | |
|------|----|--|------|----|--|
| 1186 | 15 | <i>Arthur</i> , Son of <i>Geoffry</i> . | | | <i>Estampes</i> , the Brother of Duke <i>Arthur</i> the 3d, the last Duke of Bretagne, of whom sufficiently before. |
| 1202 | 16 | <i>Peter</i> of <i>Breux</i> , in right of <i>Alice</i> his wife, the half Sister of <i>Arthur</i> . | | | <i>Charles</i> the 8th, French King, succeeded in the Dukedom of Bretagne in right of <i>Anne</i> his Wife, Daughter and Heir of <i>Francis</i> the 2d. |
| 1250 | 17 | <i>John</i> , the first Duke of Bretagne. | 1484 | 27 | <i>Lewis</i> the 12th, French King, succeeded on the death of <i>Charles</i> , in the right of the said <i>Anne</i> , whom he took to Wife; and to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himself from the Lady <i>Joan</i> his former Wife, Daughter of <i>Lewis</i> the 11th. |
| 1287 | 18 | <i>John</i> II. Son of <i>John</i> the first. | | | |
| 1305 | 19 | <i>Arthur</i> II. Son of <i>John</i> the second. | | | |
| 1312 | 20 | <i>John</i> III. Son of <i>Arthur</i> the second. | | | |
| 1341 | 21 | <i>John</i> Earl of <i>Montfort</i> , Brothers son of <i>Arthur</i> . | 1498 | 28 | <i>Francis</i> the III. of Bretagne, and the first of France, succeeded in the Dukedom in right of <i>Claude</i> his Wife, the eldest Daughter of <i>Lewis</i> the 12th and of <i>Anne</i> of Bretagne: by whom being made the Father of so many Children, that he had little cause to fear that the Crown would be separated from his House; in the year 1532, being the seventeenth of his Reign and Government, caused an Act to pass, with the consent of the States of Bretagne, for the inseparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of France, and by that means divested his posterity of it. For his male issue failing in King <i>Henry</i> the 3d, the rights hereof descended on the Heirs general; that is to say, on <i>Isabel</i> , Daughter of <i>Philip</i> the second of Spain, and of the Lady <i>Isabel</i> or <i>Elizabeth</i> his Wife, the eldest Daughter of <i>Henry</i> the second, and Niece to the said <i>Francis</i> the first; and after her decease (dying without issue) on the Lady <i>Katharine</i> her Sister, married to <i>Charles</i> Emmanuel Duke of <i>Savoy</i> . For whom when <i>Philip</i> of Spain claimed this Estate, the French pretended a Law against it of their own devising, viz. That no Estate being incorporated to that Crown, could be alienated from it. A proper Law, and coulen German to the <i>Salique</i> ; but such as served their turn by the help of the English, who desired not to have the <i>Spaniards</i> so near Neighbours to them. |
| 1399 | 22 | <i>John</i> V. Son of <i>John</i> of <i>Montfort</i> . | | | |
| 1442 | 23 | <i>Francis</i> the Son of <i>John</i> the fifth. | | | |
| 1450 | 24 | <i>Peter</i> , the Brother of Duke <i>Francis</i> . | | | |
| 1457 | 25 | <i>Arthur</i> III. second Son of <i>John</i> Earl of <i>Montfort</i> . | | | |
| 1458 | 26 | <i>Francis</i> II. Son of <i>Richard</i> Earl of <i>Richmond</i> . | 1515 | 29 | Molt of our former Earls of <i>Richmond</i> were Earls and Dukes of this House. Their Arms were <i>Ermins</i> . |

6. The Dukedom and Estates of ANJOU.

THE Dukedom and Estates of ANJOU, taking them in the full latitude and extent thereof, bounded on the East with *La Beausse*; on the West, with *Bretagne*, and part of *Poitou*; on the North, with *Normandie*; and on the South, with part of *Berry*, and *Poitou*. In which circumference are comprehended the three small Provinces of *Anjou*, *Touren*, and *Maine*; most commonly accounted of as parts and members of *La Beausse*, the ancient Inhabitants whereof, in the times of the Romans, were the *Andes*, as *Cesar* (or the *Andegavi*, as *P.iny*) calls them; the *Turon*, and the *Cenomani*, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of *Lugdunensis Tertia*.

The Countrey for the most part is very fruitful and pleasant, especially in *Touren*; as is the whole tract upon the *Loire*. *Anjou* is somewhat the more hilly, but otherwise little inferior to *Touren*, affording plenty of white Wines, the best in France; and yielding from those Hills above 40 Riverets, falling into the *Loire* from thence; the chief whereof are *Mayenne*, 2 *Vienne*, 3 *Dive*, and 4 *Sartre*.

1 ANJOU, called *Andegavia* by the Latins, is situate in the midst betwixt *Maine* and *Touren*, so called from the *Andegavi*, the old Inhabitants of these parts. Principal Cities are, 1 *Angiers*, (by *Protonie* call *Juliomagus*) of a large circuit, and well built, the See of a Bishop, reckoning in it 15 Parishes besides the Cathedral. It is seated on the River *Sartre* in a very good air, and therefore chosen for the seat of an University, founded here by *Lewis* the second Duke of *Anjou*, the Son of King *John*, Anno 1388. 2 *Beaufort*, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Lancaster*, in which *John* of *Gaunt* so much delighted, that he caused all the Children that he had by *Katharine* Swinford, his third Wife, to be called *Beauforts*: which *Beauforts* were afterwards Dukes of *Somerset*, and *Exeter*, and Earls of *Dorset*. This Town came to the house of *Lancaster*, by the marriage of *Blanch* of *Artois*, unto *Edmund* surnamed *Crouchback*, second Son to our *Henry* the third; created by his Father, the first Earl of *Lancaster*. Memorable in these latter times for giving the Title of a Dutchess to *Madam Katharine*, the beloved Mistress of *K. Henry* the 4th, by whom she was mother of *Cesar* now Duke of *Vendosme*, and of *Alexander*, not long since the *Grand Prior* of France. With reference to which, the second son of the Duke of *Vendosme* is honoured at this present with the title of Duke of *Beaufort*: as the eldest with relation to his Mother was made Duke of *Mercoeur*. 3 *Baugie*, near which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the English and the French, wherein the English lost the day, and *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, Brother to *Henry* the fifth, was there unfortunately slain, Anno 1422. 4 *Saumur*, pleasantly situate on the *Loire*, and for long time one of the Cautionary Towns in the hands of those of the Reformed Religion; of whom it is the only entire University in this Kingdom; especially famous for the learned *Philip du Morney*, Lord of *Plessis*, sometimes the Governor hereof. 5 *Loches*, seated on the River *Indre*, the Castle whereof being mounted on a steep high Rock, is thought to be one of the strongest pieces

S 3

Anjou.

pieces of all France. 6 *La Fleche*, of special name at the present for a Colledge of Jesuites, one of the fairest in this Kingdom. The word in the French tongue signifieth an Arrow (whence those who make Bows and Arrows have the name of *Flechers*.) At *Nola* in the Realm of *Naples*, there is another Colledge of them, called *D' Arque*, the Bow: on which one wittily composed this ensuing *Distich*;

*Arcum Nola dedit, dedit illis alma Sagittam
Gallia: quis Funem, quoniam mernere, dabit?*

That is to say,

*Nola the Bow, and France the Shaft did bring:
But who shall help them to the Hempo-istring?*

2 On the South-east of *Anjou*, lieth the Countrey of *TOUREIN*, the ancient Seat of the *Turones*: which, for the wholsomness of the Air, the pleasantness of the Countrey, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by some called *The Garden of France*. Principal Cities in it, 1 *Amboise*, pleasantly seated on the *Loire*, and beautified with one of the fairest Castles in France, both for the gallantry of the Building, and beautifulnes of the Prospekt. 2 *Tours*, by *Ptolomy* called *Casaro-dunum*, and the *Turonum Civitas Antoninus*; the Metropolis of *Lugdunensis tertia*, and an Archbishops See: a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, situate on the banks of the *Loire*, in a most sweet and pleasing Countrey. Famous in that those of the *Reformed Religion*, from the Gate of *S. Hugo*, at which they used to issue out to their Assemblies in the Fields, had the name of *Hugonots*. Given to them, as some others think, as the Disciples of the night-walking Spirit (or *Robin Goodfellow*) which they call *S. Hugo*, in regard they had their first meetings, for the most part, in the nights; as had the Primitive *Christians* in the times of their Persecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculously) derive the name from the first words of an Apologie which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were *Huc nos venimus*: fancying, that as the *Protestants* did derive that Appellation from the words *Protestants*, and *Protestantur*, so often used by them in their Apologie to *Charles* the fifth; so from those words *Huc nos*, came the name of *Hugonots*, or *Hucnots*. But more assuredly famous for the great Battel fought near it by *Charles Martell*, Mayre of the Palace, and Father of *Pepin* King of France, against an Army of 400000 *Moor*s, led by *Alderamen*, Lieutenant General in Spain, for *Evelid* or *Iscam* the great Caliph: of which 370000 lost their lives in the place, Anno 734. 3 *Landun*, 4 *Richelieu*, pleasantly seated in a rich and flourishing Soil, as the name importeth. Of no great note till the time of the late great Cardinal of *Richelieu*, who took name from hence; by whom it was made one of the neatest Towns (for the bigness of it) in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the titles of a Dukedom and *Pairie* of France.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for of *Anjou* we shall speak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietary Earls, of the house of *Blais*; conferred by *Hugh Capet* upon *Odon* Earl of *Blais* and *Champagne*: and by him given, together with the Earldom of *Blais*, to *Theobald* or *Thibault* his eldest Son, (his second Son named *Stephen* succeeding in *Champagne*); who in the year 1043. was vanquished and slain by *Charles Martell* Earl of *Anjou*, and this Province seized on by the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours* his ordinary Seat and Residence. Part of which Earldom it continued, till the seizure of *Anjou*, and all the rest of the English Provinces in France, on the sentence passed upon King *John*. After which time dismembred from it, it was conferred on *John*, the fourth Son of King *Charles* the sixth, with the stile and title of Duke of *Touren*; and he decealing without Issue, it was bestowed with the same title, on *Charles* the eldest Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* (in the life of his Father); the same who afterwards succeeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken Prisoner by the English at the Battel of *Agincourt*, kept prisoner 25 years in England, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis* the twelfth.

3 On the North side of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandy*, lieth the Province of *MAINE*; *Comitatus Cenomannensis* in our Latine writers. So called of the *Cenomanni* the old Inhabitants of this tract in the time of *Cesar*; some of which, with the *Boii*, *Senones*, and other Nations of the *Galls* had in the former time passed over the *Alpes*, and there possessed themselves of those Countreys, which now pass under the name and account of *Lombardie*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1 *Mans*, *Cenomannensium Civitas Antoninus*, by *Ptolomie* called *Vindinum*; seated on the meeting of *Haine* and *Sarve*; the principal of the Province, and a Bishops See: most memorable in the elder times for giving the title of an Earl to that famous Rowland, the Sitters Son of *Charlemagne*, one of the Twelve Peers of France; (the Subject of many notable Poems, under the name of *Orlando Inamorato*, *Orlando Furioso*, besides many of the old Romances) who was Earl of *Mans*. 2 *Meyne*, on the Banks of a River of the same name, (*Meduana* in Latine) the title of the second branch of the house of *Guisse*: famous for *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, who held out for the League against *Henry* the 4th; A Prince not to be equalled in the Art of War, only unfortunate in employing it in so ill a cause. 3 *Vitru*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4 *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*; of note for giving both name and title to the Earls of *La val*, an ancient Family, allied unto the houses of *Vendosme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and other the best of France. Few else of any note in this little County; which once submitting of it self under its own natural Lords and Princes, was at last united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the marriage of the Lady *Gulberge*, Daughter and Heir of *Helie*, the last Earl hereof, to *Foulk* Earl

Anjou.

Earl of *Anjou*, Anno 1083. or thereabouts: the Fortunes of which great Estate it hath always followed, since that time.

But as for *Anjou* it self, the principal part of this goodly Patrimony, it was by *Charles* the Bald conferred on *Robert* a Saxon Prince, for his valour shewn against the *Normans*, Anno 870. Which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of France, of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundie*, and of *Robert* who succeeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*; Competitor with *Charles* the Simple for the Crown it self, as the next heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the pursuit of this great quarrel, he left this Earldom, with the title of Earl of *Paris*, and his pretensions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his Son, surnamed the Great: who to make good his claim to the Crown, against *Lewis* the 4th, Son of *Charles* the Simple, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the Countrey of *Gastinois*, on *Geofry* surnamed *Gryfagonelle*, a renowned Warriour, and a great stickler in his cause in whose race it continued near 300 years. How the two Countreys of *Main* and *Touren* were joyned to it, hath been shewn before. *Geofry* the Son of *Foulk* the third, married *Maud*, Daughter to *Henry* the first of England, and Widow of *Henry* the fourth Emperor: from whom proceeded *Henry* the second, King of England, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *John* his Son, forfeiting his Estates in France (as the French pretended) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown: and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis* the ninth on his Brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrice* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*, and by Pope *Urban* the fourth, was made King of *Naples* and *Sicilie*. Afterwards it was made a Dukedom by King *Charles* the fifth, (*Touren* being first dismembred from it) in the person of *Lewis* of France his second Brother, to whom this fair Estate was given, as second Son of King *John* of France, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and consequently the next heir to *Charles de Valois*, the last Earl hereof (the King his Brother yielding up all his right unto him) Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis* the eleventh. The Earls and Dukes hereof having been vested with the Diadems of several Countreys, following in this order,

The Earls of Anjou of the Line of Saxony.

- | | | | | | |
|------|---|--|------|----|---|
| 870 | 1 | <i>Robert</i> of Saxony the first Earl of <i>Anjou</i> . | | | cover the Earldom of <i>Anjou</i> , from his part wherein he was excluded by his Brother <i>Geofry</i> . |
| 875 | 2 | <i>Robert</i> II. Competitor for the Crown of France with <i>Charles</i> the Simple, as Brother of <i>Eudes</i> the last King. | 1080 | 9 | <i>Geofry</i> IV. Son of <i>Foulk</i> 2d. |
| 922 | 3 | <i>Hugh</i> the great, Lord of <i>Gastinois</i> , Earl of <i>Paris</i> , Constable of France, and Father of <i>Hugh Capet</i> . | 1083 | 10 | <i>Foulk</i> III. Brother of <i>Geofry</i> ; King of <i>Hierusalem</i> in the right of <i>Melisent</i> his Wife. |
| 926 | 4 | <i>Geofry</i> <i>Gryfagonelle</i> , by the Donation of <i>Hugh</i> the great, whose party he had followed in the War of France, with great fidelity and courage. | 1143 | 11 | <i>Geofry</i> V. surnamed <i>Plantagenet</i> . |
| 938 | 5 | <i>Foulk</i> , Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , the Son of <i>Geofry</i> . | 1150 | 12 | <i>Henry</i> the II. King of England, Son of Earl <i>Geofry</i> and <i>Maud</i> his Wife, Daughter of King <i>Henry</i> the first. |
| 987 | 6 | <i>Geofry</i> II. surnamed <i>Martell</i> , for his great valour. | 1162 | 13 | <i>Geofry</i> VI. third Son of King <i>Henry</i> the 2d, made Earl of <i>Anjou</i> on his marriage with <i>Constance</i> , the Heir of <i>Bretagne</i> . |
| 1047 | 7 | <i>Geofry</i> III. Nephew of <i>Geofry</i> 2d by one of his Sisters. | 1186 | 14 | <i>Arthur</i> Son of <i>Geofry</i> and <i>Constance</i> . |
| 1075 | 8 | <i>Foulk</i> II. Brother of <i>Geofry</i> 3d gave <i>Gastinois</i> , (which was his proper inheritance) to King <i>Philip</i> the first; that by his help he might re- | 1203 | 15 | <i>John</i> , King of England, succeeded on the death of <i>Arthur</i> ; dispossessed of his Estates in France by <i>Philip Augustus</i> , immediately on the death of <i>Arthur</i> , Anno 1202. |

Earls and Dukes of Anjou, of the Line of France.

- | | | | | | |
|------|---|--|------|---|---|
| 1262 | 1 | <i>Charles</i> , Brother of King <i>Lewis</i> the ninth, Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , and <i>Provence</i> , King of <i>Naples</i> and <i>Sicilie</i> , &c. | | | adopted by Queen <i>Joan</i> of <i>Naples</i> , King of <i>Naples</i> , <i>Sicilie</i> , and <i>Hierusalem</i> , and Earl of <i>Provence</i> . |
| 1315 | 2 | <i>Charles</i> of <i>Valois</i> , Son of <i>Philip</i> the third, Earl of <i>Anjou</i> in right of his wife, Niece of the former <i>Charles</i> , by his Son and heir of the same name; the Father of <i>Philip de Valois</i> , French King. | 1385 | 5 | <i>Lewis</i> III. Duke of <i>Anjou</i> , and Earl of <i>Provence</i> , and <i>Main</i> ; titular King of <i>Sicilie</i> , <i>Naples</i> , and <i>Hierusalem</i> . |
| 1318 | 3 | <i>Lewis</i> of <i>Valois</i> , the second Son of <i>Charles</i> , died without issue, Anno 1325. | 1416 | 6 | <i>Lewis</i> IV. successor to his Father in Estate and Titles. |
| 1376 | 4 | <i>Lewis</i> of France, the 2d Son of King <i>John</i> , the Son of <i>Philip de Valois</i> , created the first Due of <i>Anjou</i> by King <i>Charles</i> his Brother; and | 1430 | 7 | <i>René</i> , the Brother of <i>Lewis</i> , by the adoption of <i>Qu. Joan</i> the 2d, was for a while possessed of <i>Naples</i> ; but presently ousted by <i>Alfonso</i> of <i>Aragon</i> , and died the titular King of <i>Naples</i> , <i>Sicilie</i> , and <i>Hierusalem</i> ; the Father of Queen <i>Margarite</i> , Wife |

La Beausse.

1480 8 Wife of Henry the sixth; and Duke of Bar, in right of Violant his Mother. Charles Earl of Maine, Nephew to René by his third Brother Charles, at his decease left Anjou, and all the rest of his Estates to King Lewis the 11th, An. 1481. Since which never otherwise aliened, than as an honourary title of the third Son of France.

It is to be observed here (according to our method in other places) that René King of Sicil, &c. and Duke of Anjou, instituted an Order of Knight-hood, called of the Croissant: the Knights whereof carryed a Crescent, or Half-moon, on their right Arms, with this Motto, *L'Or en Croissant*; encouraging them thereby to seek the increase of valour and reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedome, were France, a Border Gules.

7. LA BEAUSSE.

LA BEAUSSE (not reckoning in the Provinces last before described) is bounded on the East with France specially and primarily so called; on the West, with Anjou, Maine, Tourain, and some part of Berry; on the North, with Normandy; and on the South, with Nivernois, and the rest of Berry. It is called *Belsia* in Latine Writers; both names derived from the pleasantness and beauties of it; this Countrey being not only looked on as the Garden of France, but the Nurse of the great City of Paris, which from the breasts thereof receiveth the best part of its sustenance.

The principal Nations of the whole in the time of the Romans, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greatest part, and the *Samniti* neer the Loire; part of *Gallia Celtica*, and cast into the Province of *Lugdunensis quarta* by the Emperour Constantine. Divided by the French into the Higher, the Lower, and the Intermediate.

1 The HIGHER BEAUSSE is that part which lyeth next to Normandy, of which the principal Towns are, 1 Dreux, seated upon the River Eureux, supposed to be the seat of the ancient Druides, who held here their Parliaments or Sessions for administration of Justice. The title and inheritance of Robert, one of the younger sons of King Lewis the Groesse, and Grandfather of that Peter of Dreux, who succeeded Arthur, the Son of Geoffry Plantagenet, in the Earldom of Bretagne. 2 Montfort, an Earldom, the title and Estate of John Earl of Montfort, surnamed the Valiant, who succeeded in the Dukedom of Bretagne, by the aid of the English, An. 1341. 3 Chartres, called antiently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by Ptolemy, *Aricum*) from whence the Countrey hereabouts was called *Le Pais Chartrain*: seated in an uneven place, varied with fertile rising Hills, so that the East side stands upon the top of an Hill, and the West spreads it self in the bottom of a Plain, through the midst whereof runs the River Eure, which as soon as it comes to the Walls of the City, on the South-side, divides it self into three branches, two whereof encompass the City round about, and the third running thorough the middle thereof, serveth the Town with many Mills for the use of the people; doth afterwards unite it self with the rest into one main Channel. A very fair and goodly City, a Bishops See, and one of the *Vidamates* of France; antiently giving the title of an Earldom also to the house of Blois, from the time that Theobald the second Earl of Blois extorted it by strong hand from the Bishops hereof, about the year 950. continuing in the possession of that Family till the year 1300. or thereabouts, when sold by Maubault or Maud, the Heir Proprietar hereof, Wife of Hugh de Chastillon, in her right called Earl of Blois, to King Philip the Fair, for an Annual pension of 4000 Livres. 4 Anneau, a Town of the territory of Chartres, memorable for the great slaughter made here by Henry Duke of Guise, of the Germ. in Auxiliaries, invading France with a right formidable Army in behalf of the Hugonots, An. 1587.

2 The LOWER BEAUSSE is that which lyeth towards Nivernois and Berry; and is subdivided into Sologne, and Orleans. In SOLOGNE, which lyeth close to Berry, the chief places of note, are, 1 Romorantin, seated on the Souldre, the chief Town of this Tract. 2 Mallenzay. 3 La Ferte, or La Ferte S. Bernard, of which nothing memorable. In ORLEANOIS, which lyeth more Northwards upon the River of Loyre, are, 1 Lareau, a Town once of very great strength, and one of the out-works of Orleans. 2 Cleri, called also Cleri of Notre-dame, from the Church there built unto our Lady. 3 Tury; and 4 Angerville, both in the ordinary Road betwixt Paris and Orleans, the principal City of all Beausse, called *Genabum* in the time of Caesar; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperour Aurelius, An. 276. from thence named *Aurelia*, the Countrey round about it *Aurelianensis*, now Orleans, and Orleans. The Countrey generally very fruitful and yielding a most excellent and delicious Wine; which for the strength, and intoxicating power thereof, is banished the French Kings Cellar by especial Edict. The City very pleasantly seated on the River Loyre, well built, situate in a sweet Air, and planted with a Civil and ingenious People; who are said to speak the best Language of any in France. For a time it was the chief Seat of a distinct Kingdom, (according to the unprovident humour of the Merovingians) the lot of Clodomire Son of Clovis the Great, and of Guntram Son of Clovis, both Kings of Orleans; as also was Theodorick, the second Son of Childbert King of Metz, on the death of Guntram. But Sigibert his son being vanquished by Clovis the second, this Kingdom extending to the shores of the Aquitain Ocean, was added unto that of France. Orleans since that time content with a lower title, hath of late oftentimes with greater prudence, been made the honourary title of the second Sons of France called Dukes hereof; the first who had the title being Philip the 2d. son of Philip de Valois, from a Base son of whose,

Earls

Berry.

Earls of Dunnois, and Dukes of Longeville do derive themselves, and Lewis the second son of Charles the first, Grandfather of Lewis the 11th. French King. It is a See Episcopal, a Bailiwick, or *Seige Præfidal*, and an University. The See Episcopal founded in the Church of St. Croisse, miserably ruined by the Hugonots in the civil Wars, out of meer hatred to the name. The *Seige Præfidal* settled here by King Henry the 2d. 1551. for the ease of his Subjects of these parts, in sutes not worth the troubling of the Courts of Paris. The University erected by King Philip le Bel, An. 1312. though, to speak properly, it be an Hall only for the reading of the Civil Laws, the only learning there professed, and for that considerable. A Town now not of so great strength as in former times, when for some months it held out against the whole power of the English; rescued from them at last by the valour of Joan the Virgin, whose Statue (like a man of Arms) is still preserved on the Bridge-gate of this City; near which great Monks-earl of Salisbury had his fatal blow.

The MIDDLE or intermediate BEAUSSE lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are, 1 Blois, seated also on the Loire, in a sound Air, and fruitful Countrey; the Nursery for the most part of the Kings Children, for that cause much resorted to by the Nobility; and honoured sometimes with the residence of the Kings themselves: it being in the Council-chamber of the Kings house here, that Henry of Lorrein, Duke of Guise, the chief contriver of the terrible Massacre at Paris, and Author of the Holy League, was slain by the command of King Henry the 3d. An. 1589. 2 Chateaufort, the chief Town of the Earldom of Dunnois, (the honour and Estate of John Earl of Dunnois, commonly called the Bassard of Orleans, one of the best Souldiers of his time, and so approved by his exploits against the English) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the Loire; and Aigre. 3 Lavardin, most remarkable for giving name and honour to a noble Family; which depending on the house of Vendosme (to the Signeury whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, Monsieur de Tardin, a faithful and courageous follower of King Henry the fourth, in his long War against the Leaguers. 4 Vendosme (*Vindocinum* in Latine) the chief Town of the Dukedom of Vendosme; not otherwise of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born th's Title: of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now regnant, I have thought fit to adde the ensuing Catalogue; premising first, that this Earldom came to the house of France by the marriage of Katharine daughter and Heir of John, the last Earl of the former Race, to John the first, the Earl of the other Family.

Earls and Dukes of Vendosme.

- | | | |
|------|--|---|
| 1386 | 1 John of Bourbon, Grandchild of Lewis the first Duke of Bourbon, the first Earl of Vendosme of this Family. | Vendosme, from whose youngest son called Lodowick, or Lewis, descend the now Princes of Conde, and Earls of Soissons. |
| 1432 | 2 Lewis of Bourbon a confederate with Joan the Virgin, in her actions against the English. | 1532 6 Antony of Bourbon, Duke of Vendosme; and King of Navarre. |
| 1446 | 3 John of Bourbon II. from whom descended the Princes of Rochefort, and the Dukes of Montpensier. | 1562 7 Henry of Bourbon, Duke of Vendosme; and King of Navarre; afterwards King of France also, by the name of Henry the 4th. |
| 1472 | 4 Francis of Bourbon. | 8 Caesar de Vendosme, one of the Sons of Henry the 4th, by the Dutches of |
| 1495 | 5 Charles of Bourbon, the first Duke of Beaufort, created by his Father Duke of Vendosme; and once designed his Successor in the Crown of France. Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, married to the Daughter and Heir of Philibert Emanuel, D. of Mercœur, (a younger branch of the house of Lorrein) possessed of a fair and goodly Estate in the Dukedom of Bretagne, in the right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the house of Martignes (a branch of the Family of those Dukes.) By means whereof the Duke of Vendosme hath not only a large inheritance, but great authority in that Countrey. | |

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of Vendosme, were and are, Azure, six Flower de Lyces, Or, 3. 2. 1. Those of the former Family affirmed by Bars to have been France, on a Bend Gules, three Lyons Or.

But the great Lords of this Countrey, were the Earls of Blois, possessed not only of the Earldom of Chartres (a fair and goodly Signeury) in the higher Beausse; but also of the whole Countrey of Tourain, a better Patrimony and Estate then that; which how they were alienated from this House, we have seen before. And as for the Earldom of Blois it self, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle Beausse; thereunto belonging; which being after sold to the Dukes of Orleans, gave the first greatness to that House. As for the Earls of Blois themselves, they fetch their Pedigree from one Gerlon a noble Dane (companion in Arms unto Rollo the first Duke of Normandie) in his acquiring of that Dukedom, by Charles the Simple created the first Earl hereof, An. 920. or thereabouts, branching it self into the houses of Blois and Champagne; sometimes united in one person, but for the most part, and at last, divided into two great Families; Stephen King of England, commonly called Stephen of Blois, derived both his name and parentage from the Earls of this house, as being son of Theobald, the fifth Earl of Blois, by Maud one of the daughters of Williams, Duke of Normandie, and King of England, surnamed the Conquerour. From this Theobald the Earls of Blois continued in the masculine Line, till the year 1219. under nine Princes in the total, of the house of Gerlon: And then it fell by the Heirs General, to the noble Family of Chastillon, continuing theirs till the year 1391. when sold by Guy de Chastillon the last Earl of that House, to Lewis Duke of Orleans; he being then

Namur. then Childless, and wholly governed by his Wife (a Daughter of the house of *Namur*) who could not otherwise maintain her great prodigality, but by ready money. United finally to the Crown, by *Levis* the Grand-son of this *Levis*, on his succession to the Kingdom, after *Charles* the 8th.

The Arms of these great Earls were, *Gules*, three *Palis*, *Vaire*, a Chief, *Or*.

8. NIVERNOIS.

NIVERNOIS is bounded on the North with *La Beauce*, on the South with *Bourbonois*, on the East with *Champagne*, and on the West with *Berry*; so called from *Nivernum*, or *Nevers*, the chief Town thereof.

This is the smallest Province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, because not easily reducible unto any other, as all the rest of the lesser Provinces may be. The Soil not very fruitful of Corn or Wine, but plentifully stored with rich Pastures, and well shaded with Woods, in which are found some Mines of Iron, interpersed with Silver, and many quarries of good Stone, of much use for building. The territory being but small, we cannot look for many Towns of note, and consequence. Of those that be, the principal are, 1 *Pontigni*, remarkable for an ancient Abby, the burial place of some of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2 *Nevers* it self upon the *Loire*, beautified with a Bridge of 20 Arches, but otherwise not great or fair, though the chief of this small Country, and the seat of the Dukes. The reputation which it hath proceeding specially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conquests, and from them won by the *French*, it came to have Princes of its own, almost as early as any other Country in the Realm of *France*. Who was the first that had the title of Earl of *Nevers*, and therewithal the Lordship of this Estate, I can nowhere find; but sure I am, that in the year 1001. both the Estate and Title were enjoyed by *Landin* a noble man of the *Burgundian* race, who on the death of *Henry* the 4th. Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have seized on that Estate, in despite of *Robert* King of *France*, who pretended to it. Passing through many Families, it came at last to the house of *Burgogne*, in the person of *Odo*, son of *Hugh* the fourth of that name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir General of *Nevers*, and from that to the house of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *Toland* of *Burgogne*, to *Robert* of *Bethune* Earl of *Flanders*, 1312. whose son named *Levis*, married the Heir of *Rethell*, uniting by that marriage these Estates under his command. Together with the rest of the rights of *Flanders*, it came again by marriage to *Philip* the Hardy Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and content of his elder Sons (otherwise well provided for) conferred both it and *Rethell*, on his third Son *Philip*, whose Niece *Elizabeth*, daughter and Heir of *John* of *Burgogne*, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve* her Husband, *An*. 1484. In the person of *Francis*, the 4th Earl of this House, it was made a Dukedom, and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, sister and Heir of *Francis* the last Prince of this Family, was brought in Dower to *Levis* de *Gonzaga*, second son of *Frederick* Duke of *Mantua*, *An*. 1563. whose son *Charles* succeeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*; and *Vincent* of *Gonzaga*, his Cousin German, in the Dukedom of *Mantua*. And here it is to be observed, that though this Estate hath passed through so many Families, yet the rights and Regalities thereof, have been still continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought I can find) under any of the Parliaments of *France*, as all the rest of that Kingdom is, but such parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or else enjoy the Privileges of a free Estate.

The Arms hereof are, *Azure*, within a Border *Compoze*, *Gules* and *Argent*, three Flower de Lys, *Or*.

9. The Dukedom of BOURBON.

THE Dukedom of *BOURBON*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonois*, *Forrest*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Auvergne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1 *BOURBONIS* hath on the East, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the West, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a corner of *Gastinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*. So called from *Bourbon* (for distinction sake, called *Bourbon Archenbauld*) the chief Town thereof. The Country very well wooded, and of excellent pasturage; which makes the people more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loir*, *Tonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted navigable; besides *Aron*, *Acolin*, *Lixentes*, *Lanbois*, and some lesser streams.

It is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*. In the *Higher* which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note, than that of *Montaigne*, situate in the Country of *Combraille*; the *Signatory*, as I take it, of *Michael* de *Montaigne*, the Author of the Book of *Essais*. But in the *Lower Bourbon* are, 1 *Molins*, esteemed the Center of all *France*, situate on the *Allier*, a *Baillage*, and the chief Town of this Country: the River yielding great plenty of Fish, but of *Salmons* specially; the Town adorned with a fair Cattle, and that beautified with one of the finest Gardens in *France*, in which are many Trees of *Limmons* and *Oranges*. 2 *Bourbon Archenbauld*, and 3 *Bourbon Auzie*: the former of the two seated upon the *Loir*, and giving name to the whole Province; of great resort by reason of

of its medicinal waters. 4 *S. Porcin*, and 5 *Varennes* Ganat upon the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 6 *Chancelles*, 7 *Charroux*, 8 *Palisse*, 9 *Sonvigni*, 10 *St. Amand*.

The antient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being wasted in their warres against the *Romans*, a great part of their Country was by *Julius Caesar*, conferred on the *Boii*, a *German* Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the request of the *Hedui*, who desired it of him: and possibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have these *Boii* dwell amongst them, not only to fill up their numbers, and manure the waste Grounds of their Country, but in regard of some nearer tie, that was between them: it being conceived by many learned men, that these *Boii*, which together with these *Genomanni*, *Senones*, and other *Gallick* Nations crossed over the *Alpes*, had been originally of these parts; and being driven out of *Italy* by the conquering *Romans*, fell into *Germany*, and from thence sent those Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their journey spoken of before. Made subject to the *Romans*, with the rest of *Gallia*, and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitania*, it continued under their command; till the coming of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was subdued and made a part of their Kingdom, in the subverting of which Kingdom, it was (together with *Beau-jolois*) subdued by the more powerful *French*; and how disposed of afterwards, we shall see anon, having first taken a view of the other Provinces.

2 **FORREST**, is bounded on the East, with *Beau-jolois*; on the West, with *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Bourbonois*; and on the South, with a part of *Languedoc*. The Country populous and large, but not very fruitful; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Wood-lands. The Air a little of the coldest to afford good Wines, but that sufficiently recompensed by abundance of *Pit-coal*; by which they have very good fires at a cheap rate. The people are conceived to be none of the wisest, but withal very greedy and covetous of gain.

The chief Towns in it are, 1 *Mont-brison*, seated on the *Loir*. 2 *Fours*, seated on the same River, called antiently *Forum Segusianorum*, the chief Town of the *Segusiani*, or *Secusiani*, whom *Caesar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3 *St. Stephen*, (or *Estienne*) in *Feurien*, near the head of that River. 4 *St. Germans*. 5 *St. Rimberg*. 6 *St. Bennet le Chasteau*. 7 *St. Guermier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Country of *Forrest* was antiently a part of the Earldom of *Lyons*, dismembred from it at or about the same time with *Beau-jolois*; and was held by a long succession of Earls Proprietaries of it, as a State distinct: till *Regnaud* Lord of *Forrest*, the Son of Earl *Guy*, by the marriage of *Isabel* Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jeu*, joyned them both together, which was about the year 1265; parted again after his decease, *An*. 1280. *Guy* being his eldest Son succeeding in *Forrest*; and *Levis* his second son in *Beau-jeu*. How they became united in the house of *Bourbon*, we shall see anon.

3 **BEAU-JOLOIS**, so called from *Beau-jeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the tract of ground betwixt the *Loir* and the *Soasne*, and betwixt *Lionnois*, and *Forrest*. A Country of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it: who have been men of great eminence in their several times. The chief Town of it is *Beau-jeu*, beautified with a goodly Cattle, pleasantly seated on the brow of a rising Mountain, from whence perhaps it took the name; as the great *Keep* in *Farnham* Castle, was in the same sense, and for the same pleasant situation, called *Joyous Guards*, in the time of *Lancelot du Lake*, whose that Cattle was. Which appears further by a Tower built at *Constantinople*, by *Guiscard* the third of that name Lord hereof (being then Ambassador to the Emperour from King *Philip Augustus*) with this inscription, *Turris Bellijocensis*; which there continued to be seen, a long time after. 2 *Belle-ville*, where is an Abby founded by *Humbert* the second, *An*. 1158. 3 *Ville Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert* the fourth; whose Son *Guiscard* the third above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciscans* called to this day *Minorette*. 4 *Noironte*. 5 *St. Maurice*. 6 *Ulse*. 7 *Olches*, concerning which there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forrest*; and these Lords of *Beau-jeu*.

This Country, as that other of *Forrest*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; in the partage of which Estate it fell to *Omphroy* one of the Brothers of Earl *Artand*, *An*. 989. whose Successors had no other title than Lords of *Beau-jeu*. They were most of them men of great piety, founders of many *Collegiate* and conventual Churches; some of them men of action also: *Humbert* the second and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; *Richard* the second, in those against the *English*; *Guiscard* the fourth, made *Constable* of *France*, by King *Levis* the ninth. But the house failing in this *Guiscard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forrest*, as before is said, in the person of *Regnaud* Earl thereof: whose Son and Successor called *Levis*, was also Constable of *France*; as *Edward* the Grand-child of this *Levis*, a *Marshall* of it. But at the last it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward* the second: who being imprisoned at *Paris* for his great offences, and overlaid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*; made a donation or free gift of all his *Signories* to *Levis* Duke of *Bourbon*, furnished the good; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the eldest Son of *Regnaud* Earl of *Forrest* and Lord of *Beau-jeu* above mentioned, and consequently of next Kin to him. *An*. 1400.

4 **AUVERGNE** hath on the East *Forrest*, and *Lyonnois*; on the West, *Limosin*, *Perigot*, and *Quercu*; on the South, part of *Languedoc*; and on the North, *Berry* and *Bourbonois*. It is divided into the *Higher*, and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitful in a very eminent degree; the *Higher* mountainous and barren. In this last the Towns of chief note are, 1 *St. Flour* a Bishops See; of



of an impregnable situation. 2 *Arilla*, on the River *Jourdain*, defended with a strong Castle on the top of a Rock. 3 *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4 *Carlat*. 5 *Murat*. 6 *Billon*, of which little observable in ancient stories. In the *Lower* called *Limaigne*, from a River of that name which falls into the *Allier*; there is, 1 *Clermont*, a Bishops See, fair and pleasing for the situation, and Fountains descending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergn*, the chief City of the whole Province. Most memorable in these later Ages for the Council here called by Pope *Urban* the second, *An* 1067. in which, by the artifice of the Pope, the Christian Princes of the West engaged themselves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes, to enlarge both their Territories, and their power. It was first raised out of the ruins of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auverni*, in the time of *Cæsar*, and the seat Royal of *Vercingetorix* King of that Nation, who so long put him to his trumps with an Army of 138000 men; now a small Village called *Gergeau*. 2 *Rion*, in which resides the Seneschal or chief Governour of the *Lower Auvergn*. 3 *Montpensier*, of great note for the Princes of the house of *Bourbon*, once Dukes hereof: beginning in *Lewis* the first Earl, Son of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, *An* 1415. and ending in *Henry* the last Duke; whose Daughter and Heir was married to the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Lewis* the thirteenth. 4 *Montferrant*. 5 *Tiffière*. 6 *Brionde*. 7 *Aigueperse*. 8 *Turenne*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *De La Tour*s, heretofore Earls of *Boulogne*, now Sovereigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bonillon*; to whom it hath for some Ages since given the title of Viscount. A Family descended from the Heirs general of *Enfance* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfrey* of *Bonillon* Duke of *Lorraine*, and King of *Hiernsalem*.

The Country first inhabited in the times of the *Romans*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whose King *Bituitus*, was taken Prisoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the war against the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and others of their Confederates: Not fully conquered, till *Cæsar* had subdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*, retaining in the often changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergn*. Heretofore part of the great Dutchy of *Aquitain*, remaining subject to those Dukes, till *William* the eighth Duke, and the fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whose name I find not, nor the name of her Husband neither, of whom there is nothing on record, but that he took up Arms against *Lewis* the sixth, who began his Reign, *An* 1110. By the Heir general of this house it was conveyed in marriage to *John* the second son of *Guigne* the 4th, and *Beatrix*, Dauphin of *Viennois*; in whose Line it continued under the title of the Dauphins of *Auvergn*, till *Berauld*, the last Earl or Dauphin of it. Who having married the Heir of *Gay* Earl of *Forreft*, the son of *Regnaud* above mentioned; had by her a Daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Estates, married to *Lewis* the Good, the third Duke of *Bourbon*: to whom *Edward* the last Lord of *Beaujeu* made a Donation or furrendry of that Signeury also; uniting in his person the distinct Estates of *Bourbon*, *Beaujeu*, *Forreft*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Bourbonnois* it self, in the distractions of the *French* Empire, by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, who most improvidently cautions it into many great Estates, and petit Signeuries: it fell unto the share of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, descended from the ancient house of *Burgogne*, who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis* the ninth, for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in *Beauvoisin*) his fifth Son; married him to *Beatrix* Daughter and Heir of *Archenbald* *Dampierre* the last of that house. *Lewis* the son of this *Robert* was the first Duke of this Line; whose successors and their achievements follow in this Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of Bourbon.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1308. 1 <i>Robert</i> , Son of King <i>Lewis</i> the 9th, Earl of <i>Clermont</i> , the first Lord of <i>Bourbon</i> of the house of <i>France</i> . | 1410 5 <i>John</i> , Peer, and Chamberlain, taken Prisoner at the Battle of <i>Agincourt</i> , and dyed in <i>England</i> ; the Root of the Family of <i>Montpensier</i> . |
| 1317 2 <i>Lewis</i> , the first Duke of <i>Bourbon</i> , Peer, and Chamberlain of <i>France</i> , from whose second son <i>Jaques</i> comes the house of <i>Vendosme</i> . | 1434 6 <i>Charles</i> , Peer, and Chamberlain, General of the Army against the <i>English</i> in the <i>Isle</i> of <i>France</i> . |
| 1341 3 <i>Peter</i> , Peer, and Chamberlain, slain in the Battle of <i>Poitiers</i> , <i>An</i> 1356. | 1456 7 <i>John</i> II. Peer, Chamberlain, and Constable of <i>France</i> . |
| 1356 4 <i>Lewis</i> II. called the Good, in whose person all these Estates were first united; Peer, and Chamberlain of <i>France</i> ; and Governour of King <i>Charles</i> the sixth. | 1487 8 <i>Peter</i> II. Brother of <i>John</i> , Peer, Chamberlain, and Regent of <i>France</i> , in the absence of <i>Charles</i> the 8th. |
| 1503 9 <i>Charles</i> Earl of <i>Montpensier</i> , Duke of <i>Bourbon</i> in the right of <i>Susan</i> his Wife, Daughter and Heir of <i>Peter</i> the second, Duke of <i>Bourbon</i> . After whose death, being slain at the sack of <i>Rome</i> , <i>An</i> 1527. without Issue, his Estate fell unto the Crown; and so continued, till by the Sentence or Arrest of the Court of Parliament in <i>Paris</i> , <i>Auvergn</i> , <i>Forreft</i> , and <i>Beaujeu</i> were adjudged to <i>Madam Louise</i> , Mother of <i>Lewis</i> the first Duke of <i>Montpensier</i> , and daughter and Heir of <i>Gilbert</i> de <i>Bourbon</i> Earl of <i>Montpensier</i> , the Nephew of <i>John</i> Duke of <i>Bourbon</i> (the first of that name) of which house she was the only surviving heir, from whence descended <i>Henry</i> , the last Duke of that Family, spoken of before. And for the title of <i>Auvergne</i> , it was used | |

Berrie.

used customarily by the eldest sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpensier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles* the ninth, called from hence the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*: who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604. made Prisoner by King *Henry* the fourth, released by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *Anno* 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angoulême*; in whose posterity it remaineth.

The Armes of these Dukes were 1 *France*, a Baston *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*; 2 *Or*, a Dauphin *Palme*, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*; 3 *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, armed *Gules*, under a Labell of fine pieces of the same, for the Signeury of *Beaujeu*. The Armes of the Earldom of *Forreft* I am yet to seek. But antiently the Armes of *Bourbon* when under the *Dampierres*, were *Or*, a Lion Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockle-shells of *Azure*.

10. BERRIE.

HAVING thus taken a survey of those several Provinces, which (except *Bretagne*) were the first purchases of the *French* in the modern *France*, and so much of the *Burgundian* Conquests, as were either layed to the Kingdom of *West France*, or else were necessarily to be passed over in the course of our Journey, let us next look on those which were possessed by the *Goths*. And first we will begin with *BERRIE*, (as next in situation unto those before described) bounded on the East with *Bourbonnois* and *Nivernois*; on the West, with *Poitou* and part of *Touraine*; on the North, with *La Beaumelle*; on the South with *Limosin*, in *Latin* called *Bituricum regio*, from the *Bituriges*, the old inhabitants of this Tract, by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and some others called the *Bituriges Cubi*, to difference them from the *Bituriges Ubisci* dwelling about *Bordeaux*.

The Country watred in the East with the River *Loire*; in the South, with the *Fage*; in the North, with the *Cher*; and in the Inland parts with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Eure*, and others which we shall meet withall anon: of no great note, but such as much conduce to the fruitfulness of it; affording it the benefit of far pastures, and flourishing meadows; which breed great multitudes of cattel, and such flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a man for lying in excess of numbers, they use to say, *Fie sir, there are not so many sheep in Berrie*.

It containeth in it 33 walled Towns, the chief whereof are, 1 *Bourges*, a Town of great strength by nature, and as well fortified by Art; situate in a low Flat, amongst deep impassable Bogs and Marshes, caused by the overflowing of the *Auron*, *Yeuze*, *Malon*, and *Aurette*, small Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together. By means whereof it may be easily drowned, at the approach of an Enemy; for that cause made the faintness and retreat of *Charles* the seventh, in his long wars against the *English*, possessed at that time of *Paris*, and the greatest part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time, fain to feast it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high daies neither: from his constant abode here, and that withall he had been Duke of this Country, in the life of his three elder brethren, by the *English* in derision called King of *Berrie*. A large, fair, and rich town it is, the Seat of an Archbishop; a Siege prelidial, and one of the best Universities in *France*, especially for the study of the Civil Lawes, first founded by King *Lewis* the ninth, and afterwards restored and perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berrie*, the Brother of King *Lewis* the eleventh. Some fabulous Founders, and ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it; as that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grandchilde of *Noah*, by whom called *Bytognes*, which in the corruption of the following times, came (forsooth) unto *Bituriges*: which Etymologic, were it as dear bought as it is far fetcht, might be good for *Ladies*; and then it would be good for somewhat. Others no less absurdly, will have it called *Bituris*, quasi *Bi-turris*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here; one of the two, in part still standing: and unto this, they say, alludeth an old *Grammari*n, thus:

Turribus à binis inde vocor Bituris.

From two Towers which were builded here;
The name of *Bituris* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges* (the *Bituricum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that name in the division of old *Gaul* by the Emperor *Constantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*, of which this Country was a part. 2 *Wiarzon*, or *Viarzon*, pleasantly seated amongst Woods, Vines, and Rivers; the Rivers *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Cher*, and *Yeuze*, meeting hereabouts. Built in or near the place of the old *Avarenum*, a Town of great note and strength in the time of *Cæsar*; the revolt whereof gave such a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to stretch his wits, and valour on the very tenterhooks, before it was again recovered. 3 *Concreffant*, on the River *Soulde*, beautified with a strong and magnificent Castle. 4 *Chasseau-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5 *Issandun*, on the River *Theo*; the Balliage for that part of the Country. 6 *Montfalcon*, an ancient Barony. 7 *Argenton*, on the River *Creuse*, the Title and Estate of *Philip* de *Comines*; hence called *Seigneur de Argenton*, who writ the History of *France* under *Lewis* the 11th, in which he divided so far into, and writ so plainly of the greatest affairs of State, that Queen *Katharine de Medicis* used to say, that he had made as many Hereticks in State-policy, as *Luther* had done in Religion. 8 *Sanerrey*, seated on a high hill near the River *Loire*, by some Latin writers called *Xantodorum*, but most generally

Poitou.

rally said to be so called, *quasi s. crum Circus*, from the Goddess *Circis*, whom worshipped in the times of *Gentilisme*. A Town of great consequence and strength, and as such assigned over to the *Hugonots*, of *Gentilisme*. A Town of great consequence and strength, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace An. 1569. as a Town of caution for their security, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon: Famous not long after for enduring a most desperate and tedious siege, under *Charles the 9th*, by whom these Articles were almost no sooner made than broken. Before which time, it was not under the command of the *French Kings*, but under the direct dominion of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Sovereignty thereof; but being taken by the Kings Forces, upon this occasion, An. 1573. and the Walls thrown down, a Garrison was put into the Castle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings devotion, the rents and profits of it still remaining to the true Proprietaries.

Here is also in this Province the Town and Signeury of *Amignie*, adorned with many privileges, an ample territory, and a beautifull Castle; Bestowed by *Charles the sixth* on *Robert*, the second son of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in *Scotland*, for his many signal services against the *English*, and is still the honourary title and possession of the second Branch of that noble and illustrious Family, hence called by the name of Lords of *Amignie*.

But as for *Berry* it self, and the Fortunes of it, we may please to know that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Bituriges Cubi*, (or the *Bituriges Livi*, as some writers call them) subdued, but not without great difficulty, by the matchless *Cesar*; in the first division of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitania*, and in the new modelling of that Province by the Emperor *Constantine*, a part of *Aquitania Prima*, won from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, and from them by the *French*; it was for long time under the command of Provincial Governours; one of which, called by the name of *Godfrey*, obtained that dignity from *Hugh Capet*, and his Posterity enjoyed that Office, under the Kings of *France*, till the dayes of King *Henry the first*; of whom the inheritance and Eitate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the descendants of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as Proprietary, in his own right, when desirous to make one in the *Holy Wars*, he sold it back again to King *Philip the first* (the better to furnish himself for that expedition) An. 1096. to be united to the Crown after his decease. Since which time, the Sovereignty of it hath been always in the Crown of *France*; but the possession and Revenue sometimes given with the title of Duke, for a portion to some of the Kings younger sons, to be holden of them in *Appenage*, under the Sovereignty and command of the Donor and his Successors. The first of those that held this title, was *John*, a younger son of King *John of France*, and Uncle unto *Charles the 6th*, during whose Reign, betwixt this Duke, and those of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, the Realm of *France* was miserably distracted into Broils and Factions. The second was another *John* son of *Charles the 6th*, who dying in his minority, was succeeded in this title, by his Brother *Charles*, successor to his Father in the Crown it self. The fourth and last, (for it had no more then four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngest son of King *Charles the 7th*, who siding with the Earl of *Charolois*, did so much trouble the affairs of *France*, under *Lewis the 11th*, by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guienne* afterwards, but held neither long. After whose death it was united to the Crown, never since separated from it; but though it never had Duke since, it hath had three Duchesses: first giving the title of Duchess to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis the 11th*, and Wife to *Lewis the 12th*, then Duke of *Orleans*, cited herein by her said Husband, when coming to the Crown, he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Anne*, Duchess of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles the 8th*, his Predecessor. Conferred after her decease, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis the first*, on the Lady *Margaret* his sister, first married to *Charles Duke of Alanson*, and after his decease to *Henry of Albert King of Navarre*; the last that had this title, being another *Margaret*, a Daughter of the said King *Francis*, married to *Philibert Emanuel Duke of Savoy*.

II. POICTOU.

POICTOU is bounded on the East, with *Taurcin*, *Berry*, and *Limosa*; on the North, with *Bretagne*, *and Anjou*; on the South, with *Xaintoigne*, a member of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; and on the West, with the *Aquitain Seas*.

It is called in *Latin* *Pictavis*, from the *Pictones*, as *Ptolomy*, *Cesar*, and some others; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old inhabitants hereof: and is a Countrey so great and plentiful, that there are numbered in it 1200 Parishes, and three Bishopricks. A strong argument of the populousness and largeness of it. Besides the goodness of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to say, a large Sea coast, some capacious Harbours, not a few navigable Rivers emptying themselves into the sea; besides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin*, or *Clavins*, the *Crevis*, and *Vienne*, three Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which also glides along on the North hereof.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1 *Poitiers*, in *Latin* *Pictavis*, seated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavins*, by *Ptolomy* called *Augustoritum*: the largest City for compass of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it self; but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Corn-fields, and other waste grounds. It is an University, especially for the study of the *Civil Laws*, and a See Episcopal: one of the Bishops hereof being *S. Hilarie*, surnamed *Pictavensis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a stout Champi-

Poitou.

Champion of the *Catholic Faith* against the *Arians*, though countenanced in their Heresie by the Emperor *Constantius*. 2 *Saumur*, upon the River *Charente*, near the edge of *Xaintoigne*. 3 *Talmont*, upon the shores of the Ocean. 4 *Beaumont*, a Sea-town also, and a reasonable good Port, near the confines of *Bretagne*. 5 *Roche-sur-yon*, so called for its situation on the *Ten* or *John*; which gave the title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royal race of *Bourbon*. 6 *Lusignan*, on the River *Ion*, also denominating the noble Family of *Lusignan*, sometimes Kings of *Jerusalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus*; which last they had in exchange for the first, by the donation of King *Richard the first of England*. 7 *Lucon*, or *Luçon*, seated upon a navigable Arm of the Sea: sufficiently famous in being the Episcopal See of the renowned Cardinal of *Richelieu*, who so long managed the affairs of *France* for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8 *Maillefort*, a Bishops See also. 9 *Thovars*, which gives the title of Duke to the ancient Family of *Tremouille*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themselves; from the time that *Constance* the Daughter and Heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geoffrey Plantagenet* her first Husband, had *Jay of Thovars* for her second. 10 *Chastell Herauld*, (or *Castrum Herauld*) on the River *Vienne*, of which *James Hamilton*, Earl of *Arran* in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry the second of France*, the better to assure him to the *French Faction* there, against the *English*, had the title of Duke.

In the *Vine-fields* of this Countrey, within two Leagues of *Poitiers*, was fought that memorable battel, between *John of France*, and *Edward the Son of King Edward the third*, surnamed the *Black Prince*. Who being distressed by the number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honourable terms; which the *French* not accepting, in stead of conquest, found a Fall overthrow. The greatness and particulars whereof we shall hereafter see in the life of King *John* Fol. 236. For they presuming on their own strength, to their own disadvantage, bereft the enemy of all opportunity of retiring: whereas ordinary policy would instruct the Leader of an Army, to make his enemy, if he would flee, a Bridge of Gold, as Count *Petillan* used to say. Hereupon *Themistocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the Bridge made over the *Hellepont* by *Xerxes*; lest the *Persians* should be compelled to fight; and so happen to recover their former losses: and *Charles the sixth* lost his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry the fifth* in his march to *Calice*. For where all way of flight or retreat is stoppt, the basest Souldier will rather die with glory in the Front of his Battel, than flee and be killed with ignominy. So true a Mistris of hardy resolutions is Despair; and no less true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight and he will kill the Devil*. On the contrary, it hath been the use of divers politick Captains; to make their own Souldiers fight more resolutely, by taking from them all hope of safety but by battel. So did *William the Conquerour*; who at his arrival into *England*, burnt the Ships which transported his Army: thereby giving the Souldiers to understand that their lives lay in the strength of their Arms, and courage of their hearts, not in the nimbleness of their heels. *Tariff*, the leader of the *Moor* into *Spain*, burnt likewise all his Navy, one only *Pinnace* excepted; which he reserved to carry tydings of his success. So when *Charles Martell* encountered that infinite host of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the people of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the Victors. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the banks thereof certain Troops of Horsemen, to kill all such as fled out of the field: Hereby informing his men, that there was to them no more *France* than what they fought on; unless they were Conquerors. In like manner, the same *Themistocles*, cunningly working the *Persians* to enclose the *Greek Navy* on every side; inflamed the *Grecians* with such courage, by a necessity of fight, that they gave their enemies the most memorable defeat that ever hapned on those seas.

But to proceed, the people of this Province have more in them of the old *Gall*, than any in *France*; as lying so betwixt the borders of the *Goths*, and *French*, that it was never thoroughly planted, or possessed by either. An Argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, subtle, crafty; and contentious than the rest of their Countreymen; and have a *Dialect* by themselves much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it (questionless some remainders of the ancient *Gallick*) which the natural *French* man understands not. In the division of *Gaul* by the Emperor *Constantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania Secunda*: and as a part thereof won from the *Romans*, with *Limosin*, *Perigord*, and *Quercus*, by *Euricus King of the Goths in Spain*. Of whose Kingdom it continued part, till those *Goths* were dispossessed of their hold in *France*, by *Clevis* the fifth King of the *French*, surnamed the Great. After which it belonged to the Kings of that People; by the Posterity of *Charles the Great*; assigned to some Provincial Governours with the title of Earls. One of which being named *Ebles* (of the old *Gothish* race, if I guess a right) by the last will and Testament of *William the Delonair Duke of Aquitain*, and Earl of *Auvergne*, succeeded in that fair Eitate. *Poitou* by this means made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, came with it at the last to the Kings of *England*, as shall there be shewn: and being theirs, was given with the title of Earl by King *Henry the second*, to *Richard* surnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the *French* in the unfortunate reign of King *John*, with the rest of the *English Provinces*, An. 1202. *Alphonso*, brother to *Lewis the 9th*, is made Earl of *Poitou*: and being again recovered by King *Henry the third*, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard Earl of Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the *Barons Wars*, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the affairs of *Germany*, of which by some of the *Electors* he was chosen Emperor: it was fully conquered by the *French*, and never since dismembered from that Crown, for ought I can find. For though in the more active times of King *Edward the third*, some of the best Towns and pieces of it were possessed by the *English*: yet were they lost again soon after, according to the various successes and events of War.

12 LIMOSIN, 13 PERIGORT, 14 QUERCY.

These Provinces I have joyned together, because for the most part they have followed the same fortune; being sometimes *French*, and sometimes *English*, according to the successes of either Nation. 1 *LIMOSIN*, the largest of the three, hath on the East *Bourbonnois*; on the West *Perigort*; on the North, and North-west, *Poitou*, and *Berry*; on the South, *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limosin*; and the lower, commonly called *La Marche*: both parts, but specially *La Marche*, which lyeth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous and not very fruitful; but of a free and open Air: inhabited by a people of a more staid and sober nature, than the rest of the *French*; frugal in expence and moderate in diet; only for great devourers of bread, that they are grown into a By-word.

The chief Towns in *La Marche*, or the Lower *Limosin*, are 1 *Tulle*, seated in a rough and hilly Countrey, a Bishops See. 2 *Mazarche*, seated amongst the Mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent current; with which for fortified on all sides, that it is thought be a very strong and secure dwelling. 3 *Treignac*. 4 *Doussenc*. 5 *Belmont*. 6 *Meissac*. 7 *Brive le Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limosin* the chief Towns are, 1 *Limoges* a Bishops See, the principal of the *Lemovices*, from whom denominated; by *Proton* called *Ratiastum*. A neat, but no large City, rich, populous, and inhabited by a people of so great an industry, that they compell every one to work; and is therefore by the *French* called the *Prison of Beggars*; Seated on the *Vienne*. At the taking of it when revolted, *Edward the Black Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the distressed Citizens, till pursuing his enemies, he saw three *French* Gentlemen make head against his Army; the consideration of whose magnanimity drew him to pity, where before he avowed revenge. 2 *Chalus*, at the besieging of which, our *Richard* the first was slain by a shot from an *Arbalist*; the use of which Warlike engine, he first shewed to the *French*. Whereupon a *French* Poet made these Verses, in the person of *Atropos*;

*Hoc volo, non alia Richardum morte perire,
Ut qui Francigenis Balista primitus usum
Tradidit, ipse sui reus primitus experiat:
Quamvis aliis docuit, in se vim sentiat artis.*

It is decreed thus must great *Richard* die,
As he that first did teach the *French* to dart
An *Arbalist*; 'tis just he first should trie
The strength, and taste the fruits of his own Art.

The man that shot him was called *Bertram de Gurdon*, who being brought before the King (for the King neglecting his wounds, never gave over the Assault till he gained the place) boldly justified his Action, as done in the service of his Countrey, and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had caused to be slain. Which heard, the King not only caused him to be set at liberty, but gave him an hundred shilling sterling, in reward of his Gallantry. 3 *Soubterrein*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4 *Confolant*. 5 *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*. 6 *Boisson*. 7 *Birat*, of which nothing memorable.

2 *PERIGORT*, hath on the East, *Auvergne*, and *Quercy*; on the West, *Xaintoigne*; on the North, *Limosin*; and on the South, some part of *Gascogne*. The Countrey and people are much of the same condition with that of *Limosin*, saving that *Perigort* is the more woody; and those woods plentifull of *Chesnuts*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Perigoux*, the principal City of the *Petrocorii*, by *Proton* called *Vesenna*, now a Bishops See; some footsteps of which name remain in a part of *Perigoux*; (for the Town it is divided into two parts) which to this day is called *Vesune*; in which standeth the Cathedral Church, and the Bishops Palace. The whole City seated in a very pleasant Valley, environed with *Dunes*, affording a most excellent Wine; and having in it as a mark of the *Roman* greatness, the ruins of a large and spacious *Amphitheatre*. 2 *Bergerac*, seated on the great River *Dordonne*. 3 *Sarlat*, a Bishops See. 4 *Nontron*, defended with a very strong Castle. 5 *Airamont*. 6 *La Roche*. 7 *Marsac*, where is a Well which ebbeth and floweth according to the pulse of the River of *Bordeaux*. And 8 *Angouleme*, in the North-west, towards *Xaintoigne*, the seat of the *Engilismenses* in the time of the *Romans*, now a Bishops See: seated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almost encompassed; the other side being defended by a steep and rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance, when possessed by the *English*, being one of their best out-works for defence of *Bordeaux*: one of the Gates hereof being to this day called *Chande*, seems to have been the work of Sir *John Chandos* Banneret, one of the first Founders of the most noble Order of the *Garter*, then Governour hereof for King *Edward* the third. Being recovered from the *English* by *Charles* the fifth, it was bestowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grand-father of King *Francis* the first, with the title of an Earldom only, An. 1468. Afterwards made a Dukedom in the person of the said King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honour of it, as much of the adjoining Countrey was layd unto it, as maketh up a Territory of about 24 *French* Leagues in length, and 15 in breadth: Within which circuit

circuit are the Towns of *Chastreauneuf*, and *Coignac*, on the River of *Charente*. 3 *Roche Foulcon*, 4 *Chahannes*. 5 *Merville*. 6 *Villebois*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the title of Duke to *Charles* Earl of *Auvergne*, An. 1618. the Base son of *Charles* the ninth, consequently extracted from the house of *Angouleme*.

3 *QUERCY*, is encompassed about with *Limosin*, *Perigort*, *Langnedoc*, and *Auvergne*. A populous Countrey for the bigness (being one of the least in all *France*) and very fruitful withall, though somewhat mountainous. The principal places in it, 1 *Cahors*, the chief City of the *Cadurci*, in the times of the *Romans*; still a great, strong, and well-traded Town, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the Temporal Lord of it; seated upon the River *Loch*. From hence descended and took name the noble Family of *Chaworth de Cadurcis* in *Latine*: out of which by a Daughter of *Patrick de Cadurcis*, Lord of *Ogmore* and *Kidwelly* in the *Marches of Wales*, married to *Henry* the third Earl of *Lancaster*, come the Kings of *England*, and most of the Royall houses in *Europe*. 2 *Montalban*, a Bishops See also, built on the top of an high Mountain, and so well fortified by all advantages of Art, that it is thought to be the most defensible of any in *France*: of which it gave sufficient proof in that notable resistance which it made to King *Lewis* the thirteenth, in his Wars against those of the Religion, An. 1622. 3 *Soulac*, upon the River *Dordonne*. 4 *Nigrepellisse*, another of the Towns possessed by the Protestant party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the thirteenth, An. 1621. but in *Novemb.* following, they murdered the Kings Garrison, and the next year denied admission to the King. Taken at last, An. 1622. by the King in person; the punishment did exceed the crime. For the men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deserved; but many of the Women also: some of them having their secret parts rammed with Gun-powder, and so torn in pieces, by the unpattern'd barbarism of the merciless and revengefull Souldiers. 5 *Chateau-Sarasin*, a strong Town on the *Garond*. 6 *Nazaret*. 7 *Burette*, &c.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces, were the *Lemovices*, the *Petrocorii*, and the *Cadurci*, before mentioned: of which the *Lemovices*, and *Cadurci*, were cast into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*; the *Petrocorii*, and *Engilismenses*, into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, seized on by the *Goths*, but from them speedily extorted by the conquering *French*. Afterwards when King *Henry* the third of *England* released his right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Poitou*, *Anjou*, *Touren*, and *Main*; *Lewis* the ninth to whom this release was made, gave him in satisfaction of all former interests, 300000 l. of *Anjouin* money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the County of *Xaintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charent*, with the Province of *Limosin*. And on the Capitulations made betwixt *Edward* the third of *England*, and *John* of *France*, then Prisoner to him; *Perigort* and *Quercy* (among other conditions) were assigned over to the *English*, discharged of all *Refort* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*. After which times respectively they remained all three in the possession of the *English*, until their final expulsion by King *Charles* the 7th, never since that dismembered from the Crown of *France*.

15. AQUITAIN.

THE Dukedom of *AQUITAIN*, the greatest and goodlyest of all *France*, contained the Provinces of *Xaintoigne*, 2 *Guienne*, 3 *Gascogne*; with the Isles of *Oleron* and *Reer*, and other Islands in the *Aquitainick* or *Western* Ocean.

XAINTOIGNE is bounded on the East with *Limosin*, and *Perigort*; on the West, with the *Aquitainick* Ocean; on the North, with *Poitou*; and on the South, with *Guienne*: So called from *Saintes*, one of the principal Cities of it; as that from the *Santonnes*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whose chief City it was. The River of *Charente* running through the middle, and so on the North border of it, emptieth it self into the Ocean, just opposite to the Isle of *Oleron*; having first taken in the *Seugne*, and the *Boutonne*, two lesser Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, *Saintes*, by *Proton* called *Mediolanum*, by *Antonine*, *Civitas Santonorum*, seated upon the *Charente*, a Bishops See, and the *Seneschalfe* for the County. 2 *S. John d'Angelle*, situate on the *Boutonne*, a Town once impregnablely fortified; whereof it hath given sufficient testimony in the Civil Wars of *France* about Religion, until the Fatal time was come, in which the great power of that party was to be dissolved; at what time, (viz. An. 1621.) after a siege of forty dayes it was taken by King *Lewis* the 13th. the Fortifications demolished, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards to be called by the name of *Lewis-Bourg*. 3 *Bourq sur la mer*, upon the *Dordonne*, which for the wideness of it is here called a Sea. 4 *Retraite*, seated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*. 5 *Blaye*, the most Southern Town of all this Countrey, being seated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6 *Rochelle*, *Rupella* in the present *Latine*, but anciently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santonnes*, a well noted Port in the most Northern part of *Xaintoigne*; from whence the Countrey hereabouts is called *ROCHELOIS*. The Town seated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay, the entrance of which is well assured by two very strong Forts, betwixt which there is no more space, than for the passage of a good ship; every night closed up with a massive Chain: and the whole Town either environed with deep Marishes, or fortified with such Bulwarks, trenches, and other works of modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the safest retreat for those of the Reformed Religion in the time of their troubles; as may be seen by the

Aquitain.

the story of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the second Civil Wars, Anno 1568. many Towns considering how ill the former Peace had been observed, refused to take in any of the Kings Garrisons; or permit any of the Papists to bear Arms amongst them; of which *Rochel* was one: which also, contrary to the Kings command, maintained a Navie for their safety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of Navarre and her Son retired, as to a place of safety. Anno 1570, *Rochel* alone, of all the French Towns held good for the Protestants, and is by Monsieur Joinville on all sides blocked up: but the siege soon raised, and *Rochel*, *Montalban*, *Sancerre*, with others, made cautionary for the peace ensuing. Anno 1575, besieged by *Biron* the elder, with an Army of 50000 men, and 60 pieces of Artillery; *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* Duke of Anjou, the Duke of Anjou, &c. being also present at the service: it held out from the beginning of March, till the seventh of June, and was then freed; the City having in one month endured 13000 shot, and the King lost 20000 men, amongst them the Duke of Anjou for one. Anno 75, & 78, it was attempted by *Landerneau*, the Isle of *Ree* taken, but soon recovered: the King of Navarre, and Prince of Conde, after that defeat, being received in, in triumph. Anno 1577, besieged to Sea-ward by *Lansac*; who being also beaten back, a peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns more added to their former strength. In the troubles of 85, and 88. the Princes above named made it their Retreat; and from thence issued to divert the purposes of the Duke of *Mayenne*. The next year, *Henry* the third being slain, and the King of Navarre seated in the Throne, the Protestant party increased exceedingly in power and number; and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis* the thirteenth, governed themselves apart as a Free Estate, *Rochel* being made the head of their Common-wealth; fortified to that end with 12 Royal Bastions of Free Stone, with double ditches, deep and broad in the bottom, abundantly furnished with Powder and Ammunition, 150 pieces of Cannon, besides Culverins and smaller pieces, with victuals, and all other necessities to endure a siege; and grown unto so great wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or sixscore Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns a piece. This drew upon them the great Wars, in the years 1621, and 1622. Which ended in the loss of all their Garrisons, except *Rochel*, and *Montalban*: those to remain in pledge with the Protestant party, but for three years only. Which time expired, the *Rochellers* were again besieged both by Sea and Land, the Isle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven so barred up with Ships chained together, and sunk into it, and other works of stupendous greatness, in the very Ocean, that no foreign succours out of England, (howsoever really intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their relief. In the end having endured all the extremities of a tedious siege, they yielded themselves to the Kings mercy, Anno 1628. *Montalban*, *Nismes*, and other places newly fortified, submitted at the same time also. 7 *Marans*, a great Town, and of great importance, seated by the Ocean Sea in a low fen-tiny place, as it were in a Peninsula, and so encompassed on every side with marshy watry grounds, that there is no access to the town thereof, but by very few, and those narrow passages. 8 *Chastillon*; and 9 *Saulzay*, places of good strength also, but of greater note; the first, for giving surname to a noble Family, out of which issued formerly the Earls of *Blois*, and of late times *Gaspard de Coligny* and *Monsieur D'Andalos* his Brother, much mentioned in the wars of France about Religion; the later giving the title of a Duke to a younger son of the House of *Roban*, as great a stickler in that cause, as those Brethren were.

II. *GUIENNE*, the second Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted by the River of *Dordonne*; on the South, with *Gascoigne*; on the East, with *Perigord*; and on the West, with the *Aquitainick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* hills to the River of *Bordeaux*. The reason of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old name, *Aquitain*; but not very probably. The Countrey generally plentiful of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into Spain, and the other into England. The people, as those of *Xaintoigne* also, tall of stature, of able bodies, haters of servitude and baseness, and well practised in armes: which qualities of the minde, and constitution of body, (being therein so different from the rest of France) it is possible enough, they might have from the *English*; who for 300 years were possessed of the Countrey, and have left many tracks of their language in it.

The principal Rivers of this Province are, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*, meeting together at *Retraite*, a Town of *Xaintoigne*; and thence in one Channel falling into the Ocean: the Countrey betwixt these two Rivers being called *Le Pais entre les deux mers*, or, The Countrey betwixt the two Seas; the Rivers hereabouts resembling a small Sea in wideness. Of lesser note are, 1 *Jearn*, 2 *Baize*, 3 *Lot*, and 4 *Liste*, falling into the *Garond*, in their several places.

Chief Towns whereof are, 1 *Bordeaux*, seated on the South bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongst the marshes. The chief City of the *Bituriges*, who possessed this tract; and for distinctions sake, were called *Bituriges Ubisci*, those of *Bourges* being called *Bituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdigala*, and *Civitas Burdegalenisium*; the Metropolis at that time, of *Aquitania secundata*; consequently an Archbishops See, as it still continueth. A fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with many good buildings, an University founded here by *K. Lewis* the 11th, and a large Cathedral: It was made Parliamentary for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoining, by *K. Charles* the 7th. Anno 1453, not long after the expulsion of the *English* thence; and is one of the most noted Empories in all the Kingdom, frequented very much by the *Dutch*, and *English* for *Gascoigne* wines; over which last the French are so jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladen all their Ordnance at the Port of *Blaye*. The Countrey hereabouts is, from this Town, called *Bourdellois*. 2 *Fronsac*, lying in the Countrey betwixt the two Seas (as they call it,) which gives the title of a Duke to the noble Family of the

Gascoigne.

the Earls of *S. Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronsac*; and to the Countrey round about, the name of *Fronsada*. 3 *Libourn*, at the confluence of the two great Rivers, opposite to *Retraite* in *Xaintoigne*. 4 *Soulas* at the influx of the *Garond*, in the Peninsula, or demy-Island: called the Countrey of *Medoc*. 5 *Baïonne* a Sea Town, and Episcopal See, fronting on the coast of Spain. 6 *S. John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, all about which, the people speak the *Basquish*, or old *Gascoigne* language, being the same with that of *Biscay*. 7 *D'Acqs*, an Episcopal See, by *Pytolomy* called *Aque Augusta*, (*Civitas Aquensium*, by *Antoninus*) from whence this part of *Gaul* had the name of *Aquitain*. These three last being all of them Frontier Towns, are strongly fortified. 8 *Bazas*, (called *Cossum* by *Pytolomy*) the chief City of the *Vasates*, whom *Antoninus* placeth in this tract; now a Bishops See, situate on the borders of *Gascoigne*, in the Countrey from hence called *Bazadas*. Towns of less note, 1 *Espareze*, 2 *S. Basil*, 3 *Reule*, 4 *Chaussean-Moron*, 5 *Monsegur*, 6 *Saintterre*, &c. Here is also in this Province the Countrey of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-coast from *Baïonne* to *Medoc*, barren, poor, and wretched Countrey, the worst piece of France; only remarkable for the Lords or owners of it, formerly of the house of *Foix*: of which the most remarkable were *Gaston de Foix*, for his many signal services against the French, created Earl of *Kendall*, and Knight of the Garter, by the said King *Henry*; but better known in *English* stories by the name of *Capitain*, or *Capdaun de Buche*, the Lords hereof having no higher title than that of *Captain*.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largest part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the East *Languedoc*, from which parted by the River *Garond*; on the West, the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from Spain; on the North, *Perigord*, *Quercy*, and some part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main tract of the *Pyrenees*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Countrey generally fruitful, but of Wines especially; brought hence to *Bordeaux* as the staple for that commodity, and thence transported into England in great abundance.

The ancient inhabitants hereof were the *Auscii*, *Lactoraces*, *Convenares*, *Conserani*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulonia*: united in this name of *Gascoigne* on the conquest of it by the *Vascones*, a Spanish Nation, who fell in here, during the reign of *Dagobert* the 1st King of the French. And though subdued by *Clovis* the second, son of *Dagobert*, yet they left their name unto the Countrey divided afterwards according to the chief *Seigneuries* and *Estates* thereof, into 1 the Principality of *Bearn*, 2 the Earldoms of *Foix*, 3 *Comminges*, 4 *Begorre*, 5 *Armignac*, 6 *Albret*, and 7 the Countrey of *Agenois*.

1 The Principality of *BEARN*, is situate at the Foot of the *Pyrenees*, where they joyn to *Languedoc*; so called from *Bearnium*, a principal City of this tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the ancient Writers. The Countrey of good pasture, though amongst the mountains, affording plenty of Cartel, butter and cheese, and in some places wines also, little inferior in taste and colour to the best of France; and many medicinal Springs issuing from the hills adjoining.

The Religion here, as generally in all *Gascoigne*, is that of the Reformed Churches, introduced about the year 1560; or rather then confirmed by public authority of the King and Queen of Navarre: at what time the *Mas*, *Tithes*, Church-lands, and the *Prelates* Votes in Parliament (according to the *Genevian* way of Reformation) were condemned together. And so it stood till the year 1620, when by the power and authority of *Lewis* the 13th, King of France and Navarre, the *Prelates* were restored to their Votes and Lands, the Clergy to their *Tithes*, and *Mas* caused also to be paid in some of their Churches: yet so, that those of the Reformed were left unto the free exercise of their own Religion; as in former times.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1 *Orthes*, the same which antiently was called *Bearnium*. 2 *Lescar*, a Bishops See, the ancient seat and habitation of the Princes of *Bearn*. 3 *Oleron*, a Bishops See also, mounted upon a high hill, in the more mountainous parts of the Countrey. 4 *Saintterre*, well garrisoned since the reduction of this Countrey to the Kings obedience. 5 *Pau*, the principal of all the Province, honoured with a Parliament or Court of Judicature for all the Countrey; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry of Albret*, King of Navarre, and Lord of *Bearn*; the Seat of him and his Successors, till the coming of King *Henry* the fourth to the Crown of France. 6 *Grenade*, upon the Frontier towards *Begorre*.

This Countrey for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the general dismembring of the French Empire, had its own Proprietaries, who were the absolute Lords of it, acknowledging no Superior for ought I can finde. The principal of which was that *Gaston* (a name very frequent in this Family) who in the year 1118 accompanied with many noble persons of France, assisted *Alphonso* King of Navarre and Aragon at the siege of *Sarragissa*; in the course of which action he did so good service, that he was not only much honoured, but liberally rewarded for it; both he and his posterity enjoying many privileges in the conquered City. By the Heir general of this *Gaston*, married to *William de Moncada* Seneschall of Catalogne, and of great possessions in that Countrey, the Lordship and Sovereignty of *Bearn* fell unto that Family about the year 1220. but long it did not tarry in it. For *William* being slain in the conquest of the Isle of *Majorca*, Anno 1228. left his Estates to *Gaston de Moncada* his eldest son: who much increased them by the addition of the Earldom of *Begorre*, and many other goodly pieces, accreting to him in the right of his Wife *Murtha*; heir thereof; whereof more anon. Grown by this means to such authority and esteem in the Court of Aragon, that (being without issue male) *Constance* his eldest daughter was thought a match of great advantage to *Alphonso* eldest son of King *James* the first. But dying without issue by her, Anno 1260. the Sovereignty of *Bearn* with all the Appendices thereof both in France and Spain, became united to the Earldom of

F R I

Gascogne. Foix (an Estate equal to it both in power and patrimony) by the marriage of Roger Bernard the ninth Earl of Foix, who succeeded in that Earldom, Anno 1262. with Margaret de Moncada another daughter of this Gaston, and Heir of Bearn. Afterwards being much increased both in power and honour (by the addition of the Earldom of Comminges, the Viscounty of Narbonne, and the signeurie of Buche in Guyenne, to this house of Foix) it was added to the Crown of Navarre, by the marriage of Gaston Earl of Foix, and Sovereign of Bearn, with Eleanor the Heir of that Kingdom, Anno 1481: descending with that Crown upon Henry of Bourbon, King of Navarre, and afterwards of France, by the name of Henry the fourth; but governed by him always as a State distinct, without relation or resort to the Crown of France. But Lewis the thirteenth his son, finding some inconvenience in that distinction, incorporated it for ever to the rest of his Dominions, Anno 1620, though not without some opposition from the subjects of Bearn: which he was fain to over-bear by his personal presence, and the advantage of such Forces as he carried with him. Since reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, owed, as the rest of France, by Forts and Garrisons, and governed in Civil matters by the Parliament established at Pau; the Judges and Councillors thereof at the Kings appointing.

2 The Earldom of FOIX, is situate on the West of Languedoc; Comminges interposing betwixt it and Bearn. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mazeros*, on the *Garond*, a Bishops See. 2. *Parnieres*, a Bishops See also, seated on the River *Lagiere*. 3. *Foix*, on the same River, called in Latin, *Fuxium*, and the Earls hereof *Comites Fuxienses*; the chief seat of the *Flussates* in the times of the *Romans*, now giving name to all the Countrey. 4. *Mirande*, in the County of *Esterac*, and the chief thereof; but otherwise of no great account. 5. *Savardun*, and 6. *Monthault*, two strong pieces. 7. *Mirepoix* (oppidum *Miropense*) a Bishops See also, but of no note otherwise. The old Inhabitants of this tract, besides the *Flussates* above mentioned, were called *Vaccet*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine bread in the pastures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of Foix have for their Armes, 3 Cows passant *Gules*; horned and hooved *Azure*, in a Field *Or*.

The first of these Earls was Bernard of Carcaffone, advanced to this honour by Raimond Earl of Tholouse, who had then the sovereignty hereof, Anno 1062. The Patrimony hereof much increased by marriage, (no one Family more) many fair lands in the Marishes of *Province* being added to it by *Estmienne*, wife of Roger the second; not a few Signeuries in *Catalonia*, by *Cecile* daughter of Earl Raimond, wife of Roger the third; the Earldom of *Castelbon*, by *Brunice* wife of Roger-Bernard the first; the Earldom of *Comminges* by *Eleanor* the wife of *Gaston* the second. Besides all which, in or about the year 1262, Roger Bernard, the ninth Earl, united Bearn to his Estate, as before is said; whose Grand-child *Isabel* (the male issue failing) conveyed the whole Estate to *Archembald*, Lord or Captain of *Buche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *Gaston*, the Nephew of this *Archembald* by his eldest son *John*, was for his many good services to *Charles* the seventh, made a Peer of France: and did not only purchase the Viscounty of *Narbon*, from the Lords whereof he was descended by *Maignard*, wife of Roger-Bernard the second; but by his marriage with *Eleanor* or *Beauna* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of Navarre, united that Kingdom to his house, though he enjoyed it not in his own person. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of Estate, his Family grew to so great power and reputation, that there were four Queens at one time descended from it: viz. *Katharine* Queen of Navarre, German Queen of Aragon, Anne Queen of France, and Anne Queen of Hungary and Bohemia. Before which time (I mean the Addition of Navarre to their other Estates) the Earls of Foix were in so high esteem in the Court of France, that in all publick Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendosme*, though extracted from the Royal blood, and lived in a condition equal to most Kings in Christendom. In which regard, as also that the later Kings of Navarre and present Kings of France, are descended of them, it will not be amiss to subjoin here the Catalogue of

The Earls of Foix.

A. Ch.		A. Ch.	
1062	1 Bernard the younger son of Roger Earl of Carcaffon, the first Earl of Foix.	1262	9 Roger-Bernard III. who added Bearn and its Appendixes unto his Estates.
1096	2 Roger, the son of Bernard, an adventurer in the first War for the Holy Land.	1306	10 Gaston the son of Roger-Bernard the third, and of Margaret de Moncada the Heir of Bearn.
1111	3 Roger II. son of Roger the first.	1315	11 Gaston II. son of Gaston the first, a great Enemy to the English in behalf of Philip de Valois; and as great a friend to the King of Aragon against the Moors, in which war he was slain.
1144	4 Roger III. son of Roger the second.	1344	12 Gaston III. for his beauty surnamed Phœbus, inferior for Revenue and the port he lived in, to few Kings in Christendom.
1188	5 Raymond-Roger son of Roger the third, a great tickler for the Earls of Tholouse, in favour of the Albigenses, and their opinions.	1390	13 Matthew Earl of Castelbon, Son of Roger-Bernard Earl of Castelbon the second Son of Gaston the first: designed
1223	6 Roger-Bernard, the inheritor of his Fathers opinions, as well as of his Estates and Fortunes.		
1241	7 Roger IV. surnamed Rotfer, a companion of the King S. Lewis in the Holy Land.		
1355	8 Roger-Bernard II. son of Rotfer.		

designed successor to John King of Aragon, whose eldest Daughter he had married, but dispossessed thereof by the Duke of Monlanc.

1399 14 Archembald Captain of Buche, and Isabel Sister and Heir of Matthew, Earls of Foix.

1413 15 John Son of Archembald, a great Enemy to the English in behalf of Charles the seventh of France: his younger Brother Gaston, as great a friend unto the English, succeeding in the estate of Buche. From Peter the second Son of this John, descended Odet de Foix, Lord of Lautrech, so renowned in the wars of Italy.

1436 16 Gaston IV. Son of John a principal Agent in the Conquest of Guienne from the English; by his marriage with Eleanor Daughter and Heir of John King of Navarre, advanced his house unto that Kingdom: Grandfather by John Vic. of Narbonne his second Son to Gaston de Foix Duke of Nemours, slain at the taking of Ravenna, Anno 1512.

1472 17 Francis Phœbus Nephew of Gaston the fourth, and of Eleanor of Navarre by their Son Gaston Prince of Viane, succeeded his said Grandfather in the Earldom of Foix, and his Grandmother in the Realm of Navarre about 7 years after.

1483 18 Katherine the Sister and Heir of Francis, by her marriage with John Earl of Albert, added that Earldom also to the house of Foix.

1517 19 Henry of Albert Son of John and Katherine, King of Navarre, Sovereign of Bearn and Earl of Foix, by his marriage with the Lady Margaret, Sister to King Francis the first, added the greatest part of the lands of Armagnac unto his Estate.

1556 20 Antoine of Bourbon Duke of Vendosme, and Joan his Wife, Daughter and Heir of Henry of Albert, Kings of Navarre, Sovereigns of Bearn, and Earls of Foix.

1572 21 Henry II. Son of Joan and Antony, King of Navarre, Sovereign Lord of Bearn, and Earl of Foix; on the murder of Henry the third of France, succeeded also in that

Kingdom by the name of Henry the fourth, Anno 1589, the Father of Lewis the thirteenth, and Grandfather of King Lewis the fourteenth, now reigning, Anno 1648. And so having brought the Earls of Foix to the Crown of France, it is time to leave them. The Arms of these great Earls we have seen before.

3 The Earldom of BEGORRE is situate North of Bearn, at the foot of the Pyrenean mountains: so called from the *Begronnes*, the old inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæsar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoining Principality of Bearn, live a leprous and infectious people, of noysome breaths, deformed bodies, and ghastly villages: in which regard, not suffered to have any commerce with other people, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themselves to drudgery, and the basest of mechanic trades. From their great mishapen heads called *Capets* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Fuigueres*, famous for medicinal Bathes. 2. *Loude*, of which nothing memorable. 3. *Tarbe*, (by *Antoine* called *Turfaubica*) seated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a strong Castle, an Episcopal See, and the Seneschallie for all the Countrey of Begorre. Which Countrey having for long time its own Proprietary Earls, under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Crown of Navarre, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or those Kings from them; was at the last, by the marriage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Esquibat* the last Earl, to *Bafon* Vicount of *Mur*, *San* and *Gabadan*, added to that house. Whose Daughter *Matthee*, marrying to *Gaston* Prince of Bearn, increased that Principality with those goodly pieces of *Mur*, *San*, *Gabadan* and *Begorre*; all brought unto the house of Foix, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaston*, married to *Roger* Bernard, as before is said.

The Armes hereof were *Azure*, a Cross *Argent*; By *Inigo Arista* the son of *Simon*, Earl of this Countrey, called to the Crown of Navarre, made the Armes of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Armes thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Cross in chief, *Gules*. Which Armes are said to be took by *Garcia Ximenes* the first King of Navarre, from such a sign appearing to him in the Skie; before his first battel with the *Moors*.

4 The Earldom of COMMINGES lyeth betwixt Bearn and Foix, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eastward on Begorre. Divided into the *Higher*, and more mountainous part; situate at the foot of the *Pyrenes*; and the *Lower*, which hath somewhat more of the valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Convenes*, and *Conserani*. The principal places at present in the *Lower Comminges* are, 1. *Lombers*, a Bishops See, but of late erection, 2. *Morces*, upon the River *Garonne*. 3. *Sama-than*. 4. *Liesse en Dordon*. And in the *Higher*, there is 1. *Conserans*; once the chief Town of the *Conserani*; now a Bishops See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenean* hills. 2. *S. Bernard*; of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Bishops See also, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3. *S. Beat*, 4. *S. Begon*, 5. *Monregean*, of *Mons Regius*, 6. *Silliers*, &c.

Of the estate of this Earldom I have little to say, but that it was united to the house of Foix, by the marriage of Eleanor, the Daughter of an Earl hereof, to Gaston the second of that name, and the eleventh Earl of this House. Given afterwards notwithstanding to a Spaniard called *Rodrigo de Villandrada*, by Charles the seventh. But in the end restored again to the house of Foix, by the prowess and great services of Gaston the fourth, who caused his uncle Matthew, the youngest son of Archembald, and Isabel Earls of Foix, to be settled in it, according to the will and purpose of his Father Archembald, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, it was conferred on John of Lescon, a Battard of the Earl of

Gascogne

Armagnac, who was Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the *Marfals* of France in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh. The Armes of these Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltire, *Argent*.

5 The Earldom of *ARMAGNAC*, the greatest of all these Estates considered severally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and so extendeth it self to the banks of the River *Garond*. Principal Towns are, 1 *Aux*, upon the River *Gez*, antiently called *Augusta Auscorum*; the Metropolis or head City of the Province of *Novempopulonia*; by consequence an Archbishop's See: The Revenues whereof are said to be the greatest of any Prelates in France, computed at no less than 40000 *l. per annum*. 2 *Lezouze*, a Bishops See, called of old *Lezocarium*, in our modern *Latine* *Lezodurum*. A Town so well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armagnac*, that it held out a siege of three months against the forces of France: but since it came into the hands of the French Kings, so strengthened and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the strongest Bulwark of the Kingdom on this side, and their surest Fortrefs against *Spain*. 3 *Liste de Jourdain*, which hath the title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of John Duke of *Bourbon*, by John the fourth Earl of *Armagnac*, Anno 1421. 4 *Arvillar*. 5 *Anzan*. 6 *Chastel-neau*. 7 *Malbouquer*, 8 *Nestes*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armagnac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*: *Sincho* the great, having subdued some Lands in *Gascogne*, which he conferred on *Garsias* a younger son of his, with the title of Earl of *Armagnac*, Anno 1014. On which foundation it increased so fast, both in power and honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl hereof, came to be Constable of France. And so did John the fourth of that name, by the favour of King *Charles* the seventh: who also writ himself, by the grace of God Earl of *Armagnac*; according to the title of Sovereign Princes. A man of so considerable power in these parts of France; that the marriage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the sixth, was thought the best means for establishing his Estate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking off this alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cause of the loss of the Kings pieces in France. This greatness made him subject to the jealousy of King *Lewis* the eleventh, who worried him out of his Estate and his life together. *Charles*, Brother of this John, succeeded by the favour of King *Charles* the 8th. After whose death this fair Estate was seized on to the use of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the first to *Charles* Duke of *Alanson*, (whose Grand-Father had married with a Sister of the said Earl John) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the said Kings Sister: who, after the decease of the Duke of *Alanson*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albert*, and King of *Navarre*, her second Husband; returning so to the Original from whence first it came.

The Armes of these great Princes, were quarterly 1 *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*; 2 *Gules*, a Leopard-Lyon Or, the 3, &c.

6 The Earldom of *ALBRET* is situate on the North-west of *Armagnac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is 1 *Nérac*, seated on the River of *Baize*; the only place of strength and moment in all this estate. 2 *Chastell-Jalone*, well seated to disturb the Trade betwixt *Bordeaux* and *Gascogne*, but not able to endure a siege. 3 *Mont de Marsan*, and 4 *Tertas*, both seated on the River *Ladour*: and all four formerly Towns of Caution for those of the Reformed Religion; of which this Country is so full, that the Popish Religion had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the smallest of the six, and of least Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the rest into it. For John, the son of Alan Earl of *Albert*, by his marriage with *Katharine*, Daughter and sole Heir of *Gaston*, son of *Gaston* of *Foix*, and of *Leonora* Princes of *Navarre*, added to his estate the Sieureries of *Beaun*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albert* his son, by marrying the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of King *Francis* the first, united to it those of *Armagnac*, and *Comminges*. By Jean the Daughter of this *Henry*, the whole Estate was brought to *Antony* of *Burton*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and Father to King *Henry* the fourth, becoming so united to the Crown of France, from which it was at first dismembered.

The Armes of these Earls, were Quarterly 1 France; 2 *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg*. The third, &c.

7 As for the Countrey of *AGENOIS*, the last part of *Gascogne*, it never had other hearts (after it left off to be French) than the Dukes of *Aquitaine*. The principal Cities of it, 1 *Agen*, a rich, populous, and well-traded Town, seated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Countrey: A Bishops See, a Seneschallie, and held to be the fairest in *Gascogne*. 2 *Condon*, a Bishops See also, from which the parts adjoining are called *Condopnois*. 3 *Villeneuve*, 4 *Clavac*, 5 *Marmand*, 6 *Foy*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of those several members which made up the great body of the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*; let us next look on the estate of the whole thus brought together: which in the declination of the Roman Empire, was given unto the *Goths*, before possessed of all *Gallia Narbonensis*, by *Valentinian* the third, as a reward for their service in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Goths* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clovis*, the fifth King of the French, continuing under his Successors, till *Ludovicus Pius* made it a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngest son. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the sons of this *Pepin*, being dispossessed by *Charles the Bald*; it was by him conferred on *Ranulph*, of the house of *Burgundy*, for his many good services against the *Normans*, Ann 844. Whose Successors take here in this order following.

The

Languedock.

The Dukes of *Aquitaine*.

844	1	<i>Ranulph</i> of <i>Burgundy</i> , first Duke of <i>Aquitaine</i> .	1156	10	<i>Lewis</i> the seventh of France, in right of <i>Eleanor</i> his Wife, sole Heir of <i>William</i> the fifth.
875	2	<i>William</i> , Earl of <i>Auvergne</i> , Nephew of <i>Ranulph</i> .	1152	11	<i>Henry</i> , Duke of <i>Normandy</i> , and Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , &c. in right of <i>Eleanor</i> his Wife, divorced from <i>Lewis</i> on pretence of some consanguinity; after King of England.
902	3	<i>Ebles</i> , Earl of <i>Poitou</i> , succeeded in <i>Aquitaine</i> and <i>Auvergne</i> , by the Will and Testament of Duke <i>William</i> .			
911	4	<i>Ebles</i> II. Son of <i>Ebles</i> the first.			
935	5	<i>William</i> II. the son of <i>Ebles</i> the second.	1169	12	<i>Richard</i> , King of England, the son of <i>Henry</i> .
970	6	<i>William</i> III. son of <i>William</i> the second.			
1019	7	<i>Guy</i> , the son of <i>William</i> the third.	1199	13	<i>John</i> King of England, the Brother of <i>Richard</i> ; who forfeiting his Estates in France, on a judicial sentence pronounced against him for the (supposed) murder of his Nephew <i>Arthur</i> Duke of <i>Bretagne</i> ; <i>Aquitaine</i> and the rest of the English Provinces were seized on by the French, Anno 1202. But not withstanding this <i>Arrest</i> , the English still continued their pretensions to it, till at the last it was agreed betwixt King <i>Lewis</i> the ninth of France, and <i>Henry</i> the third of England, Anno 1259. That the English should rest satisfied with <i>Guienne</i> , the bounds whereof were to be the <i>Pyrenees</i> on the South, and the River of <i>Charente</i> on the North, comprehending therein also the Countrey of <i>Limousin</i> ; and that on his investiture into this Estate, he should relinquish all his rights in <i>Normandy</i> , <i>Anjou</i> , <i>Touren</i> , <i>Main</i> , &c. In consideration whereof, he should have 150000 Crowns in ready money. On this accord the Kings of England became Homagers to the Crown of France, which sometimes they omitted, sometimes did it by Proxy, but never in person, till <i>Philip de Valois</i> required it of <i>Edward</i> the third: and because such duties are not often personally done by Sovereign Princes, <i>Du Serres</i> shall describe the formality of it. The place designed for this exploit was the Church of <i>Amiens</i> , to which <i>Edward</i> came (saith he) with "such a Train, as was intended rather to the honour of himself than the French King. Royally attired "he was, with a long Robe of crimson Velvet, powdered with <i>Leopards</i> of Gold; his Crown upon his "head, his Sword by his side, and golden spurs upon his heels. <i>Philip</i> , attended by the chief Officers of "the Realm, sat upon his Throne, apparelled in a long robe of purple Velvet, powdered with <i>Florets</i> de "Lycies of Gold; his Crown upon his head, and the Scepter in his hand. <i>Vicount Melun</i> , the great "Chamberlain of France, commanded <i>Edward</i> to take off his Crown, sword, and spurs, and to kneel "down: which he did accordingly. Then taking both his hands, and joining them together, he said "unto him; <i>You become a Liege-man to the King my Master, who is here present, as Duke of Guienne, and "Peer of France, and promise to be faithful and loyal to him; say yea</i> : and <i>Edward</i> said yea, and arose. But the Historian notes withal, that <i>Philip</i> paid dearly for this Pageant: the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made France a field of blood. And here it is to be observed, that though the Kings of England by this new investiture, were entituled Dukes of <i>Guienne</i> only, yet they had all the power and privileges of Dukes of <i>Aquitaine</i> ; excepting the homage of the great Lords and Earls of <i>Gascogne</i> , which formerly belonged unto them. Inasmuch as <i>Richard</i> the second, though Duke of <i>Guienne</i> only in style and title, invited his Uncle <i>John</i> of <i>Gannet</i> in that brave estate, under the style and title of Duke of <i>Aquitaine</i> ; summoned to Parliament by that name by the said King <i>Richard</i> . From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the English had possession of the Dukedom of <i>Guienne</i> , according to the order of their Successions, from the fortieth of King <i>Henry</i> the third, Anno 1259, to the twenty ninth of King <i>Henry</i> the sixth, Anno 1452 (the intercalation of <i>John</i> of <i>Gannet</i> excepted only:) when outed of all their old rights in France, rather by the good fortune, than by the valour of <i>Charles</i> the seventh; the English then divided in domestick Factions, and not at leisure to look after the affairs of France. Nor do I finde, that <i>Guienne</i> being thus recovered, was ever dismembered from that Crown, but when King <i>Lewis</i> the eleventh assigned it over to his Brother the Duke of <i>Berry</i> , to take him off from joining with the Dukes of <i>Bretagne</i> and <i>Burgundy</i> in a new confederacy; who held it but two years, and died the last Duke of <i>Guienne</i> , Anno 1472.

The Armes of this Dukedom were *Gules*, a Leopard or Lyon Or; which joyned to the two Lyons of *Normandie*, make the Armes of England.

16. LANGUEDOC.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the *Pyrenean* hills, the Land of *Roussillon*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the South; on the North, with *Forrest*, *Quercy*, and *Auvergne*; on the East, with *Provence* and *Dauphine*; on the West, with *Gascogne*. Whereas the other Frenchmen in an affirmation say *Ouy*, these of this Countrey say *Oc*; and therefore *Ortelius* conjectures it was called *Languedoc*. But others think that it took denomination from the *Goths*, who reigning long in this Countrey, left behind them a smack of their Language; and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now *Euphonia gratia*, termed *Languedotia*, or *Languedoc*, that is to say, the Countrey which retaineth the Gothic Language. In reference to one or both of which Etymologies this Province is by *Paulus Aemilius* promiscuously called *Gothicana*.

Languedoc

cana and *Ostitana*; and in relation to the rest, the people hereof in one of *Calvins* Epistles, are given unto us by the name of *Populus Lingua Ostitana*.

The Countrey on those parts which lie next to *Auvergne*, is like the higher parts thereof, mountainous and not very fruitful; in all the rest, as rich and pleasant as the best Provinces in *France*; and having the advantages of Olives, Raisins, Figs, Oranges, and other fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring Provinces; In that participating the commodities both of *France* and *Spain*. The people have somewhat in them of the ancient *Goths*, and draw nearer to the temper of the *Spaniards*, than any other of the *French*; as being accounted very devout, great vaunters of themselves, affecting bravery above their condition and estates; not caring how they pinch it on the working daies, or at home in private, so they may flout it in the street, and be fine on holy-daies; The humour also of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this Province, are 1 *Aurance*, 2 *Lieran*, and 3 *Orbe*, emptying themselves into the *Rhone*; and *Alby* which disburdeneth it self into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Nismes* (in *Latin* *Lemanus*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*, now a Bishops See; where there remain some marks of the *Roman* greatness, especially the ruins of a spacious Palace built by the Emperor *Adrian*. 2 *Mont-pelier* (in *Latine* *Mons Pessulanus*) situate on a high Mountain, as the name imports, some twelve miles distant from the Sea; is a University for the study of *Physick*, and for that very happily seated, the Countrey round about affording great variety of medicinal herbs. An Earldom of it self in the former times, conveyed by *Mary* Daughter of *William* the last Lord hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her husband; next, made a member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and finally by *James*, the last King of *Majorca*, sold to King *Philip* of *Valois*. Of late one of the strongest holds which those of the Reformed Religion had in this Countrey; and memorable for the notable resistance which it made against the whole forces of *Lewis* the 13th in the last Civil Wars about Religion. 3 *Albth*, and 4 *Carcaissonne*, both Bishops Sees, both seated on the River *Aude*; the people of both speaking a corrupt *French*, with an intermixture of some *Spanish*. Which intermixture of *Spanish* with that broken *French* they either have originally from the *Goths* of *Spain*, of whose Kingdom this was once a part: or from their long subjection to the Earls of *Barcelone*, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair estates in this part of *France*, by the marriage of *Raymond* Borenger the seventh Earl thereof, with *Almodia* the Daughter of some of the great Lords who then ruled in *Languedoc*, about the year 1040. And to these Towns, as also unto those of *Nismes* and *Alby*, the Earls of *Barcelone*, and the Kings of *Aragon* (in their right) did pretend a Sovereignty (though they had lost the possession of them) as those of *France* did to the Earldom of *Barcelone*: till mutual releases made on both sides of each others claims, by *James* the first of *Aragon*, and the King *St. Lewis*, Anno 1260, or thereabouts. 5 *Alby*, commodiously seated on the River so called, the *Civitas Albigensis* of *Antoninus*, the chief of this part of *Languedoc*, called from hence *La Paix Albigensis*; remarkable in Church-history for the great opposites to the corruptions and errors of the Church of *Rome*, called the *Albigenses*. 6 *Beziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, the *Betura* of *Ptolomy*, and *Civitas Beterrima* of *Antoninus*; a *Roman* Colony of old, now a Bishops See. 7 *Agde*, called *Agatha* by ancient writers, remarkable for a Council held there in the year 450, and for a well-frequented Port, at the mouth of the River *Eghand*. 8 *Narbon*, seated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the Seat of the *Phoenices*, and the first *Roman* Colony (next after *Carthage*) out of *Italy*. In *Italy* it self (to observe so much by the way) were no less than 150 Colonies; 57 in *Africk*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, in *England* 4 only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countreys some, but very few in respect of the largeness of the Territories. These Colonies were instituted partly to repress Rebellions in the Conquered Countreys; partly to resist a foreign enemy, partly to reward the ancient Soldiers, partly to relieve the poorer sort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the superfluity and redundancy of her people. Now if the question be asked, whether a Colony or a Fortress be more behoovefull, I answer with *Boterus* in his *Raggio de Stato*, that a Fortress is more fit for suddain use, and a Colony for continuance: the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as soon lost; the other require some time of settling, and are after of a good sufficiency to defend themselves. As we see in our times, the *Spanish* Colonies of *Centa* and *Tanger* in *Africk*; and our own of *Calais*, which was the last Town we lost on the firm land. This *Narbon* was in the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, the most populous and greatest Town of all *France*: inasmuch, as from it all this part of *France* was called *Gallia Narbonensis*. A Province, of which *Pliny* delivered us this censure: *Narbonensis Gallia agrorum cultum, morum virorumque dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli provinciarum posponenda; triviterque Italia potius quam provincia; that is to say, that for fruitfulness of the soil, and the civility of the people, it was inferior to no province in the Roman Empire*. But to return unto the Town, being antiently the Metropolis of this Province, it had withall the honour of being an Archbishops See, which it still continueth: well fortified at the present as a Town of war, fronting *Catalonia* and the land of *Roussillon*. 9 *La Py*, the See of a Bishop, who in *Latin* is called *Podiensis*; the chief of that part of *Languedoc*, which is named *Pelay*, the ancient seat of the *Vellani*. 10 *Viviers*, on the River *Rhone*, (by *Pliny* named *Alba Helviorum*) from whence the Countrey adjoining hath the name of *Vivarets*. 11 *Rhodes*, or *Rutena*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Bishops See; from whence the Countrey round about hath the name of *Rouvergn*; though some account this *Rouvergn*, a distinct Province, and no part of *Languedoc*. 12 *Tholouse*, seated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Tectosages*, and the *Tolosates*, placed by old Writers in this tract; now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greatest in all *France*. The seat of an Archbishop, and a University: so antient, that some report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Israel*. Here was a Parliamentary Court erected, for the administration of Justice in these parts, 1302. As for the Story of *Tholouse*, it was observed, that certain Soldiers having stole sacrilegiously some

Languedoc.

some Gold out of the Temples of *Tholouse*, (when it was sackt by *Cepio* a *Roman* Consul) came all to miserable and unfortunate ends: hence grew that *Adage*, *Aurum habet Tholosumum*, applied to unhappy men.

But that which deserves most note in the History of it, are the large and spacious fields about it, called by the Writers of these times by the name of *Campi Catalaunici*; extending in length 100, in breadth 70 *French* Leagues. In which fields, An. 435. was fought that terrible Battle between *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, and *Etius* the *Roman* Lieutenant in *France*; *Etius* was strengthened by the *Goths*, *Frankes*, *Burgundians*, and *Germans*. *Attila's* Army consisted of *Hunnes*, *Eruli*, *Scythes*, *Sarmatians*, *Suavians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that day lost their lives: *Attila* himself being driven to that desperate plunge, that making a Funeral pile of *Horse* Saddles, he would have burned himself. But his Enemies weary of well-doing, or *Etius* politically fearing, that if *Attila* were quite destroyed, the *Goths*, *Frankes*, and others of the *Barbarians* then confederate with him, would become too insolent; gave him leave to retire home through *Italy*: which he harried with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, so that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. *Etius*, notwithstanding this good service, was by *Valentinian* the Emperor of the *West*, rewarded with the loss of his head: By which act, the Emperor (as one truly told him) had cut off his right hand with his left. And indeed so it happened. For not long after, he himself was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of *Rome* irrecoverably destroyed. Now that these Fields lay hereabouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champaigne*, (as some learned and industrious men have been of opinion) I am assured by these three reasons. First the improbability that *Etius* having got the victory, should suffer such a vast and numerous Army to pass through the whole length of *France* from one end to the other, and having waited all the Countrey, to break into *Italy*. And secondly the testimony of *Jornandes* an ancient Writer, who telleth us, first, that before this fight, *Attila* had besieged and distressed the City of *Orleans*; and therefore was not vanquished in the fields of *Chalons*: and then, that immediately upon the Victory, *Torismund* the King of the *Goths*, (his Father *Theodorick* being slain) in *Campis Catalaunicis ubi & pugnaverat*, *Regia Majestate salvetur Tolosam ingreditur*; being proclaimed King in those very fields, entered with great state and triumph into *Tholouse*, the Regal City at that time of the *Gothish* Kingdom. Which plainly proves the place of battle to be near this City: though possible by the name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof considered) we are to understand the whole Countrey of *Languedoc*.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey besides the *Helvii*, the *Vellani*, the *Tectosages*, and *Albigenses*, formerly remembred, were the *Agateses*, *Beterrenses*, *Gabales*, *Volea*, and the *Ariminici*; all which, together with some others of lesser note, made the Province of *Narbonensis Prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire assigned with the rest of *Narbonensis*, and some part of *Spain*, to *Atholfus* King of the *Goths*, whom *Honorius* by this gift and by bestowing on him his Sister, *Placidia*, bought out of *Italy*. The *Goths* having got so good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their bounds by taking in the most part of *Aquitain*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*: but forced to quit them to the *French*, who conquered that from them which they got from the *Romans*; and shut them up within the limits of their first Donation. After this they declined as fast in *France*, as they thrived in *Spain*; losing *Provence* to *Theodorick*, King of the *Ostro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; whose successor *Amalasunta*, fearing a War from *Greece*, resigned her interests in *Provence* to *Theodolbert* the *French* King of *Metz*. Nothing now left unto the *Goths* of their *Gallick* purchases, but this *Languedock* only; and this they held as long as they had any thing to do in *Europe*, but lost it finally to the *Moors*, with all *Spain* it self. Recovered from the *Moors* by *Charles Martel*, and added to the rest of the *French* Empire; it was by *Charles* the Great given to one *Thurfin*, of the race of the ancient Kings, with the title of the Earl of *Tholouse*, on condition that he would be *Christened*. But long it continued not in his Race; nor in any other, not being settled in a way of Lineal Descent, till the time of *Raymond* the eighth Earl, Brother to another *Raymond* Earl of *St. Giles* (a Town of *Gienne*) whose Grand-child *Hugh*, being an adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and wanting Money to provide himself for that expedition, sold his Estate herein to his Uncle *Raymond*, the Earl of *St. Giles* before mentioned. From this time forward we find these Earls to be as often called the Earls of *St. Giles*, as the Earls of *Tholouse*; and by that name frequently remembred in the *Eastern* stories; as for his great valour in the course of the *Holy Wars*, especially at the taking of the City of *Tripoli*, given to him (after it became Christian) with the title of Earl. This *Raymond*, worthily named the Great, Earl of *Tholouse*, *St. Giles*, and *Tripoli*, had three Sons; all of them succeeding; of which the eldest was *Bertrand*, had a Base Son called *Ponce*, who succeeded him in the Earldom of *Tripoli*, the Father of *Raymond*, and Grand-Father of another *Raymond*, both Earls of *Tripoli*, and both suspected to be false to the Christian Princes in the continuance of those Wars. *Alfonso* the third Son was also the Father of a *Raymond*, the Father of another *Raymond*, who proved a great maintainer of the *Albigenses*; and in pursuance of that cause murdered a Legat of the Pope sent to Excommunicate him, and strangled his own Brother *Baldwin*, because he found him not inclinable to his opinions. For this cause Warred upon, and Vanquished by *Simon de Montfort*, Father of *Simon* the great Earl of *Leicester*; and after many troubles and continual Wars, left his estate and quarrel to his Son named also *Raymond*, the last Earl of this House; who proving also a strong Patron of these *Albigenses*, was condemned for a Heretic, cursed by the Pope; and persecuted by the *French* Kings;

Orange.

derful Antiquities, demonstrating the Roman Greatness, of whom once a Colony; but of most note in Church-story for a Council held here against the Semi-Pelagians, in the year 444. called *Aranficanum*; the Latine name of this City being anciently *Aranfusa*, in some Writers *Auricus*, and of late *Antunum*; the 2 *Esfrang.* 3 *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly *St. Paul de Vences*, being the *Civitas Vencienfium* of *Antoninus*, but not otherwise memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were anciently of the Noble Family of the *Banffis*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold* the last of this Family, it was conveyed in marriage to *John de Chalons* one of the most Noble Houses of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis* the Son of this *John* obtained of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou* and the Sovereignty hereof, as before was said. By *Claude* the Heir general of this house, bestowed in marriage by King *Francis* the first on Count *Henry* of *Nassau*, Ambassador from *Maximilian* the Emperour of *Germany*, *An* 1514. it was translated to that Family, where it still remaineth.

The Princes of Orange.

- | | | | | | |
|------|---|--|--|----|---|
| 1475 | 1 | <i>Lewis</i> of <i>Chalons</i> , first absolute Prince of <i>Orange</i> . | Estate, slain at the siege of <i>Landrecie</i> in the Netherlands. | | |
| | 2 | <i>William de Chalons</i> who submitted his Estate to the Parliament of <i>Daulphine</i> , to satisfy King <i>Lewis</i> the 11th, by whom restored again to his former Sovereignty. | 1544 | 6 | <i>William</i> of <i>Nassau</i> , Cousen german of <i>Rene</i> , by whose last Testament left Heir unto his Estates, the great Patron and Assessor of the <i>Belgick Liberties</i> against the <i>Spaniards</i> , slain by a Partisan of <i>Spain</i> , called <i>Balthazar</i> , at <i>Delfe</i> in <i>Holland</i> , <i>An</i> 1584. |
| | 3 | <i>John de Chalons</i> , a bitter enemy to King <i>Lewis</i> , in defence of the rights of <i>Mary</i> Dutcheff of <i>Burgundy</i> . | 1584 | 7 | <i>Philip</i> of <i>Nassau</i> , kept as an Hostage all his life by the King of <i>Spain</i> . |
| 1500 | 4 | <i>Philibert de Chalons</i> , slain at the siege of <i>Florence</i> , where he commanded the Forces of <i>Charles</i> the 5th: <i>Claude</i> his only Sister, and next Heir of that house, being married to <i>Henry</i> Earl of <i>Nassau</i> , <i>An</i> 1515. | | 8 | <i>Maurice</i> of <i>Nassau</i> , Brother of <i>Philip</i> , Commander of the Forces of the United Provinces. |
| 1538 | 5 | <i>Rene</i> of <i>Nassau</i> , Son of <i>Henry</i> and <i>Claude</i> , adopted by <i>Philibert</i> his Uncle, whom he succeeded in this | 1625 | 9 | <i>Henry</i> of <i>Nassau</i> II. Successor to his Brother <i>Maurice</i> , in his Offices, Estates, and Honours. |
| | | Princely <i>Mary</i> , eldest Daughter of <i>Charles</i> King of <i>Great Britain</i> , &c. on <i>May-day</i> , 1641. | 1648 | 10 | <i>William</i> of <i>Nassau</i> II. the Son and Successor of <i>Henry</i> , married the |

The Revenues of this Principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend Or, 2 Or, a Hunters Horn Azure, stringed *Gules*; the third as, &c. Over all an Esccheon of Pretence Chequie, Or and Azure. More briefly thus, Quarterly *Chalons* and *Aurange*, under an Esccheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Aurange* lyeth the County of *VENASCINE*, as the French call it, *Comitatu Vennensium* in the Latine; so called from *Avenis* (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Anciently it had by Lords of its own called Earls of *Venize*, (*Venissa* Comites in the Latine) united to the house of *Savoy* by the marriage of *Laurence* a daughter hereof, with Earl *Humbert* the second, *An* 1080. or thereabouts. But this Family of the first Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what right I finde not) to the Earls of *Tholouse*, but held by them as Homagers (for this estate) of the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Heresie, brought under the protection and patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more absolute Sovereignty hereof and of the City *Avignon*, being settled on them by Queen *Joan*, as before is said. The principal Cities of this tract, are, 1 *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Mela*, a very fair and flourishing City, pleasantly seated on both sides of the River of *Rhone*: famous for being the residence of the Popes for 70 years, which times the Romans remember till this day by the name of the *Babylonian captivity*; admitting ever since an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The first Pope that removed hither was *Clement* the 5th, *An* 1303. when as yet the Popes had no more right in it than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome* by *Gregory* the 11th, *An* 1377. In this City are said to be 7 Palaces, 7 Parish Churches, 7 Monasteries, 7 Nunneries, 7 Innes, and 7 Gates. So that if there be any mystery in the number of seven, or any credit to be given to such *Pythagorean* divinity: the Archbishop of this City may as well be entituled *Antichrist*, as the Pope of *Rome*; if there be nothing but the mystery of this number to affix it to him. It was made an University at the time of the Popes first settling here, and so still continueth; *Aleat* the great Emblematisst being here Professor. 2 *Carpentras*, by *Protonius* called *Carpentoracte*, a Bishops See; as is also 3 *Cavaillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a Roman Colony, on the River *Durance*; and 4 *Tarascon*, on the *Rhone*, opposite to *Beauneac* in *Languedoc*: for the Popes dwelling here so long, could not be otherwise attended than by mitred Prelates. 5 *Vaison*, *Civitas Vasonensium*, of *Antoninus*.

The Revenues of the Pope here are not very great, and those expended all in keeping of Forts and Garrisons, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the Protestants of *Orange*. So that it is supposed that it is rather a charge, than a profit to him: which maketh the people like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more money to them than he gathereth from them. The Arms hereof, when under the old Earls of *Venize*, were *Gules*, two keys in Saltire Or, stringed Azure. Which

Provence.

Which seems to have in it some preface, (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it should one day become subject to the See of *Rome*.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Countrey, were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Massilienses*, *Vasconenses*, and *Venetienses*, before mentioned; besides the *Decretes* about *Antibes*, the *Senitis*, and *Sigistoris* about *Cistaron*: all conquered by the Romans, in their first War in *Gaul*, called in to aid those of *Marseilles* against the *Salii*. The Fortune of it since hath been shewn before. Nothing remains now but the Catalogue of

The Earls of Provence.

- | | | | |
|------|--|---|--|
| 1 | <i>Hugh de Arles</i> , supposed to be the son of <i>Lotharius</i> , King of <i>Austrasia</i> , and <i>Waldrada</i> his Concubine; made the first Earl of <i>Provence</i> by <i>Beson</i> the first King of <i>Burgundy</i> . He was after King of <i>Burgundy</i> and <i>Italy</i> also. | 10 | <i>Raymond</i> III. Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the last Earl of <i>Provence</i> of this Line. |
| 1261 | 11 | <i>Charles</i> of <i>Valois</i> , Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , and in right of <i>Beatrice</i> his Wife, one of the Daughters of <i>Raymond</i> the third, Earl of <i>Provence</i> . He was also King of <i>Naples</i> , <i>Sicily</i> , &c. | |
| 1282 | 12 | <i>Charles</i> II. King of <i>Naples</i> , and Earl of <i>Provence</i> . | |
| 1310 | 13 | <i>Robert</i> , King of <i>Naples</i> , and Earl of <i>Provence</i> . | |
| 1342 | 14 | <i>Joan</i> , Queen of <i>Naples</i> , and Countess of <i>Provence</i> . | |
| 1371 | 15 | <i>Lewis</i> , Duke of <i>Anjou</i> , the adopted Son of Queen <i>Joan</i> , Earl of <i>Provinces</i> , and Titulary King of <i>Naples</i> , &c. (Of whose descent from <i>Charles de Valois</i> , Earl of <i>Anjou</i> and <i>Provence</i> , we have spoke elsewhere.) | |
| 1385 | 16 | <i>Lewis</i> II. Duke of <i>Anjou</i> , Earl of <i>Provinces</i> , &c. | |
| 1416 | 17 | <i>Lewis</i> III. Duke of <i>Anjou</i> , Earl of <i>Provinces</i> , &c. | |
| 1430 | 18 | <i>René</i> Brother of <i>Lewis</i> Duke of <i>Anjou</i> , &c. | |
| 1480 | 19 | <i>Charles</i> Earl of <i>Maine</i> , son of <i>Charles</i> Earl of <i>Maine</i> , the Brother of <i>René</i> , succeeded in all the Estates and Titles of his Uncle; and at his death gave <i>Provence</i> to King <i>Lewis</i> the 11th | |

his Cousin-german: as being the son of *Charles* the seventh, and *Mary* daughter of *Lewis* the second, Duke of *Anjou*, Sister of *Lewis* the third and *René*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the last Earl of *Provence*. Immediately on whose death, *Decemb.* 19th. *An* 1481. the King sent a Commission to *Palamede de Forban* Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take possession of the Countrey in his name, and command therein as Lieutenant General. Since which time, *Provence* never was dismembered from the Crown of *France*, so much as in the way of *Appenage*, or any Honorary Title amongst the Kings children.

What the Revenues of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to say, having no good Authority to proceed upon. Onely I find, that besides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other customary and casual Taxes, there was a Tax called *The Royal Impost*, being fifteen *Florens* levied upon every fire; which reckoning 3500 fires, (for such the estimate of them was) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florens*. Now it is subject to the rigor and uncertainty of the Kings Taxations, as well as all the rest of *France*. And so much of those Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the French and *Goths*; let us next look on those which at the same time were subdued by the *Burgundians*; whose History, Kingdom, and Estate, are to be considered, before we come to the description of their several Provinces.

The Kingdom of BURGUNDY.

THE Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS* at their first settlement in *Gaul*, contained all those Provinces of the Roman Empire, then called the *Alpis Graia* and *Penine*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunensis Prima*, and *Vienensis*; now passing under the names of the Dukedom and County of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Grisons*, *Wallisland*, *Savoy*, *La Bresse*, *Dauphine*, *Lionnois*, *Nivernois*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of ground, able at once to tempt, and satisfy an ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaul* of their own accord; though of their own accord they drew somewhat near it. In their Original they were a people bordering near the *Vandals*; if not a Tribe or Sept of them; and dwelling in those parts in which are now the Dukedom of *Meslenburg*, and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Druiss* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they

Burgundians were utterly Barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own Language called *Burgs*, gave them the name of *Burgundians* amongst the *Romans*; in the same sense as the wild *Arabs* had the name of *Scenites*, amongst the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the year 416. at the instigation of the *Vandals* they left their own tents, and planted themselves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the *Marquesses of Baden*, and *Elk Gers of Rheine*. About which time, they received the Christian Faith, being then miserably oppressed by the *Hunnes*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themselves of that enemy, they betook themselves to the God of the *Christians*, and were universally baptized. After which, falling on the *Hunnes*, they slew no less than 30000 of them in one battel; from that time forwards never troubled with that barbarous Nation. *Christians* then they were, and *Orthodox* in their profession, before their coming into *Gaul*: and for that reason called in by *Stilico* to oppose the *French*, then threatening an invasion of the *Roman Provinces*. Upon this invitation they passed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting men, possessing themselves of all which lay from the faithless shore of the *Loyre*, to the *Alpes of Italy*; and from the Mountain *Vauze*, to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about that same time planted by the *Goths*. Their Government was under Kings: Many, according to their Tribes, when they lived in *Germany*; *Monarchical*, when settled in the Realm of *France*, where they had these five

Kings of the *Burgundians*.

- A.Ch.*
408 1 *Tabica*, who first brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaul*.
2 *Gundioch*.
3 *Gundebault*, who harassed *Italy*, then in possession of the *Goths*, with fire and sword, the Uncle of *Clotilda*, wife to *Clovis*, the fifth King of the outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clotaire*, Kings of *Paris* and *Soissons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother *Chlodomir*. And so the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 years: *Guntram*, the son of *Clotaire*, and *Clovis*, one of the sons of *Dagobert* the first, being in their times, honoured with the Titles of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the first time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* settled amongst the *French*, in the way of succession, was in the partage of that vast Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongst the children and posterity of *Leodovicus Pius*: In constituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this answerable to the other parts of that broken Monarchy. The first of these *French Kings* was *Charles*, the youngest Son of *Lotharius* Emperor, and King of *Italy*, eldest son of the said *Lewis* the Godly. The succession, in this order following.

The *French Kings* of *Burgundy*.

- A.Ch.*
855 1 *Charles*, youngest son of the Emperor *Lotharius*, died without issue.
858 2 *Lotharius*, the second King of *Metz*, and *Lewis* the second Emperor, Brethren of *Charles*, succeeded in *Burgundy*; the Mountain *Jour* dividing and bounding their Estates.
876 3 *Charles* the Bald, King of *France*, and Emperor, Uncle to the three former Kings, all dying without issue, succeeded in the whole Estate; which he again divided into three Governments or Members: that is to say, *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soasne*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lions* and *Macon*. 2 *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Wallisland*, and the Estates of the *Grisons*; and 3ly. *Burgundy* on the other side of the *Soasne*, lying betwixt the other two; containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Bresse*, and *Dauphine*. This last conferred with the Title of Earl, on *Boson* Earl of *Ardennes*, by *Charles* the Bald, who had married his sister *Judith*; and not long after in the person of the said Earl *Boson*, raised unto a Kingdom by *Charles* the *Gross*, by the name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings, these that follow.
4 *Boson* Earl of *Ardennes* Husband of *Hermingrade*, the daughter of *Lewis* the second, Emperor, and King of *Burgundy*, was first by *Charles* the Bald made Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Soasne*; and afterwards by *Charles* the *Gross* created the first King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his successors of the *German Emperors*.
5 *Lewis* II. son of *Boson* and *Hermingrade*, chosen King of *Italy*, but outed by the Faction of *Berengarius*.
917 6 *Hugh* de *Arles*, supposed to be the son of *Lotharius* the second, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; succeeded by the gift of *Lewis*; and was chosen by his Faction there King of *Italy* also. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he resigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction to that broken Title.
926 7 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, succeeded on the resignation of *Hugh* de *Arles*: his Brother *Boson* being settled beyond the *Jour*.
937 8 *Rodolph* II. son of *Rodolph*; a Prince of so short a reign, or of so little note, that he is by some left out of the Catalogue of these Kings.

9 *Boson*

9 *Boson* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the first, by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.
10 *Conrade* son to *Boson* the second.

965 11 *Rodolph* III. son to *Conrade*, who having no issue of his body, gave his estate to *Conrade* the second, Emperor of *Germany*, and his son *Henry* surnamed the *Black*, whom he had by *Gilese*, the sister of this *Rodolph*; by whom it was united to the *German Empire*, An. 1032. In the distractions whereof, following not long after his decease, the Provincial Earls, or *Gouverneurs* for the *German Emperors*, made themselves Masters and Proprietaries of their several Provinces (the Dukedom of *Burgundy* excepted, settled long before) out of which rose the great Estates of the Duke of *Savoy*, the Earls of *Burgundy*, and *Provence*, the *Dauphins* of *Viennois*, and Lords of *Bresse*, together with the Commonwealths of the *Swissers* and *Grisons*: every poor Bird snatching also some Feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithstanding the dismembering and cantoning of this fair estate, the succeeding Emperors of *Germany*, claimed not only a super-intendence over, but a disposal of all the Countries that ever were under the command of the King of *Burgundy*: inasmuch that the Emperor *Henry* the first, receiving no small part of the money which our *Richard* the first paid to the Duke of *Austria*, for his *Ransome*, gave unto the said *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Sovereignty of *Provence*, *Viennois*, *Marsilles*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lions*; together with the homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digion*, and *St. Giles*. A Royal gift, if either the Emperor had had any dominion over those Countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Armes of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian Kings*, are said to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Argent*, armed *Gules*. Which being said, we will proceed to the description of those Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lie within the bounds of *France*; the rest which lie beyond the *Jour*, having been spoken of already in the *Alpine Countries*; which made up the whole continent of the *Transjuran Burgundy*.

18 DAUPHINE.

North of the Country of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAUPHINE*, having on the East, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alpes*; on the West *Lienois*, and some part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhone*; and on the North, *La Bresse*, and those parts of *Savoy* which lie towards *Piemont*. So called, as some report, from *Dauphine* wife of *Guigne* the second; in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed most probably to have took that name from *Flandrina* wife of *Liderick* the second, then one of the last of those Princes who governed in that Country by the name of *Forresters*.

It is divided into the Higher and the Lower; that mountainous, stony, and unfruitful, of the same nature with the *Alpes*, with whose branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the rest of *France*. The people of the Higher, and more mountainous parts, are generally gross and rude; not capable of learning, but well enough inclined to Armes and Traffick, and have a custom, that on the coming on of Winter, they send abroad all those which are fit for travel, (whom they call *Biers*, or *Bisonards*) who seldom return back till Easter: none staying at home, but old men, children, and impotent persons, which cannot go abroad to get their livings. Those in the Lower, are more civil, but not more given to labour than the Mountainers are; nor very covetous of gain, so they may live at ease, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Souldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The Lower *Dauphine*, together with that part of *Provence* which lies next to the *Rhone*, and the adjoining parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennensis*, from *Vienna* the Metropolis of it, situate on the *Rhone*, honoured with the Seat of the *Præfatus Prætorio Galliarum*; still the chief City of this Countrey, an Archbishops See, and a Siege *Præfidiat*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennois*, and was the Title of the first Proprietaries of this Countrey, entituled *Dauphins* of *Viennois*. To this Town *Archelans*, the son of *Herod*, was banished by *Augustus Cesar*. 2 *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentinois*, then a *Roman Colony*, now a Bishops See, and a University for the *Civil Laws*; a rich, strong, and well-traded Town, seated on the *Rhone*. The Countrey hereabouts from hence called *Valentinois*, and hath given Honorary Title to two persons of more Fame, than Honour: the first of which was *Cesar Borgia*, the son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, who calling off his Cardinals Cap was made Duke of *Valentinois* by *Charles* the eighth; the other *Madam Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the second, under whom she much swayed the affairs of *France*, and honoured with the Title of Dutchess of it. 3 *Grenoble*, (in *Latine* *Gratianopolis*) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Acquisitans*, the most populous and best built of all this Province; and much resorted to by the Lords and Nobles; by reason of the Court of Parliament here erected, An. 1453. About this lyeth the Countrey called *Grisinandum*, 4 *Ternay*, 5 *Rosillon*, 6 *La Roche*, 7 *Montelimar*, all along the *Rhone*; 8 *Romons* upon, the confluence of the *Rhone*, and the *Iser*. 9 *Cremien*, 10 *St. Marceline*, 11 *St. Andre*, 12 *Beaurepaire* more within the Countrey.

The Higher *Dauphin*, together with those parts of *Provence* which lie next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, the Metropolis whereof was, 1 *Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Archbishops See, and Siege *Præfidiat*, seated on an high Rock, in the midst of a pleasant Valley, surrounded with Mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The Hilly Countrey hereabouts, is the highest of *France*. 2 *Briançon*, near the Head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantio* by *Antoninus*.

3 *Gappes*

Viennois.

3 Gappes, now a Bishops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apencenses*; the track of whom is still found in the name of the adjoining Territory, called *Le Pais Gapencois*: memorable for a Synod or Assembly of the French *Prælati* here holden Anno 1603, in which it was determined, as and for an Article of Faith, That the Pope was *Antichrist*, and where the Ministers then assembled, gave audience to the Ambassadors of Foreign States, as to a Commonwealth distinct from the Realm of France, audaciously importuning their King by their several Agents, for liberty of going (whenever they listed) or sending whenever they pleased unto the Councils and Assemblies of all Foreign Nations which professed the same Religion with them; the preamble to those Encroachments on the Royal Authority, which after proved the ruine of their power and party. 4 *Tricassin*, so called of the *Tricassinis*, the old inhabitants of these parts. 5 *Die*, the *Dia* *Vicentiorum* of *Antoninus*, a Bishops See, situate on the River *Drofe*: from whence come those small, but good Stomack-Wines, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Champagne*, most plentifully growing in the Fields of a Town called *Hey*, from whence it hath the name of *Vin De Hey*, and so contractedly *Vin Day*. 6 *Chorges*, 7 *Moimbrun*, 8 *Effiles*, of which little memorable.

The chief inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, besides the *Tricassinis*, *Apencenses*, *Vacantiis*, and *Accusiani* before mentioned, and the *Allobroges*, spoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were the *Segalauni* about *Valence*, the *Decenses* about *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. First conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at last by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the surrender of the same to the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued, till the year 1100, when *Guigne*, surnamed the Fat, Earl of *Grisinandum*, seeing the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, over-born by the Popes, and not able to assert his own rights; seized upon this Province, under the Title of Earl of *Viennois*; to which *Guigne* the second, his Son and Successor, gave the name of *Dauphins*; either from his Wife so called, as some, or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Armes, as others say. In this Family it continued till the year 1349, under the power and Government of these following Princes, entituled

The Dauphins of Viennois.

A.Ch.					
1100	1	<i>Guigne</i> surnamed the Fat, Earl of <i>Albon</i> and <i>Grisinandum</i> , at the time of the dissolution of the Kingdom of <i>Burgundy</i> .	1208	5	<i>Andrew</i> the son of <i>Beatrix</i> and of <i>Guigne</i> the fourth.
			1242	6	<i>Guigne</i> V. son of <i>Andrew</i> .
1135	2	<i>Guigne</i> II. the first and absolute proprietary Prince hereof, by the name of the Dauphin of <i>Viennois</i> .	1283	7	<i>Humbert</i> the first, in right of <i>Anne</i> his wife, daughter and heir of <i>Guigne</i> the fifth.
1146	3	<i>Guigne</i> III. son of <i>Guigne</i> the second.	1305	8	<i>John</i> the son of <i>Humbert</i> , exercised in continual Wars, as his Father was, with the Earls of <i>Savoy</i> .
1152	4	<i>Beatrix</i> daughter of <i>Guigne</i> the third, first married to <i>Reymond</i> the third, Earl of <i>Tbolouse</i> , next to <i>Hugh</i> the third, Duke of <i>Burgundy</i> , and finally to <i>Guigne</i> of <i>Albon</i> , of the house of the former Earls: all in her right entituled Dauphins of <i>Viennois</i> .	1322	9	<i>Guigne</i> VI. son of <i>John</i> , taken Prisoner by <i>Edward</i> Earl of <i>Savoy</i> , An. 1329. and at last slain, An. 1342.
			1342	10	<i>Humbert</i> II. the younger son of <i>John</i> , and the Brother of <i>Guigne</i> the sixth, the last Dauphin of <i>Viennois</i> , who

being surcharged with wars by *Ame* (or *Amade*) Earl of *Savoy*, entred into the Order of *Dominican* Friars at *Lyons*; selling his Countrey at a small rate to *Philip de Valois*, French King, upon condition, that the eldest son of France should be entituled always Dauphin of *Viennois*; and quarter the Arms of Dauphin with those of France. The conditions willingly accepted, and *Charles*, the son of King *John*, the son of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the Title and Estate in the very year of the surrendry. Since this time, the eldest son of France is called generally the Dauphin of France, sometimes the Dauphin only, by way of eminency; and many times the Prince-Dauphin, to difference him from the Dauphin (or Count-Dauphin) of *Auvergne*, and perhaps some others. A Title so annexed unto them, that it is not usually laid by on the accession of a greater or superiour Dignity: insomuch as *Francis* the eldest son of *Henry* the second, (whom he succeeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots*, in the right of *Mary* his wife, was by the French commonly called *Le Roy Dauphin*, or the King Dauphin. Nor have they the bare Title of this Countrey only, but the commands, profits, and possession of it; sending their own Governours thereunto; who by an ancient indulgence, have the greatest privileges (confering all Offices within the Province) of any Governours of France.

The Armes hereof are *Azure*, a Dauphin passant, Or.

19 LA BRESSE.

LA BRESSE is bounded on the East, with *Savoy*; on the West, with *Lionois*; on the North, with *Charolois* in the Duchie of *Burgundy*, and some part of the *Franche Comte*; and on the South, with *Dauphine*. The reason of the name I find not. The Countrey is very fruitful and pleasant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of *Soane* and *Rhone*, with which very well watered. Chief Towns here in are, 1 *Belley*, a Bishops See, 2 *Bourg*, (for distinction sake called *Bourgen Bresse*) a Town so well fenced, and fortified with so strong a Citadel for command of the Countrey, that it was thought little inferior

Lionois.

rior to the two impregnable Fortresses of *St. Katherine* and *Montmelian* in *Savoy*. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earnestly laboured for by the Duke of *Biron*, then Gouverneur of *Burgundy*, after a repulse on the like sute for that of *St. Katherine*: but being suspected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoy*, at that time in ill terms with King *Henry* the 4th, it was also denied him; which drew him into discontent, and thereby to his fatal ruine. Afterwards, during the minority of *Lewis* the 13th, demolished by special Order of the Council of France, for fear of being surprised by the Duke of *Savoy* during those confusions. It was of old time called the *Forum Secusianorum*, from the *Secusiani*, the ancient Inhabitants of this tract. 3 *Castillon*, 4 *Mont-Real*, 5 *Bugey*, 6 *Veromen*, of which, nothing observable.

This little Province, being anciently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, had its own Earls, Proprietary Lords hereof; who held it till the year 1285: at what time *Sibylle*, the Daughter and Heir of *Ulric*, Earl of *Bresse* and *Baugie*, (or *Bassee*, as some Writers call it) conveyed the Estate in marriage to *Ame* or *Amade*, the 4th of that name, Earl of *Savoy*. In which House it continued till the year 1600; and then surrendered by Duke *Charles Emmanuel* to King *Henry* the 4th, to silence the pretences which that King had made unto the Marquise of *Saluzzes*, and put an end unto the war then begun about it; the politick Duke choosing rather to part with an Estate on this side of the Mountains, than to give that active King occasion to look into *Italy*; to which *Savoy* must have been a Thorow-fare, *Piemont* an ordinary Pass; and where no end could be expected, but the loss of all. Surrendered then it was on good reason of State, and upon that Surrendry united and incorporated with the Crown of France, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digion*, as it still continueth.

Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermine*, armed and Langued, Or.

20. LIONOIS.

THe Countrey of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the East, with *Bresse*; on the West, with *Beau-jolois*, *Forrest* and *Auvergn*; on the North, with *Burgundy* Duchy; and on the South, with *Dauphin*, and a part of *Languedoc*. So called from *Lions* the chief City, and under that title made an Earldom by *Charles the Gross*, in the cantoning and dismembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*: The Earldom containing at that time, not only *Lionois* it self, but also *Forrest* and *Beau-jolois*, before described. The Earls hereof were at first only Provincial Governours, but under the distractions of the *German* Empire they shifted for themselves, and became hereditary; but long it held not in one hand. For first, the Earldom of *Forrest*, and the Lordship or Signeury of *Beaujeu* being taken out of it, about the year 990, the rest of the Estate fell in some tract of time to the Bishops and Church of *Lions*, but under the Sovereignty of the French Kings, as Lords Paramount of it.

The places in it of most note are, 1 *Maison*, (*Matiscornis*) a Bishops See, situate on the *Soane*; anciently a distinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soane*: one of the Earls hereof called *William*, flourishing in the year 1000 or thereabouts; whose son and successor named *Otho*, married *Elizabeth* daughter of *Humbert* the first Earl of *Maurienne* (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of *Savoy*.) Continuing for some ages after in this Posterity, it was purchased of *William* the last Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Lewis* the 9th; and afterwards subjected to the Jurisdiction and Court of *Lions*, as it still continueth. 2 *Eschalas* on the *Rhone*, on the South of *Lions*, opposite to *Vienne*, the chief City of the Lower Dauphin. 3 *Dandilli*, 4 *Francheville*, 5 *Chaumont*, and 6 *Lebrelle*, all somewhat Westward of that River, but not much observable. 7 *Lions* it self, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Soane* and the *Rhone*, anciently a Roman Colony, (testified by many old Inscriptions) and honoured with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of France to *Augustus Caesar*: now the most famous Mart of France, and an University; by our Latin Writers called *Lugdunum*. These Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11th, for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Julio* the second had excommunicated *Lewis* the 12th, he commanded by his Apostolical authority that they should be returned to *Geneva* again; but therein his pleasure was never obeyed: the Marts continuing still at *LIONS*; as a place more convenient and capacious of that great resort of French, Dutch, and Italian Merchants, which frequent the same. As for the University, questionless it is very ancient; being a seat of learning in the time of *Caius Caligula*. For in those times, before an Altar consecrated to *Augustus Caesar* in the Temple spoken of before, this *Caligula* did institute some exercises of the Greek and Roman Eloquence: the Victor to be honoured according to his merit; and the vanquished either to be feralated, or with their own tongues to blot and expunge their writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoining. Hence that of *Juvenal*, the *Lugdunensis* Rhetor dicitur ad Aram, applied to dangerous undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* first coming into Gaul, it was the chief City of the *Hedui* and *Secusiani*; afterwards the Metropolis of *Lugdunensis Prima*: The Archbishop hereof is the Metropolitan of all France; and was so in the time of *S. Irenæus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Bishop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick Barbaross*, Emperor of Germany: who being a devout and conscientious man, sensible of the many errors and corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, distributed the greatest part of his riches amongst the poor; and betook himself to meditation and studying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of *CHRISTS* body, the subtraction of the Cup in the blessed Sacrament, in matter of *Purgatory*; the Supremacy; adoration

Burgundy
Dukedom.

of Images, Invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment; he held opinions contrary unto those of *Rome*, and little different from those of the present *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongst some good *Wheat* there were many *Tares*; which gave the juster colour to their Adversaries to exclaim against them. Being much followed, in regard of his piety and charity, he got unto himself and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the *Poor men of Lions*, given in derision and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenses*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name opposed, and writ against by Frier *Thomas of Walden*. The *French* according to their manner of Pronunciation, drowning the *L*. and changing the *W*. into *V*. call them commonly *Vandois*; by which name they occur in the stories of that State, and Language. But *Lions* proving no safe place for them, they retired into the more desert parts of *Languedoc*, and spreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the name of *Albigenses*, as before was said. Supported by the two last Earls of *Tholose*, they became very masterfull and insolent: Insomuch, that they murdered *Trincan*, their *Viscount* in *Beziers*, and dashed out the teeth of their Bishop, having taken Sanctuary in *S. Magdalens Church*, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high outrage, the divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Croisades*, under the conduct of the *French Kings*, and many other noble Adventurers; who sacrificed them in the self-same Church, wherein they had spoyled the blood of others. About the year 1250, after a long and bloody War, they were almost rooted out of that Countrey also. The remnants of them being bettered by this affliction, betook themselves unto the Mountains lying betwixt *Dauphine*, *Provence*, *Piemont*, and *Savoy*, where they lived a godly and laborious life; painfully tilling the ground, re-building Villages, which formerly had been destroyed by War; teaching the very Rocks to yield good pasture to their Cattel: insomuch as places which before their coming thither scarce yielded four Crowns yearly, were made worth 350 Crowns a year, by their care and industry. *Lasciviousness* in speech they used not; *Blasphemy* they abhorred, nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongst them; as their very enemies could not but confess, when they were afterward in troubles. The Crimes alleged against them were, That when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no address unto the *Saints*; nor bowed before such *Crosses* as were erected in the Highways, and Streets of Towns. Great crimes assuredly, when greater could not be produced. And so they lived, neither embracing the *Popes Doctrines*, nor submitting unto his *Supremacy*, for the space of 300 years, untouched, unquestioned; even till the latter end of the reign of King *Francis* the first. But then the Persecution raging against the *Lutherans*, they were accused, condemned, and barbarously murdered, in the *Massacres* of *Merindol*, and *Chabriers* before mentioned. After which time, joyning themselves with the rest of the *Protestant* party, they lost the name of *Vandois*, by which called before; and pass in the account of the *Reformed Churches of France*; enjoying the same privileges and freedom of Conscience, as others of the *Reformed* do. And though I look not on these men and their Congregations as Founders of the *Protestant Church*, or of the same Church with them, as I see some do: yet I behold them as *Assertors* of some doctrinal truths, and professed Enemies of the errors and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predecessors of the present *Protestants*.

The old Inhabitants of this tract were a part of the *Hedui*, that Nation overspreading not this Countrey only, but *Bourbonnois*, with the whole Dukedom of *Burgundy*. And of these *Hedui*, the *Insabres* are thought by some learned men to have been a Tribe; who passing over the *Alpes*, together with the *Senones*, and others of the *Gallick Nations*, possessed themselves of those parts of *Italy* which now make up the Dukedoms of *Miluin*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoining. The residue of the story which concerns this Countrey we have had before.

21. The Dukedom of BURGUNDIE.

THE Dukedom of BURGUNDIE hath on the East, the *French Countrey*, and some part of *Savoy*; on the West, *Bourbonnois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Bresse*, *Lionnois*, and some part of *Beaujeu*. A Province so well watered with pleasant and profitable Rivers, that as *Q. Katharine de Medices* used to say of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers than all *Europe*; so we may say of this Countrey, That it had more fine Rivers than all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1. *Armancon*, 2. *Serun*, 3. *Cuis*, 4. *Torney*, 5. *Valence*, 6. *Doue*, 7. *Brune*, 8. *Sein*, 9. *Louche*, and 10. *Soasne*, (the *Araris* of the ancient Writers) this last dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet notwithstanding this great plenty of waters, the Countrey generally is less fruitful than the rest of *France*; hardly yielding sufficient for its own inhabitants, except Wines only.

Chief Cities in it, are, 1. *Dijon*, the birth place of *S. Bernard*, seated upon the *Soasne* and *Louche*, in a champion Countrey: the Town large, populous, and of much resort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and Parliamentary for the Province; a Parliament being here erected, Anno 1476. Well fortified on all parts, but specially defended by a strong Castle called *Talente*, situate on an hill adjoining. It is called *Divio* in the *Latine*, the Bishop hereof *Divionensis*. 2. *Chalons*, (in *Latine*, *Caballinum*) called for distinctions sake, *Chalons upon Soasne*, to difference it from *Chalons upon Marn*, in *Champagne*: is a Bishops See also, as the other is; and gives name to that Noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four ancient Families of *Burgundy*; the other three,

Vienn,
Vienn,

Burgundy
Dukedom.

Vienn, *Neufchatell*, and *Virgie*. 3. *Autun*, by *Protony* called *Augustodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*, now a Bishops See; heretofore the chief of all the Countrey, some marks of the old splendour being still to be seen; now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with some fair Churches, which the ruins of time have not yet demolished. 4. *Beauvais*, seated on the *Barsoize*, in the best and richest soil of all *Burgundy*; and yielding the best Wines in *France*: remarkable for an Hospital of so fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in *Europe*; and an impregnable Castle built by King *Lewis* the 12th. 5. *Alize*, now a small Village, but of great name and power in the time of *Cesar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortrefs of *Vercingetorix*, besieged herein by the said *Cesar*; but so besieged, that he had 70000 men in the Town for defence of the place; and an Army of 300000 *Galls* at the back of *Cesar*, to relieve their fellows. So that he was fain to fortifie his Camp with two Walls, the one against them within the City, and the other against them without: which done, he kept such diligent watch and ward on both sides, that the besieged heard sooner of the discomfiture of their Friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatal news being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cesar*, then sitting in his Chair of State, disarmed himself, took off his *Horses caparisons*, and laying all upon the ground, sat down at *Cesar*'s feet and became his Prisoner. 6. *Tournus*, encompassed with the *Soasne*. 7. *Semur*, consisting of three parts, each of them severally Walled, and strongly fortified. 8. *Pardun*, 9. *Nayz*, 10. *St. Leger*, famous for medicinal Bathes. 11. *Noyers*, on the Borders towards *Champagne*. 12. *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Antiodorum*; of most note for the Council held here, Anno 627: the Countrey about which is called *Auxerrois*, and was an Earldom of it self. The Title and possession of that *Peter Earl of Auxerre*, who was the third Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*; to whom it came in marriage with his first Wife *Agnes*, the daughter of the last Earl of the former Race. On the fall of which house, it fell unto that of *Chalons*, by the marriage of *Isabel* Niece of the said *Peter* by his brother *Robert*, to *John of Chalons Earl of Burgundy*: to whom succeeded *John de Chalons* his eldest Son by that *Venter* (his second wife) and finally was sold by *John of Chalons*, great Grandchilde of the said *John Earl of Burgundy*, to *Charles* the fifth of *France*, Anno 1370; by whom united to the Crown, subjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is also within this Countrey the great and famous Monastery of *Citeaux*, the mother of so many Religious houses, dispersed up and down in *Europe*, from hence denominated, and subject to the discipline and Rules hereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom (on the South parts of it) stands the Earldom of *CHABROLLOIS*, heretofore the title of the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Burgundy*; so called from *Charolles*, the chief Town hereof, situate in the borders of it, towards *La Bresse*: seized upon with the rest of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* the 11th. immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the 5th. like; restored again to *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the second, of *France*, on the peace made at *Cambray*; and subjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Estate. So that neither the Governour of the Dukedom for the *French King*, nor the Parliament of *Dijon*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lion passant regardant *Or*, armed *Azure*.

The ancient inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the most potent Nations of all *Gaul*: who called in the *Romans*, to aid them in their quarrels against the *Sequani* and *Arverni*, made them all subject unto *Rome*. In the prosperity whereof they made up the Province of *Lugdunensis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the Metropolis or principal City. Afterwards, in the division of the *French Kingdom of Burgundy*, by *Charles* the Bald; this part thereof, being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soasne*, was cantoned into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Autun*, *Lions*, and *Maiscon*: whereof the three first laid together by *Odoor Eudes King of France*, during the minority of *Charles* the Simple, were given unto his brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert Earl of Anjou*) under the style and title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The issue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another, *Robert*, Son of *Hugh Capet King of France*: and the male issue failing of that Line also, it was devolved partly by *Escheat* for want of heirs male, and partly in the right and title of the heir General, to King *John* of *France* the son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* his wife, one of the daughters of *Robert* the third, who with the consent of *Charles* his eldest Son, furnished the Wife, gave it unto his second Son *Philip*, (more worthily furnished the *Hardy*) together with the marriage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An Argument of no great wisdom, as was judiciously observed by King *Lewis* the 11th. For by this means, those great Estates being united in one person, and afterwards these Estates improved by as prosperous marriages; this house of *Burgundy* grew formidable to the Kings themselves: who never left practising against it, till they had brought it to ruine; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Estate from which at first it was dismembred.

The Dukes of Burgundy.

- 890 1. *Richard* of *Saxony*, the second Son of *Robert Earl of Anjou*, brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph Kings of France*.
938 2. *Gilbert*, the second Son of *Richard*.
964 3. *Osbo*, Son of *Hugh Earl of Paris*, furnished the *Great*, and Brother of *Hugh Capet King of France*; was Duke of *Burgundy*, in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.

976 4. *Henry*;

- Burgundy County.*
- 976 4 *Henry*, the Brother of *Otho*.
 1001 5 *Robert*, King of *France*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, succeeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle *Henry*.
 1004 6 *Robert II.* Son of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.
 1075 7 *Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert* by his Sonne *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.
 1097 8 *Odo*, or *Otho II.* Brother of *Hugh*.
 1102 9 *Hugh II.* Son of *Otho* the 2^d.
 1124 10 *Odo*, or *Otho III.* Son of *Hugh* the 2^d.
 1165 11 *Hugh III.* the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the first, in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*.
 1192 12 *Odo*, or *Otho IV.* Son of *Hugh* the 3^d.
 1218 13 *Hugh IV.* an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the 9th in the *Holy-Land*.
 1273 14 *Robert III.* Son of *Hugh* the 4th which *Robert* was the Father of *Margaret*, the Wife of *Lewis Hutin* King of *France* and *Navarre*; and of *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip de Valois*, French King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the *Hardy*, after Duke of *Burgundy*.
 1308 15 *Hugh V.* Son of *Robert* the 3^d.
 1315 16 *Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundy* also in right of his Wife.
 1349 17 *Philip*, the Grand-child of *Eudes* by his only Son *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy* by descent (who if he had lived, had been also Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois* in right of *Margaret* his Wife). But dying young and without issue, he was succeeded in all his Titles and Estates by
 1363 18 *Philip II.* surnamed the *Hardy*, Son of *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the 3^d, by King *John* his Father, with the consent of *Charles* the 5th his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of *Burgundy*, and married *Margaret* daughter of *Lewis de Maline* (and consequently Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundy*) the Widow of his Predecessor.
 1404 19 *John*, surnamed the *Proud*, Son of *Philip* the 2^d, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.
 1419 20 *Philip III.* surnamed the *Good*, who added most of the *Netherlands* to his Estate.
 1467 21 *Charles* the *Wartlike*, Earl of *Charollois*, Son of *Philip* the *Good*. After whose death, slain by the *Switzers*, at the battell of *Nancie*, *Lewis* the 11th seized upon this Dukedom, Anno 1476. pretending an Escheat thereof, for want of *Heirs males*; and so uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*: as by like colour of Escheat, King *John* had formerly entered on it, and given it unto *Philip* his younger Son to the prejudice of the Earls of *Enverex* descended from the daughter and heir of *Lewis Hutin*, and of *Margaret* his Wife, the elder Sister of the Mother of the said King *John*.

Of the great wealth and potency of these last Dukes of *Burgundy*, we shall speak further when we come to the description of *Belgium*: the accession whereof to their Estates, made them equal to most Kings in *Christendom*. But for their *Arms*, which properly belonged to them as Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were *Bendimise* of *Or* and *Azure*, a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is usually marshalled in the Scutcheons of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their possession. The reasons of which are probably (for I go but by guess) partly because this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of his Title to the Dukedom it self, in right of which he holdeth such a great Estate.

22. The County of *BURGUNDIE*.

THE County of *BURGUNDIE* hath on the East, the Mountain *Jour*, which parts it from *Switzerland*; on the West, the *Dutchy* of *Burgundy*, from which divided by the *Saone*; on the North, a branch of the Mountain *Vange*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorraine*; on the South, *La Bresse*. It is reckoned to be 90 miles in length, about 60 in breadth: and with the Provinces of *Dauphine*, *La Bresse*, and *Provence*, made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Saone*; on the Eastern side of which it is wholly situate. This part thereof, now generally called the *French Comie*, or the *Free County*, because not under the command of the *French* Kings; but living in a more free Estate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The Country in some parts very Mountainous, but those Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards; and having in recompense of a little barrenness, an intermixture of most pleasing and fruitful vallies: swelling with plenty of all natural commodities useful unto the life of man; and for the variety of fresh streams, and delightful Riverets, inferior only to the *Dutchy*.

The principal Towns and Cities of it, are, 1 *Besancon*, called by *Cesar*, *Vesontio*, then the chief City of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the Metropolis of the Province entituled *Maxima Sequanorum*; by consequence an Archbishop's See. Seated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almost encompassed; such artificial Fortifications being added to it, as make it very strong

strong both by Art and Nature. But this is an Imperial City, not subject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundy*; honoured with a small University founded here, Anno 1540. by Pope *Julius* the second, and *Charles* the fifth. 2 *Dole*, seated on the same River *Doux*, for riches, strength and beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which it is the Parliament City, and consequently of most resort for dispatch of business. Anciently it was an University for the study of the *Civil Laws*; but now the University is devoured by a College of *Jesuites*: who fearing lest the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches might creep in amongst the people, not only have debarr'd them the use of the *Protestants* Books; but have expressly forbid them to talk of *G O D*, either in a good fort or in a bad. 3 *Salins*, so called from its salt Fountains, out of which came the greatest part of the Earls Revenue; in which respect, or that it was the title of *Otho*, the Son of *Frederick Barbarossa*, before he did attain the Earldom: the Earls of *Burgundy* since that time, and the Emperours of *Germany* in their right, retain the name of Lords of *Salins* in their usual stile. A City honoured for a while with the seat of the Parliament, removed thither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, at such time as he held this Country; beholding to him (being a wife and politick Prince) for many wholesome Ordinances; still observed amongst them. 4 *Poligni*, the Baillie of the *Lower*; as 5 *Vescal* is of the *Higher Burgundy*. 6 *Arboise*, noted for the best Wines; and 7 *Laxoal*, for medicinal Baths. 8 *Nizareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very strong Castle; the ordinary seat and retreat from business of the first Princes of *Orange*, of the house of *Chalons*, who had great possessions in this Country. 9 *Gray*, and 10 *Chastel-Chalon*. 11 *Quingey*. 12 *Orgelet*. Here is also the great and famous Abbey of *Clugny*, near the Town of *Beaune*; out of which 12 free Monasteries in the Western Church, had their first Original.

The old Inhabitants of this County were the *Sequani*, a potent Nation contending with the *Hedui* and *Averni* for the Sovereignty of *Gaul*, till the strife was ended by the *Romans*; under whom it made together with *Switzerland*, the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the *Burgundians*; and by *Rodolph* the last King of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundy*, was given to *Conrade* the second Emperour of *Germany*. After that reckoned as a part of the *German* Empire, and governed by such Earls or Provincial Officers, as those Emperours sent thither. *Otho* of *Flanders*, Son to a Sister of the Emperour *Conrade*, was the first that held it as Proprietary: the other three whom *Paradine* sets before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundy*, being merely Official. It was first united to the *Dutchy* by the marriage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Countess. But no issue coming out of this bed, it fell into the house of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders*, unto *Philip* the *Hardy*, the first Duke hereof, of the Royal Race of *Valois*, Anno 1369. *Philip* the Grand-child of this *Philip*, united most of the *Belgick* Provinces unto his Estate: after whose death, and the death of *Charles* his Son at the battel of *Nancie*; the *Dutchy* was surprized by King *Lewis* the eleventh, as holden of the Crown of *France*, escheated to him for want of *Heirs males*. But the County, holden of the Empire, though subdued also by this *Lewis*, was restored again to *Mary* the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*; continuing hitherto in her issue, as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

The Earls of *Burgundy*.

- 1001 1 *Otho Guillaume*, the first Earl of *Burgundy*, by the power and aid of *Robert* King of *France*.
 1118 2 *Reinald*, Cousin and heir of *Otho*.
 1157 3 *Frederick Barbarossa*, Emperour, in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, Daughter of Earl *Reinald*, was Earl of *Burgundy*.
 1183 4 *Otho* the youngest Son of *Frederick*.
 1200 5 *Otho II.* Duke of *Moranie*, part of the Province of *Tirol* in *Germany*, was Earl of *Burgundy* in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the first.
 1208 6 *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalons*, next heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, the second Daughter of *Otho* the first, and Sister of *Beatrix*, acknowledged by his faction there for Earl of *Burgundy*, in the life of *Otho* the second, whom he dispossessed; and left the same unto his Son, to the prejudice of *Alice* the Daughter of *Otho*.
 1234 7 *John*, Son of *Stephen* de *Chalons*.
 1269 8 *Hugh*, the Son of *John*, married to *Alice* Daughter of *Otho* of *Moranie*, so getting in that pretention also.
 1270 9 *Othelin*, the Son of *Hugh*; Earl of *Artois* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artois*.
 1315 10 *Philip* the Long, King of *France*; Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife; Daughter and heir of *Othelin*.
 1331 11 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, husband of *Joan* of *France*, the eldest Daughter of King *Philip* the Long, and of *Joan* the Countess.
 1349 12 *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Grand-child of *Eudes*, and of *Joan* his Wife, by their Son *Philip*.
 1361 13 *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and second Daughter of *Philip* the Long, and

their Papal power (which then began to bear some sway in the Christian World:) and gave the last (besides the opportunity of attaining the Western Empire) the Title of *Most Christian King*, continued ever since unto his Successors. And to say truth, he well deserved those honours, had they been far greater, by many victories obtained against the Enemies of the Gospel; the several Heathens by his means converted to the Faith of *Christ*; the great abilities he had of estate and judgment, enabling him to support the Majesty of the *Roman Empire*. For he not only was sole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times succeeding, into several petit Kingdoms and Principalities; but had added thereto by his own proper verue the greatest part of *Italy*, the best part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonias*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vast Empire falling into weak hands which were not able enough to manage it, decayed in as little time as it was in raising: partly by the unnatural ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis the Godly*, the next Successor of this *Charles*, who to make themselves all Kings, first deposed their Father, and then divided his Estate amongst them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorraine*, and *Germany*; four of which falling at last into the hands of strangers, ceased to be *French*, and passed into such Families as proved the greatest Enemies of the Crown of *France*: partly by alienating the best and goodliest Provinces of *France* it self, never again united till these later days; which made the *French Kings* less considerable, both at home and abroad, which we have touched upon before: and partly by the weakness and unworthiness of the Kings of his race; there being no question to be made, but *Lewis the Stammering*, *Charles the Bald*, the *Grofs*, and the *Simple*, would have found better Attributes, if they had deserved them. For by this means, the issue of this brave Prince grew so despicable in the eyes of their Subjects, that first *Eudes* the Son of *Robert Duke of Anjou*: and after, *Rodolph Duke of Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Eudes*; (both of the race of *Witikindus* the last Prince of the *Saxons* (and consequently both Aliens to the house of *Charles*) possessed themselves severally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depressed and overborn by their opposite factions; yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his and overborn by their opposite factions; yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on; Who being Son of *Hugh the Great*, Count of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert Duke of Anjou*, younger brother of *Eudes*, and near Kinsman of *Rodolph*; never left practising his party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got possession of the Regal Diadem, wherewith two Princes of his house had been invested formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this second Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjust grounds of an usurpation; they are these that follow.

The second Race of the Kings of *France*, of the Carolovian or Boiarian Line.

- A.Ch.
751 1 *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, succeeded in the Office of *Maire*, Anno 742. and having got the Regal Crown, vanquished the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* tributary, and crushed the *Saxons*. 18.
769 2 *Charles*, surnamed the Great, the son of *Pepin*, subdued the Kingdoms of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the *Boiarians*, and *Avars*, and vanquished the *Saracens* of *Spain*: Crowned Emperour of the West, upon *Christmas* day, by Pope *Leo* the third, Anno 800. 46.
815 3 *Lewis the Godly*, Son of *Charles King of France* and Emperour, the last sole Monarch of the *French*, deposed by his ambitious and unnatural Sons: the Empire of the *French* after his decease, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, *France*, and *Lorraine*; and *France* it self distracted into many Sovereign Estates and Principalities. 26.
841 4 *Charles II.* surnamed *Calvus*, or the Bald, youngest Son of *Lewis*, King of *France* and Emperour; vanquished by *Charles the Grofs*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.
879 5 *Lewis II.* surnamed *Balbus*, or the Stammering, Son of *Charles the Bald*, King of *France* and Emperour.
881 6 *Lewis III.* with *Caroloman* his brother, the base Sons of *Lewis the Stammering*; Usurpers of the Throne in the infancy of *Charles the Simple*.
886 7 *Charles III.* surnamed *Craffus*, or the Grofs, King of *Germany* and Emperour; called into *France* and elected King, during the Minority of *Charles the Simple*. 5.
891 8 *Odo* or *Eudes*, Son of *Robert Earl of Anjou*, of the race of *Witikindus* the last King of the *Saxons*; elected by an opposite Faction, ousted *Charles the Grofs*. 9.
900 9 *Charles IV.* surnamed *Simplex*, or the Simple, the Posthumus Son of *Lewis the Stammerer*, restored unto the Throne of his Fathers: which after many troubles raised against him by *Robert* the second, Earl of *Anjou* (whom he slew in Battel) he was forced to resign. 27.
927 10 *Rodolph of Burgundy*, Son of *Richard Duke of Burgundy* the brother of *Eudes*, succeeded on the resignation of *Charles the Simple*. 2.
929 11 *Lewis IV.* Son of *Charles the Simple*, surnamed *Trafmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers troubles he had lived in *England*; restored unto the regal Throne on the death of *Rodolph*: opposed therein by *Hugh Earl of Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of King *Eudes* by his brother *Robert* beforementioned.

- 958 12 *Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis* the 4th. disturbed in his possession by *Hugh Capet*, the eldest Son of the said *Hugh*, on the pretension of that house, by which at last he got the Kingdom.
977 13 *Lewis V.* Son of *Lotharius*, the last King of the house of *Charles the Great*. After whose death (being King only for a year) the Crown was seized on by *Hugh Capet*; *Charles Duke of Lorraine*, brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the present race of the Kings of *France*, founded in *Hugh Capet*, so called from the greatness of his head; Son of *Hugh* the Great, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the second Earl of *Anjou*: which *Robert* was the brother of *Eudes*, and Cousin German of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*. Who partly by his own wits, but chiefly by the weakness of the mungrel issue of *Charles* the Great, having got the Diadem; transmitted it unto his posterity: the Crown descending in a direct line from Father to Son, till the death of *Lewis* the tenth, surnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to understand, that the Realm of *France* was at that time shut up within narrower bounds than it is at the present: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poitou*, *Languedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*, besides those Provinces which constituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, being aliened and dismembred from it. How they became reduced to the Crown again, will be discerned in the ensuing History, and Succession of

The third Race of the Kings of *France*, of the Capetine or Saxon Line.

- 988 1 *Hugh Capet*, of whom sufficiently before. 9.
997 2 *Robert*, the son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* also. 34.
1031 3 *Henry*, the eldest Son of *Robert*; his younger brother *Robert* being settled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.
1061 4 *Philip*, the son of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown. 49.
1110 5 *Lewis VI.* son of *Philip*, surnamed the Grofs. 28.
1138 6 *Lewis VII.* son of *Lewis* the sixth, an Adventurer in the War of the Holy Land: as also was his Son and Successor.
1181 7 *Philip II.* surnamed *Augustus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their several Appendices, were taken from King *John* of *England*. 43.
1224 8 *Lewis VIII.* Son of *Philip Augustus*. 3.
1227 9 *Lewis IX.* surnamed the Saint, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt*, and the Holy Land. He restored *Gaienne* to the *English*, and added the Earldoms of *Tholose* and *Macon*, to the Crown of *France*. 44.
1227 10 *Philip III.* son of *Lewis* the ninth. 15.
1286 11 *Philip IV.* surnamed the Fair, King also of *Navarre* in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.
1314 12 *Lewis X.* surnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre* in right of his Mother, whom he succeeded in that Kingdom, Anno 1305. After whose death the Kingdom of *France* was to have descended on *Joan* his Daughter. 2.
1315 13 *Philip V.* called the Long, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by threats, promises, and other practices, caused a Law to pass (to which he gave the name of the *Salique Law*) for disabling Women from the Succession to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brothers Daughter; served in the same kind himself, by his Brother *Charles*; who following his example, excluded, on the same pretence, his Nieces *Joan*, and *Margaret*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.
1320 14 *Charles IV.* but in true account the fifth of that name, most commonly called *Charles the Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis*, the two last Kings. After whose death began the Wars of the *English* for the Crown of *France*; challenged by King *Edward* the third, as Son and heir of *Isabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip the Fair*, and Sister to the three last Kings. 7.
1328 15 *Philip VI.* surnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles Earl of Valois*, the second son of King *Philip* the third, and Uncle to the three last Kings; succeeded under colour of the *Salique Law*: of which *Charles* it is said, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himself was no King. In this Kings dayes was fought the famous Battel of *Crecie*, Anno 1343: in which the *French Army* consisted of about 70000 Souldiers; the *English* of 11800 only; yet the victory fell unto the *English*: by whose valour fell that day *John King of Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Souldiers. He added unto his Estates, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the Country of *Dauphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.
1350 16 *John*, the son of *Philip de Valois*, in whose reign was fought the battel of *Poitiers*, wherein *Edward* the black Prince, (so called for his black Acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Souldiers (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French Army* consisting of 40000 men: of which they flew besides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Souldiers, and took Prisoners King *John* himself, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen. 14.

- 1364 17 Charles V. the son of John, recovered all those pieces (except only *Calice*) which the English had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles the Wise*, but *Lewis* the 11th. would by no means allow him that attribute: affirming that it was but a foolish part to give his younger brother Philip the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withall the heir of *Flanders* to Wife. And so it proved in the event.
- 18 Charles VI. a weak and distracted Prince, in whose reign Henry the fifth of England, called in by the Faction of *Burgundy* against that of *Orleans*; married the Lady *Katharine*, daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of France during the Kings life, and heir of this Kingdom. But he had first won the great battel of *Agincourt*, Anno 1415. in which the English having an Army but of 15000, vanquished an Army of the French consisting of 52000 men, of which were slain 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons; the English losing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Souldiers. This unfortunate Prince lost what his Predecessor Philip the second had taken from King John of England, and had not been reftored by King *Lewis* the ninth.
- 1423 19 Charles VII. Son of Charles the sixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the English (then divided by domestick dissention) all their Lands and Signories in France, except *Calice* only.
- 1461 20 Lewis XI. son of Charles the seventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithal a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicily*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of so great wants, or such sordid parsimony; that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of *Accompts* in *Paris* of two shillings for new sleeves to his old doublet, and three half pence for liquor to greafe his Boots.
- 1484 21 Charles VIII. son of Lewis the 11th. who quickly won, and as soon lost the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the right of the house of *Anjou*. By the marriage of *Anne* the heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.
- 1498 22 Lewis XII. son of Charles, and Grand-son of Lewis Dukes of *Orleans*, (which Lewis was a younger son of the fifth;) succeeded as the next heir-male of the house of *Valois*. He dispossessed *Ludowick Sforze* of the Dutchy of *Milain*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; but held neither long. By his marriage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predecessor, he confirmed that Dukedom to his House; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his death the English; to prevent the growing greatness of *Spain*, began to close in with the French, and grew into great correspondencies with them; insomuch that all the following Kings, until Lewis the 13th. (except Francis the second, a King of one year and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.
- 1515 23 Francis, Duke of *Angouleme*, Grandson of John of *Angouleme*, one of the younger Sons of the said Lewis Duke of *Orleans*, succeeded on the death of Lewis the twelfth, without issue male. Took Prisoner at the battel of *Pavie*, by Charles the fifth, with whom he held perpetual wars; he being as unwilling to endure a Superiour, as the Emperour was to admit an Equal. 32.
- 1547 24 Henry II. Son of Francis, recovered *Calice* from the English, and drove Charles out of *Germany*, and took from him *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three Imperial Cities; ever since Members of this Kingdom. 12.
- 1559 25 Francis II. son of Henry the second, King of the Scots also, in the right of *Mary* his wife.
- 1560 26 Charles IX. brother of Francis the second, the Author of the Massacre at *Paris*. 14.
- 1574 27 Henry III. elected King of *Poland* in the life of his brother, whom he succeeded at his death. The last King of the house of *Valois*, stripped of his life and Kingdom by the *Guisan* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 19.
- 1589 28 Henry IV. King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendosme*, succeeded as the next heir-male to Henry the third, in the right of the house of *Bourbon*, descended from Robert Earl of *Clermont*, a younger son of Lewis the ninth. He ruined the *Holy League*, cleared France of the *Spaniards*, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid *La Breff* unto the Crown, together with the Estates of *Bearn*, and *Base Navarre*; and after a ten years time of peace, was villanously murdered by *Ravillac*, in the streets of *Paris*. 21.
- 1610 29 Lewis XIII. son of Henry the fourth, the most absolute King of France since the death of Charles the Great. For to the reduction of the scattered and dismembred Provinces (the work of his many Predecessors) he added the reduction of all the Ports and Garrisons held by the *Hugonots* in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the least in number) seized on the Dukedom of *Bar*, and surprized that of *Lorraine*, both which he held untill his death. 32.
- 1642 30 Lewis XIV. son of Lewis the thirteenth, and of the Lady *Anne*, eldest daughter of Philip the third of *Spain*, succeeded at the age of four years under the Government of his Mother: the 30th King of the Line of *Capet*, the 43d. from Charles the Great, and the 64th. King of France (or rather of the French) now living.

As for the Government of these Kings, it is merely *Regal*, or, to give it the true name, *Despoticall*; such as that of a Matter over his Servants: the Kings Will going for a Law, and his *Edicts* as valid as a Sentence

Sentence of the Court of Parliament. *Quod Principi placuerit, Legis habet vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the Roman Emperours, as *Justinian* tells us in his *Institutes*: and the French Kings descending from Charles the Great, claim it as their own. The Kings *Edicts* always ending with these binding words, *Car tel est nostre Plaisir*, for such is our pleasure. And though he sometimes sends his *Edicts* to be verified, or approved, in the Parliament of *Paris*; and his Grants and Patents to be ratified in the Chamber of *Accompts* there holden: yet this is nothing but a meer formality, and point of circumstance; those Courts not daring to refuse what the King proposeth. It is *Car tel est nostre Plaisir*, which there goeth for Law. And by this intimation of his Royal Pleasure, doth he require such Taxes, as the necessity of his affairs, the greediness of his Officers, or the impurity of Suiters do suggest unto him: The Patrimony of the Crown being so exhausted by the riot and impvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garrisons, reward such as deserve well of him, and support those that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaseth on the backs of his Subjects; against which there is no dispute by the Common People, though many times the Great Princes have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them also instrumental to the publick slavery, the Kings are willing to admit them to some part of their spoyl, to give them some exemptions from those common burdens; and to connive at the oppressing of their Tenants, against all good conscience: that being so priviledged themselves, they may not interrupt the King in his *Regal Courses*.

As for the French Parliaments or Assembly of the three Estates, which heretofore were of great credit and renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the publick liberty, being first discontinued by reason of the sharp and continual wars which the English made in this Kingdom for the space of 100 years and upwards, they afterward became much weakened by the policy of King Lewis the 11th, and the Kings succeeding, and finally by King Lewis the 13th. were laid by for ever. For finding them to retain something still of their ancient stomach, and apt enough to clash with that absolute Sovereignty which his Predecessors had attained to, he resolved to make no more use of them for the times to come; in stead whereof he ordained another kind of meeting, which he called *La Assamblee des Nattables*, that is to say, the Assembly of some principal men, composed of some selected persons out of every Order or Estate (of his own nomination) whereunto should be added some Counsellour out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which being fewer in number would not breed such a confusion as the others did, and be withall more pliant and conformable to the Kings desires. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before mentioned, being but as so many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in *Westminster*) are these that follow, that is to say, the Parliament 1 of *Paris*, comprehending the Countries of France special, *Champagne*, *Picardy*, the Provinces and estates of *Anjou*, *La Beausse*, *Berry*, *Poitou*, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Country of *Limois*; 2 of *Rouen*, for the Dukedom of *Normandy*; 3 of *Renes*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*; 4 of *Bourdeaux*, for the whole Dukedom of *Aquitain*, (except only *Bearn*) with the Countries of *Limousin*, and *Perigot*; 5 of *Tholouse*, for the Earldom of *Languedoc*, and *Quercu*; 6 of *Aix*, for the Earldom of *Provence*; 7 of *Gremble* for the Country of *Dauphin*; and 8 of *Biajon*, for the Dukedom of *Burgundy* and the small Country of *La Breff*; to which is added of late times by King Lewis the 13th. the little Parliament of *Pau* for the Country of *Bearn*. Besides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in some principal Cities, called Courts Presidial, resembling those with us at *Tork*, and the Marches of *Wales* whilest they continued in that power and jurisdiction, which at first they had. And for the better ordering of the whole estate (with reference especially to matters military) it is divided into 12 several and distinct Governments, that is to say, 1 of the Isle of France, 2 *Burgundy*, 3 *Normandy*, 4 *Guien*, 5 *Bretagne*, 6 *Champagne*, 7 *Picardy*, 8 *Languedoc*, 9 *Provence*, 10 *Dauphine*, 11 *Lionois*, and 12 *Orleanois*, for in this order they were ranked by the last King: over every one of which is placed a Governour with such authority as the Lords Lieutenants had in *England* in their several Counties; all of them carrying matters with a very high hand on the common people, and sometimes standing on terms also with the Kings themselves, but instrumental notwithstanding to the common servitude which hath been laid upon this Nation generally, as before it said.

The power of the French King over his Subjects being so transcendent, it cannot be, but that his Forces must be very great; and would be greater then they are, but that they dare not trust the common people with the use of Arms, for fear they should refuse to pay the accustomed Taxes, or forsake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords: But for an Essay of what a French King is able to do in this kind, it is said, that Charles the 9th. in Garrisons and several Armies in the field, had 15000 Horse, and 100000 Foot of his own Nation; besides 50000 Horse and Foot of *Swisses*, *Germans*, and others. Nor was this more then what was done by Lewis the 13th. within few years past, who had at once five Royal Armies in the field in *Italy*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and the *Belgick* Provinces; and kept no fewer then 120000 fighting men in pay and action for some years together. Nor did this last King keep up the military power of France for Land-service only at so high a pitch, but he also brought the Naval power thereof into estimation. For whereas the French Kings before his time were very weak and inconsiderable on the Seas, and had scarce any men of War but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations; this King became so strong in shipping in a little space (I doubt some neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rig and arm 10000 sail of good Ships and upwards, fit for any service. But to re-

turn again to the power at land, in which the force of these Kings doth consist especially, it is conceived by some and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the field for a sudden service, no less than 60 Companies of *Men of Arms*, 20 Cornets of *Light Horse*, and five Companies of *Harcubisers* on Horse-back; which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Ensigns of *French Foot*, and 40 of *Swisses*; and yet leave his *Garrisons* well manned, and his *Fortis* and *Frontiers* well and sufficiently defended.

What the *Revenues* are in a State so subject to the will and pleasure of the King, it is hard to say; being also more or less, as the times and their occasions vary: according unto which the *Revenues* of this Crown have much altered. *Lewis* the 11th. gathered one million and a half of Crowns; *Francis* the first brought them to 3 Millions, his successor *Henry* the second to six, *Charles* the ninth to seven, *Henry* the third to ten; afterwards they were increased to fifteen. And in the time of *Henry* the 4th. the Treasurer of the Duke of *Mayenne* did not shame to say, That his Master had more improved the Revenue of *France*, than any King had done before him, advancing it from two to five millions *sterling*. A fair *Intrado*, but far short of those infinite sums which are extorted from the People, whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the Kings *Exchequer*. But what need more be said than that of *Lewis* the 11th. who used to say, That *France* was a Meadow which he mowed every year, and as often as he lifted: and indeed their Impositions cannot but be great, since there are no less than 30000 under-officers employed to gather them. Hence I believe sprung that wish of *Maximilian* the Emperour, which was, that he (if it were possible) might be a God; and that having two Sons, the eldest might be a God after him, and the second King of *France*. And this was also the cause, that in the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the first, when the Emperours Herald had bid defiance to the King, from *Charles* Emperour of *Germany*, King of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Aragon*, and *Naples*, Archduke of *Austria*, &c. with the rest of his titles: the King commanded the Herald to return the challenge from *Francis* King of *France*; commanding him to repeat *France* as many times as the other had petty Earldoms in his title. And on the other side, of no less bravery and fanie was the saying of the Duke of *Alva*, who being dissuaded by one of his Commanders from the War with the *Netherlands*, in regard of the great support they were like to have from the Queen of *England*, the King of *Denmark*, the Dukes of *Saxony* and *Brunswick*, the Earls of *Nassau*, &c. Tush man (said he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our side than theirs, that is to say, the Emperour of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Kings of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Milain*, the Earls of *Halsburg*, *Charolais*, &c. But letting pass these flashes and conceits of wit; certain it is (to say the truth) considering the compactedness thereof within it self, the admirable fertility of the soyl, the incredible multitudes of People, and the convenience of situation betwixt *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*, the name of *France* might ballance all the others titles.

The chief Orders of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, were first of the *Gennet*, founded by *Charles Martel*, *Mayre* of the *French Palace*: and so called, either from *Jane* his Wife, as *Haillan* would have it; or from the *Gennets*, of *Spain*, over whom he triumphed at the batel of *Tours*, as *Bellay* writeth. It ended in the dayes of *S. Lewis*. The Knights of the Order wore a Ring wherein was engraven the form of a *Gennet*.

2 Of the *Pairrie* or twelve Peers, so called, *quasi pares inter se*, said to be instituted by *Charles* the Great in his Wars against the *Saracens*. Six of these were of the Clergy. 1 The Archbishop and Duke of *Rhemes*, 2 the Bishop and Duke of *Laon*, 3 the Bishop and Duke of *Langres*, 4 the Bishop and Earl of *Beauvois*, 5 the Bishop and Earl of *Noyon*, and 6 the Bishop and Earl of *Chalons*; and six others of the Temporality; 1 the Duke of *Burgundy*, 2 Duke of *Normandy*, 3 Duke of *Guienne*, 4 Earl of *Tholouse*, 5 Earl of *Champagne*, 6 Earl of *Flanders*. These are they so much memoriz'd in the Legends of the old *French* Writers, but fallly, and on no ground: it being impossible that those should be of the foundation of *Charles* the Great, in whose time there were none of those Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of *Tholouse* only. Therefore with better reason it may be thus concluded on, that the *Twelve Peers* were instituted by *Charles* the Great, though that honour not by him appropriated unto any particular Estates and Titles; but left at large to be disposed of according to the personal merit of the best deservers: it being most sure, that neither *Rowland* nor *Oliver*, nor Duke *Naimmes*, nor *Ogier* the *Dane*, had any of the titles above mentioned. But for the fixing of this dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is said by some to have been done by *Hugh Capet*; others refer it to *Lewis* the 7th. in whose times all those Dukes and Earls were in *Rebus Natura*. But by whomsoever first ordained, the *Temporal Pairries* are extinct; and others, of no definite number, created by the Kings, as they see occasion, to gratifie a well deserver. Only at *Coronations*, and such publick *Triumphs*, the custom is to choose some principal persons out of the Nobility to represent those *Temporal Peers*; as at the *Coronation* of *Lewis* the 13th. the places of the *Temporal Peers* were supplied by the Princes of *Conde* and *Conty*, the Earl of *Soissons*, the Dukes of *Nevers*, *Elbeuf*, and *Espernon*: the *Ecclesiastical Peers* remaining as at first they were. So that though *Charles* the Great might devise this Order, and institute the first *Twelve Peers*, as is commonly said; yet was not that high honour fixed in any of those *Temporal Princes*, till the times succeeding; but given to men of several houses, according to the Kings pleasure, and their well deservings.

3 Of the *Star*, begun by *John* King of *France*, Anno 1352. They wore about their necks a collar of Gold, at the which hanged a *Star*: the word, *Monstrant Regibus astrum*. This Order was disgraced by his Son *Charles*, in communicating it to his *Guard*: and so it ended.

4. Of *St. Michael*, instituted by King *Lewis* the eleventh, Anno 1149. It consisted first of 36 Knights, which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask down to the ground, with a border interwoven with *Cockle shells* of gold, interlaced and furred with *Ermings*; with an hood of crimson Velvet, and a long tipper. About their necks they wore a collar woven with *Cockle-shells*: the word, *Immensi tremor Oceani*. It took the name from the picture of *St. Michael* conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the collar. Some think, that the invocation of *St. Michael*, was in allusion to the tenth of *Daniel*. Others say, he took *St. Michael*, in regard of an apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the seventh, on *Orleans Bridge* in his Wars against the *English*. The Seat thereof was first at *St. Michaels Mount* in *Normandy*, a place which had held longest for the *French* Kings against the *English*; but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. *St. Michaels* day, the time of the Solemnity, and *Mount St. Michael* the name of the Herald which did attend upon the Order; which in most things was preceded by that of the *Garret*.

5. Of the *Holy Ghost*, ordained by *Henry* the third, Anno 1579. to rectifie the abuses which had crept into that of *St. Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy persons: to reduce which to its first esteem, he ordered that the Collar of *St. Michael* should be given to none who had not first been dignified with this of the *Holy Ghost*; into which none to be admitted, but such as can prove their Nobility by three descents. Their Oath is to maintain the *Romish Catholick* Religion, and persecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe a black Velvet Mantle, powdered with *Lillies* and *Flames* of Gold: the Collar of *Flower de Lyces*, and *Flames* of gold, with a *Crofs* and a *Dove* appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the name of the *Holy Ghost*, because he was on a *Whitsunday* chosen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit Orders, as those of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorency*; of the *Porcupine*, by them of *Orleans*; and of the *Thistle*, by them of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of the *French* Kings in the dayes of *Pharamond* and his three first Successors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, Or. *Clovis* the Great altered them to *Azure*, Seme of *Flower de Lyces*, Or; and *Charles* the sixth to *Azure*, 3 *Flower de Lyces*, Or. In which last changes they were followed by the Kings of *England*, varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did; and by the *Princes* of the blood, who bare the Arms of *France*, with some difference only, for the distinction of their Houses.

There are in FRANCE,

Archbishops 17. Bishops 107.

And Universities 15.

Viz.

1 Paris.	6 Caen.	11 Montpellier.
2 Orleans.	7 Rhemes.	12 Avignon.
3 Bourges.	8 Bourdeaux.	13 Lyons.
4 Poitiers.	9 Tholouse.	14 Besancon.
5 Angiers.	10 Nismes.	15 Dole.

And so much for FRANCE.

THE

unable to sustain great multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of men to labour and manure the Land. And 6 and last of all, the *Impotency of both Sexes* for Generation; the men being generally more hot upon their lusts, than able for Generation; and the women for the most part beginning to be Mothers so extremely young, that nature is decay'd, and spent in them, before they have run half their course. And 'tis a most true and undoubted Maxime, that the greatness of Cities, and populousness of Kingdoms and Common-wealths, do much depend on the *generative virtue* of the men, and the *nutritive virtue* of the foyle in which they live.

It is situate in the more Southernly part of the Northern temperate Zone, and almost in the midst of the fourth and sixth *Climates*: the longest day being fifteen hours and a quarter in length, in the most Northern parts hereof; but in the extreme South near to *Gibraltar*, not above fourteen. Which situation of this Countrey rendreth the Air here very clear and calm, seldom obscured with mists and vapours, and not so much subject to diseases as more Northern Regions.

They are a mixt People, descending from the *Goths*, *Moors*, *Jews*, and the antient *Spaniards*. From the *Jews* they borrow Superstition, from the *Moors* Melancholy, Pride from the *Goths*, and from the old *Spaniards* the desire of Liberty. The *Jews* first planted here by the Emperor *Adrian*, who having totally banished them their Native Countrey, sent them thither to dwell: the total number of which Plantation is said to amount to 500000 men, women, and children; and yet their numbers much increased in the time of *Uldor Ulet* the great *Caliph* of the *Sarazens*, who having made a Conquest of *Spain*, sent thither 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, the better to assure it to him. And so they have the coming in of the *Moors* and *Jews*, the Conquest of it by the *Goths*, and their settling here, shall be shewn hereafter: which several Nations by long time, and intermarriages together, were at last incorporated into one. For their condition, it is said that they are highly conceited of themselves, great Braggards, and extremely proud, even in the lowest ebbe of Fortune. Which last appeareth by the tale of the poor Cocker on his death-bed, who (as *Barkley* in his *Icon Animorum* reporteth the story) commanded his eldest Son, coming to him for his last blessing, to endeavour to retain the majesty worthy so great a Family; *Memineris* (said he) *in majestatem assurgere familia tua dignam*. The same Author relateth another story to the like purpose. A woman of this Countrey attended on by three of her brats; went a begging from door to door. Some *French* Merchants travelling that way, and pitying her case, offered her to take into their service the bigger of her boys. But the proud, though poor, scorning, as she said, that any of her lineage should endure a Prentiship, returned this answer: *Qui aut tu, aut ego, sciamus, in qua fata sit genitus? For ought see or any knew, her Son* (simply as he stood there) *might live to be King of Spain*. Not much unlike to these is that tale of a *Spanish* Cavaliero, who being for some faults by him committed, whipped through the principal streets of *Paris*; and keeping a sober pace, was advised by a friend to make more haste, that he might the sooner be out of his pain: But he half in choler, replied, *That he would not lose the least step of his pace, for all the whipping in Paris*. For indeed their gate is Genet-wise, very stately and majestic.

Of temperate they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to women, and yet not very able for Generation. And this strong inclination unto women which they find in themselves, makes them so jealous of their *Wives*, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church: and then too veiled and so hooded, one can hardly see them; and not that neither, but attended with their Damocels, and some truly she-friend, that is to give an account of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, an Ambassador from *Spain*, in *Queen Elizabeths* time, used to find fault with the promiscuous sitting of men and women in the Church, used here in *England*; accounting it to be a very great incentive unto lasciviousness. To whom Doctor *Dale*, one of the *Masters of the Requests*, is said to have replied, that indeed in *Spain*, where the people even in the time of *Divine Service* could not abstain from impure thoughts, and unclean gestures, that mingled kind of sitting was not so allowable: but the *English* were of another temper, and did not find any inconvenience in it. And it is possible, this humour of jealousy might be derived on them from the *Moors*, who in the strict guarding of their women, were the *Spaniards* Tutors: it being death in *Barbarie*, to this very day, for any man to see one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they see a man, though but through a casement, they do not presently cry out. A frenzie which much rageth in most Southern people, but not predominant in the Northern; who do not only suffer their *Wives* to sit with other men in the Church, but even in the open and common Bathes also; two things which a true *Spaniard* would rather die an hundred deaths, than give consent to. But though the women are not permitted to stir abroad, the men take liberty enough; and are as good smell-feasts as in any Countrey: it being observed of them by a very good Writer, that howsoever in their own houses they are temperate and content with little; yet when they go unto a Feast, they are as gluttonous, dainty, and delirous to make good cheer, as any people whatsoever.

But not to conceal their virtues, and make our selves merry at their follies, (wherein all other Nations have a share with them) they are unquestionably a people very grave in their carriages, in offices of piety very devout, and to their King very obedient; whose greatness they affect more cordially than any Subjects in the world: exact in doing justice upon all Offenders, which commonly they administer without partiality: indulgent unto one another, and of their duties to their betters not unmindful. But that which deserveth the greatest commendation in them, is an unwearied patience in suffering adversities, accompanied with a resolution to overcome them. A noble quality, of the which in their *Indian* Discoveries they shewed excellent proofs, and received as glorious rewards: withal, of very daring spirits, great undertakers for the most part, and to say truth, the greatest enlargers of their Dominions (according to the advantages

of

of their situation) of any Nation under heaven. For having first either exterminated or subdued the *Moors*, which for many hundreds of years were possessed of this Continent, the *Aragonians* lying on the *Mediterranean*, added to their estate the Islands of *Majorca*, and *Minorca*, the Kingdoms of *Sicilie*, and *Sardinia*, and the Realm of *Naples*; the *Castilians*, lying on both sides of the Straits, first took in some of the opposite Towns on the coast of *Africa*, next conquered the *Canaries* or *Fortunate* Islands, and finally discovered and subdued the most part of *America*; the *Portugals* lying with a long Sea-coast on the Western Ocean, possessed themselves of the *Azores*, most of the Sea Towns of *Morocco*, and the land of *Guinnia*, and doubling the Cape of good hope made themselves Masters of many Ports and Islands of great consequence in the *East-Indies*, adding thereto in fine the large Countrey of *Brazil* in that part of *America* which lay fittest for them; and the *Navarrois* (to conclude) (though locked up by their greater neighbours from all trade at Sea, and consequently enlarging their Dominions that way) adding to their estates the most part of *Gascogne*, the Palatinate of *Champagne*, the Earldom of *Eureux*, with many fair and large possessions in the Realm of *France* thereupon depending.

In reference to the *French*, it is said that the *French* are wiser than they seem, and the *Spaniards* seem wiser than they are: wherein they agree with many particular men of other Nations, who according to the Philosopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non esse, quam esse & non videri*.

In matters of war the *Spaniards* are observed to be generally too heavy, slow, and dull; the *French* too heady and precipitate; the one losing as many fair occasions by delays, as the other overthroweth by too much haste: but between them both they make one good fouldier; who according to the present opportunities, is to make use of the spur of courage, or the bit of respect. But of the strange and many differences in temper, humour and affections, between the *Spaniards* and the *French*, we have spoke more at large already when we were in *France*.

The Women are sober, loving their husbands or friends; wonderful delicate, curious in painting or perfuming; and though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old *English* Proverb, that none are worse food than the *Woomakers* wife. Herein worse condition than the Women of *France*, who though they are restrained from Wine before their marriage; yet after that they take what liberty they list, and are no more restrained from it than the other sex. But this is the least liberty, which the *French* Women have above the *Spanish*: these being so watched and over-looked, that it is hardly possible for them to hold speech with any man, in business of most importance, and much less in matters of civilities only; those having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the presence of their husbands, without any distrust or interruption. Heretofore they were wondrous strong, and beyond belief, patient of the throws of Childbed: *Strabo* relating how one of these women being hired for harvest work, and finding her travel come upon her, because she would not lose her dayes wages, withdrew her self into a bush; where being eased of her burden, she returned from one labour to another. And many of them at this day use not to keep their Chambers above three dayes after their delivery, and then apply themselves to their household business without either danger or delay.

The language is not the same in all places, though all called the *Spanish*. In *Portugal*, *Catalogne*, and some parts of *Valencia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in these parts have had much trade and negotiation. In *Granada*, and some parts of *Andaluzia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the Mountains of *Alpujarras*, the *Arabic* or *Moorish* language still remains in use. The Countreys bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biscay* specially) have much in them of the Language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made subject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spanish* or *Castilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latin*; *Breewood* in his *Enquiries* reporting that he hath seen a letter, every word whereof was both good *Latin* and good *Spanish*. *Merrila* shews a Copy of the like, pag. 300. By reason of which consonancy with the *Latine*, the *Spaniards* call their Language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue are generally the *Gothish*, *Arabic*, and old *Spanish*, and in some places the *French* also, as before is said; those people having made great conquests, and having had great negotiations in this Countrey. It is said to be a very lofty swelling speech, as if it were fashioned to command.

And as their Language, so their Laws do owe a great part of themselves to the Laws of *Rome*: the Civil or Imperial Laws being generally used amongst them, but intermixt with many customs of the *Goths*, and the Edicts or constitutions of their several Kings. Those of the *Goths* being first committed unto writing, and reduced to order by *Euricus* the first King of the *Goths* in *Spain*: those of *Castile* digested by the command of *Ferdinand* the third, Anno 1296. into seven Books called the *Partidas*; not finished till the time of his son *Alonso*. *Leges Hispaniarum quas Partitas vocant, in volumen rededit, as Tarapha* hath told us of him in his *Spanish* History. The like done by King *James* the first for the Realm of *Aragon*, An. 1248. respectively confirmed and ratified by the Kings succeeding. Authorized to be read and disputed on in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals*, the *Code*, the *Pandects*, or any other part of the Civil or Canon Laws.

The Soil hereof, where it is fertile and productive of the fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for delight, pleasures, and commodities; which here appear in greater ripeness and perfection than in other places. But for the most part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbered with wilde and rocky Mountains, or of so hot a nature, and so sandy withal, that it is not very fit for tillage; and so deficient in Water, as not good for Pasturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremie*, where it is good, no Countrey better; where bad and barren, few so inconvenient, and not any worse. But this defect of outward beauty and Commodities, is recompensed

Y 2

by

by those within ; affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and some Mines of Silver : of which last to abundant in preceeding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations ; and it is said of *Anibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Countrey of the *Turdetani* (now part of *Andaluzia*) he received 3000 pound weight daily, for long time together. The principal commodities which they vend into other Countreys, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Licoras, a fine sort of Wool, Cork, Rolin, Limmons, Raisins, Oranges, and fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the staff of life, they are so defective, that they receive the greatest part of what they spend from *Italie*, *Sicilie*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair nor many, the Countrey being not able to breed them, so that their Diet is on Salads, and fruits of the Earth ; every Gentleman being limited what flesh he shall buy for himself and his Family : which if he fend for to the Butcher, or Poulterer by the smallest child, able to do the Errand for him ; he is sure not to be defrauded in price, or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant fare, as if they surfeited with the plenty of all provisions : handsomely checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Souldier Sir *Roger Williams*. Of whom it is said, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus foolishly bragging of his Countrey salads, he gave him this answer, *You have indeed good sawce in Spain, but we have dainty Beefs, Veals, and Muttons to eat with that sawce ; and as God made beasts to live upon the grafs of the earth, so he made men to live upon them*. And it is observ'd, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good dish to his Supper, you shall find all the feathers scattered before his door by the next morning.

And as it is in private houses, so for travelling also, the Innes and *Vents* of this Countrey are very ill provided : infomuch, that most men that would not go supperless to sleep, carry their provision at their saddle bows ; and men of worth, their bedding also. So poor and mean is the entertainment in these places.

Here lived in ancient times the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quell'd by *Hercules* : and in the flourishing of the *Roman Empire*, 1 *Seneca* the *Tragician*, and 2 the *Philosopher* of the same name ; a man of that happy memory, that he could repeat 2000 names in the same order that they were rehearsed : as also 3 *Quintilian* the Oratour, 4 *Lucan*, and 5 *Martial*, excellent in their kinds, 6 *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7 *Trogus Pompeius*, with his Epitomator, 8 *Justin*, and 9 *Paulus Orosius* the Historian, this last a *Christian*. In the middle times 10 *Isidore* Bishop of *Sevil*, 11 *Julian*, and 12 *Hildefonsus* Bishops of *Toledo* ; and after them *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr, men learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1 The renowned Cardinal *Francis Ximenes*, and 2 *Arias Montanus*, famous for the Editions of the holy Bible ; 3 *Mafius*, a learned Commentator ; 4 *Ojovius*, well seen in the *Latine* elegancies : and before all, as well in industry as time, 5 *Tostatus* Bishop of *Avila*, a man so copious and industrious in his writings, that it is thought he writ more sheets than he lived dayes. But of late times we finde but few of their Works which have passed the Mountains, the *Latine* which they write being very coarse, and favouring too much of the *Schoolman*, (wherein their excellency consists) and therefore they set out their Works most commonly in their own tongue only. The chief for Souldiery amongst them were formerly *Viriathus*, who held out so long against the *Romans* ; *Trajan* and *Theodosius*, both *Roman* Emperours ; *Theodoric* the second, King of the *Goths*, the victorious Conquerour of the *Suevians* ; *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their achievements against the *Moors* : and in late times, *Gonsalvo* the Great Captain, who subdued *Naples* ; *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The *Christian* Faith, if we may believe the old *Spanish* Tradition, was first here planted by *S. James* the Apostle, within four years after the death our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very constant a long time together ; yet of late dayes, *Baronius*, and other learned men of the Church of *Rome*, do most deservedly reject it. That *St. Paul* had a purpose of coming hither, is evident in his 15 Chapter to the *Romans* : and that he did come hither accordingly, is positively affirmed by *S. Chrysostom*, *Theodoret*, and divers others of the Fathers ; which was in Anno 61. as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did *St. Peter* want his part in this great service, but joyned with *St. Paul*, though not in the journey, yet in the sending of Bishops and others *Presbyters*, to second the beginnings made by that Apostle. For it is said expressly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Ctesiphon*, *Torquatus*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Judaetius*, *Hefychius*, and *Euphrasius*, being at *Rome* ordained Bishops by the two Apostles, *ad predicandum verbum Dei* in *Hispanias directi*, were dispatched into *Spain* to preach the Gospel. Bishops most likely, of those Cities where they suffered death, the names of which occur in the *Martyrologie*. Under the Empire of the *Goths*, the faith of *CHRIST*, which at their coming hither they found right and *Orthodox*, was defiled with *Arianism* : not ejured till the year 588. when that whole Nation did submit to more *Catholic* tendencies. But *Spain* being conquered by the *Moors* under the conduct of *Musa* Lieutenant General to *Uliad* the Arabian Caliph, and *Mahometanism* overpreparing the whole face of the Countrey : such *Christians* as remained under their obedience, but few and inconsiderable both for power and quality, had the name of *Musarabes*. Increasing in estate and numbers by the fortunate successes of the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*, and other *Christian* Principalities growing up apace ; they still retaining their old name and their ancient services, distinct from that observed in the Church of *Rome* : this being called the *Musarabique*, the other the *Gregorian* Missal ; the one pretending *S. Isidore* Archb. of *Sevil*, the other *S. Gregorie* Pope of *Rome*, for the Author of it. And it continued in this State, till the taking of the City and Kingdom of *Toledo* by *Alfonso* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, Anno 1083. At what time *Bernard* a French man being made Archbishop of that City and Primate of *Spain*, endeavoured the introduction of the *Roman* or *Gregorian* Service ; but therein was opposed by the other Prelates, and generally by all the Bishops, sufficiently tenacious of their ancient Forms. At last it was concluded (as the story telleth us) to commit the decision of the Controversie to a fiery trial : both Books being

being cast into the fire, the *Gregorian* leaping presently out, and the *Musarabique* remaining unhurt in the midst of the flames. Convinced by this experiment that both Forms were pleasing to Almighty God, they yielded so far to the desires of the King (who was zealous in it) that the *Musarabique* being retained in six of the Churches of *Toledo* (where it is sung to this day in a Chappel of the Great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or *Roman* Service should be entertained in the rest of *Spain*. According unto which decree the *Musarabique* (but not until some tract of time) came to be disused : and the *Gregorian* Service first admitted in the Cathedral of *Toledo*, May 29. An. 1091. and after by degrees in the rest of the Countrey.

Since that they have been constant to the Rites of the *Roman* Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein professed, notwithstanding the great intermixture of *Jews* and *Moors* ; especially since the setting up of the *Inquisition* : devised at first about the year 1478. by *Pedro Gonfalez de Mendoza*, Archbishop of *Toledo*, against such converted *Jews* and *Moors* as did return again to their superstition. But he and those that had the first execution of it, being found so cruel, that in the compass of nine years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been destroyed in that Diocese only ; in the year 1481. it was thought fit to moderate the rigour of it, and to commit the managing thereof to some *Jacobins* or *Dominical* Friars ; who in the first place were to have an eye unto such Apostates, and to Hereticks, Magicians, Sodomites, Blasphemers of the name of God, &c. Confirmed in this Authority by Pope *Sixtus* the 4th. This institution in it self was not only necessary (as the condition of affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it been kept within the bounds at first intended. But of late in stead of being used on the *Jews* and *Moors*, it hath been turned upon the *Protestants*, and that with such violence and extremity of torture, that it is counted the greatest tyranny and severest kind of persecution under heaven : infomuch that many Papists would willingly die for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the death withstand the bringing in of this slavery among them. This is it that made the people of *Aragon* and *Naples* rebel ; Countreys where the people are all of the Papal side : and this was it which caused the irredeemable revolt of the *Low Countrey*, the greatest part of that Nation at the time of their taking Arms being *Romish Catholics* ; yet it is planted and established in *Spain* and all *Italy* (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the most zealous and rigorous Friars in the whole pack ; the least suspicion of heresie, affinity or commerce with Hereticks, reproving the lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books prohibited, or discouraging in matters of Religion, are offences sufficient. Nay they will charge mens Consciences under pain of damnation, to detect their nearest and dearest Friends, if they do but suspect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great secrecy and severity : For first, the parties accused shall never know their accuser, but shall be constrained to reveal their own thoughts and affections. 2 If they be but convinced of any error in any of their opinions, or be gainfayed by two witnesses, they are immediately condemned. 3 If nothing can be proved against them, yet shall they with infinite tortures and miseries be kept in the house divers years, for a terror unto others. And fourthly, if they escape the first brunt with many torments, and much anguish ; yet the second questioning or suspicion brings death remediless. And as for torments and kinds of death, *Phalaris* and his fellow Tyrants come far short of these Blood-hounds.

The administration of this office, for the more orderly Reglement and dispatch thereof distributed into twelve Courts, or supreme Tribunals, for the several Provinces of *Spain* ; no one depending on another, but in some sort subordinate to the general Inquisition, remaining in the Court near the Kings person, which hath a kind of superintendency over those Tribunals : in all of which those of the secular Clergy sit as Judges, the Friars being only used as *Promoters* to inform the Court, and bring more Grift unto the Mill. Of these Inquisitors every one hath the title of Lord, and are a great terror to the neighbouring Peasants. There goeth a Tale, how one of their Lordships, desirous to eat of the Pears which grew in a poor mans Orchard, not far off, sent for the man to come unto him, which put the poor soul into such a fright, that he fell sick upon it, and kept his bed : Being afterwards informed that all his Lordships business with him, was to request a dish of Pears, he pulled up the tree by the roots, and carried it unto him with the fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reason of that rash and improvident action, he returned this answer, That he would never keep that thing in his house, which should give any of their Lordships cause to send further after him. Certain it is that by this means the people of this Kingdom are so kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other Religion, than what their Priests and Friars shall be pleased to teach them, or entertain the truth if it come amongst them, or call in question any of those palpable and gross impostures which every day are put upon them.

For by this means the people of this Kingdom have been and still are punctual followers of the Church of *Rome*, and that too in the very errors and corruptions of it ; taking up their Religion on the Popes authority : and therein so tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth suffer none to live in his Dominions, which profess not the *Roman Catholic* Religion. Of which they have been, since the times of *Luther*, such avowed Patrons, that one of the late Popes being sick, and hearing divers men to moan his approaching end, uttered some words to this effect : *My life* (said he) *can nothing benefit the Church, but pray for the prosperity of the King of Spain, as its chief Supporter*. And though he spoke these words of King Philip the 2d, yet they hold good in his Successors ever since ; being esteemed the greatest Patrons and Protectors of the *Catholic Cause* : Which is indeed the proper interests of this King. For seeing that they have framed to themselves an hope of the *Western Monarchy* ; and finding no fitter means of enlarging their own *Temporal*, than by concurring with the Pope in

upholding his Spiritual Empire, they have linked themselves most fast to that See. To which end, they have taken upon them, to be the Executioners of the Popes Excommunications, by which Office *Erasmus* and the *Catholic* surprized *Navarre*; nor without hope of working the like effect, in some course of time, on the rest of the interdicted Estates of *Europe*; as may be seen, by the eager following of the *French* War against *Henry* the 4th, till he had reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*; and the like War managed for many years together, against *Queen Elizabeth* of *England*. And the pursuit of this *Spanish* Monarchy is so hotly followed by the *Jesuits*, who in all their persuasions speak not more of one God, or of one Pope, than they do of one King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and subdue that great enemy of *Religion*, the *Turk*. Nor is this only a Conjecture, or a project of the *Jesuits* only, but a design avowed and declared in Print, that all the World may take notice of it: and that too in a Book not only licensed by the *Provincial* of the *Dominicans*, and the *supreme Council* of the *Inquisition*; but by order from the *Lords* of the *Council*, with the *Kings Privilege* and *Commendation* prefix before it. The Book entituled, *La Conventencia de los dos Monarquias Catholicas, &c.* The agreement of the two *Catholic* Monarchies of *Rome* and *Spain*; set out in the year 1612. by one *John de Puente*. In the *Frontispiece* whereof are set two *Scutcheons*, the one bearing the *Cross*-Keys of *Rome*, the other the Arms of *Castile* and *Leon*; In *Vinculo pacis* for the Motto. On the one side of this there is a Portraiture representing *Rome*, with the Sun shining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keys, with this Inscription, *Luminare majus ut præsint Orbis & Urbis*, the Greater light to govern the City and the World. On the other side, another Image designing *Spain*, with the *Moon* shining over that, and darting her Rays on the *Spanish* Scutcheon, with this Impres; *Luminare minus ut subdat Orbis & dominetur Orbis*, i. e. The lesser light made to be subject to the City, (understand of *Rome*) but to govern all the World besides. Over all in the top of the Front or Title-page, in Capital Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole Book being an indifferent large Folio, is but a Comment on this Text; which for substance contained wholly in the *Frontispiece*, but more at large discoursed of in the *Volum* itself; and plainly shews what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhaps the Pope and the *Jesuits* both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation: and if the project take effect, the *Spaniard* will then write himself *Luminare majus*, and make the Pope content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the spoil; and glad to borrow all his light from the Sun of *Spain*. For though the Kingdom of *Spain*, and Popedom of *Rome* be thus straitly combined, yet herein the Popes have overthor themselves; in that leaning so much to the *Spaniard*, and so immoderately increasing his dominion, they do in a manner stand at his devotion; and may peradventure in the end, be forced to cast themselves into his arms as their good Lord and Master. For certain it is, that the *Spanish* Agents have openly braved the *Cardinals*, and told them, That they hoped to see the day, wherein the King should offer the Pope half a dozen to be made *Cardinals*, and he not dare to refuse any, and that they themselves should choose one Pope, but one of their *Masters* naming. So great an inconvenience it is, more than possible it may be to the Popes, in making this Prince the one and only string to their bow; and fastning the dependencies of his *Roman* *Catholicity* upon him alone, excluding *France* and all the other Kings in *Christendom*, of the *Romish* party, from the honour of it. And yet so firm they are to their *Spanish* Principles, that no *favours* granted to their persons, or *Religion*, are of value with them, or thought worthy of their acceptance; if it come from any other Fountain of Grace than the Court of *Spain*. Inasmuch as I have heard from a great Minister of State, that when some favours were obtained for the *English* *Papists*, on the treaty of the Match with *Spain*; they were ready with great greediness to embrace the same. But when the same favours were obtained for them on the Treaty with *France*, not a man of them would accept them. For which some of their Chiefs being asked the reason, returned this answer, That by applying themselves to the French, they might lose the *Spaniard*; and it were great improvidence in them, to change an old and constant Friend, who had never failed them, for one of whose affections they had no assurance; and such a one as by tolerating Heretics in his own Dominions, shewed that he was no fit Patron for the *Catholic* to rely upon.

The chief Rivers are, 1 *Tagus*, celebrated for his Golden Sands; of which the Scepter of the old Kings of *Portugal* is affirmed by some Writers to be made, but I have not Faith enough to believe the same. The lead of it is in the Mountain *Seira Molina* near to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the City *Toledo*; and then smoothly gliding by the Walls of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Western Ocean. 2 *Ana*, (now *Guadiana*) which arising about the same place, runneth afterward under the ground, the space of 15 miles: and hence the *Spaniards* use to brag, that they have a Bridge, whereon 10000 Cattle daily feed. An accident common to many other Rivers, as to *Mole*, a small River in *Surrey*; *Erasmus* in *Greece*; and *Lycus*, in *Anatolia*; of which last thus *Ovid*:

*Sic uli terreno Lycus est potus hians,
Existit præsent hinc, alioque renascitur ore.*

So *Lycus*, swallowed by the gaping ground,
At a new mouth, far off, is rising found.

But having gotten up again, it loseth it self without recovery in the Western Ocean; on the South of *Portugal*, which it separated from *Extremadura*. 3 *Batis*, now called *Guadalquivir* (which in the *Arabic* Language signifieth a great River) ariseth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*; and passing by *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, disburdeneth it self into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of *S. Lucar*

de

de *Barameda*. 4 *Iberus*, which having its head amongst the Mountains of *Biscay*, passeth on Eastwards by *Saragossa*, and *Tortosa*, into the *Mediterranean*: the whole course thereof being 460 miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of such note in the time of the *Romans*, that it divided this whole Countrey into *Citeriorem*, and *Alteriorem*; of which more anon. 5 *Duerus*, which rising in the same Mountains passeth through *Portugal*, and so unto the Western or *Atlantic* Ocean. 6 *Minus*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains next unto the *Pyrenæes* spoken of before, 1 The *Cantabrian* Mountains, called by *Pliny*, *Juga Alpurnum*; which rising out of a spur or branch of the *Pyrenæes*, overpread the Provinces of *Biscay*, *Asturia*, and *Gallicia* (coasting along the shores of the *Cantabrian* Ocean) where at last they end. 2 *Idubeda*, *Jubala*, or *Aurantiis Saltus*, so called by *Pliny*, and others of the ancient Writers; which beginning not far from the head of the River *Iberus*, followeth the course of that River by the City of *Burgos*, and endeth not far from the influx of it into the *Mediterranean*. 3 *Sierra Morena*, by *Cæsar* called *Salus Castulonensis*; and *Mons Mariannus* by *Pliny*; which beginning about the Town *Alicoraz*, coasteth along the right-hand shores of the River *Batis*, to the Southern Seas. 4 *Sierra Nevada*, by *Pliny* called *Mons Ilipulus*, and *Orospe* by *Strabo*, but by the *Moor*s the Mountains of *Alpharax*. A chain of hills which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada*, from East to West; and amongst which the people, to this day, speak the *Arabic* tongue.

The Countrey is said to have been inhabited by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Berosus* of *Frier Annus*, and by such Chronologers as he hath imposed on by the name of that Author; that in the twelfth year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Flood, he seated himself in the *Asturia*, part of *Spain*, and there built the Town of *S. Irvil*. A device so foolish and absurd, that it is not to be honoured with a confutation: for either *Tubal*, must come hither by Sea or by Land. If by Land, then must he in the compass of a year or two, travel not less than 4000 miles (for so far it is at least from *Biscay* to the valley of *Shinar*) with women and children; through most unpassable Woods and Mountains: which no understanding man can give belief to. If by Sea, besides the short time he had to provide shipping for so great a company, and so long a voyage, nothing is more improbable to a sober man, than that he should leave *Italy* and *Africa* upon either hand; or pretermitt the opportunity of possessing *Valentia*, *Andalusia*, *Portugal*, being fruitful Countries; to fix himself in the most mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent. Yet most of our *Berosians* are so confident in it, that they make him the first King of *Spain*, from whom to *Gargarus Melicola*, they numbred 25 Kings more, who lasted 988 years: the chief of which are said to be, 1 *Hesperus*, who subduing also *Italy*, named both Countreys *Hesperia*: but so, that *Italy* was called *Hesperia* the greater; and *Spain*, *Hesperia* the less. 2 *Hispantus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hispantia* to be derived. 3 *Tagus*, 4 *Batis*, and 5 *Anus*, whence the three Rivers in *Spain*, so called, must by all means derive their names. 6 *Idubeda*, Godfather, no doubt, to the great Mountain so named. 7 *Scileus*, from whom the Isle of *Sicily* is said to take denomination. 8 *Hispalis*, who is reported to have built the City, *Sevil*, or *Hispalis*. 9 *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flavio Brigis*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10 *Lufus*, who gave name to *Lusitania*, now *Portugal*. The Catalogue of which Kings I desire no man to believe farther, than that of our own State from *Brunus* to *Cassibeline*. A Catalogue so ill contrived, that whereas *Justin* speaks of *Halus*, and *Herodotus* of *Arganthonius*; *Macrobius* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilia*; all Kings of *Spain*; none of all these are mentioned in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in person) hither is a silly vanity; though we deny not but the *Spaniards*, or some Nations of them, may derive their Pedegree from *Tubal*, as being the descendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Jesephus* saith to have been anciently called *Thobelos*: a name in which are all the Radical Letters of *Tubal*, and which differeth not much from it in sound. For somewhat before the supposed time of *Gargarus Melicola*, the *Iberians* are said to come in under *Pannus*: divided after his decease amongst many petit Kings and Princes, for the space of 900 and odd years, even till the first Attempts which the *Carthaginians* made upon it: who found here no such Universal or Supreme Monarch, as the *Berosian* Fables dream of. During which time, we finde nothing more observable and certain in the story of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-coasts by divers Nations, according to the Custom of those elder times. Of which fort were the Towns of *Emporia*, and *Dianium*, founded by the *Messians*; *Saguntum*, by the *Zacynthi*, or people of *Zant*; *Rhode*, by the *Rhodiens*, as some think; the City and Isle of *Gades*, planted by the *Tyrians*, who after spread themselves over all the coasts of *Andalusia*. The first that came in bodies hither, in the way of Conquest, were the *Celts*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*; who mixing themselves with the *Iberi*, caused the whole Countrey to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it, is very uncertain. Of the invasion of it by the *Carthaginians*, there is greater certainty. Who being beaten out of *Sicily* by the conquering *Romans*, *An. V. C. 512*. and not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the West; and passing through the Straights of *Gibraltar*, by the Isle of *Gades* (their own long before) landed in *Spain*, under the conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loss of *Sicily*. In less than 20 years following, *Amilcar*, *Annibal* his Son-in-law, and *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, had made almost all *Spain* subject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Western Ocean to the *Pyrenæes*; destroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and strook to great a terrour into all the Countrey, that had not *Annibals* design carried him to *Italy*. The State of *Carthage* had been absolute Masters of it without further opposition or resistance. But *Annibal* having taken all his old Souldiers with him; and those that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts sufficient to go through with it; they lost it piece-meal to the *Romans*, but in less time then they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*; the valour and good fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The last that here commanded

for

for the State of Carthage was Asdrubal the Son of Gisgo; who being beaten by Scipio into the Island of Gades, left that also to the keeping of Mago, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deserted, it forthwith yielded to the Romans; the Carthaginians after this never possessing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The Romans thus becoming Masters of a great part of it, divided it into *Ultiorem*, lying from the River Iberia Westward, because the furthest off from them; and *Citeriorem*, between the said River, and the Pyrenees. But having totally subdued it, they divided it into three main parts, 1 *Tarraconensis*, so called of *Tarragon*, the chief City of it, containing *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Biscay*, *Gallicia*, &c. 2 *Betanicam*, so named of the River *Betis*, which runneth through it, comprehending the now Countreys of *Granada*, *Andalusia*, and part of *Extremadura*. 3 *Lusitanicam*, denominated from the *Lusitani*, the most potent people of that part, differing in extent from the present *Portugal*, (though this called *Lusitania* by our modern Latinists.) For the old *Lusitani* comprehended part of *Extremadura*, and some part of the two *Castiles*; and no more of the present *Portugal*, than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, *Ana* and *Duero*: that on the South of *Ana* being laid to *Betia*; and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Tarraconensis*. Of these three parts, *Betia* was in most esteem under the Romans; inasmuch, that it contained 8 Roman Colonies, 8 Municipal Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the rights and privileges of the *Latins*. The reason thereof was, that the people of this Countrey having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the rest, for a long time relisted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of Rome in Spain, *Scipio Africanus* laid the first foundation of the Roman Government in this Countrey: which building, though undertaken by many excellent work-men, was not thoroughly finished till the dayes of *Augustus*, being almost 200 years since the first attempt. He roofed it, strengthened it, and made it a principal building in his Monarchical City. For the old *Incole* were exceeding valiant and resolute, sometimes disgracing, sometimes endangering the Roman reputation; inasmuch that there were more Commanders lost in those wars, than any other. At first the Romans fought not with the Spaniards, but with the *Carthaginians* in Spain: then perished both the *Scipio's*, viz. The Father and the Uncle of *Africanus*. *Virtatibus* held war for 20 years, *Nimantia* held out almost 15, the *Astures* remained unconquered till the time of *Augustus*; and also resolutely maintained their particular liberties, *Ut dijudicari non poterat* (saith *Paterculus*) *Hispanis an Romanis plus esset in armis roboris, & inter populus alteri paritarius foret*. Such manner of men were the ancient Spaniards under Rome, and Carthage; the first people of the Continent of Europe (excepting *Italy*) on which the Romans did begin to enlarge their Empire; and the last that wholly were subdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at the last, and brought under the form of a Province by *Augustus Caesar*; it was governed by their *Proconsuls*, *Prators*, and other Magistrates, according to the division before-mentioned. But *Constantine the Great* in his new modelling of the Empire, laying some part of *Africa* to it, made it a *Diocese* of the Empire; and subject to the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Gaul*, by whose *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into these seven Provinces, viz. 1 *Betia*, 2 *Lusitania*, bounded as before; 3 *Gallicia*, containing the modern *Gallicia*, *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the greatest part of the Old *Castile*, and so much of *Portugal* as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*. 4 *Carthaginensis*, so called from the City of *New Carthage*, comprehending *New Castile*, *Murcia*, and *Valencia*; with part of the Old *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Andalusia*. 5 *Tarraconensis*, embracing all *Biscay*, *Navarre*, and *Catalogne*, with the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Aragon*. 6 *Tingitana*, so called from *Tingis* (now *Tangier*) a Town of *Africa*, on the opposite Coast, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Morocco*. And 7 the Province of the Islands, containing *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebusa*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which seven Provinces, the three first were *Consulares*, governed by *Proconsuls*; the other four from their being under *Præsidents* were called *Præfidiariv*. Being thus settled, it continued a Roman *Diocese* till about the year 400, when it was subdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*; of which people, their beginning, achievements, and final Period, we will speak more when we come to *Africa*, where they fixed themselves: invited thereunto, partly to eschew the ill-neighbourhood of the *Goths*, who began to grow too potent for them; and partly to satisfy the desires of *Boniface*, Governor of that Province for the Emperor *Valentinian* the third, against whom he had then rebelled, and wanted such support to make good his action. These being gone, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entred with them, could not long subsist; but were finally broken by the *Goths*, and afterwards dispossessed of their Kingdoms also, (though suffered to remain in the Countrey still) as shall be shewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Goths* (of whom we shall speak more in *Sweden*, and have already made some mention when we were in *Gaul*) having sacked *Rome*, and wasted *Italy*, under the conduct of *Alaric*; they were bought out of that Countrey by the gift of *Narbonensis* in *Gaul*, and so much of *Tarraconensis* in *Spain* as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the compulsion being ratified by the marriage of *Albaufus*, the Successor of *Alaric* with *Placidia*, Sister to *Honorius* the Western Emperor. *Vallia*, or *Wallia*, the next of name and note (for *Sigeric* who interposed, reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it) Successor of *Albaufus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania* and *Carthaginensis*, added those Provinces also unto his Estates, and confined the *Vandals* within *Betia*, was the first of the *Goths* which entituled himself King of the *Goths* in Spain. By their Agreement with the *Romans*, they were to keep those Provinces for the use of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations: but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement, having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Lusitania*, by the prowess of *Vallia*, and the *Suevi* out of *Betia*, under the conduct of *Theodorick*, the Brother of *Torismund*, they fell upon the *Romans* themselves; whom *Enri-*

cni

cni, and his Successors, by little and little, dispossessed of all Spain on this side of the Straights. *Tingitana* held out longest, as furthest off, unfortunately attempted by *Theudes* the ninth King of the *Goths*; whose Souldiers being set upon by the *Romans* on the Lords day, or Sunday; refused to fight in their own defence; and were so miserably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superstition of a Lords day Sabbath prevail upon this melancholick and devout people. But what this *Theudes* could not do; was performed by *Suintilla*; who in the short time of his Reign, An. 642. made the Conquest absolute.

Let us next look upon the *Goths* as Lords of Spain; and we shall find them to have been *Christians* in Religion; and somewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and conversation with the *Gracians*, before they turned their Forces into the West. Their company more desired in this respect than that of the *Vandals*; who were not only *Pagans*, but far more barbarous. But these *Goths* being for long time of the *Arian* Faction, did grievously afflict and persecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this error till the death *Leongild* (or *Lentigildus* as some call him) the last Patron and Assessor of it. Their Government Monarchical, but the Kings Elective, (though for the most part they kept themselves to the Regal Family:) an Excommunication being laid on such, by the fifth Council of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that established course. Their Rule of Government was Custom, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written Laws being first made by *Enricus*, which the ensuing Princes confirmed and perfected: What else concerneth them, we shall find in the close of this Catalogue of

The Kings of the Gothes in Spain.

A. C.					
420	1	Vallia 20.	601	16	Enlba II. 2.
440	2	Theodoric 13.	603	17	Vitoricus 7.
453	3	Torismund 3.	610	18	Gundericus 20.
457	4	Theodoric II. 14.	630	19	Sisebultus 9.
470	5	Henry, or Enricus 18.	639	20	Richard II. 2.
493	6	Alaricus 21.	641	21	Suintilla 3.
513	7	Gensularic 3.	644	22	Sisenanda 7.
516	8	Amalaric 11.	651	23	Suintilla II. 4.
526	9	Theudes 18.	655	24	Tulga 2.
543	10	Thelegislaus 3.	657	25	Vidisuindus 10.
546	11	Agila 5.	667	26	Reccesuind 13.
551	12	Athanagildus 14.	680	27	Bamba 9.
565	13	Enlba 3.	689	28	Ering 7.
568	14	Leongild 18.	696	29	Egypta 7.
586	15	Richard 15.	703	30	Vitica 13.
			716	31	Roderick, the last King of the Gothes in

Spain, elected to the prejudice of the Sons of *Vitiza*, which after proved the ruin and overthrow of the Kingdom. For though the Kingdom went for the most part by Election, and that they had respect to the next of blood, (as at this time in *Poland*, and *Bohemia*) very few interlopers being here admitted: yet some there were, who either by their merit, or some opportunity, got the possession of the Kingdom; though not at all relating to the Royal Family. Of which kind were *Theudes*; an *Osro-Goth*, sometimes the Governour hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, Protector of this Kingdom, in the minority of *Amalaric*; and *Theudeslaus*, or *Theudegislaus*, Nephew to *Totila*, one of the Successors to *Theodorick*. The rest of principal note were, 1 *Theodorick* the first; slain in the battel near *Tholouze* against *Attila* the *Hunn*; in defence of his own Countreys, and the Roman Empire. 2 *Theodorick* the second, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Betia*; and 3 *Leongild* or *Lentigilde*, who deprived them of *Gallicia* also. 4 *Reccaredus* the first, who first embraced the *Catholic* Doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arianisme*; and for that cause first honoured with the title of the *Catholic* King; afterwards resumed by *Alfonfus* the first King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fifth: *Enricus*, or *Henricus* as some call him, as remarkable for Civil Polity, as *Reccaredus* for piety: as being the *Lycurgus* or *Legislator* of this people, nor governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain customs, or at the pleasure of such Officers as the Kings set over them. 5 *Suintilla*, Son of *Reccaredus* the second, who having in the short time of his Reign expelled the Roman Forces out of *Tingitana*, An. 642. was the first Monarch of all Spain, whereof *Tingitana* (though on the other side of the Sea) had been made a Province by the Emperour *Constantine*, as before was said. And of this Province was *Julianus* Governour in the time of *Roderick*, who being of the Faction of the sons of *Vitiza*, stomacked his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the Kings displeasure; Who sending him upon an Embassy to the *Moors* of *Africa*; in the mean time dissembled his Daughter named *Cava*: which the Father took in such indignation, that he procured the *Moors* (amongst whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into Spain. This request they performed under the conduct of *Musa* and *Tariffe*; and having made a full Conquest, subjected it to the great Caliphs or Mahometan Emperours: It is recorded in a *MS. History* of the *Saracens*, that at the first coming of *Tariffe* into Spain, a poor woman of the Countrey being willingly taken Prisoner, fell down at his feet, kissed them, and told him, that she had heard her Father (who was lettered) say; that Spain should be conquered by a people whose General should have a Mole on his right shoulder; and

and

Navarre.

and in whom one of his hands should be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers against the next encounter, unclashed himself, and shewed the mark; which so encouraged them that they now doubted not the Victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horse. *Tariff* had 30000 Horse, and 180000 Foot. The battel continued seven days together, from morning to night; at last the Moors were victorious. What became of King *Roderick* was never known. His Souldiers took one arrayed in their Kings apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a shepherd; with whom the King, after the discomfiture, had changed cloathes. It is written also in *Rodericus Toletanus*, that before the coming of those *Saracens*, King *Roderick* upon hope of some treasure, did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched: but found nothing but Pictures which resembled the Moors; with a Prophesie, that whensoever the Palace was there opened, the people there resembled should overcome Spain; and so it hapned, *An. 724*.

The Moors, now Lords of Spain by the treason of *Julian*, (who having seen the miserable death of his wife and children, was starved in Prison by the Africans) permitted the free use of Religion to the old Inhabitants; lest they seeking new dwellings for the liberty of Conscience, should leave their native Soyl desolate. The Moors finished their conquest in five years, say some; others in two, and some again in eight Moneths. To keep the new conquered Countrey in subjection, no way was so convenient as to plant Colonies: but the *Moorish* women would not abandon their old seats. Hereupon *Musa* and *Tariff*, by gifts, pardons, and persuasions, drew many *Christian* women to forsake their Religion, whom they married to the Souldiers. Not long after *Ulidor Ulit*, the great Caliph, sent over about 50000 Families of Moors and Jews; assigning them a convenient portion of Lands, to be held with great immunities, and upon small rents. These politick courses notwithstanding, the Moors long enjoyed not the sole Sovereignty herein: for the *Christians* having now recovered breath, chose themselves Kings; and the Authority of the Caliphs declining, gave the Moors liberty to erect divers petty Royalities; many of which by little and little were brought under the command of greater and more powerful Princes. So that at last Spain fell into a fifteenfold division, viz. into the Kingdoms and proprietary Estates of 1 *Navarre*, 2 *Biscay*, and 3 *Guipuscoa*, 4 *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5 *Gallicia*, 6 *Corduba*, 7 *Granada*, 8 *Murcia*, 9 *Toledo*, 10 *Castile*, 11 *Portugal* and the Members of it, 12 *Valentia*, 13 *Catalonia*, 14 the Kingdom of *Majorica*, and 15 that of *Aragon*: not to say any thing of the petty Kingdoms of *Jaca*, *Algozire*, and *Sevilla*, besides others of like nature to them; erected by the factious and divided Moors, but of short continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Castile*, *Portugal*, and *Aragon*; the Kingdoms and Estates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biscay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Castile*; *Portugal* with *Algarve*, and the Isles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it self; *Valentia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorica*, under that of *Aragon*.

I. NAVARRE.

NAVARRÉ, the second Kingdom for antiquity in Spain, is bounded on the East with the Principality of *Bearn*, in the Kingdom of France; on the West first with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after with a little River falling into it, near *Calahorra*, by which divided from *Castile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuscoa*; and the South, with the River *Aragon*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent antiently than it is at the present, the little Province of *Alava*, lying toward *Guipuscoa*, and the whole Countrey of *Rioja* (on the West side of the River *Ebro*) being taken from it, and reckoned Members of *Castile*, by *Alfonso* the 4th. Howsoever, we shall look upon it in its antient bounds, and shall accordingly take notice of the Cities and chief Towns thereof.

It was called at first the Kingdom of *Saluarbe*, from a Town of that name, situate in the most inaccessible part of the *Pyrenæes*; and therefore chose by *Garcia Jimenez* the first King hereof, for the seat of his Kingdom, as most defensible against the fury of the Moors. Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Naveis*, signifying a plain and champagn Countrey: first used by *Inigo Arista* the sixth King, who having taken *Pampelune*, abandoned the hill Countreys, and betook himself unto the Plains; or from *Navarriere*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Countrey though environed on all sides with mighty Mountains, yet of it self is said to be reasonably fruitful; well watered, and for the most part plain and level, as before is said. It taketh up also some parts of both sides of the *Pyrenæes*: the Spanish side being fertile, and adorned with trees; the French side generally very bare, and naked. That on the Spanish side, and on the summits of the Mountains, now possessed by the Spaniards, is called *High Navarre*: that on the French side, now called *Basse*, or *Low Navarre*, estimated at a sixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the French; incorporated by King *Lewis* the 13th, to the Realm of France, *An. 1620*.

Places of most importance in *Basse Navarre*, 1 *S. Palai*, formerly the place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdom; but in the year 1620. removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bearn*: both *Bearn* and *Basse Navarre*, which had before been governed as distinct Estates, from the Realm of France, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2 *Navarrenx*, a Town of great importance, seven Leagues from *Pau*; well fortified, and as well munitioned: King *Lewis* the 13th, finding in it at his coming thither, *An. 1620*. no fewer than 45 Canons all mounted, besides 40 Culverins and smaller Pieces;

Navarre.

Pieces; with Powder, Baller, and Victuals answerable thereunto. 3 *Pied de Port*, or *S. John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of France, against which formerly a Piece of especial strength. 4 *Roncevaux*, situate in the most pleasant Countrey of all Navarre, in the entrance of a small but delightful Valley: famous for the great battel fought near unto it, in the Straights or entrances of the Mountains leading to this Valley; betwixt the French under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of Moors and natural Spaniards, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which battel, by the treachery of *Ganelon*, 40000 of the French were slain; and amongst them *Roland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the Peers of France, of whom so many Fables are reported in the old Romances, the first Author of which Fables passeth under the name of Archbishop *Turpin*, said to be one of those twelve Peers; who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the Great, hath interlaced his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof the noble Acts of that illustrious Emperour, and his gallant Followers, are much obscured and blemished by those very pens, which in the times succeeding did employ themselves to advance the same.

Of special note in *High Navarre*, 1 *Vitoria*, first built or rather re-edified by *Sancho* the 4th, King of *Navarre*, *An. 1181*. by whom thus named in memory of some victory obtained thereabouts, against the *Castilians*, whereas before his time it was called *Gasteiz*: as in like case there had been many Towns built by the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of *Victorie*, which we shall meet withal hereafter. Situate in the place of the antient *Vellies*, but graced with the privileges, and name of a City by *John* the second of *Castile*, after it came under the command of that Crown, *An. 1432*. A Town belonging properly to the little Province of *Olava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in and amongst the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *An. 1200*, by *Alphonso* the 4th, of *Castile*, it was in the year 1332 incorporated into that Crown as a part thereof; as were some other Towns and Members of this Kingdom also, won by the *Castilians*. 2 *Viane*, on the East of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Lagrogas* on the other side of the water (from which distant not above a League) as the Frontier Town against *Castile*. Of greatest note for being the title of the eldest Son of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced unto this honour by King *Charles* the third, *An. 1421*. in imitation of the like custom in *Castile*, where the eldest Son was called Prince of the *Asturias*: but not less memorable for the death of *Cesar Borgia*, slain near unto it in an ambush, after all his wanderings, and interchangeableness of fortunes. For being son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth; by birth a Spaniard, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquishing that Title, by *Charles* the eighth of France created Duke of *Valentinois* in the Province of *Dauphine*: during his Fathers life; he had reduced under his obedience, divers of the Estates which antiently had belonged to the Church of Rome; but after his decease, imprisoned by Pope *Julius* the second, who was jealous (not without good cause) of his plots and practices. From Rome he stole unto *Gonsavo*, then Vice-roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinando* the *Catholicque*; who notwithstanding his safe conduct, sent him prisoner to Spain: but breaking Prison (desperately sliding down a window) he came at last into this Kingdom, and was here slain in an Ambuscado, as before was said. So many times was *Machiavels* great Politician over-reached by Bookmen and Souldiers. 3 *Soabarbe*, in the most inaccessible parts of the *Pyrenæes*, for that cause made the first seat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entituled from thence the Kings of *Soabarbe*. Made afterwards a distinct Kingdom from *Navarre* by *Sancho* the Great, who gave it to *Gonsaves* his youngest Son: after whose death (not having issue) it was seized on by *Don Raynir* the first King of *Aragon*; and made a Member of that Crown. 4 *Sanguessa*, a Town of a large Territory and jurisdiction, privileged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Estates, and a strong Fortrefs on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cause formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it sometimes in their hands. 5 *Pampelun*, in the *Champagn* Countrey, on the banks of the River *Arza*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom; and the seat Royal of its Kings since the Conquest of it from the Moors by *Inigo Arista* the sixth King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts, that is to say *Bourg*, *Pueplement*, and *Navarriere*; each having several Officers and Jurisdictions (the cause of many quarrels and much blood amongst them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magistrate, by King *Charles* the third. An antient Town first built by *Pumpey* at the end of his Wars against *Sertorius*; in memory of whom called *Pompeipolis* by our modern Latinists; but *Pampelun*, more near unto the present name, by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*: now an Episcopall See, the seat of the Vice-roy, and one of the best fortified Towns of all Spain. 6 *Mota*, not far from the borders of France, where it joyneth on *Guipuscoa*, a place of principal importance: the Castle whereof was one of the last pieces on this side of the Mountains, which held out for King *John* of *Alber* against *Ferdinand* the *Catholicque*, in his surprisal of this Kingdom. 7 *Montreal*. 8 *Olite*, and 9 *Tafalla*, all yielded with the rest of this Kingdom, to *Frederick* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Avia*: Who had the happiness to subdue this Realm to the Crown of *Castile*, as his Son *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugal*. 10 *Tudele*, on the Eastern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from the Moors, by a surprize by *Rotom* Earl of *Perch*, (a French man) coming with many other noble persons to the aid of *Alfonso*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, at the siege of *Saragossa*, *An. 1110*. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his service; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*; by the marriage of *Magdalen* Daughter of Earl *Rotom*, with *Garcia* the seventh King of *Navarre*, Successor in that Kingdom to the said *Alfonso*. Of late times honoured with a little University there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholicque*, on his surprisal of that Kingdom. 11 *Calahorra*, situate on the Western banks of the *Iberus* or *Ebro*, by *Ptolomy* called *Calagorina*, by *Strabo*, *Callaguris*, now a Bishops See; taken from *Sancho* the 8th of *Navarre*, by *Alfonso* the fourth of *Castile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom.

Biscay & Guipuscoa.

and John of Albret, Ferdinand gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the Moors, and surprized this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and destitute of means to make the smallest resistance An. 1512. The pretended reason of this surprisal, was an Excommunication laid on these Princes by the Pope, of which this King took upon him to be Executioner: but the true cause was an antient desire which this King had to possess this frontire Kingdom; it being a strong Bulwark against France. It hapned then that Lewis the 12th, having incurred the displeasure of Pope Julius the second, was together with all his adherents, excommunicated; and his, and their Estates given to such as could or would subdue them. The King and Queen of Navarre were at this time both French Subjects: he in respect of Albret, his paternal inheritance, and she of her Estates of Foix and Bearn; and therefore sided with the French King. Ferdinand having (as we said) levied an Army under colour of extirpating the Moors, turneth upon the French King; and demanded of these Princes, not only a free passage through their Country, but also to have certain places of strength put into his hand, for his better assurance. These unjust demands the Navarroys denied. Whereupon Ferdinand with all expedition invaded the Kingdom, the greatest part of which he took without a blow given: the French King being as backward in affording due assistance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The French settled those parts of it which lye on that side of the Pyrenies; leaving the rest, which lyeth on the French side of those Mountains (being about a sixth part of the whole) to the Descendents of those Princes whom he had seized.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the Lilly, begun by Garcia the sixth; their Blazen a Pot of Lillies with the portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it; their duty to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain Ave-Maries.

The Armes of Navarre are Gules, a Carbuncle nowed Or. Which Carbuncle having a resemblance unto chains of Gold, is said to have been first taken by Sancho the 8th, in memory that he and his Forces had first broken the Fortification made with chains, about the Pavilion of Mahomet Enafar, the Meramolin of Morocco, at the great fight in Sierra Morena; before which time the Arms of this Kingdom had been Azure, a Cross Argent.

3 BISCAY and GUIPUSCOA.

OF these two we shall speak together, because of the similitude and resemblances which are between them, both in the Country and the people: the names being also forged from the same Original: Bounded on the VVest, with the Kingdom of Leon; on the East with the Pyrenies, and Guienne in the Realm of France; on the North, with the Cantabrian Ocean; and on the South, with Navarre, and old Castile. Thus named from the Vascons, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdom of Navarre in the time of the Romans: part of which people in the year 640. or thereabouts, passed over unto the further side of the Pyrenies, where they took up those parts of France, since from them called Gascoigne. The rest continuing in their old Seats or spreading more into the West towards the Cantabrians, gave to those parts the name of Guipuscoa, and Viscayas, (for so the Spaniards write and speak it) now by us called Biscay: their language also (which is much different from the rest of Spain) being called the Basquish, more neer in sound to that of Vascons, the Original name.

The whole Country is very Mountainous and Woody, yeelding but little store of Corn, and less of Wine: the defect of the first being supplied from other Countreys, of the last by Sider; for which end they plant Apples here in great abundance. But from those Woods they draw continually great store of Timber, for the building of Ships: and from those Hills there do not only issue pleasant Rivers, (some say 150 in number) of which Ibernus and Duero are said to be two; but such infinite store of Iron and Steel, that no Country yeeldeth better or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cause, the Armory of Spain; and giving occasion unto Pliny to report, that there was in this Country, a whole Mountain of Iron: *Maritima Cantabria parte Mons prærupte altus (incredibile dictum) totus ex eamateria est*, lib. 33. cap. 45. Nor do they only furnish all Spain with Iron, which they make into Instruments of war, and others for domestick uses; but with Timber also for their shipping: with which so stored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Eastern bordering on the Pyrenies, and the Realm of France, which is called GUIPUSCOA; and the Western bordering on the Kingdom of Leon, which properly is called BISCAY: the Town of Montrico standing in the confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the same Original, though by several means united to the Crown of Castile; both speak the same Cantabrian language, now called the Basquish; the people of both being more rude, and simple, than the rest of Spain; but standing much upon their Gentry, according to the custom of most mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that those of Guipuscoa, by reason of their traffique and commerce with other Countreys, favour a little more of Christianity, than the others do: in which the common Biscains are so far to seek, that though they have some general notions of God and CHRIST, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable measure. And thus a view being taken of those general notions in which both Countreys are concerned; let us next look upon them in their several and distinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And first for GUIPUSCOA: The places of chiefest note in it are, 1. S. Sebastian, (Don

Biscay.

(Don Bastia, as the Vulgar call it) a noted and well-traded Port, at the mouth of the River Gurrineo, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two strong Castles founded upon the opposite Rocks; and honoured with an Episcopal See. 2. Tolosa (commonly called Tolosette) at the confluence of the Rivers Oria, and Durzo. 3. Placenza, on the River Denia, inhabited by none but Black-smiths, who do attend their Hammers with such endless diligence, that Vulcan's Forge may seem to be translated hither out of the Isle of Lemnos. 4. Guetaria, beautified with a safe and convenient Haven, defended from all winds by a little Island lying before it: the birth-place of Sebastian del Cano that famous Pilot, the first that sailed about the World; Magellanus who went chief in that expedition perishing in the Action. 5. Fontarabia at the mouth of the River Vidosa, which divides this Country from Guyenne in France; for that cause very well fortified, and as strongly garrisoned. 6. Rentaria, situate near a Brook abounding with most excellent Salmon. 7. Montrico at the mouth of the River Denia, the farthest Town hereof on the edge of Biscay. Most of which stand upon or neer the Sea; there being but few Towns of note within the Land (though there are enough scattered Villages, as in Biscay also) because of the roughness of the Mountains.

As for the fortunes and affairs of this part of the Country, after the subversion of the Kingdom of the Gothes in Spain (for till that time they followed the same fortunes with the rest of this continent) it was at first a member of the Crown of Navarre; afterwards wrested from King Sancho the sixth, by Alfonso the first of Castile, An. 1079. by whom committed to the Government of Lopes Diaz de Haro, Lord of Biscay. Restored again to the Kings of Navarre, upon some following Capitulations; it so continued till the year 1200. when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms and liking better that of Castile, they offered themselves to the subjection of Alfonso the fourth; who without so much as one blow took, became Master of all the Country, and left it settled and confirmed unto his Successors, as it hath ever since remained.

2 For BISCAY next, the Principal Towns thereof are, 1. Larrabechia, the chief Town of this Province in elder times, in the chief Church whereof the Kings of Spain, as Lords of Biscay, use to be solemnly inaugurated; here making Oath to maintain the liberties of the Country, and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the people of it. 2. Bermeo, an old Town also, and amply privileged; the franchises whereof the Kings are solemnly sworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the honour of S. Euphemia. 3. Guernica, the third Town for antiquity in this part of these Countreys. Then of a later date we have 4. Bilbo, or Bilbao, situate some two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep Creek thereof; on the other side surrounded with Mountains; built out of the ruines of the old Flavobriga, by Diego de Haro Lord of Biscay, An. 1500. and situate the best of any Town in this Country for plenty of Victuals, especially for flesh and most excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all sorts of weapons (their chiefest Manufacture) the Bilbo Blades in such request being brought from hence. Besides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal also in Wooll; by the vent of which Commodities they are grown so wealthy, that here are many private Merchants, which build yearly three or four good Ships for their own trade only. 5. Laredo, a Sea Town also with a capable Port: The landing place of Charles the 5th. when he had relinquished the Empire, and all his other Estates, with resolution to spend the rest of his life in Spain, in a private manner: it being observable, that he was no sooner landed, but the Admiral Ship in which he came, and the greatest part of the Navy which came with him, perished in the Haven, to shew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this resolution. 6. Portugalete, commodiously seated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houses; and serveth them exceeding fitly, for the lading and unlading of their commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this tract before the coming in of the Vascons, were the Cantabri; these subdivided into the several Nations of the Marbogi, the Caristi, the Antrigones, the Varduli, and the Cantabri properly so called. From these descend the modern Biscains. An Argument whereof may be their Language, different from the rest of Spain, and said by some to have continued in this Country ever since the confusion at Babel. And though they over-shoot themselves, that go as far as Babel for the pedigree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the antient Language of Spain, is more than probable: because this people have ever continued without any mixture of foreign Nations, as being never thoroughly subdued either by Romans, Carthaginians, Goths, or Moors; and so they remained, as in their liberties not Mattered, so in their Language not altered. In like manner the Aralick continueth uncorrupt, in the hilly parts of Granada; the Tongue of the old Britons, in our Wales; and the antient Epirotick, in the high, Woody, and more mountainous parts of that Country. And though those of Guipuscoa speak the same Language also, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words (by reason of their neighbourhood with France, and commerce with strangers) than it is in Biscay; where the old natural Language, whatsoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the Biscains differ from the rest of Spain in language only, but in Customs also, four of which I will here set down as a light to the rest. First they account themselves free from taxes, and contributions to the Kings of Spain; yeelding them obedience with their Bodies, but not with their Purser. And when any of the Spanish Kings in their Progresses, come to the Frontiers of this Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entrench into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him some few small Brats pieces (Maravides they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown) in a Leather Bag, banged at the end of a Lance; but withall they tell him, that he must not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey.

Biscay.

Secondly, they admit no Bishops to come amongst them: and when *Ferdinand the Catholic* came in *Progress* hither, accompanied amongst others by the Bishop of *Pampelune*: the people arose in Arms, drove back the Bishop, and gathering all the dust on which they thought he had trodden, cast it into the Sea. Which avernes unto Bishops, as they first took up in all probability, on some hard usage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and still retain it out of a stubbornness of nature, most peculiar to them: so possible enough it is, that the want of Bishops, and of Episcopal Visitations amongst the *Biscains*, is not the least cause of that ignorance and rudeness (spoken of before) which is found amongst them. Thirdly, they allow not any Priests to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Cannone* with him: conceiving it impossible for them to keep their Wives unto themselves, if the *Curate* hath not a Woman of his own. Fourthly, the Women at all meetings do first taste of the Cup, and so dispose of it to the men; which custom they have had amongst them ever since *Ogno*, the Countess of *Castile*, attempted to have poisoned her son *Sancho*, in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Country against the *Romans*, when the residue of *Spain* was subdued; and were at last, not without great effusion of blood, and manifest tokens of manly resolution, and heroic spirits on their parts, vanquished by the darling of Fortune, *Augustus*. Such hilly and mountainous people are always the last that are conquered, and the first that stand on their own guard: as besides these *Biscains*, the *Navarrois* and *Asturians*, here in *Spain*, in respect of the *Moors*; and our *Britains*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a sharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occasion good and able men; or that the Forts of nature own building are not so easily won, as defended; or that the unpleasantness of the Country, and unfruitfulness of the soil, yeeld no occasion to strangers, to desire and adventure for it; I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at last, they were first cast into the Province of *Tarracensis*; and so continued after the new modelling of *Spain*, by the Emperor *Constantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Goths*, but resigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the rest of that Province. Nor lost they any thing of their ancient and natural courage, by the intermixture of the *Vascons*; continuing till good Souldiers both for Sea and Land: a stubborn, fierce, and courageous people; impatient of servitude, and not easy to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The last of all the *Spaniards* that submitted to the fury of the *Moors*, (excepting those of the *Asturias* never conquered by them) and one of the first Provinces which shook off that yoke: animated and conducted in that undertaking, by *Soria*, descended of the blood Royal of *Scotland*, An. 870. made upon that good service the first Lord of *Biscay*. After this they continued a free and distinct Estate under their own Proprietary Lords and Princes of the noble Family of *Haro*; till that *Nero* of *Spain*, *Don Pedro the Cruel*, violently took it from *Donna Ieande*, the right heir of it, An. 1358. From which *Donna Ieanne*, the eldest Daughter married to *Ferdinand* the younger son of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right Heir of *Castile*, issued the Lady *Ieanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the second, and Mother of *John* the first, both Kings of *Castile*: by which last, this Country was united to that Crown for ever, An. 1379. The names of the Proprietary Lords of this Estate, we have in this following Catalogue of

The Lords of Biscay.

- 870 1 *Soria*, the son of *Lopes* of *Biscay*, but Nephew by the Mothers side to a King of *Scotland*, the first Lord of *Biscay*.
- 2 *Manfo Lopes* the son of *Soria*.
- 3 *Inigo* the Deaf, son of *Manfo Lopes*.
- 4 *Lopes Diaz*, the son of *Inigo*.
- 4 *Sancho Lopes*, the son of *Lopes Diaz*.
- 6 *Inigo II.* the base son of *Lopes Diaz*; the two sons of *Sancho Lopes* by reason of their tender years, being set aside.
- 7 *Lopes Diaz II.* son of *Inigo* the second.
- 8 *Diego Lopes* surnamed the *White*, son of *Lopes Diaz* the second.
- 9 *Lopes Diaz III.* son of *Diego Lopes*, the first who took unto himself the surname of *Haro* from a Town of that name of his Foundation.
- 10 *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*, son of *Lopes Diaz* the third.
- 11 *Lopes Diaz IV.* son of *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*.
- 1257 12 *Diego Lopes Diaz II.* assisted *Sancho* the second son of King *Alonso* the fifth of *Castile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Ferdinand de la Cerde* his elder Brother; by which *Sancho* he was after slain. A reward not unsuitable to his bold attempt.
- 1289 13 *Diego Lopes de Haro*, the son of *Diego*.
- 1290 14 *Diego Lopes III.* the Brother of *Diego Lopes Diaz* the second, the Founder of the Town of *Bilbo*.
- 1309 15 *John* of *Castile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Lopes* the second.
- 1319 16 *John* the Blinde, so called because he had lost an Eye, son of *John* of *Castile*, and *Mary Diaz de Haro*, slain by King *Alonso*.
- 1329 17 *John Nuges* of *Lara*, in right of his Wife, Daughter and heir of *John* the Blind (whose name I find not) succeeded after the decease of *Donna Maria Diaz*.

1350

Leon & Oviedo.

- 1350 18 *Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two years old, succeeded *John Nuges* of *Lara* his Father.
- 1351 19 *Jean* and *Isabel*, the Sisters and heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, seized upon by *Don Pedro*; and the whole Signeury of *Biscay* subjected by strong hand to the Crown of *Castile*, with many other fair Estates which depended on it.

The Armes of these Lords of *Biscay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the second.

LEON, and OVIEDO.

THE Kingdom of *LEON* and *OVIEDO* hath on the East, the Countrey of *Biscay*; on the North, the main *Cantabrian* Ocean; on the South, *Castile*; on the West, *Gallicia*. So called from *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and first seat of their Kings; the antientest Kingdom in all *Spain*. By a more ancient name it was called *Asturia*, from the *Astures*; who possessed it in the time of the *Romans*: divided into the two general names of *Augustani*, and *Transmontani*; but comprehending the particular tribes or Nations of the *Pesici*, *Gigari*, *Zoela*, and *Lancenses*.

The Countrey mountainous and woody, but formerly of some esteem for those small, though swift Horses which the *Romans* (from hence) called *Asturcones*; we may read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Gueldings: *Asturco Macedonicus* being used for a *Macedonian* Nag, by *Petronius Arbitr*.

It is divided commonly into two parts, that is to say, *Asturia de Oviedo*, bordering on *Gallicia*, towards the West; and 2 *Asturia Santillana*, confining on *Biscay*, towards the East. From which division of the Countrey, the eldest son of *Castile* is called Prince of the *Asturias*, in the plural number; which title some suppose to be given unto them, because it was the first Countrey which held up against the *Moors*. But indeed the true Original hereof is referred by the best *Spanish* Writers, to the time of the marriage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *John* of *Gauant*, and in right of her Mother *Constance*, the right Heir of *Castile*; unto *Henry* son of *John* the first, then in possession of that Kingdom. For to this new married Couple it was granted, saith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir apparent is called Prince of *Wales*, they should be called Princes of the *Asturias*. In times succeeding the Towns of *Iaen*, *Ubeda*, *Biattia*, or *Bacca*, and *Andajar*, all situate neer together in *Andalusia*, and each of them invested with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Estate hereof; and so continue to this day.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Sublanco*, now a small Village, but once a Town of so great strength, that it was destroyed by the command of the Emperour *Nerva*, lest it might animate these Mountainers unto a revolt. 2 *LEON*, situate at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the place of the old *Sublanco*, (as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Bishop whereof acknowledgeth no Metropolitan but the Pope alone. Recovered from the *Moors*, An. 722. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of the Kings of *Leon*: by some called *Legio*, because the seventh Legion was here lodged; by *Polomy* called *Legio Germanica*, and by others *Gemina*. 3 *S. Andera*, so named from a Church there built to the honour of *S. Andrew*; by *Polomy* called *Flavionavia*, now a well traded Port on the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 4 *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eastern part of *Asturia*. 5 *Llanes*, where the two *Asturias* meet together: 6 *Ciudad Real*, in the Western part of *Asturia*, called *Asturia de Oviedo*. 7 *Villa Viciosa*, the only noted Port in this part of the Countrey. 8 *Aviles*, on the borders of *Gallicia*, neer the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Scythicum*, but now *Cabo de Pinus*. 9 *OVIEDO*; called for a time the City of Bishops, because many of the Bishops of *Spain*, dispossessed of their Churches by the *Moors*, had retired thither; and there preserved the line of Episcopal Succession, till their Sees were filled again with Bishops in more happy times. Antiently it was called *Lucus Asturum*; and was of old a Bishops See; re-edified by King *Froila* the first, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the title of a Kingdom to the first Christian Princes, after the Conquest by the *Moors*; called from hence Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, An. 896. in the time of *K. Ordoño* the first, they began to be stiled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*; and at last Kings of *Leon* only: *Oviedo* being quite left out of the Regal style by *Raymir* the second, An. 940. More towards the Inlands of this Kingdom (now reckoned part of old *Castile*) are 10 *Palencia*, the Palantia of *Polomy* and *Antoninus*, seated on the River *Carrion*; once a small University, till the translation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town first felt the fury of the *Susvians*, when they mastered these parts of *Spain*. 11 *Astorga*, antiently called *Augusta Asturica*, whence the *Astures* of this tract were called *Augustani*; a Bishops See; fronting on *Gallicia*: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the lustful King *Vitiza*; who to secure himself in his unlawful pleasures, and to weaken his subjects, if they should attempt anything against him, dismantled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Astorga*. 12 *Borvenet*, on the South-east of *Astorga*, which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the Base son of *K. Henry* the second, (of *Castile*) the stemme of the most potent Family of *Spain*, for the times they lived in; 13 *Toro*, the most Southern Town of all this Kingdom; and for that cause well fortified against the encroachments of the *Castilians*, till the uniting of the Kingdoms; made afterwards (as lying neerest to *Castile*, and the Court of the King) the ordinary place of conference with the States of *Leon*.

Who were the old inhabitants of this Countrey hath been shewn already. When conquered by *Augustus*

Z 3

The Kings of the Suevi in Galicia.

- 1 *Hermenegildus*, who first brought the *Suevians* into Spain, and possessed *Gallicia*, *Arcadius* and *Honorius* then Emperors of the East and West.
- 2 *Reobila*, who conquered the *Siliges*, and subdued *Batica*.
- 3 *Reccarius*, the first Christian King, who won *Lusitania*; afterwards vanquished and slain by *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, the *Suevians* for a time becoming subject to that King.
- 4 *Masdras*, restored unto the Kingdom by *Theodorick*.
- 5 *Frumarius*, the son of *Masdras*.
- 6 *Remismundus*, Brother of *Frumarius*, recovered some part of *Lusitania*, and fell off to *Arianism*.
- 7 *Theodomirus*, the Restorer of the Catholic Faith amongst the *Suevians*.
- 8 *Arlamirus*, Son to *Theodomirus*.
- 9 *Eboricus*, the son of *Arlamirus*, deposed and shorn Monk by *Andeca*.
- 10 *Andeca*, the last King of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*, or rather the *Usurper* of the *Regal* title; served in the same kind by *Lentigildis* King of the *Goths*, as he had served *Eboricus* his Lord and Master. After which time *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothish* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevians* no more heard of in Spain. In times ensuing it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moors*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a Kingdom by *Alphonso* the third, surnamed the Great, Anno 886. and given unto *Ordono* his second son: by whose Succession to the Crown on the death of his elder brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the Kingdom of *Leon*, but so as to continue a Realm distinct. In the year 955, the *Gallicians* not brooking the ill qualities of *Raimir* the third, elected *Veramund* for their King, the son of *Ordono*, did third and right heir of the Kingdom: who coming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Raimir*, did once again unite it unto that estate. Disembred from it once more by *Ferdinand* the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngest son, Anno 1067. but conquered shortly after by *Sancho* the eldest son of *Ferdinand*, by whom *Garcia* was discomfited and imprisoned, Anno 1081. Never since separated from the Crown of *Castile* and *Leon*, but when *Leon* was severed from *Castile*; going along with *Leon* in those separations, till the union of those Kingdoms in the person of *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1230. the *Castilians* being then grown better Statesmen, than to canton Kingdoms.

The Armes hereof were *Azure*, semee of *Croffets Fitchee*, a Chalice crowned *Or*.

6. The Kingdom of CORDUBA.

HAVING thus surveyed those Provinces under the Government of *Castile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenes*, and on the shores of the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean; we will next look on those which lye more towards the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*. And so come round at last to *Castile* it self. And first we will begin with the Kingdom of *CORDUBA*, which at the first erection of it, contained all those parts of Spain conquered by the *Moors*, and not again recovered by the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrower bounds when subdued by the King of *Castile*; at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andalusia*, *Extremadura*, *Granada*, and the Isle of *Gades*. We will consider it notwithstanding in both capacities; in the first and largest notion, as unto the story and affairs thereof, till distracted by the *Moors* into many Kingdoms; in the last and strictest, as to the *Chorographie*, and Description of it.

The Kingdom of *CORDUBA*, as it stood when subdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the East with *Africa*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the West, with *Portugal* and the Ocean; on the North, with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Castile*; and on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland Seas: so called from *Corduba* the chief City of it and the Seat Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was said, the Provinces of 1 *Andalusia*, 2 *Gades*, 3 *Extremadura*, and 4 *Granada*. But because *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the rest were conquered, we will consider it by it self: and here proceed to the description of the other three.

1 *ANDALUSIA* is bounded on the East with *Granada*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and *Algarve*, in *Portugal*; on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extremadura*; on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubensis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it: and after, *Andalusia*, quasi *Andalusia* from the *Vandals*, who having won it from the *Romans*, had for some time, (and till their expulsion into *Africa*) possessed themselves of it.

This is the most rich and fertile Countrey of all Spain, extremely fruitfull of Wine, Oyl, and *Orenge*s (which last being shipped at *Sevil*, and so brought for *England*, are by us called by the name of *Sevil Orenge*s) and better furnished with corn than most part of this continent; watered with the Rivers 1 *Anas*, 2 *Odiar*, 3 *Betis*, and 4 *Tenot*: which makes it flourish with a continual greenness of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hills, though watered only with the dew of Heaven,

do

do partake also in reasonable measure. The Air hereof, by reason of its Southernly situation, is exceeding hot, in so much that their Corn there is ripe in April: but those excessive heats much moderated by those constant refreshings which the cool winds breathing from the North, do bestow upon it. In which respect King *Ferdinand* the Catholic did use to say, that it was best living in the Summer at *Seville*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reason of these cool refreshings; and in the winter time at *Burgos* in old *Castile*, which though situate more Northernly, in a very sharp air, had yet many notable defences against the cold.

The Principal Cities and Towns hereof are, 1 *Corduba*, seated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left shore of *Guadalquivir*, over-looking towards the South, a spacious and fruitful Plain. First founded by *Marcellus* a Roman Consul, An. P. C. 601. employed at that time in the wars of Spain: the first Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the chief City of *Batica*. For a long time the seat of the *Moorish* Vice-Royes, Lieutenants to the great Caliph of the *Saracens*; after of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace a magnificent Castle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, it was restored unto the honour of an Episcopal See, which anciently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great Circuit, but of very few houses, by reason of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Senecas*.

*Duosque Senecas, unicunque Lucanum
Fecunda loquitur Corduba: fatis Martialis,*

Corduba glorying in her fruitful field,
One *Lucan*, and two *Senecas* did yeeld.

Nor was it less fruitfull of good wits in the times succeeding. For not to say any thing of *Hojius* that renowned Confessor, who was Bishop here in the time of *Constantine* and before; it was a flourishing University in the time of the *Moors*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhazis*, *Amanfur*, *Messahalah*, those famous Philosophers and Physicians being Students or professors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* leather, made of the skin of a *Sardinian* beast. Near unto this City is a wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but *Olive* trees. 2 *Iaen*, a Bishops See, remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of Spain, ever since the first recovery of it, have stiled themselves Kings of *Iaen*; and use it to this day amongst the rest of their Titles; it having been before that time, the seat and title of some petit Kings amongst the *Moors*. Not far hence stood the famous Town of *Illiturgis* (by *Pliny* *Illurgis*) mentioned so often in the wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3 *Offuna*, of most note for the Dukes hereof, and a small University founded here, Anno 1549. 4 *Eccia*, on the River *Chenil*, of more esteem formerly than at the present: by *Prology* and *Antoninus* called *Afygi*, by *Pliny*, *Augusta Firma*; a Roman Colony, and one of the four Juridical Resorts of *Batica*. 5 *Marchena*, situate on an Hill, where is said to be the best breed of *Gennets* (a swift race of Horses) not of this Province alone, but of all Spain; the River *Betis* (as it was thought) conveying some secret virtue into them. Of this race was the Horse which *Cesar* so loved, that he erected his statue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Lusitani* thought they were begotten by the wind. 6 *Xeres*, situate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xeros de la Frontera*, (the *Asa* of *Prology* and *Antoninus*) famous for plenty of that wine, which we call *Xeres*, Sack; but more for that great and fatal battel fought near unto it, betwixt *K. Roderick* and the *Moors*, the loss of which drew along with it the loss of Spain. 7 *Medina Sidonia* (so called to distinguish it from a Town of *Castile*, called *Medina Celi*); the Duke whereof was General of all the Forces, both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conquest of *England*, Anno 1588. The Town called anciently *Asinda*, and *Asido Casariana*: the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greatest Prince for Revenue in all Spain, his Intrado being estimated at 130000 Crowns per annum. 8 *Algezire*, on the Sea side, a Town of such strength and consequence, that it held out a siege 19 months for the *Moors* of *Africk*, against *Alfonso* the 5 of *Castile*; to whom surrendered at the last upon Compulsion, Anno 1343. Since which the Kings of *Castile* have stiled themselves Kings of *Algezire*; not yet discomfited. 9 *Conil*, a Town on the sea-coast, beyond the Isle of *Gades*, part of the Patrimony of the D. of *Medina Sidonia*. 10 *Gibraltar*, a strong Town seated at the mouth of the Straights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the mountain of *Galpe*, supposed to be one of *Heracles* Pillars; the furthest point Southwards of all Europe. 11 *S. Lucar de Barameda* (the *Luciferi furum* of the Ancients) the Port-Town to *Sevill*, situate at the mouth of the River *Betis*, or *Guadalquivir*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a wind to put to Sea; or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*. 12 *Tariff*, seated at the end of the Promontory, which looks towards *Africk*; and so called, because *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moors* into Spain, here landed: recovered from the *Moors* by *Sancho* the third of *Castile*, Anno 1292, or thereabouts; the first Governor thereof being *Alfonso Peres de Guzman*, the first founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Supposed by some to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if so, then a Colony of the *Lusitanians* (begotten on some unmarried Spanish women by the Roman Souldiers) placed here and indulged the privileges of the *Latines*, by Decree of the Senate, An. P. C. 600. Not far from these last Towns, in a little Island made by two branches of the *Betis*, where it falleth into the Sea, stood the famous 13 *Tartessus*, celebrated in most ancient Writers for the abundance of silver, which the mines of it did produce. Which was so great, that (as we read in *Aristotles* Book de *Mirabilibus*) when the *Tyrans* or *Phenicians* first came thither, *οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὄνουν δένδρεα, μὴν δένδρεα καὶ ἀργύρεα*, that their ships

Gades.

ships were neither able to contain it, or transport it thence: infomuch that they were fain to make their *Anchors*, and other *Utenfils*, of Silver. The like commodity the *Grecians* found in their Voyages hitherto, of which *Herodotus* maketh mention *Lib. IV.* Hereupon some have been perwaded that the ships which *Solomon* built to go for *Tarfish* (whereof we read *1 King. 10. 22*) were bound no further than this place. But we will not enter at this time upon that dispute. As for the situation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as *some*, or *Carteia*, as others do conjecture; (though where *Carteia* was, be alike uncertain, if it were 100 fathoms from the mouth of the River *Batis*, as before is said, doth appear by *Strabo*; Who telleth us that *Batis* falls into the Sea with two mouths or channels, *βασις ἐν τῷ παραλίῳ ἔχει ἑξήκοντα ἑκατὸν ὁδοὺς*, &c. and that in the midst thereof there is a City called *Tartessus*, of the same name with the River (for *Batis* anciently was so named) from whence the whole Countrey thereabouts is called *Tartessus*. The like *Pausanias* saith expressly in his *Eliaca*. Which situation of this Town in an Island, at the mouth of *Batis*, occasioned *Pliny* and some others of the ancient Writers, to give the name of *Tartessus* to the Isle of *Gades*; whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to *14 Sevil*, (in *Latine*, *Hispalis*) the fairest City, not only of *Andalusia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compass six miles, divided into two parts by the River *Batis*, but joynd together by a strong and beautiful Bridge; the whole environed with beautiful walls, and adorned with many magnificent and stately buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monasteries: amongst which, that of the *Gerosians*, or *Carthusians*, is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly revenue. It is also the See of an Archbishop, under whose Jurisdiction are laid to be 20000 Villages; and a most flourishing University, wherein studied *Avicen* the *Moor*, that excellent and learned Scholar, Pope *Sylvester* the second, and *Leander*, who was Archbishop hereof, about the year 580, a stout defender of the Catholic tenetries of the Church against the *Arians*. The university adorned with one of the greatest and goodliest Libraries in the *Christian* world; furnished by *Diego*, the Son of *Christopher Columbus*, the first founder of it, with no fewer than 12000 Volumes, in several Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care: and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and enlargement of it. Famous in former times for two Provincial Councils holden here, the first Anno 584, the last An. 636, and at the present, for that here are continually maintained 30000 *Gennets* for the service of the King; but most of all for the great traffique of the place. For from this Town the *Cassilians* set forwards towards *America*, and here they do discharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagua*, and the Emeralds of *S. Martha*, the *Cochineile* of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hispaniola*; and in a word, the whole treasure of the *New-found-World*. Here is the publick Emporie of all *Spain*, for her Wines, Orenge, and Oyls; sent from hence in so great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the People use to say in the way of a *By-word*, That if there enter not into *Sevil* 4000 Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the Farmer of the Customs is sure to break: infomuch as the Revenues coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the Catholic King; *M. ginnus* reckoning it at no less than a Million of Crowns yearly. Lastly, here resteth the body of *Christopher Columbus*, the fortunate discoverer of the *New-world*, with a *Latine* Epitaph upon his Tomb; but short (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man; of which more hereafter.

As for the fortunes of this City as they relate to Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters, it hath been long the See of an Archbishop (as before is said) next in revenue and degree unto him of *Toledo*; his revenue estimated at 100000 Crowns per annum, his Jurisdiction reaching over all *Andalusia* and the fortunate Islands, in which are said to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Docetes of which being said to comprehend 2000 Benefices, besides *Frieries*, *Nunneries*, and *Hospitals*, which may make the former computation of the Villages subject to his power as a Metropolitan of more easie credit. Yet not so much considerable for its wealth and revenue, as for being once the See of *Isidore*, so much renowned (considering the time he lived in) for the Universality of his learning, who was Bishop here, called usually *Isidorus Hispanensis*, to distinguish him from another of that name in *Egypt*, called *Pelusiota*. As for the civil fortunes of it in the declining of the *Moor*, when their Eitate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdom of it self under a noble *Moor* named *Alcorax*, An. 966. one of the Kings whereof called *Almuncamus*, was of so great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greatest part of *Andalusia* under his command, made subject with the rest of the *Moor* in *Spain*, to the *Miramolines* of *Morocco*, An. 1091, till the retreat of *Mahomet Enaf* unto *Africk*, An. 1214. After which once more made a Kingdom in the person of *Aven Lalle*, a great Prince of the *Moor*, but no longer continuing in that Royal dignity and estate, than till the year 1248. when taken and subdued by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*; and made a part of his Estates; but so, that it remaineth a Realm distinct in the Regal stile, in which the Kings of *Spain* are called Kings of *Sevil*.

2 South of *Andalusia*, at the mouth of *Guadalquivir*, stands the Isle of *GADES*, distant from the main land 700 paces, and joynd unto it with a Bridge called *Puerto de Suaco*. It is in length 13 miles, of a very fruitful soyl; besides the riches which it gets by Fishing, and making of Salt. First peopled by the *Tyrians* 562 years before the Birth of *CHRIST*; subdued by the *Carthaginians*, An. V.C. 236. being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defensive War against the *Spaniards*; and was the last hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*, out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here stood in ancient times a Temple consecrated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Seafaring men (at their being here) used to pay their vows, and offer sacrifice, as being arrived at the furthest parts of all the World.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1 *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town

Gades.

of *Cadix*, and the main Land of *Andalusia*. 2 *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North. 3 *Cadix*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Island, and giving name unto the whole. Situate in the Western part of the whole Isle, on a large Bay serving as a Road for the *Indian* Fleet, by the resort and trade whereof it is much enriched. First founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal* City by the *Romans*, and one of the *Juridical* Resorts for the Province of *Betica*: in whose times it was held to be the noblest and richest in all *Spain*, not yielding to any in the Empire for greatness, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. Infomuch that here lived at one time 500 *Roman* Knights, which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: besides the great concourse of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great resort, occasioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to add a new Town to the old; the whole circumference of both being 20 furlongs. By the *Moor* at their conquest of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined; but since repaired, well fortified, and made the Magazine for the Ammunition of the *Spanish* Navies. Taken notwithstanding in one day by the *English*, under the conduct of *Charles* Lord *Effingham*, Robert Earl of *Essex*, and Sir *Walter Raleigh*: in which they burned the *Indian* Fleet, consisting of 40 ships, whose lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the *Spanish* Navie, consisting of 57 Men of War; took the *St. Michael*, and the *St. Andrew*, two great Gallies, with their luggage; spoiled and carried away more Martial furniture, than could be supplied in many years; and forced the Town, in which they slew and took Prisoners 4000 Foot and 600 horse, and brought thence a very great booty in the sackage of it, An. 1596. The fortunacy of which enterprise gave occasion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame this excellent Anagram on the name of the Earl of *Essex*, (who was looked on as the greatest Adventurer in it) viz. *Deveraux, Vere dux*. Which he afterwards cast into this *Distich*.

Vere dux *Deveraux*, & verior *Hercule*; *G A D E S*
Nam semel hic vidit, vicit at ille simul.

Alicides yields to *Deveraux*; he did see
Thy beauties (*Cales*) but *Deveraux* conquer'd thee.

Neer to this Isle, is that so celebrated Straight called by some *Fretum Gaditanum*, for the nearness of it to this Island; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not because *Hercules* did there break out a passage to let the Ocean into the *Mediterranean*, as the Poets fable; but because of the two Pillars which he caused to be erected on each side of it, with the inscription of *Nil Ultra*, this being supposed to be the furthest Countrey Westward. But when that supposition was proved untrue by the discovery of *America*, *Charles* the fifth being in those parts, caused two new pillars to be placed where the old ones stood, or rather where he thought they stood, and *Plus ultra* to be written on them. As for those Pillars so much memorized in the ancient *VVriters*, some place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Island; others on the Promontory of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Abila* in *Africk*; and some again in two little Islands near those Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the Straight; called now the Straight of *Gibraltar*, from the Town and Castle of *Gibraltar*, situate on the brink hereof; the Straight being in length 15 miles, and in breadth, where it is narrowest, seven.

EXTREMADURA hath on the East and North *Castile*; on the West, *Portugal*; and on the South, *Andalusia*. It was first called *Beturia*, from the River *Batis*, which runneth through it; and for distinctions sake, *Beturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then the Inhabitants of this Tract: to difference it from *Beturia Turdulorum*, containing those parts of *Granada*, and *Andalusia*, which lye nearest unto *Tarracensis*. And when first it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds at that time of the Kingdom of the *Morisicos*; so called by the *Christians*, as lying on the extremities, or furthest side of that River.

Principal places in it, are, 1 *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, situate near the ruins of *Norba Caesarea*, destroyed by *Petronius* and *Africanus*, two of *Pompey's* Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Caesar*: now of most note for an Order of Knights here seated, and from hence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2 *Guadalcanal*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3 *Merida*, situate also on the *Tagus*, first called *Augusta Emerita*, founded and made a Colony by *Augustus Caesar*, who placed herein his old Soldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City after that of *Lusitania*, and by *Africanus* preferred before any in *Spain*; now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatness. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battle betwixt *Wallia*, the first King of the *Goths* in *Spain*, and *Attace* King of the *Alani* and *Silinges* (this last a people of the *Vandals*): the victory whereof falling to the *Goths*, caused the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*. 4 *Medinilla*, near which the River *Guadiana* hideth it self under the ground, for the space of 10 leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Discoverer and Conqueror of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5 *Badajoz*, a Bishops See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6 *Guadalupe*, on a River of the same name, renowned amongst those of the Church of *Rome*, for the miracles and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much reformed to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* is in *Italy*. 7 *Placenza*, a Bishops See, near the Hills of *Castile*, amongst which hills (by reason of their strength and safety) *Sertorius* made his last retreat, when persecuted by the *Romans* of the contrary faction, and where he was most wickedly slain by *Perpenna* and some other of his own associates: not far from hence if it be not in the self-same place, in a retired and solitary valley standeth the Monastery of *S. Justus*, remarkable for a greater Miracle,

Extremadura.

Miracle, than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boast of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, that most puissant Monarch, having resigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the rest of his Dominions to his Son *Philip* the second, did here bid farewell unto the World; spending the residue of his time in prayers and devout Meditations. The greatest Monument and example of Self-denial which these later Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our cloytered Monks; or any quitting of their Crowns by some Kings and Emperors in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in the time of Ignorance and Superstition, saw not so clearly what they did (or did it out of weakness, and want of spirit); as this Masculine and Heroick Emperor.

The old Inhabitants of these Countreys, were the *Turduli*, the *Bastuli*, and the *Turditani*, of *Andalusia*, and *Granada*; the *Celtici*, and some part of the *Dusiani*, and all vanquished by the *Romans*, during the second *Punic* war; under the fortunate command of *Scipio Africanus*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*, who passing over into *Africa* left it to the *Suevians*; loit by them to *Theodoric* the fourth King of the *Goths*, who hereby added all *Belgica* to his other Dominions. Under the *Goths* it remained subject till their fatal overthrow by the *Moors*, who having made almost an entire Conquest of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at first subject to the Great Caliphs, Lords of the *Saracenic* Empire; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Udior Ubit*, under whom they first made this Conquest, Anno 714, to *Abdalla* of the House of *Alavici* Anno 757. At what time *Alderamen*, of the Line of *Mahomet* the *Impostor*, and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humeia* (of which Race this *Alderamen* was) had been dispossessed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spanish Moors*, cordially affected to his House: whose Government he took upon him, discharged of all subjection and subordination to the *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperors; and making it an absolute Kingdom of it self. In his Race it continued without any factions or subdivisions, till the time of *Hizen* the second, the tenth King of these *Spanish Moors*: after whose death distracted amongst many petty Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moors of Africa*; of which more anon. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of the Kings of these *Moors of Spain*, called commonly from *Corduba* their Royal Seat

The Kings of Corduba.

A. Ch.					
757	1	<i>Alderamen</i> , the first Sovereign Prince of the <i>Moors</i> in <i>Spain</i> . 31.	989	11	<i>Zuleima</i> an African <i>Moor</i> of the Family of <i>Alavici</i> ; and he expelled by
787	2	<i>Hizen</i> , the second son of <i>Alderamen</i> , by whom <i>Zuleima</i> his elder Brother was put by the throne. 7.	993	12	<i>Mahomet</i> II. surnamed <i>Almshadi</i> of the old house of <i>Humeia</i> ; oured again by <i>Zuleima</i> , and made King of <i>Toledo</i> . Betwixt these three and their several factions, the Kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never restored again to its ancient lustre; and finally made a prey to
794	3	<i>Hali Hatan</i> , the son of <i>Hizen</i> . 24.	1001	13	<i>Hali</i> , another African <i>Moor</i> . 2.
819	4	<i>Alderamen</i> II. Son of <i>Hali Hatan</i> , discomfited by the Christians in the memorable battel of <i>Clavigno</i> , An. 836.	1003	14	<i>Cacin</i> , the Brother of <i>Hali</i> . 4.
839	5	<i>Mahomet</i> son of <i>Alderamen</i> the second, who reduced <i>Toledo</i> then revolted under his Command. 35.	1007	15	<i>Hiaia</i> , the son of <i>Mahomet</i> . Menf. 4.
874	6	<i>Almundie</i> the son of <i>Mahomet</i> . 2.	1007	16	<i>Alderamen</i> IV. a K. of 7 weeks only.
876	7	<i>Abdalla</i> Brother to <i>Almundie</i> , and as little memorable.	1008	17	<i>Mahomet</i> III. poisoned by his own servants. 1.
889	8	<i>Alderamen</i> III. surnamed <i>Almansor</i> , so fortunate in his wars against the Christians. 50.	1010	18	<i>Hizen</i> III. deposed by the <i>Moors</i> , grown weary of the house of <i>Humeia</i> , of which house he was.
939	9	<i>Hali Hatan</i> II. son of <i>Alderamen</i> the second.	1011	19	<i>Joar</i> of <i>Algezira</i> . 3.
959	10	<i>Hizen</i> II. son of <i>Hali Hatan</i> , in the 33 year of his reign deposed for his sloth and negligence, by	1014	20	<i>Mahomet</i> IV. the son of <i>Joar</i> , the last King of the <i>Moors</i> in <i>Corduba</i> , before the second Conquest of these parts of <i>Spain</i> by the <i>Moors</i>

of *Africa*. Concerning which we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at *Clavigno*, against *Alderamen* the second, by *Raymir* King of *Leon*, An 836. in which the *Moors* lost 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spanish Moors* began to decline: brought utterly to nothing; by the sloth and negligence of *Hizen* the second; after a long and unprofitable reign, deposed by *Zuleima*, who succeeded. But the *Moors* not easily brooking the command of a new *Impostor*, fell into many factions, and Divisions amongst themselves: every great man seizing on some part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himself with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*; a third at *Valentia*; a fourth of *Cordova*, &c. the names of which last only do occur in the former Catalogue; as they which did pretend a Sovereignty over all the rest. And 'twas a sign the Kingdom was in the expiring, when so many Kings succeeded in so few years, after one another: there passing from the depoling of *Hizen* the second, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time we finde no fewer than 10 Kings. The often change of Princes, and short lives of Kings are the apparent signs of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its expiration;

Granada.

tion: as may be seen by the short lives and reigns of the last *Western* Emperours, nine of them hardly reigning 20 years; as also of the Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*, of which the last held the Throne no longer than the nine *Western* Emperours had done before them. But to proceed, *Mahomet* the last King of this first Rank, having left the stage in the thirteenth year of his reign, Anno 1027. we find no good const of his Successors in the Kingdom of *Corduba*; made inconsiderable by the withdrawing so many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and insolence of which Royteless and petty Tyrants, forced them at last to call unto their aid the Kings or *Mahometines* of *Morocco*; by whom themselves and all the rest of their Corrivals, were in fine subdued. Under seven Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spanish Moors* continued subject about 120 years, that is to say, from the first coming in of *Joseph Telepin* the *Mahometine*, Anno 1091. unto the going out of *Mahomet*, surnamed the *Green*, Anno 1214. During which time the affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain* were so well conducted, that they lost nothing to the *Christians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alfonso* the second in the account of *Castile*, the seventh in account of *Leon*, Anno 1147. and the City of *Lisbon*, taken from them in the same year also by *Alfonso*; the first King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Green* being vanquished in the great fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joint Forces of the confederated *Christians*, Anno 1214. left off all further care of the *Moors* in *Spain*; after his going thence distracted once again into many Kingdoms, almost as many as great Towns; all of them swallowed up in a little time by the Kings of *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongst them the Kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to stand long on this new Foundation, was ruined and brought under the command of the *Castilians*, by their King *Ferdinand* the second, Anno 1236. Since that time there is no more mention of the Kingdom of *Corduba*.

The Arms whereof were Or, a Lion *Gules*, armed and Crowned of the first, a Border *Azure* charged with 8 Towers *Argent*.

7. GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the West, with *Andalusia*; on the East, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New Castile*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief City, and Seat Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compass: a Kingdom of no great extent, but such as contained in it more fair Towns, strong Fortresses, and defensible places, than the like quantity of Ground in the world besides. The North part of the Country plain; the South parts over-spread with the *Alpujarras*, and other spurs and branches of the *Orospeña*. In the time of the *Moors* wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all sorts of commodities; the Hills planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Vallies swelling with Corn and Gardens: since their expulsion, neither much peopled, nor very fruitful, for want of men to dress and manure the Land.

The principal Cities of it, are 1 *Granada*, situate on two Hills, divided by a Vally, through which runneth the River *Darien*; consisting of four several parts, called *Abamire*, *Sierre de sol*, *Granada*, and *Antequera*: the two first standing on the Hills, the two last in the Vally; the whole circuit being about seven miles, and containing in the time of the *Moorish* Kingdom, about 200000 of souls. Fenced with strong walls, fortified with 130 Towers, and replenished with abundance of wholfom and pleasant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the best sort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*: the houses of which are for the most part built of free-stone, with delicate and artificial Masonry; shewing great magnificence. Herein standeth the Cathedral Church, a work of admirable structure; of Figure round, as having sometimes been a *Mahometan Mosque*. Here is also the place which they call *Alcazar*, representing a little Town, to which are ten Gates. In the *Abamire* is the Palace of the *Moorish* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Musical* work; and which by reason of the structure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongst the Wonders of the world; having withal a goodly prospect over all the Town, lying under it upon the East; a spacious Champantoward the North, and the snowy tops of *Sierra Nevada* towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Justice for all the Southern parts of *Spain*, as *Valadolid* is for the Northern: *Madrid*, which is the highest Court, having jurisdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town first raised out of the ruins of *Ilberis*, situate not far off on the Hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer sort. 2 *Albama*, seated amongst steep and craggy rocks, out of which issue Medicinal Waters, occasioning a great resort of the *Spanish* Gentry: the first Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their last long War against the *Moors* for the recovery of this Kingdom, Anno 1482. and looked on by the *Moors* as a sad preface of a ruined and expiring Empire. 3 *Guadix*, an Episcopal See, about nine leagues from *Granada*. 4 *Veles Malaga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cax*, by *Antoninus*, *Sexicanum*; situate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpujarras*, a large branch of the *Orospeña*, over-spreading a great part of this Country; heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moors*, who chose to dwell there for the strength and safety of the situation; since their expulsion, desolate and unfrequented, nothing remaining of them now but the *Arabick* Language; which is still spoke by those few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this tract so high, that from the tops hereof a man may easily discern the whole course of the *Straight of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Senta*, and *Tangier*, in *Africa*. 5 *Ronda*, at the foot of another branch of the *Orospeña*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*.

Granada.

Ronda. Not far from which, by Munda, now a very small Village, was fought that memorable battle betwixt Caesar and the Sons of Pompey, the honour of which fell to Caesar, who then made an end of the Civil Wars, which it was at very day four years before, were begun by Pompey the Father. In this fight was Cn. Pompeius slain, and his Forces broken: Caesar himself being so put to it, that seeing his Soldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them remember, that at Munda they fought for their General. The shame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onset, which was honoured with a signal and remarkable Victory: this being the last fight that Caesar was in, murdered not long after in the Senate-house. And of this fight he used to say, That in all other places he fought for his honour, in this for his life. 6 Antequera, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering close upon Castile. 7 Maxacra, on the shore of the Mediterranean, supposed to be the Virgo of Pliny, from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called Virgitanus. 8 Vera, on the same shore, the furthest Town of Betica, and of this Country towards Murcia: supposed to be the Virgo of Pliny, from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called Virgitanus. 9 Loxa, on the River Darien, enjoying a situation both strong and pleasant. 10 Malaga, or Malaca, situate at the mouth of Guadalquivir, once sacked by Cassius the rich Roman; who flying out of Spain, to avoid the fury of Marius and Cinna, who had slain his Father and Uncle, hid himself and his Companions in a Cave hereabouts, for eight Months together: but after hearing of their deaths, issued out, and ranfacked, amongst many other Cities, this Malaga. A Town of great Traffick, and much resort, especially for Raisins, Almonds, Malaga Sacks: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and to the great prejudice of the Moors taken by Ferdinand the Catholic, Anno 1487. the Conquest of the whole Kingdom of Granada, following not long after. It was since made a Bishops See, or restored rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11 Ameria, a noted Haven on the Mediterranean, the Adversary of Melis; a Colony of the Carthaginians, and anciently a Bishops See. 12 Carthema, 13 Coim, and 14 Balsa, more within the Land: this last the strongest Bulwark of the City of Granada, on the North-east whereof it standeth. A place of great strength both by Art and Nature, and by the Moors defended with so great a gallantry, that it held out a Siege of seven Months against an Army of 13000 Horse, and 24000 Foot, King Ferdinand the Catholic, being there in person: and yielded at the last, Decemb. 4. 1489. upon better conditions than any Town had done before it.

As for the fortunes of this Country, after the Conquest of it by the Moors and Saracens, it was a part or member of the Kingdom of Corduba; and so continued till that Kingdom was subdued by the Spaniards. But the Moors were too stout to yield all at once. Having yet ground enough both to secure themselves in, and endow their King: they are resolved, though they had lost one Kingdom, to erect another. And therefore Corduba being taken, and that Kingdom ruined, the Moors, with Mahomet Aben Alhamar their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themselves unto Granada, and there renewed their strength and Kingdom; which lasted 256 years, under 20 Kings, whose names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of Granada.

A. Ch.		A. Ch.	
1236	1 Mahomet Alhamar, the last King of Corduba, and the first King of Granada. 36.	1379	10 Mahomet Guadix. 13
1272	2 Mahomet Mir Amir. 30.	1392	11 Joseph II. 4.
1302	3 Mahomet Aben Ezar. 7.	1396	12 Mahomet Aben Balva. 11.
1309	4 Mahomet Aben Ewar. 10.	1407	13 Joseph III. 16.
1319	5 Ismael. 3.	1423	14 Mahomet Aben Azar. 4.
1322	6 Mahomet. 12.	1427	15 Mahomet the little. 5.
1334	7 Joseph Aben Amet. 20.	1432	16 Joseph Aben Almud. 13.
1354	8 Mahomet Lagus. 23.	1445	17 Mahomet Osmen. 8.
1377	9 Mahomet Vermeil. 2.	1453	18 Ismael II. 9.
		1462	19 Muley Alboacen. 20.
		1482	20 Mahomet Boabdilin, the last King of the Moors in Spain. Of all which

there is little left upon Record, their whole time being spent in defending their borders against the encroachments of Castile; or else in Civil Wars and discords amongst themselves: in which they were so frequent, and sometimes so violent, as if they had no Enemy near them. Mahomet Aben Ezar the fourth King, deposed by Mahomet Aben Levin; and he again thrust out by Ismael the Son of Ferrachen, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treason. Mahomet, son of Ismael, murdered by his Subjects; Joseph the son of Mahomet slain by Mahomet Lagus; and he again deposed by Mahomet Vermeil; who in the end was miserably slain by Pedro the Cruel of Castile, to whom he had fled for help and succour. After this time they ruined and deposed one another till the end of their Kingdom; the Successor never staying for the death of his Predecessor, but violently making way for himself to enter on the Government: even Mahomet Boabdilin the last King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but setting him besides the Throne, as he himself was for a time, by Muley Moabdilin his Uncle: and thereby opening a fair Gate for Ferdinand, King of Castile and Aragon, to bring in his Forces, and to the subduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdom, that as it began under a Mahomet, a Ferdinand being King of Castile: so it ended under a Mahomet, a Ferdinand being King of Castile also. In the first year then of this mans Reign did the War begin, or rather in the last year

Granada.

year of his Father, who by taking Zahara from the Christians gave the first occasion: and in the tenth year of the War (for so long it lasted) Anno 1492. the Empire of the Moors ended in Spain, by the valour of Ferdinand the Catholic, and Isabel his wife, after their first entrance into it, more than 760 years.

Such of them, as after the decay of their Kingdom had a desire to stay in Spain, which had for so long time been their native Country, were suffered to do so by the prudent Victors, (fearing a desolation of the Country, if they should abandon it;) conditioned that they would be Christianized. And that they might be known to be as they professed, the Inquisition was established in the City of Granada, consisting of a certain number of Secular Priests, and Dominican Friars: who finding any counterfeiter, or Apostate Christians, were first gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict such punishment on them as was accustomed in like cases. By the terror of which Inquisition, many professed in shew the Christian Faith. But being Christians only in the outward shew, and practising on all occasions against the State, the Kings of Spain resolved long ago on their Extermination; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time Philip the third having made a peace with England, and a truce with Holland; and finding the Moors of Africa so embroiled in Wars, that they were not able to disturb him; put that extreme rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their consultations: 110000 of them being forced to quit this Country, and provide new dwellings: under colour that they went about to free themselves from the Inquisition, and to recover their old Liberty lost so long before.

The Forces which the Kings of Granada in the times of their greatest power were able to raise, were far beyond the Amasurement and extent of their Kingdom: not above 700 miles in compass, as before is said: but so exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of necessaries, that within two dayes space, the King hereof was said to have been able to draw together 50000 Horse and 200000 Foot, for defence of his Kingdom. Turquet reports it so in his Spanish History. But this proved more then they were able to do in their greatest need; when this Kingdom was finally invaded, and at last subdued by Ferdinand and Isabel Kings of Spain: though possibly by reason of their divisions at that time, some following the party Mahomet Boabdilin, and others that of his Uncle Muley chosen King against him; they might not joyn together in a common interests for the defence of their Estate. The Arms whereof were Or, a Pomgranate (or apple of Granada) slipped, Vert.

8. MURCIA.

MURCIA is bounded on the West, with Granada: on the East, with Valencia; on the North, with Valencia, and a part of Granada; and on the South, with the Mediterranean Sea; so called from Murcia the chief City. In former times esteemed a rich and wealthy Country, stored with all sorts of fruits; and so abounding in Silver Mines, that when the Romans were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 2500 Drachmas of daily profit; now for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in so small a Country. The principal, 1 Murcia, by Ptolemy called Menralis, seated upon the River Segura; a Bishops See, situate in a pleasant and delightful Plain, planted with Pomgranats, and other excellent fruits: from this, the Country had the name of the Kingdom of Murcia. 2 Carthagea, or Nova Carthago, first built by Asdrubal of Carthage, the brother of Annibal, for the better receiving of such aids, both of men and money, as should come from Africa. Situate in a Demi-Island, in the very jaws of the Mediterranean; by which and by a deep Marish on the West side of it, so impregnablely fortified; that if Scipio, afterwards called Africanus, who then lay at the Siege thereof, had not been shewed a way over that Marish, at a dead low water; by poor Fishermen of Tarragon, who knew the secret, he had there lost both his time and his honor. Nothing more memorable, in the sackage and spoil thereof, (though there was found abundance of Arms and Treasure) than the virtue of Scipio, who finding there many Spanish Ladies of great birth and beauties, lest there as hostages for the Spaniards with the Carthaginians, would not permit any of them to be brought before him, for fear it should betray him to some inconvenience. Being re-edified it was made a Roman Colony, and one of the seven Juridical Resorts of Tarracensis: by Constantine made the chief City of the new Province of Carthaginensis, which was hence denominated: Afterwards twice sacked by the Gothes and Vandals, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruins. And though again new built and peopled, it is still but small, containing at the most but 600 households: and would be utterly abandoned, but for the safety of the place, and the strength thereof, garrisoned, and fortified very strongly by King Philip the second, for fear of surprisal by the Turks; and the security of the Haven (which is withal very large and capacious) coming from a little Island, lying at the mouth thereof; by which assured from tempestuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occasion of that saying of Andreas Doria, Admiral unto Charles the fifth, that there were but three safe Ports in the Mediterranean; that is to say, August, July, and this Carthagea: meaning as I conceive, that those two Moneths being commonly free from tempestuous weather, were of as great safety to the Mariners, as this famous Port. 3 Lorca, another Port Town, situate on a Creek more within the Land. 4 Almansa, 5 Saracel, two strong Towns bordering on Valencia; well fortified, when Murcia and Valencia were in several hands. 6 Cervillan. 7 Albama. 8 Rus, &c.

Toledo.

This Country being part of the Province of *Carthaginensis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans*, at their first entrance into *Spain*; from them recovered by *Wallia*, the first King of the *Goths*, in this part of *Europe*. Together with the rest of *Spain*, it was subdued by the *Moors* of *Africk*, in the distractions of whole Empire after the going hence of the *Moors* of *Africk*, it was made a distinct Kingdom by *Alien-Hut*, of the race of the Kings of *Saragossa*, who had seized upon it, Anno 1228. and for a time was the most puissant King of the *Moors* in *Spain*, commanding over this Country, *Granada*, and a great part of *Andalusia*. Invited to a Feast, and then basely murdered by *Alien Arramin* a false servant of his, Anno 1236. one *Alien Hudiel* seized on the Realm of *Murcia*, disturbed in his possession by *Alboquis*, the last King hereof. But he not able to defend himself against his Competitor, surrendered it to *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, whom he put into possession of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned, that *Alboquis* should enjoy the title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, under the Sovereignty of *Castile*; and that *Ferdinand* should enjoy one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1241, after it had continued in the state of a Kingdom, but 12 years only, united to *Castile* without blood or trouble, and so remains ever since.

9. TOLEDO.

THE Kingdom of *TOLEDO*, so called from *Toledo* the chief City of it, contained once the greatest part of that Country which is now called *New-Castile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or member. The Country lying next unto it was anciently the Seat of the *Carpentani*; the nature of the soil we shall find elsewhere.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Toledo*, of great Antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius a Roman* *Prator*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with 30 Towers standing on the Walls. By reason of the situation of it in the very midst almost of *Spain*, it is passing well inhabited, as well by the Nobility, who reside there for pleasure, and by Scholars, who abide in it for their Studies; as by Merchants, who resort thither for their profit: besides such Souldiers and their Off-studies; who are continually garrisoned in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are, who are by far more handsom in the inside than the outlide promiseth: most but mean, and ordinary; though by far more handsom in the inside than the outlide promiseth: most of them being furnished with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed unto them by the admirable inventions of one *Pamper*, a native of *Cremona* in the Dukedom of *Milain*. The streets narrow, close, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troublesome to walk or go upon, especially in slippery or dirty weather, by reason of its steep and uneven situation on the side of a rocky hill: by which, and by the River which almost surrounds it, it is naturally very strong, and well helped by Art. For that cause made the fear of the *Gothish* Kings: by one of which called *Bamba*, so repaired and beautified (besides the addition of a strong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by some accounted for the founder of it. For so we find it in these old Verses:

Evexit (fautore Deo) Rex inclitus Urlem
Bamba, sua celebrem protendens Gentis honorem.

That is to say,

King *Bamba* (God assisting) rais'd this Town,
Extending to the ancient *Goths* renown.

When the *Goths* fell, it was in chief estimation amongst the *Moors*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both (as it continueth to this day) the See of an Archbishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and president for the most part of the *Inquisition*, his Revenue answerable to his place; the greatest of any *Clergy-man* in the *Christian* World, next to the *Popes of Rome*; as being estimated at 300000 Crowns per annum. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here holden in the time of the *Goths*; and is now a famous University for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws, and hath to this day the Temporal Jurisdiction over 17 Walled Towns, besides Villages. 2 *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is situate on the diction over 17 Walled Towns, besides Villages. 2 *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is situate on the River *Ana*, of most fame in these later times for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Castile*. Neighbourd by the ruins of the strong and famous City *Castulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyreseni*, a people that dwelt on the other side of the River, suddenly entred and taken. But *Sertorius* following after them by the same other tide of the River, and causing his men to apparel themselves in the cloathes of the Gate, put them all to the sword: and causing his men to apparel themselves in the cloathes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyreseni*; who supposing them to be their own party, opened their Gates, and were all either slain or sold for slaves. More of this Town anon when we come to *Castile*, to which now belonging. 3 *Talborn*, commonly called *Talvera de la Reyna*, or the Queens *Talvera*; and called so on occasion of an execrable murder, committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonso* the sixth, on the Lady *Leonore de Gusman*, her husbands Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*; supposed to be the *Litora* of *Ptolemy*, and now belonging to the Archbishop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof

Toledo.

thereof. 4 *Medina Zelims*, commonly called *Medina Celi*, of great importance when possessed or neighboured by the *Moors*. Now of most note for giving the title of Dukes to the illustrious Family *De la Cerda*, descended from *Ferdinand*, the eldest Son of *Alfonso* the fifth; claiming by that descent a title to the Crown of *Castile*. What other Towns belonged unto it, we shall see anon.

As for *Toledo* it self, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarracensis*; after that the seat Royal of the *Gothish* Kings; removed thither from *Tholouse* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moors* at their first entrance into *Spain*, Anno 716. more prudently aiming at the head, than the *Goths* possibly expected from such *Barbarians*. In the Confusions of that Kingdom, betwixt the beginning of the reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the second coming in of the *Moors* of *Africk*, made a distinct Kingdom of it self; continuing in that estate till taken from *Haia Alchadachir* the last King hereof, by *Alfonso* the first, King of *Castile*, Anno 1083. This *Alfonso* being the younger Son of *Ferdinand*, the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that by his brother *Sancho* King of *Castile*, he lived in exile with the *Moors*, kindly received and entertained by *Almenon* the Father of this *Haia*, King of *Toledo*, till the death of his brother. After which coming to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, Anno 1073. he picked a quarrel with his Host, and besieged *Toledo*; his long abode there making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his designs: which notwithstanding held him a siege of five years, before he could make himself Matter of it: by him incorporated presently on the taking of it, with the rest of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New-Castile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well those who held it but for life, as those who left the same unto their Posterity, they are these that follow.

The Moorish Kings reigning in Toledo.

A. Ch.

- 1 *Galefroy*, King of *Toledo* in the time of *Charlemagne*, under the Vassalage of the great Caliph of *Damascus*, subdued by *Abdaramen* the first King or Miramolin of the *Moors* in *Corduba*, of the house of *Hunna*.
- 787 2 *Zuleima*, eldest son of *Abdaramen* King of *Corduba*, being dispossessed of the Realm of *Corduba*, and the rest of his Estates in *Spain* by *Hizen* his younger Brother, reigned a while in *Toledo*; of which outed also not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a Member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, till the later end of the reign of *Abdaramen* the second. At what time
- 833 3 *Aben Lope*, (the son of *Musa Aben Cacia*, a *Goth* by Nation and descent, but a *Moor* by profession, who had caused the *Toledans* and others of the *Moors* of *Spain* to rebel against *Abdaramen*) assumed unto himself the title of King of *Toledo*: a strict confederate of *Ordono* the 11th. King of *Leon*, by whom supported in his Wars against those of *Corduba*, but at last vanquished and dis seized by *Mahomet*, the son of *Abdaramen*, Anno 848.
- 990 4 *Abdalla*, a great man among the *Moors*, during the contentions betwixt *Zuleima* and *Hizen* the second for the Realm of *Corduba*, seized on the City of *Toledo*, which he held as King: and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Corduba* during those contentions; by whom succeeded in this Kingdom.
- 995 5 *Mahomet*, surnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humy*, King of *Corduba*, and dispossessed thereof by the faction of *Zuleima*, retired to *Toledo*, and was kindly entertained by King *Abdalla*, whom he succeeded in this Kingdom.
- 999 6 *Obeydalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*, slain in his Wars with *Hizen* the King of *Corduba*, in the first or second year of his reign.
- 1000 7 *Hairam* of the same house of *Aben Humeya*, and probably the next kinsman of *Obeydalla*, succeeded him in this Estate, and left the same unto his posterity, till subdued by the *Spaniards*.
- 1010 8 *Hizen*, the Son of *Hairam*, of whom nothing memorable.
- 1045 9 *Ali Maynon*, or *Almenon*, as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizen*, who entertained *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, when dispossessed of his Estate by his brother *Sancho*.
- 1076 10 *Hizen* II. Son of *Ali Maynon*.
- 1078 11 *Hiaya*, surnamed *Alcadabile*, the Son of *Ali Mainon* and Brother of *Hizen*, a cruel Prince and ill beloved of his Subjects; which gave occasion unto *Alfonso* King of *Castile* and *Leon* spoken of before, to invade this Kingdom, by whom at last it was subdued, and *Toledo* with its Territories added unto *Castile*, as before is said, Anno 1083. By which means there accrewed to the Realm of *Castile*, besides *Toledo* it self, and the Towns spoken of already, those of *Illescu*, *Escallona*, *Alaguda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Consuegra*, *Berlanga*, *Guadalajara*, *Arienca*, and divers others, now passing in the estimate of *New-Castile*.

But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the *Christians*, was forthwith made the Metropolitan City of *Spain* (in regard of Ecclesiastical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Goths*: and shortly after honoured by *Alfonso* with the title of the Imperial City; that King upon the conquest hereof, having assumed unto himself the title of Emperour of *Spain*; but somewhat too affectedly, as the case then stood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which respects he gave unto this City for the Arms hereof, in a Field *Azure*, a Crown Mitral Imperial Or, garnished with sundry precious Gems Proper; changed afterwards by *Alfonso* the third of *Castile* and eighth of *Leon*, affecting the same title of Emperour, to an Emperour sitting on his Throne in a Robe

A a 3

of

Castile.

of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a sword in his right. But the Blazon of these Arms I finde not, nor much worth the searching: the old Coat being worn again after his de-
cease.

10. CASTILE.

CASTILE is bounded on the East with *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and part of *Valencia*; on the West with *Portugal*, on the North with *Biscay*, *Guipuscoa*, and the *Asturias*; on the South with *Extremadura*, *Andalusia*, and *Granada*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

This was the most prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent, to which the rest are all united either by Marriages or Conquest. Divided commonly into the *New* and the *Old*, parted from one another by the hills of *Segovia*: the one being called the *Old Castile*, because it was the ancient patrimony of the first Earls heretofore; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the first inheritance, by the Conquest of the Realm of *Toledo* and other pieces from the *Moors*. The *Old Castile* is the less fruitful of the two, more fit for Pasturage than Corn; but better stored with that and all sorts of fruits, than the Neighbouring Countries, which lie betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champain, better stored with fruits; and furnished with sufficient plenty of Corn and other provisions necessary for the life of man. The *Old Castile* watered with the Rivers of 1. *Relauinos*, rising not far from *Burgos*; 2. *Tormes*, passing by *Salamanca*; 3. *Duero*, the Receptacle of the others: The *New* with *Guadarama*, honoured with the Neighbourhood of *Madrid*; 5. *Tevina*, and 6. *Tagus*, the most famous River of all *Spain*.

The **OLD CASTILE** is situate on the North of the *New*, and hath for the chief Cities of it, 1. *Soria*, of great note in the ancient Story, by the name of *Numantia*, which for the space of fourteen years withstood the whole Forces of *Rome*: during which time they valiantly repulsed their Enemies, and forced them to dishonourable Compositions. But finding at the last no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money, and Goods, laid them in a heap, then set fire unto them, and finally burnt themselves in the midst of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numantia*, to adorn his triumph. 2. *Avila*, situate under the great Mountains, which are called from hence the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abule*, and by that name giving the title of *Avulensis* to the renowned *Tostatus*, who was Bishop of it. A Man, who in his time was President of the Council to *John* King of *Aragon*; yet could find leisure enough not only to attend his Episcopal charge, but to compile those learned and painful Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which and his other abilities (besides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Elogie* which *Casambon* hath given him, in his Book against *Baronius*, saying, *Laudo acumen viri, si in meliora incidisset Tempora, longe maximi*. 3. *Valadolid*, a fine neat Town, and one of the ancientest Universities of *Spain*: discontinued for a time by Students, and then reitord again by King *Philip* the second, whose Birth-place it was; and who erected here a Colledge (among others) for the education only of young *English* Fugitives. Seated upon the River *Pisuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the Kings Court here residing in the Summer times, it became in little space a fair, large, populous City, and of great resort; not yielding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lisbon*, and *Sevil*. It is called in *Latine*, *Vallis Oletum*, and *Vallis Oletana*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it; but by *Ptolomy*, *Pintia*. 4. *Segovia*, a Bishops See, of great trade in cloathing; situate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence the hills of *Segovia*. 5. *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relauinos*, or *Relanzon*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d'Oca*, part of the *Idubeda*; built out of certain Villages lying hereabouts by *Nugno Bellides*, a *German*, Son-in-law unto one of the first Earls of *Castile*. For a long time the seat of those Kings, since of the Archbishops heretofore, the Cathedral being one of the fairest in *Spain*; built with such Art, that Mass may be sung aloud in five several Chappels, without disturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency (in Civil matters) with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the first place or vote, in all Parliaments or Assemblies of the States of *Castile*. But yet to satisfy *Toledo*, the Controversie is still undecided, and was once finely taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, saying, that he would first speak for *Toledo*, and then *Burgos* should speak for it self. Without the Walls of this City is a famous Nunnery, called *De las Huelgas*, consisting of 150 Religious Women, all of Noble Houses. 6. *Ciudad Rodrigo*, a Bishops See, on the River *Gadua*. 7. *Zamora*, a strong and well built City, and a Bishops See, the *Seneca* of *Ptolomy*; situate on the River *Duero*, and now famous for the best Bag-pipes. 8. *Tordesillas*, the *Segisana* of the Ancients. 9. *Lerma*, not far from *Burgos*, the chief Seat of the Dukes so called, a Prince of great possessions, and the chief of the Family of *Rois* and *Sandoval*. 10. *Salamanca*, the most famous University of *Spain*, especially for the Study of the Civil and Canon Laws; first instituted by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, Anno 1240. and by an Order of the Popes, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bononia* in *Italy*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Professors of the Greek, Hebrew, Chaldean, and Arabic Tongues, besides those of the Arts. It was of old called *Salmantica*, is now a Bishops See, situate on the River *Tormes*, as before was said.

Not far from this City, about the times of our Grandfathers, was discovered in a Valley situate amongst high and impassable Mountains, a kind of *Patoccos*, or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before.

Castile.

before. The occasion this. An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva's* which he very much valued, flew over those Mountains; and his men not being able to find her at first, they were sent back by the Duke to seek her. Clambling from one hill to another, they hapned at last upon a large and pleasant Valley; where they spied a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongst many craggy Rocks. The *Salvager* gazing a while upon them ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the best houses they had: which being observed by the *Falconers*, they returned again unto their Lord, telling him, that in stead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New World* in the midst of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they said, they obtained belief. And the Duke shortly after went with a Company of Musquetiers, and subdued them easily; they having no offensive Weapons but only Slings. They worshipped the Sun and Moon, fed upon nothing that had life; but had good store of excellent fruits, roots, and springs of water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their language was not altogether understood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Basquish*. Reduced on this discovery to *Christianity*; but easily discernible from all other *Spaniards*, by their tawny complexions, occasioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams from those rockie Mountains, wherewith on all sides they are encompassed. The truth hereof, besides the credit of *James* *Hamel* in his *Instructions for Foreign Travel*, I have upon enquiry, found to be attested by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*; employed there in affairs of publick interests. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly satisfied in the men: whom I conceive to be some remnant of the ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themselves amongst these Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their Language and Idolatry speak them to be such. For had they either fled from the *Goths* or *Moors*, there had been found some *Cross*, or other Monument of *Christianity*, as in other places; or some such mixture in their speech, as would have favoured somewhat of the *Guths*, or *Romans*. But it is time I should proceed.

NEW CASTILE is situate on the South of the old. The chief Cities there, 1. *Signenca*, a City heretofore of the *Celtiberi*, now a Bishops See, beautified with a fair Cathedral, supposed to be the *Condabara* of *Ptolomy*. 2. *Madrid*, upon the *Guadarama*, the *Mantua* of the Ancient Writers, now the seat of the Kings; whose residence there, though the Country be neither rich nor pleasant, hath made it of a Village the most populous City in all *Spain*. It is a custom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their houses do belong to the King, except some composition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do use to brag to strangers, that they have a City walled with Fire; and then make good the boast by saying, That it is situate in the midst of Quarries of Flint. 3. *Alcala de Henares* (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an University of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*, by *Francisco de Ximenes*, Cardinal and Archbishop of *Toledo*; and by him furnished with the ablest men both for Divinity and the Tongues, that all *Spain* afforded. By whose joynt diligence and study in turning over so many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he published the *Complutensian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the Original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and *Vulgar Latine*, with the Translation of the *Septuagint* into *Latin* also. A work of very great charge and pains (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater profit; there being at the end thereof an *Hebrew* Dictionary for the understanding of that Language. 4. *Alcoraz*, amongst the Mountainous tracts of *Orospeida*, called *Sierra de Alcoraz*; memorable for a great discomfiture given unto the *Moors*, Anno 1094. 5. *Molina*, in the same Mountainous tract, hence called *Monte de Molina*; remarkable for giving the title of Lord to the Kings of *Castile*, who in the Regal stile are called Lords of *Molina*: the Signeury hereof accreting to that Crown, by the Marriage of *Sancho* the third, with *Mary* the daughter of *Alfonso* the last Lord Proprietary. The Territory large, and the Town of strength: well fortified in the times foregoing, both by Art and Nature. 6. *Cuenca*, seated at the Spring-head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of the *Tagus* also, amongst the Mountains of *Orospeida*; built by the *Moors* on the top of those craggie hills, whom it served for an impregnable Fortrefs against the *Christians*, till taken by *Sancho* the second of *Castile*, Anno 1177.

Here also is the *Escorial*, or Monastery of *St. Lawrence*, built by King *Philip* the second. A place (saith *Quade*, who spendeth 13 pages in its description) of that magnificence, that no building in times past, or this present, is comparable to it. The front toward the West is adorned with three stately gates, the middlemost whereof leadeth into a most magnificent Temple, a Monastery in which are 150 Monks of the Order of *St. Jerome*, and a Colledge: that on the right hand openeth into divers offices, belonging to the Monastery; that on the left, unto Schools, and out-houses, belonging to the Colledge. At the four corners there are four Turrets of excellent Workmanship; and for height, Majestical. Towards the North is the Kings Palace; on the South part divers beautiful and sumptuous Galleries; and on the East side, sundry Gardens and Walks, very pleasing and delectable. It containeth in all 11 several quadrangles, every one encloystered; and is indeed so brave a structure, that a voyage into *Spain* were well employed, were it only to see it, and return. Here is also in this tract the old Town of *Castulo* (the *Castro* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpentani*, and the Birth-place of *Himilce*, the wife of *Annibal*; from whence this whole Tract had the Name of *Salmus Castulonensis*, and so called by *Cesar*, now a poor Village, known by the name of *Castona la Vieja*; in which is somewhat to be found of the ancient ruins. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdom of *Toledo*, to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of these *Castiles* were the *Vaccii*, *Ventones*, *Arevacae*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Ditani*, &c. From none of which the name of *Castile* can be deduced: so that we must fetch it either from the *Castellani*, once a People of *Catalogne*; or from some strong fortified Castles erected in the frontiers against the *Moors*. This last conjecture may seem probable, because the Arms of this Kingdom are

Portugal.

in the place of the now antiquated and useless Orders of *Knighthood*, which were heretofore of great authority and power, that is to say,

1. Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, (to whom the defence thereof belonged) on the approach of the *Moors*; made good by *Raymond* the Abbot of *Pisaria*, and the Monks of *Cisteaux*, An. 1157. For the future preservation and defence whereof, they ordained this Order, which in process of time grew to such estate, that besides eight fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no less than 61 Towns and Castles. The Knights hereof do wear for their Habit, a *White Robe* with a *Red Cross* upon their breasts; confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the third, Anno 1164. under the Discipline of *Cisteaux*. Their residence is at the *Castle of Cova*, bound by their Order to serve in the Wars against the *Infidels*; upon which services they have been sometimes in the field with 300 great Horse.

2. Of *St. Jago*, instituted by the Canons of *Eley*, and certain Gentlemen of *Casfile*, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*; for the security and entertainment of *Christian Pilgrims*, travelling to the Shrine of *St. Jago*: confirmed by the said Pope *Alexander* the third, An. 1175. under the Rule of *St. Augustine*. Their habit is a *White Robe*, with a *Red Cross* like a *Sword*: the companions of it according to the first Founders, being part *Ecclesiastical*, and part *Secular*: whereof these last are only tied unto the vow of *conjugal Chastity*. They grew in little time unto such esteem, that besides two Colleges or *Seminaries* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers; together with 90 Towns and Castles in several parts of the Kingdom. The whole number of Gentlemen, besides *Friars* serving in their Cures, and other Ministers, is above 600. Their first residence at the Hospital of *St. Mark* in the Suburbs of *Leon*, on a dislike with *Ferdinand* the second King of *Leon*, removed to *Ueles* in *Casfile*, bestowed upon them by *Alfonso* the fourth. Upon this occasion being divided, they have since two Masters or *Commandadors*, the one called the *Commandador* of *Leon*, who resides at *St. Marks*; the other the *Commandador* of *Casfile*, who resides at *Ueles*.

3. Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon* against the *Moors*, where he framed this Order; confirmed by Pope *Lucio*, Anno 1183. Others ascribe it to *Alfonso*, the Successor of that *Ferdinand*, Anno 1217. by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians* in the Realm of *Leon*; but acknowledging the Superiority thereof, and under the same Rule of *Cisteaux*. Their device at first was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in a Field Or; to which hanged a pair of Shackles, as a sign of their subjection to them of *Calatrava*; changed Anno 1411. to a *White Robe*, and a *Green Cross* on their Breasts.

I omit here the Order of the *Dove* and *Reason*, instituted by *K. John* of *Casfile*, because of small esteem, and but short continuance; nor shall I now speak any thing of the Arms of the Kingdom, which we have seen before on another occasion. And so much for *Casfile*, the first of those three greater Kingdoms of *Spain*, under which all the rest are now reduced; containing in this Continent all the Provinces and Estates before described, amounting to two third parts of the whole; and many large Estates elsewhere, as shall be shewed hereafter in its proper place. Pass we on next to *Portugal*, the second in repute of the said three Kingdoms; not so much for the largeness of the Territories, which it had on the Continent, as for its great *Appendix* in all other parts of the World.

II. The Kingdom of PORTUGAL.

THE Kingdom of *PORTUGAL* containeth 1. *Portugal* it self; 2. *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbium*; and 3. the *Terceras*, or *Isles of Azores*: these last not reckoned parts of *Spain* by any of our Writers either old or new; but made by us a part hereof, because situate over against *Portugal*, one of the first additions which was made unto it on the Ocean; and finally, because I know not under what other head to reduce them better.

And first for *PORTUGAL* it self, it is bounded on the North with the Rivers *Minio* and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South with *Algarve*; on the West with the *Atlantick Ocean*; and on the East with the two *Castiles* and *Extremadura*; from which divided by a line drawn from *Ribadania*, (standing on the *Avia*, to *Badajos*, on the *Anas* or *Guadiana*). Extended on the Sea-coast from North to South, 400 miles: the breadth of it in the broadest place (not taking in the Islands into this account) 100 miles; in the narrowest, 80. the whole circumference 879 miles, and in that compass 1460 Parishes.

It was first called *Lusitania* from the *Lusitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof, and took the name of *Portugal* either from the Haven or Port of *Cale*, sometimes a very rich and flourishing *Emporie*; or rather from the Haven Town of *Porto*, at the mouth of *Duero*, where the *Galls* (or the *French* rather) used to land their Merchandise: which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*, and which Town was given in Dower with *Teresa*, the daughter of *Alfonso* the sixth, to *Henry* of *Lorrein*, with the Title of *Earl* of *Portugal*. Whose Successors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all those Countries which they got from the *Moors*, as it continueth at this day.

The Air is very healthy, the Country for the most part hilly, and bare of Corn, supplied from *France* and other parts of the North; that which they have being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The soil, and people, in all places not rich alike. For where the soil is richest, as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*, there the People are poorest; in regard of the great distance thereof from *Lisbon*, and so not benefited by the trading of that wealthy City. And where the soil is poorest, there the

Portugal.

the People be richest, helping themselves by trade and manufacture; especially by making of Silks, and Salt, sufficient for themselves, and for other Countries. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is otherwise sufficiently recompensed with abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Allom, Fruits, Fish, Salt, white Marble, and some Mines of Silver, &c.

The people of a more plain and simple behaviour, than the rest of *Spain*; and (if we believe the old Proverb) none of the wisest. For whereas the *Spaniards* are said to seem wise, and yet to be Fools; the *French* seem Fools, and yet to be wise; the *Italians* both to seem wise, and to be so; the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wise indeed, nor so much as to seem so; But little different from which is the *Spanish* By-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*, few and foolish: which others vary with the addition of another part of their Character; saying, they are *Pecos, Sotos, y Devotos*, few and foolish, but withal devout. They have great animosities (if it be not grown to an *Antipathie*) against the *Casilians*, for bereaving them of their Kingdom and Liberty, though both of late recovered by them: but when most Fools, were counted for good *Sea-faring* men, and happy in the discovery of Foreign Nations.

Rivers it hath of all sorts, both great and small, almost 200. Those of most note, 1. *Minio*, full of Red Lead, (from hence called *Minium* by the *Latins*) navigable with small Vessels 100 miles. 2. *Lethe*, now *Lavada*. 3. *Mallada*, now *Mondego*. 4. *Tagus*. 5. *Duero*, and 6. *Anas*; these three last common also to the Rest of *Spain*: *Anas* or *Guadiana*, passing by *Portugal* but for seven Leagues only, *Tagus* for 18. and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long space by ships of burdum; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally swift of course, retrained within narrow channels, banked on both sides with very steep rocks, which make them inconvenient for Navigation: Infomuch that it is reckoned for a great Privilege of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great ships 15 or 20 miles within the Continent. But here that want is somewhat tolerably supplied with three excellent Havens. 1. That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*, and 2. *Porto*, on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*, of which more anon; 3. of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, situate on a Gulf of 20 miles in length, and three in breadth; a place of principal importance to those parts of the Realm. Rivers however of great fame, according to whose course the whole Country was divided by the *Romans*, into *Uleriorem*, lying beyond *Duero* Northwards; 2. *Citeriorem*, on the South of *Tagus*; and 3. *Interamni*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1. *Lisbon*, seated upon *Tagus*, a famous City for Traffick, the *Portugals* in all their Navigations setting sail from hence. By the *Latins* called *Olyppo*, and *Olyssippo*, because as some say *Olysses* built it, coming hither in the course of his ten years travel; a thing merely fabulous, it being no where found that *Olysses* did ever see the Ocean. But like enough it is, that this Town being seated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by *Sea-faring* men, might at the first be consecrated to the memory of so great a Traveller; as *Athens* being a place of Learning, was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athene*. It is in compass seven miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Parishes, and in them 20000 houses; all of neat and elegant building. Turrets and Towers it numbeth upon the Walls about 76, Gates towards the Sea-shore 22. And towards the Continent situate upon five small Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River: on the highest Hill an ancient Castle, not strong, but by reason of the situation, serving now only for a Prison for men of quality: the entry of the River being defended by the Castle of *Cascais*; and nearer to the City by the Fort of *S. Julian*, and the Rock of *Belem*, munitioned with 20 pieces of Ordnance. This City heretofore was honoured with the Seat of the Kings, since of the Vice-Roys, an Archbishops See, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm beside: said by some *French* Writers to be the best peopled City in *Christendom*, next unto *Paris*; and by *Botero* an *Italian*, made to be the fourth Mart Town of *Europe*; the other three being *Constantinople*, *Paris*, *Mosco*. In which they do great wrong to *London*, as populous and well-traded as the best of them all. 2. *Santaren*, on the *Tagus*, so called from *S. Irene*, a Nun of *Tomar*, (a Monastery, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did use to be crowned) here martyred by the *Moors*; by *Prology* called *Scabaliscus*, then a *Roman* Colony. 3. *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of the huge Mountains, called *Montes Lema*; whether by reason of the cool refreshings from the Sea, and pleasure of the Woods adjoining, the Kings of *Portugal* used to retire in the heats of Summer. 4. *Coimbre*, on both sides the River *Adondego*, pleasantly seated amongst Vineyards and Woods of Olives, a Bishops See, and an University; the Masters whereof made the Commentary on most part of *Aristotle*, called from hence *Schola Coimbricensis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, are 5. *Braga*, by *Prology* called *Bracara Augusta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*; the Royal seat when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Archbishop, contending for the Primacy with him of *Toledo*. 6. *Porto*, the Haven of the *Galls*, on the mouth of *Duero*. 7. *Miranda*, a Bishops See on the same River. 8. *Bragance*, the Duke whereof is so great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the people of *Portugal* are his Vassals, and live on his Lands; originally descended from *Alfonso*, natural Son to *John* the first; created by his Father *Earl* of *Borcellos*, after Duke of *Bragance*; the later Dukes since the time of King *Emanuel*, being withall of the right Royal blood, two steps of main advantage to the Royal Throne, lately ascended and obtained by *John* Duke of *Bragance*, now called *John* the 4th. And finally, on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdom of *Algarve*, there is 9. *Evora*, in the midst of a large and spacious Plain, an Archbishops See, and an University; this last of the Foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinal. 10. *Portelegre*, a Bishops See. 11. *Oliveira* on the *Guadiana*. 12. *Beja*, by *Pliny* called *Pax Julia*, now *Meum*, and not very well inhabited, but anciently a *Roman* Colony, and one of the three Juridical Reforts of *Lusitania*.

1 *TERCERA*, the chief of all the rest, 18 miles in compass, well stored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oranges: and for the Kitchen, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-herbs, and as good *Batato-roots*: (which are the best food the people have) as any be in the World; but more esteemed in *Portugal* than they be in this Island, by reason of their great abundance. Here is also great quantity of the best kind of Wood, (which from hence is called *Island-Wood*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man, which bears no Fruit, but hath a root as profitable as those that do: out of which the People draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their Mattresses, in stead of Feathers. Fowl enough for the life of man, and yet none of prey. No Port of any safety in it but that of *Angra*; and that made safe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which stick out like

8 FLORES, directly East from *Fayal*, so called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratiosa* from the like flourishing Verdure of it) is in compass not above 8 miles; but plentifully furnished with Cattel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it *Santa Cruz*. The Isle (though small, yet) twice as big as the Isle of 9 *CORVO*, so called from its abundance of Crows, situate on the North hereof, and but little distant: both very unsafe, and both most miserably poor, by reason of the many Pirates which lie betwixt them, to intercept such ships as trade towards *America*. But this, though much smaller than the others, may in time be of more esteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the most natural place for the first *Meridian*, as before was noted: The Needle here pointing directly to the North, without *Variation*. Which whether it proceed from some secret inclination of the *Load-stone* to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being situate betwixt the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, by the *magnetical* virtue of the Earth it self, I leave to be disputed by more able judgements.

Portugal.

These Islands were first discovered and subdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince Henry, Son of John the first; who first made the *Portugals* in love, with the Seas: And they were also the last Members of the Crown of *Portugal* which held out for Don Antonio the Baitard, against Philip the second of *Castile*: against whom the Island of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by Emmanuel de Silva, with the help of the *French*; but taken at the last by the Marquess of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after promise of life, cruelly murdered in cold blood. After which, garisoned at the first by none but *Portugals*. But upon some commotion, hapning in that Kingdom, it was thought fit on some reason of State, to make sure of the best Islands by *Spanish* Garrisons; which accordingly were put into the Castles of *Angra*, in *Tercera*; the Towns of *Punta del Gadan*, in *S. Michaels*; and *Doria* in *Fayall*. And to say truth, the *Spaniards* had good reason to be careful of them; these Islands being of such importance, as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Athiopia*, *Brasil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continued: because the *Fleets* which come from those Countreys to *Lisbon*, or *Sevill*, must in a manner of necessity touch upon some of them; as well in following their course if they come from the West, as in recovering such winds as are useful to them, if they come from the East.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*, know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Lusitani*, dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Durnis*, the old *Lusitania* being bounded within those Rivers; the *Celtici*, and *Turditani*, who took up also some part of *Betice*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*; and the *Gallaici Bracarii* (so called to difference them from the *Gallaici Lusenses* who possessed *Gallicia*) on the North of *Durnis*. Subjected first unto the *Romans*, by whom accounted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining of their Empire conquered by the *Alani*; and from them taken by the *Suevians*; who, for a time, made the City of *Braga* the Royal seat of their Kings. The *Suevians* lost it to the *Gibbes*, and the *Goths* to the *Moors*, as hath been shewn already in their several Histories. Recovered in part by the Kings of *Leon*: to whom that part continued subject, till given by *Alfonso* the sixth of *Leon*, in Dowry with his base Daughter *Teresa*, to *Henry of Lorrein*; whose vertue and good service merited no less reward, *An. 1099*. Who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl, for the space of 12 years, left his Son *Alfonso*, Heir both to his Fortunes and Vertues; honoured with the title of King of *Portugal*, by the Sovereigns of *Leon*, for his most gallant demeanor shewn in the battell of *Obrigue*, *An. 1139*. He had before the *Assumption* of the Regal Stile, ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour; and he reigned here with no less, 45 years after that *Assumption*, revered by his Friends, and feared by his Enemies. So that the whole time of his sitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years: a longer enjoying of Sovereignty, than any Prince, since the first beginning of the *Roman* Monarchy. His Successors we shall have in order, in the following Catalogue. But we must first tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of most note in the whole succession, are, 1 *Henry of Lorrein* (whom some make a *Burgundian* of the City of *Besincon*) who coming into *Spain* to the *His Wars*, and deserving nobly in the same; was honoured by *Alfonso* the sixth, with his Daughter *Teresa*, and the Town of *Porto* for her Dowry: given to him with the title of the Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Estate as far as *Conimbre*, on the South of the River *Duro*; that River being before that time the utmost bound of it that way. 2 *Alfonso* the first King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moors*, *An. 1247*. and made it the Seat of his Kingdom, which he extended Southward as far as *Algarve*. 3 *Alonso* the 3d, who partly by Conquest, and partly by Marriage, added *Algarve* to his Estate; getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He also did prevail so far with *Alfonso* the Wife, (never the wiser for so doing) as to get his Realm discharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of *Leon*, *An. 1270*. 4 *Alfonso* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the same name in *Castile*, against *Alvacaen* the *Miramonolin* of *Africk*, at the fight near the River *Salado*, not far from *Tariff*; where they discomfited the vast Army of *Moors*, consisting of 470000 Horse and Foot. 5 *John* the first, the base Son of *Pedro* the first, setting aside the Lady *Beatrice*, Queen of *Castile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the first, and the Lawfull Children of his Father, being many in number; by force and colour of Election obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his marriage with the Lady *Philip*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*; a strong Competitor at that time for the Crown of *Castile*: on which relation, this King, the four Kings next succeeding, and two of this Kings younger Sons, were made Knights of the Garter. 6 *Edward* the son and Successor of *John* the first, of whom there goes a story, that on the day of his Coronation, he was addressed by a *Jew*, (one of his Physicians) learned in Astrology, to defer the Ceremony untill noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed unto it in that conjuncture, his Reign would be very short and full of trouble. But the King either out of magnanimity or contempt of that Art, going on with the Ceremony; the *Jews* prediction was found true: for he reigned not fully five years, and with ill success in his attempts against the *Moors*. 7 *Henry* Duke of *Viseo* (*Visontium* the *Latins* call it) the second Son of *John* the first, created Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the sixth, *An. 1444*. By whose encouragement, and example, the *Portuguese* began to be affected to forain Voyages: discovering in his time, (and for the most part under his conduct also) the Islands of *Azores*, *Madara*, *Holy Port*, those of *Capo Verde*, and a great part of the coast of *Africk*, as far as *Guinea*: He dyed *An. 1465*. 8 *Alfonso* the fifth, who warring on the *Moors* in *Africk*, took from them the strong Towns of *Tanger*, *Alcacer*, and *Azzila*. 9 *John* the 2d, under whose reign, the *Portugals* fully settled themselves in *Guinea*, and the Realms of *Congo*; discovering all the Coasts and Isles of *Africk* (not before discovered) as far as to the *Cape of Good-hope*, *Anno 1487*. planting, and fortifying (as they passed: the whole Discovery of *Africk*, the *East-Indies*, and *Brazil*, being perfected in the

Portugal.

Reign of King *to Emanuel*; under whom also they difcomfited great Armies of the *Turks*, and *Sultans of Egypt*, bringing by Sea the riches of the *East* into the *West*. 11 *Sebastian*, the Grandchild of King *John*, Son of *Emanuel*, embarking himself unadvisedly in the Wars of *Africk*, lost his life (as it is generally supposed) at the battel of *Alcasar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for shame and sorrow he returned not home; wandering from one place to another, and at the last was found and avowed at *Venice*: thence carryed to *Naples*, where he was kept three dayes in a dark Dungeon, without any sustenance but a knife and a halter; brought into *Spain* by the Kings command, where at last he dyed. A man in whom for many circumstances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* used to say, that either he was the true *Sebastian*, or else the Devil in his likeness. But whether true or not, is not now material, death having put an end to that dispute; though the controversy which ensued upon his death for the Crown of *Portugal* be not yet decided. For though King *Philip* the 2d of *Spain* succeeded in it next after *Henry* the Cardinal King (who only came upon the Stage that the Competitors might have time to declare their Titles); and claimed the Crown as eldest Heir male, and nearest Kinsman to King *Henry*: yet all the World was not well satisfied, in the Justice and Equity of his demands. In the carrying on of which affairs he seemed to deal very candidly to the eyes of men, not biased by their proper Interests: offering to submit his Title to a Disputation, protesting that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Castile*; and openly acknowledging, that if he should chance to die before the said *Henry*, his eldest Son, as being a degree further off, would come behind some others of the *Pretendants* to it, of whom himself had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make sure work after his decease, (*Antonio* the Bastard having got possession of *Lisbon*, and taking on himself as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raised an Army under the command of *Ferdinand de Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and subdued all that stood against him; *Katharine* the Dutchesse of *Bragance*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*; surrendering also all her interrests and pretensions to him; so entering by a mixt title of descent and Arms, *An*. 1580. Threescore years it was peaceably enjoyed by the Kings of *Spain*, when suddenly dispossessed by a potent Faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Bragance*, descended from the youngest Son of King *Emanuel*: which wrought so cunningly and successfully in his behalf, (by the great wit and under-hand practices of Cardinal *Richelieu*, and others, Ministers of the *French*) that the King of *Spain* was sooner diseisied of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practise set on foot against him, *An*. 1639. In which it is to be observed, that as King *Philip* the 2d, for the better obtaining of this Crown, had embroyled the *French*, engaging that King in a bloody war against the *Protestants* of that Kingdom; so make him sure enough from troubling him in his present Enterprize: so the *French* Ministers had caused a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was busied in reducing that Province, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themselves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the Antipathy betwixt the Nations made less pleasing to them. Nor was it a partial detection only, or the loss of *Portugal* and no more; but a general falling off of the whole Estate, in *Africk*, *Asia*, *America*, in the Isles and Continents: the *Accessories*, (excepting only the Town of *Cebu* in *Barbary*, and some of the *Terceras*) going the same way as the *Principall* did. And here we think that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be justly taxed, for committing a greater *Salaciſm* in point of State, than ever people did before them: in that having got the full and peaceable possession of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garrison and strong holds of the whole Estate in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it self fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any hesitancie: which, had some of the chief pieces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, being brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Cassilians*; might have been easily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniard* hitherto attempted any thing material, for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever since so overlaid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Nauvire*, *Biscay*, *Flanders*, *Artoys*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leisure to attend that business. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is time to represent you with a Catalogue of

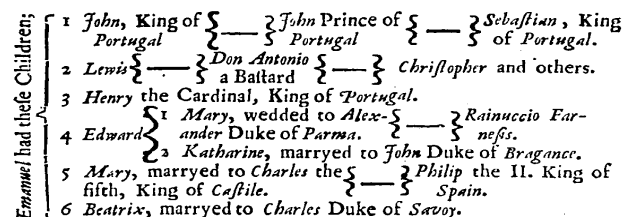
The Kings of *Portugal*.

- | | | | | | |
|------|----|---|------|----|--|
| 1139 | 1 | <i>Alfonso</i> , the second Earl, and first King of <i>Portugal</i> . 45. | 1433 | 11 | <i>Edward</i> the Sonne of <i>John</i> , and of the Lady <i>Philip</i> of <i>Wales</i> . 5. |
| 1184 | 2 | <i>Sancho</i> , the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> . 28. | 1438 | 12 | <i>Alfonso</i> V. the Son of <i>Edw.</i> 43. |
| 1212 | 3 | <i>Alfonso</i> II. Son of <i>Sancho</i> . 11. | 1481 | 13 | <i>John</i> II. the Sonne of <i>Alfonso</i> the fifth. 14. |
| 1223 | 4 | <i>Sancho</i> II. Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the 2d. 34. | 1495 | 14 | <i>Emmanuel</i> , the Nephew of <i>Edward</i> , by his Sonne <i>Ferdinand</i> Duke of <i>Visco</i> . 26. |
| 1257 | 5 | <i>Alfonso</i> III. Brother of <i>Sancho</i> the second. 22. | 1521 | 15 | <i>John</i> III. Son of <i>Emmanuel</i> . 38. |
| 1279 | 6 | <i>Denys</i> , the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the 3d. 48. | 1557 | 16 | <i>Sebastian</i> , the Nephew of <i>John</i> the 3d, by his Sonne <i>Don John</i> ; unfortunately slain in the Fields of <i>Africk</i> . 21. |
| 1325 | 7 | <i>Alfonso</i> IV. the Son of <i>Denys</i> . 32. | 1578 | 17 | <i>Henry</i> the Cardinall, Son of King <i>Bb 2 Emmanuel</i> . |
| 1357 | 8 | <i>Pedro</i> , the Son of <i>Alfonso</i> the fourth. 10. | | | |
| 1367 | 9 | <i>Ferdinand</i> , the Sonne of <i>Pedro</i> , the last King of the lawfull issue of <i>Henry</i> of <i>Lorrein</i> . 18. | | | |
| 1385 | 10 | <i>John</i> , the base Sonne of <i>Pedro</i> , of | | | |

Valentia.

- 1580 18 Philip the second of Spain, Son of Charles King of Castile and Emperour, and of the Lady Mary his Wife, daughter of Emanuel. 18. that Name, a Prince of great Possessions, and of Royall Race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.
- 1598 19 Philip II. of Portugal, and III. of Spain, of Henry of Lorrein. 2.
- 1621 20 Philip III. of Portugal, and IV. of Spain. During his Reign the Portuguese weary of the Spanish Government, chose for their King
- 1636 21 John Duke of Braganca, the IV. of that Name, a Prince of great Possessions, and of Royall Race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.

Now that we may the better see by what title, both the Kings of Spain, and the Dukes of Braganca, claim the Crown of Portugal; and what other pretenders there were to it, on the death of Sebastian; and what right as well Antonio the Bastard (but alledging a sentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the House of Savoy did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King Emanuel, in this following Scheme.



By this it may appear how the claims are grounded; but whether title will prevail, cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royal line of Portugal did begin in a Henry, so it ended in a Henry also: the male line failing in the person of the Cardinal-King, and the Crown falling (on whomsoever it shall fall) on the Heirs of the Females.

The principal Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, are 1 Of *Avis*, so called from a Town of that name in Portugal, the seat thereof; founded by *Sanctius* or *Sancho* the first, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whose *Green Cross* they wear; but equal to it neither in power nor riches.

2 Of *CHRIST*, instituted by *Denys* King of Portugal, who conferred on them all the Lands and Possessions of the exaurated *Templars*; confirmed by Pope *John* the 22d. An. 1321. Their Robe is a *Black Cassock* under a *White Surcoat*; over which a *Red Cross*, stroaked in the midst with a white line: their duty to expell the *Moors* out of *Batica*, the next Neighbour to Portugal. To which Crown they have added many gallant Countreys in *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Brussl*; and so improved their own Estates, that all the Isles in the *Atlantick* do belong to them: besides the rents of the Mine of *S. George* in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are *Argent*, on five Escutcheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Saltir* of the first, pointed *Sable*, within a Border *Gules*, charged with seven Towers, *Or*. Which five Escutcheons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonso* the first King slew at the battell of *Olbrigue*, An. 1139. the Border with the Towers or Castles, being added by *Alfonso* the third, on his Investiture into the Kingdom of *Algarves*, by *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, An. 1257. whose Daughter *Beatrix* he then married, and so conceived himself to have some relation to the Arms of that Kingdom. And so proceed we on to those Provinces, which are under the Government of *Aragon*; the third great body of this State.

12. VALENTIA.

VALENTIA hath on the East, the *Mediterranean*; on the West, parts of *Castile*, and *Aragon*; on the North, *Catalogne*; and *Murcia*, upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers 1 *Xucar*, called of old *Sucron*, and *Surus*; 2 *Guadalander*, signifying a River of pure water; and 3 *Millar*.

This Countrey standeth in the most temperate and pleasing Air of all Spain, full of Gardens, and places of wonderful delight; where groweth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn, and Fruit: garnished all the year long with sweet-smelling flowers, and miraculously fruitful of Pomgranats, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath also Mines of Silver at *Burial*, of Gold at *Lodur*, of Iron at *Finifrat*, of Alabaster at *Piacent*, and of Allom, Lime, and Plaster in many places. From thence also come the best Silks in the World, Cotton of *Murcia*, Crimson, Scarlet, and other precious colours, and rich perfumes. Finally, all the senses of man may be delighted, and refreshed, with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality and sweetness much like that of *Naples*. The delicacy and great pleasures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought less warlike than the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Countrey also bear the finest Fleeces of any in Spain; first stocked with *Cotswold* Sheep from *England*, at the request of *John* King of *Aragon*, An. 1465. by the imprudent counsellor of *K. Edward* the fourth.

Places of most note in it are, 1 *Alicante*, a noted Port on the *Mediterranean*, whence come our true

true *Alicant* Wines made of the juice of Mulberries; by *Ptolemy* called *Illicitas*, by *Mela*, *Ilicis*; from whence the Bay adjoining is called *Sinus Illicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicante*. 2 *Oriuela*, a Bishops See, on the River *Segura*, which divides this Province from *Murcia*. 3 *Segorve*, a Bishops See, by *Ptolemy* named *Segobriga*, the chief City in old times of the *Celiberi*. 4 *Xelva*, supposed to be the *Incibilis* of *Livy*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5 *Valentia*, a fair, pleasant, and well-traded City, the See of an Archbishop, and giveth name to the whole Province: in its first glory, one of the chief Roman Colonies in these parts of Spain; in its last, the Royal Seat of the *Moorish* Kings of this Countrey. Situate three miles from the *Mediterranean*, not far from the mouth of the River *Durea*; now called *Guadalander*: and is by some said to have been heretofore named *Roma*, which signifieth strength. But when the Romans mastered it, to distinguish it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valentia*; which in the *Latine* Tongue, is of the same signification with the *Greek* $\pi \lambda \omega \nu$. Here is an University in which *St. Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, studied. 6 *Laurigi*, now a small Village, once a Town of great strength, called *Lauron*: which *Sertorius* besieged, took and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whose confederates the *Lauronites* were, stood with his whole Army nigh enough unto the flame to warm his hands; and yet durst not succour it. 7 *Cullera*, a Sea Town standing at the mouth of the River *Xucar*. It was formerly named *Sucron*, after the name of the River: and is famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Sertorius* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey's* Army being not only overthrown, but himself with life hardly escaping. 8 *Morvedre*, situate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*; the People whereof when besieged by *Annibal*, continued to obdurate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they chose rather to burn themselves, than yield up the Town: the occasion of the second War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. First founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this destruction of it, repaired, or re-edified by the *Romans*, (they could not possibly do less) by whom made a Colony. 9 *Gandia*, which gives the title of a Duke to the house of *Borgia*, and was the style of *Francisco Borgia*, the eldest Son of Pope *Alex.* the sixth (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine* by the name of the Duke of *Gandy*. 10 *Denia*, seated on the brink of the *Mediterranean*, over which it hath a goodly prospect; the Marquise of the Duke of *Lerma*: first founded by the *Massilians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*, the Refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars against *Pompey*, and *Metellus*, both of great renown: the one aged, and of much experience; the other young, and of high resolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himself more troubled with the old mans gravity, than the young mans gallantry: inasmuch as he was used to say, That had it not been for the old Woman *Metellus*, he would have whipped the Boy *Pompey* home with *Rods*. For he had twice overcome this Great *Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joyned in the Action with him: the first time dangerously wounding, and the second time driving him out of the Field. But fighting against both he was over-matched; and yet seemed rather to retire than flie before them: the *Spaniards* behaving themselves very valiantly in the time of these Wars under him; to which *Florus* alludeth, saying, *Nec unquam magis apparuit Hispani militis Vigor, quam Romano dux*. At the last when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* Faction, he was traiterously murdered by *Perpenna* one of his Associates; for which *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a Triumph at *Rome*. So high an estimate did they set upon the casual death of this poor *Prescript*.

The Ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Bastetani*, the *Edetani*, *Contestani*, and some part of the *Celiberi*; originally of the Province of *Tarracensis*, afterwards (in the sub-dividing of that Province by *Constantine*) of *Carthaginensis*. In the declining of the Empire first subdued by the *Alani*, who were scarce warm in their new dwellings, when dispossessed by the *Goths*. From the *Goths* taken by the *Moors*, of whose Kingdom reckoned as a Province; till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Enasir* at the battell of *Sierra Morena*, and the departure of the *Moors* of *Morocco* to their own Countrey, which followed presently upon it. By *Zeit Alien-Zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a distinct Kingdom of itself, Anno 1214. but taken from him by one *Zaen* a Prince of the *Moors* of Spain, under colour that he had a purpose of turning Christian, and making his Kingdom subject to the Crown of *Aragon*, (as indeed he did) Anno 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the sweets of a new raised Kingdom, by *James* King of *Aragon*, Anno 1238. Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never dismembered from the body of it since the first uniting. But till so overgrown with *Moors* (not to be blamed for loving such an excellent fear) that at the final expulsion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer, than 22000 Families of them in this little Countrey.

The Arms hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embattelled *Argent* pursled (or pennoned) *Sable*.

13. CATALONIA.

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-east, with the Land of *Roussillon* and the *Pyrenees*; on the East, with the *Mediterranean*; on the South, with *Valentia*; and on the North and North-west, with *Aragon*. The Countrey somewhat mountainous and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: be- holding more in that respect, for Corn, Fruits, and other necessary provisions unto the courtelie of the Sea, which serves them out of other Countreys, than to the Goodness of the Land. And yet it is as well watered as most parts of Spain, having in it besides the *Elro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Cinia*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valentia*; the Rivers of, 1 *Tardera*, 2 *Lobregat*, 3 *Segre*, 4 *Francelino*, 5 *Besons*, and 6 *Onbar*.

Bb 3

The

Catalonia.

The name of *Catalonia* some derive from the *Castellani*, who formerly inhabited some part hereof; others will have it called *Catalania*, corruptly for *Gothalanis*, from the mixture of the *Goths* and *Alani*, successively the Masters of it: and some more improbably from one *Carthalo*, a Noble man of this Countrey, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalauni*, an old French people of *Languedoc*, the adjoining Province; from whom the fields called *Camp Catalaunici* near unto *Tolouse*, took denomination. But from what root soever they came, certain it is that they are generally a stout and courageous People, as may be seen by their exploits in most parts of the *Greece*, which they miserably spoyled and pillaged many years together, in the time of *Andronicus* the second, to whose aid called in. But then withall they are a very perverse and obstinate people, little observant of the pleasure or profit of their *natural Princes*; but on the other side, so zealous in defence of their own *Privileges*, that they have created more trouble to their Kings under that pretence, than all the rest of the subjects of *Spain*. Of which we need no other instance than their late revolt unto the *French*, Anno 1638. which drew after it the loss of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the rest of the *Netherlands*.

Principal places in it are, 1 *Barcelone*, situate on the *Mediterranean*, near the River *Lolregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the *Spanish* Souldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italy*. The Town adorned with large streets, handsome buildings, strong walls, and a very pleasant situation: called *Barcino* by the ancient writers, in whose time it was a *Roman* Colony; now honoured with a Bishops See, and the Seat of the *Viceroy*. 2 *Tarragon*, seated also on the *Mediterranean*, East of the River *Francolino*: built, fortified and peopled by the two *Scipio's*, the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthage* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the *Metropolis* of *Tarraconensis*, hence denominated; but strip of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two miles in compass, and containing not above 700 Families. Yet still it holdeth the reputation of an Archbishops See, contending with *Toledo* for the Primacy of all *Spain* (as *Braga* also doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*): the controversy being undecided to this very day. 3 *Ampurias*, on the same sea also, once of great esteem, founded by the *Massilians*; a *Roman* Colony, and a well Traded Town, as the name doth signifie: this being the *Emporia* spoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*; now not observable for any thing but a safe Road for ships. 4 *Blanes*, 5 *Palamos*, and 6 *Rosus*, all Ports on the same Sea, but subject unto divers winds, and not very spacious, this last by *Ptolomy* called *Rhoda*, first founded by the *Rhodians*, or people of the Isle of *Rhodes*, and by them so named. More in the Land are 7 *Girona*, a small but handsomly built, and a well traded Town; a Bishops See, and the title of the eldest Son of *Aragon*, called Prince of *Girona*. Which title was first given to *John*, the eldest Son to King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his birth, Anno 1351. and hath since continued. 8 *Tortosa*, on the River *Elro*, in the most rich and pleasant part of all the Countrey; recovered from the *Moor*s by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Barcelone* and Prince of *Aragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Moncada*, Seneschal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good service in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garrisoned by the *French*, since the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of *Spain*; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whilest it continueth in their power, or the possession of their party. 9 *Urgel*, an Earls honour, and a Bishops See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10 *Monblanc*, which heretofore gave the title of Duke, to the second Sons of the Kings of *Aragon*. 11 *Moncada*, once a Town of strength, but of more note for giving denomination to the noble Family of *Moncada*, Hereditary Seneschals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is also on the East part where it joyneth with the Land of *Roussillon*, the Promontory called of old *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Ceux*. And not far from *Barcelone* the Mountain called *Montferrato*, on the sides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchorets* cells; and having towards the summit of it, a Chappel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*: much famed and resorted to by *Pilgrims* from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enshrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province were the *Castellani*, *Anxitan*, *Indigites*, *Cofiani*, with part of the *Ilercones* and *Iaccetani*; all of them part of *Tarraconensis*. In the declining of the *Empire*, seized on by the *Alani*; and they soon after vanquished, if not dispossessed, by the power of the *Goths*. Lost to the *Moor*s in the general ruine of the whole; from them recovered by the puissance of *Charles* the Great: who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, Anno 801. gave it to one *Bernard* a *Frenchman*, with the title of Earl, who Governed the Countrey for that Emperour; as *Wifredus*, or *Godfredus* his successor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus* Sont to this *Godfrede*, by the gift of *Charles* the *Gros*, was the first Proprietary; united unto *Aragon*, by the marriage of Earl *Raymond*, with the Heir of that Kingdom. First held in Vassalage of the *French*, but that acknowledgement released to King *James* the first, Ann. 1260. by the King *St. Lewis*, the King of *Aragon* releasing at the same time his pretensions and rights of Sovereignty to *Carcaffon*, *Beziens*, *Albi* *Nismes*, and some other pieces in *France*, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that the *Castellani* had neglected the acknowledgment of their subjection to that Crown, it being ordered by *Alfonso* the second King of *Aragon*, about the year 1180. that the year of the reigns of the Kings of *France* should no more be used in any Instruments or Writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which in effect was to disclaim the Sovereignty of the Crown of *France*.

The

Majorca.

The Earls of Barcelone.

- An.Ch.
884 1 Godfredus, surnamed the Hairy, Son of Wifrede, the Provincial Governour for the Emperour Ludovicus Pius.
914 2 Miron Son of Godfredus..
933 3 Godfredus II. Son of Miron, by some called Seniofrid.
971 4 Borellus, Brother of Miron, and Uncle of Godfred the second.
993 5 Raymond, Son of Borellus.
1017 6 Berengarius, surnamed Borellus, Son of Raymond.
1035 7 Raymond II. Son of Berengarius Borellus.
1076 8 Raymond III. Son of Raymond the second.
1082 9 Raymond IV. Son of Raymond the third, Earl of Provence also, in right of Douce his Wife.
1131 10 Raymond V. Son of Raymond the fourth, and Douce Countess of Provence, married Petronilla Daughter of Raymair, or Raymond the second, King of Aragon; whom he succeeded in that Kingdom, Anno 1134. Uniting these Estates together, never since disjoyned: the chief Procurer of this match being William Raymond of Moncada spoken of before.

The Arms hereof were four Pallets Gules, in a field Or; now the Arms of Aragon. Which Arms were given to Geoffry, surnamed the Hairy, the first Earl hereof, by Lewis the Stammering Emperour and King of France, to whose aid he came against the Normans with a Troop of Horse: and being bloody in the fight, desired of the Emperour to give him some Coat of Arms, which he and his Posterity might from thenceforth use. Who dipping his four fingers in the blood of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield (which was only of Plain Gold, without any Devise) saying, *This shall be your Arms hereafter.*

14. The Kingdom of MAJORCA.

THE Kingdom of MAJORCA contained the Islands of Majorca, Minorca, Ebusa, and Frumentaria, in the Mediterranean; the Land of Roussillon, Sardaigne, or Cerdagne, in the Continent of Spain; and the Earldom of Montpellier, in France.

The Land of ROUSSILLON, which is the first Member of this Kingdom, is situate betwixt two Branches of the Pyrenees; bounded on the South with the Mediterranean; on the West, with Catalogne; on the North, with the said Pyrenees; on the East, with Languedoc in France. Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Helna*, a Bishops See on the River *Techo*. 2 *Colliure*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a safe and commodious Harbour; but formerly the great and famous City of *Illiberis*, so often mentioned in the Wars betwixt Rome and Carthage. 3 *Pypignan* (in *Latine*, *Pypinianum*) built in the year 1068. by Guinard Earl of Roussillon, in a pleasant Plain on the River *Thelis*; now a rich Town, well traded, and as strongly fortified against the French; to whose fury in the time of war it is still exposed. Belieged by Henry, Son to King Francis the first, with a puissant Army, Anno 1542. Partly to be revenged upon Charles the fifth, who had before attempted *Marcellus* in Provence; and partly to get into his hands the chief dore of Spain, by which he might at all times enter into that Kingdom. But he found here such strong resistance, that he was fain to raise his siege, with as little honour, as Charles had gotten by the Expedition which he made into Provence. 4 *Salsus* (the *Salsus* of *Strabo*) a strong place on the Frontier of Languedoc; fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks against the French. 5 *Roussillon*, a Castle of more bombur and antiquity, than strength or beauty, by *Pliny*, and other Ancients, called *Ruscino*, the Countrey *Cematus Ruscinonensis*, now *Roussillon*, and the Land of *Roussillon*; accounted heretofore a part of *Gaul* of *Narbonensis*, and added unto Spain in the time of the *Goths*. On the death of *Girard*, the last Proprietary Earl, it was added to the Crown of Aragon by *Alfonso* the second; by *James* the first, laid to the Kingdom of Majorca; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the fourth. After that sold (or rather pawned) by King *John* the second, to *Lewis* the eleventh of France for the sum of 300000 Crowns, Anno 1462. and freely returned back again to Ferdinand the second, (after called the Catholic) by King Charles the eighth, Anno 1493, conditioned that he should not hinder him in the Conquest of *Naples*. Joyning hereto as part of the Kingdom of Majorca, was the Countrey of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*; the habitation of the *Ceretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of Aragon. The chief Town of those *Ceretani*, called *Julia Lylica*; the principal now being hath the name of *Cardono* (or *Sardona* as the Spaniards commonly pronounce) retaining some resemblance to the name of the Nation. The Countrey lying in the Valleys of the Pyrenees, and consequently in a corner somewhat out of the way; was thought fit to be added to the Land of Roussillon (for the better endowment of this Kingdom): the Fortunes of which it hath since followed, as appendent on it; pawned when that was unto the French, and with that restored.

2 The Earldom of MONTPELIER is situate in the Province of Languedoc, adjoining to the Land of Roussillon; so called from *Montpelier*, the chief City: for the description whereof, we must send the Reader back to France, having spoken of it there already. All I shall here repeat is this, that Mary the Daughter of William the last Earl thereof, brought it by marriage to her husband Peter the second, King of Aragon: and that it was sold to Philip de Valois the French King, by James King of Majorca, of that name the third. Nothing else memorable in the story and affairs of this little Earldom, but the

- 1412 17 Ferdinand of Castile, the Nephew of
Pedro the 4th. 4.
1416 18 Alfonso V. 42.
1458 19 John II. Sonne of Ferdinand, and

Brother of Alfonso, King of Navarre also in right of Blanch his Wife. 20.

- 1478 20 Ferdinand II. of that name of Aragon,
Son of John the second, King of

Aragon and Navarre by a second Wife: and the fifth of that name of Castile and Leon, which Kingdoms he obtained by the marriage of Isabel or Elizabeth, Sister and Heir of Henry the fourth; uniting thereby the great Estates of Castile and Aragon, and all Appendixes of either. In which regard he may well challenge the first place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of Spain, to be presented in due season.

In the mean time to draw to a conclusion of the affairs and Estate of Aragon, we are to understand, that of all the Kingdoms which belong to the Spaniards, it is the most privileged, and free from the absolute command of the Kings of Spain: having in it such a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereof to be well-nigh similar; of little more authority than a Duke of Venice. For at the first erecting of this Estate, the better to encourage the people to defend themselves against the Moors, they had many Privileges indulged them; and amongst others the creating of a *Justiciar* or popular Magistrate; which, like the *Ephors* of Sparta, had in some cases, superiority over their Kings, reversing their judgements, cancelling their Grants, and sometimes censuring their proceedings. And though King Philip the second in the business of Antonio de Perez had made a Conquest of that Kingdom, and annulled all their Privileges; yet after of his own meer goodness he restored them (in part) again, as they continue at this day.

Chief Orders of Knighthood (besides that of *Mercede*, spoken of before) in this Kingdom, are, 1 Of *S. Saviour*, instituted by Alfonso the first, An. 1118. to animate the Members of it against the Moors. Of the habit and customs of this Order I have met with nothing.

2 Of *Montesa*, instituted by James the first, King of Aragon, An. 1270. or thereabouts. Endowed with all the Lands of the *Templars* (before dissolved) lying in *Valencia*; together with the Town and Cattle of *Montesa*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the name. Subject at first, unto the Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the same Rule of *Cisterneux*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Benedict* the 13th. they quitted themselves of that subjection; and in sign thereof, changed the Habit of *Calatrava*, which before they used, to a Red Cross upon their Breasts, now the badge of the Order.

The Arms of Aragon since possessed by the Earls of *Barcelona*, are Or, four Pallets Gules: before which, they were Azure, a Cross Argent.

The Monarchy of SPAIN.

Thus having spoke of Spain, and the Estate thereof, when broken and divided into many Kingdoms; let us next look upon it as united into one main body: effected for the most part by Ferdinand the last King of Aragon, before mentioned. Before which time Spain being parcelled into many Kingdoms, was little famous and less feared; the Kings thereof as the Author of the *Politick Discourse*, &c. hath well observed, being only *Kings of Figs and Oranges*. Their whole puissance was then turned against one another; and small Achievements had they out of that Continent, except those of the House of Aragon upon Sicily, Naples, Sardinia, and the Balears. *Thunanus*, a diligent Writer of the History of his own times, (if in some things he favour not more of the *Patri* than the *Historian*) telleth us, that before this Kings Reign, the name and glory of the Spaniards was like their Countrey; hemmed in by the Seas on some sides, and the Hills on the other: *Potiusq; patuisse exteris invadentibus, quam quicquam memorabile extra suos fines gessisse*. 'Tis true, that *Sancho the Great*, King of Navarre, assumed unto himself the Title of King of Spain; and that *Alfonso* the fourth of Castile, and the ninth of Leon, caused himself to be crowned Emperour of Spain, in the Cathedral Church of Leon: Titles ambitiously affected upon no good ground, and such as ended with their Persons. But this Prince worthily named the *Great*, seized on the Kingdom of Navarre, conquered Granada from the Moors, subdued the Kingdom of Naples, united Aragon to Castile, banished 124000 Families of the Jews; began by the conduct of *Columbus*, the discovery of the *Western Indies*: and finally by marrying his Daughter *Joan* to Philip, Son of the Emperour *Maximilian*, Duke of Burgundy, and Lord of the greatest part of the *Netherlands*, laid the Foundation of the present *Austrian* greatness. Continued since by so many intermarriages, betwixt the Spanish and Imperial Branches of that potent Family; that Philip the second might have called the Arch-duke *Albertus*, Brother, Cousin, Nephew, and Son. A strange Medley of Relations. Thus by the puissance of this Prince, the Spaniards became first considerable in the eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the Neighbouring Nations. *Nomen Hispanicum obscurum antea & Vicinis pene incognitum, (saith the same Thunanus) tum primis emerit, trahitq; temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formidolosum ex eo, & terribile toti terrarum Orbi esse cepit*. And he saith true, with reference to the French, and Italian Nations; to whom the Spaniards have administered no small matter of fear and terror: though unto others they appear no such dreadful *Bugs-bears*. But sure it is, and we may warrantably speak it without any such impressions of fear and terror, that this Kingdom since that time is wonderfully both enlarged and strengthened: strongly compacted in it self, with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over

over all parts of the World, his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the rising and the setting of the Sun; which before the Spaniard no Monarch could ever say. A greater change, than any man can possibly imagine to have been effected in so short a time, as was between the first year of Ferdinand the Catholic, and the last year of Charles the fifth.

Concerning the title of the most Catholic King, re-attributed to this Ferdinand, I find that *Alfonso* the first of Oviedo, was so named for his sanctity: with whom it died, and was revived in *Alfonso the Great*, the twelfth King of Leon and Oviedo, by the grant of Pope John the 8th. After it lay dead till the days of this Prince, who re-obtained this title from Pope Alexander the sixth: either because he compelled the Moors to be baptized, banished the Jews, and in part converted the Americans unto Christianity; or because having united Castile to his Dominions, surprized the Kingdom of Navarre, and subdued that of Granada, he was in a manner the Catholic, or general King of all Spain. The last reason seemeth to sway most in the restoration of this attribute, in that when it was granted and confirmed on Ferdinand, by Pope Alexander the sixth, the King of Portugal exceedingly stomached at it: *Quando Ferdinandus imperio universam Hispaniam (saith Mariana) non obtineret, ejus tum non exigua parte penes Reges alios*. It seems *Emanuel* could not think himself a King of Portugal, if the title of the Catholic King did belong to Ferdinand. Wherein he was of the same mind, as was Gregory the Great, who when John of Constantinople had assumed to himself the title of the Oecumenical or Catholic Bishop; advised all Bishops of the World to oppose that arrogancy: and that upon the self-same reason, *Nam sile est Catholicus, non est Episcopus*, for if John were the Catholic Bishop, they were none at all. But upon what consideration soever it was first re-granted, it hath been ever since assumed by his Posterity: to whose Crown as hereditary and in common use, as the most Christian King to France, the Defender of the Faith to England.

And yet there was some further reason, why the Spaniard might affect the title of Catholic King, his Empire being Catholic in regard of extent (though not of Orthodoxy of doctrines) as reaching not over all Spain only, but over a very great part of the World besides. For in right of the Crown of Castile he possesseth the Towns of *Adellila* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Mafalquivir*, the Rock of *Velez*, and the Canary Islands in *Africa*; the Continent and Islands of all America except *Brasil*, and some Plantations in the North, and in the *Cannibal* Islands, of the English, Hollanders, and a few poor French. In the right of the Kingdom of Aragon, he enjoyeth the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, with many Islands interspersed in the *Mediterranean*; and in the right of the house of Burgundy, the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolais*, the greatest part of *Belgium*, with a title unto all the rest: besides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon* and *Plumbino*, and many other pieces of importance in *Italy*, held by investiture from the Empire. To which if those Estates be added which accrewed to Philip the second by the Crown of Portugal, we have the Towns of *Ceuta*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortresses of *Arguin* and *S. George* in *Guinea*, the Islands of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Cape Verd*, *S. Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this side of the Cape, and of *Mesambique* on the other: in Asia all the Sea-coast almost from the Gulf of *Perfia* unto *China*, and many strong holds in the *Moluccos*, *Bantan*, *Zellan*, and other Islands; and finally in America the large Countrey of *Brasil*, extending in length 1500 miles. An Empire of extent enough, to appropriate to these Monarchs the title of Catholic.

The Monarchs of Spain.

- A. Ch.
1478 1 Ferdinand, King of Aragon, Sicily, Sardinia, Majorca, Valencia, Earl of Catalogne, surprized Navarre, and conquered the Realm of Naples.
Isabel, Queen of Castile, Leon, Galicia, Toledo, Murcia, Lady of Biscay, conquered Granada, and discovered America.
1504 2 Joan Princess of Castile, Granada, Leon, &c. and of Aragon, Navarre, Sicily, &c.
Philip Archduke of Austria, Lord of Belgium.
1516 3 Charles King of Castile, Aragon, Naples, &c. Archduke of Austria, Duke of Millain, Burgundy, Brabant, &c. Earl of Catalogne, Flanders, Holland, &c. Lord of Biscay, Friseland, Utrecht, &c. and Emperour of the Germans. He added the Realms of Mexico and Peru, the Dukedom of Gelderland and Millain, the Earldom of Zutphen, and the Signeuries of Utrecht, Over-Tyssel, and Groynning, unto his Estates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puissance, that had not Francis the first in time opposed him, he had even swallowed all Europe. He was also for a time of great strength and reputation in Tunis and other parts of Africa, disposing Kingdoms at his pleasure: but the Turk broke his power there, and being hunted also out of Germany, he resigned all his Kingdoms, and died private. 42.
1558 4 Philip II. Of more ambition, but less prosperity than his Father; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of Portugal, but that sufficiently ballanced by his ill successes in the Netherlands, and against the English. For the Hollanders and their Confederates drove him out of eight of his Belgick Provinces: the English overthrew his Invincible Armada, intercepted his Plate-Fleets, and by awing the Ocean had almost impoverished him. And though he held for a time an hard hand upon France, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the Leaguers: yet upon casting up his Accompts, he found that himself was the greater loser by that undertaking. So zealous in the cause of the Romish Church, that it was thought that his eldest Son Charles was put to death with his consent in the Inquisition house, for seeming favourably inclined to the Low-Country-
C c Hereticks.

Hereticks, as the *Spaniards* called them. These four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed.

1598 5 Philip III. Finding his Estate almost destroyed by his Fathers long and chargeable Wars, first made peace with *England*, and then concluded a Truce for twelve years with the States of the *Netherlands*: which done, he totally banished all the *Moor*s out of *Spain*, and was a great stickler in the Wars of *Germany*.

1621 6 Philip IV. Son of Philip the third, got into his power all the *Lower Palatinate*; but lost the whole Realm of *Portugal*, and the Province of *Catalonia*, with many of his best Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Brabant*, and some Ports in *Italy*: not yet recovered to that Crown, from the power of the *French*.

This Empire consisting of so many several Kingdoms united into one Body, may seem to be invincible. Yet had *Queen Elizabeth* followed the counsel of her men of War, she might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 men, she might have taken away his *Indies* from him: without whose Gold, the *Low Country* Army (which is the very best) could not be paid, and by consequence must needs have been dissolved. Nay Sir *Walter Raleigh* in the Epilogue of his most excellent *History of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the charge of 200000 l. continued but for two years, or three at the most, the *Spaniards* might not only have been persuaded to live in peace; but that all their swelling and overflowing streams, might be brought back to their natural channels and old banks. Their own Proverb saith, the Lion is not so fierce as he is painted: yet the *Americans* tremble at his name, it's true; and it is well observed by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that things which seem to be, and are not, are more feared far off, than near at hand. Nor is this judgment built upon weak conjectures, but such as shew the power of *Spain* not to be so formidable, as it's commonly supposed: which I find marshalled to my hand in this manner following. 1. The disjointedness of his Realms and other Estates, severed by infinite distances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2ly, The slowness of his Preparations in offensive or defensive Wars, his Forces of necessity being long a gathering in places so remote from the Royal Seat; and being gathered no less subject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for action. 3ly, The danger and uncertainty which the most part of his *Forinsique Revenues* are subject to, many times intercepted by *Pirates* and open Enemies; sometimes so long delayed by cross Winds and Seas, that they come too late to serve the turn. 4ly, The different tempers and affections of a great part of his Subjects, nor easily concurring in the same ends, or travelling the same way unto them. 5ly, The discontentedness of the *Aragonians*, *Portuguese*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular reasons, unto the *Castilians*; apt to be wrought on by the *Ministers* of neighbouring Princes, whom jealousies of State keep watchful upon all advantages, for the depressing of his power. 6ly, And last of all, the want of people of his own natural Subjects, whom he may best rely on for the increase and grandure of his Estates exhausted and diminished by those ways and means, which have been touched upon before; without any politique or provident course, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greatest and most sensible Error in the *Spanish* Government: therein directly contrary to the ancient *Romans*; Who finding that nothing was more necessary for great and important enterprizes than multitudes of Men, employed all their studies to increase their numbers by Marriages, Colonies, and such helps; making their conquered Enemies free *Denizens* of their Common-wealth: by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became so great (all being equally interested in the preservation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibals* judgment) by any forces but her own. But on the other side the *Spaniards* employ none in their Plantations but their own native Subjects, and so many of them also in all their enterprizes both by Sea and Land, that so many thousands going forth every year, in the flower of their age, not one of ten returning home, and those few which return, either lame or old: the Country is not only deprived of the Men themselves, but also of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be, that *John* the first of *Portugal*, who reigned before the several Voyages and Plantations of that people, was able to raise 40000 Men, for the War of *Africa*: whereas *Emanuel* who lived after those undertakings, had much ado to raise 20000 foot and 3000 horse on the same occasion; and *Sebastian* after that found as great a difficulty, to raise an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of *Spain* is able to make out of all his Estates, they may be best seen by his preparations for the Conquest of *England*, *France*, and *Flanders*. In his design for *England*, An. 1588. he had a Fleet consisting 150 sail of Ships, whereof 66 were great Gallies, 4 Gallies of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the rest smaller Vessels: freighted with 20000 Souldiers for land service, 9000 Saylers, 800 Gunners, 4000 Pioneers, 2650 pieces of Ordinance: not reckoning into this account the Commanders and Volunteers, of which last there were very great numbers who went upon that service for *Spoil*, *Merit*, or *Honor*. In the design of *Charles* the fifth for the Conquest of *Provence*, he had no less than 50000 in the field; and in that of *Philip* the second for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his first setting forward out of *Italy*, consisting of 8800 *Spanish* foot, and 1200 horse; all of them old experienced Souldiers, drawn out of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the Dutchie of *Millain*, 3600 *German* foot, 300 Lances, and 100 *Harcubisers* on horseback of the County of *Burgundy*, all old Souldiers also; besides many Volunteers of great rank and quality, very well attended, and his old standing Army in the *Belgick* Provinces; a strength sufficient to have conquered a far greater Country.

Of standing forces in this Country, he maintaineth in these Realms of *Spain*, but three thousand horse, and in his Forts and Garrisons no more then 8000 Foot: his Garrisons being very few, and those

those upon the Frontiers only, and in Maritime Towns; his Gallies served with slaves out of *Turkey*, and *Barbary*. And yet he is able on occasion to raise very great forces, partly because the ordinary subjects are so well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence: and partly in regard thereto is so great a number of *Fendataries* and Noblemen, who are by *Tenure* to serve personally at their own charges for defence of the Realm. And certainly it must be a considerable force which the Noblemen of *Spain* are able to raise, considering the greatness of their Revenue, and the number of Vassals which live under them: it being supposed that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my Author lived) were able one with another to dispend yearly from 50000 Ducats to a 100000, some going very much above that proportion; and that of 36 Marquesses and 50 Earls, the poorest had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent; and so ascending unto 50 and 60000. The Archbishops, Bishops, and others of the greater Clergie, being all endowed with fairer *Temporal* Estates, than in most places of *Europe*; are also bound to serve (though not personally) on the like occasions. And to these services the Noblemen are for two reasons more forwards than the other *Fendataries*. 1 Because their honors descend not *de jure* from the Father to the Son, unless confirmed to the Son by the Kings acknowledgment and compellation: which makes them more observant of him, than in *France* or *England*, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2 Because out of the gross body of these Noblemen, the King doth use to honor some with the title of *Grandeess*; privileged to stand covered before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the highest honor which that State can yield, keeps those great persons in a readiness to obey his pleasure, in hope to come to an honor of so high esteem.

For the Revenue of this King, which ordinarily arise out of his Estates (taking *Portugal* into the account) they are computed at 11 millions of Crowns yearly, that is to say, four from his *Dominions in Spain*, two from *Portugal* and the *Appertinents* thereof, three from the *West-Indies*, and the other two remaining from his Kingdoms in *Spain*. Besides this he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Masterships of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by *Ferdinand* the Catholic, not without good Policy and reason of State: the Masters (or *Commendadors*, as they call them) of those several Orders drawing after them such troops of the Nobility, Gentry, and other dependants; that their power began to be suspected by the Kings themselves. By which addition there accreth to the Crown (besides the opportunity of preferring servants of the greatest merit) above 150000 l. of yearly Rents. As for his Casualties and extraordinary ways of raising money, they are very great: reckoned by the Author of the *General History of Spain* to amount (according to divers opinions) to 14. 18. and 23 millions of Crowns. For making up of which sum, he puts in the *First Fruits*, and some part of the *Tenth*s of Rectories; and other Church preferments, amounting to three millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Dispute*, &c. affirmeth the *Pardons* sent to the *Indies*, given him by the Pope, to be worth half a million of pounds yearly. Add hereunto the fall and disposal of all Offices, which make up a good round sum; and the free Gifts and Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good Revenue. For the Kingdom of *Naples* presents him every third year with a million and 20000 Crowns; and *Castile* only at one time granted a Contribution of four millions, to be paid in four years: his Subjects generally being so well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reason of them which they are not ready to grant; the King of *Spain* being called in that regard by the Emperor *Maximilian* the King of Men. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in treasure, his expences being very great. First, in keeping Forts and Garrisons in many parts of his Estates against the revolt of the Natives; Secondly, maintaining so many Frontier places, against foreign Invasions; Thirdly, in the continual pay of of an Armada for Conducting his *Plate-Fleets* from *America*; And last of all the many and unprofitable Wars of King *Philip* the second, so plunged the Crown in the Gulf of Bankers and Money-changers, that much of the Revenues of it stand engaged for payment to this very day.

There are in *Spain*
Archbishops 11. Bishops 52.
Universities 18.

i. e.

1 Sevil,	7 Salamanca,	13 Valentia,
2 Granada,	8 Alcalá de Henarres,	14 Lerida,
3 S. Jago,	9 Sigüencia,	15 Huesca,
4 Toledo,	10 Eborá,	16 Saragossa,
5 Valladolid,	11 Lisbon,	17 Tudela,
6 Majorca,	12 Conimbre,	18 Ossuna.

And so much for *Spain*.

Cc2

OF

England.

lous and foolish, and but few of weight. That which hath passed for current in former times, (when almost all Nations did pretend to be of Trojan race) was that it took this name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grandchild of *Æneas*, and the third King of the *Latines* of the Trojan blood. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his friends and followers; after a long voyage, and many wandrings, is said to have fallen upon this Island, to have conquered here a race of Giants; and having given unto it the name of *Britain*, to leave the Sovereignty thereof unto his posterity, who quietly enjoyed the fame, till subdued by the *Romans*. This is the sum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*: Which though received in the darker times of ignorance, and too much credulity; in these more learned days hath been laid aside, as false and fabulous. And it is proved that there was no such man as *Brutus*, 1 From the newness of his Birth, *Gesfr* of *Monmouth*, who lived in the reign of King *Henry* the second, being the first Author which makes mention of him: for which immediately questioned by *Newbrigenfis*, another Writer of that Age. 2ly, By the silence of all the *Roman* Historians, in whom it had been an unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident so remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Son (especially when they wanted matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new Trojan Empire in so great an Island. 3ly, By the Arguments which *Cæsar* useth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Galls*; as Speech, Laws, Customs, Dispositions, Making, and the like. 4ly, And lest it might be said, that though the *Britains* in *Cæsar*'s time were of *Gallick* race, yet there had been a former and more ancient people, who had their Original from the *Trojans*: *Tacitus* putteth off that dispute with an *Ignoramus*: *Quintus* in *initio coluerint parum compertum est*, saith that knowing writer. And 5ly, By the Testimony of all *Roman* Histories, who tell us that *Cæsar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, and never under the command of one sole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa Belli administrandi communi consensu commissa est* *Calpurnellano*, as it is in *Cæsar*: *Dum singuli pugnabant, universi vincebantur*, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etymons* as unlikely, but of less authority: the name of *Britain* most probably derived from *Brit*, which in the ancient *British* signifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain*, signifying a Nation: agreeable unto the custom of the ancient *Britains*, who used to discolour and paint their bodies, that they might seem more terrible in the eyes of their enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted men; such as the *Romans* called *Picti* in the times ensuing. Which I prefer before the *Etymologie* of *Bochartus*, a right learned man, but one that wresteth all originations to the *Phœnician* language: by whom this Island is called *Britain* or *Britannica*, from *Barat-anac*, signifying in that language a land of *Tynne*, wherewith the Western parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the Isle of *Britain*, shall be observed in the description of those parts into which it now doth stand divided, that is to say, 1 *England*, 2 *Wales*, and 3 *Scotland*.

ENGLAND.

ENGLAND is bounded on the East, with the *German*; on the West, with the *Fris*; on the South, with the *British* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*; by which parted from *Scotland*: Environed with turbulent Seas, guarded by inaccessible Rocks: and where those want, preserved against all foreign invasions by strong Ports, and a puissant Navy.

In former time the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edinburgh Fryth* on the East, and the *Fryth* of *Dunbriton* on the West, (for so far not only the *Roman* Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervenient space being shut up with a wall of Turf by *Lollus Urbicus*, in the time of *Antonius Pius*. But afterwards, the *Romans* being beaten back by the Barbarous people, the Province was contracted within narrow bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperor *Severus*, extending from *Carlisle* to the River *Tine*, the track whereof may easily be discerned to this very day. A Wall so made, that at every miles end there is said to have been a Castle, between every Castle many Watch-Towers; and betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Brass, conveying the least noise unto one another without interruption: so that the news of any approaching enemy was quickly over all the Borders, and resistance accordingly provided. In following times the strong Towns of *Barwick*, and *Carlisle*, have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the backdoor shut: and as for other Ports, we had scarce any on the Frontiers, or Sea Coasts of the Kingdom; though in the midland parts too many. Which being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occasioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the *Norman* Kings: till in the latter end of the reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and those few which remained dismantled, and made unserviceable. The Maritime parts were thought sufficiently assured by those Rocks and Cliffs, which compass the Island in most parts: and hardly any Castle all along the shore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French*, as the Key of *England*. But in the year 1538. King *Henry* the eighth, considering how he had offended the Emperor *Charles* the fifth, by his divorce from *Queen Katharine*; and incurred the displeasure of the Pope, by his falling off from that See; as also that the *French* King had not only married his Son to a Niece of the Pope, but a Daughter of the King of *Scots*; thought fit to provide for his own safety, by building in all places where the shore was most plain and open, Castles, Platforms and Blockhouses; many of which in the long time of peace ensuing were much neglected and in part ruined.

His Daughter *Queen Elizabeth* of happy memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom. For she not only fortified *Portsmouth*, and placed in it a strong Garrison; but walled the Kingdom round with a most

England.

most stately, royal, and invincible Navy: with which she always commanded the Seas, and vanquished the mightiest Monarch of *Europe*; whereas her predecessors in their Sea Service, for the most part, hired their men of War, from the *Hansemen*, and *Genese*. Yet did neither of these erect any Castles in the inward part of the Realm: herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the head and the feet only, not the middle of Beasts; or some Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordinances on the Walls, Bulwarks, and Out-works; leaving the rest by these sufficiently guarded.

The whole Island was first called *Albion*, as before is said, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards *France*. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which name being first found in *Athenians*, amongst the *Grecians*, and in *Lucretius* and *Cæsar*, amongst the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and all other ancient writers, except *Ptolomy* only, by whom called *Albion* as at first; continued till the time of *Egbert* the first Saxon Monarch, who called the Southern parts of the Island by the name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 miles, enjoying a soil equally participating of ground fit for tillage; and pasture: yet to pasture more then to tillage are our people addicted, as a course of life not requiring so many helpers, which must be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn way-beaters: whereof Sir *Thomas Moore* in his *Utopia* complaineth, saying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only men, but whole houses and Towns. *Oves* (saith he) *quæ tam miles esse, tam exiguo solent ali; nunc tam edaces, & indomita esse caperant, ut homines devorant ipsos, agros, domos, oppida vastant, ac depopulantur*. To prevent this mischief, there was a Statute made in the fourth year of *Henry* the seventh, against the converting of Arable Land into Pasture ground: by which course Husbandry was again revived, and the soil made to abound in Corn, that a dear year is seldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and seldom come to maturity; and are more used for the pleantness of the shade, than for the hopes of wine. Most of her other plenty and Ornaments, are expressed in this old verse following.

Anglia, 1 Mons, 2 Pons, 3 Fons, 4 Ecclesiæ, 5 Famina, 6 Lana.

That is to say;

For 1 Mountains, 2 Bridges, 3 Rivers, 4 Churches faire,
5 Women, and 6 Wooll, *England* is pait compare.

1 For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty heads, and giving a gallant prospect to the lower Grounds; the principal are those of *Mendip* in *Somerset*, *Malvern* hills in *Worcestershire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamshire*, *Cotswold* in *Glostershire*, the *Peak* of *Derbyshire*, *Tork* *Walds*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact description of which, would require more time then I can spend upon that subject. Proceed we therefore to

2 The Bridges, which are in number 875. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rocheſter*; over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Bristol*, over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London*, over *Thames*. This last standing upon 19 Arches of wonderful strength and largeness, supporteth continual ranges of buildings, seeming rather a Street then a Bridge; and is not to be paralleled with any Bridge of *Europe*; though of late by some defacement made by fire, Anno 1632. the buildings are not so contiguous, as they were before.

The Rivers of this Countrey are in number 325. The chief is *Thamisis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the latter beyond *Cyreneſter* in *Glostershire*, meet together about *Dorcheſter* in *Oxfordshire*: the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamisis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surrey*, *Kent*, and *Essex*; and to weddeth himself to the *Kentish Medway*, in the very jaws of the Ocean. This glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more then any River in *Europe*; ebbing and flowing twice a day, more than 60 miles: about whose banks are so many fair Towns, and Princely Palaces; that a *German* Poet thus truly spoke.

*Tot campos, sylvas, tot regia tellus, tot hortos,
Artifici excoltos dextra, tot vidimus arces;
Ut nunc Anſonio Thamisis cum Tibride certat.*

We saw so many Woods and Princely Bowers;
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and stately Towers:
So many Gardens, dress'd with curious care,
That *Thames* with Royal *Tiber* may compare.

The second River of note, is *Salvina* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Pinlinton* hill in *Montgomeryshire*, and his end about seven miles from *Bristol*: washing in the mean space, the wals of *Shrewsbury*, *Worceſter*, and *Gloceſter*. 3 *Trent*; so called, for that 30 kind of Fishes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 lesser Rivers: who having his Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countreies of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, and *Tork*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Isle. Yet *Humber* is not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a spring head of his

England. his own; but rather the mouth or *Estuaries* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely, *Toune, Darent*, and especially *Ouse* and *Trent*. And as the *Danow*, having received into its Channel the Rivers, *Drum, Savus, Tibiscus*, and divers others, changeth his name into *Ister*: So also the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the waters above named, changeth his name into this of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4 *Medway*, a *Kentish* River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy. 5 *Tyde*, the North-east bound of *England*, on whose Northern bank is seated the strong and impregnable Town of *Barnwick*. 6 *Tine*, famous for *Newcastle* and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These and the rest of Principal note are thus comprehended in one of *M. Drayton's* Sonnets.

Our Floods Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd,
And stately *Severn* for her shore is prais'd,
The Crystal *Trent* for Fords and Fish renown'd;
The *Avon* fame to *Albion's* cliffs is rais'd.
Carlegion *Chester* vaunts her holy *Dee*,
Tork many Wonders of her *Ouse* can tell,
The *Peak* her *Dove*, whose banks so fertile be,
And *Kent* will say her *Medway* doth excell.
Cotswold commends her *Ips* to the *Thame*,
Our Northern borders boasts of *Tweeds* fair flood;
Our Western parts extoll their *Willies* Fame,
And the old *Lea* brags of the *Danish* blood.

4 The Churches, before the general suppression of Abbies, and spoiling the Church ornaments, were most exquisite; the chief remaining, are 1 the Church of *S. Paul* founded by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple consecrated to *Diana*: A Fabrick of the largest dimensions of that kind, of any in the Christian World. For whereas the so much celebrated Temple of *S. Sophia* in *Constantinople*, hath but 260 foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this of *S. Paul* is 690 foot long, and 130 foot broad, the main body being 102 foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 foot more. Which Steeple being made with Timber, and covered with Lead, was by the carelessness of the Sexton, in the fifth year of the reign of *Q. Elizabeth*, consumed with fire, which happening in a thundering and tempestuous day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was so generally believed till the hour of his death: but not many years since to disabuse the world, he confest the truth of it; on which discovery the burning of *S. Paul's* Steeple by lightning was left out of our common Almanacks; where formerly it stood amongst the ordinary *Epoches*, or accounts of time. A Church of such a gallant prospect, and so large dimensions, that had not the late reputation of it been discontinued, it would have been the stateliest and most majestic Fabrick in the Christian World. 2y, The Collegiate Church of *S. Peter* in *Westminster*, (wherein I have the honour to be a *Præbendary*) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombs whereof are the most sumptuous, and the Chappel the most accurate piece of building in *Europe*. 3y, The Cathedral Church at *Lincoln*. 4y, For a private Church, that of *Radcliffe* in *Bristol*. 5y, For a private Chappel, that of *Kings College* in *Cambridge*. 6y, For the curious workmanship of the glass, that of *Christ Church* in *Canterbury*. 7y, For the exquisite beauty of the Fronts, those of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8y, For a pleasant lightfom Church, the Abbey Church at *Bath*. 9y, For an antient and reverend Fabrick, the Minster of *Tork*. And 10y, to comprehend the rest in one, our *Lady Church* in *Salisbury*, of which take these Verses.

*Mira canam; soles quot continet annus, in una
Tum numerosa, ferunt, ade fenestra micat.
Marmoreasq; tenet fufas tot ab arte columnas,
Compreffas horæ quot vagus annus habet.
Totq; patent portæ, quot mensibus annus abundat:
Res miræ, at veræ res celebrata fide.*

How many daies in one whole year there be,
So many Windows in one Church we see.
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are hours throughout the fleeting year.
So many Gates as Moons one year do view;
Strange tale to tell, yet not so strange as true.

5 The Women generally are more handsome than in other places, sufficiently endowed with natural beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophistications. In an absolute Woman, say the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch Woman*, from the girdle downwards; of a *French Woman*, from the girdle to the shoulders; over which must be placed an *English* face. As their beauties, so also are their Prerogatives the greatest of any Nation; neither so servilely submissive as the *French*, nor so jealously guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping so true a *décorum*, that as *England* is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of *Horses*; so it is acknowledged the Paradise of Women. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if there were a Bridge built over the *Narrow Seas*, all the Women of

of *Europe* would run into *ENGLAND*. For here they have the upper hand in the streets, the upper place at the Table, the thirds of their Husbands estates, and their equal share in all Lands, yea even such as are holden in *Knights service*: privileges wherewith other Women are not acquainted. Of high esteem in former times amongst forain Nations, for the modesty and gravity of their conversation; but of late times so much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have lost much of their antient honour and reputation amongst the knowing and more sober men of forain Countries, who before admired them.

6 The Wooll of *England*, is of exceeding fineness, especially that of *Cotswold*, in *Gloucestershire*; that of *Lemster*, in *Herefordshire*; and of the Isle of *Wight*. Of this Wooll are made excellent broad-clothes, dispersed all over the World, especially *High-Germany, Muscovie, Turkie, and Persia*; to the great benefit of the Realm; as well in return of so much money which is made of them, as in setting to work so many poor people, who from it receive sustenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the third, *English* men had not the art, or neglected the use of making cloth: till whose time our Wooll was transported unwrought. And as his Successors have laid impositions on every cloth sold out of the Realm; so his Predecessors had, as their occasions required, some certain Customs granted on every sack of Wooll. In the beginning of this *Edward's* Wars with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders* being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and aided him in his Wars against that King. And he for his part by the composition then made, was to give them 140000 *l.* ready money; to aid them by Sea and Land, if need required, and to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart Towns of *Christendom*, the Staple for his Wools. Here the Staple continued 15 years; at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the King; and he having by experience seen what the benefit of those Staples were; removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the ease as well of his Subjects in bringing their Wools unto the Ports, as of such Forain Merchants as came to buy; he placed his Staples at *Exeter, Bristol, Winchester, Westminster, Chichester, Canterbury, Norwich, Lincoln, York, and Newcastle*, for *England*; at *Carmarthen* for *Wales*; and at *Dublin, Waterford, Cork, and Tredah*, for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *English, Irish, or Welch* men should transport this Stapled commodity, no not by License (if any such should be granted) on pain of confiscation, and Imprisonment during the Kings pleasure. Lastly, he allured over hither divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of clothes, (who are now grown the best Clothworkers in the World;) and to encourage men in that Art, it was by a Statute of the 27th of *Edward* the third, enacted to be Felony, to carry any Wools unwrought. When *England* had some short time enjoyed the benefit of these Staples, the King removed them to *Callice*, which he had conquered, and desired to make wealthy. From hence they were at several times and occasions translated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium*: and happy was that Town; in what Country soever, where the *English* kept a house for this Traffick; the consequence of all people thither to buy, infinitely enriching it. Answer in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *English* Merchants, till upon some discontents between King *Henry* the seventh, and *Maximilian*, Archduke, and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with solemn Procession, Princely Triumph, sumptuous Feasts, rare Banquetings, and other expressions of much Love, but more Joy. And giving of some *Cotswold* Sheep by *Edward* the fourth, to *Henry* of *Castile*, and *John* of *Aragon*, An. 1465. is counted one of the greatest prejudices that ever happened to this Kingdom.

The Wooll transported bringeth into the Kingdom no less than 1500000 *l.* and the Lead of the same sum, so that *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that before the Wars of the Low-Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *English* bartered wares yearly to the value of 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next commodity to the Wooll, though not mentioned in the verse fore-going, are the rich and inexhaustible Mines of *Cole, Lead, and Tin*: to say nothing of the *Adams* of *Iron*, as bringing more damage to the publick by the spoil of Woods, then profit to particular persons in the increase of their Estates. The Mines of *Cole* chiefly enrich *Newcastle* in *Northumberland*, and by that the great City of *London*; and many other good Towns besides: which could not possibly subsist in this general decay of Woods, and neglect of planting, but by this commodity. The Mines of *Lead* are most considerable in the *Peak* of *Darbyshire*; those of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where they dig *Tin* not much inferior to *Silver* in fineness. A commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in former times, the art of smelting it not being else where known in *Europe*; till one of the *Tin*-workers, flying out of *England* for a murder, passed into *Germany*, An. 1240. and there discovered some *Tin* Mines in *Assinia*, not known before, and set on foot that trade amongst them, to the great prejudice (saith my Author) of the *Earls* of *Cornwall*, who had before the sole Monopoly of that useful metal.

To these particulars being matters of profit and necessity, if I would add such things as are for delight and pleasure; I might subjoin the *Bells* and *Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent amongst forain Nations, as for any of those mentioned in the said old Verse. The *Bells* so many, tunable, and of such excellent Melody to a Musical ear (brought more to the command of the skilful finger than in former times) that it is thought there are more good Rings of *Bells* in this part of the Island than in half *Christendom* besides. *Parks* more in *England* than in all *Europe*. The first of which kind for the making of *Venison*, being that of *Woodstock*, made by King *Henry* the first: whose example being followed by his Successors, and the Lords and great men of the Realm; the number so increased in a little time, that at last, beside 55 *Forrests*, and 300 *Chases*, there were reckoned 745 *Parks* in *England*; and well replenished either with Red or Fallow Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleasure, and the Sheep with safety, great care was taken by our progenitors for the destruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old *Writers*, that

England.

England. England never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not so: here being store of them, till *Edgar King of England* commuted the 20 l. of Gold, 300 l. of Silver, and 300 head of Cattel imposed as an yearly tribute by King *Aethelfrith* upon *Edwold Prince of Wales*, for the like yearly tribute of 300 *Wolves*: by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the *Welch* protesting at the last they could find no more.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, neither so hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, because of its Northernly situation; nor so cold in the Winter; because the air of this Kingdom being gross, cannot so soon penetrate as the thin air of those Countries. For to say truth, the air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much disposed to mists; especially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: inasmuch that many times, the Sun is not seen to shine out clearly for some weeks together. And theupon there goeth a tale, that the great Constable of *Castile* being Ambassador to King *James* in the first Winter of his reign, and tarrying here about a month; is said not to have seen the Sun all the time of his stay: which occasioned him at his going on ship-board, to desire such Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to present his humble service to the King their Master, and to the blessed Sun of Heaven when they chanced to see him. And something also touching the temperature of the Air, may be ascribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they pass unto us; do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be said, that we were come from Gods blessing into the warm Sun: but it is not so. For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of fish then ours. Our Oylers were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*; to whom, the *Englishmen*, reserving to themselves a kind of *Royalty*, (for the *Dutch* by custom demand liberty to fish of *Scarborough Castle* in *Yorkshire*) have yielded up the commodity; By which those States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoverished, and condemned for laziness and sloth. Besides the loss of employment for many men, who using this trade might be a seminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and discoveries, cannot but be very prejudicial to the strength and flourishing of the Commonwealth and Empire of *England*.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I shall extract some passages out of a M. S. discourse of the late learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principal King of Arms by the name of *Garter*, entituled, *The Sovereignty of the British Seas*. By which it doth appear, that there is fishing in those Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fish, at all times of the year: and that too in so plentiful a manner, that not long since near *Minnegal* on the Coasts of *Devonshire*, 500 Ton of Fish were taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another near *S. Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 lasts of Herrings. 2^{ly} That almost all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlands*, and those of the *Hanse*, do mightily improve themselves both in power and wealth; by the benefit of the *English* Fishing; inasmuch as 10000 Sail of Forain Vessels (of which 1400 from the Town of *Emden* in *East-Friesland* only) are thought to be maintained by this trade alone. 3^{ly} That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yearly 8000 Vessels of all sorts for this trade of Fishing on our Coasts, all whereby they have a Seminary 150000 Saylers and Mariners, ready for any publick service: all which maintain treble that number of Men, Women and Children, of several trades upon the Land. 4^{ly} That for the holding up of this trade, the said *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not so big as many of our Shires, do build 1000 sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furnishing all the parts of the World (even as far as *Brasil*) with our commodities; returning home those of other Countreys in exchange thereof, which they sell to us many times at their own prices. 5^{ly} That the said *Hollanders* (as appeared upon computation) made in one year of the Herrings only, caught upon these Coasts, the sum of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Customs, and tenth Fish, advancing to the publick Treasury no less then 800000 l. Sterling) &c. it being thought, that the Herrings caught by those of the *Hanse* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a sum as that. 6^{ly} and finally, that by erecting only 250 *Buffets*, (Vessels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not swift of sail) for the *Herring-Fishing*, (which is not a luxury part of those which are employed yearly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or private Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated; there would be found employment yearly for 1000 ships, and at least 20000 Mariners and Fishers at Sea, and consequently for as many Tradesmen and Labourers at Land: by means whereof, besides the vindication of our credit now at such a loss, there would arise in Customs, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Imposts, no less than 300000 l. per Annum to the publick Treasury. The prosecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once designed by Mr. Attorney *Noy*, my much honoured Friend: so do I heartily commend it to the care of the State, and to his Successors in that Office, as the fittest remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithstanding these advantages of Fish, the Diet of *England* is, for the most part Flesh; in *London* only there are no fewer then 67 500 Beefs, and 67 5000 Sheep slain, and uttered in a year, besides Calves, Lambs, Hogs-flesh, and Poultryers ware. To prove this, suppose there be in *London* 60 Butchers Free of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Oxe a day, as at least they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Forainers in the Suburbs and Villages sell four for their one. Lastly, count for every Oxe ten Sheep, (for this is also certainly known) to be killed and sold, and you have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Gandemar*, once the *Spanish* Lieger here, having in some several Markets daies seen the several Shambles of this great City, said to them who made the discovery with him; That there was more flesh eaten in a month in that Town, than in all

England. all *Spain* in a year. Now had I his skill who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole body, I might by this provision of Flesh consumed in the head, guess at the quantity of that which is spent in the body of the Realm. But this I leave to be determined by an abler hand. The usual and natural drink of the Country is *Beer*, so called from the *French* word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is said) which, without controvercie, is a most wholesome and nourishing beverage; and being transported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea is so purged, that it is amongst them in highest estimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Beere d'Angle Terre*. And as for the old drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Danish* word *Ola*, it is questionless in it self, (and without that commixture which some are accused to use with it) a very wholesome drink; howsoever it pleased a Poet in the time of *Henry* the third, chusto de-scant on it:

*Nescio quid monstrum Stygiæ conforme paludi,
Cervisiam pleriq; vocant; nil spissum illa
Dum bibitur, nil clarum est dum mingitur; ergo
Constat quod multas facies in ventre relinquit.*

In *English* thus;

Of this strange drink so like the *Stygian* lake;
Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
Folk drink it thick, and piss it very thin;
Therefore much *Dregs* must needs remain within.

Now to conclude this general discourse concerning *England*, there goes a tale, that *Henry* the seventh (whose breeding had been low and private) being once pressed by some of his Council, to pursue his title unto *France*, returned this Answer: That *France* indeed was a flourishing and gallant Kingdom; but *England* in his mind was a fine Seat for a Countrey Gentleman, as any could be found in *Europe*.

Having staid thus long in taking a Survey of the Country it self, together with the chief commodities and pleasures of it; and amongst them of the *Women* also, (as the method of the old Verse led me on:) it is now time that we should look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the most part gray-eyed, pleasant, beautiful, bountiful, courteous, and much resembling the *Italians* in habit and pronunciation. In matters of war, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure, and resolute to undertake the hardest enterprises in peace quiet, and not quarrelsome; in advice or counsel, sound and speedy. Finally, they are active, hearty, and cheerful. And yet I have met with some Gentlemen, who upon the strength of a little travel in *France*, have grown to un-*Englished*, (and so affected or befotted rather on the *French* Nation, that they affirm the *English*, in respect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* people; of no dispatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in vilifying their Nation, they had consulted with *Julius Scaliger*, who in the 16. Chap. of his 3^d Book *De re Poetica*, giveth of the two most noble Nations, *English*, and *Scottish*, this base and unmanly Character, *Gothi bellue, Scoti non minus; Angli perfidi, inflati, feri, contemptores, stolidi, amentes, inertes, inhospitales, inhumanes*. His bolt (you see) is soon shot, and so you may happily guess at the quality of the Archer. A man indeed of an able learning, but of his own worth so highly conceited, that if his too much learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *National* disgrace on a *Personal*, is an ignoble victory. Besides *Socrates* resolution in the like kind, in my opinion was very judicious, *ἡ ἄνθρωπος ἰσχυρὸς, σκληρὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἰσχυρὰν*; If an *Ale* kick us, we must not put him in the Court. To confuse his censure in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too great a labour; it being a task, which of it self would require a Volume. The best is, many shoulders make the burden light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrel against that proud Man, as ours: for so maliciously hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hyperbicks*.

How the *English*, and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought most given to their bellies, do agree and differ in this point; the same *Scaliger* hath thus shewed in one of his Epigrams.

*Tres sunt Convivæ, Germanus, Flander, & Anglus;
Dic quis edat melius; quis meliusve bibat.
Non comedis Germane, bibis; tu non bibis Angle,
Sed comedis; comedis Flandre, bibisq; bene.*

Dutch, *Flemmings*, *English*, are your only guests;
Say which of all doth eat, or drink it best.
Th' *English* love most to eat, the *Dutch* to swill,
Only the *Flemming* eats and drinks his fill.

This

England.

Thus was it in his time with the *English* Nation; though since, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more than needs of the *Flemming* also.

The Nobility of this Country is not of so much unlimited Power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes, Earls, and Marquesses*, being merely titular; whereas in other places they have some absolute, some mixt government; so that upon any little distast, they will stand on their own guard, and slight the power of their *Sovereign*. And on the other side, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Privileges above all other Nations; being most free from Taxes, and burdensome Impositions, but what they take upon themselves by their own consent. They have twice in a year (a laudable custom nowhere else to be seen) Justice administered even at their own doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order first instituted by King *Henry* the second. They dwell together with the Gentlemen, in Villages, and Towns, which makes them favour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Peasants* in *Italy, Spain, France, or Germany*; being able to entertain a stranger honestly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The *Clergy* was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King *Henry* the fifth, against the temporal revenues of the Church; in which it was suggested, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 10000 Alms-houses, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 *l. per Annum* into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot say. But after this, King *Henry* the eighth took his Opportunities, to pare away the excrescencies of it; demolishing the Monasteries, and Religious houses, and paring off the superfluities of Bishops, Ricks and Cathedral Churches: in which he found not a few followers amongst the Ministers and great Officers of State, and Court, in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, and Queen *Elizabeth*. Yet left they not the *Clergy* so poor and naked, or destitute of the encouragements and rewards of learning, but that they have been still the objects of a covetous envy, (that which the former *Harpies* left them, being thought too much): though for abilities of learning (I dare boldly say it) not to be paralleled in the World. For besides 5439 *Parochial Benefices*, being no *Impropriations*; and besides the *Vicarages*, most of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas: there were left in *England* at the time of the Reformation under Queen *Elizabeth*, 26 Bishopsricks, (taking those of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Deaneries*, 60 *Archdeaconries*, and 544 *Dignities and Prebends*; most of which, places of fair revenue. And as for the maintenance of Priests, Monks, and Friars, before the Reformation, there were reckoned 90 Colleges, besides those in the Universities, 100 Hospitals, 3374 Chantries and free Chappels, and 645 Abbeys and Monasteries: more then half of which had above the yearly income of 200 *l.* in old rents, many above 2000, and some 4000 almost. So studious were our *Ancestors* both in those times of blindness, and these of a clearer sight, to encourage men to learnings, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of *England* is either for the *Land*, or for the *Sea*. Our Victories by *Land* are most apparent, over the *Irish, Scots, Cypriots, Turks*, and especially *French*; whose Kingdom hath been sore shaken by the *English* many times, especially twice by King *Edward* the third, and *Henry* the fifth: this latter making so absolute a conquest, that *Charles* the seventh, like a poor *Roy d'Idiot*, confined himself to *Bourges*, where (having casheered his retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a napkin only laid before him, a ramp of Mutton and two Chickens. And so redoubted even after our expulsion from *France*, (our civil dissensions rather causing that expulsion, than the *Frenchmen's* valour) was the *English* name in that Country: that in the Wars between King *Charles* the eighth, and the Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke, to strike a terror into his enemies, apparelled 1500 of his own Subjects, in the Arms and Crofs of *England*. But as the *Africans*, when he had on the Lions skin, was for all that but an *Afric* and no *Lion*: so these *Britons*, by the weak resistance they made against their Enemies, shewd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *Englishmen*. *Spain* also tasted the valour of our Land-souldiers, when *John of Gaunt* pursuing his title to *Spain*, was sent home with 8 Waggonns laden with gold, and an annual pension of 10000 marks; as also when the *Black Prince* re-established King *Peter* in his Throne. And then also did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puissance of the *English*, when *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuscoa*, 6000 *English* Foot, who lay there to joyn with this *Ferdinand* in an expedition against *France*. Concerning which *Guicciardine* giveth this Item, That the Kingdom of *Navarre* yielded rather for the fear and reputation of the *English* Forces that were at hand, then by any puissance of King of *Aragon*. Since those times the *Spaniards* much esteemed us, as appeareth by this speech of theirs to our Souldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*: You are tall Souldiers, and therefore when you come down to the Trenches, we double our guards, and look for blows; but as for those base and cowardly *French*, when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but play, or sleep on our Ramparts. The like the *Netherlanders* can rectify; only this is the grief of it; The *English* are like *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Nor to say any thing of the late, but great experience, which the *English* Souldiery hath gotten by the Civil broils among themselves. At which my heart so aketh, and my hand so trembleth, that I shall only add in the words of *Lucan*,

Hen

England.

*Hec quantum potuit caeli pelagiq; paravi,
Hoc quem Civiles fuderant sanguine dextra!*

That is to say,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
By that dear blood, which Civil wars have drain'd!

As for their power and valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the battel of *Scuse*, wherein King *Edward* the 3^d. with 200 Ships, overcame the *French* Fleet consisting of 500 Sail; of which he sunk 200, and flew 30000 Souldiers. Secondly, at the battel in 88. wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquished the invincible *Armad* of the King of *Spain*, consisting of 134 great Gallies, and Ships of extraordinary bigness. Sir *Francis Drake* with 4 Ships, took from the *Spaniard* one million, and 189200 Ducats in one Voyage, An. 1587. And again with 25 Ships, he awed the Ocean, sacked *S. Jago, S. Dominico, and Cartagena*; carrying away with him, besides Treasure, 240 Pieces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this *Drake* and *Candish*; and the voyage to *Gales*: as also how one of the *Queens* Ships named the *Revenge*, in which Sir *Richard Greenville* was Captain, with 180 Souldiers (whereof 90 were sick on the ballast) maintained a Sea-fight for 24 hours against above 50 of the *Spanish* Gallies. And though at last, after her Powder was spent to the last barrel, she yeelded upon honourable terms; yet she was never brought into *Spain*: having killed in that fight more than 10000 of their Souldiers, and sunk four of their greatest Vessels. I omit also the discovery of the Northern passages, by *Hugh Willoughby, Davis, and Frabisher*; concluding with that of *Keckerman, Hoc certum est, omnibus bodie gentibus navigandi industria & peritia superiores esse Anglos; & post Anglos, Hollandos*: I though now I know not by what neglect, and discontinuance of those honorable employments the *Hollanders* begin to bereave us of our ancient Glories, and would fain account themselves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been so indeed, had not His Majesty by the timely reinforcing of his Naval Power, An. 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it.

The *English* Language is a De-compound of *Dutch, French, and Latine*; which I conceive rather to add to its perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; since out of every Language we have culled the most significant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither so boisterous as the *Dutch*, nor so effeminate as the *French*; yet as significant as the *Latine*, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one, little inferior to the *Greek*.

The *Christian Faith* was first here planted, as some say, by *S. Peter and Paul*; more probably (as others say) by *Joseph of Arimathea*, whose body they find to have been interred in the Isle of *Avalonia* where the Abbey of *Glastenbury* after stood. But that of his plantation being almost rooted out by long Persecutions, and no supply of Preachers sent from other places; *Lucius* a King of *Britain* (and the first *Christian* King of *Europe*) An. 180. or thereabouts, sent his Ambassadors to *Eleutherius* the then Pope of *Rome* to be furnished with a new supply of Pastors, if not to plant, yet at the least to water; and confirm the Gospel planted here before; but almost rooted out again by prevailing *Gentilism*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himself, but by the piety of his example, and the diligence of the first Preachers sent from *Rome* (being both of them natural *Britons*) it spread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in some tract of time over all the Island. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of *Christ*, was forthwith furnished with Bishops and Metropolitans, according to the number of the Provinces and principal Cities (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as *Christianity* itself. For not to truit herein to the authority of the *British* History, we find three Bishops of this Isle subscribing to the Council of *Arles*, An. 314. viz. *Eborinus* Bishop of *Torky*, *Restitutus* Bishop of *Londons*, and *Adelfinus*, Bishop of *Colchester*, there called *Colonia Londinensium*; and some of them also present in the Council of *Sardica*, An. 358. concurring with the rest in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Heresies; and the same of others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the *Britons* were expelled their native Country, or shut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordoevies*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried *Christianity* and Bishops along with them: *Augustine* the Monk, finding no fewer then seven Bishops in the *British* Church, when he was sent by *Gregory* the Great to convert the *English*. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as some men suppose) to say that *Augustine* the Monk first preached the Gospel in *England*; because it must be understood, not with Relation to the *Britons*, but the *English Saxons*: from whom these parts of the Isle had the name of *England*; and from whom both the *Britons* and the Faith it self were driven into the Mountains of *Wales* and *Cornwall*, and Heathenism introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleased God, that *Gregory* the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of *Rome*) seeing some handiome youths to be sold in open Market, demanded what and whence they were: to whom it was answered they were *Angli*; and well may they be so called (saith he) for they seem as *Angels*. Asking again of what Province they were amongst the *Angli*; and answer being made of the Province *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (saith he) *de ira Dei sunt liberandi*. And lastly, understanding that the King of their Nation was named *Alle*; how fitly (saith he) may he sing *Alleluiahs* to the most High God? After which time he seriously endeavoured the Conversion of the *English* Nation; which being Pope he happily effected, by the travel and diligence of *Augustine* the Monk, the first Archbishop of *Canterbury*. And so well did the work prosper after this beginning, that not only all the *Saxons* did receive the Gospel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Hassians, Francotians*, and

D d

Thring 1401

England.

Thuringians being converted by *Winfred*; the *Frisons* or *Hollanders* by *Wittrikind* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*; the *Saxons* of *Westphalen* by *Weldrode*, the first Bishop of *Breme*; all of them being *English Saxons*, as we find in *Beda* and some others.

Now as these parts of *Britain* were the first which generally entertained the Gospel; so were they the first also in these later times, which universally submitted to the Reformation of such corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of *Rome*. Endeavoured first in *France*, by the *Albigenses*, and *Waldenses*, as was said before. Who being suppressed and ruined by the sword of the Kings of *France*, sheltered themselves in the mountainous parts of *Gascogne* and *Guienne*, then in possession of the *English*; who by that means became acquainted with their *Tenets*: maintained here publicly by *Wicless*, and spreading under-hand amongst the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther* and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in most other Countries received tumultuously, by the power of the People; was here admitted upon mature deliberation, by the authority and consent of the Prince and Prelates: the *Archbishops* in this great work, without respect unto the Dictates of *Luther* or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Word and the Primitive Patterns, abolishing such things as were repugnant unto either, but still retaining such Ceremonies in Gods public worship, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did observe a greater measure of Christian prudence and moderation, than their neighbour Churches; which in a meer detestation of the See of *Rome*, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in use amongst them, because defiled with *Papists* Errors and abuses: and thereby utterly averting those of the *Papal* party from joining with them in the work, or coming over to them when the work was done. Whereas had they continued an allowable correspondence in these extricuals of Religion, with the Church of *Rome*; their party in the world had been far greater, and not so much stomached as it is. And so it was conceived by the *Marquess de Rosas*, after Duke of *Sully*, and Lord High-Treasurer of *France*, and one of the chief men of that party there: when being sent Ambassador to King *James*, from King *Henry* the 4th. he had observed the Majesty and Decency of Gods public Service, in some *Cathedrals* of this Kingdom; Religion would be soon defaced and trod under foot, if not preferred and fenced about with the hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church since the last Conversion, as by the piety and example of *Luis* there were founded three *Archbishopsricks*, and 25 *Bishopricks*, according to the number of the *Arch-Flamines* and *Flamines* (whose great Revenues were converted to more sacred uses) in the times of *Idolatry*: So by the like pious care of Pope *Gregory* the Great, by whose means this last Conversion happened; *Archbishopsricks*, and *Bishopricks* were designed to convenient places. The number 26 in all, to each Province twelve, besides the two *Archbishops* and *Metropolitans*: wherein he had the happiness to have his desires fulfilled, though the number was not made compleat till these later days, nor with such equal distribution, as he did intend. For in the Province of *York* laid waste and desolate by the *Danes*, and not so soon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan Bishops came not up to his purpose, but did as much exceed in the Province of *Canterbury*: especially when King *Henry* the 8th. had incorporated *Wales* with *England*; and founded five Episcopal Sees out of the ruins and Revenues of some principal Monasteries: of which none but the Bishoprick of *Chesher* (and that of the Isle of *Man*, which maketh up the 27th.) were laid unto the Province of *York*. And so it stood, notwithstanding the alterations of Religion, without any dispute, till *Calvin* having hammered out his new *Presbytery*, and recommended it to the use of all *Christian* Churches (the History whereof we had succinctly in the *Alpine* Provinces) found many apt Scholars in most places to decry this Order, though consonant to the word of God, and most pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not so much the Authority of *Calvin*, or the malignant zeal of *Beza*, or the impetuous clamors of their Disciples, which caused the *Episcopal* Order to grow out of credit; as the Avarice of some great persons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their Possessions. It had been else a miracle that *Calvins* Plat-form, made only for the use of a private City, and not proportioned, no nor intended at the first, to the estate of other Churches, especially where the Bishops had been instrumental in the Reformation; should be so headily received in some Kingdoms, and so importunately and clamorously desired in others.

The most valorous Souldiers of this Country, when possessed by the *Britans*, were 1 *Cassibelanes*, who twice repulsed the *Roman* Legions though conducted by *Cesar*; and had not a party here at home been formed against him, he had for ever done the like. 2 *Prasugus*, King of the *Teuti*. 3 *Constantine* the Great. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies. In the times of the *Saxons*. 5 *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. 6 King *Edmund Ironside*; and 7 *Cannus* the *Dane*. Under the *Normans*, of most note have been 1 *William*, surnamed the Conqueror, 2 *Richard*, and 3 *Edward*, both the first of those names, so renowned in the wars of the Holy-Land, 4 *Edward* the 3^d, and 5 *Edward* the Black Prince, his Son; *Duc fuimina belli*, as famous in the wars of *France*; 6 *Henry* the fifth, and 7 *John* Duke of *Bedford* his Brother, of equal gallantry with the other. 8 *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*. 9 *S. John* Fastolf, and 10 *S. John* Hawkwood, of great esteem for valour in *France* and *Italy*: not to descend to later times. And for Sea Captains, those of most note, have been *Hawkins*, *Willoughby*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinson*, *Drake*, *Frobisher*, *Cavendish* and *Greenville*; of some of which we have spoke already, and of the rest may have an opportunity to say more hereafter.

Scholars of most renown amongst us, 1 *Alcuinus*, one of the Founders of the University of *Paris*. 2 *Beda*, who for his Piety and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of *Venerabilis*. Concerning which the *Legends* tell us, that being blind, his Boy had knavishly conducted him to preach to an heap of Stones; and that when he had ended his Sermon with the *Gloria Patri*, the very Stones concluded, saying

Amen

England.

Amen, Amen, Venerabilis Beda. But other of the Monkish writers do assign this reason, and both true alike; that at his death some unlearned Priest intending to honour him with an *Epitaph*, had thus far blundered on a verse, viz. *Hic sunt in fossa Beda* *ossa*: but because the verse was yet imperfect, he went to bed to consider of it, leaving a space betwixt the two last words thereof; which in the morning he found filled up in a strange Character, with the word *Venerabilis*; and so he made his Verse, and *Beda* (pardon this diversion) obtained that Attribute. 3 *Anselm*, and 4 *Bradwardine*, Archbishops of *Canterbury*, men famous for the times they lived in. 5 *Alexander* of *Hales*, Tutor to *Thomas Aquinas*, and *Bonaventure*. 6 *Thomas* of *Walden*, the professed enemy of *Wicless*, against whom he writ. 7 *John Wicless* parson of *Lutterworth*, in the County of *Leicester*, who so valiantly opposed the power and Errors of the Church of *Rome*; though he vented many of his own. Then since the time of the Reformation, 1 *John Jewel*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, to whose learned and industrious labours, in defence of the Religion here by law established, we are still beholding. 2 Dr. *John Reynolds*, and 3 Mr. *Richard Hooker*, both of *Corpus Christi* Colledge in *Oxon*; the first, a man of infinite reading, the second of as strong a judgement. 4 Dr. *Whitakers* of *Cambridge*, the Antagonist of the famous *Bellarmino*. 5 Dr. *Thomas Bilson*, and 6 Dr. *Lancelot Andrews*, both Bishops of *Winchester*, the Ornaments of their several times. 7 Bishop *Montague* of *Norwich*, a great Philologer and Divine. 8 Dr. *John Whitgift*, and 9 Dr. *William Laud*, Archbishops of *Canterbury*. Of which last, and his discourse against *Fisher* the Jesuite, Sir *Edward Dearing*, his professed enemy, hath given this Character, that in that book of his he had muzzled the Jesuits, and should strike the Papists under the fifth rib, when he was dead and gone: and that being dead, wherefore his grave should be, *P A U S* (whose reparation he endeavoured, and had almost finished) would be his perpetual Monument, and his Book his lasting Epitaph. And as for those who have stood up in maintenance of the Church of *Rome*, those of most note were Dr. *Harding*, the Antagonist of Bishop *Jewel*. 2 *Nic. Sanders*, and 3 Dr. *Thomas Stapleton*, to whose writings the great Cardinal *Bellarmino* doth stand much indebted. 4 *Campion*, and 5 *Parsons*, both Jesuits; 6 and *William Reynolds*, a Seminary Priest, and the Brother of Dr. *John Reynolds* spoken of before. Of which two Brothers (by the way) it is very observable, that *William* was at first a Protestant of the Church of *England*, and *John* trained up in Popery beyond the Seas. *William* out of an honest zeal to reduce his Brother to this Church, made a journey to him: where on a conference betwixt them it so fell out, that *John* being overcome by his Brothers arguments, returned into *England*, where he became one of the more strict or rigid sort of the *English* Protestants; and *William* being convinced by the reasons of his Brother *John*, said beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent Papist. Of which strange accident, Dr. *Alabaster*, who had made trial of both Religions, and amongst many notable whimsies, had some fine abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the excellency thereof, and the rareness of the argument, I shall here subjoin.

*Bella inter geminos plusquam Civilia Fratres,
Traxerat ambigua Religionis apex.
Ille Reformatae Fidei pro partibus instat;
Iste Reformanda denegat esse fidem.
Propositis causis rationibus, alternatrinque;
Concurrere pares, & cecidere pares.
Quod fuit in votis, Fratrem caput alter-uterque;
Quod fuit in satia, perdit uterque fidem.
Captivi gemini sine captivante fuerunt,
Et victor victi transfuga castra petis.
Quod genus hoc pugna est, ubi victus gaudet uterque;
Et tamen alter-uter se superasse dolet?*

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great disadvantage to the *Latine* Original, I have thus translated:

In points of Faith some undetermin'd jars,
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civil wars.
One for the Churches Reformation stood;
The other thought no Reformation good.
The points propos'd, they traversed the field
With equal skill, and both together yield.
As they desir'd, his Brother each subdued;
Yet such their Fate, that each his Faith did loose.
Both Captive's, none the prisoners thence do guide;
The Victor flying to the Vanquish'd side.
Both joy'd in being Conquer'd, (strange to say)
And yet both mourn'd because both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1 *Lindwood* the Canonist, 2 *Cofins*, and 3 *Comel*, eminent in the studies of the *Civil Laws*; 4 *Bracton*, and 5 *Byton* of old times; 6 *Dier*, and 7 *Coke* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the Laws of *England*. 8 *Johannes de Sacro Bosco*, the Author of the Book of the Sphere; and 9 *Roger Bacon*, a noted Mathematician in the darker times. 10 Sir *Francis Bacon* the learned Viscount of *S. Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11 *Thomas More*, Lord Chancellor, one of the

D d 2

England.

this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing well nigh 600000 people, which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare London with Paris thus: London is the richer, the more populous, and more ancient; Paris the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I do not think that London is the more populous; so neither can I grant that Paris is the greater City, except we measure them by the Walls. For taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that passeth in Account by the name of London: I cannot but conceive, that if London were cast into the same orbicular figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of Paris. For uniformity of building, Paris indeed doth go beyond it; but may in that be equalled also in some tract of time, if the design begun in King James his reign, tending to the advancement of such uniformity, be not interrupted. For other things, certain it is that London is the ancienter City, as being an Archbishops See in the time of the Britains, when the name of Paris was scarce heard of; a Bishops See at the first conversion of the Saxons; increased so much in wealth and honour from one Age to another, that it is grown at last too big for the Kingdom; which whether it may be profitable for the State, or not, may be made a question. Great Towns in the body of a State, are like the Spleen or Milt in the body natural, the monstrous growth of which impoverisheth all the rest of the Members, by drawing to it all the animal and vital Spirits, which should give nourishment unto them; And in the end cracked or furcharged by its own fulness, not only sends unwholesome fumes and vapours unto the head, and heavy pangs unto the heart, but draws a consumption on it self. And certainly the over-growth of great Cities is of dangerous consequence, not only in regard of Famine, such multitudes of mouths not being easie to be fed: but in respect of the irreparable danger of Insurrections, if once these multitudes, sensible of their own strength, oppressed with want, or otherwise disempowered with faction or discontent, should gather to an head, and break out into action. Yet thus much may be said to the honour of London, though grown by much too big now for the Kingdom, that it is generally so well governed, and in so good peace; that those Murders, Robberies, and outrages so frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas, are here seldom heard of. 2. York, in the West Riding of that County, the second City of England, as the old Verse hath it.

*Londonium caput & Regni urbs prima Britannii;
Eboracum à primâ jure secunda venit.*

That is to say,

In England, London is the chiefest Town;
The second place York claimeth as its own.

And so it may, being indeed the second City of the Kingdom, both for fame and greatness. A pleasant, large, and stately City, well fortified and beautifully adorned, as well with private as publick Edifices; and rich, and populous withall. Seated upon the River Ouse, or Ure, which divides it in twain; both parts being joyned together with a fair stone Bridge, consisting of high and mighty Arches. A City of great estimation in the time of the Romans, the Metropolis of the whole Province or Diocesis of Britain; remarkable for the death and burial of the Emperour Severus, and the birth of Constantine the Great; by consequence the Seat of the Primæ of the British Church, as long as Christianity did remain amongst them. Nor stooped it lower when the Saxons had received the Faith; and notwithstanding those mutations which beset this Kingdom, under the Saxons, Danes, and Normans, it still preserved its ancient lustre, and increased it too. Adorned with a stately and magnificent Cathedral, inferiour to few in Europe; and with a Palace of the Kings, (called the Manor-house) the dwelling in these later days, of the Lord President of the Court or Council here established by King Henry the 8th. for the benefit of his Northern Subjects; after the manner of the French Parliaments, or Presedial Sieges. 3. Bristol, the third in rank of the Cities of England, situate on the meeting of the Frome and Avon, not far from the influx of the Severn into the Ocean: in that regard commodiously seated for trade and traffick; the Ships with full sayl coming into the City, and the Citizens with as full purses trading into most parts of the World, with good Faith and Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being Sewers made under ground, for the conveyance of all filth, and nastiness, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number of 18 or 20, reckoning in the Cathedral, and that of Ratcliff. The Cathedral first built by Rob. Fitz. Harding, Son to a King of Denmark, once a Burger here, and by him stored with Canons Regular, Anno 1248. But made a Bishops See by King Henry 8th Anno 1542. The principal building next the Church, an ancient Castle, a piece of such strength, that Maad the Emperess having took King Steven Prisoner, thought it the safest place to secure him in. 4. Norwich, the fourth City of the first rank, of which more hereafter. 5. Oxford the first of the second rank of English Cities seated upon the Ouse or Isis: but whether so called as Vadum Isidis, Ouseford, or the Ford of Ouse; or Vada bonum (as the Greeks had their Bosphori in former times) I determine not. An ancient Town, and anciently made a seat of Learning, coeval unto that of Paris, if not before it; the University hereof being restored rather than first founded by King Alured, Anno 866. after it had been overrun a while by the Danish Furies; but hereof as an University, more anon. This only now, that for the stateliness of the Schools and publick Library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colledges, all built of fair and polished stone; the liberal endowment of those houses, and notable encouragements of Industry and Learning in the salarie of the Professors in most Arts and Sciences, it is not to be paralleled in the Christian World. The City of it self well built, and as pleasantly seated, formed in the Figure of a Crofs, two long streets thwarting one another, each of them near a mile in length; containing

England.

containing in that compass 13 Parish Churches, and a See Episcopal founded here by King Henry 8th Anno 1541. The honorary Title of twenty of the noble Family of the Veres, now Earls of Oxon. 6. Salisbury, first seated on the Hill, where now stands old Salisbury, the Sorbiodunum of the Antients. But the Cathedral being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very suddenly into great Renown; pleasantly seated on the Avon, (a name common to many English Rivers) which watereth every street thereof; and for the populousness of the place, plenty of Provisions, number of Churches, a spacious Market-place, and a fair Town hall, esteemed the second City of all the West. 7. Gloucester, by Antonine called Gloum, by the Britains Caer Glou, whence the present name; the Saxons adding Cesters, as in other places. A fine neat City, pleasantly seated on the Severn, with a large Key or Wharf on the banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandize and trade of the place: well built, consisting of fair large Streets, beautified with a fair Cathedral; for the magnificence of the Quire, the elegance of the Cloisters, and gratefulness of the Bell-tower there scarce to be followed in the Kingdom; and situate in so rich a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the use of man except only Wine, which life or luxury may require. 8. Chester, upon the River Dee, built in the manner of a quadrate, inclosed with a wall, which takes up more than two miles in compass; containing in that compass 12 Parish Churches, and an old Cathedral dedicated antiently to St. Werburg Daughter of Wollere K. of the Mercians, and Visited of all the Monasteries of England. But made a Bishops See by King Henry the 8th. The buildings generally fair, the Streets wide and open, with Galleries before every door, under which a man may walk dry from one end to the other. The rest of chief note shall be specified on another occasion, with this advertisement; that the ordinary Cities of England are not to be compared with those of France, and Italy: First because the Nobles and Gentry of those Countries live for the most part in the Cities, ours in Country-Villages; And secondly, because the Londoners so ingross all trading, that they draw thither all the Wealth and treasure of the Kingdom. By means whereof, that every day increaseth in wealth and beauty; the rest (except Bristol only) doe decay as sensibly: that City being like the Spleen in the body natural, the monstrous growth whereof starveth all the rest of the Members. *Liene excrefente, reliquum corpus contabescit*, as the Doctors have it.

There are in England but two Universities, which may equal six, nay ten of all other Countries, (so that Paris be not in the number) most of them being no better than our Colledges of Westminster, Eton, or Winchester; and none so liberally endowed, as some one of these in the Universities. Of which there are 16 in Cambridge, some of them called only by the name of Halls, but these endowed with Lands and Fellowships as the others are. In Oxford there are 18 Colledges endowed with Lands, besides six Halls, where Students live at their own charges: in both of them, Professors of the Arts and Sciences, as also of Divinity, Law, Physick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries; and in each to the number of 3000 Students, so regular in their lives and conversations, as are not to be found in the World besides. The fairer and more ancient, Oxford, which of long time, together with Paris in France, Bononia in Italy, and Salamanca in Spain, hath been honoured with the Title of *Generale Studium*. For that the University of Cambridge, (though giving upper hand to her sister of Oxford, she may take place of all the Universities in the World besides) is not of so long standing, as that of Oxford; is evident by the testimony of Robertus de Romington, cited by Malter Camden, viz. *Reguante Edwardo primo*, (it should rather be read *secundo*) *de studio Grantbridge facta est Academia, sicut Oxoniæ*: where the word *sicut* doth not import an identity of the time; but a relation to Oxford, as to the pattern. We see this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope John the 21, the contemporary of our Edward 2d, as I find in the work of that great Searcher of Academical Antiquities, Mr. Brian Twine. *Apostolica auctoritate statuimus* (saith the Bull) *quod Collegium magistrorum & Scholarium ejusdem studii* (speaking of Cambridge) *Universitas sit censenda, &c.* But what need more than the Resolution of the Commons of the first Parliament holden under King James? For when the Clerk of that House had put the name of Cambridge before Oxford; they taking disdainfully that *Hysteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Universities to be searched, and after search made gave the place to Oxford. But to proceed, the University of Cambridge as it was much of a later Foundation, so was it long before it grew into esteem; inasmuch that when William of Wainflete Bishop of Winchester, and Founder of Magdalen Colledge in Oxon (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perswaded King Henry the sixth to erect a Colledge in Oxford, as some of the Kings his Predecessors had done before him: *immo potius Cantabrigia* (replied the King) *ut duas si fieri possint in Anglia Academias habiamus*. No said the King, in Cambridge rather, that so, if possible, I may have two Universities in my Realm of England.

As for the Story of this Countrey, that it was first peopled out of Gaul, is affirmed by Caesar and proved by many strong and concluding Arguments; as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Customs, and the nearness of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of Brute, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are said to have reigned here successively before the coming of the Romans; Certain it is, that Caesar found the Countrey cantoned into many Kingdoms (four in Kent alone) and the people to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had was locked up in the breasts of the *Druides*; who were committed nothing unto writing, and by that means kept the People in continual ignorance, communicating what they knew to none but those of their own Order, and therein being sought to by the *Druides* or Priests of Gaul; who came over into this Island to them, and did from them receive the knowledge of their sacred Mysteries. Being conquered or discovered rather by Julius Caesar, it was not so much as looked after by the two next Emperours: Augustus and Tiberius counting it an high point of Wisdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean. Caligula had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durst not follow it. But Claudius, his Successor, undertook the Enterprize; solicited therunto by Bericus a noble Briton, who for sedition and some practices against the publick, was expelled the Countrey;

Saxons.

after whose death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himself: but being unable to defend it against the Enemy, and make his title also good against the other children of Constantine, first called in the Saxons. 3 *Vortimer*, eldest Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the Saxons in many battles; but in the midst of his Successes was poisoned by *Rovena* a Saxon Lady, second Wife of *Vortiger*. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkish* writers, and other *Legendaries*, report so many idle and impossible actions. Doubtless he was a Prince of most perfect virtue, a great preserver of his Country from approaching ruin, and worthy the pen of an able *Panegyrist*; by whom his brave achievements might have come intire unto us, without the intermixture of those feats of *Chivalry*, affabulated to him and his Knights of the *Round table*. For by the overstraining of some *Monkish* Writers, *Geoffry of Monmouth*, and the rest, they have given too just occasion to posterity to suspect that virtue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the story, as admiration of the persons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur* and his Nobles only; *Charlemagne*, and the *Twelve Peers of France*, men of great virtue and renown, suffering as deeply in the same kind, by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the custom of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the twelve days following, with such pastimes and sports as are (or have been used of late) by the *Lords of Misrule* in some Gentlemens houses: an Institution which the *Scots* Writers of those times much blame, perhaps not unjustly; it being a time more fit for our devotions than such rude disports. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying, left the Crown to 5 *Constantine*, the Son of *Cador Duke of Cornwall*, his nearest kinsman, slain by *Aurelius Conan*, his own Nephew, who succeeded after him: which fraction did so weaken the distressed *Britans*, that they were forced to withdraw themselves beyond the *Severn*; as 6 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joyned forces of the Saxons to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn* for the safer, but more fruitless Mountains. Of the rest, till *Cadwallader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their names only; which are thus ranked in the second race of

The Kings of Britain after the withdrawing of the Romans.

A.C.					
433	1	Constantine.	10.	542	9 Constantine II. 4.
443	2	Constantinus.	3.	546	10 Aurel. Conanus. 30.
446	3	Vortiger.	18.	576	11 Vortiger. 4.
464	4	Vortimer, his Son.	7.	580	12 Malgo. 6.
471	5	Vortiger (again).	10.	586	13 Careticus, or Caradoc. 27.
481	6	Aurelius Ambrosius.	19.	613	14 Cadwan. 22.
500	7	Uter Pendragon.	6.	635	15 Cadwallan. 43.
506	8	Arthur.	36.	687	16 Cadwallader, the last King of the Britans, who on a superstitious zeal travelled, who on a superstitious zeal travelled.

Ied in a pilgrimage to *Rome*; there to receive the habit of a *Religious* Order from the hands of *Pope Sergius*, where he dyed not long after, *Anno* 689. After whose death, his Successors were no longer called Kings of Britain, but Kings or Princes of *Wales*. And there we shall be sure to find them.

And so the *Britans* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongst the *Germans*; but greater by the aggregation of many people, under their name and service, than in themselves: the *Jutes* and *Angles* joyning with them, and passing in Accompr as the same one Nation. Their Countries different as their names, until this Conjunction; but neighboring near enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the first in that part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*, which we now call *Slavick*, where still the Town called *Angolen* doth preserve their memory; the *Jutes* upon the North of them, where there is still a Province called by the name of *Juteland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holstein*, situate in the very neck of that *Chersonese* where it joyneth with *Germany*. Joyning their powers they spread themselves with good success, to the South and West; of which more hereafter. And growing Masters of the Seas, infested with continual Piracies the Coasts of *Britain*; occasioning herein an Officer of great trust and power, appointed to defend and scour those Seas, in the *Noctitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongst the *Britans*, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him against the *Scots* and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched field near *Stamford*, in the County of *Lincoln*: for so far had the barbarous people marched without any resistance. Rewarded for this victory with the Isle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their hosts: whom by degrees they dispossessed of all the Countrey on this side of *Severn*; parcelling it into seven Kingdoms, called the *Saxons Heptarchie*, that is to say, 1 Of *Kent*, 2 of the *South-Saxons*, 3 of the *West-Saxons*, 4 of the *East-Saxons*, 5 of the *East-Angles*, 6 of the *North-Humbes*, and 7 of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period, and Kings of which several Kingdoms, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we are next to shew.

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengist*, who with his Brother *Horsu* had the leading of the *Saxon* Forces, at their first entry into *Britain*, *An.* 455. being the first year after their first coming in: who restoring *Paganism* to this Countrey, when the rest of the Isle was *Christian*, occasioned the distinction of *Kent* and *Christendom*. The *Kentish* afterwards the first of the *Saxons* who received the Gospel, by the preaching of *Augustine* the Monk, the Apostle of the *English Saxons*. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, where 1 *Canterbury*, once the Regal seat of the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his conversion, to *Augustine* the first Archbishop thereof, and his Successors: afterwards the See of those Archbishops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Rechnor*. Seated in the East part of the Countrey, about seven or eight miles from

Saxons.

from the Sea, a little Brook serving it thence with some commodities. A City of more Antiquity and fame, than beauty; being now ruinous and decayed, and having nothing in it worth observation, but the Cathedral Church, first founded by *Ethelbert* before mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his foundations, in the form it now stands by Archbishop *Lankfrank*, *Will. Corboyle*, and some other of their Successors in the said See. The Archiepiscopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruins of S. *Augustine's* Monastery shew what once it was. 2 *Dover*, antiently called *Dubris*, seated on the Sea-shore, where the passage is shortest into *France*; for that cause fortified with a strong and (in those days accounted an) impregnable Castle, esteemed one of the keys of *England*, and the chief of the *Cinqve Ports*; now giving the title of an Earl to the house of *Hunsdon*, chief of the Family of the *Caries*, nearly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of famous memory. 3 *Rocheſter*, seated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chatham* (the station of the Royal Navy) an antient City, but of no greatness; in former times called *Durobrivis*, after that *Rossa*, thence the name *Roffeſter*; a Bishops See, the second for Antiquity in all the Island; 4 *Maidstone*, upon the *Medway* also near the head thereof, the largest and most beautiful in all this Countrey, and most commodiously seated for publick business.

The Kings of Kent.

A. Ch.					
455	1	Hengist, the first King.	673	9	Lotharius.
488	2	Erk or Oſca.	686	10	Edrick.
512	3	Oſta.	693	11	Wighred.
532	4	Immerick.	720	12	Egbert II.
561	5	Ethelbert, the first Christian King of this Countrey.	749	13	Ethelbert II.
			754	14	Alicus.
617	6	Edbald.	793	15	Ethelbert III.
641	7	Ercombert.	797	16	Guthred.
665	8	Egbert.	805	17	Barldred, the last King of Kent, who lost both life and Kingdom to Egbert, King of West-Sex, or the West-Saxons, An. 824. The progeny of Hengist having been before extinguished in the person of Alicus, overthrown and slain by Cissa, the great King of the Mercians.

II. The Kingdom of SOUTH-SEX, or of the SOUTH-SAXONS, was begun by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that people. *An.* 488. It contained only the two Counties of *Sussex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated: the first is called *quasi South-Sex*, the Countrey of the *South-Saxons*; the second *quasi South-Rey*, as lying on the South-side of the River *Thames*, in the same sense as S. *Maries* Church on the other side of that River (in respect of *London*) is called S. *Mary Over-Rey*. The *Christian Faith* suppressed here, as in other places, was restored again in the time of King *Edilwalch*, by the preaching of S. *Wilfride*, Archbishop of *Tork*, living here in Exile. Places of most importance in it were, 1 *Chicheſter*, built by *Cissa* the 2d King hereof, and called *Cissan-ceſter*, encompassed almost round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Sussex*, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Seafly*, a Demy-Island, in the time of the *Norman Conqueror*, where it was first planted by Archbishop *Wilfride*. 2 *Hastings*, one of the *Cinqve-ports*, in *Sussex* also; the landing place of the *Normans*, and famous for the overthrow of King *Harold* in the fields adjoining. 3 *Guilford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well built, and having in it two Parish-Churches. 4 *Arundel*, in a Dale or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence so named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Testament of King *Alfride* unto *Anthelm*, his Brothers Son. Of great note for a beautiful and capacious Castle; but more for giving the title of Earl to the noble Families of the *Albneys*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*: this last of such a large and diffused Nobility, that in the year 1641. there were no fewer than eight *Howards*, in the House of *Peers*, 5 *Kingſton* upon the *Thames*, so called to distinguish it from *Kingſton* upon *Hull* in *Torkſhire*; heretofore famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *English Saxons*, whence it had the name of *Kingſton*, or the Kings Towns. This Kingdom had only three Kings, crushed in the infancy thereof by more potent neighbours.

The Kings of the South-Saxons.

A. Ch.					
488	1	Ella, the first King.			
514	2	Cissa, the Son of Ella, who lost his life and Kingdom to Cerdic King of the West-Saxons.			
590	3	Cheulin, King of West-Sex, called himself King of the South-Saxons.			
	4	Edilwalch, or Ethelwolf, the first Christian King, overcome and slain in battle by Ceadwal King of the West-Saxons, An. 687. After whose death Berthan and Authun, two Brethren, took on themselves the Government, with the title of Dukes or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withstand the puissance of the West-Saxons, this Kingdom was subdued by Ina, the Successor of Ceadwal, by whom united to that Crown.			

III. The Kingdom of WEST-SEX, or the WEST-SAXONS, the third in order, and that which did in fine prevail over all the rest, contained the Counties of *Cornwal*, *Devon*, *Somerset*, *Dorset*, *Wilt*, *Southampton*, and *Berk*: begun by *Cerdic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, *An.* 495. who having overcome the *Britans* of this Western tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entituled himself King of the *West-Saxons*, *An.* 522. The *Christian Faith* suppressed here, as elsewhere, was restored again in the time of *Kingſt*, their first Christian King; by the preaching of S. *Birinus*, Bishop of *Dorchester* near *Oxford*, then a great City, of no fewer than ten Parishes, now

Saxons.

now reduced to one. Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1 *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Cridington* or *Kirton*, by *Leofricus*, An. 1049. Seated upon the bank of the River *Ex*, whence the name of *Ex-caester*; environed with deep ditches, and very strong walls, in compass about a mile and half besides the Suburbs, in which are contained in all 15 Parish Churches, besides the Minster, a beautiful and stately Fabrick. 2 *Bath*, so called from the *Bathes* there being, the chief City of *Somerset*; by the *Latines* called *Aqua Solis*, by the *Greeks* *Ἰσθμὸς Σιππασίας*, for the self same reason. Situate in a low Valley, environed about with Hills very steep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and fresh Springs, to the great commodity of the people. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monastery, partner with *Wells*, the Bishops See, in the title Episcopal; and gives the Title of an Earl to the noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3 *Falmouth*, in *Cornwall*, seated upon a large and capacious Bay, so full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the best Ships, that it is said, an hundred sail of Ships may be lodged therein with such convenience, that from the top of the one, the Malt of another is not to be seen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater safety with two very strong Castles built by *Henry* the 8th. that of *S. Mandis* on the East, and that of *Pendinas* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the West. 4 *Dorchester*, the chief Town of *Dorsetshire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and consequently of no great trading; not so much famous for ought else as giving the Title of a Marquis to *Henry* Earl of *Kingston* of the noble Family of the *Pierreponts*. 5 *Wilton*, the head Town, in those times, of *Wiltshire*, and a Bishops See, honoured with the residence of nine several Bishops. But by translating of the See to *Sarum*, (or *Sarisbury*) as the fitter place, and carrying thither therewithal the thoroughfare which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market Town. 6 *Winchester* called *Venta* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons* *Vent-caester*, situate on the banks of a pleasant River, the seat Royal of the *West-Saxon* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wo-ve-ye*, so named from the Kings of the *Wolpian* Family, and the situation of it in the circlings of the fore-said River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *Wool-staple* here kept, as some; much less from *Cardinal Wolsey*, as others most absurdly think. The house given after to the Bishops, and made their Palace. The Town in compass two miles, besides the Suburbs; commodiously seated in a low place, between very steep Hills, by which it is defended both from cold and wind. Afflicted very much since those times both by war and fire, half of the ground within the Town being fields and gardens; but still adorned with a magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Castle, bravely mounted upon an hill for defence and prospect; besides a *Colledge*, and an *Hospital* added since those days. 7 *S.uthampton*, conveniently seated on an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richest Towns in those parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large streets, beautified with five Parish Churches, and fortified with high walls, a double ditch, and a right strong Castle: but the Castle now decayed and ruined. 8 *Reading*, on the Banks of the River *Kenner*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great trade for clothing, well built, and of three Parish Churches; heretofore beautified with a strong Castle and a goodly Monastery, but both now decayed. 9 *Windsor*, called *Windleshores* in the old *Saxons*, situate near the Banks of the *Thames* on a rising ground, which gives it a fair prospect over all the Country; adorned in succeeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the seat of the Order of the *Garter*. 10 *Wallingford*, the *Gualena* of the *Antients*, and then the chief Town of the *Attrebatii*, as it was afterwards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berk*; a mile in compass at that time within the walls, fortified with an impregnable Castle, and adorned with twelve Parish Churches. So desolated by a Plague, An. 1348. that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep that in repair; and nothing of the walls left (as not much of the Castle) but the track and ruins.

The Kings of the West-Saxons.

A. Cb.			The Kings of the West-Saxons.						
522	1	Cerdic, the first King. 17.	987	11	Ceadwal.				
539	2	Kenric. 29.	690	12	Ina, who first gave the Peterpence to the Church of Rome.				
565	3	Celingus, or Cheuline. 10.							
595	4	Celric. 5.	725	13	Ethelard. 14.				
600	5	Ceolwolf. 14.	739	14	Cuthbert. 16.				
614	6	Kingil, the first Christian King.	755	15	Sigebert II. 1.				
646	7	Kenewalchin. 31.	756	16	Kinulph. 31.				
677	8	Sigebert. 1.	787	17	Bithric. 13.				
678	9	Elewin. 2.	800	18	Egbert, the most puissant King of the West-Saxons, who united all the Heptarchie into one Estate, of whom see more amongst the Monarchs of the Saxons, and the Kings of England.				
680	10	Cenwin. 7.							

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Erchenwin*, descended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*; from whom we have the name of *Wednesday*, or *Wodensday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middlesex*, *Essex*, and so much of *Hertfordshire*, as is in the *Diocese* of *London*. The *Christian* Faith expelled here as in other places, was restored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the Abbey Church of *S. Peter* in *Westminster*, by the preaching of *Mellitus* the first Bishop of *London* after the entrance of the *Saxons*; suppressed again by *Seward*, and *Sigebert*, the Sons of *Sebert*; but settled stronger than before by *Cedda*, the next Bishop there. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, besides *London*, spoken of already, were

1 *Westmin*.

Saxons.

1 *Westminster*, situate in those times a mile from *London*, now adjoining to it. The See of the Archbishop of *London* in the time of the *Britans*: afterward by the *Saxons* called *Thorn-eye*, or the *Thorny Island*; till the new *Minster* built by *Sebert* as before is said, and the *Western* situation of it in regard of *St. Pauls*, built at the same time by *Ethelbert* the King of *Kent*; gained it this new name. A City honoured with the seat of the Kings of *East-Sex*, and since those times with that of the Kings of *England*; the names of the Old *Palace* of the one, and the New *Palace* of the other, still remaining there; beautified upon that occasion with more stately and magnificent houses, belonging to the King, Bishops, and Nobility, then all the other in the Kingdom; having of late a new Town added to it in the *Convent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the Monks of *Westminster*) for uniformity of building, and handsome streets, inferior to no City of *France* or *Italy*. 2 *Colchester*, the chief Town of *East-Sex*, situate near the Sea, on the River *Coln*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinensium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Bishops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Caester*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colchester*. A fair and well built Town, and of good repute, fortified with an old *Roman* Wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3 *Isthancester* in *Denby Hundred*, were *S. Ceadda* the second Bishop of *London*, baptised the re-lapsed *East-Saxon*. 4 *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County so called; by *Bedan* named *Hertford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Christianity amongst the *Saxons*; in which *S. Augustine* the Monk, the first Apostle of that people, had a conference or consultation with the British Bishops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the title of an Earl to the illustrious Family, (named *De Clare*); the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimony to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*; and at this time, title of Earl, and Marquis, to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the East-Saxons.

		The Kings of the East-Saxons:			
A.Ch.					
527	1	Erchenwin, the first King.	664 8	Sighere.	
587	2	Stedda.	664 9	S. Sebba.	
586	3	S. Sebert, the first Christian King.	694 10	Sigebard.	
	4	Seward and Sigebert.		11	Scotfride.
623	5	Sigebert II. or the Little.	701	12	Offa.
	6	Sigebert III.	709	13	Selred.
661	7	Switbelme.	774	14	Suthred, the last King of the East-

V. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, so called from the *Angli* or *English*, which possessed these parts, and the *Eastern* situation of it; begun by *Offa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, Anno 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeshire*, and the Isle of *Ely*. The *Christian* Faith first planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Ministry of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the first Bishop of the *East-Angles*; the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of most importance in it, were 1 *Dunwich* on the Sea-shore, the first Bishops See of the *East-Angles*; for the County of *Suffolk*; then a Town capable of that dignity, now ruinous, decayed, and for the greatest part worn into the Sea. 2 *Ipswich* in the same County of *Suffolk*, and the chief of the County, a rich, populous, and well traded Empory, consisting of no fewer than twelve Parish Churches. 3 *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, situate on the River *Tare*, which runs thence to *Turemouth*; lying out in length a mile and an half, half as much in breadth, and in that Circuit comprehending about 30 Parishes; well walled about with many a Turret, and 12 Gates for entrance; but hath within it much waste Ground, the City suffering great loss both in wealth and buildings, by *Kets* Rebellion, in the time of King *Edward* the sixth. Recovered of the first blow by the *Dutch* Manufactures, of the last still languishing; yet still it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Bishops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surrey*, and the ruins of an ancient Castle of the *Saxons* building. 4 *North Elmham*, the Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for those parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this and that at *Dunwich* ruined in the *Danish* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years, and here continuing, both Sees united unto one, till removed to 5 *Thetford*, another Town of this County, situate on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the lesser *Ouse*: a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at last removed to *Norwich*. 6 *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Cambaritum*, whence the Modern name: unless we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for some call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reason of the University, said to be founded by *Segebert*, King of the *East-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda*, that he founded a School for the education of Children in the ways of good Learning; but he speaketh neither of *University*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7 *Ely*, situate in the Isle so named, occasioned by the divided streams of *Non* and *Ouse*; with the over-flores of other Rivers; turning a great part of this tract into Fens and Marshes, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girvii*. A place of no great beauty or reputation, as situate in a foggy and unhealthful air; but only for a fair Monastery built by *S. Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northumberts*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and replenished with Monks by *Ethelwald* Bishop of *Winchester*, Anno 970. or thereabouts; finally made a Bishops See in the time of King *Henry* the first, Anno 1109.

E e

The

654	8	Ethelbert.
656	9	Edelwald.
664	10	Alduff.
683	11	Elfwolph.
714	12	Beorn.
714	13	S. Ethelre
749	14	Ethelbert

870 15 S. *Edmund*, descended from *Anna*,

[illegible]

The Kings of Northumberland.

705	11	Osfred.
716	12	Kenred.
718	13	Osfrick II.
729	14	Ceolnuiph.
738	15	Ogbert.
758	16	Eswuiph.
759	17	Edilwald.
765	18	Alured.
774	19	Ethelred.
778	20	Alfwald.
789	21	Osfred II.
794	22	Ethelred

671 9 Egfride.
686 10 S. Alfride.

VII. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, was begun by *Crida*, or *Creoda*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *English* Nation; who feelingly the heart of *Britain*, where the people were least used to Arms, made themselves Masters of the Counties of *Gloucester*, *Worcester*, *Hereford*, *Salop*, *Chester*, *Stafford*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leicester*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, *Warwick*, *Oxon*, *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and the rest of *Hartfordshire*: which bounded in a manner by all the rest of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Meare*, which signifieth a bound or limit. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as in other Kingdoms of the *Saxons*, was restored again in the reigns of *Penda*, *Penda*, and *Wulfher*, by the preaching of *S. Chad*, the first Bishop of *Lichfield*. Places of most observation in it, 1 *Hereford*, seated on the banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of most flourishing Meadows, and no less plentiful Cornfields; raised out of the ruins of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine*, the tract of which name it doth still retain. A Bishops See in the time of the *Britans*, restored to that dignity by the *Saxons*, An 680. the honourable title of the *Bobuns*, once Earls hereof; and afterwards of *Henry of Bullingbrook*, Duke of *Hereford*. 2 *Worcester*, pleasantly seated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Bishops See, An 679. beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way considerable for situation, number of Churches, near buildings, the industry of the Inhabitants, and giving the Title of an Earl to the noble Family of the *Sommerfets*, extracted by the *Beauforts* from *John of Gannet*. 3 *Lichfield*, the first Bishops See amongst the *Mercians*, founded there An 646. by *Ofsay* King of the *Northumblers*, but fixed and seated by *S. Chad* in the reign of *Wulfher*, King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very infancy with such fair possessions, that in the year 793. *Adulfus*, the Bishop hereof, was made Archbishop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a personal honour, and died with him. 4 *Covenry*, so called from an old *Coven*, or Religious house, which gave name unto it. Situate in *Warwickshire*, and now the principal of that County, though esteemed a County of it self: beautified with a goodly Wall, two fair Parish Churches, large streets, and very handsome houses. A City of great trade and riches, though destitute of all advantages; which a navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great fame for a stately Monastery, to which the See Episcopal was for a while removed from *Lichfield*, now a ruin only. 5 *Leicester*, once a Bishops See, the *Dinse* taken out of *Lichfield*, An 733. removed to *Dorchester* near *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in those days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abbey, and a strong Castle; all decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of these later times: the Town remaining in as good plight both for trade and buildings, as most Towns do which want a navigable River. Of most fame for the Earls thereof, *Alger* and *Edwin*, noble *Saxons*, *Simon de Montfort* the *Cataline* and great Incendiary of this Kingdom; the Princes of the House of *Lancaster*, who bore this Title; with some others since. 6 *Derby*, upon the River *Darwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good resort; adorned with five Churches, a goodly Stone Bridge, and a large Market-place; the honorary title of the noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls hereof by King *Henry* the 7th. 7 *Nottingham*, seated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an hill, which overlooks it. For buildings, fair streets, and a spacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of most fame for a Royal and magnificent Castle; which for strength, stateliness, and prospect, may justly challenge the precedence of most in *England*. 8 *Lincoln*, a Town in those days of great strength, and now, one of the best peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchy*; and of great merchandize and traffick both by Sea and Land: in somuch that *Remigius*, then Bishop of *Dorchester*, thought fit to translate hither the Episcopal See. Now much decayed

Saxons.

and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln was, London is, &c.* The chief fame which now it hath, is for the *Minster*, one of the stateliest Piles in *England*, and perhaps in *Christendom*; high seated on an Hill, and from thence discerned over all the Country. 9 *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great sport the Hunters found in the neighbouring *Forest*; commodiously seated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouse*, rising unto the North with a soft ascent, consisting of four Parish Churches, and shews the ruins of a Castle built by *Edward the Elder*, Anno 917. 10 *Peterburgh*, seated in a Nook or Angle of *Northamptonshire*, where formerly had been a gulf or whirl-pool of exceeding depth: but made firm ground by *Wulfere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the foundations of the Monastery, Anno 633, dedicated to *S. Peter*, whence it had this name, before then called *Medanhsede*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great esteem, as standing out of the way for trade, and in no plausible place for health or pleasure: yet shewing two handsome streets, a large Market-place, and a fair Parish Church (besides the Abbey) made an Episcopal See by King *Henry the 8th.* 11 *Norhampton*, built on the Northern bank of the River *Antona* (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very strong Castle, and seated in so good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpose to remove their University thither. The Noble Familie of the *Comptons* are now Earls hereof. 12 *Bedford*, so called from *Beds* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both sides thereof, for the use of Travellers; growing in time to so great bigness as to contain in it five Parish Churches: famous in former times for the great battle fought in the adjoining fields, An. 572. in which *Cuthwulf* the *Saxon* vanquished the *Britans*, and became Master of the Country. But more famous for giving the title of Duke to *John of Lancaster*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry the 6th.* and *Jasper of Halstead*, Uncle to King *Henry the 7th.* 13 *S. Albans*, so called from a famous Monastery, here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of *S. Alban*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, near adjoining to it: out of the ruins whereof, decayed by age, and destroyed by War; arose the present greatness of *S. Albans*, the fairest and best traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 14 *Buckingham*, the chief Town of the County so called, situate on the River *Ouse*: fortified by King *Edward the Elder* against the *Danes*, Anno 915. otherwise not much observable, but for those many noble personages which have had the title of Dukes hereof.

The Kings of Mercia.

A.Ch.		A.Ch.	
582	1 <i>Criodda</i> , the first King.	758	11 <i>Offa</i> the great.
593	2 <i>Webba</i> .	796	12 <i>Egfride</i> .
614	3 <i>Cheerl</i> .	797	13 <i>Kenwolf</i> .
626	4 <i>Penda</i> .	819	14 <i>Kenelm</i> .
656	5 <i>Penda</i> , the first <i>Christian</i> King.	820	15 <i>Cheolwolf</i> .
659	6 <i>Wulfhere</i> .	821	16 <i>Bernulf</i> .
675	7 <i>Ethelred</i> .	824	17 <i>Ludecan</i> .
704	8 <i>Kenred</i> .	826	18 <i>Withlaf</i> , overcome in fight (as were his two Predecessors) by <i>Egbert</i> King of <i>West-Sex</i> became his tributary.
709	9 <i>Chelred</i> .		
716	10 <i>Ethelbald</i> , overcome by <i>Cuthbert</i> , King of the <i>West Saxons</i> , at a fight near <i>Burford</i> in the County of <i>Oxon</i> , the place still called <i>Battelage hill</i> .	839	19 <i>Berthulf</i> .
		852	20 <i>Burdred</i> , a substituted King of the <i>West Saxons</i> , and the last King of the <i>Mercians</i> .

Such was the Order and Succession of the *Saxon* Kings, during the *Heptarchie*, or division of it into seven Kingdoms; continuing separate and distinct till the prevailing fortune of the *West-Saxons* brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But so, that they were subject for the most part unto one alone, who was entituled *Rex Gentis Anglorum*: those which were stronger than the rest, giving the Law unto them in their several turns; and are these that follow.

The Monarchs of the English Saxons in the time of the Heptarchie.

A.Ch.	
455	1 <i>Hengist</i> , King of <i>Kent</i> , who first brought the <i>Saxons</i> into <i>Britain</i> .
481	2 <i>Ella</i> , the first King of the <i>South-Saxons</i> .
495	3 <i>Cerdic</i> , the first King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> .
534	4 <i>Kenrick</i> , King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> .
561	5 <i>Cheuline</i> , or <i>Celingus</i> , King of the <i>West-Saxons</i> .
562	6 <i>Ethelbert</i> , King of <i>Kent</i> , the first Christian King of the <i>Saxons</i> .
616	7 <i>Redwald</i> , King of the <i>East-Angles</i> .
617	8 <i>Edwin</i> , King of <i>Northumberland</i> .
734	9 <i>Osvald</i> , King of <i>Northumberland</i> .
643	10 <i>Oswey</i> , King of <i>Northumberland</i> .
659	11 <i>Wulfhere</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> .
675	12 <i>Etheldred</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> .
704	13 <i>Kenred</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> .
709	14 <i>Chelred</i> , King of <i>Mercia</i> .

English.

- 716 15 *Ethelbald* King of *Mercia*.
 758 16 *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*.
 794 17 *Egfride*, King of *Mercia*.
 796 18 *Kenwolf*, King of *Mercia*.
 800 19 *Egbert*, the son of *Almond*, King of the *West-Saxons*, who having vanquished all the rest of the *Saxon* Kings, and added most of their Estates unto his own; caused the whole united body to be called *Engel-land*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Council held at *Winchester*, Anno 819. being the 19th. year of his Reign over the *West-Saxons*; and by that name he was then crowned in the presence of his Nobles, and the rest of his Subjects; leaving it unto the rest of his Successors.

But before we come to the recital of their names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next considerable Actors on the Stage of *England*; who in the time of this *Egbert*, first invaded the Country, and after exercised the patience of his posterity, till in fine they got the kingdom to themselves. Of the Original and first Successes of this people, we shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*. Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Inter* and *English* in the *Cinabrick*, *Chersonese*, they thought it not amiss to follow them into *Britain* also; making a Discovery of some part of the Coast thereof with three Ships only, Anno 787. being the first year of *Brithic* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the *West Saxons*. Which having done, and prepared themselves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert* they invaded *Northumberland*, the Isle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coasts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings succeeding, having vanquished the *Northumbrians*, *East-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected many petty Tyrannies: By *Alfred* first stopped in their Career; by *Edward the Elder* ousted of the *East Angles*, and by *Athelstan* of *Northumberland* also; the *Danes* for some time after being subject to the *English* Government, mixing in marriages and alliance, and incorporated with them. By the valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the person of *Canutus* obtained the Kingdom: who having impolitically sent back his *Danes* into their Country (as if a Kingdom got by force, could be held by favour) opened a way to their exclusion from the Crown; which happened within seven years after his decease. Which said, we come to the Successions of

The Kings of England of the Saxon Race.

- 819 1 *Egbert*, the last King of the *West-Saxons*, and the first of *England*. 18.
 837 2 *Ethelwolf*, the eldest son of *Egbert*. 20.
 857 3 *Ethelbald*, the eldest son of *Ethelwolf*. 1.
 858 4 *Ethelbert*, the brother of *Ethelbald*. 5.
 863 5 *Ethelfred*, the brother of the two former Kings, the third son of *Ethelwolf*, and as much molested by the *Danes*, as his brethren were. 10.
 873 6 *Alfride*, the fourth son of *Ethelwolf*, who totally united the *Saxon* Heptarchy into one Estate, vanquished the *Danes*, whom he made subject to his commands, though he could not expel them. He divided *England* into shires, and restored the University of *Oxon*.
 900 7 *Edward*, surnamed the *Elder*, the son of *Alfride*, who recovered the *East Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he shut up in *Northumberland*. 24.
 924 8 *Athelstan*, the son of *Edward*, who subdued the *Britains* of *Cumberland* and *Cornwal*, and compelled the *Danes* to submit themselves to the *English* Government. In his time lived *S. Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Danish* Champion (the great *Goliath* of that people) near the Walls of *Winchester*. 10.
 940 9 *Edmund*, the Brother of *Athelstan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience, and the Kingdom of the *Britains* in *Cumberland* utterly subverted.
 946 10 *Edred* the Brother of *Edmund* and *Athelstan*, so fortunate against the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be Chritened. 9.
 955 11 *Edwy*, the son of *Edmund*.
 955 12 *Edgar*, the brother of *Edwy*, surnamed the *Peaceable*, the most absolute Monarch of *England*, since the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the tribute of money imposed by *Athelstan* on the *Welsh*, was exchanged into a tribute of *Wolves*. 16.
 775 13 *Edward II.* son of *Edgar*, treacherously murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her son, hence surnamed the *Martyr*. 3.
 978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger son of *Edgar*, and half brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unquietly which he got unjustly. Oppressed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 10000 pounds; inhaled to 48000 pounds within short time after; which moneys were raised upon the Subjects, by the name of *Danegels*. Weary of these exactions, he plotted warily with his Subjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they slept in their beds; which accordingly was put in execution on *S. Brices* night, *Novemb.* 12. Anno 1012. To revenge this outrage and dishonour, *Swaine* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 ships, came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuissant Prince to fly into *Normandy*; leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Danish* Tyrant, who miserably plagued them till his death. To whom succeeded his son *Cnutus* (a more temperate Prince; who maugre *Ethelred* now returned, or his son *Edmund Ironside*, a most valiant King, did in the end possess himself of the whole Kingdom.
 Ec 3 1016

England.

- 1016 15 *Edmund II.* surnamed *Ironside*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom, at last divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherously and basely murdered. By *Edward*, surnamed the *Out-Law*, his eldest Son, he was Grandfather of *Edgar Atheling*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, King of the *Scots*.

The Danish Kings.

- 1017 1 *Canutus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, after the death of *Edmund* the 2d. sole King of *England*. He married *Emma* the widow of *Ethelred*, & daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*. 20.
 1037 2 *Harald* the base Son of *Canutus*, surnamed *Harfager*. 4.
 1040 3 *Canutus II.* commonly called *Hardy Knute*, the lawful Son of *Canutus* by *Emma* the widow of *Ethelred* the 2d. and Mother of *Edward*, surnamed the *Confessor*, the last King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whose death that People having tyrannized in *England* for the space of 255 years, (of which they had reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Country, or passed in the Accompt of *English*; *Edward* the *Confessor*, the youngest Son of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the absence of the Children of *Edmund Ironside* his elder Brother, Anno 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence, as they did, I observe three customs yet in use amongst us. First, each *English* house maintained one *Dane*, who living idly like the *Drones* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we see an idle fellow, we call him a *Lord Dane*. 2 The *Danes* used when the *English* drank, to stab them or cut their throats: to avoid which villany, the party then drinking, requested some of the next unto him to be his surety or pledge, whilst he paid nature her due: and hence have we our usual custom of *pledging* one another. 3 The old *Romans* at the expulsion of their Kings, annually solemnized the *Fagalia*: according to which pattern the joyful *English* having cleared the Country of the *Danes*, instituted the annual sports of *Hock-tide*: the word in their old tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *scouring*, or triumphing. This solemnity consisted in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in those days, during which the *Festival* lasted, and was celebrated by the younger sort of both sexes, with all manner of exercises, and pastimes in the streets, even as *Shrove-tide* yet is. But now time hath so corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no sign of the first Institution.

The Saxons re-enthroned.

- A.Ch.
 1042 16 *Edward III.* surnamed the *Confessor*, half brother both to *Edmund Ironside*, and *Hardy Knute* the *Dane*, called out of *Normandy*, where he lived with the *Dukes* his Cousins, succeeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Danish*, *Saxon*, and *Mercian* Laws, one universal and general Law; whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its original: which may be true of the written Laws, not of the customary and unwritten Laws; these being certainly more ancient. He was in his life of that holiness, that he received power from above to cure many diseases; amongst other the swelling of the throat, called by us the *Kings Evil*: a Prerogative that continueth Hereditary to his Successors of *England*. Finally, after his death, he was Canonized for a *Saint*; and died, having reigned 24 years.
 1066 17 *Harald II.* Son to Earl *Godwin*, was chosen King in the nonage of *Edgar Atheling*, Grandchild to *Edmund Ironside*, the true heir of the Kingdom: to which *Harald* might pretend some title as being born unto Earl *Godwin* by *Thyra* the base daughter of *Canutus* the first, Sister by the whole blood to *Harald Harfager*, and of the half blood to *Canutus* the second, the last Kings of the *Danes* in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which people we have spoke already when we were in *France*, and shall speak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the last Actors on the Theatre or Stage of *England*: This *William* say) pretending a Donation from his Cousin, King *Edward* the *Confessor*, invaded *England*, slew *Harald*, and with him 66654 of his *English* Souldiers, and possessed himself of the Kingdom; using such Policy in his new Conquest, that he utterly disheartened the *English* from hopes of better Fortune. From him beginneth the new Accompt of the Kings of *England*, those of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the first, second, or third, &c.

The Norman Kings.

- 1067 1 *William*, surnamed the *Conquerour*, after the vanquishment and death of *Harald*, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the ancient Laws of *England*, and established those of *Normandy* in place thereof: governing the people absolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and such as were engaged in the Action with him; from whom most of our ancient Families do derive themselves; those Lands to be holden in *Knights service*, which drew along with it the Wardship of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.
 1089 2 *William II.* surnamed *Rufus*, second Son to the *Conquerour*, succeeded by the appointment of his Father, and was crowned King; slain afterwards in the *New Forest*, by an arrow levelled at a *Deer*.

1103

England.

- 1102 3 *Henry*, for his learning surnamed *Beau-clerk*, the third Son of the *Conquerour*, in the absence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy Land Wars*) entered on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him also the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-issue, he left one only Daughter whose name was *Maud*; first married to the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, and after to *Geoffrey Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*. 34.
 1136 4 *Stephen*, second Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Champagne* and *Blais*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the *Conquerour*, succeeded; who to purchase the peoples loves, released the tribute called *Danegelt*: he spent most of his reign in War against *Maud* the Empress. 19.

The Saxon blood restored.

- 1155 5 *Henry II.* Son to *Maud* the Empress, Daughter to *Henry* the first, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret*, Sister to *Edgar Atheling*, restored the *Saxon* blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geoffrey* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *English* Empire, as also the Dutchie of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poitou*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by conquest. Happy in all things, the unnatural rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.
 1189 6 *Richard*, the Son of *Henry*, surnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almost driven out of *Syria*, took the Isle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy achievements, returning homewards to defend *Normandy*, and *Aquitain* against the *French*, was by Tempest cast upon *Dalmatia*; and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Austria*, was taken Prisoner, put to a grievous ransom, and after his return slain at the siege of *Chalus*, in the Province of *Limosin*. 12.
 1201 7 *John*, brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better; as being an unnatural son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Distressed for a great part of his reign, by Wars with his *Barons*, outed of all *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the *French*; to whom also he was likely to have lost the Realm of *England*: Finally, after a base submission of himself and his Kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is said to have been poisoned at *Swinsteads* Abbey. 17.
 1218 8 *Henry III.* Son of *John*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a composition with *Lewis* the 9th. was restored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Successors till the reign of King *Henry* the 6th. Exhausted by the Pope, and oppressed a long time by his factious and unruly *Barons*, but at last victorious. 56.
 1274 9 *Edward*, the Son of *Henry*, awed *France*, subdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into subjection; of whose King and Nobility he received homage. 34.
 1308 10 *Edward II.* Son of *Edward* the first, a dissolute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the *Vulgar*, for his immeasurable love to *Peirce Gaveston*, and the *Spencers*, was twice shamefully beaten by the *Scots*; and being deposed by a strong faction raised against him by his Queen, and *Roger* Lord *Mortimer*, was barbarously murdered in *Berkeley* Castle. 19.
 1327 11 *Edward III.* Son of *Edward* the 2d. a most virtuous and valorous Prince, brought the *Scots* to obedience, overthrew the *French* in two great battels, took the Town of *Callice*, and many fair possessions in that Kingdom. 50.
 1377 12 *Richard II.* another of our unfortunate Kings, lost many of his Peeces in *France*, and at last being over-awed by his two great Uncles of *Lancaster* and *Glocester*, and taken Prisoner by his Cousin, the Duke of *Hereford*, he was forced to resign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Pomfret* Castle.

The Lancastrian Line.

- 1399 13 *Henry IV.* Son to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, the fourth Son to *Henry* the 3d. was by the power of the Sword, but with the consent of the People, seized in the Throne; and spent his whole Reign in suppressing homebred rebellions. 15.
 1414 14 *Henry V.* the mirror of Magnificence, and pattern of true Vertue, pursued the title of *France*, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the *French* Crown, but lived not to possess the Kingdom. 9.
 1423 15 *Henry VI.* a pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of *France* in *Paris*; which he held during the life of his Uncle *John* of *Bedford*, and *Humphrey* of *Glocester*; after whose deaths, he not only lost *France* to the *French*, but *England* and his life to the *Turkish* Faction. 38.

The Turkish Line.

- 1461 16 *Edward IV.* Son of *Richard* Duke of *York*, the Son of *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, and Grandson of *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *York*, the fifth Son of King *Edward* the third; challenged the Crown in right of the Lady *Anne* his Grandmother, Daughter of *Roger Mortimer*.

England.

Mortimer Earl of *March*, the son of Edmund Mortimer Earl of *March*, and of Philippa his Wife, sole Daughter of Lionel Duke of *Clarence*, the third son of the said King *Edward*, and Elder Brother of John of *Gaunt*. The claim first set on foot by his Father the Duke of *Tork*, who lost his life in pursuance of it in the battel of *Wakefield*; with better fortune and success, pursued by King *Edward* himself, who finally after nine bloody battails fought between the Houses (especially that of *Townton*, in which were slain 36000 English) was quietly seated in the possession of *England* and *Ireland*. 23.

- 1484 17 *Edward V.* his son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle *Richard*, in the Tower of *London*.
 1484 18 *Richard III.* Brother of *Edward* the 4th. a most wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King *Henry* the 6th, and 2 Prince *Edward* his son. 3 *George* Duke of *Clarence*, his brother. 4 *Hastings* a faithful servant to King *Edward*. 5 *Rivers*, *Vaughan*, and *Gray*, the Queens kindred. 6 *Edward* the 5th. his Sovereign, with his brother *Richard*. 7 *Henry* Duke of *Buckingham* his dear Friend, and greatest Coadjutor in these his ungodly practices; and his own wife *Anne*, so to make way to an incestuous marriage with his Niece *Elizabeth*, the eldest daughter of *Edward* the 4th, but before the solemnity he was slain at *Bosworth*. 3.

The Union of the Families.

- 1487 19 *Henry VII.* Earl of *Richmond*, Heir to the House of *Lancaster*, (as Son of *Magaret* Daughter of John Duke of *Somerset*, Son of John Earl of *Somerset*, Son of John of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*) after the overthrow of *Richard*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir to *Edward* the 4th. uniting by that marriage the divided Families. He was also extracted from th *British* and *French*, Royal Blood, as being Son to Edmund Tudor Earl of *Richmond*, Son to Owen Tudor (descended from *Cadwaladar*, the last King of the *Britains*) and *Katharine* of *France*, Widow of *Henry* the 5th. His whole wars was against home-bred Rebels; the chief being *Lambert*, and the Followers and Fautors of *Perken Warbeck*. 23.
 1509 20 *Henry VIII.* Heir to both Families, between which were fought for the Diadem, 17 pitched Fields; in which perished 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marquesses, and Earls, 200000 of the common people, besides Barons, and Gentlemen. This King banished the usurped Supremacy of the *Popes*, and began the Reformation of Religion; though formerly he had writ a Book against *Luther*, for which the *Pope* gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*, afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs and Successors. A Prince of great vices, but of greater virtues. 38.
 1547 21 *Edward VI* the Son of *Henry* the 8th. by *Jane Seymour* his third Wife; out of whose womb he was said to be cut, to come into the World, as *Cesar* was: but he had neither *Cæsars* Fortune nor length of life; dying very young, and his affairs conducted by divided Councils; though otherwise of great hopes, and of a pregnancy of judgment above his years. 6.
 1553 22 *Mary*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th. by *Katharine* of *Spain*, the Widow of his brother *Arthur*, restored the *Popes* Supremacy banished by her Father, with the whole mass of Popery abolished in her Brothers reign. To which Religion so addicted, that in the short time of her reign there was more blood shed, than in the whole 44 years of her Sister *Elizabeth*. In the last year of her reign she lost *Calice* to the *French*, which proved the loss of her life also, as it was supposed. 5.
 1558 23 *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th. by the Lady *Anne Bullen* his second Wife; a most gracious Heroick Princess; was by the Divine Providence of God preserved from the practices of her Enemies in her Sisters reign, to sway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She pursued the Reformation of Religion, begun in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt Coin brought in by her Father; furnished the Royal Navy with all kind of Warlike Ammunitions; increased the Revenue of the Universities, by the Statute of *Provisions*; succoured the *Scots* against the *French*, the *French* Protestants against the *Papists*, and both against the *Spaniards*: defended the *Netherlands* against the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entered League with the *Moscovite*; and was famous for her Prudence and Government amongst the *Turks*, *Persians*, and *Tartars*, yea her very Enemies. Finally, she died in the 45 year of her reign, and the 70th. of her life, on the 24th. of *March*, Anno 1602. according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the New Year with the Feast of the *Annunciation*. To whom succeeded *JAMES* the sixth King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all men, as the next undoubted Heir of the Crown. Of whom we shall say more when we come to speak of the Monarchs of *Britain*: of which he was the first since the fall of the *Roman* Empire, and such more properly than the greatest of all those Emperours had been before; None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* itself, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the Isles adjoining, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State distinct, we will consider it and the Kings thereof, with

England.

with reference to reputation abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Arms*, and *Military Orders*; of it, as in other places. And first for Reputation, when all Christendom in the Council of *Constance*, was divided into Nations; *Anglicana Notio* was one of the Principal, and not *Subaltern*; and had its voice of equal balance with the Nations of *France*, or *Italy*, in all affairs concerning the doctrine, discipline and peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in those General Councils, and the rank they held among other Christian Princes; I find that the Emperor of *Germany* was accounted *Major filius Ecclesie*; the King of *France*, *Minor Filius*; and the King of *England*, *Filius tertius*, & *adoptivus*. The King of *France* in General Councils, had place next the Emperor, on his right hand; the King of *England* on his left hand; and the King of *Scotland*, next before *Castile*. Now indeed the King of *Spain* being so much improved, is the dearly beloved Son of the Church; and arrogateth to himself the place above all other Princes: but in the time of *Pope Julius*, the controversy arising between the Ambassadors of the two Princes for precedence; the *Pope* adjudged it to belong of right unto *England*. And *Pope Pius* the fourth, upon the like controversy, arising between the Ambassadors of *France* and *Spain*, adjudged the precedence to the *French*.

Touching the Souldiery of *England*, and their most notable achievements, both by Sea and Land; sufficient hath been said already. What Forces the Kings hereof have been able to raise, and may command for present service, will best be seen by the action of King *Henry* the 8th. at *Bullen*; the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88. and the numbers of the Trained Bands of the several Counties. First, for the Action of King *Henry* the 8th, he had in his Avant-guard 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horse in blue Jackets with red Guards; in the Rere-guard a like number both of Horse and Foot; and in the main Battel 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, all in Red Jackets and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. They drew after them 180 great Peeces, besides small ones; and for conveyance of their Ordnance, Baggage, and other necessities, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horses, besides other carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen dispersed in several places on Southern Coasts of the Kingdom, to hinder the landing of the Enemy, 25000 Souldiers of both sorts; at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of *London*, under the Command of the Earl of *Leicester*, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horse: and for the Guard of her own person, under the Lord *Hunsdon*, 34000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: in all, the number of 84000 men: besides those goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did present her with, at their own proper charges. And as for the Trained Bands, the number of both sorts disciplined and mustered to be ready upon all occasions: in the eighth year of King *James*, (for I have since seen no Muster-Roll of them) amounted to 296130 able men, 141315 armed men, 935 Demi-lances, 6777 Light Horse, 19345 Pioneers; besides what was required of *Pierj* and *Prelates*, supposed to amount to 20000 armed men, and 4000 Light Horse. And for their strength at Sea, besides the Navy Royal, consisting of about 30 gallant Ships, (besides the lesser Vessels;) the best and bravest that any Prince in Christendom can boast of, as his own propriety: there are such store of *Colliers* and *Merchants* Ships, fit for any Service, that in the year 88 aforesaid, the Queen had 100 Sail of good Ships to oppose the *Spaniards*; and 20 more, to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*. And in the year 1597. she set out for the *Iland Voyage*, no fewer than 120 Sail of all sorts; of which 60 were men of War.

As for the Revenues of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of King *Henry* the 7th, to be no more than 400000 Crowns per annum; but grants, that afterward they were improved to a million more, by King *Henry* the 8th. the dissolution of Monasteries, and the beneficredounding from the Court of *Wards*, making that improvement. And to say truth, the Universal dissolution of Religious Houses of all sorts, did for the time so mightily increase his annual Income, that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveysors*) for the better managing of the same. But these Additions being wasted by his own exorbitant expences, and the several Alienations made by King *Edward* the sixth; those Courts of new Eriction were dissolved again; and the Revenue fell so short of its former height, that in the 12 year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (besides the Court of *Wards*, and the *Dutche* of *Lancaster*) came to no more than to 188197 l. 4s. Of which 110612 l. 13s. went out that year upon the Navy, the charge of Household, and other necessary assignments. Since which time the great increase of trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of money in all parts of the World; hath added very much to the *Intado*: The certainty whereof as I do not know, so neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hearsay.

The Principal Orders of *Knighthood* are, and were, 1 of the *Round Table*, instituted by *Arthur* King of the *Britains*, and one of the Worlds Nine Worthies. It consisted of 150 Knights, whose names are recorded in the History of King *Arthur*, there where Sir *Ure*, a wounded Knight came to be cured of his hurts: it being his fate that only the best Knight of the Order should be his *Chirurgion*. The Arms of most of these, with their several *Blazons* (I know not on how good authority) we find in *Buras*, the *French Herald*. The principal of them were Sir *Danielot*, Sir *Tristram*, Sir *Lamhock*, Sir *Gavin*, &c. all placed at one Round Table, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The Round Table hanging in the great Hall at *Winchester*, is falsely called *Arthur's Round Table*; it being not of sufficient Antiquity, and containing but 24 Seats. Of these Knights there are reported many fabulous Stories: They ended with their Founder, and are fained by that *Enchan* of *France*; *Rablaies*, to be the Ferry-men of Hell; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy bread; and a phillip on the nose.

2 Of *S. George*, called commonly the *Garter*, instituted by King *Edward* the third, to increase virtue and

England.

and valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or as some will, in honour of the Countess of Salisbury's Garter, of which Lady, the King formerly had been enamoured. But this I take to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the Founder, and the Order; first published by Polydore Virgil, a stranger to the affairs of England, and by him taken upon no better ground than *fama vulgi*, the tradition of the common people; too trifling a Foundation for so great a building; Common bruit, being so infamous an Historian, that wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this fame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elsewhere canvassed. Suffice it to observe in this time and place, that the Garter was given unto this Order, in testimony of that bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the Knights or Fellows of it were to be bound severally to one another, and all of them jointly to the King as the Sovereign of it. So saith the Register of the Order, (in which occurth not one word of the Ladies Garter) affirming that King Edward did fit the habit unto that design, *Ut omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*. But to return unto the Order, there are of it 26 Knights, of which the Kings of England are Sovereigns: and is so much desired for its excellency, that 8 Emperours, 21 Foreign Kings, 22 Foreign Dukes and Princes, besides divers Noble men of other Countries, have been Fellows of it. The Ensign is a blew Garter buckled on the left leg, on which these words are embroidered, viz. *Hony soit qui mal y pense*. About their necks they wear a blew Ribband, at the end of which hangeth the Image of S. George; upon whose day the Installations of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3 Of the Bath, brought first into England, 1399. by Henry the fourth. They are created at the Coronation of Kings and Queens, and the Installation of the Princes of Wales: their duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the Kings Rights. The Knights thereof distinguished by a red Ribband, which they wear ordinarily about their necks, to difference them from Knights Bachelor, of whom they have in all places the precedence; unless they be also the Sons of Noblemen, to whom their birth gives it before all Orders.

4 Of Barons, an Order instituted by King James, in the 9th. year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of Ulster. They have Precedency of the Knights of the Bath, but not of those of the Garter, nor of the younger sons of the Nobility. But this being Hereditary, not personal, and rather civil than military; is not so properly to be ranked amongst Orders of Knighthood.

The Arms of the Realm of England, are Mars, 3 Lyons passant Guardant, Sol. The reason why these Arms quartered with the French, took the second place, are 1 because that France at the time of the first quartering of them, was the larger and more famous Kingdom. 2 That the French seeing the honour done to their Arms, might more easily be induced to have acknowledged the English Title. 3 Because the English Arms, were compounded of the Lion of Aquitaine, and the two Lions of Normandy, being both French Dutches.

There were in England, at and since the time of the Reformation,

Archbishops 2.

Bishops 20.

W A L E S.

W A L E S is bounded on all sides with the Sea, except towards England, on the East; from which separated by the river Dee, and a line drawn to the river Wye. Anciently it extended Eastwards to the river Severn, till by the puissance of Offa, the great King of the Mercians, the Welch or Britons were driven out of the plain Countries beyond that River, and forced to betake themselves to the Mountains: where he caused them to be shut up and divided from England, by an huge Ditch, called in Welch, *Clandh Offa*, i. e. *Offa's Dike*: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the Wye into the Severn, not far from Chepstow, extendeth 84 miles in length, even as far as Chester, where the Dee is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by Harald, That if any Welch man was found with a weapon on this side of it, he should have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

The name of Wales some derive from *Idwallo*, the son of *Cadwalloer*, who with the small remainder of his British Subjects, made good the fastnesses of this Country, and was the first who had the title of King of Wales. Others conceive that the name of Welch and Wales, was given them by the Saxons: who having possessed themselves of all the rest of the Country, called the Britons, who lived here, by the name of *Walsh*, which in their language signifieth as much as *Aliens*; because they differed from them both in Laws and Language: which is the general opinion. Most probable it is, that as the Britons derive their Pedigree from the *Galls* (as before was proved) so they might still retain the name; and were called *Walsh* by the Saxons, in stead of *Gallish*: the Saxons using in most words W for G. as *Warre* were called *Walsh* by the Saxons, in stead of *Gallish*: the Saxons using in most words W for G. as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather, because the Frenchmen to this day, call the Country *Galles*, and the eldest Son of England, *Le Prince de Galles*: as also that the Dutch or Germans (of whom the Saxons are a part) do call such Nations as inhabit on the skirts of France, by the name of *Wallons*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof in the time of the Romans, before it had the name of Wales, were the *Silures*, possessing the Counties of Hereford, Brecknock, Radnor, Monmouth, and Glamorgan, all

Glocester-

Wales.

Glocestershire beyond the Severn, and the South parts of Worcestershire on the same side also: their chief Towns, *Ariconium*, now Hereford, (not reckoned since the time of Offa, as a part of Wales;) *Balium*, now Buelth, in Brecknock; *Gobannium*, now Abargueny, in Monmouth; *Magni*, now New Radnor, in the County so named; and *Boviu*, now Boverton, in Glamorgan. 2 The *Dimetæ*, possessing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*, and *Pembroke* shires, whose chief Towns were, *Lovenium*, now New Castle, in Caermarthen; *Maridunum*, or Caermarthen it self: and *Off-pita*, where now stands S. David, by the Welch called *Meneu*, whence that Bishop hath the name of *Menevensis* in Latine. 3 The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, *Denby*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of Worcestershire beyond the River Severn, and all Shropshire, on the same side of the River. Their chief Towns were, *Segontium*, now Caer Seont, in Carnarvonshire; *Conanum*, now Conwy, in the same County; *Bonium*, where after stood the famous Monastery of *Bancho*, in Flintshire; and *Mediolanum*, now Llanvillin, in the County of Montgomery. By these three Nations was all that Tract possessed, which lieth on the other side of the Severn. A very stout and hardy people, and so impatient of the yoke, that two of the three Legions which the Romans kept constantly in Britain, as before is said, were planted in and near these people, the better to contain them in due obedience: that is to say, the second Legion at *Caer Leon* upon *Uik*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Dewana*, where now stands *West-Chester*. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation subject to the power of Rome; and no less difficult to bring them under the Command of the Saxons: whom they withstood, when all the rest of Britain had been conquered by them; and lived to see their Victors overcome by the Normans, before themselves had yielded to a Foreign yoke.

The Christian Faith planted amongst the Britons, in the time of *Lucius*, they still retained; when all the residue of the Island had been relapsed to Paganism: and they retained it not in secret, as afraid to own it, but in a well frequented Church. Inasmuch that *Augustine* the Monk, when he first preached the Gospel to the English Saxons, found here no fewer than seven Bishops; that is to say, *Herefordensis*; *Tavenensis*, *Paternensis*, *Banchorensis*, *Elwynensis*, *Wiccienensis*, and *Morgannensis* (or rather *Menevensis*): all which, excepting only *Paternensis*, do still remain amongst us, though in other names, *Hereford*, and *Worcester*, (*Wiccienensis*) reckoned now in England; *St. David*, or *Menevensis*, *Tavenensis* or *Landaff*, *Bangor*, and *Elwynensis* or *St. Asaph*, in Wales, according to the present boundaries and limits of it: And as they did retain the Faith, so they retained it after the tradition of their Predecessors; neither submitting unto *Augustine* as Archbishop of Canterbury, nor to the Pope from whom he came, as *Occumenical*, or chief Pastor of the Church of Christ; nor receiving any new Doctrines or Traditions from them: but standing on those Principles of Liberty, and Religion, which they were possessed of, till all the World almost had yielded to that powerful See. Not manumitted from the vassalage and thralldome to it, till they embraced the Reformation of the Church of England, in Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship: the Liturgie whereof was by the command of Queen Elizabeth, translated into the Welch or British; as the Bible also was by vertue of an Act of Parliament in the fifth of that Queen; the care thereof committed to the Bishop of Hereford, and the four Bishops of Wales. But because the Bible then set forth was only in the large Church Volume; it was in the beginning of the Reign of King Charles reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the cost and charge of my Cousin Mr. Rowland Heylyn, one of the Aldermen of London; who also caused the Book called *The Practice of Piety* to be printed in that language for the instruction of the People; and a Welch or British Dictionary to be made and published, for the understanding of the Language.

But to return unto the Church, and affairs thereof, for the better ordering of the same, it hath been long ago divided into four Dioceses (besides that of Hereford) for the exercise of Ecclesiastical Discipline; those Dioceses subdivided into 9 Archdeaconries, as before in England: all subject heretofore to their own Primate or Archbishop, residing in the City of *Isca Silurum*, the Metropolis of the Province of *Britania Secunda*, called by the Welch or Britons, *Caer-Leon*, or the City of the Legion, from the second Legion, fixt there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon* upon *Uik*, because situate on the River so named. But this City being too much exposed to the fury of the Saxons, the Archiepiscopal See was translated to *Meneu*, standing on a Promontory in the extreme Angle of *Pembroke* shire; by *David* then Archbishop thereof, and near of kin to *Arthur* that renowned King of the Britons: from whom, in tract of time, the name of *Meneu* being left off, the See and City came to be called *St. David*. From *David* unto *Sawson* the 26. Archbishop of the Welch, (being above 400 years) did they hold this dignity; but then the *Pessilence* extremely raging in these parts; Archbishop *Sawson* carried with him the Episcopical Pall, and therewith the dignity it self, to *Dole* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no Archbishop in Wales, in name and title; though the power proper thereunto still remained amongst them: the Welch Bishops acknowledging no other Primate, nor receiving consecration from any other hands, than their own Bishop of *St. David*, till Bishop *Bernard* was compelled to submit himself to the Power and Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of Canterbury, in the time of King Henry the first.

But it's time to look upon the face of the Country as it stands at the present, which we find Mountainous and Barren; not able to maintain its people but by helps elsewhere. To make amends for which defect, there were some Silver Mines discovered in it not long since, by Sir *Hugh Middleton*; Knight and Baronet; not only to the great honour of his own Country, but to the profit and renown of the whole Island of Great Britain. Their chief Commodities are coarse Clothes, entituled commonly by the name of *Welch Fretze*, and Cottons; which Merchandise was heretofore brought to *Oswey* (the

Wales.

yearly; exchanged in following times for a tribute of Wolves. But howsoever, they continued for a time the title of Kings, whose names are thus set down by *Glover*, in his *Catalogue of Honour*, published by *Miller*.

The Kings of Wales.

A. Ch.
690 1 *Idwallo*, son of *Cadwalader*. 818 4 *Mervin*, the son in law of *Conan*. 25.
720 2 *Roderick*, son of *Idwallo* 25. 843 5 *Roderick* II. surnamed the Great, son of *Mervin*, who divided his Kingdom, small enough before, amongst his sons: giving *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*, to *Amarawd* his eldest Son; to *Cadel* his second son, *Debenbarth* or *South-Wales*; and *Powis-land* to his youngest son, *Mervin*: conditioned that the two younger sons, and their Successors, should hold their Estates in Fee of the Kings of *North-Wales*, and acknowledge the Sovereignty thereof, as *Liege-men* and *Homagers*. According unto which appointment, it was ordained in the Constitutions of *Howel Dha*, the Legislator of *Wales*, that as the Kings of *Aberfraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in a way of tribute to the Kings of *London*; so the Kings of *Dynevor*, and *Matravall*, should pay in way of tribute to the Kings of *London* as well as those of *Scotland*, for so long a time, against the power and puissance of the Kings of *England*. Yet was not this the worst of the mischief neither; his Successors subdividing (by his example) their small Estates into many parcels, insomuch that of the eight tributary Kings which rowed *King Edgar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *Wales*. But *Roderick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we must follow in our story, according to the Division of the Country made by him into three Estates, of *North-Wales*, *South-Wales*, and *Powis-land*.

1. *NORTH-WALES*, or *Guinedth*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Carnarvon*, the Isle of *Anglesey*, and the greatest parts of *Denbigh* and *Flint-shires*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Dunbigh*, *Carnarvon*, *Aberfraw*; spoken of before; and some in *Anglesey*, whereof we shall speak more hereafter. The Country (*Anglesey* excepted) the most barren and unfruitful part of *Wales*; but withall the safest, and furthest from the danger of the incroaching *English*: which possibly might be the reason why it was set out for the portion of the Eldest son, in whom the Sovereignty of the *Welsh* was to be preserved, by the Kings or

Princes of North-Wales.

A. Ch.
877 1 *Amarawd*. 36 1120 7 *Owen Guinedth*, son of *Gryffith*.
913 2 *Idwallo*, son of *Amarawd*. 1178 8 *David ap Owen*, son of *Owen Guinedth*.
3 *Merick*, son of *Idwallo*. 1194 9 *Llewellen ap Iorweth*, the Nephew of *David*.
4 *James*, of *Iago*, Brother of *Merick*.
1067 5 *Conan*, son of *James*, or *Iago*. 1240 10 *David ap Llewellen*.
1099 6 *Gryffith ap Conan*. 1246 11 *Llewellen* II. son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David ap Llewellen*, the last Prince of *Wales* of the *British* Race. Of whom it is said, that once consulting with a *Witch*, he was told by her, that it was his destiny, to be carried in triumph through *London*, with a Crown on his head. Hereupon making some excursions on the *English* Borders, he drew upon himself the whole power of *King Edward* the first, which not being able to withstand, and the King as willing on the other side not to fight with Mountains; Commissioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert* Lord *Tiptoff*, and some others, for the King of *England*; for the *Welsh* Prince, *Grono ap Heylyn*, a great man of that Country, descended from *Brockwel Skythrac*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land*, (from whom, if *Camden* *Clarentius* be of any credit, the Author of these Papers doth derive his Pedegree) under whom that Family had the Office of *Hereditary Cup-Bearer*, and from thence their name; (*Heylyn*, *Promus*, *five à poculis, qua vox in proprium nomen abiit*, saith the *Welsh* Dictionary) By those Commissioners it was concluded and agreed on, that *Llewellen* should enjoy a part of the Country with the title of Prince, during his life: the rest in present, and the whole after his decease, to be surrendered over to the King of *England*. But *David* the Brother of *Llewellen*, finding himself excluded by this agreement, from the hope of succession, incensed his Brother and the *Welsh* to a new Revolt: the issue whereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of justice; and the death of *Llewellen*, slain in Battail, near the *Bwlth* in *Brecknockshire*. Whose head being pitched upon a stake, and adorned with a *Paper-Crown*, was by a Horseman carried triumphantly through *London*, An. 1182. And so the Prophecy was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-Wales*, after they had for the space of 405 years resisted not only the private undertakers and *Adventurers* of *England*, but the Forces of many puissant Monarchs; whose attempts they always made frustrate, by retiring into the heart of their Country, and leaving nothing for the *English* to encounter with, but their Woods and Mountains. But now the fatal period of the *British* Liberty being come, they were constrained to yield to the stronger. What followed after this, we shall see anon.

The

Wales.

The Arms of these Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions Passant gardant counter-changed.

2. *POWISLAND* contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery*, and *Radnor*, all *Shropshire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the rest of *Denbigh* and *Flint-shires*; comprehending by the estimate of those times, 15 Cantreds or hundreds of Villages: the word *Cant* signifying an Hundred, and *Tres* a Village. The principal Cities or Towns it of were, *S. Asaph*, *Shrewsbury*, *Matravall*, spoken of before. A Country more partaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*; but always lying in harms way, by reason of the Neighbourhood of the more potent *English*: and therefore given by *Roderick* to *Mervin*, his youngest son, partly because he was the youngest; but chiefly because he was a man of approved valour, and so more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and dismembered by the Earls of *Chester* and *Shrewsbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint*; *Denbigh*, and *Shropshire*; and by the Princes of *North-Wales*, who cast many a greedy eye upon it. Of the Successors of Prince *Mervin*, I find no good *Constat*, more than of *Brockwell*, *Skythrac*, before remembered. The last that held it all entire was *Meredyth ap Blethyn*, who following the ill example of *Roderick Maor*, divided it betwixt *Mador*, and *Gryffith*, his two Sons. Of which *Mador* died at *Winchester*, An. 1160. in the time of *King Henry* the second; his part hereof depending after his decease, on the fortunes of *Gwynedth*: and *Gryffith* was by *Henry* the first made Lord of *Powys* (the title of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his race it continued till the time of *King Edward* the first: to whom at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith* the fifth from *Gryffith ap Meredyth* before mentioned, surrendered his place and title; and received them of the King again to be holden in *Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the custom of *England*. *Avic*, or *Hawis*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was married unto *John* (*Charleton*, *Vallet* (or *Gentleman* of the *Privy Chamber*)) to *King Edward* the second, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powis*. *Edward* the fifth also of this Line of the *Charltons*, was the last of that House; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Estates and Title to the House of the *Greys*: and of them also five enjoyed it, the last Lord *Powis* of the Line or Race of *Mervin*, being *Edward Grey*, who died in the dayes of our Grandfathers. And so the title lay extinct, until revived again in the person of Sir *William Herbert* of *Red-castle*, descended from the *Herberts*, Earls of *Pembroke*; created Lord *Powys* by *King Charles* the first; An. 1629.

The Arms of the Princes of *Powysland*, were *Or*, a Lyon Rampant, *Gules*.

3. *SOUTH-WALES*, or *Debenbarth*, contained the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Brecknock*; the greatest and most fruitful part of all *Wales*, but more exposed to the invasion of *Forrein Nations*, the *English*, *Danes*, *Flemings*, and *Norwegians*, by whom the Sea-Coasts were from time to time most grievously plagued: Insomuch that the Kings and Princes hereof were inforced to remove their seat from *Caermarden*, where it was fixt at first, unto *Dynevor* Cattle as a place of greater strength and safety: where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence Kings of *Dynevor*, as before is said. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarden*, *Monmouth*, *Landaffe*, *S. David*, spoken of already. The Kings and Princes, as far as I can find upon any certainty, are these that follow.

The Princes of South-Wales.

A. Ch.
877 1 *Cadel*, the son of *Roderick Maor*. 1077 7 *Theodoret* the Great.
2 *Howel*. 8 *Rhefe ap Theodore*.
907 3 *Howel Dha*, Sovereign King of *Wales*. 1093 9 *Gryffith ap Rhefe*.
948 4 *Owen*, the son of *Dha*. 10 *Rhefe* II. ap *Gryffith*.
5 *Meredyth*, son of *Owen*. 11 *Gryffith ap Rhefe*, the last Prince of *South-Wales* of the Line of *Cadel*, after they had with great struggling maintained their liberty for the space of 300 years and upwards: but so, that though they still preserved the title of Princes, they lost a great part of their Country to the *Norman-English*. For in the reign of *William Rufus*, *Bernard de Neumark* a Noble *Norman*, seized upon those parts which now make the County of *Brecknock*, being then a fair and goodly Lordship; and *Robert Fitz-Haymon*, with some other noble adventurers, made themselves masters of *Glamorgan*; in which the posterity of some of them are still remaining. Incouraged by their good success, *Arnulph* of *Montgomery*, in the time of *King Henry* the first, won from the *Welsh* a great part of *Dyvet*, which we now call *Pembroke-shire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Mortimer*, about the same times did prevail exceedingly in the conquest of *Cardigan*, and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no one Country left intire, but *Caermarden* only; too little to maintain them in so high a title. And though this last *Gryffith*, in the time of the wars in *England*, betwixt *Mat* and the *Empire*, and *King Stephen*, had recovered a great part of this lost Estate; yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long; himself deceasing shortly after, and his two Sons, *Cymmerick* and *Meredyth* being taken by *King Henry* the second, who most cruelly put out their eyes: Yet did the *Welsh*, as well as possibly they could, endeavour to preserve the liberty which their Fathers left them; till the felicity and wisdom of *King Edward* the first, put an end unto the wars of *Wales*, and settled them in some degree of peace and quiet.

But before we come to speak of this, we are to shew another Catalogue of the Kings and Princes of *Wales*, different from the succession of them before laid down; and made according to the History

F f 2

of

Wales.

of Wales writ by *Humphrey Lloyd*: this Catalogue containing the Succession of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Gwynedd*, *Deheubarth*, or *Powysland*; such as gave law unto the rest, and had the honor to be called Kings of Wales, though Princes only of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the Monarchs of the English Saxons, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon Heptarchie*. Only we shall find some in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expressed in the former Tables: but such as by strong hand had intruded into those Estates, to the prejudice of the right heirs, empowered by them.

The Kings and Princes of Wales, according to the Welsh History.

- A. Ch.
688. 1 *Ivor*, a potent Interloper, upon *Cadwalader's* departure usurped the Kingdom.
 690. 2 *Idwallo*, or *Edwall*, son of *Cadwalader*, restored unto his Fathers Throne.
 720. 3 *Roderick Malminnoe*, the son of *Idwallo*.
 755. 4 *Conan Tindaethwy*, the son of *Roderick*.
 820. 5 *Mervin Idrich*, in right of *Eisylth* his Wife, the Daughter of *Conan*.
 843. 6 *Roderick Mawre*, (who divided Wales into three Estates) the son of *Mervin*.
 877. 7 *Amarawdh*, Prince of *Gwynedd*, the son of *Roderick Mawre*.
 913. 8 *Edwal Foel*, Prince of *Gwynedd*, son of *Amarawdh*; made tributary to *Athelstan* K. of England.
 940. 9 *Howel Dha*, (or the Good) Prince of *Deheubarth*, and *Powys*.
 948. 10 *Jewaf*, and *Jago*, sons of *Edwal Foel*, to whom King *Edgar* did release the tribute ordained by King *Athelstan*, to be paid in money, for a tribute of *Wales*; of which we spake before when we were in England.
 981. 11 *Howel*, the son of *Jewaf*, succeeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his father being still alive, and of right Prince of *Gwynedd*.
 984. 12 *Cadwallan*, the Brother of *Howel*.
 986. 13 *Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Deheubarth*.
 992. 14 *Edwal III.* son of *Merick*, the Eldest son of *Edwal Foel*; which *Merick* had been pretermitted, as unfit for Government.
 1003. 15 *Aedan ap Blethored*, an Usurper.
 1015. 16 *Llewellen ap Sisylth*, descended from *Amarawdh*, the first Prince of *Guinedh* or *North-wales*.
 1021. 17 *Jago ap Edwal*, Prince of *Guinedh*, son of *Edwal* the third.
 1037. 18 *Gryffith ap Llewellen*, the son of *Llewellen ap Sisylth*, and the Lady *Angharad*.
 1061. 19 *Blethyn* and *Rhywallon*, sons of *Angharad*, the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen* Prince of *Deheubarth*, by a second Husband.
 1073. 20 *Trabaerna ap Caradoc*, Cousin to *Blethyn*.
 1078. 21 *Gryffith* Prince of *Gwynedd*, son of *Conan*, the son of *Jago ap Edwal*, one of the Princes of the same, did Homage to *William* the Conqueror, and was the last that had the title of King of *Wales*.
 1137. 22 *Owen Guinedh* Prince of *Guinedh*, and Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, Eldest son of *Gryffith*.
 1169. 23 *David ap Owen* Prince of *Guinedh*, the younger son of *Owen Guinedh*.
 1194. 24 *Llewellen*, Son of *Jorwerth*, Eldest son of *Owen Guinedh*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.
 1242. 25 *David ap Llewellen* Prince of *Guinedh*, son of *Llewellen ap Jorwerth*.
 1246. 26 *Llewellen*, son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David*, the last Sovereign Prince of *Wales*, of the race of *Cadwalader*; overcome and slain in battel by King *Edward* the first, An. 1282. as before is said: by means whereof the Principality of *Wales* was added to the Crown of England.
- When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great business, he gave unto his English Barons and other Gentlemen of note, many fair Signeuries and Estates; as well to reward them for their service in the conquest, as to engage so many able men, both in purse and power, for the perpetual defence and subjection of it. As for the Lordship of *Flint*, and the Towns and Estates lying on the Sea-coasts; he held them in his own hands, both to keep himself strong, and to curb the *Welsh*: and (wherein he dealt like the politic Emperor *Augustus*) pretending the ease of such as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and men of employment under himself only.

This done, he divided *Wales* into seven Shires, viz. 1 *Glamorgan*, 2 *Carmarden*, 3 *Pembroke*, 4 *Carmarigan*, 5 *Merioneth*, 6 *Carnarvon*, and 7 *Anglesey*, after the manner of England. Over each of these, as he placed a particular English Lieutenant, so he was very desirous to have one general English Vicegerent, over the whole body of the *Welsh*. But this when they mainly withstood, he sent for his wife, then great with child to *Carnarvon*: where she was delivered of a Son. Upon the news whereof, the King assembled the British Lords, and offered to name them a Governor born in *Wales*, which could not speak one word of English, and whose life no man could tax. Such a one when they had all sworn to obey, he named his young son *Edward*; since which time our Kings Eldest Sons are called *Princes of Wales*. Their Investiture is performed by the imposition of a Cap of Estate, and a Coronet on his head that is invested, as a token of his Principality; by delivering into his hand a verge, being the emblem of government; by putting a ring of gold on his finger, to shew him how now he is a Husband to the Countrey, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a patent, to hold the said

Wales.

said Principality, to him and his Heirs Kings of England. By which words, the separation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themselves to excellent occasion, of obliging unto them their eldest son, when they please. In imitation of this custom, *maria Anglia translato* (saith *Mariana*) *John* the first of *Castile* and *Leon*, made his son *Henry* Prince of the *Asturias*; which is a Countrey so craggie and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Wales of Spain*. And all the Spanish Princes even to these times, are honoured with this title of *Prince of the Asturias*.

Notwithstanding this provident care of *Edward* the first, in establishing his Empire here; and the extreme rigor of Law here used by *Henry* the 4th, in reducing them to obedience, after the rebellion of *Open Glendower*: yet till the time of *Henry* the 8th, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welsh* blood) they seldom or never contained themselves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by Act of Parliament) one Nation with the English, subject to the same Laws, capable of the same preferments, and privileged with the same immunities. He added also 6 Shires to the former number, out of those Countries which we before reputed as the Borders and *Marches of Wales*; and enabled them to send Knights and Burgeses unto the English Parliaments: so that the name and language only excepted, there is now no difference between the English and *Welsh*; an happy Union.

The same King *Henry* established for the use of his *Welsh* Subjects, a Court at *Ludlow*, like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*: wherein the Laws are ministrated according to the fashion of the Kings Courts of *Westminster*. The Court consisteth of one President, who is, for the most part, of the Nobility, and is generally called, the Lord President of *Wales*; of as many Counsellors as it shall please the King to appoint; one Attorney, one Solicitor, one Secretary, and the four Justices of the Counties of *Wales*. The Town itself (for this must not be omitted) adorned with a very fair Castle, which hath been the Palace of such Princes of *Wales*, of the English blood, as have come into this Countrey, to solace themselves among their people. Here was young *Edward*, the 5th, at the death of his Father; and here dyed Prince *Arthur*, Eldest son of *Henry* the 7th: both being sent hither by their Fathers to the same end, viz. by their presence to satiate and keep in order the unquiet *Welshmen*. And certainly, as the presence of the Prince was then a terror to the rebellious; so would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable people.

What the Revenues of this Principality are, I cannot say: yet we may boldly affirm that they are not very small, by these reasons following, viz. 1 By the Composition which *Llewellen*, the last Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the first: who being Prince of *North Wales* only, and dispossessed of most of that, was fain to redeem the rest, of the said King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 100000 pounds of our present money) to be paid down in ready coin; and for the residue to pay 1000 l. per annum. And 2ly, by those two circumstances, in the marriage of the Lady *Katherine* of *Spain*, to the above named Prince *Arthur*. For first, her Father *Ferdinando* being one of the warriest Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 20000 Ducats; required for her Joynture, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Chester*. And secondly, after the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the Realm perswaded Prince *Henry* to take her to Wife; that so great a Treasure as the yearly Revenue of her Joynture, might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Armes of the Princes of *Wales* differ from those of England, only by the addition of a Label, of three points. But the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the *Princes Armes*, is a Coronet beautified with three *Ostrich* Feathers, and inscribed round with *ICH DIEN*, that is, I serve: alluding to that of the Apostle, *The Heir while he is a Child differeth not from a Servant*. This Coronet was won by that valiant Prince, *Edward* the Black Prince, at the battel of *Crecie*, from John King of *Bohemia*; who did there wear it, and whom he there slew, Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now shut up my discourse of *Wales*, with that testimony of the people, which *Henry* the second used in a Letter to *Emanuel* Emperor of *Constantinople*; *The Welsh Nation is so adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed men; ready to spend their blood for their Countrey, and pawn their life for praise; and adding only this, that since their incorporating with the English, they have shewed themselves most loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State: cordially devoted to their King, and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties, and Religion, as well as any of the best of their fellow-subjects; whereof they have given good proof in these latter time.*

There are in *Wales*
Archbishops 0. Bishops 4.

The BORDERS.

Before we come into Scotland, we must of necessity pass through that Barable ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms; called THE BORDERS; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of military men, subtle, nimble, and by reason of their often skirmishes, well experienced, and adventurous. Once the English Border extended as far as unto the *Fryth*, or Strait of *Edenburgh* on the East; and that of *Dunbritton* on the West (the first *Fryth*, by the Latines called *Bodotria*, and the latter *Glotha*;) and betwixt which, where now standeth the Town of *Sterling*, was an antient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the *Fryth* of *Edenburgh*; on a Cross standing whereupon, was writ this Passport;

I am Free-march as passengers may ken,
To Scots, to Britans, and to English men.

But when England groaned under the burden of the Danish oppression, the Scots well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the *Tweed*, but also took into their hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Westmorland*. The Norman Kings again recovered these Provinces, making the Borders of both Kingdoms to be *Tweed*, East; the *Solway*, West; and the *Cheviot* hills in the midst. Of any great wars made on these Borders, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of *Edward* the first; who taking advantage of the Scots disagreements, about the successor of *Alexander* the third, hoped to bring the Country under the obedience of England. This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end: the Wars surviving the Author: so that what *Velleius* saith of the Romans and *Carthaginians*, I may as well say of the Scots and English: for almost 300 years together, aut bellum inter eos populos, aut belli preparatio, aut infida pax fuit. In most of these conflicts the Scots had the worst. So that *Daniel* in his History seemeth to marvel how this Corner of the Isle could breed so many, had it bred nothing but men, as were slain in these wars. Yet in the Reign of *Edward* the second, the Scots (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became so terrible to the English Borders, that an hundred of them would fly from three Scots: It is a custom among the Turks, not to beleve a Christian or a Jew complaining against a Turk, except their accusation be confirmed by the Testimony of some Turk also; which seldom happening, is not the least cause why so little justice is there done the Christians. In like manner, it is the Law of these Borders, never to beleive any Scots complaining against any English-man, unless some other English-man will witness for him; and so on the other side. *Ex jure quidam inter limitaneos rati* (saith Camden in his *Elizabeth*) nullus nisi Scotus in Scotia, nullus nisi Anglus in Anglum, testis admittitur. This custom making void in this fashion, all kinds of accusations, was one of the greatest causes of the Insolencies of both sides committed. Besides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but sometime were Scots, sometimes English, as their present crimes and necessities required protection, or pardon. To keep in this people, and secure the Borders, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Wardens of the Marches*: one being placed over the East, the other over the West, the third over the middle Borders. In England, the Warden of the East Marches had his seat at *Barwick* (a Town of great strength, and which for the conveniency of its situation, was the first thing which the English took care to defend, and the Scots to surprize) of which he was also Governor. The Warden of the West Marches had his Seat in *Carlisle*, which *Henry* the 8th for that cause well fortified. The Warden of the middle Marches had no set place of residence, but was sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, according as occasion required; the Office being executed for the most part, by the Wardens of the Eastern or Western Marches. But *Imperii medium est, terminus ante fuit*, by the blessed marriage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; these Officers, and the cause of them, the wars, are quite extinguished.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of Britain, separated from England by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the *Cheviot* Hills, extending from the one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgil*) 480 miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place distant from the Sea above 60 miles, and the Country ending like the sharp point of a Wedge. And for the length assigned unto it by *Polydore*, it must be made up by measuring the crooks and windings of the shores, everywhere thrusting out with very large Promontories, and cutting deep Indentures into the Land. For measuring in a straight Line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Frith* to the *Straity-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten Italian miles; and from *Barwick* unto *Straity-head*, is a great deal shorter. So that there is no such over-sight in the Maps of Britain, nor such necessity to correct them, as was sometimes thought.

It

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii* a chief People of it: sometimes *Albania*, from *Albania* Scotland, or *Braid Albin*, a principal Province in the North. But the most usual name is *Scotia*, or *Scotland*; though the reason of the name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an Egyptian Pharaoh; of whom more when we come to Ireland. Others with better reason (though that none of the best) from the *Scotti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a German, or Sarmatian people, of noted fame; whom they will have to seize first on some parts of Spain, from thence to transplant themselves into Ireland; and out of Ireland into the *Hebrides* or Western Islands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable opinion is, that they were no other then meer Irish (whose language, habit, and most barbarous of their customs, the Highlanders, or natural Scots do still retain) united in the name of *Scot*; about the declination of the Roman Empire: the word *Scot* signifying in their Language, a body aggregated into one, out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the Dutch. *Scot illud dicitur*, (saith Camden out of *Matthew of Westminster*) quod ex diversis rebus in unum agrorum aggregatur. First mentioned by this name in some fragments of *Porphyrie* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Anrelian*) as they are cited by *S. Hierome* after the death of *Constantine* much spoken of in approved Authors, as the confederates of the *Picts*, in harassing the Roman Province.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands*, and the *Lowlands*. The Highlanders or Irish Scots; inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the West parts of the Continent adjoining to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Irish* at this day: not to be civiliz'd (as King James observed in his most excellent *Basilicon Dyon*) but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly Scots among them. The Lowlanders or English Scots (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this side the two *Frythes* of *Dunbritton* and *Edenburgh*, and the plainer Countreys all along the German Ocean; are the more civil of the two, as being of the same Saxon race with the English. This is evident, first, by their Language, being only a broad Northern English; a *Dialect* only of that tongue: 2ly, by the testimony of the Highlanders themselves, who are the true Scots, and speak the old Irish language, by whom the Lowlanders and the English are called by the same name of Saxons: 3ly, by the general consent of all Historians, affirming that the Kingdom of the Northumbers or English Saxons, beyond *Humber*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Frythes* before mentioned; and there continued for the space of 300 years: and 4ly, by the confession of some ingenious Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, that the Saxons and the Scots invading Britain much about the same time, the Saxons might extort the Eastern shore; lying next their Countrey, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the Scots did all the Western parts which lay next to Ireland; and the *Hebrides* or Western Islands, from whence they first passed into Britain.

The Country for the most part, especially beyond the limits of the Roman Province, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford sustenance for the Natives of it; were they not a people patient of want and hunger; temperate in diet, and not accustomed unto that riot and excess, used commonly in richer and more plentiful Countreys. Fruit they have very little, and not many trees either for building or for fuel: the people holding, as in France, at the Will of the Lord, and therefore not industrious to build, or plant. Their chief Commodities are coarse cloth, Fish in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two last their mountains do afford some rich undecaying Mines.

The people have been noted by their best Writers, for some barbarous customs entertained amongst them. One of which was, if any two were displeased, they expected no law; but bang'd it out bravely, one and his kindred, against the other and his: and thought the King much in their common; if they granted him at a certain day to keep the peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word to barter, that were it to be expressed in Latine, or French, it must be by *circumlocution*. These deadly *Feides*, King James in his most excellent *Basilicon Dyon* adviseth his son to redress with all care possible; but it pleased God to give him so long a life as to see it in his own dayes remedied: wherein he got a greater victory over that stubborn people, than ever did any foreign Prince, or any of his Predecessors could do before him; an act indeed truly royal, and worthy himself. Another custom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongst the Heathen, and much less in *Christendom*; which took beginning as the Scottish Historians affirm, in the reign of *Ewen* the third, who is the fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the first *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto lasciviousness, made a Law, that himself and his successors should have the *maidenhead*, or first nights lodging with every woman, whose husband held land immediately from the Crown: and the Lords and Gentlemen of all those, whose husbands were their tenants or *homagers*. This was, it seems, the *Knights service* which men held their states by; and continued till the dayes of *Malcolm* Connor: who at the request of his wife *Margaret*, (she was the sister of *Edgar Atheling*) abolished this Law; and ordained, that the tenants by way of commutation, should pay unto their Lords a mark in money; which tribute the Historians say is still in force. It was called *Marchet mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a horse in the old *Gallique*, (implying the obscene signification of *Equitare*) as *Mr. Selden* thinks; or from *Murca*, the sum of money by which it was afterward redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am that this last custom was of such a barbarous and brutish nature, that the custom of the Indians in giving to the *Bramine* the first nights lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in prostituting their Wives and Daughters to the lusts and pleasure of their Guests; have not more unchristianity in them, than this of those Scottish Christians, if I may so call them.

These Customs shew the antient Scots to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the neighbouring Nation; nor are they so broken of the former, but that they are observed by a modern Briton, to be still greedy of revenge where they find means to take it; as also to be a subtle and pollic people, inclined to Factions and Seditions among themselves; which he that reads their Stories cannot

cotland.

cannot choose but see. A people, as King James observeth in his *Basilikon Doron*, ever weary of the present state, and desirous of novelties, accustomed to judge and speak rashly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have always carried themselves with such untractableness, that more Kings have been betrayed, murdered, and deposed by the Scots, than by all the Nations in the world. But take them in themselves without these relations, and they are said to be an industrious people, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well versed in *Grammatical Learning*, of which most of their *Gentry* have a smattering. And of most note in point of Learning, have been 1 *Marianus* (surnamed) *Scotus*, and 2 *Hector Boetius*, the Historians; 3 *John Major*, a well-known Schoolman, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4 *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unsound *Statesman*; whose History, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more mischief in the World, than all *Machiavels* works. Nor to have been remembered here, but because he was Pædagogus to 5 King James, of most famous memory; whose printed works declare his large abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6 *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchblon*. 7, 8 *Barclay*, the Father and the Son. 9 *John Skene*, the best Antiquary of this Nation. 10 Doctor *John Maxwell*, the late learned Bishop of *Ross*, and my very good friend; besides some others of less note.

The *Christian Religion* was here planted by divers men, according to their several Nations who did here inhabit; amongst the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan*, the first Bishop of *Lindisfarne*, or *Holy Island*; amongst the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eastern parts, by *Ninias*, Bishop of *Candida Cæsa*, or *Whit-borne*, in *Galloway*; amongst the *Northern-Picts*, An. 555. and finally amongst the Scots, by *Palladius* a Deacon of *Rome*, sent to them hither for that purpose by Pope *Celestine*, An. 435. or thereabouts. And for the Reformation of Religion, overgrown with the rust and rubbish of the *Romish Church*, (degenerated from it self in the later days) it was here made by a strong hand, according to the judgement of *Knox* and others: not taking counsel with the *Prelates*, nor staying the leisure of the Prince, as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and *Prelates* out of all authority; made by that means, more naturally subject unto alterations than it had been otherwise; or only to be made good by the same violence, which first introduced it. 'Tis true, that for a while, being in danger of the *French*, and of necessity to support themselves by the power and favour of the *English*: they bound themselves by a solemn Subscription, to adhere only to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to observe that form of Worship, which was there established. *Religionis cultui, et Ritibus cum Anglis communibus subscripservunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan*, their own State-Historian. But no sooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leisure to effect their ends; and have endeavoured ever since by practices, and correspondence with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thrust their own Constitutions and Form of Worship on the Church of *England*.

As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Bishops, (as in all parts else); but so as they exercise their Functions and Jurisdictions in all places, equally, wheresoever they come: The Kingdom not being divided into *Dioceses*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third, An. 1070, or thereabouts. Nor had they any Archbishops till the year 1478. The Archbishop of *Tork* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the Metropolitan of *Scotland*. But being once fettered in an orderly and constant Hierarchy, they held the same until the Reformation began by *Knox*: when he and his associates approving the *Genevian* plat-form, took the advantage of the Minority of King James the sixth, to introduce the *Presbyterian Discipline*, and suppress the Bishops; forbidding them by their own sole authority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the Church, and cantoning the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own assigning. And that the King might not be able to oppose their doings, they kept him under by strong hand, imprisoned him at *Sterlin*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*, removed from him all his faithful servants, and seized upon his principal Fortresses: and in a word so baffled and affronted him upon all occasions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom, and retire to *Venice*. Which doubtless he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by some of great place and power) had not the hopes of coming at the last to the Crown of *England*, made him stay it out: So that his Maxim of No Bishop, no King, was not made at random, but founded on the sad experience of his own condition. And though upon the fence of those inconveniences, which that alteration brought upon him, he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, restore again the *Episcopal Order*, and settled it both by *Synodical Acts*, and by Acts of Parliament: yet the same restless spirit breaking out again in the reign of his son, An. 1638. did violently eject the Bishops, and suppress the calling; and set up their *Presbyteries* throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Countrey are, 1 the Lake of *Nirton*, part of whose waters do congeal in Winter, and part of them not. 2ly, That in the Lake of *Lennox*, being 24 miles in compass, the Fish are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. 3ly, That when there is no wind stirring, the waters of the said Lake are so tempestuous, that no Mariner dares venture on it. 4ly, That there is a stone called the *Deaf Stone*, 12 foot high and 33 Cubits thick; of this rare quality, that a Musket shot off on the one side, cannot be heard by a man standing on the other: If it be otherwise (as he must have a strong Faith who believes these wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot Hills* upon the Borders; and Mount *Grampius* spoken of by *Tacitus*; the safest shelter of the *Picts*, or Northern Britons against the Romans, and of the Scots against the *English*; now called the hills of *Albany*, or the mountainous Regions of *Braid-Albin*. Out of these springeth the 1 *Tay* or *Tanar*, the fairest River of *Scotland*, falling into the Sea about *Dundee*, in the East side; and 2 the *Clwyd*, emptying it self into *Dunbritton Friths*, on the West side of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of most note, are, the 3 *Banoc*, emptying it self into the *Frith of Edenburgh*; or

Scotland.

on the banks whereof was fought that fatal battel of *Banocks-bourn*, of which more anon. 4 *Spey*, 5 *Dee*, the *Ouse of Ptolomy*; none of them of any long course, by reason that the Countrey Northward is but very narrow.

In reference to Ecclesiastical affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 *Dioceses*, to which the *Diocese of Edenburgh* (taken out of that of *S. Andrews*) hath been lately added: and in relation to the Civil, into divers *Seneschalties* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the most part hereditary, are no small hindrance to the due execution of Justice. So that the readiest way to redress the mischief (as King James advised) is to dispose of them as they fall or Echeat to the Crown, according to the laudable custom (in that case) in *England*.

The greatest Friends of the Scots, were the *French*, to whom the Scots shewed themselves so faithful, that the *French King* committed the defence of his person to a selected number of *Scottish Gentlemen*: and so valiant, that they have much hindered the *English Victories in France*. And certainly the *French* feeling the smart of the *English* puissance alone, have continually heartened the Scots in their attempts against *England*, and hindered all means of making union betwixt them; as appeared, when they broke the march agreed on, between our *Edward* the sixth, and *Mary* the young Queen of Scots. Their greatest enemy was the *English*, who overcame them in many battels, seized once upon the Kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the mountainous and unaccessible woods had not been more advantageous to the Scots, than their power: for so much King James seemeth to intimate in his speech at *Whitehall*, 1607. And though, faith he, the Scots had the honour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the defensible side; and may in part thank their hills and inaccessible passages, that saved them from an utter overthrow, at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them. But

Jam cuncti gens una sumus, sic sumus in armis:

One only Nation now are we,
And let us so for ever be.

The chief Cities are *Edenburgh* (of old called *Castrum Alatum*) in *Lothien*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Court of Justice. It consisteth chiefly of one street, extending in length one mile, into which run many pretty lanes; so that the whole compass may be nigh three miles: extending from East to West on a rising ground, at the Summit or West end whereof standeth a strong and magnificent Castle, mounted upon a steep and precipitous Rock, which commandeth the Town; supposed to be the *Castrum Alatum*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*. Under the command or rather the protection of which Castle, and through the neighbourhood of *Leith*, standing on the *Fryth*, and serving as a Port unto it; and finally by the advantage of the Courts of Justice, and the Court Royal, called *Holy-Rood-House*, it soon became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withal factious and seditious contesting with their Kings, or siding against them upon all occasions. No way to humble them, and keep them in obedience to the Sovereign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it the privileges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royal and the Courts of Judicature; which they more fear than all the Plagues that can befall them. It belonged in former times to the *English Saxons*, (as all the rest of the Countrey from the *Fryth* to *Barnwick*) from whom, oppressed by the tyranny of the *Danes*, it was taken by the Scots and *Picts*, Anno 800. or thereabouts. 2 *Sterling*, situate on the South-side of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom so called; a strong Town, and beautified withal with a very fair Castle, the birth-place of King James the sixth, the first Monarch of Great Britain. Near to which Town, on the banks of the River *Rannock*, hapned the most memorable discomfiture that the Scots ever gave the *English*: who besides many Lords, and 700 Knights and men of note, lost in this Fight (as the *Scottish* Writers do report) 50000 of the common Souldiers (our *English* Historians confess 10000, and too many of that) the King himself (*Edward* the 2d) being compelled to flee for his life and safety. Some of the *Scottish* Writers tell us, that the purer sort of silver, which we call *Sterling* money, did take name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our silver *Buttlin* comes from *Bonillon* in *Loyckland*, or from the Port of *Boulogne* in *France*; the truth being, that it took that name from the *Easterlings*, or Merchants of *East Germany*, drawn into *England* by King John, to refine our Coin. 3 *Glasgow*, in *Cluidfale*, honoured with an Archbishop See, and a publick School (to which some give the name of an University) founded here by Archbishop *Turnbul*, Anno 1554. 4 *S. Andrews*, the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archiepiscopal See, and an University; by the *Latines* called *Fannus Reguli*; which, and the *English* name, it took from the bones of *S. Andrew* the Apostle, translated first from *Patras* in *Peloponnesus* where he suffered death, unto *Constantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Abatus Regulus*, in the year 378 (if they be not mistaken in the time, who made the story.) Over which Relicks he is said to have built a Monastery, which after grew to be a City: called from the Founder, *Fannus Reguli*; in honour of the Saint, *S. Andrews*. The Bishop hereof is the Metropolitan of all *Scotland*; the City seated on the Ocean, near the fall of the *Eitha*, overlooked with a strong and goodly Castle, the Archbishops seat. 5 *Falkland*, in the same Province of *Fife*, beautified with a retiring house of the Kings, resorting often thither on recesses from business, or for the commodity and pleasure of hunting, which the place affords. 6 *Dundee*, in *Latine*, *Tiodunnum*, a rich and noted Port at the mouth of the *Tay*, the chief Town of *Angus*. 7 *Aburdon*, at the mouth of the River *Done*, whence it hath the name, (the word *Aber* in the *British* signifying the mouth or influx of a River) an University, and Bishops See. 8 *Perth*, or *St. Johns Town*, seated on the *Tay*, but in the middle of the Kingdom; walled and replenished with an industrious people: the chief Town of the Sheriffdom of *Perth*. 9 *Scone*, on the

Scotland.

the other side of the *Tay*, adorned heretofore with a famous *Monastery*; the usual place for the Inauguration of the *Scottish* Kings: the fatal stone, on which they did receive the Crown, (the *Palladium* of the *Scottish* Kingdom) here kept, till the removal of it unto *Westminster*, by King *Edward* the first. Upon which stone there were of old ingraven these Verses.

*Non fallat fatum, Scoti quocumque locatum
Invenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.*

Translated in old Meeter thus:

The Scots shall brook that Realm as natif ground,
If *Weirds* fail not, whaire ere this Stone is found.

Most happily accomplished in the Succession of King *James* the sixth, to the Crown of *England*. 10. *Dunbritton* (*Britannodunum* in the *Latine*) seated in a grassie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Clwyd*, upon two steep and precipitious Rocks, flanked on the West with the said two Rivers, and on the East with a myery Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the strongest hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable but by Famine or Treason, and the chief Town of the West side of *Scotland*; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoining.

The Ancient Inhabitants of this Countrey dwelling within the limits of the *Roman* Province, were the *Gadeni*, possessing *Tevidale*, *Tweedale*, *Merech*, and *Lothien*, whose chief City was *Castra Alata*, now *Edenburgh*. 2 The *Damarii*, dwelling in *Clwydsdale*, *Lennox*, *Sterling*, and *Menteith*, whose chief City was *Vandunara*, now *Renfrew*; *Lindum*, now *Lindisgho*. 3 The *Selgovæ*, inhabited in *Liddisdale*, *Tivedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, and *Niddisdale*, whose chief place was *Carbantorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*: and 4 the *Nevantes* containing *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle* and *Cunningham*; principal places of the which were, *Lucebria* now *Whis herne*, and *Berigonium*, now *Bergenie*. Without the Province, amongst the *Picts* or *barbarous Britans*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Meatae*, the Nations of most note were, 5 the *Caledonii* properly so called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Pertb*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6 The *Permines* of *Merniand Mar*. 7 The *Talzali* of *Buguban*. 8 The *Vacomagi* of *Loughabre & Murray*. 9 The *Canna* of *Ross* and *Sutherland*. 10 The *Contini* of *Cathness*; and 11 the *Cornubii* of *Strathnaver*, the furthest Countrey Northward of all the Island. Chief Towns of which were, *Tamia*, *Banatie*, *Orca*, *Devana*, and *Tuesi*; which we know not whereto find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this people, as they related to the *Romans*, hath been shewn before. On the withdrawing of whose Forces, so much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was possessed by the *Saxons*, the residue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*: have that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held, made themselves masters also of the plain Countries, lying on the *German* Ocean, to which the passage out of *Germany* was both short and easie. By which accompt, besides those places in the East, they were possessed of the Counties or Sherifdoms of *Tevidale*, *Tweedale*, *March*, *Lothien*, *Liddisdale*, *Esksdale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, *Niddisdale*, *Clwydsdale*, *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lennox*, and *Sterling*, being the richest, and most flourishing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots* for their part, had the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid-Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorn*, *Loughabre*, and *Strathnaver*, lying on the West and North: the other Northern moiety (excepting some parts near the coast of the *German* Ocean possessed by the *Saxons*) containing the now Counties of *Cathness*, *Sutherland*, *Ross*, *Murray*, *Buguban*, *Marre*, *Mern*, *Angus*, *Athal*, *Pertb*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into these parts, hath been shewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of those who will have them to descend from the *Agathursi*, a people of *Scythia*) they were no other than such of the natural *Britans*, as never were brought under the *Roman* Empire, but still preserved their Countrey in its former Liberty: called therefore by *Tertullian*, *inaccessa Romanis loca*, as indeed they were: and using still their ancient custom of painting their bodies, after the rest of their Countreymen had conformed themselves to more civil courses, were by the *Romans* called *Picts*; and by that name first mentioned in the *Panegyrick* of *Evagrius*, in the time of *Constantine* the Great. They long possessed these parts without an Inmate, even till the year 424, when the *Irish-Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly possessed themselves of the Western Isles, first set foot in *Britain*: with whom they had continual Warre, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Western parts, and withdraw themselves into the Eastern. Afterwards growing into better terms with one another, and willing to enlarge their borders toward the more flourishing South; they contracted an Offensive and Defensive League against the *Britans*; whom on all sides they most miserably tortured, till vanquished and beat back by the conquering *Saxons*, against whom they contracted a new Confederacy. Taking the advantage of the death of *Etheldred*, King of the *Northumbrians*, and the invasion of the *Danes* on the rest of *England*; they got into their hands all *Bernicia*, or so much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Tweed*, and *Solway*; reckoned from that time forwards as a part of their Dominions. But this good neighbourhood held not long betwixt these two Nation. It hapned at the last, that *Achais* King of the *Scots*, married *Fergusa*, Sister unto *Hungust*, King of the *Picts*, and had by her a son called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hungust*, dying without issue, and having none of a nearer kindred, was in the judgement of the *Scots*, to succeed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alleging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, chose one *Ferretb* of their own Nation, to be their King: with whom *Alpine* contended in a long War, victorious for the most part, in conclusion slain. The quarrel notwithstanding did remain betwixt the unfriendly Nations, till at the last, after many bloody battels and

Scotland.

and mutual overthrows (the *Scots* being for the most part on the losing side) *Kenneth*, the second of that name, vanquished *Donken*, the last King of the *Picts*, with so great a slaughter of his People, that he extinguished not their Kingdom only, but their very name; passing from that time forwards under that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Pictish* Nation: unless perhaps we will believe that some of them passed into *France*; and there, forsooth, subdued that Countrey which we now call *Picardy*.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I shall begin the same with *Fergus*, the second of that name in the Account of their Historians: leaving out that rabble of 39 Kings (half of them at the least before *Christ's* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector Boetius*, *Buchanan*, and others of their *Classick* Authors. Neither shall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more judicious and understanding men of the *Scottish* Nation, (and for others I take little care) since I deal no more unkindly with their first *Fergus*, and his Successors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his. The first *Scottish* King that settled himself in the North of *Britain*, is, according to the above named *Hector Boetius*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Coyle* governed the *Britans*, came (forsooth) into these parts out of *Ireland*. From him, unto *Eugenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued succession: which *Eugenius*, together with his whole Nation, is said to have been expelled the Island, by a joynr confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britans*, and *Picts*. Twenty and seven years after the death of this *Eugenius*, they were reduced again into their possession here, by the valour and conduct of another *Fergus*, the second of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scottish* Kingdom in *Britain*, holding the stories of the former 39 Kings, to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this assertion; this expedition of *Fergus* into *Britain*, being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*; at what time the best Writers of the *Roman* story for those times, report the *Scots* to have first seated themselves in this Island.

The Kings of chief note in the course of the whole Succession are, 1 *Achais*, who died in the year 809 and in his life contracted the offensive and defensive league with *Charles* the Great, between the Kingdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The conditions whereof were, 1 Let this league between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2 Let the enemies unto one, be reputed and handled as the enemies of the other; 3 If the *Saxons* or *Englishmen* invade *France*, the *Scots* shall send thither such numbers of Souldiers as shall be desired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4 If the *English* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* shall at his own charges sent competent assistance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any league, which was either more faithfully observed, or longer continued, than this between these two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occasions so readily assisting the *French*, that it grew to a proverb, or by-word, *He that will France win, must with Scotland first begin*. 2 *Kenneth* the second, who having utterly subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extending his Dominions over all the present *Scotland*, deserved to be accounted the first Monarch of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or so few in number, that they passed afterwards in the name and account of *Scots*) from that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3 *Malcolm* the first, who added *Westmerland*, and *Cumbreland*, unto his Dominions; given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the son of *Athelstane*, to have his aid against the *Danes*, or to keep him neutral. After which time, those Counties were sometimes *Scottish* and sometimes *English*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the second, and united to the Crown of *England*; never since disjoyned. 4 *Kenneth* the third, who by consent of the Estates of his Realm, made the Kingdom hereditary, to descend from the Father to his Eldest Son; before which time (keeping within the compass of the Royall Family) the *Uncle* was sometimes preferred before the *Nephew*; the eldest in years, though furthest off, before the younger Kinman, though the nearer in blood. After which time (the opposition and interruption made by *Constantine* the third, and *Donald* the fourth excepted only) the Eldest sons of these Kings, or the next in birth, have succeeded ordinarily in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of those Tributary and Vassal Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dre*, near *Chester*, in such pomp and majesty. 5 *Malcolm* the third, the son of *Duncan*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Macbeth's* tyranny; and thence brought into *Scotland* at his return, not only some Civilisies of the *English* garb; but the honourary titles of Earls and Barons, not here before used. At the perswasion of the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, (Sister of *Edgar*, surnamed *Atheling*, and after his decease the right Heir of the Crown of *England*) he abolished the barbarous custom spoken of before. He did Homage to *William* the Conquerour for the Crown of *Scotland*, but afterwards siding against him with the *English*, was slain at *Almwick*. 7 *David*, the youngest son of *Malcolm* the third, succeeded his two Brothers, *Edgar* and *Alexander* (dying without issue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Sister and Heir of *Edgar* *Atheling*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldest son of *Edmund* the second, surnamed *Ironside*, King of *England*, had the best title to that Kingdom also: but dispossessed thereof by the *Norman Conquerours*; with whom, by reason of the great puissance of those Kings, and the little love which the *English* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to dispute their Title by force of Arms. From *Maud* the Sister of this *David*, married to *Henry* the first of *England*, descended all the Kings of *England* (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeth's* death: from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *James* the sixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, succeeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his descent from another *Margaret*, the eldest Daughter of King *Henry* the seventh. So that in his person there was not an union of the Kingdoms only, under the Title of *Great Britain*; but a restoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate Heir) to the Crown of *England*; the possession whereof had for so long time continued in the Posterity of the *Norman* Conqueror. And upon this descent it followeth most undeniably, that though the *Norman* Conqueror got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund* the

Scotland.

the second, surnamed *Ironsides*; and that his Successors had enjoyed it by no other Title till *Queen Elizabeth* the sixth: yet *James*, the first Monarch of *Great Britain*, succeeded by a right descent from the *Saxons* Line: without relation to the Conquest of the *Norman* Bastard. 8 *William*, the Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Son Prince *Henry* (who died in the life of his Father) being taken prisoner at the Battail of *Alnwick*, did homage to King *Henry* the second for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon restored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the succeeding Kings, when their affairs with *England* and the World abroad became more considerable, we shall see anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the story of *Machbeth*, than which for variety of action, and strangeness of events, I never met with any more pleasing. The story in brief is thus: *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principal men, whom he employed in all matters of importance; *Machbeth*, and *Banquo*. These two travelling together through a Forrest, were met by three *Fairies*, *Witches* (*Weirds* the *Scots* call them) whereof the first making obeysance unto *Machbeth*, saluted him *Thane* (a title unto which that of *Earl* afterward succeeded) of *Glammis*: the second, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*. This is unequal dealing, saith *Banquo*, to give my friend all the honours, and none unto me; to which one of the *Weirds* made answer, That he indeed should not be King, but out of his Joyns should come a Race of Kings, that should for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus said, they all suddenly vanished. Upon their arrival to the Court, *Machbeth* was immediately created *Thane* of *Glammis*; and not long after, some new service of his requiring new recompence, he was honoured with the title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the two former; he refused not to be wanting to himself in fulfilling the third: and therefore first he killed the King, and after, by reason of his command among the Souldiers, and common people, he succeeded in his Throne. Being scarce warm in his feat, he called to mind the prediction given to his Companion *Banquo*: whom hereupon suspecting as his supplanter, he caused him to be killed, together with his whole Posterity; *Fleance* one of his Sons, escaping only with no small difficulty, into *Wales*. Freed as he thought, from all fear of *Banquo* and his issue, he built *Dunsinane* Castle, and made it his ordinary seat: and afterwards on some new fears, consulting with certain of his *Wizards* about his future Estate; was told by one of them, that he should never be overcome, till *Bernane* Wood (being some miles distant) came to *Dunsinane* Castle; and by another, that he should never be slain by any man which was born of a Woman. Secure then, as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the space of 18 years; for so long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the measure of his iniquities, *Mac-duffe* the Governour of *Fife*, associating to himself some few *Patriots*, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyranny; privily met one evening at *Bernane* Wood: and taking every one of them a bough in his hand, (the better to keep them from discovery) marched early in the morning towards *Dunsinane* Castle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Machbeth* escaping was pursued by *Mac-duffe*, who having overtaken him, urged him to the combat; to whom the Tyrant, half in scorn, returned this Answer, That he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his *deslinie* never to be slain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then said *Mac-duffe*, is thy fatal end drawing fast upon thee; for I was never born of Woman, but violently cut out of my Mothers belly: which words so daunted the cruel Tyrant, though otherwise a valiant man and of great performances, that he was very easily slain; and *Malcolm* *Commer*, the true Heir of the Crown, seated in the Throne. In the mean time *Fleance* so prospered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Countrey; and on her begat a Son called *Walter*; who flying out of *Wales*, returned into *Scotland*; and his descent once known, he was not only restored to the Honours, and Estates of his Ancestors, but preferred to be *Steward* of the house of *Edgar*, the son of *Malcolm* the third, surnamed *Commer*; the name of *Stewart*, growing hence hereditary unto his Posterity. From this *Walter* descended that *Robert Stewart*, who succeeded *David Bruce* in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have Reigned successively in that kingdom. But it is now time to leave off particulars, and look into the general Succession of

The Kings of *Scots* before the Conquest
of the *Picts*.

424	1	Fergus.	604	11	Kenneth.	21	Mordac.	
	2	Eugenius.		12	Eugenius III.	730	22	Etfinus.
449	3	Dongal.	622	13	Ferguard.	23	Eugenius VII.	
	4	Constantine.		14	Donald.	24	Fergus II.	
	5	Congall.		15	Ferguard II.	25	Solvathinus.	
	6	Goran.		16	Malduine.	26	Achairs.	
	7	Eugenius II.		17	Eugenius IV.	809	27	Congall III.
	8	Congall II.		18	Eugenius V.		28	Dongal II.
	9	Kinnatel.		19	Amberkeleth.	29	Alpine, slain in a Bat-	
10	10	Aidan.		20	Eugenius VI.	tail by the Picts, in pursuit of		

his quarrel for that Kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in Right of his Mother, Sister
and Heir of *Hungius* the last King thereof.

30 Kenneth II. Son of *Alpine*; who utterly subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby the *Scotish* Kingdom, from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern Scotland.

Scotland; of which deservedly accounted the first *Monarch*; the Founder of the new *Scotland*.

The Kings of the Scots after the Conquest
of the Picts.

[illegible]

Scotland.

- 1491 33 James IV. married Margaret, the eldest Daughter of King Henry the seventh, but at the soliciting of the French, (against the Peace between the Nations) he invaded England (in the absence of King Henry the eighth) with 100000 men: but was met with by the Earl of Surrey (having 26000 men in his Army) nigh unto Flodden; where he was slain, together with two Bishops, twelve Earls, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.
- 1514 34 James V. son of James the fourth, and the Lady Margaret, kept for a time such good correspondence with the English, that in the year 1536, he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred against them, he invaded their Borders, in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord Wharton, then Warden of the West Marches. The battels being ready to joyn, one S. Oliver Sinclair the Kings favourite, though otherwise of no great parentage, was by the Kings directions proclaimed General: which the Scottish Nobility took in such indignation, that they threw down their weapons, and suffered themselves to be taken prisoners; there being not one man slain on either side. The principal prisoners were the Earls of Glencarn, and Cassiles; the Barons Maxwell, Oliphant, Somervell, Flemming, with divers others: besides many of the principal Gentry. 28.
- 1542 35 Mary, the Daughter and only lawfully-begotten child of James the fifth, succeeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promised in marriage to King Edward the sixth of England; but by the power of the Hamiltons carried into France, where married to Francis then Dauphin, afterwards King of the French, of that name the second. After whose death, she married Henry Lord Darnly, eldest Son of Matthew Earl of Lennox. Outed of her Dominions by a potent Faction, she was compelled to flee into England; where after a tedious imprisonment, she was put to death in Fotheringhay Castle in Northamptonshire, and interred at Peterburgh, Anno 1586.
- 1567 36 James VI. the Son of Mary Queen of Scots, and of Henry Lord Darnly, was crowned King in his Cradle also. He married Anne, the Daughter of Christiern the third, King of Denmark; was chofe of the Order of the Garter, Ann. 1590. and succeeded Queen Elizabeth in the Realm of England, March 24. Ann. 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent foresight of Henry the seventh, who having two Daughters, bestowed the Eldest (contrary to the mind of his Council) on the King of Scots, and the younger on the King of the French: that so, if his own Issue male should fail, and that a Prince of another Nation mult inherit England; then Scotland as the lesser Kingdom would depend upon England, and not England wait on France, as upon the greater. In which succession of the Scots to the Crown of England, the Prophecy of the fatal Stone, spoken of before, did receive accomplishment. And so perhaps might that ascribed in the *Polychronicon* to an holy Anchorite living in King Egelseds time, which is this, Englishmen, for that they wretched them to drunkenness, to treason, and to retchlesness of Gods house, first by Danes, and then by Normans, and the third time by Scots, whom they holden least worth of all, they shall be overcome. Then the world shall be unstable, and so divers and variable, that the instableness of thoughts shall be beset by many manner diversity of Clothing. For on this union of the Kingdoms, this prediction seems to have been accomplished; the circumstances mentioned in the same so patly agreeing, and the Scots never subduing England, but by this blessed Victory. Unless perhaps the Accomplishment thereof be still to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great defeat at Bannock-burn, in which was slain 50000 English, as the Scottish Writers do report, and the name of Scot growing so terrible for a time, that an hundred of the English would flee from three Scots, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* estimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 sterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not commodity in this Kingdom to allure strangers to traffick: the Domain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Country in most places barren; and many of the Subjects, those especially of the Out-Isles, and the Western parts, so extremely barbarous, that they add very small improvement to the publick Treasury.

And answerable to the shortness of their standing Revenue, were their Forces also. For though the Country be very populous, and the men generally patient both of cold and hunger, and inured to hardship; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces seldom held together above 40 days; and then, if not a great deal sooner, did disband themselves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to serve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them such and so many of their Vassals, as the present service did require: used to provide for themselves and their followers, tents, money, victuals, provision of all forts, and all other necessities; the King supplying them with nothing. Which being spent, they usually disbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reason, why the Scots in the time of hostility betwixt the Nations, made only sudden and tumultuary incursions into England; without performing any thing of special moment: and that they have not acted any thing elsewhere in the way of conquest; but only as Mercenaries to the French and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King James the fourth, when he invaded England in the time of King Henry the eighth, (being then in France) consisted of 100000 fighting men; yet this I look on only as an argument of their populousity: few of those men being armed

or

Scotland.

or trained up to service; and therefore easily discomfited by a far less Army. It's true, that in the year 1643. the Scottish Covenanters raised an Army consisting of 18000 Foot, and 1000 Horse, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery and Ammunition correspondent to it: which was the gallantest Army, and the best appointed, that ever that Nation did set out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withall, that this Army was maintained and payed, by the two Houses of the Parliament of England, at the rate of 30000 l. per mensum, and an advance of 100000 l. before-hand, the better to invite them to embrace the action, and prepare necessities for it; without any charge unto themselves. And though the Army which they sent into England above five years after, under James Duke Hamilton of Arran, was little inferior unto this in number, but far superiour to it both in Horse and Arms, and other necessary appointments: yet it is well known, that the Scots brought nothing but their own bodies to compound that Army; the Horse and Arms being such as they had gotten out of England, in the former War.

In point of reputation amongst foreign Princes, the Kings of the Scots, and their Ambassadors and Agents, had place in all General Councils, and Ecclesiastical Assemblies, before those of Castile: and by the Statists of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of England, France, and Spain) for absolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only since the first years of King Edward the third, when they had quitted their subjection and vassalage to the Crown of England. For that anciently the Scots were Homagers to the Kings of England, may be apparently demonstrated by these following Arguments. 1 By the Homages, and other services, and duties, done by the Kings of the Scots unto those of England: Malcolm the third doing Homage unto William the Conquerour; as William one of his Successors did to K. Henry the second: and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of Huntingdon, (as by some pretended) but for the very Crown it self: Kenneth the third, being also one of those eight Tributary or Vassal Kings, which rowed King Edgar over the Dee, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interposing of King Edward the first, and the submission of the Scots to that interposing, in determining the controvercie of succession betwixt Bruce and Baliol: as in like case, Philip the Fair adjudged the title of Artois, which was holden of the Crown of France, and then in question betwixt the Lady Maund, and her Nephew Robert; or as King Edward the third, in the right of the said Crown of France, determined of the controvercie betwixt John Earl of Montfort, and Charles of Blais, for the Dukedom of Bretagne. 3ly, By the confession and acknowledgment of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Estates of Scotland, subscribed by all their hands and seals in the Roll of Ragman; wherein they did acknowledge the superiority of the Kings of England, not only in regard of such advantages as the sword had given him, but as of his original and undoubted right. Which Roll was treacherously delivered into the hands of the Scots, by Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, in the beginning of the reign of King Edward the third. 4ly, By the tacit concession of the Kings themselves, who in their Coins, Commissions, and publick Instruments, assume not to themselves the title of Kings of Scotland, but of Reges Scottorum, or the Kings of the Scots: and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is some superiour Lord (King Paramount as we may call him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5ly, By the Judgements and Arrests of the Courts of England, not only in the times of King Edward the first, but in some times since. For when William Wallis a Scotsman by birth, and the best Souldier of that Country, was taken Prisoner and brought to London, he was adjudged to suffer death as a Traytor: which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgement, had he been a Prisoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of England. The like done in the case of Simon Frezill, another of that Kingdom, in the same Kings reign. In like manner, in the time of King Edward the third, it was resolved by the Court, in the Lord Beaumonts case, when it was objected that one of the Witnesses was a Scot, and therefore as an Alien not to give his evidence; that his testimony was to be allowed of, because the Scots in the Law of England, did not go for Aliens. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13th of Queen Elizabeths Reign, desired a *Medietatem Lingua*, because he was a Scotchman, and so an Alien; it was denied him by the Court, because the Scots were not reputed here as Aliens, but as Subjects rather. So also, when Robert Umfraville, Lord of Kyms, was summoned to the Parliament of England, in the Reign of King Edward the third, by the name of Robert Earl of Angus, (which is a dignity in Scotland); and after in a Writ against him was called only by his own name of Umfraville, without any addition of that honour; the Writ was judged to abate: which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if Scotland had not been reputed to be under the Vassalage of the Kings of England. 6ly, and lastly, by a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my custody) granted by King Edward the first, in the last year of his Reign, to Peter Dodge of Stopworth in the County of Chester, one of the Ancestors of my Mother: in which it is expressed, that the said Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent services, *contre son grand Enemy et Rebel*, Baliol, Roy d'Escoffe et Vassal de Angleterre; that is to say, against his great Enemy and Rebel Baliol King of Scotland, and Vassal of England. A thing so clear, that if King James had not been extremely tender of the honour of his native Country, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a New invention, in hammering the Case of the *Post-nati* for him; to make the Scots inheritable unto Lands in England. The acknowledgment and Reviver of their old Subjection would have served his turn. But of this argument enough, and perhaps too much. I only add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable person of that Kingdom of Scotland, employed unto the Court in a business of no mean consequence to the peace and quiet of his Country: I found him so sensible of the inconveniences of their present Government, by reason of the Kings absence, and the frequent divisions and partialities of his Council there; that he confessed that Nation could

be

Ireland. be never rich or happy, till they were made a Province of the English Empire; and governed by a Vice-Roy, as Ireland was.

The principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of St. Andrew, instituted by Hungar, King of the Poles, to encourage his Subjects in the War against King Athelstane of England. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thistles, with the picture of St. Andrew appendant to it: The Motto, *Nemo me impune lacessit*. It took this name because after the battle, Hungar and his Souldiers went all barefoot to St. Andrews, and there vowed that they and their Posterity would thenceforth use his Cross as their Ensign (which is a Saltire Argent in a Field Azure) whenever they took in hand any warlike enterprise.

2 But this Order being expired many Ages since, there is now no Order of Knight-hood in it, (except *Knights Bachelors*) but that of *Nova Scotia*; ordained by King James, Ann. 1622. for the planting of that Countrey by Scottish Colonies; in imitation of the Orders of Baronets in England, for the plantation of Ulster. Hereditary, as that also is, but the Knights hereof distinguished by a Ribband of Orange-Tawny.

The Arms are Sol, a Lion Rampant Mars, within a double Tressure counter flowered: Which Tressure counter flowered was added to the Lion by Achais King of the Scots, at what time he contracted the League with France: signifying (saith Heitor Boetius one of their Historians) *Francia opibus Leonem exinde munendum*; that the Scotch Lion should be guarded by the riches of France.

Reckoned in Scotland, with
the Isles of it,
Archbishops 2. Bishops 12.
Universities two,
S. Andrews. Aberdeen.

IRELAND.

IRELAND is invironed on all sides with the Ocean; parted from Britain by a violent and unruly Sea, called S. Georges Channell. Situate on the West of Britain, next unto which it is the biggest Island of Europe, containing in length 300, and in breadth 120 miles: and is seated under the 8th and 10th Climates; the longest day being 16 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts.

It was once called *Scotia*, from the Scots who did there inhabit; and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from Scotland, in the Isle of Britain. But the general name hereof is Ireland; by the Latins called *Hibernia*, by the Greeks, *Iernia*. And though some frame a wrested Etymology from *Iberus*, a Spanish Captain and some from *Irananph*, once a supposed Duke hereof; as others ab *Hylerno aere*, the Winter-like and inclement air: yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which signifyeth in their own language a Western land. And yet I must not pretermitt the Etymon given us by *Bochartus*, (more near the name than most of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Ibernae*, a Phœnician word, signifying the furthest Habitation: there being no Countrey known amongst the Ancients, which lay West of Ireland.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Cesarea*, *Noahs* Neece, inhabited here before the Flood; and how 300 years after the Flood, it was subdued by *Bartholomæus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Giants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delus* a *Grecian*, came hither: and last of all *Gaothel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* Daughters; who must needs name this Island *Scotia*. But not to honour such *fopperies* with a confutation, doubly the first inhabitants of this Island came out of Britain. For Britain is the nighest Countrey unto it, and so had a more speedy waftage hither; Secondly, the ancient Writers call this Island, a *British Island*; and thirdly, *Tacitus* giveth us of this Countrey this verdict; *Solum, eorumque cultus & ingenia hominum, hanc multum à Britannia differunt*; the Soil and Air, the habits and disposition of the people, were not much unlike the *Britans*. For further evidence whereof, it was observed, at the reduction of Wales to the Crown of England, by King Edward the first, that many of their Laws and Customs were those of the *Irish*: which shews that they did both descend from the same Original. But then we must observe withall, that they were counted far more barbarous and savage by most ancient Writers, than those of Britain are deciphered at the first discovery: said by *Serabo* to be Man-eaters; accustomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the blood of those whom they slew in fight. Nor were the women, though the softer and more tender Sex, free from such wilde and savage customs, it being a constant course amongst them, when they were delivered of a man-child, to put some meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a sword; wishing therewith it might not die but in the middelt of Arms, and the heat of battel. Both Sexes used to trim themselves with the Teeth of Fishes, white as the driven Snow, or the polished Ivory; and therein placed the greatest part of their pride and bravery.

Nor

Nor are the modern *Irish* much abhorrent from such barbarous customs, as plainly shew from what Original they descend; altered but little by converse with more civil Nations. Of natural constitution generally strong and nimble of body, haughty of heart, careless of their lives, patient in cold and hunger, implacable in enmity, constant in love, light of belief, greedy of glory; and in a word, if they be bad, you shall no where finde worse; if they be good, you shall hardly meet with better. The Diet, especially of the meer *Irish*, is for the most part, on herbs, roots, butter mingled with Oat-flower, milk, and beef-broth: eating flesh many times without bread, which they digest with *Uisgebanngh*; and give their bread-corn to their horses in stead of *Provender*. But more particularly, those of the richer sort in all parts, and of all sorts those which inhabit within the Pale (as they themselves call it) and in such places where the English Discipline hath been entertained; conformable to civility, both in behaviour and apparel; The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the wild *Irish* of the poorer and inferiour sort) most extremely barbarous; nor behaving themselves like *Christians*, scarcely like men. All of them so tenacious of their ancient customs, that neither power, nor reason, nor the sense of the inconveniencies which they suffer by it, can wean them to desert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their use of *Floughings*, nor with such gears or harness, as in other places; but by tying the hindmost horses head to the tail of the former: which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unserviceable by the soon losing of their tails; and withall is a course of so slow a dispatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a week, as a good Team well harnessed would perform in a day; yet no persuasion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtfull and ridiculous custom. And when the Earl of Strafford, the late Lord Deputy, had damned it by Act of Parliament, and laid a penalty on such as should after use it: the people thought it such a grievance, and so injurious to the Nation, that among other things demanded towards a Pacification of the present troubles, their Agents and Commissioners insisted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of Husbandry, we shall hereafter meet with, in another place. Neer of kin to which is a lazie custom that they have of burning their straw (rather than put themselves to the pains to thresh it) by that means to part it from the Corn. From which no reason can dissuade them, nor persuasions win them. They have among them other customs as absurd, though less inconvenient; as placing a green bush on May-day before their doors, to make their kine yield the more milk; kneeling down to the *May-Moon* as soon as they see it, desiring her to leave them in as good health as she found them; and many others of like nature.

They use a language of their own, but spoken also in the West of Scotland, and the Hebrides or Western Islands; which though originally *British*, or a Dialect of it, by reason of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *East Angles*, or *Osians*, and *English-Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Welsh*, for ought I can learn.

The Christian faith was first preached among them by S. Patrick, affirmed to be the Nephew of S. Martin of Tours, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civil parts, and the English Colonies, according to the platform of the Church of England; but the *Kernes*, or natural wild *Irish*, (and many of the better sort of the Nation also) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own superstitious fancies, as in former times. And to say truth, it is no wonder that they should; there being no care taken to instruct them in the Protestant Religion, either by translating the Bible, or the English Liturgy, into their own Language, as was done in Wales; but forcing them to come to Church to the English Service, which the people understand no more than they do the Mass. By means whereof, the *Irish* are not only kept in continual ignorance, as to the doctrine and devotions of the Church of England, and others of the Protestant Churches; but those of Rome are furnished with an excellent Argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers do not understand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State (when these dissenters are composed) to provide, that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of Christian instruction and devotion, in their natural tongue.

The Soil of it self is abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for grafs and pasturage, than it is for tillage: as may be seen in such places where the industry of man is aiding to the natural goodness of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Countrey is either over-grown with Wood, or encumbered with vast Boggs and unwholsom Marishes; yielding neither profit nor pleasure unto the Inhabitants. In some places, as in the County of *Armagh*, so rank and fertile; that the laying of any soil or compost on it, doth abate its fruitfulness, and proves the worst Husbandry that can be.

It hath been anciently very famous for the Piety and Religious lives of the Monks. Amongst whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*; and of him this memorable *Apophthegm*: when offered many fair preferments to leave his Countrey, he returned this Answer, *It becomes not them to embrace other mens goods, who for Christs sake had forsaken their own*. Of no less piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Rafe*, Archbishop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flourished about the year 1357. A declared enemy of the Errors and corruptions of the Church of Rome.

It is affirmed of this Island, that amongst other priviledges which it hath above other Islands it fostereth no venomous Serpent, and that no such will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her self we find her speaking in the Poet:

Ireland.

*Ille ego sum Graiis Glacialis Hibernia dicta;
Cui Deus, & melior rerum nascentium Origo,
Pecunia commune dedit cum Creta alvace Tonantis,
Anguis ne nostris diffundant stila in oris.*

I am that Island which in times of old
The Greeks did call *Hybernia*, ycie-cold:
Secur'd by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Jove's* Mother dear,
That poisonous Snakes should never here be bred,
Or dare to hiss, or hurtful venom spread.

The other miracles of this Island, are, 1 That there is a Lake in the County of *Armagh*, into which if one thrust a piece of Wood, he shall finde that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned into Iron; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whet-stone: richly deserved by him, if the tale be false, who did first report it. 2 That the Kine will yield no Milk, if their Calves be near by them; or at least their Calves skins stuffed with straw or hay. It is said also, that all the breed of this Country are of less size than they be in *England*, except Women and Greyhounds, and those much bigger than with us.

As for the Clergy of this Country, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons*, in former times: some of their Bishops being so poor, that they had no other Revenues than the Pasture of two Milch-beasts. And so far had the Monasteries and Religious houses invaded by Appropriations, the Churches rights; that of late times in the whole Province of *Connacht*, the whole stipend of the Incumbents was not above 40 shillings, in some places not above 16. So that the poor Irish must needs be better fed than taught: for ad tenuitatem Beneficiorum, necessarii sequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum; Pope Benefices will be fitted with ignorant Priests, said *Puritanism* rightly. But this is remedied in part by his Sacred Majesty King *CHARLES*, the second Monarch of Great Britain, who liberally (at the suit of the late Lord Archbishop of *Canterbury*) restored unto this Church all the Impropriations and Portions of *Tithes*, which had been vested in the Crown. An action of most singular piety, and Princely bounty.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are, 1 The *Shannon* (the *Sennus* of *Ptolemy*) which arising in the Mountains of *Leirinn* in the County of *Connacht*, and making many fair Lakes as it passeth forwards; loseth it self, after a course of 260 miles (of which 60 navigable) in the Western Ocean. 2 The *Liff*, by *Ptolemy* called *Lithinus*, neighboured by the City of *Dublin*. 3 *Avonliff*, or *Blackwater*, as the English call it. 4 *Slane*, supposed to be the *Medona* of the ancient Writers. 5 The *Shannon*. 6 The *Boyne*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue, out of the *Canto* of the marriage of the *Thames* and *Medway*, in the *Fairy Queen*.

There was the *Liff* rowling down the sea,
The sandy *Slane*, the stony *Avonliff*,
The spacious *Sheninn* spreading like a sea,
The pleasant *Boyne*, the fishy-fruitfull *Banne*,
Swift *Avonliff*, which of the Englishmen
Is call'd *Blackwater*; and the the *Liff* deep,
Sad *Trowie* that once his people over-ran,
Strong *Ala* rumbling from *Slenglogher* steep,
And *Maunlo* mine, whose waves I whilom taught to weep.

There also was the wide-embayed *Maye*,
The pleasant *Bandon* crown'd with many wood;
The spreading *Lee*, that like an Island fair
Incloseth *Cork* with his divided flood;
And balefull *Owne*, late stain'd with English blood,
With many more,

So the renowned *Spencer* in his *Canto* of the marriage of *Thames* and *Medway*.

But besides these Rivers, this Island is in most places well stored with Lakes, yielding great plenty of Fish to the parts adjoining. The principal of which, 1 *Lough-Erris*, containing 15 miles in breadth, and 30 miles in length; shaded with woods, and so replenished with Fish, that the Fishermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their nets. It hath also in it many Islands, one most remarkable for the strange and horrid noises which are therein heard; called therefore by the vulgar *St. Patrick's Purgatory*. Almost as big as this is a Lake of *Cordes*, which loseth it self in the Sea not far from *Galway*. A Lake of 26 miles in length, and four in breadth; said to have in it 30 Isles, abounding with Pine-trees. 3 *Lough-Foyle*, supposed to be the *Ligia* of *Ptolemy*. 4 *Lough-Enagh*, out of which the River *Banne*, abundantly well stored with Salmon, hath its first Origin. And besides these and many others of less note, there are said to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meath*, not far asunder, and having an intercourse of waters: but of so different a temper, that

Ireland.

the Fish which are proper to the one (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar sorts) will not live in the other: but either dieth, or by some secret conveyances, find a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought.

It was divided anciently into five Provinces, each one a Kingdom of it self; that is to say, 1 *Leinster*, 2 *Meath*, 3 *Ulster*, 4 *Connacht*, and 5 *Mounster*: but of late time the Province of *Meath* is reckoned for a Member or part of *Leinster*.

1 *LEINSTER*, by the Latines called *Lagenia*, hath on the East, the *Irish Channel*, (commonly called *S. Georges Channel*) by which parted from the Isle of *Great Britain*; on the West, the River *Newrie*, (as the Latines call it) which divides it from *Mounster*; on the North, the Province of *Meath*; and the main Ocean on the South. The Soil more fruitful generally than the rest of *Ireland*, because better cultivated and manured, as having been longest in the possession of the English: from whom a great part of the Inhabitants do derive themselves, and for that reason more conformable to the civilities and habit of the English Nation. Well watered, besides a large Sea-coast, with many fair and pleasant Rivers, the principal whereof, 1 the *Bannam*, called in Latine *Birgus*; 2 the *Newrie*, 3 the *Shannon*, and 4 the *Liff*, (the Latines of *Ptolemy*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief City.

It containeth the Counties of 1 *Dublin*, 2 *Kilkenny*, 3 *Catherlough*, 4 *Kildare*, 5 *Lease*, or *Queens County*, 6 *Ophalie*, or *Kings County*; and 7 *Wexford*: in which are comprehended 34 Towns of note, and 88 Castles well fortified, and able to make good resistance against an Enemy: the English being forced to fortifie themselves in their Plantations with strong holds and fortresses, against the incursions of the Natives.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Dublin*, supposed to be the *Eblena* of *Ptolemy*; by the Irish called *Baleachigh*, because being seated in a fenny and moorish soil, it was built on piles, as the word doth signifie in that language. Situate at or near the mouth of the River *Liff*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are many times encumbered with heaps of Sand. The City very rich and populous, as being the Metropolis of all the Island; the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbishop See, and an University, besides the benefit redounding from the Courts of Justice. In whose respects well-fortified against all emergencies; and adorned with many goodly buildings, both private and publique. The principal of which, are the Castle, wherein the Lord Deputy resident, built by *Henry Landres* once Archbishop here; a Colledge founded by *Queen Elizabeth*, to the honour, and by the name of the blessed *Trinity*; the Cathedral Church dedicated to *S. Patrick*, the Apostle of the Irish Nation; a fair Collegiate Church called *Christ Church*; besides thirteen others destined to Parochial meetings. Being destroyed almost to nothing in the *Danish Wars*, it was re-edified by *Harald*, surnamed *Harfager*, King of the *Normans*, then Masters of most parts of the Island; and after the subjection of it to the Crown of *England*, was peopled with a Colony of *Bristol* men. 2 *Wexford*, or *Wexford*, the Metropolis of *Ptolemy*, situate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, supposed to be the *Medona* of the same Author: the first of all the Towns in *Ireland* which received a Colony of English. 3 *Kilkenny*, on the River *Newrie*, the chief Seat of the Bishop of *Offery*, and the fairest Town of all the Islands: so called, quasi *Cella Canici*, the Cell or Monastery of *Canicus*, a man of great renown for piety, in these parts of the Country: 4 *Kildare*, an In-land Town also, and a Bishops See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earl to the ancient Family of the *Fitz-Gerards*, of long time honoured with this Title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the 6th, as a man of so unquiet and turbulent a nature, that his Adversaries closed their charge against him with this expression: *Finally, all Ireland cannot rule this Earl*; the King replied, that then this Earl should rule all Ireland: and so for his jests sake, made him Lord Deputy of the Kingdom. 5 *Rosse*, once populous, well traded, and of large circumference, now a ruine only; nothing remaining but the Walls, which were built by *Isabel*, the Daughter of *Richard Strongbow* Earl of *Denbroke*, the fortunate Conqueror of this Island for King *Henry* the second. 6 *Philip's Town*, the principal of the County of *Ophalie*, or *Kings County*; so called in honour of King *Philip*; as 7 *Mariburg*, the chief of *Lease*, or the *Queens County*, was in honour of *Queen Mary*. 8 *Leighlin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified, against the incursion of the Irish, by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9 *Catherlough*, commonly, but corruptly *Carlow*, a Town of great strength, and the chief of that County. 10 *Rheban*, not otherwise of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rheba* of *Ptolemy*.

2 *MEATH*, by the Latines called *Media*, by *Giraldus*, *Media*; because situate in the midst of the Island, hath on the South *Leinster*; on the West, *Connacht*; on the North, *Ulster*; on the East, the *Irish Sea*, or *S. Georges Channel*. A small, but rich and pleasant Province: well stocked with people, and stored with all things necessary for their sustentation; and for a sweet and wholesome air, not inferior to any. Divided into three Counties only, that is to say, 1 *East-Meath*, 2 *West-Meath*, and 3 *Long-ford*; containing 13 Towns of note, and 14 Castles of good esteem. By reason of which strength, it is called by some writers, the *Chamber of Ireland*.

Towns of most consequence herein, are 1 *Trim*, the chief Town of the County of *East-Meath*, the ancient Barony of the *Lancs*; possessed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and the Lords of the greatest part of *Ulster*. 2 *Trillick*, more properly *Droghda*, situate on the River *Boine* on the edge of *Ulster*, to which Province belongs so much of the Town as lieth on the North side of that River: a very fair and populous City, as well by Art as Nature very strongly fortified, and furnished with a large and commodious Haven. It took the name of *Droghda* from the Bridge there built upon the River, for the conveniency of passage (as the word signifies in that Language) and therefore called *Pontona* by some Latine writers. 3 *Mulling*, the

Ireland. the chief Town of *West-Meth*. 4 *Delvin*, in the same County also, the Barony of the *Nugent*, an ancient Family in this tract. 5 *Longford*, of most note in the County so named, but not else observable.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for *Leinster* since the first Conquest of it, hath been inseparably annexed to the Crown of England) it was first granted in Fega-Farm by King *Henry* the second, to *Hugh Lacy*, a man of great merit and employment in the Conquest of *Ireland*; who left it unto *Walter*, his younger Son. By *Margaret* and *Matilda*, the Nieces of this *Walter*, by his Son *Gilbert*, one moiety hereof came to the *Mortimers* Earls of *March*, and in their right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the fourth; and the other moiety to the *Verduns*, by whom dispersed and scattered into divers Families. Accomplished for one County only till the time of King *Henry* the 8th, by his reign it was divided into *East-Meth*, and *West-Meth*; to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3. *U L S T E R*, by the *Latines* called *Ultonia*, is the largest Province of all *Ireland*, bounded on the South, with *Meth*, and *Connaught*; on the West, with the vast *Irish* Ocean; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean, to which *Ptolomy* gives the name of *Hyperborean*; and on the East, with *S. Georges* Channel. A Country fruitful of it self, but in most places formerly over-grown with woods, and drowned in Marshes and great bogges; by the natural slothfulness of the people, made more responal to the husbandman both for corn, and pasturage, since the late Plantation of the *British*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1. *South*, 2. *Cavan*, 3. *Fermanagh*, 4. *Down*, 5. *Monaghan*, 6. *Armagh*, 7. *Coleraine*, 8. *Tirconnel*, 9. *Tir-Oen*, and 10. *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and Traffick, and 30 Castles for the defence of the Country, and keeping under the wild *Irish*; wilder and more untractable in these Northern parts, than the rest of *Ireland*. The whole well watered with a large and spacious Sea, on three sides thereof; many great Lakes in the body of it, besides the Rivers of 1. *Boyne*, called in *Latine* *Boanda*, which divides it from *Meth*, 2. the *Bann*, 3. *Mountain*, and 4. the *Eyn*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Armagh*, on or near the River *Kalin*, the chief Town of the County so called, and the See of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of all *Ireland*. An ancient City, but miserably defaced by fire in *Tir-Oen* Rebellion, that it can scarce preserve the reputation of a Market-Town. 2. *Carlingford*, and 3. *Dundalk*, both situate on the Sea-side, and both within the County of *South*. 4. *Knock-Fergus*, the chief of *Antrim*, more properly *Rick-Fergus*, (and in that sense called *Carling-Fergus*, by the *Irish*) so called from *Fergus* one of the Kings of the *Irish* Scotts, who there suffered Shipwreck: Seated upon a large and capacious Bay (the *Vindictus* of *Ptolomy*) which giveth it both a safe and commodious Port; as well by natural situation, as the works of Art, very strongly fortified; by reason of the neighbourhood of the *Scotts* in *Cantire*, from which little distant. 5. *Londonderry*, a Colony of the *Londoners*; best built of any Town in the North of *Ireland*. 6. *Dungannon*, the principal seat and residence in former times, of the great *Oncals*. 7. *Dungall*, the principal of *Tirconnel*. 8. *Robogh*, a small Village at present, but anciently a Bishops See: fit to be mentioned in this place in regard it still preserveth some footsteps of the old *Robogh*, an *Irish* Tribe, and placed by *Ptolomy* in this tract, where they gave name unto the Promontory by him called *Robogdium*, now the *Fair-For-land*; as is probably conceived by the learned *Camden*.

This, as it is the largest Province of all this Kingdom, so was it with most difficulty subjected to the Crown of England, and reduced to good order and civility. First conquered by *John Curry* a valiant Englishman, in the reign of King *Henry* the second, by whom created Earl of *Ulster*. But being assigned for his eminent virtues, and after proscribed by King *John*; this Title and Estate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lacy*, the Lord and conqueror of *Meth*, whom before we spoke of. By an *Irish* General of the *Lacles*, it came unto the *Burghs* then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the marriage of *Elizabeth* Daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the last Earl of that Family, it came to *Desmond* Duke of *Clarence*, the second Son (then living) of King *Edward* the third; as by his Daughter *Philipp*, to the Earls of *March*, from them by the like marriage to the house of *York*; and in the person of King *Edward* the 4th, to the Crown again. But being neglected by the *English*, in the whole course of their Government, especially in the Wars betwixt *York* and *Lancaster*, it was canbored into many Estates and Principalities, by the great Lords of the natural *Irish*, (who had both too great sway here in the former times); and so estranged from the civilities of England, and their Allegiance to that Crown, as if it had never been in subjection to it. In which estate it did continue (the Kings of England having here no more power or profit, than the great ones of the Country were pleased to give them): till the Rebellion first, and afterwards the vanquishment of *Hugh O'neal*, the then Earl of *Tir-Oen*, brought it in full subjection to the *English* government, of which more hereafter.

4. *CONNAUGHT*, in *Latine* called *Connacia*; by the *Irish*, *Connacht*; is bounded on the North, with *Ulster*; on the West, with the main Ocean; on the South, with *Down*, from which parted by the River *Shannon*; and on the East, with *Meth*; and some part of *Leinster*. So called from the *Nagats*, an old *Irish* Nation, or from *Nagatsa* a Port-town; both placed by *Ptolomy* in this tract. The soil of the same temper with that of *Ulster*; as woody and as full of bogges till these later times, in which it differently well cleared of both inconveniences.

It hath been also called by our *English* Writers, the County of *Clare*; from *Thomas de Clare*, one of the younger Sons of *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloucester*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward* the first: and is divided at the present, into these five Shires; that is to say, 1. *Leitrim*, 2. *Roscommon*, 3. *Sligo*, 4. *Sligo*, and 5. *Galloway* and *Twomond*.

In which are comprehended but 8 Towns of any consequence, for commerce and traffick, (an argument of the imperfect plantation of it by the *English* Conquerors); and about 24 Castles, for defence of the Country, of old erection, besides such Fortresses as have been raised occasionally in these later troubles.

Places of most note and observation, 1. *Toam*, an Archbishops See. 2. *Athenry*, an ancient Town, but decayed and ruinous; of most renown for being the Barony of *John de Bermingham*, a noble Englishman, who had great possessions in this tract. 3. *Leitrim*, the chief Town of the County so named, neighboured by the *Curlew* Mountains, unfortunately memorable for the great defeat there given the *English*, in *Tir-Oen* rebellion; and by the Spring or Fountain of the River *Shenin* or *Shanon*, whose course we have before described. 4. *Sligo*, and 5. *Roscommon*, the chief Town of their several Counties. 6. *Athlone*, a piece of great strength, and the Key of *Connaught*. 7. *Twomond*, not otherwise much observable, but for giving the title of an Earl to the noble Family of *O'Brian*, (descended from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that honour by King *Henry* the 8th. 8. *Galloway* the principal of this Province, a Bishops See, and the third City of the Kingdom for beauty and bigness. Situate near the fall of the great Lake or River of *Corbes*, in the Western Ocean, defended on that side from the fury of the Sea, and the fear of invasions, by the interposition of some Islands (called the *Iles of Arran*) very strongly fortified. A noted Empory, and lately of so great fame with foreign Merchants, that an out-landish Merchant meeting with an *Irish* man, demanded in what part of *Galloway*, *Ireland* stood; as if *Galloway* had been the name of the Island, and *Ireland* only the name of some Town.

This once a Kingdom of it self, as the rest of those Provinces; the last King whereof was *Roderick*, surnamed the Great, who having a great hand over the rest of the *Royalets*, entituled himself sole Monarch or King of *Ireland*. But being forced to submit himself to King *Henry* the second, his Country at the last was brought into subjection to the Crown of England, by the valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare*, Earl of *Gloucester*, *William de Bermingham*, and other Noble Adventurers of the *English* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their labours; yet the greatest part of the spoil, together with the title of Lords of *Connaught*, fell to the Family of the *Burghs*; from them to *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was shewn. Cantoned again amongst the *Irish* and degenerate *English*, as *Ulster* was, by the supine neglect of the Kings of England: till the Rebellion of *Tir-Oen*, involving all the Chiefs of the *Irish* Nation in the same cause with him, involved them also consequently in the same destruction.

5. *MOUNSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North, with *Connaught*; on the East, with *Leinster*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* or Western Ocean; and on the South, with the *Vergivian*. By the natural *Irish* it is called *Mown*, whence the *English* had the name of *Mounster*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertility of the soil, yields not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into six Counties, viz. 1. *Limerick*, 2. *Waterford*, 3. *Cork*, 4. *Desmond*, 5. *Kerry*, and 6. *Tipperary*; which two last anciently enjoyed all the rights of a County Palatine: And in these Shires are comprehended (besides many safe Stations and Rodes for Shipping) 24 Towns of note and trading, and 66 Castles of old erection.

Places of most observation, 1. *Cassiter*, in the County of *Limerick*, an Archbishops See, advanced unto that honour by Pope *Eugenius* the third, about the year 1150. 2. *Limerick*, the principal of that County, and the fourth in estimation of all the Kingdom: Situate in an Island compassed round about with the River *Shannon*, by which means well fortified; a well frequented Empory, and a Bishops See; distant from the main Ocean about 60 miles, but so accommodated by the River, that Ships of burden come up close to the very walls. The Castles and the Bridge-pieces of great both strength and beauty, were of the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with the situation. 3. *Clonmel*, in the County of *Tipperary*, of great strength and consequence. 4. *Holy Cross*, in the same County also, once flourishing by reason of the great resort of Pilgrims, to see and worship there a piece of the holy Cross; as it was supposed: which supposition as it drew much wealth unto the Town, so it obtained the rights of a County Palatine for the County also. 5. *Thurles*, in the same County, which gives the title of a Vicount to the Earls of *Ormond*, but not else observable. 6. *Waterford*, on the River *Shannon*, a well traded Port, a Bishops See, and the second City of the Kingdom. Of great fidelity to the *English* since the conquest of *Ireland*, and for that cause endowed with many ample privileges. First built by some *Norwegian* Pirates, who though they fixed it in one of the most barren parts and most foggy air of all the Country, yet they made choice of such a safe and commodious site for the use of shipping, that of a nest of Pirats it was effoons made a Receipt for Merchants, and suddenly grew up to great wealth and power. 6. *Cork*, (by the *Latines* called *Coracgia*) the principal of that County, and a Bishops See: well walled, and fitted with a very commodious Haven; consisting chiefly of one street reaching out in length; inhabited by a civil, wealthy, and industrious people. 7. *Dunk-Eran*, an old Episcopal See, supposed by some to be the *Tivernus* of *Ptolomy*, but not else observable. 8. *Kinsale*, upon the mouth of the River *Bany*, a commodious Port, opposite to the Coasts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tir-Oen* Rebellion by a Spanish Garrison, under the command of *Don John de Aguilar*: but soon recovered (after the defeat of that Grand Rebel near the walls hereof (by the valour and indefatigable industry of *Charles* Lord *Mountjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom). 9. *Baltimore*, 10. *Youghill*, and 11. *Berehaven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of safe Roads or convenient Havens. 12. *Lismore*, of old a Bishops See; now annexed to *Waterford*, in which Shire it standeth. Nothing in point of story singular which concerns this Province; but that it was so carefully looked to by the Kings of England, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer (in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to the

Ireland.

the Deputy himself) called the Lord President of Munster: by whose vigilancy there have hapned fewer Rebellions here, than in any Province of this Island.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Island, being originally *Britans* (as before is said) were in the time of *Ptolemy*, distinguished into the Nations of *Rhogonii*, *Darii*, *Volontii*, *Venicii*, and *Erdini*, possessing the Northern parts, now *Ulster*; the *Amerti*, *Gangani*, and *Nagnate*, inhabiting *Connaught*: the *Velibori*, *Uterni*, *Vodii*, and *Coriondi*, in the South, now *Munster*; and the *Menapii*, *Cauci*, *Blanii*, *Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meth* and *Leinster*. Principal Cities of the which, were, *Eblana*, now *Dublin*; *Manapia*, now *Waterford*; *Nagnata*, which *Ptolemy* honoured with the title of *Urbs insignis*; *Rhigia*, *Rheba*, *Macolthima*, *Lahernis*, *Iuvernus*, &c. not easily discernible by what names we may call them now: this Countrey never being so happy as to come under the power of the *Romans*, the great Masters of *Civility* and good Letters in the West of *Europe*: and by that means, the actions and affairs thereof buried in ignorance and silence. Towards the falling of which Empire we finde the Nation of the *Scots* to be seated here, and from hence first to take possession of the *Hebrides*, or Western Isles, next of the Western part of *Britain* on the North of *Dunbritton-Frith*. Afterwards some of the *Saxon* Monarchs cast their eyes upon it, and made themselves masters of *Dublin*, and some other places; but being incumbered with the *Danes*, could not hold them long: being hardly able to defend their own against that people. The next that undertook the conquest, were the Northern Nations, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Normans*, all passing in the Chronicles of that time, under the name of *Norwegians*: who first only scoured along the Coasts in the way of Piracy. But after finding the weakness of the Island, divided amongst many petty and inconsiderable Princes, they made an absolute conquest of it under the conduct of *Turgesius*, whom they elected for their King: soon rooted out by the policy of the King of *Meth*, the only *Irish* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petty King, by name *Oma-Laghishen*, had a Daughter of renowned beauty, whom *Turgesius* demanded of her Father to serve his lusts: and he seeming willing to condescend to the motion, as if honoured by it, made answer, That besides his Daughter, he had at his disposing many others of more exquisite beauties, which should all be ready at command. *Turgesius* swallowing this bait, desired him with all speed to effect this meeting. But the King of *Meth* attring in the habits of Women, a company of young Gentlemen, who durst for the common liberty adventure their several lives; conducted them to the Tyrants Bed-chamber. And they according to the directions given them, (when for that little modesty sake he had in him, he had commanded all his attendants to avoid the room) assaulted him, now ready for, and expecting more kinde embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Methian* King had by this time, acquainted divers of the better sort with his plot; all which upon a sign given, rush into the Palace, and put to death all the *Norwegians*, and other attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Royalests* enjoyed their former Dominions, till the year 1172, in which *Dermot Mac Morogh* King of *Leinster*, having forced the wife of *Maurice O Rork* King of *Meth*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom; came to the Court of England for succour. To this Petition, *Henry* the second then King, condescended; sending him aid under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, surnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, who restored King *Dermot*, and brought a great part of the Island under the English subjection. *John*, King of England, was the first who was entituled Lord of Ireland; which title was granted him by Pope *Urban* the third, who for the ornament of his Royalty, sent him a plume of Peacock Feathers: and when *Tir-Oen* titled him Defender of the *Irish* Liberty, he was by *Clement* the 8th honoured with the like plume. But here we are to understand, that though the Kings of England used no other title than Lords of Ireland; yet were they Kings thereof in effect and power, Lords Paramount, as we use to say. And though themselves retained only the name of Lords, yet one of them gave to one of his English Subjects, the honourable, but invidious title of Duke of Ireland. And they retained this title of Lords, till the year 1542; in which *Henry* the 8th, in an *Irish* Parliament, was declared King of Ireland, as a name more sacred, and prepleat with Majesty, than that of Lord: at which time also he was declared to be Supreme Head under God, of the Church of Ireland; and the pretended jurisdiction of all foreign Powers, especially the usurped authority of the Pope of Rome renounced by Law, though still acknowledged by too many of this superstitious and untractable People.

The Government of this Countrey, since the first Conquest by the English, hath been most commonly by one Supreme Officer, who is sometimes called the Lord Lieutenant, most generally the Lord Deputy of Ireland; than whom no Vice-Roy in all Europe hath greater power, or comes nearer the Majesty of a King in his Train and State. For his assistance he hath a Privy Council attending on him, though resident for the most part at *Dublin*: and in emergencies, or cases of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the standing Rule of all civil Government, they owe their being and original to the English Parliaments. For in the reign of King *Henry* the 7th, Sir *Edward Poyning*, then Lord Deputy, caused an Act to pass in the *Irish* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in England before that time, were to be entertained and stand in force as the Laws of Ireland. On which foundation they have raised many Superstructures both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, summoned by the Lord Deputy at the Kings appointment: in which, by another Statute made in the time of the said *Poyning*, the people are enabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were first transmitted to the Court of England to be considered of by the King, before they were Voted to in either of the Houses of the *Irish* Parliaments. Which Laws commonly called *Poyning's Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongst them; though the last much stomacked and repined at; not only as a badge of their Subjection to the Crown of England, but as a Curb or Martingale to hold them in.

Yet

Ireland.

Yet notwithstanding these good Laws, and the ample power of their Commission, the Lord Deputies could never absolutely subdue the Island, or bring the people to any civil course of life; the Fathers inflicting an heavy curse on all their posterity, if ever they should sow corn, build houses, or learn the English tongue. To this indisposition of the Irish themselves, let us adde the defects of the Kings of England, and Irish Deputies, in matters of civil policy, as I find them particularized by Sir *John Davies*, in his worthy and pithy discourse of this Subject. I will only glean a few of them. First then saith he, a barbarous Countrey is like a field over-grown with weeds, which must first be well broken with the Plough, and then immediately sown with good and profitable seed: so must a wilde and uncivil people, be first broken and ploughed up by war, and then presently sown with the seed of good Laws and discipline; lest the weeds revive in the one, and ill manners in the other. Here then was the first defect in our English Kings, not to tame and take down the Stomachs and pride of this people, though either civil or torain wars perhaps occasioned this neglect: and also the Irish Deputies, who at such times as the people upon a small discomfiture, were crest-fallen, neglected the keeping of them by severity of discipline. The second oversight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave such large possessions and Regalities unto the first Conquerors, that the people knew no Authority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. The Laws of England were not indifferently communicated to all the Irish, but to some particular Families and Provinces only: inasmuch as there were but five great Lords of the natural Irish, who had the benefit and protection of the Laws of England, that is to say, *O Neel* in *Ulster*, *O Connabor* in *Connaught*, *Mac Morrough* in *Leinster*, *O Malaghlin* in *Meth*, *O Brian* in *Tivernon*; known by the name of *Quingue Sanguines* in some old Records. By means whereof the rest of the people being in the condition of Out-laws, or at the best of Aliens, had no encouragement either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themselves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the Deputies or Lords Lieutenants, who having made good and wholesome Laws against the barbarous customs of the Common people, and the merciless oppressions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for terror, not for reformation. Fifthly, adde unto these (which Sir *John Davies* hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken by the Kings of England in the choyce of their Deputies: sometimes conferring that high Office as a Court-preference, without Relation unto the merits of the person; and sometimes sending men of weak or broken Fortunes, who attended more their own profit than their Masters service, and were more bent to fleece than to feed this flock. Sixthly, And yet besides these Errors of the Kings and Deputies in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the Planters themselves: who building all their Forts and Castles in the open Countreys, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Fastnesses to the natural Irish; the strength whereof not only animated them to Rebel upon all occasions: but served too fitly to continue them in their ancient Barbarism.

In these terms of wildness and non-subjection stood Ireland, till the later end of Queen *Elizabeth*'s reign; at what time the rebellion of *Hugh O Neel* Earl of *Tir-Oen* had engaged almost all the Irish in that desperate action: which ending in the overthrow of that ingrateful Rebel, and all his partizans, not only crushed the overmuch powerableness of the Irish Nobility; but made the final and full conquest of the whole Nation. So true it is, that Every Rebellion when it is suppress, doth make the Prince stronger, and the Subjects weaker. Ireland thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a victor over all her enemies, and left the sowing of it unto her successor King *James*, who omitted no part of a skilful Seed-man. Then there was an *amnesia* or Act of Oblivion made, whereby all the offences against the Crown were remitted, if by such a limited day the people would sue out their Pardons, and by the same Act, all the Irish were manumitted from the servitude of their Lords, and received into the Kings immediate protection. 1^{ly} The whole Kingdom was divided into Shires and Judges Itinerant appointed to circuit them: whereby it hath followed that the exactions of the Lords are laid aside, the behaviour of the people narrowly looked into, the passages before unknown unto our Souldiers, are laid open by our Under-Sheriffs and Bayliffs; and the common people seeing the benefit and security they enjoy by the English Laws, and loth to plead always by an Interpreter, begin to set their children to School, for the learning of the English tongue. 3^{ly} The Irish were not rooted out, as in the first plantation in *Leinster*, and the English only estated in their rooms; but were only removed from the woods, bogs, and mountains, into the plain and open Countrey; that being like wild trees transplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better fruit. And 4^{ly} whereas there was but one Freeholder in a whole Countrey, which was the Lord himself, the rest holding in Villenage, and being subject to the Lords immeasurable taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to build or plant; now the Lords Estate was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himself, which was still left unto him; and that which was in the hands of his Tenants, who had Estates made in their possessions, according to the Common course of England, paying in stead of uncertain Irish taxations, certain English rents: whereby the people have since set their minds upon repairing their houses, and manuring their lands, to the great increase of the private and publick Revenue.

But that which most advanced the reduction of Ireland to a settled and civil Government, and rooted it in a subjection to the Crown of England, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of *Tyrone*, and *Tirconnelle*, Sir *John Odaughertie*, and other great men of the North, possessed of large Territories and great Jurisdictions. Who being both incapable of Loyalty, and impatient of seeing the Kings Judges, Justices, and other Ministers of State, to hold their Sessions, and execute their Commissions of Oyer and Examiner, within the parts where they commanded: without more provocation, or the fear of any danger but a guilty Conscience, forsook the Countrey, and left their whole Estates to the Kings disposing. By whose directions, their Lands were seized upon and sold to several Purchasers, the City of

Ireland.

of London infeoffed in a great part of them, a great plantation made in *Ulster of English, Welch, and Scots*, by the united name of a *British Plantation*; and a new Order of Knights *Baronets* erected in the Kingdom of England for raising money to advance and indear the work. Which had it been as cordially affected by the *English*, as it was by the *Scots*; if more of this Nation had gone thither, and not abandoned so great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the *Scots*, being factious for another, did not easily brook) and the uniting of both people in the bonds of amity: the *Irish* looking on the *Scot* as a meer *Intruder*, but on the *English* as his old Master, or his *Fellow-Subject*. Howsoever, so great a part of the Country (and that which heretofore was the nest of the *Rebels*) being thus disposed of, it came to pass, that *Ireland*, which before served only as a grave to bury our best men, and a gulf to swallow our greatest treasures; being governed neither as a Country *Free*, nor conquer'd: was brought in some hope, by the prudence and policy of her last Kings, and late *Lord Deputies*, to prove an orderly *Commonwealth*; civil in it self, profitable to the Prince, and a good strength to the *British* Empire. For to such Order it was reduced, in a little time, that the *waysfarer* men might travel without danger, the *Ploughman* walk without fear, the *Laws* administered in every place alike, the men drawn unto Villages, the Woods and Fastnesses left to beasts; and all reduced to that civility, as our Fathers never saw, nor could we well fangle out of ancient Histories.

The *Revenues* of this Kingdom are said by *Walsingham*, in the time of *Edward* the 3^d, to have been yearly 40000 pounds; but his successors, till of late, have scarce got so much as the keeping of it cost them: King *Richard* the second being by the same *Walsingham* reported to have spent 30000 marks out of his own purse, over and above the money which he received thence. Whether this Country were so profitable to *Edward* the third, or no, I determine not, though I finde good reasons to persuade me, that *Walsingham* was not well acquainted with the state of that *Exchequer*. But sure I am that the *Revenues* of the Crown are more than double what they were in the said Kings reign, and more duely paid into the *Exchequer* of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the profits of the *Custom-house* amounting to 30000 per *Annum*, in the last year of King *James* his Reign. Not to say any thing of the great improvements which were made by the Earl of *Strafford*, in the time of his Government, because they fell together with him.

The strength of this Kingdom consisteth partly in the situation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Castles first built and fortified by the *English* Planters; and partly in a standing Army continually kept up by the Kings of *England*, for defence of their hold and interests against the *Rebellions* of the *Natives*. What Forces it is able to raise both of Horse and Foot, could never be conjectured at till now of late. For formerly the Kings of *England* being actually possessed only of those four Counties which they called the *Pale*, that is to say, the Counties of *Dublin*, *Louth*, *Kildare*, and *Meath* (which last hath since the time of King *Henry* the 8th been subdivided into three) were not able to raise any great power out of that Estate, but were forced to send Souldiers out of *England* (as occasion was) to preserve their Sovereignty in *Ireland*. The greatest Levy which I read of, was that of 1500 *Irish*, led by the Prior of *Kilmáinham* to King *Henry* the fifth, then being at the siege of *Harfleur* in *Normandy*. And on the other side, the great Lords of the natural *Irish*, and degenerate *English*, being divided into factions amongst themselves, and never joyned in any one principle of common interests; were more inconsiderable, than the weak but united Forces of the Kings of *England*. And though most of them at the last, were drawn into a confederacy with the Earl of *Tir-Oen*, to make good his rebellion: yet finde I not that their Army did exceed at any time, the number of 8000 men; and those not well appointed neither. So that the best estimate which can be made of the Forces of *Ireland*, must be measured by the Armies raised in the late Rebellion, when the *Irish* had both time, and leisure, to get themselves some reputation in the World, and make provision for a War. In prosecution of which, he who considers the many Armies they have raised, since their first mustering under the command of Sir *Phelim O'Neal*; the many defeats which have been given them, and those as many new recruits after each defeat; all of them raised out of the bodies of their own people, without supply from other Countries (besides such as have served against them for the King): must needs conclude that they want not men enough for service; nor skill, nor courage to attempt the most difficult enterprises.

The Arms of *Ireland* are *Azure*, an Harp Or, stringed *Argent*. Which Coat, King *James*, (to shew himself the first absolute King of *Ireland*) first caused to be marshalled with the Royal Arms of Great Britain.

Reckoned in *Ireland* at, and since
the Reformation,
Archbishops 4. Bishops 19.
One University, *Viz.*
Dublin.

The

Orkades, and
Schetland.

The LESSER ISLANDS.

AND now we come at last to the *LESSER ISLANDS*, dispersed in several parts of the *British* Ocean. The chief whereof are, 1 The *Orkades*, 2 *Schetland*, 3 The *Hebrides*, 4 *Man*, 5 *Anglesey*, 6 The Islands of the *Severn* Sea, 7 The *Sorlinges*, or Isles of *Silly*, 8 *Wight*, 9 *Thanet*, 10 *Sunderland*, 11 *Holy Island*.

I. THE ORCADES or Isles of *Orkney* are in number 32, situate over against *Cathness*, the most Northern Country of all *Scotland*; and separate from one another by some narrow Straights. The soil indifferently fruitful, exceedingly well stored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattel; plentiful in Hares and Conies, as of Cranes and Swans: but destitute of Wheat, and unfurnished both of woods and trees. But their chief commodity is their Fish, which the inhabitants catch upon the coasts in great abundance. Those of most note in all the cluster, are, 1 *Meib*, conceived to be the *Oecia* of *Plolomy*: as 2 *Fair Isle*, on good reason thought to be the *Dumna* of *Pliny*; the chief Town of it being still called by the name of *Dumna*. 3 *Hey*, taken or mistaken for the *Dumna* of *Pliny*, but not else observable. 4 *Pomona*, the chief of all, in length about 26 miles, in breadth, where it is broadest, six. The chief Town of it *Kirkwall*, honored with a Bishop's See, and strengthened with two Castles. This Island is well stored with Tin and Lead, and is at this day by the Inhabitants called *Mainland*.

The people of these Isles (according to *Maginnus*) are great drinkers, but no drunkards; *Uibacsimi* sunt incolae, nunquam tamen inebriantur. They use the *Gothish* Language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whose possession they once were; and of whose qualities they still retain some smack. The Isles themselves in the time of *Solinus* were not inhabited, being then overgrown with rushes; (now in a measure, populous and fertile, as before was said) and were first discovered by *Julius Agricola*, the first that ever sailed about *Britain*. In later times they were possessed by the *Normans* or *Norwegians*, who held them till the year 1266; when *Magnus* King of *Norway* surrendered them up to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, which surrendry some of the succeeding Kings did afterwards ratifie: the claim hereto being finally relinquished by *Christiern* the first, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, on the marriage of his Daughter *Margaret* with King *James* the third, An. 1474. some money being added to make good the contract, without which the *Danes* would not forgo their pretensions to them.

II. Two days sailing North of these *Orkades*, lyeth *SCHETLAND*, an Island belonging to the Crown of *Scotland*: and is by many learned men, upon very good reasons, supposed to be the *Thule* of the *Antients*. For first, it standeth in the 63 degree of latitude, in which *Plolomy* placed *Thule*. 2ly It lieth opposite to *Bergen* in *Norway*; against which *Pomponius Mela* hath seated it. And 3ly *Cassper Bencersius* hath observed, that this *Schetland* is by Mariners called *Thylenfyll*; a name in which that of *Thule* is apparently couched. That *Isle-land* was not *Thule* (as most say) we shall shew you when we come to *Norway*, and the Northern Islands. Here we add only, that the *Antients* did report many strange things of it, and some of them beyond all belief. *Pliny* affirming that they had no day here for all the winter (*nulli per brumam dies, as his own words are*): with whom agree *Solinus* and many others, as to that particular. *Isidore* adds (*Orig. lib. 14. c. 6.*) *nullum ultra eam diem esse*, that beyond this Isle there was no day in any place; as if here had been the end of the world and nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polymius* goes beyond them all, reporting that in this Isle there was no distinction of Earth, Air, and Water: *ἀναρρηγνυμένη ἡ τῆς γῆς, ἀναρρηγνυμένη ἡ τῆς ἀέρος, ἀναρρηγνυμένη ἡ τῆς ὕδατος*, but a confused mixture of all together, like the primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. The reason of which strange reports, was the audaciousness of those who had seen the Island, and thought that whatsoever they said of it would not be disproved, because of the remoteness of it from more civil Countries. So truly and judiciously spoken was that of *Symenius*, a right learned Prelate, *ἡ δὲ θύλη οὐδὲν ἔστιν ἄλλο, ἢ ἀπίστευτος ἀντιφάσις ἀντὶ τῆς ἀποστασίας*. *Thule* (saith he) gave those who had failed unto it, the opportunity of lying without control. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers have made too much use of in these last times also.

III. THE *HEBRIDES*, *HEBUDAE*, or *Western Islands*, situate on the West of *Scotland*, are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1 *Ila*, 24 miles long, and 16 in breadth; plentiful in Wheat, Cattel, and herds of Deer. 2 *Jona*, famous for the Sepulchres of the old *Scottish* Kings; whose chief Town is *Sodore*, once a Bishop's See, called hence *Sodorensis*; his jurisdiction comprehending these Islands with the Isle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope *Gregory* the 4th, An. 840. or thereabouts. His dwelling for the most part in the Isle of *Man*, as the wealthier and more pleasant part of his Diocese; till the conquest of it by the *English*; at what time those of the *Western Islands*, withdrew themselves from his obedience, and had a Bishop of their own: both of them for a long time called *Sodorensis*; but at last this took the name of *Infulanus*, Bishop of the Isles, which he still retains. 3 *Mela*, by *Plolomy* called *Maleot*, (that of *Ila* before-mentioned being his *Epidia*) mountainous and hilly, but affording good mines of Lead and Copper; 23 miles more in compass than that of *Ila*. 4 *Lewis*, or *Levis*, the largest of all the *Hebrides*, said to be 60 miles in length, and 30 in breadth, the more Western of the two *Ebudaes* the spoken of by *Plolomy*: the other being now called *Skye*, famous for the multitude of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6 *Racine*, the *Reclina* of *Plolomy*, the smallest of the *Hebrides*, and most near to *Ireland*. The rest of less note, nor known, or not inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, and not very well peopled at the present, I forbear to name: some of them rather Rocks than Islands, others scarce having grass enough to hide their bareness. The people of them all, as well in language as behaviour, resemble

H h

resemble

Man.

femble the wild-Irish, and are called *Redbanks*: a people, as King James affirmeth in his *Basilican Dow*, utterly rude, and without all show of Civility; such as endure not to be governed by Laws, or kept under by Discipline. *Legum severitate, & judiciorum metu, se alligari non possunt.* faith judicious Camden. Such as they are, they came unto the Crown of Scotland by a contract betwixt Magnus King of Norway, and King Alexander the third: the *Orcades* being bargained for at the same time also.

South of the *Hebrides*, in the Bay of *Dunbritton Frith*, lieth the Isle of *Rothsey* (now called *Bute*) which gives the title of a Duke to the Prince of Scotland: and the Isle of *Arran*, which gives the title of an Earl, to the chief of the *Hamiltons*.

IV. MAN is situate just over against the Southern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is distant 25 miles; and was judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*, because it fostered venomous Serpents brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Protolomy* it is called *Monæda*, or the further *Monæda*, to difference it from that which we call *Anglesey*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*; *Menavia*, by *Oroscus* and *Beda*; *Enbonia*, by *Gildas* an old *British* Writer. The *Welch* at this day call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Maning*, and the *English* *Man*. It is in length 30 miles, in breadth 15, and 8 in some places. The people hate theft, and beggling; and use a Language mixt of the *Norwegian* and *Irish* tongues. The soyl is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oats, Barley, and Wheat; with which they use to supply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the *Continent* itself, yet questionless the *Western Isles*, which are a member of it. For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God *John Mericke* late Bishop of this Island, in a letter to Mr. *Camden*, at such time as he was composing his most excellent *Britannia*. Our Island (saith he) for cattel, for fish, and for corn, hath not only sufficient for its self, but sendeth also good store into other Countreies: Now what Countreies should need this supply (*England* and *Ireland* being aforehand with such provision) except *Scotland*, or some members thereof, I see not.

Venerable *Bede* numbered in it 300 Families, and now it is furnished with 17 Parish Churches. The chief Towns are, 1 *Balachri*, and 2 *Ruffin*, or *Castle-Town*, the seat of a Bishop, who though he be under the Archbishop of *York*, yet never had any voice in the *English* Parliament. In this Island is the hill *Scaful*, where on a clear day one may see *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: here also are bred the *Soland* Geese, of rotten wood falling into the water. This Island was taken from the *Britans* by the *Scots*, and from them regained by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*. Afterwards the *Norwegians* seized on it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings hereof ruling over the *Hebrides*, and some part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander* the 3d of *Scotland*, by a mixt title of Arms and purchase. After which time it was sometimes *English*, sometimes *Scottish*, as their fortunes varied; till in the end, and about the year 1340. *William Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, descended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and sold it to the Lord *Scrope*; who being condemned of Treason, *Henry* the fourth gave it to *Henry Percy* Earl of *Northumberland*; but he also proving false to his Sovereign, it was given to the *Stanleys*, now Earls of *Darby*.

The Kings of Man of the Danish or Norwegian Race.

- 1065 1 Godred, the Son of *Syrre*.
- 1066 2 Fingall, Son of Godred.
- 1066 3 Godred II. Son of Harald.
- 1082 4 Lagnan, Eldest Son of Godred the second.
- 1089 5 Donald, Son of Tado.
- 1098 6 Magnus, King of Norway.
- 1101 7 Olave, the third Son of Godred,
- 1144 8 Godred III. Son of Olave.
- 1187 9 Reginald, base Son of Godred the third.
- 1226 10 Olave, the lawful Son of Godred the third.
- 1237 11 Harald, Son of Olave.
- 1243 12 Reginald II. Brother of Harald.
- 1253 13 Magnus II. Brother of Reginald.
- 1266 14 Magnus III. King of Norway; the last King of Man of the Danish or Norwegian Race.

The Kings and Lords of Man of the English Blood

- 1340 1 William Montacute, Earl of Salisbury, King of Man.
- 1395 2 William Lord Scrope, King of Man.
- 1399 3 Henry, Earl of Northumberland, King of Man.
- 1403 4 William Lord Stanley, Lord of the Isle of Man.
- 5 John Lord Stanley.
- 6 Thomas Lord Stanley.
- 7 Thomas Lord Stanley, Earl of Darby.
- 1503 8 Thomas Lord Stanley, Earl of Darby.
- 1521 9 Edward Lord Stanley, Earl of Darby.
- 1572 10 Henry Lord Stanley, Earl of Darby.
- 1593 11 Ferdinand Lord Stanley, Earl of Darby.
- 12 William Lord Stanley, Earl of Darby.
- 13 James Lord Stanley, Earl of Darby, Lord of the Isle of Man, now living Anno 1648. King in

Anglesey.

in effect, though but Lord in title, as having here all kind of Civil power and jurisdiction over the inhabitants under the Feife and Sovereignty of the Crown of *England*; together with the nomination of the Bishop, whom he presents unto the King for his Royal assent, then to the Archbishop of *York* for his consecration. And this I take to be the reason why the Bishop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honor, but such as held immediately of the King himself; nor was it reason that they should.

V. ANGLESEY, is an Island situate in the *Irish* Sea, over against *Carnarvonshire* in *North-Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow Straight, which they call the *Mena*. By the *Britans* themselves, as by the *Welch* at this day, it was called *Mon*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Monæ*: but being conquered by the *English*, it obtained the name of *Anglesey*, as one would say, the Island of the *English* Men, (eye in the *Saxon* language signifying an Island.) A place of such a fair revenue to the Princes of it, that *Llewellen* the last Prince of *Wales* being stripped of almost all the rest of his Estates by King *Edward* the first, paid to that King a tribute of 1000 per Annum for this Island only.

And to say truth, the Island is exceeding fruitful both in Corn and Cattle; from whence the *Welch* are liberally stored with both: and therefore it is said Proverbially, *Mon Mam Cymri*, that *Anglesey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from East to West, about 20 miles, and 17 in breadth. Containing in that compass 74 Parishes, divided into six hundreds, and hath in it only two Market Towns: that is to say, 1 *Beaumaris*, seated on a flat or marshy ground, near the *Menai*, built by King *Edward* the first to secure his Conquest: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2 *Newburg*, a Town of no great antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welch* called *Rosfur*: in former times it had an Haven of some good receipt, but now choaked with sand. The other places of most note are, 3 *Aberffraw*, a small village now, but heretofore the Royal seat of the Kings of *Wales*: and 4 *Holyhead*, seated on a head-land or Promontory thrusting into the Sea, made holy (or thought so at least) by the religious retirement of Saint *Kathy*, or *Kibina*, one of the Disciples of St. *Hilarie* of *Poitiers*; from whence by the *Welchmen* called *Catr Cuby*: of most note for the ordinary passage betwixt *Wales* and *Ireland*. Antiently this Island was the seat of the *Druides*, and brought with no small difficulty under the power of the *Romans*, by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the people fighting in other parts of *Britain*, for their liberty only; but here *pro Aris & focis* too, for their Religion, Liberty, and their Gods to boot: Being deferred by the *Romans* with the rest of *Britain*, it remained in the possession of its own natural Princes, till the fatal period of that State; when added to the Crown of *England* by the puissance of King *Edward* the first, by whom made one of the shires of *Wales*, as it still continues.

Not far from *Anglesey*, somewhat inclining to the South, is the Isle of *Bardsey*, by *Protolomy* called *Edri*, by *Pliny* *Adros*, by the *Welch* *Enlhy*; extending towards the East with a rocky Promontory, but rich and fruitful towards the West: the retiring place of many godly and devout Hermits in the former times. Southwards from hence, and over against St. *David's*, are two other Islands, the one called *Selame*, plentiful of wild honey; the other named by the *Welch* *Lymen*, by the *English* *Ramsfey*; thought to be the *Limni* of *Protolomy*, the *Silimum* of *Pliny*, but not else remarkable.

VI. THE ISLANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA are four in number; of no great note, but I must take them in my passage to the Isles of *Silly*. Of those the first is *Flat-Holm*; for the flat and level; the 2 *Steholm*, from the steep and craggie disposition of it: both by the *Welch* called *Echni*, and both situate over against the County of *Somerset*. More towards the opening of the Channel, lyeth the Isle of 3 *Chaldey*, called by the *Welchmen* *Inis Pir*, of as small note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Isle of 4 *Lunder*, over against *Devonshire*, the principal Island of this Sea: extending two miles every way; of excellent pasturage, well stored with Conies, and great plenty of Pigeons. Situate a good distance from any part of the land, in the midst of the salt and brackish Ocean, and yet yieldeth many Springs of Fresh-Water for the use of the people; inhabiting for the most part in a Town of the same name with the Island. A place of very great strength and safety; begirt about with dangerous unapproachable Rocks; and having but one way of access into it, and that so narrow that two men cannot go a breadth.

VII. The Isles of *SILLY*, in number 145, are situate over against the most Western Promontory of *Cornwall*, from which distant 24 miles; and lie round together in the manner of a ring or Circle. Discovered first by the *Silures*, a Phœnician Colony in *Spain*, opposite against which they lie; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*: much traded and referred to by the said Phœnicians from the Isle of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhaustible Mines of *Tinne*, which they found amongst them. A Trade so great and gainful to them, that they held it a great point of State: *ἀντίπρὸς ἑαυτοῖς ἵσταντο*, to keep it as a secret from all the world, as we find in *Strabo*: who adds the story of a Carthaginian or Phœnician Merchant, incountried in his voyage hither by some Roman Vessels; and splitting his ship on the next shore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him) rather than let them know to what place he was bound; rewarded for his honest care, and recompensed for the loss of his ship and goods, out of the publick Treasury. From this abundance of *Tinne*, the *Gracians* when they came to know them, called them *Cassiterides*: (*Cassiteros* in that language signifying *Tinne*) accordingly *Herodotus* *ἐν τῷ θύρῳ ἵστα Κασσιτερίδας* *ἵσταντο ἐν τῷ δὲ Κασσιτερίῳ ἵσταντο*, affirming that he knew not those Islands called *Cassiterides*, from whence *Tinne* was brought. The richness of this commodity, the pleasures of the place, and the Western situation of them; makes many of the *Gracians* call them the *Hesperides*: mistaking them for the *Fortunate Islands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*, as before is said, *Sigdeles* in the corrupt Copies of *Antoninus*; in *Sile Silina*, by *Severus Sulpitius*, from whence we have the name of the Isles of *Silly*. The *Flemings*, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitful in Corn and Herbage, besides the treasures hid within: well stored with Conies, Cranes, Swans, and most sorts of wilde Fowl. Ten of them

King *James* descending from the eldest Daughter of *Henry* the 7th, both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry* the 8th, in the person of *Queen Elizabeth* of famous memory; was the next heir to the Crown of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyful acclamations proclaimed and acknowledged King in the City of *London*, March 24. Anno 1602. (according to the account of the Church of *England*) A learned and Religious Prince, a true Defender of the Faith, a Nursing Father of the Church, and a lover of learning. He dyed at *Theobalds*, March, 27. 1625. having reigned 23 years, and four dayes over.

1625 2 *Charles*, second Son of King *James*, and of *Anne* of *Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before) the 63^d King in descent from *Cerdick* King of the *West-Saxons*; the 45th King of *England*, in descent from *Egbert*; the 24th from the *Norman Conqueror*; the 64th Monarch of the *English*, and the second Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his reign he married the Princess *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter to *Henry* the 4th, and Sister to *Lewis* the 13th, *French Kings*; by whom blest with a Royal Issue of Sons and Daughters.

As for the *Forces* and *Revenues* of these *British Monarchs* we cannot put the estimate of them in a better way, than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each several part; out of which *Items* the *summatotalis* of the whole both in *power* and *treasure*, will be easily gathered. For though these Monarchs never had any occasion, to muster and unite the *Forces* of their several Kingdoms upon any one Action, yet by considering what they have been able to do divided; we may conclude of what they may do, if need be, being now united. And so we are to do in marshalling the Arms of the *British Monarchy*, which are 1 Quarterly *France* and *England*, 2^{ly} *Scotland*, 3^{ly} *Ireland*, the fourth as the first. I shut up this discourse of the *British Empire*, with those words of *Scripture* (the Motto of another of King *James* his Coins) *QVÆ DEVS CONJUNXIT NEMO SEPARET*.

And so much for *Britain*.

A

A TABLE Of the Longitude and Latitude of the chief CITIES mentioned in this First Book.

		Lon.	Lat.			Lon.	Lat.
A.	<i>Bardene.</i>	22 20	57 20	<i>Digion.</i>		25 45	47
	<i>Alcala de Henares.</i>	23 0	40 30	<i>Dole.</i>		28 3	49 5
	<i>Alicante.</i>	28 40	39 0	<i>Dover.</i>		26 10	51
	<i>Almodine.</i>	34 0	33 40	<i>Dublin.</i>		16 40	54 27
	<i>Ancona.</i>	43 10	43 50	<i>Dunbritton.</i>		19 24	57 10
	<i>S. Andrews.</i>	22 10	56 20	<i>Durham.</i>		22	54 55
	<i>Angoleme.</i>	27 0	46 0		E.		
	<i>Angiers.</i>	18 10	47 25	<i>Edenburgh.</i>		22	55 50
	<i>Aguilegia.</i>	42 50	46 40	<i>Embrum.</i>		28	44
	<i>Armagh.</i>	14 50	54 9	<i>Elic.</i>		25 20	52 40
B.	<i>Avero.</i>	17 30	41 10	<i>Exeter.</i>		22 10	51
	<i>Avignon.</i>	23 40	43 50		F.		
	<i>Aux.</i>	22 40	43 40	<i>Florence.</i>		41 10	43 40
	<i>St. Anderos.</i>	22 20	43	<i>Ferrara.</i>		44	36
	<i>Aix.</i>	22 20	42 10	<i>Fayall.</i>			48 40
	<i>Arls.</i>	22 45	43 20		G.		
	<i>Amboise.</i>	20 35	47 35	<i>Genoa.</i>		33 40	46 20
	<i>Badajos.</i>	19 40	38 30	<i>Galway.</i>		13 17	54 6
	<i>Baione.</i>	24 20	42 10	<i>Glocester.</i>		19	53
	<i>Basil.</i>	28 10	48 30	<i>Gades.</i>		15 10	37
C.	<i>Belfaston.</i>	26 30	47 30	<i>Granada.</i>		11	37 50
	<i>Bilbao.</i>	23 50	41 10	<i>Gruine.</i>		16 50	43 20
	<i>Baben in Switzerl.</i>	31	48 44	<i>Genoa.</i>		37 50	45 0
	<i>Blavet.</i>	21 15	47 50	<i>Grenoble.</i>		27	45 30
	<i>Bononia.</i>	35 50	43 33		H.		
	<i>Brest.</i>	20	48 50	<i>S. Hilary in Guernzey.</i>		22 20	49 40
	<i>Bath.</i>	20 56	51 20	<i>Hull.</i>		25 20	53 40
	<i>Bragance.</i>	6	45		I.		
	<i>Barwick.</i>	22 43	55 48	<i>Leon.</i>		21 10	42 15
	<i>Barcelone.</i>	17 15	41 36	<i>Lisbon.</i>		9 10	38 30
D.	<i>Burdeaux.</i>	18	45 10	<i>Lions.</i>		23 15	45 10
	<i>Burges.</i>	24 10	48 20	<i>Lincoln.</i>		22 15	53 12
				<i>London.</i>		23 25	5 33
	<i>Cambridge.</i>	23 25	52 10	<i>Luca.</i>		42 10	40
	<i>Calice.</i>	26 2	52	<i>Ligorn.</i>		40 20	43 30
	<i>Canterbury.</i>	24 50	51 15		M.		
	<i>Cartena.</i>	28 10	38 20	<i>Majorca.</i>		39 50	33
	<i>Cane.</i>	21	50	<i>Malaga.</i>		23 50	37 22
	<i>Carlisle.</i>	21 31	52 57	<i>Marseilles.</i>		24 30	43 16
	<i>Chester.</i>	20 23	53 11	<i>S. Malo.</i>		19	49
E.	<i>Chichester.</i>	26 10	51	<i>Medina Cali.</i>		23 30	41 10
	<i>Clermont.</i>	30 15	45 50	<i>Millain.</i>		38 30	46 10
	<i>Chur.</i>	32	42	<i>Modena.</i>		41 50	35 40
	<i>Corck.</i>	15 40	41 40	<i>Montpelier.</i>		25 30	44 10
	<i>Corduba.</i>	9 4	37 50	<i>Montalban.</i>		23	45
	<i>Conimbre.</i>	5 45	50 19	<i>Messana.</i>		45 50	37 50
	<i>Compostella.</i>	17 15	44 18	<i>Minorca.</i>		40 30	40 0
	<i>Coventrie.</i>	25 52	52 23		N.		
				<i>Naples.</i>		46	39 30
	<i>Dieppe.</i>	28 40	49 30	<i>Nantes.</i>		24 10	47 10
				<i>Narbon.</i>		30 20	43 20

Nevers

	Lon.	Lat.		Lon.	Lat.
<i>Newers.</i>	25	47			
<i>Newcastle.</i>	22 30	54 57	<i>Salisbury.</i>	18 3	51 10
<i>Nismes.</i>	26	44 2	<i>Salamanca.</i>	8 5	40 15
<i>Norwich.</i>	24 55	52 40	<i>Saragossa.</i>	24 15	41 45
			<i>Sevill.</i>	7 15	37
<i>Oleron.</i>	24 30	45 30	<i>Sion, or Sittia.</i>	29	45
<i>Orleans.</i>	28 30	48 0	<i>Sterling.</i>	20 10	56 20
<i>Orange.</i>	26 20	43 20	<i>Stena.</i>	42 20	36 16
<i>Oxford.</i>	22	51 50	<i>Siguencia.</i>	18 2	
<i>Otranto.</i>	49 30	40 20	<i>Syracuse.</i>	40 30	37 30
<i>Pampelun.</i>	24 30	43 30	<i>Tarantaise.</i>	29	45
<i>Paris.</i>	23 30	48 40	<i>Tarragon.</i>	78 30	38 20
<i>Pavie.</i>	44 1	33 5	<i>Tholoufe.</i>	28 40	43 10
<i>Padua.</i>	44 45	36 20	<i>Toledo.</i>	16 20	39 40
<i>Parma.</i>	39 20	45 10	<i>Triefte.</i>	44 10	46 10
<i>Pescara.</i>	43 0	30 10	<i>Tradagh.</i>	16 34	54 10
<i>Palermo.</i>			<i>Turin.</i>	31 30	43 45
<i>Perugia.</i>	42 20	43 10	<i>Tarentum.</i>	48 0	40 30
<i>Peter-port in Jersey.</i>	23 0	49 20			
<i>Pisa.</i>	40 30	43 40	<i>Valadolid.</i>	16 10	42 5
<i>Placentia.</i>	20 40	40 0	<i>Valentia.</i>	19 20	39 4
<i>Poitiers.</i>	26 30	47	<i>Venice.</i>	41 40	45 50
			<i>Verona.</i>	40 40	45 50
<i>Ravenna.</i>	41 20	44 20	<i>Viterbo.</i>	41 50	42 4
<i>Rhemes.</i>	25 25	48 30	<i>Weymouth.</i>	23 50	51 0
<i>Renes.</i>	19	48	<i>Winchester.</i>	22	52
<i>Rochel.</i>	18 15	45 50	<i>Wexford.</i>	16 44	53
<i>Rome.</i>	42 30	42			
<i>Roven.</i>	23 40	48 50	<i>Yarmouth.</i>	27 30	53 0
<i>Rhezo.</i>	47 0	38 20	<i>Tork.</i>	22 25	54 10
			<i>Zurick.</i>	30 20	47

The End of the First Book.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE

AND

HISTORIE

OF

BELGIUM, GERMANIE, DENMARK,
SWETHLAND, RUSSIA, POLAND, HUNGARIE,
SCLAVONIA, DACIA, and GREECE;

With the *ISLES* thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

TACIT. HIST. l. 4.

Humanarum rerum possessionem Trans-Alpinis gentibus portendi, Druidæ ca-
nebant.

SENEC. de Consolat. ad ALBINUM.

Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; Nova Urbium fundamenta jaciun-
tur, nova Gentium nomina, extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.



LONDON,

Printed by E. C. for A. S. over against St. Dunstons Church in Fleetstreet.
 M. DC. LXV.

COSMOGRAPHIE.
The Second Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHIE
AND
HISTORIE
OF

*Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swethland, Muscovie, Poland,
Hungary, Dalmatia, Dacia, Greece; with the Isles thereof.*

OF
BELGIUM.



Having pursued the fortunes of the Roman Empire through the 4 Western Dioceses or Divisions of it, wholly subdued to the command of that conquering State: let us next look on those Countries which lay further North, and either never felt the force of the Roman Armies, or were but conquered in part; or else were reckoned as the members of some greater Province. Of this last sort was all that tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded on the East with *Westphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the land of *Triers*, Provinces of the *Higher Germany*; on the West, with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North, with the River *Emse*, which parts it from *East-Friesland*; on the South, with *Picardie* and *Champagne*, two French Provinces; upon the South-east, with the Dukedom of *Lorraine*.

By

By the *Latines* (especially of these last times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belge*, the most potent people of all these parts; and sometimes also *Germania Inferior* or the *Lower Germany*, (in the same sense as by the *English* it is called the *Low Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low situation; and the conformity which they have with the *Germans* in Laws, Languages, Customs and Manners. By some it hath been called by the aggregate name of the *seventeen Provinces*, from the like number of several and distinct Estates united under the command of the King of *Spain*. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which though but one of the 17 Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*; the people of which were once generally called by the name of *Flemmings*; and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reason of the great trade and traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or *Marts* of *Bruges* (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all parts of *Europe*; or in respect that lying nearer then the rest to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *England*, that name was better known, and took notice of. But this was when the whole Country was under the command of many Princes, of which the *Earls of Flanders* were esteemed most potent. And though this name continued also after the incorporating of most of these Provinces in the house of *Burgundy*, at which time they were called the *Estates of Flanders*: yet since the falling off of *Holland*, and the rest of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath lost this honour; the name of *Flanders* being now restrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name most current amongst the *Latines* of this age, yet I see little reason for it. For first, old *Belgium* contained in it many fair and large *Estates*, which are not now within the compass of these *Belgick* Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedoms of *Lorraine*, *Berg*, *Juliers*, and great part of *Cleve*; the Bishopricks of *Triers*, *Meitz*, and *Colen*; and so much of the Kingdom of *France*, as takes up all *Picardy*, with parts of *Champagne*, and of *France* specially so called. Secondly, *Gallia Belgica* extended somewhat further yet, comprehending a great part of the *Lower Palatinate*, all *Elzets*, the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland*, as lyeth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *West-Frisland*, *Groning*, *Over-ysel*, *Zutphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and so much of *Guelderland*, and *Utrecht*, as lieth on the further side of the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, were never accounted of as parts of either *Belgium*, or of *Gallia Belgica*, (though now within the compass of the *Belgick* Provinces) but as parts of *Germany*; clearly without the limits of the ancient *Gaul*, of which body *Belgium* was a limb or member in the *Roman* estimate.

As for the *Belge*, from whence we have the names of *Belgium*, and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themselves within the *Rhene*: esteemed by *Caesar* to be the valiantest of the *Gallick* Nations for these three reasons; First they were the farthest from *Provence*, where the *Roman* civililities, and more affable course of life was embraced. Secondly, they dwell on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and so wanted those allurements to effeminacy, which are in Countries of traffique. And thirdly, they bordered on the *Germans*, a warlike Nation; with whom they were continually in arms. This people seeing the prosperous success of *Caesar*'s victories in *Gaul*, joyntly together in a League, and mustered an Army of 260000 fighting men against him. But seeing they could not draw him out of his Fortresses, they retired again, and that in such disorder, that three Legions, (for no more was *Caesar*'s Army) put them to an infinite slaughter. After this *Caesar* fighting against them severally, overcame them all; and made their Country, and the Country of the Bordering *Germans*, whom he also vanquished, subject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Constantine the Great* made part of the *Diocese of Gaul*, and by him cast into four Provinces, that is to say, 1 *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, and the land of *Triers*, the Metropolis whereof was *Triers*; 2 *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardy*, and the Country of *Chambray*, with parts of *Champagne* and *France* Special, of which the Metropolis was *Rhemus*; 3 *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alsacia*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the Bishoprick of *Meitz*, the Metropolis City of which Province; and 4 *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Guelderland*, *Utrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, and the land of *Colen*; which last was honoured with the title of *Metropolitan*. 5 *Maxima Sequanorum*, so called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, of which *Besuncon* was the mother City. But at this time none of the Provinces above specified are comprehended under the account and name of *Belgium*, but such as were possessed in these later ages, by the house of *Burgundy*; some petty *Signeuries* and *Estates*, which properly do belong to *Germany*, being added to it; that is to say, the Lordship of *West-Frisland* given to the *Earls of Holland* by *Charles the Bald*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, united unto that of *Guelderland* by *Earl Otto of Nassau*; and finally the Estate of *Groning*, *Over-ysel*, and some part of *Utrecht*, by *Charles the fifth*. Under which name and notion, we do now consider it.

And taking it according to this name and notion, it is in compass 1000 *Italian*, or 250 *German* miles: and is situated in the Northern Temperate Zone, under the 7, 8, & 9 *Climates*: the longest day in the midst of the 7 *Climate* where it doth begin, being 16 hours; in the beginning of the 9 *Climate* increased to 16 hours three quarters, or near 17 hours. The Air in these later days grown more wholesome then formerly; partly by the wonderful increase of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible industry of the people: who by draining the Marshes, and converting the standing waters into running streams, have purged the air of many gross and unhealthy Vapours; which did thence usually arise in times foregoing.

The

The Country is very populous, containing well nigh three millions of souls, the men being for the most part well proportioned, great lovers of our *English* Beer, unmindfull both of good turns and injuries: of good wit for inventing, and of a most indefatigable industry for perfecting the rarest Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as also for *Arras* hangings, *Dornix*, Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the *Marinets* Compass. They restored *Musick*, and found out divers *Musical* Instruments, being naturally good *Musicians*; and generally so given unto it, and so perfect in it, that therefore (till the Art of *Musick* grew more common) there were not many great mens houses, which had them not to teach their Children. To them belongeth also the invention of Chariots, the laying on of colours with oyl, the working of Pictures in glasse, and the making of Worstedes, Saies, and Tapestries: the making of which and other Stuffs, being driven out of their Country by the Duke of *Alva*, they first taught the *English*. The women generally are of good complexion, well proportioned, especially in the leg and foot: honourers of virtue, active, and familiar. Both within doors and without, they govern all; which considering the natural desire of women to bear rule, maketh them too imperious and burdensome.

They use for the most part the *German* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoining to *France*, that is to say, *Luxembourg*, *Namurce*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, and some parts of *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, they use the *French*; but the same very corruptly and imperfectly by reason of that mixture which it hath of the *Dutch* or *German*; yet so, that one may easily discern those people to be *French* originally; or some remainder of the old *Gauls*, mastered by the *French*, but not rooted out: from their language or first original called to this day by the name of *Wallons*; the *Germans* usually changing *G* into *W*, as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Waerden* for *Guardians*, and in the like case *Waleet* for *Galleet*. I know there is another Etymology of the name of *Wallons*, some making them to be of the *Burgundian* race; who at their first passing over the *Rhene*, enquired their way of the Country people in these words, *Ou allons*, i. e. *Whither go we*? which being oft repeated by them, occasioned them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtless, but of no solidity; nor to be further honoured with a constitution.

The Country in those parts which lie towards *Germany*, especially on the South-east bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorraine*, is somewhat swelled with hills, and overshadowed with woods; the reliques of the great Forrest of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof. But towards the West and North, where it joyns to the Sea, it is plain and levell, full of flats and marshes, affording very little corn; but abounding in pasturage, which yeelds a great increase of Butter and Cheese, good store of beeves; and herds of more then ordinary bigness. By reason of which low and levell situation, and the ill neighbourhood of a troublesome and unruly sea, it hath been formerly much subject to inundations; inasmuch as in the time of King *Henry the 2d*, *Flanders* was so overflowed, that many thousands of people, whose dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new seats; and were by that King first placed in *Yorkshire*, and then removed to *Pembrookshire*. Since that, it hath in *Zeland* swallowed eight of the Islands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages: many of whose Churches and strong buildings, are at a dead low water to be seen. And as once *Ovid* said of *Helice*, and *Barris*, Cities of *Achaea*; so may we of these;

*Invenies sub aquis, & adhuc ostenderet nauta
Inclinata solent cum manibus oppida versis.*

That is to say,

The waters hide them, and the Sayers show
The ruin'd walls and steeples as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into other Countries, are Linnen, Scarlets, Worsted, Saies, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffs; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheese, &c. Of which, excepting Cheese and Butter, there is nothing of the natural growth of the Country: the rest being *Mannifattures*, which they make out of such materials, as they fetch out of foreign Regions. But the Commodity which yeeldeth them most benefit is that of Fish; not caught upon their own coast neither, but either in the Northern seas, or the coast of *England*: the very *Herring*; which they catch on the shores *England* (to the no small dishonour of the *English* Nation) bringing them a revenue (besides what is pursued up by the Adventurers) of 440000 pounds per annum; and that of *Codfish* which they catch on the Coasts of *Friesland*, amounting to 150000 *sterling* yearly.

Captains of note and eminence it hath bred but few, the people living still of late in perpetual peace. The chief of those whose names have been transmitted to us, 1 *Civillis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for subtilty of wit compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*; of which in the long war against the *Romans*, in the time of *Vespasian*, he gave very good proof. In the middle times, 2 *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperour of *Germany*; 3 *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Constantinople*; 4 *Philip* the good, and 5 *Charles* the Warlike, Dukes of *Burgundy*; 6 *Charles* the fifth, Emperour and King of

11

Spain:

Spain: and of late times the Princes of the house of *Nassau* and *Orange*, transplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian*, out of higher *Germany*. And to say truth, their *Genius* doth not lie so much for land-service as it doth for the seas; in which they have been very famous, and not less fortunate. For of this nation was *Oliver de Noort*, the fourth that compassed the world; *Jacob le Maire*, the first discoverer of the Straight, or *Fretum*, which now beareth his name; besides divers others. And generally the people are so expert in Navigation, (especially those bordering on or near the coasts) that they seem born for and to the Seas: many of which being born on ship-board and bred up at sea, know no other Countrey; and brook the Land as ill, as a fish doth the dry ground. Which natural inclination to it, and the necessity they have of employing themselves that way, (the Countrey not being otherwise able to provide sustenance for those multitudes of men, which it doth abound with) hath so exceedingly increased their shipping; that it is thought that they are masters of more vessels of all sorts, taking one with another, then almost all the rest of *Europe*.

Scholars of note it had bred many. 1 *Erasmus*, the great restorer of learning in these parts of the World. 2 *Justus Lipsius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latin* Elegancies. 4 *Joseph Scaliger*, the son of *Julius*, a man not to be followed in all parts of learning; but of equal arrogance: 4 *Rodolphus Agricola*. 5 *Levinus Lemnius*. 6, 7 *Janus Douza*, the Father and the Son. 8 *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9 *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 11 *Geo. Cassander*, 12 *Dr. James Harmin*, 13 *Gerard Vossius*, eminent Divines, and 14 *Hugo Grotius*, of as great parts (but seasoned with more modesty and moderation) as the famous *Scaliger*. 15 *Janfenius*, and 16 *Pamelius* two right learned men, but of the *Pontifical* party.

As much unfortunate it hath been in some wretched Hereticks, in none more then in *David George*, born at *Delfe* in *Holland* who called himself *Christ*, and King immortal, flying from *Delfe* to *Basil* with his wife and children. An. 1545, he there taught his Doctrine, viz. 1 that the Law and gospel were his wife and children. 2 That he was not to restore the house of *Israel* by *Death* or *Tribulation*, but by love and grace of the Spirit. 3 That he had been till that present kept in a place unknown to all the Saints. And that this last point might obtraine the easier credit amongst the people, he bound his disciples, first to conceal his name, secondly not to reveal of what condition he had been: thirdly not to discover the Articles of the Doctrine to any man *Basil* without his permission. But for all this great care of his, within three dayes after his death (which hapned in the year 1556.) his Doctrines being made known were condemned by the Senate and Church of *Basil*, his goods confiscated, and his bones most deservedly taken up and burnt. Of somewhat less impiety, but of no less phrenzy was 2 *John of Leyden* (another Town of the same Province) who from a Taylor was made King of the Anabaptists, when they had ragged in *Munster*, and there we shall hear further of him. 3 *Cappinus* and 4 *Quintinus* both *Flemmings*, the joynt Authors and confounders of the Sect of the *Libertines*.

The *Christian* Religion was planted in several Provinces, by several men: in *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friesland*, by *Willibrord* an *Engliskman*, the first bishop of *Utrecht*; whence by degrees it gained on the rest of the Countrey: these being the first people of the *Franks*, or *Germans*, converted totally to the Gospel. In tract of time it fell from the primitive purity, participating of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they desired to reclaim themselves, they were thereof in opposed by the King of *Spain* and his Ministers. Hence the beginning of the troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of civil rights, invaded and infringed by the *Spaniards*; affecting a more absolute Dominion over them, then their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Countrey doth stand divided betwixt the *States* and the *Spaniards*; so stands it with Religion also: the *Spaniard* permitting only the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, within the Provinces and Estates under his command; and the *States* general indulging the free use of all Religions (even the very *Jews*) but countenancing only that of the *Reformed Churches*, according to the Platform laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief Forests of this Countrey are, 1 that of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cesar*, extended from the banks of *Rhene*, as far as *Tournay* one way, and *Champagne* another way; and was in compass 500 miles, in the least accompt. In which circuit there were comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant*, and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg*, *Luxembourg*, *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*; together with the land of *Gullick* in the higher *Germany*, as some Writers say. At this time, though the greatest of all *Gullick* neigick, it reacheth but from *Leige* to *Theonville*, 30 leagues in length: and yet not all that Woodlands neither, though within the *Vierge* of the Forest: there being much tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground; the principal of which is the Town of *S. Hubert*, situate almost in the midst of it. 2 *Niepe*, and 3 *Nonnen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the first extending to the banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up close to *Ypres*. 4 *Pondsberg* in the Confines of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mount Gerrard*: all them parts of this great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once overshadowed all this Countrey. 5 *Normault* in *Hainault*, in which is much *Char-coal* made; supposed for that reason to be a part of that Forest, which the old *French* called *La Charboniere*. 6 *Etchierwald* in *Guelderland*, near *Arnhem*, &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1 *Rhene*, which ariseth out of two springs in the *Lepontian Alps*, amongst the *Grifons*; united into one stream near *Chur*: thence passing by the Cities of *Constance*, *Basil*, *Spire*, *Worms*, *Metz*, and *Colez*, is again divided about the confines of *Guelderland*, into four branches or channels. Of which the first is called the *Wael*, which running through *Guelderland* by *Nimwegen*, and *Bommel*, loseth it self in the *Maas*: the second, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, passeth by *Arnhem*, from thence

thence in a contracted channell to *Utrecht*, and so through *Holland* unto *Leiden*: the third called the *Leck*, taketh his course through the Provinces of *Utrecht*, and *Holland*; and so into the sea betwixt *Dort*, and *Roterdam*; and the fourth called the *Ysel*, which passing by the towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer* betwixt *Guelderland*, and *Over-Ysel*, emptieth it self into the Ocean, near *Amsterdam*. And of these branches I have given the exacter reckoning; partly because the course of that famous River is otherwise not easie to be observed; and partly because the knowledge of a great part of these Provinces dependeth on the knowledge of the course of this River: it being the middle branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leiden*) which antiently divided *Germany* from *Gallia Belgica*. A River of such reputation in the antient times, that into it the old *Belge* used to cast the children which they suspected to be *Illegitimate*: for were they born of lawfull bed, they floated on the waters; if of an unlawfull, they sank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian* alluding saith, *Nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenus*. But the great searcher of Antiquities, *Verstegan*, is of opinion, that thereby they only inured their children to hardness, and made tryall of their strength; adultery being rarely found among them; and so these kindes of experiments needless. 2 *Mosa*, the *Maas*, as the *Dutch*, or the *Meuse* as the *Frenchmen* call it, which springing from the mountaines of *Vange*, in the confines of *Lorraine*, and not far from the fountains of the *Seine*, and *Marne*, runneth through *Lorraine*, *Luxembourg*, *Luyckland*, and *Namur*; from thence by *Ruremond*, and *Venlo*, two known Towns of *Guelderland*, where turning towards the West, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and from thence passing by *Maestricht*, divides *Brabant* from *Holland*; watering the Town of *Grave* in the one, and of *Dort*, in the other; and falleth into the sea not far from *Bril*, with so great a violence, that the waters of it for a long space do continue fresh. 3 *Emis*, in *Latine* called *Amisus*, dividing the two *Frislandi*; of which more in *Germany*. 4 *Scaldit*, which arising in *Picardy*, and running through *Artois*, and between *Hainault* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the sea a little above *Antwerp*. And 5 *Lis* or *Ley*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Besides which Rivers, and others of inferior note (which we shall meet withall in their proper places) here are great store of lakes, pools, and marishes; which do both fortifie the Countrey, and provide it of fish: besides many navigable channels, made by the hand of man; from one River to another, for the convenience of passage, and the more easie transport of their commodities.

The shore of this Countrey hath been much worn out by the Sea; especially that of the Islands of *Zeland*, and such as lye scattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with banks and ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. These banks are about ten ells in height, and twenty five in breadth at the bottom. They are made of the hardest clay that may be gotten; in the inside stuffed with wood and stone, on the outside covered with mats strong and thick made.

The former Inhabitants were divers, and were as differently disposed of in their several Countreys; that is to say, the *Attrebates* in the greatest part of *Artois*, the *Morini* in the rest of *Artois*; and those parts of *Flanders*, which make up the *Imperial* and *Dutch Flanders*; the *Nervi* in *Hainault*; *Namur*, and *Flanders Gallicant*; the *Batavi* in *South-Holland*, and so much of *Guelderland*, and *Utrecht*; as lies on the South-side of the *Rhene*, with the *Menapii*, intermixt in the Dukedom of *Guelders*, the *Mattiaci* in the Isles of *Zeland*, the *Aduatic*, and part of the *Tongri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant*; with parts of the *Treveri* in *Luxembourg*, and of the *Eburones* in *Luyckland*, and the Dukedom of *Limbourg*; all which were *Belgick Nations*, and therefore antiently accompted of as parts of *Gallia*. Then on the Northern side of the middle channell of the *Rhene*, there dwelt the *Frisi* *Minores* in *North-Holland*, and so much of the *Dittricht* of *Utrecht*, as lies on the further side of that channell; the *Frisi Majores* in *West-Friseland*, and the State of *Groning*; some parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the rest of *Guelderland*, with part of the *Bructeri* in *Over-Ysel*: all *German Nations*, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica*. Those which passed under the accompt and name of *Belge*, being subdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation, by the valour and good fortune of *Julius Caesar*; continued subject to the *Romans*, without any notable disturbance unto their affaires, but the Rebellion raised against them by *Crisis* Prince of the *Batavians*; in the time of *Vespasian*. In the declining of the Empire, they were possessed by the *French*, under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz*, or *Ostentrich*; united by *Childerick* the third, to the rest of *France*; and made a member of that Kingdom: as they continued till the time of *Lewis the Godly*, son of *Charles the Great*, in the division of whose Empire amongst his Children, the Countreys of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France*, the residue of these Countreys on this side of the *Rhene* made up a special part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*. Those on the further side of the middle channell of that River, being *German Nations*, gained to the vast Empire of the *French* by *Charles the Great*, in the division of the spoil spoken of before, fell to the share of *Lewis* surnamed the *Antient*, the first King of *Germany*, and after his decease to his Successors in that Estate, whether Kings or Emperours; and so we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings of *France*, *Lorraine*, and *Germany*; by what means subdivided into lesser parcels, (no fewer then nineteen in all) we shall see anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* conquests in the rest of *Gallia*, there started up in *Belgica* two great Estates, founded by *Auberon*, *Regnault*, and *Ranchaire*, Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*: who being disinherited of their Fathers Kingdom by *Merove* Master of his horse, to whose tuition and guardianship they had been committed, betook themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, and the Countreys on the banks

Flanders
and
Artois.

being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent *Piracies* did much vex those shores; and the inland Countries meanly planted, for want of corn and other necessities, for the life of man. Subject in part to the great Princes of *Ardeane*, till the discomfiture of Earl *Brunniph* by *Dagobert* sole King of the *French*. By whom about the year 621. this wild Countrey extending then as far as the River *Seme*, and comprehending besides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardy*, was given unto one *Lideric de Bucq*; with the title of *Forrester*, to be holden under the Sovereign of that Crown. In whose posterity it continued with the title of *Forresters*, till the time of *Baldwin* the first, the son of *Odoacer*, the seventh of the *Forresters*, whose names occur upon record; there being a long intermission of their names and memories, during the ravagements and depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having first ravished, and afterwards married *Judith*, sister to *Charles the Bald*, King of *France* and *Emperour*, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Sovereignty thereof reserved as before it was: in whose issue it remained intire, till *Philip* the first Earl of that name, gave unto *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, the Countrey of *Artois*, with the Earldom or Countrey of *Veromandois*, parts of *Picardy*, in marriage with *Isabel* his Niece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt*. By *Lewis* the 8th son and successor of *Philip Augustus*, *Artois* was given in portion to his youngest son *Robert*, made the first Earl of *Artois* by King *Lewis* the 9. An. 1234. And by the marriage of *Lewis* the first of *Flanders*, with *Margaret* the heir of *Artois*, and of the Earldom of *Burgundy*, both these Estates were added unto this of *Flanders*, now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great accession of estate, it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millain* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: these Earls being privileged to write themselves *Dei gratia*, all others *Dei clementia* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad to so great esteem, that it was generally used for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the marriage of *Margaret* daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip the Hardy* Duke of *Burgundy*, this great estate became united to that house: and afterwards was conveyed unto that of *Austria*, as shall be shewn hereafter, in due time and place. In the mean season let us take a brief survey of

The Earls of FLANDERS and ARTOIS.

- 864 1 *Balwin* the first Earl of *Flanders*.
- 879 2 *Baldwin* II.
- 918 3 *Arnulph*, son of *Baldwin* the 2.
- 960 4 *Baldwin* III. son of *Arnulph*.
- 964 5 *Arnulph* II. son of *Baldwin* 3d.
- 988 6 *Baldwin* IV. son of *Arnulph*.
- 1029 7 *Baldwin* V.
- 1067 8 *Baldwin* VI. Earl of *Hainalt*.
- 1070 9 *Arnulph* III. Earl of *Hainalt*.
- 1071 10 *Robert*, son of *Baldwin* the 5th, and brother of *Baldwin* the 6.
- 1093 11 *Robert* II. son of *Robert* the first.
- 1111 12 *Baldwin* VII.
- 1118 13 *Charles*, son of *Canns* King of *Denmark*, and *Adelize* the daughter of *Robert* the first.
- 1127 14 *William*, son of *Robert*, the son of *William* the bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Maud* his wife, daughter of *Baldwin* the 5th.
- 1132 15 *Theodorick* of *Elfas*, Nephew of *Robert* the first by his daughter *Helerude*.
- 1169 16 *Philip* of *Elfas*, son of *Theodorick*.
- 1191 17 *Baldwin* VIII. Earl of *Hainalt*, succeeded in right of *Margaret* his wife, daughter of *Theodorick*, and sister of *Philip*.
- 1199 18 *Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainalt*, and *Emperour* of *Constantinople*.
- 1205 19 *Joan* eldest daughter of *Baldwin* the *Emperour*, first married to *Ferdinand* son of *Sancho* King of *Portugal*, and after to *Thomas*, the third son of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*; both in her right called Earls of *Flanders*.
- 1244 20 *Margaret*, sister of *Joan*, & 2d. daughter of the *Emp. Baldwin*, widow of *Wil. of Dampierre*, governed the Estate of *Flanders* as long as she lived; admitting *William* her eldest son to the title of Earl, which he continued till

The Earls of ARTOIS.

- 1234 1 *Robert* of *France*, grandson of *Philip Augustus*, and *Isabel* the daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th, made the first Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.
- 1245 2 *Robert* II. son of *Robert*.
- 1302 *Othelint*, Earl of *Burgundy*, succeeded in right of *Maud* his wife, the daughter of *Robert* the 2d.
- 1315 3 *Philip* the Long, K. of *France*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his wife

Hainalt.

- his death (being many years before his Mother) Anno 1255.
- 1278 21 *Guy* of *Dampierre*, the second son of *Margaret*, admitted to the Title of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the estate itself on the death of his Mother.
- 1304 22 *Robert* III. surnamed of *Beimne*, who married *Toland*, Heir of *Odon* of *Burgogne* Earl of *Nevers*, by whom he had a son called *Lewis*, who married *Mary*, daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*.
- 1323 23 *Lewis*, son of *Lewis*, and grandson of *Robert* the 3. in right of his mother, Earl of *Rethel*, in right of his Grandmother, Earl of *Nevers*; and of *Flanders* in right of his Father and Grandfather.
- 1347 24 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Nevers*, and *Rethel*, in right of his Father, and of *Artois*, and *Burgundy* in right of his Mother, whom he succeeded at her death, but the time I find not.
- 1369 25 *Philip* II. surnamed the *Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*, succeeded in the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois* &c. in right of *Margaret* his wife, daughter and heir of *Lewis de Malain*, whom he married solemnly at *Gaunt*, Anno 1369. Of which *Philip* and his Successors in these Estates, we shall hereafter speak in a place more proper.
- 1331 5 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his wife, the eldest daughter of *Philip*.
- 6 *Philip*, the only son of *Eudes*, in right of his mother Earl of *Artois*, and so called in his Father's life time.
- 1349 7 *Philip* III. son of *Philip* the 2. and Nephew of *Eudes*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Artois*, who died young, and without issue, Anno 1361.
- 1361 8 *Margaret*, daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and of *Joan* Countess of *Artois* and *Burgundy*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, &c. Succeeded *Philip* the 3. (being then a widow) in the Earldoms of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, Anno 1361.

The Arms of *Flanders* were Or, a *Lion* sable, langued and armed *Gules*. Those of *Artois* being *Seme* of *Flower* de *Lycs* Or, in a field *Azure*, a field of three Labels *Gules*, charged with as many Castles of the first.

4. HAINALT.

HAINALT is bounded on the East, with *Namur*; on the West, with *Flanders*; on the North, with *Brabant*; on the South, with *Picardy* and *Champagne* in *France*. It was antiently called *Salini Carbonarius*, from the abundance of *Charcoal* made in the woods and forests of it: by some writers of the middle times, the lower *Picardy*; by the *Latin* writers of these times called *Hannonia*; it seemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Haine*, or *Hania*; which passeth through it; and the word *Hole* signifying a wood, as being over-spread in a manner with the Forests of *Normault*, *S. Amand*, *De Faing*, and that of *Poodberg*. And then *Hainalt* will be quasi *Haine-holt*, i. e. a Countrey of Woods, and Forests on the River *Haine*. Thus called originally by the *French* (as the word importeth) but by the *Dutch* best known by the name of *Hennegou*; i. e. the Countrey bordering on the *Haine*, as the name signifieth in that language.

The length thereof is 60 miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compass 950 Villages, and 24 towns; in and amongst which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms, or *Paprieries*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeyes, one Lord Marshal, (besides other Officers of the Prince) descending by inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The air hereof is very good, and the soil fruitful; by reason the Countrey is watered with so many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and several lesser streams, besides divers lakes, marshes, ponds, and pools, which do much enrich it; the Countrey abounding in most places with fresh Meadows and sweet Pastures, good fruits, and profitable trees, but especially with great plenty of corn. Here are also in some parts of it, notable *Mines* of iron and lead; and excellent quarries of the best stone, fit for all kind of buildings.

The principal of these towns are 1 *Monti*, situate at the confluence of *Haine*, and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural strength unto it: fortified besides with a very strong wall, three large deep ditches, and an ancient Castle. The town great, beautiful, and rich, adorned with sumptuous buildings both private and publick, and replenished with wealthy Merchants, and men of trade: the principal of all the Province, erected into an Earldom by *Charles* the Great, and sometimes used for the stile of the Earls of *Hainalt*. In this town is the noble Nunnery of *St. Valdrade*, once a Dutchess of *Lorraine*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of noble families; in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns; in the afternoons according to their birth and qualities; who when they please may leave the Cloyster, and be married. The Abbess hath both jurisdictions, in the Town and Countrey about it; and antiently did put the Earls of *Hainalt* into possession of the state. Another Nunnery like this (but not of such large revenues) there is at 2 *Mauwaige* on the *Sambre*, a good town of Merchandise. 3 *Valenciennes* seated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Rouelle*; which make not only in it many pleasant Isles, but pass almost under every mans house, to the great benefit and delight of the place and people. The site hereof so strong by nature, (besides the fortifications of Art) that on the one side it may be easily made unapproachable by water; and on the other sides so defended by hills, that it can hardly be besieged; but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large, and beautiful town, especially for publick buildings, the chief whereof are the Church of our Lady, built

Namur.

so it keeps them from idleness. And as for the Nobility, they are generally valiant, given to all military exercises fit for their degrees, and very affectionate to their Princes, the greatest virtue of a subject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was said, that is to say, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where resideth the Council for the Countrey, from which lieth no appeal but to *Machlyn* only. Seated between two hills on both sides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuse*. The City rich, inhabited for the most part by the Nobility, defended with a strong Castle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, founded here in the Church of *S. Albin*, Anno 1559. Not far off in the Villages of *Ardenne* and *Monfieur*, are two Nunneries of Ladies: like those of *Montz* and *Mauluige* spoken of in *Hainault*. 2. *Bovines* upon the *Meuse*, sacked by the French, Anno 1554. Since repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a small Town, but of most exact Fortifications, built by *Charles* the 5th. Anno 1555. to oppose the French; who had then possessed themselves of *Martemburg*, a Town of *Hainault*. 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but standing in a goodly and fruitful Countrey. Of the Villages the chief is *Dome*, seated on the *Meuse* or *Maes*, fortified with a strong Castle, and honoured with the title of a *Vicomte*; 2. *Flouren*, 3. *Vasle*, and 4. *Sauson*, of much beauty and greatness.

The ancient Inhabitants of this countrey were a part of the *Nervi*; first made an Earldom by some of the descendants of the sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the French: who being dispossessed of their Fathers Kingdom by *Meroveus*, the Master of his horse (to whom he had committed the guardianship or tuition of them) were forced to betake themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forrest of *Ardenne*, and the parts adjoining, where they founded the great Earldoms of *Ardenne* and *Moselle*, as before is said. Divided in succeeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls possessed, I am yet to learn; the Estate being small, and consequently the Princes of it not much considerable. Allied to the Royal house of France by the marriage of *Albert* Earl hereof, with *Irmengarde* Daughter of *Charles* of France, the first Duke of *Lorraine*: and after unto the house of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *N.* the Daughter and heir of *Peter* the last Earl of that Race, to *Henry* second, son of *Baldwin* the 8th of *Flanders*, and brother of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and the first Emperor of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*, whom he succeeded in that Empire. After whose death, it came by *Yoland* his Daughter to *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who succeeded also in the Empire, and after his decease to *Philip* his younger son. But he deceasing without issue, and *Robert* his elder brother reigning in *Constantinople*, it was seized on by *Philip* the brother of *Henry*, who to assure himself thereof took to wife *Mary* daughter of *Philip Augustus* King of France. By a neece or Cousin of this *Philip*, conveyed in marriage to *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg*, (the Father by a former wife of *Henry* the 7th, Emperor and Earl of *Luxembourg*) and finally brought back again to the house of *Flanders* by the marriage of *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*, with *Isabel* daughter of that *Henry* by the Heir of *Namur*. And in his issue it continued (for ought I can finde) till it was swallowed up, with the rest of the Belgick Provinces by the house of *Burgundy*: So that the highest we can go in search of the Earls of *Namur*, is to the time of *Hugh Capet* and *Charles* of *Lorraine*; which was 540 years after the coming in of the sons of *Clodion*. From which time downwards the succession is confused and broken; and towards the later end discontinued for 140 years. Such as are left upon Record, I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good Order as I could; and here present them in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of Namur.

1. *Albert*, the Co-temporary of *Hugh Capet*, spoken of before.
2. *Godfrey*, the son of *Albert*, and Father of *Alice* wife of *Baldwin* the 5th of *Hainault*, and mother of *Baldwin* the 6th of *Hainault*, and the 8th of *Flanders*.
3. *Peter*, the son or brother of *Godfrey*.
4. *Henry* the second son of *Baldwin* the 8th of *Flanders*, in right of *N.* his wife, the heir of *Peter* Emp. of *Constantinople* also on the death of *Baldwin* the 9th, his elder Brother.
- 1216 5. *Peter* II. son-in-Law of *Henry* Emp. of *Constantinople*, and Earl of *Namur*.
- 6, 7. *Philip* the younger son of *Peter*, and *John* the elder brother of *Henry*, both taking to themselves the title of Earl of *Namur*, the one at *Constantinople*, the other in the *Netherlands*, and both deceasing without issue.
8. *Philip* II. brother of *John* and *Henry*, without issue also.
9. *John* II. surnamed of *Dampierre*, the 3 son of *William* of *Dampierre*, by *Margaret*

Countess of *Flanders*, daughter & heir of the Emp. *Baldwin*, succeeded by the gift of his Mother, challenging the disposing of it, as next heir of *Philip* the 2. or in the right Paramount of the Earldom of *Flanders*, enjoyed upon a better title by

10. *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*, and elder brother of *John* the 2d. in right of *Isabel* his wife, daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg* by the heir of *Namur*; but I neither find her name nor Parents.
11. *John* III. son of *Guy* and *Isabel*.
12. *John* IV. son of *Guy* by a former wife: the Brother of *John* the 3d. by the whole blood, being absent or unfriended, and so put beside.
13. *Guy* II. the Brother of *John* the 4th. by the same *Venter*.
14. *John* V. son of *Guy* the 2d. who in the year 1307. married a Niece of *Levis* the 9th. of France, by *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* a younger Son.
15. *John* VI. who in the year 1439 sold

child.

Luxembourg.

this estate to Duke *Philip* the Good, to be enjoyed by him on the death of *Theodore*, the next heir hereof; infirm, and (as it seems) without hope of Children.

16. *Theodore* or *Theodorick*, the last Earl of *Namur*, after whose death Duke *Philip* entered on this Earldom by the former contract, and as the next heir of the house of *Flanders*, continued ever since unto his Posterity.

The Arms hereof are, Or, a Lion sable, debruised with a Bend Gules.

6. LUXENBOURG.

LUXENBOURG is bounded on the East, with the *Moselle*, and the land of *Triers*; on the West, with the *Meuse* or *Maes*, and a branch of the Forrest of *Ardenne*; on the North, with *Luxemburg*, and a part of *Hainault*; and on the South, with the Duchie of *Lorraine*; so called from the Castle, near the Town of *Luxembourg*, selected by *Sigifride* the first Earl hereof for his seat and residence. The whole divided into parts; the Eastern part being called *Faveune*, fruitful of corn, and yielding withal some Wines, some Mines, and many excellent quarries of goodly stone; the Western, called the *Ardenne*, a remainder of that spacious Forrest, which sometimes overshadowed all this Countrey; barren of corn, but very plentiful of Venison, and of Fowl good store.

The people of this Countrey are not all of one language, those nearer *Germany*, as in *Luxembourg*, *Ardenne*, *Rodemack*, *Theowille*, and the rest on that side, speaking the *Dutch*, as those of *Ivois*, *Mommedi*, *Morville*, and *Dampville*, with the rest bordering on France, do a corrupt or broken French. In which regard the pleadings held before the Council residing in *Luxembourg*, are made in both languages; that so they may be understood by all that have business there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the seventeen) speak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of men full of virtue, curtesie and hospitality towards one another; and of great truth and faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worst Landlords in all these Countreys; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the *Pesants* of France, contrary to the use and liberties of the rest of the *Netherlands*. Both sorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both *Law* and *Lawyers*; and for the most part end their controversie amongst themselves, without any process.

The whole Countrey containeth in compass about 70 leagues, or 200 Italian miles; in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages. The principal of which are 1. *Luxembourg*, built in the place where antiently stood the *Augusta Veromanduorum* of *Ptolemy*; and took this new name *quasi Lucis burgum*, from the image of the *Sun* there worshipped; seated on the *Alfanius* or *Alze*, which runneth through it; large, and of a strong situation, but not very well built, not yet recovered of the spoils, which the long wars betwixt the French and the *Spaniards* brought upon it, before the treaty of *Cambray*. However it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the residence of the Council hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* King of *Bohemia*, slain in the battel of *Crecie* against the English, Anno 1348. 2. *Ardenne*, on the top of an high hill, so called *quasi Ara luna*, from an Altar consecrated to the *Moon* in the time of *Paganism*. 3. *Theowille*, on the *Moselle*, over which it hath a goodly bridge; a frontier Town near *Mentz*, and the border of *Lorraine*; and for that cause made marvellous strong, but taken by the French, Anno 1558. and restored the next year by the peace of *Cambray*. 4. *Bosonack*, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris* of *Ardenne*, in which part it standeth. 5. *Mommedi*, on an high hill, at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. 6. *Dampville*, once a very strong place also; both taken and ransacked by the French, Anno 1552. 7. *Morville* upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belongeth to the Duke of *Lorraine*, the other to the King of *Spain*, as Duke of *Luxembourg*, for which cause called *La ville commune*. 8. *Rock di March*, fortified with a strong Castle. 9. *Ivois*, a place once of great importance, sacked by the French, Anno 1552. and restored by the treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it should never more be walled. 10. *Lay Ferte* on the *Chiers*, a Town of the same condition.

In the skirts of this Countrey towards France standeth the principality of *Sedan* extended all along the banks of the River *Maes*, from the borders of *Lorraine* on the South, to the great Forrest of *Ardenne*, and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* on the North. A small but very fair estate of fruitful soil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and some towns of note, the principal whereof, 1. *Jatensis*, upon the borders of *Lorraine*, by the Duke whereof it was taken, after a long season, from the Lady *Charlotte*, the last heir general of the house of *Mark*, Anno 1585. and laid unto that Dukedom as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. *Donchery*, a strong town of war, bordering on *Tirafche* in *Picardy*, to which by some it is ascribed. 3. *Sedan*, in Latin called *Sedunum* ad *Mosam*, because situate on the banks of the *Maes* or *Mos*, the usual residence of the Prince; a fine neat Town, well fortified, and plantd with 80 brass pieces of Ordnance; honoured with a seat of learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar School, and an University, is in the Criticism of these times called a *Schola illustris*, to which men may send their children to learn good letters, though they can take in them no Degrees, that being a priviledge reserved only to the Universities. So that these Schools may be somewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Westminster*, *Winchester*, and *Eton*; but that the younger Students in these last named, are more restrained to *Rhetoric* and *Grammar*, than in the other; though these more liberally indowed, for the encouragement and reward of learning, than all the *Schola illustres* of either *Germany*. 4. *Monsion*, A Town of great strength and consequence on the River *Maes*; upon some jealousies of State, garrisoned by the French, as also is *Sedan* itself; and most of the other good Towns belonging unto his Principality;

K K

Bonillon.

capality; but so that the revenues of it, execution of Justice, and all other rights of Sovereignty are still enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof.

This Estate antiently was a part of the Dukedom of Bonillon; from which dismembred for the portion of some younger Prince, at such time as Godfrey Earl of Ardenne and Bonillon succeeded in the Dukedom of Lorrein, after Charles and Otho the first Dukes; or else excepted and reserved by Godfrey (irnamed) of Bonillon, Duke of Lorrein, and King of Hierusalem, when he sold the Dukedom of Bonillon to the Bishop of Liege. By many mean conveyances and alterations of the Owners, it came at last to the house of Arimberg, a family of great wealth and power in Westphalen (a Province of Germany not far off) by the heir general of which house it was brought in marriage to Engelbert Earl of Mark, about the year 1330. from whom descended Robert Earl of Mark, and Sovereign of Sedan, with the Towns annexed, who succeeding his Mother in the Estates of Saus and Florenge, Feifs holden of the Dukedom of Bonillon, and eagerly affecting to unite the estates together (as they had been antiently) purchased the Town and Title of Duke of Bonillon, of Eberhard Earl of Mark, his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of Liege, and consequently Duke of Bonillon also. Proud of his honour, and being somewhat too stiff in maintaining the rights of his new Dukedom, against a sentence passed in the Imperial Chamber, in a sure there depending betwixt two of his Vassals, he took up arms against the Empire, with far more courage than discretion. For being in the course of that war worsted by Charles the fifth (for whom he was too weak an enemy) the Town of Bonillon being taken by the conquering Emperour, was afterwards restored to the Bishops; and nothing but the Title of Dukes of Bonillon left to the Princes of Sedan. And that he might be able to hold Sedan, this Robert was fain to return again to the protection of the French (as his Ancestors, from the time of Charles the 8th had done before) and died, Anno 1535. leaving his titles and estate unto Robert his son, one of the Marshals of France; whose grandson, called also Robert, being a dear friend and companion of Henry of Bourbon K. of Navarre, and afterwards of France also, dying without issue at Geneva, Anno 1588, committed to him the disposal of his estates, and of the Lady Charlotte his only Sister. And he so well discharged his trust, that (having settled his own affairs) he gave the Lady in marriage to Henry de la Tour, Viscount of Turenne in France (one who had done him very good service in the course of his long war against the Leaguers) and with her the possession of Sedan, and the title of Bonillon; whose posterity do still enjoy it. The whole succession of these Princes we shall find in Bonillon, of which more anon.

But to return again to the Dutchie of Luxembourg, it was at first a part of the great Earldom of Ardenne, dismembred from it in the time of the Emperour Otho the first, by Sigisfride the son of Ruminus Prince thereof; who in the division of that estate amongst his Brethren, had this for his portion, with the title of Earl. Of his Successors there is little to be found upon good record, in a constant Order of Succession, until the time of Henry the 1. father of Henry the 7th. Emperour of Germany, and they of a Royal Progeny of Kings and Princes; two of the which are most considerable, though all of them of eminent quality in their several times, viz. 1. Henry elected and crowned Emperour, by the name of Henry the 7th said to be poisoned by a Friar in the Holy Chalice, to prevent some designs he had against the Pope, in asserting the Imperial power in Italy. 2. John the son of this Henry chosen King of Bohemia, in regard of his marriage with Elizabeth the daughter of Wenceslaus, King thereof; the possession of which Realm he left unto his posterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by Charles the 4th, the eldest son of this John, in the person of Wenceslaus his younger brother. What else concerns it, we shall find in this following Catalogue of

EARLS and DUKES of LUXEMBOURG.

- 1 Sigisfride, the son of Ricwine, Prince of Ardenne; the first Earl of Luxembourg.
- 2 Gilbert, the Father of Ogine wife of Baldwin the 4th. of Flanders; but whose son I find not.
- 3 Godfrey, Earl of Namur, was also Earl of Luxembourg by the right of marriage. Father of Agnes, the wife of Simon 2d. Duke of Lorrein.
- 4 Conrad, perhaps the Son of Godfrey by the daughter of Luxembourg, Father of Catherine, wife of Matthew the 2d. Duke of Lorrein.
- 5 Henry Earl of Luxembourg, slain in the quarrel of Rainold Earl of Gueldres, contending with John Duke of Brabant for the Dutchie of Limbourg.
- 6 Henry II. son of Henry the first, by means of his brother Baldwin, Elestor of Trier, was chosen Emperour of the Germans, the 7th of that name, Anno 1308. first crowned at Aken, and afterwards at Rome; one of the last Emperours that medled in the affairs of Italy.
- 1313 7 John, son of Henry II. Earl of Luxembourg, married Elizabeth Daughter of Wenceslaus the elder, King of Bohemia; of which he was upon that marriage elected and crowned King, Anno 1311. in the life of his father; slain by the English in the battle of Crecie, An. 1346.
- 1346 8 Wenceslaus, the younger son of John, created Duke of Luxembourg by his elder brother Charles the 4th Emperour, and King of Bohemia.
- 1383 9 Wenceslaus II. eldest son of the said Charles the 4th Emperour, and King of Bohemia also, succeeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.
- 1419 10 Sigismund, brother of Wenceslaus, succeeded Wenceslaus in all his estates; to which he added the Crown of Hungary, by the marriage of Mary daughter of King Lewis the first.
- 11 Elizabeth, daughter of John Duke of Gorlitz, (a Town of Lusatia) the brother of Sigismund, by the gift of Sigismund her Uncle, being then alive; the better to fit her for the bed of An.

Limbourg.

Anthony of Bourgogn Duke of Brabant; after whose decease she married John the 3d. Earl of Hainault, Holland, &c. But having no issue by either of them, she sold her interest in this Dukedom to Duke Philip the Good.

- 12 Philip the Good, succeeded on the sale aforesaid, made by the said Elizabeth, in pursuance of the contract and agreement made at her first marriage; for settling this estate in the house of Burgundy. Of whom, and his Successors in these Belgick Provinces, we shall speak hereafter.

The Arms are B. six Barrulets A, supporting a Lion G, crowned and armed Or.

7 LIMBOURG.

The greatest of the Estates of Belgium, for extent of territory, at the time of their incorporating in the house of Burgundy, was that of Brabant; comprehending 5 of the 19 Provinces, that is to say, the Dukedom of Limbourg, and Brabant, the Marquisate of the holy Empire, and the Seignury of Machin, with the Sovereignty of Leige or Luick-land.

7. LIMBOURG, hath on the East, the Dukedom of Guick in High Germany; on the West, the Bishoprick of Leige; on the North, Brabant; and on the South, the Dukedom of Luxembourg. The Soil fruitful of all necessary commodities, excepting wines, the want whereof is recompened with most excellent Wheat, great store of fewel, and plenty of the best Iron mines in all these Countries: all which commodities it hath of so great excellency in their several kinds, that it is said of them proverbially; that their Bread is better than bread, their Fire hotter than fire, and their Iron harder than iron. It is also well stored with medicinable simples, and enriched with a mine of Copperas; (by Pliny called *Lapis erosus* lib. 34. c. 10.) which being incorporated with Brass makes *Latun*, and increaseth the Brass by one third part. *Lapis erosus multum aris habet, & ex eo fit ar*, as that Author hath it.

It is one of the least of the Belgick Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages; and no more than five walled Towns or Cities, viz. 1. Limbourg, which gives name to the whole estate, pleasantly seated on a hill amongst shady woods, under which runneth the River *Wesdo*; which having warred the whole Countrey, emptieth it self into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very strong Castle, mounted upon a steep Precipice, of no easie access. 2. Walkenbourg, called by the French *Fauquemont*; a reasonable fair Town, with a large territory, two Dutch miles from *Maestricht*; conquered from Reynold Lord hereof by John the 3d. Duke of Brabant. 3. Dalem, a little Town with a Castle, the territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*; conquered by Henry Duke of Brabant, of that name the second. 4. Rhodé-le-Duc, a little old Town, with as old a Castle, half a league from *Walkenbourg*. 5. Carpen, situate between *Guick* and *Celen*, beautified with a Collegiate Church, and a strong Castle, in which there is a Governour with a good Garrison for defence of the place. Each of these Towns hath jurisdiction on the parts adjoining; but with appeal unto the Chancery at Brabant.

The antient Inhabitants of this tract, and the Bishoprick of Leige adjoining, were the *Eburones*. When it was first made an Earldom, I am yet to seek. Most probable it is; that lying within the Verge of the great Forrest of Ardenne, it was at first a member of that Earldom also; dismembred from it for the portion of some younger Son, as Luxembourg and Namur were, or seized on by some strong Pretender (as *Guick* was) when Godfrey and Baldwin Dukes of Lorrein, and the direct heirs of the house of Ardenne, were absent in the wars of the Holy-land. But whensoever, and by whomsoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperour Frederick Barbarossa, An. 1172. Henry one of the Dukes hereof, married his Daughter Margaret to Godfrey the third Duke of Brabant, which gave that house some colour to pretend unto it: backed with a better title on the death of another Henry, the last Duke of Limbourg, whose next heir Adolph, sold it to John Duke of Brabant, pretending to it in the right of the former marriage, An. 1293. But Reynold Earl of Gueldres, thinking himself to have a better title than Adolph, in right of Ermingrade his wife, the daughter of Herman, a late Duke hereof; put in his plea, and challenged it by force of Arms; but being vanquished and taken prisoner by the said Duke John, in the battle of Worancan, was fain for his release, to release all his claim and title to the Dukedom of Limbourg; after that quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of Brabant, till they fell both together to the house of Burgundy.

The Arms hereof are Argent, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, Or, and Gules.

8. LUICK-LAND;

OR,

The Bishoprick of LEIGE.

Westward of Limbourg, but a far mightier estate than it, lieth LUICK-LAND, as the Dutch, or the Bishoprick of LEIGE, (Leodiensis) as the Latin and French writers call it: antiently under the protection of the Dukes of Brabant, and afterwards of the Princes of the house of Burgundy, as Lords of that Countrey. By some accounted of, and described as a part of Germany; but for the reasons before mentioned I shall place it here: environed on all sides with the Belgick Provinces; that is to say, with the Dukedom of Limbourg, and the Earldom of Namur on the East; with Brabant on the North and West; on the South, with Luxembourg.

The Air hereof is very wholsome, and the Earth as fruitful, abounding with all kind of grain and fruits, some store of Wine; and as for flesh, fish, fowl, and Venison, it hath very great plenty, and that

Leige.

that too of an excellent taste: less fertile in such parts hereof as lye towards *Luxembourg*, in which it is more swelled with Hills, and over-spread with shady Woods, remainders of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, within which it flood. But the chief riches of this Country is under ground, consisting in mines of Lead, and Iron, and some few of Gold; quarries of *Alabaſter*, mingled with all sorts of *Marble*; rich veins of *Brimstone*, and unexhaustible pits of Coal; which last it hath in such abundance, that there is digged within the compass of one league of the City of *Leige*, not only sufficient for that great City; but so much overplus as being sold at mean prices about the Country, amounts unto 10000 ducats of yearly value. The Coal much sweeter than elsewhere, and of a nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with water, and quenched with oil; and the strong fervour of it taken off, by casting salt on it.

The whole Country containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800. Villages, the principal of which are 1. *Leige* or *Luick*, (in *Latine Leodium*) situate in a pleasant valley environed with hills, the *Mense* entering it into two branches, accompanied with four lesser Riverets, which make in it many delightful Islands. The compass of it about four miles, the ordinary buildings very fair, all built of stone; the Bishops Palace, a magnificent and sumptuous piece: the Churches in number forty, of which eight are Collegiate, 32 Parochial; all of them for their riches and beaute excelling all in any City of *France* or *Germany*. Besides, these, there are so many Convents, Monasteries, and religious houses about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an hundred: all of them of such fair revenues, so well endowed, and the Religious persons there of so great authority, that it called the *Paradise of Priests*, and that deservedly. It is also an University of good antiquity, wherein were Students at one time, 9. Kings Sons, 24. Dukes Sons, 29. Earls Sons, besides Barons and Gentlemen; the greatest part of which were Canons of the Church of *S. Lambert*, which is the Cathedral of the City. Yet notwithstanding it hath tasted of the malice of fortune, as well as others, being first destroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once destroyed by *Charles of Burgundy*, Anno 1468. Subject it is unto the Bishop as Lord temporal of it; from whom (being long since made an Imperial City) there lieth an appeal to the Chamber of *Spire*. 2. *Dinant* upon the *Mense* near *Namur*, of very great traffick till destroyed by *Charles of Burgundy*, in the same year with *Leige*: hardly recovered of which wounds, it was again sacked by King *Henry* the second of *France*, An. 1854. 3. *Musek*, upon the *Mense* or *Maes* also, a league from whence is the fair Nunnery of *Thuren*, of the same nature with that of *Mons*, and others spoken of before: the like to which there is near 4. *Bissen*, another Town of this Bishoprick; the *Abbes* of each having the privilege of coining both gold and silver. 5. *Lootz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borelom*, in the County of *Dioſtein*; made a County in the time of *Charles the Great*, the title and possession of *Ogier the Dane*, so famous in the History of *Gallen of France*, and others of the old *Romances*. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the title of a Marquess to the Bishop of *Leige*. 7. *Centron* or *S. Truden*, a fair Town, so called of the Abbey dedicated to that Saint. *Hoy* or *Hoye*, so called of a violent River, which there runs into the *Mense*. 9. *Tungres*, the chief City of the *Tongri*, which together with the *Elwones* were once the Inhabitants of this tract; in which are still the ruins of a Temple consecrated to *Hercules*. Antiently an Episcopal See, translated hence to *Maeſricht*, and at last to *Leige*: and in those times so great, and of such renown, that *Attila* the Hun destroyed in it 100 Churches; now but a very small Town, and not worth the mentioning but for these antiquities. Eight leagues from hence, amongst the shady thickets of the Forest of *Ardenne*, is that so celebrated to Village, and those famous hot Baths, frequented from all the places of *Europe*, called the *Spa*: not so pleasant, as wholesome; nor so wholesome as famous. Yet are they good for sundry diseases, as the *Tertian Ague*, and *Dropsie*, the Stone, the exulceration of the Lungs, the *Sciaticque*, &c. They are of most virtue in *July*, because they are then hottest; and to such as taste them, they relish much of Iron, from some Iron mines, it seemeth, through which the waters run, which feed them. These Baths of great fame in the time of *Pliny*, who doth thus describe them. *Tungri Civitas fontem habet insignem, plurimis bullis stillantem, ferrugineis saporis, quod ipsum non nisi in fine potu intelligitur. Purgat hic corpora, febres tertianas discentit calculorumque vitia.* So he, lib. 31. cap. 2. agreeably to the nature of them at this present time.

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Bonillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, into this accompt) followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Belgica*, till the conquest of it by the *French*, by whom it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*; in the division of which Kingdom between the Kings of *France* and *Germany*, it fell unto the share of the Kings of *France*, as lying almost wholly on the West or *French* side of the River *Maes*, which parted their possessions in that broken Kingdom. Won from *Lotharius* the *French* K. (the last but one of the *Caroline* Race) by *Otho* the 2d, it was by him made part of the Dukedom of *Lorraine* then by him erected, and continued as a part thereof, till sold by *Godfrey* of *Bonillon* Duke of *Lorraine* to the Bishops of *Leige*, (of which more anon) since which time it hath been the Patrimony of those wealthy Prelates. As for the Bishoprick of *Leige*, it was founded at *Tungres*, as before was said: after the sackage of which City by *Attila*, removed Anno 498 by *S. Servatius* unto *Maeſricht*. But the people of *Maeſricht* having Martyred *S. Lambert*, their Bishop, Anno 710. by *Habert* his designed Successor, with the leave of Pope *Conſtantine*, it was translated to this place, and a Cathedral Church here founded by the name of *S. Lambert*. His Successors did so well husband their advantages, that they did not only buy the Dukedom of *Bonillon*, but the City and territory of *Leige*, sold unto *Spemum* and *Obertum* successively Bishops of it, by *Godfrey* of *Bonillon* Duke of *Lorraine*, at his departare hence to the *Holy-Land*: not much increased since that in lands, though he be in titles, the Bishop being stiled a Prince of the Empire, Duke of *Bonillon*, Marquess of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Lootz* and *Haubain*. Yet are not his ordinary revenues above 30000 Du-

Bonillon.

ducats yearly, his Subjects living very well under him, at easie rents, and growing for the most part unto good estates: An argument whereof may be, that when the *Leigeois* had rebelled against *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, (under whose Clientele they were, as Duke of *Brabant*) they bought their peace of him at the price of 600000 *Florens* of the *Rhene*, to be paid in six years. After which again rebelling against *Charles* the warlike, (as they have been observed to be the most rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Gant*) they were able to wage 30000 men, but not being able to withstand the Forces of their Lord Protector, they fell into that miserable destruction spoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the house of *Austria*: but counted themselves in the quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain*, and the *States confederate*, as formerly between the *Spaniards*, and the *French*; though many times they suffer in the contentations.

Southward hereof, betwixt it and *Luxembourg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Bonillon*, subject unto the Bishops of *Leige*; but a State distinct, and holden by a different title. It taketh up a great part of that Country, which more particularly and specially is called the Forrest of *Ardenne*, with the woods whereof in many places overshadowed; but not unfurnished of fair Towns, and wealthy Villages. The principal of which 1. *Loni*, and 2. *Maison Court*, destroyed by *Charles* the fifth in his war against *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Duke of *Bonillon*; but on the peace ensuing repaired again. 3. *Saſſi*, and 4. *Floringe*, Feſt, as before is said, of the Dukedom of *Bonillon*, but possessed by the Sovereigns of *Sedan*, since the time that *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Sovereign of *Sedan*, had them in marriage with *Joan* his wife, the right heir thereof, from whom came *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, the first Duke of *Bonillon* of that Family. The last a pretty town till destroyed by the *French*, in the wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the seconds, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, since passing in accompt as a principal Village. 5. *Hurk*, in the Forrest of *Ardenne*, the cause of the great war betwixt *Charles* the fifth, and *Robert* Duke of *Bonillon*, spoken of before; the Emperor having passed sentence in behalf of the *Emperies*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the pretensions of the house of *Chim*. 6. *Bonillon*, built on the side of a Hill near the River *Senoy*, a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Castle on the top of the said Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, so strong, as well by Art as Nature, that, before the use of great Ordnance, it was held impregnable. Much spoiled in the war betwixt *Charles* the fifth, and *Robert* of *Mark*, and tossed from one Master to another in a little time: For being taken from Earl *Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French*, An. 1552. and finally restored to the Bishop of *Leige* by the treaty of *Cambrai*, An. 1559. but without prejudice to the claim and title of the Prince of *Sedan*: So that there are no fewer than three distinct Families, which at this time enjoy the title of Dukes of *Bonillon*, that is to say, the Bishop of *Leige*, who hath precedency of title, and the possession of the City; the house of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Saſſi*, and some other pieces; and the heirs males of the Collateral line of the house of *Mark*, who hold *Lumaine*, *Rochfort*, and some other places; but of less importance.

This Dukedom once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the division of that estate betwixt the Children of *Ricquie*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the share of *Godfrey* his eldest Son, (*Sedan*, with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the title of Earl of *Ardenne*, and *Bonillon*. By *Godfrey* his son, united to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, succeeding into that estate after *Charles* and *Otho*; and by another *Godfrey* the first Duke of *Lorraine* dismembered from it, and given in Dower with his Sister *Ida*, at her marriage with *Enſace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of these was born the famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey* of *Bonillon*, either because he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof, before he did attain to the Dukedom of *Lorraine*; who to provide himself of necessities for the wars of the *Holy-Land* (so fortunately conveyed and conducted by him) sold first this Dukedom unto *Obert*, as afterwards the whole County of *Luick* land to *Spemum* Bishops of *Leige*, successively, and their successors for ever; which though accounted by most writers for a part of *Luick* land, or of the Bishoprick of *Leige*, call it which you will, was notwithstanding held by those great Prelates as a State distinct, and governed under them by the Estates of the Country, from whose sentence there lay no Appeal: The maintenance of which Priviledges, on an Appeal made by the *Emperies* unto *Charles* the fifth, cost *Robert* Earl of *Mark* so dear, who had not long before purchased this Estate of his Brother *Eberhard*, Bishop and Cardinal of *Leige*, as was said before. The rest of the story we have had already in our description of *Sedan*; we will now look upon the Princes which have born these titles.

The Dukes of Bonillon of the house of Ardenne.

1. *Godfrey*, the eldest son of *Ricquie*, Prince or Earl of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Bonillon*, and Husband of *Matilda*, a daughter of the Emperor *Otho* the 2d.
2. *Godfrey* II. son of *Godfrey* the first, who in the year 1004. by adoption of Duke *Otho* his Cousin, and the power of *Henry* the 2d. Emperor, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*.
- 1019 3. *Gozelo*, brother of *Godfrey* the 2d. Duke of *Lorraine* and *Bonillon*.
- 1044 4. *Godfrey* III. son of *Gozelo*.
5. *Enſace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and *Ida* his wife, daughter of *Godfrey* the 3d. by whom endowed at her marriage with the Dukedom of *Bonillon*.
6. *Godfrey* IV. surnamed of *Bonillon*, son of *Enſace* and *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, An. 1078. and died King of *Hierusalem*. Going unto the wars of the *Holy Land*, he sold this Dukedom to *Obert*, Bishop of *Leige*, and his Successors, Anno 1096. who did accordingly enjoy it till the year 1509. or thereabouts; when

sold by Eberhard of Mark to his brother Robert of whose descent and Successors, you may take this view in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Sovereigns of Sedan and Dukes of Bouillon of the House of Mark.

- 1 Engelbert the 9th Earl of Mark in Germany, by marrying with the daughter and heir of Armburg, added Sedan, Jamais, &c. to the house of Mark.
 - 2 Everhard, second Son of Engelbert by the Heir of Aremberg, Lord of Aremberg, Sedan, &c.
 - 3 John, Son of Everhard, Earl of Mark, Lord of Aremberg, Sedan, &c.
 - 4 Everhard II. Brother of John, Earl of Mark, &c.
 - 5 John II. Earl of Mark, Son of Everhard the 2d.
 - 6 Robert of Mark, the second Son of John the 2d. Lord of Sedan, his elder Brother Everhard succeeding in the estates of Aremberg, he added Florenge and Sansi, Towns of the Dukedom of Bouillon to his other pieces.
 - 7 Robert II. Son of Robert the first, Sovereign of Sedan, and Duke of Bouillon, which Dukedom he purchased of Everhard his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of Leige.
 - 1535 8 Robert III. Son of Robert the second, one of the Marshals of France, Sovereign of Sedan and Titular Duke of Bouillon.
 - 1556 10 Henry Robert, Son of Robert the 3d.
 - 11 Robert-William Son of Henry Robert, zealous in the formed Religion, and a great follower of Henry of Vendosme, King of Navarre, to whom dying at Geneva, An. 1588. he bequeathed the care of his estates.
 - 12 Charlotte the Sister of Robert-William, married by Henry of Navarre (then King of the French) to Henry de la Tour, Viscount of Turenne.
 - 13 Henry de la Tour, Viscount of Turenne in France, descended from the Heirs General of Enface Earl of Boulogne, and Duke of Bouillon, by marriage of the Lady Charlotte, and the gift of Henry the fourth of France, succeeded in the Sovereignty of Sedan and title of Bouillon; A Protestant and the founder of the Schola Illustris in Sedan.
- De la Tour Son of Henry by one of the Daughters of William, Prince of Orange, succeeded his Father, in his Estates, but not in his Religion also, which to ingratiate himself with the French King he exchanged for Papistrie, made thereupon one of the Marshals of France, and now living, Anno 1648.

9. BRABANT. 10. The MARQUISATE,
And 11. MACHLYN.

These I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because they have a long time followed the same fortune, and that the two last do no otherwise differ from the first, then the parts from the whole: the Marquisate, and Machlyn, being now reckoned as parts of Brabant, and included in it.

1. BRABANT is bounded on the East, with Luickland, or the Bishoprick of Leige; on the West, with the River Scheld, and a part of Flanders; on the North, with the Maes, which severeth it from Holland, and Guelderland; and on the South, with Hainault, Namur, and a part of Luickland. So called quasi Brachland, that is to say, a barren Land, as at first it was; or from the old Bratipantium, which Cesar placeth in this tract, but from whether of the two is not yet determined.

The Air hereof is generally very wholesome, and good, and the Soil naturally fruitful, excepting Kempenland, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it self, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattel, Soiling the ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The people live in most freedom, and are the best privileged of any in Belgium. A thing for which they are more beholding to the Princes goodness, than their own great wits; being noted to be none of the wisest, especially as they grow in age, when most men learn wisdom. Brabant quo magis fruescent, et magis stultescunt, as Erasmus.

The length hereof, from S. Gertrudenberg to Genblours, North and South, is 22 Dutch or German miles; from Helmont to Berghen ap Some, East and West, 20 of the same miles; the whole compass 80. Within which circuit are contained 26 walled Towns; and Villages with Parish Churches 718, of which, the odd 18 called Francky, or Market-towns, enjoy the privileges of walled Towns, or Cities, though unwalled themselves.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. Shertogen Bosch, or the Bosch, as the Dutch; Bois le Duc, or Bolduc, as the French; and Silva Ducis, or Boscum Ducis, as the Latines call it: each name derived according to their several Languages, from a pleasant wood belonging to the Dukes of Brabant, where the Town now stands, situate on a little River called Deese, some two leagues from the Maes, near the borders of Guelderland: a large and well built Town, very strongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly, in the time of Lewis Guicciardine, 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper; Made an Episcopal See, Anno 1559. the Cathedral, which is fixed in the Church of Saint John, being fair and large; and beautified with one of the goodliest Dials in the Christian world. This is the principal Town of Brabant (properly and distinctly so called) comprehending under it the four Countries of Kempenland, Maesland, Peel and Overnick; and was taken by the Confederate Estates from the King of Spain, after a long and chargeable siege, Anno 1628.

2. Tilmont,

2. Tilmont, on the little River Geet, once chief of Brabant, but long since decayed. 3. Aschot on the little River Denerre, which gives the title of Duke to them of the Noble house of Croy, and descended from the Kings of Hungary, (of which we spake before at large when we were in Picardy) the Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by Charles the fifth) being men of greatest Revenue and Authority of any in Belgium. 4. Bergen ap Zone, so called from the River Zome, upon which it is situate, about half a league from the influx of it into the Scheld, and not far from the Sea, which gives it a reasonable good Haven. A Town of great strength by nature, but more strongly fortified: Famous for being made a Marquisate by Charles the Fifth, Anno 1553. more for the notable resistance which it made to the Marquis Spinola, Anno 1622. 5. Breda, upon the River Merck, a Town pleasantly seated, well fortified, and of great Revenue; having under it the Town and Territory of Steenberg, the Franchise of Rosendale, and the Seignury of Ofterbant, the residence, Barony, and chief Town of the Princes of Orange, from whom being taken by the Spaniards in the beginning of those wars, it was again recovered by some venturous Gentlemen, who hiding themselves in a Boat covered over with Turf, were conveyed into the Castle, which they easily mastered, and made the Prince Lord of it again. After re-taken by the Spaniards, Anno 1625. but now in the possession of its natural owners; to whom it came by the right of the house of Nassau, by the marriage of Engelbert the 7th Earl of that house, with Mary, Daughter and heir of Philip the last Lord hereof, about the year 1400. 6. Dieff on the River Denerre, a good Town, and invested with a goodly Territory; belonging to the Duke of Orange, whose ancestors of the House of Nassau had it in exchange for some other Lands of the Duke of Cleve; and in right hereof is Burgrave of the City of Antwerp. 7. Grinbergh, an ancient Barony, with a large jurisdiction, defendible on the youngest son only, after the manner of Burg English, as our Lawyers call it. 8. Gertrudenberg, standing on the Donge, not far from the influx of it into the Maes, the furthest Town in the North of Brabant, where it joyns to Holland: which makes it a matter of dispute betwixt those Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A Town of great trade for fishing, plenty of Salmon and Sturgeon being taken here; but of Shads especially: whereof 18000 are sometimes caught in a day, salted, and sent abroad into foreign parts: It acknowledgeth the Prince of Orange for the Lord thereof, as doth also 9. Grave, a good Town upon the Maes, bought by these Princes of the King of Spain, without consent of the States; without whose approbation, no part of the Domain is to be dismembered. 10. Maesricht (in Latine Trajectum ad Mosam) so called of a ferry over the Maes in former times; supplied now with a goodly Stone bridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly town, beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one of which the Dukes of Brabant were always Canons; subject in part to the Bishop of Leige, and partly to the Duke of Brabant: the Children are subject to that Prince to whom the Mother was subject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father; according to that Maxim of the Civil Law, Partus sequitur ventrem: And if a Stranger come to live there, he must declare to which of the two he will be subject; yet is the Duke of Brabant the chief Sovereign of it, he only having the power of Coynage, and of granting pardon to Offenders: and as a Town of this Dukedom, besieged and taken by the confederate States, Anno 1632.

Here is also within the limits of this Dukedom, the town and Signeury of Ravestein, situate on the banks of the Maes, held by the Dukes of Cleve, of the Duke of Brabant; but no otherwise subject: and on the same River, the Town and Countrey of Horn, a Fief Imperial, beautified with a strong Castle, and a goodly Territory; in which is Wiert, the residence of the Earls of Horn descended of the ancient house of Montmorency in France.

2. THE MARQUISATE OF THE EMPIRE, so called, because the farthest bounds and Marches of the German Empire, fronting on Flanders, which appertained unto the Sovereignty of the Crown of France; comprehendeth four of the best Towns in Brabant, with very large and spacious Territories adjoining to them, viz. 1. Lovain, on the River Dyle, about four English miles in compass; but in that compass much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadows, and pleasant Fields; which make the situation far more delightful, than if all built, and peopled. It was the Mother Town of Brabant, and sometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes hereof: afterwards was made an University by Duke John the 4th, An. 1426. wherein are contained about 20 Colleges, such as they be; much privileged, and enriched with pensions for publick Readers, by King Philip the 2d. 2. Brussels, (Bruxella) the seat of the ancient Dukes of Brabant, and of the Dukes of Burgundy also, after they came to be Lords of those Countries; seated upon the Sinne, and other sweet Springs and Riverets, which make it one of the sweetest situations in all Europe: having within, a goodly channel made by Art from Brussels, to the River Dele, and from thence to the Scheld: the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the same compass with Lovain, the buildings sumptuous, and the Town very rich: not only in regard that it is the ordinary seat of the Prince, or his Regent, and the Chancery for all Brabant, and the Duchy of Limbourg; but in regard of the rich Manufactures of Armour and Cloth of Arras, of Silk, Gold and Silver, which are there industriously pursued. 3. Nivello, on the borders of Hainault, in a very rich and fruitful soil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linnen, which is therein made; but most of all for a very rich Nunery (or rather a Nursery) of Noble Ladies; of the same nature with those of Mons and others before described. 4. Antwerp, situate on a goodly plain on the River Scheld, above 17 leagues from the Sea, but furnished with eight Channels cut out of the River for the transport of Commodities; one of the which is capable of 200 great Ships. The private buildings very handsome, but the publick sumptuous; the chief whereof were reckoned the Church of Nostre Dame, the Town-house, and the house of the Easterlings, or Eastern Merchants; well peopled, and of so great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richest Empory of the Christian world; the Commodities here bought and sold, amounting

- Holland.* 1355 16 *Joan*, the eldest daughter of *John* the third, married to *Wenceslaus* the first Duke of *Luxemburg*, but died without issue.
- 1406 17 *Anthony* of *Burgundy*, son of *Philip* the *Hardie*, and the Lady *Margaret* his wife, daughter of *Lewis* de *Malain* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Margaret* the sister and heir of *Joan*; after the death of the said *Wenceslaus* and *Joan* his wife, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*; his elder brother *John*, giving way unto it, at the request of their great Aunt *Joan*, the proprietary of it.
- 1415 18 *John* IV. son of *Anthony* by his first wife *Joan*, daughter of *Waleran* Earl of *Saint Paul*.
- 1426 19 *Philip*, the second son of *Anthony*, and brother of *John* the 4th.
- 1430 20 *Philip* II. called the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundy*, son and heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, elder brother of *Anthony*; on the death of his two Cousin Germans *John* and *Philip*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, as the direct heir of the Lady *Margaret*, wife to *Lewis* de *Malain*, and daughter of *John* the third; the last Duke of *Brabant* of the house of *Louvain*. Of whose successors more in another place.

The Arms hereof are *Sable*, a *Lion Or*.

12. HOLLAND, 13. ZELAND,
14. WEST-FRISELAND.

HAVING thus spoken of those Provinces which still continue in subjection to the King of *Spain* (except some few towns in *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, before mentioned;) let us next look on those which have withdrawn their obedience from him; beginning first with *Holland*, and its Appendices, of more power and consideration than all the rest. Which though distinct Provinces, and acting in their several capacities at the present time: yet having been always under the command of the same Princes, they must be joynted together in the story of them; but shall be severally handled as to the Chorography.

HOLLAND hath on the East, the *Zwider-See*, *Utrecht*, and some part of *Guelderland*; on the West and North, the *German Ocean*; on the South, the Islands of *Zeland*, and some part of *Brabant*. So called, as some think, but with little reason, *quasi Holt-land*, that is to say a woody Country; as others, *quasi Hollow-land*, from the Bogs and Marshes and unsound footing on the same; and some will have it called so, *quasi Hay-land*, from the great quantity of Hay. But the learned *Junius* not relishing any of the three, conceives, that both this Country, and the Isles of *Zeland*, being planted by some Colonies of *Danes*, and *Normans*, (at the time of the irruption of those Northern Nations,) were called thus with reference to *Seland* and *Oeland* two Islands of the *Baltick* Sea out of which they came. The Reader hath good choice, and may please himself.

The Country for the most part lyeth very low, in so much that they are fain to fence it with Banks and *Ramparts* to keep out the Sea, and to restrain the Rivers within their bounds; so that in many places one may see the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulsed with those Banks: and is wical so fenny and full of marshes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable dikes and channels, to make it firm land, and fit for dwelling; yet not so firm to bear either trees or much grain. But such is the Industry of the People and trade they drive, that having little or no corn of their own growth, they do provide themselves elsewhere; not only sufficient for their own spending, but wherewith to supply their neighbours: having no timber of their own, they spend more timber in building ships, and fencing their water-courses, than any Country in the World; having no wine, they drink more than the people of the Country, where it groweth naturally; and finally, having neither *Flax* nor *Wool*, they make more Cloth of both sorts, than all the Countries in the world, except *France* and *England*.

The present Inhabitants are generally given to Sea-faring lives; so that it is thought that in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *West-Friesland*, there are 2500 ships of war and burden. The women for the most part laborious in making Ruffs. Nay you will hardly see a Child of four years of age, that is not kept to work, and made to earn its own living; to the great commendation of their government. The greatest of their natural Commodities is Butter and Cheese; of which, besides that infinite plenty which they spend in their own Houses, and amongst their Garrisons and ships; they sell as much unto other Countries, as comes to 100000 Crowns per annum. By which means, and by the greatness of their fish-trade spoken of before, they are grown to wealthy on the Land, and so powerful at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*; so now *Holland* is taken generally for all the Provinces confederated in a league against the *Spaniards*.

The whole compas of it is no more than 180 miles; no part thereof being distant from the Sea, above three hours journey: and yet within that narrow Circuit, there are contained no fewer than 23 walled Towns, and 400 Villages; some situate in the North, and others in *South-Holland*, as it stands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part hereof that lyeth next to *Zeland* and the middle channel of the *Rhene* passing from *Utrecht* unto *Leiden*) the principal Towns are, 1. *Dord*, (in *Latine Dordrechtum*) formerly the Staple for *Rhenish* wines, a large, rich, and well-peopled Town; antiently joynted to the firm Land, but in the year 1421. rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Island; of great command upon the traffique of the *Maes*, and the *Wael*, upon whose confluence it stands; but of most note in these later times, for an Assembly of Divines out of divers Countries following

lowing *Calvins* Doctrine, for condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Universal Grace and Predestination, Anno 1618. 2. *Gorichem*, situate on the *Wael*, where it meeteth with the *Linge*: a Town of great trade and riches, by reason of a daily Market of Cheese and Butter, brought hither in very great quantity. Beautified antiently with a strong Castle, and a fair Church, from the Steeple whereof one may behold 22 walled Towns, besides an infinite number of Villages. The Country is round about it, called by that people *Van Arckel*, or the land of *Hercules*, from an opinion that *Hercules* the *German* did there appoint his Camp; or rather from some Temple dedicated to him, in the place whereof the Lords of this tract, who from hence took the name of *Arckel*, (*Arckels* they are called in our *Latine* writers) founded a Church unto the honor of the Virgin *Mary*, in the time of *Thierry* the 2d Earl of *Holland*, by whom first settled in this Country. And here they flourished as Lords of *Gorichem*, *Leerdam*, and the parts adjoining, till the year 1416. when falling to *John* L. of *Egmond*, by *Mary* his wife, daughter of *John* of *Arckelland*, the last Lord hereof, and Mother of *Arnold* of *Egmond* D. of *Guel-dres*. It was by him sold to *William* the sixth, Earl of *Holland*, and so again united unto that Estate. 3. *Rotterdam*, seated on a dike or channel called the *Rotter*, not far from which, at a place named *Rempen*, the Leek, one of three main branches of the *Rhene*, falleth into the *Maes*: a strong, fair, and well-traded Port; the birth-place of the learned *Erasmus*. 4. *Schoon-hoven*, situate on the Leek, a fair Town, having a commodious haven. 5. *Goude*, one of the six principal Towns of *Holland*, rich, and well fortified; seated on the River called *Tyssel*, which rising about *Tyssel-stein* spoken of anon, falleth into the Leek at a place called *Jffelmond*, and therefore different from the branch of the *Rhene*, so called, which giveth name to *Over-tyssel*. On the same River also stand, 6. *Ondwater*, and 7. *Tyssel-stein*, this last belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the first of great trade for making Cables and Cords for shipping. 8. *Leiden*, or *Lugdunum Batavorum*, an University, founded Anno 1564. The Town consisteth of 41 Islands, to which they pass partly by boats, partly by bridges, whereof there are 144. and of them 104. builded with stone. Here is in this Town a Castle, said to have been built by *Hengist* the *Saxon*, at his return out of *England*. And not far off stood the famous *Nimmerie* of *Rainburg*, of the same nature with those of *Monts* and *Nivelle*, before described; so liberally indowed, that 2000 persons did there daily receive relief. 9. *Vianen*, on the Leek, a Seignery distinct from *Holland*, pertaining antiently to the Lords of *Bruderode*: And so was also, 10. *Heusden*, a good old Town, once beautified with a fair Castle, and a goodly Territory, but belonging to the Earls of *Cleve*, of which house it had Lords of its own, as knowing no subjection to the Earls of *Holland*, from the year 850. or thereabouts, to the year 1290. at which time *Theodorick* the 9th of *Cleve*, at a merry meeting transferred the Sovereignty thereof to *Florence* Earl of *Holland*, of that name the fifth. Finally, having continued in the possession of 20 Lords of that family, on the expiration of that line, in the person of *John* the 9th dying without issue, Anno 1334. it was made a member of this Earldom (after some sharp disputes with the Dukes of *Brabant*, claiming it by a resignation of the last Lord *John*) by *Williams* of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Holland* and *Hainault*, Anno 1361. or thereabouts. 11. *Leerdam*, upon the River *Linge*, which together with *Tyssel-stein* before mentioned, fell unto *Philip* Prince of *Orange*, in right of his descent from the Earls of *Buren*. 12. *Delfe*, a Town of great trade for cloathing, but more by reason of the Cloath of *England*, brought thither in great quantities, by the *English* Merchant, then for any great store of their own making; by reason of the concourse which that trade brings with it; rich, large, and well-built, beautified with spacious streets, and goodly Churches: the birth-place of that monstrous Heretick *David George*, who called himself *King*, and *Christ* *Immortal*, as before said.

In that part thereof which is called *North-Holland*, lying betwixt the middle channel of the *Rhene*, and the *Zwider-See*, the Towns or Cities of most importance are, 1. *Alkmar*, encompassed with deep fens and marshes; a rich Town, in regard of the great plenty of Butter and Cheese, which is made about it, more than in any place of *Holland*; and famous for the defeat which the Duke of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the *Low-Country* troubles, having with the loss of 20000 of his own men, forced *Harlem*, laid his siege round about this Town. Had he left any way for the Souldiers to have fled thence, the Town had been abandoned: but having invironed them round, he put them to such a resolution, or desperation (choose you whether) that manfully they resisted three of his assaults; and in the end made him depart with great loss, as well of his Souldiers, as his reputation. 2. *Amsterdam*, a very fair haven Town, where divers times at one tide, 1000 ships of all sorts have been seen to go out and in: So truly said a modern Poet,

*Quod Tagus, atq; Hermus vehit, & Pactolus, in unum
Verè hinc congestum dixeris esse locum.*

What *Tagus*, *Hermus*, and *Pactolus* bear,
One would conjecture to be heap'd up here.

The people thereby made so rich; that if a Fleet of 300 sail should come into the Port, fraught with all kind of commodities, in five or six days they would be ready to buy all the lading. Situate it is on the Gulph call'd the *Tie*, and the dike or channel called *Amstel*, whence it hath the name of *Amstel-dam*, in *Latine Amstelodunum*; built upon piles like *Venice*, and resembling it in so many points, that it may justly be call'd the *Northern Venice*. First fortified with Towers and ramparts by *Gysbert* of *Amstel*,

Zeland. *Amstel.* about 300 years ago. But being burnt through the envy of its neighbours, it began to be walled, Anno 1482. Grown to this wealth since the diverting of the trade from *Antwerp* hither, and for that cause inhabited by men of all Nations, and of all Religions; and those not only tolerated, and connived at in private, but openly and freely exercised without any dislike. A greater confusion (in my mind) than that of *Babel*; this being of Religions, that of Languages only. 3. *Harlem*, on the Lake called *Harlem-meer*, the greatest Town of all *Holland*, and the second for dignity; well built, and very pleasantly situated amongst many goodly meadows, near a delightful forest, and round about environed with wealthy Villages: famous for the invention of Printing, invented here; but perfected at *Mentz* in higher Germany; the first Book which was ever printed being *Tullius Offices*. 4. *Narden* on the *Zuider-See*, fortified with a strong Castle, held of the Earls of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brabant* to whom it antiently belonged. 5. *Enghuysen*, on the very point of the Gulf of *Zuider-See*, opposite to *Frisland*, from which not distant above two leagues. A town of great consequence to the Prince of *Orange*, in the first revolting of these Countries from the King of *Spain*. For siding with him in that war, and standing conveniently to obstruct the passages by Sea, unto *Amsterdam*, it compelled that City, in short time, by stopping all supply of victuals and other necessities, to yield it self unto the Prince. 6. *Hoorn*, on the same Gulf also, a rich Town with a very good Haven; and of so great strength by reason of the Multitude of Dikes and Channels which are round about it, that it seems impregnable. 7. *Edam*, upon the same Gulf (of *Zuider-See*) remarkable for the great number of ships which are built yearly in it, and an incredible number of the best *Holland Cheeses* made in the Country round about it. 8. *Medemblick* on the Ocean, seated in the best Country of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattel: unwalled, but enjoying all the privileges which a walled Town hath; and fortified with a right strong Castle.

The chief of the *Holland Villages* is the *Hague* or *Graven Haghe*, in Latine *Haga Comitis*, because formerly the Court and residence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautiful Palace founded by Earl *William* King of the *Romans*, and there in a choice and excellent Library gathered together by *John Haire* a Canon Regular of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the first. In former time the residence of the Council for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commissioners or Delegates of the confederat Provinces, called by the name of the *States-General*. Now much increased in buildings, of what it was, and yet so great in the time of *Lewis Guiccardine*, that it then contained 2000 households. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as desiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Europe*, than the second City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Bruderode*, 4. *Wassenaar*, which antiently gave names to three Noble families; of which none so illustrious and renowned as that of *Egmond*, descended lineally from *Radbold*, son of *Adgillis* the King of the *Friscons*, the first Lord of *Egmond*, who died, Anno 791. Advanced by marriages to the Dukedom of *Guelderland*, the Signeuries of *Tijfel-Hein* and *Buren*, and finally made Earls of *Egmond*, by *Maximilian* the Emperor, Anno 1592. But both this house and that of *Wassenaar* being now extinct, there is none left but that of *Bruderode*, for ought I can learn. Neer to the last stood the famous Fortresses called *Arx Britannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great Battle upon this Shore. For making shew of a voyage into *Britain*, to subdue that Island, he boarded his Galley, embattled his soldiers, caused his Trumpets to sound, gave them the Signal; and then commanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortress was at the fall of the *Roman Empire*, overwhelmed by the Sea; the ruins whereof at a dead low water are still to be seen.

Besides these places on the firm Land or Continent, there are some Islands, which pertain to the State of *Holland*, called by the general name of *Voorn*, because situate directly against *Holland*; *Voorn* signifying as much as before, or in old *English* *Bevorne*: but known by their distinct and more proper names of *Somersdike*. 2. *Ganrode*, 3. *Piereschille*, so called of their principal Towns: and 4. *Voorn*, specially so named, the chief of them all, being of a fat and fruitful soil, and plentiful of most sorts of grain. The principal Towns whereof are 1. *Briel* (which we call the *Brill*) a strong Town, and the first that revolted against the *Spaniard*, Anno 1572. Cautionary to the *English* with the Town of *Flushing*; chosen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the passage to *Gertrudenburg* and the rest of *Brabant*; as also to *Delfe*, *Dort*, and *Rotterdam*, the greatest Towns of trade in the South of *Holland*. 2. *Gerwilt*, a small Town, but having a jurisdiction over many Villages. There are also on the North side of *Holland* the Isles *Wierengeh*, and *Tessel*; of which little memorable, but that the last is furnished with a safe and capacious Bay for receipt of shipping.

One special accident concerning *Holland*, I cannot over-pass in silence, namely, how *Margaret* Countess of *Hennenberg*, and sister to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 years, was delivered at one birth of 365 children, the one half males, the other females, the odd one an hermaphrodite; all christened at the Church of *Lafanne*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, into two Basins, still to be seen in the said Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Ntrecht*; all which immediately after died, and with them the Mother.

The Arms of *Holland* of it self, as a State distinct, are *Or*, a *Lion Gules*.

ZELAND consisteth of seven Islands, the remainder of 18 which the Sea hath swallowed; and in them 300 inhabited Towns. Severed from *Flanders* with the left branch or arm of the *Scheld*, which they called *Home*, and on the East, from *Brabant*, with the right branch of the said River, which still keeps his name; on the North, from *Holland*, with the Gulf called the *Flack*; and on the West, with the main Ocean, from the Kingdom of *England*. So called, as some say, *quasi* Sea and Land; but as *Jesuit* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Island of *Denmark*, as before was noted.

The

The Country generally more fruitful than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent Corn, plenty of *Coriander*, and abundance of *Mader*, used in dying; the soil also very rich in pasture, but low and marshy, which makes the air to be very unhealthy; and the whole destitute both by Turf digged amongst themselves, but very sparingly for fear of weakening the Sea-banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns and 100 Villages. The Islands which remain, are commonly divided into the Western, and the Eastern, according as they lye with reference to the River *Scheld*. The Western Islands, four in number, that is to say, 1. *Walcheren*, (*Palachria* in Latine) lying to the South-40 Italian miles. The principal Towns of which are 1. *Middleburg*, seated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the streets spacious, the houses and Churches well built: inhabited by wealthy Merchants, and industrious Traders; and of late times (since the removing of the *English* trade built (as faith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named in honour of his and invincible strength. One of the first Towns which the Low-Countrymen took from the *Spaniards*, after put into the hands of the *English*, as a Town of Caution: the first Governour of it being the renowned *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the *Netherlands*, without the whole license no Ship can pass either to or from the City of *Antwerp*, inasmuch that if the Duke of *Alva* a maritime Town, as he did in the strengthening *Antwerp*, and some midland Cities; he had in all probability the remediless revolt of these flourishing Countries. Not far off standeth the Fort called of *Voorn*, (an Isle of *Holland*) all three being taken from the *Spaniard*, Anno 1572. made Cautionary to *Robert Lord Lisle* (afterwards created Earl of *Leicester*) the brother of Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governour of *Flushing*. 3. *Rammere*, or *Armuyden*, an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodly Ships of great burden, set forwards on their voyages to several parts. 4. *Vere*, or *Camsere*, seated in the North part of the Island, which once gave title to a Marquess, and from the which the noble Family of the *Vere* (now, and of long time, Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that so many of that Family have ventured their Estates and Lives, in the Wars of this Country, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their Primitive Paragge, from whence transplanted into *England*.

2. *SOUTH-BEVERLAND*, situate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greatest of the Isles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 Dutch miles in compass, but now much diminished by the rage and fury of the Sea; by which the Town and Signeury of *Borsule*, with all the Countries round about it, was swallowed up, Anno 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods, and pleasant Thickets, full of Fowls, and wild Beasts for Hawking and Hunting. Chief Towns here, are 1. *Rommerswal*, seated on the East, towards *Bergen op Some*, severed at the same time from the rest of the Island; and made an Island of it self; defended with continual charge from following the sad fate of the Town of *Borsule*. 2. *Gaer*, or *Tergor*, on the Northern Coast, a strong Town, well privileged, and the only walled Town in all the Island.

3. *NORTH-BEVERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Isle of *Schonen*, in former times esteemed the Paradise of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town called *Chor-Chen*; but so destroyed by the Sea-breach spoken of before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WOLFERSDIKE*, lying between the two *Beverlands*, the smallest of the Western Islands, as having in it no more than two Villages, but replenished with good store of Pasture.

And these are all which fall in the division of the Western Islands, so called, because they lye Westward of the River *Scheld*; as those which they call the Eastern Islands, on the East thereof. Of which last there are three in number.

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the North-west of *Holland*, so near unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one shore to the other: but now the Sea hath set them at a greater distance. It containeth in compass six Dutch miles. Chief Towns wherein are 1. *Sitiched*, the antientest Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choked up with Beach; yet still reputed for the second Town of all the Province: the whole trade thereof consisting in Salt and *Mader*, of which it yields good plenty. Most famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius*, that renowned Philosopher and Physician. 2. *Bromers-Haven*, inhabited only by Fishermen, not else remarkable.

2. *DUVELAND*, so named from the multitude of *Doves* or Pigeons, situate between *Schowen* and *Telen*, in compass about 4 Dutch miles; hath no good Town in it, but only Country Villages, and Gentlemen Farms. Surrounded by the Sea, Anno 1530. but by the industry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Burgundy*, and the Lord of *Bosforers* in *Flanders*, recovered again; and at the excessive charge of the people hitherto preserved.

3. *TOLLEN*, so called from the chief Town of the Island, where the Earls *Toll* was wont to be paid, whence it had the name; is situate over against the North-west of *Brabant*, from which disjoined

Groiningland. And though upon the loss of that gallant man (nephew and heir unto that Earl), the siege was raised at the present; yet was it reinforced again, Anno 1590. and the Town then taken: continuing ever since in the confederacy of the States united.

GROINING-LAND, hath on the East, *East-Friesland*; on the West, *West-Friesland*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, *Over-Tissel*; so wedged in as it were betwixt both *Frieslands*; that some hold it to be but a part of the West. It containeth under it the Country called the *Omme-lands*, (corruptly for the *Emmellands*, as I conjecture, because lying along the River *Ems*), and therein 145 Barroughs and Villages. The chief whereof are 1 *Dam*, near the *Ems*, bordering on *East-Fri-land*; 2 *Keykirk*, 3 *Old-Haven*, standing on the Sea. 4 As for the Town of *Groining* it self, it is rich, and very well-built, situate amongst divers small streams which run thorow it; and having also great, and very well-built, situate amongst divers small streams which run thorow it; and having also divers Channels for conveyance of waters, which adds much to the safety and strength thereof. A Town of great Jurisdiction, both within and without, judging absolutely without appeals, in causes both Civil and Criminal; in *Spirituals* subject heretofore to the Bishop of *Munster*, till made one of the new Bishopricks, by King *Philip* the second, Anno 1559. And though the Prince in *Civil* causes had his Office or Lieutenant there; yet in *Criminal* the Town was *Sovereign*, and granted pardons as *Sovereign* of the whole estate, paying to the Prince for all duties yearly, but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country anciently belonged to the Bishops of *Utrecht*, by whose negligence in defending them, they subverted their Estate to the Duke of *Guelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxony* laying some claim to it, disturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Ezardus* the Earl of *East-Friesland* possessed himself of it; but not able to make good his unjust possession, sold his estate therein to the Duke of *Gueldres*, Anno 1514: to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the year 1536. they put themselves under the command of *Charles* the fifth, but with the reservation of all their privileges, and ancient Liberties; for preservation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the *Spaniard*, they confederated with the rest of the United States, Anno 1594. and so still continue.

The ancient Inhabitants of these Countries, were the *Menapii*, and *Sicambri*, very valiant people possessing *Guelderland*; and the *Majoris Frisi*, which were planted in *Groining*, and the rest of *Friesland*. Of these the *Sicambri* were accounted the most valiant people, uniting with other Nations in the name of *French*, and by that name possessing with the rest of those Nations, the mighty Empire of the West. In the division whereof, by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, these Countries were first part of the Kingdom of *Austrasia*, or *East-France*, afterwards of the *German* Empire: governed at the first by *Guardians*, or *Protectors*, created by the people in the reign of *Charles* the Bald; the two first being *Wickard* and *Lupold*, (or *Leopold*) two Brethren; who fixing their chief Seat in the Castle of *Gueldres*, occasioned the whole Country to be called *Guelderland*. But they, and their Successors, by what name occasioned the whole Country to be called *Guelderland*. But they, and their Successors, by what name or title soever called, were in effect but *Provincial Officers*, accountable to the Emperours for their administration; the first free Prince hereof being *Otho* of *Nassau*, who having to his first wife the Lady *Aleide*, daughter of *Wickard*, the last *Guardian*; was by the Emperour *Henry* the third made first Earl of *Guelderland*; adding thereto the State of *Zutphen*, by a second marriage, as is said before. In *Rainold* the ninth Earl it was made a Dukedom, by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Anno 1339. sold by Duke *Arnold* (justly incensed at his ungracious son *Adolph*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, for 92000 *Florins* of ready money, and an Annual pension, Anno 1472. But notwithstanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charles*) possessed himself of it, and left it unto *Charles* his son; who finally surrendered it unto *Charles* the fifth, Anno 1547.

EARLS and DUKES of GUELDERLAND.

- 1079 1 *Otho* of *Nassau*, the first Earl.
- 2 *Gerard*, the son of *Otho* by his first wife *Aleide*.
- 1131 3 *Henry*, the son of *Gerard*.
- 1162 4 *Gerard* II. son of *Henry*.
- 1180 5 *Otho* II. brother of *Gerard*.
- 1202 6 *Gerard* III. son of *Otho* the second.
- 1229 7 *Otho* III. son of *Gerard*, who walled the Towns of *Ruermund*, *Arnhem*, *Bomel*, *Goch*, *Wageningen*, and *Harderwick*.
- 1271 8 *Rainold*, son of *Otho* the third, taken and imprisoned till his death, by
- 1326 9 *Rainold* II. his own son, created the first Duke of *Gueldres*, by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* at *Francfort*, Anno 1339. liberal to the poor, and a great Patron of the *Muses*.
- 1343 10 *Rainold* III. son of *Rainold* the 2d. molested with continual Wars with his brother *Edward*, by whom taken, and imprisoned till his dying day.
- 1371 11 *Edward* the son of *Rainold* the 2d. by *Eleanor* the daughter of *Edw.* the third of *England*, his second wife, died the same year with his brother; the last of the male issue of *Otho* of *Nassau*.
- 1371 12 *Mary*, (by some called *Joan*) Sister of *Edw.* by the same *venter*, and wife of *Will. E.* of *Gulick*.
- 13 William, son of *William* Duke of *Gulick*, and *Mary* of *Gueldres*, admitted Knight of the *Order* by King *Richard* the 2d.
- 14 *Rainold* IV. the brother of *William*.
- 15 *Arnold* of *Egmond*, son of *John* Lord of *Egmond*, and *Mary* his wife, daughter of *Joan*, the sister of *Rainold*, and *William*, the two last Dukes, succeeded in the estate of *Gueldres*; the Duke.

Dukedom of *Gulick* being seized on by *Adolph*, son of *William* the first Duke of *Berg*, as *Guelderland* the next heir male to the two last Dukes. Being afterwards taken, imprisoned, and most barbarously handled by his own son *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke of *Burgundy*, he sold to him his estates of *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*, to be enjoyed by him after his decease, Anno 1472.

- 1473 16 *Adolph*, the wicked son of *Arnold*, dispossessed of his estate by the said agreement which Duke *Charles* enjoyed for his life; after the death of the said *Charles*, was restored to liberty by the *Gantois*, Anno 1467. and made the General of their forces against *Lewis* the eleventh.
- 1477 17 *Charles*, son of *Arnold*, after long Wars with the Princes of the houses of *Burgundy* and *Austria*, pretending the sale and legacy of Duke *Arnold*, to *Charles* the *Warlike*, surrendered his estates unto *Charles* the fifth, to be enjoyed by him after his decease, if he left no issue. According to which contract the Emperour *Charles* succeeded him in *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*, Anno 1538. being the year of his decease; after that time accompanied in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Arms hereof were Quarterly; 1 *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, crowned *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Guelderland*; 2 *Azure*, a Lion *Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zutphen*.

Thus have we seen a Country, which at the first erecting of these Estates, was nothing in a manner but bogs and marshes; and at the best but a continual wilderness of Woods and Forests; by the great providence of the Princes, and extreme industry of the people, made the most populous, best planted, and the wealthiest Estate (for the bigness of it) in the whole habitable world. And we have seen those several Estates and Principalities, by Marriages, and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the house of *Burgundy*: under the Princes of which great and illustrious Family, inferior to no Kings of *Christendom* for Power and Riches (especially under Duke *Philip* the Good) the Subjects hereof did so abound in wealth and plenty, that *Philip* de *Comines*, who then lived, affirmeth, that this Country seemed like the *Land of Promise*. Some thought there was a purpose in this Duke *Philip*, of erecting these States into a Kingdom. Diverted from it by the difference and variety of Laws and Privileges which those people severally lived under: not to be brought without great difficulty and dissent, to one form of Government; yet might have done it if he would, as himself openly affirmed to the Embassadors of King *Lewis* the 11th. But *Charles* his son being more bent on the design, negotiated to that end with the Emperour *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, Anno 1473. and doubtless had obtained his purpose, upon the marriage of his daughter with *Maximilian*, *Frederick's* son (which was then propounded) had not his rash engagement against the *Swissers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the course of these projects; which projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had but for that engagement, he had extended his Dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both sides of it, from the *Alpes* unto the *German* Ocean, and been the most considerable Prince at that time in *Christendom*: all *Elfs* in *High Germany*, being sold or mortgaged to him by the Duke of *Austria*, the Dukedom of *Lorraine* at his mercy; besides, the hopes he had of the Earldom of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reny*, which would have opened him a way to the *Mediterranean*. He being dead, the Government continued as before it was; each Province having its distinct Laws, and living according to their ancient Privileges; till the attempt of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, most resolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown; to cancel all their privileges, and new mould the Estate, according to his own will and pleasure: occasioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country; and the setting up of a new Estate, opposite unto him, and destructive of his interests in it. But before we come unto this change, we will first look upon the Princes Power; Revenue, and other things considerable touching this Estate, whilst it stood entire, under the Princes of the house of *Burgundy*, and

LORDS of BELGIUM.

- 1369 1 *Philip* the Hardy, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the first great raiser of this House.
- 1404 2 *John* the Proud, Duke of *Burgundy*, &c.
- 1419 3 *Philip* the Good, added to his Estates the Dukedom of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the *Marquisat* and *Machyn*, by the death of his Cousin *Philip*; the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zeeland*, and the Lordship of *West-Friesland*, by the resignation and death of the Countess *Jacqueline*, whose next heir he was; the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*; and the Earldom of *Namur*, which he bought for money.
- 1467 4 *Charles* the *Warlike*, who bought the Estates of *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*, and held them peaceably all his life.
- 1476 5 *Mary*, the daughter and heir of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian*, son of the Emperour *Frederick*, from whom King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* took the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the greatest parts of the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, unfortunately killed with a fall from her horse, and an unreasonable modesty in not suffering the *Chirurgions* to dress her wound; the hurt which she had taken being on her thigh.
- 1482 6 *Philip* III. son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, to whom *Charles* the 8th. of *France* restored all the places

Guelderland.

- places in *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy* taken by his Father; married *Joan* daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* King of *Spain*.
- 1506 7 *Charles* II. Archduke of *Austria*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of that name the fifth, added to his Estate in these Countries, the Dukedom of *Guelderland*, the Earldom of *Zuiphen*, the Lordships of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yssell*, and *Groning*.
- 1558 8 *Philip* IV. of *Belgium*, and the II of *Spain*, invading these Countries against their privileges, was by a great part of them rejected from being their Prince, Anno 1581. which made him after a long and a bloody War, to surrender all his interestes in them to
- 1599 9 *Isabella Clara* Eugenia his daughter, and *Albert* Archduke of *Austria*, whom he married to her: during whose Government, a truce for 12 years was made, and in the preface to that Truce, the *Confederate Estates* declared to be treated with as a *Free Estate*, to whom the Kings of *Spain* could pretend no title.
- 10 *Philip* V. of *Belgium*, and the IV. of *Spain*, on the decease of the Arch-dutcheff *Isabella* his Aunt, succeeded in the possession of some, and the title unto all the *Belgick* Provinces.

The ordinary *Revenue* of these Countries to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, and after to the Kings of *Spain*, before the breach, were estimated at three millions of Crowns yearly; which was more than any King in *Christendom* at those times received, the *French* only excepted; the very measuring of Corn in the City of *Antwerp*, being farmed yearly for 100000 Crowns in ready money; But the extraordinary was far greater: the *Estates* of these Countries in the year 1550 granting to *Charles* the fifth an Aid, which they call the *Noventale*, amounting to 150000 Crowns a month; and yet the Provinces of *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, *Guelderes*, and *Groning*, were not rated to it; And it is said, that *Philip* the second at his first coming to the *Estate*, was presented with a grant of 40 millions of *Florents*, to be paid in few years. So that these Countries were the true *Correlative* of both his *Indies*: the loss of which, before the making of the Truce, Anno 1609. cost him above 100 millions of Crowns, and the loss of 400000 men.

The Forces of these Princes by Land, may best be seen in the expedition of *Charles* (then Earl of *Charolais*) against *Lewis* the eleventh, whom Duke *Philip* the Good his Father furnished to that enterprise with 9000 Archers, and 1400 men of Arms, every one of which had five or six great horses attending on him: and at his setting forward, was told by his Father, (never accomplished for a *Braggart*) that if he fell into any danger, he should not be abandoned for the want of 100000 fighting men. The said Duke having thus sent away his son, and being provoked by the indignities of those of *Liege* and *Dinant*, who revolted from him, suddenly raised an Army of 28000 Horses, and a proportionable number of Foot, for the chastisement of that proud and rebellious people. And *Charles* himself succeeding on the death of his Father, in his unprosperous attempt upon the *Switzers*, had no less than 80000 men at the battle of *Morat*. As for their power at Sea, I find not that they kept any standing Navy, nor needed they so to do, as the case stood with them; considering that when they had occasion of any such service, they used to take up all the Ships which they found in their harbours (of which there never wanted good store) employing as many as they pleased, and dismissing the rest.

The principal Order of *Knighthood* ordained by these Princes, was that of the *Golden Fleece*, first instituted by Duke *Philip* the Good (in imitation of the Order of *St. George* in *England*) Anno 1430. The name and fanzie borrowed, as some conceive from *Judeans Fleece*; from *Jascons Fleece* as others think; but more probably from the *Golden Fleeces* of *England*, which brought him in so much gold and treasure in the way of custom. Their Habit is a Collar of Gold interlaced with irons, seeming to strike fire out of a Flint, (*ex ferro flammam* being the word:) at the end whereof hung the *Touison d'Or*, or *Fleece of Gold*. Their number at the first was but 25. (which is the number of *Knights* of the *English Garter*) increased afterwards by the same Duke *Philip* unto thirty one. *Charles* the first raised them to fifty one: And now the King of *Spain* hath assumed a liberty of making as many as he pleaseth: this being the only *Military*, or *Civil* Order, of which those Kings have the bestowing: the orders of *Alcantara*, *Calatrava*, and the rest of *Spanish* institution, being rather *Religious* and *Monastical*, at the best but mixt. St. *Andrews* day, the day of Installation.

In this great Pomp and Glory did these Princes live, as long as they continued in good terms with the subject Provinces; being masters of more goodly *Jewels*, magnificent furniture for their houses, and costly moveables than any three of the greatest Princes in all *Europe*. And on the other side, the subjects whilst they lived in duty under so great Princes, attained unto the height of all worldly happiness: in their Apparel excellently gorgeous, in their Feasts and Banquets over-luxurious, in their *Manners* dissolute; vices which usually accompany that kind of felicity. An happiness too great to continue long. By the ambition and violence of *Charles* the *Wurlike*, they were first plunged into a War against *Lewis* the eleventh; of which they did not only feel the present miseries, but lost all the Towns and Holds which they had in *Picardy*, with the whole Dutchy of *Burgundy*. And by a like, but better grounded Ambition of *Charles* the fifth, they were exercised in continual Wars against the *French*, who miserably harrowed and ransacked the Countries of *Luxembourg*, *Hainault*, and *Artois*, bordering next unto them. *Charles* at his death commended them to the special care of *Philip* his Son, advising him to use them kindly, as those that were the chief supporters of his State and Glory: advising, that if he should deal otherwise with them, it would prove the ruine of his Fortunes. And on the other side, the People, to obtain his favour, presented him at his first entrance on the Government

vernment, with a grant of 40 Millions of *Florents*, as before was said. But he, transported with ambition; and a *Catholic* zeal, not only forgot their love, but his Fathers counsel; and had no sooner concluded a Peace with *France*, effected by the Treaty of *Cambrai*, Anno 1559. but presently he cast his thoughts on the subjection of this People to his will and pleasure. For they were so fortified with privileges, which their former Princes had granted, and the later had been sworn to observe; that he wanted much of that absolute and uncontrollable command, which he strongly aimed at. Some of which privileges were, that the Prince could place no stranger amongst them with Jurisdiction over their Estates and Persons, in Offices of War or Justice. 2 The Prince could give nothing to the *Clergy*; nor 3 Levy any *soldiers* without the *States* of the Country. 4 But the main *Prerogative* was that of the *Brabanters*, (*viz.*) that if the Prince by violence or wrong, did infringe any of the said *Charters* and *Franchises*; the people after declaration thereof made, might go to election of a new Prince. This not a little grieved the *Spaniards*, that such base and unworthy people (for so they esteemed them) should in such liberty possess so brave and rich a Country; their King bearing no title of Majesty or absolute command over them. Besides, the *Reformation of Religion*, which then began to grow to some strength, moved the King to reduce them back to the Church of *Rome*; by the power and terrour of the *Inquisition*; and by the erecting of some new *Episcopal Sees* amongst them (for before there were but three in all) to settle some more constant course of *Ecclesiastical Discipline*. Against both which, when the people violently opposed, he then resolved of bringing them by *Spanish* Rhetorick (that is, by the Sword and the Canon) to their old obedience. To these ends he sends the Duke of *Alva*, an old and expert Captain (as having 60 years been a Soldier) with a puissant Army, to be his *Vice-Roy* among them. He also gave him a Commission of that large extent, that he might place and displace whom he would, and execute all such as he could find opposite to his designs. At that time the two chief men among them were the Prince of *Orange*, and Count *Egmont*: the first more potent with the People, the later with the Soldiers. Had these two joynt together, they might easily have prevented *D. Alva's* entrance; but *Egmont* was so soothed up with Letters from *Spain*, that he believed not the intelligence which the Prince had, concerning the Dukes Commission. The Earl exhorted the Prince to submit himself to the pleasure of the King, and so to prevent the ruine of his House. The Prince desired the Earl to maintain the Liberty of the Country; as for himself, He had rather be a Prince without a House, than a Count without an Head. Being thus resolved, the Prince retires to his County of *Nassau*, in High *Germany*; the Earl stayeth to congratulate the entrance of the new Governour: who had no sooner settled himself, but he intrapped the Counts of *Horn* and *Egmont*, and beheaded them, Anno 1567. Being thus rid of these two, with divers others of good quality, who living would have much hindered his proceedings; he quartered his *Spaniards* in the Towns and Provinces; spoiled the people, not of their Privileges only, but their Liberty. Amongst the Reformed he brought in the bloody *Inquisition*, and indeed so tyrannically did he behave himself, that the people were forced to a *Defensive War*, as well for their Lives, as Substance. This was a War of State, not Religion; the most part of the *Hollanders* being *Papists*, at the time of their taking Arms. During these troubles, the Prince of *Orange* was not idle, but he in one place, and Count *Lodovick* his Brother in another, kept Duke *Alva* employed; though divers times not with such fortunate success as they did expect. In the year 1572. *Flushing* was surprised by *Voorst* and *Berland*, as we have before said. So also was the *Briel* in *Voorn*, an Island of *Holland*, by the Count de la *March*; and not long after, all *Holland*, except *Amsterdam*, followed the fortune and side of the Prince; together with all the Towns of *Zeeland*, *Middleburg* excepted. Anno 1573. Duke *Alva* being recalled, *Don Lewis de Reginsens* was appointed Governour; during whose rule many of the *Belgians* abandoned their Country, some flying into *Germany*, others into *France*, most into *England*. After his death, and before the arrival of *Don John*, the Prince and his Party recovered strength and courage again; till the coming of the Prince of *Parma*, who brought them into worse case than ever. Yet Anno 1581. they declare by their writings directed to all people, that *Philip* of *Spain* was fallen from the Government: and take a new Oath of the People, which bound them never to return to the *Spanish* obedience. This done, they elect *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, heir apparent to the *French* King, and then in no small hopes of marrying Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, to be their Lord. But he intending rather to settle a Tyranny in himself, than to drive it from the *Spaniard*, attempted *Antwerp*, put his men into the Town, but was by the valour of the *Burgers* shamefully repulsed; Shame of this ignoble enterprise, especially grievous for its ill success, took him out of the world. About which time, the Estates of these Countries was thus by this *Hieroglyphick* expressed. A Cow represented the body of *Belgium*: there stood the King of *Spain* spurring her, the Queen of *England* feeding her, the Prince of *Orange* milking her, and Duke *Francis* plucking her back by the tail, but she foud his fingers. During his unfortunate Government, *Parma* prevailed in all places, especially after the death of *William* Prince of *Orange*, treacherously slain with a Pistol, Anno 1584. Now were the poor *Hollanders* truly miserable; desperate of pardon from their Prince, and having none to lead them, none to protect them, but such as were likely to regard their own profit more than theirs. *England* was the only Sanctuary they had now left; to which they flew, offering the Queen thereof the Sovereignty of their Provinces; who had, if not a right, yet a plausible title to them; as being lineally descended from *Edward* the third, and *Philip* his wife, who was sister, and (as some say) heir to *William* Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. If *Margaret*, from whom the right of *Spain* is derived, were daughter to Earl *William*, then was our Queen to succeed after *Philip*, who was rejected: if that *Margaret* were (as many write) his younger sister, then was our Queen the undoubted heir; her Predecessor *Philippa* being Earl *William's* eldest sister. But that

Hero's

Heroick Queen not disputing the right of the title, nor intending to her self any thing, save the honor of relieving her distressed neighbours, and providing for her own estate, by this diversion; took them into her protection. Under which the *Belgian* affairs succeeded so prosperously (I will not now stand upon the particulars) that before they would hearken to any treaty of peace, they forced the King of *Spain* to this conclusion, that he treated with them as with a *Free Estate*, abstracted from all right and title, which he might pretend unto the places which they were possessed of. This peace was concluded *Anno 1609*, since which time, they have kept Garrisons well disciplined, and as well paid: so that these Countries have in these late days been the *Campus Martius*, or School of defence for all Christendom, to which the youth of all Nations repair to see the manner of Fortifications, and learn the Art of War, and the use of their Weapons. Thus did they for 40 years hold the staff against a most puissant Monarch, and in the end capitulated with great advantage; that it is observed, that whereas all other Nations grow poor by War, these only grow rich. Whereupon it is remarkable to consider into what follies and extremities Princes run by using their people to the War. The Kings of *France* place most of their hopes in their *Cavalrie*, because in policie they would not that the Vulgar should be exercised in arms. *Lycurgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedemonians*, that they should never fight often with one Enemy: the breaking whereof, made the *Thebans*, a small Common-wealth, to be their equals in power; Whereupon it was tartly said by *Antalcidas* to *Agesslaus* King of *Sparta*, that by his frequent warring on them, and fighting with them, he had made the *Thebans* good Souldiers against their wills. The *Turks* won the vast Empire they now possess, by making many and speedy Wars. But now that policy being worn out of fashion, we see that (to omit *Perſia*) the little and distracted Kingdom of *Hungary*, hath for 200 years resisted their Forces. So was it between the Dukes of *Austria*, and the *Switzers*; and so it is betwixt the *Spaniard* and *Low-country* men; who formerly being accounted a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the Wars; by their continual combating with the *Spaniard*, are become ingenious, full of action, and great managers of causes appertaining to fights, either by Sea or Land. We may hereby also perceive, what advantage a small State gaineth by fortifying places and passages: there being nothing which sooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince, then to beleaguer a well fortified Town: for that herein he consumeth his time, and commonly loseth his men, credit, and money; as the *Romans* before *Numantia*, the great *Turk* in *Malta*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy* before *Nancy*; For where War is drawn out of the field unto the Walls, the *Musket* and *Spike* being more necessary than the *Sword* and *Spear*; there the valour of the assailant is little available, because it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought these several *Estates* and Provinces into one hand; so now we have broke them into two; the one part continuing in obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themselves as a State apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, (some few Towns excepted) the *Marquisate* of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Ariots*, and *Flanders* (except only *Sluys*) and the Lordship or Signiory of *Machlyn*; with many places of importance in the Dutchie of *Gueltdres*, to countervail the Towns are held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitful in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing; but as much inferior to the other in power and riches, by reason of their strength in Shipping, by which they have the command at Sea; and thereby draw the whole trade of Christendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amsterdam*, and other Towns of their Confederacie.

For the general government of these Provinces, there is a *Regent* sent from the Court of *Spain*, whose authority is generally as great as that of the Kings; save that all matters of moment pass under the Kings name, and that all Officers of any great trust and concernment are appointed by him: and that all laws, decrees, sentences, and negotiations are dispatched in his name also. For the assistance of the *Regent* there is a *Privy Council*, a *Council of State*, and a *Council of Finances*, by whom all things are ordered which concern the Publick, the *Regents* authority co-operating and concurring with them: without which, though they may consult, they can execute nothing. And for the governance and well-ordering of the several Provinces, there is in every one of them a Lieutenant, or Provincial Governor; subordinate to the *Regent*, and accountable to him: and in each Province a particular Council held in the Kings name, consisting of more or less Counsellours, (as the bigness of the Province is) for the most part *Dollors* or Licentiates of the *Civil Laws*, with a President as the head thereof; which in some places they call the *Parliament*, after the manner of the *French*, and in some the *Chancery*. To these Courts all the Subjects do resort for Justice, in causes both *Criminal* and *Civil*: to these are brought Appeals from inferior Judicatures, such as the Courts of great Towns, and particular *Franchises*; and from these lieth an appeal to the great Council at *Machlyn*, supreme and superintendent unto all the rest.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwise is of publick moment, the *Regent* sendeth out Letters in the Kings name to command the *Estates*, that is to say, the *Clergy*, the *Nobility*, and the principal Towns of every Province (except those of *Luxembourg*, *Gueltdres*, *West-Friesland*, and *Over-Tsffel*, who by special privilege cannot be called out of their own Countries) to come before him. The place of their Assembly is for the most part at *Bruxels*, the Court and residence of the *Regent*; because the *Brabanters* are also privileged not to be summoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the *States* assemble not altogether, but those of one Province at a time, so one after another: to whom the President or some one of the Council of *State* proposeth in the Princes name, that which he demandeth: To which if any Town oppose, then all which the rest have done is of no effect; nothing being granted by the Deputies, or *States*, of any

any Province; but with this condition, that all the rest of the *Estates* do agree unto it. Without this punctual consent of all parties interested, the Prince can impose nothing, by their Laws, upon the Subject, nor alter any thing at all in the publick Government.

And as the people are thus privileged in regard of the Prince, so are the Princes and Prelates privileged in regard of the Pope: it being agreed upon between them;

1 That the Prince is to give *Clergy Benefices*; and the Pope to confirm them.

2 That neither Prelate nor Lay-person may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to send his Delegates or Commissioners into the Country.

3 The Pope not to give a *Benefice*, nor grant a Pardon, nor send a *Bull* into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.

4 That no *Clergy man* can buy lands or other immoveables, without the Princes consent. And

5 That the Prince hath power to visit the *Clergie*, to see if they be well governed or not; and if they be not, to reform the abuses.

Great privileges, if considered rightly; greater than which few Protestant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the *Revenue* raised by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Estate, it is not easie to be guessed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his Coffers. The expences of his Court there, is as great as ever, under any of the former *Regents*; and his charge of entertaining Souldiers for his Towns and Garrisons, greater than before. Nor doth it now stand with reason of *State* to lay any arbitrary taxes upon the people, lest he exasperate them to a second *Rebellion*, or startle them to some new *Confederacies* against his quiet.

Under the Government of the *Confederate Estates*, are the Dukedom of *Gueltdres*, excepting some few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniard*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Zuiphen*, the *Signiories* of *West-Friesland*, *Utrecht*, *Over-Tsffel*, *Groning*, the Town of *Sluys*, with the Isle of *Cassand* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchie of *Brabant*. This is the lesser part by far, and far inferior to the other in regard of the soil, but the more populous of the two, and by the industry and great trading of the people, the more rich and powerful. Governed after their own old Laws, by the particular *Estates* of every Province, not yet united into one entire body of a Common-wealth; saving that for the better preservation of their *Confederacie*, the Commissioners of the several Provinces do consult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The *Estates* of the *Particular Provinces*, elected out of the principal Towns and places of most importance, do order the affairs thereof according to their ancient privileges, rights, and customs, as well by themselves as by their Colleagues and Officers whom they do appoint: and that as well for matters of *State*, as in point of *Justice*. For administration of the which, the *Governour*, *President*, and *Counsellours* of the *Provincial Courts*, have the cognizance of all cases both *civil* and *criminal*; and in all causes of appeal from inferior Courts; in each of which they do proceed without appeal, making their *Acts* and Commissions in the name of the said *Governours*, *President*, and *Council*, but pronouncing Sentence and executing judgment, in right of the Sovereignty of the said Province. And these *Provincial States* are chosen generally out of the *Plébeians*, or common people, and the *Burgers* (at the best) of the greater Town-ships: the Nobility and Gentry being so worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above 3 families of Gentlemen; and those compelled to live after the *Plébeian* fashion for fear of envy, and to avoid the insolencie of the saucie *Clowns*: who out of rudeness and the desire of equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of these *Provincial States*, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleasure of the Community for which they serve, are chosen one or more for each several Province, according to the condition and capacity of those which are chosen to reside at the *Hague*; there to consult of the affairs which concern the publick: but so, that be they more or less out of every Province, they make amongst them but one *franchise*, when any thing is put unto the Vote. And these they call the *States General*, first, because a collected body out of all the Provinces; and secondly, because they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular concernment, which are determinable absolutely by the *States Provincial*, but only in such things as concern the general good of the whole Estate; as treating with Ambassadors, making War and Peace, &c. For their assistance in the which, there is a *Council of State*, made up of the *Governours* and some eminent men of every Province (in which the Ambassador of *England*, as long as we held *Flushing*, and the other Cautionary Towns, had his voice or *franchise*) by whose advice they dispose of all things which concern the publick. But so, that if any difficulty do appear in the business, they conclude nothing, till they have the approbation and consent of the particular *Cities* and *Provinces* for which they are chosen; to whom they are accountable for their administration, and by whom revocable, whensoever they please.

The *Revenue* of this *Estate* doubtless is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual entertainment, consisting of no less than 30000 men; which they can draw into the field; leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided: yet so well paid, that we never read of any mutiny amongst them for want thereof. The whole charge, with the entertainment of Captains and Superior Officers, is said to amount to 500000 l. per annum, raised on the people by *Excise* laid upon all commodities, and many taxes of like nature, so insupportable in themselves, and amongst men, which would be thought to live in a *Free State*, that should the *Spaniard* or any Prince in *Christendome* lay but half so much upon their Subjects, it would occasion a *Revolt*. So that whereas one of the first causes of their falling off from the King of *Spain*, was to free themselves from taxes and impositions, illegally (as they

said enforced upon them; they have drawn upon themselves more arbitrary and illegal payments, than any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the change of Government. Touching their power at Sea, we have spoke already. All I shall now add to it, is by way of instance, which is, that in the year 1587. the King of Denmark on pretence of some displeasure, arrested 608 ships of theirs, of all sorts at one time, in the Sound; and that the next year after they set out upon very short warning, a hundred good men of War to joyn with England, against the invincible Armada, which then threatened both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to these Countries, wherewith the God of all blessings doth enrich a Nation, but a gracious Prince, unity of Religion, and a quiet Government: which if it pleased the Almighty to confer upon them, they would surpass all neighbouring States in treasure, potency, content, and all worldly happiness.

There are in these Countries,

Archbishops 3. Bishops 15.

Universities 7.

Viz.

Louvain, Leige,
Douay, Leyden,

Haddewick, Groining.
Franker,

And thus much for BELGIUM.

OF

GERMANIE.



GERMANIE is bounded on the East with Prussia, Poland, and Hungarie; on the West with France, Switzerland, and Belgium; on the North with the Baltick Seas, the Ocean, and some part of Denmark; on the South with the Alps, which part it from Italy. By which account the modern Germany much differeth from that described by Tacitus, and others of the Roman Writers: that comprehending the three Kingdoms of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, with so much of the Kingdom of Poland as lieth on this side of the River Vistula; but bounded on the East with the Rhene, and on the South with the Danow: the Modern Germanie containing on the further banks of those Rivers, five whole Roman Provinces, that is to say, Noricum Ripense, and Mediterraneum, Rætia secunda, Belgica, and Germania prima, with some parts of Rætia prima, and Germania secunda; but terminated with the Danes and the Baltick Sea.

It was first called thus by the Romans (as some conceive) who seeing the people both in custom, speech, and course of life, so like those of Gallia, called them the Germans to the Gauls: the word Germanus in the Latine signifying a brother of the whole blood, (as our Lawyers phrase it) that is to say, a brother both by Father and Mother; those which have the same Mother, but divers Fathers, being called Fratres uterini. And of this kind is Strabo, who speaking of the great resemblance which was betwixt these Nations, in manners, speech, customs, and way of life; concludes it thus, that the Romans did with very good reason call them Germans, cum fratres eos Gallorum hoc nomine vellent offendere; intending to signify by that name, that they were the brethren of the Gauls. But this is to be understood of those people only, which dwell next to Gaul, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vast Continent, according to the ancient extent thereof, it being very well observed by Tacitus, that Germany was at first Nationis, non Gentis nomen, the name of some of the Nations only, not of all the Country; the name in process of time spreading over all that large tract of ground, and those scattered Nations which were either conquered by them, or incorporated with them. Others will have the name to be merely Dutch, deriving it from Ger, which signifieth All, and the word Man signifying in that Language as in ours; whence also they derive the name of Almans, by which they would imply that the Almans or Germans are a very Warlike Nation, a people that have in them, nihil nisi virile, nothing not worthy of a man. Bocartus somewhat near to this, telling us that Ger, in the ancient Gallick, did signify as much as Guerre in the modern French; would have them at their first coming over the Rhene to be called Germans, by the Gauls, that is to say, men of War, (or Gens de Armes in the present French) by reason of the great and many victories obtained by them.

The like diversity I find for the name of Almans; For though some gave them the name of Almans from the same originals from whence they fetch the name of Germans, as was said before: yet others as probably conjecture, that they had that name because they consisted of so many several Nations, coming

coming out of the North and North-east thither; that they seemed to be a Hoth-poth of all sorts of men, kneaded into one name and Nation, which is the conceit of *Asinius Quadratus*. But for my part I do conceive (supposing the name of Almans to be Dutch originally) that the whole Country was not called Almans, till such time as the Princes of the Dukedom of Almains (since called *Suevia*; or *Schwaben*) did possess the Empire: which continuing in that potent family near 100 years, might very well occasion them to be called the Emperours of Almains, or the Almains race; and so impart that name to the Empire also. And for the Almains naturally and properly so called, (of whom we shall speak more when we come to *Suevia*) I see no Etymology more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from Mannus, the Son of Tuisko, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (*Tuiscum Deum & filium Mannum, originem gentis conditores*) as is said by Tacitus: the people being called *Alemanni* (with a double n) in all ancient writers, as men that did derive themselves from this Mannus, the Son of Tuisko. In like sort, as I think, the *Marco-manni* inhabiting the Countries of *Moravia*, were so called, as the Manni of the *Marches*; or out-borders of *Germanie*; and not the *Markmans*, as if they were men of mark, the only men of fame and honour of all those Nations; which might as well be pressed from the Dutch original, as that of *All-man*, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this opinion I am swayed the rather, because I find the Dutch Nation generally so much inclined, to derive their original from Tuisko, (from whom the *Tentones* inhabiting about *Brandenbourg*, may well fetch their Pedegree;) the name of Dutch-land, or Dutch-men, coming near it found to Tuisko-land, and Tuisko-men: In which I shall subscribe to *Verfegans* opinion, though for the most part I look upon him, but as the second part of *Gorapius Becanus*.

But being the Etymologies of the names of most ancient Nations, are very uncertain, and for the most part founded on conjectures only; let us leave the name a while and survey the Country; the length whereof (according to the truest and exactest measurement) from East to West, that is to say, from the *Vistula*, or *Wizula*, to the *Rhene*, is estimated at 840 Italian miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to say, from the Ocean to the Town of *Bruxen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the same miles. So that the figure of it being near a square, it may take up 3160 miles in compass, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and tenth *Climates*, the longest day in the most Southern parts, being 15 hours and an half; and in the most Northern, 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compass and extent of ground are supposed to live 10 millions of people. The men of the poorer sort laborious, painfull, and of a sincere and honest carriage; the Nobles for the most part either Scholars or Souldiers, and true lovers of honour; though Tacitus hath otherwise resolved it, affirming that the Gauls fight for liberty, the Belgians for honour, and the Germans for gain. Which yet is true enough of the Common Souldiers, who if they fail of pay, fail in courage presently. Of both sorts they are generally tall and big, of great bones, much flesh, and large sinews; but commonly of such a phlegmatick constitution, that they have not spirit enough to manage such a masse of flesh as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that humour, makes them for the most part to be men of a bright, or light-brown hair, and fair complexions. They are little addicted to *Venus*, and very much to *Bacchus*; whence the Proverb, *Vivere Germanorum est bibere*; and the old Verses,

*Germani possunt cunctos tolerare labores,
O utinam possent tam bene ferre sitim.*

The Dutch themselves to labour well inure;
O would they thirst could half so well endure.

This love unto their liquor, together with their natural temper, maketh them fat and corpulent: Whereupon Pope *Julio* the second, filling the *Spaniards* birds of the air, because of their ambition; the *Venetians* and *Genoeses*, fishes of the sea, because so much accustomed to Navigation; called the Germans, by the name of the Beasts of the field. And when *Augustus* was resolved to take unto himself the Supreme government of Rome, he was advised by *Agrippa* to choose a guard of Germans to attend upon him. The reason was (as *Dion* giveth it) because in those great bodies there was little malice hidden, and lesse subtilty; and that they were a people that took more pleasure to be commanded than to command. In matters of war this people have been formerly in a measure famous; yet not so much by the valour or conduct of their Captains (for they have had but few such) as by their own hardiness. They withstood the Romans 210 years, afflicting and troubling them more in that space, than either the *Carthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Partians*; and even at the last (saith Tacitus) *Triumphati magis sunt quam vincti*. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lancknights* of Germany (for so they call their horse and foot) have been much employed; but more by reason of their numbers, easily raised out of so large a Country, than any opinion of their valour; being slow of motion, dull of apprehension, fearfull of putting any thing to the chance of war. By reason of which fearfulness as they are very cruell upon all advantages, not sparing either age or sex when they get the victory: so are they apt to run upon any Alarm; not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any persuasions. Intomuch as *Charles* Count of *Mansfield*, General of an Army of 5000 fighting men, but most of this Nation, was forced to suffer a small Army of 10000 *Turks* to passe by his trenches, being then strongly encamped before *Strigoniun*, (now *Gryn*) a Town of *Hungarie*, and to victual the Town before his face: not daring to set upon them or disturb their purpose, for fear lest being lustily charged, his Germans would

would give back and indanger all. And yet besides these weaknesses they have some great faults. One of which is a custome, if their wages be not duly paid, (though it be in the very midst of a battle) to cry *Guelts, Guelts*, throw down their weapons, and suffer themselves to be cut in pieces by the Enemy. And so they served *Frederick* the Electour *Palatine* at the battell of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of spoil and *plunder*: on which they are so bent wheresoever they come, that such as entertain them have just cause to say, that they receive more damage by them than they do by their enemies. Two undeceivable notes of mercenarie valour.

The women are of a good complexion, but by reason of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to copulency: women of a good carriage (as the saying is) good Bearers, and as fruitful breeders. Servilly obsequious to their Husbands, whom many of good rank serve at the table with *Trenchers* and other necessities, and take away when he hath done; eating the residue apart with and amongst their Maids: scarce sitting down with him once a week, and then too at the lower end, or at some such distance. And though the women by their Laws have a property in the goods which they bring with them at their marriage, or are given them after, (so as the Husband hath but the use of them only;) and may dispose of them by their *last Will*, at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better; the Husband being no lesse churlish and imperious than he would be otherwise. Which made *Caracalla* to say often, that only that Nation knew how to rule their Wives, which added the Feminine Article to the Sun, and the Masculine to the Moon, as the Germans do. Most of them, as well *Wives* as *Virgins*, (except persons of honour) use to go barefooted within doors, and seldom put on shoes or stockings, but when they are to go abroad on their occasions. A thing that seems the more strange in regard of the extreme coldness of the Country, which is so fierce, that generally they lodge between two Feather beds both in summer and winter: and in the most houses have their *stoves*, of which the doors and windows are kept very close, as well to retain the heat, as to keep out the cold. Which though they may be usefull and inoffensive in Gentlemens Houses; yet in the *Common Innes* where all sorts of people are necessitated to throng together, the ill smells, never purged by admitting any fresh air, are ready to tittle and choke up the spirits of raw Travellers, not accustomed to them.

The diet of *Germany*, *France* and *Italy*, is by a Traveller thus censured: the *Germans* have much meat, but sturttishly dress't; the *French* little, but neatly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other. And to say truth, the *Germans* have meat enough: the people being generally of good stomachs, and either by nature or ill custome, excessive both in eating or drinking; seldom rising from the table till they have consumed all which was set before them. Inasmuch as in some places it is provided by Law, that in their feasts they shall not sit above five hours at the Table. During which time, if by intemperance either in eating or drinking, a man disgorge his soul stomach in his fellows lap, or pisse under the Table, it is no disgrace to him; nor at any time taken notice of in his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and excessive drinking, is not only cherished among the Vulgar, but even among their greatest Princes: who beside what they do in this kind themselves, have their *drinking champions*, as well to answer all challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whose Cellar shall afford the greatest and most capable Vessels.

The title of the Father descends to all the Children; every Son of a Duke being a Duke; and every Daughter a Dutches; a thing which the *Italians* hold so ridiculous, that they put it in the forefront of this facetious *Satyre*. The *Dukes* and *Earls* of *Germany*, the *Dons* of *Spain*, the *Monsieurs* of *France*, the *Bishops* of *Italy*, the *Nobility* of *Hungary*, the *Lairds* of *Scotland*, the *Knights* of *Naples*, and the younger brethren of *England*, make a poor company. For by this common assuming of the Fathers honour, and parting his Landes among all the brethren, the Nobility is beyond reason multiplied, and no less impoverished: there being not long since, 17 Princes of *Anhalt*, and 27 Counts of *Mansfeld*; to most of which, their Arms have been the best part of their riches; & nihil nisi arma & manus, & in his omnia; as *Tacitus* once said of the ancient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchsafe to marry with the daughter of the wealthiest Merchants; or suffer any of their sisters to be married to any under the degree of a Nobleman: nor any juster cause of a disheriting their children, then *ignoble marriages*; never permitting the issue of such a Bed to succeed in any of their *Fees*, *Estates*, or titles; by means whereof though they debar themselves of such accessions of wealth, as matches of that kind might bring them, yet, to the great honour of their generosity in this particular, they preserve the pure stream of their blood from running into muddy channels; and keep the spirits of brave men, though they want the fortunes.

The Languages here spoken are the *French* in *Lorraine*, and some Towns of the Bishop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the highest parts of *Tyrol*, which lye next to the Common-wealth of *Venice*; the *Sclavonian* spoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and some part of *Lusatia*; and the *high Dutch*, the general Language of the Country. A language very ancient doubtless (though I am not so much a *Goropian* as to think it spoke in *Paradise*, or before the Flood,) and such by reason of the little or no impression which the *Roman* armies made upon this Country, hath less Commixture with the *Latine*, than any which is used in these Western parts, (the *Welsh* excepted) and is very harsh by reason of its many consonants.

This Country was esteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Forests, unprofitable Heaths, and unhealthfull Pools. *Germaniam informem terris, asperam colostrisum cultu aspestuque*, as he further addeth. And such no doubt it was in those times wherein *Tacitus* lived: the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated; nor any means found out to rectifie the sharpness of that Northern air. But he who doth observe it now, cannot but confess that there is no Country in the World either better planed, or replenished with more goodly and Gallant Cities: being

being also in most parts both pleasant; healthy and profitable, abounding with mines of silver, and inferior metals; plentiful in corn and wines, with which they supply the defect of other Nations; as also with Fleish, Fish, Linnen, Quicksilver, Allom, Saffron, Armour, and other Iron-works. The Arable lands so spacious in the Eastern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turned not back again till noon; so making but two furrows for his whole dayes work. For this *Verfagen* is my Author, and if it be not credible, let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of most eminency in the elder times, were 1 *Arminius*, the Prince of the *Cherusci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus*, and the Roman Legions; 2 *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*: for the middle ages, 3 *Otto* the first, 4 *Frederick Barbarossa*, 5 *Rodulph of Habsburg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*, 6 *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*. And in the last Century of years, 7 *Frederick* the second Electour *Palatine*, who made good *Vienna* against the *Turky*; 8 *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter; 9 *Ernest* Earl of *Mansfeld*, 10 *John George* of *Sagerndorf*, 11 *Albert Wallenstein* Duke of *Fridland*, and divers other of late dayes.

Scholars of note, the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; learning being here to rare in the middle of the eight Century, that *Vigilius* Bishop of *Salzburg* was condemned of Heresie for holding that there were some *Antipodes*. In the next age there flourished *Rhabanus Maurus*, *Haimo* of *Halberstade*, *Walafridus Strabus*, men learned for the times they lived in. And in the following times, *Ockam*, a stout defender of the rights of the Empire, against the Encroachments of the Pope; *Otto Frisingensis* the Historian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philosopher; of which last it is said, that he made the *Statua* of a man, which with the help of artificial Engines could speak articulately; and was the work of 50 years. Then in the days of our Grandfathers, we have, 1 *Martyn Luther*, that great instrument of the Reformation. 2 *Philipp Melanchthon* his Coadjutor in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; thence called the *Phoenix* of that Age. 3 *Joachim Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4 *Martin Chemnitius*, a solid and laborious writer. 5 *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian Centuries*, and Father of the *Rigid Lutherans*. 6 *Sebastian Munster*, an industrious Cosmographer, and a learned Linguist. 7 *Silburgius*, and 8 *Buxdorfius* as great Linguists as he: not to descend to further instances in those, who have so filled the Marts of *Frankfort* in these latter times.

But the greatest excellency of this people lieth in the *Mechanical* part of learning, as being eminent for many *Mathematical* experiments, strange water-works, *Medicinal* extractions, *Chymistry* the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no less benefit than admiration of the World. Amongst which I cannot chuse but instance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent *Mathematician*, and a cunning Artizan, spoken of by *Keckerman*; who at the coming of the Emp. *Maximilian* to the City of *Nuremberg*, made a wooden Eagle, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and so accompanied him to his lodging. A thing if true (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuse the world with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that miracle of a flying Dove; for which *Archytas* is so famed amongst the Antients. Exceeded only by himself in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of Art, because less in quantity) which at a Feast, to which he had invited some of his special friends, flew from his hand about the room, and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*. Expressed thus by Divine *Du Bartas*:

Once as this Artist, more with mirth than meat,
Feasted some friends, whom he esteemed great;
From his learn'd hand an Iron Fly flew out,
And having flown a perfect Round, about,
With wearied wings return'd unto her Master,
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
O divine wit, that in the narrow Womb
Of a small Fly could find sufficient room
For all those Springs, Wheels, Counterpoise, and Chains;
Which stood instead of life, and spur; and reins!

And amongst these I reckon *Bertholdus Swart*, a *Franciscan* Fryer; the inventor (though by accident) of the fatal instrument, the Gun. Studious in *Chymistry*, he mingled dried earth, sulphur, and some other ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar, covered with a Stone; and striking fire to light a Candle; as the night came on, a spark by chance fell into the Mortar; and catching hold of the Sulphur and other Minerals, with great violence blew up the Stone wherewith it was covered: Amazed at which, he made trial severally of these ingredients, to find out which of them it was which produced that effect, which having discovered, he caused an Iron pipe to be made, crammed it with Sulphur, Salt-peter and Stones; and putting fire to it; saw with what violent noise and fury it discharged itself. This invention he is said to have first communicated to the *Venitians*, Anno 1330: or thereabouts; who having been often vanquished by the *Genoys*, and driven almost to a necessity of yielding to them, by the help of their Guns, (Bombards they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable discomfure. And this was the first battel that ever those warlike pieces had a part in; which, not long after, put to silence all the engines and devices wherewith the antients were wont to make their batteries. The next that made use of this instrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick* Sea; and not long after them, the *English*, at the siege of *Calice*, Anno 1347; about which time, they began also to be used in *Spain*. The *French*, it seemeth, learned the use of them from the *English*; and

towns, and amongst other Princes and free Cities of inferior note. The rest of *Germany*, containing the Patrimonial Estates of the house of *Austria*, the Dukedoms of *Bavaria* and *Lorraine*, the territories of the three *Spiritual Electors*, and of all the other Bishopricks in the hands of the Clergy, some of the Marquesses of *Baden*, part of the subjects of *Cleves* and but three of the Imperial Cities (and those small ones too) that is to say, *Gmund*, *Uerlingue*, and *Dinkell-Snell* (unless some more be added by the great late successes of the house of *Austria*) remain in their obedience to the See of *Rome*: all which together, will hardly make up one fifth part of this spacious Country, the other four being in the power and possession of the *Protestant* party; yet so, that there be many *Protestants* in *Bohemia*, *Austria*, and in other the Estates of the *Papists* Princes; as there be *Papists* in the *Free Cities* of *Frankfort*, *Nuremberg*, *Ulm*, *Aken*, and some other places, besides the late increase of them in both the *Palatinates*. Of such a speedy growth was the Reformation, that within the space of 40. years, it was not only received in all those Countries which do now profess it; but had also got some footing both in *Spain* and *Italy*.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly used for the Promoting of this work, by which it came to spread so far in so little time; and next upon the stops and hindrances which were given unto it, by which it was restrained from spreading further. 1. For the means used in the advancement of this work (next under the Almighty power of the most wise God) they were these especially. 1. The translating of the Scripture into Vulgar Languages, which easily discovered the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, both in Doctrinals and Forms of Worship. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Ministry, both in Towns and Villages, for the expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the capacities of the meanest Auditors, which gained exceedingly, both on the judgment and affections of the Common People, the course of Preaching having been formerly neglected by the Parish Curate, and turned off wholly in a manner to the begging Friars. 3. The publishing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which mightily inflamed the hearts of all sorts of men; accustomed before to no other duties, then to tell over their *Credo's*, and *Pater-nosters*, and to keep a just account of their *Ave-Maries*, and that most commonly in a tongue which they understood not. 4. The education of youth, especially in Catechismes, containing the whole body of Christian Religion, which once well planted in their minds, could not so easily be pulled up and removed thence by any contrary persuasions. 5. Their continual offers of disputation with the adverse party in a publique audience; which being denied (as generally at the first it was) gave great assurance of the truth and soundness of the one side, as of the falshood, and weakness of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies, and Histories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Constancy, both in the Readers and the Hearers, animated thereunto by those brave examples which therein were presented to them. One point of prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Protestant and Reformed Churches, for the composing of the differences which have grown between them: And this I look on as the first, and greatest stop to the Reformation from proceeding further, many men (not improbably) thinking there must be some want of truth in the foundation of that building, which had such wide and open breaches in the *Superstitions*. The *Tyranny* and terror of the *Inquisition*, by which it is kept out of *Spain*, and kept down in *Italy*, and all other parts of the Popes obedience; together with those other policies, both to discountenance and suppress it (which we have spoken of in our description of the Papacy) may come next to this. Then add to these the care and diligence of the *Jesuites*, and *Seminary Priests*, in applying themselves to all those means which they found so effectual on the other side, thereby not only counterminding their indeavours, but fighting them upon even ground with the self-same weapons: And last of all, the plots and practices of the *Papal Ministers*, in working on the humours of the opposite parties, thereby intriging them not only into tongue-combats, and velitations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an open war once I am sure, that by this means they have not only stopped the Progress of the Reformation, but would fain give themselves some hopes to destroy it utterly, and thereby to restore the Pope to that power and splendor which formerly he had attained unto in these parts of *Europe*. But of these and such like self-Flatteries, I shall say with *Seneca*, or rather in his words applied to my own Intention;

— Ha manus Trojam erigent?
Parvas habet spes Troja, si tales habet.
That is to say,
Shall these small jarres restore the ruin'd Pope?
Small hopes he hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, those that continue in obedience to the See of *Rome*, are under the old form of Archbishops and Bishops; co-eval in all *Germany* (as in most places else) with the faith it self. The *Calvinists* (by which name the *Zuinglianists* now also passeth, if not eaten out) submit themselves for doctrine, discipline, and forms of worship, to *Calvin's* Model; whereof we have spoke more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the *Episcopal* function from the *Revenues*: giving those last to some of their younger Princes, with the title of *Administrators* of such a Bishoprick; the function or jurisdiction to some of the more eminent Clergy, with the title of a *Superintendent*, assigning to them a priority both of place and power before other Ministers; which they enjoy for term of life, together with some liberal maintenance in proportion to it. In other things, as *orders*, *habits*, and *title of dignity*, they differ not at all from the other Ministers: And

And over them in the place of Archbishops, they have their *general Superintendents*; all of them of each sort accountable to the supreme *Ecclesiastical Consistory* (as tomesly to the *Provincial or National Synod*) made up of Counsellors of State, and the heads of the *Clergy*: So that the form seems to be much the same as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it seems to be, a great part of the Alteration being in the names; and that no other in a manner, than by changing the old *Greek* word *Episcopos*, into the new *Latine* word *Superintendent*: both signifying an *Overseer*, though in different languages. And so *ex Gracia bonis*, *Latinas fecerunt bonitas*, in the Poets words: which brings into my mind the story of a people of *Africa*, who having received much hurt by *Tigers*, made a Decree that no man from thenceforth should call them *Tigers*, but give them a more harmless, or less hated name, and then all was well. And so they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of government: So do they also come up to them in their forms of worship; retaining still a settled and prescribed *Liturgia* for all their Churches, most of the *Holy-days* observed in the former ages, the *Cross* in Baptism, kneeling at the Communion, and many other innocent and significant Ceremonies, commended to the Church by most pure Antiquity. In point of maintenance as defective as the *Calvinists* are; few of their Ministers having *Tithes*, most of them *pensions* or stipends, and those small ones also; seldom exceeding two or 300 *Guineas*, besides wood for fuel, corn, and some other necessities.

Now because mention hath been made of the *Hanse-towns* and *Imperial Cities*, we are to understand that the Cities of this Country are of three sorts, 1. Such as are holden in possession by some of the Princes in way of inheritance, part of their patrimony, and estates, as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munich*, *Wismar*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it self, which are called *Free Cities*, for their great Privileges of coynage, moneys, and governing themselves by their local Ordinances; *Imperial* in regard they know no Lord or Protector but the Emperor only, to whom they pay two third parts of such contributions as are assessed in the Assemblies or general *Dietes*; and 500 *Florins* yearly for themselves and their territories. They are in number about 60. many of which are of a fair and large estate, such as are *Nuremberg*, *Augsburg*, *Ingolstadt*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, &c. Of which this *Guicciardini* says: Those (saith he) are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate tribute the authority of the Empire, do notwithstanding in all other things govern themselves after their own laws, not seeking to amplify their territories, but defend their Liberties. 3. The third sort is of those which are called *Hanse-towns*, or *Hanse-towns*, that is (say some) *Ansee-towns*, Towns upon the Sea; such as those were who first entered into this confederacy; but at this time the name extends to many in-land Cities, and of no great trading; joyned with them in a league for their common defence and preservation. A league made first against the *Danes*, and the *Barls of Holfst*, by some of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them; that is to say, *Lubeck*, *Hambourg*, *Rostock*, *Wismar*, *Stralsund*, and *Luneburg*: but afterwards many other of the *Imperial Cities* and Towns of trade, associated with them in an offensive and defensive league against all enemies whatsoever. In number about 72. those of *Livonia* and *Prussia* being taken into the reckoning: many of which are able to put to sea 150 good fail of ships; such as lie more within the land, contributing in money or otherwise to the common charge. First hanseled by *Waldemar* the 3d. of *Denmark*, whom they vanquished in a Naval battel. After that growing into credit, and driving a great trade in most parts of *Christendom*, they enjoyed many large and ample privileges, wherefore they came to be called amongst us sometimes by the name of *Easterlings*, from their *Easterly* dwellings; and Merchants of the *Street-yards* from the place where they stored their commodities; and *Guilde-Tentonicorum*, in regard of their nation, for the most part *Dutch*. But the *English* learning so much wit at the last, as to make use of their own shipping, they began here by little and little to decay; and are now almost worn out of memory with us, though still of good esteem and credit in other Countries.

The principal Rivers hereof, are 1. *Dannbius*, or the *Danow*, which rising out of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Schwarzen Wald*, as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* called *Don Eschingen*, about two Dutch miles from the shores of the *Rhene*; passeth through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Austria*, &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regensberg*, *Passau*, *Vienna*, *Rab*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*. Beyond which it beginneth to be called *Ister*, by which name most generally known amongst the *Grecians*; and receiving into its channel, from the long tracts of the *Alps*, the *Sarmatian* and *Compathian* mountains, about 60 navigable Rivers, besides lesser Brooks, disgorgeth his full Romuch by several mouths (the names whereof we shall find in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine sea*; the whole length of his course 1500 miles. Inasmuch as we may say with a modern Poet,

Cedere Dannbius se tibi Nile negat.

O seven-mouth'd Nile, I plainly see,
Danow will scarce give way to thee.

2 *Rhene*, (of whose original and course we have spoke more fully when we were in *Belgium*) which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a course of 800 miles, emptieth it self into the *German Ocean*. All which shall here be added, is, that it gives the title of the *Rhine-Grave* to some Princes, of as good blood as the best in *Germany*, whose possessions and Estates bordered near unto it, and from thence so called; but of late times decayed (almost to nothing) in their Estates, and living for the most part on the entertainment of other Princes, whom they serve in their wars; the Palgrave of the *Rhene*, and two at the least of the three Bishops Electors, raising themselves upon the ruins of this House. 3 *Elb*, (*Albia*) which springing out of the mountain of *Risenburg* in the skirts of

Bohemia,

Bohemia runneth a course of 400 miles, and passeth by the Cities of *Dresden, Misén, Torgaw, Witteburg, Magdeburg, and Lawenburg*, Cities of the Electoral and Antient *Saxony*, and so betwixt the Dukedom of *Holslein* (now part of *Danmark*) and the rest of *Germany*. 4. *Odera*, which hath its fountain in the hithermost parts of *Moravia*; and after it hath run its course through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*; of some 300 miles in length, falleth at last into the *Baltick* Sea. 5. *Vistula*, or the *Weser*, which issuing out of the hills of *Thuringia*, runneth through *Hassia*, and *Westphalen*, to the City of *Breme*; nor far from which it falls into the *German Ocean*. 6. *Vistula*, or the *Weser*, which rising out of the *Carpathian* mountains, betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, first passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Pole*; then betwixt *Pomeran* and *Prussia*, and so into the *Baltick* Sea, the antient boundary of this Countrey, dividing it from *Sarmatia Europea*. 7. *Moselle*, which rising out of the mountain *Vange*, in the confines of *Lorraine*, and the County of *Burgundy*, passeth directly thorow *Lorraine*, and the District of *Triers*, by the Cities of *Toule, Metz, and Trier*, it self, beyond which last it falleth into the *Rhene* at the Town called *Confluentz*. 8. *Salz*, or *Salza*, which rising in the mountains of *Fischelberg*, in the borders of the upper *Palatinat*, and passing by the skirts of *Misnia* and *Saxony*, specially so called, falleth into the *Elb* beyond *Witteburg*, having first watered the Cities of *Naumburg, Merseburg* and *Jena*, very observable for being the most Eastern bounds of the *Saxon* Conquests; by this River passed from the *Sclaves*. 9. *Main*, or the *Maine*, which had its spring in the mountains of *Bohemia*, and passing by the Cities of *Bamberg*, and *Wertzberg*, is received into the *Rhene* beneath *Frankford*. 10. *Amisus*, or the *Emis*, which hath its fountain near *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*; and passing between the two *Frislandis*, falleth into the *German Ocean*, not far from *Emden*.

Chief mountains of this mighty Countrey, besides the *Alps* spoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are 1. *Abnuba*, now called *Schwartenwalds* (the present name both of this Mountain and the Forest of *Martiana*, which doth overshadow it) out of which rise the Springs of *Danow*, and the *Neccar*, two principal Rivers of this Countrey. 2. The *Sudeta*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the woods called antiently *Gabreta* and *Luna*, now called the Woods of *Passaw* and *Behaim*, from the places adjoining. 3. *Cetina* in *Austria*, now called *Culemburg*, the antient bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two Roman Provinces. 4. *Pogus*, commonly called *Vange*, and by some French writers *Le Mont de Fauccites*, which encircling *Lorraine*, divideth it on the East and South from *Elzass*, and the County of *Burgundy*. As for the Forests of this Countrey, besides those spoken of already, that of most note was the Forest of *Hercinia* (of which all the rest were but limbs or branches.) The beginning whereof was about the borders of *Switzerland* and *Alsacia*, from thence running Eastward along the course of the *Danow* unto *Transilvania*, and thence declining on the left hand through the vast Countreys of the *Lithuanians, Moscovites* and *Russes*; in which last there are still many vast deserts of it; the greatest part thereof in *Germany* being long since consumed; in place whereof are many goodly Corn-fields, and well-built Cities. A wood so formidable to the *Romans*, that they durst never venture to search the end of it; the length thereof, after the end of 60 dayes journey, being undiscoverable; and the further search into it quite laid aside.

These *Boundaries* and *Landmarks* being thus described, we shall the better follow the *Choreography* of this great continent, according to the several *Principalities* and *Estates* therein: having first taken a survey of the antient condition of it, with so much of the story as concerns the whole, before it came to be divided into so many hands. The Countrey first planted by the posterity of *Gomer*, who descending from the Mountains of *Albania*, their first seat, in memory thereof first called *Gomerini*; after *Cimmerini*, by which name known to *Pliny, Ptolomy*, and others of the antient writers: removed into the more fruitful plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris* which *Pliny* speaks of. But that small Province proving of too narrow a compass to contain his Off-spring, and the adjoining Countries being taken up in the former *Plantations*; they removed unto the Northwest of the *Euxine* Sea; where we find a City of their building called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*; and the adjoining streight or *Frétrum*, called by the name of *Bosphorus Cimmerius*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. Driven from these dwellings by the more powerfull *Scythians*, they spread themselves into the West, where they began to be called *Cimbri*, and by that name, and under those of the *Ambrones*, and *Tentones*, several branches of them, intended an invasion and conquest both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *nisi isti secundo Marius configisset*, had not *Marius* hapned to have lived in that Age; by whom discomfited and destroyed. That these *Gomerians* or *Cimbri* were the first Inhabitants of *Gaul, Germany*, and all the Nations of the North and West of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the learned; divided into several nations, and those also subdivided into lesser tribes, and more obscure families: amongst which those of *Tentones*, or *Tuiscenes*, from which the *Dutch* do so affect to derive themselves; might be some of the principal. There settled, and not pleased with that desert dwelling, such of them as dwelt nearest to the *Rhene* passed over that River; and beating the *Gauls* further up into the Countrey, possessed themselves of their dwellings: enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Caesar*) without any Rival. But *Caesar*, moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the insolencies of *Ariovistus* a King of the *Germans* (for by that name for the Reasons aforesaid, the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being so afraid of this dreadful Enemy, *ut testamenta passim in principis scriberentur*, (saith the Historian) that many of them made their testaments at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquished by *Caesar*, and *Ariovistus* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans* by command of their General, made a bridge over the River, and rather terrified than conquered the neighbouring *Germans*: more fully brought into subjection by *Drusus*, the adopted son of *Augustus Caesar*, from thence called *Germanicus*; by whom not only the *Rhæti* and *Norici* then lying out of the bounds of Ger-

Germany (now included in it) were subdued in fine, and brought into the form of *Roman* Provinces; but the whole Countrey, in a manner to the very Ocean, was forced to yield obedience to the *Roman* Empire. But this was for so short a time, that it was both won and lost during the reign and government of *Augustus Caesar*. So that the whole established Conquests of the *Romans* upon this Countrey, as it is now bounded, contained no more than the Provinces of *Germania*, and *Belgica prima*, with part of *Germania secunda*, belonging unto the Diocese of *Gaul*; the greatest part of the two *Rhetia's* being under the Diocese of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum*, and *Ripense*, with some parts of *Pannonias* parts of the Diocese of *Illyricum*. But none of these (as lying on the West side of the *Rhene*, and the South of the *Danow*) did ever pisse in the account of the antient *Germany*; the *Germans* not enduring the yoke so long, as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the lust and insolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who succeeded *Drusus* in that charge, they set upon him under the conduct of *Arminius*, a chief Prince amongst them, kill him, and utterly cut off three Legions, as we shall see more particularly when we come to *Brunswick*, the antient seat of the *Cherusci*; by whom the forces of that Emperor were driven over the *Rhene*. After which defeat *Augustus* laid aside the affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Drusus* had extended to the banks of the Ocean. *Hæc clade factum, ut imperium quod in littore Oceani non flecterat, in Ripa Rheni fluminis staret*, saith the Historian. Nor did the *Romans* only forbear to revenge this loss, by making a new war upon them; but seemed more careful to defend themselves against their invasions, than to incur the hazard of a new defeat: quartering eight Legions with their several wings and Aides, on the shores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the banks of the *Danow*, to keep these people from incroaching on the *Roman* Provinces. But the fatal period of that Empire drawing on a pace, the *French, Burgundians, Almans*, and other *Dutch* Nations break through those Guards, dispossess the *Romans* of all *Gaul, Rhetia*, and *Noricum*; which they share amongst them: till in the end, the *French* prevailing over the rest, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germany*, chiefly performed by the valour of *Charles the Great*, created Emperour of the West by the people of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperial Crown by Pope *Leo* the 4th. on *Christmas-day*, Anno 801. So that now the old Prophecie of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the West, came to be accomplished; though *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle prediction. For when *Civilis* raised a Rebellion amongst the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoining) against *Vespasian* then newly made Emperour; *possessum rerum humanarum, Transalpinis gentibus portendi, Druidæ canebant*; the *Druides* prophesied of the translation of the Empire to the *Transalpine* nations. Accomplished, as before is said, in the person of *Charles the Great*, King of *France* and *Germany*. By whom divided, (for the better ordering or Governance of it) into *West-France*, or *West-veicks*, in the barbarous *Latine* of those times called *Westraia*; containing the modern *France*, and so much of the *Netherlands* as lyeth on the French side of the River *Maes*; and *Ost-veicks* (i. e. the Eastern Kingdom) in the *Latine* of those times *Austrasia*, containing so much of the modern *Germany* and *Pannonia*, as was possessed by the *French*, with the rest of the *Netherlands*. This afterwards subdivided into the Kingdoms of *Lorraine* and *Germany*; whereof the first contained all *Germany* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before described, the Counties of *Flanders*, and *Artois* excepted only; the Kingdom of *Germany* taking up the rest. For in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, the son of *Charles*, the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many members; as *Italy, France, Burgundy, Lorraine* and *Germany*; distributed amongst his sons and nephews, with the title of Kings: By means whereof the Kingdoms of *Germany* and *Lorraine*, united in the person of *Lewis* the Antient, in little time were alien'd from the house of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*; possessed by the great Princes of *Lorraine, Saxony, Schwaben*, and *Bavaria*; by whom dismembered into many principalities and inferiour states, all passing under the account and name of the *Dutch* or *Germans*. The Kings and Emperours of which here follow.

THE KINGS and EMPEROURS of GERMANIE.

- A.C.
801 1 *Charles the Great*, Emperour, K. of *France* and *Germany*.
815 2 *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *France, Germany*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.
841 3 *Lewis*, surnamed the Antient, second son of *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *Germany*, to which, Anno 876, he united that of *Lorraine* also.
4 *Charles the Great*, son of *Lewis* the Antient, reigned at first jointly with *Carolamen*, and *Lewis* his elder Brethren; after their deaths sole King of *Germany*, Anno 890, he succeeded *Ludovicus Baldus* in the title of Emperour, continued unto his Successors; and during the minority of *Charles the Simple*, by a faction of the *French* Nobility, was chosen King of *France*: the whole estate of *Charles the Great*, becoming once again united in the person of one Sovereign Prince.
891 5 *Arnulph*, the natural son of *Carolamen*, the brother of *Charles*, King of *Germany* and Emp.
903 6 *Lewis*, or *Ludovicus IV.* (*Lewis* the brother of *Charles* and *Carolamen* being reckoned for one) King of *Germany* and Emperour, the lawfully begotten son of *Arnulph*.
913 7 *Conrade*, the son of *Conrade*, the brother of *Lewis* the 4th. the last Prince of the masculine issue of *Charles the Great*. After whose death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, seeing *Charles the Simple* King of *France*, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroiled by the Princes of the house of *Anjou*, took that advantage to transfere the Empire to themselves; and they made choice of *Henry Duke of Saxony* to be their Emperour. A worthy Prince, by whom some Nations of the *Sclaves*, the *Hungarians*, and part of *Lorraine* were subdued, or added to the Empire.

- 929 8 *Henricus*, surnamed *Accipiter*, or the *Fowler*, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the *German* Princes, but designed by *Conrad*, as being eldest son of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luithgardis*, Daughter to the Emperor *Arnulph*, and consequently a branch of the *Caroline* stock.
- 938 9 *Otho*, surnamed the *Great*, the son of *Henry*, Emperor, and King of *Italy*. 36.
- 974 10 *Otho* II. son of *Otho* the first, Emperor and King of *Italy*. 10.
- 984 11 *Otho* III. son of *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and the last of that house which had the title of Emperor and King of *Italy*. After whose death, all right of succession being disclaimed, the Emperours became *Elective*; but for the most part wholly ingrossed or Monopolized (since the Failer of the house of *Saxony*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Austria*, notwithstanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The business first projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours less powerfull, and distract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into sides and factions: confirmed by a decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Countrey.
- 1002 12 *Henry* II. surnamed the *Saint*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the first Emperor elected according to the constitution of *Gregory* the fifth, but so elected, that he challenged it in a manner by the right of blood, as being the grand-child of *Henry* surnamed *Rixosus* (the first Duke of *Bavaria*, of the *Saxon* race) the second son of *Henry* the first, and consequently the next heir male of that house after *Otho* the 3d. compelling some of the Electors, who opposed his title by the force of Arms to yield unto it: So that the first Emperor who came in by a clear election; but not without pretention of a title also, was
- 1025 13 *Conrad* II. Duke of *Franconia*, surnamed *Salicus*, Husband to *Luithgardis* one of the daughters of *Otho* the first, and consequently not a stranger to the former Family.
- 1040 14 *Henry* III. surnamed *Niger*, the son of *Conrad*.
- 1056 15 *Henry* IV. son of *Henry* the third, in whose dayes the Popes began to usurp authority over the Emperours: inasmuch as *Leo* the ninth having received the Papedom at the Emperours hands, repented himself of it, put off his Papal vestments, went to *Rome* as a private person, and was there new chosen by the Clergy. This done by the perswasion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7th. excommunicated this *Henry*, the first Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time till the year 1254. there were continual wars and thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours; some of them being excommunicated, some forced to put their necks under the Feet of the Pope; others to quit the care of the Commonwealth, and betake themselves unto the wars of the *Holy-land*, leaving the Pope to do what he list in *Germany*.
- 1106 16 *Henry* V. son of *Henry* the 4th. armed by the Pope against his Father, whom he had no sooner succeeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too stiff in the business of *investitures*, and raised up the *Saxons* against him, by whom vanquished, and otherwise afflicted by the Popes Practices, he was forced to submit unto his commands, and was the last Emperor of the house of *Franconia*.
- 1125 17 *Lotharius*, Duke of *Bavaria*, seized on the Empire without any election, reconciled unto the *German* Princes by the means of *St. Bernard*. He settled the affairs of *Italy* in two journeys thither. 13.
- 1139 18 *Conrad* III. son of *Frederick*, the first hereditary Duke of *Sueve*, or *Schwaben*, and sisters son unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquished *Henry*, surnamed the *Proud*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and going to the *holy-wars* with *Lewis* King of *France*, discomfited the *Turks* near the Banks of *Meander*. 15.
- 1153 19 *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Sueve*, crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4th. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3d. to whom he was slain at last to submit himself, the Pope insolently treading on his neck. He went after to the *Holy-land* (where he dyed) having discomfited the *Turks* in three great battels. 39.
- 1190 20 *Henry* VI. son of *Frederick*, and King of *Sicily*, in right of *Constance* his wife, crowned by Pope *Celestine*, who employed him in the wars of the *Holy-land*; in his journey towards which he died at *Messina*. 8.
- 1198 21 *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, brother of *Henry* the 6th. excommunicated by the Pope (who loved not this Family) by whose means *Otho*, the son of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, was set up against him. The occasion of great wars among the *Germans*, reconciled by marriage of *Otho* with a daughter of *Philip*. 9.
- 1207 22 *Otho* IV. son of *Henry*, surnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3d. by whom not long after excommunicated, for taking into his hands some towns of *Italy* which belonged to the Empire: vanquished in *Brabant* by the faction raised up against him, he relinquished the Empire to his Competitor.
- 1212 23 *Frederick* II. King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, son of *Henry* the 6th. having settled *Germany*, disposed himself for the wars of the *Holy-land*, where he recovered the possession of the Realm of *Jerusalem*; excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italy*; not long after poisoned.
- 1250 24 *Conrad* IV. son of *Frederick*, the last Emperor of the house of *Schwaben*. After whose death, the Empire being distracted by the Popes Practices into many factions, each faction chose an Emperor or King of the *Romans*: so that at one time there were elected, *Henry*

Earl

- Earl of *Thuringia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Alfonso* King of *Castile*, the renowned author of the *Alfonso* Tables, and
- 1254 25 *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, brother of *Henry* the 3d. of *England*, the best motyed man of all his time, supposed therewith to buy the suffrages of the Archbishop of *Colen*, and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, An. 1254. and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he died. After whose death, or an *Inter-regnum* of 12 years from his Exit rather, the Title was at last accepted by
- 1273 26 *Rodolph* Earl of *Habsburg*, a petit Prince, (others of greater Estates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raifer of the present *Austrian* Family.
- 1292 27 *Adolph* Earl of *Nassau*, who served in person under King *Edward* the first of *England*, against the *French*; for which distressed by the *Germans*, he was encountered and slain near the City of *Spire*.
- 1298 28 *Albert*, Duke of *Austria*, son of *Rodolphus* the Emperor, to whom Pope *boniface* the 8th. gave the Realm of *France*, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the Fair. But *Albert* would not meddle out of *Germany*, and did nothing in it.
- 1308 29 *Henry*, Earl of *Luxembourg*, made a journey into *Italy* to recover the rights of the Empire, (where an Emperor had not been seen in 60 years) supposed to be poisoned in the *Challice*, by a Fryer at *Benevent*, a town of the Popes. 6.
- 1314 30 *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner; opposed by *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, chose by another Faction, and crowned at *Bonnas*, a town of the Archbishop of *Colen*; but being defeated, *Lewis* remained sole Emperor, excommunicated by Pope *John* 22. 33.
- 1346 31 *Charles* IV. son of *John* King of *Bohemia*, and grandson of *Henry* the 7th. crowned with the iron Crown at *Millain*, 1354. the framer of the *Golden Bull*. 32.
- 1378 32 *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, deformed and vicious; deposed by the *German* Princes. 22.
- 1400 33 *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*, passed into *Italy* for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Millain*, sold by *Wenceslaus*; but was well beat by *John* Galeazze, and so returned. 10.
- 1410 34 *Jodocus* *Barbatus*, Marquis of *Moravia*, uncle to *Wenceslaus*.
- 1411 35 *Sigismund*, brother of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, crowned at *Rome* on *Whitsunday*, 1432. travelled exceedingly for establishing the peace of *Christendom*, distracted at that time with three Popes at once; a great promoter of the Council at *Constance*.
- 1439 36 *Albert* II. Duke of *Austria*, son in-law of *Sigismund*, whom he succeeded in all his estates and titles excepting *Luxembourg*. 1.
- 1440 37 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Austria*, the son of *Ernest* of *Austria*, and next heir of *Albert* the 2d. procured the calling of the Council of *Basil* for the peace of *Christendom*; travelling for that cause to *Rome*, where declared Emperor, Anno 1442. 54.
- 1494 38 *Maximilian*, son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, who first united the Estates of *Burgundy* to the house of *Austria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went thorow with none. 25.
- 1519 39 *Charles* V. King of *Spain*, son of *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Austria*, son of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*. A puissant Prince, who had prisoners at the same time, the *French* King, and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruined the League made by the *Protestants* at *Smalcald*, took prisoners the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Landgrave of *Hassia*, drove the great Turk from *Vienna*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*; and in the end resigned all his Estates, and dyed in a Monastery. 39.
- 1558 40 *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria* the brother of *Charles*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charles*, Anno 1531. Upon whose resignation he was chosen Emperor, Anno 1558. 7.
- 1565 41 *Maximilian*, the son of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, Anno 1562. succeeding in the Empire after his decease.
- 1577 42 *Rodolphus*, the eldest son of *Maximilian*, had great wars against the Turk, with whom in the year 1600 he concluded a peace; but being undermined by his brother *Matthias*, was forced to surrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and to content himself with *Austria* and the Empire only. These eight last Emperours were all of the order of the Garter.
- 1612 43 *Matthias* brother of *Rodolphus* K. of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Austria*; in whose time were sown the seeds of that terrible war, which had almost destroyed the Empire. Having no children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Graz*, to be declared Successor into his Estates. 36.
- 1619 44 *Ferdinand* of *Graz*, Archduke of *Austria*, son of *Charles* of *Graz*, the younger son of *Ferdinand* the first, succeeded *Matthias* in all his Estates and titles. A Prince more zealously affected to the See of *Rome*, than any of his Predecessors; and a great enemy of the Protestant Religion; occasioning thereby that long and bloody war in the Empire of *Germany*, not yet fully ended.
- 1637 45 *Ferdinand* III. son of *Ferdinand* the 2d. broke the great power of the *Swedes*, (called in for the support of the *German* liberty, and against the violent resolutions of his Father) at the battle

battel of *Norlingen*; the 12th. Emperour of the house of *Hapsburg*, and the 9th. of the house of *Austria* without intermission. The cause of which is to be attributed to *Charles* the first, who procured in his life time, that his brother might be chosen *Rex Romanorum*, as his successeur in the Empire: A policy which hath been ever since continued by his successors; and the *Germans* are the more willing to hearken to it, because the *Austrian* Princes are not only Natives of this Countrey, but better able to back out the Empire in its compleat Majesty, than any of the rest of that Nation are.

And to say truth, it is but need that some great Prince or other be elected to it, who by the power and reputation of his own estate, may preserve the honour of the Empire: confined in a manner within *Germany*, and there so weakened by the alienating of whole Countreys from it (some titulary acknowledgment excepted only; that it is nothing in effect, but *magni nominis umbræ*, the shadow of a mighty body, a meer empty title. For if we look upon the present state and condition of it, we shall find it otherwise too weak, to support the vast and swelling title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire it self, it hath some Countreys reckoned as parts of it, which yet acknowledge no subjection; as *Belgium*, *Switzerland*, and *Denmark*: Some do acknowledge a kind of subjection, but the Princes of them come not to the *Imperial Diets*, as the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Lorraine*, and some of the *Italian* Potentates. Finally, some both confess the Emperour to be their Sovereign, and that they owe service to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of *Germany* only; but those so privileged, so exempted from his commands, so absolute and uncontrollable in their own estates, that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his person; of which we shall speak more hereafter, when we come unto the form of the publick Government. In the mean time, if we would know by what occasions the Empire became so infeebled; it may be said, that the reasons and occasions of it have been very many. As first, the weakness and improvidence of the *Caroline* race, dismembred from it many powerful and wealthy Provinces; reserving only a bare *Homage*, and some slight acknowledgement. 2ly, The cunning of the *Popes*, who from the time of *Henry* the 4th, to *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, had by their *Excommunications* and other practices, so exercised the Emperours with intestine troubles, that they forced them in a manner, to abandon *Italy*: in so much that the said *Rodolph*, finding the inconvenience of it, sold most of his Estates there to the fairest Chupmen. 3ly, This done, and the *Popes* knowing well enough that they could not wax strong in *Italy*, if they did not weaken the Emperours estate in *Germany*, first wrested out of their hands the *Investiture* of the *Bishops*, *Abbots*, and other *Ecclesiastical preferments*: who being now made their own creatures, were so encreased both in revenue and power by little and little, and fortified with so many immunities, that some of them grew in time to be *Free Estates*, all of them *Princes* of the Empire. 4ly, But fearing that this might not bring the Emperours low enough, they baited them with continual factions and perpetual broils: which put them to a necessity of making what friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them; and raking up what moneys they could of the wealthier Cities, paying them in *exemptions* and Royal privileges, when they could not otherwise cancel or discharge the debt. 5ly, And unto this, the making the Empire *Elective* gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire, but as *Trunks for term of life*; and therefore were more likely to discharge such debts by impairing the Publick *Patrimony*, which they had no hold in, than to diminish any thing of their own estates. 6ly, But being the title of Emperour was the greatest honour, which any of that Nation could be capable of, and such as by good husbandry might be made beneficial unto their posterity, (as we see what good uses have been made of it by the *Austrian* family, ever since the time of *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*;) who would not part with some of the *Imperial* rights, to advance his own house to an equal greatness? And here in many of the Emperours were exceeding faulty, who to get the Empire to themselves, or leave it after them unto their posterity, dismembred from the same many Towns and fair possessions, given by them to the *Electors* for their Votes and Suffrages. 7th, A thing which the *Electors* understood sufficiently, and therefore were resolved to make the best of the market, knowing that the commodity could be bought of none but themselves: as in the Election of *Wenceslaus* son of *Charles* the 4th, of whom it was but *ask and have*, what they had a mind to. By means whereof the Princes grew in time so strong, that there were few of them who durst not undertake a war against their Emperours. And this appeareth by the story of *Charles* the fifth, who though the most puissant Emperour which had reigned in *Germany* since *Charles* the Great, yet found himself so over-matched by these ruffling Princes, that he was willing to resign the Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*.

But to proceed; By these and every of these means, the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Estates, and those Estates to be made absolute and independent, as before is said. The principal whereof, which being described will make up the *Chorographie* of this great Continent, are those of 1 *Cleveland*, 2 the Estates of the three spiritual Electors, 3 the Palatinate of the *Rhene*, 4 *Alsacia*, 5 *Lorraine*, 6 *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, 7 *Bavaria*, 8 *Austria*, and its appendices, 9 The confederation of *Wederaw*, 10 *Franconia*, 11 *Wittenberg*, and 12 *Baden*. 13 the Palatinate of *Northgia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, 14 *Bohemia*, and the incorporate Provinces, 15 *Pomerania*, 16 *Mecklenberg*, 17 the *Marquise of Brandenburg*, 18 *Saxony*, and the Members of it, 19 the Dukedoms of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, 20 the *Landgravedom of Hesse*, 21 *Westphalen*, 22 *Eastfrisia*. Such lesser States as being absolute and free, are of lesser moment, shall be reduced (together with the *Imperial* Cities) to those several Provinces, in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Holslein* or *Holsatia*, though it be *Imperial*, in which respect by some accounted as a Province of *Germany*: yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that Kingdom; I shall there speak of it. Some of these are thus censured by *Auburn* late

late writer. They of *Suevia*, (saith he) are Whores; they of *Franconia*, Ravishers and Buggers; they of *Bohemia*, Heretiques; those of *Bavaria*, Thieves; they of *Saxony*, Drunkards; they of *Frisland* and *Westphalia*, Swearers; and they of the *Palatinate*, Gluttons. But I hope more charitably of them all than so. I know there is another division of this Countrey, made by the Emperour *Maximilian* at the Diet of *Colen*, Anno 1552. who for the better raising both of men and money for all Publick services, caused it to be divided into the ten Circles of 1 *Lower Saxony*, 2 *Upper Saxony*, 3 *Westphalia*, 4 of the *Rhene*, 5 of the four *Electors* of that part, 6 *Franconia*, 7 *Suevia*, 8 *Bavaria*, 9 *Austria*, and 10 *Burgundy*. But that before proposed being the more particular, I shall follow that, according to the order before laid down: beginning first with those, which together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, contained anciently the Provinces of *Belgica*, and *Germania prima*, and some part of *Germania secunda*; and made up the Kingdom of *Austrasia* strictly and specially so called.

I. CLEVELAND.

CLEVELAND, or the Estates of the Duke of *Cleve*, before dismembred and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedom, on the death of the last Duke hereof, Anno 1609. contained the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, and the Earldom of *Mark* or *March*, all lying in a ring together. And though these two last lye on the other side of the *Rhene*, and so not properly within the old precincts of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, or any of the *Roman* Provinces before named: yet being they belonged all to the same Prince, not parted by the interposition of other Countreys, they shall be handled here together as the same Estate.

1. The Dukedom of *CLEVE*, properly and distinctly so called, hath on the East, the Countreys of *Mark* and *Berg*, with some part of *Westphalen*; on the West, *Guelderland*, and some part of *Limbourg*; on the North, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the land of *Over-Tselt*; and on the South, *Gulick* and the Land of *Colen*. So called from *Cleve* the chief Town of it.

The Countrey very fruitful both for Corn and Pasturage, well stocked with Cattel of all sorts, for necessary use and pleasure; good store of *Fowl*, both tame and wilde: blessed also with an healthy air, and in a word, with all things needful for the life of man; well watered with the *Rhene*, the *Ruer*, the *Duffel*, the *Esels*, and the *Niers*, common to this and the rest of the incorporate Provinces.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1 *Cleve*, (in *Latine Clivia*) so called, because built on the sides of three little hills (which the *Latines* call *Clivi*;) gently descending towards the Banks of the *Rhene*, which not far off divides it self into several Channels. An ancient Town, and of great note in former time, as appears by many old foundations, and other monuments of Antiquity, continually digged up in the fields adjoining; but chiefly by an old four-square Tower, built on the highest of the three hills, of great height and state; founded by *Julius Caesar* as a bulwark against the *Germans*, inhabiting the further side of the River. For proof of which, besides the old tradition constantly maintained, there is an Inscription on the Gates of the Dukes Palace, neer adjoining to it, which saith, Anno ab Urbe DCXCII. C. Julius Dictator, his partibus subactis, hanc Arcem fundavit, i. e. that in the year 698 from the building of *Rome*, *Julius Caesar* the Dictator, having subdued those parts of the Countrey, caused this Tower to be built. 2 *Santen* on the banks of the *Rhene*, a Town of great antiquity, as the ruins of it doe declare; supposed by *Pighius* to be the *Trajana Colonia* of the Ancients. 3 *Wesel*, (in *Latine Vesulia*) a fair and rich Town, seated on the confluence of the *Rhene* with the River of *Lippe*; which rising in *Westphalia*, doth here lose it self: of great note for a Colledge of secular Canons, built here by *Eberhard* the ninth Earl, Anno 840. or thereabouts; and an Hospital liberally endowed for old impotent persons, founded by *Henry de Baers*, the Dukes Chancellor. A Town not subject to these Dukes, though within the Dukedom, being reckoned an *Imperial City*, and one of the *Hanse-towns*; now neither so *Imperial* nor so *Free* as formerly; possessed first for the *Spaniards* with a Garrison of 3000 men, (at the beginning of the war of *Cleve*) by *D. Lewis Velasco*; and from them taken by the States of the United Provinces, Anno 1628. 4 *Burich*, on the French side of the *Rhene*, over against *Wesel*, amongst goodly Corn-fields, and pleasant pastures. 5 *Duisburg*, or *Twitburg*, in *Latine* called *Tento-burgum*, a town of the ancient *Germans*, (as the name importeth) situate on the *Rhene*, betwixt the *Angra* and the *Ruer*, two noted Rivers. A Town formerly of great trading, and notably well built: *Imperial*, and one of the *Hanse*, but ceased to be *Imperial* when sold by *Rodolph* of *Halsburg* to *Theodorick* the ninth of that name, Earl of *Cleve*; together with 6 *Cravenburg*, another Town of this Dukedom, but of lesser note. 7 *Emmerick*, on the *Rhene*, a well-frequented Town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8 *Rees*, 9 *Griet*, and 10 *Griethusen*, all upon the *Rhene*. 11 *Calcar*, a Town more within the land, but not far from the River; grown wealthy by the trade of Clothing, and the best beer or ale in all these parts, sold thence abundantly into the Countrey round about. Not far from whence, at a place called *Auf de Buern*, it is supposed that *Cesar Germanicus* built his Bridge over the *Rhene*, when he went from *Vetula Castra* against the *Marci*, a Nation of *Germany*. 12 *Gennep*, upon the *Niers* or *Nirfs*, not far from its influx into the *Mae*: which together with *Duisfeld* and *Rixewald* were bought of *Sigismund* the Emperour by *Adolph* the first Duke of *Cleve*, for a great sum of money.

South of the Land of *Cleve*, betwixt it and *Colen*, lyeth the County of *MILERS*, extended all along on the banks of the *Rhene*; a distinct State, the Earl of which is subject to no other Prince, but the Emperour only: so called from *Muer*, the chief Town of it, situate on the French side of the *Rhene*, over against *Duisburg*. Next towns to which are, 2 *Orsey*, 3 *Angur*; of which little memorable. A small Territory, but in a very fruitful soil. The neighbourhood whereof to the Land of *Colen* (to

N n

which

Cleve and
Mark.

- 1434 12 *Gerrard IV.* of Berg, and *V.* of *Gulick*, son of *William*, and brother of *Adolphus*.
1475 13 *William V.* of Berg, and *VI.* of *Gulick*, son of *Gerrard*.
1511 14 *Mary*, daughter and heir of *William*, Dutchess of *Gulick*, and Berg, conveyed the whole Estate in marriage to *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *Mark*, continuing in that Family till the expiration of it in the person of *John William*, the last Prince hereof, Anno 1610.

4. The Earldom of *MARCH*, or *MARK*, hath on the East, and North, *Westphalia*; on the West, the Dukedom of *Cleve*; on the South, that of *Berg*, or *Mont*. So called as being seated in the *Marches* of *Westphalen*, out of which it was taken. The Countrey for the most part like the rest of *Westphalen*, more fit for Pasturage than Corn: woody, and yielding store of pannage to those herds of Swine, with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1 *Werden* upon the River *Ruer*, on the edge of *Westphalia*, the people whereof get great wealth by grazing of Cattle. 2 *Soest* (in *Latine*, *Sufatum*) for wealth and greatness not inferior to any in *Westphalen*, (except *Muster* only) consisting of ten Parishes, and lording it over many rich and pleasant Villages. Anciently it belonged to the Bishops of *Colen*; but in the year 1444. did voluntarily yield it self to the Duke of *Cleve*, (being then Earl of *March* also) and by Duke *John* the 4th. courageously defended against those Prelates. 3 *Arnsberg*, a fine and pleasant site, used for a retiring place by the Electors of the Empire; possessed by the *Trutmanni*, a tribe of the *Suevians*, from whence first called *Trutmania*; and at last *Tremonia*. 4 *Dortmund*, (in *Latine*, *Tremonia*) a County anciently of it self, and held immediately of the Empire; possessed by the *Trutmanni*, a tribe of the *Suevians*, from whence first called *Trutmania*; and at last *Tremonia*. 5 *Blancostein*, built comendiously by *Adolphus* the fifth of that name, and first Earl of *March*; as was also 6 *Hum*, or *Hammon*. 7 *Unna*, of which nothing memorable. 8 *Altena*, the first title of the Earls of this house, before they assumed that of the Earls of *March*, assumed first by *Adolphus* the 4th, on the Conquest of some Lands in the *Marches* of *Westphalen*, continuing in that Family till united with *Cleve*.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of *CLEVE*, out of which it was taken, and to which the rest of those Estates did in time accrue; it was one of the most ancient Estates or Principalities in these parts of the world; continuing in a direct line for the space of 900 years: held by them of the Kings of *France*; and afterwards of the Kings of *Lorraine*, till the incorporating of that Kingdom with the *German Empire*. Begun first by *Elias Grallius*, companion to *Charles Martel*, in his wars against the *Frisons*, *Saxons*, and *Bavarians*; whose son *Theodorick* added hereto by marriage the County of *Teisterbant*, containing the Towns and Signewies of *Altena*, in *Westphalen*; as also of *Bornel*, *Hensden*, *Buren*, *Culemborg*, in the *Belgick Provinces*. By *Baldwin* the sixth Earl was added the territory of *Twentzen* (in *Latine*, *Regio Twentana*) given him by *Ludovicus Pius*; by *Theodorick* the fifth, the Town and Signewy of *Duislack*, settled upon him on his marriage with *Maidla*, the heir thereof: by *Theodorick* the 9th, the County of *Hulkenrade*, near *Nuys* in the Land of *Colen*; together with the Towns of *Duisburg*, and *Culemborg*, bought of *Rodolphus Halspurgensis*: by *John* his son, the Town and territory of *Keiswerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4th. By *Adolph* the 29th Earl, the Earldom of *March*, formerly taken out of it, was again united: by *Adolph* his successor, (made the first Duke hereof by the Emperour *Sigismund*, Anno 1417.) the Lordships of *Gennep*, *Duisfels*, and *Reixwald*, bought of the said Emperour; together with the County of *Ravensstein*, the Towns of *Leoburg*, *Limers* and *Hatteren*, for the ransom of *William* Duke of *Berg*, and other noble persons taken prisoners by him, Anno 1397. By *John* the first Duke of that name, the Town and Territory of *Soest*; and finally by *John* the 3d, the Dukedoms of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as heir thereof by his mother *Mary*, sole daughter and heir of *William* the fifth and sixth, the last Duke thereof. To which great height this ancient and noble Family had not long attained, and thereby made themselves and their sons and daughters fit matches for the greatest Princes: But it pleased God to bring it to its fatal end, and by that means to dissipate this brave estate in the hands of strangers; as shall be shewed in the conclusion of this Catalogue of

The EARLS and DUKES of *CLEVE*.

- A. Ch.
717 1 *Elias Grallius*, companion in the wars of *Charles Martel*.
732 2 *Theodorick*, Earl of *Cleve*, and Lord of *Teisterbant*.
755 3 *Rainold*, son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Cleve*, and *Teisterbant*.
767 4 *Conon*, of great fame in Arms, under *Charles* the Great.
778 5 *John*, son of *Conon*, married the daughter of *Michael* Cuiropalates Emperour of *Constantinople*.
790 6 *Robert*, the eldest son of *John*.
798 7 *Baldwin*, the brother of Earl *Robert*. After whose death, Anno 830. the Earldom of *Teisterbant* was taken out of it, and made the portion of *Robert* a younger son; from whom descended

Cleve and
Mark.

descended the two houses of *March* and *Berg*.
830 8 *Ludowick*, Son of *Baldwin*.

834 9 *Eberard*, Brother of *Ludowick*; who gave *Teisterbant* to his Brother *Robert*.

843 10 *Liuthardus*, Earl of *Cleve*.

878 11 *Baldwin II.*

928 12 *Arnold*.

968 13 *Wigman*, son of *Arnold*.

1004 14 *Conrade*, made an Earl of the Empire; in the life of his Father.

1045 15 *Theodorick II.*

1088 16 *Theodorick III.* companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the *Holy Land*.

1114 17 *Arnold II.* brother of *Theodorick* the third.

1161 18 *Theodorick IV.*

1205 19 *Arnold III.*

1218 20 *Arnold IV.*

1229 21 *Theodorick V.*

1247 22 *Theodorick VI.*

1247 23 *Theodorick VII.*

1255 24 *Theodorick VIII.*

1271 25 *Theodorick IX.*

1309 26 *Otho*, son of *Theodorick*.

1325 27 *Theodorick X.* Brother of *Otho*.

1325 28 *John*, brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the last of the masculine issue of *Elias Grallius*.

29 *Adolphus*, the VII. of *March*, Son of *Adolph* the 6. of *March*, and *Mary* of *Cleve*, first Archbishop of *Colen*, (as six of this house of *March* had been (almost) successively before him) succeeded on the death of his Uncle *John*, to the Earldom of *Cleve*; inaugurated thereunto by *Charles* the 4th.

1389 30 *Adolph II.* of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the first Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperour *Sigismund*, at the Council of *Constance*, Anno 1417.

1443 31 *John III.* son of *Adolph* Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravensstein*.

1481 32 *John II.* of the rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.

1521 33 *John III.* Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, &c. by descent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in right of his wife, daughter and heir of *William* the last Duke thereof.

1539 34 *William*, son of *John* the 3d, and *Mary* his wife, daughter and sole heir of *William* the last Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*: Father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the wives of *Henry* the 8. of *England*. He contended very strongly against *Charles* the fifth for the Dukedom of *Geldres*; but being too weak for so great an Adversary, made his submission to him at *Venlo*, and so saved his Estates.

1584 35 *John William*, son of the former *William*, during the life of *Charles Frederick* his elder brother, was Bishop of *Munster*; on whose death, Anno 1575. he resigned that dignity, and in the end succeeded his Father in his whole Estates; which he managed with great piety and prudence till the year 1610: and then died issueless. The last of that ancient and noble Family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whose death, much quarrel and contention grew about the succession; betwixt the several competitors and pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1 *Leopold* Archduke of *Austria*, pretending an investiture from the Emperour *Rodolphus* in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, to whom for want of heirs males, the Estate was said to be escheated. 2 *John George*, Duke of *Saxony*, descended from *Sibyl*, daughter of Duke *John* the third: at whose marriage with *John Frederick* the Elector of *Saxony*, Anno 1535. it was said to have been solemnly agreed upon, that on the failing of the heirs males of *Cleve*, the issue of that marriage should succeed therein. 3 *George William* Duke of *Prussia*, son of *John Sigismund* the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Lady *Anne* his wife; eldest daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenburg* Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Maria Eleonora*, the eldest sister and next heir of the Duke deceased. 4 *Wolfgangus Guilielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, son of *Magdalen*, the younger sister of that *Mary*, who claimed the Estate as nearest Kinsman by one degree, to the said last Duke. And though the right seemed most apparently on the side of *Brandenburg*; the Estate in truth pretended by the Duke of *Saxony*, being formerly cut off by Imperial authority; and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg*, not of force in *Germany*: yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a possession of *Juliers*, and of most parts of that Countrey; the two Princes of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg* soon agreed the controversy, and by the help of the Protestant Princes their Confederates, recovered the greatest part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg* not content with his partage, first married with a daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*; called in the Spanish Arms under the command of Marquess *Spinola*; to abet his quarrel: which

EARLS of *ALTENA*
and *MARCH*.

A. Ch.

834

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

66

67

68

69

70

71

72

73

74

75

76

77

78

79

80

81

82

83

84

85

86

87

88

89

90

91

92

93

94

95

96

97

98

99

100

Colen.

which made *George William*, son of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the *Forces of the States*, under the command of *Maurice Earl of Nassau*, after Prince of *Orange*. The issue of which war was this, that *Spinola* possessed himself of *Wesel*, *Aken*, *Mulheim*, *Dusseldorp*, and most other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*; and the States got into their power the Towns of *Gulick*, with *Ries* and *Emmerick* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*; and almost the whole County of *Mark*. And though most parts of these Estates had been delivered since to the rightful Owners: yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which, notwithstanding that they both pretend to keep them for the use of those Princes, in whose cause they stood; yet when such strong parties keep the Scales, it is most easie to determine who will win the game: Such alterations as have happened in the chance of War, by the reciprocal winning and losing of some Towns on both sides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightful Owners.

The Arms of these Princes were 1. *Gules*, over an Esccheon in Fesse *Argent*; a Carbuncle pierced, Pommelled, and flowred Or, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*. 2. Or, a Lion *Azure* armed *Gules*; for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Arms of *Berg* and *Mark* I have no where found.

2. The Estates of the three ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

Adjoining to the Estates of *Cleve* are those of the *Spiritual Electors* of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Ments*, and *Triers*; not so contiguous and continuous as those of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out severally by their merces and boundaries: And first for

1. *COLEN-LAND*, or the Estate of the Archbishop and Elector of *Colen*, is bounded on the East, with the Dukedom of *Berg*, from which divided by the *Rhene*; on the West, with *Gulick*; on the North, with *Cleve* it self, and the County of *Muers*; and on the South, extending to the Land of *Triers*. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Ubii*, in former times possessed of the Countreys of *Berg* and *March*; But being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the Clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the French side of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the borders of the *Roman Empire*, as for their own security against that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the reign and under the conduct of *Childerick*, Anno 412. or thereabouts; and from the *French* by the Emperor *Otho* the first, An. 949. By *Otho* the 2d, made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, or at the least given by him unto *Charles of France*, the first Duke thereof. After whose death, decealing without issue male, the Town of *Colen*, and many other pieces upon the *Rhene*, were seized on by *Otho* the 3d, and by him restored to the Empire, Since that time, the City of *Colen* hath remained Imperial, and of late times incorporated amongst the *Hanse-Towns*; but the territory near unto it, and a great part of *Westphalen*, subject immediately to the Bishop. The Bishops See first founded here by *S. Maternus*, one of the Disciples of *S. Peter*, as hath been constantly affirmed by old tradition: but howsoever an Episcopal See without all question, in the time of *Constantine*; *Maternus*, Bishop hereof, subscribing amongst others to the Council of *Arles*, An. 326. And being *Colen* was in those times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, the Bishop had the power of a Metropolis, according to the rule and observation too often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made Elective, these Bishops, with their brethren of *Ments* and *Triers*, were made three of the seven, which were to nominate and elect the succeeding Emperour: after which time it is no wonder that they grew both in Power and Patrimony.

Places of most importance within this Electorate, are 1. *Bonn*, situate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the most pleasant and fruitful place of all the Countrey; the ordinary residence of the Archbishop, whose House or Palace here, is said to be one of the fairest in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* called *Bonna*, and sometimes *Castra Bonnenfis*, the wintering Camp in his time, of the six Legion. 2. *Nuy*, by the same writer called *Novesium*, (*Nivefia* by *Antoninus*) feared on the *Erp*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the glories of *Charls Duke of Burgundy*: who being resolved to get this Town into his hands, as a convenient pass into *Germany*, lay so long before it, that he lost the opportunity of joyning with King *Edward* the 4th of *England*, whom he had purposely invited to the war of *France*, and yet was fain to go without it. By means whereof he grew so low in reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Lorraine*, forsook by the *English*, baffled by the *Switzers*, and at last overthrown and slain by that beggerly Nation. 3. *Ernae*, or *Andernach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Antenacum*; one of the ten Garrisons erected by the *Romans* on the banks of the *Rhene*, to secure their Province from the *Germans*: the other nine being *Confluentz*, *Boppert*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Sels*, *Strauburg*, and *Wassenberg*. 4. *Lintz*, seated on the same River also. 5. *Santina*, a Town of good repute. 6. *Zulp*, now a village of no esteem, but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* called *Tolbiacum*; most memorable for the great victory which *Clovis* the first Christian King of the *French*, (upon a vow made in the heat of the fight to embrace the Gospel) obtained against the whole power of the *Almans*, never presuming after that to invade his territories. 7. *Rhinburg*, the commonly called *Berk*, the most Northern Town of all the Bishoprick, situate on the *Rhene* (as the name imports) there where the lands of this Bishop, as also of the Dukes of *Cleve*, and the Earls of *Muers*, meet upon a point. A Town which for these 60 years hath been of little use or profit to the right Owner, possessed sometimes by the *Spaniards*, sometimes by the confederate States; for each commodiously seated, as opening a passage up the River, and receiving great customs on all kind of Merchandise passing to and fro. But having finally been possessed by the *Spaniard* from the year 1606, till 1633, it was then regained for the States by *Henry of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loss of no more than 60 men: there being found in the Town 30 Brads pieces of Ordnance,

Triers.

70 barrels of powder, with victuals and ammunition of all sorts thereunto proportionable. 8. *Colen*, situate on the *Rhene*, first built by the *Ubii* before mentioned, and by them called *Opidum Ubiorum*; afterwards in honour of *Agrippina* (daughter of *Germanicus*, and wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a *Roman Colony*, and called *Colonia Agrippina*; and sometimes by way of eminency, *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous, and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compass, in which are numbered 19 Hospitals, 37 Monasteries of both Sexes, 30 Chappels of our Lady, 9 Parishes, and 10 Collegiat Churches, besides the Cathedral, being a Church of vast greatness, but of little beauty, and not yet finished; the Metropolis whereof is Chancellor of *Italy*, the second of the three Electors; and writes himself Duke of *Westphalen* and *Angrivaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Cesar* with incredible expedition make a bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous enemy than the reports of his valour: so powerfull is laborious industry, that it overcometh all disasters, and maketh the most unpassable waters yield to Heroick resolutions.

In this Town also is said to lie the bodies of the three wise men, which came from the East to worship our Saviour; vulgarly called the three Kings of *Colen*. The whole story is at large written in *rabies*, which are fastned unto their Tombs. The pith whereof is this. The first of them called *Melchior*, an old man with a large beard, offered Gold as unto a King; The second called *Gaspax*, a bearded young man, offered *Frankincense*, as unto God; The third called *Balthasar* with a spreading beard, offered *Myrrhe* as unto a Man ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the fable saith, is probable; First, because they came from the East; and so is *Arabia* in respect of *Hierusalem*: And 2ly, because it is said in the 72 Psalm, *The Kings of Arabia shall bring gifts*. As for their bodies, they are there said to have been translated by *Helena*, the mother of *Constantine*, unto *Constantinople*; from thence by *Eusebius* Bishop of *Milain*, removed unto *Milain*; and finally brought hither by *Rainoldus* Bishop hereof, Anno 1164. This is the substance of the History; which for my part I reckon amongst the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their coming from some part of *Arabia*) but have not leisure in this place to retell the Fable.

As for the temporal Estate of the Bishops of *Colen*, it came unto them specially by the munificence of the Emperours of the house of *Saxony*; the Dukedom of *Engern*, containing a good part of *Westphalen*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno*, once Archbishop hereof, one of the younger Sons of the Emperour *Henry* the first, tirnamed the Fowler, with the consent of *Otho* the first, his elder brother. To which was added, not long after, the whole Land of *Colen* (as we have formerly described it) by *Otho* the 2d; which being formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, was taken out of it, and settled on the Bishops hereof, at such time as the Dukedom of *Lorraine* was erected by him: Such pieces only as are found on the other side of the *Rhene* (neither great nor many) being added by the wit and industry of the following Bishops: Exceedingly increased both in Power and Patrimony by the addition of *Leige* to this Electorate: it being of late the constant custom of the Canons of *Leige*, to choose the Archbishop of *Colen* for their Prince and Pastor.

Next to the Bishoprick of *Colen* lieth the land of *TRIERS*, extended all along the course of the *Moselle*, from the Dukedom of *Lorraine* on the South, beyond the influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of *Confluentz*, where it bordereth on the Land of *Colen*: and being bounded on the East with *Luxembourg*; as on the West, with that part of *Franconia* which lieth below the confluence of the said two Rivers; and is now called *Rhinogowm*; more Southward on that side with the Countrey of *Wistrach*, and the Dukedom of *Zweibruck*, parts of the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*. The Countrey towards *Lorraine*, and *Luxembourg*, somewhat wilde and barren; more fruitful about *Triers* it self, and the bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleasant than profitable, the greatest riches of it lying in Woods and Minerals. The Bishops See here first erected by *Encherius*, a Disciple and follower of *S. Peter*. The reality whereof, not only testified by the *Martyrologies*, but by *Methodius*, a writer of approved credit; who adds *Valerius* and *Maternus* for his next successors; the line Episcopal continuing till the Council of *Arles*, Anno 326. *Agrippinus* Bishop of *Triers* subscribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards, and before, the Bishop had the reputation and authority of a Metropolis, the City of *Triers* being anciently the Metropolis of *Belgica prima*, within which it stands. Increased exceedingly by being made one of the three Electors of the Spirituality, though the last in order, and Chancellor to the Emperour for the Realm of *France*: the Fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wretched from it, with the rest of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*, by the German Emperours.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Confluentz*, now *Cobolentz*, the Confluence of *Antoninus*, so called because feared on the confluence or meeting of the *Rhene* and the *Moselle*; the station anciently of the first Legion. A populous and well-built Town; and seated in a pleasant and fertile Countrey. 2. *Emmeltstein*, over against *Cobolentz*, on the other side of the *Rhene*, beautified with a strong Castle of the Bishops, mounted upon a lofty hill, which not only gives a gallant prospect to the eye, but commands both the Town and River. 3. *Boppert*, seated on the *Rhene*, and called so quasi *Banport*, from the commodiousness of the Creek (upon which it standeth) for the use of shipping: one of the Ports (as *Confluentz* before mentioned was) erected by the *Romans* on the *Rhene*, for defence of *Gaul* against the *Germans*; occasioning in time both Towns. It was once miserably waited by *Richard Earl of Cornwall*, and King of the *Romans*, because the Bishop of *Triers* agreed not unto his Election; but soon recovered of those hurts. The ancient name hereof in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, is supposed to be *Bodobrica*: pawned to the Bishops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7th and not yet redeemed. 4. *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorraine* (by *Antoninus* called *Pons Sarvia*) seated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it had the name) at the fall thereof into the *Moselle*: possessed at the present by a branch of the house of *Nassau* (but *Homagers* of this Electour) entitled hence according to the Dutch fashion, Counts

Triers.

Counts of Nassau in Sarbruck, 5 Veldents, and 6 Belftern on the Moselle, of which nothing memorable. 7 Treves, or Triers, in Latine Treveris, the principal City of the Treveri, who possessed this tract; seated upon the Moselle also, the Metropolis of the Province of Belgica Prima, and honoured with the residence of the Vicar or Lieutenant General, for the whole Diocese of Gaul; by consequence the seat of a Metropolitan when it submitted to the Gospel. Of such antiquity, that it is said to have been founded 150 years before the City of Rome: of no great beauty of it self, and as little trading; the River not being capable of ships of burden; and the air generally to cloudy and inclined to rain, that it is by some called merrily *Clauca Planetarum*. It passed sometimes among the number of Imperial Cities, but now acknowledgeth the Elector for the Lord thereof; by whom made an University, one of the ancientest in all Germany, and of as much repute for the study of good Arts and Sciences, as the best amongst them. 8 Ober-Wesel, or Vefalia Superior, so called to distinguish it from Wesel in the Dukedom of Cleve, which is Vefalia inferior, or the Under-wesel: the furthest place of this District, seated on the Rhene, not far from Baccharach, a Town of the Palatinate; of no great note, but that it is accounted for a Town Imperial.

This Countrey anciently was part of the great and famous Earldom of *Moselle*, denominated from the River *Moselle*, along the course whereof it was first erected. An Estate founded by the differēt fons of *Clodion*, second King of the *French*, at the same time (and on the same occasion also) in which the Earldom of *Ardenne* was erected by them; of which we have already spoken when we were in *Belgium*. This of the two the more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Metz*, as lying nearer to the Court, and so more in sight: the other being further off, in Countries far less cultivate, but more defensible. This Earldom comprehending, besides this of *Triers*, the Countries of *Sveinbrucken* and *West-reich*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhine*, occasioned the Princes of it to be much looked after; and they maintained their Part to the very last; inasmuch that *Gisbert* or *Gilbert* Earl of *Moselle*, in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the first, surnamed the *Fowler*, was thought by him a fit Husband for his daughter *Gerberg*; married after his decease to *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine* King of *France*, and *Gertrude*, daughter of *Theodorick*, who came after *Gilbert*, married to *Henry* surnamed *Gozlo* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, and by him made the mother of another *Henry*, Successor unto *Otho* the 3d, in the *Roman* Empire. Impoverished not a little both in power and patrimony by the erection of the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, there grew some feuds between those houses; occasioning the death of *Albert* another of these Earls, slain (as it is said by *Lazius*) by *Godfrey* son to *Godfrey* of *Bonillon* Duke of *Lorraine*: more probably by some other Prince of the house of *Ardenne*, is not being found in any other approved Author, that *Godfrey* of *Bonillon* was the Father of any Children. But this difference being reconciled by the marriage of *Bertha* daughter of *Simon* Earl hereof, with *Thierry*, the 5th Duke of *Lorraine*, and the family of these Earls expiring in a short time after; this part of the Estate was seized on by the Bishops of *Triers*; that part of the *Palatinate* which lieth on the *Gallic* side of the *Rhene*, by the Bishops of *Metz*, *Spire*, *Worms*, and the Princes *Palatine*; the rest being taken in by the Dukes of *Lorraine*, who do still enjoy it: the Emperours of those times being either willing to it, or not able to help it.

3. The Bishoprick of *MENTZ*, is not laid out by bounds and limits as the other ; becaufe the Patrimony and Eitate thereof doth not lie together : dispersed for the moſt part about *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands and Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Biſhops of *Wormes*, *Spire*, and others. So that the temporal Eitate of this Elektor is every way inferiour unto thoſe of *Trier*, and *Colen* ; ſuperior unto both in place and dignity : he being the firſt in rank of the whole *Electoral Colledge*, Chancellor for the Empire, and in all meetings ſiteth at the right hand of the Emperour. The Biſhops ſee firſt placed here, as ſome report, by *S. Creſcent*, one of the Diſciples of *S. Paul*, of whoſe being ſent by him into *Gallia* (for ſo the ancient writers underſtand *Galatia*) the Apoſtle ſpeaketh, *2 Tim. 4*. Though others with more probability ſet him at *Vienna in Dauphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is, that anciently this City was a See Episcopall ; *Martine* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, Anno 347. And if a Biſhop, certainly a *Metropolitan* Biſhop, this City being in thoſe times the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Chriſtianity being worn out of theſe parts of *Germany*, by the conqueſts of the *French*, *Almans*, and other Infidels, was again reſtored in this tract by *Boniſace*, an *Engliſhman*, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Mentz* of this new plantation, (in and about the time of *Peppin*, ſirnamed the *Groſs*, *Maire* of the Palace to the *French Kings*, and Father of *Martel*) who for the *Orthodoxy* of his doctrine, and the number of Churches planted by him, hath been deſervedly honoured with title of the Apoſtle of *Germany*.

Towns of most note belonging to the Bishops hereof are, 1 *Mentz* it self, the *Metropolitaneum* of the Ancients, so called from the River of *Maine*, formerly *Mogus* and *Moganus* in the *Latine* (now better known by the name of *Main*) opposite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old; so having the command of both Rivers: for that cause made the seat of a *Roman* Officer, commonly called the Duke of *Mentz*, who had a charge of the *Frontiers*; and especially of those ten Garrisons planted on the banks of the *Rhene*, spoken of before. Stretched out in great length on the River side, but not of answerable breadth; well built, and populous towards the water, in other parts not so well inhabited. The publick buildings generally very large and beautifull, the houses, built according to the old *Roman* model; the most magnificent whereof is the Bishops Palace, who is the immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both sides of the *Rhene*, fruitful in all natural commodities, and abounding with most excellent wines. Of good note also for an University here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the *Electors*: but especially for the Art of Printing which was here invented or perfected at the least, and made fit for use. 2 *Bing* seated on the *Rhine*, another of the

GERMANIE.

the Garrison Towns erected by the *Romans* on the banks of that River. In a small Island of which, not far from this town, is a Tower, or Castle, called the *Montfirth*; i. e. the tower of Mice: built by one *Hans* (or *Hanno*) Archbishop of *Metz*, A. D. 900: or thereabouts. Who in a year of great scarcity pre-tending to relieve the poor people oppressed with Famine, caused them to be gathered together into an old Barn, where he burnt them all; saying, they were the *Rats* and *Mice* which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was so persecuted by these *Vermin* that to avoid them, he was fain to build a Palace in the midst of the *Rhene*, whither the *Rats* and *Mice* followed him, and at last devoured him. 3 *Leunfeins* & *Harford*, 5 *Oxenford*, 6 *Alderburg*, 7 *Middleburg*, 8 *Carlostadt*, the birth-place of *Cargel*, *Stadius*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9 *Bischoffstein*, 10 *Königsberg* (*Monti Regis* in *Latin*) the birth-place of *Johannes* de *Monte Regio*, a famous *Mathematician*, as appears by his Comment upon the *Ptolemaic* *Astronomy*. Most of which Towns being in *Frankland*, though of this Electorate, were not gained in gross by these Electors, as were the *Land* of *Colen*, and *Diocese* of *Triers*, but piece-meal in a manner; and by retail, partly upon the failer of the house of *Schiden* Dukes of *Francony* also, partly by the munificence of the *German* Emperours, but especially by making the best use of their Votes and Suffrage in the Choice of Emperours, which they did not part withall for nothing: Such Towns as hereof, as lie on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, gained by like means upon the expiration of the house of *Mosle*.

3. THE PALATINATE OF THE RHINE

The **PALATINATE** of the **RHENE** is bounded upon the East, with the Dukedom of *Wurtemberg*, and some part of *Francony*; with the residue thereof, and the River *Main*, upon the North; on the South, with *Elsass*, or *Alsatia*; and on the West, with the Land of *Triers*: extended in length from *Comb to Genshheim*, north and South, 72 miles; and in breadth from *Sweibrucken to Lutzerath*, East and West, 90 miles.

It is called also the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate of Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper* : the *Palatinate of the Rhene*, because lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is said to be the most pleasant part of all *Germany*, stored with all sorts of Fruits and Metals, abounding with those cool *Wines*, which growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rhenish*, adorned with many goodly Towns, both for strength, populousness, and beauty ; and finally watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Nieck*.

The Religion of this Country; and that of the *Upper Palatinate* which depends upon it, hath much varied since the first Reformation established by *Frederick* the second, according to the Form and Doctrine of the *Confession of Augspurg*: the Doctrine and discipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third; the *Lutheran* Forms restored again by *Leopold* or *Ludowick* the fifth: after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*; as more conducing to the ends of some needy *Swiss*; who could not otherwise raise their Fortunes than by invading the *Tiethen* and *Gleichen*, and other poor remainders of the Churches *Patrimony*. Of which the *Clergy* being universally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miserable short stipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became so contemptible, and neglected by all sorts of men, that at the last the Church of the *Palatinate* was in the same condition with the Church of *Israel*, under the reign of *Jeroboam*, when *Priests* were made out of the meanest of the people. And for the Government of the Churches, though moulded to the *Genevian* Plat-form, as near as it might be, yet were those Princes loth to leave too much power in the hands of the *Elderships*; and therefore did appoint some superiour Officers to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inspectors* & *Prepositi*; their power being much the same with that of the particular *Superintendent* amongst the *Lutherans*; and over them a standing *Consistory* consisting of three Ministers, and as many *Councillers of State*, of the Princes nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A temperament for which they were beholding to *Kristian*, a Doctor of *Physick* in the University of *Heidelberg*; who made this *Pill* to purge *Presbytery* of some *Papish* humours, which secretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole modell and Religion of the Country is much changed of late, and the Religion of the Church of *Rome* restored in most parts thereof, since the Conquest of them by the *Spaniards*, and *Bavarians*, which before we spake of.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Moffbach*, a pretty neat town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a *Præfecture* not far from the borders of *Wirtemberg*; 2 *Ladenberg*, near the influx of the same River into the *Rhein*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Ruperts*, the Emperour and *Palatine*, of the Earls of *Hanau*, Anno 1371, the other moiety belonging to the Bishop of *Wormes*. 3 *Winnebene*, a small town not far from *Ladenberg*, belonging once to the Archbishop of *Mentz*; but on some controversy arising about the title, adjudged unto the said *Ruperts*, and his heirs for ever. 4 *Sorleffen*, in the same tract, well seated, but not very large, fold with the Castle of *Siralberg* to the said *Ruperts*, by *Sifride* (or *Sigifride*) of *Siralberg*, the right heir hereof, Anno 1347. 5 *Heidelberg*, on the right shore of the *Neccar* (going down the water) compassed on three sides with Mountains, and lying open only towards the West, which makes the air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief beauty of it lyeth in one long Street, extended in length from East to West; on the South-east side whereof is a fair and pleasant Market-place; and not far off a very high Mountain called *Konningfels* (that is to say, the *Kingly seat*) upon the middle ascent whereof is the *Castle*; where the Princes *Electors* use to keep their Courts; and on the very summit or top thereof, the ruins of an old Tower blown up with Gunpowder. A Town of no great bigness, nor very populous, there being but one Church, in it, which was used in the time of my Author for Prayer and Preaching: the rest being either ruined, or employed unto

Palatinate of the Rhene. unto other uses, if not repaired again, since the Spaniards became masters of it, for more frequent Masses. Howsoever, it hath the reputation of being the chief City of this *Palatinate*; not long since furnished with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books (especially Manuscripts) was thought not to be followed in all Europe, till matched, if not over-matched by the famous Bodleian Library of Oxford: most of them, to the great prejudice of the Protestant cause, being carried to Rome, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by Spaniards, Anno 1620. Finally for the Town it self, it was once part of the possessions of the Bishop of Wormes, from whom it was taken by the Palatines; and it is now famous, for being the seat of the *Palatines*, the sepulchre of Rodolphus Agricola, and for an University founded by the Emperour, and Palatine Rupertus, Anno 1346. 6 Baccharach, on the Banks of Rhene, so called, quasi Baccharach, for the excellent Wines: 7 Coub, on the other side of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Castle called *Psaltis*, from whence the name *Psaltis-grave* or *Psaltis*, seemeth to some to have been derived. 8 Openheim, a strong Town, which together with Keisers-Lautern, and Ingelheim, were given to the Palatines by Wenceslaus: and after seated on them, by Rupertus the Emperour and Palatine, for 100000 Florens, Anno 1402. 9 Crutznacke, called anciently *Stauponesus*, 10 Frankendale, lately a Monastery only, but being well peopled by Hugh of the Netherlands, which to avoid the fury of the Duke of Aves, fled hither, is now a town of principal strength. 11 Gernerheim, and 12 Manheim, a well fortified Town, seated on the confluence of Rhene and Neckar.

On the Eastern part of the Countrey standeth 13 Laden, situate on the little River Tubernus, the furthest bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-east, there adjoining to the rest of *Frankenland*. And on the West side the Towns of 14 Neustadt, 15 Keisers-Lautern, in Latine called *Cæsarea Lutra*, once a Town Imperial; from which, and from its situation on the River Luter, it received this name. 16 Swibruncken, invell'd with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Countrey of *Swiebrock*; the patrimony and title of a younger House of the *Psaltis-graves*, whom the Latine writers call *Principes Bisthami*: the French, the Princes of *Dewsponts*. 17 Simmeron on the North-west points of it, whereto meets with the District of *Triers*; the title of another branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Dukes of *Simmeron*, situate in that part of the Countrey which is called *West-reich*, of which *Zweibruncken* is also part. In all these are contained within the *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince: most of which they have added to their Estate within little more than 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own Estates, so potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in war and peace, and so ingrafted themselves into the most notable Families of Germany, that I may well say with *Trenicus*, *Non est alia Germaniae familia, cui plus debeat nobilitas.*

Within the limits of this Countrey, and intermingled with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Bishopricks of *Spire* and *Worms*: both ancient, and of great Revenue, but feudatories for a great part of their Estates, to these Electors. Of these, more towards the head of the *Rhene*, and on the Gallick side thereof, stands the City of *Spire*, by *Ptolomy* called *Neomagus*, from the newness of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemeturum*, from the *Nemetes*, who possessed this tract; and sometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth still continue. A Town Imperial, and anciently a Bishop's See; *Tessir* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Act of the Council of *Colem*, Anno 347. A neat Town, and very delectably seated. Of great resort, by reason of the Imperial Chamber, the sovereign Court of Judicature of all the Empire; capable of Appeals from the Tribunals of all the Princes and free States thereof. A Court which first followed the Emperour in all his Removes (as anciently the Kings Bench in England) by *Maximilian* the Emperour first made *Sedentary*, and fix'd at *Frankfort*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charles* the fifth. Sufficiently famous in that the name of Protestants was here taken up, given to the Princes and free Cities following the reformed Religion, upon their legal Protestation here exhibited. More down the water, and on the same shore thereof, stands the City of *Wormes*, one of those built upon the *Rhene*, for defence of *Gaul* against the Germans; by *Ptolomy* called *Berbetomagus*; by *Antonine*, *Civitas Wormensis*, whence the modern name, but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones*, the old Inhabitants of those parts, whose chief City it was. A Town Imperial as the former, and a See Episcopal as that is, and as ancient too; *Viktor* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colem*, before mentioned. A Town to be observed for the first appearance which *Luther* made before *Charles* the fifth, (the Imperial Chamber then being holden in this City:) who being dissuaded from that journey by some of his Friends, returned this resolute Answer, That *goe he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town, as there were tiles on the Houses*. Chief Towns belonging to these Bishops, are 1 *Udenheim*, a Town belonging to the Bishop of *Spire*, whose residence it sometimes is: conveniently seated for the command of the Countrey, and therefore upon some design which was then in hand, fortified strongly by the Bishop. But this new Fortification being begun in a time of peace, gave great occasion of distrust to the neighbouring Princes; who interposed with *Frederick* the fifth, then Prince Elector, (of whom held in chief) to cause the Bishop to desist from the finishing of it. Which when he had refused to do, pleading a *Placard* from the Emperour *Matthias*, to compleat the work; the Prince Elector, with the rest of the Confederates, beat it down by force: for this contempt, cited to *Spire* the Imperial Chamber, in which it was also resolved to proceed suddenly, and severely to their condemnation. One of the chief motives which occasioned that unfortunate Prince to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*; and consequently a chief cause of the German Wars. In managing whereof this Town was thought so commodious, that *Marquess Spinola* caused the works to be raised again, made it the strongest hold in all those Countreys, and caused it to be called by the name of *Phillipsberg*. 2 *Rotenberg*, originally belonging to the Bishops of *Spire*, but of late times possessed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of lesser note I forbear to mention.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey on the French side of the *Rhene*, were the *Nemetes*, and *Vangiones* spoken of before; on the other side, the *Intueri*. That on the West side of the River, first conquered by the Romans, and from them by the French; of whose Empire it remained a part, but so that it was subject more immediately to the Earls of *Moselle*, first under the Sovereignty and Vassallage of the Kings of *Metz*, and after of the Kings of *Lorraine*. In the dividing of which Kingdom between the Emperours of Germany and the Kings of France, it became subject to the Empire, but still possessed by those of *Moselle* as it was before. Elcheating to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of Arms, partly by paying down ready Money, and partly too by selling of their voices, as they saw occasion, it was gained by the Electors *Palatine*: and so was also that part of it, which lies on the Dutch side of the *Rhene*, which being anciently and properly a part of the *Frankenland*, followed the Fortunes of that Countrey, till the fall of the House of *Schwaben*, and then divided unto the Emperors as the other did. By little and little got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperours Household (such as the *Maires* of the Palace to the French Kings at the first institution) had first the honour of Counts *Palatine* bestowed upon them; and afterwards the place of an Elector, in the choice of the Emperour. But where their Estates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what Provinces or people they had subject to them; *Nulla inventi scriptura*, I could never find any good Record to build on, saith the learned *Mannker*: their habitation and possession in and of these parts (acquired for the most part by Arms and Money) not being above 450 years standing at the utmost. Likely it is, they had their residence for the most part, in the Emperours Palace, living upon their Rents, (as other great Officers of Court in these later times) the dignity and authority of so great a place seeming sufficient to content them: but called Count *Palatines* of the *Rhene*, because their Jurisdiction and Authority lay most especially in those parts of the Empire, which were towards that River. Afterwards on the marriage of *Otho*, the second of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gertrude*, the Daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*, this Office, with the Electoral dignity, fell into that House: possessed at that time of those parts of *Franconia* and the Earldom of *Moselle*, who not long after on the dividing of that Estate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the Sons of *Ludovicus* the 24. Elector *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*; made up this *Palatinate*. A State which suddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperour and Elector *Palatine*; partly by the weakness and ambition of *Wenceslaus*, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*; and partly by the valour of *Frederick*, the Prince Elector. Of these the first bought in the Towns of *Winheim*, *Ladberg*, *Scrieffen*, and the Castle of *Stralberg*, with their lands and territories. The second gave unto the *Palatines*, for their voices in his election, three strong Towns of the Empire, viz. *Keisers-Lautern*, *Ingelheim*, and *Openheim*: and the last took in *Battell*, Anno 1452. the Earl of *Wirtemberg*, the *Marquess* of *Baden*, the Bishop of *Spire*, and the Archbishop of *Metz*, and ransomed them on what condition he pleased. More particularly the Earl of *Wirtemberg* (for it was not yet erected into a Dukedom) payed for his ransom 100000 Florens. The Bishop of *Meurs* redeemed himself for 45000 Florens. The Bishop of *Spire* gave for his liberty, the Towns of *Kottenberg* and *Wersau*: And the *Marquess* of *Baden* yielded up in lieu of his freedom, the Countrey of *Spanheim*, of which *Crutznack* is a part; the Towns of *Bessen*, and *Binheim*; the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a Town over against *Gernerheim*; and his Royalties between this *Gernerheim* and *Selts*, a Town of *Allsied*, in fishing and hunting. So having brought these Princes unto their Estate; let us next take a view of those who have successively enjoyed both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light Story.

ELECTORS *Palatine* of the RHENE.

A.Ch.

- 1 Henry, Count *Palatine* in the time of *Otho* the third, by whom ordained to be one of the six Electors.
- 2 *Sigefride*, the Son of *Adelheid*, wife of this *Henry* the Elector, by a former husband.
- 3 *Ezeline*, and *Conrade*, Sons of *Sigefride*.
- 4 *Ludolphus*, Son to *Ezeline*.
- 5 *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fifth.
- 6 *Frederick*, Son to *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew to the Emperour *Conrade* the third.
- 7 *Henry* II. surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*.
- 1195 8 *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the Lion, and Husband of *Clementia*, daughter of *Conrade* Duke of *Schwaben*, and Elector *Palatine*.
- 9 *Henry* IV. son of *Henry* the third, in the life of the Father, the last Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperour, the dignity from hence forwards becoming hereditary.
- 10 *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the second, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, Sister and next heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, confirmed therein by the Emperour *Frederick* the second.
- 1269 11 *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, the Son of *Otho*.
- 1294 12 *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, succeeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and Electoral dignity; *Northgoia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his party to make even the scale: his younger Brother *Ludovicus* succeeding in *Bavaria*.

- Palatinate.** 1315 13 *Adolphus*, surnamed the Simple, resigned the Electoral dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter man to undertake it.
- 1327 14 *Rodolphus* II. on the resignation of *Adolphus*.
- 1337 15 *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Rodolphus* the second, Founder of the University of *Heidelberg*, Anno 1346.
- 1385 16 *Rupertus* II. Son of *Adolphus* the Simple.
- 1398 17 *Rupertus* III. elected Emperour in the place of *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1406. made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the fourth.
- 1410 18 *Ludovicus* II. surnamed *Cæcus*, and *Barbatus*, the eldest Son of *Rupertus* the Emperour, married *Blanch*, daughter to King *Henry* the fourth of *England*.
- 1439 19 *Ludovicus* III. Son of *Lewis* the second.
- 1451 20 *Frederick*, brother of *Ludovicus*, during the minority of *Philip* his said Brothers Son, succeeded in the Electoral dignity; and added much to that Estate by his personal virtue.
- 1478 21 *Philip*, the Son of *Lewis* the third, pretended to the Dukedom of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his wife; but, after a long and bloody War, forced to go without it.
- 1508 22 *Ludovicus* IV. Son of *Philip*.
- 1544 23 *Frederick* II. brother of *Lewis* the fourth, who first introduced the Reformed Religion into the Palatinate.
- 1556 24 *Otho-Henry*, Son of *Rupertus*, the brother of *Frederick*, and *Lewis*, the last of the direct line of this House of *Bavaria*.
- 1559 25 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, descended from *Stephen* Palatine of *Zweibruck* or *Bishop*, younger son of the Emperour *Rupert*, succeeded on the decease of *Otho-Henry* without issue.
- 1576 26 *Ludovicus* V. Son of *Frederick* the third, a munificent Benefactor to the University of *Heidelberg*.
- 1583 27 *Frederick* IV. Son of *Lewis* the fifth, married *Ludovica*, or *Loise*, daughter of *William*, and sister of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*.
- 1610 28 *Frederick* V. Son of *Frederick* the 4th, married the Princess *Eliz.* daughter of *James*, King of Great Britain. In danger of being proscribed for demolishing the works of *Idenheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worsted at the battel of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he lost both that, and his own native Estates and Dignities; of which deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperour: the Lower Palatinate being assigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*, the Upper Palatinate, with the Electoral Dignity, bestowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Restored to the possession of the most part of his Countrey, by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*, November 29. 1632. the whole Countrey falling again not long after under the Power and Government of the former Conquerours.
- 1631 29 *Charles Ludowick*, the Heir both of his Fathers Estates, and misfortunes too; nor yet admitted to his Honours (contrary to the fundamental constitutions of the Empire, by which the Sons of the Electors and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Fathers offences;) but in fair hopes to be restored thereto in part, by the *Pacificadus* made at *Almutter* this present year, 1648. which I pray God to prosper for the peace of afflicted Christendom.

Now to proceed to the Civil State, and the concernment of these Princes. The *Palsgravi* hath many Prerogatives above the Electors of either sort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxony* and Marquess of *Brandenburg*; because *Henry* the Palatine, was descended of *Charls* the great: for which cause he is also in the vacancy of the Empire, Governour of the Western parts of *Germany*. In which Office he had power to alienate, or give Offices, to take fealty and homage of the Subjects; and which is most, to sit in the Imperial Courts, and give judgement of the Emperour himself. And look whatsoever shall in the vacancy of the Empire, be by the Palatines enacted, that the new Emperours are bound by Oath to confirm, and ratifie.

The Revenues of these Princes were conceived to be about 100000 l. per annum; nor could they be supposed at less: the Silver Mines about *Amberg* only in the Upper Palatinate, yielding 60000 Crowns a year, and the passage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more; besides the Demeasns Lands, and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (since the Reformation) into their Estate.

The Arms hereof are Diamond, a Lion Topace, Armed and Crowned Ruby.

4. ALSATIA.

ALSATIA or ELSATS, as the Dutch call it, is bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the *Marquisate* of *Baden*, and some parts of *Schwaben*; on the West, with the Mountain *Vange*, or *Vogesus*, which separateth it from *Lorraine*; on the North with the Palatinate; on the South, (where it groweth very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Countrey for the pleasantness and fertility of it, inferior to none in *Germany*: called therefore *Elfsat*, (as some think) *quasi* Edelfsat, that

that is to say, a noble Seat; derived more probably by others from the river *Ill*, the only River of note in all this tract; and called so, *quasi* Ill sat, the seat or situation on the river *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the Lower and Higher, to which the Countrey called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The LOWER ALSATIA is that which bordereth on the Palatinate, so called, because further off from the Mountains, and down the water in respect of the course of the *Rhene*. A Countrey so abundantly fruitful in wine and corn, (with which it furnisheth some parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour Countries) that it is generally called *Germanie nutritrix*, or the nurse of *Germany*; by *Winphelgium*, the Epitome or Abstract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1 *Strasburg*, so called from the multitude of Streets (the Dutch call them *Strats*) anciently *Argentoratus*, and then *Argentina*, from the Roman Exchequer, or Receipt, here kept in the time of their greatness; or from some Mines of silver which were found about it. A stately, rich, and populous City, well stored with public garners and cellars of wine, against times of dearth. Situate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Brusch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*; by which, and by the helps of Art, very strongly fortified: Designed from the first foundation for a Town of War; this being another of the Towns which the Romans built, to defend the *Rhene* against the Germans. Now an Imperial City, and a See Episcopal, the Bishop whereof is Lord of the Lower *Alsacia*. The Church Cathedral, one of the fairest in all *Germany*: much famed for a Clock of most admirable workmanship, and a Steeple of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 foot in height, the highest of any in Christendom; higher (if the measure of it be not mistaken) by 40 foot than the Steeple of *S. Pauls* in *London*, before the firing of it. Of this thus saith the Poet in *Adrianus*,

*Urbs præclara sitis ripis contermina Rheni,
Maxima cui celsæ metantur mania turris.*

Strasburg on *Rhene*s inamell'd banks doth lie,
Whole Tower even bids defiance to the skie.

2 *Zabern*, or *Elfat-Savern*, the Taberna of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old Roman Garrisons; destroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the *Apostata*, then Emperour. Now the chief place of Residence for the Bishops of *Strasburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Justice, kept by his Officers in this City, for the Lower *Alsacia*. 3 *Altrip*, so called from *Alta ripa*, from the high banks of the river, on which it is seated; another of the Towns or Forts, which the Romans like politic conquerors built on the West side of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the incursions of the barbarous Nations. And so was 4 *Seltz*, seated on the *Rhene* betwixt *Strasburg* and *Zabern*; and 5 *Weissemburg* more towards the Palatinate, now a town Imperial, but seated on the river *Lura*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompassed with little hills and delightful groves, the River gently washing the walks thereof, and adding much to it both of strength and beauty. 6 *Hagenau*, between *Seltz* and *Strasburg*, but not so near unto the *Rhene* as either of them: first walled by *Frederick Barbarossa*, Anno 1164. and since that time of great importance for command of the Countrey; but seated in a sandy and unfruitful soil, frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elfsat* for the commodities of hunting. More from the *Rhene*; 7 *Stechfeld*, corruptly so called for *Steffansfeld*, from the Monastery of *S. Stephen* there founded. 8 *Haste* on the *Brusch*, &c.

Places of most importance in the HIGHER ALSATIA, are 1. *Rusach*, on the river *Ombach*, belonging to the Bishops of *Strasburg*, of old called *Rubeacum*, from the red colour of the earth, well built, invironed with a double Suburb. In ancient times of great resort by the Roman nobility, much taken with the fruitfulness and pleasures of it: and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Countrey round about it, by reason of their vigorous proceedings against Thieves; from whence the Germans have a Proverb, that the old gallows at *Rusach* is made of oak. 2 *Ensheim*, or *Ensfheim*, on the river *Ill*, anciently the station of the tenth Legion, and then called *Arancis*; now of most note for the supreme Court of justice there held for *Brissow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alsacia*, by the Archdukes of *Austria* the chief Lords thereof. 3 *Colmar*, an Imperial City, raised out of the ruins of old *Argentaria*, destroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*: well built, and situate almost in the very Navel of *Alsacia*, not above an hours journey from the foot of the Mountains, but in a fruitful and rich soil both for corn and pasture, the Countrey hereabouts being very well watered with the *Louch*, *Duro*, *Fecht*, and *Ill*. 4 *Schleisad*, in the modern *Laine*, *Selestadium*, but by the ancients called *Elcebus*, the station at that time of the 19 Legion; afterwards of great fame, for a Church here built by *Hildegardis* Dutcheis of *Schwaben*, Anno 1044, according to the pattern of the Temple of *Hierusalem*; which in tract of time became the richest Monastery in all these parts. Situate in a very fertile and delightful soil, having the *Rhene* on the one side, and some spurs of the Mountain *Vange*, shadowed with Groves of Chestnuts upon the other: walled in the time of *Frederick* the second, about the year 1216. and on the East defended with impassible fens, 5 *Gebweiler*, and 6 *Watweil*, both seated near the aforesaid Mountains, and both subject to the Abbat of *Murbach*. 7 *Keiserberg*, 8 *Turchein*, two Imperial towns, but not otherwise memorable; as neither are many of the rest, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this small Province of *Elfsat*, (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns begirt with walls, besides Castles, Forts, and Villages, almost innumerable; and amongst them more Free and Imperial Cities, than in any one Province of the Empire, except *Schwaben* only.

The Southern part of *Elfsat* bordering on the Canton of *Basel*, is commonly called by the name of *SUNGOW*, in *Latine* *Sungovia*, and *Sungois*; but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirs*, from *Pfir*, the

Lorraine.

the chief Town of it, and the Dukes seat: the Country very plentiful in corn and wine (as the rest of *Elzass*) affording good store of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Towns hereof, are 1 *Mulhausen* on the River *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Bishops of *Strauburg*, as were also *Kiesberg* and *Colmar*: but being taken in by *Rodolph of Habsburg*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made *Imperial*; and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2 *Belfort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirtz*, in which lie buried 15 Earls, and as many Countesses. 3 *Mase-mufter*, so called from a *Monastery* of *Nuns* there founded by *Maso*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4 *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Cattle of *Eugenberg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty hill. 5 *Norf-munster*, so named of an ancient *Monastery* there founded by the Earls of *Pfirtz*; most of them great builders of Religious houses. 6 *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Ill*. 7 *Pfirtz* it self, seated on the *Ill*, not far from *Altkirk*, in a Country heretofore over-grown with Woods and Forrefts, whence it had the name. Called by the *French* de la *Pais de Ferrette*, (corruptly for le *Pais de Forrest*) by the *Dutch* moulded into *Pfirtz*: by which name (of the County of *Ferrette*) it is called by *Philip de Comins*, and other *French* writers; and by that name pawned by *Sigismund* the Archduke, to *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, made by that means too near a neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Westward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundy*, lieth the Town and Earldom of *MONTBELGARD*. (*Montis Belgardium* in the *Latine*) united by the marriage of *Henrica*, daughter and heir of *Henry* the first Earl hereof, Anno 1396. to the house of *Wirtenberg*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1 *Clarewang*. 2 *Passewang*. 3 *Grans*, all anciently beautified with Castles, and 4 *Montbelgard*, a Town of great strength, proud of a Castle Royal on the top of a fair and lofty Mountain, whence it took that name, once the seat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the house of *Wirtenberg*; but now both Town and Cattle in the power of the *French*, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorraine*, caused a good Garrison of their own to be put into them, Anno 1633. under pretence of keeping them for the Children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtenberg*, to whom the Inheritance belonged.

The ancient Inhabitants of this tract were the *Tribochi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; first conquered by the *Romans*, then subdued by the *Almaines*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*: in the full of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German Empire*. Governed for the Emperours by *Provincial Earls*, in the *Dutch* language called *Landgraves*: at first officious only, and accountable to the Emperors: under whom they served; in the end made hereditary, and successional unto their posterities. The first hereditary Landgrave said to be *Theodorick* in the reign of *Otho* the third; after whose death the Empire being made elective, gave the *Provincial Governors* some opportunities to provide for themselves. In his male-issue it continued till the reign of *Frederick* the 2d, who began his Empire Anno 1212. and dyed Anno 1250. during which interval this Estate was conveyed by daughters to *Albert*, the 2d. Earl of *Habsburg*, *Albert Earl of Hohenburg*, and *Lewis Earl of Ottingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, son of this *Albert* afterwards Emperor of the *Germans*, marrying with *Anne* the daughter of the Earl of *Hohenloe*, became possessed also of his part of the Countrie: which added to his own, made up the whole *Upper Elzass*; continued since that time in possession of the house of *Austria*, descended from him. The third part comprehending all the *Lower Alsasia*, was not long after sold by the Earl of *Otingen*, to the Bishop of *Strauburg*; whose Successors hold it to this day, assuming to themselves the title of the *Landgraves of Elzass*. But as for *Sungow*, or the County of *Pfirtz*, that belonged anciently to the Princes of the house of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illustrious Familie, by the death of *Conradine*, the last Duke. Anno 1268. that great estate being scattered into many hands, it was made a distinct Earldom of it self. And so it continued till the year 1324. when *Ulrick* the last Earl dying without issue male, left his estate betwixt two daughters: whereof the one named *Anne*, conveyed her part in marriage to *Albert Duke of Austria*, surnamed the *Short*, Grandchild of *Rodolphus* the Emperor before mentioned; the other named *Ursula*, sold her moiety to the said *Albert* for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been always in the possession of the Dukes of *Austria* (save only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alsasia*, to the Duke of *Burgundie*) governed in *Civil* matters and points of Judicature, by the Parliament, or Court of *Enheim* in the *Upper Elzass*.

S. LORREIN.

THE Dukedom of *LORREIN* is bounded on the East with *Elzass*, and that part of the *Lower Palatinate*, which passeth by the name of *West-reich*; on the West, with the River *Muse* or *Mais*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Duke hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North, with *Luxembourg*, and the Land of *Triers*; and on the South, with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Province of *Elzass*, parted by the *Vogesus* or *Vangs*, wherewith encompassed on those sides. Assigned unto *Lotharius*, second son of *Lotharius* the Emperor, (who was eldest Son of *Lewis the Godly*) with the title of a Kingdom: from thence called *Lot-reich*, by the *Dutch*, *Lot-reigne* by the *French*; from which the modern name of *Lorraine*, and the *Latine*, *Lotharingia*, are to fetch their Pedegree.

The Country is in length about four daies journey, almost three in breadth: much over-grown with Forrefts, and swelled with Mountains, the spurs and branches of *Vogesus*, and the once vast Wilderness of *Ardenne*; yet so sufficiently stored with all manner of necessaries, that it needeth no supply out of other places. Some lakes it hath, which yield great quantity of fish; one more especially 14 miles in compass; the Fish whereof yields to the Dukes coffers 20000 *l.* yearly.

Lorraine.

It affordeth also divers metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in some places Pearls: *Calbidonians* also of such bigness, that whole drinking cups are made of them; and a matter, of which they make the purest glasses not to be paralleled in *Europe*. They have also a goodly breed of Horses, equal to those of *Barbary*, or the Couriers of *Naples*.

The people, by reason of their neighbourhood to, and commerce with *France*, strive much to imitate the *French* in garb and fashion; but one may easily see that it is not natural: and have much in them also of the *Dutch* humour of drinking; but far more moderately than the *Dutch* themselves. Generally they are a politic and an hardy Nation; not otherwise able to have held their estate so long against the *French* Kings, and the Princes of the house of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppressed with taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and useful unto one another. Their language for the most part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxembourg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times: not so refined and elegant, as is spoke in *France*, nor so corrupt and coarse as that of *Montbelgard*, and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in respect of the *French* language spoken here among them, account this Country among the Provinces of *France*; and usually describe it so in their Charts and writings: but I have placed it with more reason (as I conceive) amongst those of *Germany*. First, in regard that the Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire: but specially because that in the division of the Kingdom of *Lorraine* betwixt the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, whatsoever lay on the East side of the River *Muse*, (as this Dukedom of *Lorraine* for the most part doth) was reckoned in the share or portion of the *German Emperors*.

The Rivers of chief note, are 1. *Marte*, or the *Meuse*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and passing with a swift stream by the walls of *Nancie*, glides along fairly for a good space within sight of the *Moselle*; into which at last it falls near *Conde*. 2. *Mosa*, the *Muse* or *Mais*, whose spring and course hath been already described in *Belgium*. 3. *Moselle*, famous for the design which *Lucius Verus*, Governor for the Emperor *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it riseth in the mountain *Vange*, not far from the head of the River *Saône*, and disburtheneth it self into the *Rhene* at *Confluentz*; he intended to have cut a deep channel from the head of this unto the other, so to have made a passage from the Ocean to the *Mediterranean*: the *Saône* emptying it self into the *Rhose*, a chief River of *France*; as the *Moselle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4. *Selle*, which minglith waters with the *Moselle* not far from *Metz*. 5. *Saria*. 6. *Martane*. 7. *Voloy*, others of less note; all of them plentiful of *Salmons*, *Perches*, *Tenches*, and the best sorts of fish: as in their Lakes great store of *Carps*, some of them three foot long, and of excellent taste.

Principal Cities in it, are 1. *Metz*; by *Ptolomy* called *Divodurum*; *Metis*, and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrices* who possessed this tract. Seated in a pleasant plain at the confluence of the *Sore* and *Moselle*: the Royal Sea, in former times, of the *French* Kings of *Austrasia*, hence called Kings of *Metz*; long before that a Bishops See, as it still continueth. 2. *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Ptolomy*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, so called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it and the tract about it: pleasantly seated on the *Moselle*, and anciently honoured with a See Episcopall. 3. *Verdun*, an ancient Episcopall See also, the *Civitas Verodunensium* of *Antoninus*, seated on the *Muse* or *Mais*: the Town and Territory adjoining in preceding times belonging to the Great Princes of the house of *Ardenne*, at and before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorraine*; but whether they had it in right of their Patrimonial Estate, as lying in the North part of this Country towards *Luxembourg* as it well might; or that it came to them in the right of marriage with some daughter of the house of *Moselle*, or other heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howsoever it came to them, it gave unto this house the title of Earls of *Verdun*, used in their stile, till swallowed with the rest in that of *Lorraine*. The Bishop whereof, as also those of *Metz* and *Toul* (being the only ones of this Country of *Lorraine*) acknowledge the Archbishops of *Triers* for their Metropolitan. All of them in the number (heretofore) of *Imperial Cities*, possessed of large and goodly territories, and of great revenue: but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the 2d, Anno 1552. during the wars between *Charles* the fifth and the *Protestant* Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them against the Emperor. And though *Charles* tried all ways to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and desperate siege against the City of *Metz*: yet was the Town so gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guise*, that he was fain to raise his siege, and go off with dishonour. Since that, they have been always under the subjection of *France*; a Parliament being erected at *Metz* for the ease of the people, as in other P.vinces of that Kingdom.

Of such Towns as immediately belong to the Duke of *Lorraine*, the principal are *Nancie*, not great; but of a pleasant and commodious site: well watered by the river *Meuse* or *Marte*; and fortified better than before, in the year 1587. on occasion of a great Army of the *Germans* passing into *France* to aid the *Protestants*: most commonly the Dukes seat, and famous for the discomfiture with *Charles Duke of Burgundy* here suffered, with the loss of his life. 2. *S. Nicolas*, a Town so populous, well seated, and neatly built; that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedence unto *Nancie* it self, so called from a Church here built to the honour of *S. Nicholas*, Bishop of *Myra* in the lesser *Asia*, whose body they pretend to be buried here, or at least some part or Relick of it to be here inshrined, occasioning a great resort of Pilgrims and other People. 3. *Pont a Mousson*, about 4 leagues from *Nancie*: so called from a bridge on the River *Mousson*, upon which it standeth; of especial note for a small University lately founded in it; and for giving the title of a Marquess to the eldest son of the Dukes of *Lorraine*, called commonly and contractedly *Marquess du Pont*, *Marchio Montissimo Pontis*, by our

Lorraine.

Modern Latinists. 4. *Vancoleur*, the birth-place of *Joan the Virgin*, to whose miracles and valour, the French attribute the delivery of their Country from the power of the English: But being at last taken prisoner, she was by the Duke of Bedford, then Regent of France, condemned and burned for a Witch. Of which crime I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwise conceive of her and her brave exploits, than of a lusty lass of Lorraine, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of Dunnois, commonly called the Bastard of Orleans; and so presented to Charles the seventh, French King, as if sent immediately from Heaven. A project carried on of purpose (as the most intelligent of the French writers say) pour faire venir la couronne aux Francois, to revive the drooping spirits of the beaten French, nor to be raised again but by help of a miracle. Upon the sight of her Statues on the bridge of Orleans, a friend of mine did adventure on a Copy of verses in her commendation; too long to be inserted here, but they ended thus.

She did a Virgin; 'Twas because the earth
Bred not a man whose valour and whose birth
Might merit such a blessing. But above
The Gods provided her an equal Love,
And gave her to Saint Denys. She with him
Protects the Lillies, and their Diadem.
You then about whose Armies she doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her match.
And when in field your standards you advance,
Cry loud, Saint Denys and Saint Joan for France.

Next these we have, 5. *Vandemont*, which gave the title of an Earl to a younger branch of the house of Ardenne, succeeding at the last in the Dukedom of Lorraine, in person of Duke Rhene 2d. and since a Title of the younger son of the Dukes hereof. 6. *Neuf-Chateau*, on the edge of the Country towards Barrois. 7. *Amanes*, seven leagues on the South of Metz, sometimes the Chancery of Lorraine. 8. *Riches Courtes*, near the Lake called Garde-lake, out of which floweth a River which runs into the Moselle. 9. *La Mothe*, seated on a River which falls presently into the Moselle. 10. *Charmes*, seated on the Moselle, the place of treaty between the Duke of Lorraine, and the Cardinal Richelieu; the result whereof was the surrender of the Town of Nancy, and by consequence of all the Dukedom into the hands of the French, Septemb. 1633. 11. *Stenay*, in the extrem North of all this Country, a well fortified Town, and of great consequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedom of Lorraine, or wrested from the Sovereignty of Sedan, upon which it bordereth (as *Jamais* near unto it was) I have no where found. Of less note there are, 1. *Saint Die*, 2. *Saint Hippolit*, 3. *Bouquenon*, and 4. *Saverden*; the first Towns of this Dukedom taken by the Swedes, Anno 1633. in the war against Lorraine. 5. *Saint Miel*, 6. *Oden Chateau*, 7. *Mirecourt*, all taken the same year by the French, in the prosecution of that war, before the treaty, at *Charmes*. 8. *Romberville*, 9. *Espinay*, 10. *Gerberville*, &c.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Mediomatrici*, and the *Leuci* (spoken of before; together with the *Vivandoneses*, all of them conquered by the Romans: under whom this Country and the District of *Triers*, made up the whole Province of *Belgica Prima*. From them being taken by the French, with the rest of *Gaul*, it was made a Kingdom; the Provinces of *Germania Prima & Secunda*, (containing all the parts of Germany before described, and so much of the Netherlands, as lie on the West side of the Rhine) being added to it: called first, from the Eastern situation, by the name of *Oststroica*, or *Austrasia*; the portion of *Theoderick*, the fourth son of *Clovis*, the first Christian King of the French; from the chief City of his Kingdom, called the King of Metz, whose successors follow in this order.

THE KINGS of AUSTRASIA, or METS.

- 514 1 *Theoderick*, the base son of *Clovis* the Great, vanquished the *Turingians*, and extended his Kingdom as far as *Hassia* and *Turingia*, as we call them now.
- 537 2 *Theodebert*, the son of *Theoderick*, repulsed the Danes infesting the Coasts of the Lower Germany; and added *Provence*, (taken from the *Goths* of Italy) unto his Estates.
- 548 3 *Theobaldus*, the son of *Theodebert*, subdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Country to his own Dominions.
- 555 4 *Clotaire*, King of *Soissons*, the youngest son of *Clovis* the Great, succeeded *Theobald* in this Kingdom; as afterwards his brother *Childbert* in the Realm of France, Anno 560. uniting in his person the whole French Dominion.
- 565 5 *Sigebert*, the son of *Clotaire*, vanquished the *Hunnas*, then falling into his Estates: killed in his Tent by the practices of *Fredegond*, the wife of *Chilperick* King of France.
- 577 6 *Childbert*, the son of *Sigebert*, successor to his Uncle *Guntan* in the Realm of Orleans.
- 598 7 *Theodebert* the II. the son of *Childbert*, vanquished and outed of his Kingdom by *Lothaire* the second of France, from whose eldest son *Sigebert*, descended the illustrious Family of the Earls of *Habsburg*.
- 617 8 *Clotaire II.* King of France, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Austrasia*, and his brother *Theoderick*, King of *Orleans*, the sole King of the French.

9. *Dagobert*,

Lorraine.

- 9 *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Major Austrasia*, whom he succeeded, at his death, in the Realm of France.
- 645 10 *Sigebert II.* the eldest son of *Dagobert*, made choice of this Kingdom, for his part of the whole French Empire; therein preferring it to *West-France*, or *France* it self, which he left to *Clovis* the 2d. his younger brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience, and subdued the *Slaves*.
- 656 11 *Childbert II.* son of *Grimoaldus*, Mayre of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Mets*; *Dagobert* the Son of *Sigebert* being thorn a Monk, and sent into Scotland.
- 12 *Clovis* the 2d. King of the French, having vanquished and beheaded *Grimoald*, dispossessed *Childbert* of the Kingdom which he took to himself.
- 662 13 *Childerick*, the 2d. son of *Clovis*, after the death of *Clotaire* his elder brother, succeeding in the Kingdom of France, united all the French Dominions into one Estate. In which condition it remained (but with some enlargement of the bounds) till the partition made by and amongst the Children of *Lewis* the Godly; the name of *Austrasia*, or *East France*, being extended by *Charles* the Great, over all *Pannonia*; and so much of *Germanie* as was under the command of the French. In which division, *Lewis* the 2d. son, surnamed the *Antient*, being invested in the Kingdom of *Germanie*; or so much of *East-France*, or *Austrasia*, as lay on the East-side of the Rhine: *Lotharius* the eldest son had for his share, the title of Emperor, and therewith Italy, *Provence*, *Burgundy*, and so much of *Austrasia*, or *East-France*, as lay on the French side of the River. Afterwards subdivided into three Estates; Italy, with the title of *Roman Emperor*, being given to *Lewis* the eldest son; to *Charles* the youngest, *Provence*, with the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and to *Lothaire* the second son, *Austrasia* on this side of the Rhine, from hence called *Lot-reich*, *Lot-reigne*, and *Lotharingia*, as before was said. But *Lothaire* dying without issue, the Kingdom of Lorraine, containing all the Netherlands, (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of Germany before described, became divided betwixt *Charles* the Bald, Emp. and K. of France, and *Lewis* surnamed the *Antient*, K. of Germany, the one calling himself K. of Lorraine on that side, the other K. of Lorraine on this side of the *Maas*, the river *Maas* or *Aduse* parting their possessions. But this Partition held not long amongst their successors; For *Lewis* and *Caroloman* King of France (the sons of *Ludovicus Balbus*) resigning their part hereof to *Charles* the *Grosse*, Emp. of the Romans, and K. of Germany, the said *Charles*, *Arnulph*, *Lewis*, and *Conrade*, successively Emperors of the Romans, and Kings of Germany, (together with *Zwentobald* the Bastard son of *Arnulph* interloping in the very middle of them) enjoyed it wholly to themselves. And so did also *Charles* the Simple, King of France, on the death of *Conrade*, till forced thereto by *Henry* the first (who succeeded *Conrade* in the Empire and Kingdom of Germany) he gave way to the old partition spoken of before: the Germans after that encroaching more and more on that part hereof which of right belonged unto the French, till in the end (after much vicissitude and interchangeableness of affairs) both Princes laid aside the title of Kings of Lorraine, incorporating so much as they held hereof into the rest of their Estates: *Otho* the third of Germany, and *Lewis* the fifth of France, being the last that pleased themselves with that broken title. In the mean time, this Countrey of Lorraine it self, as it is now bounded, together with the Countrey of *Luickland*, a great part of *Brabant*, some parts of the Land of *Triers*, *Colen*, and as some say the Countrey of *Gulick* also, (but in this of *Gulick* I demur, as before was said) being taken out of it, were by *Otho* the second made a Dukedom, Anno 981. and by him given with the title of Duke of Lorraine, to *Charles* of France, son of *Gerborge* his Aunt, by *Lewis* the 4th. of France surnamed *Transmarinus* son of *Charles* the Simple. *Charles* thus advanced by his Cousin, and forgetting that he had been made Duke of *Brabant* not long before by *Lothaire* the French King, his brother, shewed himself so alienated from the French, and wedded to the Germans: that the French, after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the fifth (whose next Heir he was) rejected him, and accepted *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Otho* the son of this *Charles*, dying without issue, left his estate to *Geoffrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bouillon*, and *Verdun*, his near kinsman by the mothers side: from whom the present Dukes of Lorraine do derive themselves. From *Hermingrade* one of the daughters of this *Charles*, married to *Albert* (some call him *Charles*, and others *Godfrey*) Earl of *Namur*, by *Alice* their daughter, married to *Baldwin* the 5. of *Hainault*, descended *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, the Father of the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainault*, wife of *Philip* the 2d. King of France, thereby uniting the blood of *Pepin* and *Hugh Capet* to the great content of *Lewis* the 9th. her Nephew: of whom it is said, that being a man of a tender conscience, he never joyed in the Crown of France, till it was proved that he was lineally descended by his Grandmother, from *Charles* of Lorraine, whom *Hugh Capet* had so unjustly dispossessed. But to return again to the Dukes of Lorraine, I find not any great improvement made of the Estate by any of them, more than the accession of the remaining Patrimony of the Earls of *Ardenne*, in the person of *Godfrey*, or *Geoffrey*, the third Duke hereof: and the adding of the Duchy of *Barr*, in France, by *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*; but on the contrary, a great weakening and distraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luickland* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* being sold unto the Bishops of *Liege*, by *Godfrey*, surnamed of *Bouillon*, after King of *Hierusalem*; *Brabant* torn from it by *Geoffrey* Earl of *Lovain* in the time of *Baldwin*, brother of *Geoffrey*; and *Gulickland*, by *Enstace* the brother of *Baldwin*; the Bishops of *Triers* not being negligent all this while, of the opportunity. Besides which, somewhat had been done by the Emperor *Otho* the 3d. to the diminution of this Estate, who seeing that *Otho* the second Duke, son of *Charles* of France, had no issue male, and thinking this estate to be great enough without those additions, and some other pieces on the Rhene by him restored unto the Empire. The rest of this Estate confer'd on *Geoffrey* of *Ardenne*, and not without good reason neither: it being probable enough that as it was first given by *Otho* the

Suevia.

hallow any thing: and 3. Stripping him of his Prietly habit, he is clothed in a lay attire, and to delivered over to the *Secular Magistrate*. But to return again to the City of *Constance*, being proscribed by *Charles* the fifth for refusing the *Interim*, and not able to withstand such Forces as were raised against them; they put themselves under the Protection of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the *Frying-pan into the fire*, as the saying is: For *Ferdinand* being possessed of the Town, seized on the common Treasury, and upon all Records and writings which belonged unto them; set out an Edict, that all the *Ministers*, within eight days, should depart the City, and that no Citizen from thenceforth should wear any weapon. And so instead of a *Protector*, he became their *Master*.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria*, which is called the *ALGOW*, are 1. *Buchau*, on the lake called *Feder-see*, a Town Imperial. 2. *Ravensburg*, a Free City, seated amongst mountains, whereof one hangeth over it the River *Ach* running by it in a bed so narrow, that not able to receive the waters, which fall down from the hills, it much endamageth all the Country by frequent Land-floods. 3. *Woenen* (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) Imperial also. 4. *Kempten*, the *Campidunum* of *Strabo*: and 5. *Mimmigen*, the *Drusomagus* of *Strabo*, both Imperial Cities; the last about 3 miles in circuit, populous, rich, and very well traded. 6. *Pfullendorf*. 7. *Zenkirk*. 8. *Bibrach*; all three Imperial; the last supposed to be the *Brigodunum* of the Antients. 9. *Ausburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, first made a Roman Colony by *Augustus Caesar*, and by him called *Augusta Vindelicorum*. The principal City in those times of *Vindelici*, a potent people of this tract. A City of great wealth and state, containing about 9 miles in circuit, and very strongly fortified; by nature on the East and North, where the ground lies low, and under water; and on the West and South by Art. The buildings for three parts of it, are of clay and timber; but on the West part seated on a hill, built of *Free-stone*, six or seven stories high; in which are many fair houses of the principal Citizens, and many stately Palaces; which belong to the *Fuggassa* family of very great (almost Princely) Revenues; possessed of many goodly dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoining Territories. Who though they have of late obtained the honour of Barons, in regard of their wealth; still keep themselves (contrary to the custom of *Germany*, where traffick is counted a disgrace to a Noble man) to the trade of *Merchandize*. The publick Edifices of it very decent, especially the Cathedral Church, a Majestic building; the other Churches, ten in number; and the Religious houses, correspondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worshipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulness of the soil) the City gives a *sheaf of corn* for the Armes thereof. Since their conversion unto Christianity made a Bishops See, Destroyed by *Attila* and his *Hunnes*, it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly; at last made Imperial, and the Mistress of a large territory as most Cities of *Germanie*. Famous for the confession of faith, exhibited in this place to *Charles* the 5th. by the Protestant Princes, hence called *Confessio Augustana*, Anno 1530. 2. For the *Interim*, or mixt form of Doctrine, containing some points of Protestantism, but most of Popery, here tendered to both parties by the said Emperor (but received by neither) to be subscribed to, and observed, till the differences could be settled by a General Council. And 3. for the publick allowance here given by Decree of all the States of the Empire, to the Protestant party, to profess openly their Religion without any impeachment, Anno 1555. A Limitation only laid on the Ecclesiasticks, that if they changed their Religion, they should lose their preterments; which were to be bestowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*.

In the third part hereof called *BRISGOW*, lying on the East of the River *Rhene*, and the West of *Wirtenburg*, and on the South closed in with the Canton of *Basil*; Places of most importance are, 1. *Friburg*, upon the *Triesse*, and other streams descending from the mountains of *Swartzen-wald*, under which it lyeth: founded by *Berchthold* the third, Earl or Duke of *Züringen* (the Castle of *Züringen* founded by *Berthold* the first, son of *Gebizo*, the youngest son of *Gunnram*, the 2d. Earl of *Habsburg*, once the chief seat of those Princes, being then near adjoining to it) in the reign of *Henry* the fifth Emperor, Anno 1112. or thereabouts. Famous in those days for silver mines, now for an University here established, Anno 1459. and being in present estimation the chief of the Country, of which more anon. 2. *Offenbach*, 3. *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kintzich*, and both Towns Imperial: the first so named from *Offa* an *Englisch Saxon*, the Apostle of these parts of *Germanie*. 4. *Hockberg*, which gives the title of a Marquess to the Marquess of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5. *Zel*, once Imperial, but of late times belonging, as doth also 6. *Badenweiler*, to the Marquess of *Baden*, this last accruing to them by the marriage of *Rudolphus* the sixth of that name, Marquess of *Hockberg*, with a sister of *John* Earl of *Friburg*, the then Lord thereof. 7. *Waldshut* upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold, and mountainous Country, but well stored with woods. 8. *Brisach*, by *Antoine* called *Mons Brisacensis*, a garrison in his time against the incroaching *Almans*; and situate at that time on the French side of the *Rhene*, the course of the River being since turned on the other side, where now it runneth. Built Castle wise on the top of a round hill, in which there is also a strong Tower or Fortresse, raised by *Berchthold* the third, for defence of the place; otherwise strong enough by its own natural situation. And might be made impregnable, but for want of water, which is all drawn from one deep well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene*, which runs underneath it. The Town fair, populous, and well built, once of most note in all the Country, from hence called *Brisac-gow*, or *Bris-gow*; but after the building of *Friburg* by *Berchthold* the 4th. it grew by little and little to be less frequented; the other being seated more conveniently for trade and business. Here also not far off from the Castle of *Züringen*, stood that of *Kiburg*, somewhat the antienter of the two; of such authority and repute in those elder times, that the Emperours do still retain the title of Earls of *Kiburg*, in the Stile Imperial; descended on the house of *Habsburg* by the marriage of

Eliza

Suevia.

Elizabeth, daughter and heir of *Hartman* the last Earl hereof, to *Eberhard* of *Habsburg*, Cousin German to the Emperor *Rodolph*, on the expiring of which line, Anno 1356. it fell, together with many fair Estates, among the *Switzers*, to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, surnamed the *Short*.

Finally, in the fourth and last part hereof called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, because on the North-side of the *Danow*, the places most observable are 1. *Gmund*, on the *Rheims*; 2. *Dinkel Spuel*, on the *Warnitz*; two Imperial Towns; which with *Überlingen* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in building, territory, or estimation) spoken of before, are the only three Imperial Cities in all *Germany*, which totally adhered unto the Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3. *Böpingen*, on the *Egra*, an Imperial City. 4. *Norlinger*, on the same River, but in a low and moorish ground, yet of great resort, populous and well traded. Most memorable for the defeat here given the *Swedes*, by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperor, at his first entrance on the Government: in which, *Bannier*, one of the principal commanders of that nation, was slain on the place; *Gustavus Horn*, another of as great eminence, taken Prisoner, their whole Forces routed; and thereupon so strange an alteration of the affairs of *Germany*, which they had almost wholly conquered (though not for themselves;) that the *Palatinate*, not long before restored to its proper owner, was again possessed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankland* by the *Imperialists*, and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their holds, on the *Baltick* seas, Anno 1637. 6. *Rotweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an Imperial City, and a Confederacy of the *Switzers*. 7. *Donawerds*, seated on the confluence of the *Danow* and the *Werdt*, whence it had the name; most commonly called only *Werdt*, an Imperial Town: the habitation of *John de Werdt*, once a *Brewer* herein, but afterwards a chief Commander of the Forces of the Duke of *Bavaria*, in the late German wars. 8. *Villingen*, on the *Bregen*, a small River falling into the *Danow*; a Town belonging to the Princes of the house of *Austria*. Not far from which stands 9. *Furstenburg*, an ancient Castle, the Earls hereof are Princes of the Empire, and Lords of a great part of the Country; descended lineally from *Eginow*, or *Eggon*, the youngest son of the Lady *Judith*, sister and heir of *Berthold* the fifth, the last Duke of *Züringen*, and consequently a branch of the illustrious house of *Habsburg*, exceedingly increased both in power and patrimony, by the marriage of *Frederick* Earl hereof (in the time of *Charles* the fifth, under whom he served in his wars against the Protestants) with *Anne* the daughter and heir of *Christopher* the last Earl of *Werdenberg*, possessed of many fair estates amongst the *Zwitzers*, and the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*. In a Village of this Earl called *Don-Eschingen* is the head of *Danubius*. 10. *Ulme*, an Imperial City, situate on the meeting of the *Blave*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*; the principal City of *North-Schwaben*: about six miles in compass, rich, populous, well fortified; and stored with an Armory, for Ordinance and all manner of Ammunition, not inferior to any in *Germany*. The Town but new, taking its first rise from a Monastery here founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulme* from the *Elmes* about it. At first it belonged unto the *Monks*; of whom having bought their freedom in the time of *Frederick* the third, it became Imperial. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having so violent a stream that the Boats which go down the water use to be sold at the place where they land; it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence on the banks of the *Danow* lie the *Suevian Alps*, and amongst them, the old Castle of *Hohenberg*; the Lord whereof, on the ruine of the house of *Schwaben*, became possessed of a great estate here, and in *Upper Elsass*; sold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, the founder of the now *Austrian* Family.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brixantes*, *Suanetes*, *Rugusii*, and *Calucones*, who together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other tribes of the *Rhetti*, (of whom somewhat hath been said before in the *Alpine* Provinces) possessed themselves of that Country which lyeth betwixt the River *Ino*, and the head of the *Rhene*, east and west; *Danubius*, and the *Alps* of *Italy*, north and south. Within which compass are the greatest part of the *Grisons*, the Dukedoms of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, on this side the *Danow*, and part of the County of *Tirol*; and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius Nero*, sons-in-law of *Augustus*, it was made a province of the *Romans*: divided into *Rhetia Prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lycus*; and *Rhetia Secunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck* and the River *Inn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which account all *Schwaben* on the South side of the *Danow*, was part of the Province of *Rhetia Prima*, continuing so till vanquished, and subdued by the *Almans*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Western parts. As for the *Almans* who succeeded in possession hereof, they were originally some tribes and families of the *Suevi*, the most warlike nation of the *Germani*, inhabiting upon the Banks of the River of *Albis*: who jealous of *Cæsars* great successes, brought against him 430000 fighting men; of which 80000 were slain, and many drowned. They used to stay at home, and go to the war by turns: they which staid at home, tilling the Land; to whom the rest returning, brought the spoil of the Enemies. But after this blow, we hear little of them, till the time of *Caracalla*, the son of *Severus*; During whose reign, descending towards the banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other nations as they passed along; they assumed first the name of *Almans*; either from that promiscuous mixture of all sorts of men; or (as I rather think) from *Mannus* the son of *Tuisco*, one of the great and national Gods of the *Germani*. And though well beaten by him at their first coming down, near the River *Mannus*; and afterwards more broken by *Dioclesian*, who slew at least 60000 of them at one time; in *Gaul*; yet never left they to infect the Provinces of the Empire, which lay nearest to them: till in the end, following the tract of the *Hunns*, who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garrisons which were in their way; they made themselves Masters of *Rhetia Prima*, *Germania Prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing besides the Countries spoken of before, *Alsatia*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate*.

23

Suevia.

as lies on the French side of the Rhene. But quarrelling with the French their next neighbours (of whose growth and greatness they began to be very sensible) they were first vanquished by Clovis the first Christian King of the French, in that great and memorable fight at Zulpf, near Colen: and afterwards made wholly subject to the Conqueror, by whom oppressed with an heavy and lasting servitude: About this same they returned again to their old name of Suevians; their citate being erected into a Dukedome, called many times the Dukedome of Almain: and when so called, divided into the Upper Almain, comprehending the Country of the Grisons, with some parts of Switzerland, and Tirol; and the Lower or the Proper Almain, which contained the rest of the Estates of the ancient Almans, called for the most part by the name of the Dukedome of Suevia or Schwaben, and finally transmitted that name to this Province only, the best part thereof. These Dukes at first officary only, removeable at the will of the Emperor, and accountable to him: nor seldome many at one time, especially whilst under the command of the French; some of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower Almain. So that there is no great certainty of their succession nor much care to be taken in searching after it; though otherwise men of great Authority and Command in their several times. The most remarkable amongst them was Rudolph, Earl of Reinsfelden, and Duke of Schwaben, (descended from the Earls of Habsburg) in the reign of Henry the fourth; against whom he was chosen Emperor, by the practice and procurement of Pope Hildebrand: but overcome and wounded at the battle of Effer, he died not long after of his wounds, with great repentance for rebelling against his Sovereign. After his death, some Provinces being dismembred from it, and other lesser Estates first erected out of it: it was made Hereditary in the person of Frederick, Baron of Hohenstauffen, surnamed the Antient, by the munificence and bounty of the said Henry the fourth, whose daughter Agnes he had married. His successors follow in this order.

The DUKES of SCHWABEN.

- 1 Frederick the antient, the first Hereditary Duke of Schwaben.
- 2 Frederick with one eye, son of Frederick the Antient.
- 3 Frederick III. surnamed Barbarossa, son of Frederick with one eye, Duke of Schwaben, and Emperor; he succeeded the Emperor Henry the fifth, in the Dukedome of Franconia; and left the same unto his successors.
- 1190 4 Frederick IV. second son of Barbarossa; his elder brother Henry succeeding in the Empire, by the name of Henry the sixth.
- 5 Conrad, brother of Frederick the fourth.
- 6 Philip, brother of Conrad; after the death of Henry the 6th. elected Emperor.
- 1207 7 Frederick V. son of Henry the sixth; elected Emperor by the name of Frederick the second; King of Naples and Sicily also in the right of his mother.
- 1250 8 Conrad II. son of Frederick the fifth, King of both Sicily, and Emperor of Germany, after the death of his Father; poisoned, as was supposed, by his base brother Manfred, who succeeded in his Kingdom of Sicily.
- 1254 9 Conradine, the son of Conrad; pursuing his right unto the Kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, was overcome and taken prisoner by Charles of Anjou, successor unto Manfred in those Estates; and by his command beheaded at Naples, Anno 1268. After whose death (being the last of that powerful and Imperial Family:) this vast Estate was brought unto a second dismembering, and divided amongst the Bishops, Princes, and Free Cities hereof: of which last there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedome, than in all Germany besides. So that beholding it in the first and second dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Estates (besides what belongeth to the Cities and Episcopal Sees) to have been raised out of the ruins of this great Dukedom: that is to say, the Dukedomes of Zeringen and Wirtenberg, with the Marquissate of Baden, dismembred from it, when conferred on Frederick of Hohenstauffen; the Earldoms of Pfirt, Hohenberg, and Friburg, (besides a great improvement of the Earldom of Habsburg) advanced out of the second ruine. How Pfirt and Hohenberg were united to the house of Austria, hath been shewn already: and what becomes of Wirtenberg and Baden, shall be shewn hereafter. Here it is only to be noted, that the Family of Zeringen possessed of almost all Brisgow, and great part of Switzerland, owe their Original to Berthold, the son of Gebizo, a younger son of Guntram the 2d. Earl of Habsburg. Which being extinguished after a succession of seven Princes only, in the person of Berthold the fifth (who died the same day in which the Emperor Rodolph of Habsburg was born) Anno 1218. the rights hereof descended on the Earls of Friburg, the principal City of that Country. Cuno the first that bare the title of Earl of Friburg, being the eldest son of Judith, sister and heir of Berthold, the last Duke of Zeringen. Eggon, the last Earl of which house, being overlaid by his undutifull and rebellious Subjects, sold his Estate therein, for 12000 Ducats to Albert and Leopold, Dukes of Austria, sons of Albert the Short; whose successors enjoy all Brisgow to this very day.

The Arms of Schwaben were Argent, 3 Leopards Sable. as is said by BATA: But Paradise will have them to be three Leopards Sable, crowned Gules, in a Field Or.

7. BAVARIA.

Bavaria

7. BAVARIA.

BAVARIA is bounded on the East with Austria; on the West, with the river Leck, or Lycus, which parts it from Schwaben, on the North, with Northgoia, or the Upper Palatinate; and on the South, with the Earldom of Tirol, and Carinthia. It containeth the whole Province of Rhetia Secunda; and so much of Noricum Mediocranum, as now maketh up the Bishoprick of Salisburg: and by a distinct name was called Vindelicia, as being the antient habitation of the Vindelici; so named from the two Rivers of Vindis and Lycus (now the Werd and the Leck) upon which they lived, According whereunto it is thus verified by a German Poet.

Respicit & late fluvijs Vindimque, Lycumque,
Miscentes undas, & nomina Littoris; unde
Antiquam Gentem, populumque, Urbemque vocarunt
Vindelicam.

In English thus:

Vindis and Lycus, floods of noted Fame,
He next beholds, mingling their streams and name;
To which the old Vindelici do own
The name of both of their Nation, and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, Augusta Vindelicorum, their Metropolis or Capital City. But after such time as the Boii or Boiarians had driven out the Romans, and got possession of this Country, the name of Vindelicia, and Rhetia Secunda, grew into disuse: that of Boiaria succeeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into Bavaria, the present name of the Country amongst the Latines; but by the Dutch called Bayeren, by the French Bavier.

The whole divided into three parts; the Higher, lying towards the Alpes of Tirol; the Lower, extending all along the banks of the Danow; and the District of Saltzburg, situate betwixt the Inn, and the Dukedome of Austria: all three much over-spread with woods and forests, the remainders of the Hercynian forest described before. But more particularly the higher lying towards the Alpes, is cold and barren, affording no wines, and but little corn: the Lower being more fruitful, and better planted, for some parts (especially about Regensberg, and Landshut) inferior unto none in Germany, for the richness and pleasantness of the situation. Of the District of Saltzburg we shall speak by itself; because by some not reckoned as a part hereof. In all, great quantity of fuel for the fire, and of Timber for building; no less of Swine fattened in the woods, and sent away by numerous herds into other Countries.

The Christian Faith first preached here amongst the Boiarians, by Rupertus Bishop of Wormes; driven from his See by Childebert, King of the French, Anno 540. or thereabouts: and here made the first Bishop of Saltzburg; corrupted at this time with the Leaven of the Church of Rome, to which this Country (setting aside the Imperial Cities) is more intirely devoted, than any other in all Germany.

Principal Cities in the higher, are 1. Munchen, (in Latin: Monachium) the Dukes seat; seated on the Isar, or Isarius, in a very sweet and delightful soil, among Ponds and Groves; daintily interlaced with pretty Riverets, and enriched with many excellent Gardens; that of the Duke being hardly to be paralleled in all this Continent. First founded by Henry Duke hereof in the time of Otto the first, Anno 972. now grown a large and populous City; the publick buildings, as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate-house or Guild-hall, and common Market-place, of such excellent Structure, that they serve not only for use and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongst them none more eminent than the Library in the Ducal Palace, wherein is conceived to be 10000 Volumes, the most part of them Manuscripts. A town made choice of by Maximilian the now Duke of Bavaria, to be the receptacle of the spoils got by him in the wars of Germany: here being found (at such time as the Town was taken by the King of Sweden) 140 braile Peeces (besides other great Guns) hidden under the ground, one of the which was charged, instead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. Landshut, upon the Leck or Lycus, near the Alpes of Tirol; once of great strength, because a Frontire towards Schwaben: but proving a dangerous neighbour to the Swedish Garrison planted in these parts, during that war against the Duke of Bavaria, was by them taken and dismantled, and is now an open Village only. 3. Martenwald, now a place of no note or beauty; heretofore the Intrium of Prology, seated near the Alpes. 4. Friburg well fortified by Duke Ludowick, or Lewis the second, for a Bulwark against those of Ansburg. 5. Here stood also the old Castle of Schyre, built by Arnulph, 2d. son of Arnulph the first Duke of Bavaria; the Seat and honorary title of his posterity (Dynasty Schyrenses, in the Latine) till Otto of Wittelsbach, by the favour of Frederick Barbarossa, and his own good fortune, did attain that Dukedome.

In the LOWER Bavaria, there first offers it self to consideration, the town of 1. Rain, seated on the Leck, not far from the fall thereof into the Danow: memorable for the skirmish near to it betwixt the Swedes and Bavarians, at the first passing of the Swedish forces over that River, in which John Earl of Tilly, so famous for his long and fortunate conduct of the Imperial Armies, received his death's wound, of which he died at Ingolstadt within few weeks after. 2. Newburg upon the Danow, not far from Rain; the first town of Bavaria taken in by the Swedes, after the said defeat of Tilly. 3. Ingolstadt, said to be built by a Tribe, or Nation of the Sueves, called Angeli, and thence called Angeltadium, or Angeltade: first made a City by Ludowick of Bavaria, Duke and Emperor; and in the year 1410. made an University, much privileged by Duke Lewis or Ludowick the fifth, and Pope Pius the second. A Town so strong

Bavaria.

strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it seems impregnable: and indeed proved so to *Gastinus* the late King of *Sweden*; who here found the first check to his prosperous Fortunes, being incited to raise his Siege without endangering it, and finde work elsewhere. 4 *Regensburg* (in *Latine Ravibona*) on the *Danow* also, where it receives the River *Regen*, whence it hath its name: built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Augusta Tiberii*, so called of a Colony brought thither by *Tiberius Caesar*, about the time of our Saviours passion; afterwards called *Rhetopolis*, or the City of the *Rhetians*, the chief of *Rhetia secunda*. At this time a fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houses: antiently an Episcopall See, and of late made the ordinary place for the general Diets of the Empire. In former times the seat of the Kings and first Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made *Imperial*; and now mixt, or both. For being still *Imperial*, at the least in name, it was seized on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*; when the *Swedes* first got footing within his Dominions; held by him with a very strong Garrison, after the loss of *Munchen* his chief place of residence, till at last won from him by the *Swedes*, Anno 1633. 5 *Passaw*, by the modern *Latinists*, *Patavia*; but by some thought to be the *Boiodurum* of *Ptolomy*, then a Roman Garrison. Seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn*, and the *Ills*; by which divided into three Towns, *Passaw*, *Insbrade*, and *Illade*: the whole *Compositum* being a rich, fair, and well-traded City. A See Episcopall, and subject immediately to the Bishop, as chief Lord hereof; who hath his dwelling in the Castle of *Oberhusen*, adjoining to that part hereof which is called *Ilstade*. A place remarkable for many meetings and consultations of the German Princes: especially for that of the year 1552, in which all former quarrels being laid aside, the Protestants were first permitted the free Exercise of their Religion, by the consent and Edict of *Charles* the fifth, who had most laboured to suppress it. More in the Land is *Frising*, on the swelling of a fine round hill, near the River *Ambr*, which runs beneath it; called antiently *Praxinum*: conceived to be built by some of the Presidents, or Lieutenants, for the Roman Emperors; honoured with an Episcopall See about the year 710. One of the Bishops whereof, commonly called *Otho Frisingensis*, was the best Historian of his time. 7 *Landshut*, upon the River of *Isar*, in the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Bavaria*, a beautiful and well built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof, in the year 1208, adorned with a Church of most curious building for the service of God, and a magnificent Palace for the use of the Duke. 8 *Freist*, the onely *Imperial* Town, (except *Regensburg*) in all this Dukedome. The whole number of Cities and great Towns in both *Bavaria's*, is supposed to be 80; that is to say, 34 Cities, 46 great Towns: of which these the principal.

The Bishoprick or District of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former division of it) extendeth from the *Inn*, or *Oenus*, towards the confines of *Anstria*. The soil hereof rocky, dry, and barren, excepting some few valleys onely, as seated in the midst of the *Julian Alps*; the habitation heretofore of the *Norici Mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Salzburg*, seated upon the River *Salzach*, whence it had the name: raised out of the ruins of *Juvania*, placed hereabouts by *Antoninus*, the station of a cohort of Roman Souldiers belonging to the first Legion. An Alpine City, strongly situate among the Mountains; but no less beautiful than many of the lower grounds. The Royal seat of some of the *Bavarian* Kings; after of the Archbishops hereof; the most powerful Prelates for Revenue or jurisdiction of any in *Germany*: the See first fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Ruberius*, the first Apostle of these parts, spoken of before; whose image or impress is stamped to this day on the coins of this Bishoprick. At the time when *Luther* first endeavoured a Reformation, Cardinal *Matthaus Langius* was Bishop here; who did ingenuously confess, that the Mass did not want its faults, that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lives of Priests and Friars fit to be reformed: *Sed quod misellus Monachus omnia reformet, id non esse tolerabile*; but that such a sorry fellow as *Luther* should attempt the work, was by no means to be endured. 2 *Newkirch*, on the same River, near the head thereof. 3 *Rotenbourg*, on the East side of the *Inn*, bordering on *Bavaria*. 4 *Traunshaim*, upon the *Traun*, issuing out of the Lakes. 5 *Wildesmet*, one of the farthest Northwards; and 6 *Bischofsstoe*, one of the most Southern in all this tract.

The first Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the District of *Salzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforesaid: A people so resolutely bent to maintain their Freedom, against the incroachment of the *Romans*; that when *Drusus* the Son-in-law of *Augustus*, and Father of *Germanicus Caesar*, made war upon them, the very women thereof took the Alarm; & deficientibus telis, infantes in ora militum adversi miserunt; and when their darts were spent, threw their young infants (saith the Historian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them, in the declining of the Empire, succeeded the *Boiarians*, some of the many tribes of the *Bois*, the most diffused and multitudinous Nation of *Gaul* and *Germany*. Originally of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedome of *Bourbon*, from whence some of them passed with the *Senons* and others of the *Gauls*, to the further side of the *Alps* (in respect of them;) where they took up the Country between the *Apennine* and the *Po*. Wearied with many bickerings, at last with sharp and bitter wars against the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country; some of them passed into *Germany*, and mingled themselves with the *Taurisci*, then dwelling in those parts which we now call *Suermark*: others advancing further, thrust themselves into the *Norici*, (of whom more anon) and some retired themselves into the shelters and fast places of the *Hercinian Forest*. Driven from this last by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hermunduri* and *Norisci* (now the *Upper Palatinate*) who mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarians*, and by that name first known in the time of *Clovis*, the 5th King of the *French*: by whose persuasion, in the 17 year of *Akastius* Emp. of the East, they passed over the *Danow*, and possessed themselves of *Vindelicia*, or the second *Rhetia* with some part of *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was signified. Governed

Bavaria.

first by Kings (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigerius* (and he the last of that race) slain, fighting on the side of the *Almans* against the *French*, at the great battel of *Zulp*, near *Colens*: after which made subject to the Conquerors, as their neighbors and confederates the *Almans* were; but suffered to live under the command and government of their own Princes, by the name of *Dukes*. Of these, from *Theodo*, the son of *Aldigerius*, to *Tassilo* the last Duke, outed of his estate and honours by *Charles* the Great, for conspiring with the *Lombards* against him, are reckoned fifteen Dukes in all: whose names (for there remaineth little of them but the empty names) we shall subjoyn in the ensuing Catalogue of the

Dukes of the BOIARIANS.

- 493 1 *Theodo*, son of *Aldigerius* the last King; from whose younger brother *Uilo*, descended *Pepin* the Father of *Charles* the Great.
- 511 2 *Theodo* II. surnamed the Great.
- 537 3 *Theodebert*.
- 545 4 *Theodo* III. the first Christian Prince of the *Boiarians*.
- 565 5 *Tassilo*, son of *Theodebert*.
- 598 6 *Garibaldus*.
- 612 7 *Theodo* IV.
- 630 8 *Tassilo* II.
- 650 9 *Theodo* V.
- 10 *Theodebert* II.
- 11 *Theodo* VI. son of *Grimoldus*, the brother of *Theodebert* the second.
- 708 12 *Grimold*.
- 13 *Hugobert*, brother of *Grimold*.
- 735 14 *Uilo*.
- 765 15 *Tassilo* III. the last Duke of the *Boiarians*. Of whom more anon.

Amongst these, few of any note, but 1 *Theodo* the first, son of *Adalgerius*, who abandoning the name of King, because less pleasing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, assumed that of Duke: and passing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhetia secunda*, with part of *Noricum*, from the *Romans*, Anno 508. or thereabouts. 2 *Theodo* the second, named the Great, for his great and many victories against the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum*, and *Vindelicia*; and whatsoever they held on the Dutch side of the *Alps*. 3 *Theodo* the 3d of that name, and the 4th in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Christian Faith, by the preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, Anno 580. 4 *Tassilo* the third of that name, and the last of their Dukes of the race of *Adalgerius*, or of the old *Boiarian* blood: who being deposed by *Charles* the Great, the whole Country became immediately subject to the *French*, governed at first by their Lieutenants. Dismembred from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the Godly, it was made a Kingdom (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom conferred on *Lotharius* his eldest son, who was afterwards Emperour of the *Romans*: after his death possessed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a distinct Kingdom both in name and title, till the decease of *Lewis* the son of *Arnulph* the last of the direct line of *Charles* the Great. He being dead, and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a subject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*; one *Arnulph* of the issue of the said *Charles*, with the general liking of the *Boiarians*, took upon himself the title of King; but being opposed therein by *Conrade* the brother of *Lewis*, Emp. and King of *Germany*, and also by *Henry* the first who succeeded, he changed the title of King into that of Duke, the Founder of the present house of

The Dukes of BAVARIA.

- 1 *Arnulph*, of the house of *Charles* the Great, first Duke of *Bavaria*.
- 2 *Eberhard*, son of *Arnulph*, deposed by *Otho* the first.
- 3 *Berchbold*, the brother of *Arnulph*, confirmed in the estate by the said Emperour *Otho*. After whose death, it was conferred on *Henry*, the brother of *Otho* the 1. who had married *Judith*, daughter of *Arnulph* the first Duke, and sister to *Eberhard*.
- 4 *Henry*, brother of *Otho* the first, surnamed *Rixofus*, or the Quarrelsome.
- 5 *Henry* II. son of the former *Henry*, surnamed *Hezzelo*.
- 6 *Henry* III. surnamed the Saint, son of *Henry* the 2d, the first Emperour who came in by election, according to the Order made by Pope Gregory the 5th. After whose coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 successions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleasure of the present Emperour, in manner following.
- 7 *Henry* IV. surnamed *Hezzel*, brother to *Gunegund* the renowned wife of *Henry* the Saint; by whom preferred to this Dukedom, and by him deposed.
- 8 *Henry* Guelf, son of *Robert* Earl of *Alsace* in *Schwaben*, (of the strange Original of which Family we shall speak in *Brunswick*) made Duke by the Emperour *Conrade* the 2d.
- 9 *Guelfo*, son of *Henry* Guelf, or *Henry* the 5th.
- 10 *Ernest*, created Duke hereof by the same *Conrade* the 2d, by whom deposed again for conspiring against him.
- 11 *Henry* VI.

Bavaria.

- 12 *Cuno*, accused of conspiracy, and displaced by *Henry* the 3d. to make room for
 13 *Henry VII.* son of the said Emperor *Henry* the 3d. whom he succeeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4th.
 14 *Agnes*, the mother of the said *Henry* the 4th. by the gift of her son.
 15 *Otho*, by the gift of the Empress *Agnes*, deposed not long after by *Henry* the 4th.
 16 *Welfo III.* son of *Coniza* the daughter of *Guelph* the 2d. by *Axon*, an Italian Marquis; made Duke hereof by the said Emperor *Henry* the 4th.
 17 *Welfo IV.* son to *Welfo* the 3.
 18 *Henry VIII.* surnamed the *Proud*, brother of *Guelpho* the 4th. by the marriage of *Gertrude* daughter of *Lotharius* the 2d. Duke of *Saxony* also. Deprived of both by the Emperor *Conrade* the third.
 19 *Leopald*, son to *Leopald* the 4th. Marquis of *Austria*, made Duke by the said *Conrade* the 3d.
 20 *Henry IX.* brother of *Leopald*, after Marquis, at last Duke of *Austria*.
 21 *Henry X.* surnamed the *Lion*, son of *Henry* the *Proud*, restored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbarossa* (the Duke of *Austria* being otherwise satisfied:) by whom not long after proscribed and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this estate became fixed and settled, in the person and posterity of
 1180 22 *Otho* of *Wittelsbach*, so called from the place of his birth or dwelling; descended lineally from *Arnulph* the Lord of *Schyre* in the Upper *Bavaria*, and 2d. son of *Arnulph*, the first Duke hereof; advanced unto this honour by *Frederick Barbarossa*, sensible of the too great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this estate being reduced by this time, to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate *Northgoia*.
 1183 23 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* son of *Otho*.
 1231 24 *Otho II.* son of *Lewis*, who by marrying *Gertrude* the sole daughter of *Henry* Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral dignity into the house of *Bavaria*.
 1290 25 *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, the son of *Otho* the 2d.
 1294 26 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis II.* brother of *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria*, and Elector Palatine of the *Rhene*.
 1312 27 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis III.* second son of *Lewis* the 2d. succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*; *Rodolph*, the eldest son, succeeding in both Palatinates, and the Electoral dignity. He was afterwards elected and crowned Emperor, known commonly by the name of *Ludovick Bavaria*.
 1347 28 *Stephen*, the eldest son of *Ludovick* the Emperor; *William* and *Albert* his two brethren successively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their mother.
 1375 29 *Stephen II.* son of *Stephen* the first, his brothers *Frederick* and *John* sharing with him parts of the estate.
 1413 30 *Ludovick II.* surnamed *Barbatus*, deposed and imprisoned by his own son *Ludovick*, who yet died before him without issue.
 1447 31 *Henry II.* son of *Frederick*, the second brother of *Stephen* the 2d. succeeded on the death of *Ludovick* *Barbatus*.
 1450 32 *Ludovick V.* surnamed the *Rich*, the son of *Henry* the 2d. banished the Jews out of his estates, and seized their goods.
 1479 33 *George*, surnamed the *Rich* also, the Founder of the University of *Ingolstadt*: whose sole daughter and heir was married to *Rupertus* Prince Elector Palatine; with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dower. But *Maximilian* the Emperor not liking so much greatness in the German Princes, confirmed the same on
 1503 34 *Albert III.* son of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John* *Munchen*, by his son *Ernestus*: which *John* was youngest brother to *Stephen* the 2d. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperor, succeeded unto *George* the *Rich*: The cause of a long and unhappy war betwixt the Electors of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*; the worst whereof, besides the loss of this Estate, fell upon the Palatines, proscribed and outed of their Country upon this quarrel; but upon their submission, restored again.
 1508 35 *William* the son of *Albert* the 3d.
 1577 36 *Albert IV.* a great Champion of the *Doctrines* and *Traditions* of the Church of *Rome*; and so extremely affected unto the *Jesuits*, that he built Colleges for them at *Landsberg*, *Ingolstadt*, and *Munchen*, his three principal towns.
 1579 37 *William II.* son of *Albert* the 4th. as zealous as his Father, in the cause of the Church of *Rome*; in which exceeded very much by
 38 *Maximilian*, eldest son of *William* the 2d. who chiefly out of the same zeal sided with *Ferdinand* the 2d. in the wars of *Germany*, An. 1620. and took upon him the conduct of the Armies of the said Emperor, against *Frederick* Count and Elector Palatine, chosen King of *Bohemia*. In which having done great service to the Imperial and *Romish* interests, he was by the said *Ferdinand* invested in the Upper Palatinate, called antiently (but not more properly than now) the Palatinate of *Bavaria*, together with the Electoral dignity: This last conferred at first upon him but for term of life, in the Diet at *Regensburg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Saxony*, and *Brandenbourg*, then protesting against it; but afterwards in the Diet at *Prague*, Anno 1628. conferred upon him and his heirs for ever: to the great prejudice of the Princes of the Palatine Family, who by reason of their *immunities* investiture with the first of their house, are not to be deprived of their estates and dignities for the

Austria.

the offence of their Fathers; the punishment not being to extend beyond the person of the offender. But notwithstanding their pretensions, and allegations, the Duke is still possessed of the title and dignity; confirmed therein by the conclusions of the Treaty of *Munster*: a new Electorate being to be erected for the Palatine Princes.

The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 pieces in *Band*, *Argent*, and *Azure*.

8. The ARCHDUKEDOM of AUSTRIA.

The Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in the incorporate Provinces, and the Members of it, is bounded on the East, with *Hungary*, and part of *Sclavonia*; on the West, with *Bavaria*, and some parts of the *Switzers*, and the *Grisons*; on the North, with *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*; and on the South, with *Hispania*, and some part of *Friuli*, in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the several Provinces of *Austria*, properly so called, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tirol*: the quality of the whole will be best discerned by the Survey of particulars.

The antient Inhabitants of the whole, were the *Norici* of the *Romans*, parted into the lesser Tribes of *Sevates*, *Aunni*, *Ambisfontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidrauni*: succeeded by *Drusus*, son-in-law to *Augustus Caesar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Constantine* the Great divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and some parts of *Tirol*; with the Bishoprick of District of *Saltzburg*; of which *Solyn* was the Metropolis, or Capital City: and *Noricum Ripense*, containing only *Austria*, and those parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eastward of the River *Inn*; extended all along on the banks of the *Danow*. Known by no other names while possessed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avars*, and other Nations, it gained those several names, and appellations, specified before.

1. *AUSTRIA*, properly so called, hath on the East, the Kingdom of *Hungary*; on the West *Bavaria*; on the North, the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the West, and on the other side, the *Teyn*, which separates it from *Moravia*; on the South, *Stiria*, or *Stiermark*. Called by the *Dutch*, *Osterrich*; and contracted *Ostreich*, that is to say, the Eastern kingdom (a part assuming to itself the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *East-France*, or the Eastern Kingdom of the French: in the barbarous Latine of those times, called by the name of *Austrasia*, whence the modern *Austria*.

The air is generally very healthy, and the earth as fruitful; yielding a plentiful increase, without help of compost, or other soiling; and of so easie a tillage to the husbandman, that on the North side of the *Danow*, it is ploughed and managed by one horse only. Exceeding plentiful of grain, and abundant in wine, with which last it supplyeth the defects of *Bavaria*: great store of *Saffron*, some provision of Salt; and at the foot of the Mountains, not far from *Haimburg*, some *Ginger* also. Nor wants it Mines of *Silver* in a large proportion. Divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lomer*, and the *Higher*: that lying on the North side of the River, towards *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*; this on the South side, towards *Stiermark*.

Places of most importance in the HIGHER *AUSTRIA*, are 1. *Gmund*, seated on a Lake called *Gmundner-See*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the efflux of the River *Draun*, which ariseth out of it. 2. *Lints*, seated on the confluence of the said *Draun*, with the famous *Danow*; the *Ardeate* of *Plomy*: A Town before the late wars almost wholly Protestant; but then being put into the hands of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other side. 3. *Walkenstein* on the *Enn* or *Anisn*, near the borders of *Stiermark*. 4. *Enn*, on the fall of that River into the *Danow*; raised out of the ruins of *Laureacum*, sometimes the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripense*, the Station at that time of the second Legion: afterwards an Archbishop's See, made such in the first planting of Christianity amongst this people, by *S. Severine*, Anno 464. On the Reviver whereof, (suppressed by the *Hunnos*, *Bavarians*, and others of the barbarous Nation) by the diligence and preaching of *S. Rupertus*, the Metropolitan dignity was fixt at *Saltzburg*. 5. *Waidhoven*, near the head of the River *Ips*. 6. *Ips*, seated at the influx of that River, and from thence depopulated; the *Gefodunum* of *Plomy* and other antients. 7. *Newfall*, on a great Lake so named. 8. *Wels*, on the main stream of the *Danow*. 9. *Haimburg*, on the confluence thereof, and the River *Markh*: Near to which at the foot of the Mountains now called *Haimburgerberg* (from the Town adjoining) but antiently named *Montus Cognimus*, is some store of *Ginger*: a wonderful great variety for these colder Countries. 10. *Newstat*, first called so from the newness of it, being built of late. 11. *Vienna*, by the *Dutch* *Wien*, the principal of all these parts, by *Plomy* called *Juliobona*; *Vindobona*, by *Antonine*; the Station in their times of the tenth Roman Legion: of whose being settled here, there are many Monuments both within the City, and without. Seated it is on the banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private and public edifices: each private house having such store of cellars for all occasions, that as much of the City seems to be under the ground, as is above it. The streets for the most part spacious, and all paved with stone, which makes them very clean and sweet in the midst of winter: fenced with a mighty wall, deep and precipitous ditches on all parts of it; and many Bulwarks, Towers, and Ramparts, in all needfull places: the walls hereof first raised with some part of the money paid unto *Leopald* Duke of *Austria*, for the ransom of King *Richard* the first of *England*, taken prisoner by him as he passed homewards through this Country, from the *Holy Land*. Et seemed to this day the strongest hold of *Christendom* against the *Turks*, and proved experimentally so to be, in that most notable and famous repulse here given them, An. 1526. At what time 200000 of them, under the conduct of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, besieged this City; but by the valour of *Frederick* the second, Elector Palatine of the *Rhene*, and other German Princes, gallantly resisted, and compelled to

Tirol.

TIROLIS is bounded on the East, with *Frinly*, and *Marca Trevigiana*; by the interpoling of which or some parts thereof, disjoyned from *Carniola*; on the West, with the *Grisons*, and some part of *Switzerland* on the North, with *Bavaria*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*. Extended over the greatest part of the *Alpes Rhetice*, and some part of the *Julia*: yet intermixt with many rich and fruitful valleys, those specially which lye on the banks of the *Inn*, and the River of *Adist*. Nor are the hills so void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good store of metals digged out of them, especially of *Brasse*, and *Silver*; which last have yielded to the Archduke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of most note, 1 *Oenipons*, or *Innspruck*, so called from a Bridge on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the second branch of *Austria*, descended from *Ferdinand*, the second son of the Emperor *Ferdinand*; the house of *Gratz* issuing from *Charles*, the third son of that Emperor. Most memorable for the hasty flight of *Charles* the first, upon the news that Duke *Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming against him with his Forces. Which so terrified him, that he fled away by torch-light, with some of his followers; the residue of this Court (most of which were persons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the *Black Guard* and the *Skullery*. The Town being many times the residence of the Dukes of *Austria*, who have here a very Royal and magnificent Palace. And to say truth, the Town deserveth to be so honoured; amongst pleasant Meadows, spacious cornfields, and shady mountains sweetly seated: the houses fairly built of stone, enriched by the Courts of *Judicature* here settled for all the Country, and provided of a gallant *Armory*. 2 *Trent*, (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latine*) situate in the confines of *Germany*, and *Italy*; for which cause the Inhabitants speak both languages. Built on the banks of the River *Athesis*, or *Adist*: honoured with an Episcopal See, but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, Anno 1545. against the *Lutherans*. For 22 years together before their meeting, dashed by one Pope, and animated by another, advanced by *Charles* the fifth upon worldly *Policies*, and for as worldly *Policies* retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this first Convention of it, at sundry times, assembled, suspended, and dissolved. And finally, when fixed here seriously by Pope *Pius* the fourth, Anno 1562. managed with so much art and cunning by the *Papal* party, that nothing was determined among the *Prelates*, but what had formerly been resolved on in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by especial *Posits*: occasioning that most bitter jest of one of the *Hungarian* Bishops who was present at it, that the *Holy Ghost* was sent unto them in a *Clock-bag* from *Rome*. The affects of which Council, so artificially carried on by the strength of wit, I cannot better describe than in the words of the History of it, which are as followeth. This Council, desired and procured by "godly men to reunite the Church which began to be divided, hath so established the Schism, and made the parties to obstinate, that the discords are irreconcilable. And being managed by *Princes* for Reformation of *Ecclesiastical Discipline*, hath caused the greatest deformation that ever was "since *Christianity* did begin: and hoped for by the *Bishops* themselves to regain the *Episcopal* Authority, for the most part usurped by the *Pope*, hath made them lose it altogether, bringing them into "greater servitude. On the contrary feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as a potent means to "moderate the exorbitant power thereof, mounted from small beginnings, by divers degrees, to an "unlimited excess; it hath so established and confirmed the same over that part which remained subject unto it, that it was never so great, nor soundly rooted. So far the words of the History. The next of note is, 3 *Falkenstein*, remarkable for mines of *Brasse*; as 4 *Hal* upon the *Inn* for *Saltwicks*; and 5 *Schnas* for the richer mines of *Silver*. 6 *Mulk*, near the head of the River *Athesis*. 7 *Pollen*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people whereof called *Bolgiano*, and *Bolsano*. 8 *Tirol*, an ancient Cattle, the first seat of the Earls or Governours hereof, and giving name for that reason to the Country adjoining. 9 *Meran*, neighbouring the old Castle of *Tirol*, which gave the title of Dukes to a branch of the *Caroline* race, descended from *Rathboldus*, a base son of the Emperor *Arnolph*; possessed of many large estates in these *Alpine* Countries, now appertaining to the Princes of the house of *Austria*. From one of which Dukes called *Otho* of *Meranie*, married to *Beatrice*, heir of the County of *Burgundy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* (since that time) do derive themselves.

The Earls hereof, were at the first no other than *Provincial* Officers; when made *Proprietaries*, I am yet to seek. The first of whom we have any certainty, was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tirol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258, leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard* who by *Rodolphus Halspurgensis* was enfeoffed with the Dukedom of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the second of this last *Mainard* dying without issue male; his daughter *Margaret*, by the consent of all her people, settled her estate therein on the sons of *Albert*, called the *Short*: continuing ever since in the house of *Austria*, though sometimes made the portion and inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the first, it was given in *Appenage* to his 2d. son *Ferdinand*, surnamed of *Innspruck* for that reason, who by marrying with *Philippina* a *Burgers* daughter of *Augsburg*, so displeased his brethren, that to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her; it was finally agreed upon amongst them all, that *Tirol* should not descend upon his Children of that *venter*. In pursuance whereof after his decease, *Tirol* fell to the house of *Gratz*: his eldest son *Charles* being made Marquess of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngest, Cardinal of *Brixia*. Who were the old Inhabitants of the *Roman Austria*, we have seen already. The old inhabitants of the other part are supposed to be the *Qualli*, in that part which lyeth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni*, in those parts which are next *Moravia*; who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Boiarians*, won from the *Romans* the whole Province of the *Second Rhetia*, and so much of *Noricum* as lyeth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Enns*, leaving the rest to the *Avars*, who possessed that and the two *Pannonias*, extorted also from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty

Austria.

mighty Empire, as we shall shew more fully when we come to our description of *Hungary*. But these *Boiarians* being conquered by *Clovis* the Great, and the *Avars* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Charlemagne*; both Provinces became members of the *French* Empire, till the subduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*. To oppose whom, and keep in peace and safety these remoter parts, some *Guardians*, or *Lords Marchers*, were appointed by the Kings and Emperours of *Germany*, with the title of *Marquesses of Ostreich*. At first *Officiaries* only, but at last hereditary. Made so by the Emperor *Henry* the first, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, surnamed the *Illustrious*, the son of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg*, of the house of *Schwaben*; and therewithall the title of *Marquess*, Anno 980. This *Marquisate* was by *Frederick Barbaross* raised to a Dukedom, 1158. *Henry* being the first Duke, whose Nephew *Leopold* took *Richard* the first of *England*, prisoner, in his return from *Palestine*: for whose ransom he had so much money, that with it he bought *Stiermark*, together with the Counties of *Neubourg*, and *Lintz*; and walled *Vienna*. His son *Fredericus*, surnamed the *Warlike*, was made King of *Austria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, Anno 1225. Eleven years he continued in this dignity; at the end of which he was spoiled of his royal ornaments by the same hand, for denying his appearance at the Emperours summons, unto whom for some outrages he had been complained of. Finally, he died in the year 1246. discomfited and slain in battel by the King of *Hungary*. Leaving no issue of his body, this estate of right should have descended on *Frederick*, son of *Hermannus*, Marquess of *Baden*, and of *Gertrude* his wife, the Niece of this *Frederick* the *Warlike*, by his brother *Henry*, who was afterwards beheaded at *Naples* by *Charles* of *Faloi*, Anno 1268. But *Ottacar*, son of *Primislavus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending to it in the right of *Margaret* his wife, one of the Sisters of the said *Frederick* the *Warlike*, by a strong hand possessed himself of the Dukedom of *Austria*, which he increased by the addition of *Carinthia*, and *Trevigiana*; all which he held, together with the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, till the year 1278. in which he was vanquished and slain by *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, not long before advanced to the *German* Empire. *Rodolphus* thus possessed of these great estates, conferred them on *Albertus* his eldest son, who had then married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Meinard* Earl of *Tirol*, by *Elizabeth* (or *Agnes*) his wife, the daughter of *Gertrude*, and sister and sole heir at last of *Frederick*, so cruelly murdered at *Naples*, as before was said. By means of which marriage and investiture, *Albert* was quietly possessed of the Dukedom of *Austria*, *Stiermark*, *Carinthia*, *Corniola*, together with *Marca Trevigiana*, to which the Earldom of *Tirol*, and many of other fair estates in *Schwaben* and *Alsaia* were after added. By whom it was first raised to the title of *Arch-duke*, is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habsburg*, at the investiture of his son *Albert* into these Estates, Anno 1298. Others to *Charles* the fourth, advancing to that honour *Rodolph* the *Ingenious*, Anno 1360. Some make it to be first given to *Albert* Duke hereof, in the year 1430. and others posit it lower to the marriage of *Philip*, son of *Maximilian* of *Austria*, and of the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princess of *Spain*. But by whomsoever given at first, it is now the constant and hereditary title of all this Family: the successive Princes whereof from the first investiture, follow in the ensuing Catalogue of

The MARQUESSSES, DUKES, KINGS, and ARCH-DUKES of AUSTRIA.

- 926 1 *Leopold* of *Bamberg*, the first Marquess.
- 988 2 *Henry*, son of *Leopold*.
- 1014 3 *Albert*, son of *Henry*, surnamed the *Victorious*.
- 1056 4 *Ernestus*, son of *Albert*.
- 1075 5 *Leopold II.* son of *Ernest*, a companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*.
- 1096 6 *Leopold III.* son of the second, founder of the Abby of *Newbourg*.
- 1136 7 *Leopold IV.* son of the third, by his half brother *Conrade* the third, then Emperour of the *Germans*, made Duke of *Bavaria*.
- 1141 8 *Henry II.* brother of *Leopold*, Marquess of *Austria*, and Duke of *Bavaria*; made the first Duke of *Austria* by *Frederick Barbaross*, Anno 1158. the whole Countrey betwixt the *Inn* and the *Enns*, being added by the said Emperor unto his estate, on his relinquishing of *Bavaria* to the Duke of *Saxony*.
- 1177 9 *Ludovick*, son of *Henry*, built *Enns* and *Newstat*; of great note in the wars of the *Holy Land*.
- 1193 10 *Leopold V.* son of *Ludovick*, the irreconcilable enemy of our *Richard* the first, taken prisoner by him in his passage homewards, and put unto a grievous ransom, the Dukedom of *Stiermark* being purchased with a part thereof.
- 1230 11 *Frederick* the *Warlike*, son of *Leopold* the fifth, made King of *Austria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second; the last of the male issue of the house of *Bamberg*.
- 1246 12 *Ottacar*, son of *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending the right of *Margaret* his wife, sister of *Frederick*, possessed himself of this Estate: adding thereto the Countreies of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, which he bought of *Ulrick* the last Prince thereof; but dispossessed of all by *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*.
- 1283 13 *Albert II.* son of *Rodolph* of *Habsburg*, by his father made Duke of *Austria*, married *Elizabeth*, the lineal and direct heir of *Gertrude*, one of the Nieces, and (on the death of that *Frederick*, who was slain at *Naples*) the next heir of *Frederick* King and Duke of *Austria*; after his Fathers death chosen Emperour also.

1308 14 *Rodolph*

- Veteravia.* 1308 14 Rodolph the Ingenious, his other brother sharing with him in the estate.
 1315 15 Albert, surnamed the Short, the youngest and surviving brother of Rodolph, succeeded in the whole Estate; a great advancer of this house.
 1358 16 Albert IV. son of Albert the Short.
 1365 17 Albert V. son of Albert the fourth.
 1404 18 Albert VI. son of Albert the fifth, King of Hungary and Bohemia, in right of Elizabeth his wife, daughter and heir of Sigismund the King thereof.
 1439 19 Ladislaus, son of Albert and Elizabeth, King of Hungary and Bohemia, and Duke of Austria.
 1457 20 Frederick II. on the death of Ladislaus without issue, succeeded into the Dukedom of Austria as the direct heir of Leopold the 9th. one of the younger sons of Albert the Short; chosen also Emperor.
 1493 21 Maximilian, son of Frederick, enriched his house with the marriage of the heir of Burgundy.
 1519 22 Ferdinand, Grandchild to Maximilian by his son Philip King of Spain, and Archduke of Austria, succeeded his Grandfather in this Dukedom: King of Hungary, Bohemia, and Emperor of Germany.
 1565 23 Maximilian II. son of Ferdinand.
 1577 24 Rodolphus III. son of Maximilian the second.
 1612 25 Matthias, brother of Rodolphus.
 1619 26 Ferdinand II. surnamed of Gratz, son of Charles Duke of Austria, of the house of Gratz, the youngest son of Ferdinand the first (the numerous Off-spring of Maximilian the second being all dead without issue) succeeded in the estates of Austria, chosen Emperor also, King of Hungary, and Bohemia, &c.
 27 Ferdinand III. son of Ferdinand the second, now living Anno. 1648. Archduke of Austria, King of Hungary and Bohemia, and Emperours of the Germans.

The Arms of these Earls when distinct from the house of Austria, were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable*, membered *Or*.

Thus have we seen by what means and under what Princes, all these Provinces belonging unto several Lords, became united and incorporated into one Estate. Besides which, there was added to it by Rodolph of Halbspurg, all the Upper Elzette, the Cattle and Territory of Halbspurg itself, with many fair Estates amongst the Switzers; by Albert the Short, the Countrey of Sunow; and by his sons, the Advocateship of Friburg, or the Countrey of Brigow. So that these Princes are undoubtedly the greatest for power and patrimony, of any in Germany: and would be of a great revenue, if the ill neighbourhood of the Turks did not put them to continual charges: and make the borders of the Countrey to be thinly planted, and not very thorowly manured. Howsoever, it is thought that they may yeeld yearly two millions of Crowns and upwards, to the Archdukes Coffers.

The Arms of these Princes are *Gules*, A Fels *Argent*; assumed by Marquess Leopold at the siege of Acon, or Ptolemais in the Holy Land; because his whole Armour, being covered with blood, his Belt only remained white. The Arms thereof in former times having been six Larks *Or*, in a field *Azure*; supposed to have been taken by the first Marquess, because they possessed those six Provinces, for defence of which the tenth Legion called *Alanda*, had been fixed at Vienna.

And now we are to take our leave of the Roman Empire, which we shall meet withall no more till we come to Hungary; the Countries of the North side of Danubius, and the East side of the Rhene, being almost as soon abandoned, as conquered by them. So that in our survey of these Northern Countries, we are not like to find such matter of Antiquity as we have before; but must content our selves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a lesser continuance. In which we shall begin with those Countries which lye on the other side of the Rhene, bordering on the Estates of Cleaveland, and the Bishop-electors; and so proceed on Eastward till we come to the furthest parts of Germany, and the confines of Hungary; afterwards turning to the North till we meet with Denmark, which is next of all to be considered.

9. VETRAVIA.

VETERAVIA, or WETERAW, is bounded on the West, with the Bishoprick of Colen; on the East, with Frankeland; on the North, with Hassia, and Westphalen; and on the South, with the Lower Palatinite. It containeth a combination of many small estates, which being joyned in a common league for defence of each other in the preservation of their Laws, Liberties, and Religion; are called the Confederation of the Weteraw. The principal of the States which are thus confederated, are the Earls of Nassau, 2 Hanau, and 3 Solms; 4 the Lord of Lichtenberg, and the Imperial Cities of 5 Friedberg, and 6 Weizelaur.

The County of NASSAW (for fruitfullness of soil, and delightfomness of situation, not inferior to most parts of France) lyeth at the foot of the Mountains, which divide Hassia from Engern, and Westphalen; antiently called *Melibocus*; a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Towns hereof, are 1 Nassaw, situate on the South side of the River Lon, not far from the fall of it into the Rhene; the first seat and honourary Title of this famous family, and still in the possession of the Princes of Orange, the first branch hereof. 2 Dillingbourg, the usual seat of the Earls of Nassaw, before their settling in the Low Countries; hence named the Earls of Nassaw of the house

of Dillingbert, to difference them from others of the same family. 2 Catzenelbogen which gives the title of an Earl to the owners of it; in Latine, *Catti Meliboci*, which shews the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, antiently possessed of these parts of Germany, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The possession of this town much controverted between the Earls of Nassaw, and the Landgraves of Hassia. Concerning which, we are to know, that Henry the second son of Lewis, Landgrave of Hassia, surnamed the Mild, married with Anne, daughter and heir of Philip the last Lord hereof, and by her had a son called William, who died without issue; and a daughter named Elizabeth; married to John the 3d. of Nassaw, to whom she brought Henry and William, Earls of Nassaw. Elizabeth on the death of her brother William, laid claim to the estate, as the next heir to him; followed in the pursuit thereof, by William Count of Nassaw, her surviving son. Against which, William the 2d. of Hassia did alledge a grant or donation of it from his Cousin William, the brother of Elizabeth, as before said, and having possession of the Town, and the members of it, was made thereby the better able to defend his Title. But at the last it was surrendered by Count William of Nassaw (father of William Prince of Orange) unto Philip the Landgrave, in the time of Charles the fifth, for the sum of 60000 Crowns: the house of Nassaw notwithstanding retaining it amongst their Titles. 3 Herborn, a small University, or Schola *Elusitris*, founded at late by the Earls of Nassaw: in which *Piscator* was Divinity Reader, and *Alfedijs* (both famous in their times) Professor for the Arts and Sciences. 4 Idstein, lying south to Catzenelbogen; and 5 Wisbad, directly south of Idstein, betwixt that and the Main; these being the title and possessions of the second branch of this Family. 6 Weillborongh on the Lon, not far from Weitzelver; which gives Title to the third branch of this house, called the Earls of Nassaw in Sarbuck; and Weillborongh.

As for the Princes of the house of Nassaw, they are very antient; Otho of Nassaw being made Earl of Guelderland in the year 1079. Another Otho of this house, but proceeding from a different branch of it, dying Anno 1190. the founder of the present Family of the Princes of Orange; and of the house Wisbad and Idstein, out of which descended Adolphus Earl of Nassaw, chosen Emperor, in the year 1292. By the marriage of Engelbert, the seventh Earl of this house of Dillingbert, with Mary daughter of Philip, Lord of Breda in Brabant, they came first to be possessed of Estates in the Netherlands: and by the marriage of Henry, great Grand-child of this Engelbert, with Claude of Châlons, they got the Principality of Orange in France. A family as much honoured for the personal merit of the Princes of it, as any other in Europe; of some of which, although we have already given a Catalogue (in the description and story of Provence) as Princes of Orange; yet take here the whole succession of them, as

The COUNTS of NASSAW.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Otho, the son of Henry, and nephew of | 1475 9 John III. son of John the 2d. |
| Waleran, the first Earl of Nassaw of this | 1516 10 Henry III. son of John the 3d. Knight of |
| line. | the Golden Fleecce, married Claude |
| 1190 2 Henry, the son of Otho, who added Dill- | Châlons, sister of Philibert P. of Orange. |
| lamberg, Wisbad, and Idstein, unto his e- | 1536 11 Rene, son of Henry the 3d. and of Claude |
| state. Grandfather by Waldradus his | of Châlons, successor to his Uncle Phi- |
| 2d. son, to Adolphus the Emperor. | libert in the Principality of Orange; |
| 3 Otho II. son of Henry. | Anno 1530. and to his Father in the |
| 4 Henry II. son of Otho the 2d. | Earldom of Nassaw, Anno 1536. |
| 5 Otho III. son of Henry the 2d. | 1544 12 William, the son of John the 3d. by El- |
| 6 John, son of Otho the 3d. | izabeth his wife, daughter of Hen. Land- |
| 1362 7 Engelbert, the son of John, by Mary his | grave of Hassia, and of Anne daughter |
| wife, daughter and heir of Philip Lord | and heir of Philip E. of Catzenelbogen; |
| of Breda in Brabant, added that Town, | reformed the Religion in this Coun- |
| with many other fair estates in the | treys according to the Lutheran do- |
| Netherlands, to his former Patrimony. | ctrines. |
| 8 John II. son of Engelbert, Earl of Nassaw, | 1559 13 William II. son of William the first, suc- |
| and Lord of Breda, &c. | ceeded Pr. of Orange, by the Will of |
| Rhene his Cousin-German, Anno 1544. and Earl of Nassaw, by his death of his Father An. | |
| 1559. What else concerns this Prince, we have had before. I only add, that William the | |
| first, besides this William had three other sons; that is to say, Count John, the Father of | |
| William of Nassaw Governor of West-Friesland; Count Ludowick, of great renown in the first | |
| Wars of the Netherlands, in the course whereof he lost his life, An. 1574. and Count Adol- | |
| phus, slain in the same wars also, Anno 1568. | |
| 1584 14 Philip, eldest son of William the second, and of Anne his wife, daughter and heir of Maximi- | |
| lian of Egmond, Earl of Buren, succeeded Earl of Buren on the death of his mother, An. | |
| 1551. Prince of Orange, and Count of Nassaw, by the death of his Father. | |
| 15 Maurice, son of William the 2d. and of Anne his wife, daughter of Maurice Duke-elect | |
| of Saxony, Prince of Orange, and Count of Nassaw. At the age of 18, years made General | |
| of all the forces of the United Netherlands, which place he managed for the space of 37 | |
| years, with great both courage and success. | |
| 1625 16 Henry IV. Brother of Maurice (but by another Father, the daughter of Gaspar Coligni, Ad- | |
| miral of France) Count of Nassaw, Prince of Orange, and General of the Forces of the States | |
| United. | 1648 17 Will- |

Fr. nevin.

Franconia. 1648 17 William III. son of Henry the 4th. successor to his Father in all his Honours and commands; A Prince of great hopes and expectations.

The Arms of the Earls of *Nassau* are Quarterly, 1 Azure a Lion Or, Armed Gules; 2ly. Or, a Lion-Leopard Gules, Armed and Crowned Azure; 3ly. Gules, a Fels Argent; and 4ly. Gules, two Leopards Or, armed and membered Gules.

Bordering on *Franconia* and *Frankenland*, lyeth the County of *HANAW*, so called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of most note, are 1 *Hanaw* it self, in *Latine* called *Hanovia*, honoured with a *Schola illustriis* also; and much enriched by the trade of *Printing*, with which they use to furnish annually the *Mints* of *Frankfort*, distant from hence about ten *Dutch* miles. 2 *Pfaffenhofen*, of no note formerly, but like to be remembered in the stories of succeeding times, for the great defeat there given to the Duke of *Lorraine*, July 31. 1633. who lost his whole Forces, all his Ordnance, Ammunition, and baggage; and which was worst of all, his Countrey: taken in part from him by the Conquering *Swedes*, who followed him close into his home; but wholly by the *French* King upon that advantage. 3 *Liechberg*, which gives Title to a second branch of the house of *Hanow*, called the Lord of *Liechberg*. A family of good esteem, since the time that *Otho* of *Hanaw* was ennobled with the title or Earl thereof, which was about the year 1392. before that, *Princes* of the Empire; and after that, advanced unto great fortunes, by the addition of the *Barony* of *Mintzberg*, in the person of *Philipp*, the first Earl; of the County of *Rheineck*, in the person of another *Philipp*, the third of that name, great Granchild of the former *Philipp*; and finally, of the Lordship and Estate of *Liechberg*, accreuing to this house by the marriage of a third *Philipp*, the youngest son of *Reynard* the third Earl hereof, with *Anne* the daughter and heir of *Ludovick*, Lord of *Liechberg*. The title and possession of the second branch of the house of *Hanaw*, called Lords of *Liechberg*, and *Hofenstein*, and Earls of *Bischo*: this last being an estate in *Lorraine*, accreuing to them by the marriage of a fourth *Philipp*, (the fifth in name and order of the house of *Liechberg*) with *Margaret*, sole daughter and heir of *Ludovick* the last Earl thereof.

Betwixt the Counties of *Nassau*, and *Hanaw*, on both sides of the River *Lon*, lies the Earldom of *SOLMS*, the first Earl whereof, (of whom there is any good *Constat*) was *Henry*, honoured with this title, *Anno* 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the Counts *Imperial*, made before that time, I must conclude them to be antienter than the date aforesaid; though that sufficient to enable a far greater Family. By the marriage of *Conrade* the ninth from *Henry*, first with *Elizabeth*, one of the daughters of *Wil. of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and after with the widow of the Earl of *Egmond*, they came to be of such authority amongst the *Netherlands*, as to be privileged with a place and suffrage in the Council of the *States General*: there seated at the present in their greatest honour, especially since the marriage of *Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with a daughter of Earl *Conrade* by his second wife; the mother of *William* of *Nassau*, now Prince of *Orange*, and husband to the Princess *Mary*, the eldest daughter of *Great Britain*. But besides their Estates there, they are possessed in this tract, of 1 *Brunsfels*, which gives Title to the first branch of the house of *Solms*. 2 *Cronenberg*, the possession of the second branch of this Family; and 3 *Solms*, on the North side of the *Lon*, the root of both.

Of the *Imperial Cities* in this Confederation, the first is *Friburg*, called for distinction sake, *Friburg in Weteraw*; to difference it from another Town of that name in *Brissgov*; situate in the middle of delicious and most fruitful fields, and memorable for the stout resistance which it made to *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, at that time Emperor: who when he could not get it by force, or famine, obtained it by fraud; and put to death no less than 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Castle. So hated for that bloody fact, that he was shortly after deprived of the Empire, and slain in fight by *Albert* of *Austria*, his Competitor. The 2d. of the two is *Wetzelaer*, seated on the *Lon*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which rising near *Dillenberg*, a Town of the Earl of *Nassau*, doth here lose its name into the greater. A Town *Imperial*, confederate with *Friburg*, and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common liberties, and the Religion publicly professed amongst them; being that of the *Reformed Churches* of *Calvins* Platform.

10 FRANCONIA.

FRANCONIA or FRANKENLAND, is bounded on the East, with the *Upper Palatinate*, and part of *Uelaland*; on the West, with the *Confederates of Weteraw*, and part of the *Rhene*; on the North, with *Hassia* and *Thuringia*; and on the South, with the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, and some part of *Schwaben*. So called from the *French*, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whose possession it was, when they were first known unto the *Romans*; the residence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province, appropriating the name unto it. Called also *Francia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of *France*, which lay more towards the West. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the present, comprehending to much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*; but subdued from it, and made a Province of it self in these later Ages.

The Countrey on the out parts overgrown wholly in a manner with Woods and Forests, and environed almost with mountains, part of the old *Hercinian Woods*; is within, pleasant, plain, and fruitful: sufficiently plentiful both of corn and wines, but abundantly well stored with *Rape* and *Licorus*, and yielding good pasture for Cattel. So that we may compare it to a fine piece of *Clash*, wrought about with a coarse *List*: or an excellent fine piece of *Lawn*, with a canvas *Selwege*.

Chief

Chief Rivers of it, are 1 The *Main*, or *Mœnus*, which running through the midst of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Frankfort*. 2 The *Sala*, whence the adjoining *French* had the name of *Salii*; and *Conrade*, Emperor of the *Germans*, the surname of *Salicus*. 3 *Radiantis*, 4 *Sinna*, 5 *Tüvero*, 6 *Assur*, &c.

The people of it are ingenious, patient of labour, strong of body, and very industrious, not suffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what sort soever. The offspring of the ancient *French*, who having over-mastered *Gaul*, and the parts adjoining, left here the seminary of their strength, and a stock of their antient Princes: *Marcomir*, brother of *Pharamund* the first King of the *French*, governing in these parts as Duke, and leaving the estate and title unto his posterity. The catalogue of which Princes, take in order thus:

The PRINCES of the FRANKS, and DUKES of FRANCONIA, of the old FRENCH Race:

- A. Ch.
 326 1 *Genebaldus*, the son of *Dagobert*, descended from the old Regal stock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Dutch* nations about 60 or 70 years before, in the name of *Franks*; having subdued those parts which lay towards the River *Mœnus*, became the first Prince of the Eastern *Franks*, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.
 356 2 *Dagobert*, the son of *Genebaldus*, who added the district of *Triers* unto his Estates.
 377 3 *Clodovæus*, or *Ludovicus*, the son of *Dagobert*.
 398 4 *Marcomir*, the son of *Clodovæus*, who extended his Dominion Eastwards towards *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*.
 402 5 *Pharamund*, or *Waramund*, the son of *Marcomir*, the first of this line which took upon himself the title of King of the *French*: on the assuming whereof, (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia*, or *East France*, with the Title of Duke, to his brother *Marcomir*.
 419 6 *Marcomir*, the brother of *Pharamund*.
 423 7 *Prummesser*, by some called *Priamus*, the son of *Marcomir*.
 435 8 *Genebaldus* II. the son of *Prummesser*.
 455 9 *Sunno*, the son of *Genebald* the second.
 478 10 *Clodomirus*, or *Luitomarus*, the son of *Sunno*.
 515 11 *Hygobaldus*, the son of *Clodomir*, who became a *Christian*, and added *Wormes* and *Mentz* unto his Estates.
 541 12 *Helenus*, by some called *Herméricus*, a *Christian* also, who passing over the *Rhene*, subdued that tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorraine*, which the *Dutch* call *Westrich*.
 571 13 *Gotofridus*, the son of *Helenus*, a *Christian* also, but not able to persuade his people to the same belief.
 595 14 *Genebaldus* III. the son of *Gotofrede*.
 615 15 *Clodomir* II. the son of *Genebald* the third.
 638 16 *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the second.
 668 17 *Clodovæus*, or *Clovis* II. the Cousin-German of *Heribert*.
 680 18 *Gosbertus*, the son of *Clovis* the second.
 706 19 *Gosbertus* II. the son of *Gosbert* the first.
 720 20 *Heraunus*, the son of *Gosbert* the second, the last Duke of *Franconia* of this line. Who dying without issue male, *Anno* 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charles* the great; according to a former contract made between those Princes. And *Charles* no sooner had it in his possession, but he bestowed the greatest part of it on *Burchard* the first Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, *Anno* 752. made Bishop of that City by *Boniface*, Arch-bishop of *Mentz* (the first Apostle of this People) but a year before. The Bishops of *Wurtzburg* by this grant were possessed hereof, as long as any of the house of *Charles* the Great did possess the Empire. But his posterity failing in the person of *Conrade*, *Anno* 910. *Otho* the first (who next but one succeeded *Conrade*) invited *Conrade*, husband and to *Luitwardis* his daughter, with this Countrey; giving him withall the title of Duke of *Francony*. Four Princes of this house possessed it: that is to say, this *Conrade* surnamed *Salicus*; and after him three *Henries*, Father, Son, and Nephew, successively enjoying the *Imperial* dignity, by the name of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fifth. This *Henry*, the last Prince of the male line of *Conrade*, dying without issue, *Franconia* fell to *Frederick Barbarossa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next heir to *Henry*, by the Lady *Agnes* his sister, married to *Frederick* the Antient, Duke of *Schwaben*, the grandfather of *Barbarossa*. But that house being also extinct in the person of *Conradine*, *Anno* 1268. and no one heir pretending to the rights thereof; the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former grant: content to let some great ones have a part of the spoils that he and his successors might enjoy the rest. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, (for antiently so much of the *Palatinate* and the Bishoprick of *Mentz* as lay on the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*, were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marquess of *Oroldsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenberg*, *Hennenberg*, and *Hohenloe*, and as many of the Free or *Imperial Cities* as are seated in it. Thus every one did gather sticks when the great Oak fell: the title of the Duke of *Francony*, remaining notwithstanding to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*.

i WURTZB.

Franconia.

WURTZBURG, the Metropolis of Franconia, the seat and residence of the Bishop, who is *Tum-lar Duke* hereof, is situate on the *Mein*, or *Mannus*, in a pleasant plain environed with Meadows, Gardens, and fruitful Mountains; and very well fenced with walls, trenches, bulwarks, and other Arts of modern fortification: well peopled, and for the most part handsomely and neatly built. Passing over the Bridge built of free stone on many large and spacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though ancient) Castle; the ordinary dwelling of the Bishop: and yet so strong, that the many vain attempts of the *Bores* and *Citizens*, apt to pick quarrels with their *Prince*, made it thought impregnable; to which the situation of it on the top of an hill added some advantage, but it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of Sweden, Anno 1631. who after a short, but stout resistance, took it by assault. Other Towns of most note which belong to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*, are 2 *Forchheim*, where it is said that *Pontius Pilate* was born. 3 *Gemund*, at the meeting of the *Mein* and the *Sal*, or *Sala*. Bre-*ta* upon the *Salz*, or *Sala*, not far from *Gemund*: remarkable enough, if for nothing else, for being the birth-place of *Melanchthon* that renowned Scholar, the *Phoenix* of Germany as some call him, and that not unfitly. 4 *Chronach*. 5 *Stapfheilstein*. 6 *Hochstadt*, of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Bishop as chief Lord of all; he is called in the refined *Latine* of these times, *Herbipolitanus*, but commonly *Wurtzburgensis*; differing in sound, but not in sense: for *Wurtzburg* is no other than a *Town* of *Worts*, situate among plants and gardens, as before is said; and *Herbipolis* made up out of several languages, doth signify no more than a *City* of *Herbs*. By whom the Episcopal See was here first erected, and how the Bishops hereof came to be entituled unto their Estates, hath been shewn already. The manner how the new Bishop is admitted, and the old interred, may beworth our knowledge. On the decease of the former Bishop, the *Lord Elect* attended with a great train of horse is to make his entrance. As soon as he come within the Gates, he alights off his horse, and putteth off his robes, and being attired in a poor and deplorable habit, begirt about with a rope, bare-headed, and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Castell*, *Wortheim*, and *Reineck*, to *S. Salvator's* Church, being his Cathedral. The *Dean* and *Canons* there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modestly replyeth, that though unworthily, he is come to discharge the office unto which he is called. Then the *Dean* thus, *I admit thee in the name of this Chapter, committing to thy care this Church of Saint Saviours, and the Dukedome thereunto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and holy Ghost*. Which done he putteth on his Episcopal habit, sayeth *Mass*, and from thence passeth to the Castle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The living Bishop thus invested, proceed we next unto the burial of the dead: whose body being imbowelled, is kept in the Chappel of his *Car-stle*, his heart preserved in a vessel of glass. The next day he is carried to the Monastery of *Saint James*, holding a *Crozier Staff* in his right hand, and a *sword* in his left; buried with which the next day after, in the Church of *S. Saviour*. As for the Revenues of the Bishop, they must needs be great; the Bishop hereof in the time of *Charles* the first, compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, at the price of 220000 Crowns in ready money, and entering into a bond to pay all his debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly guess at the richness of his *Exchequer*, and partly at the greatness of his *Intrado*.

2 The second great Lord of *Franconia* is the Bishop of *BAMBERG*, a City seated on the *Mein*, not far from *Wurtzburg*; the little River *Rednitz* falling there into it: supposed by *Mercator* to bethe *Brannionarium* of *Ptolomy*, and to have took this new name from the hill *Baba* (so called from *Baba*, daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof) upon which it is situate: the right name being *Babenberg* (remember that *Berg* in *Dutch* signifieth an Hill) and contractedly *Hamberg*, a City delightfully seated amongst mountains and pleasant gardens, and in a soil exceeding fruitfull of all necessaries, and yielding *Liquorice* in great plenty: the birth-place of *Joachim Camerarius*, one of the great lights of *Germany*, and a See Episcopal, the Bishop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, subject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair Towns and territories in this Country; but much diminished since the time of *Charles* the first: the Bishop thereof then being, giving to Marquess *Albert* above mentioned, for a cessation from arms, Anno 1530. no less than 60 of his Lordships (most of which fall unto the share of the Marquess of *Onaldbach*) besides the *titulage* of *Bishop* of his *Wards* and *Clients*. Of those which are remaining in the hands of the Bishops, the principal are 1 *Bräunlingen*, 2 *Schlitz*.

3 The third great Lord to be considered is the Marquess of *Onaldbach*, or *Ansbach*, who is Master of no small part of this Country; but his Estate (as those of the other *German* Princes,) confused and intermixed with his Neighbours. His chief Towns, 1 *Onaldbach* or *Ansbach*, the usual residence of these Marquesses, and the birth-place of most of their Children. 2 *Hallwurm*, on the edge of *Wittenberg*; walled in, about the year 1085. and honoured with some publick Schools there founded by Marquess *George Frederick*, Anno 1482. 3 *Pleinfeld*, not far from *Nuremberg*. Such places as they hold in *Voitland*, we shall meet with here.

These Marquesses are of the puissant family of *Brandenburg*, by whom this fair estate was wrested from the Female Heirs of *Wolframus*, the last Lord hereof. The first who did enjoy this Estate and Title was Marquess *George Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*; the Father of *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, and of *George*, the first Marquess of *Legation*; and the Grandfather of that Marquess *Albert*, who in the dayes of *Charles* the first harassed this Country. But his Male-issue by *Casimir* his eldest son, failing in that *Albert*, Anno 1557. it returned to the Electoral house; and by *Sigismund*, a late Elector was given to *Joachim Ernestus*, one of his younger Brethren, who by the Princes of the *Union* for defence of the *Protestant*, was made chief Commander of their Forces, Anno 1620. A charge in which it was supposed

Franconia.

posed, that he carried himself neither so faithfully nor so valiantly, as he should have done; being much condemned for suffering *Spinola* with his Army to pass by unfought with, when he had all advantages that could be wished for, to impede his march: the greatest part of the *Palatinate* being lost immediately upon that neglect; and by degrees the rest of the *United Princes*, either taken off from their engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a constancy. To him succeeded his Son *Christian* now possessed hereof.

As for the other secular Princes which have any considerable estates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenloe*, *Rheineck*, *Castell*, *Wortheim*, *Horpach*, and *Swartzenbourg*, together with the Lords of *Limburg*, and *Rheichsburg*: all of them named so from the chief Town of their Estates, and all those Towns enriched with some suitable Territory. Of these the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Castell*, and *Wortheim*, are *Homagers* to the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him service at his Inthronization: the Earldom of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hanow*, as was shewn before; and that of *Henneberg* most famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increase of Children (as many as there be dayes in the year) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his wife, sister of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as most in *Germany*, fetching their Pedegree as high as to *Charles* the Great, without help of the *Heralds*. But they of greatest power and parentage amongst them, are the Earls of *SWARTZENBURG*, deriving themselves from one *Witkindus*, of the house of *Saxony*: who fighting for his Country against the *French*, Anno 779. was taken Prisoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized at the perswasion of *Lewis* the Godly, son of *Charles* the Great. *Witkindus* his Son and Successor, being baptized at the same time also by the name of *Charles*, was the first Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Castle of his own building on the edge of *Thuringia*, Anno 796. whose posterity do still hold the same, but much improved in their Estates by marriages and other accrements. A race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence, in the affairs of *Germany*: amongst them *Guntar* Earl of *Schwartzenburg*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, against *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovick* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbishop of *Mentz*. By which last solemnly inaugurated at *Aken*, (or *Aquisgrane*) Anno 1349. But being unworthily poisoned by his Competitor, though he died not of it, yet he was made so weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to surrender his pretensions to his mortal enemy; receiving in compensation for his charges 22000 marks in silver, and some Towns in *Thuringia*.

Of the Imperial Cities, which share amongst them the remainders of *Frankenlandt*, the principal are 1. *Frankford* on the *Meine*, so called from its situation on the River *Meine*, to difference it from *Frankford* in the Country of *Brandenburg*. Divided by the River into two parts, joynted together by a Bridge of stone; the lesser part, situate on the right-hand shore of the River, being called *Saxenhausen*; the greater part, properly called *Frankford*, seated on the other. Both under one Magistrate, and both together making up a fair, rich, populous, and well-traded Town, of great both riches and repute by reason of the famous *Marts* here held, in the midst of *Lent* and *September* yearly; and the Election of the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*, as occasion is. The City of a round form, compassed with a double wall, beautified with some walks without the Town on the banks of the River, amongst Vineyards, Meadows, and sweet Groves: called thus, as some say, from *Francus* the son of *Alarconmir*, supposed to be the founder of it, or a *Francorum* vado, as the Ford of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. 2. *Schweinford*, on the *Meine* also, in a fruitful soil. 3. *Rotenburg*, on the River *Tuber*. 4. *Winsheim*. Here is also the Town of 5. *Koburg*, which belongeth to the house of *Saxony*, and gives title unto some of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes *Saxen-Koburg*. And hereto may be added 6. the fair City of *Nuremberg*, conceived by most to be within the *Upper Palatinate*; but by the Emperor *Maximilian* made a member of the Circle of *Franconia*, in regard most of the Estates and possessions of it lie within this Country. Of which indeed they have so plentiful a share, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony*, and his confederates, had driven *Charles* the first out of *Germany*, Marquess *Albert* before mentioned (whose Sword was his best Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no less than an hundred Villages belonging to it, 70 Mannors and Farm-houses appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Woods; and after all this havoc made of their estate, compelled them to compound with him for 400000 Crowns in Money, and six pieces of Ordnance. But being the City it self seems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we shall there meet with it.

Amongst these Prelates, Princes, and Imperial Cities is the great Dukedom of *Franconia*, at this time divided; the title still remaining in the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and some part of the Country: but both the Country and the title of Duke of *Francony*, not long since otherwise disposed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg*, Anno 1631. as before is said, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them; conferred them upon *Barnard* Duke of *Saxon-Weymer*, with title and title of Duke of *Franconia*. Inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*, July, 19. 1633. the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing homage to him, and all the Magistrates and Officers of the several Cities taking the oaths of Allegiance; the new Duke also making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their rights and Priviledges. In the solemnities of which day, the first great Gun discharged in the way of triumph, broke in the going off without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Souldier only. An omen that all this solemn *Act* would prove but a Pageant, and break in pieces at the first giving fire unto it. And so accordingly it did: the victory at *Norlingen*, which followed not long after this, putting the Bi-

Qq

fpo

Wurtemberg, *shops* once more into their possessions; and leaving nothing to the new Duke, but an hungry title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here add the Catalogue of those who were Dukes indeed, and had, together with the Title, the full possession of the Country.

DUKES of *FRANCONIA* of the *DUTCH*
or *GERMAN* RACE.

- 974 1 *Conradus*, surnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the first, whose daughter *Luitgardis* he had married; after the death of *Henry* the second, elected Emperour, by the name of *Conrad* the second, Anno 1025.
- 1040 2 *Henry*, the son of *Conrad*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperour, by the name of *Henry* the third.
- 1056 3 *Henry* II. of *Franconia*, and IV. of the Empire.
- 1106 4 *Henry* III. of *Franconia*, and V. of the Empire.
- 1125 5 *Frederick* II. (surnamed *Barbarossa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the Antient, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his wife, the sister and next heir of *Henry*; succeeded in the Empire after the death of *Conrad* the third, his Uncle, Anno 1153.
- 1190 6 *Frederick* II. the second son of *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.
- 7 *Conrad* II. brother of *Frederick* the second, succeeded in both estates.
- 8 *Philip*, the younger brother of *Conrad*, succeeded in both Dukedoms after his decease; and on the death of *Henry* the sixth his eldest brother, was elected Emperour, Anno 1198.
- 1207 9 *Frederick* III. of *Franconia*, and the V. of *Suevia*, son of the Emperour *Henry* the sixth, whom he succeeded in the Kingdom of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, Anno 1202. and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, Anno 1212, was elected Emperour, of that name the second.
- 1250 10 *Conrad* III. of *Franconia*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV. of the Empire, the son of *Frederick*, the third, whom he succeeded in all his Titles and Estates.
- 1254 11 *Conradin*, son of *Conrad* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben* dispossessed of his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* by *Manfred* the Base brother of his father: and finally beleaked by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who succeeded *Manfred* in those Kingdoms, Anno 1268. After whose death this Royal house being quite extinguished; the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* did again resume the titles of Dukes of *Franconia*; content to let some of the greater Lords and Prelates which lived near unto him, to share in the possession of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the antient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the house of *Schwaben*, were Azure, a Lion Barry of eight pieces Argent and Gules, crowned Or, which why it is now born by the *Lanigraves* of *Hassia*, we shall tell you there.

II. *WIRTEMBERG*.
and
12. *BADEN*.

These I have joyned together, though distinct Estates, because both of them taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*; erected both about one time, and lying very close in a round together: bounded upon the East, and South, with the *Schwaben* properly so called; on the North, with the lower *Palatinate*; on the West, with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schwaben* which is called *Brigow*: parted asunder by the Mountainous ridge of hills called *Schwartzwald*; *Wurtemberg* lying on the East-side thereof and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*.

And first for *WIRTEMBERG*, the air there of is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the soil near *Swartzenwald* lying on the West, and the *Alpes* of *Suevia* on the South, of it self barren and unprofitable; but in some places by the industry of the *Plough-man*, made to yield good corn. But in the middle parts thereof which lye towards the *Neccar*, little inferior for fruitfulness both of Corn and Wine, unto any in *Germany*; besides some silver mines near *Wiltberg*; and about *Puckach*, a small Town, such abundance of *brass*, that the Foundations of the houses seem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Cattle of *Wurtemberg*, the first seat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Intuerger*, inhabiting the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*; or from the *Virthingi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Trebellius Gellio* in the life of *Aurelianus*; to which the word *Berg* being added for a termination, made it first *Turging-berg*, or *Virthin-berg*, and after *Wurtemberg*.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Stutgard*, the Dukes seat, a fair, rich, and populous town, and the chief of the Dukedom; seated in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of wine almost incredible. 2. *Tubingen*, on both sides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair stone Bridge. A Town well built, situate in a very rich soil, and finally adorned with an University here founded by *Eberhard*, the first Duke of *Wurtemberg*, Anno 1477. in which *Leonardus Fuchsius* that great Herbalist and Restaurator of *Physick*, was once a Professor of that Faculty. 3. *Constat*, upon the *Neccar* also, not far from which on top of an hill, stands the old Cattle of *Wurtemberg*.

berg, before mentioned. 4. *Wiberg*, of great esteem for its Mines of silver. 5. *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by *Jews*. 6. *Schorndorf* upon the *Rheims*, much resorted to by reason of the hot baths there; as is also 7. *Nemburg*, on the *Entz*. 8. *Heidenheim*, 9. *Grieningen*, 10. *Marbach*; of which little memorable. There are also within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns Imperial; as 1. *Wimpfen*, and 2. *Hailbrum* on the *Neccar*. 3. *Gepping*, upon the River *Vils*. 4. *Weil*. 5. *Reutling*, on the *Neccar* also, made Imperial by *Frederick* the 2d. Anno 1240. otherwise of no great note but for the Paper mills. 6. *Erling*.

The first Inhabitants hereof, were the *Charitini* of *Ptolomy*, and part of the *Intuerger*, spoken of before; made subject with the rest of these parts to the *Almaini*, after to the *French*, and finally a member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which dismembred in the time of *Henry* 4th after the dangerous war raised against him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practice of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne Imperial, it came to have Princes of its own: the first Earl being *Conrad*, in the year 1100. by the grace and favour of the said Emperour *Henry*. Increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Montbelguard*, and many other accretments, it was made a Dukedom in the person of *Eberhard* the 6. by *Maximilian* the 1. Anno 1495. The Earls and Dukes whereof follow thus in order:

The EARLS and DUKES of *WIRTEMBERG*.

- 1 *Conrad* the first Earl.
- 2 *Ulric* son of *Conrad*.
- 3 *John*, son of *Ulric*.
- 4 *Lewis*, son of *John*.
- 5 *Henry*, son of *Lewis*.
- 6 *Eberhard*, son of *Henry*.
- 7 *Ulric* II. son of *Eberhard*.
- 8 *Eberhard* II. son of *Ulric*.
- 1325 9 *Ulric* III. son of *Eberhard*.
- 1344 10 *Eberhard* III. son of *Ulric*.
- 1394 11 *Ulric* IV. son of *Eberhard*.
- 12 *Eberhard* IV. son of *Ulric*.
- 1417 13 *Eberhard* V. son of *Eberhard* the 4th, by his marriage with *Henrica*, or *Henriette*, daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Montbelguard*, added that Earldom to his house.
- 1419 14 *Lewis*, or *Ludovick* II. son of *Eberhard* the 5th.
- 1456 15 *Eberhard* VI. son of *Lewis*, Founder of the University of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the first, the first Duke of *Wurtemberg*, Anno 1495. He deceased without issue, Anno 1496.
- 1496 16 *Eberhard* VII. son of *Ulric*, the younger brother of *Lewis* the 2d. succeeded on the death of *Eberhard*, his Cousin-German.
- 1504 17 *Henry*, the brother of *Eberhard* the 7th.
- 1519 18 *Ulric* V. son of *Henry* the 2d. expelled out of his Dukedom by *Charles* the 5th. for the sack of *Reutling* an Imperial City; and his Estate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, the brother of *Charles*: but after 15 years exile, restored to his Dukedom, by *Philip* Landgrave of *Hessia*. He reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the University of *Tubingen*.
- 1550 19 *Christopher*, the son of *Ulric* the 5th a follower of his Fathers steps in Reformation of the Church, and Advancement of Learning.
- 1568 20 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* III. son of *Christopher*.
- 21 *Frederick*, son of *George* Earl of *Montbelguard*, the brother of *Ulric* the 5th. made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1597.
- 22 *John* *Frederick*, son of *Frederick* the first.
- 23 *John* *Eberhard*, eldest son of the former Duke, now living, Anno 1648.

The Revenues of this Duke are supposed to be equal unto those of the *Electors Palatine*, spoken of before; and were it not for the silver mines in *Saxony*, little inferior to those of that Duke. But for provisions of war, (excepting Powder only) he is meanly furnished. A main defect, considering the ill terms he stands in with the Imperial Cities, betwixt whom and the house of *Wurtemberg*, there have been always open wars, or secret jealousies.

His Arms are Or, 3 Attires of a Stag born Palie-barrie, Sable.

As for the Marquissate of *BADEN*, lying on the Westside of *Schwartzwald*, betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the most part, except towards those *Wolds*, a very pleasant and fruitful Country; and much of the same nature, with the rest of *Wurtemberg*; so called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marquess keeps his seat in Winter; and that so named from the hot Baths there; as is also *Baden* (called for distinction sake, the *Upper Baden*) amongst the *Switzers*; in which respect the City of *Bath* in *Somersetshire* had antiently the name of *Caer-Baden* also. Of these Baths it is supposed that there are in this City at least 300, profitable for many diseases and exulcerate sores, drawing a great resort of people from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquissate, from whence the Princes have the Title of Marquesses of *Baden*. The next to this is 2. *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a second branch of this house; called also sometimes Marquesses of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marquesses of *Baden-Durlach*. 3. *Liebenzell*, amongst the hills of *Schwartzwald*, famous for hot medicinal Springs. 4. *Lichtal*, remarkable for a Monastery, the burial place of the first Marquess. 5. *Gerspach*, in the very heart of that Mountainous tract. 6. *Pfortheim*, adjoining to the Wood *Hagenscheis*, a branch of *Schwartzwald*. 7. *Rotelen*, 8. *Badenwile*, and 9. *Susenburg*, all seated in the

Northgoia. Upper-Baden, being that part hereof which lies next to Brisgaw. 10. Milberg, beautified with a fair Castle, the usual retiring place of these Princes in the heats of Summer.

This *Marquisate* being also taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was founded in the person of *Herman*, of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deserving well of the Emperor *Henry* the 5th, was by him seized in some Lands about these parts, *An.* 1120. and after marrying with the daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* created the first Marquess of *Baden*, *Anno* 1155. The Estate was after much increased by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg*, and the Appendixes thereof in *Schwaben*; into which *Christopher* the 13th Marquess hereof, succeeded on the death of his Cousin *Philip*, the last Earl of *Hochberg*; both Princes descending originally from two brothers; of which the eldest in right of the Lady *Judith* his wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the second by the favour of the said *Frederick Barbarossa*, was made Marquess of *Baden*. They were Masters also of many fair Estates in the *Lower Palatinate*, which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there said) are since possessed of. Other particulars shall be shewn (if occasion be) in the ensuing Catalogue of

The MARQUESSSES of BADEN.

- | | | | |
|------|--------------------------------------|------|--|
| 1155 | 1 Herman, the first Marquess. | 1453 | 12 Charles, son of James; the first of these Marquesses which was possessed of the County of <i>Spanheim</i> in the <i>Lower Palatinate</i> , descending on this house by <i>Matild</i> wife of <i>Rodolph</i> the 2d. |
| | 2 Herman II. | | |
| | 3 Herman III. | | |
| | 4 Herman IV. | | |
| 1281 | 5 Rodolph, son of Herman 4. | 1475 | 13 Christopher, son of Charles, who after the death of Philip, the last Marquess of <i>Hochberg</i> , succeeded also in that estate. |
| 1295 | 6 Herman V. son of Rodolph. | | |
| | 7 Rodolph II. son of Herman the 5th. | 1515 | 14 Barnard, son of Christopher, his brother <i>Ernest</i> succeeding in that of <i>Hochberg</i> . |
| 1356 | 8 Frederick, son of Rodolph the 2d. | | |
| | 9 Rodolph III. son of Frederick. | | |
| 1372 | 10 Barnard, son of Rodolph the 3d. | | |
| 1431 | 11 James, son of Barnard. | | |
- 15 Christopher II. son of Barnard, his elder brother *Philibert*, and *Philip* son of *Philibert*, dying in the life of Barnard.
- 16 Edward, son of Christopher, intending the sale of his Estates to pay his debts, was forcibly deprived of all by
- 17 Ernest, Marquess of *Hochberg*, nephew of Ernest above mentioned; who by that means not only preserved the Marquisate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it, and removed his ordinary seat to *Durlach*.
- 18 George, brother of Ernest, Marquess of *Baden* and *Hochberg*.
- 19 Frederick the son of George, born in the year 1594. succeed his Father in both Estates; and (if living) hath a son called also Frederick, to enjoy them after his decease.

NORTHGOIA,

OR

The UPPER PALATINATE.

The County of *NORTHGOIA*, so called from the Northern situation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is sometimes also called the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, because antiently belonging to that Estate; but generally *Ober Pfaltz*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Lower*. It is bounded on the East with *Bohemia*; on the West, with *Franconia*, and part of *Schwaben*; on the North, with *Voitland*; and on the South, with *Bavaria*. The Countrey for the most part somewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in mines of iron, which it yieldeth in most places, and some of silver about *Amberg*; extended from *Haimbourg* to the edge of *Bohemia*, 80 miles; and from the hill *Felchtelberg* in the edge of *Voitland*, to *Welsenberg* near the banks of the *Danow*, 68 miles.

Observable things touching this Province, are chiefly two. First, that out of the mountain *Fichtelberg*, before mentioned, arise 4 Rivers running to the four quarters of the world; that is to say, the *Eger* towards the East, the *Mein* or *Mann* towards the West, the *Sala* or *Salza* to the North, and the *Nab* *Nabus* to the South; so that it may be probably thought, to be the highest hill in all *Germany*. 2ly. That in the Southwest corner of it are two little Rivers, the one called *Almul*, which falleth into the *Danow*; and the other *Rahnitz*, which runs into the *Mein*, and finally into the *Rhene*: between the heads whereof, being not much distant, *Charles* the Great once began to dig a Channel, for making a passage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thousand men: but partly by excess of rain, and partly by some strange affrightments (all which they did in the day, being undone in the night) he was fain to desist. Some parts of the intended water-course are to be seen near *Walsenbourg*, spoken of before, which standeth in the middle way betwixt both Rivers.

Chief places of this Countrey which belong to the Electoral Family, are 1. *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commodity of iron digged out of the neighbouring hills; here fashioned into all sorts of *Utensils*, and hence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoining, but prouder of its mines of silver than those veins of iron, affording to the Princes Coopers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2. *Monheim*, in the midst of a fruitful valley, near a wood of *Juniper*. 3. *Nenburg* upon the River *Swartzbach*, which gives title to the second branch of the *Palatine* house, called the Count *Palatine* of

Nenburg, competitors with the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, for the whole Duesdom of *Cleveland*, and finally possessed of *Galick*, and the members of it. 4. *Keibaim*, at the meeting of the *Danow*, with the River *Almul*. 5. *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the River *Regen*; which passing thence falleth into the *Danow*, near the City of *Regensburg*. 6. *Castel*, where the Electors for the most part hold their Residence, when they are in this Countrey. 7. *Averbach*, 8. *Salzbach*, 9. *Weiden*, 10. *Nenm*.

There are also in this Countrey some Towns belonging to the *Lantgraves* of *Luchtemberg*, one of the four old *Lantgraves* of the Empire; the other three being *Duringen*, *Hassia* and *Alsatia*: 10 called from *Luchtemberg* an old Castle, situate on a lofty hill not far from *Pfrend*, the chief Town and ordinary seat of these *Lantgraves*, seated on the River *Nab*. 2. *Gronsfelden*, 3. *Schonbussen*, an ordinary pass and bating place, in the way from *Prague* to *Nuremberg*.

But the chief City of this Countrey, and perhaps of *Germany*, is *Nuremberg* itself, *Nori-bega* in the modern, but *Noricum* in the antient *Latine*. So called from an antient Castle called *Castrum Noricum*, the ruins of which are still remaining: encompassed with a deep but dry ditch, now of no use nor ornament to the City at all; but revered for its antiquity as the Mother of *Nuremberg*. The Castle said by some to be built in the time of *Claudius Caesar*. More probably by some of the *Norici*, who terrified with the invasion of *Attila*, in the decline and wain of the *Roman* Empire, relinquished *Bavaria*, where before they dwelt, and passed over the *Danow*, there to provide themselves of a safer dwelling. Conquered by the *Bavarians*, it became, together with their Conquerours, subject to the French: in the time of *Lewis* the 3d. it became Imperial; and was walled and fortified during the reign of *Charles* the 4th. From that time it increased so fast both in wealth and beauty, that it is counted the greatest and wealthiest City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it 11 stone bridges for passage over the *Pegnitz*, which runneth through it; 12 Conduits of fresh water; 13 common Baths, 116 publick Wells, and 128 Streets. Of figure square, environed with a triple wall of 8 miles in circuit, and plentifully stored with all sorts of Ammunition. The Marquesses of *Brandenburg* in former times were the *Burggraves* of it; an office of great power and jurisdiction; but sold for a good sum of money by *Frederick* the 3d. *Anno* 1414. *Albert* his son attempting to recover the old office again, besieged the Town, having no less than 17 Princes on his side, and yet could not force it. That for an Argument of its strength. A proof and evidence of the wealth of it we have seen before; in that great stock made of their Towns and Villages, and the great ransom they were put to by another *Albert*, spoken of in *Franconia*. And it adds much unto the commendation of the people, that this great wealth is gotten by their indefatigable industry; the Town being situate on a barren and sandy soil, and destitute of those helps which commonly a navigable River brings into a City: those great possessions which belong to the State hereof, being gotten out of the fire, as the saying is, by their continual working of iron and other manufactures; occasioning a resort hither of Merchants from all parts of *Germany*.

Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate*, are 1. *Altorf*, where the *Nurembergers* founded an University for the study of all Arts and Sciences, *Anno* 1575. 2. *Erspruck*, a great Town and well seated, belonging to the State of *Nuremberg* also. 3. *Eistad* (*Aichstadium* in the *Latine*) an Episcopal See, situate on the River *Almul*. 4. *Walsenbourg*, an Imperial City on the Borders of *Schwaben*. Here was also in this Province (if not still remaining) the Town of *Winberg*, memorable for the piety and gallantry of the women of it. For the Town being besieged and distressed by the Emperor *Conrade* the 3d. for siding against him with the *Guelfs* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the surrender of it, but that the women might have leave to depart in safety; and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained, they took their husbands on their backs, and so left the Town: and by that noble act so moved the affections and compassion of the angry Prince, that he spared the Town, and gave them all a general pardon. It is said by some, that the odious names of *Guelfs* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of *Christendom* was so long distracted) took their beginning at this siege: the first so called from *Guelso*, brother of *Henry* the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whose cause they fought: the other from *Veibling*, (the French and *Italians* speak it *Guelbling*) a Town of *Frankenland*, in which that Emperor was born. Another original hereof, we had in our description of the State of *Florence*: but I take this to be the more probable of the two, though neither certain.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Narisci* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards some of the *Norici* fearful or grown impatient of the *Roman* yoke, came over the *Danubius* to them, and built that famous Castle called *Castrum Noricum*, where now stands *Nuremberg*. Overpowered by the *Romi*, and uniting with them in the name of *Boiarians*, they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339. when *Ludovick*, the Emperor and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the estate betwixt him and *Rodolphus* his elder brother, relinquished it for ever to the house of the *Palatines*. Returned for the present to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom conferred, together with the Electoral dignity, by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the 2d. in recompence of the great service done him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof, in the war of *Bohemia*; and the great charge he had been at, in the reduction of that Kingdom to the house of *Austria*. How long it will continue thus, is known only to God, the disposer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly, nor the *Palatines* since, have been so fully Masters of it, but that the *Lantgrave* of *Luchtemberg*, and the City of *Nuremberg*, have put in for a share.

The Arms of which great and puissant City are Azure, an Harpie displayed, crowned, crined, and armed, Or.

13. The KINGDOM of BOHEMIA.

The Kingdom of BOHEMIA, containing Bohemia it self, with the incorporate Provinces, is bounded on the East, with Poland and Hungary; on the West, with the Upper Palatinate, Voithland, and Misnia; on the North, with the Marquissate of Brandenburg, and some part of Misnia; and on the South, with Austria, and Bavaria. It comprehends in it, besides Bohemia it self, the Marquissate of Moravia, with the Dukedoms of Silesia and Lusatia.

1. BOHEMIA, encompassed about with woody Mountains, part of the Hercynian, is bounded on the East, with Moravia; on the West, with the Upper Palatinate, and Voithland; on the North, with Misnia, Lusatia, and some part of Silesia; on the South, with parts of Bavaria and Austria.

It took this name from the *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof. By *Pomponius Mela* called *Bemi*, with the Addition of *Gens magna*; by *Tacitus* they are called *Boiemi*, who make them the Descendants of the *Boii*, a Gallick Nation, who to avoid the servitude which they feared from Rome, put themselves into these Hercynian Deserts, which from them was named *Boio hemum*; by which name it occur-reth in *Pelleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* first, and the *Slaves* and *Croatians* afterwards, became Masters of it, these last continuing their possession to this very day: yet it retaineth still the name of *Bohemia* amongst the *Latines*, as that of *Bohemerland* amongst the *Dutch*.

It contains in compass about 550 English miles. The soil indifferently fruitful, and enriched with mines of all sorts, except of Gold. *Tinne* they have here in good plenty, the mines whereof were first found out by a *Cornish-man*, banished out of England, Anno 1240. which discovery of *Tinne* in these parts, was, as saith my Author, in *magnam jacturam Richardi Comitis Cornubie*, (he meant that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*;) and no marvel, for in those times there was no *Tinne* in all Europe, but in England. Wood they have here good store; and in some of their Forests a Beast called *Lomie*, which hath hanging under its neck a bladder full of scalding water; with which, when she is hunted, she so tortureth the Dogs, that she easily escapeth them. Of corn they have sufficient for their own use, and sometimes also an increase above their spending, wherewith they do supply their neighbours of the Upper Palatinate: but they want Wine, the Air being too sharp and piercing to produce a good Vintage. And it yields also store of *Saffron*, nowhere to be bettered; with plenty of medicinal drugs.

The principal Rivers hereof, are 1. the *Elb*, or *Albis*, having here its spring; of whose course we have spoken elsewhere. 2. *Egra*, 3. the *Muldaw*, or *Muldavins*, and 4. the *Warts*; all three exonerating themselves into the *Elb*, which runneth through the middest of the Countrey.

The Kingdom is not (as others) divided into Counties, and Provinces; but into the Territories and possessions of several Lords; who have great authority and command over their Vassals. The figure of the whole in a manner Circular, the Diameter whereof reacheth every way some 200 miles: containing in that compass 700 Cities, walled Towns, and Castles; and (as some say) 30000 Villages. Inhabited by a people given to drink and gluttony; and yet valiant, and with sense of honour: this last belonging to the Nobility, and Gentry; the former to the common people; but more moderately than most others of the German Nations. All of them, Princes or Plebeians, rich, poor, noble, and base, use the *Slavonian* language, as their mother tongue.

The chief Bohemian Captain that ever I read of, was *Ziska*; who in eleven battels fought in the defence of the *Hussites*, against the Pope and his confederates, prevailed, and went away victorious: in-fomuch, that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flea him, and make a drum of his skin; persuading himself, if they so did, they could never be overcome. A fancy like to that of *Scipio African*, and *Vortimer* King of Britain, spoken of before. Scholars of most note, *John Hus*, and *Hugom* of Prague, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The Christian faith was first preached by *S. Methodius*, the first Bishop and Apostle of the *Moravians*, (whom some call *Borissinus*) Anno 900. or thereabouts: *Borissinus*, the 8th Duke from *Cro-cus*, being the first Christian Prince, and next to him, *Wenceslaus* the second. This last most cruelly murdered by *Boleslaus*, his brother, at the instigation of *Drabomir*, an obstinate Heathen, mother to them both: who having caused the Ministers of the Lord to be butchered, and their bodies to lie un-buried for two years together, was swallowed, coach and all, in that very place where their bodies lay. Confirmed by this prodigy, they continued constant in the Faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of some notable vanity. For one *Picardus* coming out of the Low-countries, drew a great sort of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the same state of per-fection, that *Adam* was in before his fall; from whence they were called *Picards* and *Adamites*. They had no respect unto marriage; yet could they not accompany any woman, until the man coming to *Adam*, said unto him, *Father Adam, I am inflamed towards this woman*; and *Adam* made answer, *In-cresse and multiply*. They lived in an Island which they called *Paradise*, and went stark naked; but they continued not long: for *Ziska* hearing of them, entred their *fools Paradise*, and put them all to the sword, Anno 1416. But to make amends for this folly, they were exceeding zealous of the Reformation. For much about the same time, the works of *Wickliff* were brought into Bohemia, by a certain scholar who had been Student in the University of Oxford, which hapning into the hands of *John Husse* and *Hierom* of Prague, (two men whereof this Countrey doth much boast) wrought in their hearts a de-sire to reform the Church. A business which they prosecuted so earnestly, that being summoned to the Council of Constance, they were there condemned for Hereticks, and burned, Anno 1414. yet had their

their doctrine such deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be destroyed by the Tyrannies of war, or persecution (though both were used) to this very day; multitudes of the Professors of it living in this Kingdom under the names of *Calistini*, and *Sub utraque*, as before is said; but much both strengthened and increased by the writings of *Luther*, *Melanchthon*, *Calvin*, and such other of the *Protestant* Doctors, as travelled in the work of Reformation. But this increase of strength and numbers proved their greatest weakening. For growing insolent upon the sense of their strength and power, they joined themselves into a party, got many of the *Romish-Catholics* to adhere unto them under colour of asserting their Civil rights, and in the heat of some disputes, caused certain of the Emperors Council to be thrown out of the windows of the Counsel-chamber; and finally about the later end of the reign and Empire of *Matthias*, they brake out into open Arms. In the course whereof, the *Calvinians* being of most power, and having got a King of their own opinions, so disoblighd the *Lutherans*, and more moderate Papists, who had concurred with them at the first: that being invaded on the one side by a *Lutheran* Army under the command of the Duke of Saxony, and a *Papish* Army on the other by the Duke of Bavaria, they were, in fine, utterly suppressed, and made inconsiderable: the conquering and success-ful Emperor (*Ferdinand* the 2d.) taking this occasion, to extirpate the *Protestant* Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of most importance in it, are 1. *Budweis*, (conceived to be the *Marobodurum* of *Protonius*) a town towards Austria. 2. *Augst*, near the head of the *Elb*. 3. *Tabor*, a strong Town built by *Ziska*, to be a retreat for the *Hussites*. 4. *Jaromir*, and 5. *Molmuck*, both upon the *Elb*. 6. *Litomissel*, an Episcopal See, bordering on Moravia. 7. *Pilsen*, the last town of this Kingdom which yielded to the prevailing Imperialists, in the late long war about that Crown: and then also betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a sum of money; by some of the Souldiers of Count *Mansfeld*, who was then absent, and had so long defended it against the Enemy. 8. *Elbogen*, much esteemed for the hot medicinal Baths; situate on the River *Egra*. 9. *Egra*, so called of the same River, on which (near to the borders of the Upper Palatinate) it is strongly situate: a large fair City, containing three miles in compass. Imperial once, but sold by the Emperor *Ludovicus* *Bavarius*, to *John*, King of Bohemia, for 400000 marks of Silver: in compass less, for sweetness of the place, elegance of the build-ings, pleasantness of site, and richness of soil, superiour farre to Prague it self. 10. *Prague*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom; situate in the middest thereof, on the River *Muldaw*: consisting of four several Towns, each of which hath its several Customs, Laws, and Magistrates. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly buildings, a spacious Market-place, and a stately Counsel-house: the second called the *New Town*, separated from the *Old*, by a Ditch of great depth, and wideness. The third, called the *Little Town*, is divided from the *Old*, by the River *Mul-daw*, joynd to it by a beautiful Bridge, consisting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the hill *Rachine*; on the sides of which are many fair and stately houses belonging to the Nobility, over-looked by the strong Castle of *St. Wenceslaus* (situate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the Bohemian Kings, and the later Emperors, have kept their Residence. The fourth town is that of the *Jews*, who have here five Synagogues, and live according to their own Law. The whole City rather large than fair, the streets being in winter very dirty, of ill smell in the summer; the build-ings for the most part of clay and timber, clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though encompassed with Walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open town (so poor and weak are the defences) in-fomuch, that whosoever is master of the Field, will be master of the City also. And yet besides the honour of being the Royal Seat; it hath also of long time been an Arch-bishops See; and by *Charles* the fourth, Emperor and King of Bohemia, made an University. Near unto this Town was fought that memorable battel, between the Duke of Bavaria, and Count *Buc-owy*, Lieutenant for the Emperor *Ferdinand* the second, with 50000 men on the one side; and *Frederick* newly elected King of Bohemia, with the Prince of Anhalt, the Count of Thurne, and 30000 men, on the other side. It was fought on the eighth of November, *stylo novo*, wherein (such was the unsearchable will of God) the victory fell unto the Imperials: the young Prince of Anhalt, Thurne, and *Saxon-Weimar*, with divers others, being taken prisoners; the Bohemian Ordnance all surpris'd, Prague forced to yield unto the Victor, and King *Frederick* with the Queen, compelled to flee unto *Silesia*. A most lamentable and unfortunate loss, not to this people only, but to the whole cause of the Reformed Religion. Yet it is not unworthy of our observation, that this great battel was fought upon a Sun-day, the 8th of November, about the time of morning Prayer: in the Gospel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after Trinity Sunday) is that famous passage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ sunt CÆ-SARIS*; i.e. Render unto Cæsar, the things which are Cæsars; which seemed to judge the quarrel on the Emperors side.

But whether of the two Pretendents had the juster Cause, may best be seen by canvassing the Records of that State and Nation (for the success of War is no standing Rule for measuring the equity, and justice of the causes of it;) by which it will be clearly seen, that since the erecting of that King-doms by the *Slaves* or *Croatians*, it hath been evermore disposed at the will of the Emperor, or by election of the States, and People. But I intend not at the present to dispute that point, but only lay down the story of the Kings and People, as in other places; since the first coming of the *Slavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Justinian*; at what time they inhabited on the banks of the *Ister*; but on the further side thereof, opposite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good successes against that Empire, their name was taken up by the rest of the *Sarmatians* of Europe; who either waning room, or not liking of their colder Countries, passed on more Westwards: and by degrees possessed themselves of those parts of Germany, which formerly had

Moravia. 1619 35 Frederick, Elector Palatine, the strongest German Prince of the Calvinists, and most potent by his great alliances; was elected King of Bohemia, and crowned at Prague, together with his wife, on the fifth day of November. The Prince derived his descent from the Lady Sophia, sister to Ladislaus the 2^d. King of Poland and Bohemia; and married Elizabeth, daughter to James King of great Britain, and Anne of Denmark; which Anne descended from the Lady Anne, daughter of Albertus of Austria, and elder sister to Elizabeth, mother to Ladislaus the 2^d. above named; from whom the claim of Austria is derived.

1621 35 Ferdinand III. son of Ferdinand the 2^d. elected King of Bohemia, during the life both of his Father, and of Frederick the Prince Elector also; after whose death he succeeded in this Kingdom both in right and fact: King of Hungary also, Archduke of Austria, and Emperor of Germany, now living, Anno 1648. more moderate in his Counsels than his Father Ferdinand, and more inclinable to peace; (though honored with a more signal victory against the Swedes, in the battle of Norlingen, than his Father was in all his life;) which the Conclusions made at Munster are sufficient proof of.

Of the Revenues, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdom, we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view of the rest of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. MORAVIA is bounded on the East, with Hungary; on the West, with Bohemia; on the North, with Silesia; and on the South, with the lower Austria, and the River Teia: fenced on the West, by the Woods and Mountains of Bohemia, parts of the Hercynian Forrest; on the North, by some spurs or branches of it, called Asclurgius by Ptolemy; on the two other sides open like an half moon, or semicircle. The most fruitful place of corn in all Germany, and hath no small store of Frankincense; which, contrary to the nature of it, growth not on a tree; but out of the earth: and that too (which adds much to the miracle, if *Dubravium* do report it rightly) in the shape and figure of those parts, which men and women do most endeavour to conceal.

The former Inhabitants of this Province were the *Marcomanni*, and part of the *Quadi*, against whom, when *M. Antoninus* the Emperor made war, he had unawares run himself into such a straight, that his Army was environed with Mountains one way, and enemies the other. To this (as calamities seldom go alone) was added the extraordinary heat and drought then being. To the Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the Captain of his Guard, telling him, that he had in his Army a legion of *Christians* (*Milites* he calleth them) which by Prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperor lendeth for them, desiring them to make supplication for the Army; which they did, and God Almighty that never turneth a deaf ear to the Prayers of his servants, when they are either for his glory, the Churches, or their own good; scattered and vanquished the *Quadi*, with thunder, shot and artillery from heaven; and refreshed the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleasant shower. This miracle purchased to that legion the surname of *νεκρωβία*, i. e. the *thunderer*; and induced the Emperor to honour men of that holy profession, and to make an end of the fourth persecution, *A. Ch. 174*. Thus *Xiphilius* hath it in his *Dion*; which coming from the pen of an Heathen, as his Author was, is of more credit in a matter of such concernment unto Christianity, than if it had proceeded from *Secrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other Ecclesiastical Writer.

Places of most note herein, are 1. *Olmütz*, on the River *Marck* (or *Mora*) the chief town of the Country, and a small University; near which, out of the hill *Odenberg* bordering on *Silesia*, springeth the great river of *Odra*, whose course we have before prescribed. 2. *Brinn*, on the River *Schnaitz*, the seat of the ancient Marquesses. 3. *Radisch*, and 4. *Cremser*, both upon the *Marck* or *Mora*. 5. *Svatini*, on the *Teia*; 6. *Niclasberg*, (*Mons Nicolai* in the Latine) bordering on the *Lower Austria*. 7. *Iglau*, 8. *Newburg*, 9. *Weiskirchen*. 10. *Bosertitz*, of which little memorable. 11. *Gratisko*, near to which (and to this place only) the *Frankincense* is found to grow in the shape and form before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is said) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*; after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Slaves*, who from their habitation on the River *Mora*, called themselves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia*, (the Dutch call it *Merhern*.) Extended at that time over all the *Lower Austria*, to the banks of the *Danow* on the South, and as far as to the River *Tibiscus* (over-spreading a great part of the *Upper Hungary*) towards the East. Governed at the first by their own Kings, the first, whose name occurs, being *Ruslari*, in the time of the Emperor *Leuis the Godly*; by whom taken Prisoner, and his Realm made Tributary to the Empire. After him succeeded *Harmodanus*, and then *Suantopulcus*, in whose time the *Moravians* and other Nations of the *Slaves*, received the Gospel, by the preaching of *Cyrl* and *Methadius* two Grecian Doctors: officiating all divine Services in the *Slavonian* or vulgar Language. For which when they made sure to the Pope then being, to whose authority (as Patriarch of the Western Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delaid the business, a voice was heard, as if it had come from Heaven, saying these words, *Omnis Spiritus laudet dominum, & omnia Lingua confiteatur ei*. Upon which miracle their sute was granted at the last, and a Letter Decretal sent unto that effect from Pope John the 8th to *Suantopulcus* (or *Sfantopulcher* as some call him) above mentioned. A privilege by them enjoyed full 200 years, and then reverted by Gregory 7th, commonly called Pope *Hildebrand*, in his letters to *Uratiflaus* the first King of Bohemia, Anno 1086.

But to return unto the story, *Suantopulcus* son to *Suantopulcus*, succeeded next, deposed, or rather beaten out of his Country, by the Emperor *Arnulph*, for denying the accustomed tribute. A prince of great spi-

pirit, and of as great command; having at one time under him, not *Moravia* only, according to the largest limits, but *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* also. *Arnulph* not able otherwise to effect this purpose, called in the *Hungarians* (though at that time *Pagans*) by whose help the *Moravian* was subdued, and his Kingdom shattered into pieces: seized on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations; and finally reduced to the present limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquisate, (but by whom we find not) one of the Marquesses hereof being *Jodocus Barbatius*, elected Emperor, Anno 1410. After whose death, *Sigismund* his next heir, Emperor and King of Bohemia, gave it to his son-in-law, *Albert Duke of Austria*, Anno 1417. who in the end succeeded him in all his Estates, since which time it hath alwayes gone along with the Crown of Bohemia.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it, were *Azure*, an Eagle chequered *Or* and *Gules*, membred and langued of the same.

2. SILESIA, (or *SCHLESIA*, as the Dutch call it) is bounded on the East, with Poland; on the West, with *Lusatia*; on the North, with *Brandenbourg*; and on the South, with *Moravia*. Wholly encompassed with Mountains, except towards the North; which lets in a sharp air upon them: the midland part being full of Woods, but withal of Minerals.

Chief Cities are *Jagendorfe*, or *Jegerndorfe*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius* of the Family of *Brandenbourg*, commonly called the Marquess of *Jagendorfe*. The Lands and Estates in his possession, first given by *Ladislaus King of Bohemia*, to *George* surnamed *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Frederick of Brandenbourg*, the first Marquess of *Aspach* of this house, for the many good services he had done him. But his posterity being extinct, they fell to the said *John Georgius*, brother to *Sigismund* the Elector: profcribed by *Ferdinand* the second, for adhering to the party of *Frederick Prince Elector Palatine*: A Prince of great note and activeness, in the beginning of the late German and Bohemian wars. 2. *Munsterberg*, which gives the title of Duke to the posterity of *George Pogebrazz*, once King of Bohemia, advanced by him unto this honor and a fair Estate. 3. *Glatz* or *Gletz*, the last town of Bohemia, which held out for *Frederick* the Elector, against that Emperor. 4. *Glogaw*, a strong town on the River *Odera*. 5. *Niest*, on a River so named, an Episcopal See. 6. *Breslaw*, in Latine *Cracovia*, so called from *Cracivus*, the founder of it; once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whose procurement it was made an Episcopal See, Anno 970. or thereabouts. It is situate on the River *Odera*, all the water wherein could not save it from being burnt down to the ground, Anno 1341. but it was presently re-edified with fair Free-stone; and is now one of the pretiest Cities (for the bigness of it) in all Germany: fair, populous, and well contrived, with open and even streets; the chief of the Countrey. 7. *Oppolen*, on the *Odera* also, well fortified both by Art and Nature, barricadoed by the River on the West, and on the East with good out-works, strong walls, and a fair Cattle. 8. *Straten*. 9. *Reichenbach*, both made towns of war, since the beginning of the Bohemian troubles.

There are also within this Province the two *Seigneuries* of *Prignitz*, and *Crossen*, so called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the Elector of *Brandenbourg*; the two Dukedoms of *Opwitz*, and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of Poland; as also the Dukedom of *Lignitz*, and *Sweinitz*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns; of which two last, *Sweinitz* is in the immediate possession of the Kings of Bohemia; and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an *Humager* and *Tributary* of that King.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Marsigni*, *Burii*, *Gothini*, and some part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eastern parts of Germany amongst the *Slaves*, laid unto the Dukedom or Kingdom of Poland; continuing part thereof till the time of *Udalissius* the second: who being driven out of his Kingdom, by his brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbarossa*, elected in this Countrey, to be held under the Sovereignty of the King of Poland. Divided betwixt his three sons, and afterwards subdivided amongst their posterities, according to the ill custom of Germany, it became broke at last into fourteen Dukedoms, of 1. *Breslaw*, 2. *Oppolen*, 3. *Ratibor*, 4. *Cessin*, 5. *Bethom*, 6. *Glogaw*, 7. *Segan*, 8. *Olents*, 9. *Steinaw*, 10. *Falkenbourg*, 11. *Sweinitz*, 12. *Lignitz*, 13. *Opwitz*, and 14. *Zator*. Of all which only the two last do remain to Poland; the five first being made subject to the Kings of Bohemia, by *Venceslaus* the second; the five next, by King *John of Luxembourg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the possession of a Proprietary Duke (as before was said) and *Sweinitz* given to *Charles* the fourth Emperor and King of Bohemia, by the Will and Testament of *Boleslaus* the last Duke: all *Silesia* by this means (except the Dukedoms of *Opwitz* and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of Bohemia: of which it is rather an incorporate, than subject Province.

4. *LUSATIA*, by the Dutch called *Lausnitz*, is bounded on the East, with *Silesia*; on the West, with *Misnia*; on the North, with *Brandenbourg*; and on the South, with *Bohemia*. The Countrey rough and full of Woods, yet plentiful enough of corn, and of such fruits, as naturally arise out of the earth: so populous and thick set with people, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot, as good as any in Germany. Most commonly it is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*; the first confining on *Bohemia*, the last on *Brandenbourg*.

Places of most note in the higher *Lausnitz*, are 1. *Bautzen*, (*Badissium* the Latine call it) the first Town attempted and taken in by the Duke of Saxony, when he took upon him the execution of the Emperors *Bann*, against *Frederick Elector Palatine*, then newly chosen King of Bohemia: The poor Prince in the mean time in an ill condition, the *Saxon* being the head of the *Lutheran*; and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Papist* party, arming both against him. So jealous are both sides of the active and restless Calvinian spirit; as to leave no means unassayed for the suppressing of it. Seated it is upon the

Silesia
and
Lusatia.

Brandenburg.

Spre, and for the most part is the seat of the Governor, for the King of Bohemia. 2. *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Nisse*, which gave the title of Duke to *John*, brother of *Sigismund* Emperor and King of Bohemia; and Father of *Elizabeth* the last Dutchess of *Luxembourg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine near Town, well frequented, and strongly fortified: founded about the year 1231. and not long after so consumed by a merciless fire, Anno 1301. *ut ne unica domus remaneret*, as my Author hath it, that there was not one house left of the old foundation. But it was presently re-built in a more beautiful form, and more strong materials, than before it was; both publick and private buildings, very near and elegant. 3. *Zittau*, on the same River, bordering on Bohemia. 4. *Lützen*, *Lubben*, 6. *Camitz*, of which little memorable: but that together with the former they make up those 3 towns which are confederate together in a stricter league, for their mutual defence and preservation; but under the protection, and with the approbation, of the Kings of Bohemia. Then in the *LOWER Lusatia* there is 7. *Spreenberg*, so named from its situation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Countrey; and in ancient times was called *Suevici*; supposed by some (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation, inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elb*. 6. *Trabell*, upon the *Nisse*. *Cottbusse* upon the *Spre*, or *Suevici*; which together with some parts of the *Lower Lusatia* belongs unto the Marquesses of *Brandenburg*.

The first Inhabitants hereof are by some supposed (and but supposed) to be the *Senones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of these parts of *Germany* amongst the *Slaves*, made subject to the *Winithi*, or *Venedi*, the greatest and most spreading Nation of all these People. When, and by whom first made a *Marquissate*; I am not able to say for certain, but sure I am, it hath been very much given to the change of Masters. It had first a Marquess of its own. *Conrade* the Marquess hereof, who died in the year 1155. being by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth made Marquess of *Misnia*, added it unto that Estate; remaining for some time united to it. After, being seized on by the *Poles*, it was sold to *Frederick* the second, Marquess and *Elect* of *Brandenburg*: who keeping *Cottbusse* and some other towns bordering next upon him, in his own possession, surrendered the rest on composition, to *George* King of *Bohemia*; claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the fourth to *Wratiscus* the first *Bohemian* King, Anno 87. A grant on which no possession followed, unless it were the *Hommage* and acknowledgement of the Princes of it; holding it afterwards of that *Crown*, as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought these four Provinces into the power and possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*: remaining still distinct in their Laws, and Governments (as several limbs of the great body of the *Slaves*, made up into one Estate) though joined together in the person of one supreme Governor: who is severally admitted and acknowledged by each Province distinctly, for it self; and not by any one of them, in the name of the rest. Out of all which so laid together, there may be raised the sum of three millions of Crowns yearly, for the Kings *Revenues*; towards the defrayment of all charges.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked tail, *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which Arms was first given by *Frederick Barbarossa* to *Uladislaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good service he had done him at the siege of *Millain*. And though *Uladislaus* was deposed by the States of that Kingdom, because never formally and legally elected by them; yet his successors keep those Arms to this very day.

14 BRANDENBOURG.

The *Marquissate* of *BRANDENBOURG*, is bounded on the East, with the Kingdom of *Poland*; on the West, with the Dukedom of *Saxony*; on the North, with *Pomerania*, and parts of *Mecklenbourg*; and on the South, with *Misnia*, *Lusatia*, and *Silesia*. So called from *Brandenburg* the chief town of it, and because once the *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *middle Marches*; according as they were extended further towards *Poland*, by little and little as the Emperors were able to get ground of those potent people.

The Countrey containeth in length from East to West, 60 *Dutch* or 240 *Italian* miles, and is of correspondent breadth; the whole compass making up 540 miles of the last account. Within which tract are comprehended 55 Cities or walled Towns; 80 Towns of trade, (*Mark-Stecken*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them: 38 Castles or Mansion-houses of Noblemen, 17 Monasteries, and 10 Parks well stored with beasts of game: the Countrey otherwise (considering the extent thereof) but thinly inhabited; nor well provided of necessaries; excepting Corn, of which these North-East Countries afford very great plenty.

The Religion of this Countrey is for the most part according to the form and doctrine of *Luther*: first introduced and authorized by Marquess *Joachim* the first. In which estate it continued till the breach betwixt *George William*, the Father of the present *Elect*, and the *Palatine* of *Newburg*. At which time the *Palatine* having married a daughter of *Bavaria*, the most potent Prince of the *Papish* party, reconciled himself to the Church of *Rome*, the better to assure himself of the aid of *Spain*: and this *Elect* having married a sister of *Frederick* the fifth, Prince *Elect* of *Palatine*, the most potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himself to be of that party and opinion, the better to assure himself of the aids of *Holland*, Anno 1614. But when, on the persuasions of his wife, he set out an *edict* for suppressing the *Lutheran* forms, and authorizing the *Calvinian* only throughout his Dominions, (which was the year 1615) the people of this *Marquissate* rose in Arms against him: the difference being thus composed, that the *Lutheran* forms only should be used in all the Churches of the *Marquissate* of *Brandenburg*.

Brandenburg.

denbourg, for the contentation of the people; and that the Marquess should have the exercise of his new Religion for himself, his Lady, and those of their opinion, in his private Chappels.

1. *ALTE MARK* or the *OLD MARK*, so called because the ancient *Marches* of the Empire against the *Slaves*, lyeth betwixt *Lauenbourg* and the *Elb*; with which it is bounded on the East. Chief Towns thereof, 1. *Tangermünd*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tunagra* or *Angra*, honoured sometimes with the Residence of *Charles* the fourth. 2. *Stendall*, the chief of these *Old Marches*. 3. *Solwedel*, divided into two Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gurdeleben*, fortified with the strong Castle of *Eislimpe*. 5. *Ostberg*. 6. *Senhansen*, said by some, but falsely, to be so called from the *Senones*, whom they would make the old Inhabitants of this Countrey (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation,) 7. *Werh*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE-MARCHES* or *UPPER MARCH*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Odera*, the Towns of most note are 1. *Butzam*, a *Commandatory* of the *Templers* in former times. 2. *Spandaw* upon the *Spre*, a well fortified piece. 3. *Oderburg*, called so from that River, on which it is situate: remarkable for a strong Castle built by Marquess *Albert* the second, at which all passengers by water are to pay their Toll. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Bishops See, the Seat of the Lords Marchers in former times, taking name from hence. By some said to be built by *Brinnus*, Captain of the *Gauls*, more truly by one *Brando* a Prince of the *Fraconians*, Anno *Ch*. 140. 5. *Franckfort* (for distinction sake) named *ad Oderam*, on which River situate; the soil about it being so plentifully stored with Corn and Wines, that it is not easie to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be most enamoured of it. It was made an University by Marquess *Joachim*, Anno 1506. and is also a flourishing and famous Empire, though not comparable to that of the other *Franckfort*, seated on the *Mein*. 6. *Berlin*, the ordinary Residence of the Marquess, situate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevici*) which rising in *Lusatia* falleth into the *Albis*. 7. *Havelbourg*, on the River *Havel*, a Bishops See, who acknowledgeth the Archbishop of *Magdebourg* for his Metropolitan.

3. In the *NEW MARK*, extending from *Odera*, to the borders of *Poland*; and called so because last conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire; there is *Custrine*, a very strong and defensible Town, seated on the two Rivers *Warts* and *Odera*; fortified with great charge by *John*, son of Marquess *Joachim*, and by him intended for his seat. 2. *Sunnerburg*; and 3. *Landsberg*, both upon the *Wart*. 4. *Soldin*, in former times the chief of this *March*. 5. *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6. *Falkenberg*, a strong Town, and fortified with as strong a Castle towards *Pomerania*.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey, were the *Varini* and *Naitbones*, part of the great Nation of the *Suevians*; and after them, the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greatest Nation of the *Slaves*, who possessed themselves of it. But *Brandenburg* being won from them by the Emperour *Henry* the first, Anno 920. (at what time the Gospel was first preached amongst them) the Countrey hereabouts was given by him to *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim* (eldest son of *Theodorick*, the second Earl of *Oldenburg*) a valiant Gentleman, with the title of *Marquess*, or *Lord Marcher*, Anno 927. conditioned that he should defend those *Marches* (the old *March*, as they now call it) against the *Slaves*. These Marquesses at the first *Officiary*, at the appointment of the Emperour, and to him accountable. *Sigard* the fourth from *Sigifride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the first *Elect* of these Marquesses, and *Endo* the second of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the last that held this honour at the Emperours pleasure; that dignity after his decease being made Hereditary, in the person of *Albert* of *Anhalt* surnamed *Ursus*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his border by the conquest and extermination of the *Slaves*; caused their unpeopled Countrey to be planted with new *Dutch* Colonies, out of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, and those parts of the *Netherlands*. The house of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, it was given by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, to *Lewis* his son; by *Otho* the brother of that *Lewis*, sold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth; by *Sigismund* the son of *Charles*, to *Jodocus*, Marquess of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the said *Sigismund* conferred on *Frederick Burgrave* of *Nuremberg*, in recompence of his faithful service in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his posterity it remaineth; but much increased in power and patrimony, by the additions of the Dukedom of *Prussia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Marquissates of *Anspach*, and *Legendorfe*; the Earldom of *March* in *Westphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*; the Lordships of *Prignitz*, and *Crossen*, in *Silesia*; the Towns of *Hoff*, and *Colmebach*, in *Voiteland*; with the Countrey of *Raphin*, and the Town and Territory of *Cohus*, in the *Lower Lusatia*. Inasmuch that this is now the most powerful Family in all *Germany*. The Marquesses hereof from *Sigifride* to *Albert*, the son of *Ursi*, &c. follow in this order:

The MARQUESSSES of BRANDENBOURG.

A. Ch.

- 927 1. *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim*, made the first Marquess of this border, by the Emperour *Henry* the first.
2. *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the first.
3. *Brnno*, Earl of *Witthi*, created Marquess hereof by the same Emperour:
4. *Hugh*, the son of *Brnno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.
5. *Sigard*, the brother of *Hugh*, made by the same Emperour, the first Marquess *Elect*.
6. *Theodorick*, the son of *Sigard*, outed of his command by *Mistivoin*; one of the Princes of the *Slaves*, named *Ostoviti*.

R r

7 1144

Brandenburg

- 7 *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel* (the *Slaves* being beaten and expelled) created Marquess and Elector, by *Conrade* the 2d.
- 8 *Udo* II. son of *Udo* the first, proscribed by *Henry* the 4th. for joining with *Rodolph* Duke of *Schawben* in the war against him.
- 9 *Promislau*, King of the *Obotriti* (the Ancestor of the Dukes of *Mecklinbourg*) advanced unto these honours by the said *Henry* the 4th. and by him held unto his death. After which, made hereditary by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, in the person of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the son of *Ursus*.
- 1152 10 *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the first Hereditary Marquess; father of *Bernard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*.
- 11 *Otho*, son of *Albert*.
- 12 *Otho* II. son of *Otho* the first.
- 13 *Albert* II. brother of *Otho* the 2d.
- 14 *John*, son of *Albert* the 2d.
- 15 *John* II. son of *John* the first.
- 16 *Conrade*, brother of *John* the 2d.
- 17 *John* III. son of *Conrade*.
- 18 *Waldemar*, brother of *John* the 3d.
- 19 *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the first, by his brother *Henry*.
- 20 *John* IV. brother of *Waldemar* the second, the last Marquess of the House of *Anhalt*; the Marquissate escheating to the Empire, for want of heirs.
- 21 *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, created Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, by his father the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the said escheat.
- 22 *Lewis* II. surnamed the *Roman*, on the resignation of his brother, succeeds in the Marquissate, and Electoral dignity.
- 23 *Otho*, brother to *Lewis* the first and second, who sold the Marquissate and Electoral dignity to *Charles* the fourth.
- 24 *Wenceslaus*, son of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.
- 25 *Sigismund*, brother of *Wenceslaus*, Emperour of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxembourg*; who sold this Marquissate to *Jodocus*, Marquess of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the same on
- 1417 26 *Frederick Burgrave* of *Nuremberg*, solemnly invested herein at the Council of *Constance*, Anno 1414. for which investiture he paid unto the Emperour the sum of 400000 Crowns.
- 1440 27 *Frederick* II. son of *Frederick* the first, to whom the Emperour *Frederick* the 3d. gave the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.
- 1470 28 *Albert* brother of *Frederick* the 2d. called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, relinquished to *Bugislaus* the 10th. the possession of *Pomerania*; but his Successors ever since have retained the Title, and kept on foot their pretensions to it. From *Frederick* his second son, descended *Albert*, the first Duke of *Prussia*, *Frederick* the first Marquess of *Anspach*, *George* the first Marquess of *Jagendorf*, and *Albert* called the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, who so harassed *Francia* in the days of *Charles* the fifth.
- 1486 29 *John* son of *Albert*.
- 1499 30 *Joachim*, son of *John*, who founded the University of *Frankford*, Anno 1506. and authorized the Reformation of Religion in his time begun.
- 1535 31 *Joachim* II. son of *Joachim* the first.
- 1571 32 *John George*, son of *Joachim* the 2d.
- 33 *Joachim Frederick*, son of *John George*.
- 34 *John Sigismund*, son of *Joachim Frederick*, who had to wife the Lady *Anne*, daughter of *Albert Frederick*, the second Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Mary Eleanor* his wife, eldest daughter of *William* the first, Duke of *Cleve*.
- 1620 35 *George William*, son of *John Sigismund*, and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right, the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Mark*, and *Ravensburg*, and the Seigneurie of *Ravensstein*; which he possessed a while, divided with his Cousin *Wolfgangus* Palatine of *Newburg*, son of *Magdalen* the younger sister of *Mary Eleanor*. But falling out about their *partage*, the Palatine of *Newburg*, called in the Spaniard; and the Father of these Marquess in behalf of his Son, called in the Confederate States of the Netherlands to assert their Titles. After the death of *Bugislaus* the last Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have succeeded also in that Estate, then possessed by the *Swedes*. Of the agreement made between them, and the great accretment thereby following to the house of *Brandenburg*, We shall speak more there.
- 36 *Frederick William*, son of *George William*, now Elector of *Brandenburg*.

The Territories of this Family are the greatest, as before is said, of any in *Germany*, but a great part of it is very barren, and his Subjects in those parts as poor as the Country: much of his new accessions yielding little but the titles only. So that neither in Revenue or Power, he is able to keep rank with the

the Duke of *Saxony*: his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmost to 200000 l. per annum, which is but half of the receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membered and beaked *Or*.

15 POMERANIA.

POMERANIA is bounded on the East, with *Prussia*, from which parted by the River *Wesoh*, or *Vistula*; on the West, with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Bartze*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coast hereof for the space of 200 English miles; and on the South, with the Marquissate of *Brandenburg*. So named from the *Pomortzi*, or *Pomerani*, a Nation of the *Slaves*, to whose share it fell; or from the situation of it on the Sea shore, as the word in the *Slavonian* doth seem to import.

The Country is for the most part plain, abundantly fruitful in Corn; carried hence to *Dantzic*, and transported thence to all parts of *Christendom*, in their times of scarcity: yielding also good store of pasturage, and great herds of Cattel; with plenty of butter, cheese, honey, and some reasonable quantities of flax. Populous, and those people of very strong constitution, as living under a sharp and piercing air. The whole divided into the Continent, and the Islands; the Continent into: 1 the *Upper Pomerania*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Bartze* to the River *Odera*; 2 the *Lower*, reaching from the *Odera*, to that part hereof which is now called 3 *Powocella*, betwixt it and *Prussia*, subject of long time to the Crown of *Poland*, and there we shall hear further of it.

Chief places in the UPPER, are 1 *Bartze*, at the mouth of the River *Bartze*, taking name from thence; a well traded Town, and many times the seat of the Dukes of this hithermost *Pomerania*. 2 *Wolgast*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, over against the Isle of *Usedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomerania*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomerania-Wolgast*: the first Town taken in by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous War for relief of *Germany*, Anno 1630. 3 *Straelsund*, a Town of great Trading, and much resort, seated upon the same Sea also, opposite to the Isle of *Rugen*; a Town of great name in the course of the *German* Wars. 4 *Griffswald*, on the same Sea, betwixt *Wolgast* and *Straelsund*, made an University, Anno 1456. 5 *Anclam*, upon the River *Pote*. 6 *Tribsta*, situated on a lake, out of which the said River hath its course.

Then in the LOWER *Pomerania*, there is *Camin*, an Episcopal See, situate on the *Baltick* shore, over against the Isle of *Wollin*. 8 *Collurg*, a strong Town on the same shore also, at the fall of the *Perfant* into the Sea. 9 *Coslin*, the last Sea-Town of this Tract, lying towards *Prussia*. 10 *Stargard*, on the *Isna*, more within the Land, as is also 11 *Griffenberg* upon the *Roga*, and 12 *Stetin* on the *Odera*, once a poor fisher-town, now the Metropolis of this part of the Country; rising to this greatness (after the embracing of Christianity) by the fall of *Wineta*, formerly the chief Mart Town of all these parts. The Ordinary seat of the Dukes of the Lower *Pomerania*, the Dukes of *Pomerania Stetin*, as for distinction sake they are used to call them.

The Islands hereunto pertaining, are those of *Rugen*, *Wollin*, *Usedom*, touched upon before; but now more punctually to be handled: That of most note is *RUGEN*, over against *Straelsund*, from which divided only by a narrow Strait, in length seven Dutch miles, and as much in breadth; so that the compass of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 *German*, or 100 *Italian* miles; and yet once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309. by the force of an outrageous tempest, a great part of it lying towards the South-east, as far as to the Isle of *Buden* (then conjunct hereto) was torn away, and sunk so deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greatest ships that be, fall over it. The Island plentiful of Corn, the Granary of *Straelsund*, as they call it commonly; and reasonably well stored with Cattel: full of Bays, Creeks, and winding shores, with many and vast Promontories thrusting into the Sea, which gives them great increase of fishing: Anciently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third, to *Bugislaus*, and *Barnimius*, Dukes of *Pomerania*; continuing ever since part of that Estate. The chief Town of it is called *Berga*, situate in the midst of the Island, but not containing above 400 Families; others of less note and estimation, being 2 *Sugart*, 3 *Pick*, 4 *Bingst*, &c. small Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent; but the best they have. And yet so populous is the Island that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men, if there be occasion.

The second of the three, in repute and bigness, is that of *Wollin*, situate over against *Camin*: so called from *Wollin*, the chief Town (Julianum it is called in *Latine*) made an Episcopal See by *Wartislaus*, the first *Christian* Prince of this Nation, and on the sackage of this City removed to *Camin*. A Town which once so flourished in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Constantinople*; The *Russians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandals*, &c. having here their particular streets. But being miserably sacked by *Waldemar*, King of *Danemark*, Anno 1170. most of the Trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, since which time it never could come near its former glories. The last in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, seated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgast*; so called from *Usedom*, the chief Town in it, of which little observable. All three the habitation of the ancient *Rugii*, who under *Odoacer*, King of the *Herruli*, subverted the Western Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themselves masters of it, till subdued by the *Goths*. Those which remained in these Islands became after subject to the *Slaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the first whose name occurs in Story, being *Crito*, the son of *Ratze*, a puissant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Holfz*, *Dumast*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built, about the year 1100. afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Adolph* the 2d. Earl of *Holfz*, by some esteemed the Founder of it. But his issue male failing in the year 1326. it fell by compact made between

Pomerania.

them, to the Dukes of Pomeran, to whom these Islands ever since have continued subject. And as for Pomeran it self, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the Rugii before mentioned, the *Reudigni*, *Longi-nani*, and *Longi-Didani*, with parts of the *Peruli* and *Burgundians*: into whose void rooms, the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of *Winitibi*, (the most potent Nation of the *Slaves*) did in fine succeed; extending their Dominions to the banks of the *Vistula*, the parts adjoining unto which, to difference it from Pomeran, were called *Pomerella*. But that part of it being given by *Meslavinus* the last Prince thereof, dying without issue, Anno 1295. to *Primislaus* Duke of Poland: the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of Pomerania, became confined within narrower bounds than at first they had. The first Prince of it whom we meet with on good record, was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* Family, Anno 933. whose Grandson *Suantiworus*, commanded over all this Tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his sons, *Bugislaus* who had *Pomerella*, retained the Language and old customs of the *Slavonians*; the *Wartislaus* who possessed the residue, conformed himself to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*; the Country being by that means accounted for a part of Germany: added unto the Empire and accompted thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, by whom *Bugislaus* and *Casimir*, sons of *Wartislaus*, were made Princes of the Empire, and Dukes of Pomeran. The Estate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugislaus* and *Otho*, sons of *Barnimus* the first; and the house of *Otho* failing in the person of *Otho* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperour *Frederick* the third, to *Frederick* the second, Marquess, and Elector of *Brandenburg*: the cause of much contention amongst these Marquesses, and the other house of the Dukes of Pomeran, but thus agreed upon at last; that both Princes should continue the Arms and title, the possession of it to be yielded to the Duke of Pomeran, on the failing of whose issue-male, it should descend upon the heirs of the house of Brandenburg. The succession of these Princes followeth in this order:

The DUKES of POMERANIA.

- 1 *Wartislaus*, the first Christian Prince of the Pomeranians, baptized by *Otho* Bishop of *Bamberg*, Anno 1124.
- 1128 2 *Bugislaus*, son of *Wartislaus*, created by *Frederick Barbarossa* the first Duke of Pomeran.
- 1188 3 *Bugislaus* II. son of *Bugislaus*, planted the void parts of Pomeran with *Saxon* Colonies.
- 1222 4 *Barnimus*, son of *Bugislaus* the second, after whose death Pomeran was divided into two Principalties.

DUKES of STETIN.

- | | |
|--|--|
| DUKES of WOLGAST. | 1277 1 <i>Otho</i> , Duke of Pomeran-Stetijn. |
| 1319 6 <i>Wartislaus</i> , son to <i>Bugislaus</i> . | 1345 2 <i>Casimir</i> , son of <i>Otho</i> . |
| 1326 7 <i>Barnimus</i> II. | 1368 3 <i>Casimir</i> II. son of <i>Casimir</i> . |
| 1365 8 <i>Wartislaus</i> II. | 1374 4 <i>Suantiworus</i> , brother of <i>Casimir</i> the 2d. |
| 1394 9 <i>Barnimus</i> III. | 1413 5 <i>Casimir</i> III. son of <i>Suantiworus</i> . |
| 1405 10 <i>Wartislaus</i> III. | 1433 6 <i>Joachim</i> , son of <i>Casimir</i> the 3d. |
| 1456 11 <i>Ericus</i> , son of <i>Wartislaus</i> . | 1451 7 <i>Otho</i> III. son of <i>Joachim</i> , died without issue, Anno 1464. |
- 1523 13 *George*, son of *Bugislaus* the tenth.
 - 1531 14 *Philip*, son of *George*, in whose time the Reformation made by *Luther*, was admitted into Pomerania.
 - 1583 15 *Bugislaus* IV. but the 13th. in the Dutch accompt, son of *Philip*; his younger brother *Ernestus Ludovicus* having that of *Stetijn* for his share.
 - 16 *Bugislaus* V. and 14th. son of *Bugislaus* the fourth, born in the year 1580. succeeded in Pomeran of Wolgast; as *Philip Julius* son of *Ernestus Ludovicus* did in that of *Stetijn*. After whose death *Bugislaus* became Lord of all Pomerania; in a fair way to have lost all to the prevailing Imperialists, had not the timely coming in of the King of Sweden stopped their violent Progress. But *Bugislaus* dying without issue in the time of the War, and in him the male-issue of the house of *Bugislaus* the tenth being quite extinguished, *George William* Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg* put in his claim for the Estate; according to the compact and agreement spoken of before. Betwixt whom and the *Swedes*, (who under colour of aiding the last Duke, had possessed themselves of all the strongest places in the Country) it was accorded and concluded at the Treaty of *Munster*, that all the *Higher Pomeranias*, with the Isles of *Rugen* and *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stetijn*, should from thenceforth belong to the Crown of Sweden; the *Lower Pomeran* to be enjoyed by the house of Brandenburg, so long as the male issue lasteth; on default whereof, that also to be added unto that Crown; the Arms and Titles to be used by both promiscuously. And in regard the Marquess of Brandenburg was to part with the *Upper Pomeran*, for the contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm peace could be made in Germany) it was also there agreed upon, that the temporal estates of the Bishops of *Halberstadt*, *Minden*, and it was also there agreed upon, that the temporal estates of the present Bishop should be for *Camin*, together with that of *Magdeburg*, (after the decease of the present Bishop) should be forever added to the possessions of that house; the Marquesses and Electors of it to be thenceforth entitled Dukes of *Magdeburg*, Princes of *Halberstadt*, and *Minden*. But what will be the issue of these conclusions, future times must shew.

The Arms of Pomeran, are A Gryphon.

16 MECK.

Mecklenburg

16 MECKLENBURG.

THE Dukedom of MECKLENBURG, is bounded on the East, with Pomerania; on the West, with *Holstein*, a Province of the Kingdom of Denmark; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the South, with *Brandenburg*, and *Saxen-Lauenburg*. So called from *Mecklenburg*, or *Megalopolis*, (both names in several languages of the Dutch and Greeks, signifying a great City,) a great Town of that name here being in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals*, (the old Inhabitants of these parts) whose chief City it was; but on their leaving of this Country, decayed to nothing. The Country of the same nature as Pomerania, and as rich in Corn.

Places of most importance in it, are *Wismar*, a noted Port, on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick* Sea; raised out of the ruins of old *Mecklenburg* before mentioned, about the year 1240. The Haven hereof capable of the greatest vessels, to which it gives a safe and assured Station, whence the name of *Wismar*; the word signifying in the *Slavonian* Language, *idem ac certum mare* (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or safe Sea. Now one of the *Hanse Towns*, and being it lyes conveniently for the use of the *Swedes*, allotted to that Crown by the Treaty of *Munster*; the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompence thereof to have the temporalities of the Bishops of *Swerin* and *Ratzenburg*. 2 *Swerin*, seated upon the South side of the Lake so named; an Episcopall Sea, and honoured with giving the title of a Barony to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. 3 *Mulearn*, first walled by *Niclot* Prince of the *Vandals*, Anno 1270. 4 *Ratzenburg*, an Episcopall See, spoken of before. 5 *Rostoch*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanse Towns*, to *Lubeck* and *Danwick*. Large, rich, and much frequented by all sorts of Merchants; in compass almost six English miles, situate on the River *Warn*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*. Honoured with an University here founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Anno 1419. the first Professors in it being brought from *Erford* in *Saxony*. 6 *Stargard*, which once gave the title of Duke, to the younger Princes of this house. 7 *Sarentine*, memorable for a Nunnery there Founded by Duke *Magnus* the second. 8 *Lau*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry* the second, as an out-work to *Rostoch*, which he had lately bought of *Christopher*, then King of Denmark. 9 *Sternberg*, of which little memorable. 10 *Fridland*, on the edge of Pomeran, not far from *Stargard*, which gave the title of Duke to *Albert* of *Wallenstein*, after that called Duke of *Fridland*, that eminent and prosperous Commander of the Imperial Forces, in the late War of Germany: but miserably murdered after all his services, by command of the Emperour. 11 *Fichtel*, both pleasantly and strongly seated, on the edge of a Lake. 12 *Dammin*, a strong Town on the *Marches* of *Brandenburg*.

The Ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the rest of the *Heruli*, and *Burgundians*. But the *Burgundians* being reckoned as a part of the *Vandals*, were not much took notice of, till their irruptions on the borders of the *Roman* Empire, made them more considerable: the Princes of these Nations using no other title than Kings of the *Heruli* and *Vandals*. Of these the first is said to be one *Anthyrus*, son of an *Amazonian* Lady, who learned his first rudiments of Warfare under *Alexander* the Great. Out of his loins descended a long race of Kings, amongst whom *Rhadaguse*, who together with *Alarick* and *Goths*, invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick* the seventeenth of these Kings, weary of so cold a dwelling, passed towards the South; and having harassed *Gaul* and *Spain*, shipped himself over the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and erected the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; whose Successors we shall meet with there. By *Vitalis*, the youngest son of *Genserius*, the son of *Gunderick*, the line of these Princes is continued; who after mingling with the *Obotriti*, and other of the *Slaves*, succeeding into the void places of the *Vandals*, left off the title of Kings of the *Vandals*, and called themselves Kings of the *Heruli* and *Obotriti*: continuing it to *Pribislavus*, or *Primislaus* the second, who wrote himself, *Pribislavus Dei gratia, Herulorum, Wagriorum, Circulanorum, Palumborum, Obotritorum, Kissinorum, Vandalarumque Rex*. Making herein a general Muster of those tribes of the *Slaves* and *Heruli*, which remained under his command. But he being vanquished by *Henry* surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the title of King was laid aside; his Successors contenting themselves with that of Princes. Divided betwixt *Henry* and *Niclot*, the Nephews of *Pribislavus* by his son *Henry*, into two Estates: *Henry* assuming to himself the title of Prince of the *Obotriti*; and *Niclot* that of Prince of the *Vandals*. But the posterity of *Niclot* failing in *William*, the last of that line, Anno 1430. his title, with the lands thereunto belonging, fell to *Henry* the Fat, the fourth Duke of *Mecklenburg*; to which honour, *Albert* and *John*, the sons of *Henry* the fourth, descended from the elder house, had been advanced by the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, at *Prague*, Anno 1348. The succession of which Family from *Pribislavus*, take in order thus.

The PRINCES of the HERULI, and DUKES of MECKLENBURGH.

- 1158 1 *Pribislavus*, the last King, and first Prince of the *Heruli*, after their subjection to the *Saxons*; restored to this title and his former estate by the bountiful Conquerours, to be held under the right and homage of the house of *Saxony*.
- 1179 2 *Henry* son of *Pribislavus*, baptized, with all his people, in his fathers life-time, by the perswasion of *Henry*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, by whom restored to their Estates.
- 3 *Henry* II. son of the former *Henry*, dividing the estate with his brother *Niclot*.

R r 3

1228

- Saxonic.* 1228 4 John surnamed the *Divine*; so called, because created *Doctor of Divinity* in the University of *Paris*, whither he was sent by his Father to learn good Arts.
- 1260 5 Henry III. surnamed of *Hierusalem*; because of his expedition thither against the *Saracens*.
- 1302 6 Henry IV. surnamed the *Lion*, for his valour and undaunted constancy.
- 1319 7 Albert and John, the sons of Henry, going to *Prague* with a Princely train, to attend on the Emperor Charles the fourth, were by him created *Princes of the Empire*, and *Dukes of Mecklenburg*, Anno 1348.
- 1380 8 Magnus, son of Albert.
- 1384 9 John, son of Magnus, the Founder of the University of *Rostock*, Anno 1419.
- 1423 10 Henry V. surnamed the *Fat*, who on the death of William the last Prince of the *Pandals*, succeeded into his Estate.
- 1447 11 Magnus II. son of Henry, Founder of the Cathedral Church of *Rostock*.
- 1503 12 Albert II. son of Magnus the second.
- 1547 13 John Albert, son of Albert the second, endowed the University of *Rostock* with the lands of some dissolved *Monasteries*; and authorized in his *Estatutes*, the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*.
- 1578 14 John III. son of John Albert.
- 1592 15 Adolph Frederick, and John Albert, sons of John the third, dispossessed hereof by the Emperor Ferdinand the second, Anno 1628. their Estates, with the title of Duke of *Mecklenburg*, being conferred on Albert of *Wallenstein*, Duke of *Fridland*. Who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, the *Assertor* of the liberties of *Germany*, restored it to the proper owners. The heirs to whose Estates is *Gustavus Adolphus*, the only son and heir of John Albert; the other of these two Brothers being without issue.

The DUKEDOM and ESTATES of SAXONIE.

THE Dukedom and Estates of *SAXONIE* (not reckoning those which now pass under other names, and shall hereafter be described in their several places) are bounded on the East, with *Bohemia*, *Lusatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*; on the West, with *Hassia*, *Brunswick*, and parts of *Lunenbourg*, and *Holstein*; on the North, with other parts of *Brandenburg*, and part of *Mecklenburg*; and on the South with *Franconia*, and some parts of the Upper *Palatinat*.

It is (we see) an aggregate body, consisting of two General limbs. 1 The Dukedom of *Saxonic*; 2 The Estates of *Saxonic*, or *Saxonic* properly so called; The first containing the whole Provinces of 1 *Obersax*, or the Upper *Saxonic*, the proper seat of the Duke-Elector; 2 *Misnia*, 3 *Voiteland*, and 4 *Turingia*: The other, those of 1 *Anhalt*, 2 *Mansfeld*, 3 *Meysenbourg*, and 4 *Lauenbourg*. And as it is an aggregate body, so is it comprehensive of all those honourary titles, by which the Princes of *Germany* are distinguished from one another; that is to say, the Electorship of *Saxonic*, the Dukedom of *Lauenbourg*, the Bishoprick of *Meysenbourg*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, the Marquisate of *Misnia*, the Lantgravedom of *Turingia*, the Earldom of *Mansfeld*, and the Seigneury or Lordship of *Voiteland*. Of these eight Provinces, the 4 first mentioned are wholly situate without the limits and precincts of the ancient *Saxonic*; and yet now are, and have been called long before, the Dukedom of *Saxonic*, because they make up the whole Patrimony and Estate of the Dukes Electors, who since the proscription and deprivation of Duke Henry, surnamed the *Lion*, Anno 1180. in some or other of these Countries have had their fixed seat and habitation. The four last being parts of the ancient *Saxonic*, and heretofore in the possession of the Dukes hereof, do still pass under the account and name of *Saxonic*, though in the hands of several Owners; all of which do acknowledge a superiority in the Duke-Elector, if not some great relation to him, and dependance on him: so that we have an heterogeneous body to discourse upon, and therefore must consider severally of the parts thereof, but so, that either first or last we shall find them all in the succession and affairs of the Dukes of *Saxonic*; 1 then,

The Dukedom of *Saxonic* is bounded on the East, with *Bohemia*, *Lusatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*; on the West, with *Hassia*, and part of the proper *Saxonic*; on the North, with the proper *Saxonic* only; and on the South, with *Franconia*, and the Upper *Palatinat*. So called, because the proper Seat and Patrimony of the Duke-Elector; of very different nature both for Air and Soil, but the last especially; as we shall see by looking over the particular Provinces of 1 *Obersax*, 2 *Misnia*, or *Meissen*, 3 *Voiteland*, 4 *Turingia*, by the Dutch called *Duringen*.

1 *OBERSAX*, or the Upper *Saxonic*, is bounded on the East, with the Marches of *Brandenburg*; on the West, with *Mansfeld*, from which parted by the River *Salza*; on the North, with *Meysenbourg*; on the South, with *Misnia*. The reason of the name we shall see anon. The Air hereof somewhat sharp and piercing, the soil sufficiently fruitful, but therein not to be compared with *Misnia*, and much less with *Duringen*, being both of them of a richer and more liberal nature.

Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Torge*, or *Torgow*, by some placed in *Misnia*, but by *Merca-*

tor in this Province. Built on the West side of the *Elb*, in form orbicular, and falling every way from the sides of a Mountain: beautified with a stately and pleasant Castle, belonging to the *Elector of Saxony*, who is Lord hereof; built by John Frederick the *Elector*, Anno 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compass; for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke 500 *Guldens*. 2 *Wartitz* upon the *Elb*, once a *Commandery* of the *Templers*. 3 *Weissenberg*, lying towards *Brunswick*. 4 *Kemberg*, on the *Elb*. 5 *Bitterfeld*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Mulda*, and 6 *Wittenberg*, on the *Elb*, in an open plain; but strongly fenced with walls, ramparts, and deep ditches. The chief beauty of it lieth in one fair street, extending the whole length of the City; in the midst thereof is the Cathedral Church, a large Market place, and the Common-Council house. In former times the seats of the *Dukes Electors*, till the *Electoral* dignity was conferred on the house of *Meissen*, who liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dresden*. But so, that *Wittenberg* is still acknowledged for the head City of the *Electorate*; and was made an University for *Divines* by Duke Frederick, Anno 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as some conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of *Saxonic*, when the extent thereof was greatest: famous for the Sepulchres of *Luther* and *Melanchthon*, but chiefly for that here were the Walls of *Papery* first broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*, of the wonderful success whereof we have spoke already.

Of the affairs of this little Country we can say but little, more then the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of *Saxonic*, and consequently to the name which it still retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke Henry, surnamed the *Lion*, whose greatness was grown formidable even to the Emperours themselves: the Dukedom of *Saxonic* was dismembered into many parcels; *Brunswick* and *Lunenbourg* being given unto the Children of the Duke deprived; the lower parts of *Westphalen* seized on by Philip Archbishop of *Cölen*; the parts thereof about the *Weser*, by the Bishop of *Paderborn*; Herman the Lantgrave of *Turingia* laying hold of that part of this Estate which was nearest to him; *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made Imperial, or governing themselves as Free Estates; the Ancestors of the Princes of *Anhalt*, and the Earls of *Mansfeld*, endowed with large possessions also out of this great Patrimony, the Emperor not only conning at it, but willingly consenting to that dissipation, the better to reward and content those Princes, who had assisted him in his Wars against the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the ancient *Saxonic* to be Elected upon *Barnard* of *Anhalt*, whom Frederick Barbarossa had created Duke-Elector in the room of Henry so deprived. And though Duke Barnard for his many good services to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Wittenberg* by Conrad the 3d. and had conquered from Duke Henry the whole Country of *Lunenbourg*, yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a Duke-Elector, it pleased the Emperor Frederick to bestow upon him all those Lands and Territories which lay between the *Salza* and the *Elb*, on the North of *Misnia*, to make *Wittenberg* the Electoral City, and give unto the County thus united to it, the name of *Obersax*, or Upper *Saxonic*, which it continueth to this day.

2 *MISNIA*, or *Meissen*, is bounded on the East, with *Lusatia*; on the West, with *Duringen*; on the North, with *Saxonic*, specially so called, and some part of *Brandenburg*; on the South, with *Voiteland*, and some part of *Bohemia*. The Country once overpread with Woods, and full of Bogs, rendering the air unwholesome, and the soil unprofitable: both rectified by the care and industry of the people; now yielding some mines of silver, and great plenty both of Corn and Pasturage: well watered with the Rivers *Salza*, *Plisse*, *Elster*, and *Mulze*.

Places of most observation in it, are 1 *Dresden*, seated on the *Albis*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks, 150 Pieces of Ordnance; a Stable of the Dukes, in which are 128 horses of service; and a Magazine, out of which 30000 Horses and Foot may be armed at a days warning. The Town itself situate on both sides of the River, by which divided into the old Town and the new, joined into one by a Bridge of 800 paces in length: the Country round about it very rich and pleasant, able to sustain great multitudes; for that cause made the ordinary seat of the Dukes of *Saxonic*, who have here a strong and stately Castle. 2 *Nannburg*, 3 *Mersburg*, both seated on the River *Saale*, two Episcopal Seats. 4 *Lipsique*, as famous an University for *Philosophers*, as *Jene* in *Lorraine* is for *Physicians*. It seemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not suffer their Beer to perish, of which here is so much drunk and exported, that the very Custom of it due unto the Duke, amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly; yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the most part of fair Free-stone, honoured with the Courts of Justice for all the Country. Though seated on the meeting of *Pisse*, *Parde*, *Elster*, 3 Rivers which lye almost on all sides of it: yet it is not strong, having been thrice taken by the *Imperialists* in less than 2 years, during the late *German* Wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing else) for the great battle fought near it, between the late K. of *Sweden*, and the Count of *Tilly*: the honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons*, (with the death of 15000 of both sides, and the loss of all the Baggage, Arms, and Ammunition of the *Imperialists*) freed all these parts of *Germany* from that civil and spiritual bondage, which was intended by the Emperor to be put upon them. 5 *Mulberg*, on the *Elb*, where John Frederick the *Elector* was discomfited and taken prisoner by Charles the fifth, by whom deprived not long after of his Estate and dignity. 6 *Meissen*, on the West side of the same River, in a hilly and uneven ground, built by the Emperor Henry the first, for defence of the Empire against the *Slaves*: a Bishops See, and the first Seat of the Marquesses of this Country, both which, together with the *Burgrave* of the Town had their Palaces, or Mansion houses standing close together on the top of a hill, over-looking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meissen*. 7 *Erlberg*, near the

Lauenbourg. was called *Leopolis*, or *Leobourgum*, and *Lauenbourg* for the same reason by the *Dutch* or *Germans*: on the proscriptio of which Prince, the Country being wasted, and the Towns destroyed, *Barnard* of *Anhalt* designed his Successor in the Dukedom of *Saxony*, liking the situation of it, caused it to be re-edified in stronger manner than before, a great part of the materials of the Town of *Erdenbourg*, being carried cross the Water to enlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the said Duke *Henry*, in the course of that War, it was re-built again by *D. Barnard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by some Writers made the Founders of it. Other places of note herein, are 2 *Erdenbourg*, a well fortified piece, opposite to *Lauenbourg*, on the higher side of the *Elb*; not so large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lauenbourg* being made greater by the lessening of this. 3 *Raceburg*, an Episcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* surnamed the *Lion*, upon his gaining of the *Slaves* to the Christian Faith, and of late times the Sepulture of this Ducal Family. 4 *Moeln*, on the further side of the *Elb*, not far from *Lauenbourg*, the cause of much contention betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hambourg*, who pretend a title thereunto.

This Country being for the most part under the Command of the *Slaves*, was from them Conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the *Lion*, and by his care converted to the Christian Faith: but he being proscribed, and this Signeury extorted from him, by Duke *Barnard* of *Anhalt* his Successor in the Electoral dignity, it was by *Albert*, the son of this *Barnard*, conferred on *John* his second son, from whom the Dukes of *Saxony*, commonly called Dukes of *Saxon-Lauenbourg*, do derive themselves; who being pretermitted by the Emperor *Sigismund* at the death of *Albert* the 3d. the last of the direct line of *Barnard*; or else not caring for a title, which carried with it too great fail for so small a Vessel, as the Estate of the Elector at the present was, have since contented themselves with their ancient Patrimony.

It is now time we should proceed to the Story of *Saxony*; the ancient Inhabitants of which Tract, were the *Longobardi*, or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*; and part of the *Cherusci* about *Mansfeld*, and *Wittenberg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is: containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhine* and the River *Eydore* in the *Cimbrick* *Chersonesse*; and from the River *Saltza*, to the *German* and *Baltick* Oceans. These said by some to be a people of *Asia*, and there called the *Saca*; who finding that small Territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, forsook their Country, and at last fixed themselves in the *Cimbrick* *Chersonesse*: where they first took the names of *Sacafons* (or *Sac-fons*) that is to say, the sons of the *Saca*. The improbability of this we have there disputed. Omitting therefore that and the like *Originations* of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *Germans*; some tribe of that most populous and potent people of the *Suevi*: but for the reason of the name, let every man enjoy the pleasures of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Protophies* time, they were possessed of those parts beyond the *Elb*, and thence extended to the *Eydore*, part of which Tract is now known by the name of *Holstein*: and were accounted in that time to be no new-comers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they enlarged their quarters, and passing over the *Elb* in the time of the later *Roman* Emperours, possessed themselves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then busied in the conquest of more fruitful Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in fine, they stretch themselves from the River *Saltza* on the East, to the *German* Ocean on the West, and took up the now Dukedoms of *Holstein*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Brunswick*; the Bishopricks of *Bremen*, *Verda*, *Hildersheim*, *Halberstadt*, and *Magdeburg*, the *Marches* of *Brandenbourg*, the Earldom of *Mansfeld*, *Westphalen*, both *Friesland*, *Over-Yssel*, with as much of *Gelderland*, and *Holland*, as lay on that side of the *Rhene*. By which account the present Electoral Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony* in their possession: the seat and *Patrimony* of the Electors being removed into other Countries, upon the alterations and changes which have happened in that Estate: the name and title of *Saxony* being given to the Country about *Wittenberg*, for no other reason, but because it was the chief seat of the Duke Electors. But to proceed, about that valiant Nation questionless they were, the Conquerours of the Isle of *Britain*; and the last people of the *Germans*, which yielded up their Country unto *Charles* the Great; by whose means gained unto the Gospel, Anno 785. Their last King was called *Wittichindus*, from whom descend the Kings of *France*, since the time of *Hugh Capet*; the present Kings of *Denmark*, of the house of *Oldenburg*; the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*; the Marquesses of *Monferrat*, besides many other noble and illustrious Families, though of lesser note. The right or direct line of the male-issue of *Wittichind* (whom *Charles* the Great created, of a King, the first Duke of *Saxony*) determining in the person of *Otho* the third, Emperour of *Germany*, it was by him conferred on *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenbourg*, (but the precise time I find not:) *Henry* surnamed the *Saint*, who succeeded this *Otho*, the next in the collateral line, being pretermitted, either because at that time settled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or because there was no hope of Posterity by him, or for some other private grudge, which I read not of. And it continued in this line, till on the forfeiture incurred by his posterity, in the person of Duke *Henry* the *Lion*, it was bestowed by *Frederick Barbarossa*, upon *Barnard* of *Anhalt*, Anno 1180. whose issue in the right line failing, it was finally eittied by the Emperour *Sigismund*, on *Frederick* Landgrave of *Turingia*, and Marquess of *Misnia*, Anno 1423. In his Family it hath since continued, but not without a manifest breach in the course of the succession: which hapned, when *John Frederick* being deprived of the Electoral dignity and estate; his cousin Duke *Maurice* was invested in them by *Charles* the fifth. For that religious but unfortunate Prince (if he may justly have the title of unfortunate who suffered in so good a cause, for so good a Conscience) being discomfited and taken prisoner at the bat-

tle of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die; but pardoned at the last upon the intercession of some powerfull Friends, upon condition that he should resign the Electoral dignity, and all the rest of his Estates, into the power of the Emperour: Which done, the Emperour gave him back again of his own accord the Castle of *Gotha*, and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the Lands and Territories thereunto adjoining; from which last place his Posterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*. It was also much insisted on, that he should relinquish his Religion, and reconcile himself to the Church of *Rome*; but thereto he opposed with such Christian stoutness, that in the end it was omitted. These matters being thus transacted, the Emperour (with the general consent of the Electors) invested *Maurice*, Cousin German to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral Dignity, and all the Lands, Honours and Estates (the Signeuries of *Gotha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belonged to him; which though it were a great wrong both to the Person and Posterity of the Duke *John Frederick*; yet it is observed by some grave Writers, to have fallen out not unhappily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. 1 In regard of *John Frederick*, whose Christian patience and magnanimity during the whole time of his imprisonment, added great reputation to the cause for which he suffered. 2 In respect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work, and every way as zealous in pursuing of it, as the other was. And 3 In relation to the Children of the deprived Duke, men not to be relied on in a matter of such weight and moment; inasmuch as it was said of him after his decease, *Quod filios reliquerit sui dissimulatos*. It is now time we should proceed to the Investiture of the new Elector. And because these Translations of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the Ceremonies thereat used, as I have collected them out of *Sleiden*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which sat the Emperour, and the *Princes Electors* in their Robes. On the back side of the State, were placed the Trumpeters; right against it standeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of Horse-men; The first in a full career run their horses up to the Pavilion: Out of the second issued *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick*, *Wolfgang* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavaria*. These when they had in like manner coursed their Horses about, alighted, ascended to the Throne, and humbly requested the Emperour, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the Electorship. He consulted with the Electors, made answer by the Bishop of *Mentz*, that he was content, to Duke *Maurice* would in person come and desire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice*, with the whole Troop; before him were born ten *Ensigns* bearing the Arms of as many *Regions*, wherein he desired to be invested. When he came before the Throne he kneeled down on his knees, and humbly desired the Emperour to bestow on him the Electorship of *Saxony*, and all the Lands of *John Frederick* late Elector. His Petition was granted. Then the Bishop of *Mentz* read unto him the Oath, by which the Electors are bound unto the Empire: which Oath, when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperour delivered unto him a Sword, which was a sign of his perfect investiture. Duke *Maurice*, now the Elector of *Saxony*, arose, gave the Emperour thanks, promised his fidelity, made obeysance, and took his place amongst the Electors. This Solemnity was on the 24 day of Febr. Anno 1548. Which said, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

The Dukes of SAXONIE.

- 785 1 *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*, vanquished, and created the first Duke by *Charl* the Great.
- 825 2 *Bruno*, the Brother of *Wittikind*.
- 843 3 *Luitpoldus*, Son of *Bruno*.
- 855 4 *Bruno* II. Son of *Luitpoldus*.
- 876 5 *Otho*, Brother of *Bruno* the second.
- 916 6 *Henry*, surnamed the Fowler, Son of *Otho*, Emperour of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*.
- 938 7 *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* I.
- 974 8 *Otho* III. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* II.
- 984 9 *Otho* IV. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* III.
- 10 *Barnard*, Lord of *Lunenbourg*, created Duke of *Saxony*, and the first Elector, by *Otho* the third, who was the last Duke of the race of *Wittikind*.
- 1021 11 *Barnard* II, Son of *Barnard* the first.
- 1063 12 *Ordulphus*, Son of *Barnard* the 2d.
- 1073 13 *Magnus* Son of *Ordulphus*, who taking part with *Rodulphus* of *Schwaben* against *Henry* the fourth, was taken prisoner and deprived.
- 14 *Lotharius*, Earl of *Quernfort*, created Duke of *Saxony* by *Henry* the fourth. He was also Emperour of the *Romans*.
- 1125 15 *Henry* *Guelph*, surnamed the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, the husband of *Gertrude*, daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom created Duke Elector.
- 1139 16 *Henry* II. surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, Son of *Henry* the Proud, by his first wife *Waldisa*, the daughter of *Magnus*, added to this Estate the Countrey of *Mecklenbourg* and *Lauenbourg*, which he had conquered from the *Slaves*, becoming by that means so great, that neglecting his duty to the Emperour *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, and siding with the Pope against him, he was by him publicly proscribed, his neighbour Princes armed against him, and by their joyn't-Forces outed of all his Estates, every one

*Brunswick
and
Lunenbourg.*

- laying hold of that which lay nearest to him, by means whereof this great Estate being parcelled and divided into many parts; the title of the Duke Elector of Saxony, was given by the said Emperor to
- 1180 17 *Barnard of Anhalt*, son of *Albert*, Marquess of *Brandenbourg*, and grandchilde of *Eliza*, another daughter of Duke *Magnus*: to whom for his Seat and Habitation, the Emperour gave the City of *Wittenberg*; the head since that time of this Electorate.
- 1212 18 *Albert*, Son of *Barnard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lunenbourg*, doe derive their Pedegree.
- 1273 19 *Albert II.* Son of *Albert* the first.
- 1327 20 *Rodolph*, Son of *Albert* the 2d.
- 1356 21 *Rodolph II.* Son of *Rodolph* the first.
- 1373 22 *Wenceslaus*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2d.
- 1389 23 *Rodolph III.* Son of *Wenceslaus*.
- 1419 24 *Albert III.* Son of *Rodolph* the third, the last Elector of Saxony of the House of *Anhalt*.
- 1423 25 *Frederick*, Lantgrave of *Düringen*, and Marquess of *Misnia*, (on the falling of the house of *Anhalt*, Anno 1422.) created Duke of Saxony by the Emperour *Sigismund*; the house of *Lunenbourg* pretermitted for want of putting in their claim; by the advancement of which Prince, the title of Duke of Saxony returned again to the House of *Witkind* (the first King and last Duke hereof) after it had been alienated into other Families for the space of 200 years.
- 1428 26 *Frederick II.* Son of *Frederick* the first.
- 1464 27 *Ernest*, Son of *Frederick* the second.
- 1486 28 *Frederick III.* Son of *Ernest*.
- 1525 29 *John*, Brother to *Frederick* the third.
- 1532 30 *John Frederick*, Son of *John* the first; a great advancer of the Reformation of Religion; imprisoned, and deprived of his Electorship by *Charles* the fifth.
- 1547 31 *Maurice* Cousin German to the Duke *John Frederick* (as being the Grandson or Nephew of *Albert*, the younger Brother of *Ernestus* the Duke Elector) created Duke Elector by *Charles* the fifth, whom afterwards he drove out of *Germany*; and was slain in the battel of *Sieffridshuse*, against Marquess *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*.
- 1553 32 *Augustus*, Brother of *Maurice*.
- 1586 33 *Christian*, Son of *Augustus*.
- 34 *Christian II.* Son of *Christian* the first.
- 35 *John George*, Brother of *Christian* the second, who first sided with the Emperour *Ferdinand* the second against the Elector *Palatine*, and after with the King of *Sweden* against the Emperour.

The Revenues of this Duke are thought to be the greatest of any one Prince of *Germany* (the Imperial Family excepted) amounting at the least to 400000 *l. per annum*; though in multitude of Vassals, and greatness of Territory he come short of some of them. And to make up this sum (or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariseth to him out of *Silver mines*, is no less than 130000 *l. yearly*; the *Impost* laid on *Beer* in *Leipsich* only, a City but of two Parish Churches (by which conjecture at the rest) being farmed at 20000 *l. per annum*. Then hath he the *Tenths* of all sorts of Increase, as of Corn, Wine, &c. the *Salt-houses* at *Hall*, and some other places; very fair Lands belonging unto his Domain; and besides this, a standing and perpetual Tax laid upon the Subject, towards the maintenance of the war against the *Turk*; granted at first in times of danger and hostility; but gathered ever since in the times of peace (as to that Enemy) under colour of being ready and prepared against him. According to the quantity of his *Intrado* so he keeps his State, well served, and better attended, than any other of the *Electors*: there being at one time in the Court of *Christian*, the Father of the present Duke, three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations (besides the Nobility of his own) all Pensioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhalt*, and one of the Earls of *Mansfeld*, both Homagers unto the *Saxon*, being two of the number.

The Arms of Saxony, are Barre-wife of six pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, when he confirmed *Barnard* of *Anhalt* in this Dukedom. For *Barnard* desiring of the Emperour to have some difference added to the Ducal Coat; (being before only *Barry*, *Sable* and *Or*) to distinguish him and his Successors from those of the former House: the Emperour took a Chapler of *Rur*, which he had then upon his head, and threw it cross his Buckler or *Esccheon* of Arms, which was presently painted on the same.

18. BRUNSWICK, and 19. LUNENBOURG.

THE Dukedoms of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBOURG*, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of Saxony, extracted both from the same root, and many times united in the person of the same one Prince; shall be joyned together in the story, though severed in the *Chorography*, or description of them; bounded on the East, with *Magdebourg* and *Mansfeld* in the Upper Saxony; on the West, with *Westphalia*; on the North, with *Denmark*; on the South, with *Hassia*. The Air in all parts hereof very cold and comfortable, but found and healthful; the soil towards the old *Marches* of *Brandenbourg*, but meanly fertile; towards *Düringen* and *Hassia*, mountainous and woody; in

in other parts very plentifull of Corn, and well provided also of such other commodities, as usually doe *Brunswick* grow in those colder Climates.

But to take the *Chorography* of them severally, *BRUNSWICK* is bounded on the East, with the *Earldom of Mansfeld*; on the West, with *Westphalia*; on the North, with *Lunenbourg*; on the South, with *Hassia*. So called from *Brunswick*, the chief City, and the head of this Dukedom.

Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Goslar*, upon the River *Gos*, whence it had the name; Of a poor Village, made a City by *Henry* the first, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who founded here two Churches and a stately Palace; Now one of the Imperial Cities. 2 *Helmstedt*, in the middle way betwixt *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg*; first fortified by *Charles*, Son of *Charles the Great*, for a bridle to the neighbouring *Slaves*; and being after given to the Abbots of *Herda*, was by them sold to *William* the Duke of *Brunswick*, 3 *Quedelnsberg*, built also by *Henry* the first, much increased since by the neighbourhood of a very rich Nunnery, the *Alteffe* whereof had formerly the privileges of a Prince of the Empire. 4 *Hildesheim*, an ancient City, honoured with an *Episcopal* See by *Charles the Great*, at the first conversion of the Saxons. 5 *Grubenhagen*, which gave title to a younger branch of the house of *Brunswick*; a *Principality* and a member of the Empire. 6 *Hannover*, on the River *Lein*, well built, very strongly fortified; and not meanly traded. 7 *Brunswick*, upon the River *Onafter*, which passeth through it, passed over by many handfom Bridges; the *Metropolis* of the ancient Saxony, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom: though of it self Imperial, and one of the *Hanse*. The City of a *Quadrangular* form, seated in the midst of a Plain, very fruitful of Corn; in compass about two *Dutch*, or eight *English* miles; somewhat larger than *Nuremberg*, and less than *Erford*: containing in that compass not above twelve Churches, whereof two have Steeples covered with Lead, a third with Brass, all the rest with Tile. Rich, populous, and strongly fortified, on some sides with a double, on others with a treble wall; within which walls are five Cities, distinguished by Privileges, but united by Laws. The whole first built by *Bruno*, Son to *Ludolphus* Duke of Saxony, and Uncle to the Emperour *Henry* the first, about the year 861. from whence it had the name of *Brunswick*, or *Brunonis Vici*; by the more elegant *Latinists*, *Brumopolis*. 8 *Hamel*, on the East side of the *Weser*, or *Visurgis*, encompassed with a deep moat, (occasioned by a stream cut out of the River) round about which are divers fortifications, and planted with Ordnance. Nigh unto this Town is the Mountain called also *Hamel*, unto which the *Pied-piper* (as they call him) led the Children of *Hallerstad*, where they all sunk, and were never more seen; but of this story more hereafter, when we come to *Transylvania*. 9 *Wolfshaiten*, or *Wolfen Lutel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For though *Brunswick* giveth him his title, yet will it not yield him any obedience, but repeteth her self among the *Hanse towns*; for which cause there have been great wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10 *Hallerstede*, a Bishops See; the late Bishop (or Administrator of the Bishoprick) being *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick*, that noble young souldier, who had vowed his life and fortune to the service of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Cousin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the Garter. A Bishoprick of great Revenue, and a very large Territory, since the alteration of Religion, given with the title of Administrator, to the Sons of *Brunswick*; but now by the conclusions at *Munster*, assigned over to the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, with the title of Prince of *Hallerstede*, the Family of *Brunswick* being to be recompensed with an alternate succession in the Bishoprick of *Osna-burg*, and some other additions. 11 *Husfeld*, the seat sometimes of the old *Palatines* of Saxony; but not else observable. 12 *Amelungsbame*, another Town of the said *Palatines*, by one of which called *Sigfridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abby; the principal Towns (in those dayes) of this *Palatinate*, which bordering on that part of the *Turingians* which is now called *Hessia*, was taken in by *Herman*, one of the Lantgraves of that Countrey, on the proscription of Duke *Henry* surnamed the Lion; but on the fall of his line, recovered for the most part by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of *LUNENBURG* hath on the East, the Diocese of *Magdebourg*; on the West, the Diocese of *Bremen*, a part of *Westphalia*; on the North, the *Elb*; and on the South, the Dukedom of *Brunswick*. So called from *Lunenbourg* the chief City, once the seat of the Dukes.

Places of most observation in it, are 1 *Lunenbourg* it self, situate on the River *Elbenaw*, an Imperial City, and one of the principal of the *Hanse*; so called from the *Alsen* here worshipped in the times of *Idolary*. Of a round form, and seated in a pleasant Valley; but with mountains near it: on one of which called *Calberg*, is a very strong Castle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens; who without this Fort, could not be matters of their Liberties. The walls about it are of earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep; the buildings generally fair (for the most part of brick) the chief whereof is the *Common-Council* house; the Streets broad and long, with two spacious Market-places; but of no very pleasing smell: the whole about a mile and an half in length, half a mile in breadth; containing six Parish Churches. But the thing most considerable in it is the Fountain of *Salt*, (the greatest riches of this City) and the house in which the *Salt* is boiled, containing 52 rooms, and in each room 8 leaden Pans, in which are boiled daily 8 tuns of *Salt*, every tun being sold for 8 *Flemish* shillings, bought by the *Hamburghers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; some part of the profits of it belonging to the Duke, some to the City, the rest to the *Adventurers* who employ their stocks on it. 2 *Cella*, the seat of the Duke of *Lunenbourg*. 3 *Gethern*, of no great bigness or estimation, but for a strong Castle of the Dukes. 4 *Oldendorp*, situate betwixt the *Venaw* and the River *Esca*, memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, Anno 1633. betwixt the *Imperialists* and the *Swedes*, the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, besides such as were found dead in the fields and high-ways, all covered over with dead bodies; took

Hassia.

gallant prospect over the Town and Countrey. 9 *Geissen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Cassels*, and a small University also. 10 *Dietz*, upon the River *Loon*, belonging also to the House of *Cassels*. 11 *Cassels*, the chief Town and ordinary residence of the Lantgraves of the elder house, who are hence sometimes called the Lantgraves of *Cassels*: commodiously seated in a pleasant and fruitful soil, and well fortified with strong earthen walls, and deep ditches; but the houses in it of no great beauty, being composed for the most part of wood, thatch and clay.

Within the limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, nor subject to the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, though included within the bounds of it before laid down, taking up the Western part thereof, where it meets with *Westphalia*: in figure very near a square, each side of which is of the length of six ordinary Dutch, or 24 English miles. The soil much of the same nature with the rest of *Hassia*, save that it hath some veins of Quicksilver, and inexhaustible Mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; these last in greatest plenty about *Veldung*, and the strong Castle of *Eisenburg*, two of the best Towns and places of it. Others of chief note, 3 *Waldeck* itself on the River *Eder*, the first seat of the Earls hereof, who have here an ancient Castle, from whence the whole Countrey takes its name. 4 *Mengerhuse*, in a fair Castle whereof live the present Earls. 5 *Witterberg*, in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, betwixt the Rivers *Twist* and *Alra*. 6 *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Albertus Magnus*, for its golden Mines, yielding great profit to these Earls. The Pedigree of which Earls is fetched from one *Witichind* Earl of *Snalenberg*, whom *Charles* the Great made Advocate or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, being an Office in those times of great Jurisdiction. By *Witichind* the second, one of his Successors, this Office was surrendered into the hands of the Chapter, for the sum of 300 marks in Silver: and to cut off all further claims, *Henry*, the nephew of this *Witichind*, by his Son *Otho*, was by the Chapter gratified with the Town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the first Earl: whose nephew *Henry*, surnamed *Ferrens*, subdued *Corbach*, Anno 1366. and added it to his Estate. By a third *Henry*, grandchild of this *Ferrens*, or Man of Iron, this Earldom formerly held in Fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was first under the Patronage and Protection of the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, Anno 1428. as it continueth to this day: the Earls hereof content with their own Estates, and more addicted to the Book, than unto the Sword, have acted little in the Wars to improve their Fortunes.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the rest of *Hassia*, and also of the County of *Nassau* in *Vettravia*, near unto adjoining, were the *Catti*, or *Chatti*, mentioned by the Ancients: first conquered (after the withdrawing of the *Roman* Forces) by the *Hessi*, and both subdued not long after by the *Thuringians*. Subject unto the Lantgraves of *Duringen*, till the death of *Henry*, the last of the male issue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the division of whose Estate, the Western moiety of *Duringen* fell to the share of *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, one of the Competitors, who leaving the title of Lantgrave of *Duringen* to the Marquess of *Misnia*, took to himself the title of the Lantgrave of *Hessen*, in memory of the *Hessi* spoken of before. Of his Successors the most puissant was that *Philip*, who in the time of *Charles* the fifth, much swayed the affairs of *Germany*, Anno 1520. he discomfited King *Ferdinand*, and restored *Ulrick* to the Dukedom of *Wirttemberg*; Anno 1530. he united all the Protestant Princes and Cities of *Germany* in a common league at *Smalcald*; for the defence of the Protestant Religion; Anno 1545. he undertook the cause of *Goslar* against the Duke of *Brunswick*, whom in a set battle he took prisoner, together with his Son, and possessed his Countrey; Anno 1548. he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany* in an offensive and defensive League against *Charles* the fifth. But that War succeeded not prosperously. For the Duke of *Saxony*, his perpetual Confederates, being taken prisoner, he submitted himself to the Emperour at *Kale*, or *Hale* in *Duringen*, his Sons-in-law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marquess of *Brandenbourg*, and *Wolfgang* Prince of *Deuxponts*, having given their bonds for his return. The conditions of his Pardon were, First, That he should dismantle all his Towns except *Cassel*. 2ly, That he should yield up unto the Emperour all his Munition. 3ly, That he should pay unto the Emperour 150000 Crowns. The same night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to supper, his Sons-in-law of *Saxony* and *Brandenbourg* accompanying him. After supper, he was contrary to the Laws of *Hospitality*, and the Emperours exact promise, detained Prisoner. The fallacy stood thus: In the Emperours compact with the three Princes, the words were, that the Lantgrave should be kept, *Nicht in einig gefengenes*, that is, *Not in any prison*: which the Emperours Secretary by a small dash of his pen, turned into *Nicht in ewig gefengenes*, that is, *Not in everlasting Prison*. Well, in prison he staid five years; which being expired, he was again set at large by Duke *Maurice*, the overthrower and restorer of the *German* liberty. The residue of these Lantgraves in their several times, occur in the ensuing Catalogue of

The LANTGRAVES of HASSIA.

- 1263 1 *Henry* of *Brabant*, Son of *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Sophia* his wife, daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*; after a nine years War betwixt him and the Marquess of *Misnia*, divided the Estate, and took unto himself the title of Lantgrave of *Hessen*.
 1308 2 *Otho*, and *John*, sons of *Henry*.
 1323 3 *Henry* II. and *Lewis*, sons of *Otho*.
 1376 4 *Herman*, the son of *Lewis*.
 1414 5 *Lewis* II. son of *Herman*, surnamed the *Milde*.

1458 6 *Lewis*

Westphalia.

- 1458 6 *Lewis* III. Son of *Lewis* the *Milde*.
 7 *William*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* the third, dispossessed of his Estate by
 8 *William* II. his youngest Brother.
 1509 9 *Philip*, the famous Lantgrave spoken of before, Son of *William* the second.
 1567 10 *William* III. eldest Son of *Philip*, succeeded in one moiety of the Estate, and resided at *Cassels*: the other moiety being divided betwixt his Brethren *Ludowick* of *Marpurg*, and *George* of *Darmstadt*, Father of *Ludowick* of *Darmstadt* before mentioned.
 1590 11 *Maurice*, eldest Son of *William* the third.
 12 *William* IV. Son of *Maurice*, now living, 1648.

The Arms of these Lantgraves are *Asure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Gules*, Crowned Or. Which being properly and originally the Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Francony*, were given by *Caradus Salicu*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperour, to *Lewis* of *Orleans*, at such time as he invested him in the Lantgravedom of *Thuringia*: on the expiration of whose line, challenged and born by the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, as the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the 6th, and his Brother *Henry*, the last made Princes of that House.

WESTPHALIA.

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the East, with *Hassia*, *Brunswick*, and part of *Lunenbourg*; on the West, with the Bishoprick of *Colen*, *Cleveland*, *Over-ysell*, *West* and *East-Frisland*, and the *German Ocean*; on the North, with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holstein*; and on the South, with *Munster*, and some part of *Hassia*.

It was thus called of the *Westphali*, a tribe or division of the *Saxons*, distinguished heretofore into the *Transalbinos*, inhabiting beyond the *Ell*, or *Albis*, in the County of *Holstein*, now a part of *Danemark*: the *Ostphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the *Ocean*, with the River of *Saliza*, and the *Weser*; taking up the Bishopricks of *Breme*, *Verden*, *Hildesheim*, *Halberstat*, and *Meyding*, with the Dukedoms of *Lunenbourg* and *Brunswick*: the *Angriuariani*, taking up the north-west part of the modern *Westphalen*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Breme*, and the Earldom of *Oldenburg*: and finally, the *West-phali*, or *Western-Saxons*, inhabiting the rest of the modern *Westphalen*, with the Earldoms of *Mark*, *Berg*, *Zutphen*, the Seignoury of *Over-ysell*, and some parts of *Guelderland*, and *Holland*: but the *Saxons* being subjugated by the power of the *French*, and several new Estates erected out of that old Stock; the remnant of the *Westphali* and *Angriuariani*, (the Bishoprick of *Breme* being added unto the account,) were comprehended and united in the name of *WESTPHALEN*.

The Soil, according to the several parts of it, is of different natures: the parts adjoining to the *Weser* being desert, and barren; those towards the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Bergen*, mountainous and full of Woods; the Bishoprick of *Bremen*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry lands, heaths and unfruitful thickets, like the wilde parts of *Windfor* Forest betwixt *Stanes* and *Fernham*. In other parts exceeding plentiful of Corn, and of excellent *Pasturage*; stored with great plenty of wild fruits, and (by reason of the many Woods) abundance of *Acorns*: with infinite herds of Swine (which they breed up with those natural helps) of so good a relish, that a Gammon of *Westphalian Bacon*, is reckoned for a principal Dish at a great mans Table.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Majores* about *Bremen*, the *Chanani*, *Angriuarii*, and *Bructeri*, inhabiting about *Munster*, *Osnaburg*, and so towards the Land of *Colen*; and part of the *Cherusci* (before spoken of) taking up those parts which lie nearest unto *Brunswick*, and *Lunenbourg*. All of them vanquished by *Drusus* the Son-in-law of *Augustus*; but soon restored to their former liberty, by the great overthrow given by the *Cherusci*, and their associates, to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards uniting into one name with the *French*, they expelled the *Romans* out of *Gaul*: leaving their forsaken, and ill-inhabited seats, to be taken by the *Saxons*; with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themselves both in Name and Nation. Of that great body it continued a considerable Member (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom) till the proscription and deprivation of Duke *Henry* the Lion: At what time the parts beyond the *Weser* were usurped by *Barnard* Bishop of *Paderborn*; those betwixt the *Weser*, and the *Rhene*, by *Philip* Archbishop of *Colen*, whose Successors still hold the title of Dukes of *Westphalen*: the Bishopricks of *Breme*, *Munster*, *Paderborn*, and *Mindaw*, having been formerly endowed with goodly Territories, had some accretments also out of this Estate: every one catching hold of that which lay nearest to him. But not to make too many subdivisions of it, we will divide it only into these two parts; viz. 1 *Westphalen* specially so called, and 2 the Bishoprick of *Bremen*.

In *WESTPHALEN* specially so called, which is that part hereof which lyeth next to *Cleveland*, the places of most observation are, 1 *Geseke*, a Town of good repute; 2 *Brala*, a Village of great beauty; 3 *Arnsberg*; and 4 *Fredeborch*, honoured with the title of *Præfectures*; 5 *Wadenbrich*; 6 *Homburg*, lording it over fair and spacious Territories. All which, with two Lordships, and eight *Præfectures* more, dispersed in the Dukedom of *Engern*, and County of *Sarland*, belong unto the Bishop of *Colen*; the titular Duke of *Westphalen*, and really of *Angriuariani* (*Engern*) as he stiles himself: the title and possession of Duke *Engern*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno* Archbishop hereof, Son of *Henry* the first, Emperour and King of *Germany*, surnamed the *Fowler*, with the consent of *Otho* the first his elder brother. 7 *Montenabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) seated in that part hereof which is called *Westernald*; a Town of consequence belonging to the Elector of *Triers*. 8 *Rhenen*; 9 *Schmalat*;

Westphalen,
and Bremen.

9 Schamlat, and 10 Beckem, reasonable good Towns, all of the Bishoprick of Munster. 11 Munster it self, famous for the Treaty, and conclusions made upon that treaty, for the peace of Germany; seated upon the River Ems, and so called from a Monastery here founded by Charles the Great, which gave beginning to the Town; supposed to be that Mediolanum, which Ptolomy placeth in this tract. A beautifully, and well fortified City, and the See of a Bishop, who is also the Temporal Lord of it. Famous for the wofull Tragedies here acted by a lawless crew of Anabaptists, who chose themselves a King (that famous Taylor, John of Leiden) whom they called King of Zion, as they named the City New Jerusalem; proclaimed a community both of Goods and Women; cut off the heads of all that opposed their doings: and after many fanatical and desperate actions, by the care and industry of the Bishop and his Confederates, brought to condign punishment. The Story is to be seen at large in Sleidan, Mr. Hoekers Preface, and some modern Pamphlets; wherein, as in a Mirrour, we may plainly see the face of the present times. 12 Osnaburg, first built, as some say, by Julius Caesar; as others, by the Earls of Engern; but neither so ancient as the one, nor of late a standing as the others make it; here being an Episcopal See founded by Charles the Great, who gave it all the privileges of an University. Liberally endowed at the first erection of the same, and since so well improved, both in Power and Patrimony, that an alternate succession in it by the Dukes of Brunswick hath been concluded on in the Treaty of Munster, as a fit compensation for the Bishoprick of Halberstadt, (otherwise disposed of by that Treaty) of late enjoyed wholly by that Family. 13 Quakenburg, on the River Hase. 14 Warendorp; and 15 Wildhusen, Towns of that Bishoprick. 16 Paderborn, an Episcopal See also, founded by Charles the Great, at the first conversion of the Saxons; more ancient than strong, yet more strong than beautiful. 17 Ringelsstein; and 18 Osnaburg, belonging to the Bishop of Paderborn. 19 Minden, upon the Weser, another of the Episcopal Sees founded by Charles the Great, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony: converted to Lay-uses since the Reformation, under colour of Administration of the Goods of the Bishoprick; and now by the conclusions at Munster, settled for ever on the Electors of Brandenburg, with the title of Prince of Minden. 20 Rintelin, a strong Town, conveniently seated on the Weser, not far from Minden; to the Bishop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that Westphalen had formerly been a part of Saint Peters Patrimony, belonging wholly to the Clergy; but there are some Free Cities, and secular Princes, which have shares therein. As 1 Warburg, a neat Town, but seated on an uneven piece of ground, near the River Dimula; a Town which tradeth much in good Ale, brewed here, and sold in all parts of the Countrey: heretofore a County of it self under the Earls hereof, now governed in the nature of a Free Estate, and reckoned an Imperial City. 2 Brakel, accepted of as Imperial also. 3 Herforden, a Town of good strength and note governed by its own Laws and Magistrates, under the protection of Colen. 4 Lemgow, belonging heretofore to the Earls of Lippe; but by them so well privileged and enfranchised, that now it governeth it self as a Free Estate. Here is also 5 The Town and County of Ravensburg, belonging anciently to the Dukes of Cleve, and now in the rights of that House, to the Elector of Brandenburg: As also 6 the Town and County of Lippe, lying on the west side of the Weser; the Pedigree of the Earls whereof some fetch from that Sp. Manlius, who defended the Roman Capitol against the Gauls, (they might as well derive it from the Geese which preserved that Capitol;) others with greater modesty look no higher for it, than to the times of Charles the Great; one of the noble Families of the ancient Saxons. 7 Here also stands the Town and Castle of Aremberg, commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony thereto adjoining; which being much increased by the accession of Sedan in the neighbouring Belgium, was by the Heir general of this house conveyed in marriage to Engelbert, the 9th Earl of Mark, whose second Son called Eberhard (but the only one he had by this vent) succeeded in his Mothers Estates and honours; which were kept undivided, till Eberhard the 6th Lord thereof of the House of Mark, contenting himself with the titles and Estates of Aremberg, left Sedan and the pieces which belonged unto it, to his younger Brother Robert. The Great Grandchild of this Eberhard, called also Robert, created the first Earl of Aremberg, left his Estates and Titles to his Sister Margaret, married to John Lord of Brabant, a person of great note and power in the Belgique Provinces, and faithful to the last in the cause and quarrel of King Philip the 2d, in which finally he lost his life, Anno 1568, leaving both his Estates and title unto Charles his Son, frequently mentioned by the name of Charles Earl of Aremberg in the Stories of the Belgique Wars, in which he was no less considerable for his eminent valour, than for his singular fidelity to his Lord and Master. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but these most considerable: all of them Homagers of the Empire, but their acknowledgments hereof little more than titular; though since in danger of performing more real services; the Emperor Ferdinand the 2d, after the surprize of Holstein, and some part of Denmark, Anno 1627, gaining so far upon this Countrey, that had not the King of Sweden come in so seasonably, he had made himself absolute master of it; and by the opportunity of the situation of it on the back of the Netherlands, forced the United States to some great extremities. As for the title of Duke of Westphalen and Engern, it hath been long used (as before was said) by the Bishops of Colen: as also (but with better right, as to that of Westphalen) by the house of Lawenburg, descended from the ancient Electoral Family; writing themselves in that regard Dukes of Saxony, Westphalen, and Angriwaria or Engern.

2. The Bishoprick of BREME lyeth on the other side of the Weser, extending as far as to the Elb, and the German Ocean. So called of 1 Breme the principal City, seated on the Weser, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous, and rich; beautified with fair and even

even streets, and very strongly fortified, against all invasions, both by Art and Nature; the Town being so feared amongst Fens, occasioned by the overflowings of the River, that it may be easily drowned on all sides, to keep off an enemy. Adorned also with a spacious Market-place, a fair Counsel-house, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Arch-bishop; who is the temporal Lord of the Town and Territory. Other Towns of special note are 2 Osnaburg, not far from Breme, from whence great quantity of Linnen is brought yearly to England, and other places. 3 Arnheim, on the Weser also. 4 Osnaburg, on the River Bolla, not far from the fall thereof into the Ocean. 5 Buxterrade, on the Elb, not far from Hamburg, but on the hither side of the water. 6 Stade, Stadt, or Stadium, seated on the River Zuinghe, near the fall thereof into the Elb; accomplished the ancientest Town in all Saxony, and one of the first which was enrolled amongst the Hanse; and by special privilege had the pre-emption of all the Rhenish wine that passed by them, and the right also of coining money. But being over-topped by the power and trade of Hamburg, (5 Dutch miles from it) it grew at length so poor, and in such decay, that their yearly Revenues came but to 90 l. per annum, so that they were fain to sell their privileges to the Town of Hamburg, and put themselves under the protection of the Bishops of Breme. Revived again upon the coming thither of the English Merchants, who finding some hard measure from the Hamburgers, fixed their Staple here: by means whereof the Citizens in short time grew exceeding wealthy; the buildings fair and beautiful, the Town strongly fortified. Situate in a place so easily overwhelmed with water, that the people in ostentation of their strength and security, used to have Ordinance of Stone planted over their Gates. But the late German wars have made them sensible of their folly: when notwithstanding their new works, and an English Garrison under Sir Charles Morgan, they were compelled to submit themselves to the Earl of Tilly, Anno 1627, recovered after by the Swedes in the course of their victories.

As for the Bishoprick of Bremen it was first founded by Charles the Great, in the person of Willibode an English Saxon, one of the first Preachers of the Gospel in these parts of this Countrey. The Town before that time a poor Village only, being made an Archiepiscopal See, and the Metropolitan of all the Churches of the North, quickly grew up into esteem, as the Bishop did in power and patrimony, till they became Lords of this tract. Governed since the Reformation of Religion, by Lay-Bishops, or Administrators of the Rents of the Bishoprick; which under that title they inverted to their proper use. And now of late, by the Conclusions made at Munster, settled as an Inheritance on the Crown of Sweden, to be enjoyed, together with the Bishoprick of Verden, by the Kings thereof; with the title of Dukes of Breme, and Verden: the ancient liberties of those Cities, formerly granted by their Bishops, being still preserved.

EAST-FRISELAND.

EAST-FRISELAND is bounded on the East, with the River Weser, by which parted from Westphalen; on the West, with the River Ems, which parteth it from Groyningen, and the rest of West-Friesland; on the North, with the German Ocean; and on the South, with the Earldom of Mark, a part of Cleveland. So called from the Frisii, who casting out the old Inhabitants, possessed themselves of it, and called it by their own name, Friseland: divided by the Ems or Amisus, into the Western; spoken of amongst the Netherlands; and the Eastern or East-Friseland, in which now we are.

The nature of the soil we shall see anon, when we come to the subdivisions of it. Chief Rivers, besides those of Ems, and 2 Weser, spoken of elsewhere, 3 Jada, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence Die Jadic. 4 Dalliari, on which standeth the City of Emden. 5 Delm, and 6 Honta, neighboured by Delmenhorst, and Oldenborch, Towns of this Countrey. The whole divided into 1 the County of Emden, or East-Friseland properly so called; and 2 the Earldom of Oldenburg.

1 EAST-FRISELAND specially so called, hath on the West, the River Ems; on the North, the Ocean; on the East, and South, the Earldom of Oldenborg: called also the County of EMDEN, from the fair Town of Emden, the chief City of it. The soil hereof is very fruitful both in Corn and Pasturage; sending great store of Oxen, Horses, Wooll, Swine, Butter, Cheese, and all sorts of Grain, into other Countreys; all of them excellent in their kind, nor easily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatsoever. Chief Towns herein are 1 Emden, so called from the Ems, on which it is situate; Dolkart a small River falling here into it: a noted and well-traded Town, beautified with a Haven so deep and large, that the greatest Ships with full sail are admitted into it. The people rich, affirmed to have 60 Ships of 100 tons apiece, and 600 lesser Barks of their own; besides 700 Busses and Fisher-boats, maintained for the most part, by their Herring fishing on the Coasts of England. The buildings generally fair, both private and publick, especially the Church, the Town-Hall, and Earls Palace. This last a strong and stately Castle, situate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all sides compassed by the Sea, and yet not strong enough to preserve the Townsmen in their due obedience: who in the year 1595, taking advantage on the absence of their Earl, keep him out of their Town, because he seemed not to approve the Calvinian humor; and have since governed in the nature of a Commonwealth, confederate with the States of the United Provinces, for their better establishment and support. So easily is Religion made a mask to disguise Rebellion. 2 Aurick, by some called Anseling, seated in the Inlands, rich, and well walled, of great resort by reason of the pleasure of hunting, afforded very liberally in the Forrests and Woods adjoining; drawing hither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3 Efen, on the Sea-shore, which gives the title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth also

East-Friseland.

also 4 *Jevero*, situate on the West of the River *Ida*, but both Earls subject to the Earl of East-Friseland. 5 *Uredeborg* (that is to say, the *Free Village*) is called from some Immunities granted by the Earls; possessed a while by those of *Branswick*, who fenced and garrisoned it for themselves, but in the end recovered by *Ezard* the 2d Earl. 6 *Broick*, the seat and proper Government of the Ancestors of these Earls; from whence the parts adjoining are called *Broickmurland*. 7 *Norden*, another *Præfecture* or Captain-ship of the said Ancestors. 8 *Dumort*, a strong Castle and retiring place of the Earls. 9 *Linghen*, upon the *Emis*, a strong Town well fortified and as well garrisoned; belonging to the King of *Spain*; as Vicar to the Empire over all *Friseland*; even to *Diltmerf* and the Confines of *Danemark*. A dignity procured by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charles* the 5th of the Emperour *Frederick* the 3d; in right whereof, the King of *Spain*, as Heir of the House of *Burgundy*, hath some preheminance over *Emden*, of little use to him since the falling off of the *Belgick* Provinces. More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Castles, stately dwelling houses, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; standing so thick, that in many places they joyn together: some of them being withall so large, so well peopled, and of Streets so spacious, that they may compare with many Cities in *Germany*; of all which the most City-like is named *Leere*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Minores*, described by *Pliny* to be so barbarous a people, and so destitute of all necessary Provision for the life of man; that they had no drink but rain water, preserved in great Troughs before the doors of their Cottages. These outed or subdued by the *Frisons*, a neighbouring people, possessing *North-Holland*, the *District* of *Utrecht*, with the Countreys of *Grœnyng* and *West-Friseland*: who having once passed over the *Emis*, extended their Dominions as far as *Danemark*. Governed by Kings, but intermingled with, and overpowered by, the *Saxons*, till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom the last King *Roboald* overcome in fight was persuaded to receive the Sacrament of holy Baptism. But being told that his Friends and Kinsfolks were in Hell, because no Christians: *Neither will I (saith he) be of that Profession, for I love to be amongst my Kindred*. After this, *Friseland* was a member of the French Kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald, Anno 893. at which time all *Friseland* on the West side of the *Emis*, was conferred upon him: possessed, but not without much war and bloodshed, by his Successors; the *Frisons* ever and anon rebelling against them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Those parts of it on the other side of the *Emis*, remained unto the German Empire; governed by *Deputies*, Lieutenants, and Provincial Earls, accountable to the Emperors for the Administration, till the year 1453. in which *Ulrick* Governour hereof for the Emperour *Frederick*, having got the Town of *Emden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of East-Friseland; transmitting the Estate and title unto his Posterity.

EARLS of EAST-FRISELAND.

- 1453 1 *Ulrick*, Son of *Enno*, the Son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governours for the Empire in *Brück* and *Norden*, made the first Earl of East-Friseland by the Emperour *Frederick*.
 1466 2 *Ezard*, the Son of *Ulrick*, who got *Uredeborg* from the Citizens of *Branswick*.
 1528 3 *Enno*, the Son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greetzil*, formerly usurped by the Dukes of *Gueldres*.
 1540 4 *Ezard* II. Son of *Enno*, who married *Katherine* daughter to *Gustavus* the first of *Sweden*.
 5 *Enno* II. Son of *Ezard* the 2d, and the Lady *Katherine*.
 1586 6 *Rodolphus Christianus*, Son of *Enno* the 2d, who being well affected to the *Lutheran* Forms, (first introduced in the time of *Enno* the first) was by a *Calvinian* party grown up in *Emden*, dispossessed of that City, Anno 1595.
 1608 7 *Enno Ludovicus*, Son of *Rodolphus Christianus*, succeeded in this Earldom on the death of his Father, and is still living for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of the Earls of East-Friseland, are *Argent*, four Bendlets *Azure*, charged with ten Hearts Or, 4. 3. 2. 1.

2. The Earldom of *OLDENBURG*, containeth that part of this Countrey which lyeth on the West side of the *Weser*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Münster* and East-Friseland specially so called, and so extending Northwards to the *German Ocean*. So called from *Oldenburg* the chief City of it, and the head of this Earldom.

The Soil hereof exceeding rich, but in Pastures specially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattel: and furnish not this Countrey only, but some of their *German* neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley, and Oats; plenty of Fruits, and trees of all sorts. Large Woods, and those well stored with *Kenison*, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of hunting. But the air cold and foggy in some exrentry; especially in Winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Oldenborch*, on the River *Honta*, repaired, if not built, by *Otho* the Great, who founded the Church of S. *John Baptist*. A Town of no great state or beauty, the houses generally of Clay, but the Castle (the dwelling place of the Earls) of well-hewn stones; of an Orbicular Form with deep ditches of water, the Town and Castle both being strongly fortified. 2 *Delmenhorst*, on the River *Delm*, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247. by *Otho* brother of Earl *Christian* the 2d, and having been 65 years in possession of the Bishops of *Münster*, was suddenly surprised on Palm-Sunday morning, by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1547. continuing ever since part of this Estate. 3 *Beckhusen*, on a River, which falleth not far off, into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea, which is called *Die Jade*. 4 *Equarten*. 5 *Ovelgard*, both seated on a long *Languet* or *Dumy Island*, be-

Oldenburg.

betwixt the said *Die Jade*, and the River *Weser*, called *Baltada*: both taken, and the last well fortified by *John* Earl of *Oldenborch*, Anno 1520. belonging formerly to the Prefecture of East-Friseland, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6 *Westerberg*, the chief Town, of a spacious Territory. 7 *Wietade*, a strong piece, on the River *Jade*, built by Earl *Christian*, one of the younger branches of the House of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8 *Mellum*, 9 *Ladelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Jade*, the other near the *Ocean*. Here is also within this Earldom the Province of *Amerlander*, supposed by some to have been the seat of the *Ambroses*; who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Tentones* in their expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces; and were slain by *Marins*.

As for the Earls of *Oldenburg*, they derive themselves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Witkind*, the last King and first Duke of the *Saxons*: who having about the year 850. built a strong Castle on the borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his wife *Alteberg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Alteburgum*, so called by the *Latinists* to this day, by the *Germans* *Oldenborch*. But his male issue failing in *Frederick* the 7th Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the Son of *Hajo*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* blood; who had married *Richsa*, the Daughter of *John*, the first Earl of this Family. From him in a direct line descended *Christian* or *Christiern*, eldest Son of *Theodorick*; who being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Danemark*, Anno 1448. left his Estate in this Earldom (but reserving the title, according to the fashion of *Germany*) to his Brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his pretensions to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, and the Earldom of *Holf*; in which he did pretend a share. The Patrimony of it much improved, by the additions of the Countreys of *Rustingen*, *Oyffingen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea; bequeathed by the last Will and Testament of the Lady *Mary*, Countess of *Jever* in East-Friseland, to *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The succession of these Earls, in regard the Royal line of *Danemark*, and by consequence of *Great Britain*, is descended from them, I have here subjoined, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The EARLS of OLDENBURG.

- 850 1 *Walpert*, of the race of *Witkind* the first Earl of *Oldenburg*.
 856 2 *Theodorick*, the Son of *Walpert*.
 3 *Theodorick* II. the Son of *Theodorick* the first.
 4 *Otho*, Son of *Theodorick* the 2d.
 5 *John*, the Son of *Otho*, accompanied the Emperour *Henry* the 2d, in his wars against the *Greeks*, and *Saracens*, Anno 1007.
 6 *Huno*, surnamed the *Glorious*, Son of *John*.
 7 *Frederick*, Son of *Huno*, fortunate in his Wars against the *Frisians*; the last of the male line of this House.
 8 *Elimarus*, the Son of *Hajo*, a Noble man of the *Frisian* blood, and of *Richsa* his wife, the daughter of *John* the fifth Earl.
 1120 9 *Elimarus* II. Son to *Elimar* the first.
 10 *Christianus*, Son of *Elimar* the 2d, surnamed the *Courageous*, or the *Warlike*, a professed enemy of *Henry* the Lion Duke of *Saxony*; from whom he took the City of *Breme*.
 11 *Maurice*, the Son of *Christian*, an associate of *Arnulph* Earl of *Holfstein*, in his wars with *Danemark*.
 12 *Christian* II. Son of *Maurice*.
 13 *John* II. Son of *Christian* the 2d.
 14 *John* III. Son of *John* the 2d.
 15 *Conrade*, the Son of *John* the third.
 16 *Christian* III. Son of *Conrade*, a Student in *Coleu*, where initiated into *holy Orders*, which he relinquished much against the will of his Brother *Maurice*, on the death of his Father.
 17 *Theodorick*, Son of *Christian* the 3d, the first Earl of *Delmenhorst* of this line; which fell to him at the death of *Nicholas* Archbishop of *Breme*, descended from a younger Son of *John* the second.
 1440 18 *Christian* IV. Son of *Theodorick*, and of *Hedwigis* Sister and heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus* Dukes of *Sleswick* and Earls of *Holfstein*; elected on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, to the Crown of *Danemark*, Anno 1448.
 1448 19 *Gerrard*, the Brother of *Christian* the 4th; a Prince of an unquiet spirit, alwayes in wars, and alwayes worried; he lost the Town of *Delmenhorst* to the Bishop of *Münster*.
 1500 20 *John* IV. Son of *Gerrard*, repaired the ruins of his Estate, and settled the distractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Baltada*.
 1526 21 *Anthony*, the son of *John* the 4th, by a sudden surprise recovered *Delmenhorst* from the Bishop of *Münster*, Anno 1547. which he strongly fortified.
 1573 22 *John* V. Son of *Anthony*, enlarged this Earldom with the Provinces of *Rustingen*, *Oyffingen*, and *Wangerland*; bequeathed to him by the last Will of the Countess of *Jever* in East-Friseland.
 23 *Anthony* II. Brother of *John* the 5th, in whose life-time he was Earl of *Delmenhorst*, and after his death of *Oldenburg* also: still living, Anno 1648. for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And

And thus we see the present estate of *Germany*, distracted and divided amongst many *Princes*, *Princes*, *Princes*, and *Incorporate Towns*, the chief of which are herein mentioned and described. But besides these there are many others of less note, and smaller Territories, which yet are *absolute* and *free*: inasmuch, that in one dayes-riding, a *Traveller* may twice or thrice meet with divers *Laws*, and divers *Coins*; every *free Prince* and *free City* (whose *laws* the *Emperours* are sworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what *Laws*, and *Coin* what *Money* they will. And hence in the confuſure of Kingdoms, the King of *Spain* is said to be *Rex hominum*, because of his Subjects reasonable obedience; the King of *France*, *Rex Animarum*, because of their infinite Taxes and Impositions; the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, because of his Subjects often insurrection against, and depolition of their Princes: but the *Emperour of Germany*, is called *Rex Regum*, because there is such a number of *Reguli*, or *Free Princes* which live under his command; or rather at their own command, (for they do even what they list) as the *Emperour Maximilian* the first, well noted.

And to say truth, the publick Government hereof is nothing less than *Monarchical*: the *Emperour* being accompanied amongst the *Princes*, but as the chief Officer of the Empire; not reckoned of by *Bodin*, and others of our great *Statists* and *Civilians*, as an *absolute Monarch*; such as the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*, are confessed to be. For the Priviledges of the *Free Cities* being made *perpetual*, the great Estates *hereditary*, and the Empire *Eligible*; the *Emperours* were brought at last to such low condition, as to be made accountable to the *States* of the Empire: who if they be persuaded in their Conſciences, or but think they be so, that he is likely by his *mal-administration* to destroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good advice, *ab electorum Collegio Cæsarea maiestatis privati potest* (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the *Electors*, and a more fit and able man chosen into the place: and that too, as the *Emperour Judocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his *Constitutions*, Anno 1410, *ſine infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of treason or disloyalty. So that the supreme power and majesty of the Empire, seems to reside especially and contractedly in the *Electoral Colledge*; diffuſedly, in the *Imperial Diets*; by way of execution in the *Chamber of Spires*, and other the Supreme Courts of the several Circles. But that which makes that body which they call the Empire, is the Assembly of the Prelates, Princes and Commissioners of the *Free Cities*, in their Diets or Parliaments; the *Emperour* presiding in them: whom he that saw adorned in his Royal Robes, with the *Imperial Crown* and Scepter, with the titles of *Cæsar* and *Augustus* given at every word, would think that the whole action did take life from him: whereas indeed, he hath not so much privilege as a *negative voice*, but is to put in execution such *Decrees* and *Sanctions*, as these Estates assembled have thought fit to make; nor able to do any act by his own authority, which may speak him *Emperour*. But on the other side, the *Princes* take power unto themselves, of making *Laws* for, and imposing Taxes on their Subjects: of railing war upon one another, or against a third, and doing many other acts of *supreme authority*, which in the *Emperour* would be counted matters of *mal-administration*. Such points as these, together with the appointing of *Judges* and the like chief *Magistrates*, (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded off, but in the *general Diet*; which may be summoned by or without the *Emperour*, as occasion serveth. And to this weakening of the Majesty and Power *Imperial*, the neighbouring Princes have afforded their best assistance: jealous of their own interests and decrease of power, if that vast body so well limbed should be strongly jointed; and all the several members of it united under the command of one *supreme head*. Clear proof whereof we have in those solemn Leagues, and Confederations, made in their several times against *Charles* the fifth, and the late *Emperour Ferdinand* the 2d, as soon as they began to be in some possibility of setting the *Imperial Majesty* in its proper Splendour, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been by the way of Election, as before was noted. The business first projected in the Court of *Rome*, by *Gregory* the first, then *Pope*, who being a Native of this Countrey, thought it the most expedient course to continue the *Imperial Title* among those of his Nation. But whatsoever was pretended, the design of it chiefly was to make the *Emperours* less powerfull, and distract the *Germans* (whom they feared) into parts and factions: that so the *Popes* might have the better opportunity to grow great in *Italy*. And that the *Emperour* might be such as the *Pope* should like of, the matter was so ordered, that the one half of the *Electors* should be always of the Ecclesiasticks, who being obnoxious to the *Popes*, and for the most part driving on their interests, were very like to serve him on all occasions. The *Electors* only fix in number, that is to say, 1 The Archbishop of *Mentz*, Chancellor of the Empire; 2 The Archbishop of *Colen*, Chancellor of *Italy*; 3 The Archbishop of *Trier*, Chancellor of *France*; 4 The Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer; 5 The Duke of *Saxony*, Lord Marshal; and 6 The Marquess of *Brandenburgh*, Lord Chamberlain. Upon equality of voices the Duke of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for a Seventh; who by Office is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great Solemnities. For upon dayes of great Solemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the first dayes of the *Imperial Diets*, and the like to these, these Offices are performed only: and then performed in this manner following, either in person, or by Proxy. Before the Palace Gate stands an heap of Oats, so high that it reacheth to the breast of the Horse on which the Duke of *Saxony* rideth; having in his hand a Silver wand and a Silver measure, both which together are to weigh 200 Marks. The Duke still sitting on his Horse, filleth up the measure with Oats, then sticks his wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the measure of Oats unto some of his Servants who stand nearest unto him; and so attends the *Emperour* into the Court. The *Emperour* being entred and fare down at the Table, the three spiritual *Electors* standing orderly together, lay the Grace before him. Then cometh the Marquess of *Brandenbourg* on horse-back also, with a Basin of water in his hand (the Basin being

of the weight of 12 Marks of silver) and a fine clean Towel on his arm: which, alighting from his horse, he holds to the *Emperour* till he wash. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene*, mounted on his horse, with four silver platters full of meat, every one of the weight of three marks of silver; which, descending from his horse, after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entering the great Hall on Horseback, as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his hand of the weight of 12 Marks in silver, alighteth from his horse, and presenteth the Cup unto the *Emperour*. But we must know, that of late times these offices are seldom or never performed by the *Electors* in their own persons. It is enough if they send their Ambassadors, or substitute some one or other of the *Emperours Court* to do it for them.

The Election is usually celebrated at *Frankford* on the *Main*, to which place the *Electors* or their Deputies are to make repair, upon the day appointed by the Archbishop of *Mentz*; (whose office it is (as being Chancellor of the Empire) to issue out the Summons for this Assembly. In their passage unto *Frankford*, they are to be sufficiently guarded by every Prince, throw whose Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 horse, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met they go into St. *Bartholomews Church* (the most capacious of that City) where after the high Mass is said, the three spiritual *Electors* laying their hands upon their breasts, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make oath to choose a fit temporal Head for the People of *Christendom*. Upon equality of voices, as it sometimes happeneth, the *Bohemian* hath the casting voice, and concludes the business; if in the space of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then must they have no other allowance, but of bread and water, nor be suffered to go out of the City; till that necessity compelleth them unto some agreement: which being at the last resolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince so elected is presently saluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of *Emperour* not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the *Pope*; though since the time of *Charles* the fifth, without any such trouble to themselves, or the *Popes of Rome*, the Title of both *Emperour* and *Imperial Majesty* is usually conferred upon them from their first Election. The election being finished and signified to the party chosen, the Inauguration was held antiently at 3 several places; viz. 1 At *Aquisgrane*, or *Aken*, in the Land of *Gullick*, where he received the silver Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany*. 2ly. At *Milain*, by the Archbishop whereof he was crowned with the Iron Crown for *Lombardy*, or the Realm of *Italy*. 3ly. At *Rome*, where, at the hands of the *Pope* himself, he was crowned with a Golden Crown for the *Roman Empire*. But since, those journeys unto *Rome* and *Milain* have been long laid by; the *Emperours* holding their Elections to be strong enough to make good their title to that dignity, being merely titular, and their inauguration at *Aken*, to be as effectual, as if they had also visited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the Priviledges of the *Electors* and other fundamental Constitutions of the *German Empire*, we find summed up together in the Golden Bull of *Charles* the 4th, by whom first promulgated, Anno 1359. But we must know that since the publishing of that Bull, the business of election hath received some change as to the number and the persons of the Parties interested. For first it pleased the *Emperour Ferdinand* the 2d, on the Proscription of *Frederick*, the first *Electeur Palatine*, to transfer the *Electoral dignity*, with the office of *Arch-Bishop*, or *Arch-Sewer*, from that house to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of *Electeur of Bavaria*; with all the powers and priviledges which belonged unto it, to be infeofed upon him and his heirs for ever. Which action of the *Emperour* being protested against by some of the *Electors*, in favour of the *Palatine Family*, and in due care unto themselves; in not admitting such a dangerous precedent for the time to come; it was at last concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munster*, Anno 1648, that the Duke of *Bavaria* and his heirs enjoying the said *Electoral dignity*, with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the translation of it from the *Palatine family* spoken of before; an eighth *Electorate* should be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate*, by *Charles Ludovick*, the now Prince *Electeur Palatine*, and his heirs, who also on the failure of the Line of *Bavaria*, are to be repossessed of their ancient rights, the title of *Arch-Treasurer*, being given unto them at the present instead of that of *Arch-Bishop*, or *Arch-Sewer*, which they had before.

Now as a step unto the Empire, and for the better assurance of the *Imperial Dignity*, to the *Austrian Family*, it was cunningly projected by *Charles* the fifth (having received the *Imperial Crown* from *Pope Clement* the 7th.) that his Brother *Ferdinand* should be chosen King of the *Romans*, whilst himself was living, and by that means be the more certain of the Empire after his decease. Which policy being followed by all his Successors, the title of *Rex Romanorum*, or *King of the Romans*, is grown to be the Title of the Heir apparent, or designed Successor, in the present Empire of the *Germans*; as that of *Cæsar* was from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the antient *Romans*. In so much as *Rex Romanorum* is now defined to be one, who is already so far estated in the Empire, than on the death, deprivation, or resignation of the present *Emperour*, he is immediately to succeed. And so accordingly it hath happened since this act of *Charles*. Who thought he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto *Philip* his son and heir, whom he found capable enough of so high an honour: yet he could not do it; it being thought by many understanding men, that on notice of this under-hand practice, his brother *Ferdinand*, who had the like mind to transmit the Empire to his own Posterity, did secretly lend Duke *Maurice* his helping hand to drive him out of *Germany*, as in brief he did. As for the reasons, or to say better, the pretences, upon which *Charles* did institute this *Rex Romanorum*, (for questionless the true reason of it was to perpetuate the Empire in the *Austrian Family*) they were these that follow. 1 Because that having the command of many Nations, he could not always personally

Cimbrick Chersonese. querours of England. 4 *Waldemare* the 3d. a right valiant Prince; but unsuccessful in his wars against the *Hanse-Towns*, then newly entered into league. 5 *Christiern* the 2d. a great Commander in the wars; but of greater cruelty. 6 *Christiern* the 4th. little inferior unto many of his Predecessors: to whom we subjoyn (though of different sex) *On. Margaret*, the *Semiramis* of these Northern Countries; a Lady of a Masculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all enterprises, as she declared in the conquest of *Sweathland*, and subjection of *Norway*, by her united to this Crown.

The *Christian* faith was first preached to those of *Holstein* (the next neighbouring Countrey unto *Germany*) by *S. Angarius*, Bishop of *Bremen*, the general *Apostle* of those Northern parts, in the year 826. *Lewis* the Godly then being Emperour of the West. In whose time *Harald* King of *Denmark* being expelled his Kingdoms by the sons of *Godfrey* or *Gottricus*, was baptized at *Meuz* with a great number of that people which attended on him, by the hands of *Elbo* Archbishop of *Rhemes*, employed by the Emperour in that service: the conversion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperour *Otho* the first, assigned by the Ministry of one *Poppo* the first Bishop of *Arhusen*; *Sueno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongst the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the reign of *Olaus* the third, Anno 1055, or thereabouts: the English assisting in the work, and the good King so zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint, after his decease. Relapsing for the most part to their ancient *Gentilism*, they were finally regained unto *Christianity*, by the means of Pope *Adrian* the fourth, an English Man, about the year 1156, before his assuming of the Popedom, called *Nicolaus Breakspear*. But by whomsoever first converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend some power and jurisdiction over them. Which when they began to exercise with too much authority, *Waldemar* the third, is said to have returned this answer, *Naturam habemus à Deo, Regnum à Subditis, Divitias à Parentibus, Religionem à Romana Ecclesia, quam si nobis invades renunciamus per presentes*; that is to say, We hold our life from God, our Crown from our Subjects, our Riches from our Ancestors, our Religion from the Church of *Rome*; which if you envy us, we do here remit it by these presents. But this renunciation though then threatened, was not made till afterwards: when the whole mass of *Papery* was abolished by King *Frederick*, the first, using therein the Ministry of *Bugenhege*, a Divine of *Pomerania*; by whom reformed according to the doctrine of the *Lutheran* Churches.

As for the Government of the Church since that Reformation, it continueth as before it was, by *Archbishops* and *Bishops*, in number as before; but much abridged of their *Revenues*, and a great part of their power. For *Frederick*, though he found it necessary to remove the old *Bishops*, (not one of which would be perwaded to the change of Religion) yet he substituted others in their places, allowing them a convenient maintenance, with a power of *Presidence* in all Church Assemblies, where they are to take the advice of other *Presbyters* along with them; and out of such Assemblies, to receive complaints, to provide remedie against scandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar *Inspectors*, which concern the Church. So that in all the Kings Dominions there are two *Archbishops*, and thirteen *Bishops*: that is to say, the *Archbishop* of *London*, the *Bishops* of *Roschild*, *Olenfse*, *Ripen*, *Wiborch*, *Arhusen*, *Sleswick*, and *Hadersleve*, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; the *Archbishop* of *Nidrosia*, the *Bishops* of *Bergen*, *Anslo*, *Streffanger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norway*; and the *Bishops* of *Halar*, and *Schalbels*, for the Isle of *Island*: the Churches of *Holstein*, (formerly under the *Bishops* of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by *Super-intendents*, as the rest of the *Lutherans*.

The whole body of the estate (as appears by this) consisteth chiefly of three members; viz. 1 the Dukedom of *Holstein*, containing *Wagerland*, *Ditmarsh*, *Stormarsh*, and *Holstein*, specially so called; 2 the Kingdom of *Denmark*, comprehending both *Futlands*, part of *Scandia*, and the *Hemodes*, or *Baltick* Islands; and 3 the Kingdom of *Norway*, consisting of *Norway* it self, and the Islands of the Northern Ocean. Which parts we shall survey in order, as before laid down, premising first a word or two of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, in which the Dukedom of *Holstein*, and the two *Futlands* are contained.

The CIMBRICK CHERSONESE.

THE CIMBRICK CHERSONESE, hath on the East, the *Baltick* Sea; on the West, the main *German* Ocean; on the North, a part of the Ocean bending into the narrow Strait or *Fretum*, which they call the *Sundt*; on the South-west, the great River of *Albis*; on the South-East, the small River of *Trave*; betwixt which is the Neck or *Isthmus*, which unites it to *Germany*. I know that some contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South, with the River *Eydore*: but I have drawn it down to the *Elbe* & the *Trave*, which give it more resemblance to a *Chersonese* or *Demy Island*, than the other doth dissenting in this point from the common opinion. It had the name of *Chersonesus*, ἀπὸ τῆς χερσὸς ὅτιον αὐτῆς ἐστὶν ἡ γῆ καὶ ἡ νῆσος, it being the same with a *Peninsula* in the *Latin*; of which name there are 5 most famous, that is to say, first, *Peloponnesus* in *Greece*, which is now called *Morea*. 2 *Iberacia* *Chersonesus* in *Thracia*, near the Sea *Propontis*. 3 *Tanrica* *Chersonesus* in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartaria*. 4 *Anarea* *Chersonesus* in *India*, which we now call *Malaca* (of all which we shall speak in their proper places) and 5 *Cimbrica* *Chersonesus*, where now we are. This last so called from the *Cimbric*, the first Inhabitants hereof, originally descended from *Gomer*, the son of *Japhet*; thence called *Gomerii*, and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbric*. Leaving the Plains of *Phrygia*, as too narrow for them, they sought out new dwellings, and are said to have first dwelt in the banks of *Palus Maeotis*; where they gave name to *Bosphorus Cimmerius*, there being. Being overcome by the *Scythians*, they removed their seats more Northward, into a Countrey bound-

bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great Ocean, on the one side; and the forest of *Hercynia*, on the other; within which bounds is the *Peninsula* or Countrey where we now are. They were a people of extraordinary big stature, having blew and red eyes, and lived most upon theft; so that for their sakes, *Kluppes* ἡννοῦντο τὰς ἡμετέρας τοὺς ἀνδρᾶς, the *Germans* called all thieves *Cimbers*. It hapned that the Ocean overflowing a great part of their Countrey, compelled them to seek new seats: whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then lordling over a great part of the World, for some place to settle in. This request being denyed, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their swords, what their Petitions could not obtain. *Manlius*, *Silvanus*, and *Cepio*, all *Roman* Consuls, perished by them; so that now (saith *Florus*) *Altum esset de Imperio Romano, nisi illi sculo Marius contigisset*: for he, as we have elsewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitants hereof were the *Saxons*, *Jutes*, and *Angles*; upon whose removal into *Britain*, the greatest part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who still possess it.

It containeth in length about 100 *Italian* miles, and 80 of the same miles in breadth; and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of ground, 30 walled Towns, 6 *Episcopal* Sees, (besides those of *Hamburg*, and *Lubeck*, which are under the *Archbishop* of *Bremen*) and 20 *Royal* Castles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and great men of the Countrey, as the private retirements of the King. The soil naturally more fit for paiturage than tillage; feeding such multitudes of Oxen, that from hence no fewer than 50000 are sent yearly to *Germany*. Divided at the present into the Duke of *Holstein*, and the Province of *Futland*.

1. HOLSTEIN.

THE Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN*, taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, where it joins to *Germany*, extending as far North, as the River *Eydore*, which divides it from *Futland*. So called from the Dutch word *Holt*, which signifies a Wood, or Forest, according to the nature of it; the Countrey being low, marshy and full of Woods, as it continueth to this day. It contains in it these four Provinces, 1 *Wagerland*, 2 *Stormarsh*, 3 *Ditmarsh*, and 4 *Holt*, or *Holstein* specially so called.

1 *WAGERLAND* is that part of *Holstein*, which lies on the South East of this *Chersonese*, bounded on the East, with *Mecklenbourg* and the *Baltick* sea; on the West, with *Holstein* specially so called; on the North, with the Sea *Baltick* also; on the South, with some part of *Mecklenbourg*. So called from the *Wagii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Slaves*, who possessed this tract; from whence the name of *Wageria*, in our *Latine* writers.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Lubeck*, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billow* near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*, from which distant five *Italian* miles. The River capable of ships of a thousand Tun, which commonly they unlade at *Tremisren*, the Port Town to the City, seated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it. It was first built by *Adolph*, the second Earl of *Holstein*, Anno 1143. but so well privileged by him and his next successors, that in short time it bid defiance to its founders, (the cause of many differences betwixt it and those Princes) and was made a Dukedom of it self. By *Frederick* the first it was united to the Empire, after whose death they chose themselves another Duke; who having governed them five years, was subdued by the *Danes*, and the City made subject to that Kingdom: remaining so, till delivered by the Emperour *Frederick* the second. By whom again once enfranchised, it became *Imperial*: afterwards listed amongst the *Hanse towns*, and the first in estimation of all the company; having above 600 ships of all sorts (some of a thousand Tun and upwards) which belong unto it. But being their Trade is for the most part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from *Pirats*, they are most of them built for burden, and are slow of sail, and little serviceable, if at all, for a fight at Sea. But to return unto the City, it is built upon all the sides of a rising hill, on the top whereof standeth the Church of Saint *Mary*, (once the Cathedral of the City, for it was *Episcopal*) whence is a descent to all the gates of the City, according to the Eye a most pleasing prospect. The buildings very beautiful, and all of brick, the streets streit and even; the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorned with excellent imagery, and much admired even by skillfull workmen: and unto every private house a pipe of water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the pattern whereof, it hath been observed that the Conduits were first made in *London*, and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany*, or the more Northern Countries, which can equalize it, either for the beauty and uniformity of the houses, the pleasant gardens, fair streets, delightful walks without the walls, or for the Citizens themselves, who are much commended for their civility to strangers, and strict execution of justice without partiality. The whole in compass about six miles, fortified with a double wall, deep ditches, and unfordable Rivers. 2 *Segeberg*, on the River *Trave*, four Dutch miles from *Lubeck*, and near the head of that River. 3 *Oldeslo*, on the same River, in the midst betwixt both. 4 *Gronneburg*, and 5 *Newkirk* on the *Baltick* shore: and 6 *Stendorp*, more within the land; near the edge of a Lak, out of which runs the River *Suentin*.

Southwest of *Wagerland*, lyeth *STORMARSH*, betwixt the *Elb* and two less Rivers called the *Bellen* and the *Store*: from which last, and the marshiness of the situation, or from that River and the *Marsh*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Stormarsh*. Places of most importance are 1 *Crempe*, on a little River so named, which falls not far off into the *Store*, and both together not much further into the *Elb*. A Town well fortified by *Christian* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom; as well appears by the resistance which it made to the Duke of *Futland*, against whom

Holstein.

whom it held out 13 moneths, and yeelded at the last upon good conditions, Anno 1628. 2 *Tychenberg*, (*Tychapoli's* my Author calls it) a Dutch mile from *Crempe*, but on the very bank of the River *Elb*, where it receives the *Rhin*, a small River, upon which it is feated : first built, and afterward well fortified by *Christiern* the fourth, of purpose to command the *Elb*, and put a stronger bridle in the mouths of the *Hamburgers* Anno 1603; now held to be the strongest piece of all his Dominions ; the only Town of all this Dukedom, which yeelded not to the prevailing *Imperialists* in their late wars against the *Danes*, Anno 1628. 3 *Brendenberg*, a strong town, belonging to the *Banzovos*, one of the best pieces of the Kingdom ; remarkable for the stout resistance which it made to *Wallestein*, (Duke of Friland) in the war aforesaid : who at last taking it by assault, put all the Souldiers to the sword. 4 *Pippenberg*, another strong place, and of very great consequence. 5 *Jetzabo*, on the River *Store*. 6 *Gluckstade*, upon a Creek or Bay of the German Ocean, repaired and fortified by the said *Christiern* the fourth (who much delighted in the place) to command the passage up the *Elb*. 7 *Storö*. 8 *Hamburg*, upon the *Billen*, where it falls into the *Elb* ; an antient City, built in the time of the Saxons, repaired by *Charles the Great*, and walled by the Emperour *Harro* the fourth. Accounted since that time an Imperial City, and made one of the *Hanse*, on the first incorporating of those Towns. Which notwithstanding, on a commanded one of the *Hanse*, about that time, betwixt the Earl of *Holftein* and the people hereof, it was adjudged to troverlie arising about that time, betwixt the Earl of *Holftein* and the people hereof, it was adjudged to belong to the Earls of *Holftein* ; and that determination ratified by *Charles* the fourth, Anno 1374. In pursuance whereof the *Hamburgers* took the Oath of Allegiance, to *Christiern* Earl of Oldenburg, the first King of Denmark of that house, as Earl of *Holfst* ; acknowledging him and his successors for their lawful Lords : though since they have endeavoured to shake off that yoke, presuming very much on their power at Sea, and the assistance which they are assured of upon all occasions from the rest of the *Hansetowns*. As for the Town it self, it is feated in a large plain, with fax and rich pastures round about it : well fortified by art and nature ; the Haven being shut up with a strong iron chain. The buildings for the most part of brick, but more beautifull than well contrived, and the streets somewhat of the narrowest. The publick structures very fair, especially the Counsel-house, adorned with the Statues of the Nine Worthies, carved with very great Art ; the Exchange, or meeting place for Merchants, and nine large Churches. The Citizens generally rich, matters of many as great ships as sail on the Ocean, some of them 1200 tun in burden ; which bring in great profit ; besides the great resort of Merchants, and their Factors, from most places else ; sometimes the Staple-town for the Cloth of England, removed on some dissentors to *Stede*, and from thence to Holland. It is observed, that there was in this town at one time 177 Brewers, and but 40 Bakers, nor more than one Lawyer and one Physician. The reason of which disproportion was, that a Cup of Nims was their only Physick ; their differences sooner ended over a Can, than by order of Law ; Bread being accounted but a binder, and so not to be used, but in case of necessity.

betwixt the Rivers *Store* and *Eydore*, coasting along the *German Ocean*, lies the Province of *DITHMARSH*, most properly called *Tyitchmarsh*, from the marshiness of the ground, and the *Dutch* Inhabitants; or from a mixture of those people with the *Marsj*, spoken of before. The people being naturally of the *Saxon* race, retain much of the stomach and animosity of the antient *Saxons*: never brought under the command of the Earls of *Holfst* (as *Wagerland*, and *Storemarsh* were) till *Holfst* himself was joyned to the Crown of *Denmark*. And though it was alienated from the Empire by *Fredrick* the third, and given in Fee to *Christiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the first King of that house, Anno 1474; yet would they not submit unto his authority: but held it out against him and some of his successors, whom in the year 1500 they vanquished in the open field; till broken, and made subject, by the valour and good fortune of King *Frederick* the second, Anno 1559. Chief places in it are 1 *Meldorp* upon the Ocean, the chief Town of the Province; the Inhabitants of which are so wealthy, that many of them cover their houses with copper. 2 *Londen*, opposite to a *Peninsula* or *Demi-Island* called *Eldersfede*, on the West side whereof it standeth. 3 *Heinnekse*, and 4 *Tellinckse*; of which nothing memorable.

morale. And as for *HOLSTEIN* it self, the fourth and last member of this Estate, though the first in power and reputation, it taketh up the *Inland* parts, betwixt *Stormarsh* and *Fustland*, save that it hath an outlet into the *Baltick*, on the Northwest of *Wagerland*. Chief places in the which are, 1 *Kyel*, (*Chilonium* in *Latine*) seated upon a navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedom of *Sleswicke*: a Town well traded, and having a capacious Haven, seldom without good store of shipping from *Germany*, *Lifeland*, *Sweden*, and the rest of *Denmark*. 2 *Rendesberg*, the best fortified place in all this Province. 3 *Neimnuffer*, on the Northwest of the *Store*, not far from the head of it. 4 *Welfse*, on a small River so called. 5 *Bramfede*, 6 *Borkholms*, not much observable, but for a *Monastery* in which *Henry* one of the Earls hereof (of a younger house) turned Monk and dyed Anno 1241.

Anno 1241. The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other three, were the Saxons, Sigalons, and Sabalingii, placed here by *Protolmy*; whom I conceive to be no other than some Tribes of the *Cimlri*, of whom this *Cherlonefe* took name. The two last passing into the name of the first, and in the declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and spreading all along the Coasts of the *German* Ocean, molested with their piracies and depredations, the shores of *Britain*. Known by that means unto the *Britans*, they were invited to assist them against the *Scots* and *Picts*, which action with the aid of the *Fris* and *Angli*, (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbrick Cherlonefe*) they performed so honestly, as to make themselves masters of the best part of the Island. Such as remained behind not being able to defend their own against the *Slaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Mecklenburg*: which being peopled by the *Vagrii*, took the name of *Wagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquished by

Faitland

by *Charles the Great*, these on the North side of the *Elb*, became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*; and so continued till dismembered by *Lotharins* both Duke and Emperour : who gave the proper *Holt* (or *Holstein*, especially so called) with the Province of *Storckmarsh*, to *Adolph* Earl of *Schawmburg*, who had deserved well of him in his wars, with the title of Earl of *Holstein*, Anno 1114. By *Adolph* the second, his successor, settled in this house, who having made a full conquest of it, caused it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *Germans*, from *Holland*, *Westphalen*, and *Friesland* ; by which means the name of *Sclaves* was at last worn out. By *Gerrard* the fifth, the Dukedom of *Sleswick* was also added ; conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* , in whose wars he served. *Adolph* the last Earl of this house dying without issue, the whole Estate fell on *Christiern*, son of *Theodorick*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Hedwigis* his wife, sister and heir to *Adolph* before mentioned : who being called to the Crown of *Denmark* , compounded with his brother *Gerrard* for the sum of 50000 Marks : and having gotten *Dismarsh* also of the Emperour *Frederick* the third, prevailed so far, as to have the whole Estate erected into a Dukedom, Anno 1474. to be held by him and his successors of the *sacred Empire*. Which fact, we will next add the Catalogue of

The E A R L S and D U K E S of *H O L S T E I N*.

- 1114 1 *Adolph of Schamburg*, by *Lotharius*, Emperour, and Duke of *Saxony*, made the first Earl of *Holstein*.
1137 2 *Adolph II.* son of *Adolph* the first.
1164 3 *Adolph III.* son of *Adolph* the second, vanquished by *Canutus*, King of the *Danes*, lost himself and his Countrey.
1232 4 *Adolph IV.* in his fathers life time recovered his estate from *Waldemar* the successor of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well-fought battel, Anno 1226. his father then prisoner to the *Danes*.
1261 5 *Gerrard*, the 2d. son of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland*, succeeded in *Holstein*.
1281 6 *Henry*, the son of *Gerrard*, the first that set up a Customs-house at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his tolls and taxes.
1310 7 *Gerrard II.* son of *Henry*, slain treacherously by the *Danes*.
1339 8 *Henry II.* son of *Gerrard* the second.
1381 9 *Gerrard III.* son of *Henry* the second, created the first Duke of *Sleswick*, by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.
1404 10 *Henry III.* son of *Gerrard* the third.
1427 11 *Adolphus V.* commonly called the XII. (those of the younger houses being reckoned in) the last Earl of this house.
1459 12 *Christiern of Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his wife *Hedwigis*, sister of *Henry*, and *Adolphus*, the two last Earls, succeeded in the Earldom of *Holstein*: enlarged with the addition of *Dietsmarsch*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperour *Frederick* the third, Anno 1474. But seeing that *Otho* Earl of *Schamburg*, pretended a right unto the whole, as the next heir male, according to the constitutions of the Empire of which it was holden: and *Gerrard* the brother of *Christiern* put in for his share, according to the ill custom of *Germany*, of which it was then counted part: he was fain to buy his peace of both: giving to *Otho* 43000 *Florens* in ready money, with the Towns of *Pinnenberg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bramfede*, the ancient possessions of the Earls of *Schamburg*; and 50000 Marks to his brother *Gerrard*, besides his whole interest in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was said. By this means *Holstein* was united to the Crown of *Denmark*, the Kings whereof as Dukes of *Holfst*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither fend unto the *Diets*, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick taxes, nor acknowledge any kind of subjection to it, more than merely titular. Only it was ordained at the request of the Subjects, when first they were incorporated into that Kingdom; that in case of any grievance, or unjust sentence in the ordinary Courts of Justice, wherein they found no remedy in the supreme Council of the Province; it might be lawfull for them to appeal to the Imperial Chamber, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the present time, on sufficient caution; so hath it seldom or never been put in practice: the very grant or privilege (if such it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But since this uniting of the two Estates, the title of Duke of *Holstein*, and a good part of the Countrey, was given unto *Adolphus*, brother of *Christiern* the 3d. (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the Garter, Anno 1560.) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their several turns: after whose death, and the death of all his children dying without issue male, the Title of it was conferred on *Ulrick*, son of *Frederick* the second, and brother of *Christiern* the fourth; created Knight of the Garter by King *James*, Anno 1605. In whose posterity it remains till this present time.

FRITLAND.

JUTTLAND, containeth all the rest of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holf* by the River *Eydore*, the ancient boundary betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*: but principally by a long trench and wall from one Sea to the other, of such breadth that a chariot or two horsemen

Jutland.

men a breast might ride upon it. First built in imitation of the *Piſts* wall in England, by Godfrey King of Denmark, in the time of Charles the Great: either to hinder the daily incursions of the Saxons, as some, or to stop the current of the victories of the said Charles, as others think. The tract whereof, it is still very easie to be seen, is call'd *Dennewerk*, (or the *Danes work*) to this very day.

It was so called from the *Jutes*, who together with the *Angli*, and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a conquest of the best part of *Britain*. The Country so abounding in Cattel, that it sendeth yearly into Germany 50000 Oxen, besides great store of Butter, Cheese, Tallow, Hides and Horses: divided commonly into *North-Jutland*, and *South-Jutland*; or *Jutland* specially so called, and the Dukedom of *Sleswick*.

SOUTH-JUTLAND, or the Dukedom of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese* which lies next to *Holstein*: called *South-Jutland*, from the Southern situation of it: and *Sleswick*, from the chief town of it, and the head of this Dukedom. The Country, for the most part, plain, little swelled with mountains: the fields whereof do interchangeably yeeld both fish, and corn. For during one three years they sow it constantly, and reap the fruits of it; and for the next three let the *Pooles* overflow the land, to the end the fish may eat up the grafs (whom they catch as often as they please) and the mud which is left behind enrich the soil. But besides their *Pools*, they have also on the *Baltick* shores many goodly Bays; not only commodious for Merchants, but well-stored with fish, and with Salmons specially.

Chief Towns herein are 1 *Flensburg*, seated among very high Mountains, on the shore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port so deep, so safe, and so commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their ships close to their houses. 2 *Husum*, upon the *German* Ocean, not far from the mouth of the River *Eydore*. 3 *Haderslave*, a Bishop See, if not rather some Town or Manor of the Bishops of *Sleswick*, situate on a navigable inlet of the *Baltick* Sea, where with it is almost incompass'd: beautified with the fair Castle of *Hansburg*, begun by John the eldest son of King *Christiern* the first, then Duke of *Holf*; but furnished by *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*. 4 *Lundberg*, in the Peninsula called *Elderstede*, over against *De Surantis*, an Island of the *German* Ocean. 5 *Sternberg*, the ordinary residence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 6 *Gottorp*, a strong Fort or Castle of the Duke of *Sleswick*, at the end of a large Bay or inlet of the *Baltick* also: remarkable for the *Toll-booth*, or custom-house there erected, at which there is *Toll* paid one year with another for 50000 Oxen, sent out of the *North-Jutland* into *Germany*. 7 *Sleswick*, originally by the *Danes* called *Heydelui*, built, as they say, by *Hethe*, a Queen of that Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleswick*, as the Town upon the River *Slea*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an Episcopal See, and being made the head of the Dukedom; so giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom first erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Alel*, a former King, Anno 1280. to be held by him under the right and sovereignty of the Kings thereof. But the male-issue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* conferred on *Gerrard*, Earl of *Holstein*, as before was said, Anno 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, she extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; again recovered by the valour and good fortune of his son *Adolphus*. After whose death it fell, together with *Holstein*, upon *Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, as before related; by whom incorporated with that Crown; never since aliened, but assigned sometimes in portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the sons of *Alexander*, surnamed of *Sunderburg*, (the place of his Nativity) son of *John*, one of the younger sons of King *Christiern* the third.

NORTH-JUTLAND, the most Northern part of all the *Chersonese*, hath on the South, the Dukedom of *Sleswick*; but on all other parts the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the Bishopricks, into four *Dioceses*, or *Dioceses*, that is to say,

1 the *Diocese* of *RIP* or *Ripen*, bordering next to *Sleswick*, containeth 30 *Prefectures* or *Herets*, (as they use to call them) seven Cities, or walled Towns, and ten Castles. The chief of which are 1 *Ripen*, the Episcopal See, situate near the *German* Ocean. 2 *Koldins*, on a Creek of the *Baltick* Sea; where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Christiern* the third, built a publick School, (one of my Authors calls it an University.)

2 The *Diocese* of *ARTHUSEN* lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 31 *Herets* or *Prefectures*, seven Cities, or walled Towns, and five Castles. The chief whereof are 1 *Arhusen*, the Episcopal See, seated on the *Baltick*, enjoying a commodious Port, and well frequented; the first Bishop hereof being that *Poppo*, who converted this Nation: *Christinnity* and *Episcopacy* going, for the most part, hand in hand together. 2 *Schunderburg*, on the South of *Arhusen*. 3 *Kalka*, a going, for the most part, hand in hand together. 2 *Schunderburg*, on the South of *Arhusen*. 3 *Kalka*, a strong Castle of the Kings, seated in the inmost part of a large Bay, occasioned by the *Premontory*, or Cape of *Hikenis*; extending hence two Dutch miles to the high hill of *Ellemanberg*. Opposite whereunto, and pertaining to this Jurisdiction, lie the Islands of 1 *Samſue*, 2 *Holm*, 3 *Tuen*, 4 *Hiarne*, (perhaps *Gerno*) 5 *Hilgen*, and others.

3 The *Diocese* of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arhusen*, containeth sixteen *Herets*, the Islands of 1 *Jegen*, 2 *Hansholm*, 3 *Ofholm*, 4 *Cisland*, 5 *Egholm*, and 6 *Bodum*: three Cities, or walled Towns, and as many Castles. The principal of which are 1 *Wiborch*, the Episcopal See, an Inland City; but situate on a water which runneth into the Bay of *Limsford*. The ordinary seat of *Judicature*, for both the *Jutlands*; for all Causes, as well Criminal, as Civil: the Court continually sitting from one day to another, unless perhaps the Judges do sometimes adjourn it for their own refreshments.

4 The

Baltick Islands.

4 The *Diocese* of *BURGAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying further North, is commonly subdivided into four parts or members; that is to say, 1 *Thyland*, lying South of the Bay of *Limsford*, on the *Baltick* side, whose chief Town is 1 *Alborch*; the ordinary seat and residence of the Bishop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times stiled *Alburgensis* situate on the Bay aforesaid, which opening into the *Baltick* Sea, extendeth through the main Land Westwards, almost as far as the *German* Ocean. 2 *Morſee*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three *Prefectures*, or *Herets*, the Town of *Nicopen*, the Castle of *Lunſted*, and the Isle of *Ageroe*. 3 *Hanheret*, on the north-west of the Bay of *Limsford*, containing four *Herets*, as that of *Kolding*; the Castle of *Ornme*, and the Island of *Oland*, and *Oxholm*. There is in this part also, the high Rock called *Skaringe lint*, a noted Sea-mark; fitly serving to give notice to the Sailer, of the *Quickſands* which lye underneath it, and about this Coast. 4 *Venſſel*, *Venſſia*, or *Venſſie*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Vandalorum ſedes*, the seat of the *Vandals*; taken up all the rest of the north of *Jutland*, containing six *Prefectures*, the Islands of *Groyſholm*, 2 *Hartzholm*, and 3 *Tydholm*; three Towns, and one Castle, the most remarkable of which is *Schagen*, with the most northerly point of all this *Chersonese*. In this part is a very high mountain called *Mount Alberg*, in which are found some marks and remainders of the ancient Gyants, as the Inhabitants believe; and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Jutlands* in the time of *Prolomy*, and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phundſi*, *Charudes*, and in the most Northern tracts the *Cimbri*; of whom the four first were but *Tribes* or Nations. These moving towards the South in that great expedition against *Spain*, made by the neighbouring *Vandals*, on the *Roman* Empire, occasioned the *Jutes* and *Angli* to enlarge or shift their dwellings: each taking up the parts which lay nearest to them. The *Jutes*, or *Guta*, being a people of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Prolomy*, took up the Northern parts thereof from them, named *Jutland*: the other being a people of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*, possessed them of those parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old friends and confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleswick*) where *Angelen*, now an obscure Village, once of greater note, doth preserve their memory. But these uniting with the *Saxons*, in the conquest of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep possession of the Country against the new *Invasors*; gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them. By whom the Countries being conquered, as far as to the River *Eydore*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdom; of whom we shall say more in the close of all: first taking a survey of the *Baltick* Islands, and such Provinces on the main land of *Scandia*, as properly make up the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

2. The BALTICK ISLANDS.

THE *BALTICK ISLANDS* are in number 35. and are so called, because they lye dispersed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *Germans*, *De Oſt zeen*; antiently by some, *Mare Suevicum*; by *Pomponius Mela*, *Sinus Codanus*; by *Strabo*, *Sinus Venedicus*; but generally, *Mare Balticum*, because the great Peninsula of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by some Writers of the middle and darker times, called *Balbia*. It beginneth at the narrow passage called the *Sund*; and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia*, and *Lithuania*. The reasons why this Sea being so large, doth not ebbe and flow, are 1 the narrowness of the strait, by which the Ocean is let into it; and 2 the Northern situation of it, whereby the *Celestial* Influences have lesser power upon it. The principal of this great shoale of Islands, are 1 *Seland*, 2 *Fuinera*, or *Fionia*, 3 *Langeland*, 4 *Lanland*, 5 *Falſtre*, 6 *Aeze*, 7 *Alen*, 8 *Tesigne*, 9 *Wheden*, 10 *Fimera*, and 11. *Bornholm*. Some others of less note we shall only name, and so pass them over.

1 *SELAND*, the greatest Island of the *Baltick* Seas, is situate near the main Land of *Scandia*, from which parted by a narrow Strait or *Fretum*, not above a Dutch mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sands*, or *Sund*. A Strait thorow which all ships which have any trading to, or from the *Baltick*, must of necessity take their course: all other passages being barred up with impassable Rocks; or otherwise prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon forfeiture of all their goods. So that being the only safe passage which these Seas afford, one may sometimes see two or 300 ships in a day pass thorow it; all which pay a toll or imposition to the King, according to their bills of lading. And to secure this passage, and command all *Passengers*, there are 2 strong Castles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helsingborg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Island, which is called *Cronenberg*.

But before we come to this Castle, we must view the other parts of the Islands being in length two dayes journey, and almost as much in breadth: the soil so fertile, that without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all necessities for the life of man. It was antiently called *Codanania*, and containeth in it fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Castles. The principal whereof, are 1 *Huffen*, or *Hafnia*, the Metropolis of the Islands; by the Dutch called *Copenhagen*, or the Haven of Merchants, situate near the Sea, with an handsome Port; the Isle of *Amager* which lye on the East-side of the Town, making a very safe road for all kinds of shipping. The Town of an orbicular form, and reasonably well fortified; but the buildings mean, for the most part of clay and timber, only to be commended for a spacious *Market-place*. Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdom, and situate in the heart of those dominions, in the *Palace Royal*; built of *Freestone*, in form of a *Quadrangle*, but of no great beauty or

mag-

Norway. 1376 39 Margaret, daughter and heir of Waldemar the third, married with Aquin King of Norway, so uniting the Kingdoms: of whom and their successors we shall speak hereafter; when we have took a view also of the Kingdom of Norway, and the Appendixes thereof.

3. NORWAY.

NORWAY is bounded on the East, with Swethland, from which parted by a perpetual ridge of rough and wild mountains, called the *Dofrine hills*; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to say, by the frozen Sea upon the North; the German or Norwegian Ocean upon the West; and on the South, with the Danish Sea, interpoling betwixt it and the *Cimbriick Chersoneis*. Being in breadth from Schagen, the most Northern point of Jutland, to Congell, the most Southerly town of Norway, no less than 250 miles.

It is called Norway, *quasi tractus seu via Septentrionalis*, from the Northern situation of it, containing in length 1300 miles, in breadth not above half so much: inhabited by a people given to hospitality, plain dealing, and abhorring theft. Antiently they were great warriors, and became terrible to all the more Southern Nations; by whom called *Normans*, (that is to say, *Homines Boreales*, or *Northmen*, as *Wilhelmus Gemiticensis* rightly hath it:) being at that time a mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the Norwegians and Swethlanders apart from the Danes; whose steps they followed in their frequent or rather continual Piracies, on the Coasts of England, France and Ireland. By *Helmoldus* in the same sense, they are called *Nordmichi*, a name made into *Latine*, out of the Dutch word *Nord*, and the French word *lien*, signifying men of a Northern place or Nation.

Of the position of it in regard of the Heavens we have spoke already; but more particularly it reacheth from the first Parallel of the twelfth *Clime*, where the *Pole* is elevated 58 degrees 26 minutes, as far as to the 71 degree of *latitude*. By which account the longest day in the Southern point is but 18 hours; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being situate furthest North of all this Countrey, they have no night for almost three whole moneths together.

The Countrey for the most part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vast woods, extreme cold, and but ill inhabited. In the best parts thereof it affords little corn; and in the most Northern none at all: insomuch that the common sort of people are fain to use dried fish (that which we commonly call *Stock-fish*) instead of bread. But the better (that is, the richer sort) buy corn of such Merchants as come to traffick with them. Their chief commodities are *Stock-fish*, rich Furs, train Oyl, Pitch, and Tackling for Ships, as Masts, Cables, Deal-boards, and the like; which the Inhabitants exchange for Corn, Wine, Fruits, Beer, and other necessities for mans life. The Countrey is exceedingly troubled with certain little beasts which they call *Lemmers*. They are about the bigness of a *Field Mouse*, and are by the Inhabitants said to drop out of the clouds in tempestuous weather. They devour, like the *Locusts*, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time dye all in heaps (as it were) together: and with their stench so poison the air, that the poor people are long after troubled with the *jaundies*, and with a giddiness in the head. But these beasts come not so often to infect the land, as the *Whales* do to terrify and molest the shores, the Western Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for those great *Leviathans*: against whose violence and fury, the *Mariners* and people of the Sea coast have found a Remedy, which is by casting out some water intermixed with the Oyl of *Cassor*; the smell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this help there were no fishing on these Coasts, which is the greatest Staple commodity (besides materials for shipping) which the Countrey yieldeth.

The Towns here, are exceeding thin, and in them the houses for the most part very poor and miserable; commonly patched up of dirt and hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage houses in the *Fen-Countries*. Distributed into five *Prefectures* or *Governments*, according to the number of the Castles which command the same. Of these,

1 The first most towards the South is the Castle of *BOHUS*, to which are subject the Towns of 1 *Marsfrand*, seated in a *Demi-Island* begirt with Rocks; of most note for the infinite quantity of *Herrings* caught hereabouts. 2 *Congell*, upon the Sea, a town of Merchandise, opposite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*. 3 *Oldenald*.

2 *AGGERHUIS*, the second of the five Royal Castles, hath under its commands the Towns of 1 *Anslo*, or *Afsola*, on a Bay or Guller opposite to *Jutland*, an Episcopal See, and of most esteem of all the Countrey, by reason of the Courts of *Judicature* which are therein held. 2 *Tonsberg*, or *Koningsberg*, that is to say, the Kings or the Kingly mountain, formerly a retiring place of the Kings of Norway. 3 *Frederichsrad*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Denmark*. 4 *Schin* or *Schon*, remarkable for its mines of iron and copper. 5 *Salzburg*. 6 *Hammar* the greater, and 7 *Hammar* the less, divided by the interpoling of the Bay called *Sinnu Maasannus*, in former times the See of a Bishop, since removed to *Afsola*; or rather thereunto united in these latter times, as many poor Bishopricks be in *Ireland*.

3 *BEGGER-HUSE* is the third Castle of command herein. Subordinate whereunto are 1 *Bergen*, the principal Town of the Countrey, an Episcopal See, and the ordinary residence of the Governor for the Kings of *Denmark*; situate amongst high Mountains, at the bottom of a deep Creek or Arm of the Ocean called *Carnesum*. A noted Port; and much resorted to by Merchants of most foreign Nations; bringing in Corn, Meal, Bread, Beer, Wine, and *Aqua-vite*, to supply the natural wants and defects hereof: and in exchange transporting hence Fish, Furs, Cordage, and other materials for shipping.

ping. In which regard, accounted formerly one of the four chief Staple Towns of the Dutch Merchants of the *Hanse*: the other three being London in England, *Novogrod* in *Muscovie*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time this *Bergen* hath lost most of its trade, removed hence to *Wardhuys*, nearer unto *Muscovie*: as the great town of *Novogrod*, by reason of the change of Navigation from the *Baltick* into that of the Northern passage, hath given way to *S. Nicolas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amsterdam*. For the *Hollanders*, by blocking up the haven, but especially by keeping *Bergen ap Zone*, have such a command over the River, that no Vessel can pass or repass without their licence. 2 *Staffanger*, an Episcopal See also, but not else observable.

4 The Castle of *TRUND-HEIM*, is the fourth, situate in the Town of *Trondheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latine*, *Nidrosia*; the See of an Archbishop, who is the Metropolitan of Norway. A beautiful City heretofore; but since the subjection of this Countrey unto the Danes, reduced to a Barrough. So called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is seated, and *Rofu* the name then of the principal Church: which in time gave place to the Cathedral, for greatness and neatness of the fabrick, all of polished stone, not giving place to any in Europe; about the year 1530. much defaced with fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it being estimated at 7000 Crowns. A great sum of money in those times, and so poor a Countrey. So that by casting up our reckoning, we find in Norway, one Archbishop, and four Bishops, that is to say, the Archbishop of *Trundheim* or *Nidrosia*, the Bishops of *Bergen*, *Anslo*, *Staffanger* and *Hammar*: Of the same power, jurisdiction, and revenue, since the Reformation, as those of *Denmark*; whereof, and of the first conversion of this people to the Christian Faith, we have spoke already.

5 The fifth and last Castle which commands this Countrey, is that of *WARDHUYS*, so called of the Town of *Wardhuys*; as that is from the Isle *Ward*, in which it is seated. A small Castle, and the Town in former times but mean and poor, situate in the extreme North point of all this Kingdom; but in those times accounted (as it easily might) for the chief of this *Prefecture*, and honoured in the summer time with the seat and residence of the Governour; retiring more Southwards in the winter; at what time, by reason of the extremity of the cold, and long absence of the Sun for some months together (the Town lying within the *Artick Circle*) it is hardly habitable. But of late times it is much improved both in wealth, and building; by reason of the removal of the English trading from *Novogrod*, near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of *S. Nicolas*, not far from hence; drawing by that means the trade of *Muscovie*, and Norway, more neer together. So that now it is not only useful unto the Danes, in regard that it somewhat aweth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives; for that cause fortified very strongly by King *Frederick* the second: but made very profitable to him also, by the resort of Dutch, and English, who must of necessity touch at it (if they make no stay here) in their way to *Muscovie*. Other Towns in these two last *Prefectures* are not worth looking after.

And so much for the Continent or mainland of Norway; let us next look upon the Islands in the Northern Ocean, which belong unto it.

The ISLANDS in the NORTHERN OCEAN.

THE NORTHERN SEA, so named from its Northern situation, is by some called *Mare Scythicum*, because it coasted along the shores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal* called *Oceanus glacialis*, because often frozen; by *Pliny* in the same sense, *Mare Amalchium*, the word in the *Scythick* language signifying frozen, or congealed; by the *Russes*, or *Muscovites*, *Myrmaniskoy More*; by the *Cimbrians* in their tongue, *Marimornsa*, that is to say, the dead Sea, because of the slowness of its motion, often clogged with ice; and in the same sense, *mare pigrum* by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth best describe it, from whom take it thus, *Trans Sueones Mare aliud pigrum & prope immotum, &c.* Beyond the *Swedes*, there is another Sea, so slow and almost immovable, that many think it to be the bounds which compass the whole world. Some are persuaded that the sound of the Sun is heard, as he ariseth out of this Sea; and that many shapes of gods are seen, and the beams of his head, *Illic usque (& fama vix) tantum natura*. At this Sea (the report is credible) is the end of nature and the world. The English were the first of all civil people, who adventured to open and discover the passages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancellor*, arriving by this way in *Russia*, An. 1553. and tracing out the way, which others of that Nation, together with the *Flemings*, *Hollanders*, and some Towns of the *Hanse*, have since followed. Of which more in *Muscovie*. The principal Islands dispersed in it, are 1 *Greenland*, 2 *Island*, 3 *Freeeland*, belonging to the Crown of Norway, to be surveyed at the present; *Nova Zemla*, and *Sir Hugh Willoughbies* Island, appertaining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muscovie* of which more hereafter.

1 *ISELAND* is situate under the *Artick Circle*, in length 144 German miles; 65 in breadth, so called from the abundance of ice in it, and about it, frozen continually for the space of 8 months, and so vehemently chilled with Northern winds, that it yieldeth neither Corn nor Trees, except *Juniper* only: yet there is grass in such abundance, that the people are of opinion, that if they do not sometimes keep their cattle from feeding, they are in danger to surfeit and dye with fullness. Beasts for labour here are, both Horses and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without horns, but the Sheep not so: and they have also here a fine breed of little Doggs, known amongst us by the name of *Island doggs*, the delight of Ladies; as also white Faulcons, and white Ravens, Eagles with white tails; with Hares and Bears of the same colour. By reason of their want of corn, the people eat

Freeze-land. *Stock-fish* (as in *Norway*) instead of bread; yet notwithstanding, by reason of the benefit of the Sea, and of access of strangers, they have all things necessary brought unto them (even to wood and timber) of which the richer sort make use: giving the Merchant in return, sometimes the flesh of Beesves and Mutton; but ordinarily, Butter, Skins, Horses, Hawks, Brimstone, and Fish especially, the staple commodity of the Country. Of which they have such plenty, and of so good condition, that a piece of *Island Ling* is counted with us, as a fit dish for a Nobleman's Table.

The people, for the most part, are of a plain and simple nature, living (as in the *Golden Age*) on that which Nature gives them, without help of Art, more than that of making Cheese and Butter: the Mountains serving them for Towns, and the Rivers for drink, and lodging all under one roof, with their Horses and Oxen. They use neither *Physick*, nor *Physicians*, yet live so long (and probably the fair, but they know not how to attire themselves; nor is there any difference in Apparel betwixt the *Sexes*, so that it is not ealie to know one from another. Few of them but have some *familiar Spirit* to do them service: and notwithstanding the endeavour of the *Ministers* to purge them from this *impicity*; yet it is so grafted in them, that they cannot leave it.

It is observable, that notwithstanding the cold condition of this Island, yet in many places it is full of heats, and fire under the ground; which by the *Antiperistasis* of the cold air, stopping the pores of the earth, and taking from it the liberty of evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: inasmuch that there are three high Mountains, whose tops are always covered with Snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecla*, *Helge*, and *La-Croix*, but the first the principal; by some called *Hicelfort*, which sometimes casts out fire, sometimes flaming water, then black ashes, and *pumice stones* in great abundance, that it darkneth the Sun, and makes the Country for six miles round about it to be uninhabited. Stranger things are not spoken of *Atna*, than of these three Mountains: and here the superstitious people have the same opinion which they have in *Sicil*. viz. That underneath must needs be hell, and the habitations of the damned. But to judicious men the natural reason of these flames is plain and obvious; occasioned by those veins of *brimstone* (great quantity whereof they send into foreign parts) on which the foundation of the hills is laid: here being many *Bathes*, and Fountains of hot waters, which have Sulphur swimming at the top.

At the first planting of this Island, the people did not trouble themselves with building Towns, but every one feared himself where he thought convenient; and dwelling in *cells*, and *caverns* digged in the bottom of the Rocks. By means whereof the inland parts have not many houses: but the Sea coasts, since the coming of so many strangers to them, begin to be built in many places; the build-ings for the most part being of timber, roofed with flags, with an hole on the sides of the roof to let in the light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principal of them which are, being 1 *Halar* in the North, and 2 *Schalholt* in the southern part; both *Bishops Sees*; having a petty *Schools*, consisting of 24 scholars a piece, to whom the *Latine* tongue is taught at the charge of the *Bishops*. 3 *Haffnord*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Dutch Merchants* barter their commodities: and 4 *Bedsted*, a Castle, the ordinary residence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived that this Island is that *Thule*, which the Poets so often speak of; as *Tibi serviat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec sit Terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca*, the *Tragedian*: nor did there want some reason to persuade them to this opinion; this being indeed the furthest part of the old known world. But greater reasons are against it. For when *Solinus* saith, *multa sunt circa Britannicam insulam, à quibus Thule ultima*; I hope *Thule* must be one of the *British Isles*. And when *Tacitus* saith of *Agricola*, *insulam quam Orcadas vocant domuit, despecta est & Thule*; I am sure that *Island* was so far from being kenne'd by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at least eight degrees distant. So that *Thule* must be sought for in another place, and where that is, hath been shewed already. As for *Island* it was so far from being known unto the Antients, that it was hardly known unto those of *Norway*, till the year 874. when some of the *Norwegians* driven out of their Country by *Harald* the first, who first suppressing the many petty Kings of the *Norwegians*, made many of them seek new dwellings; of which some few arrived here: where finding room enough to plant in, and no great loss (if any) by change of their dwelling; they invited many of their friends and Country-men to come unto them, by the year 1070. they were converted to the Gospel by some Preachers sent hither from *Adelbert* the Archbishop of *Breme*. By whose persuasion and procurement they founded two *Episcopal Sees*; adding thereto in tract of time, eight *Religious houses*: that is to say, the Monasteries of *Pingore*, *Rensfode*, *Moder*, and *Monk-niere*, under the Government and jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Hallar*; and those of *Vede*, *Perrebar*, *Kirkebar*, and *Skirde*, under the Bishop of *Schalholt*. In the year 1260. it was first brought under the Crown of *Norway*, following since that the fortunes of it, in all changes both of Church and State: made subject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*; together with it reformed in matters of Religion, according to the confession of *Ausbourg*; retaining still their *Bishops*, with a limited power, and turning the Revenues of their Monasteries unto other uses, as there they did, according to the will and pleasure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

II. Southwest of *Island* lies another, and as cold an Isle, commonly called by the name of *FREEZE-land*, from the continual Frosts unto which it is subject. By the *Latines* it is called *Frislandia*, to distinguish it from *Frisia*, or *Frisland*, in *Germany*. Situate under the North *Frigid zone*; but not so much within the *Arctic* as *Island* is: the longest day here in the height of Summer, not exceeding 20 hours: and yet the soil so cold and barren, that it beareth neither corn, nor fruit, the Inhabitants living most on fish: which as it is their only food, so is it also their chief com-

commodity, wherewith to entertain or invite the *Overchums*. And it is not here such abundance caught upon their coasts, that they are never without the company of *Hansemen*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes*, and *English*; by which last so frequented in these later times, that it hath been called by some, the *Western England*. For quantity it is somewhat bigger than *Island*; but by reason of the bitter air, and the defects above mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freeze-land*, by the name of the Island; situate on the Eastern shore of it. Besides which, there are some others set down in the maps, as 2 *Samsfoot*, 3 *Andersfort*, 4 *Sorund*; but not much of service. Weitward hereof, as *Zieglerus* (and out of him *Maginus*) telleth us, is a less Island called *Icarum*, giving the name of *Mare Icarum* to the Sea adjoining: so called (by his mistake or translation of the fable) from *Icarus* the son of *Dædalus*, a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over these Islands.

III. *GROENLAND*, so called, as some say, from the *green's* of it in the Summer; as others say by *Antiphrasis*, because never *green*, by reason of the sharpness of winter. But the former *Etymologie* is more agreeable to the state of the Country. For though it be continually covered with Snow, except in *June*, *July*, and *August*, (inasmuch that though the people be always clad with *Furres* and *Skins*, yet they feel no heat) yet in those months it is exceeding fresh and *green*, and affords good pasture. It is situate for the greatest part, within the *Arctic*, between the 65 and 77 degrees of Northern Latitude: so that the longest day in the Southern part is 21 hours and an half; and in the most Northern, they have no night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirmed to be 600 miles, and may be much longer than to for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect discovery made of it hitherto; though much frequented by the *English* and *Hollanders*, (two great Sea-faring Nations) for the benefit of *whale-fishing*, much there in use. Their chief commodities are *Fish*, white bears, wild Deer, and some store of Cattel there bred upon their Pastures; but housed for the most part all the Winter: the greatest part of the people dwelling in the Caves, and delight in *Necromancy*, to which more wilfully addicted than those in *Island*, because less acquainted with the Gospel.

Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Saint Thoma*, (in which there is a Monastery of *Dominican Friars*) seated in the North-East part of the Island; concerning which *Morcar* speaks of one thing which is very observable: relating, that it is not far from a flaming or burning mountain, seated upon hot scalding Springs, conveyed by pipes of stone into the Monastery, and serving both as a stove to warm them, and for a fire to boyl their Vasaals. The walls of the Monastery built of *Pumice stones* cast out of that Mountain; which being tempered with the water of those burning Springs, doth make a glutinous substance, serving in stead of *Lime*, and as long durable. The Gardens of the *Convent*, in regard of this heat, flourish all the year with herbs, and sweet-smelling flowers, and the adjoining Sea for the same reason being never frozen, affords good plenty of fish and fowl, the whole year about; not only for the *Monks*, but the neighbouring Islanders. So far, and to this purpose he. The second Town of Note, is *Iiva*, not far from this Monastery: and 3 *Manderpe* on the South-East point. Others, as in a Country not well discovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years since *Nicolas Zeni*, a *Venetian*, cast by tempest on the Coast of *Freeze-land*, and by the King thereof employed upon new discoveries, Anno 1380. first made it known to us of Europe; immediately on that discovery possessed by the *NORWEGIANS*, and made a Member of that Crown.

As for the *NORWEGIANS* themselves, now their fellow Subjects, they were first known in the time of *Ptolomy*, by the name of *Chedini*; possessing then the Western parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swethlanders*, they became better known in the flourishing times of the *French Empire*, by the name of *Normans*; first called so by *Eginhartus* in his History of the life of *Charles the Great*, infesting then the Sea-coasts of *France*, and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell so heavily on the *French*, especially in the times of *Charles the Simple*, that they extorted from him that goodly Country, since of them called *Normandy*; conferred on *Rollo*, first Duke thereof, Anno 912. whose Successors much increased their glory by the Conquest of *England*; as some private adventurers of them did, by the Conquest of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards settling on their own bottom, every one of these Northern Nations acting by it self, they were called *Norwegians*: sometimes, as formerly, commanding over all three Kingdoms, subject successively to each; but most an end governed by their own Kings, till their final subjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting solely, and by it self, they subdued *Ireland*, under the conduct of *Turgesius*, who tyrannized there for a time; as also all the *Orcades*, and the Isle of *Man*, sold, or surrendered by them, upon good conditions, to the *English* and *Scots*, who by those Titles still possess them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all those of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute*, and the first *Scottish Fergus*) as merely fabulous; we will begin with King *Suibadgerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongst his three sons; whose Successors *Munster* thus reckoneth.

THE KINGS OF NORWEGY.

- 1 Suibadgerus.
- 2 Haddingus.
- 3 Hetharius.
- 4 Callerus.
- 5 Frogerus.
- 6 Gobarus.

- 7 *Rotherius*.
- 8 *Helga*.
- 9 *Hufmannus*.
- 10 *Reginaldus*.
- 11 *Gummarus*.
- 12 *Osmundus*.
- 13 *Olaus*.
- 14 *Osmundus* II. not long after whose time, Anno scil. 800. the *Normans* began their irruptions.
- 15 *Aquinus*.
- 16 *Haraldus*.
- 17 *Olaus*.
- 18 *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth, and of *Norway* by Conquest.
- 19 *Olaus* III. son of *Spain*, or *Sueno*, succeeded in the Realms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, *Cannus* his younger brother being King of *England*. In this Kings time the *Norwegians* first received the Gospel.

young, without any issue; yet the *Danes* having once got footing in *Norway*, so assured themselves of it, that they have ever since possessed it as a subject Kingdom: keeping the *Natives* so poor and low, that they are not able to assert their former liberties; and not permitting them to use any shipping, so much as for transporting their own commodities, for fear they should grow wealthy and strong at Sea. Besides the strong Garrisons maintained in most parts of the Countrey, keep it in such an absolute awe, that they dare not stir against the *Danes*, if their stomachs served them. So that now *Norway* being made subject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made fellow subjects to the same King: We must next look upon these Kings, not as Kings of each, distinct and separate from the other, but as they are in fact and Title.

The KINGS of DENMARK and NORWAY.

- 1376 1 *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark*, and *Norway*; of this last by descent, of the other by marriage.
- 1380 2 *Olaus*, son of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*.
- 1383 3 *Margaret*, wife of *Aquinus*, mother of *Olaus*, and daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her son (in whose time she governed as his Guardian) took upon her the Kingdom in her own right; not only keeping *Norway* in the state she found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the vanquishment of *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*.
- 1411 4 *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeran*, and Knight of the Garter, son of the Lady *Mary*, Dutches of *Pomeran*, daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the sister of *Margaret*, by whom adopted for her Heir; succeeded after her decease in all the three Kingdoms: oured of all before his death, by a strong Faction made against him, and his estates conferred on
- 1439 5 *Christopher*, Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria* (but in title only) the son of *Margaret*, sister of *Ericus*; chosen by the joynr consent of all the States of these Kingdoms. After whose death, (without issue) the *Danes* considering the great advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norway*; pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleswick*, and Earl of *Holst*, for the next successor: that they might get in those estates to their Kingdom also. Who excusing himself by reason of his Age, and want of Children, commended to them *Christiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, his kinsman, and next heir, who was chosen accordingly.
- 1448 6 *Christiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, chosen King of *Denmark* and *Norway*; succeeded his said Uncle in the estates of *Holst*, and *Sleswick*, continuing since united unto that Crown: and added also thereunto by conquest the Kingdom of *Sweden*.
- 1482 7 *John*, son of *Christiern*, succeeded in all three Kingdoms; Knight of the Order of the Garter.
- 1514 8 *Christiern* II. son of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, which last he held under with great cruelty: hated, by reason of his Tyranny towards all sorts of people, and ousted of his Kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, Anno 1522, by whom at last taken, and kept in prison till he died, Anno 1559.

1523 9 *Fre-*

- 1523 9 *Frederick*, brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Christiern* the second, chosen King of *Denmark*, and *Norway*, on the abdication of his Nephew; reformed Religion in both Kingdoms, according to the *Confession* of *Ausbourg*.
- 1535 10 *Christiern* III. suppressed with great trouble, the party formed against him in behalf of *Christiern* the second; perfected the Reformation begun in the time of his Father, and was a great Benefactor to the University of *Copenhagen*.
- 1559 11 *Frederick* II. son of *Christiern* the third, subdued *Ditmarsh*, before unconquered by the *Danes*, or Earls of *Holst*, and added it unto that Dukedom: both being united to the Crown, though held of the Empire; Knight of the Garter.
- 1588 12 *Christiern* IV. son of *Frederick* the second, brother of *Anne*, Queen of *Great Britain*, and Knight of the Garter; engaging in a war against the Emperour *Ferdinand* the second for the liberty of *Germany*, was suddenly beat out of all the *Cimbrick chersonese* by the prevailing *Imperialists*, but compounded the bulinefs upon very good terms, and was restored to all his own.
- 1648 13 *Frederick* III. the youngest son of *Christiern* the fourth, his elder brethren being all dead without issue, succeeded in the Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

Having thus mustered up the Kings of these several Kingdoms, taken distinctly, and conjunct; we must next look upon the way of their coming to their Regal throne, their form of Government, together with the powerableness and revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their coming to the Regal Throne, the *Danes* pretend the Kingdom to be *Elective*, and not *Hereditary*: yet so as they have always set the eldest son on the throne of his Father; unless some extraordinary occasion have disposed it otherwise. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times, can see no such matter: the Kingdom going generally in the way of *Succession*, unless by Faction or usurpation some popular and powerful Pretender hath interloped; as oftentimes hath hapned in such other Estates, as are *hereditary* merely, without claim or colour of *Election*. 'Tis true, that the male issue failing in *Olaus*, the son of *Margaret*; and the Princes which pretended by the Females after her decease, not being of sufficient power to assert their titles: the Kingdom was transferred to the house of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of *election*. Which being an extraordinary case, is to make no Precedent; though seconded by the ouing of King *Christiern* the second, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Estate: being acts of violence and force, and justified only by the false *Topic* of success. But whosoever loit by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon such conditions as have made him and his successors little more than *Titular*. For he was fain to swear at his Coronation, that he would put none of the Nobility to death, or banishment, but by the judgement of the Senate; that the great men should have power of *Life* and *Death*, over their Tenants or *Vassals*; that no *Appeal* should lie from them to the Kings *Tribunal*, nor the King be partaker of the Confiscations; nor finally, advance any to Commands and Honours, but by consent of his Great Council. Which Oath being also taken by his Successors, made *Bodin* say, *Non tam re ipsa quam appellatione Reges esse*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the Nobility (so they call their Gentry) have but small Estates, none of them above the degree of Knights, (except only the Princes of the Blood) and that degree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to cross, or oppose their King, but when some of the Royal Family (out of private ends) have concurred with them in it: as in the case of *Christiern* the 2d. deposed by the people, but those people headed, and set on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an eye upon the Crown.

As for the Senate, or Great Council, spoken of before, it consists wholly of men chosen out of the Nobility, (who are to prove their Gentry by a long descent) seldom exceeding the number of 28. to each of which there is allowed a convenient Salary, with some fair Castle in the Countrey for his retirements, during his being of that body: his whole estate being freed also for that time, from all publick payments. Without their counsel and advice, the King is neither to determine of Peace or War, or to enter into any new Leagues, or Confederacies, nor impose any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King jointly, is the last Appeal: such being the constitution of this Estate, that all Causes and Controversies are first decided in the *Presbiter* or *Heret* (184. in number) where they first arise; from whence it is lawful to appeal to the Judge of the Province, from him to the *Chancery* of the Kingdom, and finally to the King and Council. By the Laws of *Waldemar* the first, who first reduced the Laws into set form, and writing, the Bishops were to sit with this Council in all causes of moment: discharged from that employment by King *Christiern* the third, by whom it was also ordained, that the Clergy should not sell any of the Church-lands, without leave of the King.

The Forces which this King or Kingdom are able to raise, may best be seen by some of their particular undertakings: those specially of *Christiern* the second, who at the request of *Henry* the second of France, sent a Navy of an hundred sail into Scotland against the English, and therein no fewer than 10000 Souldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holst*, who in his war against this *Christiern*, (whose removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 men into the field, to make good his quarrel. And questionless, considering the many Ports, and Islands, that this Crown is Master of, both within the *Baltick*, and without, it cannot be but he may suddenly raise a strong power at Sea: And then considering that each of the Nobility, which are here numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horse upon all occasions; as are those also who hold lands of the Kings, which the

Danes

Danes call *Verlehnunge*: it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good *Levies*, for a sudden service: especially in defence of their own Dominions.

The *Revenue* of this *King* consisteth principally in the great *impost* laid upon all ships which pass through the *Sound*: the greatness whereof may easily be conjectured at by the multitude of ships, which of necessity must pass by it in the trade of the *Baltick*; though of late somewhat lessened of what it was, since the *Engliff* found out, and frequented the *Northern* passage into *Muscovia*. There are also some *Crown-lands*, and a great yearly *Tell* made of the *Cattel*, which pass it to *Germany*; as also of the *fish* transported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived, that the *Treasures* of this *King* are not very great: partly because there is no other important commodity, but *fish*, to draw *Merchants* thither; and partly that there is not any one *Town* of any great *Traffick* in all his *Realms*, for the entertaining of commerce.

The chief *Order* of *Knighthood* in it, is that of the *Elephant*, instituted by *Frederick* the second. Their badge; a *Collar* powdered with *Elephants* trowed, supporting the *Kings Arms*, and having at the end the picture of the *Virgin Mary*.

The *Arms* hereof are *Quarterly*; 1 *Or*, three *Lions* passant *Vert*, crowned of the first, for the *Kingdom* of *Denmark*; and secondly *Gules*, a *Lion* Rampant *Or*, Crowned and Armed of the first, in his paws a *Danish* hatchet *Argent*, for the *Kingdom* of *Norway*. What *Arms* belong to him as *Duke* of *Holf*, and *Sleswick*, I am yet to seek.

There are in *Denmark*,
Archbishops 2. Bishops 13
Universities 2. *Viz.*

Copenhagen. *Sore.*

And so much for the *Kingdom* of *DENMARK*.



OF

SWETHLAND.



SWETHLAND is bounded on the East, with *Muscovie*; on the West, with the *Dofrine* hills, which divide it from *Norway*; on the North, with the great *Frozen* Ocean, spoken of before; on the South, with *Denmark*, *Liefeland*, and the *Baltick* Sea. So called from the *Succi*, *Suehans*, or *Suehidi*, and the word *Land* added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length from *Stockholm*, unto the borders of *Lapland*, above a 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner* Sea, to the borders of *Denmark*, about twenty good dayes journey on horseback: inasmuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this side of

Lapland, and the *Gulf*, or Bay of *Bodner*, account it little less than all *Italy* and *France* together: but taking in *Lapland*, and the *Provinces* on the other side of the *Gulf*, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The situation of it in regard of the heavenly bodies, is the same with *Norway*, under the same *Parallels* and *Degrees*; but of so different a temper, both for soil and air, as if disposed of under several and long distant *Clims*. For the Air here is very pure, but not so sharp and insupportable, as it is in *Norway*: though in some places, where the *Moors* and *Waters* settle, for want of care to open and cleanse the *water-courses*, they have great fogs and mists, which do somewhat putrify it. And for the soil, it is more fertile than any of the other *Northern* *Provinces*: so that besides those necessities which they keep for themselves, they usually transport into other Countreys store of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Brass, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and costly Furs. They have also some *Mines* of *Silver*, not mixt with any other metal; plenty of *fish*, in their *Lakes* and *Rivers*; abundance of *Pine-trees*, *Firre*, *Oaks*, both for ships and houses; yielding

yielding besides, among the woods, good store of *Tarre*, and *Honey*, and some other necessities. But hereof we shall speak more punctually in the several *Provinces*.

The principal Mountains of this Countrey are the *Dofrine* Hills, a vast and continual ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Norway*. And though they want not *Rivers* fit for common uses, yet partly by reason of their great frosts and flakes of Ice, partly by reason of the falling of trees which lie cross their *channels*, they have not many *Navigable*, or of any great fame. The principal of such as be, are 1 *Meler*, at the mouth whereof stands the City of *Stockholm*, 2 *Lusen*, 3 *Dalecarlie*, giving name to the Province so called, or as denominated from it. And of the *Lakes*; whereof here are exceeding many, that of most note is the Lake of *Weret*, which receiving into it 24 *Rivers*, disburtheneth it self at one mouth, into the *Baltick*; with such noise and fury, that they call it commonly the Devils head.

The people are naturally strong and active, provident, patient, and industrious; hospitable towards strangers, whom they entertain with great humanity: so healthy, that if they do not shorten their dayes by excess and riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age; and so laborious, that a *Beggar* is not seen amongst them. Of no great note for Arts or Arms in the times foregoing, not much addicted to the one, and so kept under by the *Danes*, that they could not grow eminent in the other; but much improved in both respects in these later dayes: *Ericus*, the first King of the present race, who cleared his Countrey of the *Danes*, and *Gustavus Adolphus* the last King, who freed the *Germans* from the yoke of the house of *Austria*, not being easily to be matched in the Arts of Warre. And since they began to give themselves to the sweets of learning, this Countrey hath produced (amongst some other learned men) *Olavus Magnus*, Archbishop of *Upsal*, of great note for his History of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; the first fruits of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable, by reason of their late commerce with the *German* Nations, they will give better testimony to the world hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the Arts *Mechanical*, every man in a manner being his own *Artificer*, without employing Smith, Mason, Carpenter, or any other manual trades: very valiant both on foot and horse-back, which their long wars against the *Danes*, and their late wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their women are discreet and modest, free from that intemperance which these Northern parts are subject to. Both sexes use a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern Kingdoms: except in *Finland*, and the *Provinces* on the other side of the *Bodner* Sea, where they partake somewhat of the *Muscovite*, or *Russian* language.

The *Christian Religion* was first planted amongst them, by the care and diligence of *Ausgarus* Archbishop of *Brems*, the *Apostle* general of the North. Corrupt with *Papish* superstitions, it was reformed, according to the *Augustane Confession*, in the time of *Gustavus Ericus*, the first of the present Royal family; solicited thereunto by one *Petre Nevicus*, a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Lawrence* the *Archdeacon* of *Strengnes*; but chiefly moved (as others say) by a desire to appropriate to himself the goods of the Church. And this appears to have had some strong influence upon him in it, in that he presently seized upon what he pleased; and made a Law, that *Bishops* should enjoy no more than the King thought fit: yet having pretty well lessened their *Revenues*, he was content they should remain as formerly, both in power and number; reserving to himself and his successors the nomination of the persons; but so as the approbation of the *Clergy*, (in a kind of election) doth usually go along with the Kings appointment.

The *Bishops* are in number seven; that is to say, 1 of *Lincopen*, containing in his *Diocese* 226 *Parishes*; 2 of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3 of *Scara*, ruling over the same number of Churches; 4 of *Strengnes*, under whom are a hundred only; 5 of *Abo*, the greatest for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 *Parishes*; 6 of *Wilburg*; and 4 of *Halsay*, whose *Dioceses* for the most part ly out of the bounds of *Sweden*, in *Muscovie*, *Livonia*, and some other of the out-parts of the Realm of *Poland*: all of them under the Archbishop of *Upsal*, as their *Metropolitan*, whose *Diocese* extending into *Lapland*, and *Finnmark*, containeth 171 *Parish Churches*. By which account there are in all the Kingdom of *Swethland*, but 1417 *Parishes*; but many of them of a thousand, or eight hundred families: the people being dispersed in *Forests* and other places, where they have store of timber to build them houses, and store of pasture for their Cattel; which is the reason why they have not so many great Towns, nor so well inhabited, as is usual in far lesser Countries. As for the Authority of these *Bishops*, they still retain their voice in Parliament, and with them so many of the inferior *Clergy*, as are from every *Socken*, (a certain number of *Parishes* like our *Rural Deaneries*) deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the affairs whereof the *Bishops* do direct and order, as well in as out of public meetings, according to the *Ecclesiastical Constitutions* formerly established; and if any great occasion be, they may either advise with their *Consistorials*, or call a *Diocesan Synod*, (as they think most fit) and therein make such *Laws* and *Canons*, as they conceive to be most proper for their own edification.

The whole Kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the East, the other on the West side of the Bay, or Gulph of *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodicus* in *Latin*, being a large and spacious branch of the *Baltick* Sea, extending from the most southerly point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the North: According to which division, we have the *Provinces* of 1 *Gothland*, and 2 *Sweden*, lying on the West side of the Gulf; 3 *Lapland*, shutting it up upon the North; 4 *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, and 5 *Finland*, on the East side thereof; and 6 the *Swedish Islands*, where it minglth with theret of the *Baltick*.

I. GOTHLAND.

GOTHLAND, is bounded on the East, with the Bodner Sea; on the West, with the Mountains which divide it from Norway, and so much of Denmark as lies in the same continent with it; on the North, with Sweden; on the South, with the Sea Baltick. So called either from the *Goths*, whose original Country it is commonly affirmed to be; or *quasi* good land, from the goodness and fertility of the soil; *Gootlandia*, *qua* Germanice Terra bona sonat (as *Maginnus* out of *Munster* hath it) the soil being very fruitful for Corn and Cattel, affording plenty of Mines, with great store of Fish; and generally a better conditioned Country, than of the rest of these Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Ostrogoth*, or East-Gothland; *Westergoth*, divided from the former by the great lake of *Weret*, spoken of before; and *South Gothland*, subdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiscia*, and *Verendia*. Chief Towns whereof in *Ostrogoth*, are 1 *Lincopen*, a Bishops See. 2 *Loduse*, adorned with a very fair Haven: in *Westergoth*, 3 *Scara* on the Lake *Weret*, a Bishops See also: 4 *Elfsburg*, on the Western Sea, betwixt Denmark and Norway; a place of consequence, and flanked with two very strong Castles in the parts adjoining, the one called *Croneberg*, and the other *Goldberge*. 5 *Tragnalle*, remarkable for iron works, occasioned by the mines adjoining. And finally in *South Gothland*, there is 6 *Vexim*, or *Vexio*, another of the Episcopal Sees. 7 *Wallburg*, a reasonable fair Town, with a strong Castle. 8 *Elchilm* in that part hereof which is called *Verendia*, near the confines of Denmark. 9 *Colmar*, a noted and well-traded Port on the Baltick Sea, beautified with a Castle, not inferior to that of *Milain*; and so well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Christiern* the fourth of Denmark, Anno 1611. there were found mounted on the works 108 brass pieces of Ordnance, six men of war to guard the Haven, with all manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. 10 *Gottenberg*, (or *Gothorum Burgum*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth, enjoying a commodious Haven on the Baltick also, and very much frequented for the trade of Germany, to which it serves exceeding fitly; the principal Town of all this Province, and for that cause the ordinary seat or residence of the Governour for the King of Sweden.

The first Inhabitants of these South parts of *Scandia*, are commonly affirmed to have been the *GOTHs*, whom *Jornandes* in his Book de *Rebus Geticis*, makes to have issued out of this Country, and to plant themselves on the North banks of the *Ister*, near the *Euxine* Sea, some time before the Trojan war: ascribing to them whatsoever is reported in old writers of the ancient *Scythians*, as their encounter with *Vexoris* or *Sesostrius*, the King of Egypt, the Aet and achievement of the *Amazons*: their congress with *Alexander the Great*, in his Persian war, and the like to these. In which *Jornandes* being himself a *Goth*, is no more to be credited than *Geoffry* of *Monmouth*, a *Welshman*, in the story of *Brute*, and his successors, to whom he doth ascribe the taking and sacking of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to be the brother of *Belinus*, a King of Britain. Most probable it is, that they were originally a *Dutch*, or German people, part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the land of *Prussia*. Who finding their own Country too narrow for them, might pass over the Baltick, into the next adjoining Regions; and not well liking that cold clime, might afterwards in some good numbers go to seek new dwellings, and at last seat themselves on the banks of the *Ister*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, besides the general name of the *Gothones* or *Goths*, and those of *Ostrogothes*, and *Wisigothes*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alaric*, *Theodorick*, *Riccard*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) seem to me to evidence. That they were once seated in this Country doth appear as plainly, 1 By the name of *Gothland*, here still remaining; 2 By the title of *Rex Gothorum*, which the Kings of *Swethland* keep in the Royal stile; 3 By some inscriptions in ancient unknown Characters, engraven on the rocks near *Scara* in the Continent, and in *Wibby* in the Isle of *Gothland*; supposed by learned men to be some monument of that people. And finally, that their first dwellings, when first known by this name amongst the *Romans*, was on the North side of the *Ister*; is evident by the testimony of all ancient Writers, from the time of *Antoninus Caracalla*, with whom they had some tumultuary skirmishes in his way towards *Persia*; till their violent irruption into Italy and the Western Provinces: most famous in this interval for a great fight, with *Decius* the Roman Emperour, whom they overcame and slew in a battle, Anno 253. In the time of *Valens*, and *Valentinian*, the Roman Emperours, a quarrel being grown amongst them, managed by *Phritigernes*, and *Athalaricus*, the leaders of the opposite factions; *Phritigernes* overthrown in fight, had recourse to *Valens*; from whom he received such succours, that giving his adversary another day for it, he obtained the victory. Whereupon *Phritigernes* and his party received the Gospel, but intermixt and corrupt with the *leaven* of *Arianism* by the practice of *Valens*, who sent them none but *Arian* teachers, to whom and their factions in the Church, he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Ister*, by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out-parts of *Thrace* for an habitation; on condition they should serve under the pay of the Emperour, and become *Christians*: the cause that *Arianism* over-spread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one party only. *Ulphilas* a devout and learned man, was their first Bishop; who for their better edification in the way of *godliness*, invented a new *Gothick* Character, and translated the Scriptures into that language: in the study whereof they so well profited, that many of them in the time of their first conversion, suffered death for it, at the hands of *Athalaricus*, and were counted *Martyrs*. Burdened by *Valens*, and denied their accustomed pay, they haraſs and depopulate the rest of *Thrace*, march-

ing

ing towards *Constantinople*: encountered in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame, and killed after all his favours. Vanquished by *Theodosius* the succeeding Emperour in many battels, they became good neighbours, enlarging their bounds with his leave and licence as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into such estimation with him, that *Ricimer* and *Frantia*, two of that Nation, did obtain the *Consulship*; not to say any thing of that exorbitant power and favour, which *Gainas* had attained unto in the Court itself. Made insolent by so great honours, and apt to pick quarrels with their Patrons, they invaded Italy in two great bodies, consisting of no fewer than 200000 fighting men: the first whereof under the conduct of *Rhadagisus*, was discomfited and cut in pieces, by *Stilico* Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperour, at *Fesula* in the straits of the *Appennine*. The other by his treachery permitted to pass, sacked *Rome*, and subdued the most part of Italy, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediately after this great victory, left the fruits of it to his son *Athaulfus*; who marrying with *Galla Placidia*, the Emperours sister, relinquished Italy, and had all *Gaul Narbonoise*, and a great part of *Hispania Tarraconensis*, assigned unto him; where he erected the Kingdom of the *Wisigothes*, or Western *Goths*, possessed of *Spain* and *Tingitania*, for the space of 300 years and upward, when they lost that Kingdom to the *Moors*, as hath there been said. In the mean time, the *Goths*, which were left in their own Countries, distinguished from these by the name of *Ostro-Goths*, by reason of their more Eastern situation, kept themselves in quiet: first subdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Wilamir*, freed from that subjection, not intermeddling or attempting any thing against the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperour of *Constantinople* into Italy against *Odoacer*, and the *Hernuli*, who had then subdued it. Which action they managed with so much prudence and good fortune, by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquished *Odoacer*, possessed Italy, and held it above 60 years; when broken in many set battels by *Belisarius* and *Narſes*, Lieutenants for the Emperour *Justinian*; their Kingdom and name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a succession of them in *Jornandes*, from *Berig*, who first conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the East; till the going of *Theodorick* into Italy; but made up with so little probability, that I dare give no more credit to it, than the stories of *Brute*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the *Lady Scots*, *Pharaohs* daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledge and succession, are these few that follow.

The KINGS of the GOTHs.

- 344 1 *Athalaricus* King of the *Goths*, in the time of *Constantius*, and *Constant*, the sons of *Constantine* the Great.
- 357 2 *Alaricus*, the first of that name, in the time of *Constantius*.
- 3 Phritigernes, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the first Christian Prince among that People.
- 370 4 *Athalaricus* II. in the time of the Emperours *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* the second; under whom the *Goths* were first seated on this side of the *Ister*.
- 379 5 *Rhadagisus*, who in the time of *Honorius*, first led the *Goths* into Italy; slain at the battle of *Fesula*.
- 410 6 *Alaricus* II. who pursuing the war of Italy, sacked *Rome*, subdued *Naples*, and the most of Italy.
- 413 7 *Athaulfus*, the son of *Alarick* the second, who first erected the Kingdom of the *Wisigothes* in *Gaul*, and *Spain*, continuing there for the space of 300 years and upwards: the present Kings of *Spain* coming from this stock.
- 417 8 *Athalaricus* King of the *Goths* remaining in the East, at the departure of *Rhadagisus* and *Alaricus*, distinguished from their Plantations, by the name of *Ostrogothes*: vanquished by *Attila*, they became subjects to the *Huns*, in the time of *Theodosius* the second, and *Valentinian* the third, Emperours of the East, and West.
- 9 *Wilamir*, one of the blood Royal of the *Goths*, Vassal to *Attila* at the first, whom he assisted, or served rather, in the great battle near *Tholouse* against the *Romans*: but taking advantage of some quarrels amongst the sons of *Attila*, shook off that yoke, and recovered the Kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperour *Marcianus*.
- 10 *Theodomir*, son of *Winithar*, and brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperour of *Constantinople*.
- 11 *Theodorick*, son of *Theodomir*, kept at *Constantinople* in his youth, as a Pledge or Hostage for his Father, where he was instructed in all the *Greek* and *Roman* learning, and made the adopted son (as is said by *Scaliger*) of the Emperour *Zeno*; by whom he was sent into Italy against *Odoacer* and the *Hernuli*, erecting there the Kingdom of the *Ostrogothes*; which continued till the reign of *Justinian*, when destroyed by *Belisarius* and *Narſes*, as before is said; the name of *Goths* in Italy being thus extinct, but their blood intermixt with the best Italian. The sum of their whole story, for varieties sake, take thus out of *Du Bartas*.

The warlike *Goth*, which whilom issued forth
From the cold frozen Islands of the North,
Incamp'd by *Visula*; but the Air almost
Being there as cold as in the Baltick Coast,

He

Lapland.

He with victorious Arms *Sclavonia* gains,
The *Transylvanian*, and *Valachian* plains.
Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greece*,
Greedy of spoil, four times he bravely seeks
To pluck from *Rome*, then *Mars* his Minion,
The Plumes which the from all the world had won :
Guided by *Rhadaguis*, and *Alarick*,
Bold *Vindimarus*, and *Theodorick*.
Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulst, his Legions
Rest ever since upon the *Spanish* Regions.

The Arms of these Kings are said to have been *Or*, three Ravens with displayed wings *Purple*, membered *Gules*. And let this suffice for the original, successes, and final period of the *Goths*; reserved by me unto this place, because most commonly conceived to be their original Country; at least the place out of which they issued, when they first moved towards the East to seek new dwellings.

2. SWEDEN.

SWEDEN is bounded on the East, with the *Bodner* Sea; on the West, with the *Dofrine* hills, which part it from *Norway*; on the North, with *Lapland*; on the South, with *Gothland*. So called from the *Swethans*, or *Swethidi*, the old Inhabitants hereof, of whom more anon. A Country sufficiently fruitful, but for the goodness of the soil inferior to *Gothland*; and not so well planted or inhabited as that is, by reason of the vast Woods which they will not suffer to be destroyed, and the greatness of some *marishes* hitherto undrained: but might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would; as appeareth by that plenty of corn growing amongst the woods, though much hindered by their shade and thickness, both from Sun and Rain. But for the character of this Country we had it formerly, when we spake of *Swethland* in the general; relating specially to this, as the principal part.

And as the largest and principal part of this great body, it contains in it many Provinces, and subdivisions, as namely, 1 *Upland*, 2 *Suderman*, 3 *Noricia*, 4 *Westman*, 5 *Dalecarle*, 6 *Wormland*, 7 *Coppardele*, 8 *Gestrucia*, 9 *Helsingen*, 10 *Middelphar*, 11 *Angerman*, bordering on *Lapland*, the furthest of these Provinces towards the North. Many of which have no Towns or Cities of any greatness, or beauty, the people living thin, and scattered, where they have wood for building, *pasturage* for their Beasts, and elbow room enough for themselves and their Cartel. Of these the principal are, 1 *Upsal*, an *Archbishop's* See, and an *University*, situate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*: beautified with a large *Cathedral*, wherein many of the ancient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Country hereabouts is styled *Archiepiscopatus Upsalensis*. 2 *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Russians* *Stecolue*: the Royal seat of the Kings, a noted and well-traded Port, and the chief of the Kingdom: exceeding strong both by Art and Nature, as being situate in the *Marishes*, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake, or River of *Meler*, the passage to it out of the Bay, being very narrow, and by consequence easily defended; and yet so deep within, that the greatest Ships of burden may sail up to the City: the Port within the Strait being so safe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 sail, which usually ride there without any Anchor. The Castle of this City is conceived to be one of the strongest holds in the world; fortified for the more assurance of it with 400 brass peeces, many of which are double *Canons*. 3 *Nicopen*, a sea Town on the same Bay also. These three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4 *Strengnes*, an *Episcopal* See; and 5 *Telge*, on the Lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Suderman*: the title and estate of *Charls*, Father of *Gustavus Adolphus*, late King of *Sweden*: before his getting of the Crown, called Duke of *Suderman*. Next, in the Province of *Westman*, there are 6 *Arvogen*, on the West side of the said Lake of *Meler*; and 7 *Arofe*, rich in silver mines; out of which are made the best Dollars of *Sweden*: the mines here being so rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of silver, the workmen draw a pound weight of gold. 8 *Helsingen*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helsingen*, taking name from hence. 9 *Oxelbo*, or *Ourbou*, a strong piece in *Nerissa*; and 10 *Lefinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the furthest North of *Sweden*, distinctly and specially so called.

3. LAPLAND.

LAPLAND; the most Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the East, *Russia*; on the West, the Province or Prefecture of *Wardhny*, in the Kingdom of *Norway*; on the North, the main *Frozen* Ocean; and on the South, *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, on both sides of the Bay so called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it, as they are from their blockish behaviour; the word *Lappus* signifying the same with *ineptus* or *insultus* in *Latine*, for such they are: rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of Arts or Letters, as also without corn and houses, or any certain habitations (except only in *Finmarch*) feeding for the most part on fish, and the flesh of wild beasts, with the skins whereof sowed together they hide their nakedness. Generally they are meer Idolaters, giving divine honour all the day following to that living creature whatsoever it be, which they see at their first setting out in the morning: great *Sorcerers*, and abhorring

Finland.

ring the sight of strangers, whom till of late they used to flee from, at their first approach; but within few years past beginning to be more sociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true descendants of the ancient *Finni* (possessed in old times of all that tract, which lyeth between the Bay of *Finland*, and the *Frozen* Ocean) whose natural rudeness and barbarity, unmixed with the conditions of more civil people, they do still retain.

It is divided into the *Eastern* and the *Western* *Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez* or great Duke of *Muscovie*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Dikiloppi*, or the wild *Lappians*; is subdivided into *Biarmia* and *Corelia*; of which, if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, we shall there speak more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, subdivided into two parts also, that is to say, 1 *Finmarch*, and 2 *Scricfinnia*.

1 **FINMARCH**, being that part hereof which lieth next unto *Norway*, is the more populous of the two; the people for the most part idolatrous, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and resort of strangers unto *Wardhny*, and the parts adjoining, somewhat civilized; and in the borders of both Kingdoms favouring of Religion; possessed of *sheds* or sorry houses, and those houses reduced to parishes under the jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Upsal*; the chief of which, (if there be any chief amongst them) are named, 1 *Samman*, and 2 *Hjelfo*. Called *Finmarch*, as the ancient bounds and *March* of the *Finni*, (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneously by *Maginus*, made a part of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

2 **SCRICFINNIA**, lieth between *Finmarch* and *Russia*. The name derived from the *Finni*, a great people of *Scandia*, and *Scrigen* a *Dutch* word signifying leaping, sliding, or bounding, for such is their gate. An etymologie not much improbable, in that the wooden-soled shoes, with sharp bottoms, which they used for their more speedy sliding over the ice, of which this Country is full, are by the *Germans* (who also use them) called *Scrikesboenen*, or sliding-shoes. The ancient Writers call this people *Scritto-fani*.

These are indeed the natural and proper *Laplanders*; and unto these the former character doth of right belong. Of stature very low, little more than *Pygmies*, but strong and active; well skill'd in *Archery*, and patient of cold and labour. Much given to hunting of wild Beasts, whom they kill with their Bows, devour the flesh, and cloath themselves with their skins, and they tie at the top of their heads, and leave no place open but for the sight; giving thereby occasion unto some to write, that they are hairy all over, like kine or horses. Such *Deer* (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkill'd, they make to draw in little carts, as they shift their *Quarters*. But having served them for a while, they are killed at last, though perhaps for nothing but their skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden* in the way of tribute. Three Companies of these *Laplanders*, so clad and armed as aforesaid, came into *Germany* in the year 1630. to serve *Gustavus* in those Wars; looked on with admiration by all spectators.

Towns we must look for none here, where no houses be: and yet there are some *sheds* and *cabbins*, on the Sea-shore; which *Mariners* having made for their refreshment when they came on land, have bestowed some names on, and possibly in time may become good Towns, now not worth the naming.

4 BODIA.

BODIA, **BODEN**, or **BODNER**, is situate on the South of *Scricfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or Gulf hence named; extending Southwards on the West side of it, till it joyns to *Sweden*, and on the East side, till it meet with the Province of *Finland*. Hence the division of this Country, into the *Eastern*, *Northern*, and *Western* *Bodden*; with reference to the situation of it on the Bay aforesaid. The Country not very plentiful of grain or fruits, but full of great variety of wild Beasts, whose rich skins yield great profit unto the Inhabitants; and by reason of the commodious situation on all sides of the Bay, well stored with Fish. Anciently it was part of the possessions of the *Finni*, but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whence soever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the Gulf adjoining is called *Sinus Bodicus*, *Bodner Zee*, by the *Dutch* or *German*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1 *Barkara*, in *West Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable Lake; 2 *Gernia*, a well-traded *Emporie* at the very bottom of the Bay, in *North Bodden*. 3 *Helsingelac*, more North than that, towards the borders of *Lapland*, and 4 *Kerldby* in *East Bodden*, on the Bank of the Gulf, conveniently seated for a Town of Trade.

5 FINLAND.

FINLAND hath on the North, *Bodia*; on the South, the *Baltick* Sea; or *Mare Suevicum*; on the East, *Sinus Finnicus*; on the West, *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Mansfer* thought to be called *Finland*, quod fine land; quod pulchrior & amantior sit Suecia, because it is a more fine and pleasing Country than *Sweden* it self. But indeed it is so called from the *Finni* or *Fenni*; a potent Nation, who have here dwelt, whose Character is thus framed by *Tacitus*. *Finnis mira feritas, fæda paupertas, non arma, non equi, non penates; vitæ herbe, vestitui peller, cubile humus, sola in sagittis spes*. The *Finnis*, saith he, are wonderfully barbarous, miserably poor, without Arms, Horse, or Household Gods; Herbs their food, the ground their bed, and the skins of beasts their best apparel, armed only with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our present *Finlanders*, especially

X x

- 1439 31 Christopher, Count Palatine, and Duke of Bavaria (in title only) son of the Lady Margaret, sister of Ericus, succeeded in all three Kingdoms. After whose death the Swethlanders, being weary of the Danish Government, broke the agreement made at Colmar, for the uniting of the three Kingdoms under one Prince; and chose one *Carolus Caninus* to be their King, Anno 1448.
- 1448 32 *Carolus Caninus*, one of the meanest of the Nobility, and not long pleasing to the great ones: whose displeasure when he had incurred, and feared the consequences thereof, he gathereth together all the treasure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his days.
- 1455 33 *Christiern*, King of Denmark and Norway, called in by a party of the Swedes, and crowned King of Swethland; but outed again under colour that he had not kept conditions with them: the Kingdom governed after that (for a time) by Marshals.
- 1458 34 *John*, King of Denmark and Norway, the son of *Christiern*, received King by the Swedes, then overpowered by the Muscovite: but their turn being served, they expelled him again; returning to their former Government under Marshals. Of which Marshals (descended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Caninus* by his Mothers side) there were three in number; viz. 1 *Steno*, 2 *Snanto*, and 3 *Steno Stur*, the second: of which the two first died natural deaths, and the last being by *Christiern* the second slain in barrel, this Kingdom was again possessed by the Danes.
- 1519 35 *Christiern II.* King of all three Kingdoms, used his victory so cruelly here, and his Subjects so insolently at home, that here he was outed by *Gustavus Ericus*, and driven out of Denmark by his Uncle *Frederick*.
- 1523 36 *Gustavus Ericus*, descended from the ancient race of the Kings of Sweden, having vanquished and expelled the Danes, was on the merit of that action chosen King of Swethland, which still continueth in his house.
- 1561 37 *Ericus V.* son to *Gustavus* 8.
- 1569 38 *John II.* brother of *Ericus*, married *Catharine* the sister of *Sigismund* the second, King of Poland.
- 1593 39 *Sigismund*, the son of *John* the second, in the life time of his Father chosen King of Poland, Anno 1586. but was dispossessed of the Crown of Sweden (after a long War) by his Uncle *Charles*.
- 1607 40 *Charles II.* Duke of Suderman, the youngest Son of *Gustavus Ericus*, and brother of *John* and *Eric*, the two former Kings: first governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigismund*. But having an aim upon the Crown (to which he found the Lutherans not very favourable) he raised up a Calvinian party within that Realm; according to whose principles he began first to withdraw his obedience from his natural Prince, and afterwards to assume the Government to himself: speeding so well in his design that after a long War, he forced his Nephew to desist from all further Enterprises, and made himself King, Anno 1607.
- 1611 41 *Gustavus Adolphus*, son of *Charles*, having settled his affairs in Sweden, and made peace with the King of Denmark, with whom his Father was in War at the time of his death; fell first upon his Cousin *Sigismund*, the King of Poland, from whom he took many places of importance in Prussia and Livonia; and in pursuance of that War was made Knight of the Garter. Afterwards, having settled a Truce with him, he passed into Germany, then in great danger of being absolutely intrahled to the house of Austria. In which he prospered to beyond all expectation, that in one year he passed over the Elbe, the Rhine, and the Danow (which no Conquerour ever did before:) and having twice vanquished the Imperialists led by Tilly, and restored many of the German Princes unto their estates; he was in the current of his victories, slain in the battle of *Lutzen*, Novem. 1632. his body royally conveyed to Swethland, and there interred.
- 1632 42 *Christina*, sole daughter of *Gustavus*, of the age of seven years, acknowledged Queen of Sweden; the Estate governed by the Councils of the Nobility. After a long War, with variable success, in Germany, they came at last to this Accord in the Treaty of Munster; That she and her Successors, Kings and Queens of Swethland, should peaceably enjoy all the Higher Pomerania, with the Isles of Rugia, Wollin, and the Town of *Stetin*, in Lower Pomerania; the Town and Port of *Wismar*, in the Dukedom of Mecklenburg; and the whole Bishoprick of Bremen, and Verden, and the Prefecture of the Town of *Wilhelmshaven*; with the title of Dukes of Bremen, Pomerania, and Verden, Princes of Rugia, and Lords of *Wismar*, and by those titles to have place, as Princes of the Empire, in all Diets and Assemblies which concern the publick. By which agreement (if it hold) the Swedes have not only got a good footing in Germany, a strong influence upon all the Councils of the Empire, a door open for more forces (if occasion be) and a free passage into the Western Ocean, which before they wanted: but may in time prove absolute Masters of the Baltic Sea; and make the Hamburgers, those of Lubeck, and possibly the Kings of Denmark and the Empire itself, be at their devotion.

But leaving these things to the doubtful issue of contingents, let us next look upon the Forest and Revenues of the Crown of Sweden, before the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, or as he found it at his succession to that Crown. For though the Swedes pretend their Kingdom to be *Eldstive*, especially

especially since the failing of the Royal Line in *Magnus* the fourth, and *Albert* of Mecklenburg: yet still the eldest son, or next heir, succeedeth; unless put by, by faction and strong hand, as in the case of *Sigismund*, and his Uncle *Charles*; Which *Charles* so ordered his affairs, that having engaged the Kingdom in a War against his Nephew, he was solicited at the last to accept of the Crown: to which he would by no means yield, till a Law was made for the entailing of the same for ever unto his posterity, whether male or female, as an Hereditary Crown. But whether Hereditary or *Eldstive*, the King once settled in the Throne, is an absolute Monarch: having not only a power to *levie Taxes* on his Subjects, as he seeth occasion, as five, six, seven, eight dollars, or more yearly upon every Householder, according to the proportion of his estate; but also to grant a certain number of *Paissants* unto such as he means to favour, to be as Subjects and Vassals to him, according to his well-deserving. And whereas in the constitution of this Government, every Parish hath a *Landman* or *Consul* to decide the controversies of the same; as every Territory hath its *Vicount*, and each Province his *Lamen*; there lyeth an Appeal from the *Landman* unto the *Vicount*, and from the *Vicount* to the *Lamen*: who if they be supposed not to judge uprightly, then the Appeal lies unto the Council, and from the Council of Estate to the King and Council, (in whom is fixed the Sovereignty, and DERNIER RESORT) and not unto the King and Council, as before in Denmark.

The Forces of this King are either by Sea or Land. By Sea he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodner*, and hath a great power in all the rest of the *Baltick*: being able to set out 70 good Men of War, as *John* the second did in the year 1578. Seven of which were good Gallies, and all the rest did carry above 50 cast pieces of all sorts; besides many other good Vessels fit for service. And if a Navy of this size will not serve the turn, he is not only furnished with Timber, Cordage, and all other necessaries for the building of Ships, and with good store of Ordnance and Ammunition for present use; but is able to raise upon a sudden 6000 Mariners, and upon little warning as many more: all which he entertaineth at no other charges in a manner, than to find victuals, inasmuch as *John* the second, before mentioned, did use to say, that that which cost the King of Spain a million of Crowns, cost not him 100000 Dollars.

For his Land Forces, they may best be estimated by the Trained Bands (as we may call them) in every Province: there being in all 32 *Veilles* (or Ensigns) of Foot constantly trained and mustered in the several Provinces; each *Veille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the total to 20000 Foot, all in a manner *Musketiers*, ready to march whenever the Kings occasion shall so require. And then for Horse, there are eleven Cornets in continual readines, for Sweden and Gothland, and two for Finland, maintained at the charges of those Countries: to which the King may add at his own charges as many more as he pleaseth. And for an instance of what this King is able to do, without putting his estates in hazard by draining them too dry of men to make good his Kingdom: we find that *John* the second in his Navy of 70 Ships (spoken of before, had above 18000 Land Souldiers, besides Mariners. And in the Army which *Gustavus Adolphus*, the late King, brought into Germany, there were mustered no fewer at one time, than 12000 Horse, and 34000 Foot, all Finnes and Swethlanders. For the accommodating of which Armies with Artillery, and the like Engines of War, it is thought that the Kings hereof are Masters of 8000 great pieces, for the most part brass, with Mortar-pieces and Granadoes in proportion to them.

But that which makes his Land Forces most considerable, is their hardnes in enduring the extremities of Wind and Weather; inasmuch that it is usual with them to stand *Centinel* a whole Winters night of 18 hours long, without being relieved: their exact Discipline, and obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable industry in making their own shoes, apparel, stocks for Muskets, and all other necessaries. Which doth not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the Wars; but keeps them from idleness, and the pride of Mutinies; the ordinary effect, in great Armies, of sloth and ease. Nor do they want encouragement on the Kings part neither; who first gives to every Souldier victuals, which he accomps not in their pay, and that according to his obedience and desert: 2 If a Souldier be taken Prisoner, him the King doth usually redeem at his own charges; and 3 If a Souldiers horse be slain under him, the King supplieth him with another: which makes the Souldiers (very sensible of such obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his commands, how dangerous soever they seem to be.

Finally, as for his Revenues, they must needs be great, there being four wayes allowed him to amass his treasures. First, the Revenues of the Church, consisting before the Reformation of seven Bishopricks, and sixty Monasteries, which enjoyed very great possessions; all seized on by *Gustavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the Crown; excepting only what is given back to maintain the Bishops. Secondly, Mines which are here of all metals in very great plenty, except of Gold and Silver, which they have more sparingly; the tenth whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yields him such a fair *Intrade*, that in the year 1578. the Kings part out of two or three Mines of Copper only, amounted to 30000 Dollars. Thirdly, Tenth out of all encrease, as Rie, Wheat, Barley, Fish, Oxen, Skins, and the like commodities; the sum whereof, though not certainly known (because the increase is so uncertain) yet it was once computed, that the tenth of the Oxen only, came in one year to 18000 Dollars, besides provision for his household. Fourthly and lastly, Customs imposed on Merchandise, and paid in all his Haven Towns for all commodities imported, or exported, of what sort soever. Besides all which, he hath his Contributions in all times of War, power of imposing taxes (though moderately used) as his necessities require: and on the marriage of a Daughter, the Kingdom is to provide her portion, which of late times hath been fixed at the certain sum of 100000 Dollars, besides Plate and moveables. Out of which several Items to sum up the total: It was observed, that in the year 1578. King *John*

the second (all charges, ordinary and extraordinary, being first deducted) did lay up in his Treasury no less than 700000 *Dollars*; which was a vast sum for those times, considering especially the great charge which the King had been at that year, in furnishing a Navy of 70 sail, and railing 18000 *Land Souldiers*, (besides *Horse*) for defence of his Realm against the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by some knowing men, that his *Revenues* would be much greater than they are, if he did employ strangers to work the *Mines*, which the Natives do not husband to the best advantage; and yet are fearful to difcover them to other Nations, upon some *jealousies*, which they are naturally addicted to: or if he would turn *Merchant*, and in his own ships send out *Corn* and *Cordage*, with *Matts* and *Timber* fit for building; and in them bring back *Salt* and other necessaries, which his Kingdom wants, setting them at a far less price than now they go at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Acure*, three Crowns, Or.

There are in *Swethland*

Archbishops 2. Bishops 8.

Universities but one,

viz. *Upsal*.

And thus much for *SWETHLAND*.



OF RUSSIA.



RUSSIA, is bounded on the East, by *Tartary*; on the West, with *Livonia*, and *Finland*, from which divided by great mountains, and the River *Polna*; on the North, by the Frozen Ocean, and some part of *Lapland*; and on the South, by *Lithuania*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the *Crim Tartars* inhabiting on the banks of *Palmu Maotis*, and the *Euxine Sea*. It standeth partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Asia*, the River *Tanais* or *Don* running through it; the common boundary of those great and noted parts of the World.

It was thus called from the *Rossi* or *Russi*, a people of Mount *Taurus*, or *Taurica*, *Chersonesus* (if not both) who in the declining times of the *Greek Empire*, possessed themselves of some parts of it; and being the prevailing people, imposed their name on all the rest. Called also *Russia Alba*, to distinguish it from *Russia Nigra*, a Province of *Poland*, quod incolae omnium gentium ipsius imperio subiectarum (as it from *Russia albis & Pileis plerumque utantur*, because one observes discoursing of the affairs hereof) *vestibus albis & Pileis* plerumque utantur, because the Inhabitants use to wear white caps and vestments. And why not thus? since the people of *Margiana* and *Sogdiana* in *Asia*, have the name of *Jesellasse*, only because they wear green turbans, as the word importeth. Finally, it is called *Moscovie*, from *Moscovie* the chief Province of it; as that denominated from the *Moschi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the heavenly bodies, it is said by some to be situate betwixt the 8th. and 20th. *Climates*; the longest day in the Southern parts, being but 16 hours and an half; and almost 22 hours and an half in the Northern parts. But this is to be understood only of the Province of *Moscovie*, properly and specially so called; and not of the whole Empire of the *Moscovie*, according to the bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it, as East *Lapland*, *Comoranda*, and *Petzora*, lying within the *Arctic Circle*, the longest day in Summer will be full 6 months (for so long do those Countries see no night at all) which is a mighty disproportion, from the length of the longest day in the most Southern parts, being but 16 hours and an half, as before is said. And by this rule we are to take the dimensions also. For though some make the length hereof from North to South, that is to say, from *Cala* in the North, to *Astrachan* near the *Caspian Sea*, to be no more than 2260

2260 *Versts*, or 3690 *Italian miles*; yet they confess, that reckoning forwards from *Tromschu*, the furthest point of *Petzora*, the full length thereof will be nigh so much more. And for the breadth, reckoning from *Narve*, on the Bay of *Finland* (now in possession of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Severia* in the East, it amounteth to 4400 *Versts*, or 3300 *Italian miles*; each *Verst* being estimated at three quarters of an *English mile*. Which mighty Territory, if it were peopled answerable to some other parts of the World, would either make it too great for one Prince to hold; or make that Prince too great and puissant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty, and deceitful in all their bargains, false-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their promises, and studying nothing more than ways to evade their Contracts. Vices so generally known, and noted in them, that when they are to deal with strangers, they dissemble their Country, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear lest nobody should trust them. Destitute of humane affections, and so unnatural, that the Father insults on his Son, and he again over his Father and Mother: So malicious one towards another, that you shall have a man hide some of his own goods in the house of some man whom he hateth, and then accuse him for the stealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, inasmuch that all heady and intoxicating drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the most part they are strong of body, swift of foot, of a square proportion, broad, short, and thick; grey-eyed, broad-bearded, and generally furnished with prominent paunches. The Commons live in miserable subjection to the Nobles, and they again in as great slavery to the Duke or Emperor; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his grievances: nay the mean Lords and Officers are squeamish in this kind, and but on great submission, will not commend unto the Duke a poor mans cause. They are altogether unlearned, even the Priests meanly indoctrinated; it being cautioned by the Great Duke, that there be no Schools, lest there should be any Scholars, but himself; so that the people use to work commonly on the Lords day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen; and to say in a difficult question, God and our Great Duke know all this; and in other talk, All we enjoy, health and life, is all from our Great Duke; According to whose pleasure every man is prescribed what habit he shall wear, both for matter and fashion suitable unto their condition. In the time of my Author, their habit was a long garment without plaits, which hung down to their heels; commonly of white or blew, with very strait sleeves; on their legs wearing buskins up as high as the calf, for the most part red, high at the heels, and beset with nails of iron. The stuff, and trimming of the dress is the only difference betwixt the Noble and the Peasant.

The women are attired also much after this manner; but if great and noble, suffered to set forth themselves with store of pearls and precious stones, which hang so thick about their ears, that they do almost pull their ears from their heads. A second marriage is conceived no blemish in point of chastity, but the third condemns them of incontinence: naturally subject enough to the lusts of the flesh, but private, and fearful to offend; if once lascivious, then most intolerably wanton. It is the fashion of these Women to love that Husband best which beareth them most; and to think themselves neither loved nor regarded, unless they be two or three times a day well-favouredly swaddled. The Author of the *Treasury of Times*, telleth a story of a German Shoemaker, who travelling into this Country, and here marrying a Widow, used her with all kindness that a woman could (as he thought) desire; yet did not she seem contented. At last learning where the fault was, and that his not bearing her was the cause of her pensiveness, he took such a vein in cudgelling her sides, that in the end, the Hangman was fain to break his neck for his labour.

They use the *Slavonian Language*, but so corrupt and mixt with other Languages, that they and the *Slavonians* understand not one anothers meaning, but by circumstance only: yet in *Jugaria* (out of which the *Hungarians* are thought to have issued) they speak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Petzora* and the Country of *Czeremissians*, they have a Language to themselves, distinct from others.

They first received the *Christian Faith* in the year 987; or as some say, Anno 942. by the preaching and ministry of the *Greeks*, sent hither by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*: of which Church they are constant followers, both for Rites and Doctrine; but not without some superstitious of their own superadded to them, viz. not coming near a Cross, Church, or Monastery, but they kneel down, and make the sign of the Cross, saying, *Miloy Hspodi*, i. e. Lord have mercy upon us; nor entering into any Church, until washed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the Jews, whom they suffer not to live amongst them: and so great friendship unto a Calf, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his flesh. Their Church is governed by 18 Bishops, and 2 *Metropolitans*; all of them subordinate to their Archbishop or Patriarch; as he, in former times, to the *Constantinopolitan*, by whom he used to be confirmed. But about an hundred years ago they withdrew themselves from that subjection; the Patriarch being nominated by the Great Duke, and consecrated by two or three of his own *Suffragans*. Without the counsel and advice of this Patriarch, the Emperor or Great Duke doth nothing of any moment. The Bishops are all chosen out of the *Monastick* or *Regular Clergy*; which makes the Monks (being all of the Order of *S. Basil*) to live very religiously; in hope to be advanced to the *Episcopal* dignity. And for the *Secular Clergy*, or *Parochial Priests*, there is not much required of them, but to say their Masses (which being in their own Language they may easily do) and to read now and then one of *St. Chrysostoms Homilies*, translated heretofore for the use of those Churches: after the death of their first wives not permitted to marry, in other things little differing from the rest of the people. Once in the year it is lawful and usual with them to hold a *Synod*, at which the Patriarch hath his *Crozier* or *Pastoral staff* carried before him, as the Popes *Legate* hath the Cross; where they make *Constitutions*

Muscovite. *ies of State* to hold discourse with the Ambassadors of neighbouring Princes, but only in the Emperor's hearing. By means whereof the *Chronography* of this vast Empire is come but lately to our hands; though the *Power, Police, and Regencies* of it, being points discernible by the *Ministers* of other Princes, and by the *course and conduct* of their affairs, are as well known as those of less distance. Which said, we will first begin with *Muscovite*, the prevailing Province, that which gives name to this whole Empire, with reference to which the situation and position of the rest of the Provinces, is set forth unto us in our Authors.

MUSCOVIE.

MUSCOVIE, (specially so called, is seated in the very center of this Estate, and is more fit to border the affairs thereof, the largest Province of the whole, extending from East to West 600 Dutch, or 2400 English miles; so populous withal, that besides 300000 *Boulers*, or Gentlemen, bound to serve on Horse-back at their own charges (like the *Turks* *Timariots*), the Great Duke is able to raise 70000 Foot (which is a great matter for a Country so little cultivated.) The soil hereof is stiff and clammy, but might be made more profitable than it is, were it well manured, or ploughed and ordered, as it is in all other Countries. For here, and in most parts else of this large Dominion, the people are accustomed to sow no more of their Land, than what they dig with the Spade, or can break up with a stick very sharply pointed; whereof they carry great numbers into the field, that when one breaks they may use another. Chief places in this Province are: 1. *Mosco*, the Imperial seat, and the See of the *Patriarch*, so called of the River *Mosco* upon which it is situate. Exceedingly improved both in state and beauty, since the time that *Daniel* the fourth Lord of *Muscovite* removed the seat Royal hither, from *Kalagomire*, where before it was: inasmuch that it was once grown to nine miles in compass, containing then 41500 Families, but being fired by the *Tartars*, Anno 1571. (at what time there were burnt 800000 persons) it is reduced to five miles only. The houses for the most part of Wood and Dirt, the streets very dirty; it is reduced to five miles only. In stead whereof there are without either Ditch, Wall, or Rampart, to defend it against an Enemy. In stead whereof there are two Castles in the outward parts of it, the one called *Kiagorod*, the other *Balsigorod*; environed with the River *Mosco*, and another Water called *Neglinna*, which here falls into it. It contains 16 Churches, the most of them of the same materials as the houses are: and the Palace of the great Duke situate in the midst thereof, (which for the greatness of it may be thought a little City) fortified with 17 Towers, 3 Bulwarks, and a continual Garrison (if the Great Duke be there) of 25000 men for the Guard of his person. 2. *Stoboda*, a Bishops See, North-east to *Mosco*, on the banks of one of the greatest Rivers which fall into the *Volga*. 3. *Ruschova*, the title of a Dukedom, fortified with a Castle of Wood of which there is the most of the Fortresses of this Country are made) situate 2 1/2 leagues from *Mosco* towards the West, on the banks of the *Volga*, which hath its fountain in the Territory and precincts hereof. 4. *Jaroslava*, on the banks of the *Volga* also, a Town and Castle distant about 46 Dutch miles from *Mosco*, formerly the Estate and patrimony of the second sons of the Great Duke, but united to the Royal Domain, by *John Wasilwitsky*, and by him added also to the title Imperial. It is also one of the Sees *Episcopal*. 5. *Rustova*, the See of one of the two *Metropolitans*, situate in a fruitful soil, well stored with fish, and yielding good plenty of Sale. One of the ancientest Principalities of all this Empire, and held accustomedly by the second sons of the Great Duke, as a State distinct: but conquered by *John Wasilwitsky*, Anno 1565. and added to the title and Patrimony of the Great Duke himself, the younger sons being from thenceforth put off with pensions. 6. *Vologda*, a Bishop See, situate in a Fenny and Woody Country; very strong by nature, and beautified with one of the strongest Castles of all this Estate, where the Great Duke doth sometime lay a part of his Treasure: that part especially which is raised of the English and Dutch Merchandise, which being landed at the Port of *St. Nicolas*, is first brought hither, where having paid a new Toll or Custom, it goeth on to *Mosco*. Betwixt this City and that of *Jaroslava* before mentioned, for the space of an hundred English miles, where stood in former times 50 goodly Villages, (some of them of a mile in length) the Country in a manner is left wholly desolate, and without Inhabitant; abandoned by the people, by reason of the insupportable pressures which were laid upon them.

2. SMOLENSCO. 3. MOSAISKI. 4. PLESCOW.

THE Dukedom of **SMOLENSCO**, is situate on the course of the River *Nieper*, or *Borysthenes*, full of many thick Forests, from whence they carry a great number of rich skins yearly. Places of most observation in it, are 1. *Smolensko*, situate on the *Nieper*, a Bishops See, about 80 Polish miles from *Mosco*; begirt on every side with Mountains, and spacious Woods. A large Town, and of great esteem in these parts of the Empire, and giving name unto this Province; which heretofore was governed in a free condition under the patronage and protection of the King of Poland, in the time of *Alexander*, a late King thereof, by *Basilius* the Great Duke conquered and added unto this Estate. Taken by the *Polanders* in the year 1610. after a long siege of two years, with the slaughter of 200000 *Muscovites*, and the loss of many of the besiegers; but retored again to *Michael Fedorowitsch* the Great Duke, on the making of the peace between them. 2. *Biela*, a principality of itself, having the honour of a Castle, and reckoned in the usual title of the *Knez*, or Emperor.

3. **MOSAISKI** hath in length 350 Italian miles, and as much in breadth; so called from *Moskwa*, the chief Town hereof, and a Bishops See; taken together with the Territory or Province appertaining to it, from *Alexander* King of Poland, by *John* the Great Duke, Father of *Basilius*, before mentioned.

4. PLES-

4. **PLESCOW** or **PSKOW**, contains in length 350 Italian miles, in breadth 230 or thereabouts; so called from *Pleskow*, or *Pikow*, the chief City of it, and a Bishops See: great, powerful, and well walled about, the only walled City of all this Empire. So large within the Walls, that when it was besieged by *Stephen* King of *POLAND*, there were in it for defence thereof 70000 Foot, and 7000 Horse, besides the Natural Inhabitants of it; which in all ordinary computation must be many more. It belonged formerly to the *Poles*, in the right of the Dukedom of *Lithuania*; taken from them by *Basilius* the Great Duke of *Moscovite*, Anno 1599. by whom and his successors used in the Royal title.

5. NOVOGORD.

NOVOGORD or **NOVOGROD**, is one of the largest Provinces or Dukedoms in all *Russia*; bordering on *Livonia*, towards *Sinnu Finnicus*, or the Gulf of *Finland*. A colder Country and less fruitful than that of *Moscovite*, because situate somewhat further North: the longest Summer day in *Mosco* not being above 18 hours, whereas in *Novogrod* the chief City hereof, it is very near 20. By consequence the Winter nights being of that length, must make the air exceeding cold, and the soil as comfortless. Here is in this Province the great Lake *Ilmen*, spoken of before, 80 Italian miles in compass; as also that called *Ladoga*, before also mentioned.

Towns of most estimation in it are 1. *Novogrod* it self, the wealthiest and goodliest City of all the North; affirmed to be in greatness not inferior to *Rome*; called therefore *Novogrod the Great* (to difference it from another of the same name near unto *Valadomir*;) an Archbishops See, and one of the four *Mart Towns* of the *Hanse-Merchants*, resorted to from all parts for the trade of *Muscovite*, brought thither by Land, and thence transported through the *Baltick* to most parts of *Christendom*. So confident in those times of their power and strength, that they used to say, that men could do nothing against God and them: but found the contrary when taken from the Crown of Poland, by the Great Duke of *Moscovite*. The trade hereof since much decayed, by the finding out of the North-east passage to the Port of *St. Nicolas*, where the English and Dutch Merchants barter with the *Muscovite*. Yet still it keeps the reputation of the principal City, situate on the River *Naf*, which the Dutch call *Ny*; the buildings for the most part of Wood and Clay: distant from *Mosco* 120 Dutch miles, and about 200 from the main body of the *Baltick*; betwixt which and this City lieth the whole Bay of *Finland*, the entrances whereof upon the *Dwina*, (which leads towards *Novogrod*) are fortified with the strong Towns and Garrisons of *Narve*, and *Rivallia*, both in the hands of the King of *Sweden*; which is another great hindrance to the trade of this Town. 2. *Narve*, on the North bank of *Dwina*, where it falls into the Bay of *Finland*, or *Sinnu Finnicus*, in the Province or Territory of *Witchilaw*: heretofore reckoned of as a part of *Livonia*, but being taken by *Basilius* the Great Duke, with the rest of this Country, and the Town of *Novogrod* it self, Anno 1477. it was impregnable fortified by the care of his son *Vassilwitsch*, who for a reward unto the *Archibishop* being a *Polonian*, put out both his eyes, to disable him from building the like again. But having left all the Natives in their own habitations, without abating either their strength or number, the Town and Castle not long after was betrayed to the King of *Sweden*, who still holds it. 3. *Pozow* or *Pozowia*, and 4. *Polocow*, two strong pieces, situate in the borders against the *Polanders*. 5. *Volsko*, besieged by *Stephen* King of Poland, with an Army of 100000 men; forced to retire without taking it, with the loss of many of his best Captains and Common Soldiers. It is distant from *Novogrod* 28 Dutch miles, the Country about it called *Volsk*: where they say for certain, that all Cattel which are brought thither, of what hair or colour soever they be, upon a little stay there become all white. The people of this tract have a Language (or some Dialect rather) peculiar only to themselves. 6. *Juanogrod*, a strong Castle not far from *Volsko*, 40 miles from *Novogrod*; a frontire Castle against the *Swedes* Garrisoned in *Narve*, to repulse whose inroads it was built.

In this Country, and not far from the Town of *Novogrod*, was fought that memorable battel betwixt the *Sarmatians*, and their *Slaves*. For when the *Asiatick Scythians* went to plant themselves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining; some of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this Tract, went along for company. Their long stay, caused their wives, despairing of their return, to comfort themselves with their *Slaves* both at bed and board; to whom they brought a lusty increase of youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joyed together against them; the *Slaves* to retain that wealth and freedom which they were possessed of; the women for fear of the displeasure of their Husbands; and the young men for defence of their Fathers and Mothers. With joint forces they go out to meet them, before their entrie into the Country; neither are the *Masters* slow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the first fight of each other. The *Masters* scorning to defile their swords on so ignoble an Enemy, assault them with whips; and by the terror thereof got a signal victory. In memory of which battel, the people of that City have ever since stamped their money with the figure of an Horse-man shaking a whip in his hands: And it is the custom of all *Muscovite*, that the maids in the time of wooing, send such a whip, curiously wrought by her own hands, to that *Sister*, whom she resolves on for her husband, in token of her future subjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6. CORELIA. 7. BIARMIA.

Sixty Dutch miles from *Novogrod*, lieth the Province called *Corelia*, extending Northwards as far as to a branch of the *Frozen Sea*, where the longest day is 20 hours and a half: the nights proportionable

Petzora.

tionable in the Winter, make it cold and barren. It bordereth on the East of *Finland*, from which parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountains. By reason of which situation betwixt two great Princes the people are enforced to pay tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the Great Duke of *Moscow*. Chief Towns whereof are *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Swedes*; and *2 Corlinburg*, the Chief Towns of the Province, belonging with the rest of the Country unto the *Moscovites*. By some this Province is made a part of the *Eastern Lapland*; but, I think, erroneously: the people having some good Towns, and favouring of some humanity; neither of which are known or heard of amongst the *Laplenders*. 3 *Nordenberg*, on the mouth of a Lake, which by the River called *Wargus*, emptieth it self into the Bay of *St. Nicolas*. 4 *Umea*, of the *Frozen Ocean*, which bounds *Corelia*, is the

On the North side of that branch or arm of the Frozen Ocean, which bounds *Carelia*, lyeth the Western part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BARMIA*: the Country of the *Dikloppi*, or *Wild Lappians*, as the *Moscovites* call them, to whose Duke or Emperour they are subject. We had their *character* before, when we were in *Swethland*; nor shall we need to repeat it here: as barbarous and as rude as the worst sort of those mentioned in *Scirifinnia*, and as *Idolaters* as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to luftfulness than the others. In the Winter *Solfstic*, when the Sun entereth into *Capricorn*, they have night for three whole moneths together: during which time lurking in their Caves, they have leisure to consult with the Prince of *Darkness*; being very great *Sorcerers*, able (as some affirm) to raise Winds, Clouds, Tempests, and do many strange things. Towns here are none. Some Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea Coasts, patched up by the *Sailers*, for their reception and refreshment as they came on land, and named according to their fancies; but not here considerable.

8 PETZORA. 9 CONDORA. 10 OBDORA.
11 JUGRIA.

Opposite to *Blarmia*, or *East-Lapland*, on the other side of the *Bay* leading towards the Port of *St. Nicholas*, lyeth a large *Promontory* or *Headland* stretching out far into the North, beyond the *Artick*; comprehending in it four Provinces of the *Russian Empire*: that is to say, *Petzora*, *Condora*, *Oldora*, and *Jugria*; belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Russian Emperours*; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in power or patrimony. Howsoever somewhat must be said of them, because parts of this great body which we are to disfect.

8 *PETZORA*, so called from a River of that name, is fenced on every side by Mountains and unpassable rocks; extending Northwards to the Sea, and crossed with a vast chain of hills, part of the *Hyperborei*, spoken of before: so high, that a certain man having travelled in the ascent of them 17 days together, is said to have returned back again, despairing to attain the top of them. Covered in the Winter time with perpetual *snows*, in the Summer with as scorching heats by the continual lying of the Sun on all parts thereof. The people are of a plain and simple nature, and received the *Russian Faith* and Empire at one time together, *Anno* 1518. The chief Town of it, *1 Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea; a small Town, but having three Churches in it: the people whereof, though otherwise sufficiently simple, as before is said, do in the Summer time catch Partrich, Ducks, Swans, Geese, and other fowl, which they sale and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a *Tutor* is the *Belly*, that the Poet did not unfully give it the titles of *Artis Magister*, and *Ingenii Lector*: whereof this may serve for one example.

9 *CONDORA* lyeth on the North of *Petxora*, more near the *Pole*; by consequence a colder Country, and of worse condition; in one half of the Country being continual day, and the other half as long a night. The people universally *Idolaters*, worshipping some *Images* (or *Idols*) in the shape of a Man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, &c. which they adorn with the richest Furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Raffes*: who if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt those parts for *Sables*, *Foxes*, and *Bevers*: take away their *Furs*, and bestow a greater heat upon them in fires. The chief Town hereof is *Pusfozrea*, over against *Nova Zemla*, on or near the great lake called *Oxera*, whence it hath the name; situate in the 68 degree of *Northern Latitude*, 50 minutes over.

10. *OBODORA*, so called from the River *Ob*, on both sides of whose banks it lyeth, is the most North-Eastern Province of all these Dominions: won to the obedience of the *Russers*, in the Reign of *Theodore* the son of *Iohn*, Great Duke of *Muscovie*. At what time the people had no Cities, lived in *Hoods* or *Companies*, eat the Beasts they took, knew no Corn nor Bread. They were then very good *Archers*, sharpening their Arrows with Fish-bones; with which bones and the sinews of the Beasts, they sewed *Furs* together for their *Clothing*; which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the Summer, covering their Houses with *Elk-skins*. By this *Theodore* were some Castles built on the River side, to which he sent condemned persons, and brought it into the form of a petty Kingdom. But his Successor *Boris* built *Tooms*, the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both sides of the Water, not worth naming here. But notwithstanding this subjection to the *Muscovites*, they continue still in their old *Idolatry*, worshipping an ancient Idol, in form of an old woman, holding in each Arm a *Child*, and a third at her feet, called by them *Zlatu Babu*, or the *Golden old Wife*; to which they offer precious *Furs*, sacrifice Harts, and therewith do consult touching things to come. But some accompt this for a Fable, or a meer mistake.

II *FUGRIA*, or *JUHAR*, lyeth also on the Northern Seas, but more South than either of the other; betwixt *Petcore* or *Petchora*, and the Province of *Dwina*: the longest day in Summer being not

Severin
&c.

not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The people for the most part *Idolaters*, and worship the same Images as do those of *Ordora*; affirmed by some to be the Progenitors of the present *Hungarians*; who coming out of this Country over-ran all *Pannonia*, and there fixed their dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they speak the old *Hungarian* language; not used but in this Country, and the North parts of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Thyffens*: Which more learned men affirm to be the *Jacizian*, the language of the *Jaxages*, who antiently possessed that Country in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this dispute to another place, certain it is, that they are subject to the *Moscovites*, but so poor and miserable a people, that they have few Towns, and not many houses; and so bare of money, that in stead thereof they pay *Furs* for tribute to their Emperour.

12 SEVERIA. 13 PERMIA. 14 RHEZAN.

SEVERIA, or SIBIOR, as the *Moscovites* called it, lieth in a long tract on the banks of the River *Ob*, or *Oby*, fouth of *Obdorsk*, and the rest of the four last Provinces. The Countrey very fruitful, and abounding with all things necessary, notwithstanding that there be great Deferts, and some Forests also: but those Forests well stored with black Foxes, Ermines, Sables, and the like wild beasts; which yield more profit by their *rieh Fur*, than any more fertile Countrey doth by its Corn and fruits: Inomuch that in the year 1589. there were collected out of this Province only, in the way of tribute for the Emperour, 466 timber of Sables, (every Timber containing 40 skins) five Timber of *Martrons*, 180 Cases of Black Foxes, (every Case containing 40 skins) besides other commodities. The woods also do offer good plenty of Honey, and the plains of *Herbage*; well watered with the River *Sema*, which falleth into the *Desna*, and both together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Boryssenes*. There are in it many Towns and Castles, the principal whereof are 1 *Silber*, on the West side of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province; 2 *Branki*, not far from the great Forest from hence named. 3 *Starodub*, 4 *Poturovo*, and 5 *Czezenigo*.

The people hereof, by reason of their continual skirmishes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the most warlike Nation of all the *Russes* : heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the first acknowledged no Superior ; but afterwards was severally and successively *Tributary* to the *Lithuanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Moscovite*; and finally, the last Duke being fully accused of treason, was outed of his Estate by *Basilus* the Great Duke ; who added it to the rest of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever since.

13 *PERMIA* is situate on the South-west of *Sibir*, or *Severtia*, a large Province, distant 250 Dutch miles from *Mosco*: so called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chief Town hereof, situate on the River *Vishore*, or *Vishorna*. The second Town of note is called *Sichiansky*. The people (as also those of *Sibir*) are of the *Moscovite* Religion, and live most by hunting wild beasts, whose *flesh* they eat, and make good Merchandise of their skins, many of which they pay yearly to the Great Duke in way of tribute; who makes a good commodity of them, selling them to the Merchant at excessive rates. They have no corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elsewhere; but in stead of bread, eat the *flesh* of *Stags*, dried and prepared in the Sun: Speaking a Language of their own, different from the rest of the *Russies*; and in stead of Horses and Oxen, make use of great *dogs* and *stags*, whom they train up to draw their *sleds*, from one place to another. There is good store of *wood* amongst them; but they want *Cedars*, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vasilivich* meaning to pick a quarrel with them, sent to them for certain loads of *Cedar wood*, whereof he knew there grew none in their Country; and upon word returned that they had not such *wood*, he fined them at 12060 *Rubles*.

14 *RHEZAN*, a great and goodly Province, is situate betwixt the River *Tannais*, and that of *Oke*; the most fruitfull Countrey of all *Russia*, and (if report be true) of the whole world also: it being credibly affirmed that one grain of corn doth bring forth six ears; the stalks hereof growing so thick, that an horse can hardly pass through them, or a *Quail* flie out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is also great plenty of fruits, better than are to be found elsewhere in *Russia*; together with good store of *Honey*, fish, towl, and other commodities; besides *Ermians*, *Beyvers*, and the like, common in these Countries. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Tiella*, famous for the fountain or spring head of the River *Tannais*, which ariseth near it. 2 *Colluga*, well garrisoned for fear of the *Crim Tartars*. 3 *Corfira*, a Bishops See; as is also 4 *Rhezan*, the principal of the Province, which it giveth name to, feared upon the Banks of the River *Ocgue*. A Countrey populous and well-planted, affording to the Great Duke 15000 *Boiars*, or Gentlemen which serve on horseback, and betwixt 30 and 40000 foot.

15 WIATHKA. 16 CASAN.
17 ASTRACHAN.

South-east of *Rhezan*, beyond the banks of the River *Kamme*, and about 150 Dutch miles from *Moscow*, lyeth the Province called *W I A T H K A* ; fenny and barren, but well stored with fish and honey, and wild beasts good plenty. Heretofore subject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive servants, here very gladly entertained : but the *Tartarians* being expelled, it was made subject by *Basilins* to the Dukes of *Moscovie*. I do not read of any Towns which should be here, which makes me think that they do still retain so much of the *Tartar* with them, as to live in *Hordes*, and *Companies*, without any fixt dwellings : or at the best, in scattered houses, not hitherto united into Towns

ther forein *Embassador* to his head for his too much perverseness, he used our *Sir Thomas Smith* with all kindness imaginable. Another time, when the *Jesuite Possesine* began to perwade with him, to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; upon the information of the *English Embassador*, that the Pope was a proud *Prelate*, and would make Princes kiss his feet; he grew into such a rage, that the *Jesuite* was afraid he would have beat out his brains. But to return again to the Port of *S. Nicolas*, it is so called from an *Abby* there built unto that Saint, the *tutelary Saint*, and *local Patron* of the Nation. Which said, I will set sail from this Port to the *Russian Islands*, and see what may be said of them to our present purpose.

24 The RUSSIAN Islands.

THE RUSSIAN ISLANDS are but two; both of them in the northern or Frozen Ocean, on the Coasts of this Countrey; that is to say, *1 Sir Hugh Willoughbies Island*, and *NOVA Zemla*; both subject (if to any) to the *Knez* or great Duke of *Moscow*. *1 WILLONGHBIES ISLAND*, was so called from *Sir Hugh Willoughby*, because he first discovered it, Anno 1553, and was hereabouts found frozen to death, the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward the 6.* to find out a new way being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward the 6.* to find out a new way to *Moscow*, *Cathala*, and *China*, he proceeded so far as to this Island (situate almost opposite to the Bay of *S. Nicolas*) where the weather proved so extreme, and the Frosts so vehement, that his Ship was set fast in the ice, and all his people, with himself, frozen to death; in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact description of their voyage, and fortunes. Notwithstanding which disastrous beginning, the enterprize was pursued by some noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinson*, *Burroughs*, *Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *English Nation*, who opened the way as far as to the River *Ob*, (the East bounder of *Russia*) but by reason of the length of the way, the vast floating Islands of Ice, and perpetual nights, for many months together in Winter, could advance no further.

2 NOVA ZEMLA, situate on the East of *Willoughbies Island* opposite to *Pustozera* in *Condora* before mentioned, was first discovered by such Adventurers, as followed *Willoughbies* design. Famous for nothing but a race of short-statured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pygmies*: not yet so far discovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Russes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither Religion, nor Civility, nor the precepts of any Law; but that they worshipped the *Sun*, *Moon*, and Northern *Starr*, to which they offer an yearly Sacrifice of their *Deer*; that the Island is woody, desert, and not easie for travel, having in it neither green bough nor Deer; yet harbouring great store of Bears, and such ravenous and dangerous beasts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrenson*, and his Associates, employed by the *Hollanders* for this discovery, Anno 1594. and 1596. in which last year, after many dreadfull combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to winter in this Island, where they built an house, as well to preserve themselves from being buried in snow, as from being devoured by the Bears (some of them 13 foot in length) which with the loss of two of their company devoured by those savage creatures, they at last effected; some of them coming home in safety the *October* following. And though they seemed to give some hope, that a way might be found unto *Cathala* on the North of this Island (themselves having gone as far North as the 81 degree of Latitude, within 9 of the *Pole*) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the success impossible.

And so I leave it to return to the story of *Russia*, called antiently by the name of *Sarmatia Europea*, but known no further Northwards than the head of *Tanais*. And for *Sarmatia Europea*, it was bounded in the time of *Pytolomy*, by the *Baltick Sea*, and some *Terra Incognita*, on the North; the *Jaxgu* (now *Metanassa* (now *Transylvania*, and the *Upper Hungary*) upon the South; the River *Vistula*, or *Wexel*, which divided it from *Germany*, upon the West; and the *Tanais*, upon the East. Beyond that all along the banks of the *Euxine Sea*, to the *Mare Caspium*, and as far North as any Conquerour had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Asiatica*: the Countries further Eastward being then called *Scythia*. By which account, as *Russia* containeth not all *Sarmatia Europea*, of which *Prussia*, and the rest of the incorporated Provinces of *Poland*, passeth for a part: so neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanais* into *Asiatica*. The antient Inhabitants called by a general name *Sarmata*, by the *Greeks* *Sarmatæ*, were subdivided, for so much of this part of it as was then made known into the *Agathyrsi*, *Rutheni*, *Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Osyli*, *Alanni*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongst many other barbarous Nations, these were some of the principal. And from these *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the rest, *Muthias à Michon*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the original of the *Russes*, (which we now call the *Russians*) seconded herein by the more learned *Bochartus*, who proveth out of antient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Cherfoneus* (from which the passage into this Countrey is both short & easie) have been formerly called *Rhos*. *Taurus* tus *Pæonibus*, *Taurus vocari gentes Rhos*, as he saith from *Tserces*. Which *Rhos* or *Rhofes*, first mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* people, might get the name of *Roxolani*: and afterwards possessing the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Rossi* of Mount *Taurus* (from whom those of *Taurica* descended) in their enterprizes on *Constantinople* and the parts adjoining, return to their old name of *Rossi*. The *Rossi* or *Russians*, were then the first Lords of this Countrey generally, the *Moscovites* possessors of a Province only; so called from the *Moschi*, spoken of by *Lucan* in his *Pharsalia*; and placed by *Pliny* near the head of the River *Phasis*, which rising from the *Armenian Mountains*, falls into the *Euxine*. Derived no doubt from *Mesech* (or *Mosch*, as the Antients called him) the son of *Japhet*, placed origi-

nally in the North and North-East of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Chalcis* and *Armenia*: where *Pliny*, as before is said, hath fixed the *Moschi*, and where there is a long chain of hills; which most of the old writers call *Montes Moschici*. But to return unto the *Rossi*, we hear not of them by this name, till the time of *Michael* the third, Emperour of *Constantinople*; in whose reign they infested the *Euxine Sea*, and had the boldness to attempt the Imperial City, Anno 864. said by *Cedrenus*, and some other of the Eastern Writers, to be a people of Mount *Taurus* (next neighbours to *Mesech* or the *Moschi*.) Failing in their attempt upon *Constantinople*, and not willing to go home again; they spread themselves, with their confederates and associates in this expedition, upon the North-west banks of the *Euxine Seas*; enlarging their bounds Northwards with less opposition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Constantinople* being once again in vain attempted, in the reigns of *Constantine* the 7th. and *Henricus Aneps*. Converted to the *Christian Faith*, or growing into better terms with the Eastern Emperours, *Helena* daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Valodimirus* one of their Kings; from that time forwards turning their forces on the *Polanders*, and their weaker neighbours; save that, provoked by the death of one of their Countrey, slain accidentally at *Constantinople* in a private quarrel, they made another fruitless journey against that City, in the time of *Michael Cataphagus*. Enlarging their estate to the West and South, they became masters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europea*, *Lithuania*, *Podolia*, *Nigra Russia*, and other Provinces, now subject to the Crown of *Poland*; being then parts of their Estate. Anno 1240. the *Tartars*, under the conduct of *Batba*, or *Batay*, son of *Ogatai Chan*, broke in upon them, and subdued them: the Countrey before this entire, under one sole King, being broken afterwards into divers petit and inferior Governments, according to the will and pleasure of the inferior *Vassals*. The principal of these (descended from the former Kings) were Lords of *Poland*, *Moscho*, and some other Cities; held by them with no other title than that of Lords of *Moscow*, and for that Tributary to the *Tartars*, as were all the rest. their seat originally at *Valodimir*, till the time of *John* the son of *Daniel*, the fifth Lord of the *Russes*, descended of the old Regal line, taking a good liking of the River and Town of *Mosco*, repaired the Town, being before but mean and ordinary; and made it the chief seat of his Principality. From whence the residue of the *Russes*, united in succeeding times unto this Estate, by marriages, fraud and Conquest, had the name of *Moscovites*. But notwithstanding this increase of their Power and Empire, the *Tartars* held them for their Vassals, and tyrannized upon the Countrey with a barbarous insolency. Under which thralldom they long groaned, till the *Tartars* being divided amongst themselves, and grown less terrible to their neighbours, were outed of their power and command here, by the valour of *John*, son of *Basilus* the second, who thereupon changed the Title of Lord, into that of Duke, and after into that of Great Duke, as his fortunes revived. Yet not so great, but that he was contented to be an Homager of the *Tartars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their wars, that the *Tartars* should relinquish all their Holds in the Countrey; and on the other side, that once every year, within the Castle of *Mosco*, the Great Duke standing on foot, should feed the Horse of the *Crim Tartar* with Oats, out of his own Cap. This Homage was by *Basilus* changed into a tribute of Furs; which being also denied by his successors (as they grew in power) occasioned the long wars betwixt the Nations: the *Tartars* alwayes pressing on them by sudden inroads, sometimes by Armies of no less than 200000 fighting men. But notwithstanding all their power, and the friendship of the *Turk* to boot; the *Moscovite* is not only able to assert his Sovereignty, but hath also wrested from them many goodly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Countrey, I shall not trouble my self (as I see some do) in tracing a Succession of them, as far as from the times of *Augustus Caesar*: when neither the *Rossi*, nor the *Moschi* had here any footing. We will therefore go no higher than the time of *George*, whose daughter *Anne* I find to have been married to *Henry* the first of *France*. From whom in a direct line descended another *George*, with whom we do intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the last King of the *Russes*, before the coming of the *Tartars*. Who wisely yielding to the storm, waved the title of King, contented only with the title of Lord, as more safe for him, and less invidious to the *Tartars*: the fifth from whom called *John* (as before is said) having removed his seat to *Mosco*, took to himself the title of Lord of *Mosco*, the chief seat of that power and Sovereignty, which he transmitted afterwards to his posterity: affecting for that cause the title of Dukes of *Moscow* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories have their place also in his style) as much as that of Emperour of *Russia*; which some of them have assumed also, since the time of *Basilus*, who styled himself *Basilus*, by the Grace of God, Emperour and Lord of *Russia*, Great Duke of *Volodimir*, *Moscovie*, *Novogrod* the great, *Plescow*, *Smolensko*, *Tver*, *Jugor*, *Wiatka*, *Bulgar*, &c. Lord and Great Prince of the Lower *Novogrod*, *Czernigov*, *Rhezan*, *Wologda*, *Rjow*, *Biele*, *Rostow*, *Tarofane*, *Poloskie*, *Bielloziere*, *Udore*, *Obdora*, *Condora*, &c. King of *Casan* and *Astrachan*. But leaving them unto their swelling and voluminous Title (little inferior unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the succession from the time aforesaid, of

The **WORDS** of **MOSCOWIE** of the
this is the first of the **Royal RUSSEAN** Line.

1. **Chomo** (the black King of the) 3. **Alexander**
2. **Basilius**, and first Lord of the 4. **Daniel**
5. **John**, who transferred the seat to **Mosco**. 9. **Georgius II.**
6. **John II.** 10. **Basilius II.**

The Great DUKES of MOSCOWIE.

1. **John**, the first great Duke, who shook off the **Tartarian** bondage.
2. **Basilius Casan**, won the Provinces of **Saveria**, **Roscovia**, and **Smolensko**, with the Realms of **Astracan** and **Casan**.
3. **John Basilius**, conquered **Livonia**, and **Lithuania**, both which his successor
1548. 4. **Johannes Basiliades**, or **Wasiliwich**, lost in his age: though in his youth he had subdued the **Noghaean Tartars** to his Empire; and vanquished **Selim**, Emperor of the **Turks**, Anno 1569. With this King the **English** first began to confederate.
1583. 5. **Theodorus Johannides**, the last of the old **Royal Line** of **Moscowie**.
1591. 6. **Boris Theodorus**, brother to the wife of the last Great Duke, partly by the last will of his Predecessor, partly by praistling with the people, obtained the Empire; but being an unmercifull Tyrant, was dispossessed by the **Polanders**, coming in favour of one
1605. 7. **Demetrius**, pretending himself to be the son of **John Wasiliwich**, (and generally believed to be so preserved in a Monastery from the Tyranny of **Boris**, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the **Polander**; by whose aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperor in the City of **Mosco**. But the **Russian** Lords disdain- ing to have a Prince imposed on them from **Poland**, rose in Arms against him, and at last vanquished, and slew him in open field: his wife a noble **Polonian** Lady, sent poorly home; and the **Polanders** beaten out of the Country.
1606. 8. **Basilius**, surnamed **Smiskius**, the chief of the Conspirators, was by the rest of his faction chosen **Cezar**, or Emperor; and held the State with great trouble, till the year 1610 when
1610. 9. **Demetrius II.** another pretender to the State, as the son of **John Wasiliwich** also, in opposition unto **Smiskius**, set up by a stronger faction; gave occasion to the **Polander** to work upon this distemper; by whom **Smiskius** was taken prisoner, **Demetrius** slain, **Smolensko**, and other great Towns subdued; and **Uladislans**, Prince of **Poland**, recommended to the **Russians** to be chosen Emperor. But the **Russians** loth to fall under the power of the **Polander**, and weary of their own confusions, made choice at last, of
1615. 10. **Michael Fredrovitz**, son of **Theodore** the Patriarch of **Mosco**, who at last settled this vast Empire, and managed it in a more constant way of peace with the **Turks**, **Tartar**, **Polonian**, and **Sweth-lander**, than any of his Predecessors had done before him.
1646. 11. **Alexius Michailowitz** (or the son of **Michael**) succeeded his Father in the Empire, troubled at first with some distempers in the State (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly settled, Anno 1648.

The Formalities with which these great Emperours are invested, or settled in the Throne, are not many nor stately; such as they be, I here afford you out of the history of the life of **Johannes Basiliades**, written in **Latine** by **Paulus Oderbornius**. On the 2. of **June**, Anno 1583. **Theodorus Johannides** went towards the Temple of **S. Michael**, being the principal Church in all **Mosco**: the streets all covered with flowers, the doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the air echoing with the noise of **Flutes** and **Trumpets**, and the people so crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked swords forced a passage through them, it had been impossible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church door, the Lords of the Country (**Czesars** they there call them) went out to meet him: and the Archbishop of **Mosco**, clad in his pontificalibus, when he was come into the Church, embraced him. The pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapestry, and the stalls adorned with costly hangings. The Great Duke sat down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of silk, buttoned down with golden buttons: on his head he wore a purple cap, spangled with rich jewels, and on his fingers abundance of rings. Being thus seated, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God, to bless him, his people, and his government; which was seconded by the joyful shouts and acclamations of his Subjects: amongst whom no small store of silver money was flung by the Treasurer, and so they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperour being absolute Lord of the lives, lands and goods of all his Subjects: all of them, the noble as well as the base, subscribing themselves in their Petitions to him, by the name of **Keloptery**, that is, **Slaves**. Whereupon **Alibon** a **Turkish Bashaw** was used to say, that his Master and the **Muscovite** were the two most absolute Princes in all the world. First for their goods, when any Ambassador returns home, the Great Duke takes from him all the presents which he hath received, giving him perhaps some small reward, perhaps none at all

all: and as for lands, they pass not from father to son, but as he confirms it. But more particularly (besides the case of **Permia** spoken of before) **John Wasiliwich** sent a command to **Mosco**, to provide a Coal-pack of **live Fleas** for a medicine; and when the Citizens returned answer that it was impossible, he fined them at 700 **Rubbles** for their disobedience. Another time he laid a mulct of 300000 **Rubbles** upon his Nobility, because he had no good sport in his hunting; which they again extorted from the common people: and under colour of want, commanded from some **Bishops**, and **Monasteries** the sum of 100000 **Rubbles**, from some 50000, more or less from others; according unto their revenues. And it is usual with the best of them, to cause the **Boiars** (or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back) to pretend themselves robbed; that he may send unto the City to find out the Felon; and on a **Non est inventus**, fine them at discretion, sometimes 8000, sometimes 10000, and sometimes 20000 **Rubbles**. Then for their liver, there is a story, that **Wasiliwich** having found that one of his Secretaries had received a Goose, stuffed full of silver for a Bribe; caused him to be brought into the Market-place of **Mosco**: where, without any legal trial, he commanded the Executioner, first to cut off his legs about the shins, and then his arms about the elbows (still asking the miserable man how he liked *Goose-flesh*) and in the end, to cut off his head; in similitude of a Goose ready for the spit. And that they may the better preserve this power, the Great Dukes seldom shew themselves unto the people; but in apparel of inestimable value, joining the ornaments of a Bishop unto the Majesty of a King, by wearing a **Mitre** on their heads shining with Diamonds and rich stones: and when they wear it not on their heads, they place it before the chair of state (over which are the images of **Christ** and the blessed **Virgin**) holding in his hand a most rich **Crosier Staff**, and all their fingers full of rings. And upon solemn festivals and entertainments, the Great Chamber is beset with Cubboards of plate, of infinite value; and filled with men clothed with cloth of gold, to the very foot; all of them seeming to be men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other then the gravest and portliest Citizens of **Mosco**, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperours wardrobe; which to such as do not understand the fraud, look like so many Princes, and causeth no small wonder at his magnificence. So that the people seeing him in such royal state, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home; reverence him as *slaves*; not *subjects*, and look upon him rather as a God, than a King.

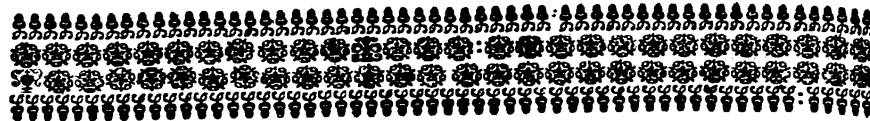
Having so absolute a command on their lives and goods, it will be easily supposed that he may raise what forces, and amass what treasures he hath a mind to. First, for his Forces, it is said that he is able to raise 300000 Horse, if occasion be: and that he may come near that number it is more than probable; in that **John Wasiliwich** in his war against those of **Astrachan**, had actually 120000 Horse; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the **Boiars**, bound by their Tenure to serve with horse whenever he pleareth. And that there are 110 men chosen by the Emperour, and by him enfeoffed with lands, (during pleasure only) who for these lands are to find 65000 Horse, with all things necessary for the wars; and those in a continual readiness, fit for present action. Then for such horse as he himself doth keep in continual pay, there is not fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his person; all of them well experienced men, and fit for service: which added to the 65000 spoken of before; makes up a standing body of 90000. Had he foot answerable unto this proportion of horse, there were no dealing with him; but therein his Militia is defective: **Wasiliwich** to his great Army of 120000 horse, having but 20000 foot; the foot-men which he hath in continual pay amounting to 12000 only, far short of such a standing body of horse, as before we spake of. And this defect hath been the reason why the **Polanders**, with far less Armies have prevailed against them: the Great Duke not being able with all his power, to hinder King **Stephen** of **Poland** from taking **Villocolne**, or besieging **Pleskow**; (though his Army was not above 60000 both in horse and foot) for want of standing bands of foot to make good his ground. Generally both horse and foot are very obedient to their Captains and superior Officers; patiently enduring all discommodities of cold, rain, and hunger; (in that regard fitter to keep a Fortress, than serve in field) and so regardless of their lives in the day of battel, that they will rather lose them, than either yield themselves Prisoners, or demand Quarter.

For his Revenues, they may be what he will himself, considering (besides his extraordinary power of oppressing his subjects before mentioned) the many ordinary ways he hath of amassing treasure: as viz. the forefelling of homebred commodities, and ingrossing the foreign; selling them at what price he list, and hindering all men else from trade, till his own be sold; provision of rent-corn, and victual, raised in some years to 200000 **Rubbles**, rent-wood, and Hay to 30000; poll-money to 400000, customs on Merchandise to 800000. By which and other means of collecting moneys, and the Domain of his Crown, though he raise vast sums; yet it is thought, that his household charges being deducted, there remaineth not towards all other expences, three millions of **Rubbles**, every Rubble being as much as an English Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two leaves, and as many Degrees, Or.

There are in **RUS S I A**,
Patriarch 1. Archbishops 2.
Bishops 18.

And so much for **R U S S I A**.



O F

P O L A N D.

POLAND is bounded on the East, with *Russia*, and the *Crim Tartar*, from whom parted by the River *Borysthenes*; on the West, with *Germany*; on the North, with the *Baltick Sea*, and some part of *Russia*; on the South, with the *Carpathian Mountains*, which divide it from *Hungary*, *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*.

It is an Aggregate body, consisting of many distinct Provinces, united into one Estate, of which *Poland* being the predominant, hath given name to the rest, called all together the Realm of *POLAND*: and that so named from *Pole*, which in the *Slavonian* language (the common language of the Countrey) signifieth plain; because but little swelled with Hills. Of figure round, in compass 2600 miles; situate under the eighth and twelfth *Climates*: so that the longest day in the Southern parts is but 16 hours, and about 18 hours in the parts most North.

The Countrey plain, but full of woods, which serve to rectified the Air, being naturally so cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes: in stead whereof they use that kind of drink called *Ale*; in former times the usual Beverage of *England*, and this Countrey only. Barley they have, and Pulse in such abundant measure, that no small quantities of each are transported yearly: nor yeeld they any thing at all to *Denmark*, or *Hungary*, for their plenty of Cattel. But of this more in our description of the several Provinces.

The people are very industrious, and studious of all Languages, especially of the *Latine*; to which they are so devoted, that there is scarce a mean man, who is not able in some measure, to express himself in it. According to their abilities, rather prodigal than truly liberal; and good Souldiers generally. The Peasants live in miserable servitude unto their Lords; the Lords in such equality of estate amongst themselves, that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 *Ducats* of yearly rent. Proud in their garb, costly in their Apparel, impatient in their humours, and delicate in diet: these last conditions common to the women also, who are for the most part indifferently fair, and rather witty than well spoken. But this being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly so called, is not perhaps communicable to the people of the rest of the Provinces, whom we shall speak of severally in their proper places.

The *Christian* faith was first planted in this Kingdom at several times, and by several persons, according to the different parts of which it consisteth: in *Poland* specially so called, in the time of their Prince *Miesclaus*, son of *Nemomilus*, An. 963. in *Livonia*, by the Preaching of one *Minardus*, Anno 1200. or thereabouts; in *Lithuania*, not until the year 1386. at the admission of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as some say) by *Thomas of Walden*, (or *Waldensis*) an English Friar. In *Samogitia*, and *Polhinia*, at the same time with *Lithuania*. In the rest at other times, and on other occasions: yet so that in many places of it, *Idolatri* was never totally rooted out, the seeds and practices whereof in many points still remain amongst them. Corrupted by the *superstitions* of the Church of *Rome*, a *Reformation* was endeavoured, at such time as *John Hus* flourished in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring Kingdom: but by the rigour of *Ladislaus* the sixth, then King thereof, assisted by his Bishops and Noblemen, at that time hindered. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, some who had studied at *Lipsique*, and *Wittenberg*, (Universities of *Saxony*) brought his opinions home with them into the Province of *Poland*; as some *Dutch Merchants* (with the rest of their Commodities) did into *Dantzick*, the chief Town of *Pomerelle* Anno 1525. from whence it spread it self over most part of that Countrey. According as it was favoured or disliked, by the *Palatines*, *Chastellons*, and other great men of the Realm; so was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Grecians* in the mean time taking opportunity, to win some parts of it to their side, and confirm others in it; who being originally members of the Church of *Greece*, because originally converted by the Bishops thereof, did still continue

Livonia

continue in conformity and obedience to it. In the end, by reason of the over-great liberty of the Nobility and people, and want of power in the King to controul their doings, every man took up what Religion he best liked; some following the *Augustane Confession*, others the *Helvetic*, others adhering as tenaciously to the Church of *Rome*: and some inclining to new *Sects*; or rather to old *Heresies* under new disguises, have brought in such a miscellany or Babel of Religions into this estate, (*Jesuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Socinians*, *Arians*, *Anabaptists* and indeed what not, being here all tolerated) that at last it grew into a By-word, that if any man had lost his Religion, he might find it in *Poland*, or else believe it to be vanished. A By-word afterwards applied unto *Amsterdam*; communicable since unto other places: *Libertas Prophetandi*, or the Liberty of Prophecy being now as much allowed of in some parts of *Christendome*, as *Libertas opinandi*, was in *Rome* under *Nervus* Government; ubi & sentire quæ velis, & quæ sentias loqui liceat, when as a man might think as he listed of the publick, and speak what he thought. But whether this be such a *Rara temporum felicitas*, such a felicity of these our times, as *Tacitus* conceived the other to be of those, future times will shew.

But to return again to *Poland*, notwithstanding this mixture of Religions, yet that most publickly allowed and countenanced, is the Religion authorized by the Church of *Rome*; asserted here by the zeal of the Kings unto that cause, and the great power of the Bishops; who seeing how those of their Order have sped in *Germany* and other places, under colour of Reformation of some things amiss, have hitherto upheld the Ecclesiastical Estate, in the same form they found it. The Government of the Church as formerly, by 3 Archbishops, and 19 Bishops: who challenge a jurisdiction over all the Kingdom, but exercise it upon those only who submit unto them: those who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther*, or *Calvin*, following the forms of Government by them established; as others do some new ones of their own devising. And for those Provinces and people which lye towards *Greece*, or were parts heretofore of the *Russian Empire*, and still hold a Communion with those Churches; they have Archbishops and Bishops of their own Religion: that is to say, the Archbishops of *Vilne*, and *Limburch*, the Bishops of *Polozko*, *Luzko*, *Pinsk*, *Volodimir*, *Presmil*, and *Kiov*. Yet amongst all these different Churches and forms of Government, there is this conformity, that whensoever the Gospel is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry use to draw their swords (according to an ancient custom which they had amongst them) signifying their readiness to defend it against all opposers. Which reason doubtless gave beginning to the standing up at the Creed, and Gospel, in the primitive times, retained still in the Church of *England*: whereby we do declare, how prepared and resolute we are to defend the same: though some of late, holding it for a Relick of Popery, with greater nicety than wisdom, have refused to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Countrey in the Art of war, 1 *Cassimir* the third, the greatest establisher of this Kingdom after long dissensions. 2 *Jagello*, or *Vladislaus* the first, who first brought down the pride of the *Dutch Knights* in a famous victory. 3 *Cassimir* the 4th, the fortunate conqueror of the *Knights of Prussia*, brought by him under the command of the Kings of *Poland*. 4 *Sigismund* the first, by whose valour and good fortune the *Dutch Knights* were totally suppressed; and the greatest part of *Prussia* for ever added to that Crown. 5 *Sigismund* the second, surnamed *Augustus*, fortunate in his wars against most of them of *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom. Of most special note for learning, *Hofius*, a Divine of the Papal party, whose great abilities advanced him to the State of a Cardinal; 2 *Crellius*, and 3 *Volchelins*, of the contrary party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heterodox and unfound opinions; 4 *Cromerus* the Historian; 5 *Barth. Keckerman* the Professor at *Dansk* or *Dantzwick*, a man of universal studies, but of greater industry than exactness.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are 1 *Vistula* or *Wixel*, the ancient Boundary betwixt *Germany*; and *Sarmatia Europæa*, which rising in the *Carpathian Mountains*, passeth by *Cracovia* the chief City of *Poland*; and dividing *Prussia* from *Pomerella*, falleth into the *Baltick Sea* not far from *Dantzick*; and is navigable for the space of 400 miles; of old called *Vandalis*. 2 *Warta*, which runneth through the lesser *Poland*; 3 *Dvina* the left, watering *Livonia*; and 4 *Borysthenes* or *Nieper* passing through *Podolia*, both spoken of before when we were in *Russia*. 5 *Niester*, by *Polomy* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine Sea*, having first parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6 *Ingria*, by some called the lesser *Tanais*, arising in *Lithuania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais*, which is now called *Don*. Of less note there are, 1 *Renben* or *Reubon*, 2 *Cronus* now called *Pregel*, 3 *Bogh*, said by some to be the *Hipani* of the Antients. 4 *Minnael*, 5 *Niems*, the Meander of these Northern parts. 6 *Winde*, a *Livonian* River falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countries for the most part being plain and *Champaigns*: and those which be are rather boundaries betwixt this and some other Kingdom, than proper unto this alone. The chief of which are those called *Sarmatich*, dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europæa*; by *Solinus* named *Scvo*, by *Polomy* the *Carpathian Mountains*; the Boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, of which more anon.

The common *meets* and *Land-marks* being thus laid down, we will next take a view of those several Provinces, of which this Kingdom doth consist; being eleven in number: that is to say, 1 *Livonia*, 2 *Samogitia*, 3 *Lithuania*, 4 *Polhinia*, 5 *Podolia*, 6 *Russia nigra*, 7 *Massovia*, 8 *Podlaffia*, 9 *Prussia*, 10 *Pomerella*, and 11 *Poland*, specially so called: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europæa*.

1 LIVONIA.

LIVONIA or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the East, with the Empire of *Russia*; on the West, with the *Baltick Sea*; on the North, with the *Gulf* or Bay of *Finland*; on the South, with *Samogitia*, and *Lithuania*. Extended in length along the shore of the *Baltick* for the space of 125 *Dutch*, or 500 *Italian* miles, &c

Volhinia.

unto their posterity; and to subject it to the election of the *Polanders*, in which it was possible the Princes of their family might be pretermitted: deferred the accomplishment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Lituanians* would revolt, if they went about it. But *Sigismund Augustus*, in whose person the male issue of *Jagello* failed, foreseeing what divisions might ensue after his decease, and fearing that the *Moscovites* would renew their old pretensions, united it unto the Crown: ordaining that the *Bishops*, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chastellans* by him established, should have their place and suffrage in the *Great Council of Poland*, power in the chusing of the King, and all other privileges which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that, accounted a chief member of that *Body Politick*: subject to those corruptions, changes, and innovations in matters of Religion, which have been predominant in the other; excepting those parts only which relate to the Church of Greece, or *Mosco*, adhering pertinaciously to the Rites thereof.

4 VOLHINIA.

VOLHINIA, by some accounted one of the *Palatinates of Lithuania*, (as once it was) but by others, a distinct Province of it self; is bounded on the North and East, with *Lithuania*; on the South, with *Podolia*; and on the West, with *Russia Nigra*, and *Podlaffia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgari*, who dwelling on the banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this Countrey, calling it *Volgaria*; whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at last unto *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds.

The Countrey yields good plenty both of grain and fruits, *Pools* which abound with very good fish, Forests which do afford them store of game and Honey; and much good pasturage for their Cattel. The people of the same nature with the *Lituanians*, but more strong and warlike; and better weaned from their old superstitions and *heathenish* customs, than the others are. Of the same Language and Religion with those of *Russia*; to which, together with the rest of *Lithuania*, it did once belong: It is divided commonly into three parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it; that is to say, 1 *Luzke*, in Latine called *Luceozia*, a Town of above 1000 families, whereof 127 only, in the time of my Author, were of the *Romish* Religion; the residue being *Russians*, *Grecians*, and some *Armenians*: the seat and residence of two Bishops, of which one being of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbishop of *Lemburg*, in *Russia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of Greece, have also a Bishop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his Metropolitan. 2 *Volodomir*, a Bishops See also, of the same condition. 3 *Keremence*, which (as the rest) hath under it many fair Towns and Castles, besides large Villages. The whole once part of *Lithuania*, as before was said; but of late dismembered from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a State distinct. But so, that the greatest part of it is immediately subject to the Duke of *Osrygoe*, who is said to have 4000 *Fendataries* in this Countrey; the greatest Prince of those who hold Communion with the Church of Greece in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5 PODOLIA.

PODOLIA hath on the North, *Volhinia*, part of *Lithuania*, and the great Empire of *Russia*; on the South, *Moldavia*, from which parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Niester*; on the West *Russia Nigra*; extending Eastward through vast uninhabited Countreys, as far as to the *Euxine* Sea. The reason of the name I find no where guessed at; the people for the most part of the same nature and original with the *Russians*, to whose Empire it formerly belonged also, till gained (if such a subjection as they give the King, may be called a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at such times as the *Russes* were in thrall to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Countrey generally so fertile, that the Husbandman is accustomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one ploughing for three years together: the Countreyman being put to no further trouble, than at the end of the first and second years, to shake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which so falls, serving as seed for the next year following. The Meadow ground so strangely rich, and luxuriant, and the grass so high, that a man can hardly see the heads or horns of his Cattel: of so swift a growth, that in three dayes it will cover a rod which is thrown into it, and in few more so hide a plough, that it is not an easie work to find it. If these things seem beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof; though better take it on his word, than go so far to disprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the miracle, the ground in most places so hard and stony, that there need six yoke of Oxen to break it up: to the great toy! both of the Cattel and the men. It is also said, that in this Countrey there are great flocks of sheep, many herds of Oxen, abundance of wild beasts, and great store of Honey. And yet for all this plenty and abundance of all things necessary, the Countrey for the most part, especially towards the East, is but meanly inhabited; by reason of the frequent incursions of the *Tartars* bordering next unto it. Who have so wasted it in times past, and thereby so discouraged the people from building, planting, and all other works of peace and husbandry; that in so large and rich a Countrey, there is nothing to be seen but some scattered houses, few Villages, and not above five Towns of note, viz. 1 *Oreazkow*, at the influx of the *Borsibenes* or *Niester* into the *Euxine* Sea. 2 *Vaszwon*, at the fall of the River *Bug* into that of *Niester*. 3 *Bracław*, more high upon the *Bog*. 4 *Camiencz*, on the borders of *Russia Nigra*, built by some divine hand, as it were, amongst the precipices of high and inaccessible Rocks; and so well fortified withal, that it is impregnable: as is apparent by the many and great repulses, which the

the *Turks*, *Tartarians*, and *Valachians*, have received before it, with much shame and loss. 5 *Lemburg*, *Russia Nigra*, remarkable for the fawces or salt-meats, which they send thence into other Countreys. The former *gras*, &c. fortunes of this Province, and how it was brought under the Crown of *Poland* (with which incorporated long since) we shall see anon.

6 RUSSIA NIGRA.

RUSSIA NIGRA hath on the East, *Volhinia*, *Podlaffia*, and *Moldavia*; on the West, *Machovia*, and *Poland*, specially so called; on the North, *Lithuania*, and *Podlaffia*; and on the South, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian Mountains*. It is called also *Roxolania* from the *Roxolani*, a chief people of *Sarmatia Europea*, and by some *Ruthenia*: but generally *Russia*, from the *Rassi* spoken of before, in the Empire of *Russia*, who spread themselves over all these parts. Some hold that it was first called *Rassia*, which signifieth in the *Slavonian* language, a *Scattered Nation*, or a Nation disseminated, and dispersed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that spake the *Slavonian* tongue, and followed the religion and the rites of the Church of Greece: extended from the frozen Sea to the *Adriatique*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This, and a greater tract of ground, I grant to have been heretofore possessed by divers Nations, under the name of *Slavonians*; a very considerable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Russia*, given at first to all the *Russian* Empire, distinguished now into *Russia Alba*, and *Russia Nigra*, I adhere unto my former *Vote*; conceiving that it came from the *Rossi*, an *Armenian* people, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864. or thereabouts, attempted the taking of *Constantinople*, and after placed themselves on the Northern banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Slavonians* to the North and East, till they had made themselves Masters of all *Russia Alba*, *Lithuania*, *Volhinia*, *Podlaffia*, and this *Russia Nigra*. Distinguished from the former by the advent of *Nigra*, after the destruction of that great Empire, by the coming in of the *Tartars*; either from the colour of their garments, or their black and more Southernly complexion. In which regard called also *Russia Meridionalis*, or the Southern *Russia*.

The Countrey is generally fruitful, abounding in Horses, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: such store of Bees, that they breed not only in *Hives* and *hollow Trees*, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of fish; more naturally spawning here than in other places; inasmuch, that if a Pond be digged, and spring accordingly, the fish will breed therein of their own accord, without being brought from other waters. The greatest want hereof is Wine, either supplied with *Mede*, or from other places. And it is said, that in the Territory of *Chelme*, the branches of the *Pine trees* left upon the ground for three years together, will be converted into stone.

The people are generally valiant, and so strong of body, that they use Bows of 12 foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the Kings of *Poland* to send Colonies of natural *Polonians*, into most parts of the Countrey: inasmuch as most of the Knights and Gentry of it are of that extraction, and follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; the *Peasants* and original Inhabitants of it, being more generally affected to the Rites and doctrines of the Church of Greece.

Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Chelme*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed, that the branches of *Pine trees* left upon the ground for three years together, are converted to stone. 2 *Premissen*, 3 *Halitz*, 4 *Belzo*, 5 *Grodock*, and 6 *Lecopolia*, by the Natives called *Lemburg*, built by one *Leo a Muscovite*; a Town of great traffique, and an Archbishops See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the Patriarch of *Mosco* hath here also an Archbishop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City it self, and all *Russia* generally (as before was said) which are of the communion of the Church of Greece. There are also in this City some *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Bishop, and some Priests of their own Religion.

Of the affairs of of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Russian* Empire, hath been said already. Dismembered from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or Provincial Governours, subject and tributary unto those Barbarians: as had also *Podolia*, its next neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by strong hand, and the power of *Garrisons*. But being upon all occasions apt to revolt, by reason of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom treated rather like *Slaves* than *Subjects*;) they were assured unto the State; by giving them the same liberties and immunities, both for the Nobility and the Commons, which the natural *Polonians* had; and by that means made fellow-members of that Common-wealth. The Act of *Ladislav* the 6th. the son of *Jagello*, imitating therein the ancient *Romans*; who much augmented their forces, and assured their Estates, by communicating the freedom of *Rome*, and the privileges of *Latium* to many of the conquered Provinces: and was herein imitated by *Sigismund* the first, *Sigismund Augustus*, and *Stephen*, his successors, in their incorporating of *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, and *Livonia*; to the Crown of *Poland*.

7 MASSOVIA.

MASSOVIA is bounded on the East, with *Lithuania*; on the West, with *Poland*, specially so called; on the North, with *Prussia*, and *Podlaffia*; on the South, with *Russia Nigra*, or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Masso*, one of the Dukes hereof; who in the year 1045, being vanquished by *Cassimir* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Prussia*, and there unfortunately dyed.

The Countrey large, and for the most part full of woods, where they find store of *Bugles*, and wild

Podl. offit,
66

Buls. The people strong, valiant, and courageous in war; differing little from the *Polonians* in speech, manners, or apparel, save that they use a kind of whittling, which the others do not. The principal Towns of it, are 1 *Narshow*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the residence of the Duke or Prince; remarkable for the best *Mede*, or *Metheglin*. 2 *Egrad Czirko*, 3 *Polkowotkie*, 4 *Gadzick*, 5 *Lazara*, 6 *Droic*, the seat of a *Palatine*, but not else observable.

This Province was once subject to Princes of its own, not subject or subordinate unto any Superior. Of which number that *Maffo* was one, from whom named *Massovia*. In the years 1246, and 1260, being strangely waited and distressed by *Mindy Duke of Lithuania*; they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Polander*: by whom made the portion of the second son of that Kingdom. But *John*, and *Stanislaus*, the two last Dukes hereof, dying without issue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*; by whom incorporate to that Crown, and privileged in the election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, Anno 1526.

8. PODLASSIA.

PODLASSIA is bounded on the East, with *Polhinia*; on the West, with *Prussia*; on the North, with *Lithuania*; and on the South, with *Massovia*, and *Russia Nigra*. The reason of the name I know not. The Countrey not much differing from those before; the people a mixt generation of *Russes*, *Moscovites*, and *Polonians*, partake a little of the manners and garb of those several Nations, from which they lineally are descended.

Places of most importance in it, are 1 *Bielske*, 2 *Branniko*, 3 *Suras*, all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4 *Tykiskin*, strongly fortified and well garrisoned; as being the place where the Kings Treasures are kept. 5 *Kayssin*, beautified with a Royal Palace and a pleasant Park; wherein are store of wild beasts for hunting, and fish-ponds very well replenished. 6 *Narow*, 7 *Wasskow*, and 8 *Angustow*, a very very strong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigismund Augustus*, and by him thus named, Anno 1569, at what time he dismembred this Province from *Lithuania*, to which before it appertained; uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

9. PRUSSIA.

PRUSSIA, is bounded on the East, with *Lithuania*, and *Podlattia*; on the West, with *Pomerania*; on the North, with the *Baltick Sea*; and on the South, with *Poland*, and *Massovia*. Called first *Borussia* from the *Borussi*, who subdued it (of whom more anon;) which by an easie alteration was changed into *Prussia*, by which name still called.

The Countrey is extended all along the *Baltick Sea*, from the City of *Dantzick* in the West, to *Lithuan* on the mouth of the *Meilank*, East; for the space of 50 Polish miles: and from *Tornae* bordering on *Massovia*, to *Memel* in the confines of *Lithuania*, 58 miles of the same measure. The air thereof very mild and temperate, the soil both profitable and pleasant; full of *Lakes* and *Rivers* stored with fish, plentiful of corn and other necessities, and well clad with Forests, which yield them game for hunting, rich skins for profit, and abundance of honey. Of which last they make *Mede* for their own use, (their ordinary drink where there is no Wine) and sell the rest unto the Merchant. But the commodity wherein they do excel their neighbours, is their plenty of *Amber*, which is the juyce of a stone which groweth like a *Coral* in a Mountain of these *Baltick Seas*, covered quite with water; and shunned by Mariners three leagues off, for fear of Shipwrack: the Mountain reasonable large, about 50 yards high of *English* measure. And when any tempest riseth in these Northern Seas, especially in *September* and *December*, the liquor by violence thereof is rent from the Rock, and cast into divers Havens, and on divers Coasts of this Countrey, and sometimes upon those of *Sweden*, and *Pomerania*: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth most, whence they take up first some store of weeds, after that this *Liquor*; which being taken out of the water hardneth like to *Coral*. Besides the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting straws and iron, as the *Adamant* doth; burning like pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for stopping blood; all kind of Agues, Falling-sickness, Dropsies, Stone, Collick, weakness of Stomach, Head-ach, and the Yellow Jaundice.

The people, especially the Gentry, descend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature: having more art and industry than the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their ancient customs. Idolaters for long time together, converted first unto the Faith, in the time of the Emperor *Frederick* the 2^d. by whose setting on they were subdued by the order of the *Dutch Knights*, An. 1215, and either won or forced to the *Christian* Faith. As *Christians*, governed since the plantations of the Gospel, by the Bishops of *Culme*, *Warne*, *Sambia*, and *Pomesan*, suffragans to the Archbishop of *Guesna*: under whom those parts do still continue, which have not yet forsaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other separate Congregations distinct from them, having their own forms both of doctrine and discipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered, than this is, both for *Lakes* and *Rivers*: some of the *Lakes* 7 *Dutch* miles in compass, and well stored with fish. The *Rivers* 12, in number, that is to say, 1 The *Vistula*, 2 *Chornus*, 3 *Nogat*, 4 *Elbing*, 5 *Vastra*, 6 *Passaria*, 7 *Alla*, 8 *Pregel*, 9 *Offa*, 10 *Drebnice*, 11 *Lica*, and 12 *Lavia*, all plentifully stored with fish; besides a large Sea-coast both for trade and fishing, no small commodity to the Natives.

The Countrey formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (so they called the parts and fractions of it)

it) was by the industry of the *Dutch Knights* to adorned and beautified (after they had once brought it under their obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Castles, and 62 good Towns of their foundation. Which number being much increased in these later times, hath made the most flourishing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the Order of these Knights being suppressed in this Countrey, by an agreement betwixt *Sigismund* the first King of *Poland*, and *Albert of Brandenburg*, the last great Master of the Order; both Town and Countrey are divided between the Successors of the said *Albert*, as Dukes of *Prussia*, and of the said *Sigismund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or divisions of *Hogeland*, *Warne*, *Galindia*, *Miclow*, *Calmeria*, with the City of *Marienberg*, the Sovereignty of *Dantzick*, and *Melvin*, with the whole Countrey of *Pomerella*, lying on the Westside of the *Vistula*, being allotted to the King; the residue containing the divisions of *Schalawonia*, *Sambia*, *Natania*, *Nadrawia*, *Bartania*, *Sudawia*, and *Pomesania* (except the City and Territory of *Marienberg*) to the Dukes of *Prussia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke, are 1 *Memel*, a well-frequented Port, the Mart Town for the commodities of *Lithuania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the foreign Merchant: part of this Province interposing betwixt *Lithuania* and the *Baltick*. 2 *Coningsberg*, as the *Dutch*; *Regimont*, as the *French*; and *Mons Regius*, as the *Latines* call it; situate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulph or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick Sea*: built by the *Dutch Knights* in the year 1260. and made an University by *Albert*, the first Duke hereof, 1525. the seat and principal residence of his successors; as also of the Bishops of *Sambia*, in *Latine* called *Sambiensis*, by the name of the Province. 3 *Mulneburg*, founded by the *Dutch Knights*, Anno 1279. 4 *Brandenburg*, on the South side of that Bay, but more near the Sea; built, as I guess, by some of the great Masters of that family. 5 *Ragnitz*, the furthest Town of note towards *Lithuania*. 6 *Angersburg*, in *Schalawonia*; as was also *Kegallit*. 7 *Nordenburg* in *Bartania*. 8 *Ottellurg* in *Galindia*, of which little memorable. 9 *Marienwerder*, the furthest of the Dukes estate towards the *Vistula*, and the ordinary residence of the Bishop of *Pomesan*. Besides which, there are reckoned in this division, 80 good Towns more; and about 54 Castles; though not of much observation in the course of story.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King, are 1 *Braunsburg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, which they call *Frisch Haffe*; a Town of good trade by reason of the commodious Haven; and the ordinary residence of the Bishop of *Warne*. 2 *Frauenburg*, on the the same Bay, not far from *Braunsburg*. 3 *Resel*, the chief Town of the Dioceses and Dukedom of *Warne*. 4 *Straisburg*, in *Micklow*, confining on *Poland*, specially so called; at the liege whereof by *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, Anno 1628. *Elias Tripe*, one of the *Engineers* of that King, found out the use of *Leather Ordnance*, which afterwards did that King great service in the wars of *Germany*. 5 *Culm*, on the River *Vistula*, a Bishops See. 6 *Marienburg*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch Knights*, Anno 1302. and made the seat of the Great Masters of their Order, translated first from *Ptolemais*, or *Acon* in *Syria*, to the City of *Venice*, from thence to *Mapurg*; and at last to this place by *Sifride* the twelfth Great Master of it: whose constant residence in this Town, occasioned the Bishop of *Culm* to remove thither also. A very fair and well-built City, the chief of those which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by whom so well garrisoned, and furnished with such store of Victuals, Ammunition, and other necessities, that it was thought able to hold out for six years siege. But it proved otherwise when besieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in less space than so many months; on the settling of a peace betwixt the Crowns, rendered again unto the King of *Poland*. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleasant Island, made by the *Nogat* and the *Wixell*; for the fertility of the soil, and the great number of houses, Villages, and people, not equalled (for the muchness of it) in all this Countrey.

To this part also belongeth the fair Port of *Elberig* (or *Melwing*, as *Maginius* calls it) situate on the Bay of the *Baltick* called *Frisch Haffe*, spoken of before not far from a Fishful Lake; well traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants; of great resort from other Nations, and much frequented by the *English* Merchants, who have here their Staple for the *Baltick*. A small but neat and well-built City, and fortified with a very good wall, governed after the manner of a free Estate or Common-wealth, under the Patronage and Protection of the Kings of *Poland*, in like sort as *Dantzick* also is, of which more anon.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the most potent Nation of this tract, extended all along the coast of the *Baltick*; from them by *Ptolomy* called *Sinus Venedicus*: containing under them the *Gythones*, *Phini*, *Salanes*, *Pharungidones*, *Avarini*; and more within the Land, the *Sudini* and *Galinde*, whose name the Dukedom or Province of *Galindia* doth still retain. But great and potent though they were, they were subdued by the *Borussi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphean* Mountains, who weary of their own cold and barren dwellings, removed into the Western parts; and vanquishing the *Venedi*, and those other Nations, possessed themselves of this Countrey, which they called *Borussia*, now by named *Prussia*. By *Venedus* one of their Princes, having 12 sons in all, it was divided into 12 Provinces or Dukedoms, one for every son: continuing by that means distracted into divers petty principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch Knights*, sent hither by *Frederick* the second, Anno 1215. by whom the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Sudawia*, *Micklow*, and the greatest part of *Nadrawia*, were laid waste and desolate; the rest submitted to their power, and received the Gospel. After this it continued subject to this order of Knights, till the year 1419. when weary of their extortion, and the continual change of Masters, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their obedience: seconded by the yielding up of *Marienberg*, with many other Towns and Castles, sold to King *Casimir* by the Garrison Soldiers, Anno 1457. for 476000 *Florents*. But the Knights disdaining to be so dealt withal, and

Prussia.

refusing to swear allegiance to the Kings of Poland, they brake out into open war; managed with variable success on both sides; *Ludovicus* the then *Great Master*, being so successful at the first, that he once beat the King out of the field, routed his whole Army, slew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobility: not vanquished at last, but by the treachery and rebellion of his own people. In the end wearied and worn out on both sides by continual wars, *Albert of Brandenburg*, then *Great Master*, having for 14 years together courageously maintained the honour of his Order; and for the four last years importuned in vain the assistance of the Emperor and Princes of Germany: began to think of some expedient to compound the business. Being inclined to *Luther's* Doctrines, and willing to advance himself unto this Estate; he secretly practised with *Sigismund* the first of Poland, to end the war to the advantage of both parties. By whom at last it was agreed, that *Albert* should relinquish his Order, and surrender all Prussia into the hands of the King; that the King possessing the Western parts with the Town of *Marienberg*, and the Sovereignty of *Danik*, and *Melvin*, should invest *Albert* with the Title of Duke of Prussia, settling on him and the heirs of his body, the whole Eastern Moiety, containing the Provinces or Dukedoms before specified; and finally, that *Albert* and his heirs should hold the said Estate, as *Homagers* to the Crown of Poland, taking place in all Assemblies at the Kings right hand. According to this agreement, Anno 1525. *Albert*, attired in the compleat Habit of *Master of the Duch Order*, presents himself humbly on his knees, before King *Sigismund* at *Cracow*, the King then sitting on his Throne. The King raising him from the ground, caused him to put off those robes, and attire himself in a *Ducal Habit*; which done, an instrument was read and published, whereby the King conferred upon him and the heirs of his body, the Dukedom of Prussia, to be held of him and his Successors Kings of Poland. An act at which the whole Order were extremely incensed; but they could not help it; and thereupon retired into Germany, where there were some good lands left, to maintain (such of them as had no mind to quit that military honour: leaving their old Estates in Prussia to the King, and the Duke; whose successors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it, with the Title of

DUKES OF PRUSSIA.

- 1525 1 *Albert of Brandenburg*, son of *Frederick* Marquess of *Onalsbach*; or *Ausbach*, created *Master of the Order* by the Emperor *Maximilian*, Anno 1511. and the first Duke of Prussia, by *Sigismund*, the first of Poland, Anno 1525. founded the University of *Coningsberg*, Anno 1544.
- 1568 2 *Albert Frederick* son of *Albert* the first Duke, married *Mary Eleanor*, daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c.
- 3 *Anne*, eldest daughter of Duke *Albert Frederick*, Dutchess of Prussia, brought the Estate in marriage to
- 4 *John Sigismund*, Marquess and Elector of Brandenburg, confirmed therein by *Sigismund* the 3d. of Poland, pretending an *Escheat* thereof for want of heirs males of the body of *Albert* the first Duke.
- 5 *George William* Marquess and Elector of Brandenburg, in right of his Father; Duke of Prussia, in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother; and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by descent from *Mary Eleanor* his Grandmother.
- 6 *Frederick William*, son of *George William*, Marquess and Elector of Brandenburg, Duke of Prussia, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*; of whose investiture in the Dukedom of *Pomerania*, and other large and goodly Signeuries, we have spoke elsewhere.

As for the Government of this Province, standing thus divided, that of the Duke is more Monarchical than that of the King; the one being absolute and uncontrollable in his Estates, the other subject to the great Council of Poland. If any difference grow between them, *Delegates* appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal justice, either at *Marienberg* or *Elbing*, do compound the business: who together with some other of the Dukes nomination, receive all Appeals, in which the Duke is interested as one of the parties.

The Revenues of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 Ducats yearly.

The Arms thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Vert*, Membred and Crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

10. POMERELLA.

POMERELLA is bounded on the East, with the River *Vistula* by which parted from Prussia; on the South, with Poland specially so called; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the West, with the Dukedom of *Pomerania*, of which it was antiently a part, till separated from it and united to the Crown of Poland under this new name.

The Territory small, and consequently not capable of many Towns and Cities of consideration. Those of most note, 1 *Nemburg* on the banks of the *Vistula* or *Wesel*. 2 *Dirschaw*, or *Darsaw*, (in *Latine* *Darsavia*) a well fortified Town, and of great importance, at the feige whereof, Anno 1627. *Gustavus Adolphus* King of Sweden, received the Order of the Garter. 3 *Dantzick* in *Latine* called *Dantiscum*, and sometimes *Gedanum*, situate at the mouth of the same River also, a fair and well-built City, the houses for the most part of Brick, and the rest of stone raised with great beauty and magnificence six or seven Roores high: beautified with a fair Council-house for affairs of State, and many publick Gardens for

disport

Poland.

disport and exercise. It consisteth of three Cities, governed by as many Senates; the one called *Trinitate*, the fore-City; the second *Alstat*, or the old City; and the third *Reichstat*, or the Emperours City; but all encompassed with one wall, and governed by one chief Senate or Common-Council chosen out of all three. A Bishops See, and the second in esteem and rank, of all the Hanse-towns; of so great Trade, such a noted granary of all sorts of Corn issued from hence to supply the wants of other Countries, that 1000 measures of Wheat (besides other commodities in proportion) are here daily sold. Heretofore it was reckoned as Imperial, but now reckoned a Free-Estate, acknowledging the Kings of Poland for their Protectors, to whom they allow many Customs upon their Merchandise, and permit their Officers to remain there for receiving them. The first Town in the Kingdom of Poland, which gave entrance to the doctrines of *Luther*, Anno 1525. but in so tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his Opinions, deposed the old Common-Council-Men, and created new ones of their own; prophaned the Churches, robbed them of their ornaments, and shamefully abused the Priests and religious persons, abolished the Mass, and altered all things at their pleasure. But by the coming of the King they grew somewhat quieter; leaving one Convent of *Black-Friers*, and two of *Mints*, who still enjoy the exercise of their Religion.

This Countrey once a part of the Dukedom of *Pomerania* was given by *Smuntibore* once Duke thereof, Anno 1107. to *Bugislaus* his second son: whose posterity enjoyed it till the year 1295. when *Messtwin* 24. dying without issue male, gave it to *Primislaus* Duke of the *Polonians*, whose successors have ever since enjoyed it by that Donation: called *Pomerella* for distinctions sake, from the first separating of it from the Dukedom of *Pomerania*.

11. POLAND.

POLAND, properly and specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Masovia*, and *Podlasia*; on the West, with *Silesia*, and the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*; on the North, with *Prussia* and *Pomerella*; and on the South, with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*. It is in length 480 Italian miles, 300 of the same miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is said) from the word *Pole*, signifying as much as plain; the Countrey being plain and level, little swelled with hills.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but sharp and cold; the Countrey plain, shaded with thick dark woods, parts of the *Hercynian*, full of wild beasts for hunting, and of Bees for honey, which they have here in great abundance: together with such plenty of grain, but of *Rie* especially, by reason of the continual breaking up of new grounds gained out of the Forests, that it may be called the Granary or Store-house of the Western parts of Europe; sent down the *Wixel* unto *Dantzick*, and thence transported by the Merchant into other Countries, according their several wants.

The Character of the people we have had before; adding now only, that in matters of war they are stout and resolute: so forwards in giving the charge and pursuit of the enemy, that *John Vasilvich* the Great Duke of *Moscovie*, comparing them with the Souldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to say, that the *Moscovites* wanted a spur to drive them forwards; and the *Polander* had need of a bridle to hold them back. Their Language is the *Slavonian* tongue; most generally spoken also in the rest of the Provinces; but with some difference in the dialect or pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Greater and the Lesser Poland. The Greater lying wholly on the Western side of the *Wixel*, and so accounted antiently as a part of Germany, contains 9 divisions, under the jurisdiction of the 9 Palatines of 1 *Posna*, 2 *Kalisch*, 3 *Siradia*, 4 *Lancitia*, 5 *Uladislaw*, 6 *Breslaw*, 7 *Rawa*, 8 *Plockzko*, and 9 *Dobrzin*: each of them so called from some Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the rest contained in them, are 1 *Posna*, a Bishops See, and the principal of the Greater Poland, seated amongst the hills on the River *Warta*; built of free-stone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River; but much subject unto inundations, which add much strength unto the place: of great resort by reason of the *Marts* or *Fairs* holden twice a year. 2 *Koscien*, situate amongst *Marijshers*, and fortified with a double wall. 3 *Ostresow*, bordering on *Silesia*, begirt with woods. 4 *Gnesna*, the antientest Town of Poland, founded by *Lechus* their first Prince, the seat of him and his successors; till removed to *Cracow* situate in *Kalisch*, and by old prescription, the first place for inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*; in regard that here Prince *Bolaislaus* the first King of this Countrey received the *Regal Diadem* at the hands of *Otho* the third. The Town well walled, and the See of the Archbishop; who is the Primate of the Kingdom, by antient privilege the Popes Legat for all *Sarmatia* *Europaea*, and in the absence of the King or interregnum, the Vicar General of the Kingdom, having power to summon the Diets, to conclude and publish their Decrees. 5 *Petrocov*, a walled Town, in the Palatinate or division of *Siradia*, situate on a moorish soil; the place in former times of the General Diets; since removed to *Warsaw*. 6 *Uladislaw* on the *Wixel* or *Vistula*, a Bishops See. 7 *Bedgost*, a walled Town on the *Bard*, a navigable River, conveying the Merchandise of these parts into the *Vistula*. 8 *Krusznick*, in *Bresky*; built of wood, standing on a great Lake named *Gopla*, in the Castle whereof *Popielis* the second Duke of Poland, was after a strange manner devoured with Rats, swarming out of the Lake. 9 *Plockzko* upon the *Vistula*, a walled Town, and a Bishops See, with a Castle to it. 10 *Warsaw*, upon the banks of the same River: of no great note in former times, but of late grown the best frequented and most traded Town in all the Province: honoured for the most part with the Court of the King, the holding of all publique Diets (removed from *Petrocov* to this place) and the Transaction of all businesses both of peace and war; which must needs draw to it great resort of all sorts of people; the fruitfulness of the soil, and commodiousness of the situation rendring it very capable of those publique meetings. 11 *Mladet*, bordering on the Dukedom of *Prussia*.

The

hereof were *absolute* Princes, and ruled after a *Despotic* manner: having power not only of the estates of their subjects, but of life and death, without formalities of Law: yet when they once became *elective*, they lost much of that power; which decayed so by little and little, that at the last the King is counted little better than a *Royal shadow*: *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poets language. A diminution which began first in the times of *Lewis of Hungary*, and *Jagello of Lithuania*: who to gain the succession to the Kingdom contrary to Law, the one for his daughter, the other for his son, departed with many of their *Royalties* and *Prerogatives*, to buy the voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the Nobility in all their elections have so limited and restrained the Kings authority, and enlarged their own, that without their consent in Council, he may neither make warre, nor treat of peace, nor impose taxes, nor alienate any of his Demesns: nor do any thing of importance which concerns the Publick: in so much as *Botermus* a great *Statesman* doth expressly say; That the Government of Poland doth rather resemble an *Aristocracy* than a *Monarchy*, a Common-wealth rather than a Kingdom. Besides, the King not only takes a solemn Oath at his Coronation, to confirm all the Rights and Privileges, which have been granted to the Subject by his Predecessors: but adds this clause, *Quod si Seramentum minus dilectis, incolis, Reginis nullum nobis obedientiam prestare conebimur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects shall not be obliged to yield him any obedience. Which as *Bodin* well observeth, doth rather shew the condition of a Prince of the Senate, than of the Majesty of a King; respected accordingly by the great ones, who look not on him as their King, but their elder Brother, (or perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three days lasting. Which notwithstanding, the King once chosen and introned, hath sole power in many things, without consulting with the Senate; as viz. in assembling *Dietts*, choosing the secular Counsellors, disposing absolutely of his Vassals, and the Revenues of the Crown to what use he pleaseth; being sole Judge of the Nobility in Criminal causes, which is a strong bridle to reign them in with. By which, and either uniting himself unto the Clergy, or the well-forming of his party amongst the Nobility, he may do many things not allowable in strictness of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government, being proportionable to the strength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be observed, that none but the Clergy, and Nobility, have any suffrage in the election of the King: that is to say, the 26 Palatines, and 60 Chastellans, with the four Marshals, and some others of the principal Officers of State, in behalf of the Nobility; and the Archbishops and Bishops, in the name of the Clergy; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reason, why there is so much care taken to preserve the privileges of the two first Orders; without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third: most miserably oppressed on all sides, rather as *Boadmen* than *Tenants* in respect of their Lords, and not so much subjects, as plain *Slaves* in regard of the King; whereof somewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the Commons excluded only out of these elections, but have no place nor vote in the Council of State, or in any of the General Dietts: the first consisting only of the Prelates, Palatines, Chastellans, and principal Officers, spoken of before, the nominating of which pertained to the King alone; the other aggregated of all persons of those several Orders, and the Delegates of each Province and principal City, sent thither for the rest of the Nobility, whom they represent. Yet notwithstanding this exclusion of the Commons from this Common-Council, they there conclude of all matters of publique interests, not properly determinable by the great Council or Council of State: in which perhaps (especially in the case of taxes) the Commons may be more concerned than any other.

The Forces of this Kingdom or Common-wealth relate unto Land-service only. For though they have a large Sea-coast upon the Baltic; yet the Danes, Swedes, and Hanse-towns, having got the start of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for Land-forces, they consist of Horse especially, whereof they are able to raise eightscore thousand, (that is to say, 16000 out of Poland, and 60 or 70000 out of Lithuania, and the Eastern Provinces) of which one-half at least are thought to be for action. And this seems probable enough, in regard of those great bodies of Horse, which *Stephen* and *Sigismund* the third, had against the *Muscovite*; whereof the one had 40000. and the other 30000. (besides draught Horses,) very well appointed. But for their Foot, they are not at so good a pass, their Infantry being for the most part *Germans*, or *Hungarians*, whom they hire for money; of which two Nations King *Stephen*, in his enterprise upon *Livonia*, had no less than 16000, to convey his Ordinance. Upon confidence of this great number of Horse, and their readines to serve upon all occasions, the Poles bear themselves so high, that they neither fear the power of a foreign Enemy, nor regard the fortifying of their Towns, or the building of Fortresses on their Frontiers: boasting that they are able to defend their Countrey, without such helps, against any Nation whatsoever; and trusting more to a Castle of bones, (as was courageously said by *Savage* an English Gentleman) than to a Castle of stones. And for the raising of these Horse, the Gentlemen of the Countrey are bound by their tenure, (like the *Turk* *Timariots*) not only to serve in person for defence of the Realm, but to maintain a certain number of Horse in continual readines: especially in those parts which lie next the *Tartar*, where their numbers are exceeding great; and with whom many times they joyn to afflict and harrafs their own Countrey, though in pay against them. Of these, some serve in the manner of our men of Arms, some like unto our Light-horse, others like the *Tartars*. And these they call commonly by the name of *Cosacks* (or *Adventurers*): a race of men trained up to steal, waste and depopulate, wheresoever they come, having little but their swords to live by; a murderous and wicked people, chiefly in their drunkenness, and that not only towards strangers, but their natural Countrymen. The cause of that sedition, which for some years past, hath more depopulated and distracted that flourishing Kingdom, than all the Armies of the *Turks*.

As for the Revenues of this King, they are computed at 600000 Crowns per annum, drawn chiefly out of Salt, and some Mines of Silver: the profits arising from the Demesns of the Crown, being for the most part, given away in pensions and gratuities to the Palatines, Chastellans, and other great men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his desires. Most of which sum is put up yearly in his Coffers, or expended in the purchase of estates for his younger sons; his daughters being married at the publick charge, and the expences of his household defrayed by the Lithuanians, and most part of Poland, for the time that he remains amongst them. Nor do the wars at any time exhaust his Treasure, in which case by decree of the Dietts, he is enabled to lay impositions and taxes upon the people, levied in the way of Exchequer, or upon their lands: which do amount to such a sum, that by means hereof, King *Stephen* maintained war three years against the *Muscovite*, without expending any thing of his own Revenue.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom are,

1 The *Marian* or *Dutch Knights*, instituted under the walls of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, in the Holy-land; in a Church whereof dedicated to the blessed *Virgin*, their Order was first allowed; from thence called *Equites Mariani*. The institution was in the year 1190. The first great Master, *Henry Walpot*. The Christians being beaten out of Syria, they first removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Adampurg* in *Hassia*; where, and in some other parts of Germany, they were endowed with fair Revenues, from which named *Equites Teutonici*, or the *Dutch Knights*; sent into Prussia by the Emperor *Frederick* the second, Anno 1239. or called in, as some say, by the *Muscovite* against the Prussians; they fixed their seat at *Marienberg*, under *Sigisfride*, the second Great Master, Anno 1340. or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus* the 18th Great Master, they were forced to submit to *Casimir* the fourth of Poland, Anno 1450. the occasion of the long war betwixt them and the Poles, continuing till the time of *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, the 24. and last Great Master in this Countrey; who surrendered his order (as before is said) to *Sigismund* the first, by whom he was created the first Duke of Prussia. Such of the Knights as disrelucted this action, retired into Germany, where they chose one *Walter Croneberg* Master of the Order: the title afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian*, one of the younger sons of *Maximilian* the second; but the Order sensibly decaying, and at this time of little estimation in the world.

2 Of the *Port-glaive*, or *Sword-bearers* (*Ensseri* in Latine) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third; by whom sent into *Livonia* to defend the Preachers of the Gospel against the *Infidels*, at the first conversion of that Countrey. Being too weak to effect that business, they united themselves with the *Dutch Knights* by the Popes authority, and in stead of Knights of the Sword, were called Knights of the Cross. Separated from it in the time of *Univus* their Great Master, Anno 1541. the *Dutch Knights* being then dissolved of Prussia, and these inclining wholly to the opinions of *Luther*, they a while subsisted of themselves: what became of them afterwards, and how the Order was extinguished, hath been shewn already in *Livonia*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are quarterly, 1 Gules, an Eagle Argent, Crowned and Armed Or, for the Realm of Poland; and 2 Gules, a Chevalier armed Cap-a-pen, advancing his Sword Argent, mounted on a barbed Courser of the second, for the Dukedom of Lithuania.

There are in the whole Realm of Poland,

Of the Romish Church, Archbishops 3.	B'shops 19.
Of the Greek Church, Archbishops 2.	Bishops 6.

Universities 4.

Viz.

<i>Cracow</i> ,	<i>Dantzick</i> ,
<i>Vilna</i> ,	<i>Regimunt</i> .

And so much for POLAND.

THE Carpathian Mountains.

Our way from Poland unto Hungary (whether now we go) we must of necessity pass over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the ancient boundary of *Sarmatia Europæa*, from the rest of Europe. A long and craggy ledge of hills, which beginning near the City of *Presburg*, and the borders of *Austria*, pass on in a continual course till they come to the very *Emaxine* Sea: and by that means not only divide *Hungary* from *Poland*, specially so called; but parting *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*, two *Dacian* Regions, from *Russia Nigra* and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian* Kingdom. By *Ptolemy* in his second Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici*, (*Sarmatice Ruper*, by *Solinus*) because determining the *Sarmatian* Nation, (who possessed the most part of it) from *Germany*, and the more Southern parts of *Europe*: and in his third Book by one name *Carpathes*, or *Mons Carpathus*, so called (as some think) from the *Greek* word *καρπός*, signifying *Fruit*; from the fruitfulness of it, compared with the other Mountains in those Northern Countries. At the present known by divers names, according to the Provinces and people which it passeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten*, (or a Garden of Herbs) which alludeth to the name of *Carpathus*: by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzal*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria*, where it is at the highest, it is called in the *Slavonian* tongue, by the name of *Tatris*; in the *German*, *Schneberg*: where it parteth *Transylvania* from *Russia Nigra*, the *Rosses* call it *Bieseld*; and the *Dutch* men, *Crapack*. A chain of Hills, of more length than fame: not much observable in story, but for the shutting up the *Hungary*, *Slaves*, and others of those Northern Nations, which afterward invaded the *Roman* Provinces: nor of much notice at the present, but for giving an Original to many of the principal Rivers, which water the Countries lying on both sides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will pass them over, and descend unto the Plains of *Hungary*; where we shall meet again with the *Roman* Empire, the Territories and Affairs whereof we shall take along without interruption until we come unto the banks of the great River *Tygris*, and the *Caspian* Sea. And so far also from this place, we shall survey the fortunes and Estates of the *Turkish* Empire, of which the Realm of *Hungary* is the most Western part or Province; not meeting either of them again till we come to *Egypt*.

OF

OF HUNGARIE.

HUNGARIE is bounded on the East, with *Transylvania*, and *Walachia*; on the West, with *Stiria*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*; on the North, with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Poland*; and on the South, with *Slavonia*, and some part of *Dacia*. Extended in length from *Presburg* along the *Danow* to the borders of *Transylvania*, for the space of 300 English miles; and 190 of the same miles in breadth. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

It lyeth in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the 7th and 9th Climaxes, so that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, is but 15 hours and a half, and not above 18 hours in the parts most North: taking up all that tract of ground on the North side of *Danubius*, possessed by the *Jazyges Metanastæ*, a *Sarmatian* people; and part also of *Pannonia Superior*, and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it passeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know, that the *Romans* having made themselves Masters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the *Diocese of Illyricum Occidentale*: that is to say, *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Noricum*, and containing part of the *Higher Austria*, and the most Western parts of the present *Hungary*, on the South side of the *Danow*; 2 *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eastern parts of *Hungary*, on the same side of the River. 3 *Valeria*, anciently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Stiria* or *Stiermark*, in the Archdukedom of *Austria*. And 4 *Savia*, so called of the River *Savus*, anciently part of *Pannonia Inferior*, now called *Windestland*, one of the Provinces or Subdivisions of *Slavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling with the *Roman* Empire, and this Country being fallen into the hands of other Masters; it took a new name from the Nations who possessed themselves of it; and was called *Hungaria*, quasi *Hunni-Avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Hunni* and *Avars*, two *Scythian* Nations, who either successively or conjunctly were possessed thereof: or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians*, mentioned by *Jornandus* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Country by the Emperour *Arnulph* to aid him in his war against *Suabivogus*, King of the *Moravians*. This last I look on as most probable; the first as more probable than that of *Aventine* and others of our later Writers: who finding a poor Province in the most North-east point of the *Russian* Empire called *Jugra*, (and by them *Jugaria*;) would have the name of *Hungary* to be thence derived.

The people are strong of body, and rude of behaviour, respecting neither the liberal Arts, nor mechanic Trades. The greatest aspersion is the name of a Coward, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of a *Turk*: after which they are privileged to wear a feather, and by the number of their feathers to shew how many *Turks* they have slain in battel. They desire wars, and like no trade better, being naturally slothfull (like the *Irish*) and therefore best approve of that course of life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens labour, than take pains for their living. Extremely covetous; yet having rather desire than art to enrich themselves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingross all their trading, and manage such Commodities as the Country yieldeth: which is the cause (seconded by the oppressions of the *Turk* and the *Austrian* Princes under whom they are) that none of them rise to any considerable wealth. And for such as have Estates in Land, they grow every day more poor than others. For though the Females be excluded from inheriting their Fathers possessions (to whom they give no portion, but new Cloaths on the Wedding day;) yet being the Sons do equally inherit the Estate (as such who hold in *Gavelkind* do here in *England*) it must needs be that by so many divisions and subdivisions, the greatest Patrimony that is, will be brought to nothing. Both Sexes in the way of their education are inured to hardihood, not suffered to lie in beds till the night of their marriage.

The Christian Faith was first planted here in the time of *Stephen*, surnamed the Saint, the first King of

of this Countrey; invited thereunto by the special means and procurement of the Emperour Henry the second, giving him upon that condition his Sister *Gisela* in marriage: and through the preaching and industry of *Albert* Archbishop of *Prague*, Anno 1016. or thereabouts. Since which time Christianity hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and courageously against the *Turks*) but broken into factions and subdivisions among themselves: some pertinaciously adhering to the Church of *Rome*, some following the doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin*; and some, new fancies and opinions disavowed by all the rest: free exercise of Religion first granted by *Maximilian* the 24, and re-obtained in the time of *Rodolphus* his Son and Successor, by the Pacification at *Vienna*, procured by the power of *Boscai* Prince of *Transylvania*, Anno 1606. The violating of which Pacification by *Ferdinand* the II. in the beginning of his reign, occasioned great wars and troubles betwixt him and this people, not quieted in a long time after: yet all these different parties do agree in this, to punish *adultery* and *fornication* with no less a punishment than death: the father forcing his daughter, the husband his wife, and the brother his sisters, to the place of their Execution.

The language generally here spoken, is a kind of *Slavonian*, differing in dialect from the *Poles*: but in the parts adjoining to *Germany*, the *Dutch* is spoken; as the old *Jazygian* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*, the ancient seat of the *Jazyges Metanastæ*.

The Soil is wonderfull fruitful, yielding Corn and Fruits in great abundance; the grasse in some places (as in the Isle of *Comara*) if it be suffered to grow to its full length before the cutting of it down, being said to exceed the height of a man: which doth breed such a number of Cattel, that this Countrey alone, is thought to be able to feed all *Europe* with flesh. They yearly send into *Germany* and *Slavonia*, 80000 Oxen: they have Deer, Partridge, Pheasants, in such superfluity, that any man that will may kill them; which in other places is utterly prohibited, these creatures being reserved as game for Gentlemen. For at that great insurrection of the *Boors* in *Germany* (before the end of which, 50000 of them were slain in fight) their chief demands were, 1. That they might choose their own Ministers; 2^{ly}. That they might pay no tithes but of Corn; 3^{ly}. That they might be free from the power of Magistrates; 4^{ly}. That Wood, Timber, and Fewel might be common; 5. And especially, That they might hunt and hawk in all times and places. The other commodities of the Countrey are Gold and Silver, whereof they have some very rich veins; as also of Tin, Lead, Iron; good store of Fish, Copper, Wine; this last as good as that of *Candy*.

The worthiest Scholar that ever this Kingdom produced, was *S. Hierom*, a worthy Father of the *Latine Church*, born in *Siridon*. The most worthy of all their Souldiers, were *Johannes Huniades*, who so valiantly resisted the incursions of the *Turks*, and slew of them 50000 at the battel at *Maron*. And 2^{ly}. *Matthias Corvinus*, his Son, afterward King of *Hungary*; of whom thus *Adrian* our of a Poet:

Patria decus, unica stirpis
Gloria, Pannonicæ cadis fortissimus altor.

His Countries pride, the glory of his race,
Revenger of th' Hungarians late disgrace.

The principal Rivers are, 1 *Danubius*, spoken of before, when we were in *Germany*. 2 *Sava*, which rising in *Carniola*; 3 *Dravus*, which rising in *Carinthia*; and 4 *Tibiscus*, which rising in the *Carpathian Mountains*, pay their tribute to *Danubius*: of which *Tibiscus* the Hungarians use to say, that two parts are water, and the third fish. Besides which, and some others of inferior note, there is the famous Lake called *Balaton* (by the *Dutch* *Platse*) 40 Italian miles in length, but of breadth unequal: in some places being ten miles broad, and in some but three. There be also many medicinal waters, and more hot Baths than any one Countrey hath in *Europe*: some waters also of a strange Nature; whereof some falling on the ground is turned to stone; others (about the Town of *Smalnice*) which falling into Ditches make a kind of mud, out of which tried and melted they make very good Copper; and some again which flow in Winter, and freeze in Summer; and near unto *Bisrice* or *Mosol*, a Spring or Fountain, out of which cometh a green water, whereof they make Solder for their Gold.

Principal Mountains of this Countrey are 1 *Carpatus*, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian Mountains* spoken of before. 2 *Mutcan*, near the City of *Agria*, covered with rich Vines. 3 *Erdol*, omnium amplissimus, the largest of the three, saith the *Atlas minor*. Which words if true, must needs be understood of the height of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without question it comes short of *Carpatus*.

The Countrey is commonly divided into the *Upper Hungary*, and the *Lower*: the *Upper* lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the bounds and territories of the *Roman Empire*; the *Lower* lying on the South of that River, and comprehending all *Pannonia Inferior*, and part of *Superior*, two *Roman Provinces*. The *Upper* again subdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Counties or *Juridical Resorts*, that is to say, 24 on the West side of *Tibiscus* (or the *Tisse*) and 8 on the East side of it: the *Lower* (at the same time) into 16 only; Of which ten were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*, and the other six betwixt the *Dravus* and the *Sava*. But this Division and the Subdivisions depending on it, being since the coming in of the *Turks* almost out of use, we will now look upon it as it stands divided at the present, betwixt the Emperour as King of *Hungary*, by a mixt title of descent and election; and the Great *Turk*, as Lord of the most part of it, by *Arms* and Conquest, two parts of three at least being forced into his possession. But here we are to understand, that by

by reason of the great jealousies and distrusts betwixt these great Princes, every ordinary Town is fortified and garrisoned like a Town of war, and so are almost all the houses of the Nobility and Gentry throughout this Countrey: so that it were an infinite labour to specify in this place all those Towns and Fortresses, which do occur in reading the *Hungarian Histories* of these later times. Some of the principal for strength, antiquity, or other mark of estimation which is set upon them, we shall here subjoin.

And first in the Emperours part of the *Lower Hungary*, we have 1 *Rab*, on the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Kab*, coming out of the *Lower Hungary*, whence the modern *Dutch* name; by *Antonine* called *Araban*, by the *French* *Javarine*, by our present *Latinists*, *Javorinum*. Memorable heretofore for being the boundary of the two *Pannonias*, *Inferior* and *Superior*, hereabouts divided: of late most principally for a strong Fortress against the *Turks*, by whom once taken, Anno 1594. but within four years after again recovered by the industry of *Monsieur de Vandre Court*, a *French Gentleman*, as the *Frenchmen* say; but as the *Germans* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenbourg*, a *French Gentleman*, as the *Frenchmen* say; but as the *Germans* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenbourg*, at that time Governor of *Komura*. 2 *Altembourg*, in the road leading towards *Austria*, a strong Town, and the belt Out-work of *Vienna*, for which cause much aimed at by the *Turks*, but without success. 3 *Castell-Neus*, a new-erected Fortress, as the name importeth, but of special strength, erected purposely in the time of the Emperour *Rodolph*, to confront the *Turks*. 4 *Sabaria*, anciently the Metropolis of *Pannonia Superior*; the birth-place of *St. Martin* Bishop of *Tours*; now of less account; by the Hungarians called *Kimarorubash*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnitz*. 5 *Siridon*, the *Sidon* of *Ptolemy*, in the Confines of *Hungary* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A Town of good repute, till destroyed by the *Goths*; but after made of more esteem by the birth of *St. Hierom*, one of the four chief Fathers of the *Latine Church*; and for all parts of humane Learning; nothing inferior to the best of the *Grecian Sages*. 6 *Sopron*, (*Sopronium* in *Latine*) on the borders of *Austria*. 7 *Komura*, a strong piece in an Island of the same name, made by the Circling of the *Danow*; oft-times attempted by the *Turks*, but in vain at all times. Then in the *Upper Hungary*, we have 8 *Preiburg*, on the edge of *Austria* also, but on the North side of the River, the *Carnuntum* of *Antoninus*; but by the modern *Latines* called *Posonium*: seated in a pleasant healthfull Countrey on the River *Lyca*, whose waters the *Danow* there receiveth; in the suburbs whereof, on the top of an high Mountain, standeth a goodly Castle, the ordinary residence of the Emperours, as Kings of *Hungary*. For though it be a little City, and not very beautifull; yet being safe by the neighbourhood of *Austria*, it hath been made the Metropolis of this Kingdom, since the loss of *Buda*. Before the walls hereof dyed Count *Dampierre* one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the second, in the wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. 9 *Filleck*, a place of great strength and consequence, taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in his first attempts upon this Kingdom, and lost by *Amurath* the 34, the *Turks* in vain attempting the recovery of it. 10 *Niri*, a Bishops See on the River *Bech*. 11 *Paccia*, a Bishops See also on the River *Danubius*, once in possession of the *Turks*, but restored again unto the Christians at the making of the peace between the Emperour *Rodolphus*, and *Sult. in Achmet*. 12 *Cassovia*, a strong piece towards *Transylvania*. 13 *Lippe*, in the Borders of that Countrey also, commanding the entrances thereof, and therefore much affected by the Princes or *Vainods* of that Province; possessed by whom in the later times of the Emperour *Rodolph*, it was by them incorporated into *Transylvania*; but how long it continued so, I am not able to say. 14 *Tokai*, a place of great strength, and as great fidelity, the people and Garrison hereof holding out for the Emperour *Rodolphus*, Anno 1605, against some of his rebellious Subjects, in the time of so extreme a Famine, that the Souldiers did not only eat two boyes, but many times cast livers who should eat one another. 15 *Eperia*, a place of no less consequence, and exemplary loyalty. 16 *Neusoll*, or *Nebenzell*, a strong Town, and as strongly fortified, not far from the Spring-head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621. proved fatal to that great Commander the Count of *Bucquoy*; who at the siege hereof (the Town being then in rebellion against *Ferdinand* the second, Emperour and King of *Hungary*) lost his life. For going privately to view some places of advantage for a general assault, he fell into an Ambush of Hungarians, who suddenly set upon him, discomfited his small party, killed first his horse under him, and at last himself, having in that skirmish received 16 wounds. Slain with him at the same time also, *Torquato* an Italian Prince, Count *Verdugo*, a Spanish Earl, and one of the *Gonzagues* of the house of *Medina*.

Places of most importance in the *Turks* possession, are, 1 *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Hoffen*, supposed by some to be the *Cirta* of *Ptolemy*; by others, the *Arincum* of *Antoninus*; and to have took the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the Brother of *Attila*, said to be the re-founder of it: or from the *Budini*, a *Scythian* people, mentioned in *Herodotus*. Unevenly seated amongst hills, on the Southern shore of the *Danow*, but in the most fruitfull part of all the Countrey; exceedingly well fortified, especially by a strong Castle, thought to be impregnable, and therefore very carefully guarded by the jealous *Turks*; adorned with many buildings both private and publick: and furnished with some medicinal Baths, which owe much of their pomp and sumptuousness to their new Masters the *Turks*, who took it from the Christians, August 20. 1591. *Solyman* the Magnificent then present at the taking of it. Before that time the Seat Royal of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief City of the Kingdom; as now the seat of the chief *Basha*, or Lord Lieutenant for the *Grand Signeur*. 2 *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Sint-Weissenburg*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Dravus*; strongly, but unwholly feared, in the midst of an inaccessible marsh: joynt to the firm Land by three broad Causeys, blocked up at the ends with three great Bulwarks; but for all the strong situation of it, taken by the *Turks*, Anno 1543. before that time the usual place both for the Coronation and interment of the Kings of *Hungary*, recovered from the *Turks*, Anno 1601. and lost again unto them in the next year after. 3 *Walpo*, or *Pal-*

po, on the River *Dravus*, taken by *Solyman* marching towards *Alba Regalis*, to leave no enemies behind him at the siege of that City. 4 *Gran*, in *Latine* called *Strigonium*, seated upon the *Danow*, but opposite to the mouth of *Gran*, which arising in the *Upper Hungary* doth there end its course, whence the name of *Gran*; honoured of a long time with the See of an Archbishop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, and of great power in all business which concerns the State, took by the *Turks*, Anno 1534. *Solyman* the *Magnificent* being in person at the siege, and lost An. 1595. at what time Sir *Tho. Arundel* of *Wardour* Castle in *Wiltshire*, carried himself so gallantly, that forcing the Water-Tower, and taking thence with his own hands the *Turkish* Banner, the Emperour *Rodolphus* created him a Count of the Empire; and King *James* afterwards made him Lord *Arundel* of *Wardour*; but the *Christians* were not suffered to keep it long; for being many times after besieged by the *Turks*, who were resolved not to end the war without it, it was finally recovered by them, Anno 1605. 5 *Fiske-kirken*, in *Latine* called *Quinque Ecclesie*, from 5 Churches in it, a Bishops See, conceived to be the *Tentiburgium* of *Antoninus*; took by the *Turks*, Anno 1566. and giving them a great command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is seated. 6 *Sirmisch*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Saw*, or *Savus*, now noted for a vein of the best Wines, but otherwise of no estimation at the present, though heretofore of most account in all this Province; the *Metropolis* (as I conceive) of *Pannonia inferior*; the seat of the *Prefectus Pratoris Illyrie*, before the division of the Empire, honoured with the personal residence of many of the Emperours, and made in those respects, the Stage of many great and memorable actions. For here *Vetricano*, or *Bretanio* as others call him, took on himself the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperour, by the *Illyrian* Souldiers, lying here in Garrison: here being deserted by his own Souldiers, he submitted himself unto *Constantinus*, the Son of *Constantine the Great*; here *Gratian* the Emperour, Son of *Valentinian* the first, was born. And finally here was held a Council against *Photinus*, Bishop of this City, who held, that *CHRIST* had no existence of God the Father, till he was conceived and born of the Virgin, which Tenent being contrary as well to that of the *Arian*, as the *Orthodox* Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the said *Constantinus* (who was then in person) Anno 356. 7 *Zigath*, a strong Town situate in a marshy ground, on the North side of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, Anno 1566. who there ended his dayes. 8 *Murs*, upon the confluence of the *Dra*, and the *Danow*, once a Roman Colony, and as remarkable in the stories of elder times; as 9 *Belgrade*, on the confluence of the *Saw* and the *Danow*, hath been in the later. This last Town of divers names, first called *Taurunum*, or *Taurinum*; after, *Alba Græca*; by the *Dutch* accordingly *Greiche Wessenburg*; by the *French* and modern *Latinists*, *Belgrade*, and *Belgradum*, from the beautiful situation of it, hemmed in upon the North, with the *Danow*, on the East, with the *Saw*; on the other sides defended with strong walls, deep ditches, and impregnable Ramparts. Belonging anciently to the *Despots of Serbia*, by whom consigned over to *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, as best able to keep it; the *Despots* being satisfied with lands and territories of a better value. The *Bulgars* heretofore of *Christendoms* against the *Turks*, who received before it many great and notable repulses; (of which the most memorable were those of *Amurath* the second, and *Mahomet* firnamed the Great;) taken at last to the great loss and shame of the *Christian* world, not succouring the defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, Anno 1520. Then on the North side of the River, in the *Upper Hungary*, there is 10 *Pesth*, over against *Buda*, on the River *Danow*. 11 *Colocza*, an Archbishops See, on the same River also. 12 *Zegedin*, on the West side of the River *Tibiscu*. 13 *Agria*, an old Bishops See, and strongly fortified, having a great command over all those parts of the Countrey; in vain besieged by *Haly* the *Bassa* of *Buda*, with an Army of 36000 *Turks* in the time of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, Anno 1552. But taken by *Mahomet* the 3d, himself lying at the siege in person, Anno 1578. not far from which, immediately after the taking of *Agria*, *Mahomet* gave the *Christians* so great an overthrow, that if he had pursued his Victory, it is thought that he had finished the conquest of *Hungary*; as on the other side the *Turks* were so worsted, and disordered (*Mahomet* himself, and most of his Commanders flying out of the field) that had the *Christians* followed the chase, and not betook themselves to the spoil of the Camp, they had in probability for ever freed the Kingdom from the *Turkish* Tyranny. This battel, from a Village near unto which it was fought, called the battel of *Keresztur*, a battel of so strange a fortune, that the Conquerors were driven out of the field, and the vanquished Army ran away with the victory. 14 *Hatroan*, a very strong Town, and as strongly garrisoned, recovered by the *Christians* after two long sieges, and many sharp assaults, Anno 1558. and presently again abandoned, upon the noise of *Mahomet*s coming into *Hungary* with a dreadful Army. 15 *Temeswar*, on the East of that River towards *Transylvania*; the ordinary residence of a *Turkish* *Bassa*. 16 *Gyula*, a strong Town on the borders of *Transylvania*, betrayed by *Nicholas Kereken* Governour hereof, in the last year of *Solyman*, on a promise of some great reward. But *Selimus* the Son of *Solyman* caused him to be put into a barrel stuck full of nails, with the points turned inwards, and so to be tumbled up and down, till he (most miserably) died: there being on the Barrel this Inscription written; viz. Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and Treason; Gyula thou soldst for gold; if thou be not faithfull to Maximilian thy natural Lord, neither wilt thou be true to me. 17 *Singidon*, on the South of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the fields of *Maron*, memorable for the slaughter of 50000 *Turks*, slain here in battel, under the fortunate conduct of John *Hunlades*.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey on the North side of the *Danow*, and the West of the *Tisse*, or *Tibiscus*, wherethe *Iazyges*, *Metanasse*; and on the East side of the *Tisse*, the *Daci*; known, but not conquered by the *Romans*: on the South of the *Danow* the *Pannonies* (by some called the *Panes*) subdivided into the *Azull*, *Latovici*, *Werciani*, *Tassil*, *Oferiatis*, and some others inhabiting the West

parts

parts thereof, or *Pannonia Superior*, and the *Ercuneeles*, *Brouci Arvufci*, and *Scordisci*, dwelling in the Eastern parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. First conquered by the *Romans*, Anno U. C. 719 L. *Cornificius*, and *Sextus Pompeius*, being *Consuls*; but many times rebelling, and not fully subdued till 40 years after the insurrection of *Bato*, being then crushed by *Augustus Caesar*, and thereby the whole Province seised in obedience. Divided first into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Scavia* and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued, till subdued by the *Huns*, a people not heard of in the time of the *Roman* greatness, unless we take them, as some do, for the *Chuni* of *Ptolomy*. But being those *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Bessarna*, and the *Roxolani*, on the South-west of *Borysthenes*, I see not how to fit that dwelling unto the *Huns*, who were shut up within the *Pennis* of *Palas Meotis*; and by all the Writers of those times accounted for a Nation not so much as heard of, when they first set footing into *Europe*. Letting that therefore pass as an improbable and ill-grounded conjecture, certain it is, that from the *Fenn*-Countries of *Asia*, on the other side of the *Tanais*, they came first into *Europe*: living in their own Countrey a poor and miserable life, till God thought fit to make use of them as a scourge, to chastise the *Christians* of the West, then grown luxurious, and almost incorrigible by too much felicity; and to that end miraculously opened them a passage, never found before. For having neither mind nor meaning to invade the *Roman* Empire, which possibly they had not heard of; nor knowing how to clear themselves of that uncomfortable Countrey in which they dwelt; it pleased the great disposer of all things, by following an *Hart* or *Stag* which they had in chase, to shew them a safe passage into *Europe*, through the *Fenns* of *Meotis*; which before they thought to be unpassable. The report made by those Hunters at their coming back, of the rich and pleasant Land which they had so fortunately discovered; invited the chief heads of their *Clans*, with all the several *Rascallies* depending on them, to flock into *Europe*: into which they fell so suddenly and unexpectedly, that they forced the *Goths*, then dwelling on the North side of the *Ister*, to fly over that River, and supplicate to the Emperour *Valens* for new habitations. This hapned in the year 373. *Athanaricus* the second, or *Ermanaricus* (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Goths*, and *Balamir*, Captain of the *Huns*. Fleshed with this victory, *Balamir* or *Balhemler*, (as *Siebert* calls him) takes the name of King, Anno 386. or thereabout; and following the course of the *Ister* towards this *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at; found a great Army raised on the other side of the River, of purpose to encounter with him: commanded by *Detricus* General for the *Roman* Army, and *Macrinus* (or *Matrinus*) Commander in chief of the *Pannonians*. Both Generals presuming too much on the depth and wideness of the River, and knowing well that the *Huns* had neither Boat nor Ship to pass them over; betook themselves unto their rest, with too much security. But the *Huns*, to the number of 100000, having crossed the River upon bladders, fell on the quarters of the *Romans*, whom they slew like sheep. *Macrinus* after this fought two battels with them, in the first whereof he was victorious, there being lost on both sides about 30000 men: but in the second being slain, and his Army routed, the *Huns* possessed themselves of both *Pannonias*; buying this Victory with the loss of 40000 men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Bleda* and *Attila* his Sons succeeded, Anno 436. and *Bleda* dying also in the year 450. left *Attila* sole King of the *Huns*, that great scourge of the *Christian* world; who having first waited *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperour *Theodosius* the second, to buy his peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of Gold, and an yearly Tribute. Invited afterwards by *Geisfricus* King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, to war upon the *Goths* of *Spain*, (out of which Countrey they had driven him) he forced his way, through all the Nations betwixt him and *Gaul*; and beating down all the Towns and Fortresses on the River *Rhene*, on that side of the *Roman* Empire, entered that Province in the reign of the 3d *Valentinian*: divided at that time betwixt the *Romans*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Goths* of *Spain*. Discomfited by *Attilus*, and the Kings of those Nations then in league against him, in that famous battel near *Tholouse* spoken of before, (with the loss of 180000 of his men,) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where he lacked *Aquileia*, *Millain*, *Vincenia*, *Pavie*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of Pope *Leo*: committing in all places such unspeakable cruelties, that he was always after called (as he styled himself) *Malleus or'is*, and *Flagellum Dei*. Returning home he picked a quarrel with *Marciannus* the Eastern Emperour, as if the tribute promised him by *Theodosius*, had not been well paid. But being pacified for the present, and mindfull of his former project upon the *Goths*; he resolved once again to try his fortune with that people; and was again defeated by them under the conduct of *Thorismund*, the third King of the *Visigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and so returned ingloriously to his Countrey. Cloaked after with his own blood, violently breaking out at his nostrils, on his wedding night; he left *Pannonia* to his Sons named *Hernac*, *Aladurins*, and *Chaba*: who disagreeing amongst themselves about the Kingdom, gave an advantage to the *Goths*, then possessed of *Dacia*, to make themselves masters of this also; scarce thorough warm in their new Estates, when sent by *Zeno* the Emperour into *Italy* against *Odoacer*, where they finally seised. After this time we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*, or any where of the *Huns* at all; unless acting under the *Avars*, or joyning with them in the name of *Hun-Avaria*, as some think they did.

The Countrey being thus left to the next Invader, was presently possessed by the *Longobards*, said to be originally of *Scandia*, and there called *Winnili*, (and of the *Winniloth* in *Scandia*, *Jornandes* speaketh) afterwards ob *longas barbas* *Longobardi*. But concerning this last name, take along with you this old *Witte* tale, recited but not approved of by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals* warring upon the *Winnili*, went unto *Godidan* (he should rather have said *Woden*) to sue for the victory: which the *Winnili* hearing, wrought by countermine, and sent *Gambata* the mother of their King *Ajon*, on the like business to *Frea*

- 1191 17 *Emaricus*, Son of *Bela* the 3d.
 1201 18 *Ladislaus* II. Son of *Emaricus*, reigned but 6 months, being slain by treason, very young, and without issue.
 1201 19 *Andrew* II. Son of *Bela* the 3d, and brother of *Emaricus*.
 1236 20 *Bela* IV. Son of *Andrew* the 2d.
 1271 21 *Stephen* IV. Son of *Bela* the 4th.
 1273 22 *Ladislaus* III. Son of *Stephen* the 4th.
 1290 23 *Andrew* III. nephew to *Bela* the 4th, by his Brother *Stephen*.
 1302 24 *Charles*, surnamed *Martel*, Son of *Charles* King of *Naples*, by *Mary*, daughter to *Stephen* the 4th, against whom was chosen *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, Son of *Wenceslaus* the second, and of *Anne* his wife, daughter of *Bela* the fourth, and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, descended from *Elizabeth*, another of the daughters of *Bela* the fourth, chosen also by a faction against *Wenceslaus*. But *Wenceslaus* surrendering his claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after forced to renounce his title; *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole.
 1343 25 *Ludovicus*, Nephew to *Charles Martel* by his Son *Carlbert*, succeeded King of *Poland* also, in right of *Elizabeth* his Mother, Sister of *Casimir* the 2d.
 1383 26 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, descended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Mary*, daughter of *Stephen* the 4th, before mentioned, by their Son *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger brothers of *Charles Martel*; poisoned after a short reign by the widow of the former King, to make a way for her daughter to the Crown.
 1387 27 *Sigismund*, Emperour, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Luxembourg*, succeeded in right of *Mary* his wife, eldest daughter of *Lewis* or *Lodovicus*; her younger sister *Edwige* being Queen of *Poland*.
 1438 28 *Albert* of *Austria*, Emperour and King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his wife, the daughter of *Sigismund*.
 1440 29 *Ladislaus*, or *Uladislaus*, Son of *Jagello* King of *Poland*, in the minority of *Ladislaus* the Son of *Albert*, chosen King of *Hungary*; unfortunately slain at the battle of *Varna*, with 30000 of his people: and perhaps his perjury might deserve it. For having made and sworn a Truce with the *Turk*; the Pope's Legate upon a seeming advantage, absolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the field. At the beginning the *Christians* had the better; but at the last, *Amurath* the 2d, against whom they fought, lifting up his eyes to heaven, and desiring *Christ* to look upon the perfidious dealing wherewith his followers had dishonored him; re-encouraged his men, and to got the victory.
 1444 30 *Ladislaus* V. King of *Bohemia*, the Son of *Albert*, by *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Sigismund*, and *Mary*.
 1458 31 *Matthias Corvinus*, Son of the famous *Hunniades*, after the death of *Ladislaus* the 5th, King of *Hungary*.
 1491 32 *Uladislaus* II, or *Ladislaus* VI. Son of *Casimir* the 4th of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the daughter of *Albert*, succeeded in the Kingdoms of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*; his three younger brothers successively in that of *Poland*.
 1517 33 *Ludovicus* II. King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, both born and dead before the ordinary course of nature: in the 21 year of his age, and the 12th of his Reign, unfortunately drawn into the field, to encounter *Solyman* the Magnificent, one of the hardiest Captains in his time. The battle was fought at a Village called *Mogachz*, or *Mugace*, just betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*; in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were slain, and the young King drowned in the flight. A most lamentable discomfiture. *Lewis* thus reared, *John Sepusio*, Vayvod, or Governour of *Transylvania*, was by the States chosen King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, and brother unto *Charles* the 5th, challenged the Kingdom in right of *Anne* his wife, daughter to *Uladislaus*, and sister to *Lewis*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. On this pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his Competitor, who to recover his right, called *Solyman* the Magnificent into the Countrey, who took so fast footing in it, that his Successors could never since be removed.
 1527 34 *John Sepusio*, Vayvod of *Transylvania*, chosen King upon the death of *Ludovicus* the 2d, oured by *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, restored by *Solyman* the great *Turk*, died *An. 1540*. after whose death the *Hungarians* caused his Son *Stephen* an Infant, to be Crowned King in his Cradle, of which immediately deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who under colour of preserving that Kingdom for him, seized *Buda*, and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himself.
 1540 35 *Ferdinand* of *Austria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in respect to the Lady *Anne* his wife, sister of *Ludovicus* the 2d, *Anno 1527*. did in the same right lay claim to the Crown of *Hungary*, chosen to which by a party prepared for him; he was always in contention with *John de Sepusio*; each of them acknowledged King by their several factions; but by both sides received on the death of *John*.
 1562 36 *Maximilian*, Emperour, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Ferdinand*.
 1572 37 *Rodolphus*, Emperour, &c. Son of *Maximilian*.
 1608 38 *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperour.

1618 39 Fer-

- 1618 39 *Ferdinand* II. of *Gratz*, next heir unto *Matthias* of the house of *Austria*, afterwards Emperour, &c. against whom a party of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlen Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, whom they elected for their King, intending (as they said) to crown him also. But the affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperours side, *Gabor* relinquished his pretensions, and hearkened to a peace betwixt them.
 1625 40 *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the 2d, chosen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627. King of *Bohemia* also, succeeding after him in the Empire, and now living *Anno 1648*.

This Kingdom doth pretend it self to be *Elective*, and to have special *Privileges* indulged them by their former Princes; and anciently indeed it was so in both respects, the last especially: King *Andrew* giving authority to his *Prelates*, *Peers*, and other people, *ut sine nota alicujus infidelitatis, &c.* that without any imputation of disloyalty, they might contradict, oppose, and resist their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their liberty of *Elections*, and pretence of *Privileges*, had been so shaken and restrained by their Kings of the house of *Austria*, that the *Electors* are become a matter of formality only, their *Privileges* depending wholly on their Princes pleasure: now grown too potent for them to contend withall, unless they should betray their Countrey into the hands of the *Turk*. To which some of them have expressed some strong inclinations; the oppressions laid upon them by the *Austrian* Family being deemed unsufferable.

The Forces of this Kingdom when it was entire, may best be seen by those great Armies which they have brought into the field against the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being since subdued, that which remains must not be thought able to answer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be reasonably expected from it. For at the battle of *Keresztur*, *Anno 1596*. there were 6000 *Hungarian* horse, and 10000 Foot of this Nation only; besides those of *Germany* and *Transylvania*: and the next year, notwithstanding the discomfiture of that Army, they raised no less than 20000 horse and foot, on the noise of some preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true, their foot are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince, than unto the people: who can but bring their bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Countrey. And for their Horse (whom they call *Heiducks*) maintained in continual readiness, at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Cousins to the *Cosacques*, almost as mischievous as they, and hold as strict intelligence with the *Turks*, as those do with the *Tartars*.

The chief Revenues of this Kingdom come from the *Silver Mines*, out of which is yearly raised about a million and a half of *Guldens*. *Maximilian* the 2d made it up two millions, by seizing on the lands of *Cathedral* and *Collegiate* Churches; and assigning annual Penions to the Bishops, Canons, and other Religious persons. Most of which sum comes clearly to the Emperours *Coffers*, the *Presidary* Souldiers being paid with *Contribution* Money, raised upon the Countrey; and the Lieutenant General, whose entertainment comes to 30000 *Dollars* yearly, defrayed upon their purses also.

The chief Order of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, was that of the *Dragon*, instituted by *Sigismund* Emperour and King hereof; at such time as by the Council of *Constance*, against *John Hus*, and *Hierom* of *Prague*, and by the sharpness of his Sword proved upon their followers, he had cast down (as he conceived) the *Dragon* of *Herese* and *Schism*. But the device proved of no long continuance, expiring almost with the Author.

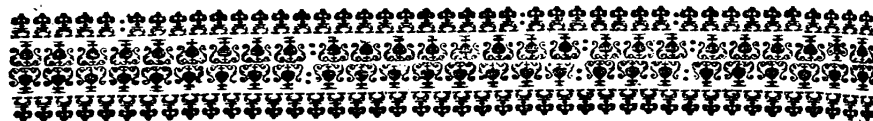
The Arms of *Attila* the *Hun*, once the King of this Countrey by the name of *Pannonia*, are said to have been *Gules*, a Falcon displayed *Or*, membered and crowned *Argent*. But the Arms of the Kingdom at this time, are Barre-wife of 8 pieces, *Gules* and *Argent*.

There are in HUNGARIE

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.

And so much for HUNGARIE.

OF



OF SCLAVONIA.



SCLAVONIA is bounded on the East, with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*; from which parted by the River *Drinus*, and a line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*; on the West, with *Carniola* in *Germany*, and *Histria* in the Signeury of *Venice*; from which last divided by the River *Arfia*; on the North, with *Hungary*; on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Slaves* or *Slavi* a *Sarmatian* people, of whom more anon.

It contains in length from *Arfia* to the River *Drinus*, according to *Plinius* computation, 800 *Italian* miles; the greatest breadth being 325 of the same miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more than 480 miles; who may be reconciled with *Pliny*, by supposing this, that these last measure in a strait and direct line from River to River; and that *Pliny* coasted by the Creeks and Reaches of the *Adriatick*. Situate in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle *Parallels* of the sixth and seventh *Climates*; so that the longest day in Summer is about 15 hours and an half.

The Country is generally fruitfull of all these Commodities, which are found in *Italy*, to which little inferior: yielding not only *Wine*, and *Oyl*, in very good plenty, but good store of Cattel, and of wilde Beasts of pleasure no want at all; some rich veins also of *Gold* and *Silver*. The Northern parts are mountainous, cold, for the most part lying under *Snows*, not capable of *Wine*, or any the like productions which require much heat. But even these mountainous parts afford very good Pasturage, and breed a wealthy race of Sheep, which bring forth young twice a year, and are shorn four times. Nor doth the Sea Coasts come behind in advancing the profit of the people, not only yielding store of Fish, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The people are courageous, proud, stubborn and untractable, of strong bodies, and able constitutions, fit for works of drudgery; and so employed by the *Venetians*, when first brought under their command: who using them in all servile offices both at home and abroad, occasioned the neighbouring Nations to call their *Villains* or *Bond-servants*, as they of *Venice* did, by the name of *Slaves*; that being originally as to this people, the name, not of their condition, but of their Ancestors and Country.

The *Christian* Faith was first here planted, I mean in reference to this people, who do now inhabit it about the time of *Charls* the Bald, Emperour of the West, Anno 877. *Sacropolis* being the first of their Kings, who embraced the Gospel. But lying in the mid-way of *Greece* and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the *Greek* Church, are both allowed of: that of the *Greeks* being as prevalent in the East parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Western. But here it is to be observed, that though this people, according to their division into East and West, follow the Rites and Ceremonies of those several Churches; yet on both sides, it is indulged them to celebrate Divine Offices in their natural Language, contrary to the usage of the Church of *Rome* in all places else. And yet the People are not all of the *Christian* Faith, the *Turkish* and *Mahometan* prevailing in those Towns, and Territories, under their obedience.

But though they be not of one Religion, they are all of one Language; which is the old *Sarmatian* (or *Slavonian*) Tongue, generally spoken in the Empire of *Russia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, some part of *Hungary*, *Histria*, *Slavonia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, (both in *Asia*) and by all the Captains, Officers, and other Souldiers of the *Turkish* Empire: the Language generally spreading over all those Countreys, which either were *Sarmatian* in their first original, or made theirs by conquest under the united name of *Slaves*; or otherwise intermixt with them by the necessity of commerce and trade, or dispatch of their common businesses. Inasmuch as taking in the subdivisions of the Princes and Countries before specified, it is affirmed by *G. J. J. J.* a right learned man, that there

there are no fewer than 60 Nations, which have the *Slavonian* Tongue for their Vulgar Language. *Windischland*.

Chief Mountains in this Countrey are those called *Scardonici* (from *Scardona*, one of the best Towns of *Illyria*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the midst, and extending along the Coasts thereof; by *Polomy* called *Arduum*. Of Rivers those of special note amongst the Ancients, were 1 *Titius*, now *Variecha*, separating *Illyria* from *Dalmatia*. 2 *Arfia*, now *Arfa*, the utmost bound upon the West; as 3 *Drinus* is upon the East: of which the first falleth into the Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Golfo di Quervo*, (Sinnus *Flanaticus* by the Ancients;) the other into the *Sav* or *Savus*, somewhat west of *Belgrade*. 4 *Narfe*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurus*.

The Boundaries and Landmarks being thus set out, I should proceed to the division of the Countrey as now it standeth. But I must first look on it as it stood in the time of the *Romans*: in whose time that part of the whole Province which lay from the River *Arfia* to the *Titius*, was named *Lilarnia*, and *Illyria*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinus*, was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Illyrians* being the stoutest and more warlike people, and such as created greatest troubles to the *Romans*, it pleased the Conquerours when they had fully subdued both Nations, to call the whole Countrey by the name of *Illyricum*: and not so only, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the *Diocese* of *Thrace* excepted) which lay between the *Alps* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Danow*: for so far the Jurisdiction of the *Præfatus* *Prætoris* of *Illyricum*, did at first extend. *Enic* *Præfatus* (saith *Zosimus*) *Constantinus ejus institutor*, *Macedones attribuit*, *Thessalos*, *Cretenses*, *Graciam*, & *circumjacentes insulas*, *Epirum miramque*, *Illyricos*, *Dracos*, *Triballos*, & *Pannonios*, *Valerianusque* & *Myssiam superiorem*. And that all these did then pass by the name of *Illyricum*, appeareth as well by that of *Pollio* in the life of *Claudius* the second, expressly saying, *Illyricum*, *Thraciam*, *Myssos*, *Dacos*, *Dalmatias* & *Pannonias continet*; as by that of *Socrates* the Historian, who lib. 32. cap. 10. calleth *Sirmium*, the chief Town of *Pannonia Inferior*, & lib. 5. cap. 6. *Thessalonica*, the chief City of *Macedon*, *Urbes Illyricas*, or *Illyrian Cities*. By which account *Illyricum* in the largest extent of that name, contained no less than 18 Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; that is to say, 1 *Noricum* *Mediterraneum*, 2 *Noricum* *Ripense*, 3 *Pannonia Superior*, 4 *Pannonia Inferior*, 5 *Valeria*, 6 *Savia*, 7 *Dalmatia*, 8 *Myssia superior*, 9 *Dardania*, 10 *Dacia Mediterranea*, 11 *Dacia Ripensis*, 12 *Macedonia*, 13 *Thessaly*, 14 *Achaia*, 15 *Crete*, 16 *Epirus vetus*, 17 *Epirus Nova*, and 18 *Prevalitana*. These 18 Provinces being cast or made up into three *Dioceses*, viz. the *Diocese* of *Illyricum*, specially so called, containing the seven first; 2ly, the *Diocese* of *Macedon*, containing the seven last; and 3ly, the *Diocese* of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four: were governed by the *Præfatus* *Prætoris* for *Illyricum*, who had first his chief seat and residence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the division of the Empire betwixt the Sons of *Theodosius* the Great, into the *Eastern* and *Western*: the *Diocese* of *Illyricum* specially so called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the *Western* Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfatus* *Prætoris* of *Italy*; and thereupon the seat or residence of the *Prætoris* *Præfatus* for *Illyricum*, removed from *Sirmium* unto *Thessalonica*. So that we are now to look upon *Illyricum* in a stricter notion, as a *Diocese* of the *Western* Empire, containing the seven Provinces before specified, whereof both *Noricum*, both *Pannonias*, and *Valeria* (if at least *Stermach* be that *Valeria*, as some say it is) have been described already in their proper places. There now remain only *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be spoken of: the first containing all those parts of this Countrey lying on both sides of the *Savus* (whence it had the name); the last, those parts hereof which lye towards the Sea, known by the ancient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyria* properly so called, being added to it. But as new Lords give new Laws, so they give new Names. The Countrey being divided by the *Slavi* in two Kingdoms, viz. of *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*; of which the first contained the Province of *Savia*, the last took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia*, bounded as before, but keeping the name of *Slavonia* to it self alone; being indeed the only Province in which the name and memory of the *Slavi*, is retained amongst us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at last it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*, we find it subdivided into these six parts; that is to say, 1 *Windischland*, 2 *Croatia*, 3 *Bosnia*, 4 *Dalmatia*, 5 *Lilarnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6 the *Slavonian Islands*.

1. WINDISCHLAND.

WINDISCHLAND is bounded on the East, with part of the *Lower Hungary*, from which on a little River which falls into the *Savus*; on the West, with *Carniola*, or *Krain*, a Province of the Archdukedom of *Austria*; on the North, with the River *Dravus*; on the South, with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch* as the Land or Countrey of the *Wintshi*, or *Vendi*, the greatest Nation of the *Slaves*, whom generally they call by the name of *Windisch*: and anciently for so much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus*, accounted part of *Pannonia inferior*, as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*; till conquered by the *Slaves*, and laid unto their possessions; from whom named *Windischland*, as before. Places of most importance in it are 1 *Windisch-greits*, seated on the *Dravus*, the *Pinnadria* and *Vindomana* of the Ancients. 2 *Saguna*, near unto the *Savus*. 3 *Gradiska*, on the South, and 4 *Zigabris*, on the North of the same River: from which last a great part of this Countrey is called *Comitatibus Zagabrisiis*. 5 *Novigrad*, on the *Savus* also, but more near to *Germany*. 6 *Petrova*, situate at the foot of the Mountains, which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*, and dwelt *Hungary* from *Slavonia*. 7 *Sisse*, or *Sissakben*, (the *Sissa* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus*) situate on the *Sam*, over against *Zigabris*, where it receiveth the River *Zulp*; famous for the notable resistance which the *Turks* there found, Anno 1593. Who hoping by the conquest of this Province, to open a free passage into *Germany*, entered it

Croatia, &c. it with a puissant Army, (having in their way taken the Castle of *Ostrowitz*,) and the strong Town of *Wibits* in *Croatia*) and late down very strongly intrenched before this Town. But the Town held it out most gallantly against all their batteries and assaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to succour them: by whom 8000 of the *Turks* were slain in the place, and most of the rest drowned in the River *Savus*, as they fled hastily, and (through that great haste) blindly, from the Sword of the Conquerour.

This Province, for the most part, is under the Princes of the house of *Austria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged: those parts of it which lye next to *Hungary*, on the North and East, groaning under the tyranny and bondage of the *Turkish* Garrisons.

2. CROATIA.

CROATIA is bounded on the North, with *Windischland*, from which parted by the River *Una*, or *Wana*; on the East, with *Bosnia*; on the South, with *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*; on the West, with *Carniola*. The reason of the name I find not among my Authors; but only it was imposed by the *Slaves* at their first coming hither: who comprehended under this name all the Inland parts of *Slavonia*, from the Mountain *Arduum* to *Pannonia*; including *Bosnia* and *Windischland*, though distinguished afterwards.

The Country for the most part cold, mountainous and hilly, overspread by the branches of the Mountains *Babii*, spoken of by *Plutomy*; yet reasonably fruitful, stored with all necessary provisions for the life of man: and would yield more increase and profit both to Lord and Tenant, were it not for the ill neighbourhood of the *Turks*; to whose tyranny and oppressions it hath been, and is still exposed. The people for the general are held to be good Souldiers, mentioned in our modern stories by the name of *Crabats*.

Chief Towns in it are, 1 *Masch* or *Musht*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Aleta* of the Ancients. 2 *Ostrowitz*, a strong Fort of the same Frontire. 3 *Wibits*, by the *Dutch* called *Bibigen*, by the Ancients *Ennium*, the *Metropolis* or chief place of the Country, encompassed like an Island by the River *Una*, and fortified with strong works by the help of Art: but taken by the *Turk*, Anno 1592. and all the Souldiers in it cruelly murdered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the surrendry. 4 *Zeng*, 5 *Warkat*, 6 *Tarnan*, 7 *Modrisch*, of which little memorable.

This Country, with the rest included anciently under this name, was one of the two Kingdoms of *Slavonia*; the Princes whereof were usually entituled Kings of *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*. In the year 1007. the *Venetians* having before possessed themselves of some Towns on the Sea-side, first set footing there. How the whole Country of *Slavonia* came to the Crown of *Hungary*, shall be shewn anon. Held, part of it in the right thereof, by the house of *Austria*; part of it by the *Turks* in the way of conquest: the *Venetians* having now no share in it, for ought I can find.

3. BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the East, with *Servia*, a Province of *Dacia*; on the West, with *Croatia*; on the North, with the River *Savus*, and the East parts of the *Lower Hungary*; on the South, with *Dalmatia*. So called, as some think, from the River *Bosna*, which runneth through it; as others, from the *Bessi* a people of *Dacia*, driven out of their Country by the *Bulgari*, and removing hither; by the change of a Vowel called *Bessi*, whence the Country *Bosnia*.

Places of most importance in it are 1 *Jatza*, by the *Latines* called *Jazyga*, situate on the top of an high Hill, at the bottom whereof almost encompassed with two Rivers, which there uniting pass from thence unto the *Savus*. The Town, by reason of the rocky præcipes of the Hill, the unfordableness of the River, and an inaccessible Castle, held to be impregnable: the *Metropolis* in former times of this petit Kingdom, and the ordinary sepulture for the Kings thereof. 2 *Warbosoni*, at this time the chief Town of the Country, but not walled about. 3 *Cazach*, the usual residence or retiring place of the *Bosnian* Kings. 4 *Schwanica*, not much observable. 5 *Dorobiza*, the first Town taken by *Mahomet* the Great in his conquest of this Kingdom; as 6 *Clyssa* was the last; the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken in it.

This Country, anciently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*; under the Patronage and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdom: but the precise time when, I find not. Some say, about the year 1420. If so, a Kingdom of late date, and short continuance. For in the year 1464. *Mahomet* the Great, first Emperor of the *Turks*, having taken *Constantinople*, and almost all the rest of *Greece*, cast his eye upon it, suddenly surprised it: and having taken *Stephen* the last King hereof, most barbarously commanded him to be dead alive. After whose death this Kingdom was converted to a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, and governed by one of the *Bassa's* of it; as it still continueth.

4. DALMATIA.

DALMATIA is bounded on the East, with *Albania*, from which parted by the River *Drino*; on the West, with the *Titius* (now *Varitcha*) which divides it from *Liburnia*; on the North, with *Bosnia*; on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Slavonia*, retaineth its ancient name and bounds. So called from *Dalminium* the chief Town hereof in the time of the *Romans*, from

from which the people were called *Dalmatae*, and the Countrey *Dalmatia*.

The Country in the time of the *Romans* was full of woods, and those woods of *Robbers*, who from thence issued out to make spoil and booty. *Dalmata sub sylvis agunt, inde ad latrocinia promptissimi*, saith the Historian. And by the advantage of these woods, they intercepted and discomfited *Gabinus*, one of *Caesar's* Captains, marching through their Country with 1000 horse, and 15 Companies of foot towards *Macedonia*, to the aid of his General against *Pompey*. But their woods being destroyed, they became more peaceable; and in stead of *Robberies* by Land, began to exercise themselves at Sea in the way of Merchandizing, to which their large Sea-coasts and commodious Havens served exceedingly fitly.

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Sebenic*, on the Sea-side, not far from the influx of *Titius* or *Varitcha*: by *Plutomy* called *Sicum*, in whose time a Colony of *Roman* Souldiers was sent hither by the Emperor *Claudius*. 2 *Salona*, a *Roman* Colony also, one of the *Juridical Resorts* for these parts of the Province, and the ordinary *Arsenal* for their Natives. Renowned in ancient stories for the retreat of *Diocletian*, a Native of this Country: who having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much felicity, but a great deal of cruelty, deposed himself, and retired to this City; where he followed the trade of a *Gardener*, working with his own hands, and observing with great content the productions of nature. Inasmuch that when *Maximianus Hercules* his associate (who at his persuasion had done the like) invited him to resume the Empire, he returned this answer; *Utinam possit visere olera nostris manibus plantata*, &c. that if he would come unto *Salona*, and see how well the *Wort* which he had planted with his own hands, did thrive and prosper, he would never trouble his head with Crowns, nor his hands with Scepters: a rare expression of a settled and contented mind. The name, and some of the ruins do still remain, to preserve the memory of so remarkable a place. 3 *Spalato*, East of *Sebenic*, a Sea Town, and an Archbishops See, who writes himself *Primate* of *Dalmatia*; as anciently and of right he was, till the Bishop of *Venice* being made a Patriarch by Pope *Eugenius* the 4th, Anno 1450. assumed that title to himself, together with a superintendency over all the Churches of this Country, as subordinate to him. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more than for *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, who seeming to loath the *Romish* superstition, came for refuge into *England*, Anno 1616. and having here both by preaching and writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what projects, he declared himself to be of another mind, Anno 1622. and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may say of him, as *Socrates* in his Ecclesiastical History saith of *Ecebolius*, who under *Constantinus*, was a Christian; under *Julian*, a Pagan; and a Caritian again under *Julianus*; τὸ αὐτὸ πρῶτον κτῆσθαι ἡννοῦντες, ὡς ἐπὶ τῷ ἑστέῳ. So wavering and unconstant a turn-coat was *Ecebolius* from his beginning to his end. But *Ecebolius* sped better than *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his repentance: but this insatiate man imprisoned in the Castle of *Angelo*, and his dead body burnt to ashes. A just reward for so great levity, and so gross Apostacy, as he had shewed unto the world in his going hence. 4 *Almissa*, the *Piguritium* of *Plutomy*, mounted on a high rock, and defended with an impregnable Castle. 5 *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and spacious *Chersonese*, not far from which the River *Naron*, (or *Narenta*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6 *Castle Novo*, a strong Fortress within the Gulf of *Catharo*, now in possession of the *Turks*. 7 *Antibari*, on the further or Eastern side of the Bay, an Archbishops See; but that and the Sees of his *Subfragan* Bishops, being seven in number, now in possession of the *Turks*. 8 *Catharo*, on the same side of the Bay, by *Plutomy* called *Ascrvium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a strong hold for the *Venetians* against the *Turks*, and giving name unto the Gulf: which, formerly called *Sinus Rhizoniscus*, from *Rhizonia* (now *Rhizini*) situate at the bottom of it, is at this time called from this Town, *Golfo de Catharo*. 9 *Ducigno*, by *Plutomy* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians*; And therefore called *Colchinum* by some ancient writers. 10 *Scutari*, more within the land, (the *Scodra* of *Plutomy* and *Antoninus*) strongly seated on a steep Rock, memorable for the stout resistance which it made for a whole year, against the whole puissance of *Mahomet* the 2d. battered for the most part of that time, with 70 pieces of Ordnance of wondrous bigness, especially that called the *Princes piece*, which carried a stone or bullet of 1200l. weight; but taken at the last, An. 1578. Not far from this Town, is the great Lake, called by *Strabo*, *Labeates*, now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compass, and environed on all sides with Mountains, except towards the North: out of which issue the *Drinus*, now called *Drino*, which parting *Slavonia* from *Macedon* and *Servia*, passeth into the *Savus*. 11 *Aleso*, the *Lissus* of *Plutomy*, the furthest Town of all *Dalmatia*, towards *Greece*; 3. memorable for the Grave of *Scanderberg*, who was buried here; whereof more hereafter. 12 *Medon*, raised out of the ruins of *Diocletian*, an ancient and famous City, the birth-place of the great Emperor *Diocletian*, spoken of before. 13 *Dalminium*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province, situate on the River *Drinus*; first sacked by *Marcus Fulvius*, a *Roman* Consul, An. C. 689. and after, on a new revolt by one *Nasica*, spoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two such ruins to revive again; nothing being now left of it, but the name and memory.

Between the *Chersonese* of *Stagno*, and the Gulf of *Catharo*, stands the town and territory of *RAGHUSI*; not subject, as all the rest are, either to the *Turk*, or to the *Venetians*, but governing themselves by their own Lawes and Magistrates, as a *Free Common-wealth*: paying only to the *Turk* 14000 *Zechins* yearly in a way of tribute, and as much in Presents; discharged in that regard of *Customs* and *Impositions*, in all his Dominions. It was anciently called *Epidaurus*, (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponnesus*.) But that Town being razed by the *Goths*, the Inhabitants (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themselves, built this in the place of it, at the foot of a steep Mountain; enjoying a pleasant situation near the Sea, with a little, but commodious Port; forced

Liburnia. out of the water, by the art and industry of workmen. The town well built, fortified with walls, and a well-furnished Castle; now an Archbishops See, and a noted *Empory*; rich, and strong in shipping, commanding over a small and barren territory within the land, and some pleasant *Islands* in the Sea. So that the riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues rising out of the *Earth*, but by the benefit of their traffick upon the *Waters*: secured therein by the protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other side preserved by the State of *Venice* from being a prey to their *Protektors*. Of more wealth heretofore, than they are at the present. At what time they traded to most parts of this Western world, in those great Vessels which from hence were called *Raguses*, but corruptly *Argosies*; the last of which (their number lessening with their trade) they lent unto the King of *Spain* for the war of *England*, *An.* 1588. in which action it was lost and wracked on the *Coast* of *Ireland*.

5 CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the Countrey of *Zara*, called antiently *Liburnia*, and *Illyris* specially so named, is bounded on the East, with *Dalmatia*; on the West, with *Histria*; on the North, with *Croatia*; and on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulph of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long discontinued) from *Zara*, the chief Town thereof, the *Jadra* of *Ptolemy* and the antients; a *Roman* Colony at that time, now an Archbishops see; enjoying a safe and large Port, and situate on a low *Chersonese* thrusting out like a *Promontory* into the *Adriatick*; belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom well fenced and fortified against foreign invasions. For the possession and command of this Town, there have been great wars betwixt the *Hungarians*, and the *Venetians*: to whom it seemeth to be of such importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns, of *Ladislaus* King of *Neples*, pretending against *Sigismund* of *Luxembourg* to the Crown of *Hungary*. In this Town is the Church of *S. John de Malvatin*, which was built by a company of *Sailors*; who being in a tempest, made a vow, that if they escaped, they would consecrate a Temple to *S. John de Malvatin*, whose mortar should be tempered with *Malmsey*; and accordingly they paid their vows. Far less did another Master of a ship intend to perform his promise, though he spoke bigger; who in a like extremity of danger, promised our *Lady* to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main mast of his ship. For when one of his mates jogging him, told him he had promised an impossibility: Tush fool (replied the Master) we must speak her fair in time of need; but if ever I come a shore, I will make her be content with a Candle of eight to the pound. And in a like fit of devotion was he, who on the same occasion plainly told God, That he was no common beggar, he never troubled him with prayers before; and if he would hear him that time, he would never trouble him again.

Other Towns herein considerable, are 1 *Albona*, retaining still the old name (the *Alvona* of *Ptolemy*) situate near the River *Arfis*, the divider of this Province from *Histria*. 2 *Flavona*, or *Flanona*, situate against the Gulph of *Quernero*, of old called *Sinus Flanaticus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongst *Sailors* for frequent tempests raised on every wind. 3 *Zegna*, by *Ptolemy* and *Pliny* called *Senia*, situate on a flat or level. 4 *Nona*, of old called *Senona*, compassed with the Sea. 5 *Serifia*, now a poor Village, in the place where stood the *Argyratum* of *Pliny*. 6 *Scardona*, now a mean Village also, heretofore of great note, and the *Juridical* Resort for the whole Province; from whence the neighbouring mountains had the name of *Scardonici*; the bounds of this Countrey and *Croatia*.

The antient name of this Countrey was *Liburnia*, as before is said, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium*, or *Scardonici*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividenda* of the whole *Illyricum*. The people hereof called by one general name *Liburni*, were much given to *Piracies*; and for their better speed therein, the Authors and Inventors of those swift vessels which were called *Liburnica*, and *Liburne*. Of which thus *Horace*,

*Ibis Liburnis inter alta navium
Amice propugnacula.*

That is to say:

In a *Liburnian* shalt thou be
Amongst the stoutest ships at Sea.

In imitation of which Vessels being swift and light, the *Romans* in the time of their wealth and pride, invented a kind of *Chair* or *Litter*, (such as those we call *Sedans*) wherein they were carried on mens shoulders with such ease and pleasure, that they could not only sleep or read, but write in them also: the Porters or Bearers of them of this Nation commonly; from whence, or from the fashion of the Vessel which they did resemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of these thus *Juvenal* in his third *Satyre*:

*Si vocat officium, turba cedente vehetur
Dives, & ingenti curret super ora Liburno.
Atque obiter leget, aut scribet, vel dormiet intus,
Namque facit somnum clausa leistica fenestra.*

Thus

Thus *Englished* by my honoured friend Sir *Robert Stapleton*, in his excellent translation of that harsh *Satyrist*.

When business calls, a crowd the rich man fluns,
And o'r mens heads in's huge *Sedan* he runs,
Reads, writes, and sleeps within it as he goes,
For sleep will come if he the curtains close.

Besides which office of *Chair-carriers* or *Sedan-men*, as we call them now; this people being, when once conquered, a servile Nation, furnished the *Romans* with those *Beadles*, whom they employed in calling the Citizens from the fields to their publick businesses; to which the same Poet alludeth, in the next *Satyre*, saying, *Clamante Liburno, Currite jam sedis, &c.* But to proceed, the nearness of this Countrey to the *Adriatick*, occasioned the Bay of *Quernero*, or *Cornaro* as some call it, commonly called *Sinus Flanaticus*, to be sometimes named *Sinus Liburnicus*; the parts of *Italy* on the other side of it, to be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and gave the name of *Liburnades* to a shoale of Islands lying on the coast hereof, 60 at least in number, as is said by *Strabo*. To which and other Islands of the *Adriatick*, we are now to hasten, leaving the story of *Illyricum* to the close of all.

6 The SCLAVONIAN ISLANDS.

ALong the Coasts of *Sclavonia*, lie a cluster of ISLANDS, to the number of a thousand, as is said by *Pliny*, most of which (if indeed so many) are but rocks, not Islands, or not inhabited at all, or of any note. The principal whereof, and such as deserve place here, are 1 the *Liburnades* before mentioned. 2 The *Abstrides*. 3 The Isles of *Ragusi*. 4 *Arbe*. 5 *Curzola*. 6 *Zara*. 7 *Lissa*, and *Braccia*; the rest not worth the looking after, as to our design: the whole number of the Inhabitants reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 persons.

1 The *LIBURNADES* said by *Strabo* to be 60 in number, lie all along the Coast of *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*. The chief whereof are 1 *ISSA*, now called *Paga*, containing 100 miles in compass, having a town of the same name; but in all that tract of ground not above 1500 Inhabitants, in the time of my Author, by reason of the sharp air, and great want of fuel. The Salt-pits here yield great commodity, not only to the people themselves, but also to the State of *Venice*, Supreme Lord hereof. 2 *Tragurium*, now *Trau* and *Trabu*, so called from the chief town hereof, built by those of *Issa*: so near the Continent, that it seems to be a part thereof. By *Mela* it is named *Tagurium*, with some little difference. 3 *Pharus*, so called from the *Pharii*, or *Parii*, of whom once a Colony, long since come to ruin. It is now called *Lexina*, the greatest of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150 miles in compass, and very fruitful for the biggles. It hath a town of the same name, which enjoys a safe and spacious Harbour; unwall'd, and of no great beauty, but fortified with a strong Castle, which commandeth both the Harbour and the shipping in it. The birth-place of *Demetrius Pharius*, so often mentioned in the stories of *Greece*, and *Rome*.

2 The *ABSTRIDES* are in number many, so called from the River *Abstrus*, which thereabout falls into the *Adriatick*; according unto that of *Lucan*.

Et cadit Adriacas spumans Abstrus in undas.

Abstrus foaming with his haste,
Into the *Adria* falls at last.

But whether that River were so called by the *Colchians* at their landing there, in memory of *Abstrus* the son of *Aetas* King of *Colchis*, whom they went to seek; or for some other reason, I determine not. Certain I am, it could not be so named from the scattering of his limbs hereabouts by *Medea* his unnatural sister, as is said by *Pliny*: that cruel fact being done on the shores of the *Enxins*; the place called *Tomos* afterwards upon that occasion. But for these Islands, being in number many, as before was said, two only are of special note, that is to say, 1 *Vegia*, or *Vegio*, not far from *Zegna* on the firm land, containing in compass betwixt 80. and 100 miles, and about 10000 Inhabitants; the most populous of all these Seas. It hath a town of the same name, with a very fair harbour: the Inland, by *Pliny*, called *Curieta*, the chief Towns of it in his time being *Psulfinium*, and *Curicum*. 2 *Alorus* as *Ptolemy*, *Abstrus* as *Pliny* calls it; in whose time it was one Island only, but now divided into two, by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the one of them is called *Cherso*, the other *Ostiro*: Both joynd together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both together making up 140 miles in compass; each of them having one town only, and that of the same name with the Island; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 5000 persons. Stored with sufficiency of corn, plenty of wine, and abundance of wood, great quantities whereof are sent yearly to *Venice*. They have also goodly herds of Cattel, and great flocks of sheep, affording by their flesh, wool, cheese, and butter, a good increase of profit to the owners of them.

Illyricum.

3 The Islands of *Ragus*, (for so I call them which belong to that Common-wealth) are but three in number. 1 *Gravosa*, a very pleasant place, full of Gardens of Oranges, Lemmons, and Pomegranates. 2 *Languste*, environed about with very high Mountains, in which are the *Ragusians* Farms, made rich by the great charge and industry of the several *Occupants*, so as to yield them wine, oil, and most excellent fruits: which they receive more plentifully from a goodly plain, situate in the midst hereof, and naturally more fruitful than the other parts. Near to this last Island is good fishing for *Sprats*: and in both an Art of making their trees to bring forth *Oysters*, by bending down their boughs, and staying them under the water with stones; so as in two years there are so many *Oysters* fattened unto them, as is strange to see, and in the third year they are very good meat. 3 *Melida*, lying betwixt *Ragus* and the Isle of *Curzola*, by *Pliny* called *Melita*, and on that ground supposed by some to be that Island on which *S. Paul* did suffer shipwrack, *Acts* 26. But the name of *Barbarous*, which the Text joyns to the Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Island betwixt *Greece* and *Italy*, in the times of *S. Paul*; and his landing when he parted thence into *Syracusa*, an Haven of *Sicily*, so far from this, so near unto the other *Melita*, which is now called *Malta*, sufficiently refell this fancy, though otherwise not improbably grounded.

4 Of those which are known only by one single name, the chief are *ARBE*, so called in the time of *Pliny*, from the best Town of it; but by *Plutomy* it is named *Scardona*. A pleasant Island, in compass about 30 miles, and containing some 3000 Inhabitants, the only Haven-less Isle of all the *Adriatick*; but that defect abundantly recompensed by the natural sweetness of the place. Which to enticed certain dissolute Rovers of *Austria*, that they seized upon it, *Anno* 1618. and had like to have occasioned an heavy war betwixt *Ferdinand*, Archduke, of the House of *Gratz* (not long after chosen King of the *Romans*) and the State of *Venice*; if *Philip* the 3d. of *Spain* had not made up the breach.

5 *CURZOLA*, by *Plutomy* and *Strabo* called *Corcyra*, or *Melana*, more rightly *Corcyra Melana*, or *Corcyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, in the Sea *Ionian*: the chief Town of it being of the same name, with the Island, was founded by the *Gnidians* of the Isle of *Crete*. Sufficiently fruitful, but of wine especially; 40 miles long, in compass 90. and very populous, for the biglyness; notwithstanding that the people being Sea-faring men, do much use the Seas, and build many ships. In the year 1571. a little after the taking of *Cyprus*, and before the battle of *Lepanto*, it was invaded by *Uluç Ali*, General of the *Turkish* Fleet, with a Navy of 60 Gallies: for fear of whom *Contarenius* the *Venetian* Governour, together with the Townsmen and Garrison Souldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town hereof. The lilly women thus forsaken, and preferring death before dishonour, defended the walls; and with fire, stones, and such other weapons as they had, they beat off the enemy: till at the last a violent tempest forced the *Turkish* General to remove his Gallies further off, to a place of safety.

6 *ZARA*, *LISSA*, *BRAZZIA*, three small Isles, not other wise memorable, but for their misfortunes; spoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from *Curzola*, who carryed thence 1600 *Christians* into cruel bondage. The rest I purposely omit, rather Rocks than Islands; barren and stony for the most part, and not much inhabited.

The antient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent of it, comprehending *Liburnia*, and *Dalmatia*, were the *Japodes* bordering on *Italy*; the *Scirtones*, or *Scirtary* confining upon *Macedon*; the *Ma-zai*, in the midst about *Salona*; the *Peirussa*, lying towards *Pannonia*; the *Dorrii*, *Ceraunii*, *Daurii*, *Vardi*, *Siculota*, *Sardiotae*, and others of inferior note: all making up the great and potent Nations of the *Liburnians* and the *Dalmatians*; and comprehended generally in the name of *Ilyrians*. Of these the *Liburnian Ilyrians*, (*Ilyrici seu Liburni*, as they are indifferently called by *Florus*) were the first who felt the Forces of *Rome*: which growing State they had provoked by their frequent Piracies; but more by murdering the *Ambassadors* which were sent unto them to require satisfaction; *Tenta* their Queen, a proud and Imperious Dame, commanding execution to be done upon them. Warr'd upon by the *Romans* for so many injuries, under the conduct of *Centimulus*, one of their *Consuls*, they were overthrown (as having more of the Pirate than the Souldier in them) some of their chief Nobility executed, in revenge of the wrong done to the *Ambassadors*; an yearly tribute imposed on them, and the Queen deprived of the greatest part of her Kingdom, conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Phariis*, one of their *Confederates*. But he proving unfaithfull to them in their war with *Hannibal* and *Gentius*, their last King, who commanded over *Illyricum*, siding against them with *Perseus*, King of *Macedonia*; *Anticus* the *Prator* is sent with a sufficient Army, to make an end of that work who: used such diligence therein, that *Scodra* the chief Town of the Kingdom, was taken; and the King himself, together with his wife and children made prisoners: by consequence the whole war ended, *antequam geri Romæ nunciaretur*, before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburnians* after that became quiet subjects, the whole Country, on the taking of *Gentius*, being made a Province of the *Romans*, *Anno* V. C. 586. employed at *Rome* in many servile offices, as before was said; and then the *Dalmatians* began to cast off the yoke. But *Dalminium* their chief City being first sacked by *Martius Figulus*, and after by *Nasica* before mentioned; they continued quiet and obedient till the time of *Augustus Caesar*, when they again rebelled at the instigation of one *Batto*, a man very potent with the people, who

Illyricum.

Who having ten years together maintained the liberty of his Country, at last broken and wearied by the forces of *Germanicus*, and *Tiberius*, he submitted himself unto the two *Generals*: who asking the reason of his revolt, were answered, because the *Romans* sent not *Shepherds* to keep, but wolves to devour their flocks. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman* Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy*, who brought it under his command; as the *Goths* also did having vanquished him, and thereby made themselves Masters of *Italy*, and the rest of his purchases. But the Kingdom of the *Goths* being brought to an end, by the good fortune of *Justinian*, and the valour of *Belisarius* and *Narsis*, two of his Commanders (but very ill requir'd by him) *Illyricum* became a part of the *Eastern* Empire: continuing under the power of the *Grecian* Emperours, till the time of *Phocas* that bloody Tyrant; when made a prey to the *Slaves*.

Of these though we have spoken before in several places, as their fortunes and affairs have led us; yet being this is the only country which preserves their name, we will here speak more exactly of them, than we have done hitherto; especially as to their manners, name, and first *Original*; and finally of their successes in this Country. And first for their *Original*, I take it for a thing past question that they were no other than natural *Sarmatians*, inhabiting on the North of the River *Ister*; uniting themselves under this name, in their undertakings and attempts on the *Eastern* Empire: as the many Nations of *Germany* took the name of *Frank*, and *Aman*, in their actions and achievements against the *Western*. But why they took this name rather than another, is not yet agreed on. Some fetch the *original* of it from *Slavo*, which in the *Slavonian* tongue signifieth a Speech or word, because they were all of one common language: others from *Slava*, signifying in that language Fame or Glory, in regard of that great fame and honour which they had achieved, by their successes on the Empire. But when I find a potent Nation of the *Winithi*, *Winuli*, or *Vendi*, a *Sarmatian* people, called *Slavini* by *Jornander*, possessed in his time of the further shores of the River *Ister*, opposite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*; and by that name waiting and foraging these Provinces, and other parts of that Empire in the time of *Justinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they did; I see no reason why we should look further for the name of *Slaves*, than from these *Slavini*. For having in the time of *Phocas* subdued this Country, and called it *Slavania*, or *Slavonia*, after their own name: by that and other fortunate successes on the *Eastern* Empire, and the honour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce the rest of the scattered tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite together with them both in name and action; and try their fortunes in the conquest of the West of *Europe*, as these had done already on the East parts of it. In which design they sped so well, that they became Masters of almost all those Countreys, which lie betwixt the River *Vistula*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick*, and the *Baltick*; communicating their language unto all the Provinces, and Nations, conquered by them; and to most, their manners, rites, and customs. Their Government at first by Kings, but so that the succession seldom held in a Race or Family; and those that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For having a Law amongst themselves, that he who killed a Tyrant should succeed in his place: they had few Kings whom some other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and then dispatch him out of the way; that a greater Tyrant than himself (as it commonly happeneth in such cases) might possess the Power. Inasmuch that they had a new King almost every year, none of them for the space of an hundred years dying natural death; and all that while the People (as it needs must be) most miserably torn in pieces by intestine wars. Not cured of this distemper, till the several Tribes and Nations of them, (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, these here, and those of other Countries) had their several Princes, succeeding one another in a Regular way. Their Religion *Gentilism* at the first. For being originally Heathens, they worshipped such Gods as others of the Gentiles did; *Jessan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Murzim* for *Mars*, *Zievane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had also a Goddess called *Eugode*, to whom they prayed for fair weather, and a temperate Air. To their children they used to give no name, till they began to grow great, and then conducted them to the Temple of their Gods; where they cut off their first hair, and offered it as a pledge of their future service: at which solemnity they called together their friends and kinsfolk to make merry, with bankets, dancing, singing, and all kind of sports; offering in sacrifice an Hog, and wine mixed with honey, somewhat like *Meibeglin*.

The Gospel was first generally received amongst them by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, two right godly men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circassians*, two great *Asian* Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*: With good success as to the work, and with no small honour and advantage to those Patriarchs also: the Eastern *Slaves* inhabiting those parts of this Country which lie next to *Greece*, and all the *Dacian* Provinces, except *Transylvania*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, but privileged to officiate all Divine Services in their natural Language. The rest, as more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the *German* Emperours, submitted by degrees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means did reap where they never sowed.

But to return unto the story, the *Slaves* thus settled in this Country (since called *Slavonia*) continued absolute Masters of it, under the Title of Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, till the year 970. when growing unsufferable by their frequent Piracies, and having ravished or surprized a company of *Venetian* Ladies, they forced that State (as the *Liburnians* did the *Romans*) to make war upon them: which ended in the loss of *Lezina* and *Curzola*, two of their best Islands, and almost all the Sea-towns on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, possessed for the most part, since that time, by the State of *Venice*: a tribute also of 100 barrels of Wine, and a present to the Duke of 3000 *Coney*-skins, being laid upon them; *Pietro Urscol* being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcomir*, King of the *Slavonians*.

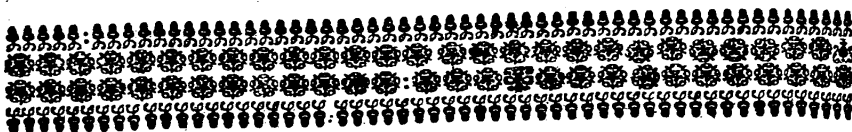
ans. Afterwards *Zelamirus* the last King, dying without issue, bequeathing the Kingdom, to his wife, and she as freely to her brother *Ladislaus*, King of *Hungary*, named the *Saint*: the right hereof accruing by this means to the Kings of *Hungary*; but the possession of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*; the cause of much war and bloodshed betwixt those Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the fray, and got the greatest part for himself, by their disagreements. Betwixt these three, *Sclavonia* at this time doth stand thus divided: the *Venetians* possessing the greatest part of the *Islands*, and all the Sea-Coasts from the River *Asis*, to the Bay of *Catbare*, (the City and Common-wealth of *Ragusa*, excepted only) the house of *Austria*, in right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windischland*, and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who first set footing here in the reign of *Mahomet* the second) the whole Kingdom of *Bosnia*, the Patronage of *Ragusa*, some Towns in *Windischland* and *Croatia*, and all the residue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Catbaro* to *Albania*.

The Arms of *Sclavonia* were: Argent, a Cardinals Hat, the strings pendant, and platted in a true Love knot, meeting in the Base, Gules.

The are in *Sclavonia*

Archbishops 4. Bishops 26.

And thus much for *SCLAVONIA*.



O F

D A C I A.



D A C I A is bounded on the East, with the *Euxine* Sea, and some part of *Thrace*; on the West, with *Hungary*, and *Sclavonia*; on the North, with *Podolia*, and some other Members of the Realm of *Poland*; on the South, with the rest of *Thrace*, and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here first inhabited: in *Strabo* better known by the name of *Davi*, who proving, when first known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themselves to service in hope or gain; occasioned the *Romans* in their *Comedies*, and common Speech, to call a *Sycophant* or *Servant*, by the name of *Davus*.

It lyeth on both sides of the *Danubius*, fronting all along the *Upper* and the *Lower* *Hungary*, and some part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the 7. Climate to the 10th. so that the longest Summers day, in the most Northern parts thereof, is near 17 hours; and in the most Southern, 15 hours 3 quarters.

By this account with reference to the other limits before laid down, it differeth much in situation and dimensions, from the ancient *Dacia*, described by *Ptolomy*: that lying wholly on the North side of the *Danubius*, but taking in so much of the *Upper* *Hungary*, as lyeth on the East side of *Tibiscus*: this comprehending all the rest of the ancient *Dacia*, with both the *Myssus* and *Dardania*, and in a word, the whole *Dacian* Diocese in the largest extent thereof, the Province of *Prævalitana* excepted only; which though a Member of this Diocese, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer understanding whereof we may please to know, that *Dacia* properly so called, was situate on the North side of *Danubius*, as before was said; extending as far Westward as the River *Tisus*, where it fronted on the *Jaxges* *Metanasta*: inhabited by a military and valiant people, who many times, especially when the frost did favour them, passed over the River, and infected the *Roman* Provinces. And though repressed and made tributary by *Julius Cæsar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Augustus*; who sending *Lentulus* against them with a puissant Army, compelled them to retire on the other side of the River, planting the Southern banks thereof with strong Towns and Garrisons to restrain them from the like incursions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si Dacia tunc univisa, summos atque dilata est*, saith the Historian; though *Dacia* was not overcome, yet it was removed

Transylvania.

ved somewhat further off, and the Provinces thereby secured from the attempts of that people. After this, from the time of *Cotiso*, with whom *Augustus* had to deal, we find little of them till the reign of *Decabalus* their last King, a man both ready in advice, and quick in execution. Against him, *Dominian* made war by *Julianus* his Lieutenant; who gave *Decabalus* a great overthrow, and had then utterly vanquished him, if his wit had not better befriended him than his sword. For, fearing that the *Romans* making use of their victory, would enter and take possession of his Countrey; he pitched in the way a great number of stakes in battel array, putting on them the old Coats of his Souldiers, which looking like so many men of Arms, frightened the enemy from approaching the Countrey. *Trajan* was the next that made war against him, and brought him to that exigent, that having with much loss endured some few skirmishes, he yielded himself, and is acknowledged a friend to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But being one of a high spirit, and born in a free air, he once again fell off from the *Romans*; but to his own destruction: for seeing by the valour of *Trajan*, his Kingdom conquered, and his Palace taken and destroyed, he fell upon his own sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Lost in the time of *Galerius*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*: Who finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, transplanted the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civil sort of the *Native*, on the other side of the River; placing them betwixt the two *Myssus*, (in some part of each) and calling the Countrey given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*: leaving the *Old* unto the *Goths*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whose *thorow fare* it was in all their enterprises and designs of the *Roman* Empire. Divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripensis*; this lying on the banks of the *Danubius*, the other more within the land: which with the Provinces of *Mæssa Superior*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Sultaria*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia* in the times succeeding. Subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, and consequently appertaining (after the division) to the Eastern Empire. And it continued in this state till the time of *Justinian*, who being a Native of this Countrey, subducted it from the command of that *Præfect*, and instituted both a *Præfatus Prætorio* for this Diocese only in civil matters, and a *Primate* for the affairs of the Church; both seated in the City of *Justinian*, of his own foundation: enlarging the jurisdiction of the first by the addition of some part of *Macedonia Secunda*, and *Pannonia Secunda*, and giving to the other all those preheminencies, which had been antiently enjoyed by the greater *Patriarchs*. But this new Institution was of no continuance. For first the *Slaves*, and afterwards the *Russians*, *Hungars*, and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danubius* dismembered it piece-meal from the Empire, and divided it under new names amongst themselves. Of which, together with the nature of the soil and people, I shall speak anon, having first took a view of the Rivers, Hills, and other Land-marks, which are to be my chief guides in the *Chorography* or description of them.

The Rivers then of most note are, 1 The *Danubius*, which here, at *Axiom*, or *Axiopolis*, a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Ister*, continuing it from thence to its *Æstuarium*, where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, with 7 mouths or channels: that is to say, 1 *Pence*, 2 *Narcissus*, 3 *Calistoma*, 4 *Plendistoma*, 5 *Spiroestoma*, 6 *Boreostoma*; the name of the last I find not amongst my Authors, *quia languidissimum nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolomy*. 2 *Marelius*, now called *Mariſch*, 3 *Termes*, 4 *Alania*, keeping its old name, 5 *Hierafus*, all of old *Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danubius* or *Ister*: As do also *Cidrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Servia*; and 6 *Suconia* of *Bulgaria*, or the *Lower Myssus*. Chief Mountains of it are 1 the *Carpathian*, 2 *Scardus*, 3 *Ozbelus*; whereof the first parteth it from *Sarmatia Europæa*, the second from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This said, we will proceed to the description of the several Provinces, which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to say, 1 *Transylvania*, 2 *Moldavia*, 3 *Wallachia*, 4 *Rascia*, 5 *Servia*, 6 *Bulgaria*: the first four in *Old Dacia*, on the North side of the *Danubius*; the two last in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1 TRANSYLVANIA.

TRANSYLVANIA, is bounded on the East, with *Moldavia*; on the West, with the *Upper* *Hungary*; on the North, with *Russia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which parted by the *Carpathian* Mountains; on the South, with *Rascia*, and *Wallachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungary*, the name in *Latine* signifying the Countrey beyond the woods. By the *Dutch* it is called *Seben Burgen*, from seven Castles or strong holds antiently built in it, to defend the frontiers: *Septemcastrensis*, in some *Latine* Authors, upon that occasion. But by the more elegant *Latinists*, it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*, or made subject to them.

The soil doth naturally abound with wine, corn and fruit, of which was so plentiful in the time of the *Romans*, that the Emperor *Trajan* caused a piece of money to be coined, having the figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornucopia*, and in the other a plain *Tablet* with this inscription, *Abundantia Dacia*. Particularly besides great plenty of wheat, and most excellent wines, it yieldeth great store of *Cherries*, *Damaſcens*, *Malacotoons*, *Musk-melons*, not inferior to those of *Italy*; and also *Century* good store, and many other *Medicinal* plants; some mines of gold and silver, many of *Iron*, *Brass*, *Copper*; and not a few veins of *Salt* and *Sulphur*. Of cattel such abundance, that many times large Oxen are sold for a *Florin*, or halfe a Crown a piece; and a most notable breed of *Horses*: not to say any thing of that variety of wild beasts, which they have in their Woods and Forests, and of all sorts of Fowl both for food and pleasure. So populous withall for the

Transylvania.

the most fruitful Countries are commonly populous also) that *Castaldo* Governour hereof in the minority of *Stephen*, the 4th. son of *John de Sepusio*, Anno 1551. advanced an Army of 70000 able men, consisting of the Natives of this Countrey only, for the liege of *Lippe*, a strong Town of *Hungary*, but on the borders of this Countrey.

The people are much of the same nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time subject; but somewhat more stubborn and untractable; speak the same language that they do, with some difference in the *Dialect* only: converted at the same time to the *Christian* Faith, and under the same forms of *Ecclesiastical* government. In former times they used to read, as the *Jews* do, from the right hand to the left; but of late herein conform to the Western Nations, from whom they are generally descended.

For that the people of this Countrey are the progeny of the *Saxons*, is evident by the *Saxon* Language yet in part retained. 2ly. We find that *Charles the Great*, like a *Politique Conquerour*, placed many of that Nation here, weakening so their strength at home, and fortifying the bounds of his Empire. And 3ly. by a story recited by *Vorsteگان*, which we touched in our description of *Brunswick*; the whole narration is this. *Hallerstade* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Musician whom they called the *Pied-piper*, undertaking for a great mass of money to destroy, they agree: hereupon he tuned his pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after him, are drowned in the next River. This done, he asketh his pay, but is denied; whereupon he striketh up a new fit of mirth: all the children male and female of the Town follow him into the hill *Hamelen* which presently closed again. The Parents miss their Children, and could never hear news of them; now of late some have found them in this Countrey, where I also leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is said to happen the 22 of July 1376. Since which time it is said that the people of *Hallerstade* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other instrument to be founded in that street: and established a Decree, that in all writings of *Contract* or *Bargain*, after the date of our *Saviours* Nativity, the date also of this their childrens *transmigration* should be added in *rei memoriam*. But though the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main body of them, yet being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies; and in the Northern parts there remain still some of the old *Scythians*, planted there by *Attila*. One of those Members is the body of this State composed: so strong and populous that it is conceived to be able to raise an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 horse and 12000 foot for the battle of *Keresztur* Anno 1596. being more by 2000 than the whole Realm of *Hungary* sent unto that service.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons*, are 1 *Hermansted*, in *Latine* *Hermanopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was situate) so named of one *Herman* the Founder of it; little inferior to *Vienna* for strength or greatness, well fortified both by Art and Nature. 2 *Cronstadt*, in *Latine* called *Corona*, by some *Brassovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*, this last name given it by *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, who repaired and beautified it. Situate on the borders of *Wallachia*, amongst fruitful Mountains, remarkable for a fair Library, a kind of *Academy*, and the most noted *Empory* or *Mart-Town* of all this Countrey: of great resort, especially in the time of their public Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Poles*, *Polanders*, *Wallachians*, and other Nations. 3 *Bistricium* (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) so called from the River *Bistrica*, which runneth through it: so pleasant and so sweet a Town, that there is no dirt or mire to be seen at any time; or if there be, the people presently swell up the River, and so cleanse the streets. 4 *Mediesus*, (by the *Dutch*, *Medisch*, so called *quasimedius* *Confessus*, because situate in the midst of the Countrey; a Town almost as near as *Bistrica*. 5 *Segoswaria*, or *Schesburg*, on the declivity of an hill. 6 *Zabesius* or *Laiz*, once the chief Towns of the *Saxons*, but now much decayed; situate in a very deep Vally, well fenced with waters, and those waters well stored with fish. 7 *Clausenbourg*, the *Zemga* of *Ptolomy* in *Latine* called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the second, Emperour, by whom re-edified: at first a Colony of the *Saxons* or *Dutch* only, but of late times the *Hungarians* coming in as strangers, were at last privileged as Citizens, and inhabited it together with them. The Town well-seated in the middle of a pleasant Plain, encompassed with an handsome wall, and beautified with elegant buildings. 8 *Alba Julia*, now *Weisenberg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolomy*, situate on a small brook then called *Apnus*, (but now *Oratus*) whence it had the name. Built on the side of an hill near the River *Marnuch*, (or *Marnus*) over-looking a large and fruitful Plain: heretofore a Bishops See, and the ordinary residence of the Prince or *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*; but now a garrison of *Hungarian* Souldiers, holding it for the Emperour, as King of *Hungary*.

Chief Towns belonging to the *Hungarians*, and by them inhabited, are 1 *Varadin*, much mentioned in the stories of these later times, since the invasions of the *Turks*; situate on the borders of *Hungary*. 2 *Thorda*, built in or near the place where stood the *Salina* of *Ptolomy*, so called from the abundance of *Salt-pits* which were then about it. 3 *Enguodine*, by the *Romans* called *Animum*, from a *Causy* leading to it, raised by one *Annius*, and from him so named; some fragments whereof are still remaining. 4 *Devu*, remarkable for a vein of the best Wines. 5 *Fenuschium*, affording very pleasant Wines also, not inferior to those of *Venusium* in *Italy*. 6 *Zilachi*. 7 *Gela*, of which little memorable. 8 *Miltenbach*, not far from which, betwixt it and the Town of *Bros*, is a very strong fortress, commanding a strait and narrow passage leading into this Countrey out of *Hungary*.

In the North part hereof lyeth the Province called *ZACULEIA*, inhabited by the *Scythians*, or old brood of *Scythians*; brought hither by *Attila*, on his first conquest of this Countrey; and here still continuing. A people which have much in them of the antient *Huns*, and had heretofore a peculiar

Transylvania.

liar language to themselves, but now they speak the *Hungarian* generally; differing in the *Dialect* only. But though, by the necessity of commerce and co-habitation, they are brought into the same language; they still retain their ancient customs, governed by their own Laws, and living after the same manner as the *Switzers* do: each of their *Cantons* (seven in number) being absolute in and of itself, but all united with the *Transylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Countrey, against the several pretensions of the *German* and *Turkish* Emperours. And though they do acknowledge some subjection to the Emperour, as King of *Hungary*; yet it is but what they list themselves: being antiently privileged from all taxes, more than the paying of a *Bull* for every household, in the way of an *Herritor*, at the Coronation of the new King, when and how oft soever it may change to happen. Their *Cantons* (Seds they call them,) are 1 *Septi*, 2 *Orbay*, 3 *Kisfy*, 4 *Czyk*, 5 *Gyrgio*, 6 *Uduarbeli*, 6 *Marovs Zeck*, and 7 *Aranyes Zeck*; so called from the chief town in each division. In former times no *Nobleman*, nor any one of better means and greater eminence than other, was known amongst them: but now of late, that *parity* (or confusion rather) is grown out of credit, and some begin to over-top the rest both in power and title, as in other places.

The first Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, where the *Anatii*, *Taurisci*, *Rhatacensi*, *Cancoensi*, the *Burgedensi*, and *Biephii*, &c. first conquered by *Lyfismachus*, the great and mighty King of *Thrace*, one of the renowned Captains of *Alexander the Great*; in token whereof, innumerable medals, in the age of our *Grandfathers*, were found in this Countrey, having his Image on the one side, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards subdued by the Emperour *Trajan*, and quitted by *Arrelianus*, hath been shewn already. Being forsaken by the *Romani*, it was won by the *Goths*; their constant dwelling, till forced over the *Danow* by the *Huns*, the next possessors of this Countrey; the road or *thorow-fare* from that time of those barbarous Nations, which out of *Asia* made their inroads on the *Europeans*. Having been successively subdued by the *Scythians* and *Rosses*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen* the first King of *Hungary*, surnamed the *Saint*; by whose perswasion and inducements, they received the Gospel. Governed after this time, as a member of that Kingdom, by a Deputy whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* signifying as much as *Præfatus Militie*, or a Lord Lieutenant;) a man by reason of the greatness of his place and power, of most authority in that Kingdom. The names and succession of these *Vaivods*, till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that, more clear and constant in this order following.

THE VAIVODS AND PRINCES OF TRANSYLVANIA.

- 1 *John*, surnamed *Huniades*, made *Vaivod* hereof by *Bladislaus* the 4th. A man of great valour and renown, the great Defender of his Countrey against the *Turks*; whom he overthrew in many battels, especially in that of *Maron*, where he slew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.
- 2 *Stephen*, of the noble family of *Cattory*, *Vaivod* in the time of *Matthias* King of *Hungary* the son of *Huniades*.
- 3 *Stephen* II. surnamed *de Sepusio*, from the place of his Honour or Estate, not so much memorable for any thing; as for being Father of *Barbara*, the wife of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, and of
- 4 *John* II. called also *de Sepusio*, after the death of *Lewis* the 2d. chosen King of *Hungary*, of whom before, amongst the Kings of that Realm.
- 1526 5 *Americus*, Bishop of *Veridium*, made *Vaivod* by *John de Sepusio*, on his taking of the Crown of *Hungary*; treacherously murdered for not complying with the *Turks*, Anno 1534.
- 1540 6 *Stephen*, III. surnamed *Maylat*, a noble *Hungarian*, but extremely ambitious; having not long after the death of *Americus* usurped the *Vaivodship*; was in the year 1540. confirmed in that dignity.
- 1541 7 *Stephen* IV. son of *John de Sepusio* the late King of *Hungary*, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* made *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, being then an Infant; (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of *Hungary* not long before) inroached upon not long after by the said *Solyman*; this Countrey was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* King of *Hungary*, other lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.
- 1551 8 *Stephen* V. surnamed *Dobus*, for his valour shewed against the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made *Vaivod* of this Countrey by the said King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman* not liking that this Countrey should be at the Devotion of the Kings of *Hungary*, conferred the same (under the Vassallage of his Empire) upon one
- 9 *John*, III. whose Family and surname I have nowhere found; a professed Champion of the *Turks*, and as professed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his successors in the Kingdom of *Hungary*.
- 10 *Stephen* VI. surnamed *Battory*, (of which house he was) made *Vaivod* by the *Turks*; and afterwards on the commendation of *Amurath* the 3d. chosen King of *Poland*.
- 1575 11 *Christopher* *Battory*, brother of *Stephen*, on whose election unto *Poland* he succeeded here; and was the first who leaving the title of *Vaivod*, took that of Prince of *Transylvania*.

12 *Sigismund*

Moldavia.

- 12 *Sigismund*, son of *Christopher*, shook off the *Turkish* bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and slew some of their *Bassas* (the *Scanderbeg* of the times he lived in.) But not being able to hold out against so potent an adversary, he resigned his estate to *Rodolphus* the Emperour; having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor* in *Silesia*, and an annual pension of 50000 *Joachimus*. But finding his pension ill paid, he made a new resignation of it to
- 1599 13 *Andreas Battery*, cousin of *Sigismund*, slain within the year by the *Vaivod* of *Valachia*. After whose death
- 1601 14 *Rodolphus* Emperour, and King of *Hungary*, is admitted Prince of *Transylvania*, on the second resignation of *Sigismund*. But his Souldiers behaving themselves with too great insolence, *Sigismund* was called back again, but never well settled: so that at last he was fain to leave the Country in the power of the Emperour, and retire to *Prague*, where in the year 1613, he died unlamented. In the mean time
- 1604 15 *Justine*, or *Istvan*, surnamed *Botsay*, a Nobleman of this Country, made Prince hereof by the Great *Turk*, and supported by him, cleared the Province of the *Germans*, and being followed by great Companies of those of the Reformed Religion, he not only obtained of the Emperour *Rodolphus* a confirmation of this estate unto himself, but liberty of Conscience, and the free exercise of Religion for both the Nations, presently after which he died, Decem. 30. 1606.
- 1607 16 *Sigismund*, II. of the noble family of *Ragotzy*, elected in the February following by the *Transylvanians*; but finding himself not able to make his election good again the Emperour, and being unwilling to subject himself unto the *Turks*, after the end of one year he relinquished the Government, and betook himself again to a private life.
- 1608 17 *Gabriel Battery*, of the family of the former Princes, succeeded by the favour of *Achmet* the Great *Turk*: after whose death so welcom unto his Neighbours and subjects.
- 1613 18 *Bethlem Gabour*, by the same *Achmet* was made Prince of *Transylvania*; a professed Enemy of the house of *Austria*; but one that with a great deal of noise did them little hurt.
- 1630 19 *Stephen VII.* surnamed *Ragotzy*, on the death of *Bethlem Gabour*, succeeded Prince by the power and favour of the *Turks*; under whose Clientele and protection he doth still enjoy it, (as his predecessors did before him) against all pretensions of the Empire and Realm of *Hungary*; as on the other side, defended by the Emperour, and Crown of *Poland*, from being made thrall unto the *Turks*.

2 M O L D A V I A.

M O L D A V I A is bounded on the East, with the *Euxine* Sea; on the West, with *Transylvania*; on the North, with the River *Niefter*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolemy* and the *Antients*, by which parted from *Podolia* a Province of *POLAND*; and on the South, with *Valachia*.

It is so called, as some say, *quasi* *Motavia*, from its nearness to the fens of *Motis*; or rather from the *Hunnes* and other people of those fens, who possessed the same. Others conceive that it was first called *Maurdavia*, i. e. *nigrorum Davorum*, Regio, the Country of the black *Davi*, (for by the name of *Davy* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and some others;) so named from their complexion, or the colour of their Caps and other garments; as *Nigra Russia*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occasion. But the more probable opinion (as I take it) is, that it took this name from the River *Moldava*, which runneth throw it; as the *Moravians* had that name from the River *Morava*. The nature and Religion of the People we shall find in *Valachia*, whereof antiently reckoned for a part.

The Country is very fruitful in corn, wine, grafs and wood; but more used for *pasturage* than tillage, by reason of the great want of people to manure the land: by means whereof it affordeth great plenty of *Beef* and *Mutton*, whereby they supply some parts of *Poland*, and the populous City of *Constantinople*. And these they issue out in so great a number, that the tenth penny exacted by the Prince or *Vaivod*, in the way of *Custom*, amounteth to 150000 Crowns per annum: and yet the *Clergy* and the *Gentry* are discharged of this impost. But the main trade of this Country is not driven by the *Natives*: the Port-towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Raguzian* Merchants, who foreitall the *Markets*, and barter all their corn and wine into *Russia* and *Poland*; their skins, wax, honey, powdered beef, Pulse, and butter, into *Constantinople*: it being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Country no fewer than 500 ships laden with corn, victuals, and other provisions necessary to the life of man, are yearly sent unto that City.

The Country is in a manner round, the Diameter each way being near upon 300 *English* miles: but so ill-inhabited by reason of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Polonian* *Cossacks*, that certain *English* Gentlemen having in the year 1609, travelled at least 240 miles in the country, could meet in all the way but nine Towns and Villages; and for an hundred miles together, the grafs so high that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattel to eat it, and of men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities, or towns of note: though it afford two Archbishops, and two Bishops Sees; followers (as all the rest of the people are) of the traditions and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The

Valachia.

The principal of those which be, are, 1 *Occazonia*, or *Zucconia*, the *Vaivods* seat. 2 *Euccania*, 3 *Fazeling*, of which little memorable. 4 *Kotjim*, a place of great strength, on the borders of *Poland*; by some called *Cochina*; the ordinary *mogazen* of the Country. 5 *Jassy*, commonly called *Tas*, the chief Town for wealth and trade in all this Province. 6 *Bender*, a strong Town on the *Euxine* Sea. 7 *Poladi* near the *Danow*. 8 *Bialograd*, or *Bologrove*, situate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Niefter*; a strong Town against the *Tartars*, and *Polonians*. 9 *Kele*, antiently called *Achilleia*, situate on the shores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the most part compassed round with the waters of it; and therefore said by *Ptolemy* to be an Island. 10 *Ac-Germen*, of old called *Asprocaron*, and *Moncastrum*, a very strong Town in the same Coast also: both taken by *Bajazet*, the second Emperour of the *Turks*, Anno 1485. But these three Towns are not so properly in *Moldavia*, at least not in *Moldavia* properly so called, as in a little Province called *Bessarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*: formerly counted part thereof, till conquered by the *Turks* in the year aforesaid, it became a member of that Empire. A tract inhabited by the *Bessi*, in the times of *Ptolemy*, who being driven out of their Country by the *Bulgarians*, settled themselves (as some say) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Bosnia*.

The whole Country following the fortune of *Transylvania*, and the rest of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Sclaves* and *Rosses*, was for a while accompted part of the *Russian* Empire: till the dismembring of that Empire by the *Tartars*. After which it was sometime *Honger* to the *Polanders*, sometimes to the *Hungarians*, according as the *Vaivods* or Princes of it could find best conditions. By *Mahomet* the Great it was made tributary to the *Turks*; but the tribute at the first very light and easie, not above 2000 Crowns per annum: that mighty Emperour, who aimed at more profitable conquests, being loth to spend his Forces on so poor a purchase, as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his son, finding how fit it lay for the more absolute command of the *Euxine* Sea, took in that part hereof which is called *Bessarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkish* Province, Anno 1485. as before was said; imposing on the rest, an increase of the former tribute, and so left it unto the disposal of its natural Princes. After which time the *Vaivods* fearing to be made Vassals to the *Turks*, did many times rise in Arms against them; aided therein sometimes by the *Hungarians*, and sometimes by the *Polander*; which last pretended to the Sovereignty and chieftie of it. *Bogdanus* *Vaivod* hereof in the time of *Selimus* the second, uniting himself more closely with the *Polonians*; became thereby suspected by the *Turkish* Tyrant, who with a great power chased him out of his Country, and gave the same unto one *John* a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the most part in the *Turkish* Court (where he renounced his faith, and was circumcised) under the yearly tribute of 60000 Crowns. But *John* the new made *Vaivod*, was no sooner settled but he returned again to his first Religion, and for that cause grew less affected by the *Turks*. Which being observed by the then *Vaivod* of *Valachia*, he practised to obtain that dignity for his brother *Peter*; offering to double the said tribute, and to assist in subjugation of the Country. The *Turk* accepting of these offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Valachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fall into *Moldavia*: and were so gallantly received by the noble *Vaivod*, that few of them escaped the slaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old friend *Czarnieviehe*; and against faith given, barbarously murdered by the *Turkish* *Bassa*; *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, An. 1574. the *Vaivods* from that time forwards, being nominated by the *Turkish* Emperours, and governing as *substitutes* and *Lieutenants* for and under them. And though *Arcon*, one of the succeeding *Vaivods*, did shake off this yoke, and confederated himself with *Sigismund* Pr. of *Transylvania*, and *Michael* *Vaivod* of *Valachia*, for defence of themselves and their Estates, against that enemy: yet being afterwards supplanted by *Rosivan*, one of his own ambitious subjects, and that confederacy disjoyned, it became subject first unto the *Polonians*, by the power and practice of *Zamoyskie*, Chancellor of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus*, Emperour of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turks*, as before it was. And though the *Polanders* have since made use of some opportunities, in imposing *Vaivods* on this Country, in despite of the *Turks*; yet was it commonly to their own loss, little or no benefit to the *Moldavians*, and in the end drew the whole power of the *Turks* upon themselves in the reign of *Osman*, never since intermeddled in the affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the *Turks* disposing; who receive hence some yearly tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire possession of it, so long since aimed at by those Tyrants.

3 V A L A C H I A.

V A L A C H I A is bounded on the East, with *Moldavia*, and a branch of the *Ister*, or *Danubius*, bending towards the North; on the West, with *Rascia*; on the North, with *Transylvania*, and some part of *Moldavia*; and on the South, with the *Danubius* wholly, by which parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. First called *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus*, a Noble Roman, who on the conquest hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought thither an Italian Colony; afterwards by corruption *Ulachia*, and at last *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Ulachia*, was at first of more large extent, than it is at present; comprehending all *Moldavia* also: divided in those times by a ridge of Mountains, into *Cisalpinia*, and *Transalpinia*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and specially so called) unto the other. The people of both, in token of their first extraction, speak a corrupt *Latine* or *Italian* language; but in matters of Religion follow the dictates of the Greek Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; under whom all Ecclesiastical affairs are governed by one Archbishop, and two Bishops. In other things they partake generally of the rudeness

and

Bulgaria.

death of George, soon possessed himself of it. For *Lazarus* the youngest of *Georges* sons, having de-
prived *Stephen* and *George* his elder Brethren (whose eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make
them incapable of the Government) of the Principality, compelled them to seek to *Mahomet* for
aid. But dying whilst these matters were in agitation, his widow put her self and her three sons, *Pe-
ters*, *John*, and *Martin*, under the protection of the Hungarians; and by that means, but with much
trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren still soliciting the *Turks* against her) held the State
a while: till the people finding no assurance in that kind of government, and weary of the daily
harms they received from the *Turks*, yielded themselves absolutely to the power of *Mahomet*, about
the Year 1460. continuing ever since a Province of the *Turkish Empire*.

6. BULGARIA.

BULGARIA is bounded on the East, with the *Euxine Sea*; on the West, with *Servia*; on the
North, with the River *Danow*, which is here called *Ister*; on the South, with *Thrace*. Called for-
merly by the name of *Myfia inferior*, as lying lower than the other on the course of that River; as
Servia, lying up the water, was called *Myfia superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Da-
cia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars* in the Empire of *Diocletian*;
born in this country near the borders of *Thrace*, not far from the City of *Sardica*: who there-
fore in the Martyrologies of the middle times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it
took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* people, who in the Year 566. possessed themselves
of it.

The Country for the most part full of sharp and rugged hills, branches of the great Mountain *Ha-
mus*, which divide it from *Thrace*; and spread themselves over all this Province, inasmuch that
even the midlands of it are rough and stony: and though the lower parts have some plains and val-
lies, yet are they generally full of Woods and Deserts; the most unpleasant, and least peopled part
of both the *Dacias*. The Inhabitants hereof in some conformity to the country, are patient of all
toil and labour, and not easily tired; but nothing is more troublesome than their conversation: more
full of courage, than of valour, their courage nor proceeding by the rules of reason, but issuing only
out of brutishness, or a natural fierceness.

They first received the *Christian* Faith towards the latter end of *Justinian* the 2d. who died in the
year 713. *Tyrellius* being then their Prince; afterwards by the persuasion of *Leo* the 4th. surnamed
Porphyrogenitus, about the year 789. But those Conversions being but partial, and for private ends,
they relapsed shortly after to their former *Gentilism*: not totally gained unto the Gospel, till the Em-
pire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace, 860. Subject since that unto the Jurisdiction of the
Patriarch of *Constantinople*: but not without great opposition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid claim
unto them.

Places of most note in it, are 1. *Axiom*, or *Axiopolis*, on the banks of *Danubius*, which from this
town begins to take the name of *Ister*. It is now called *Colonomich*, of no great fame otherwise. 2. *Di-
nogeriak*, by *Antonine* called *Dinagutia*, now *Drimago*, situate also on the *Ister*, opposite to the influx of
Hierafius, and the town of *Galatz*. 3. *Mesimbria*, situate on the *Euxine*, and still retaining the old
name; in *Sirabo*, by some error of the Transcribers, called *Mentbria*. 4. *Marcianopolis*, on the *Ister*, not
Danubius also, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his sister, whence it had the name: in vain be-
sieged by the *Goths*, at their first irruptions on this country; and afterwards much mentioned in the
stories of that warlike people; for many bickerings, and some great battles they had near it with the
Emperor *Claudius*; in one of which overthrown by him with a mighty slaughter. 5. *Nicopolis*, (by the
Turks called *Nigebol*) built by the same *Trajan* on the *Danow*, at the fall of the River *Jatre*, at his re-
turn from the conquest of *Dacia*, whence the occasion of the name; the word *Nicopolis* signifying the
City of Victory: sufficiently memorable for the founder of it, more for the many great battles fought
near unto it; whereof two the principal. The first, that of *Sigismund* the Emperor and King of Hungary,
besieging it with an Army of 130000 *Christians*, in the time of *Bajazet* the first (whose father *Amurath*
had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*) the issue of which siege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raise the
siege obtained the victory with the loss of 60000 *Turks*; the army of the *Christians* being wholly routed;
20000 slain, all the rest almost taken prisoners; and the young Emp. forc'd to flee by Sea to *Thrace*,
thence into *Constantinople*; afterwards to *Rhodes*; and at last, after 18 months absence, to his Realm of
Hungary. The other (as it was in revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Voivod of *Valachia*,
and the forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the Voivod got a remarkable victory; and as the fruits
thereof, sacked the City itself, carrying thence great spoil and booty, & infinite multitudes of peo-
ple; with some whereof he made up his Army, sending the rest to inhabit and manure the void and
desert places of his own Dominions. 6. *Sophia*, called *Tibiscum* in the time of *Ptolemy*, repaired by
the Emperor *Justinian*, who gave it this name, from a famous and magnificent Temple, founded and
dedicated by him unto St. *Sophia*. The ordinary Residence for these late times of a *Turkish* Beglerbeg,
who hath the chief command of Europe under the grand *Signieur*: once taken by *Huniades*, and by
him at the command of *Uladislaus* King of Hungary, burnt unto the ground; but afterwards repaired,
and more strongly fortified, than it had been formerly. 7. *Varna*, antiently called *Dierysopolis*,
situate on the *Euxine* Sea; near the borders of *Thrace*: remarkable for the great defeat there given
the *Christians*, the first flight of *Huniades* from the face of the *Turks*, and the death of *Uladislaus* King

Bulgaria.

King of Hungary, spoken of before. 8. *Sumium*, 9. *Pezechium*, 10. *Calacrium*, 11. *Galata*, and 12
Macropolis; all taken by the Hungarians in their way to *Varna*, and lost again upon the issue of that
battle. 13. *Silistria*; at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary abode of a *Turkish* *Bassa*:
delivered to *Amurath* the first, by *Saimes*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to save
thereby the rest of his Country. 14. *Parastaba*, or *Perstaba*, the antient seat of the Kings of *Bulga-
ria*; till the taking of it by *John Zimisces* Emperor of *Constantinople*, by whom caused to be called *Jo-
hanopolis*; but it soon lost that new name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peristaw*. 15. *Ter-
nova*, the usual seat or residence of the later Princes of this Country, at the conquest of it by the
Turks. 16. *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being taken by
Huniades in the course of his victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the
cause of much war to the *Christians* there: supposed to be built in or near the place, where once
stood the old City of *Oescus*, the principal Town of the *Triballi*, called therefore *Oescus Tri-
bollarum*; though some will have that City to be now called *Blida*. 17. *Vennuzina*, a Town of great
strength, and one of the first peaces taken by the *Turks*. 18. *Cosova*, fatal to the *Christians*, who in
the plains hereof had two main defeats. The first by *Amurath* the first, who here discomfited *La-
zarus* the Despot of *Servia*, and the greatest Army that the *Christians* ever raised against the *Turks*: *La-
zarus* himself being slain in the fight, and *Amurath* himself shortly after the battle stabbed in the
belly by one *Miles Cobiliz*, a wounded and half dead souldier, as he was taking a view of the dead
bodies which lay there in heaps. The last by *Amurath* the second to the famous *Huniades*, whom
he here discomfited after a cruel fight continuing three days together: in which were slain 17000
Christians, and amongst them the greatest part of the Hungarian Nobility; *Huniades* put again to flight,
and forced to some extremities to preserve his life: the *Turks* buying this great victory with the loss
of 40000 men, as themselves confessed. The place in which these fights were fought, called the
Fields of Cosova, extendeth 20 miles in length, and 5 miles in breadth, encompassed round with
pleasant Mountains, in the form of an *Amphi-Theater*; as if it were designed by Nature for a stage
of action. 19. *Dorostorum*, by some of the Antients called *Rhodopolis*, the seat in *Ptolemy*'s time of the first
Legion called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Towns which the *Rosses* and *Russians* had in this Coun-
try from whom taken by *John Zimisces* the Eastern Emperor, decaying after that time by little and
little, and now wholly ruinous. 20. *Achrida*, the birth-place of *Justinian*, by whom beautified and
enlarged, and called *Justiniana Prima*: who raising the Diocese of *Dacia* into a *Præfecture*, placed here
a *Primare* for the affairs of the Church, (which honour it doth still retain, the Bishop hereof being
the *Primate* of all *Dacia*) and a *Præfectus Prætorio* for affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town
returned to its old name, now called *L'Ochrida*, contracted by *William of Tyre* to *Acra*; by the *Turks*
called *Ginsandit*, a distinct Principate of it self in the time of *Amurath* the first, and by him made
tributary at his first war with this Country.

(And here it is to be observed; that those parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea,
had antiently the name of *Pontus*, as had some parts of *Asia Minor*, which bordered on the
same Sea also: and that the City of *Tome*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Tomos*, as *Pliny* calls it, to which *O-
vid* was banished by *Augustus* *Cæsar*, was a City of this European *Pontus*, and not of the *Asian*,
as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomis* is by *Ptolemy* placed amongst the Cities of *Mæsia in-
ferior*; and by *Ovid* on the West or left side of the *Euxine*; and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth
by these lines of his;

*Cum maris Euxini positos ad læva Tomitas
Quærens me læsi Principis ira jubet.*

That is to say,

*My wronged Prince's wrath commands me bid
At Tomos on the Euxines Western side.*

The place at this day called *Tomiswar*, according to *Cælius Calpurnius*; but others would have it
to be the same which is now named *Kiovia*, in the same tract also; not far from which is said to
be a Lake called to this day *Ovidow* *Pezecoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cause hither banished
is not yet agreed on. Some say it was for the unlawfull pleasures which he enjoyed with *Julia*
the Emperor's daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorum* under the borrowed name of *Corinna*.
Others imagine that he had seen *Augustus* himself unnaturally using the company of the same *Julia*,
his daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his book
de *Tristibus*, saying, *Cur aliquid vidi? cur noxia lumina feci?* &c. A Crime, of which I dare not think that
public Emperor to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatsoever was the true reason of it, that
which was openly pretended was the writing of those lascivious and inflammatory Books de *Arte* &
Amoris, tending to the debauchment of youth and corruption of manners, which he in divers places
of his works acknowledged for the cause thereof.

But to return unto the business of this Country, the antient Inhabitants hereof were towards the
East the *Trogodite* dwelling near the mouth or fall of the River *Pence* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the
Pæoni inhabiting on the very mouth of it, and in a little Island opposite thereto called also *Pence*,
now *Pizina*, the *Cribizi*, *Piarenzi*, and *Dimenzi*; the Western parts being wholly taken up by the *Tri-
balli*,

Bulgaria.

balli, the most potent Nation of them all: who only had the happiness to vanquish Philip King of the Macedonians. For Philip having, or pretending a quarrel against Mateus a King of the Sarmatians, entered his Country, overthrew him in a fight, carried with him great booties, and among other things, 20000 Mares for breed, which he took in the battle: it being the custom of the Scythians and Sarmatians, to use Mares only in their wars; because their not stopping in the midst of a race to piss, could be no impediment to them in their flight. In his return homeward, these Triballi deny him passage through their Country, unless they might partake of their spoils. This being denied, they fall from words to blows, and next to a pitched field. If which fight Philip was wounded with an Arrow, which passing thorow his thigh, nailed him to his saddle: his horse being galled with the wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frighted Macedonians seeing, and supposing him dead, fled out of the field, leaving all their spoils to the Triballi, as if they had been sent out only to be their Receivers. So true an observation is it, that the very life-blood of an Army runs chiefly in the veins of the General, or supreme Commander. Overtopped after this by the Massi, or mingled with them, they were first broken by the Romans under the conduct of C. Curius Scribonius, spoken of before, the absolute conquest of them and the rest of the Massians being reserved for the times of Augustus Caesar. By him or his successors, the whole Country of the Massians being cast into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Massia inferior*; that lying Westward up the Water being called *Massia superior*, for distinction sake. By the Emperor Amulianus, the Dacians being forced from the other side of the Danube, by the barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Massians* divided afterwards into two Provinces, taken out of the other, *Mediterranea*, and *Ripensis*: which with the help of the higher *Myisia*, *Dardania*, *Prevalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia*, as before was said. The residue hereof now passing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces also: another Province being taken out of the East parts of the *Lower Massia*, lying betwixt the River *Rhanissus*, and the most northern branch of the *Ister*, which they called *Scythia*, because the *Aroteres* a *Scythian* people did once possess it; the Romans ambitiously affecting to be thought the Conquerors of that unconquerable Nation. Successively by the *Goths* and *Huns* was this Country taken from the Romans: recovered again in or before the time of *Justinian*, who had here his Officers; subordinate to the *Vicar* or *Lieutenant* of *Thrace*, to which Diocese they properly belonged.

But long they held not in that State; The *Slavonians* first, and after the *Bulgarians*, being masters of them. Of the first of these enough hath been said elsewhere. These later being a *Scythian* people inhabiting on the banks of the River *Volga*, were at first called *Vulgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: though some conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation; but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperor *Anastasius*, they made their first sally into the Provinces of the Empire, foraging *Illyricum* and *Thrace*: afterward, in the reign of *Heraclius* hired by *Cosroes* the *Persian* (with many other barbarous Nations) to besiege *Constantinople*. In the reign of *Constantine*, surnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or calling out the *Slaves*, they planted themselves in these Countries; compelling the Emperor to compound with them for a sum of money, from making any further inroad into his Dominions. From this time forwards, we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*; the first of which after their settling in these parts, was *Tribellius*, or *Trebellius*, as some call him, the first *Christian* Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Justinian* the second was first restored unto the Empire, of which he had been ousted by *Abismarius*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to flee unto *Constantinople* on some breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eastern Emperours, they aided them against the *Saracens* then besieging the *Imperial City*; of whom they slew 22000 as they were foraging the Country: and in the time of *Leo* the fourth, called *Porphirogenitus*, they became *Homagers* to the Empire, by whose persuasion *Telricus* King of the *Bulgarians* received the Sacrament of *Baptism*; and thereupon was honoured by him with a wife of the *Imperial* family, and the honourable title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many privileges indulged them by the *Constantinopolitans*, not usually communicated unto other Princes, viz. their *Crown* of gold, their *tiar* or *cap* of silk, and their *red shoes* for their *Regal*; which were also the *Imperial* ornaments. To these Kings also, and to these only, did the *Greek* Emperours allow the title of *Basileus*, as being merely *Imperial*. Other Kings they called *Prin* from the *Latine* word *Reges*. Inasmuch that when *Basilius Macedo* had received letters from Pope *Adrian* the second, wherein *Lewis* the second the Western Emperour was called *Basileus*; he razed out that *Imperial* attribute, and dispatched an Embassy to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it as his own peculiar *Epishite*. Some quarrels after falling out, *Crunus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicophorus* successor to the Emperess *Irene*, invadeth *Thrace*, taketh the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperour in his tent, and worsteth *Michael* (who succeeded) in the open field; *Mesembria*, a principal City of this Country being taken and ransacked by him. But *Bogor*, of another temper, not only did receive the Sacrament of *Baptism*, which many of his Predecessors had intermitted; but brought his subjects (who rebelled on the change of Religion, and thereupon were fought with, and vanquished by him) to the same faith also: gratified for that cause by *Theodora* the Emperess, with some large accession unto his estate. After long wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperours, the fortune of the *Constantinopolitan* did at last prevail: *Samuel* King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 1000 of his souldiers taken and deprived of sight; and the Country conquered by *Basilius* the second, surnamed *Porphirogenitus*, Anno 1015. from that time tributary to the Empire: to which they did good service in the time of *Constantine Ducas*, using their help against the *Uzi*, a new swarm of *Scythians*.

Bulgaria.

chians, passing over the *Ister* with an Army of 60000 fighting men, and wasting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *John* another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* against the *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a great slaughter, *Baldwin* the Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople* being taken prisoner, sent in bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly murdered, Anno 1206. Nor were they wanting to assist them against the *Turks*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire, by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the recovery whereof, they raised a great and puissant Army, unfortunately discombed by the Forces of *Amurath* the first, Anno 1369. Provoked with which invasion, *Amurath* having settled his affairs in *Asia*, with an Army of 30000 falleth into *Bulgaria*; takes divers places of importance, and prevailed so far, that *Sasimenes* the last Prince hereof, wrapping his winding sheet about him, to shew that he had deserved death, prostrates himself most abjectly at the Tyrants feet, offering to put *Silistria* (his strongest City) into his possession. For not performance of which offer, his Country is again invaded, most part of it taken from him; permitted to enjoy the rest upon hard conditions, as *vassal* and *tributary* to the *Turk*. But *Bajazet*, *Amuraths* successor, not content herewith picked a quarrel with him, and made an absolute conquest of *Bulgaria*, converting it into a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, Anno 1396. In which State it hath ever since continued, governed by three *Turkish* *Sanjacks* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*: the *Sanjacks* residing at *Nichopolis*, *Silistria*, and *Sophia*, in which last the *Beglerbeg* himself doth sometimes reside.

They are in D A C I A

Archbishops.

Bishops.

And so much for D A C I A.

MOUNT

MOUNT HÆMUS.



Before we enter into *Greece*, we must crosse *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a ridge of hills, extending from the *Euxine Sea* to the *Adriatick*; and thereby separating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*. So high and subject to the weather, that *Stratonicus* an old *Grecian* did use to say, that *eight months of the year it was alwayes cold; for the other four, winter*. It was affirmed by some of the *Ancient writers*, that from one of the highest heads hereof, as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been discerned: the truth of which report, upon very good reason, hath been called in question. But out of doubt, from some one top or *Summit* of it, there is so full a prospect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perseus* taking a survey of the fire of these Countries, *positis per abruptis Castris*, &c. as the *Storie* hath it, was able to make choice of the fittest places for Forts and Castles, whereby to lock up all the passages against his enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* so rough and craggy, that it is not to be passed but as two places only. Whereof one was made by the Emperour *Trajan*, where is yet to be seen a mighty strong gate built of great square stone: by which the passage that way was either opened or shut, at the pleasure of them who had the keeping of the same; with a small force exceeding easily defended against puissant Armies. The other being situate near a little River: by the *Bulgarians* called *Saliza*, not altogether so strait and narrow as the other, but rising high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous precipices, is alike impassable; defensible at ease, and without any great danger: as was experimentally found by the famous *Hunius*, when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his forces this way, for the siege of *Adrianople*. Those parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though somewhat openers, are not much easier of ascent; the passages through the broken rocks and precipices, being very difficult, and not easily mastered: inasmuch, that when *Perseus* the last King of *Macedon* had fortified the streights hereof against the *Romans*; *non reliquisse aditum nisi à cœlo venientibus vidbatur*, it was conceived (saith *Florus*) that there was no passage left for any forces, unless they fell immediately from the heaven: themselves.

This great and rockie chain of hills, as they were vehemently exposed to wind and weather, so were they destitute of those commodities, which were either comfortable or indeed meely necessarie to the life of man: which made the passage over them in a manner impossible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of cold and hunger. Yet were they not left desolate and void of people, especially in these sides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but most especially in those parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the spurs and branches of the hills spreading farre and wide, and taking up a great part of the Country; occasioned the *Romans* in the division of the *Diocese* of *Thrace* into severall Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mæsia*, by the name of *Hæmimontum*, or *Hæmimontana*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Uscudoma*, and *Anchiala*; the principal Governour hereof a *Roman President*. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Errour in the common impressions of the *Code*, *Lib. VII. Tit. 62. Leg. 23.* where we find *Hæmi montem*, for *Hæmimontum*: the first being the name only of the mountain; and the latter (which is there meant) of the *Roman Province*.

But

But to return unto the *Mountain*, there is another of this name in *Thessalie*, mentioned (or mistook for this) by *Servius* in his notes on the first book of the *Georgicks*; in the top whereof was said to be the habitation of *Mars*, on the bottom, the most pleasant valley of *Tempe*: so called from *Hæmus*, the son of *Boreas* and *Orithya* amongst the Poets. And possibly to distinguish this from that of *Thessalie*, *Prohomy*, and others call it *Hæmus*; without the *Aspirat*: though it may well be, that there are others of this name; as that this is called in divers places, or in divers Authors, by other names: one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Aristotle*, another *Scombrus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Laonicus* the whole called *Trafobus*. The like may be observed at the present also, *Pinesus* calling is by the name of *Cutena*; *Mundis*, a great part whereof it links together: *Cuspinianus*, *Castegnazzo*, *Lacini*, *Kri-*
stian; the *Italians*, *Mont Argentario*, the *Frenab*, *Monte de Castegno*; the *Sclavonians*, *Cumanica*; and the *Turks*, *Balkan*. Which I have therefore here observed for the Readers sake, that meeting any of these names in the *Stories* either of to the ancient or modern times, he may know what hills or mountains are intended by them. Which said, I now pass on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

OF

As for the Fathers of this Church, anciently and at this present held in most esteem, they were no other than such as had been Bishops of the greater Sees; that is to say, 1 S. Chrysostome, first a Reader of Antioch, afterwards patriarch of Constantinople: 2 Basil, and the two Gregories; 3 Nylsen, and Nazianzen, all in Asia Minor; this last of Constantinople also: 5, 6. The two Cyrils, the one Patriarch of Alexandria; the other, of Hierusalem: 7 Epiphanius, Bishop of Salamis in the Isle of Cyprus; 8 Theodoret, Bishop of Cyprus, &c. men of renown and precious memorie amongst them, to this very day. From whose writings, if they deviate in any material point of doctrine, it is in that of the 'Procession' of the Holy Ghost, which they grant to be per Filium, but not a Filio. And though Chelchibevvus, Lombard, and other moderate men of the Church of Rome, do grant the difference to be rather, in modo explicando, quam in ipsa re; and that the Clause a Filioque, was added by the Romanists to the ancient Creeds, the Grecians not being privie nor consenting to it: yet so uncharitable is that Church towards these poor men, languishing under the tyrannie of Turkish thraldom, as to persecute them with reproach and scorn, brand them for Schismatics and Apostates, and solemnly to anathematize them, in Bulls Censuræ, every Maunday Thursday. And it is a very hard measure to add and anathematize too, as is right well observed by the late Lord Archbishop of Canterbury, in his notable Discourse against the Jesuits. Other particular Tenets in which the Greek Church differeth from the Romish and Reformed (as in some points it doth from both) have been already specified in our Description of Russia: the Churches of the Greeks, and Moscovites, differing in no material points, but 1. the manner of distributing the Sacrament; 2ly, the exacting of marriage by the Moscovites, in the party admitted unto Orders; 3ly, the frequent admitting of divorces upon light occasions; and 4ly, finally in being less strict in observing the Lent before Easter than in any of the other three. For whereas the Grecians account it a damnable sin to eat flesh or fish which hath blood in it, in any of their other Lents or times of abstinence, (they have in both Churches four in all:) in that before Easter, which of all reason ought to be kept most punctually, the Laity eat all sorts of fish without any exception; the blood of some of which, as the Cusle by name, is held to be a delicate food, and in great request.

The Language they spake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects viz. 1 the Attick, 2 the Dorick, 3 the Eolick, 4 the Ionick: besides the common phrase of speech most in use among them. A language of great fame for the liberal Arts, but more for so great a part of the holy Scripture, first delivered in it: and for the lofty sound, significant expressions, genuine suavity, and happy composition of words, so excelling all others, that even in the flourishing of the Roman Empire, it so much overtopped the Latine, that the Histories of Rome it self (as of Polybius, Appian, Dion Cassius) were written in it. It was once also the general language of Anatolia, some parts of Itallie, Provence in France, and almost all the Islands of the Mediterranean. But now partly by the mutilation of some words, and contraction of others; partly by confusion of the true sound of Vowels, Diphthongs, and Consonants, and the translating of the Accents; and finally, by the admixture of foreign Nations, it is not only fallen from its natural elegancy, but from its largeness of extent. For it is now shut up within the limits of Greece, and the Sea-coast of the lesser Asia, opposite unto it; and there not only much corrupted, but almost quite devoured by the Turkish and Slavonian tongues; but specially by that which they call Franco, a Mungrel language, composed of Italian, French, and some Spanish words; used as the ordinary speech for commerce and intercourse betwixt Christians, Jews, Turks, and the Greeks themselves, who do not understand, and much less speak the true genuine Greek. So that although they still retain for ordinary dayes, S. Chrysostoms Liturgie; and that of S. Basil for the Festivals: yet being both written in the ancient and learned Greek, they are no more understood by the Vulgar Grecian, than the Latine Service by the common and illiterate Papist.

The soil questionless is very fruitfull, and would yeeld great profit to the husbandman, if they would take pains in the tilling: but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things subject to the Grand Seigneur and his souldiers; neglect the tillage of their lands, on the same grounds with those who said in the Poets Eclogues:

*Impiū hęc tam culta novalia miles habebit?
Barbarus hęc segetes? en quęsī conjecimus arva!*

Shall misbelieving Turkey these acres spoil,
Which I manur'd with so much coit and toil?
Shall they enjoy my care? See neighbours see,
For whom these goodly corn-fields tilled be!

The more natural and certain commodities which they transport into other parts, are Wines, which in memory of the water which our Saviour turned into wine, and on the six day of January being that day whereon this miracle was wrought, they use to baptize: for which cause the Jews will drink none of them. They send also into other parts of the world, Oil, Copper, Vitriol, some Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turke-Grograms, &c.

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, Miltiades, Aristides, and Themistocles of Athens; Lysander, and Agésilas, of Sparta; Pelopidas, and Epaminondas, of Thebes; Aratus, and Philopamen of Achæia; Pyrrhus of Epirus; Philip of Macedon, the subverter of the Grecian liberty, and Alexander his son (to omit infinite others) the subverter of the Persian Monarchy. For the divine Philoophers, Plato, Socrates, Aristotles, and Theophrastus; for the most eminent Lawgivers,

givers, Solon and Lycurgus; for the most exquisite Poets, Hesiodus, Homer, Sophocles, and Aristophanes; for the famous Historiographers, Xenophon the condisciple of Plato, Thucydides, Plutarch, and Herodotus; the eloquent Orators, Aeschines, Demosthenes, and Isocrates; and lastly, for the Authors and Establishers of all humane learning whatsoever, only the Mathematicians excepted.

The chief Rivers, are 1 Cephisus, which arising in the Frontiers of Epirus, disburtheneth it self into the Aegean Sea. 2 Erigon, and 3 Alaicmon, which beginning their course in the more Northern parts of Macedon, end it in Thirmiacus Sinus. 4 Strymon in Mygdonia. 5 Albicun and Nisus in Thracæ. 6 Symphalius, where Hercules killed the Symphalian birds; And 7 Ladon, in Arcadia. 8 Inachus, whose daughter Io turned into a Heifer, was worshipped by the Egyptians under the name of Isis. 9 Achelous in Epirus, much celebrated by the ancient Poets, especially by Ovid in his Metamorphosis. As is also the chief River of Thessaly, and there arising from Mount Pindus, and increased with the waters of many Rivers. Daphne the Nymph, whom Apollo is fabled to have loved, and turned into a Bay tree, lived near or on the banks of this River Peneus; and is therefore said to be his daughter: as is also above-mentioned was the daughter of Inachus. Of less note,

Populifer 11 Sperchius, & irrequietus 12 Enipeus,
13 Apidannusque senex, lenisque 14 Amphyrys, & 15 Aëa.

That is to say:

Cool Sperchie, Enipeus that troubled ran;
Smooth Amphyrys, Aëa, and old Apidan.

The rest of less note, and the most eminent Mountains in each part hereof, shall be remembred in their places, as we see occasion.

Thus much of the whole Country in gross. And as for the division of it with reference to the State of the Roman Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Dioceses, viz. Thracæ and Macedon: the first under the Præfectus Prætorio Orientis, the latter (together with that of Dacia) under the Præfectus Prætorio for Illyricum. Of these the Diocese of Macedon lying wholly within the bounds of the Modern Greece, contained the Provinces of Macedonia prima. 2 Macedonia Secunda, or Salmariis (now, as in former times, called Albania.) 3 Epirus Nova, taking up the Countries of Phocis, Locris, and so much of the Old Epirus as was on that side of the River Achelous. 4 Old Epirus, comprehending all the rest of that Country. 5 Thessalie. 6 Achæia, containing all Achæia and Peloponnesus, the Countries of Laconia and Phocis excepted only. And 7 Crete or Candie, with the Islands adjoining. And for the Diocese of Thracæ, it was divided into the Provinces of 1 Thracæ, specially so called. 2 Europa, 3 Rhodope, 4 Hæmi-montum, 5 Mæsia Inferior, and 6 Scythia: of which the four first make up the body of Thracæ, and shall there be spoken of; the two last being comprehended in the Modern Dacia; have been described already in their proper places. But not to bind my self precisely unto this division; (though I shall look on this as occasion serveth) I shall consider Greece in the several Provinces of 1 Peloponnesus, 2 Achæia, 3 Epirus, 4 Albania, 5 Macedon, 6 Thracæ, 7 The Islands of the Propontick, 8 Aegean, and 9 the Ionian Seas, and 10 finally the Isle of Crete.

1 PELOPONNESUS.

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the East, with the Cretan; on the West, with the Adriatic or Ionian Seas, on the North-east, with Sinus Saronicus, now Golfo di Engia; on the North-west, with Sinus Corinthiacus, now Golfo di Patràs, or Lepanto; and on the South, with the Mediterranean. So that it is almost an Island, properly called a Peninsula, rounded with the Sea, except where it is tied to the main Land of Greece, by an Isthmus six miles in breadth: which the Grecians and Venetians; fortified with a great Wall and five Castles. This was called anciently Hexamilium; and was overthrown by Amurath the second, who harassed and spoiled all the Country. It was afterwards in the year 1453, upon the rumour of a War, built up again by the Venetians (who then had the greatest part of this Country) in 15 dayes; there being for that time 30000 men employed in the work. This wall extended from one Sea unto the other, which had it been as gallantly guarded as it was hastily made up; or as it was well fortified, had it been as well manned; might easily have resisted the Turks, until more means had been thought on to defend it. Nor less observable, but more fruitless was the design of some in the elder times, to cut thorow this Isthmus, and make a perfect Island of it. Attempted by Demetrius King of Macedon, Julius Caesar, and Caius Caligula; by none more eagerly pursued; than by the Emperour Nero: who to hearten on his Souldiers, loth to attempt so fruitless an enterprise, took a Spade in hand, and busily began the work. Yet at last the Souldiers, being frightened with the blood which abundantly broke forth with the groans and roarings, which they continually heard; and with the Hagoblines and Furies, which were alway in their sight; perswaded the Emperour; now half out of the humour, to leave this, and enjoy them some more profitable service: given over by the former Princes on the like discouragements. But of this Isthmus we shall add no more; than these words of Ovid, and so pass forwards to the description of the Country: That is to say,

Messenia.

That is to say :

Some in Olympick dust take pride
 Their Chariots and themselves to hide;
 Whom the shunn'd mark, and Palms to priz'd,
 Like to the Gods hath eterniz'd.
 Such as like heavenly wights do come
 With an Elean Garland home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules* these games were discontinued for 430 years: at which time one *Iphitus*, warned so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, renewed them; causing them to be solemnly exercised every fourth year: from which custom *Olympias* is sometimes taken for the space of 4 years; as *quinque annorum Olympiades*, for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the flood to be obscure; those before the *Olympiads*, and after the flood, to be fabulous; but those that followed these *Olympiads*, to be Historical. These *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the restauration of them by *Iphidra*, until the reign of the Emperour *Theodosius*, the *Grecian Epoebe*, by which they reckoned their *actus*, the first of them being placed in the year of the World, 3174. before the building of *Rome*, 40 *compt*: the first of them being placed in the year of the World, 3174. before the building of *Rome*, 40 *compt*: the last in the 440 year after Christs nativity. According to which reckoning this *accompt* continued for the space of 1214 years: the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympiade* not found in *Peloponnesus*: the Town at this day called by the name of *Sconri*. 3 *Pisa*, whose people followed *Nestor* to the Wars of *Troy*; and in their return were by tempest driven to the coasts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Pisa* in *Tuscany*. 4 *Turnese*, a new Town, or the new name of some ancient City; from whence the adjoining Promontory, of old called *Chilonites*, is now called *Cabo di Turnese*.

3 *MESSENA* hath on the East, *Arcadia*; on the North, *Elis*; on the South, and West, the Sea. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Messene*, situate on *Sinus Messeniacus*, now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2 *Pylos*, where *Nestor* was King, now called *Novarino*; a desolate and poor Village not worth noting. Of which thus *Ovid* speaking in the name of *Penelope*;

Nos Pylon; antiqui Neleia Nestoris arva,
 Misimus; incerta est reddita fama Pylo.

To Pylon, aged Nestors seat, we sent;
 But could not hear from thence how matters went.

3 *Modon*, or *Metihone*, seated in the most Southern part of this Peninsula, from whence unto the *Isthmus*, which joineeth it to the rest of *Greece*, are reckoned 175 Italian miles; the Town commodiously situate in a Demie Island, washed on the one side with the Sea, and so well fortified toward the Land, that seated in the opinion of most men it is thought impregnable; adorned on the South side with a large and capacious Bay, about 3 miles wide, secure from all winds except the North, and shut up with a little Island called anciently *Odnuse*, but now *Sapientia*, which makes it one of the safest harbours in all these Seas: possessed once by the State of *Venice*, but conquered by the *Turks*, after many sharp and fierce assaults, Anno 1500. both *Pylos* and *Corone* yielding on the noise thereof; The best retreat since that time of the *Turkish* Navies, and the ordinary residence of the *Turkish* Zanzack, who hath the government of this whole Province of *Morea*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*. 4 *Corone*, or *Ceron*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Messene*, called from hence *Golfo di Corone*, and the last which held out against the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea-coast of *Peloponnesus*. 5 *Cyparissi*, now called *Arcadia*, from whence the Bay adjoining hath the name of *Golfo di Arcadia*. Here is also the Promontory called of old *Coryphusum*, now *Cabo Zanchio*.

The people of this small Province had once a great sway in the whole Peninsula. At first confederate with the *Spartans* in so strict a league; that they mutually sent young Virgins to one another, for their publick sacrifices: but afterwards *Corrivals* with them for the Supreme power. The *Spartans* at the last getting the upper hand of them, oppressed them with a miserable servitude. The occasion this: In the confines of this Country stood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Messenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that some *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Messenians* here ravished: which abuse the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their War; the true reason indeed being their covetousness of the sole Empire. This War broke out three several times. The first continued 20 years, in which space, the *Lacedaemonians* fearing their absence would hinder the supply of children in the City, sent a company of their ablest young men home to accompany their wives. Their Offspring were called *Parthenii*, who coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, sailed into *Italy*, and there built were called *Tarentum*. The second being of 23 years continuance, was raised and maintained by *Aristomenes*, one of the chief men of the *Messenians*; in which they prospered till *Aristocrates*, King of *Arcadia*, one of their confederates, revolted to side with *Lacedaemon*. Then began they to decline, and *Aristomenes* was thrice

Arcadia
and
Laconia.

thrice taken prisoner, still miraculously escaping. His last imprisonment was in a Dungeon, where by chance espying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her tail: The Fox running away, guided *Aristomenes* after; till the straitness of the hole by which he went out, made him leave his hold, and fall to scraping with his nails: which exercise he never left till he had made the hole passable, and so escaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, died in *Rhoder*. The third War was like drops after a tempest. In which the *Messenians* being finally subdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become Slaves unto the *Spartans* who put them to all drudgeries and servile works, as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their bondmen: and to this life some of them did apply themselves with so much obsequiousness, that at last it grew into a Proverb, *Messenii servilior*, that such a one was more servile, or more slavishly used, than these poor *Messenians*. But the greatest part of them not brooking that heavy yoke, passed into *Sicily*, and there built the City of *Messana*. Others were planted in *Naupactus*, by the State of *Athens*; the rest dispersed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas* having vanquished the *Lacedaemonians* at the battle of *Leutres*, restored them to their ancient possessions.

4 *ARCADIA* hath on the East, *Laconia*; on the West, *Elis* and *Messene*; on the North, *Achaia Propria*; and on the South the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcus*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Calisto*; but was formerly called *Pelagasia*: the people whereof thought themselves more ancient than the Moon.

Orta prius Luna, de se si creditur ipsi,
 A magno tellus Arcade nomen habet.

The land which of great *Arcus* took its name,
 Was e're the Moon, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are 1 *Mantineia*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, consisting of 30000 Foot, and 3000 Horse; routed the Army of the *Spartans* and *Athenians*, consisting of 25000 Foot, and 2000 Horse. In this battle *Epaminondas* that famous Leader, received his death wound, and not long after died. At his last gasp one of his friends bemoaning his untimely death; *Alas*, said he, thou diest *Epaminondas*, and leavest behind thee no children: Nay, replied he, two daughters will I leave behind me, the victory of *Leutres*, and this other at *Mantineia*. It was afterwards called *Antigonia*, in honour of *Antigonus*, Tutor or Protector of *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperour *Adrian*, restored to its old name again; and is now called *Mantegna*. 2 *Megalopolis*, the birth-place of *Polybius* that excellent Historian. The one half of it had sometimes the name of *Orestis*, from the lodging of *Orestes* in it; the whole now called *Leontari*, on what cause I know not. 3 *Phialia*, towards the Sea. 4 *Trophis*, so called from *Trophis*, one of the sons of *Lycan*, once King of this Country, slain by *Jupiter*. 5 *Stymphalius*, situate near a Lake and River of the same name, where *Hercules* slew the *Stymphalian* birds; so great in number and in body, that they darkened the Sun-beams, and terribly infested this little Province; till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was also in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Stymphalida*. 6 *Tegea*, famous for the Temple of *Pan*, here worshipped, and from hence called *Tegeus*; more for the War made upon the *Tegeates*, or people hereof, by the *Lacedaemonians*: who thinking themselves assured of Victory, brought with them store of chains and fetters, wherewith to lead captive their conquered Enemies; but being overcome in battle, were themselves bound with them, and forced as slaves, to till the grounds of these *Tegeates*. Here is also in this Country the River *Styx*, whose water for the poysonous taste was called the water of Hell: by which Poets feign, that the Gods use to swear, as may be every where observed; and that what God soever swore by *Styx* falsely, he was banished from Heaven; and prohibited *Nestor* for 100 years.

This Country for the fitness of it for pasturage and grazing, hath made it the subject of many witty and witty discourses, especially that of Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honourable mention: a Book, which besides its excellent language, rare contrivances, and delectable stories, hath in it all the strains of *Poesse*, comprehendeth the universal art of speaking; and to them which can discern and will observe, affordeth notable rules for demeanour, both private and publick. Which noble Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the English *Heliodore*, so the ingenious Author of the History of *Melinus* and *Ariana*, may deservedly be called the French *Sidney*.

5 *LACONIA* is bounded on the West, with *Arcadia*; on the East, and South, with the Sea; on the North with *Argolis*. Called first *Lelegia*, from the *Leleges*, by *Strabo*, said to be the first Inhabitants of it, afterwards *Oebalia* from *Oebalus* a King of *Lacedaemon*; and finally, *Laconia*, of the *Lacones*, who succeeded the *Leleges* in the possession hereof, on their removal, into the Islands of the lesser *Asia*. It is by some Writers also called *Heecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The soil hereof exceeding rich, and the fields very spacious, yet for the most part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hill and Mountains which overthwart it. Well watered with the River *Ennaeus*, and memorable for many fair Bays and Promontories: of which the principal are the Promontories of *Malea* and *Tanaria*, now called *Cabo Malio*, and *Cabo Matapan*: and of the Bays, that called *Golfo di Colobina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the ancients; into which the River *Ennaeus*, (now better known

D d d 3 by

Laconia.

by the name of *Vasilo Potamo*, or the Kingly River) pours his gentle streams. The nature of the people we shall find in *Sparta*.

Places of the most observation in it, 1 *Leuistres* situate on the Sea side, near the Bay of *Messeni*; of which name were two others in *Greece*; the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*, but this last most memorable. 2 *Amicyla*, so called from *Amicyla* the third King of *Sparta*, by whom first founded: renowned afterwards for the birth of *Castor* and *Pollux*, the sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the Foundress of the City of *Amicyla* in *Calabria Superior*, at first a Colonie of this, distant from *Lacedaemon* about 20 Furlongs. 3 *Thulana*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* slew the Monster *Hydra*: and not far off Mount *Tanarus* near the Promontorie *Tanaria*, in which the Natives shew a Cave, (believed in former times to be the descent into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4 *Salassia*, where *Antigonos* vanquished *Cleomenes*, the last King of *Sparta*. 5 *Epidaurus*, (seated on the Bay, named *Golpo di Napoli*) now called *Malvasia*; a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the sweet Wines called *Malvesey*, or *Malmsey*, sent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. 6 *Sparta*, so called from *Sparta* the son or brother of *Phonoreus*, the second King of *Argos*, the Founder of it: but afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Lacedaemon*, the second King of this Country, it took that name also; promiscuously known by both in the best Authors. One of the Eyes of *Greece*, and a famous Commonwealth; but at first governed by the best Kings, as most of the *Greek* Cities in ancient times. *Tyndarus* the Father of *Castor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof. After whose death, and the death of the said famous brethren; *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta* or *Lacedaemon*, in right of *Helena* his wife, their sister. And though *Nicostratus*, and *Magapenthes*, sons of *Menelaus* by another venter, succeeded after his decease; yet the *Spartans* soon rejected them, and received *Orestes* the son of *Agamemnon* to be their King; marrying him to *Hermione* the daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and consequently the Niece of *Tyndarus*. *Tisamenus*, the son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, succeeded next; in whose time the *Heracidae* or posterity of *Hercules* returned into *Greece*, under the conduct of *Temennus*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Aristodemus*, sons of *Aristomachus*: whereof the first possessed himself by force of Arms, of the City of *Argos*; the second, of *Messeni*; and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*: which dying very shortly after, he left unto his two sons *Eurythmus* and *Procles*, the roots of the two Royal Families, which jointly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*: first absolutely as *Sovereign Princes*, without any controul; afterwards at the direction of the *Senate*, and finally under the command and check of those popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But because these *Spartan* Kings in each several period, were for the most part men of action, and often mentioned in the Histories of the elder time: I will first make a Catalogue of them, and then subjoin such observations and remembrances, as I think most pertinent.

The KINGS of SPARTA

Of the first Family.

A.M.

- 1 *Eurotas*, the first King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
- 2 *Lacedaemon*, brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacedaemon*.
- 3 *Amicyla*, son of *Lacedaemon*, the Founder of *Amicyla*, a *Laconian* City.
- 4 *Argalus*, son of *Amicyla*.
- 5 *Cynorta*, son of *Argalus*.
- 6 *Oebalus*, son of *Cynorta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
- 7 *Hippocoon*, son of *Oebalus*.
- 2700 8 *Tyndarus* brother of *Hippocoon*, in whose life he was King of *Oebalia* only.
- 9 *Castor* and *Pollux*, sons of *Tyndarus*, famous among the *Argonauts*.
- 2740 10 *Menelaus*, son of *Atreus*, and brother of *Agamemnon*, Kings of *Mycene*, together with *Helena* his wife, the daughter of *Tyndarus*, whose Rape occasioned the destruction of *Troy*.
- 2770 11 *Nicostratus*, and *Magapenthes*, sons of *Menelaus* by a former wife.
- 12 *Orestes*, son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his wife, daughter of *Helena*, and *Menelaus*.
- 13 *Tisamenus*, son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, who being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heracidae*, reigned in *Achaia*; and left his Kingdom there, unto his posterity.

The

Laconia.

The KINGS of SPARTA.

Of the Race of the HERACLIDE.

1 *Aristodemus*, the first King of the race of *Hercules*, left the Kingdom jointly to his two sons.

2848	1	<i>Eristhenes</i>	2848	1	<i>Procles</i>
2890	2	<i>Agis</i> , from whom this line were called <i>Agide</i> .	2	<i>Enripion</i> , from whom this line were called <i>Eurypontide</i> .	
2891	3	<i>Echestratus</i>	3	<i>Prytanis</i>	
2926	4	<i>Labetas</i>	4	<i>Ennomus</i>	
2963	5	<i>Dryfus</i>	5	<i>Polydectes</i>	
2992	6	<i>Agessilaus</i>	3076	6	<i>Charilaus</i>
3046	7	<i>Archelaus</i>	3140	7	<i>Nicandrus</i>
3096	8	<i>Teleclus</i>	3176	8	<i>Theopompus</i>
3136	9	<i>Alcumenes</i>	9	<i>Archidamus</i>	
3173	10	<i>Polydorus</i>	10	<i>Zenxidamus</i>	
	11	<i>Eurycrates</i>	11	<i>Anaxidamus</i>	
	12	<i>Anaxandrus</i>	12	<i>Archidamus</i> II.	
	13	<i>Eurycrates</i> II.	13	<i>Agasicles</i>	
	14	<i>Leonidas</i>	14	<i>Ariston</i>	
	15	<i>Anaxandrides</i>	15	<i>Demaratus</i>	
	16	<i>Cleomenes</i>	3447	16	<i>Leotychides</i>
	17	<i>Leonidas</i> II.	3478	17	<i>Archidamus</i> III.
3470	18	<i>Plistarchus</i>	3520	18	<i>Agis</i>
3471	19	<i>Plistonax</i>	3547	19	<i>Agessilaus</i>
3539	20	<i>Pausanias</i>	3588	20	<i>Archidamus</i> IV.
3553	21	<i>Agessipolis</i>	3611	21	<i>Agis</i> II.
3567	22	<i>Cleombrotus</i>	22	<i>Eudamidas</i>	
3576	23	<i>Agessipolis</i> II.	23	<i>Archidamus</i> V.	
3577	24	<i>Cleomenes</i> II.	24	<i>Eudamidas</i> II.	
3611	25	<i>Arius</i>	25	<i>Agis</i> III.	
3655	26	<i>Acrotatus</i>	3700	26	<i>Eurydamidas</i> , the last King of the line of the <i>Eurypontide</i> , slain by <i>Cleomenes</i> , the last of the other line also.
	27	<i>Arius</i> II.			
	28	<i>Leonidas</i> III.			
	29	<i>Cleombrotus</i> II.			
3714	30	<i>Cleomenes</i> III. the last of the line of the <i>Agide</i> ;			

who having slain *Eurydamidas* the son of *Agis* the third, substituted his brother *Epicles* in his place. But being himself shortly after vanquished by *Antigonos* of *Macedonia*, and forced to fly his Country with his wife and children; the Government of the *Heracidae* ended, after it had continued here for the space of 900 years, or thereabouts.

Under these Kings the Government at first was *αγαν μοναρχικον*, as *Plutarch* termeth it, sufficiently *Monarchical*, if it were not more. Under *Ennomus*, the fourth King of the second house, the people finding the reins of Government let loose, began to mutiny and grow too headstrong. To bridle whom, and to restrain the Kings withal, (should they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus* the Protector of *Charilaus*, the sixth King of that house, did ordain the *Senate*; committing to them the supreme power in matters civil, and leaving to the Kings the ordering all military and sacred business. To curb the infolencies of this *Senate*, who quickly found their own strength, *Theopompus* the eighth King of that house with the consent of *Polydorus* the tenth King of the other; instituted a new *Magistracie* chosen out of the *Common People*, whom they called the *Ephori*, which grew in fine to such an height of pride and tyranny; as not only to controul the *Senators*, but to censure, fine, imprison, depose, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the spirit of sedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedaemon*, was at first a *Monarchie* under Kings, then an *Aristocracie* under the command of the *Senate*; next a *Democracie* under the *Ephori*; and finally by those popular Officers made to plain a *Tyranny*, that *Aristotle* and *Plato*, two great *Common-wealths* men, who died before they had embred their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms *τυραννικη & ολιγαρχικη*, a most absolute tyranny. What think you would these men have called it, had they lived to see *Leonidas* the third deposed; and *Agis* the third of that name also, most barbarously murdered by these popular *Villains*?

But being the foundation of this *Common-wealth* was first laid, and the good Laws and *Politique* Constitutions by which it did so long subsist in great power and splendour, established by the Wit and power of *Lycurgus*, as before was said: we are to know concerning him, that he was the son of *Ennomus*, the fourth King of the second house, slain in a popular tumult by the *Common People*. Who finding by this Essay, that the people were become too head-strong for the Kings to govern, unless reduced to extreme bondage by their Kings, which he wished not neither; took the advantage of the minority of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government: and what he could not do by

fair



fair means, to effect by arms; forcing this *Charilans*, though his Nephew, when he came to age, to flee for sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleased, and settled such a form of Government as himself well fancied, the better to decline the envy of so great a change, he got leave to travel, binding the people by an oath to observe all his laws until his return: and being gone, commanded at his death, that his ashes should be cast into the Sea, lest being carried back to *Sparta* the people might conceive themselves released from their oath. By means whereof his laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Common-wealth did flourish in all prosperity: the particulars of which institutions he that lists to see, may find them specified at large, by *Plutarch* in the life of *Lycorgus*. Suffice it that the Discipline was so sharp and strict, that many went into the wars for no other reason, than on a hope to rid themselves from so hard a life: and that *Diogenes* returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from men to women, in his *Ἀνδρῶν ὅς τις τὸν ἄνθρωπον*. And being asked in what part of *Greece* he had met with the completest men; made answer, that he could no where meet with men, but that he had found some boyes amongst the *Spartans*. A Cynical and rugged answer, but such as carried a great deal of judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more stout and resolute in all their actions, and less effeminate in their lives, than the rest of the *Grecians*. But besides the strictness of the discipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them with for Wars abroad: namely the little or no power which either the *Senate*, and the power of the civil matters, or affairs of State; entirely left to the disposing of the *Kings* or People had in *Ephori*. So that the *Kings* having by the Laws the command of their armies, were willing to engage in War upon all occasion; and the common people as desirous to attend them in such employments, as the *Kings* could wish. Upon these grounds the War is made a Trade amongst them; beginning with the *Helots*, a neighbouring people; then with the rest of the *Lacônians*; afterwards quarrelling the *Messeniensians*, their old Confederates: all which they severally subdued and made subject to them. In the War which *Xerxes* made against the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the first, of the elder house, went forth to aid them; slain at the Straights of *Thermopylae*, courageously fighting for the liberty of *Greece*: and when it was thought fit, to set upon the *Persian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In pursuit of this War against the *Persians*, *Pausanias* and *Agessilaus* were of most renown; the first in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*; the other in making War upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Persians*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their Rivals in point of Sovereignty and glory. Hence the long War betwixt these Cities, called *Bellum Peloponnesiacum*, managed for the most part in *Peloponessus*, from thence transferred into *Sicily*, and at last ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an *Ariflocracy* under 30 Magistrates of their own appointment, commonly called the thirty tyrants. Proud of this fortunate success, their next quarrel was with the *Boeotians*, the conquerors of *Athens* covertly, and the *Persians* openly allying the enemy. Here their prosperity began to leave them. For besides many small defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* so discomfited them, at the overthrow of *Leutres* and *Manina*, that *Sparta* it self was in danger of utter ruine. Not long after happened the *Holy War*, chiefly undertaken against the *Phocians*, wherein also they made a party: but this War being ended by King *Philip*, they scarce breathed more freedom than he gave air to. But when *Alexanders* Captains fought for the Empire of their Master, all these flourishing Republicks were either totally swallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedæmonians* held the chief strength of a Town to consist in the valour of the people; and therefore would never suffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediately following the death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not those fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Dofon*, King of *Macedon*; who having vanquished *Cleomenes* King of *Sparta*, entered the Town and was the first man that ever was received into it as Conqueror. So much different were the present *Spartans* from the valour and courage of their ancestors. *Cleomenes* being forced to forsake his Country, and the race of the *Heraclide* failing in him, they became a prey to *Machanides* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants; from whom they were no sooner freed, but they were made subject (in a manner) to the power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town so weak and inconsiderable, that it was not able to resist the poorest enemy; now a small Burrough called *Misistra*. And so I leave them to the thoughts of their former glories, having now nothing else to boast of, but the fame and memory of their actions in former times.

ARGOLIS, so called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South, with *Laconia*: on the West, with *Corinthia*, and *Achaia Propria*; on the East and North, with the Sea. A Territory remarkable for a most excellent breed of Horses, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argus* the fourth King of this Country, and the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable as for other things, so 1. for the death of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*; who having forced his entry into it, was here ignobly slain, after all his victories, by the hands of an old woman, throwing a tile at him from the top of an house. 2. For the long race of the *Kings* hereof, from *Inachus* the contemporary of our Father *Abraham*, An. 2003. unto *Acisius* their last King. Whose daughter *Danae* being shut up in a Tower of Brass, was deflowered by *Jupiter*; to whom the bare the renowned *Perseus*, so memorized in ancient Poets. But *Perseus* having by misfortune slain his Grandfather, the old King *Acisius*, quitted the City of *Argos* as unlucky to him, and transferred the Kingdom to *Mycene*, a City of his own foundation, and so better fancied, by means hereof, the second City of esteem in this little Province. Growing in small time unto so great riches, that it got the name of *dites Mycena*; as appeareth by *Horace*; in whom the Horses of *Argos*, and the wealth of *Mycene* are placed in one verse together;

Aptum



Aptum dicis equis Argos, dicesque Mycenae.

For horses *Argos* is of fame,
For wealth *Mycene* hath the name.

Trazen, situate on the Sinus *Argolicus*, now called *Golfo di Engia*, the Royal seat of *Pytheus*, the Father of *Thesus*, who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath sometime the name of *Pythia Trazen*, and *Thesus* many times is called *Trazenius Heros*, as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthius Heros*, from 4 *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was nursed. 5 *Nemea*, where *Hiracles* slew the dreadful *Leon* which annoyed this Country. In honour of which noble Act, were instituted in time following the *Nemean Games*, which continued of great fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exercises were, running with swift horses, whorl-bats, running on foot, quoiting, wrestling, darting, shooting. Some have referred the original of these Games to one *Opheltus* a *Lacedæmonian*; and in whose honour they conceive them instituted: and others fetch it higher from the war of *Ithebes*. But this I take to be the more allowable opinion. 6 *Epidaurum*, on the Sea side, famous for the Temple of *Æsculapius*, and the cure of all sorts of diseases there; so called from *Epidaurum*, the son of *Argus*, the Founder of it. Of the same name, but of a different situation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being seated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Melissa*, and *Emera*, at that time an Island, but by an Earthquake laid unto the continent: now called *Pigadia*. 7 *Nauplia*, so called of *Nauplius* King of *Eubœa*, and father of *Palamedes*, to whom it is anciently belonged. A station then, as now, for shipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Neapolis*, the richest and best traded in all this tract; giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Napoli*, of old Sinus *Argolicus*; into which the famous River *Inachus* having passed through the City of *Argos*, doth disgorge it self; so called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io* and the Original and Progenitor of

THE KINGS of ARGOS and MYCENÆ.

- A.M.*
- 2693 1 *Inachus*, the supposed Father of *Io*, from whom the *Grecians* are sometimes called by the name of *Inachii*.
 - 2143 2 *Phoroneus*, the son of *Inachus* and *Melissa*, from whom the said *Io* hath the name of *Phoronis* in the Poet.
 - 2223 3 *Apis*, the son of *Jupiter*, and *Niobe* the daughter of *Phoroneus*, who leaving *Greece*, went into *Egypt*, where he taught the people tillage, and was there worshipped afterwards in the form of an Ox.
 - 2228 4 *Argus*, the son of *Apis*, and the Founder of *Argos*, in whose time Agriculture was taken up amongst the *Grecians*; from him called *Argivi*.
 - 2308 5 *Crius*, by some *Peirasus*, the son of *Argus*.
 - 2363 6 *Phorbas*, the son of *Crius*; in whose time *Atlas* and *Promethus* are said to flourish.
 - 2397 7 *Triopas*, the son of *Phorbas*, and the brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himself in the Isle of *Rhodes*.
 - 2442 8 *Crotopus*.
 - 2464 9 *Sthenelus*, ousted of the Kingdom by
 - 2475 10 *Danaus*, the brother of *Egyptus*; by whom driven out of *Egypt*, he was made King of *Argos*, by consent of the people: the Father of those many daughters got with child by *Hercules*. From him the *Grecians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.
 - 2525 11 *Lyncæus*, son of *Egyptus*, the brother of *Danaus*.
 - 2556 12 *Abas*, the son of *Lyncæus*, and *Hypermetra* the daughter of *Danaus*.
 - 2566 13 *Pretus*, the son of *Abas*.
 - 2606 14 *Acisius*, the brother of *Pretus*, and the father of *Danae*, foretold by the Oracle that he should be slain by a son of that daughter, shut her up in a brazen Tower. But *Jupiter*, having corrupted the Guards with Gold, got the Ladies consent, by whom he had *Perseus*, so renowned amongst the Poets and Historians of those elder times.
 - 2637 15 *Perseus*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, exposed by his Grandfather to the Seas. Miraculously preserved, and grown into great fame by his brave exploits; he restored *Acisius* to his throne, from which he had been deposed by his brother *Pretus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately slain the said *Acisius*, he removed his seat unto *Mycene*; where he reigned together with his son *Sthenelus*.
 - 2645 16 *Eurystheus*, the son of *Sthenelus*, much spoken of for the difficult tasks, which, at the instigation of *Juno*, he imposed on *Hercules* his foster-child, and the supposed son of *Amphitryon* his Cousin German.
 - 2688 17 *Atræus* and *Thyestes*, sons of *Pelops*, on the failing of the line of *Perseus*, succeeded in *Argos* and *Mycene*; infamous for their murders and adultery: *Thyestes* abusing the bed of *Atræus*, and *Atræus* feasting him with the body of his own son, whence *Trisitia Dana* in the Proverb.
 - 2753 18 *Agamemnon*, the son of *Atræus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the War of *Troy*, in which

ἀκτιον

Corinthia.

- action there engaged 69 Kings of the *Greecians*, wafted over with a Navy of 1224 ships, killed at his coming home by *Egiffhus*, his Cousin German.
- 2768 19 *Egiffhus*, the son of *Thyestes*, having defiled *Clitemnestra* the wife of *Agamemnon* in the time of his absence; by her procurement murdered him at his coming home, and usurped the Kingdom.
- 2775 20 *Orestes*, son of *Agamemnon*, revenged his fathers death on *Egiffhus*, and *Clitemnestra* his own Mother. After which falling mad, and restored again unto his wits, he married *Hermione*, daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the Kingdom of *Spithallo*.
- 2803 21 *Penthius*, the son of *Orestes*, and the last King of this line; oured of his estate by the *Doris* and *Heraclida*; who made themselves Masters of all *Peloponnesus*, which they possessed until the conquest of it by the *Macedonians*.

7 CORINTHIA is a little Region, lying towards the *Isthmus* or neck of land, which joyneth *Peloponnesus* to the rest of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis* and *Achaia Propria*. It containeth only the territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitful of those commodities which the rest of this Peninsula doth abound withal: as being mountainous and hilly, and by reason of the nearness of the Sea, full of craggy Rocks. The chief, and indeed the only Cities of note in it, 1. *Cenchreae*, the naval Road or station of ships for *Corinth*, mentioned *Alt.* 19. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a distinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was; situate on that Bay which openeth into the *Cretan* Sea, called anciently *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golpodi Engia*; and consequently opposite to 2. *Lechaum*, the other naval Road for *Corinth*, situate on the Western Bay, called of old *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now the Gulf of *Lepanto*. 3. *Corinth* it self, commodiously situate for the command of all *Greece* (had not the Inhabitants been more given to Merchandise than unto the Wars) as being seated on the bottom of the neck or *Isthmus*; the *Ionian* Sea upon the West, and the *Aegean* on the East, washing the walls thereof, and giving it once a side a capacious Haven, in which regard called by *Horace*, *bimaris Corinthus*. In compass about eleven miles, for strength impregnable, for command as powerful; mastering both Seas on which it stood, and cutting off all passage from one half of *Greece* to the other: to which last end the Castle called *Acrocorinthus*, looking into both Seas, served exceedingly fit; and was therefore called one of the *Fortes* of *Greece*. The City rich, very well traded, and neatly built, most houses beautified with handsome pillars, from thence called *Corinthian*: more memorable for the wealth of the people, and the convenience of the situation, than for any notable exploits performed by them, or any great influence which they had on the *States* of *Greece*. But in regard of the wealth, greatness, and situation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthage* and *Capua*, being the other two. In this City lived the famous or infamous whore, *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachma's* for a single nights lodging: which made *Demosthenes* cry out, *Non emam tanti panitere*, and occasioned the old *By-word*,

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.

'Tis not for every mans avail,
Unto *Corinth* for to sail.

Near hereunto stood the *Acrocorinthian* mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Castle called hence *Acrocorinthus*, were seated: out of which flowed the famous Fountain named *Pyrene*, of old consecrated to the *Muses*; by *Persius* called *Fons Caballinus*, because feigned by the ancient *Poets* to have been made by the Horse *Pegasus*, dashing his foot against the rock. And on the other side hereof in the *Isthmus*, were celebrated yearly the *Isthmian* Games, ordained by *Theseus* in the honour of *Neptune*; in imitation of the *Olympick* devised by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The exercises much the same, and the reward no other than a Garland of *Oaken boughs*; yet drawing yearly a great resort of people to them: partly to exercise themselves, and behold the sports, and partly to sacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard by, a famous Temple.

As for the Fortunes of this City, it was at first called *Ephyra*, at that time a small and obscure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus* the son of *Pelops*, took the name of *Corinth*; Governed by him and his posterity, till the coming of the *Heraclida* into *Peloponnesus*: at what time one *Aletes* of the race of *Hercules*, possessed himself hereof, with the name of King, *A. M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of his line enjoyed it for the space of 220 years and upwards: when the house, failing in the person of *Autonomen*, they were governed by temporary officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athens*. Continuing under this government 124 years, the City was seized on by one *Cypselus*, *A. M.* 3294. who left it to his son *Periander*, one of the *seven wise men* of *Greece*; counted a Tyrant in those times, for no other reason, than that he had suppressed the popular Government: after whose death, *An.* 3364. the City did recover its former liberty. In the bustle betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedaemon*, and other the *Estates* of *Greece*, for the superiority, it did little meddle; the aim of this people being wealth, not honour: not interested in any action of renown in all those times; but in the sending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracusans*, against the Tyrant *Dionysius*, who did lord it over them. Subdued together with the rest, by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the rest restored to liberty by the power of *Rome*; under whom growing still more rich, and withal more insolent, they abused certain *Roman* Ambassadors. But *irasci populo Romano nemo sapienter potest*, as is said in *Livie*, which the *Corinthians* found too true: the City being besieged, sacked, and burnt unto the ground by *Lucius Mum-*

Achaia.

Mummianus a *Roman* Consul, *An. V. C.* 607. In the burning whereof there were consumed so many goodly Statues of Gold, Silver, Brass, and other metals; that being melted into a lump, they made up by that fatal chance, the so much estimated metal, called *Æs Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold, or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great esteem in the time of the Emperours, converted by *S. Paul* to the *Christian* Faith; and having flourished a long time in pride and pleasures, decayed by little, till it came to nothing, and is now a small Barrough called *Crato*.

Having thus spoken of the several *Estates* of *Peloponnesus*, it reiteth that we speak somewhat of the *State* of the whole; varied according to the fortunes of those particulars, which had most influence on the same. The affairs hereof a long while swayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, restrained afterwards to the Territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleasures; from *Apis* the third King whereof (if not rather from *Apis*, the fourth King of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of some Writers, it was named *Apis*. But *Pelops*, the son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia* coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia*, daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the most powerful Prince of all this *Peninsula*, taking from him the name of *Peloponnesus*. The Kingdom of *Mycenæ* growing into power and credit, had the next turn in swaying the affairs hereof for a certain season; as after that the *Doris* and the *Heraclida*, possessed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Messene*. The *Spartans* getting the preeminence over all the rest, were the next who governed the affairs of it, and they held it long; having first conquered *Laconia*, and subverted the *Estates* of *Messene*; by means whereof and by their fortunate success against the *Persians*, they became almost absolute in their commands, without any Competitor. But their power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, in the *Theban* War, the *petit States* hereof began to rake heart again, and stand upon their own legs, as they did a while, till the Kings of *Macedon* succeeding *Alexander the Great*, brought them once more under, and made them fellow-servants with their *Spartan* Masters. In the confusions which ensued in *Macedon*, amongst the Competitors for that Kingdom, *Antas* and *Dime*, two Cities of *Achaia Propria*, first united them in a strong league of amity, at such time as *Pyrrhus* first went into *Italy*: into which confederacie the Cities of *Tricæ* and *Pheræ* shortly after came; and not long after that *Ægira*, and the rest of *Achaia Propria*: their affairs first governed by two Prætors, with advice of the *Senate*, as afterwards by one alone with the like advice; of which *Melorus Carinensis* was the first, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the second. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this new Commonwealth increasing by the virtue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Træzenians*, *Argives*, and *Megarians* became members of it: maintaining gallantly the liberties of *Peloponnesus*, till finally mastered by the *Romans*. In the division of whole Empire it fell, with all the rest of *Greece*, to the *Constantinopolitans*: and in the declining of their fortunes, when the *Lutines* got possession of the Imperial City, most of the Sea-coasts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*: the inland parts formerly parcelled out amongst many Princes, whom they called *Despots*, continuing as before they were. By *Isabel*, a Daughter of one of these *Despots* (and as it seems true chief amongst them) married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *James* the first, and Father of *James* the second, King of *Majorca*, the title of Prince of *Majorca* came into that house; used by them and the rest of these *petit Princes*, till all together made a prey to the *Turkish* Tyrants, *Mehomet* the Great, and *Bajazet* the second, by whom wholly conquered. For howsoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Constantinus Palæologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Constantinople*; and were received and obeyed by those *petit Princes*; yet being unable to hold out against the conquerour, they became his Tributaries. But falling out amongst themselves, and neglecting then to send in the tribute agreed upon, gave *Mehomet* the Great occasion to invade the Country; and under colour of aiding one brother against the other, to destroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carried Prisoner to *Constantinople*, and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponnesus*, and fly to *Italy*, *Anno* 1457. Such Towns hereof as belonged to the State of *Venice*, followed the same fortune also in the time of *Bajazet*; by whom all taken at the last, and the whole Country brought under his obedience, *Anno* 1500. or thereabouts. Governed ever since that time by a *Turkish* *Zanziaek*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his residence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horse to secure the Country, and 700000 *Aspers*, (that is to say, 140000 Crowns) a year, for his entertainment.

2 ACHAI A.

A CHAI A is bounded on the East, with the *Aegean* Sea; on the West, with *Epirus*; on the North, with *Thessalia*; and on the South with *Peloponnesus*, and the Seas thereof. Called anciently *Hellas*, from *Hellas* the son of *Dendalion*; but whence it had the name of *Achaia* is not yet agreed on; though sure I am, that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achiui*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Grecians*) to difference them from the *Achai* of *Achaia Propria*.

The Country famous in the Authors of elder times, more for the gallantry of the men, than any great goodness of the soil and place: yet that sufficiently memorable for the hill *Hymettus*, swarming with Bees, plentiful of the sweetest honey, and rich in Mines of excellent Marble; as also for the River *Cephissus*, which runneth almost through the whole length hereof: divided into two main streams, of which the one is called *Asopus*, the other retaineth its first name. Upon the banks hereof stood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Dendalion* did repair to be directed in the restauration of mankind, as the *Poets* Fable.

Achaia.

It was divided anciently into these seven parts, viz. 1 *Attica*, 2 *Megaris*, 3 *Boeotia*, 4 *Phocia*, 5 *Locris*, 6 *Doria*, and 7 *Ætolia*. A division now as much diffused as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turks* into that of *Lebania*, of which more anon.

1 *ATTICA* hath on the West, *Megaris*, and some part of *Boeotia*; on all other parts compassed with the Sea; So called from *Athens* the chief City. The soil for the most part very barren, and craggy, yet by the arms and industry of the people made both rich, and famous: inasmuch as the yearly Revenues of the State of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The money current in this Country was commonly stamped with an Oxe, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applied to such *Lawyers* as were bribed to say nothing in their *Clients* cause. Not much unlike to which was the Proverb rising from the coin of *Ægina* (an Isle adjoining) stamped with the figure of a *Snail*, viz. *Virtutem & sapientiam vincunt Testudines*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Phila*, a strong Fortrefs on the borders of *Boeotia*, surprized by *Thraſſibulus*, and others of the banished *Athenians*, during the government of the 30 Tyrants; the taking whereof was the first step towards their own and their Countries liberty; which soon after followed. 2 *Eleusis*, on the borders of *Megaris*, almost impregnable fortified by the 30 Tyrants when they had the command of *Athens*; by whom designed for their retreat in all times of danger. But having withdrawn hither on the taking of *Phila*, and *Piræus*, by the *Thraſſibulians*, they found strong walls a weak defence for so much wickedness; being trained out as to a parly, and so deprived of the place and their power together. It was first built by one *Eleusius*, who entertained *Ceres*, as she was in quest of her daughter *Proserpine*; who to reward him, taught him the use of *Agriculture*; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleusina*, and her sacrifices *sacra Eleusinia*; and sometimes the City also, *Cerealis Eleusis*, so called by *Ovid* in the 7 Book of the *Metamorphosis*. 3 *Rhamus*, upon the River *Asopus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiaranus*, and the Statue of the Goddess *Nemesis*, hence called *Rhamnusia* in the Poets: this *Nemesis* or *Rhamnusia*, being the Goddess of Indignation, punishing those who made themselves unworthy of their present fortunes. 4 *Trichorium*, of more antiquity than fame. 5 *Marathon*, on the South side of the present fortunes. 6 *Themistocles*, of great note for the discomfiture given by *Miltades* the *Athenian* to the numerous Army of *Darius*, consisting of 200000 Foot, and 10000 Horse; the Emulation of which noble victory startled such brave resolves in the breast of *Themistocles*. As memorable in the Poets of those elder times for the *Marathonian* Bull there slain by *Theseus*. 6 *Mosopia*, the ordinary dwelling place of *Theseus*, before he fixed his seat at *Athens*, it being at this Town that he restored *Helena*, (whom he had before stolen from her own Country) to her two Brethren *Castor* and *Pollux*; of which both Rape and Restitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the *Epistle of Oenone to Paris*, the other in that of *Hermione to Orestes*; in which last it is said expressly, *Reddita Mosopia Tyndaris urbe soror*. That is to say, that she was delivered to her two Brethren, (who had took much pains in seeking for her) in the Town of *Mosopia*. 7 *Pyraus*, the Port Town to *Athens*, and the ordinary station for their Shipping, the Haven hereof being capable of 400 sail; distant from the City about two miles, but joynted unto it by two long walls reaching from the one to the other, for securing the conveyance of their Merchandise to and from the Sea. The Port it self impregnable fortified by the advice of *Themistocles*. But as these long walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them; so were the fortifications of *Pyraus* it self demolished by the command of *Sylla*, in his war against *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. 8 *Panormus*, a Sea-Town also, and of very good trade, but not of such importance as the other was. 9 *Athens*, one of the eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Attica*, situate from the Sea two miles, as before was said: the Haven of *Pyraus* serving it with all commodities which came from other parts by shipping. First built by *Cecrops* the first King of it, by whom called *Cecropia*, *A.M.* 2409. repaired afterwards by *Theseus*, and furnished with good Laws by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Minerva*, (whom the *Greeks* called *Athene*) to whom they dedicated, and in whose honour there were yearly kept some solemn Games, called *Panathenaia*. A City heretofore adorned with all those excellencies of strength and beauty, which art or cost could add unto it. Renowned, as for many things, so for three especially: 1 For the inviolable Faith of the Citizens in all their leagues, and most firm affection to their friends: so that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an *Adage*. 2 For the famous Scholars which here taught and flourished: this being so happy a Nursery of the choicest Wits, and so fitly feared for the *Muses*, that the very Natives being in other Countries, could sensibly perceive some want of that natural vigour, which at home was reliant in their spirits. *Ita ut corpora istius gentis separata sint in alias Regiones, ingenia vero solis Atheniensium muris clausa esse existimes*, as *Velleius* hath it. Yea and to say the truth, it was a most famous University, from whose great Cistern, the Conduit Pipes of Learning were dispersed over all the World. Yet did not learning so effeminate or soften the hearts of the people, but that 3 This one City yielded more famous Captains than any in the World besides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltades*, *Aristides*, *Themistocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and enlarged this Commonwealth, yet were the people so ungrateful to them, or they so unfortunate in the end, that they either died abroad in banishment, or by some violent death at home. *Themistocles* the Champion of *Greece*, died in exile in *Persia*; *Phocion* was slain by the people; *Demosthenes* made himself away by poison; *Pericles* many times endangered; *Theseus* their Founder first deposed, and then despitefully imprisoned; *Aristides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. banished for 10 years by the *Ostracism*: A form of punishment so called, because the name of the party banished was writ on an *Oyster-shell*; and only used toward such,

who

Athens.

who either began to grow too popular, or potent among the men of service. Which device, allowable in a *Democratic*, where the overmuch powerableness of one might hazard the liberty of all, was exercised in spite oftner, than desert. A Country fellow meeting by chance with *Aristides*, desired him to write *Aristides* in his shell: and being asked whether the man whose banishment he desired, had ever wronged him, replied, *No, he was only sorry to hear folk call him a good man*. We find the like unfortunate end to most of the *Romans*, so redoubled in war. *Coriolanus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murdered, with divers others: only because their virtue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was disgraced by *Antony*; *Agricola* poisoned, with the privy of *Domitian*; *Corbulo* murdered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an age wherein it to be valiant. In later times it so hapned to *Gonsalvo* the Great Captain, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the Mountains, and brought all the *Italian* Potentates to stand at the *Spaniards* devotion; was by his Master recalled home, where he lived obscurely, though honoured after his decease with a solemn Funeral. Worse fared the *Guisse*, and *Biron* in *France*; worse *Essex*, and *Dudley* of *Northumberland* with us in *England*. Neither will I omit *William* Duke of *Suffolk*, who having served 34 years in our wars with *France*, and for 17 years together never coming home, at his return was quarrelled and basely murdered. It were almost impie to be silent of *Joab*, the bravest souldier, and most fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lords battels, and yet was killed at the horns of the Altar. Whether it be that such men be born under an unhappy Planet; or that Courtiers, and such as have best opportunity to indeer men of warre unto their Sovereigns, know not the way of commending their great deserts; or that Envy the common Foe to Vertue, be an hinderance to it, I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are distrustful of men of Ability; and are not willing to make them greater, whose name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the souldiers themselves, by an unseasonable over-valuing of their own performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cause of the death of *Silius*, in the time of *Tiberius*. Concerning which *Tacitus* giveth us this good note, that over-merrit in great Subjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets hate in stead of favours. *Beneficia eo signa sunt dum videntur excolui posse; illi malum anteverterunt, pro gratia odium reddidit*, faith the wise Historian.

But to look back again on *Athens*, it was first built by *Cecrops*, the first King thereof; governed by him and his posterity with no lower title, for 400 years, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The KINGS of ATHENS.

A.M.

2394. 1 *Cecrops*, who first made *Jupiter* a God, and ordained Sacrifices to be offered to him, as *Pausanias* writeth.
2444. 2 *Cranæus*, ousted of his Kingdom by
2458. 3 *Amphictyon*, the son of *Dædalion*, and Uncle to that *Amphictyon*, who first instituted the supreme Court of the *Amphictyones*, or Common-Council of all *Greece*.
2498. 4 *Erichthonius*, the son of *Vulcan*.
2513. 5 *Pandion*, the Father of *Progne* and *Philomela*, so famous in the old Poets, of whom more hereafter.
2593. 6 *Erichtheus*, whose daughter *Orithya* was ravished by *Boreas* King of *Thrace*.
2603. 7 *Cecrops* II. brother of *Erichtheus*.
2643. 8 *Pandion* II. son of *Erichtheus*.
2668. 9 *Ægeus*, son of *Pandion* the second, of whom the *Ægean* Sea took name.
2706. 10 *Theseus*, the son of *Ægeus*, and Companion of *Hercules*, vanquished the *Minotaur* in *Crete*, collected the people of *Attica* into a body, and incorporated them into the City of *Athens*, which he had beautified and enlarged.
2746. 11 *Mnestheus*, the son of *Peteus*, Grandchild of *Erichtheus*, served with the other *Greek* Princes at the war of *Troy*.
2769. 12 *Demophoon*, the son of *Theseus*, restored unto his Fathers throne on the death of *Mnestheus*.
2802. 13 *Oxyntes*, son or brother of *Demophoon*.
2814. 14 *Aphydas*, son of *Oxyntes*, slain by his brother.
2815. 15 *Thymades*, the last of the line of *Erichtheus*.
2823. 16 *Melanthius* of *Massene*, driven out of his own Kingdom by the *Heraclids*, obtained that of *Athens*.
2860. 17 *Codrus*, the son of *Melanthius*, the last King of *Athens*; who in the wars against the *Peloponnesians*, having Intelligence by an Oracle, that his Enemies should have the victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King, attired himself like a common Begger, entered the *Peloponnesian* Camp, and there played such pranks, that at the last they were fain to kill him. Which when the Enemy understood, they thought themselves by this means deprived of all hopes of success, and so broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the people of *Athens* did so honour his memory, that they thought no man worthy to succeed, as King; and therefore committed the managing of the Estate to Governours for term of life, whom they called *Archontes*: the first *Archon* being *Me-*

E e e

don,

Athens. don, the son of Codrus. Not differing from the former Kings in point of power, but only in the manner of their admission: the former Kings claiming the government by *Succession* in right of blood; and these *Archontes* holding by *election* only: whose names here follow in this list of

The perpetual *ARCHONTES* in the
STATE of *ATHENS*.

<i>A. M.</i>					
2882	1	Medon, the son of Codrus.	3059	7	Diogenetus, the son of Megacles.
2902	2	Acastus, the son of Medon.	3087	8	Phereclus, the son of Diogenetus.
2938	3	Archippus, the son of Acastus.	3106	9	Ariston, the son of Phereclus.
2957	4	Thersippus, the son of Archippus.	3126	10	Thestius, in whose time began the Kingdom of Macedonia.
2998	5	Phorbas, the son of Thersippus.	3153	11	Agamestor.
3029	6	Megacles, the son of Phorbas.	3173	12	Æschylus, the son of Agamestor. After

whose death, *Anno mdc. 3195*, the *Athenians* weary of these *Governours* for term of life, as being less obnoxious to the check and censure of the people, chose themselves *Officers* or *Archontes* for ten years only: at the end of which time they were to yield up their places, and make room for others. But being a people greedy of *Novelties*, and desirous of change, they had only seven of those *Decennial Archontes*: their *Officers* from that time forwards being chosen annually: which *Officers* being nine in number, we may call most properly the *Provosts*, the *Chief Bishop*, the *Marshals*, and the six *Chief Justices*, all chosen out of the *Nobility*. And so it held for the space of 170 years, till the time of *Solon*, who was the first which put the *Supreme authority* into the hands of the *People*; and gave the first hint unto that *Democracie*, which afterwards prevailed in *Athens*, by the help of *Pericles*. Who being one of the great Council of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their power in deciding *Controversies* and *sutes* in Law, putting them over to the judgement of the common *People*. A Government so dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the *Cities* which they conquered or restored to liberty, or won to their party from the *Spartans*, they caused it to be admitted: as on the other side the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed the *Aristocracie* (their own loved Government) in all the places where they prospered. As for the *Court* of the *Areopagites* of much fame in *Athens*, it consisted from the first beginning in *Æschylus*, of such as had born some of the nine chief *Officers*; who being once admitted, held for term of life. First instituted in the time of *Demophoon*, the son of *Thestius*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their *Court* in the street of *Mars*, in *Agora*, mentioned *Æt. 17. 22.* or because *Mars* being accused for a Murder, did first plead before them. A *Court* which held in estimation under all these changes, and so continued till the time of the *Roman Empire*.

But to return again to the story of *Athens*; in or about the later end of the life of *Solon*, *Pisistratus* altered the *Free State*, and made himself the absolute Master of the City: but he once dead, the *People* regained their liberty, driving thence *Hippias* the son of *Pisistratus*; who hereupon fled for succour to *Darius* the *Persian* Monarch, occasioning by that means the first coming of the *Persians* into *Greece*. What success the *Persians* had in *Greece*, the *Histories* of those times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquished by *Miltiades*, at *Marathon*; and *Xerxes* by *Themistocles*, at *Salamis*. Yet did not *Athens* scape so clear, but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed first abandoned, and voluntarily dismantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Persians* were retired homewards, the people of *Athens* re-edified their Town, and strongly fortified it with high and defensible walls: which done, they put their Fleet to Sea, and spoiled the coasts of *Persia* in all quarters; enriching their City with the spoils, and enlarging their power and Dominion by the addition of many *Islands* and *Sea-Towns*. Hereby they grew unto that wealth and potency, that they were suspected by their weaker neighbours, and envied by their stronger, the *Lacedemonians* especially: who fearing to lose their ancient priority over *Greece*, but pretending the surprisal of *Patideia* a City of *Thrace*, from the *Corinthians*, and some hard measure, by them shewed upon the *Megarenses*; made warre upon them. In the beginning of this warre, the *Athenians* not only resisted the whole power of all *Greece*; confederate against them; but so exceedingly prospered, that the *Spartans* sued for peace, and could not get it. But the scales of fortune turned. For after they had held out 28 years, they were compelled to pluck down the Walls of their City, and submit themselves to the will and pleasure of the *Spartans*, now by the puissance and good fortune of *Lysander*, become their Masters: by whom the Government was changed, and an *Aristocracie*, (or rather *Oligarchie*) established under 30 *Magistrates*; known commonly by the name of the 30 *Tyrants*; expelled not long after by the valour of *Thrasybulus*, and his associates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this warre, which the *Historians* call *Bellum Peloponnesiacum*, the *Persians* seeing how the *Spartans*, not having now the State of *Athens* to oppose them, began to work upon their Empire: furnished *Conon* a Noble *Athenian* Gentleman with a Navy so well provided, that they overcame the *Lacedemonians* in a fight at *Sez*; and thereby put his Countrymen into so good heart, that they made a party in the warre called *Bellum Sacrum*: composed at the last by *Philip of Macedon*: who brought not only the *Thebans* whom he came to aid, but the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, and the rest of the adverse party, under his command. A servitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon*, as the rest became fellow-servants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then lost her power in point of Arms, yet she still kept her credit as an University in point of Arts; *Origen*, *Chrysostom*, *Basil*, and *Gregory Nyssen*, men of renown and eminence in the Primitive times, are said to have studied at *Athens*: the like affirmed of Pope

Pope Joane, if the Tale be true, for the middle ages. And so it held, as I conjecture, though not so eminently as before, till the year 1440. when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondred much (as my Author telleth) at the extreme beauty of the Castle, and the strength of the walls, not having lost in so long time, their former excellencies. Since that it is sensibly decayed, and is now an ordinary Burrough (by the *Turks* called *Sellin*) but still preserved the Reputation of an *Episcopal See*, the Bishop of it holding up the title of *Atheniensis*.

2. *MEGARIS* is bounded on the East, with *Attica*; on the West, with the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North, with *Boeotia*; and on the South, with the *Isthmus*, and the *Gulf di Engia*; So called from *Megaris*, the chief City.

This the least Province of all *Greece*, and nor very fruitful; the Countrey for the most part being hard and rocky. Not beautified with many Cities; the principal of those which were 1 *Pege*, or *Pægi*, situate on the Bay of *Corinth*, and spoken of both by *Pliny* and *Ptolomy*; but not otherwise memorable. 2 *Megaris*, (now *Megara*) first built by *Megareus*, the son of *Apollo*; and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philosophers, called from hence *Secta Megarica*, founded by one *Euclide* a Disciple of *Socrates*; of whom see *Laertius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Nisus*, once the King of this little Territory: on whose head there is said to have grown a Purple Hair, on which the preservation of his life and Kingdom did depend. Which Jewel his daughter *Scylla* is said to have delivered unto King *Minos* her Fathers Enemy; on whom then besieging this City, upon the sight of him from an high Turret, she became enamoured. But he rejecting her, and her Present both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*: which the unhappy woman seeing, threw her self after him into the Sea, and was turned into the Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the moralizing of the Fable unto the *Mythologists*: observing only by the way, the antiquity of that politick practice, to love the *Treason* and hate the *Traitor*. But the glorie of this City did not end with *Nisus*. For shaking off the *Cretan yoke*, it became *sui juris* once again: and being conveniently seated on the very *Isthmus*, amounted to that height of prosperity, that they contended with the *Athenians* for the *Island of Salamis*. And in this war they so crushed the power and spirit of *Athens* by one fatal overthrow, that the *Athenians* to prevent all the like disasters, did ordain by Law, that whosoever mentioned the recovery of *Salamis*, was to lose his life: so that *Solon* was compelled to feign himself frantick, the better to propound the enterprise. In which, although the State of *Athens* got the *Isle of Salamis*: yet did the *Megarenses* continue a *Free-people*, till brought under (with the rest) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made subject unto *Rome*.

3. *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South, with *Megaris*, and the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North, with the River *Cephissus*; on the East, with *Attica*, and a branch of the *Ægean Sea*; and on the West, with *Phocis*. Thus named from *Bœ*, which in *Greek* signifieth an Oxe: because when *Cadmus* weary of seeking his sister *Europa* (whom *Jupiter* had stolen out of *Phœnicia*) came to the Oracle at *Delphos*; he was commanded to follow the first Oxe he saw, and where the Oxe did rest it self, there to build a City.

In the Countrey nothing singular, but an antient custom of burning before the door of an house in which a new married wife was designed to dwell, the *Axle-tree* of the Coach which brought her thither: giving her by that Ceremony to understand (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his *Morals*) that she must frame her self to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Countrey also are the *Sights* of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the neighbouring *Baths* called *Thermopylae*, not above 2½ foot in breadth: which in the war that *Xerxes* made against the *Greeks*, were valiantly defended by *Leonidas* King of *Sparta*, with no more than 300 of his men, who having valiantly resisted that Army which in its passage out of *Persia* had drank Rivers dry, and slain at least 30000 of them; dyed every man upon the place. To hide the greatness of which loss, lest it should terrifie the rest of his Army which were coming on, *Xerxes* commanded all the slain men to be buried in several pits, except a thousand; as if no more than they had been lost in that passage.

Places of most observation in it: 1 *Thespiæ*, on a River of the same name, at the fall whereof into the Bay it is pleasantly seated: shadowed on the North with a branch on the Mountain *Helicon*; and consecrated as that was, unto the *Muses*, hence called *Thespiades* in the Poets. 2 *Plateæ*, nigh to which, *Mardonius* General to the *Persians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*; with the loss of *Mardonius* himself and 16000 men on the *Persian* side; and on the other no more than 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Aradians*, 32 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenses*. In memory of which brave exploit, and to preserve the names and honour of those *Worthies*, who there laid down their lives for the liberty of *Greece*, there was a festival kept annually by the *Plateans* in the month of *September*; with solemn *Sacrifices*, and a kind of divine acknowledgment unto the deceased; continued from the time of *Aristides* the *Athenian* who first ordained them, to the dayes of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to say. In this great fight the Commander in chief was a noble *Spartan* called *Paminius*, who afterwards having a design to make himself Sovereign of all *Greece*, and being discovered in the practice, fled for sanctuary to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence because it was counted sacrilege to constrain him by violence, it was unanimously resolved to wall up the entrances; his own Mother laying the first stone. It is recorded, that before the fighting of this battle, the *Athenians* had been told by the Oracle that they should be Conquerours if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Plateans* within whose Territories the *Persians* had prepared to fight, bestowed that field on the State of *Athens*. In requital of which noble act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged

Boeotia
and
Phocia.

their City; having been first burnt, and sacked, by the Persians; and after levelled with the ground by the Lacedaemonians, because confederate with Athens in the war against them. 3 *Leuctra*, remarkable for the great overthrow, which the Thebans, under the conduct of Epaminondas, gave unto the Spartans, and their King Cleombrotus there slain: by which victory they did not only preserve their own liberty, but brought their enemies to that fall of courage and reputation, that they could never rise again: the divine vengeance overtaking them in that very place, where some of their Nation had deflowered the daughters of Schedaeus, who had given them courteous entertainment. For which, when no reparation could be had from the State of Sparta, the unfortunate Damocles slew themselves, to avoid the infamy of consenting to their own dishonour, and were buried in those very fields where this battle was fought. 4 *Ascræa*, the birth-place of Hesiod, a man (according to Paterculus) elegantia ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis: though it hath pleased that proud Critick Julius Scaliger, intending to deifie Virgil, to prefer the worst verse in the Georgicks of the one, before the whole works of the other. 5 *Lebadia*, near the Cephissus, the River Inhabitants whereof were counted the most superstitious of all the Grecians: memorable for the Den or Cave of Trophonia, and the Oracle there given by Jupiter, hence called Trophonius: Into which Cavern none were permitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but after many ointings, washings, and the like superstitious preparations, too long and many to be specified in this place and time. A Town which still preserves so much of its ancient estimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Countrey of Achaia hath the name of *Lebadia*; by which the Turks call it at this present. 6 *Cberona*, or *Ceronea*, the birth-place of *Plutarch*. Near unto which was fought that memorable battle, betwixt L. Sylla and the Romans, against Archelaus, one of the Lieutenants of Mithridates King of Pontus, leading an Army of 120000 souldiers; of which 10000 only escaped with life, the Romans losing but 14. 7 *Orchomenon*, no less memorable for another victory, obtained by the same L. Sylla, against Dorilaus another of that Kings Commanders, having an Army of 80000 men, of which 20000 lost their lives that day. After which victories, when Sylla might easily have destroyed that King, he suddenly patched a peace up with him, that he might hasten unto Rome, where Marius and Cinna had trodden his faction under foot; preferring by that act the pursuit of his own private quarrels, before that of his Countrey; endangered more by Mithridates after his return, than it had been formerly. 8 *Anolis*, a Port-Town on the shores of the Aegean Sea, where the Grecians took shipping when they went to the war of Troy; here making Oath never to give over the enterprize, until they had destroyed that City. Concerning which, thus the in Virgil:

Non ego cum Danais Trojanam excindere Gentem
Anolis juravi.

That is to say:

I took no Oath at Anolis to destroy,
As did the Greeks, the Town and State of Troy.

But the chief City of this Countrey, and such as had a special influence over all the rest, was the City of Thebes, situate on the banks of the River Cephissus, where built by Cadmus the Phoenician after all his wanderings. Famous in old times for the wars between Eteocles and Polynices, the sons of the unfortunate Prince Oedipus, and of his Mother and Wife Jocasta. The history of which war is the most ancient piece of story, that we find of all Greece; the former times and writings containing nothing but fables, little favouring of humanity, and less of truth; as of men changed into Monsters, the adulteries of the Gods, and the like. In this town lived Pelopidas and Epaminondas, who so crushed the Lacedaemonians at the battle of Leuctra and Mantinea, that they could never after re-obtain their former puissance. This Common-wealth long flourished, and at last being over-burdened in the Phocian war, was glad to submit itself to the protection of the Macedonians, under the leading of King Philip: who by this means first got footing into Greece, into which afterwards he thrust his whole body. Upon the death of Philip, Thebes revolted from the Macedons; but Alexander his successor quickly recovered it: and to dishearten the Greeks in the like attempts, he razed the City, selling all the inhabitants of age and strength; only Pindarus house he commanded to be left standing, in honour of that learned Poet. At this sack of the Town, one of the Macedon souldiers entered the house of a principal woman, named Timoclea, ravished her, and rifled her coffers; but still demanding more treasure, she shewed him a deep Well, saying, that there all her money was hidden. The credulous villain stooping down to behold his prey, she tumbled him into the Well, and overwhelmed him with stones; for which noble act, the generous Prince not only dismissed her unhurt, but most highly commended her. It was after re-edified by Cassander, and followed for the most part, as the rest of the Boeotians did, the fortunes of Macedon. Reduced at this time to the State of an ordinary Burrough, and called Scibes by the Turks.

4. *PHOCIA* is bounded on the East, with Boeotia; on the West, with Doris, and Locria; on the North, with the River Cephissus; and on the South, with the Bay of Corinth. A Countrey somewhat swelled with Mountains, but those of eminent note in the elder times. The chief whereof 1 *Hellon*, 2 *Citheron*; both consecrated to the Muses, and both contending with Parnassus for height and bigness. 3 *Parnassus*, of so great an height, that in that great deluge, in which most of these parts of Greece were over-

overwhelmed with the waters, *Dencalion* and *Pyrrha* saved themselves, and many others, on the top *Pentia* and hereof: for which and for its two summits reaching to the clouds; of great renown amongst the Poets; *Phocis* as in Ovid thus:

Mons ibi verticibus petit ardua astra duobus,
Nominis Parnassus; superatque cacumine nubes.

Parnassus there with his two tops extends
To the toucht stars, and all the clouds transcends.

Places of most observation in it, are 1 *Anticyra*, situate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, an herb very medicinal for the Phrenzie; whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyras*, applied to mad men. 2 *Pytho*, or *Pythia*, said to be seated not only in the middle of Greece, but of all the world: *Strabo* relating how Jupiter desirous to know the exact middle of the earth, let loose two Eagles, one from the East, and the other from the West, which flying with an equal wing (so we must conceive) and meeting at this very place, shewed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reason of which convenient situation in the heart of Greece, it was made a Sessions-Town for all the Grecians, and honoured with the Court and general Assembly of the *Amphictyons*; men chosen out of the prime Cities of Greece who had power to decide all Controversies, and to make Laws for the common good. A Court first instituted by *Acrisius*, as *Strabo* telleth us; or as *Halicarnassens* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the son of *Helles*, from whom they seem to have their name. The Commissioners from the several Cities, with reference to the places for which they served, had the name of *Pylogae*; when assembled, they were called the *Amphictyons*: their meetings at the beginning of the Spring, and Autumn. Some instances concerning their authority will not be amiss. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cyrrhenians* having by Piracy wronged the *Thessalians*, were fined by this Council. And after that the *Lacedaemonians* for surprizing *Cadmea*; and the *Phocians* for ploughing up the Land of *Cyrrha*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: and because they continued obstinate, and paid not their ameracements, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiscate unto that Temple. But they disobeying this Decree also, spoiled the Temple itself: for which, war being proclaimed against them by the rest of the Grecians, who by the assistance of Philip King of Macedon, brought them to obedience, the Council was again assembled. In which it was decreed that the *Phocians* should raze the walls of their Cities; that they should pay the yearly tribute of 60 Talents, that they should no more keep Horse and Arms, till they had satisfied the Treasury of the Temple; nor any longer have a voice in those Conventions. It was also then enacted, that the lost suffrages of the *Phocians*, should be vested in King Philip, and his successors, Kings of Macedon; on whom they also did confer the perpetual Preldentship, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the 70 Elders, among the Jews; and in our times, the Dices of the Empire, and the Assemblies of the *Switzers*, carry most resemblance. 3 *Cyrrha*, on the Sea-side, the Port town to *Delphos*. 4 *Crisse*, so called from *Crisseus* the son of *Phocus*, and grandchild of *Aeneas*, situate on the edge of the Bay of Corinth; called sometimes from hence *Crisseus Sinus*. 5 *Scorpius*, memorable for the defeat of *Critolams* Captain of the Achaean Army, by *Metellus* one of the Roman Praetors: the loss of which battle drew after it the destruction of Corinth. It was observed in the success of this great fight, that a band of *Arcadians* escaping out of the battle came unto 6 *Elatea*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained, on memory of some former alliances, till news came of the overthrow of *Critolams*: when ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquish the Town, (for adversity seldom meeteth with returns of friendship) they were set upon, and all slain by the Romans, in the self-same place, in which their Ancestors had unworthily forsaken the rest of the Grecians in their warre against Philip King of Macedon, for the publick Liberty. 7 *Daulis*, a City appertaining to *Terens* King of *Thrace*, who having married *Progne* the daughter of *Pandion* King of *Athens*, ravished her sister *Philemela*, and cut out her tongue, the better to keep his villany undiscovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double injury, first made him ignorantly eat his own son *Itys*, whom she had baked in a Pye; and after killed him, with the help of her ravished sister. 8 *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which with that of *Jupiter Haemon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of Egypt) were the most famous Oracles of the ancient Gentiles: dark Riddles of the Devil, couched and contrived with so much cunning, that the meaning of them was most hidden, when it was thought most easie to be discerned. Instance of which that given to *Craesus* in the war by him projected against the Persians, which was thus delivered;

Craesus Halyn penetrans magnam subvertet opum vim.

When Craesus over Halys goes,
A mighty Nation he o'rethrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, crossed the River; was vanquished by *Cyrus* King of Persia, and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who before he made war against the Romans, consulted with the Oracle, and received this answer;

Aio te Eacida Romanos vincere posse.

E e e 3

Which

Locris.

Which doubtful prediction he thus contrived; *Te posse vincere Romanos*, that he should overcome the Romans; but found it unto his cost that the meaning was, *Romanos posse vincere te*, that the Romans should overcome him; as indeed it happened. By another kinde of the same fallacy which the Logicians call *Amphibolia*, did this great enemy of mankind overthrow another: who demanding of the Oracle what success he should have in an expedition which he was in hand with, received his answer in these words:

Ibis redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *Ibis*, redibis, nunquam per, &c. engaged himself in the war, and was therein slain. Whereupon his followers canvassing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *Ibis*, redibis nunquam, per &c. The like juggling he also used in those supernatural Dreams, which Philosophers call *Suipnomancy*. For *Cæsar* dreaming that he carnally knew his own mother, the night before he passed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common mother of the Romans: and *Hippias* the son of *Pisistratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the same projects the same dream, was killed and buried in the bowels of his mother the earth: so that had *Cæsar* miscarried in his action, and *Hippias* thrived; yet still had the Devil been reputed his crafts-master, and the father of truths. But as the Ecclesiastical History telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apostata* consulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no answer, because that the body of *Babylas* the Martyr was entombed nigh his Altar: so neither could the Devils deceive the world as formerly they had done, after Christ the Truth it self was manifested in the flesh, and tormented these unclean spirits, though as they alleged, before their time. *Augustus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whose time our Saviour was born, consulting with the Oracle about his successor, received this not satisfying answer:

Πᾶς ἑβραῖς κἀλαῖς καὶ θεοῖς μακάρεσσιν ἀνέσταιν
Τὸν δὲ θεῶν ἀνδραγαθὸν καὶ ἀνδρῶν ἀνδρῶν ἰσχυρῶν.
Αἰσίων ἀμὲν οὐρανὸν καὶ βασιλὴν ἡμῶν.

An Hebrew child, whom the blest Gods adore,
Hath bid me leave these shrines and pack to hell,
So that of Oracles I can no more:
In silence leave our Altar, and farewell.

Whereupon *Augustus* coming home, in the Capitol erected an Altar, and thereupon in Capital Letters caused this inscription to be engraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by Christs birth lost much of their wonted vertue, so after his passion they lost it almost altogether. Concerning which *Plutarch* in a tract of his *Morals*, called Πᾶς ἑβραῖς ἀνδραγαθὸν καὶ ἀνδρῶν ἀνδρῶν ἰσχυρῶν, *why Oracles cease to give answers*, telleth us a notable story, which was this. Some company going out of *Greece* into *Italy*, were about the *Echinades* becalmed; when on a sudden there was heard a voice, loudly calling on one *Thamus* an *Egyptian* then in the ship. At the two first calls he made no answer, but to the third he replied, saying, *Here I am*: and the voice again spake unto him, bidding him when he came to the *Palodes*, to make it known that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which are certain shelves and rocks in the *Ionian* Sea, *Thamus* standing on the poop of the ship, did as the voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty noise of many together, who all seemed to groan and lament with terrible and hideous shriekings. News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he caused the learned men in his Empire, to enquire out of their Books who that *Pan* should be; by whom it was answered, that he was the son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*, with ignorance enough, and little satisfaction to the business propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly observed the circumstances of this accident, found it to happen at the time when our Saviour suffered on the Cross; who was indeed the true God, *Pan*, the chief Shepherd and Bishop of our souls, as the Scripture calleth him: and that upon this divulging of his death and passion, the Devils who used to speak in Oracles, did with great grief and lamentation forsake that Office, which had been so gainful to them in seducing mankind. That all Oracles at that instant ceased, I dare not say; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: it being said by *Juvenal*, who lived in the reign of *Domitian*, *Delphis Oracula cessant*, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then silent; the rest decaying sensibly in a short time after.

But to proceed, the Temple of *Apollo* being spoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, caused the war betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the *Holy War*: in which the *Thebans* being likely to have the worst, sent for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the quarrel by subduing both. The treasure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple, was reckoned at 60 talents of Gold; but it proved *Aurum Tolosanum*, and brought a sudden ruine on their State and Nation: Sacrilege being so unpardonable a crime, even amongst the Heathen, that the fault of some few, countenanced by the rest of a people, hath brought destruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill fortune ransacked by *Brennus* and his *Gauls*, in the wain of the *Macedonian* Empire; all of them miserably perishing who had any hand in it.

5 *LOCRI* is bounded on the East, with *Phocis*, and a branch of the *Ægean* Sea; on the West, with *Ætolia*; on the North, with a long ridge of hills which part it from *Thessaly*; and on the South, with

with parts of *Achaia*, *Bæotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Straits of *Antirrhium*, and a part of the *Ionian* Sea. So that for largeness of extent, and the commodiousness of the Seas, it yeeldeth to no Province in *Achaia*, though not so fruitful as some others. Divided into the three Nations of the *Locri*; *Ozole*, lying towards the South, on both sides of the Straits; so called from some ill smells of the Country; or people; 2ly the *Epimenidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, so named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnassus*; and 3ly the *Opuntii*, so called from *Opus* their chief City; lying on the North side of the River *Cephus*, on the Coasts of the *Ægean*, or *Enlæan* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1 *Opus*, the head City of the *Opuntians*, situate on the River *Asopus*, being one of the main branches of *Cephus*. 2 *Cynus*, the Port Town to *Opus*. 3 *Thronium*, the prime town of the *Epimenidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Livie*, *Plutomy*. 4 *Cnemides*, at the foot of Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5 *Amphissa*, the chief City of the *Ozole*, situate in the inland parts of it: the people whereof refusing to yield to the sentence of the *Amphyctiones*, against their confederates the *Phocians*, were the cause that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Against whom grievously insulting the *Bæotians*, and manifestly aspiring to the command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* desperately opposed; not so much with possibility of prevailing, as by the sharp and biting Orations of *Demosthenes*, made against his proceedings: which being by him called *Philippicks*, occasioned *Tully* to call his bitter invectives against *M. Antonius*, by the same name also. But the success hereof was such; as commonly attendeth a broken fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquished at *Charonea*, and *Philip* declared Captain of *Greece* against the *Persians*, obtaining under that title the command he sought. 6 *Evantia*, as *Plutomy*; *Oeantia*, as *Pliny* and *Pansanias* call it; opposite to *Ægina* in *Achaia* propria. 7 *Molythia*, by *Plutomy* placed here; and by others reckoned in *Ætolia*; not far from whence is the Promontory of *Antirrhium*, so called because just opposite to that of *Rhism* in *Achaia* propria; between which runneth a narrow streight (not so wide as the *Hellepont*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; each Promontory for that cause fortified by *Bajazet* the 2d. with a very strong Castle, that on this side being gallantly defended by the *Turks*, when besieged by *Doria*, Anno 1532. For being forced with great slaughter into a strong Tower, which commanded the Castle, they rather chose to blow it up, together with the ammunition, victuals, and themselves to boot, than that the Fort should come intire into the hands of the Enemy. Some place this Promontory in *Ætolia* also; but following the authority of *Plutomy*, I have placed it here. 8 *Naupactus*, so called from the building of ships there by the *Heracleids*; situate on the *Corinthian* Bay near the mouth thereof. Given by the Citizens of *Athens* to the poor *Messenians*, when after the end of the third war, the *Lacedæmonians*, unwilling to have them troublesome neighbours (and they scorning to be quiet slaves) compelled them to seek new habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the *Gulfe* of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that name subject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, Anno 1499. Of these *Lacians*, those of *Italy* were a branch or Colony, whose Law-giver was *Zaleucus*, spoken of elsewhere.

6 *DORIS* is bounded on the East with *Phocis*; on the West, with *Ætolia*; on the North, with the hill *Oeta*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Thessaly*; and on the South with *Ætolia*, and part of *Locris*. The air hereof is very healthy, and the soil sufficiently fruitful if well manured, but now the greatest part lyeth waste for want of tillage. First peopled by the *Dores* or *Dorians*, descended from *Dorus*, the son of *Hellen*, and grandchild of *Democleon*; by whom placed in *Thessaly*; afterwards spreading into this Country, which they left their name to, as their proper dwelling; though many of them following the *Heracleids* into *Peloponnesus*, possessed themselves of the greatest part of *Laconia* also: imprinting on the same their *Dialect* or form of speech, from them called the *Doric*.

Chief Cities hereof are 1 *Doris*, so called in memory of *Dorus*, the first Progenitor of this people. 2 *Erineus*, seated at the foot of *Parnassus*, mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Plutomy*, and the rest of the Antients. 3 *Bium*, as *Plutomy*; or *Boion*, as *Strabo* and *Pliny* call it. 4 *Cytinum*, near *Parnassus* also, in the common impressions of *Diodorus Siculus* the Historian, falsely called *Cynthium*: 5 *Lilæa*, situate not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River *Cephus*; which rising hereabouts passeth thorow the whole length of *Achaia*, and falls into the *Ægean* or *Enlæan* Sea.

7 *ÆTOLIA* hath on the East, *Locris*; on the West, *Epirus*; on the North, *Doris*; on the South, the *Ionian* Sea. Said to be so called from *Ætolus*, the son of *Mars*, who being by *Salomonus* cast out of *Elis*, fixed himself in this Country.

Here is the Forrest of *Calydon*, where *Meleager* and the flower of the *Greek* Nobility, slew the wild Bore. Here is the River *Evenus*, over which the Centaure *Nessus* having carried *Dejanira* wife of *Hercules*, and intending to have ravished her, was slain by an Arrow which *Hercules* on the other side of the River shot at him. Here also is the River of *Achelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things, as that being rival with *Hercules* in the love of *Dejanira*, he encountered him in the shape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules* had pluck'd off one of his horns, the *Nymphs* made of it their so much celebrated cornucopia.

The people of this Country were the most turbulent, and unruly people of all *Greece*, never at peace with their neighbours, and seldom with themselves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reason of the cragginess of the Country: yet they brought them to such terms, that they were compelled to let the Romans into *Greece*, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were 1 *Chalcis*, situate near the spring-head of *Achelous* before mentioned.

Achaia.

ned. 2 *Arachthus*, near the River so called; which arising hereabouts passeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3 *Olenus*, not far from the Forest of *Calydon*. 4 *Pleurona*, giving name to the adjoining Countrey, called hence *Pleuronia*, the people whereof had the name of *Curetes*, and *in nuda*, from their shaving; it being their custom to shave the fore-parts of their heads, and let the hair grow on the hinder parts only; *ne hostes eos casuie apprehenderent*, because their enemies should not lay hold on them by the fore-tops, and so pull them down. 5 *Thyrmus*, the Parliament City, or place of general Assembly, for all the States of *Ætolia*, which meeting was called *Panetolinum*; chosen for those meetings, in regard of the situation and strength thereof; as situate well-near in the midst of the Countrey, environed with rocky Mountains, of steep and difficult ascent. For that cause made also the receptacle of their wealth, and treasure, in all times of danger; but taken by the last *Philip* of *Macedon*, with all the spoil in it, in his war against them. 6 *Calydon*, near the Forest so called, giving name unto it: the royal seat of *Oeneus*, father of *Meleager*; divided into two parts by the River *Evenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*,

*Et Meleagream maculatus sanguine Nessi
Evenus, Calydonia secant.*

That is to say,

*Calydon, Meleagers Town, the flood
Even divides, defil'd with Nessus blood.*

Adjoining hereunto were the *Athamanes*, whom *Pliny* makes a people of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Athamania*; but such (as little as it was) as gave it the title of a Kingdom to *Animander*: a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made special use of in their wars against *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the father of *Persens*, suggesting to him and his children, that they were descended of the house of *Alexander* the great, and so engaging them in a hope of that Kingdom, to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of most note are, 1 *Dium*, 2 *Athanasium*, both took by *Philip* in that war.

These, as they were the last Actors on the stage of *Achaia*, so had they the most desperate part in all the tragedy of that Countrey. The affairs whereof, governed successively by that State which was most powerful, were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*: whose Counsels and conclusions went for law amongst them. But that *Estate* being broken, if not subverted by the power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Bœotians*, who came next in play, had the chief command; uniting almost all the rest in delign with them against the *Spartans*, who now grew terrible to all: Becoming insolent by the course of too much prosperity, and the many great victories which they had against the *Spartans*; and thereupon quarrelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cause of *Philips* coming into *Greece*; who as he had learned amongst them the use of arms, so made he use thereof at last, and of their dissensions, to unite all the States of *Greece* under his command: *Thebes* it self being took and sacked by *Alexander*, the son of *Philip*, as before is said. The *Macedonians* thus prevailing, partly by force, but specially by art and practice, there was no people in *Achaia* that durst oppose them; till these *Ætolians*, a restless, and impatient people took the cause in hand. Who thrived so well under *Antigonus*, and *Philip*, two of the last Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many Towns, invaded *Thessaly*, attempted *Macedon* it self: and when they could not otherwise obtain their purpose, in the destruction of that Kingdom, opened a passage for the *Romans* to effect it for them. But finding no such favour at the *Romans* hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* against them, drawing thereby those forces against themselves, which they had invited into *Greece*: and were the first people of all the *Grecians* that were conquered by them; though by the mediation of the *Rhodians* and some other friends, their Countrey was restored unto them, with the loss only of *Cephalenia*, *Zant*, and some other Islands, which the *Romans* were resolved to keep as the fruits of the war. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then *Consul*, and chief Commander in this war. After which time the several *Estates* hereof enjoyed so much liberty, as the *Romans* their new *Masters* thought fit to give them: till finally made absolutely subject in the time of *Vespasian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponnesus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the division of the Empire by *Constantine* the Great, the West parts hereof being divided from the rest, was called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the *Dioecse* of *Macedon*, under the *Præfettus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; The principal Officer of this part being called the *Pro-consul* of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his successors, Emperors of *Constantinople*, till the destruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*. But so that it remained not always under the command of one sole Officer, the politie of that State being altered, and this Countrey parcelled out into many Governments: especially after the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, or Western *Christians*. At what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a noble *Grecian*, and one of the (then) imperial family, seized on *Ætolia*, and *Epirus*, part of which last, and all the first he left to *Michael* his son: who held them, though with some dispute betwix him and *Michael Paleologus*, the first Emperour of *Constantinople*, after the expulsion of the *Latines*. *Charles* the last Prince of that family dying without issue, about the year 1430. bequeathed *Ætolia* to another *Charles*, the son of his brother; and *Acarnania* (being that part of *Epirus*, which the Princes of *Ætolia* held) to his late sons, *Memnon*, *Tarnus*, and *Hercules*. But many quarrels happening upon this divi-

Epirus.

sion *Amurath*, the 2d. having then newly conquered *Thessalonica*, composed the differences, by taking all unto himself, Anno 1432. There were at that time other Princes of like authority, as of *Achens*, *Phocis*, and *Bœotia*, but the first the chiefest: as honoured not only with title of Dukes of *Achens*, but the Princes of *Achaia* also; such being the fortune of that City, as to have the first and last great sway in the affairs of *Achaia*. For at the translation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey of Troyes*, a *Frenchman*, was made Duke of *Achens*, and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Pandus Emilius* speaketh, Anno 1220. which honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter di Brenne*, a kinsman of *John di Brenne*, the last King of *Jerusalem*, Protector of *Baldwin* the 2d. the last Emperour of the *Latines*, mentioned by the said *Emilius*, Anno 1288. And though on the defeat and death of this *Walter* by the *Catalonians* then ransacking those parts of *Greece*, the Title of Duke of *Achens* was assumed by *Frederick Alphonso*, the son of *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, and by other Princes of that house: yet upon better ground by the heir general of this *Walter* it was conveyed in marriage to *Izauus di Accio*, a Noble-man of the Realm of *Naples*; whose son *Walter* (commonly called the Duke of *Achens*) for a time obtained the sovereignty of the State of *Florence*, Anno 1342. but lost it suddenly again by his too much cruelty. *Francis de Acciavol*, the last Prince of this house, having been brought up in the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his *Favourites*, surrendered his estate herein, at the perswasion of that *Tyrant*; in change for the Countrey of *Bœotia*, and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he so sooner had received, but he was sent by *Mahomet* to *Zogannus* his Lieutenant in *Morca*, by whom at first courteously received, at last cruelly murdered. And so the whole Countrey of *Achaia* fell into the hands of the *Turks* Anno 1454. or thereabouts.

3. EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the East, with *Ætolia*, on the West, with the *Adriatick*; on the North, with *Thessaly*, *Macedon*, and some part of *Albania*; and on the South, with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the solidity and firmness of it; the word *Epeiros* in the *Greek* tongue, signifying as much as *terra firma*, or the firm land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, which name they give to all the Lands and Countreys in their possession, lying upon the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Countrey was born *Olympias*, Mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the first foreiner, who made tryal (though to his own loss) of the power and puissance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal*, next to *Alexander*, the second great souldier of the world. Here is also Mount *Pindus*, sacred to *Apollo* and the *Muses*, dividing this Countrey from *Thessaly*, and therefore common unto both: as also the *Acroceraunian* hills, so called, because they are so much subject unto Thunder and Lightning; eminent for their height, and much feared by *Mariners*: who when they see a little cloud rising on the top hereof, are sure of a tempest. Finally here are the famous Rivers *Acheron*, and *Cocytus*, which for their black waters, and unfavourable taste, are said to be the Rivers of Hell: from which last the Sacrifices and Solemnities made in honour of *Proserpine*, whom *Pluto* ravished and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Whence by a *Metonymie*, these Rivers are taken sometimes for hell it self, as in that of the Poet,

Eccetera si nequeo superos, Acheronta movebo.

Since those in Heaven I cannot move,
The powers of Hell I mean to prove.

The soil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of *Forests*, and thin of people; but towards the Sea reasonably fruitful: plentiful of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep, of more than ordinary bigness, and yielding the best breed of Horses. The people use a distinct language from the *Grecians*, though of the *Greek* tongue not utterly ignorant: and by reason of the barrenness of their own Countrey, become great wanderers, especially in Summer time, when they travel into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Asia Minor*, hiring themselves to work in harvest under the *Turks*, as also to thresh, winnow and make clean their Corn; and in the Winter time return to their Wives and Children. Able of body, swift of foot, apt to undergo any toyl and labour; having withal good courages, and high projections: which makes such of them as delight not in works of drudgery, to look for action in the wars; and otherwise to rob and spoil the neighbouring Mountains of *Albania*. Till their subjection to the *Turks*, much used both by the Kings of *Hungary*, and the State of *Venice*, in their several wars; serving on Horse, or Foot; as occasion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Western parts, but not so faithless to the party, by whom entertained.

Antiently it was divided into *Chaonia* (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the West; and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which parted by the River *Achelous*; the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Thesprotia*, and *Aimene*: all very populous in times, and so continued till *Pandus Emilius*, on the conquest of *Macedon*, overthrew 70 of their Cities. Few of which being since re-edified, and the Countrey for a long time languishing under the *Turks*, here are not any fair Towns, or well-peopled Cities, at the present to be spoken of, and therefore we must look on such as flourished in the times fore-going. The principal whereof, 1 *Dodona*, one of the Cities of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and Oracle of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonæis*; situate in a fair Grove, the Trees whereof are said to be *Vulgar*, and to give the Oracle; though others say, it was de-

Epirus.

delivered first by a pair of Pigeons; whereof the one afterwards fled to Delphos, the other to the Temple of Jupiter Hammon in Egypt. It was the antientest Oracle of all Greece; and so perhaps was the Town also. Said to be first built by Dodone, the son of Jupiter and Europa: more probably so called from Dodonim, the son of Javan, and Grandchild of Japhet, who first inhabited this Region; the whole Country (Greece I mean) being called Javan from the Father (by which name commonly it occurh in the Hebrew Text,) this Town Dodona from the Son. 2 Cassiope, a Port-Town, with a fair Promontory of the same name adjoining to it. 3 Onchesimus, by Strabo called Orchimus, and by Pliny Echimus, a Port-Town also, now called Santi Quaranta. 4 Panormos or the Sea-side also, retaining still the old name, and but little else. 5 Antigonis, more within the land, founded or repaired by Antigonus a King of Macedon, now called Argiro Castro, as Niger thinketh. 6 Phaniace, once the chief Town hereof; which being sacked by the Illyrians under Tenta their Queen, gave the Romans an occasion of quarrel with them, upon complaint made to them by the Epirots. 7 Pelodes, a Port-Town, the principal in that part which was called Thesprotia; as 8 Taronia, on the River Thyamis, and 9 Sybora, an antient Haven Town (now called Syoita) was in that part hereof which was called Almene. 10 Argos, the chief City of the Amphilochians. This part hereof was first named Molossia, from Molossus, the son of Pyrrhus and Andromache, remarkable for the best breed of Matives, hence called Molossi: and afterward Chaonia, by Helenus the son of Priamus, whom Pyrrhus the son of Achilles, settled in this Country; who having unfortunately slain his brother Chaon, caused it in memory of him to be called Chaonia; Chaoniamus, om-nim Trojano a Chaone dixit, as it is in Virgil. Of these Molossians, Pluto the third son of Saturn was sometimes King, called from the flat and hollow situation of this Country, consisting much of deep valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of especial note in Acarnania, 1 Anactorium, on the Bay of Ambracia, now called Vanziza. 2 Ambracia, the Regal Seat or Court of Pyrrhus, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called Golfo di Larta, from Larta an adjoining Town, situate in or near the place where Ambracia stood. Once subject unto Periander, King or Tyrant of Corinth, who being slain by a woman named Lionna, whom he kept as his Concubine, occasioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their deliverance, to worship a Lion. Afterwards being taken from the children of Pyrrhus by the Macedonians, and from them won by the Etolians in the time of their greatness, it was besieged by Fulvius, a Roman Consul, spoken of before. Who seeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the mediation of the Athenians, Rhodians, and other friends of both parties, to conclude a peace; but so that he despoiled this City at his going hence, of much excellent Imagery; carrying away with him unto Rome, the Pictures of the nine Muses, most admirably well done by the hand of Zemus, the rarest Painter of his times. 3 Enthorium, a Roman Colony, by Pliny called Colonia simply; now a small Village called Sutrino. 4 Lencas, situate on the point of a Promontory of the same name also, antiently memorable for the Temple of Apollo: from the top of which Promontory, by leaping into the Sea, such as unfortunately loved were cured of that malady; the first trial of that kind being made by Sappho that famous Poetesse. At that time joyned unto the Land, but since by the violence of the Sea, or the hand of man, made into an Island; according unto that of Ovid,

Leucada continuam veteres habuere Coloni,
Nunc Fræta circumvenit;

That is to say,

Lencas in former times joyn'd to the land,
Environ'd round with waters now doth stand.

It was called Lencas, from the whiteness of the Rock or Promontory, having before the separation or disjunction of it been called Neritos; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Isle and Promontory: both Town and Island at this time called S. Maure, taken by Bajazet the second, from the State of Venice, and by him given unto the Jews, (who do still inhabit it) at their expulsion out of Spain. 5 Nicopolis, a Colony of the Romans, of great both wealth and beauty in the time of S. Paul, who from hence dated his Epistle to Titus: called in that Postscript, Nicopolis of Macedonia, because Epirus at that time was part of the Province of Macedon; though afterwards a distinct Province of it self. It was first built by Augustus Caesar, on a Promontory opposite unto Actium, on the other side of the Bay: that being the place where his Land-souldiers were incamped before the Naval battle betwixt him and Mark Anthony; and was thus called, either in memory of his victory; or from a poor man and his As, whom he met there the day before. For asking the mans name, he told him that his name was Eutyches, i. e. Fortunate; and that the name of his As was Nicon, i. e. Conquerour; which happy Omen made his souldiers courageous, and hopeful of victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the As, the other of his Master. It is now a small Village called Prevesa.

6. Actium, on the Sea-shore, nigh unto which Augustus and Antony fought for the Empire of the world. The Navy of the latter consisted of 500 Gallies; the former had 250 only, but those crowned with victory: Antonius shamefully deserting his souldiers to follow after Cleopatra, who on the very first charge fled away for Egypt. The Town now ruined, the Promontory upon which it stood, called Cabo di Figlia.

The

Albania.

The Country was first peopled by Dodonim the son of Javan, or at least by some of his posterity, coming hither from the Isle of Rhodes, whose memory was preserved a long time in the Town of Dodona, by him, or from him so denominated. Afterwards being parted into several Nations; and those Nations united in the common name of Epirots; it became a great and powerful Kingdom: governed by a race of Kings descending from Pyrrhus the son of Achilles, and continuing till the time of Pyrrhus the son of Acæides. A man of such courage and magnanimity, that he did not only recover his own Kingdom, of which Cassander had deprived his Father; but got the Kingdom of Macedon from Cassanders Children: outed of which, he tried his fortunes with the Romans, Anno Mundi 3683. 4.C.471. After his death this Kingdom was shrewdly shaken by the Macedonians, and shortly after subdued by Paulus Emilius, who as we now said, destroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For, desirous to satisfie his souldiers after his victory in Macedon, he sent unto the Epirots for ten of the principal men of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the gold and silver which they had; and to that end, as he gave out, he sent certain companies of souldiers along with them; unto whom he gave secret instructions, that on a day by him appointed, they should fall to sack every one the Town, whereunto they were sent. A barbarous and bloody decree, 70 Cities confederate with the Romans ruined in one day, and no fewer than 150000 Epirots made and sold for slaves. But the chief motive which induced him to fo great a cruelty, was by dispeopling this Country, lying with a long and fair Sea-coast over against Italy, to give the Romans opportunity to land their Armies without any resistance, for the further progress of their Forces into Macedon, Thrace, Mæsia, or where else they pleased. Which ungodly policy was afterwards imitated by William the Conqueror, who laid waste all that part of Hampshire, since called New Forest, and therein 36 Parish Churches, that he might have a safe landing place for his Norman Forces, if the English should at any time endeavour to make head against him. Being made subject to the Romans, it was a while part of the Province of Macedonia; but afterwards when Macedonia was made a Diocese, it became a distinct Province of it self, called by the name of Old Epirus, to difference it from the Province of New Epirus, which lay Eastward of it. At the division of the Empire it belonged to the Constantinopolitans; and so continued, till the taking of Constantinople by the Western Christians: at what time Theodorus Angelus, a Prince of the Imperial family, seised on Etolia and Epirus, as before is said; and sped so well in his designs that he took the strong City of Durazzo from the State of Venice (to whom it fell in the division of that spoil) and cunningly (if not treacherously) intercepted Peter the third Emperor of the Latins, whom, as some say, he caused to be murdered at a banquet. After his death, his whole Estate being divided into two parts, Etolia, with that part hereof which is called Charnia, continued in his house till the time of Charles Prince of Etolia and Epirus spoken of before, after whose death it was subdued by Amurath the second, as before was said. The residue hereof, together with that part of Macedon which is called Albania, fell to the family of the Castriots: the last of which named John (the Father of Scanderbeg) seeing himself unable to resist that Tyrant, who had already swallowed up all his neighbours Princes; submitted his estate unto him, and gave unto him all his sons for hostages. No sooner was the old Prince dead, but Amurath seised on his Estate, murdered his three eldest sons; and caused George the youngest, to be train'd up in the Law of Mahomet: who afterwards escaping out of his power, and recovering all his Fathers countries, assumed also the style or title of Prince of Epirus. After whose death his children not being able to make good their game, lost it to Mahomet the Great; as shall be shewn more fully in the story and description of Albania, which is next to follow.

4 ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the East, with Macedonia; on the West, with the Adriatick; on the North, with Sclavonia; on the South, with Epirus. The Country mountainous and barren; watered with few Rivers, and those of no great note amongst the Antients, as 1 Lasis, 2 Apfius, 3 Paniasus, 4 Celidamus; all of them falling into the Adriatick.

It took this name from the Albani, once the Inhabitants of this tract; from whom the chief City hereof was called Albanopolis. Other Towns of most consideration, are 1 Sfeigrade, or Vëstigard (called by some the Holy City) situate in the borders of Epirus, on the top of an hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagles nest: one of the last Towns in all this Country which was taken by Scanderbeg, at his recovery of his birthright and estate herein; but being once taken by him, held good courageously against the Turk, the souldiers neither fainting in their oppositions, nor corrupted by money, till at the last subdued by a superstitition. There was in the Town one only Well, into which a treacherous Christian cast a dead Dog; at the sight of which, being the next day drawn up; the souldiers gave up the Town: being so unreasonably superstitious, that no persuasion, nor the example of the Captain, or the Burgo-masters, could make them drink those (as they thought) defiled waters. 3 Durazzo, a Town of great strength, first called Epidamnus, and afterwards Dyrrhachium. Under the walls of which Town, was the first bickering between the souldiers of Caesar and Pompey, not only to the present loss, but also the utter discomfiture of Caesar, as he himself confessed; if the enemies Captain had known how to have overcome. I must not omit the valour of Scava at this siege, who alone so long resisted Pompeys Army, that he had 220 darts sticking in his shield, and lost one of his eyes; and yet gave not over till Caesar came to his rescue.

Part.

Albania.

*Parq, novum fortuna videt concurrere, bellum
Atque virum—densamq, ferens in pectore sylvam.*

Fortune beholds an unaccustom'd fight,
An Army and a man together fight,
Whose breast a wood of Arrows covered quite.

In the division of the Eastern Empire amongst the Latins, it fell into the power of Venice; taken at last after a long and tedious siege, by Amurath the second, An. 1474. 4. Dibra, in the Hill-Countries, near Epirus: the first Town which submitted to the valiant Scanderbeg, at his revolting from the Turks; supposed to be the *Deborus* of Ptolemy. 5. Croia, conceived to be the *Epicaria* of Ptolemy, the chief Town of all this Country, seated amongst inaccessible Mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by Scanderbeg, but by wile: who having got into his power the Secretary of the principal Bassa, forced him to write Letters in his Masters name unto the Governour hereof to deliver it unto him; which was done accordingly. Afterwards in vain besieged by Amurath the second, who under the walls hereof gave up his wretched soul to the Devil; and thrice belied by Mahomet his son and successor, before he could again possess it: but taken at the last after Scanderbegs death, as if the *Genius* or tutelary Deity of the place had departed with him. 6. Petrella, a Town of great strength, seated on the top of an hill (as almost all the Towns of Albania are) about 25 miles from Croia; delivered unto Scanderbeg at his first sitting down before it: as also was 7. Petra Alba, three miles from Petrella, near the borders of Macedon, and situate like the other on the top of a Mountain; the River *Emathius* running under the bottom of it. 8. Stellusa, fifty miles from Croia, built on the top of an high Hill in the middle of a pleasant and fruitful Valley, with great and spacious plains about it. 9. Dagna or Dayna, a place of great importance in the Hill-Country towards Selavonia; for the possession whereof arose a war betwixt Scanderbeg, and the State of Venice: but the Venetians being worsted at the battle of Drino, relinquished their pretensions to it. 10. Aulon, a Port-town now called Vallona, situate over against Hydruntum, or Otranto in Italy, from which distant about 60 miles. The Town unwall'd, but fortified with a very strong Castle. A Town unfortunately fit for the invasion of Italy, and was accordingly made use of, by Achmetes the chief Bassa under Mahomet the Great, who from hence, passed his Army over into Apulia, took the Town of Otranto, and had not the death of Mahomet, and the combustions thereon following amongst the Turks, altered the design, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of Rome unto Constantinople. 11. Apollonia, a Town of great note in the time of the Romans. A Sea-Town furnished with a commodious Haven, which they held as their entrance into Greece; to that purpose serving them as commodiously, as Calice did the English in their wars with France.

This Country antiently was a part of Macedon, inhabited by the *Talantii*, *Astrai*, and *Albani*, from which last (but not till these latter times) it had the name of Albania: but whether these *Albani*, were a Colony of the *Albanians* of Asia, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When made a Province of the Empire, it contained all *Prevalitana*, and some part of *Macedonia Salutaris*; under the Docese of Dacia, in the time of Justinian, but at first of Macedon. Dismembred from the main body of it, when the Latines had subdued Constantinople, it fell unto the Noble family of the *Castriots*: who though they took unto themselves the title of Kings or Princes of Epirus, (most of which they held) as the Country of more note and eminence; yet was Albania the greatest strength, and Croia the chief City thereof, the seat of their residence: called in that respect by some writers, the Kings of Albania. John Castriot, the Father of Scanderbeg, seeing himself unable to resist the Turks, became their *Homager*, and delivered four sons for *Hosages*; whom Amurath the second, in their Fathers life-time, caused to be circumcised, and turn *Mahometans*: and after his decease murdered the three eldest, and seized upon Croia the chief City, with the rest of the Country. But George, the youngest of those sons, being reserved for better fortunes, was carefully brought up by Amurath, (who somewhat passionately loved him) in the arts of war, was carefully brought up by Amurath, then told him, that he nourished a *Serpent* in his bosom, which would one day sting him. Amurath, to make trial of his disposition, offered him one time the Crown of Albania: to which he prudently replied, that he preferred the honour of his service before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a Sword, than his head for a Crown. Satisfied with which answer, the Tyrant preferred him to the place of a *Sanjak* or Provincial Governor, and gave him some Office of Command in all those Armies, which he set out against the *Christians*. Escaping out of the battell, wherein *Caramben* the great Bassa was overthrowen and taken Prisoner by *Hunianes*; he got the Town of Croia by a piece of wit, as before was said: and in a very short time after, made himself Master of Petrella, Petra Alba, Stellusa, and all the rest of the Country, by the reputation and terror of his first success. Having recovered his inheritance out of the hands of the Turks, he reconciled himself to the Church of Christ: styling himself the Soldier of CHRIST JESUS, from that time forwards. Invaded by a vast Army of Turks, he overcometh *Alis Bassa*, and kills 20000 of his men. With no more than 20 Horse and 50 foot, he assaulteth *Alis Bassa* in his Camp; in which 5000 Turks were slain, and 300 taken: with whom encountering not long after in the open field, he slew 10000 of his men, took many prisoners, and *Musapha* himself for one, whom he ransomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Host of Amurath, then besieging Croia, he killed *Ferisses Bassa*, hand to hand in a single combat: and in the time of Mahomet who succeeded Amurath, vanquished *Isnac* the great Bassa, routed his whole Army, had the

Thessalia.

the spoil of his Camp, took 20 of his fairest Ensigns, and slew 30000 of his Souldiers. Not to instance in the rest of his noble Actions, it is reported, that in the course of his war against the Turks, he killed no fewer than 3000 of them with his own hands: using a Turkish *Scymitar* in all his fights, of great weight and bigness. Which when Mahomet on a peace between them had desired to see, and afterwards returned again with this censure of it, that he saw nothing in it more than ordinary: the gallant Prince sent back this answer, that the virtue of the weapon depended on the strength of his Arm, which he could not send him, for that he did reserve it for the death of his Enemies. Finally, having held his Cards against Amurath and Mahomet, two most fortunate Gamesters, for the space of 24 years; he set up his rest at last a winner; dying in peace at Lyssa, then belonging to the State of Venice, Jan. 17. An. 1466, and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the Turks about nine years after, his body was digged up by them, not in spite, but honor: that man accomplishing himself happy who could get any of his bones, to preserve as a relic; supposing that as long as he had it about him, he should be invincible. But with him died the liberty of his Country also, not long after subdued by the Turks, and made a Province of that Empire, as it still continueth: the name of Albania being by them extended over all Epirus, and so much of Dalmatia also as is under their power.

The Arms of this Kingdome (or rather of the Kings thereof) were Gules, an Eagle Sable.

5. MACEDONIA.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the East, with the Aegean Sea; on the West, with Albania; on the North, with *Moesia Superior*, and a part of *Thrace*; and on the South, with Epirus, and Achaia: it was first called *Emonia* from Mount *Hemus*, which shattereth up that side hereof which is towards *Moesia*; after *Emathia*, from a King of it called *Emathus*; Macedonia, from *Macedo*, the Son of *Deucalion*, and the Father of *Caranus*, the first King of the line of *Alexander*; and finally *Kisth*, the Land of *Kethim*, whereof see *Maccab. c. 1. v. 1. & cap. 8. v. 5.* from *Kistim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who was planted here. Antiently of more large extent than it is at the present; extending from the Aegean Sea unto the Adriatick, till the taking of Albania out of it, which hath streighten'd it upon that side, but the rest as formerly.

The Country, taking it together, is very fruitful and pleasant, though on the outward parts thereof begirt with rough mountains and thick forests: in former times much celebrated for its mines of Gold and Silver, but long since exhausted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Emathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelagisia*, *Estiotis*, *Thyniotis*, *Thessalia*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Paraxia*, *Edonis*, and many others of less note; inhabited by 150 several Nations; now principally divided (besides Albania) into 1. *Thessalia*. 2. *Macedon* (specially so called), and 3. *Mygdonia*, which the Turks call *Tamboli*.

1. *THESSALIE* hath on the East, the Aegean Sea; on the West, Albania; on the North, *Macedon*, and *Mygdonia*; on the South, Achaia. A sweet and delectable Country, the pleasures and delights whereof inclined the people to be very effeminate, and dissolute in their course of life: in love with luxury and ease, and much like the *Persians* in behaviour; whose entrance into Greece they did therefore favour. Yet notwithstanding this debauchedness, they were esteemed the best Horsemen of all the *Grecians*: by their excellent managing of which creature (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horse their minds, or borrowed his body) they gave occasion unto the fiction of the *Centaures*; half men, half beasts.

It is now called *Comenolitani*, and of old was very famous for many things, especially for the Hill *Olympus*: of so great height, that it seemeth to transcend the clouds: and therefore frequently by the Poets used for Heaven it self. 2ly. For the Hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapithae*, over whom *Pirithous* was King. 3ly. For the Mountains of *Pelion* and *Ossa*, the dwelling places of the *Centaures*; who intending to ravish *Hippodame* the Bride of *Pirithous*, on her wedding day, were slain by *Hercules* and the *Lapithae*. 4ly. For the delectable Valley of *Tempe*, situate betwixt *Ossa* and *Olympus*; extending in length six miles, and five in breadth: so beautified with Natures gifts, that it was supposed to be the Garden of the Muses. 5ly. and lastly, for the *Dolopes*, and *Mygdonides* (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had command at the siege of *Troy*: these last, by reason that they were a laborious and thrifty people, being fabled by the Poets to have first been *Emmetts*, transformed into men at the prayers of *Aeneas*, when he wanted Souldiers.

*Mores quos ante tenebant,
Nunc quoque habent; parcum genus est, passensq; laborum
Quasique tenax; et quod quaesita reserves.*

The custome they of *Emmetts* still retain,
A sparing Folk, and unto Labour set;
Strangely addicted to all kind of gain,
And wary Keepers of what ere they get.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Tricca*, the Episcopall See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious piece, called the *Ethiopic History*: which he so prized, that he chose rather to lose his Bishoprick, than consent to the burning of his Book; which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A piece indeed of rare contexture, and neat contrivances, without any touch

Thessalie.

of loose or lascivious language: honest and chaste affection being the subject of it, not such as old or modern Poets shew us in their Comedies, or other Poems. For here we have no incestuous mixture of Fathers, and daughters; no Pandarism of old Nurses; no unseemly action specified, where heat of blood and opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one passage unworthy of the chastest Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athenians* after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their freedoms, besieged *Antipater*, which was the last honourable enterprise, undertaken by that great and renowned City; known in old Histories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3. *Larissa*, situate on the South of *Demetrias*, but on the same Bay; memorable for the birth of *Achilles*, from hence called frequently in the Poets *Larissæus Achilles*; his birth ascribed by others to the Town of *Phthia* (from whence the Region called *Phthiatis* takes the denomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account; and possibly being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his birth, and the other of his Habitation. 4. *Demetrias*, situate on the Bay, called *Sinus Pelagicus*, (now the Gulf of *Ammonia*) of very great strength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcidæ* in the Isle of *Eubœa*, and the City of *Corinth*, kept all Greece in awe, and were therefore commonly called the *Fastens of Greece*: the *Grecians* never thinking themselves at liberty, till those Towns were dismantled by the Romans. 5. *Pharsalia*, night to which was fought the great battle betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, for the Sovereignty of the Roman Empire: a battle more famous than bloody; 60000 only of 300000, which were in the field on both sides, being therein slain. A battle before which the *Pompilians* were in such a miserable security, that some of them contended for the chief Priesthood, which was *Cæsar's* Office; others disposed of the *Consulship*, and preferments in the City of *Rome*: *Pompey* himself being so wretchedly that he neither considered into what place, it were best to flee, if he lost the day; or by what means he might provide for his own safety, and end the war. As if the war had been made against some ignoble Enemy, and not against that *Cæsar*, who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took prisoners one million of men, and slain as many. 6. *Philippi*, so named from *Philip* the *Macedonian*, the first founder of it; situate in the further part of the same plains of *Pharsalia*, and famous for as memorable a battle as that before, and of no less consequence: that namely betwixt *Augustus* and *M. Antonius* on the one side, against *Brutus* and *Cassius* on the other; these later being rather overcome by chance, than valour. For either of them thinking the other vanquished, slew himself in the field: being the two last that ever openly stood out for the common Liberty, and therefore called by *Crematius Cordus*, *Ultimi Romanorum*, or the last of the true Roman Spirits. 7. *Gomphus*, an ancient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Phœ*, in which City *Alexander* the Tyrant reigned, against whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting, was slain in battle: The Tyrant being not long after murdered by his wives brother, and by that means all *Thessalie* recovering liberty. 9. *Pegasa*, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelagicus*, which from hence is sometimes named *Pegæus*, in which the ship called *Argo*, was said to be built, so famous for the renowned voyage of the *Argonauts*. The hill *Pelion* spoken of before, is not far from hence. 10. *Pythion*, or *Pythæum*, of great note for the *Pythian* games, there celebrated in the honour of *Apollon*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: the Conquerors in which games were crowned at the first only with an *Oaken Garland*, but afterwards with one of *Lawrel*. Of which thus the Poet:

*Neve operis famam posses abolere vetustas,
Iustitiam sacros celebri certamine ludos
Pythia de domitis Serpentis nomine dictos, &c.*

Thus made to speak English by G. Sandys:

Then lest the well-deserved memory
Of such an act in future times should die,
He instituted the so famous Games
Of free contention, which he *Pythia* names.
Who ran, who wrestled best, or rak'd the ground
With swiftest wheels, the *Oaken Garland* crown'd.

These games, together with the *Olympick*, *Isthmian* and *Nemean* spoken of before, made the four annual meetings amongst the *Grecians*; renowned for the universal concourse of the noblest spirits. 11. *Doliche*, which together with *Pythium*, and 12. *Azorium*, another City of this tract, standing near together, are called in *Livius* the *Historian* by the name of *Tripolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the *Metropolis* of *Thessalie*, so called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopic History* before mentioned, who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliacus*, now *Golfo di Ziron*, and not far from Mount *Ossa*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*, upon which Mountain, *Hercules* being tortured with a poisoned shirt, sent by his innocent wife *Dejanira*, is said to have burned himself; thence called *Hercules Oœtus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pegasa*, and *Demetrias*, are in the Region called *Phthiatis*; *Larissa*, *Doliche*, *Pythium*, and *Azorium*, in that called *Pelagias*; *Gomphi*, and *Tricca* in *Efiosis*; the rest in *Thessalie* properly and specially so named.

This Country at first called *Æmonia*, afterwards *Pelagias*, then *Pyrrhæa* from *Pyrrha* the wife of *Dionælion*; & finally *Thessalie*, from *Thessalus* one of the Companions of *Hercules* by *Pliny* is called *Driopis*, *Efiosis*, by *Strabo*; *Pelagias*, by *Diodorus*; and by *Homer*, *Argos*: the name of some chief City or particular Province

Macedon.

vince, being figuratively used for the whole. Divided commonly into four parts, 1. *Thessalotis*, 2. *Efiosis*, 3. *Pelagiotis*, and 4. *Phthiotis*, the name of *Thessalie* or *Thessalotis* in the end prevailing; accordingly distributed into several governments, united finally in the person of *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, who partly by force, but specially by art and practice, made himself Master of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt free and subject, under the *Macedonian* Kings of the second Race; it became subject with that Kingdom to the State of *Rome*: first reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*, after, a Province of it self, when *Macedon* was made a *Diocese*; part of which it was. But from a Province of that *Diocese*, and a member of the *Eastern Empire*, it was made a Kingdom: given with that title to *Boniface* Marquess of *Mont-ferrat* in exchange for *Candia*, together with the City of *Thessalonica*, and some part of *Peloponnesus*, at the division of that Empire amongst the *Latines*. Which title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created Prince of *Thessalie*, by the Emperor *Emanuel*; whose Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to wife. In him as it began, so this title ended; *Thessalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Thessalie* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom subdaed, and added to the *Turkish* Empire in the reign of *Amurath* the 2d. Anno 1432.

2. *MACE DON* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Mygdonia*; on the West, with *Albania*; on the North, with Mount *Hæmus*; on the South, with *Thessalie*. The Country, for the most part fruitful, as before was said; but not so fruitful with delights as to make the people wanton or effeminate in their course of life: as being naturally good soldiers, exact observers of military discipline, and inured to hardnesse: which their many signal victories do most clearly evidence, both in *Greece* and *Asia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own wits, reckoned them amongst the barbarous Nations; and yet by a strange kind of contradiction, ascribe unto their country the seats of the *Muses*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimple*, with a Fountain of the same name at the Foot thereof; both consecrated to the *Muses*, from hence called *Pimpleides*. Here also was the Hill *Libetbris*, and the Province of *Pieria*, from hence the *Muses* had the names of *Libetbrides*, and *Pierides*: by this last called more frequently than by any other name what ever, especially by the *Greeks* themselves. But the birth of *Aristotle* in this Country doth more convince the *Grecians* of this foolish arrogance, than all the *Muses* in the world. A man so admirable in the general course of learning, so universally comprehensive of all Arts and Sciences, that the best-witted *Grecian* might have been his Scholar, and thought it a great happiness, as King *Philip* did, that they had any Children to be tutored by him.

The principal Rivers hereof, besides *Erigon* and *Alaicomon*, spoken of before; are 1. *Axius*; now called *Vardari*, rising out of the hill *Scardus*, a branch of Mount *Æmus*; and passing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Gulf of *Thessalonica*, as it is now named: the sweetest River of those parts, and of sweetest waters; but such as maketh all the cattle black which drink of it. 2. *Chabris*, 3. *Echedorus*, both rising out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the same Bay also. Besides which there are three other fair and capacious Bayes, ascribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Mygdonia*; that is to say, *Singeticus*, now *Golfo di monte Sacro*, and *Toronicus*, now the Gulf or Bay of *Aiomama*; and the third common unto *Thrace* also, which is *Sinus Strimonicus*, now the Bay of *Contessa*.

Towns of most observation in it, according to the several Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Almper*, 1. *Homia*, called afterwards *Selencia*. 2. *Eurpus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*. 3. *Apfalus*. Of *Syntica*, 4. *Trifolus*. 5. *Parocacopolis*. 6. *Gariscus*, 7. *Heraclea*, for distinction called *Heraclea Syntica*; there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edonis* bordering towards *Thrace*, 8. *Sentusa*, 9. *Berga*, 10. *Amphipolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which encompassed, whence it had the name; feared so close on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is questionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garrisoned by the *Athenians*, and from them took by *Philip* the *Macedonian*, in the first time of his fortunes. 11. *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* also, and by some Writers laid unto it, but I think erroneously: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned, by whom called *Philippi*; and situate in a Country so rich in mines of gold, that the said *Philip* drew thence yearly 8000 talents, which make 600000 French Crowns, or 140000 l. of our English money. Afterwards made a Roman Colony, and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Acts* 16. 12. to the people of which *S. Paul* writ one of his Epistles. Next in *Emathia*, we have 12. *Tyrissa* in the mid-lands, bordering upon *Thessalie*, now called *Cerefa*. 13. *Ædessa*, called afterwards *Ægeus*, and now *Vodena*; the first town of all this Country taken by *Caranus*, the founder of the first race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Beræa* on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honored with the preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof are by *S. Luke* commended for their readiness in receiving the Gospel. 15. *Pella*, on the same Bay also, the birth-place of *Alexander* the Great, from hence called *Juvenis Pellens*. 16. *Pynda*, upon the same Bay, at the influx of the River *Alaicomon*, in which *Cassander* besieged and took *Olympias* the Mother, *Roxane* the wife, and *Alexander* the heir apparent of *Alexander*, all whom he barbarously murdered. This cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himself of *Alexander*, who had once knocked his head and the wall together: and partly to cry quit with *Olympias*, who had before as cruelly murdered *Ariadus* the base Son of *Philip*, and *Euridice* his wife; with whom *Cassander* was supposed to be over-familiar. Memorable also is this Town for the great battle fought near it, betwixt *Perseus* the last King of *Macedon*, and *P. Æmilius* the Consul, in which *Perseus* having shamefully defeated his Army, lost both the battle and his Kingdom, with no less than 20000 of his foot which were therein slain; the Romans having to cheap a victory, that it cost them not above an hundred or sixscore men. 17. *Diam*

Mgdonia.

not far from the hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea; of which mile the River *Helicon* becoming there a Lake, and called *Baphirus*, taketh up one half. Situate in the borders towards *Thessalia*, the way unto it out of the *Tempe* being strait and narrow, and almost impassable, by reason of the spurs of the mountains running overthwart it: which had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted it. But *Perses* hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, only took care to get his creature out of *Dium*, and so abandoned both the passage, and the Town together. 18 *Philace*, more within the land; as is 19 *Eribea*. But these four last are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3. *MYGDONIA* hath on the East, the *Aegean Sea*; on the West, *Macedon*, properly and specially so called: on the North, *Edonia* and *Sinus Strimonicus*, on the South, *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the *Gulf of Thessalonica*. So that it is almost a *Peninsula*, environed on three sides with water.

Here is in this Country the hill *Athos*, standing in a *Peninsula* (the *Isthmus* being once cut thorow by *Xerxes*, but since closed again) said to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 daies journey long, half a daies in breadth, resembling the shape of a man lying with his face upwards: the highest point whereof covered perpetually with snow, is said to cast a shadow as far as *Lemnos*. Exceeding fruitful in grasse, fruit, oil, and wine; and wondrous plentiful in hares, according to that of *Ovid*;

Quot Lepores in Atho, quot Apes pascuntur in Hybla!

How many Hares in *Athos* feed,
What swarms of Bees on *Hybla* breed!

Inhabited only by *Greek Monks*, whom they call *Caloires*, of the order of *St. Basil*, to whom the hill commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long since dedicated: the place being so privileged by the *Grand Signeur*, that neither *Turk* nor *Grecian* may inhabit in it, except such *Grecians* only as profess this life. Of these there are about 6000, dispersed in 42 *Monasteries*, built after a military manner, for fear of *Theeves* and *Pyrats*, wherewith much infested in times past: frequented with great concourse of people coming thither to behold and adore some *Reliques* (for which they are of much esteem) the free oblations of those *Pilgrims*, and some benevolence from the *Turks*, which do much respect them, being the chief means of their subsistence. The manner of their life is like that of the ancient *Hermits*; poorly clad, their shirts of wollen, which they both spin and weave themselves: none of them idle at any time, doing still somewhat for their livelyhood, and the advancement of the house of which they are, as dressing vines, felling timber, yea and building ships. Few of them giving themselves to study, and some of them of to gross ignorance, that they can neither write nor read: bound by their Order to lodge and entertain such strangers as have occasion to passe that way, according to their rank and calling, and that of free cost too, if it be desired.

Towns of most note, according to the several Regions and parts hereof, are for *Mgdonia*, specially and properly so called, 1 *Antigonis*, so called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the first founder of it. 2 *Xilopolis*, 3 *Terpillus*, 4 *Phyco*, 5 *Assorus*, all mentioned by *Ptolemy*, but not else observable. 6 *Apollonia*, for distinction sake called *Apollonia Mgdonia*, to difference it from *Apollonia in Albania* then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the studies of *Augustus Caesar*, who here learnt the *Greek tongue*. For *Amphaxitis*, there was 7 *Arethusa*, 8 *Stagira*, now called *Nicalidi* renowned for the birth of *Aristotle*, hence named *Stagirites*. 9 *Thessalonica*, situate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*, by the name of the Town. Antiently the *Metropolis*, or head City of *Macedon*, the seat of the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, after the removal thereof from *Sirmium*; as also of the *Primate* of the *Greek Church*, who resided here. To the people of this City did *St. Paul* write two of his *Epistles*, continuing in great power and credit till the fall of the *Constantinopolitan Empire* into the hands of the *Latines*: at which time it was bestowed first on *Boniface*, Marquis of *Montferrat*; the new King of *Thessalia*; after whose death it fell unto the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432, when forced by *Amurath* the 2d, to become *Turkish*. Which notwithstanding it still preserves the reputation of a beautiful and wealthy City, inhabited by rich Merchants, who drive here a great trade, especially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for beauty, riches, and magnificence, little inferior unto *Naples*: and though the *Turks* and *Jews* make the greatest number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 30 Churches for the use of *Christians*. As for the *Jews*, they swarm here in such great abundance, that in this City and that of *Constantinople* only, there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and condemned by all sorts of people. 10. *Sydenrocaspe*, of old called *Chrysis*; remarkable for its mines of gold and silver; so beneficial to the *Turk*, that he received hence monthly 18000, and sometimes 20000 crowns de *claro*. Next for *Chalcidice*, there was 11. *Panormus*, a Port Town, 12 *Stratonice*, in the *Peninsula* of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Athos*, or *Athosa*, in the same *Peninsula*, with a Promontory of the same name, nigh which it stood. 14. *Acanthus*, now called *Eryssa*, on the Bay of the *Holy Mountain*. And finally in *Paraxia*, we have 15. *Ampelus*, 16. *Torone*, giving name to the Bay adjoining, called antiently *Sinus Toronicus*, now *Golfo di Asomama*. 17 *Cassandra*, on the Sea-side, so called from *Cassander King of Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Petideia*. 18. *Derris*. 19. *Merillus*, 20. *Pallene*, situate in the *Chersonese*, or *Demy Island*, called *Petalene*, and by some *Pallia*: formerly consecrated to the *Muses*, but before that infamous for the war which the *Giants* are fabled to have made here against the *Gods*; at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the fields adjoining *Campi Phlegrai*, in which this great battel is supposed to be fought. The occasion of the Fable was

Macedon.

(as both *Theagenes* and *Endoxus* do expound the same) that the Inhabitants hereof in those elder times being men of a moit impious and insolent life, got the name of *Giants*, whom which *Hercules* endeavored to subdue, and reduce to reason; it happened that there fell a great tempest of thunder and lightning, by which they were constrained to flee and submit themselves. Hence the report that those *Giants* made war against the *Gods*. Others have placed these *Phlegraean fields* in *Thessalia*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am that some place nearer to the hills of *Pelion*, *Ossa*, and *Olympus*, doth agree best with it: if at least *Ovid* were not out in his narration, who makes those Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to the skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the saying is. For thus that Poet:

*Afflatus ferunt regnum caeleste Gigantes,
Atque congestos struxisse ad sidera Montes.
At pater omnipotens misso perfregit Olympum
Fulmine, & excussit subiectum Pelion Ossæ.*

Which may be Englished in these words;

The *Giants* once the Throne of heaven affected,
And hills on hills unto the Stars erected:
Till Jove with thunder high *Olympus* brake,
And *Pelion* did from under *Ossa* take.

But from those Fables to proceed to more real stories: this Country was first peopled by *Cittim*, the son of *Javan*, passing over out of *Asia Minor*; in memory whereof here was not only a Town called *Cittim*, spoken of by *Livie* l. 42. but the whole land of *Macedon* is in the book of *Maccabees* called the land of *Keitim*, *Maccab.* 1. v. 1. and the inhabitants hereof called *Cittims*, in the 8 chapter of the same book, v. 5. (spreading in tract of time from one Sea to the other, from the *Aegean* to the *Adriatick*, some Colonies of them passed from hence to *Italy*, and first inhabited that Country, as hath been said. Such as continued in these parts, divided into several tribes, as in all parts else, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*: a people not much taken notice of in the former times, living a poor and painful life, *Goatherds* and *Shepherds* for the most part, scarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next invader; much less to dream of conquering either *Greece* or *Persia*: And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much untruly, (though by him spoke in passion, and to their disgrace) that his father *Philip* had first made them *Gentlemen*. For *Philip* having learned the *Rumours* of war under *Epaminondas*, (being then an Hostage with the *Thebans*) and by that means acquainted with the temper and state of *Greece*: not only freed his own kingdom from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the factions raised amongst the *Grecians*, (which he knew how to feed and cherish for his own improvement) brought them at first wholly to rely upon him, and after to be subject to him. Inasmuch that never any Monarchy had a swifter growth, nor a more speedy dissolution: there passing not full 40 years from the first of *Philip* to the last of *Alexander*; in which space it was both begun, perfected, and broke to pieces. For the foundation being laid in *murders*, *perjury*, and *treason*, as at first it was; was never likely to be blessed with a long continuance.

THE KINGS OF MACEDON.

A. M.	A. M.	A. M.
3155 1 Caranus 28	3415 9 Amintas 50	3574 17 Arganis II.
3183 2 Canus 12	3485 10 Alexander 43	3575 18 Amintas III. 19.
3195 3 Tirimac 38	3508 11 Perdiccas II. 28	3594 19 Alexander II. 1
3233 4 Perdiccas 51	3536 12 Archelaus 24	3595 20 Alorites 4.
3284 5 Argemus 38	3560 13 Orestes 3	3596 21 Perdiccas III. 6.
3322 6 Philippus 38	3563 14 Archelaus II. 4	3605 22 Philip II. 24
3360 7 Europus 26	3567 15 Pausanias I	3629 23 Alexander the Great.
3386 8 Alceas 29	3568 16 Amintas II. 6.	24 Aridans 6.

Of these 24 Kings, only 6 are famous viz. *Caranus*, the first King, originally of *Argos*, of the race of *Hercules*; and by an Oracle commanded to lead a Colony into this Country, and to follow the first flock of Cattel he saw before him. Being here arrived in a tempestuous stormy day, he espied a herd of *Goats* flying the fury of the weather. These *Goats* he followed unto *Edeffa*, into which by reason of the darkness of the air he entered undiscovers, won the Town, and in short space became Lord of all the Country, on which occasion as the *Goat* afterwards became the Arms and Ensign of the Kings of *Macedon*, so by that beast those Kings were figuratively designed in the holy Scripture, of which see *Dan. cap. 8. v. 5, 21.* 2. *Perdiccas* the fourth King, who at *Egea*, built a burial place for all his successors: assuring the people that as long as their Kings were there buried, his race should never fail; and so it happened. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was translated to the sons of *Demetrius*. 3. *Europus*, who in his infancy was carried in a cradle against the *Illyrians* his Enemies, and returned victorious. This the *Macedons* did, either because they thought they could not be beaten, their King being present: or perwaded themselves that there was none so void of honour and compassion, as to abandon an infant, no way able to save himself from destruction, but by the valour and fidelity of his servants. 4. *Alexander*, the son

Macedon.

of *Amintas*, famous for a notable exploit on the *Persian* Embassadors; who being sent from *Megabizus*, requested a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No sooner were they entered, but *peculanisms* on *Persis* *contrabantibus*, as *Justine* relateth the story, they were called back by this *Alexander*, sending in their steads young springalls maidenly attired; who upon the like indignities offered, slew these effeminate *Asians*. After which he behaved himself so discreetly, that the *Persian* Monarch gave him all *Greece*, between *Hemus* and *Olympus*. 5 *Philip* father to *Alexander*, who governed first as a Guardian to *Amynas*, the son of *Perdiccas* his elder brother; but afterwards took unto himself both the kingdom and title of King: which he continued in the deposition of his Nephew and natural Sovereign, the murder of the rest of his brethren, and the destruction of all such as opposed his practice. But being otherwise a man of approved abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Illyrians*; subdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*, and a great part of *Peloponnesus*, and was chosen General of the *Greeks* against the *Persians*. But as soon as he had made all things ready for this expedition, he was slain by one *Pausanias* a young Gentleman, whom he had formerly abused in the heat of his unnatural lusts. 6 *Alexander*, the son of *Philip*, who recovered such parts of *Greece*, as on the death of his Father had befooled themselves with a hope of liberty. He subdued *Darius* the great King of *Persia*, *Taxiles* and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchy of the *Grecians*, and in the height of his successes was poisoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Cassander*, one of his great Captains, his revenue at the time of his death, amounting to 300000 talents yearly. After his death his new got Empire was much controverted in the point of succession; he himself dying without lawful issue, and having at his death bequeathed it to him, who was thought most worthy by his Army; and the souldiers according to their several affections and relations, thought their own Leaders most deserving. At last the title of King (and in effect nothing but the title) was by consent of the Commanders cast on *Aridens*, a bastard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protector (for *Aridens* was a little crazed in his brain) and to be general of the Army, by whose design he was also married to *Eurydice* daughter to *Amynas*, whom *Philip* had before disposed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces, they were assigned unto the government of the chief Commanders; viz. *Egypt*, to *Ptolomy*; *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philorus*, *Media* to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Enmenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia*, and *Phrygia* major to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Cassander*, *Lidia* to *Minander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia* minor to *Leonatus*, *Assyria* to *Seleucus*, *Perlis* to *Pencestes*, *Thrace* to *Lysimachus*, and *Macedon* it self unto *Antipater*: the other parts of the *Persian* Empire being left to them, unto whose hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this division held not long, for *Perdiccas* being once slain by *Ptolomy*, and *Enmenes* made away by *Antigonus*; these two became quickly too great for the rest: *Ptolomy* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus*, to the Kingdom of *Egypt*; and *Antigonus* bringing under his command not only all *Asia* minor, but *Assyria*, *Media*, and almost all the Eastern parts of the *Persian* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time succeeding in the Protectorship, banished *Olympias* the mother of *Alexander*, out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a step-dames love unto *Aridens*. But he being dead, she returned out of *Epirus* (the place of her banishment) into *Macedonia*, where raising a strong party amongst the people, she put *Aridens* and his wife *Eurydice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander*, the son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*; both slain not long after by *Cassander* the son of *Antipater*, who to make sure work, murdered also with the like cruelty *Hercules*, the son of *Alexander* by *Barsina* (another *Persian* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the last survivor of that house. And so the royal family being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himself the Title of King: as did *Seleucus*, who had now recovered all the *Persian* Provinces, beyond *Euphrates*: The like did *Ptolomy* in *Egypt*, and *Cassander* in *Macedon*.

The second Race of the MACEDON KINGS.

A. M.

- 3648 1 *Cassander*, sonne of *Antipater*, supposed to have been the poisoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the blood-royal of *Macedon*; his reign full of troubles and difficulties, 19.
- 3667 2 *Alexander* and *Antipater*, sons to *Cassander*, but not well agreeing, called unto their aid *Lysimachus* and *Demetrius*; by whom they were both in short time murdered, 4.
- 3671 3 *Demetrius*, son to *Antigonus*, the powerful King of *Asia*, after he had in one battel against *Seleucus*, lost both his father, and all his *Asian* Dominions; settled himself in *Macedon*: but being there ousted by *Pyrrhus*, he fled to *Seleucus*, and with him dyed, 6.
- 3677 4 *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, was by the souldiers, voluntarily forsaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*; but after 7 months, the souldiers revolted to *Lysimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born.
- 3678 5 *Lysimachus*, King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquished and slain by *Seleucus*, the last survivor of *Alexanders* Captains; 7.
- 3683 6 *Ceraunus*, or *Ptolomis Ceraunus*, son to *Ptolomy* of *Egypt*, having traiterously slain his friend and Patron *Seleucus*, seized on *Macedon*; but lost it, together with his life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued these Countries. After whose death, this Kingdom being distracted amongst many Competitors, settled at last upon
- 3687 7 *Antigonus Gonatus*, the son of *Demetrius*, who for his valour shewn in expulging the *Gauls*.

W19

Thrace.

- was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrhus*, then returning from *Italy*; yet after the death of *Pyrrhus* he again recovered his estate; but ousted once again by *Alexander* the son of *Pyrrhus*, 36.
- 3723 8 *Demetrius* II. son of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander*, the son of *Pyrrhus*, 10.
- 3733 9 *Antigonus* II. surnamed *Dodon*, left by *Demetrius* as Protector to his young son *Philip*, usurped the Kingdom. He divers times vanquished and crushed the *Grecians*, beginning then to cast off the yoke of *Macedon*, 12.
- 3745 10 *Philip*, the son of *Demetrius*, 42.
- 3787 11 *Perses*, the son of *Philip*, the last King of *Macedon*, the subversion of which estate was first begun in the time of his Father, who had not only warred upon the *Aetolians*, and others of the *Greeks*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their protection; but sided with *Hannibal* against them. Upon which grounds they sent first *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, one of their Captains, by whom *Philip* was vanquished at the battel of *Cunus-cephalos*, and his Kingdom made tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a quarrel against *Perses* also, managed with variable success by *Licinius Marcius*, and others of their Commanders; they dispatched *Paulus Emilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to absolute subjection. Who sped so well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; and *Perses* led captive unto *Rome*, Anno 3789. In which triumph, besides the pomp of leading a Captive King in bonds, *Emilius* caused the ready money which he brought out of *Greece*, to be carried in 750 Vessels, every Vessel containing 30 Talents: which made so infinite a sum, that the *Roman* people were free for many years after, from all taxes and impositions. A. M. 3798.
- Macedon* thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to say, *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, and *Prevalitana*; in the new model of *Constantine* became a *Dioecese*, the *Dioecese* hereof containing the Provinces of *Grete*, *Achaia*, and new *Epirus*, *Macedonia Prima*, and the greatest part of *Salutaris*, the residue of *Salutaris* and *Prevalitana*, (which makes up the Country now called *Albania*) being laid to the *Dioecese* of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eastern Empire, till towards the last fatal dissolution of it; though many times harassed and depopulated by the *Scythians*, *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, and others of the barbarous people at their several invasions off: finally conquered by the *Turks*, first under the conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sini Strimonius*, now the Bay of *Consto*; and after unto *Amurath* the second, their sixt King, making themselves masters of *Thessalonica*, the chief City of it, and therewith of all the Country. By reason of which many invasions and last desolation by the *Turks*, there is scarce one of all those many Cities before mentioned, now of any eminence; except *Thessalonica* only: the rest being miserably destroyed. And for the Country it self it is governed by a *Turkish Sanziack*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, his annual Revenue being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing else required of him than to maintain 100 horse in ordinary pay, for defence of his Province; and to find 400 horse on extraordinary occasions at the *Grand-Signieur* shall command him.

6 TH R A C E.

TH R A C E hath on the East, *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontia*, and *Hellespont*; on the West *Macedon*, on the North, the Hill *Hemus*; on the South the *Aegean* Sea, and part of *Macedon*. A very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days journey in length, and 7 days journey in breadth; and in relation unto the heavens, reaching unto the 44 degree of the Northern latitude; so that the longest day in summer is about 15 hours, three quarters.

By several men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names; by *Strabo*, *Aria*; by *Strabo*, *Odrysa*; by *Lycophron*, *Crestona*; by some writers, *Scythia*; by *Josephus* the *Hebrew*, *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that as some say from *Thras*, the son of *Mars*, as others from *Thrace*, an Inchantress: more probably from the ferity and barbarous condition of the first Inhabitants; the name in the Original *Greek* bearing that construction: Most likely from *Thyras*, the son of *Japhet*, who first planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Josephus*, besides many other footsteps and remembrances of him, in the name of many of their Towns, and some of their Princes: of which we have already spoken in our general Preface. Finally, by the *Turks* it is called *Romania*, either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here; or because *Constantinople*, the chief City of it, was antiently called *Nova Roma*: and by that name it is now called in most modern Writers.

The Country generally is neither of a rich soil, nor a pleasant air, the corn and other fruits by reason of the coldness of the Climate, leisurely ripening, the Vines yielding more shade than juice, and the trees for the most part more leaves than fruit: yet in some parts there be many large and goodly plains, where they reap good store of corn, but of Pulse especially; and towards the Sea-side they have plenty of wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for strength and goodness.

The people antiently were very bold and valiant, and called by some *Autroques*, because every man was a law to himself. So that it was truly said by *Herodotus*, that it they had either been all of one mind; or under one King, they had been invincible. Of manners they were rude and savage, somewhat near to brutishness; buying their Wives, and selling both their sons and daughters, as in open market: in which, since imitated by the *Turks*, who possess their Coun-

Thrace.

Country. The men were more courageous than comely, wearing Cloaths according to their conditions, ragged and unseemly. The married women were in love to their Husbands for constant, that they willingly sacrificed themselves at their Funerals. The Virgins were bestowed, not by their own Parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither beauty nor virtue for their dowry, were put off according to their monie; most times sold as other Cattel, in the Markets. In matters of Religion, they worshipped *Mars, Bacchus, Diana, Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: swearing especially by the first, from whom they bragged themselves to have been descended. But their chief national deity, was one *Zamolxis*, sometimes a native of this Country, who having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, prescribed them good and wholesome Laws; assuring them that if they did observe the same, they should go unto a place when they left this World, in which they should enjoy all manner of pleasure and contentment. By this means having gotten some opinion of a divinity amongst them, he absented himself; after was worshipped as their God. Upon these principles, when any one was born amongst them, his Parents and other friends sitting round about him, lamented bitterly his coming into the World; ripping up all the miseries and afflictions whereto he was to be exposed in this present life, and so deplored his condition as absolutely miserable and unhappy. But on the contrary, when any one chanced to dye; they buried him with all joy and alacrity; highly rejoicing that by this means he was freed from the crosses and disasters of this wretched World. Expressed thus briefly, after his wonted manner, by my Author, *Lugentur Puerperia, natiqne deflorant; funera contra fletu sunt, & veluti sacra canis lusque celebrantur*. A piece of such sound and Orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in those times of darkness; and favouring very much of the Primitive piety: by which the Obit of the Saints were kept as Festivals, no notice being taken of the day of their births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non natiuitatem sed mortem Sanctorum Ecclesia pretiosam & festam iudicat*.

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymnestor*, who villainously murdered *Polydorus*, a younger son of *Priamus*: for which fact, *Heclia* the young Princes Mother, scratched him to death. Here also lived the Tyrant *Terentus*, of whom before in *Phocia*: and *Diomedes*, who used to feed his Horses with man's flesh, was slain by *Hercules*, and cast unto his Horses. And finally, here reigned King *Corys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propose as a pattern of rare temper, both in mastering and preventing passion. For when a neighbour Prince had sent him a present of Glasses, of the purest metal, and no lesse accurate in the workmanship or fashion of them: (having dispatched the Messenger with all the due complements of Majesty and gratitude) he broke them all to pieces; lest if by mishap any of his servants should do the like, he might be stirred to an intemperate choler.

Chief mountains in this Country, besides *Hemus* spoken of already, are 1. *Rhodope*, the highest next Mount *Hemus* in those parts of the World; craggy and rough, the top whereof continually white with snow: memorable for the fate and fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholy humour (having lost his Wife) betook himself to these Mountains; where with his Musick he affected both Woods and Beasts, who are said to have danced unto his Musick: from this place of his abode called *Rhodopius*, from his Country *Thracius*; *Non me carminibus vincet nec Thracius Orpheus*, &c. as the Shepherd boasteth in the Poet. The truth is, that he was a man of an heavenly Muse, and by his dictates and good counsel laid down in verse, first of all civilized this people, and weaned them by degrees from their bestiality. Hence the occasion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodope* it self, it is in the midst of this Country, thwarring it from Mount *Hemus* towards the West: which with the spurs and branches of it, and the plains adjoining, lying betwixt the River *Nessus* on the West, and *Melas* or *Niger* on the East, made up the Province of the Empire called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in mines of Silver; 3. *Melampus*, shooting towards the Sea, full of rocks and cliffs; and 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principal Rivers hereof, besides *Strymon* spoken of before, the boundary in some places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are 1. *Nessus*, by the Grecians, now called *Messus*, by the Turks, *Charafon*, which rising out of Mount *Hemus* fallerth into the Sea, near the Isle of *Thassus*, in which came, the memory of *Thyras* the son of *Japhet*, seems to be preserved: which rising in Mount *Hemus* also loseth it self in the *Propontick*; as doth, 3. *Bathynius*, another River rising from the same Mount *Hemus*. 4. *Hebrus*, the most noted River of all this Country, rising out of *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Egean* near the Isle of *Samothrace*; a River of so slow a course, that it is not ealie to discern which way it goeth: but memorable in the Poets for the fate of *Orpheus*, who being torn in pieces by the Thracian women, had his limbs thrown into it by those *Furies*. 5. *Therapus*, good against the scab both in Man and Beast, issuing out of 30 Fountains, some hot, some cold; with the pleasantness of whose waters *Darius* the King of *Persia*, was so delighted, that he erected a Pillar in honour of it.

The chief Towns 1. *Abdera*, now called *Polyphilo*, situate not far from the fall of the River *Nessus* into the *Egean*, the birth-place of *Democritus*, who spent his whole life in laughing at the follies of others. 2. *Pecidea*, of old a Colonie of *Arbens*, from whom it revolted, and submitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians* not enduring the affront, beleaguered it, and after two years siege, and the expence of 2000 Talents, could not recover it again but on composition. 3. *Actus*, on the *Egean* Sea, a Town of great strength and safety, and therefore used by the later *Constantinopolitan* Emperors for the securing of great persons. For hither *Michael Palaeologus* sent *Jacobus* the Turkish Sultan, flying to him for aid; and hither *Mahomet* the Great sent *Demetrius* Prince of *Peloponnesus*, when he yielded up his Country to him: both under colour of providing for their

Thrace.

their ease and safety, but in plain terms to keep them in honorable Prisons. 3. *Lysimachia*, on the Sea-shore, once of great importance, built by *Lysimachus*, who after *Alexanders* death laid hands on this Country: afterwards garrisoned by *Philip* the father of *Perseus*, on the withdrawing of whose Forces for some other service, it was taken and razed to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the people of it carried into captivity, but by *Antiochus* the Great re-edified, and new peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient situation and former glories of the place. 5. *Philippopolis* so called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the father of *Alexander*, who built and fortified it as a bridge to hold in the *Thracians*; called also *Trimontium*, from three hills on which it was situate: beautified in the time of the *Romans*, with a goodly *Amphitheatre*, continuing entire and whole till these latter days, and might have lasted longer by many ages, did not the Turks daily take away the stones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make money of them. Here are also many other ancient Monuments, though the Town be much watted and destroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above 100000 persons: which notwithstanding it is populous, and well-frequented; by reason of the convenient situation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. 6. *Trajanopolis*, so called from the Emperour *Trajan*, by whom either founded or repaired; indifferently well peopled, and still preserving its old name. 7. *Selimbria*, on the coast of the *Propontick* Sea; beautified with a commodious port for receipt of small vessels, and many Bayes adjoining capable of greater: by *Pothinus* called *Selubria*, and *Olibria* by *Suidas*. 8. *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus*, or the Black Sea, now *Sisopolis*. 9. *Phinopolis*, on the same Sea also. 10. *Nicopolis*, at the foot of the Mount *Hemus*, there being another of that name near the River *Nessus*. 11. *Perinthus*, on the *Propontick* sea, near the influx of the River *Arfus*. A Town of great note in the ancient businesses of Greece; of great strength, and peopled formerly with men of such resolutions, that they maintained their liberty against *Philip* of *Macedon*, after almost all the rest of *Thrace* had submitted to him. 12. *Heraclea*, at first a Colony of the *Thubans*, and afterwards of much request in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Vespasian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperours of *Rome*, as also with an *Amphitheatre*, cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the worlds seven Wonders: and finally, made the *Metropolitan* City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the *Diocesi* of *Thrace*; whereof more anon. 13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon* the greatest City of *Thrace*, as possibly enough it was in power and riches, though not in greatness of extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, rich in trade, and mistress of a fair and goodly territory adjoining to it: the people whereof had been malicious enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally induced *Philip* spoken of before, to set upon them. In which attempt he sped so well, that what he could not get by force, he obtained by money; bribing some of the principal Officers to betray it to him: for the recovery whereof, *Demosthenes* oft moved the people of *Athens*, in those elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiacke*. 14. *Sestos*, in the Thracian *Chersonese*: which being a Peninsula abutting over against *Troas*, on the Asian side, is now called *Saint Georges Arm*. Opposite whereunto, on the other side of the Water, is the Town of *Abydus*; remarkable for the Tragical Loves of *Hero*, and *Leander*, celebrated by *Musæus*, an old Greek Poet. 15. *Callipolis*, on the Northern Promontory of this *Chersonese*, the first City of note that ever the Turks possessed in *Europe*; taken by *Solyman*, the son of *Orchanes*, the second King of the *Ottoman* race, Anno 1538. from whence they easily, and in little time, spread themselves all over the rest of *Thrace*: the ordinary passage of late times betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*, by reason of the convenient Harbour, and safe Anchorage. 16. *Cardia*, seated on the Western side of it, opposite to the Isle of *Lemnos*, and the birth-place of *Emmenes*, who being a poor Carriers Son, attained to such an ability in the Art of War, that after the death of *Alexander* the Great, under whom he served, he seized on the Provinces of *Cappadocia*, and *Paphlagonia*, and siding (though a stranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias*, and the Blood-royal, against the Greek Captains, vanquished and slew *Craterus*, and divers times drove *Antigonus* (afterward Lord of *Asia*) out of the field. But being by his own Souldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him slain. 17. *Sardica*, situate towards Mount *Emus*, memorable for the Council there held against the *Arians*, An. 351. 18. *Adrianople*, seated near the midst of *Thrace*, called anciently *Uscudama*, but got this name from *Adrian* the Emp. who repaired and beautified it, made subject to the Turks by *Bajazet*, An. 1362. from the first taking of it made the Seat of the Turkish Kings, till the taking of *Constantinople*, by *Mahomet* the Great; by whom removed unto that City. 19. *Pera*, opposite to *Constantinople*, on the further side of the water (as the word doth signifie in the Greek) by some called *Galata*, once peopled by a Colony of *Genoese*, as the Mart and Factory of that State, taken by *Mahomet* the Great, An. 1453. but still replenished, for the most part, with Christian Merchants &c Artificers.

But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the East, is, the renowned City of 20. *Constantinople*, seated in so commodious a place for Empire, that it over-looks both *Europe* and *Asia*, and commands not only the *Propontis* and *Bosphorus*, but the *Euxine* Sea. First founded by one *Byzas*, from whom named *Byzantium*; but being taken by the *Persians*, and from them recovered by the *Spartans* (unwilling that the *Persians* should grow strong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Pausanias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the birth of our Saviour. In vain besieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and of great strength in the flourish of the Roman Empire. The walls of a just height, every stone whereof was so joynted with Couplers of Brass, that the whole seemed but one intire piece, adorned besides with Towers, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger*, in his war against *Severus* the Emperour, it endured a Siege of three years against all the forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were so distressed by Famine, that men meeting in the streets, would draw and fight the Conqueror feeding on the Vanquished. For want of Artillery to discharge on the Assailants, they cast down upon them whole Statues made of Brass, and the like curious imagery. Houses they pulled down to get timber for Shipping; the women cut-

Thrace.

cutting off their hair to inch out their tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, lost it all by one Tempest. Compelled to yield by this misfortune, the principal of the Nobility were put to the sword, the wealth of the Inhabitants given for a prey to the Souldiers; the walls thereof dismantled, the Town left in rubbish. Yet there appeared to much of Majesty and beauty in the very ruins: *Ut mireris utrum eorum qui primi extruxerunt, vel eorum qui deinceps sunt demoliti, vires sint potiores*, as Herodian hath it. Re-erected afterwards by the Emperour *Constantine*, he honored it with his own name, and made it the chief Seat of the Roman Empire. The City finished May 11 Anno 331. And being so finished, was endowed with all the privileges of *Rome*, an equal number of *Senators*, one of the Annual *Consuls*, and all other Officers of State chosen out of both; the Citizens of the one being Free of the other, and capable of all places of most trust and power. For that cause called *NOVA ROMA*, in some following times. This City he adorned also with magnificent Buildings, curious *Statues*, and such like Ornaments, transported hither from *Old Rome*: which City he spoiled of more costly pieces, than any twenty of his Predecessors had brought unto it. At this day the chief buildings are the *Turks Seraglio*, and the Temple of *Saint Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and situation, so as little in magnificence and State. The Temple of *Saint Sophia*; was, if not built, yet re-edified by the Emperour *Justinian*. It is built of an oval form; surrounded with Pillars of admirable workmanship, adorned with spacious and beautiful Galleries: roofed all over with *Mosaicque* work, and vaulted underneath, very strongly for the Fabrick, and pleasing for the eye. The Doors are very curiously wrought and plated; one of which, by the superstitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noahs Ark*. And yet this Temple is little more than the Chancel of the ancient Church, which contained in length 260 foot, and 180 in breadth: and yet to our *Saint Pauls* in *London*, may seem for the bigness, to have been but a Chapel of ease. But what it wants in Greatness, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the elegance of the building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the fabricks in the whole World: the sides and floor, all flagged with excellent Marble, and before the entrance a goodly *Portico*, or *Porch*, in which, as well the *Christians*, who visit it out of curiosity; as the *Turks*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their shoes. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, converted to a *Turkish Mosque*, as it still continueth; frequented by the grand *Signeur* almost every *Friday*, which is the Sabbath of that people. Near hereunto standeth the Palace, or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperours, on the North-east Angle of the City, where formerly stood the ancient *Byzantium*: divided from the rest of the City by a wall, containing three miles in Circuit; and comprehending goodly groves of *Cypress* intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of pleasures which luxury can affect, or treasure compass. The Palace it self enjoying a goodly prospect into the Sea, was first built by *Justinus* the Emperour, afterwards much enlarged by the *Ottoman* race; containing three great Courts one within another: the buildings yielding unto those of *France* and *Italy* for the neat contrivances; but far surpassing them for cost, and curiousest.

As for the City it self, it is said to be 18 miles in compass, and to contain 700000 living souls; yet would be more populous than it is, if the Plague, like a cruel *Tertian Ague*, did not every third year to rage amongst them. Fortified towards the Land with three strong, and high Walls, the one higher than the other, the outermost highest of them all: towards the Sea with one wall only, built after the old fashion with many Towers, which very strongly flanker, and defend the same. But formerly both the Town and *Chersonese* in which it standeth, was defended from the incursions of the barbarous people, by a strong Wall built on the very *Isthmus* of it, some ten miles from the City, reaching from one side to the other. The work of *Anastasijs*, who succeeded *Zeno*, Anno 494. A City which as farre off gives to the eye a most pleasing object; so intermixt with Gardens, and beset with Trees, that it seems a City in a Wood: but being entered, much deceiveth the expectation which it promised, the buildings of it being mean if not contemptible. The streets for the most part exceeding narrow, but rated on each side for the greater cleanliness: the houses but of two stories high, some of rough Stone, and some of Timber; without any outward grace, or exterior garnishing: in many places nothing but low Sheds, or rows of shops; and in some places long dead walls belonging unto great mens houses. The principal beauty of the whole, next to some Monuments of Antiquity, which are still preserved, and the Tombs, or Sepulchres of some of the *Ottoman* Kings, which are very sumptuous; are the *Mosques* or Temples of the *Turks*, about eight thousand in number: And the Port or Haven, so conveniently profound, that Ships of greatest burden may safely lay their sides to the sides thereof, for the receipt or discharge of their lading; and so commodiously seated on the *Thracian Bosphorus*, that there is no wind, whatsoever it be, which brings not in some shipping to it. But that which gives the greatest pleasure to the sight, from the Hills adjoining, is the situation of it on seven Mountens, most of them crowned with magnificent *Mosques*, built all of white Marble, round in form, and finished on the top with gilded Spires, reflecting the sun beams with a marvellous splendour. On the first whereof, standeth the ruins of *Constantines* Palace, exceeding barely to behold. On the second, a fair *Turkish Mosque*, built on the Place anciently belonging to the *Greek Patriarch*; On the third, stands a stately *Mosque*, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the second; and a very large *Hospital*, for entertainment of Pilgrims, an relief of the poor: the Annual tents whereof are valued at 200000 *Chicques*. On the fourth and fifth, the Sepulchre of *Selimus* the first, and *Bajazet* the second. On the sixth, the *Mosque* and Sepulchre of *Selyman* the magnificent, numbered amongst the present wonders of the World: and on the seventh, the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, and the *Turks Seraglio*, spoken of already. In which respect it is called *Πόλις ἑπτὰ κρήνη*, by *Nicetas*; *Urbs septecollis*, by *Paulus Diaconus*; and so acknowledged to be by *Jann Dou-*

Thrace.

Douza, Rhines, Morison, G. Sandys, and other of our modern travellers, the eye-witnesses of it. So that if there be any Mystery in the number of *Seven*, or that the sitting of the *Great Whore* on a *seven-headed Beast*, be an assured direction to find out the *Antichrist*, we may as well look for him in *Constantinople*, or *Novia Roma*, where the *Great Turk*, the professed enemy of *Christ*, and the *Christian* *Edith*, hath his seat and residence; as amongst the *seven hills* of *Old Rome*, where the *Pope* resideth. On his sitting in the Temple of *God*, shew us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, now a *Turkish Mosque*, as in *Saint Peters Church* at *Rome*, till a *Christian* Temple.

But to return again unto *Constantinople*, as it was made by *Constantine* the Imperial City, and consequently the chief City of the East, in all Civil matters: so it became in little time to have a great sway also in affairs of Religion. The *Christian Faith* said to be first preached in *Byzantium*, by *Saint Andrew* the Apostle, the first Bishop thereof. Afterwards spreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches of it regulated by many Bishops; the chief prehemience in matters which concerned those Churches, was given unto the Bishops of *Heraclea*, *Heraclea* being at that time the *Metropolis*, or principal City of the Province. But after that *Constantinople* was built by *Constantine*, and made the Imperial City, as before was said, it did not only over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it self the *Metropolitan* dignity; but stood in competition with the other *Patriarchal* Churches, for the Supreme power; inasmuch as at the second *General Council*, holden in this City, it was unanimously decreed; that the *Patriarch* thereof, should in degree of honour be next unto the Bishop of *Rome*, and above those of *Antioch* and *Alexandria*; the same Decree confirmed in the Council of *Chalcedon* also. By which, not only all the Churches in the *Dioce* of *Thrace*, but also of *Natolia*, or *Asia Minor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Isauria*, which remained to the *Patriarch of Antioch*) containing no less than 28 of the *Roman* Provinces, were made subject to him. And though *Pope Leo* the first, pretending only the preservation of the Privileges of those two great Churches; but indeed fearing lest *New Rome* might in the end get the predecency of the *Old*, did oppose this Act; and some of his Successors persisted in the same resistance: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, especially after the Emperour *Justinian* had by his Imperial Edict confirmed the same. By whom it was finally ordained, *Seniores Romae Patrum primum esse omnium Sacerdotum, beatissimum autem Archiepiscopum Constantinopoliticos, Novae Romae secundum habere locum*: that is to say, that the *Pope of Rome*, should have the first place, in all *General Councils*, and the Bishop of *Constantinople*, or *New Rome*, should have the second. Encouraged wherewith, and with the countenance and favour of the Emperour *Mauritius*, *John* Patriarch of *Constantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the Great, took to himself the title of *Universal or Oecumenical Bishop*, the *Pope* General (as it were) of the Church of *CHRIST*. And though *Pope Boniface*, by the grant of that bloody Tyrant *PHOTAS*, got that title from him; yet the Patriarchs of *Constantinople* made good their ground, never submitting either themselves, or their Churches to the *Popes* Authority; for that cause specially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for *Schismaticke*, accordingly reviled, and persecuted with all kind of indignities. How it succeeded with these Patriarchs in the times ensuing, and by what means their jurisdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Muscovia*, part of *Poland*; and many other Churches in the North and East, hath been said already. Certain it is, the constant residence of the Emperours, from the time of *Constantine*, gave great ground unto it: of whom I should here add the names, but that I must first sum up the affairs of *Thrace*, before the building of this mighty and predominant City; and take a brief view of the rest of those Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*.

Concerning which we are to know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strimonis*, *Bardi*, *Dolongi*, *Sapei*, *Saii*, and some others, united by most writers in the name of *Thracians*. Governed at first by the Kings or Princes of their several Tribes, as most Nations else: distinguished from the common peoples as in other poms, so most especially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themselves apart, and were not to be worshipped by the best of their Subjects. These not agreeing well together for the common good, gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*, a good opportunity to invade their Country, to seize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them: the Country in those times being meanly peopled, and consequently giving that advantage unto the *Greeks*, as the *Indies* in these later times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portuguese*, *English*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon* proving bad neighbours hereunto upon all occasions, at last provoked *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a share, who being chosen Arbitrator betwixt two Competitors for that Kingdom (drawn at last into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with such poor attendants as *Justice* and *Piety*, but with a great and puissant Army: wherewith having vanquished and slain the two Pretenders, he pronounced sentence for himself, and made *Thrace* his own, compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their Revenue for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander*, this Country was seized on by *Lysimachus*, as his part of the spoil, who here built the City *Lysimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians* now accustomed to a foreign yoke, were either Subjects, or at least Tributaries to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their wars against the *Romans*, they incurred the disfavour of that people; who having settled their affairs in other places, and repulsed the *Cimbri*, thought it fittest to call the *Thracians* to account for their former Actions; and sped to ill in the attempt, that *Porcius Cato* lost his whole Army in the onset, cunningly intercepted in their woods and fastnesses. *Didius* the *Prator* coming in, whilst the *Thracians* were busied in the chase, gave them such a stop, that he deserved a *Triumph* for it: and made the Victory more easie to *Metellus*, who succeeded

Thrace.

ceeded *Cato* in that charge, and triumphed also over them; as also did *Lucullus* on another Victory, *U. C.* 680. Broken with so many ill successes, that they were finally subdued by *Piso* in the time of *Augustus*: becoming so obsequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhisemaces*, a great and puissant King hereof, aided him with a strength of Horse against the *Pannonians* and *Illyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards made a Province of the Roman Empire; in *Constantine's* new Model it became a *Diocese*, under the *Præfatus Prætorio Orientis*: *Thrace* it self being cast into four Provinces, that is to say, *Thrace* (specially so called, *Hæmimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia*, and the *Lower Mæsa*), spoken of before, being added to it: of which the Presidents of *Rhodope* and *Hæmimontum*, were not to be appealed from to the *Præfatus Prætorio*, as the others were; but only to the *Præfatus Constantinopolis*, the Imperial City. But as *Alfensius* King of *Castile*, surnamed the Wise, was once heard to say (never the Wiser for so saying) That had he stood at the elbow of Almighty God; when he made the World, he would have shewed him how some things might have been better ordered: so give me leave to play the fool, and to say this here, that had I stood at *Constantine's* elbow, I would have counselled him to lay the *Diocese* of *Thrace* to the *Præfatus* of *Illyricum*, who had originally only the *Dioceses* of *Macedonia* and *Illyricum* under his command; and not have placed it under the *Præfatus* of the East, who had both *Asia*, and all *Egypt*, under his Authority. For being that there lay Appeals from the *Vicars* of Lieutenants of the several *Dioceses* to their several and respective *Præfatus*, how great a trouble must it be to the subjects of *Thrace*, on every occasion of Appeal, to post to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the *Præfatus* of the Orient; when *Sirminum* and *Thessalonica*, the ordinary residences of the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, were so hard at hand? But *Constantine* was an absolute Prince, and might doe what he listed. He had not else removed his seat so far towards the East, and left the Western parts of the Empire open to the barbarous people, out of a fancy only to preserve the Eastern. For that it was a fancy only, the event did shew, the *Persians* for all this, prevailing more than ever formerly; and *Thrace* it self, though honoured with the Imperial City, and planted with so many Roman Colonies, so ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay waste and desert many ages after. Insomuch as the *Goths* being by the *Huns* driven over the *Danow*, were by the Emperor *Valens* planted in this Country, (the Emperor having a design to use them in his following wars) where not contented with the portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, wasting the whole Province, taking divers towns, and endangering *Constantinople* it self, from whence not driven (*Valens* himself being killed in the war against them) but by the coming of some *Saracens* to the aid of the Citizens. Nor could the residence of the Emperours so protect this Country, but that it was continually harassed and depopulated by the *Sclavens*, *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, *Saracens*, and other barbarous people falling in upon it: nor hinder one *Bryoninus* in the time of *Michael Ducas*, and *Nicephorus Botaniates* from assuming to himself the title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* race from getting ground every day on the lesser *Asia*, incroaching upon *Thrace* it self; and in the end obtaining the Imperial City.

And here perhaps it is expected, considering the *Turks* are now possessed of *Thrace*, and the rest of *Greece*, that we should make relation of the nature of that people, their customs, forces, policies, original, and proceedings. But the discourse thereof we will defer till we come to *Turcomania*, a Province of *Asia*, from whence they made their first inundations, like to some unrefillible torrent into *Persia*; and after into the other parts of the world now subject to them. And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our description of the rest of *Greece*, consisting of the Islands scattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Ægean*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian* Seas: leaving out such as properly belong to *Asia*, to our description of that Country, though otherwise *Greek* Islands, and so accomplished both for their Language and Original.

7 The ISLANDS of the PONTICK and PROPONTICK SEAS.

BEFORE we come to the descriptions of these Islands, we must first look upon the Seas in which they lie: beginning with the *PONTICK* first, because the *Greatest*, and that which doth communicate and convey its waters unto all the rest. A Sea made up Originally of the confluence of those mighty Rivers (the greatest in those parts of the world) which do fall into it: that is to say, the *Danow*, *Borysthenes*, and *Tanais* falling out of *Europe*; besides many other fair and large Rivers (though of lesser note) to the number of at least an hundred, which pay tribute to it: the whole compass of it being 2700 miles; in form, by some resembled to a *Scythian Bow* when it is bended. A Sea not so safe as many others, and therefore much annoyed with ice in winter; seldom remitted in the spring on the Northern shore: the Traffick of it wholly in a manner engrossed by the *Turks*, who is master of all the Sea coast of it, save what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim-Tartar*. At first called *Ægeus* from the inhospitableness of the neighbouring people; which being brought to some conformity, caused the Sea to be called *Ægeus*. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Sinistrum*, because in the way from *Rome* to *Asia Minor*, it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, for its greatness; and the *Black Sea*, because of the great mists thence arising. Others not improbably affirm that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black shipwrecks here happening. For it is a very dangerous shore full of Rocks and Sands: and for this cause there is on the top of an high Tower, a Lanthorn, in which there is a great pan full of pitch,

rozen,

Propontis.

rozen, tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the shore. This Sea being the biggest of all those parts, gave occasion to them which knew no bigger, to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant, decrant quæque litora ponto*; and in another place of the same Poet, — *nil nisi pontus & ær*; a better reason doubtless of the name, than that of the Etymologists: *Pontus, quia ponte caret*. Of this Sea the chief Isles are *Thinnius*, and *Eristhinus*, little famous.

From hence the Sea bending Southward, is brought into narrower bounds, not being fully a mile broad; and called *Thracius Bosphorus*: *Thracius*, for its site nigh *Thrace*; and *Bosphorus*, for that Oxen have swum over it, and hath no Island worth naming. Fortified on each side with a very strong Castle, that on the *Asian* side being the elder and the lesser, is by the *Greeks* called *Asio Castron*; by the *Turks* named *Acce-chisar*: The other just opposite to it, by the *Turks* called *Genichisar*; by the *Greeks* named *Neo Castron*, or New Castle. This last, the work of *Mahomet* surnamed the Great, in the beginning of his reign: in highness not inferior to a little City; built by him in or near the place of the ancient *Damalis*, environed with a wall 22 foot broad, and containing three great Towers; their wall exceeding 10 yards in thickness, exceedingly well stored with all sorts of Ordinance and Ammunition. By the *English* commonly called the *Black Towers*, partly because seated at the entrance of the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and partly because they serve as a Prison for Malefactors of principal note, who seldom are discharged thence, till released by death.

This Streight having continued 26 miles in length, openeth it self into the *Propontis*, 30 miles in compass; confined with *Thrace* on the one side, and with *Bythia* on the other: so as they which sail in the middle, may descry the land on all parts. Now called *Mare di Marmora*, from the Island *Marmora*, which formerly called *Proconnesus*, hath for its abundance of *Marble* purchased this new name. The soil apt for Vines, and not destitute of Corn, yielding also good pasturage for Goats, whereof here plenty, with an incredible number of *Partridges* amongst the Rocks: the Country of *Aristani*, a famous Poet, who flourished in the times of *Cæsar*. Anciently it had in it two Cities of the same name by the Island, called the *Old* and *New Proconnesus*; the former first built by the *Milesians*, an *Asian* people; the latter by the natives of this Island. But both these being long since decayed, it hath now only a small Village towards the North, with an Haven to it; inhabited by the *Greeks*, as is all the rest of the Island: such *Christian Slaves* as are in great numbers employed here by the *Turks* in digging *Marble* for their *Mosques*, and other buildings, being only sojourners, not house-keepers, and therefore not accounted amongst the Inhabitants. Here is also in this *Propontick* Sea, the Isle of *Cyzicus*, being it is on *Asia* side, we shall there speak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a lesser Channel, is called *Hellepont*, from *Helle*, daughter to *Atamas*, King of *Thebes*, who was here drowned. Over this famous Streight did *Xerxes*, according to *Herodotus*, make a bridge of Boats to pass into *Greece*: which when a sudden tempest had shrewdly battered, he caused the Sea to be beaten with 300 stripes; and cast a pair of *Fetters* into it, to make it know to whom it was subject. *Xerxes* in this expedition wasted over an Army consisting of two hundred the King in the unconquerableness of his forces; *Artabanus* told him that he feared no enemy, but the Sea and the Earth; the one yielding no safe harbour for such a Navy; the other, not yielding sufficient subsistence for so multitudinous an Army. But his return over this *Hellepont* was as swift as his passage magnificent; his Fleet being so broken by the valour of the *Greeks*, and the fury of the Sea: that for his more speedy flight, he was compelled to make use of a poor Fisher-boat. Neither yet was his passage secure; For the Boat being overburdened, had sunk all, if the *Persians* by casting away themselves, had not saved the life of their King. The loss of which noble spirits so vexed him, that having given the *Steersman* a golden Coronet, for preserving his own life: he commanded him to execution, as a Co-author of the death of his servants. It is now called the *Castles*, or the Sea of the two Castles; which two Castles stand one on *Europe*, the other on *Asia* side; in the Towns of *Sestos*, and *Abydos*. These Castles commonly by the *Turks* called *Dardanelli*, are exceeding well built, and abundantly furnished with munition. They search and examine all Ships that pass that way: they receive the *Grand Signeurs* Customs, and are in effect the principal strength of *Constantinople*. At these Castles, all Ships must stay three days; to the end, that if any *Slave* be run away from his Master, or Thieves have stolen any thing, they may be in that place pursued and apprehended. So that these Castles are as it were the out-works of *Constantinople* to defend it from all invasions, and from any forces which may come unto it by Sea, out of the *Mediterranean*; As for the safety thereof, from such as may find passage out of the *Euxine*, there are the *Thracian Bosphorus* the two strong Castles, the one above *Constantinople* on *Europe* side: the other on the *Asian* shore, which before we spake of. No *European* Isle of note in either Streight. And therefore on unto

8. The ISLANDS of the ÆGEAN SEA.

Hellepont, after a forty miles course, expatiateth its waters in the *Ægean* Seas; so called either from *Ægeus*, the father of *Theseus*, who misdoubting his Sons safe return from the *Minotaur* of *Cret*, here drowned himself: or secondly, from *Æge*, once a principal City, in the prime Island *Eubœa*; or thirdly, because that the Islands lie scattered up and down like the leaps of a wanton Goat, from the *Greek* *αἶγες*.

The chief Islands of it are, 1 *Samothrace*, 2 *Thassus*, 3 *Imbros*, 4 *Lemnos*, 5 *Eubœa*, 6 *Salamis*, 7 *Ægina*, 8 *Gg*

Lemnos.

7 *Ægina*, 8 the *Cyclades*, 9 the *Sporades*, and 10 *Cythera*: all which, especially from *Euboea* Southwards, are called the *Islands of the Archæes*; the Sea being by the *Greeks* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatness, compared unto the narrow Seas which lie above it.

I. *SAMOTHRACE* is a small Island opposite to the Coast of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; so called *quasi Samos Tracia*, to difference it from the *Asian Samos*, bordering on *Ionia*. Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the *Trojan*, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Aristotle* writing of the Common-weal of these *Samo-Thracians*, telleth us that it was first called *Leucefia*, and afterwards *Samandracchi*, plentiful in Honey, and Wild Deers, and better stored with commodious harbours, than other in these Seas. It hath a Town of the same name with the Island, situate on an high hill on the North part hereof, overlooking a capacious Haven; of late, by the *Pirates* frequent infesting of these Seas, in a manner desolate.

II. *THASSUS*, another little Island on the same Coast, opposite to the influx of the River *Nesrus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the mouth of the *Strimonian Bay*: by *Pliny* called *Eria*, and *Æthria*; by *Plutarch*, *Thalassia*; at the present, *Thassia*. In compass betwixt forty and fifty miles, sufficiently fruitful, well replenished with Woods, and yielding good store of the best Wines. Mountainous in some places, but those mountains fraught with *Quarries* of excellent *Marble*, which the *Romans* called *Thassian*, from the Island: and in the times of *Philip*, and *Alexander the Great*, rich in Mines of useful metals, that those Kings received yearly 80 Talents for their *Customs* of them. It hath one Town of the same name with the Island, situate on a large Plain in the north part of it; bordering on a goodly Bay, which serves for an Haven to the Town: and on the South parts where the Country is more mountainous and hilly, there are two Towns more, each of them situate on an hill; but the names thereof occur not amongst my Authors.

III. *IMBRUS*, another small Island, now named *Lembo*, is situate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian Chersonese*: in compass about thirty miles, but more long than broad, stretching north and south; and distant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Island mountainous for the most part, except towards the West; where it hath some pleasant and well-watered Plains: in which a Town of the same name situate at the foot of the mountain, once sacred unto *Mercury*, but not else observable.

IV. *LEMNOS*, an Island of more note, lyeth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbrus*; memorable amongst the Poets for the fabulous fall of *Vulcan*; who being but an homely brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great passion thrown out of Heaven, and falling on this Island, came to get his halcing. Howsoever, he was anciently worshipped by the people hereof, and from hence called *Lemnias*. In compass about an hundred miles, but more long than broad, extended from the East to the West: on every side well furnished with convenient Creeks, and some pretty Havens; by which the want of Rivers is in some sort recompensed.

The Country for the most part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Islands, but otherwise swelled with rising mountains; the interposed Valleys being very fruitful of wheat, pulse, wine, flesh, cheese, wool, flax, linnen, and all other necessities, only wood is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was said, yet have they good fishing on the Sea-coast, for their use and sustenance; and in some parts *Hot baths* for health and medicine. But the chief riches of this Island is in a *Mineral Earth* here digged, of excellent Vertue for curing wounds, stopping of fluxes, expelling poisons, preservative against infections, and the like: called *Terra Lemnia*, from the place; and *Terra Sigillata*, from the Seal or Character imprinted on it. For being made up into small pellets, and sealed with the *Turks* Character or *Signet*, it is then, (not before) sold unto the *Merchants*; by whom dispersed over most parts of the *Christian World*. Upon the sixth of *August* yearly they go to gather it; but not without much Ceremony, and many religious preparations: brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Island; and still continued by the *Greek Monks* or *Caloires*, who are the principal in the work. There is one hill only where it groweth, the top whereof being opened, they discover the vein, resembling the casting up of Worms; and having gathered as much of it that day, as the *Priests* think fit, it is closed again; certain bags of it being sent to the *Grand Signer* yearly, the residue sealed up, and sold to the foreign Merchant.

But to return to the *Topography* of the place, the Eastern parts hereof are said to be fat and fruitful, the Western very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and those three garrisoned by the *Turks*; who being Lords of the whole Island, have new named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dipolis*. Of which the first was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Island, as large and well-peopled now, as ever formerly, but of no great estimation, when it was at the best: seated upon an high hill looking over the Sea; with a handfom market-place, on which mount *Athos* casts a shadow, though distant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name, called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* still remaining. 2 The second of the two Cities was then called *Hephæstia*; methinks for the Temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephæstides*; since desolate and destroyed, and a morable for the Temple of *Vulcan*, being called *Chockino*. This Town not great, but of a reasonable strength,

Eubœa.

strength, memorable for the stout resistance, which a notable *Virago* named *Marrilla*, made against the *Turks*, in the time of *Mahomet the Great*: the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Island. For suddenly landings, when they were not looked for, with a purpose to surprize this Town, they found more resistance at the gates than they did expect: none more commended than this Maiden, who seeing her Father slain, took up such weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, until the rest of the Citizens wakened with the *Alarm*, came unto her rescue and forced the enemy to retire. Near hereunto is the hill on which *Vulcan* is fabled to have fell; more eminent for the *Mineral Earth* here only gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a *Labyrinth* to have stood in the days of old; little inferior unto those of *Crete* or *Egypt*; the ruins of it so decayed, that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3 The third place of note is *Setira*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Chappel in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their *Orisons* on the sixth day of *August*, before their gathering of the earth so often mentioned. In this Country anciently reigned *Theseus*, the Son of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whose time the women of the Island upon some displeasure murdered all the men, the King only excepted, preserved by *Hypsipile* his daughter, whom they made their Queen, and by whom *Jason* with the *Argonauts* were so kindly entertained for two years together, that they had almost forgot their intended expedition for the Golden Fleece, she her self being got with Child by *Jason* at his being there; the other women probably following her example. Following the fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at last under the power of the *Constantinopolitan* or *Eastern Emperours*; In the subversion of that Empire by the *Latinis* or *Western Christians* (of which more hereafter) it fell to the share of the *Venetians*, who held it till the year 1463. or thereabouts.

Besides these on the Coast of *Thrace*, there are also some of less note on the shores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are 1 *Peparinthus*, as *Plutarch*; *Enonius*, as *Pliny* calls it; containing about 40 miles in compass: now, called *Sarginius*, as *Castaldus*; or *Limene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eastern part with a Castle built upon a Rock. Others of less note are, 2 *Scynthos*, now *Scyatis*; 3 *Scopelos*, 4 *Alonissus*, 5 *Cyrenethus*, now *Pontico*, and 6 *Dromus*, of which little memorable. All which, together with those formerly described on the Coast of *Thrace*, being but the *Accessories* of the several Continents upon which they border, followed the fortune of the *Principal*, and were conquered in them.

V. *EUBOEÆA* known to the ancients by the names of *Æolis* and *Abantis*; to the moderns, by that of *Negropont*; fronteth all along the Coast of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in fertility: one part hereof, torn away from it by an *Earth-quake*, and lying still so near unto it, that between the Island and the Continent is only a little *Eurippus*, which ebbs and flows seven times in one day. The reason of which, when *Aristotle* could not find, it is said, that he threw himself into the Sea, with these words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me*. In this Island is the Promontory *Capareum*, where *Nauplius* the father of *Palamedes*, placed his false fires, to the destruction of so many *Greeks*. For understanding how his Son *Palamedes*, whom he deemed to have been slain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherously circumvented by the policy of *Ulysses*, and *Diomedes*: he conceived such a displeasure against the whole host of the *Grecians*, that he intended their general destruction. To this end he caused fires to be made on the tops of the most dangerous and inaccessible rocks in this whole Island; which the *Greeks* taking (according to the custom of the time) to have been the marks of some safe Haven, made thitherward; and were there most miserably cast away, there perishing 200 Ships, and many thousand men. But when *Nauplius* understood how *Diomedes* and *Ulysses*, whose ruine he principally intended, were escaped; he crownd himself for very vexation, in this very same place. *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius* son, is said to have invented four of the *Greek Letters*, *viz.* Δ, Ξ, Ε, Θ; to have first instituted *Centinel*s in an Army, and to be the first inventor of the *Watch-word*.

It is in length 150 miles, stretched out from the North-west, to the South-east; in breadth, not above twenty, where it is broadest; the whole compass 365 Italian miles. The Queen of the *Ægean Sea*, not only for greatness, but for fertility and strength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit, and wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbours, and capacious Bays, and those well fortified: watered also with the Rivers of *Cireus* and *Nelus*; two Rivers of so strange a nature, that if a sheep drink of the former, his wool turneth white; but coal-black, if he drink of the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is also said to be a stone called *Amianthus*, which is drawn into thread like hemp, and good cloth made of it: which, when it is stained, in stead of being sent unto the *Fullers*, is thrown into the fire, and so cleaned. But whether this be so, or not (for I put it only upon hear-say) certain it is, that it was once enriched with Mines both of Brass, and Iron, though those now decayed; and *Quarries* of pure *Marble*, which continue still.

The Island, before it was conquered by the *Turks*, was very populous; but the people most delighted to live in Villages; the Cities or walled Towns being only three. 1 *Crisso*, anciently *Caryssus*, with little or no variation, but by *Pliny* called *Ægea*, and *Chironia*; memorable for its *Marble Quarries*, of which were made the Pillars called *Columna Carystia*. 2 *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the *Turks*, *Eribo*, seated on a Plain near the waters side, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay, called the *Gulf of Negropont*; a populous, strong, and wealthy City, so fortified with Walls and Bulwarks; that in the judgement of most men, it was held invincible, when the *Turks* first laid down before it. Nor was it purchased by the *Turk* (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Constantinople*, undertook the business) at a lower price, than the loss of forty thousand men, who were spent upon it: but taken at

Salamis.

the last, and the people put unto the Sword, without consideration of Sex, or Age. A Town in former times of so great wealth and power, that it sent Colonies abroad into Macedonia (a principal Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidice*) as also into Sicily, and some parts of Italy: and had a strong influence on the affairs of Achaia also, as being situate so near the Continent, that it was joyned to it by a bridge. When it was in the hands of the K. of Macedonia, this Town, together with *Demetrias* in Thessaly, and the Castle of *Acrocorinth*, were called the feters of Greece: inasmuch, that when the Roman Senate commanded *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*, to set the *Grecians* at liberty; the *Grecians* made answer, that in vain was their liberty restored them, unless these three Towns were first dismantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Lawes, in memory of that benefit, they refused to declare against them in behalf of *Antiochus*; who thereupon made himself master of the Town, and consequently of the Island. But forced to leave the place upon the loss of the battle at *Thermopylae*, it became free again; till finally made subject unto *Rome*, with the rest of Greece, and with it made a part of the Eastern Empire. In the division whereof amongst the *Latines*, it fell to the share of the *Venetians*; who from hence used with their Gallies to infest the shores of *Turkey*, and disturb their trade. Provoked wherewith, especially with their taking of *Agas* a City of *Thrace*, under the conduct of *Nicholas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that enterprise had took 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Island: *Mahomet* the Great resolves upon the conquest of it; and with a puissant Army sets before the Town. And though it cost him dear, yet at last he got it, and there-with all the Island also, which depended on the fortunes of it, *An. 1471*.

VI. *SALAMIS* is nigh unto *Megara*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*; famous for the overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes*, by the *Athenians*, and their confederates. What was the number of the Souldiers and Gallies of the *Perfian* side, hath been already declared. The *Grecian* fleet consisted of no more than 270 Vessels, whereof 127 were rigged and set forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only; the rest by the *Associates*. Yet was the admiralty committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedaemonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common safety, before an unreasonable contention for priority. The *Spartans* seeing the inequality of forces, intended not to have hazarded the battle, but with full sail to have retired to *Peloponnesus*, into which Countrey the *Perfians* had made incursions; respecting more the welfare of their own Countrey yet defensible, than the desperate estate of *Africa*. This design was by *Themistocles* (as careful for the estate of *Athens*, as they for *Sparta*) signified to *Xerxes*: who getting between them and home, compelled them to a necessity of fighting; but to his own ruine. For in the conflict more than 200 of his Ships were sunk, and most of the rest taken; the *Confederates* having lost of their Navy, forty only. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megarenses* were many contentions for this Island; the fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the same name, the Royal Seat of *Telamon* the father of *Ajax*, so famous in the warre of *Troy*: more memorable for giving birth to *Solon* the Legislator of *Athens*, one of the seven wise men of Greece.

VII. *ÆGINA*, now called *Engie*, an Island situate over against *Sinns Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægean*: hence called *Golfo di Engia*, the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his justice and integrity one of the three Judges of *Hell*: the other two being his brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been called *Oenone*, and *Oenope*; but took this name from *Ægina* the daughter of *Afops* a King of *Bœotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is said to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The people hereof are properly called *Æginenses*, and *Ægina*, much spoken of in the wars of *Athens*, from which distant about 12 miles. The ground hereof is very stony, but good for Barley, of which very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving people, to whom they gave in those dayes the name of *Myrmidons*, (the Island being also called *Myrmidonia*) quod formicarum more terram foderent, because *Emmet*-like, they digged up and under the earth, to make it the more fit for tillage; and dwelt at first in *Caves* without any houses. Hence the occasion of the fable of turning *Emmets* into men at the prayers of *Æacus*; both tale and people, after (I know not how) carried into *Thessaly*, where before we found them.

VIII. The *CYCLADES*, so called because they lie in a circle round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are also called the *Islands of the Arabes*, because they are in the Sea called *Archipelago*. They stand so close together, that in a clear day a man may see 20 of them at a time; for which cause it is with good reason accounted to be a dangerous place for saylers in a storm. The chief of these *Cyclades*, are 1 *DELOS*, quasi *Δῖλος*, signifying apparent, because when all the earth had abjured the receipt of *Latona*, at the request of *Juno*; this Island then under water, was by *Jupiter* erected aloft, and fixt to receive her; and in it was the delivered of *Apollo* and *Diana*: of which thus *Ovid*,

Erratica Delos
Errantem accepit, tunc cum levis insula nabit,
Illic incumbens, sub Palladis arbore, palma;
Edidit, invita, Geminis Latona, noverca.

Unsetled *Delos* floating on the wave,
A little Island entertainment gave
To wandering *Latona*, spight of *Juno's* head,
Under *Minerva's* Palm-tree brought to bed.

Nota.

Cyclades.

Notable also is this Island for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a custom, neither permitting men to die, or Children to be born in it; but sending sick men, and great-bellied women to *Rhene*, a small Island; and not much distant. By a more ancient name it is called *Ortygia*; and by that name mentioned in many of the Poets both *Greek* and *Latines*. The chief town of it called also *Delos*, is situate on a plain environed with rocks, near the hill called *Cynthus*: whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*; and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delias*, and *Delia*, from the Island. In this Town had *Apollo* both his Temple and Oracle, delivered here more plainly than in other places; and for that reason (as some say) called *Delos*; the word in *Greek* signifying manifest or apparent: made famous by the resort of people from all places thither, especially from the neighbouring Islands; who sent yearly multitudes of men; and troops of *Virgins*, to celebrate his solemnities with herds of *Sacrifices*. More wealthy afterwards by the removing of the trade of *Corinth* thither; that Town being utterly destroyed by the *Romans*; and this made choice of by the *Merchants*; partly by reason of the immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient situation betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*. Continuing in great wealth and power, till *Mithridates* laid it waste; and at last on the ceasing of the Oracles, utterly forsaken. Both Town and Island now called *Diles*. By which name also *Rhene* an adjoining Island (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polyorites* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the least in name.

2. *TENOS*, by *Aristotle* called *Hytrosta*, by some *Ophiasa*, by the Moderns, *Tyna*. The chief Town of it of the same name; so called from one *Tenes* the builder of it, and giving name unto the Island. Memorable for a fountain called *Dipnosus*, of which *Aristotle* and *Athenians* do both affirm, that the waters will not mix with wine. The only Island of this Sea, which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*; the rest being subject to the *Turk*; deserving therefore the first place in our description of those Islands that compass *Delos*; though anciently.

3. *ANDROS*, (prima inter *Cyclades*) was reckoned chief amongst the *Cyclades*, or first at least in order, because next to *Delos*: originally called *Cawron*, afterwards *Anandros*, and at last *Andros*; from *Andrus* the Son of *Eurymachus*, who founded the chief Town in it, of the same name also. Memorable for a pleasant fountain mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof, on the *Nines* of *January* yearly, had the taste of wine. It still retains the name of *Andros*.

4. *NAXOS*, now *Niesia*, one of the biggest of the pack; as being about 80 miles in compass. In ancient times called *Veneris Insula*, or the Island of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionysia*, by reason of its abundance of Wine, and the goodness of those Wines together, consecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Dionysus*. From its wonderful plenty of Wheat, called by some *Sicilia minor*, or the lesser *Sicily*; but at last *Naxos* from one *Naxos*, who had the conduct of a Colony of *Carians* thither. But notwithstanding this new name, *Bacchus* did still retain the honour to be worshipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marrying here *Ariadne*, (as the Poets fable) whom *Theseus* had left upon the Rocks: whose Coronet or Chaplet being by his means made one of the heavenly Constellations, is by *Columnella* called *Ardor Naxius*, by the name of the Island; though commonly by *Astronomers*, *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The women of this Island are said by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth moneth, as *Bacchus* was: more certainly famous in true story for the beauty and fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent Marble called *Ophtia*, or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapered with blew or purple spots, in much esteem amongst the *Romans*. When these Islands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John Quirino*, a *Patritian*, or Gentleman of that City, (as they did divers of the rest on other Undertakers) from whom it came to the Noble Family of the *Crispos*, who held it till the year 1572. when *James* the last of that house sold it to *Selymus* the second.

5. *GYAROS*, a little Island into which the *Romans* used to banish delinquents: hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys*,

Aude aliquid brevibus Gyaris, vel carcere dignum,
Si vis esse aliquid; probitas laudatur, & alget.

If thou intend'st to thrive, do what deserves
Short *Gyaros*, or *Gives*: prais'd virtue serves.

6. *PAROS*, now *Paria*, by some of the Ancients called *Pallia*; by others, *Minois*; but obtained this new name from *Parnus*, a Son of *Jason*: memorable for quarries of the whitest Marble, of which commonly the Statues of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latines*. In compass about 50 miles, running in a long Plain from East to West, having once a Town of the same name seated in the North; once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careless of keeping their promises and contracts: whence *drameides*, grew into a by-word, applied to those who made no reckoning of their promises. There is now a Town in it called *Cephalo*, but of no great note.

7. *SCYROS*, opposite to *Magnesia* in *Asia Minor*, famous for the birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*; and

Cyclades.

and that it was the lurking place of *Achilles*. For his mother *Thetis* being forewarned by an Oracle, that he should be slain in the Trojan war, sent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Island; where he was brought up in women's attire among the Kings daughters, and deemed a *Virgin*; till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the Kings daughter, it was proved to be otherwise. Others relate that *Ulysses* discovered him by a wile, who coming thither like a *Peddler* or *Petit-Merchant*, with arms, and other covered him by a wile, who coming thither like a *Peddler* or *Petit-Merchant*, with arms, and other ware to avoid distrust; exposed his Merchandise to the view of the *Damocels*: and that the other Ladies falling on the *sires* and *Laces*, *Achilles* took into his hand the *Spear* and *Shield*. Which when *Ulysses* had observed, he made him leave that Company, and away for *Troy*. The handfomness of the fraud take from *Ovid*, thus;

*Conscia venturi genitrix Nereia fati
Diffimulat cultu natum; & deceptat omnes,
In quibus Ajacem, sumptis fallacia vestis.
Arma ego famelicis animum motura virilem
Mercedibus inferni, &c.*

Thus Englished by *G. Sandys* in his Translation of the *Metamorphosis*.

The whole design in Order to relate,
Thetis fore-knowing great *Achilles* fate,
Disguiz'd her Son, so like a *Virgin* drest,
That all mistook, and *Ajax* with the rest.
When *Arms*, with womens trifles, which might bli'd
Suspect, I brought to tempt a manly mind;
Yet was the *Heros* *Virgin*-like array'd;
Who taking up the *Shield* and *Spear*, I said,
O Goddess-born, for thee the fate of *Troy*
Her fall reserves; why doubtst thou to destroy
Great *Pergamus*! then made him d'off those weeds,
And sent the mighty unto mighty deeds.

There is another of this name, betwixt *Negropont* and *Lesbos*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the *Scene* of this action: but the general opinion is for this, (though that the greater:) to which the situation of it amongst the rest of those Islands, where reigned so many of the *Greek Kings* interested in the war of *Troy*, seems to give good countenance; the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in those days, so much towards the North.

8. *MELOS*, situate betwixt *Crete* and *Peloponnesus*, and equally distant from them both: the Promontories of *Scyllium* in the one, and that of *Dylemeum* in the other, shooting out against it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phanicians*, who coming out of *Biblus*, a Town of that Countrey, gave that name unto it: called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of Honey. The birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philosopher, hence surnamed *Melius*, but more properly *Aëtes*, or the *Atheist*: the first who in those dark times of ignorance, absolutely denied that there was a God. *Protagoras* *Deos* in *ambum* vocavit, *Diagoras* exclamavit, saith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compass. The soil sufficiently fruitful in Corn and Oyl, but defective in Wine. Here is great plenty of *Marble* curiously bespotted, and no small store of *Millstones*: as also great quantities of *Pitch*, and *Brimstone*, and some sulphury or hot springs good for many diseases. The chief Town of it called *Milo* also.

9. *SERIPHUS*, 20 miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the education of *Perseus*, the Son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Island, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but such as are brought from other places, keep their natural tone: from whence *Proverbially*, silent and sullen persons were called *Rana Seriphia*. It is now called *Serphena*, a stony and rocky Island, and hath a Town of the same name.

10. *CIA*, by some called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, opposite to the Promontory of *Achia* called *Sunium*, in compass about 50 miles; made towards the West in fashion of a *Crescent* or half-Moon. Mountainous and hilly, except towards the North. By *Pliny* said to have been torn from *Euboea* by a sudden violence of the Sea, many men perishing in the waters. Of old times beautified with three fair Towns, 1 *Julis*, 2 *Carthaa*, and 3 *Caressus*; of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whose names occur amongst the Ancients, as 11 *Miconum*, now called *Micole*; 12 *Cythinus*, now *Cainro*; 14 *Syphnus*, now *Sifno*; 15 *Therasia* or *Thensia*, now *Santorini*; 16 *Cimolus*, called formerly *Echinusa*, but now *Polino*; 17 *Olyarus*, now *Quiminio*; 18 *Sicenus*, now *Sicino*; 19 *Pygros*, now *Falconara*; 20 *Amurgos*, now *Murgo*, one of the biggest of them all, but not else observable.

The *SPORADES*, so called from *σπαργω*, *spargo*, eo quod in mari sparse sunt, & non in circulo coniecta, because they lie dispersed and scattered; not formed into a Circle, as the *Cyclades* are. In number

Sporades.

number twelve, viz. 1 *Anaphe*, so called by the *Argonautes*, and the *diaparellons* *οὐρανόπλοος*, because the Moon did suddenly, and beyond her natural course, appear unto them, then grievously distressed by tempest. *Apollo* worshipped here, is hence called *Anapheus*. It is now called *Namfo*. 2 *Astypalea*, now *Stampalia*, in compass 88 miles; by some of the Ancients called *Theon Trapeza*, or the Table of the Gods. In *Astypale*, the chief Town of it, was *Apollo* worshipped, from hence sometimes called *Astypaleus*. 3 *Helene*, so called from that fair *Greek Dame*, whom *Paris* is here said to have first deflowered; now called *Macroniso*. 4 *Los*, fifteen miles from *Navos*, where *Homer* is said to have first been buried: But others find his grave at *Naxos*, and some at *Chios*; the difference being almost as great about the place of his burial, as the place of his birth. Then are 5 *Lagnusa*, 6 *Phocusa*, 7 *Phacusa*, 8 *Philocandros*, 9 *Schinusa*, 10 *Strybia*, of little note either in Poetry or story. And finally *Thera*, not far from *Agina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Calliste*; but named thus by *Theras* a *Theban* Gentleman, the Son of *Antefan*, conducting thither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Minians*, (these last of *Thesphly*) cast out of *Lemnos* by *Pelasgus*: in memory of whom, as the founder of their name and Nation, the Islanders used to celebrate an Annual Feast. A sedition after happening amongst this people, the weaker party under the conduct of one *Battus*, admonished so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, passed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*: the birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who ascribes his Original to this Island, as himself thus witnesseth.

ΚΑΝΙΣΘΙ ΔΕΜΕΝΕΙΣ, ΤΟ Δ' ὈΥΡΟΝ ἙΡΟΙΩΝ ΘΗΤΗ,
ΜΗΤΡ' ἄνδρ' ἡ μάστιγος ἡμετέραν.

That is to say,

Calliste, which men *Thera* now do call,
Of my dear Countrey, the Originall.

X. *CYThera*, now called *Cerigo*, lyeth in the bottom of this Sea, not above five miles distant from *Capo Malo* in *Peloponnesus*; formerly called *Porphyris* from the abundance of *Marble*, whereof the Island yields good plenty. In compass about 60 miles, enriched with a delightful soil, and many Havens, but those small, and unsafe, and very difficult of entrance: environed on all sides with rocks, of themselves inaccessible, by which defended from the *Turks*, who hitherto have suffered the *Venitians* to enjoy it; to whom it fell in the division of the spoil amongst the *Latines*, so often spoken of before. It had a Town of the same name; some two furlongs from the Haven stood the Temple of *Venus*, (the ancientest dedicated to that Goddess which the *Gracians* had) and therein her Statue in complete Armour, like another *Pallus*. Out of this Temple (the ruins whereof are still to be seen) was *Helene* the wife of *Menelaus*, willingly ravished by *Paris* the Son of *Priam*; but not enjoyed by him, till he had brought her to a small Island of the *Sporades*, by her name called *Helene*, as before is said. From the devotions of this people paid so duely to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cythera*; by which often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*.

*Pace metu Cytherea, manent immota tuorum
Fata tibi.*

That is to say:

Drive fear fair *Cythera* from thy mind;
Thou thy Sons Fate immovable shalt find.

And so I pass from the *Aegean* to the *Cretan* Sea, observing this only by the way, that most of the 69 Kings, which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the warre of *Troy*, were Kings only of these small Islands; or else of other places as inconsiderable for wealth and potency: every small town and territory having in those early times, amongst the *Grecians* (when ambition had not taught the great ones to devour the less) a peculiar King.

9. The ISLANDS of the CRETAN SEAS.

THE *CRETAN SEA* is properly that part of the *Aegean* or *Ionian* Seas, which lieth about the shores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the command and power thereof: as in those times, the Sea about *Carpathos*, another Isle of the *Aegean*, had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*; though situate in the *Aegean* also. The Isles hereof are 1 *Crete*, 2 *Claudi*, 3 *Dia*, and 4 *Letoa*: for *Melos*, and *Cimolis*, named by *Ptolomy* amongst the Islands which adjoin on *Crete*, have been already spoken of amongst the *Cyclades*, in the account whereof they pass by consent of Writers.

1. *CRETA*, now *Candie*, hath on the East, the *Carpathian* Sea; on the West, the *Ionian*; on the North, the *Aegean*; on the South, the *African* or *Libyck*. In form extending East and West, with three points or Promontories, whereof that towards the East, called anciently *Samonium*, is now called *Capo di Salomone*; that on the South-west, looking towards *Africk*, formerly named *Hermia*, now *Capo*

Crete.

Capo Gnabasse; and finally that on the Northwest towards *Peloponnesus*; of old called *Cimarns*, and now *Capo Cbesin*. This last directly opposite to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being so troublesome and tempestuous, especially on *Laconia* side, that at last it grew into an ordinary caveat, *Maleam prateruictus obliuiscatur qua sunt domi*, viz. that he which was to sail by the point of *Malea*, should lay aside the care of all other matters, and attend his present safety only.

It hath in several Ages, and in several Authors, obtained several names: by *Homer* and *Eustathius* called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities then contained in it; by *Pliny* and *Solinus*, *Macaros* and *Macaronos*, that is to say, the happy Island, from the goodness of the soil, and temper of the Air. By *Stephanus*, *Idea*, from *Ida*, a famous Mountain of it; by *Giraldus*, *Telchionia*, from the *Telchini*, the Priests of *Cybele*, who was here had in great request. At the present, *Candie*, either a *vandore*, from the *whiteness* of the rocks wherewith environed; or from *Candie* the *Metropolis* or chief Town thereof. But the general name, which hath prevailed most in all sorts of writers, is that of *Crete*, so called *quasi Cureta*, by a *Syncope*, or abbreviation from the *Curetes*, the first inhabitants hereof: who together with the *Corybantes* and *Telchini*, were the Priests of *Cybele*, the principal goddess of this Island; and they so called *ἀνὴρ νύκτος*, from their tonsure, or shaving of the head. A custom much in use amongst the Priests of some of the *Pagan* Deities, and possibly enough from them transmitted to the Church of *Rome*. And to this *Etymology* I do rather incline, than either to derive the name from *Crete*, the Son of *Jupiter*, and the Nymph *Idea*; or from *Crete*, the daughter of *Hesperus*: though both these have their Authors also. Nor dare I to reject the conceit of *Bochartus*, who fetching the *Etyms* of most people from the *Punic* language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be descended from the *Cerethites*, a Nation of the *Philistines*, well known in Scripture: the word *Cereth* being abbreviated into *Creth*, from which into *Crete* and *Cretans*, is no difficult passage. But in my mind his conjecture is better than his proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience, that the chief arms of the *Philistines*, were their *Bow* and *Arrows*, as appears 1 Sam. 31. 3. and that the *Cretans* anciently were expert at those weapons also: yet this concludes no more that the *Cretans* are of the race of the *Philistines*, than that almost all Nations else had the same Original; the *Bow* and *Arrows* being the ordinary weapons of most people formerly, till custom and experience trained them up to others of a later date; as he himself acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate tractates.

In reference to the heavenly bodies, it is situate under the beginning of the fourth Climate, so that the longest day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a quarter. And in relation to the earth, set in the middle of the Sea, at so even a distance from *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, as if naturally delineated to be what *Aristotle* hath pleased to call it, the *Lady* and *Mistress of the Sea*. For it is distant from *Peloponnesus*, an hundred miles, as many from *Asia* the less, and not above 150 from the shores of *Africa*: So verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis magni medio jacet insula Ponto.

Jove's birth-place Crete, a fruitfull Land,
In the middle of the Sea doth stand.

It is in length 270. in breadth 50 miles; in compass about 590. The soil is very fruitful, especially of Wines which we call *Muscadels*, of which they transport yearly 12000 *Batts*: together with Sugar-Candy, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Orengees, Lemmons, Raisons, Melons, Citrons, Pomgranats. Yet as other Countreys of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in Corn; the most or greatest part of which is yearly brought hither from *Peloponnesus*.

The Island is very populous, inasmuch that it is thought that upon any sudden occasion, the *Seignury* of *Venice* can raise in it 60000 men able to bear arms. The people have formerly been good sea-faring men; a virtue commaculated with many vices, which they yet retain, as envy, malice, and lying: to which last so infinitely addicted, that an horrible lye was called proverbially *Cretische mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimenides*, a native of this Island, whose words thus cited by *S. Paul* in that to *Titus*, cap. 1. v. 12.

Κρήτος ὁν λῶνται, καὶ δόλια, καὶ σέπες ἀπαί.

The *Cretans* alwayes lyers are;
Unruly beasts, of labour spare.

To which this Proverb may be added, viz. *Tela Karmu xamra*, that is to say, There are three Nations, whose names begin with the letter *K*. worse than any others; viz. *Karmidus*, *Kyrtus*, *Klarus*, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though some I know apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capna*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the same Letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are sick of their old diseases, as great Lyers, and as idle as ever formerly; covetous withall, and very subtle, impatient of labour, and not caring to learn any science perfectly: only well practised in shooting, to which accustomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert than the *Turky* themselves.

The language generally spoken is the *Greek* tongue, though the Gentleman and Merchant by reason of their dependence on the State of *Venice*, speak *Italian* also. Both languages used also in di-

vine

Crete.

vine Offices; the people being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* service used also in many places, since the subjection of this Island to the *Venetians*. Converted first unto the faith by *S. Paul* the Apostle, who having planted the Gospel of life amongst them, left the watering of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Bishop of this Isle: recommending unto him the care of the Churches there, with power of *Ordination* and *Ecclesiastical* censure, as appears clearly by the Text. Which power, that it belonged to *Titus* as Bishop, and not their *Evangelist* only, is affirmed expressly not only by the subscription of the said Epistle, where he is plainly called, *Ἐπίσκοπος τῆς Κρήτης*, the first Bishop of the Church of the *Cretans*: but by the concurrent testimonies of *Euseb.* *Ecl. Hist.* l. 3. c. 4. *S. Amb.* in *prefat. ad Tit.* *S. Hieron.* in *Tit.* c. 1. v. 5. and in his tract de *Scriptori Ecclesiasticis*. *Theodoret* cited by *Occumen.* in *prefat. ad Ep. Tit.* *Occumenius* himself in *Tit.* 1. and finally by *Theophylact*, in his Preface to the same Epistle. All which in plain terms call him *Bishop*, and the Bishop of *Crete*; according to that sense and meaning of the word *Episcopos*, as it was used in their times distinct from *Presbyter*. The Church hereof whilst wholly under the *Greek* Patriarchs was governed by four Archbishops, and 21 Bishops. But since the subjection of this Island to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbishop, which is he of *Candie* the chief City, and eight Bishops only: besides the titular Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who hath there his residence; some Prelate of the *Latine* Church having been always honoured with that empty title, ever since the recovery of that City from the *Western Christians*.

Famous was this Island amongst the Ancients for many things, memorized both by the *Poets* and old *Historians*. For here reigned *Saturn* in the first ages of the World, fashet of *Jupiter*, born here, and secretly nursed in the hill called *Ida*. For seeing that by the compact betwixt *Saturn* and his brother *Titus*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own life only, but all his male children to be murdered as soon as born; *Jupiter*, by the care of his mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and secretly nursed in Mount *Ida*, as before was said: the crying of the Infant being drowned by the noise of loud-sounding Cymbals, purposely used by his *Rockers* to avoid discovery. Whence afterwards the *Corybantes* or Priests of *Cybele*, used in her sacrifices the like musical instruments, continually founding, and withall shaking of their heads (like *Fiddlers*) in an antick and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto, thus the Poet *Claudian*;

Non te progenitum Cybelei are canoro
Imbravit Corybas.

That is to say,

No *Cybeleian Corybas* that day
That thou wast born, did on his *Cymbal* play.

Here also lived *Minos* and *Radamanthus*, whose Laws were after imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*; and who for their equity on earth, are feigned by the Poets to be (together with *Aeacus*) the Judges in *Hell*. In this Island also lived the lewdly-lustfull *Pasiphae*, wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who they say, begat on her the *Minotaure*: *Daedalus* having framed for her an artificial Cow, into which she conveyed her self, and by that means obtained her desire. The fable is thus expounded, that *Pasiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Minos* Secretaries: whose company by the *Pandarisim* of *Daedalus* she enjoying, was delivered of two Sons; one called *Minos*, the other, *Taurus*. And whereas it is said, that the *Minotaure* was slain by *Theseus*, like enough that the annual tribute of 7 children which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in some prison, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the Keepers or Jailors. As for the action of *Pasiphae*, I think it not altogether impossible to be true, considering how *Domitian*, to verify the old relation, exhibited the like beastly spectacle in his *amphitheatre* at *Rome*: for thus saith *Martial*.

Junctam Pasiphaen Dictæo credite, Tauro
Vidimus; accepti fabula prisca fidem.
Nec se miretur (Caesar) longæva vetustas,
Quicquid summa caput, donat arena tibi.

The Fable's prov'd a truth, our eyes did see
The *Cretan* Bull sport with *Pasiphae*.
What cause hath then antiquity to glory?
We saw it done, she only heard the story.

Finally, here was the so much celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Daedalus* for the including and safe keeping of the *Minotaure*; so full of various windings and turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof, it was impossible for him to come out, but by the help of a clew of thread. By this *Minotaure* (half a man, half bull) the children of the *Athenians* paid yearly to *Minos* in way of tribute, are said to be murdered; till killed by *Theseus* son of *Aegon* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monster, and gave him the clew of thread before spoken of, to conduct him out again: the moral or history whereof hath been shewn before. Nor must it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the Geographer who flourished in the time of *Tiberius Caesar*,

Crete.

Cæsar, was of Cretan Parents (though born in the City of *Amassia*, in the Realm of *Pontus*) which adds unto this Island as much true renown, as any of the fictions or stories, (be they which they will) of the former times.

Things most observable at the present are these that follow. 1 That it breeds no Serpents, nor venomous worm, or ravenous or hurtfull creature; so that their Sheep graze very securely without any Shepherd. 2 If a woman bite a man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it; which if true, then the last part of the privilege foregoing (of breeding no hurtfull creature) must needs be false. 3 They have an herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth he shall feel no hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be believed who speaks it. 4 Here is (besides many other medicinal herbs) that called *Dilamum*, or *Dilamnos*, of special vertue against poison, either by way of prevention or present cure, peculiar only to this Island: it affordeth great store of *Laudanum*, a juice or gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain tree called *Cisso*, of which the mountains yield abundance; good to cause sleep, if moderately and carefully taken; but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation, it brings the last sleep upon a man, out of which not to be awakened, till the sound of the last Trumpet raise him.

Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Ida*, now *Pflorist*, situate in the midst of the Island, begirt about with many fair and pleasant Villages, sheltered by it from the violence of Wind and Sun, the hill being so high, that from the top hereof both sides of the Island may be easily seen. Here *Jupiter* is said to have been secretly nursed, from hence called *Idams*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* use to shew some tracks of the ancient *Labyrinth*, being indeed no other than the ruins of some larger Quarry: the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* being so detaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any ruins of it. 2 *Diète*, now called *Sethia*, in some places *Laffi*, so high, that all the winter long it is covered with snow; yet all the sides thereof garnished with *Cypress* trees; a mountain of such fame, that the whole Island sometimes had the name of *Diète*, the City *Dielynnia*, the Promontory *Dielynnium*, and the Herb *Dièlamos*, all seeming to take name from hence. 3 *Lenci*, a long chain of Hills, so named from the whiteness of them, now called *De Marina*, and by some *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The Principal of those that be, are 1 *Melipotamus*, 2 *Scafinus*, 3 *Epiciadus*, and 4 *Divotro*, towards the North; 5 *Populiar*, towards the East, and 6 *Limens*, towards the West: none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of burden, scarce of little Barks. But that defect supplied by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many *Creeks* and *Bays*, some capacious Havens, and great store of Fish, among which a kind of bearded mullet reckoned among the delicacies of the ancient *Romans*. By the convenience of which Harbours, their Fish-trade, and the situation of it in the midst of the Sea, the people antiently were esteemed so good *Sea-faring* men, that when the people of those times did tax a man with any incredible report, they used to say, *Cretensis nescit pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no *Saylor*.

In former times there were reckoned in this Island an hundred Cities, thence called *Hecontopolis*, of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolomy*: for so many of their names he gives us. Those of most note were 1 *Gnosus*, the seat-royal or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne*, the daughter of *Minos*, had the name of *Gnosus*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not far off. 2 *Cydon*, or *Cydonia*, a Midland City (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apple, which the *Latines* call *Poma Cydonia*, amongst whom they were in great request, as they are at this day, (though by the name of *Adams apples*) amongst the *Turks*; the most ancient of all the Cities of *Crete*, many of which were at first Colonies of this; for which reason it was called commonly *mater urbinum*. 3 *Eleuthera*, as *Ptolomy*; *Erythrae*, as the printed Copies of *Florus* corruptly call it, one of the first Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4 *Miletum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolomy*, the place in which *S. Paul* left *Trophimus* sick, as is mentioned 2 *Tim.* 4. 20. which happened when the Apostle hovered about that coast, as is said, *Act.* 27. 7. 8. &c. For that it could not be that *Miletum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Ephesus*, appeareth by his being at *Hierusalem*, *Act.* 21. 19. and other circumstances of the story. 5 *Cortyna*, high to which stood the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus*: memorable also for a reed, growing on the River *Lenais*, (near to which it stood) of which they made their strongest Arrows, by *Virgil*, *Æneid.* 11. called *Spicula Cortyna*; as also for a light garment much used by Hunters, which *Claudian* calls *Cortyniam vestem*, apprelling *Diana* the great Huntress with it. 6 *Dilamum*, as *Ptolomy*; or *Dielynnia*, as *Pliny* calls it, so named from the hill *Diète*, near to which it is situate; one of the chief Cities of the North parts of this Island; as 7 *Ampelas*, so named from its plenty of Vines, was upon the South. 8 *Minos*, a Port Town (now called *Alotomara*) so named from *Minos*, in the East; and 9 *Corytus*, on a Promontory of the same name in the West side of it.

But these and almost all the rest spoken of by *Ptolomy*, being so destroyed by time and wars, that the ruins of them are hardly visible, we must behold it in the present condition and estate thereof: divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities, that is to say, 1 *Sittia*, 2 *Candie*, 3 *Rhetimms*, and 4 *Canea*.

In the first part called *SITTIA*, lying towards the East, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Parishes, of which six only are of the Church of *Rome*, the residue holding the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; the principal whereof are 1 *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by so some to be the *Cissum* of *Ptolomy*; a small Town, but populous and very well fortified. 2 *Gerapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candia*, seated on the Sea-side on a lofty rock, at the bottom whereof is said to be a dangerous whirl-pit, supposed to be the *Panormus* of *Ptolomy*. 3 *S. Macor*, the dwelling place of one of the Bishops of the *Latines*.

2 In

Crete.

2. In the second part hereof called the Territory of *CANDIE*, lying directly West of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Towns and Villages, making up amongst them 99 Parish Churches; whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*. Of these the principal, 1 *Candia*, an Archbishop See, the *Metropolis* or head City of the Island, which takes name from hence; situate on the North-coast hereof towards the *Ægean*, beautified with a safe and commodious Haven, and fortified so strongly, that it seems impregnable; affirmed by some to be the *Mastum* of the Ancients; but I find no such place in *Ptolomy*, or in *Orelus* his *Thesaurus*. The City fair and large, built for the most part of free-stone, with low roofs, after the manner of *Italy*, the streets broad and spacious: from whence a fair and pleasant plain leadeth to a place called the *Cave* of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. 2 *Malvisin*, 3 *Thement*, 4 *Castell*, 5 *Bonifacio*, 6 *Belvedere*, 7 *Mirabello*, of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the territory of *RHETIMO*, lying North-west of the territory of *Candia*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up 44 Parishes, whereof 36 are *Græcians*, and but 8 of the *Latines*. The chief of which are 1 *Rhetimo* in the shore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Bishops See; but not else observable. 2 *Melipotamo*, an Episcopal See also, so called of the River *Melipotamus*, on which it is seated. 3 *Agifiman*, 4 *Mandrus*, 5 *Lappa*, hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and last part hereof, being the Territory of *CANEA*, taking up all the West of the Island, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, distributed into 47 Parishes: of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church, and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Those of most note are 1 *Canea*, built by a Colony or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentlemen on the North coast also, supposed to stand in the same place where once *Cydon* did; second to none but *Candie* for wealth and beauty; but far before it for the commodiousness of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more than a thousand good Gallies at a time, and therefore strongly fortified with two Cittadels, or Castles, on each side of the Haven, one; as the door and entrance of the Countrey. 2 *Chisamo*, in *Latine* called *Cysaminus*, old and decayed, the walls thereof only holding good against the ruins of time, situate in a low moorish place towards the *Ægean*. 3 *Selino*, built upon a hill on the Sea-side, opposite to *Chisamo*. 4 *Spachia*, or *Spachia*, situate on the foot of the mountains, of old called *Lenci*, now della *Spachia* from this Town: unwall'd, but fortified with a Castle, built for a place of refuge against the Incursions of such *Barbats* as annoyed the Coasts; in which the Governour for his part hath his chief abode. By which account it will appear that in the whole Island are no more than 1044 Towns and Villages, 207 Parish Churches: of which there be but 48 which are accounted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the residue 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the story of this Island, we can ascend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the Son of *Uranus* and *Vesta*, or of *Heaven* and *Earth*: who better favoured by his Mother, obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon wars arising betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, that *Saturn* for his own life should enjoy the Kingdom, which after his decease should return to the *Titans*: and for the performance of this contract the son of *Saturn* to be strangled as soon as born. But *Cylele* the wife of *Saturn* unawares to her husband, preserved first *Jupiter*, and after other of her Sons, which coming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his sons, they made war against *Saturn*, but in conclusion were subdued by the aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring against the Gods, *Saturn*, and *Jupiter* his Son, being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquished, a new war arose betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occasioned only (as many unnatural wars since these times have been) by fears and jealousy: which ended at the last in the flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became sole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death; and dying was interred at *Gnosus*, with this Inscription or Epitaph in old *Greek* letters, *ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ Κρητὸς*, that is to say, *Jupiter, the Son of Saturn*. After his death worshipped by the blind Gentiles, as the chief of their Gods; and honoured frequently with the title of *Πατὴρ ἀνθρώπων διώων*, the Father both of Gods and Men, though most incongruously, and absurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thousands living, in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed, he being dead, *Minos* begotten by him on *Europa*, succeeded here: who wisely taking the advantage which the convenient situation of the Island gave him, made himself master of the Seas; and afterwards enlarged his Dominions, by the conquest of the *Megarenses* and *Athenians*, upon which last he imposed amongst other hard conditions, a tribute of seven male Children yearly, to be kept as *Hofages*; determined after three years, by the valour and good fortune of *Theseus*. But *Minos* being slain in *Sicily*, and his Posterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themselves after the manner of a Common-wealth, or Free State: the Laws and Ordinances whereof first devised by *Minos*, were of such esteem, that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large described by *Aristotle* in the 2d Book of his *Politicks*, ch. 8. Under this Government it continued till the *Romans*, having taken in all the rest of *Greece*, picked a quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his war against them, yet *Florus* states the matter rightly, affirming, that the war was undertaken on no other ground, but *sola nobilitatem insulam vincendi cupiditate*, a covetous desire only of subduing such a wealthy Island. And to this War they went with so proud a confidence, that *M. Antony* who commanded in it, carried more chains with him to bring home his Prisoners, than *Arms* to conquer them. An insolence which he paid right dear for, his Navy

Crete.

Navy being vanquished by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his slain Souldiers hanged upon the *Masts*, and himself perishing in the action, by a fit of sickness. *Metellus*, who succeeded him in that charge went on more successfully, first taking *Gnosus*, *Elenibera* (or *Erythraea*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydonia*, their principal Cities; and not long after all the Island: using the vanquished Islanders with such inhumanity, that most of them poisoned themselves to avoid his cruelty: rewarded with no other honour for so great a Victory, then that he got the surname of *Creticus*; his triumph being denied by the faction of *Pompey*, against whose will he had put himself upon that service. Thus added to the *Roman* Empire, it was united unto *Cyrenicia* by *Augustus Caesar*, both making up one Province only, governed by a *Proconsul* till the death of *Nero*: afterwards separated from it, but the time I find not. During the reign of *Constantine*, in 36 years together there fell no rain, so that this Island was in a manner wholly desolated. But *Helma* the mother of *Constantine* having obtained rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new peopled by several Colonies brought out of *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoining. By *Constantine* made a Province of the Diocese of *Macedonia*, it continued a member of the Eastern Empire till the time of *Michael Balbus*, when subdued by the *Saracens*: from whom recovered by the more fortunate conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came into the Empire Anno 963. In the division of the Spoil amongst the *Latins*, it was first given to *Beniface*, Marquis of *Montferrat*, by whom surrendered willingly to the State of *Venice*, who had a mind to be possessed of all the Islands of that Empire: he being recompensed with the Kingdom of *Thessaly*, the fair and wealthy City of *Thessalonica*, and many Towns and Territories in *Peloponnesus*. Under that State it still continueth, in vain attempted by *Selymus* the second, in the year 1571. at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*: and gallantly defended for this year last past, against all the Forces of *Ibrahim* the late *Grand Signor*. What the success of this war will be we shall see hereafter.

For the defence hereof against the Insurrections of the Inhabitants, who did at first ill brook the *Venetian* Government, there are some standing forces kept in constant pay; besides such as are maintained in several Garrisons, the City of *Canea* having in it no fewer than six Companies of Souldiers; *Candje* 2000 Souldiers, and the lesser Cities proportionably: over which there is set so strong a guard, that a natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the preservation of their interest in it from a foreign power, they have furnished the Island with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the shores: and have exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Suda*, with two strong Castles, this Haven being capable of more than 1000 Vessels, and therefore meritoriously reputed the door and entry into the Countrey. It is reported, that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the second, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this Haven, money more than enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniard* seemed only to intend the retreat and relief of his own Navy, when he should undertake any expedition against the *Turk*; yet the wise *Venetians* saw, that by this Haven he might at all times awe, and when he listed, surprize the whole Countrey.

II. The other Islands of this Sea, as of lesser note, will be pass'd over in few words. The first of which is called *CLAUD*, mentioned *Alt.* 27. 16. situate on the South-west of *Crete*, by *Antila* called *Gaulos*; wherein in *Plinius* time was a Town or City named *Gaudos*; now called *Goli*, with the Island. 2 *DI*, now *Standia*, a very small Island, and of little note. 3 *LETHA* on the South-east of *Crete*, now called *Christiana*. And 4 *AGILIA*, or *Agialia*, by *Pliny*, *Agila*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponnesus*; now called *Ceterigo* by *Sophianus*. Of which, and others of less note (if less may be) there is no more to be said, but that they have always followed the fortunes of *Crete*, on which they seem to have their principal dependence.

10. The ISLANDS of the IONIAN SEA.

THE IONIAN SEA is so called either from *Ionius*, the Son of *Dyrachius*, whom *Hercules* having ignorantly killed, threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preserve his memory; as *Didymus* is of opinion; or from *Iona*, a Region in the extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Io*, the daughter of *Inachus*, as *Eucyphron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean*, which lieth from the *Aegean* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick*, from which parted about *Epidaurum* (otherwise called *Dyrachium*) as is said by *Ptolomy*: or rather at the shooting out of the *Acroceraunian* hills, as affirmed by *Pliny* and other writers; and so along the shores of the two *Calabrias*, to the Isle of *Sicily*. Chief Isles whereof which pass in the account of *Greece*, (for of those lying on the Coast of *Italy* we have spoke elsewhere) are 1 the *Strophades*, 2 *Zacynthus*, 3 the *Echinades*, 4 *Cephalonia*, 5 *Corcyra*, and 6 *Ithaca*.

1 The STROPHADES are two small Islands, now called *Strivali*, lying against *Messene* in *Peloponnesus*; famous for nothing but the *Harpyes*, ravenous birds, affirmed to have the Faces of women, but the talons of *Vultures*, sent by the offended Gods, (as the fable goeth) for the punishment of *Phineus* King of *Arcadia*, who had put out the eyes of his Sons by a former wife, at the instigation of their Step-dame. For which so plagued by these *Harpyes*, that he could see no meat on his Table, wheresoever he was, but these ravenous creatures first devoured it, and then bewrayed the dishes in which it was. Much pitied by the *Argonauts*, whom he had courteously entertained, they sent *Zeithus* and *Calais* the winged issue of *Boreas* and *Orythia*, who drave them thence, and having pursued them to those Islands, turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which fable was

CON-

Zant.

contained the sad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by *Flatterers*, Informers, and false-accusers, by whom their name and Government was made distastful; till by good Counsel they had purged their Courts of such ugly Monsters: concerning which *Alphonsus* King of *Naples* was used to say, that these *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades*, and dwelt at *Rome*. They are inhabited only by some few *Greek* Friars: and in one of them there is a Spring of Fresh water, which hath his Fountain in *Peloponnesus*, and passing under the Sea, ariseth here. The *Greek* Priests are called *Calairs*, *quasi caloi ista, boni Sacerdotes*: About 30 in number: they wear long hair; never eat flesh, and but seldom fish: feeding usually on Herbs, Olives, Oyl, and the like: They never go out of the Islands, neither do they, on any occasion, permit women to come amongst them. They all labour for their sustenance, some in Tillage, some in Vineyards, some in Fishing; so that among very many of them, three or four only can read. But of these somewhat hath been said elsewhere already.

2 ZACINTHUS, or Zant, is 60 miles in compass; and distant from *Peloponnesus* 20 miles; so called of *Zacynthus* son to *Dardanus*. The Country is wonderfully stored with Oyl, Wines, Currans: of which last they made yearly 150000 *Zechines*, for their own Coffers; and 48000 *Dollars* which they pay for custom to the Signeury of *Venice*. They were a very poor people when the *English* used to traffique there first, but now they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants first frequenting the Country, they much marvelled to what end they bought so many *Currans*, and demanded whether they used to dye Cloathes, or fat Hogs with them; for so they themselves did: but now they have learned a more profitable use of them. Here are also very good Salt-pits, Fresh Water plenty, but little or no wood, and less Corn; their ground being husbanded, as the case stands with them, to their better advantage: but so that many times they are ready to starve, if either the Wind or the Sea prove cross unto them, and hinder them from fetching their provisions both of Flesh and Corn out of *Peloponnesus*. In which respect they are fain to hold fair Quarter with the *Turks*, considering how easie it is for him to distress them for want of Victual. The Island is much troubled with *Earthquakes*, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their houses very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Priests are to ring the Bells, to stir the people to prayers. They have a Custom here at Weddings to invite many young men whom they call *Compeers*; of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring. Which done, it is accounted as detestable a sin as Incest, to accompany her in any carnal kind; and therefore they choose such to be their *Compeers*, who have formerly been suspected of too much familiarity with her.

The Island is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a spiteful and vindicative nature; not to be reconciled, if angered. It containeth in it 48 Towns and Villages, the chief whereof which passeth by the name of a Citie is called also *Zant*, stretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a Mountain, but in breadth not answerable: beautified with a fair and convenient Haven opening towards *Greece*, safe from the danger of Pirates, though not of winds, capable of great Fleets of shipping; both for bulk and number; and so frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to go out of it, need not stay for a passage: yet notwithstanding this great concourse and resort of strangers, the Town is rather rich, than well built or beautiful: the streets hereof uneven and rugged, and the buildings, by reason of the often *Earthquakes*, very low. On the East side of it, on a round steep Mountain, standeth a very strong Castle, a little City of it self, well garrisoned, impregnable fortified, and of a very difficult entrance: which commandeth not the City and Harbour only, but a great part of the Sea adjoining. Upon the Wall thereof continually stands a Watchman, to descry what shipping is at hand, and hangerh out as many flags as he discovereth Vessels. And over the door of the Town-hall (the better to instruct the Magistrates in their publick duty) it is said these verses are inscribed:

Hic locus 1 odit, 2 amat, 3 punit, 4 conservat, 5 honorat,
1 Nequitiam, 2 pacem, 3 crimina, 4 iura, 5 probos.

Thus Englished by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*,

This place doth 1 hate, 2 love, 3 punish, 4 keep, 5 require;
1 Voluptuous riot, 2 peace, 3 crimes, 4 laws, 5 th' upright.

In matter of Religion, the people being generally *Greeks* both in birth and language, are for the most part of that Church also; but some adhere unto the *Latine*, each party having their own Bishop: of which the *Greek* Bishop hath his Cathedral in the Church of *St. Nicolas*, near unto the Haven (which it giveth name to) and therein a Monasterie of *Calairs*, or Monks of *Basil*; the *Latine* Bishop hath his residence and Cathedral within the Castle, and therein a Convent of *Franciscans*. The *Jews* have in this Town their Synagogue also: but there are not many of them, if not lately increased. In civil matters they are subject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the *Providore*) having his residence in the Castle, assisted by a Chancellor, and two Counsellours, (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The fortunes of this Island in former times; and by what means it fell to the *Venetians*, we shall shew anon.

H h h

3 The

But as weak a man as *Ajax* thought him, he was the Master Wit of *Greece*, for the times he lived in, and one that did as good service in the War of *Troy*, as the best Sword-man of them all. A War to which he went somewhat unwillingly, as fearing the sad consequences and events thereof: insomuch that he feigned himself mad, ploughing the shore, and sowing Salt in stead of Corn. But *Palamides*, to make trial whether this was real, or but counterfeit only, cast young *Telemachus* the son of *Ulysses* before the Plough: which he observing, either drove the Plough besides him, or lifted it over him. Discovered by this means, and engaging with the rest in the *Trojan* War, he found out the design of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it also; in the course whereof, by his wit and courage, he did very good service: brought against *Diomedes* in the action against *Rhesus* King of *Thrace*, and with *Palamides* in foraging the Country for provisions. By his policie was the *Palladium* stolten out of *Troy*, and consequently the City taken and destroyed; whose fate depended on the preservation of that fatal Relick. After the ending of the War, which held out ten years, he was with-held from *Ithaca* ten years longer by winds and tempests, and the displeasure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*: in which he saved himself from the enchantments of the *Sirens*, the allurements of *Circe*, the cruelty of *Polyphemus*; and after many dangers came home in safety. A man of so compleat a virtue, that *Homer* maketh him the Pattern of a temperate and prudent man, in the Books called *Odyssey*, (by his name as the *Greeks* pronounce it) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect Soldier.

The Country is generally very rocky and barren, exceeding plentiful of *Goats*, but no *Hares* live in it: inhabited for the most part by Pirates and Exiles, men banished out of civil society, and willingly acknowledging no Superiour over them: but subject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*; which hitherto hath maintained these Islands against the *Turks*, though many times attempted by them in the most prosperous times of their arms and victories. For the *Venitians* being gratified at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines* with almost all the Islands of the *Aegean* and the *Ionian* Seas (as being a people strong in shipping, and so most able to preserve a possession of them:) some of the greatest and most considerable, either for their riches, or commodiousness of situation, were furnished with convenient Garrisons in the name of the State. The rest they did bestow on the better sort of Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own costs and charges; who accordingly possessed themselves of one, two, or more of them, as they were of ability to set out their Gallies for the keeping of them: the *Signeury* having nevertheless a care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals: whereby they did not only preserve those Seas from the *Genoa* Pirates, but for long time defended all their Islands also as well against the *Greeks*, as the *Turkish* Emperours. But all the Isles of the *Aegean* being lost to the *Turks*, except *Cythera*, and *Tenos* on the *European*, and *Carpobor*, or *Scarpanto* on the *Asian* side: they have now only *Crete* with the Isles adjoining, and those of the *Ionian* Sea, under their command, and these (but especially the Isle of *Crete*) endangered at the present by the *Turkish* Tyrant.

Thus having took a view of the several Provinces and Isles which belong to *Greece*, according to the ancient and present state of each particular: let us next take a view of the *Grecian* Emperours, who have had here their principal residence, and possessed the whole, though for a while their Empire was extended over all the East; as they here follow in this ensuing Catalogue of

The CONSTANTINOPOLITAN, GRÆCIAN, or EASTERN

EMPEROURS.

A.Cb.

- 331 1 *Constantine*, surnamed the Great, having reigned 12 years in *Rome*, translated his Imperial Seat to *Constantinople*, which himself had founded.
- 341 2 *Constantinus*, the second son of *Constantine*, in the division of the Empire, had for his part, *Thrace*, *Constantinople*, and all the Provinces of the East. After the death of his two Brethren, he remained sole Emperour, but resided for the most part in the East; a great Patron of the *Arians*, and as great a Persecutor of the *Orthodox Christians*.
- 366 3 *Julian*, surnamed the *Apostate*, son of *Constantinus* the Brother of *Constantine the Great*: at first a Christian, afterwards a professed Enemy of the Gospel: fortunate in his Wars against the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Transalpine* Nations, whilest he was a Christian: prodigiously slain in the *Persian* War, when become a persecutor.
- 368 4 *Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, chosen by the Army, a religious Prince, made peace with the *Persians*, and settled the affairs of the Christian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of mean birth, but great abilities in War, was elected Emperour.
- 369 5 *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Constantinople*, and the East; *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome*, and the Western parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* faction, and the first who brought in the *Goths* on this side of the *Danow*, whom he placed in the desert parts of *Thrace*, to the destruction of the Empire and himself to boot.

- 382 6 *Gratian*, the eldest son of *Valentinian*, succeeded his Father in the West, and his Uncle *Valens* in the East; after whose death he left *Italy* and the West, to *Valentinian* his younger brother. Distressed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodosius* partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murdered by *Andragathius*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximian*.
- 383 7 *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximian*, and of *Valentinian* the 2^d. on the Traitor *Eugenius*. He vanquished the *Goths*, utterly suppressed the *Pagan* superstitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* itself; and strengthened the Church of Christ with good Laws and Ordinances.
- 399 8 *Arcadius*, the eldest son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his Father in the East, as his brother *Honorius* did in the West: the *Roman* Empire after this last division of it, being so distracted and torn in pieces, that it was never since united.
- 412 9 *Theodosius II.* son of *Arcadius*, made peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed against the *Hunnes* and *Persians*, his more dangerous Enemies, and caused the *Ephesine* Council to be called against *Nestorius*.
- 454 10 *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and married with *Pulcheria* his Masters sister; he called the Council of *Chalcedon* against *Discorus*.
- 461 11 *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joyned consent of the Senate and Souldiery, sitting the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.
- 478 12 *Zeno*, the son-in-law, and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodoric*, and the *Goths* into *Italy* against *Odoacer*: A Tyrant and a great drinker, in one of his drunken fits, buried quick by his Emperors. In his time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by fire; in which perished amongst other things 120000 Volumes of good Manuscripts.
- 494 13 *Anastasius*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empress created Emperour; a great Patron of *Eutiches*; yet fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Constantinople* besieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great distress, if *Proclus*, a famous Mathematician, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.
- 511 14 *Justin*, the son of a *Thracian* shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastasius*, a Catholic Prince, and Patron of the *Orthodox* Clergy, whom he called from banishment.
- 528 15 *Justinian*, the sisters son of *Justinus*, with whom first consort in the Empire, recovered *Africa* from the *Vandals*, by *Belisarius*, and *Italy* from the *Goths*, by *Narses*: and finally reduced the Laws of *Rome* into form and method.
- 566 16 *Justin II.* Nephew of *Justinian*, instituted the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*, and lost a great part of *Italy* to the *Lombards*. Unable of himself to oppolite the *Persians*, he chose
- 577 17 *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be consort with him, who afterwards succeeded in sole Command.
- 584 18 *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Mesopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*; by whom at his return married to *Constantine* his daughter, and declared his Successor. Refusing to ransom some of his Souldiers, taken prisoners by *Caganus* King of the *Avars*, he lost the affections of his Army.
- 604 19 *Phocas*, a Common Souldier, in a military tumult chosen Emperour, murdered the Emperour *Mauritius*, with his wife and children; and made Pope *Boniface* supreme Bishop or Head of the Church: slain in a popular tumult by the common people for his lusts and cruelties.
- 611 20 *Heraclius*, a noble man of *Constantinople*, chosen by the general consent, repaired the ruins of the Empire, vanquished the *Persians*, recovered *Jerusalem* out of their hands, and brought home the Cross unto *Constantinople* in triumphant manner, whence the feast called *Exaltatio Crucis*, September 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to disperse his dotages.
- 641 21 *Constans*, or *Constantine II.* son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places; picking a quarrel with the *Romans* he desaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choicest Ornaments, which the *Goths* and other barbarous people had left: and ransacking the Isle of *Sicily*, was there slain by the women.
- 670 22 *Constantinus III.* son of the former *Constantine*, from his long or early beard, surnamed *Pogonatus*, repulsed the *Saracens* from *Constantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from passing over the *Danow*.
- 687 23 *Justinian I.* son of *Constantine the 3^d* subdued *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and some part of *Persia*; forcing the *Saracens* to sue for peace, and become his tributaries. Against whom *Leontius* on the one side, and *Abdimarius* on the other, severally taking arms were declared Emperours: *Justinian* taken by *Leontius*, hath his nose cut off, and his person committed to custody: but making an escape, by means of *Trebollin* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial dignity; and being too violent in the pursuit of his revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar by the Command of
- 713 24 *Philippus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperour by the Souldiers, a great enemy of *Images*, which he caused to be cast out of the Church: whereby incurring the displeasure of

- 715 25 *Anastasius* II. called also *Artemius*, his principal *Secretary*, who thrust himself into the Empire; forced to relinquish it by that Army which he had raised against the *Saracens*: in which tumult the City of *Constantinople* was sacked and spoyled.
- 717 26 *Theodosius* III. made Emperor in this tumult by the Soldiers, hearing of the approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eastern Armies, resigned the Empire, and took Orders to preserve his life.
- 718 27 *Leo Isauricus*, in whose time *Caliph Zuleiman* besieged *Constantinople* the space of three years, and when by cold and famine 300000 of the *Saracens* were slain, they desisted. At this Siege was that fire invented, which we for the violence of it call *Wild fire*; and the *Lathigines*, because the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græci ignis*: by which the *Saracens* Ships were not a little molested. He was also a great enemy to *Images*, for which cause he was hated by the Pope and Clergie of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the Nick-name of *Iconomachus*.
- 741 28 *Constantinus* IV. son of *Leo*, surnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized, he betrayed the Font; followed his Father's zeal in removing *Images*, which created him much trouble, one *Ariabardus* being chose Emperor against him, but at last defeated.
- 777 29 *Leo* III, son of *Constantine* *Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo* the 4th. (*Leontius* the Usurper (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one) an enemy of *Images*, and fortunate in his Wars against the *Saracens*.
- 782 30 *Constantine* V. the son of *Leo* and *Irene* first governed the Empire with his Mother, by whom at last supplanted, and deprived of sight, he died of a Melancholy.
- 798 31 *Irene*, wife of *Leo*, the 3d. first Consort with *Constantine* her son, and afterwards sole Empress of *Constantinople*: for her better support in which estate she sided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the second Council of *Nice* for defence of *Images*. In her time *Charls*, surnamed the Great, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperor of the West. For the Popes knowing their own greatness to grow out of the ruins of the temporal power, committed the Empire of the West unto the French Princes: whereby the Greek Emperours became much weakened; and the French being the Popes Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their devotion. In following times, when *Frederick Barbarossa*, was by Pope *Alexander* the 3d. pronounced non-Emperor; *Emanuel* of *Constantinople* sued for a re-union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this answer, *Nemo sibi licere illi conjungere, quæ majores ejus de industria disjuncterunt*: Let no man presume to joyn, what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put asunder.
- 803 32 *Nicephorus* a *Patritian*, made Emperor by the Soldiers, persuaded that *Irene* had made choice of him to be her Successor: slain in a Pitch Field against the *Bulgarians*.
- 812 33 *Michael*, surnamed *Euphrates*, from his Office, (the *Myrrour* of the *Palace* as it were) his band to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, assumed the Empire: which, finding his own weakness, he did soon relinquish, and betook himself unto a Monastery.
- 814 34 *Leo* V. surnamed *Armenius* from his Country, General of the Horse to *Michael*, demolished the *Images* which his Predecessors had set up; slain in the Church during the time of Divine Service.
- 821 35 *Michael* II. surnamed *Ballus*, having murdered *Leo*, assumed the Empire; unfortunate in his Government, and died of madness.
- 830 36 *Theophilus*, the son of *Michael* *Ballus*, an enemy of *Images*, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; losing many battels to the *Saracens*, at last died of Melancholy.
- 842 37 *Michael* III. son of *Theophilus*, first with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto her self the supreme command; and after of himself sole Emperor; his mother being made a Nun.
- 866 38 *Basilus*, surnamed *Macedo*, from the place of his birth, made consort in the Empire by *Michael* the son of *Theophilus*, whom he basely and treacherously murdered; killed casually by a Stag.
- 886 39 *Leo* VI. for his Learning surnamed *Philosophus*, the son of *Basilus*, a vigilant and provident Prince; most of his time, with variable success, spent against the *Bulgarians*.
- 912 40 *Constantine* VI. commonly called the VII. son of *Leo* *Philosophus*, first under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his Mother, and after under *Romanus* *Lacopenus*, governed the Empire: by which last so miserably depressed that he was fain to get his livelihood by painting. But *Lacopenus* being deposed and turned into a Monastery by his own sons, *Constantine* at last obtained his rights, and restored learning unto Greece.
- 961 41 *Romanus*, the son of *Constantine*.
- 963 42 *Nicephorus*, surnamed *Phocas*, first Governour or Protector to the young Emperor *Romanus*; and after whose death created Emperor by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greatest part of *Asia minor* from the power of the *Saracens*; slain in the night by *John Zimisces*, his wife *Theophania* being privy to it.
- 971 43 *John Zimisces*, Emperor in the place of *Nicephorus* *Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it; vanquishing the *Bulgarians*, *Rosses*, and others of the barbarous Nations: and left it at his death to the sons of *Romanus*.

- 977 44 *Basilus* II. surnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperours had been before him, in regard that at their births they were wrapped in purple (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperial colour: subdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.
- 1027 45 *Constantinus* VII. or VIII. brother of *Basilus*, and with him partner in the Empire; after whose death he governed three years by himself; but did nothing memorable.
- 1030 46 *Romanus* II. for his prodigality surnamed *Argyropolis*, husband of *Zoe*, the daughter of *Constantine* the 8. drowned in a Bath by the treason of his wife and her Adulterer.
- 1035 47 *Michael* IV. surnamed *Paphlago* from his Country, first the Adulterer, and afterwards the husband of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.
- 1042 48 *Michael* V. surnamed *Calaphates*, a man of obscure birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he deposed from the Government, and turned into a Monastery. Out of which being again taken, in a popular tumult, she put out the eyes of *Calaphates*, and being then 60 years of age, bestowed both the Empire and her self upon
- 1043 49 *Constantine* IX. surnamed *Monomachus*, formerly husband to a Niece of *Romanus* the 2d.
- 1055 50 *Theodora*, sister unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Constantine*, managed for two years the affairs of the Empire, with great contentment of all people. But grown in age, surrendered it to
- 1057 51 *Michael* VI. surnamed *Stratioticus*, an old, but military man, deposed within the year by
- 1060 52 *Isaacius*, of the noble family of the *Comneni*; valiant, of great courage, and diligent in his affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with consent of the Senate and people, to
- 1063 53 *Constantine* X. surnamed *Ducas*, a great *Justiciar*, and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his subjects, and contemned by his enemies.
- 1071 54 *Romanus* III. surnamed *Diogenes*, married *Eudoxia* the wife of *Constantinus* *Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Took prisoner by the *Turks*, and sent home again, he found a faction made against him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled; himself at his return, deposed, and so died in exile.
- 1075 55 *Michael* VII. the son of *Constantinus* *Ducas*, surnamed *Parapinacius*, by reason of the famine which in his time happened, made Emperor in the aforesaid tumult. But being found unable for so great an honour (the *Turks* prevailing in all places) he was deposed again, and put into a Monastery.
- 1081 56 *Nicephorus* II. surnamed *Botoniates*, of the house of the *Phocas*, succeeded in the place of *Parapinace*, deposed within three years by his enemies.
- 1084 57 *Alexius* *Comnenus*, son of the Emperor *Isaacius* *Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whose time the Western Christians with great forces prepared for the recovery of the *Holy Land*. Of whose purposes being very jealous, he denied them passage through his Country; in the end forced to find them victuals and other necessities.
- 1113 58 *Calo-Johannes*, the son of *Alexius*, had a good hand against the *Turks*, from whom he took *Laodicea*, and some other places of importance. He also vanquished the *Scythians* or *Tartars* passing over the *Ister*, most of which he either slew in battle, or sold as Captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this side that River. He also conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, transporting many of them into *Bithynia*.
- 1142 59 *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger son of *Calo-Johannes* an under-hand enemy to the Western Christians, and an open enemy to the *Turks*; by whom entrapped in the dangerous streights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miserably cut off, he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.
- 1180 60 *Alexius* II. son of *Manuel*, deposed, and barbarously murdered by *Andronicus*, the *Confin* German of his Father, with his wife and mother.
- 1183 61 *Andronicus* *Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenum* in *Paphlagonia*, by reason of his dangerous and ambitious practices; after his death, pretending to reform the State, came unto *Constantinople*: first made *Protector*, afterwards Consort in the Empire with young *Alexius*. Whom having barbarously slain, and got the Empire to himself, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular tumult.
- 1185 62 *Isaacius* *Angelus*, a Noble man of *Constantinople*, and of the same *Comnenian* race, designed to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular Election proclaimed his Successor; deposed by *Alexius* his own brother, and his eyes put out.
- 1195 63 *Alexius* *Angelus*, deprived his brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.
- 64 *Alexius* *Angelus* II. son of *Isaac* *Angelus*, who being unjustly thrust out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, had recourse to *Philip* the Western Emperor, whose daughter *Mary* he had married: who so prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3d. (upon a promise for subjecting the Church of Greece to the See of *Rome*) that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land*, was employed to restore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the usurper fled; *Alexius* the young Emperor is seated in his Father's Throne, and not long after slain by *Alexius* *Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* assault and win *Constantinople*, make themselves Masters of the Empire, and divide it amongst them: allotting to the *Venetians* *Candia*, many good Towns of *Peloponnesus*, and most of the Islands; to *Boniface* Marquess of *Monferrat* the kingdom of *Thessaly*; to the others of the *Adventurers* other liberal shares; and finally, to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, the main body of the Empire, with the title of

of Emperour. The seat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice* a City of *Bithynia* in the *Lesser Asia* by *Theodorus Lascaris*, son-in-law to *Alexius* the Usurper, continued there till the regaining of *Constantinople* by the *Greeks* again; after it had been 60 years possessed by the Western Christians.

EMPEROURS of the *LATINES* in
CONSTANTINOPLE.

- 1200 65 *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, first Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*, taken in fight by *John King of Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and sent Prisoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.
- 1202 66 *Henry*, the brother of *Baldwin*, repulsed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*, and dyed a Conquerour.
- 1215 67 *Peter*, Count of *Anzerre* in *France*, the son of *Peter* youngest son to *Lewis* the *Gros* of *France*, and Husband of *Poland* the daughter of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire after his decease: cunningly entrapped by *Theodorus Angelus* a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had besieged in *Dyrrachium*. But of an Enemy being persuaded to become his Ghelt, was there murdered by him.
- 1220 68 *Robert*, the son of *Peter*, having seen the miserable usage of his beautiful Empress, whom a young *Burgundian* formerly contracted to her, had most despitefully mangled, cutting off both her nose and ears; died of hearts grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whither his melancholy had carried him to consult the *Pope* in his affairs.
- 1227 69 *Baldwin II.* son of *Robert* by a former wife, under the protection of *John de Breme* the titular King of *Hierusalem*, succeeded in his Fathers Throne: which having held for the space of 33 years, he was forced to leave it: the City of *Constantinople* being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to sue in vain for succours to the *French*, *Venetians*, and other Princes of the West. And though both *Philip* the son of this *Baldwin*, and *Charles of Valois*, Father of *Philip de Valois* French King, in right of *Catharine* his wife, daughter of that *Philip*, did sometimes please themselves with the title of Emperours of *Constantinople*, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or possession there.

The EMPIRE restored unto the *GREEKS*.

- 1260 70 *Michael VIII.* surnamed *Paleologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperours, Emperour of the *Greeks* in the City of *Nice*, most fortunately recovered *Constantinople*; the Town being taken by a party of 50 men secretly put into it by some Country labourers under the ruins of a Mine. Present in person at the Council of *Lyons*, at the persuasion of the *Pope* he admitted the *Latine* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*; for which greatly hated by his Subjects, and denied the honour of Christian burial.
- 1283 71 *Andronicus II.* vexed with unnatural wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled against him.
- 1328 72 *Andronicus III.* first partner with his Grandfather, afterwards sole Emperour.
- 1341 73 *John Palaeologus*, son of *Andronicus* the 3. in whose minority *Contaczenus* his Protector usurped the Empire, and held it sometimes from him, and sometimes with him, till the year 1357. and then retired unto a Monastery: leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whose reign the *Turks* first planted themselves in *Europe*.
- 1384 74 *Andronicus IV.* the son of *Johannes Paleologus*.
- 1387 75 *Emanuel Paleologus*, the son of the said *John*, and brother of *Andronicus* the 4th. in whose time *Bajazet* the sixth King of the *Turks* did besiege *Constantinople*; but found such notable resistance, that he could not force it.
- 1417 76 *John II.* son of *Andronicus* the 4th.
- 1420 77 *John III.* son of *Emanuel Paleologus*, in person at the Council of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches; in hope thereby to get some aid from the Western Christians, but it would not be.
- 1444 78 *Constantinus Paleologus* the brother of *John* the 3d. In whose time the famous City of *Constantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great, 1452. the miserable Emperour, who had in vain gone from door to door to beg or borrow money to pay his Souldiers, (which the *Turks* found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may observe some fatal contrarieties in one and the same name: as first, that *Philip* the father of *Alexander* laid the first foundation of the *Macedonian* Monarchy, and *Philip* the Father of *Persius* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the first, and *Baldwin* the last Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*. Thirdly, that this Town was built by a *Constantine*, the son of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch: and was lost by a *Constantine* the son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch also. And fourthly, the *Turks* have a Prophecie, that as it was won by a *Mahomet*, so

so shall it be lost by a *Mahomet*. So *Augustus* was the first established Emperour of *Rome*, and *Augustulus* the last: *Darius* the son of *Hystaspis*, the restorer; and *Darius* the son of *Artabanus*, the overthrower of the *Persian* Monarchy. A like note I shall hereafter tell you of *Hierusalem*. In the meantime I will present you with a fatal observation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus versed in *Abiens* England.

Not superstitiously I speak, but *H* this Letter still
Hath been observed ominous to *Englands* good or ill.
First *Hercules*, *Hefione*, and *Helen*, were the cause
Of War to *Troy*; *Aeneas* seed becoming so outlaws.
Humber the *Hun* with foreign arms did first the *Brutes* invade,
Helen to *Rome* imperial Throne, the *British* Crown convey'd.
Hengist and *Horsus*, first did plant the *Saxons* in this Ile:
Hungar and *Hulba* first brought *Danes*, that sway'd here long while.
At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Harold* came the *Dane*:
Henries the first and second did restore the *English* reign.
Fourth *Henry* first for *Launcester* did *Englands* Crown obtain.
Seventh *Henry*, jarring *Launcester* and *Turk*, unites in peace:
Henry the eighth did happily *Romes* irreligion cease.

A strange and ominous Letter; every mutation in our State being as it were ushered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire since the division of it into the East and West, I could never yet learn. That they were exceeding great, may appear by three circumstances, 1. *Zonaras* reporteth, that the Emperour *Basilius* had in his treasury 200000 talents of gold, besides infinite heaps of silver, and other monies. 2. *Lipsius* relateth, how *Benjamin* a Jew in his discourse of *Europe*, saith, that the custom due to the Emperours, out of the vituals and Merchandize sold at *Constantinople* only, did amount to 20000 Crowns daily. 3. We find, that at the sack of *Constantinople*, there was found an invaluable mass of gold, silver, plate, and jewels, besides that which was hid in the earth. For so the covetous Citizens chose rather to employ their wealth, than afford any part of it to the Emperour: who with tears in his eyes, went from door to door to beg and borrow money, wherewith he might wage more Souldiers for the defence of the Town.

The Arms of the Empire were *Aurs*, a cross *Sol* between four *Greek* Betas of the second: the four Betas signifying, (as *Bodin* saith) Βασίλειος, Βασιλεύς, Βασιλίδευς, Βασιλισσα.

It may perchance be expected that we should here make an additional Catalogue of those *Turkish* Emperours, who have reigned in *Constantinople* since the taking of it: and being they are possessed of *Greece* and do now inhabit it, that we should here also speak of the *Turks* themselves, their Customs, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But the discourse of those things we intend to reserve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Asia*, from whence they made their first inundation into *Persia*, and afterwards into other parts of the World now subject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their name. And though the Peninsula called anciently *Taurica Cherfoneusus* (now part of *Tartaria Propontica*) be within the bounds of *Europe* also; yet we will defer the description and story of it, till we come to the affairs of the *Tartars*; and will here conclude our discourse of *Europe*, and prepare for *Asia*.

And so much for *GREECE*, the last of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.



A
T A B L E
OF THE
LONGITUDE and LATITUDE
OF THE CHIEF
T O W N S and C I T I E S
Mentioned in this Book.

	Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.
A.			Cephallone	52	38.30
A <i>Amsterdam</i>	27.39	52.40	Casim	96.10	35.10
<i>Antwerp</i>	24.30	51.48	Corfu	42	39.30
<i>Athens</i>	46.10	40			
<i>Augsburg</i>	32.30	48.20	D.		
<i>Aulona</i>	51.20	41.30	Dantzick	45	54.50
<i>Acras</i>	24	51	Darfan	63	48.40
<i>Aoflo</i>	36.30	59.20	D. venter	33.25	51.50
			Dort	26	52
B.			Doway	25	51
Bamberg	39.15	50.10	Dresden	36	51.3
Belgrade	45	47.40			
Bergen	34.16	61.25	E.		
B. ra	29.45	46.25	Emden	28.26	53.34
Brandenburg	35.30	52.36	Erford	34.30	51.10
Breme	30.20	53.23	Elfmere	36.30	57
Bruges	24.36	51.30			
Branswick	32.40	52.30	F.		
Brussels	26.42	51.24	Flensburg	36.40	55
Buda	42	47.20	Franker	27	54
Boden	52.30	45.30	Frankford ad Moen	30	50.30
Bornholm	40.50	55.30	Frankford ad Oder am	24	52.30
			Erilburg	20	48.1
C.					
Cl. ve	29.35	41.58	G.		
Constantinople	56	43.5	Glogny	43.50	51.25
Confl. nitz	27.30	50.30	Gran	42.30	48
Constance	28.30	47.30	Graz	34	48
Copenhagen	34.50	56	Grodek	56.30	51.30
Corinth	54.20	39	Gaunt	30.20	50.40
Colen	27.40	51	Gnefna	42	52.10
Cronow	42.40	50.12	Groyningen	32.10	53
					Haderflee

	Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.
H.			Plescow	59.10	59
Haderfleeve	35.5	60.50	Pechora	66.50	67
Haller	3	67.14	Pernow	53.30	58.40
Hallersflat	32.40	52.10	Plotzcow	57.30	57.40
Heidelberg	28	49.35			
Hamburg	30	54.30	R.		
			Rab	40.35	48.50
I.			Ragust	44.40	42.30
Jene	34	52	Regensberg	32.15	48.59
Ingolstadt	32.10	48.40	Rostock	34.18	54.20
Innsbruck	32.50	44.55	Ruffow	72.50	57
Jullers	27.30	52	Rugen	40.20	55.10
			Riga	53.30	58
L.			Regimont	49.10	55.30
Leiffa	70	33			
Leige	22	50.50	S.		
Leopold	52.50	49	Salzburg	35.40	47.40
Lipfich	30.30	51.20	Schalholz	3. 14	65.42
Lobek	31.20	54.48	Scheiffat	28.6	48.22
Lucern	29.53	46.42	Slefwick	31.20	55.15
Luxemburg	32.18	53.27	Spies	27.40	49.20
Luden	26	53	Stetin	37.40	54
Luxemburg	28	50	Stockholm	42	60.15
			Silire	99.20	59.30
M.			Slowada	86.30	58.50
Magdeburg	37.50	52.18	Strasbourg	27.50	48.44
Marburg	30.10	51	Stugira	55.30	43.30
Meitz	27.30	50.30			
Meiz	27.40	49.9	T.		
Maddeburg	25	52	Thessalonica	53.40	44.20
Minden	31.30	52.58	Triers	26	49.30
Muncheben	32.50	48	Trent	33.40	45.20
Munster	29.10	52	Tubing	30.30	48.40
Montz	26	51	Twer	68.10	57.10
Mosco	70.30	55.40			
Milwin	48	54.50	U.		
			Valenciennes	26.29	50.10
N.			Ulm	32.30	48.20
Nancie	28.45	49.20	Vienna	37.45	48.20
Norlingen	33	49	Vilna	54.30	55
Nuremberg	31.30	49.30	Upsal	40.30	60.52
Nimwegen	28	52	Ufing	79.30	61.30
Novograd Magn.	62.50	60.30	Utrecht	27.33	52.10
Novograd Infer.	80	55.20	Vicograd	61.30	51.30
Nicopolis	56.30	40	Vesalia	31.30	51.30
Negropont	56.10	41			
S. Nicolas	69	64	W.		
			Wilburg	55.58	63.6
O.			Witteberg	35.10	50.55
O. muntz	41	40.30	Wismar	33.30	54.14
Ofnaburg	29.36	52.29	Wologda	74.30	60
Olant	43.30	57	Wormes	49.45	49.45
			Wortzburg	30.10	49.57
P.			Wardhuys	50.30	70.30
Prague	39.15	50.10			
Preflaw	46	51.10	Z.		
Peslaw	42	52.48	Zara	46.25	45.40
Preiburg	40	48.26	Zemla Nova	83.30	74

The End of the second Book.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHIE,
The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHIE
AND
HISTORIE

OF THE
LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles, thereof:

By *PETER HEYLYN*.

JUSTIN. HIST. l. i.

Imperium Assyrii qui postea Syri dicti sunt, annos MCCC tenuerunt. Imperium ab Assyriis ad Medos Arbaces transfert.

SENECA EPIST. 17.

Omnes quæ usquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quæretur, & vario exitu genere tollentur.



LONDON,

Printed by *E. C.* for *A. S.* over against *St. Dunstons Church* in *Fleetstreet*.
M. DC. LXV.

COSMOGRAPHIE, The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHE
AND
HISTORIE
OF THE

LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles, thereof:

OF ASIA.



ASIA is bounded on the West, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Egean* Seas; the *Hellepont*, *Propontis*, *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Palus Maeotis*, the Rivers *Tanais* and *Donina*, a line being drawn from the first of the two said Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from *Europe*; on the North, it hath the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the East, the Straights of *Anian* (if such there be) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare del Zuy*, by which separated from *America*; on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathian* Sea, washing the shores of *Anatolia*; and the main Southern Ocean, passing along the *Indian*, *Persian*, and *Arabian* coasts: and finally, on the South-west, the *Red Sea* or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africa*. Environed on all sides with the Sea, or some Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Isthmus* in the South-west, which joyns it to *Africa*, and the space of ground (whatsoever it be) betwixt *Donina*, and *Tanais*, on the North-west, which unites it to *Europe*;

It took this name, as some will have it, from *Asia*, the daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*, the wife of *Japetus*, and (by him) mother to *Prometheus*: as others say, from *Asius* the son of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Countrey first, afterwards all *Anatolia*; or *Asia minor*, and finally, the whole Continent, had the name of *Asia*. Others again (but more improbably) derive the name from *Asius* the Philosopher, who gave the *Palladium* unto the *Trojans*; in memory whereof that Countrey first, and after the whole Continent did receive this name. But these *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great affection to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* language) will have it called so from *Asa*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying *Medium*, or the middle: because *Anatolia*, or the *Lesser Asia*, which gives name (as he conceiveth) to the *Greater* also, lieth in the middle, as it were, betwixt some parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And so far the Conjecture doth find countenance from some antient writers, that *Asia* is said by *Pliny* to be inter *Africam* & *Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *mediam nostris æquoribus* except, to be embraced in the middle of two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus*, and the *Mediterranean*) and finally, by *Eusebinius* (conceive them all of *Anatolia*, or the *Lesser Asia*) *ῥητοῦ ἀπορίῃ ἔχειν ἀδύνατον*, to have a middle situation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what name, and on what grounds soever it be called by the *Greeks*, and *Latines*; it is otherwise, and with better reason called in holy Scriptures by the name of *Semias*; as being that portion of the world, wherein the whole posterity of *Sem* had their seats and dwellings; if the observation of *Maginus* be of any weight.

It is situate East and West, from the 52. to the 169 degree of *Longitude*; and North and South, from the

Bithynia

400 Towns; some of them destroyed by Earthquakes, the falling sickness of most great Cities in the East) but most by war and have little now to boast of but the commodiousness of the Havens, which are very many; though most of them but meanly traded, as in a Countrey ill manured, and of little manufactures.

The people antiently, especially those of Greek original, and the nations bordering on the Euxine, were very warlike and industrious: the rest, especially the Lydians, and those of the greater Phrygia, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their pleasures. All of them at this time affected with the same disease, inasmuch that the Turk, (unless compelled thereto by extreme necessities) never inroll their Children in the number of Janizaries. The greatest part of them generally profess the Christian faith; but overpowered by Mahometanism, which is here most prevalent: all followers of the Church of Greece, and subject all (except those of *Isauria* and *Cilicia*) to the Patriarch of Constantinople. And as they are of the Communion of that Church, so they retain the Greek Liturgies for Sacred Offices; nor so well understood amongst them as in former times, when it was more generally spoken there than it is at the present; now over-topped in most places by the Turkish and Slavonian tongues. And though in former times, by reason of the many Greek Colonies planted in this Countrey, the Conquest of it by Alexander the Great, and the subjection of it to the Syrian Kings of the Macedon race, that language became generally understood amongst them; in so much as three of the Greek Dialects, viz. the Dorick, the Ionian, and the Eolick, were spoken here: yet did it never so prevail, as to become the Vulgar language of the people, or to extinguish any of the Vulgar tongues. For it is said of Mithridates King of Pontus, that he understood two and twenty languages, without any Interpreter; which were no other than the languages of so many Nations subject to himself, whose Dominion was contained for the most part within Asia Minor.

Principal Mountains of this Countrey, are *Hermione* in Pontus, *Argæus* in Cappadocia, *Ida* in the Lesser Phrygia, *Olympus* in Mysia, *Tmolus* in Lydia, *Amamus* in Cilicia, and finally *Antetaurus*, and *Scordiscus* in Armenia Minor: Out of which, for the most part, flow the chief Rivers hereof, that is to say, *Iris* (now *Caslmach*.) 2 *Thermodon*. 3 *Hallis* (now *Ottomangruch*.) 4 *Parthenius* (now *Dilop*.) 5 *Sangarius* (now *Sangry*.) All of them falling into the Euxine Sea. 6 *Ascanius*. 7 *Rhyndacus*. 8 *Æsupus*, and 9 *Granicus*, passing into the Propontis. 10 *Simois*. 11 *Scamander*, called also *Xanthus*, enoing their short course in the Hellespont. 12 *Caicus*. 13 *Hermus*. 14 *Caystus*, and 15 *Meander*, losing themselves in the *Ægean*. 16 *Calpis*. 17 *Xanthus*, called also *Lycus*. 18 *Limychus*. 19 *Catareates*, dischanelling into the *Mæditeranean*; and 20 *Melus*, adding to the waters of the great River *Euphrates*. Of most which we shall speak more particularly in their several places.

In reference to the State of Rome, it contained the whole Diocese of Pontus, except Armenia the Greater; the Asian Diocese intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of Asia; together with the Provinces of *Isauria* and *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East. But because the names of many of those Provinces were of new invention, and some of them of as short continuance, we will consider it according as it stood divided antiently, and before the Romans had made any conquests in it, into the Provinces of 1 *Bithynia*. 2 *Pontus*. 3 *Paphlagonia*. 4 *Galatia*. 5 *Cappadocia*. 6 *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other names, the Pontick Diocese. 7 *Phrygia Minor*. 8 *Phrygia Major*. 9 *Mysia* the greater and the lesser. 10 *Asia*, specially so called, comprehending *Eolis* and *Ionis*. 11 *Lydia*. 12 *Caria*. 13 *Lycia*. 14 *Lycæonia*. 15 *Pisidia*. 16 *Pamphilia*. 17 the Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconsul* of Asia. 18 *Isauria*. 19 *Cilicia*, parts of the Diocese of the East, as before was said.

BITHYNIA.

BITHYNIA is bounded on the East with Pontus, and the River *Sangarius*; on the West, with part of the Euxine, the Thracian Bosphorus, and part of the Propontis; on the North, wholly with the Euxine; and on the South, with Mysia, and Phrygia Minor: Formerly called *Betrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at last *Bithynia*, and that as some say from *Bithynius*, once a King hereof; more probably from the *Thyni*, a people of Thrace, who passed over the Bosphorus, and subdued it, called therefore by some writers *Thracia Asiatica*. So witnesseth the Poet *Claudian*, saying,

Thyni Thraces erant, quæ nunc Bithynia fertur.

By *Justin* the Historian it is called by the name of *Metapontus*, by reason of its neighbourhood to the Euxine, and the Pontick Regions.

The Countrey naturally rich, and in those parts hereof which lie next the Bosphorus, opposite to Constantinople, so plentifully enriched with fruitful hills, and pleasant Orchards, when kept by the more curious Christians, that it was thought not to be inferior to the so much celebrated *Tempe*: now robbed of all those former beauties by the carelessness of the Turks, who affect neither art, nor sumptuousness, in their retirements and delights.

Chief Rivers hereof are *Phillis*. 2 *Sangarius*, now called *Sangri*, both falling into the Euxine Sea; this last arising from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furthest parts of Phrygia Major; and making two long reaches in his journey hither. 3 *Ascanius*, which rising also in Phrygia Major, but more near the borders of this Countrey, falleth into the Propontis, making the Bay called *Sinus Ascanius*; Which with a lake in the same Countrey called *Lacus Ascanius*, doth plainly manifest, that the Bithynians are derived from *Askenaz*, the son of *Gomer*, and grand-son of *Japhet*.

The

Bithynia.

The Principal Towns hereof are 1 *Scutari*, over against the Haven of Constantinople, called antiently *Chrysopolis*, for that there the Persians received their tribute from the other Cities of all these parts of Asia Minor. An ample Town, well garrisoned within, and surrounded round about with most pleasant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal Seraglio. Not far off is a Tower called the *Maiden-Tower*, serving both for a Fort and watch-tower; and being furnished for defence with 20 pieces of Ordnance. 2 *Caledon*, on the same shore also, a Colony of the *Mægarenæses*, called *blink* by the Oracle, for neglecting Byzantium, and choosing the less convenient place for their habitation. And yet did Constantine the Great resolve upon the same place also for his Regal City; but changed his resolutions on a kind of miracle: it being observed, that when his workmen began to draw the platform, some Eagles conveyed away their lines to the other side of the Bosphorus, and let them fall directly upon Byzantium. Memorable after that for the fourth General Council there assembled by command of the Emperour *Martianus*, for repressing the heresie of *Nestorius*; in which were 500 and 30 Bishops: now so decayed, that it can only shew some few of the ruines of it; *Scutary* being risen on the fall thereof. 3 *Nicomedia*, so called from *Nicomides* King of Bithynia (the son of *Ziper*, and grandchild to that Bithynian King, who so valiantly defended his own and his Countreys liberty against *Cassander*, one of great Alexanders Captains) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an hill, environed with a pleasant and delightfull plain, honoured with the seat and residence of many of the Roman Emperours, when their affairs called them into the East, before the building of Constantinople; on that occasion made the Throne on which many of Gods Saints received the Crown of Martyrdom, especially in the persecution under *Dioclesian*. In those times wealthy, and of fame, now much decayed; but notwithstanding well inhabited both by Greeks and Turks, for the commodiousness of the fresh springs which are thereabouts. 4 *Libussa*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Ascanius*; memorable for the death and sepulture of the famous *Antibal*, who to prevent his being made prisoner to the Romans, when *Prusias* King of Bithynia intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himself by poison. 5 *Prusa*, founded by another *Prusias*, whose name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as most in Asia: honoured for a long time with the residence of the Turkish Kings, till the removal of their seat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the first; and still ennobled with the sepulture of the Princes of the Ottoman race, except the Emperours themselves. By the Turks called *Bursa*. 6 *Nica*, or *Nicaa*, by the Turks called *Neichia*, but most commonly *Isaichs*, situate near the fens of the River *Ascanius*, occasioned by the frequent overflowings of that River: by some affirmed to be the Metropolis of Bithynia; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that honour. First named *Antigonis*, from *Antigonus* the founder of it; and afterwards *Nicaa*, by the name of *Nica*, wife unto *Lysimachus*: both of them Captains of the Great Alexander; which last had the happiness to survive the overthrow of the former, and was the longest liver of those Great Commanders. Sufficiently famous both in Ecclesiastical and Civil story, for the first General Council there holden, by the appointment of Constantine the Great, Anno 314. for settling the peace of the Church, then miserably distracted by the Arian Heresie. The number of Bishops there assembled, no more than 318. yet of such high esteem for learning and piety, that never Council hath been held in so great an Honour. Here was also held the Council by the Emperess *Irene*, for establishing the veneration of Images; that passing by the name of the *Nicene* Council, the Act thereof might be of greater reputation amongst ignorant men. In which it was decreed by such doubtful Arguments, as *Let us make man after our own Image*, once mainly insisted on by a Legate of the Eastern Churches, that they should be revered and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the blessed Trinity it self. This City was also the Imperial City of the Greek Emperours, after the taking of Constantinople by the Western Christians, and there continued till the expulsion of the Latines, under these

Emperours of the GREEKS residing at NICE.

A. Ch.

- 1200 1 *Theodorus Lascaris*, son-in-law to *Alexius Angelus* the Usurper, upon the taking of Constantinople by the Latines, passed over into Asia, and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of this Kingdom, containing Bithynia, both the Phrygia, both the Mysia, Lydia, *Eolis*, and *Ionis*.
- 1223 2 *John*, surnamed *Ducas*, the husband of *Irene* daughter of *Theodore Lascaris*, succeeded his Father-in-law in the Empire; to which he added Pontus, most of the Isles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of importance in Thrace it self.
- 1256 3 *Theodorus II.* the son of *Ducas*.
- 1259 4 *John II.* the son of *Theodore* the second, an Infain of about six years old, supplanted first, and after cruelly deposed and deprived of sight.
- 1259 5 *Michael Palæologus*, descended from the Imperial family of the *Comneni*, first took upon him as Protector of the Infant-Emperour, and afterwards as his associate in the Empire: in which confirmed by many fortunate successes, as well against the Latines, as some Greek Usurpers in Thessaly and Peloponnesus, especially the taking of Constantinople; he deprived the young Emperour of his sight, made himself sole Emperour, and left it unto his posterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual disquiets, till the year 1452. when conquered by *Mahomet* the great, as before was said. But this recovery of Constantinople was the loss of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the Imperial seat, by Sultan *Ottoman*, Anno 1299. who presently thereupon took on himself the title of King, from which before he had abstained.

As

P. ntus.

As for the fortunes of *Bithynia*, it self, I look upon the *Bithynian* as a *Thracian* people, whom both *Sirabo* and *Herodotus* speak of, as the founders of the name and Nation. Of such a King of theirs as *Bithynius* I find some mention in my Authors; and possibly it might be he who had the leading of the *Thyni*, or *Bithyni*, in this expedition; that being the name rather of his Nation, than his proper Family. But for the line of Kings which held out till the flourish of the *Roman* greatness, they begun to reign here some few generations, before the time of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: by which last, having other employment, and lying out of the road towards *Persia*, they were little troubled. *Calanus* one of *Alexander's* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, and was vanquished by them: and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, (one of *Alexander's* greatest Princes;) who though he humbled them for the present, yet got he neither title nor possession by them: And thus they held it out till the time of *Prusias*, so shuffling with the the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they still preserved their own estates. This *Prusias*, when the *Romans* became so considerable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece*, or *Syria*, peeced himself with them: and having aided them in their wars against *Philip*, and *Antiochus* both, and most unworthily promised to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for succour) unto their Embassadors, made all sure to this side. His son and successor *Nicomedes*, being outed of his Kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and restored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Fendatory*, as did *Nicomedes*, his next Successor, surnamed *Philometor*: who dying without issue in the time of *Augustus*, gave the whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, continuing so till the division of that Empire into the Eastern and Western; when falling to the share of the *Constantinopolitans*, and with them to the power of the *Turkish* Tyrants, who do still possess it.

2 PONTUS.

PONTUS is bounded on the East, with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the West, with *Bithynia*, and the *River Singarius*; on the North, with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*, from *Bithynia*, to the *River Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*; but not of answerable breadth: and gives name to the Sea adjoining, à *Ponto regione illi adjacenti ita appellari*, as *Ortelius* hath it; called from hence *Pontus* by the *Latines*, the adjunct of *Euxinus* coming on another occasion, which we have spoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Masters of it) into these four parts, viz. *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* specially so called. 2 *Pontus Galaticus*. 3 *Polemoniacus*, and 4 *Pontus Cappadocius*.

1 **PONTUS**, especially so called, or *Metapontus*, bordering on *Bithynia*, and bounded on the East with the *River Parthenius*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*, had for the chief Cities thereof. 1 *Claudiopolis*, so called in honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman* Emperour; as 2 *Flaviopolis*, in honour of *Flavius Vespasianus*; and 3 *Julisopolis*, in honour of the *Julian* family; all midland Towns. 4 *Diopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, so called from a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter*, of great resort. 5 *Heraclea*, a Colony of the *Phocians*, called for distinctions sake, (there being many of that name) *Heraclea Ponti*: memorable of late times for being the seat or residence of a branch of the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*; when at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western Christians, *David* and *Alexius Comneni* fled into these parts: the first fixing here his Royal residence, commanded over this part of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*; the other possessing himself of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabezond* his Regal or Imperial City. But these two Empires, though of the same date, were of different destinies: that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek* Emperours residing at *Nice*, and partly seized on by the *Turks*; in the beginning and first fortunes of the *Ottoman* family; the other keeping up the Majesty and State of an Empire, till the year 1461. when subdued by *Mahomet* the Great. 6 *Phillium*, at the mouth or influx of the *River Phillis* upon which it is seated. 7 *Amasris*, the farthest Town of this part towards the East, on the Sea-side also, once of great strength, but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Synope*, *Amisus*, and other Towns, in the war against *Mithridates*, the great King of *Pontus*.

2 Eastward of *Pontus*, specially so called, or *Metapontus*, as *Justin* the Historian calls it, lyeth **PONTUS GALATICUS**, so named, because added to *Galatia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities whereof were 1 *Synope*, pleasantly seated on a long point or Promontory, shooting into the main; remarkable in ancient story for the birth and sepulture of *Mithridates*, before mentioned; and in the later times for being the chief seat of the *Iffendiars*, a noble family of the *Turks*; who had taken it with the rest of this tract from the *Comneni*, and held it till the same year in which the Empire of *Trabezond* was subdued by *Mahomet*. First built by the *Milesans*, and continuing in a free estate, till taken by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*, and made the Metropolis of that Kingdom. 2 *Castamona*, the head City of the Principality of the *Iffendiars*, before mentioned; preferred by them for strength and conveniency of situation, before *Heraclea*, or *Synope*. 3 *Themiscyrya*, now called *Favagoria*, seated on a spacious plain near unto the Sea, and antiently giving name to the Province adjoining. 4 *Amisus*, the birth-place of *Sirabo* the Geographer, remarkable in the Ecclesiastical Histories for the Martyrdom of *St. Theodorus*, and of late times for being the residence of the eldest Sons of the *Grand Signeur*, sent hither as soon as circumcised, never returning back again till the death of their Father. Accompted now amongst the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province: a midland Town, as also is 5 *Calira*, call'd afterward *Diopolis*, memorable for the great defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*; more for the trick which *Mithridates* there put upon *Lucullus*. For being well acquainted with the co-

vetousness

P. ntus.

ness of the *Romans*, he saw no better way to save himself and the rest of his forces after the defeat, than to scatter his treasures in the way which he was to take; that by this means his enemies might slacken the pursuit to collect the spoils, and he preserve himself to another day; and so accordingly it proved. 6 *Eomana*, to difference it from another of that name, called *Comana Pontica*; to which other being, of *Cappadocia*, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in safety by the trick aforesaid; and thence escaped unto *Tygranes* the *Armenian* King, with 2000 horse.

3 Eastward of *Pontus Galaticus* lies **POLEMONIACUS**, so called by the *Romans* either from *Polemonius* a chief Town of this tract, or from *Polemo* the last King hereof; after whose death this Kingdom came unto the *Romans*. Places of most importance in it, 1 *Polemonium* on the Sea-side, spoken of before. 2 *Hermanassa*, a Sea-town also: More in the land; 3 *Neo-Cæsarea* (now *Nixaria*) the Metropolis of *Polemoniacus*, when made a Province of it self. 4 *Zela*; enlarged by *Pompey*, and called *Megalopolis*; by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopontus*. 5 *Sebastia*; so called in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Sebastos*; a place of great strength, and one of the first Towns in the *Lesser Asia*, which held out against *Tamerlane*: in revenge whereof, when he had took it, he caused 12000 men, women, and children, to be most cruelly buried alive in some hollow pits, which he had digged for that purpose. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stellas*; where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow: where also *Tamerlane* with an Army of 800000 of his *Tartars*, encountered with *Bajazet* the *Turk*, coming to the relief of *Sebastia*, with an Army of 500000 fighting men. The issue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having lost 200000 of his foaldiers, was himself taken prisoner, and carried by the insolent Conquerour in an iron cage, against the bars whereof he beat out his brains. 6 *Barbaniassa*. 7 *Megaloessus*. 8 *Gedavia*, &c. not much observable in story.

In this part of *Pontus* is the rise and fall of the *River Thermodon*, on the banks whereof the *Amazons*, sort of warlike women, are said to dwell; so called either *quasi dyacas*, because they used to cut off their right pappes, that they might not be an impediment to their shooting; or from *a* and *μαζα*, *σινεπαις*, because they used not to eat bread; or from *a* and *μαζα*, because they used not to live together. They were originally of *Scythia*, and accompanied their husbands to these parts, about the time of the *Scythians* first irruptions into *Asia*, in the time of *Sesostris* King of *Egypt*. The leaders of this people into *Cappadocia*, were *Phinos* and *Scopisphus*, two young men of a great house, whom a contrary faction had banished. They held a great hand over the *Themiscyrii*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them. At last they were by treachery all murdered: But their wives now doubly vexed, both with exile and widowhood, and extremity of grief and fear producing its usual effect, desperateness; they set upon the Conquerours under the conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpesia*; and not only overthrew them, but also infinitely enlarged their Dominions, and for some time continued in great reputation: the names of whom, or of so many of them at least as occur in story, we shall here subjoin.

The Amazon Queens.

1 *Lampedo*, } First Queens of the Amazons in these parts.
2 *Marpesia*, }
3 *Ortara*.

4 *Asiopia*, whose sisters *Hippolite* and *Menalippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theseus* to single combat, and were at last hardly vanquished, to their eternal credits.

5 *Penthesilea*, who came with a troop of brave *Viragos*, to the aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*: she invented the Battail axe, and was at last slain by *Pyrhus*, son to *Achilles*. Long after her death reigned *Thyrhis*, who came to *Alexander*, being in *Hyrcania*, and plainly told him that she came to be his bedfellow; which done, she returned; and at last by little and little this female Nation was extinct. They used in matters of copulation, to go to their neighbouring men thrice in a year: if they brought forth males, they sent them to their fathers; if females, they kept them, and trained them up in all discipline of war and courage. Of these more elsewhere.

6 The most Eastern part of *Pontus*, called **CAPPADOCIUS**, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*; extended from *Polemoniacus* to *Colchis*, and the *River Euphrates*; the utmost boundaries of this Country. Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*. 2 *Cerasus*, by *Constantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniacus*, from whence *Cherries* were brought first to *Rome*, An V. C. 680. called therefore *Cerasa* by the *Latines*; brought first into *Italy* by *Lucullus*, at the end of his war with *Mithridates*, no less deserving for that service to be made a God (as wittily *Tertullian* scoffs it) then *Bacchus* was for his transplanting of the Vine from the Eastern Countreys. 3 *Ischopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And so is also, 4 *Trapczus*, now *Trabezond*, the Imperial City of the *Comneni*, here reigning over *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, and these parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded first by *Alexius Comnenus* (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his son *Emanuel*) who at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western Christians, fled into these parts, which willingly submitted unto his command. Anno 1200. Here his posterity flourished in great prosperity, preserving the Majesty of the Empire in a better measure, than the *Constantinopolitans* themselves, till the time of *David* the last Emperour; in whose reign the City of *Trabezond*, and therewith all the whole Dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet* the Great; the poor Emperour led prisoner unto *Greece*; and there cruelly murdered. A famous Empery, and specially for the trade of fish, caught by the people on the shores of the *Euxine* Sea; here falked, and from hence transported in great quantities, to *Constantinople*, *Cæsarea*, and other places. And for their better help herein, it is said that there is a Mountain not far from this

Paphlagonia

this City, affording a black stone, which being beaten in a Mortar serves in stead of salt, wherewith they season the fish, which they send abroad. A City honoured heretofore with the residence of the Lord Deputies, or Lieutenants of the Grecian Emperour; for defence of the out-parts of the *Exum* against the *Persians*; and now the Station of such Gallies, as are maintained by the *Grand Seigneur*, to scout the coasts of the *Black Sea*, and secure their trade. More in the land stand 5 *Zephirium*, 6 *Aza*, 7 *Coclia*, 8 *Cordyle*, and many others named in *Strabo*, but not else observable.

The ancient inhabitants of this Countrey were called *LEUCOSTRI*, or *White Syrians*, governed by a race of Kings descended from the Royal house of *Achæmenes* King of *Persia*. The first of them called *Mithridates*, one of the seven Competitors for the *Persian* Kingdom, on the death of *Cambyses*. But that honour falling on *Darius* (of which more hereafter) he seated himself in these remote parts of *Asia Minor*; the Ancestor of many great and puissant Princes, but none more memorable than one of his own name, *Regum Orientis post Alexandrum Magnum Maximus*, the most potent King of all the East since the time of *Alexander the Great*, as my Author hath it. A Prince of great abilities, both in war and counsel, and one who longer held it out against the *Romans*, than *Pyrrhus*, *Annibal*, and the great Kings of *Macedon*, and *Syria*, had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part against *Aristonice*; who would not consent to the admission of the *Romans* unto *Pergamus*, according to the will of *Attalus*. Afterwards, conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Asia*, in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Citizens dispersed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: in like manner, as in after times the *English*, taught perhaps by this example, murdered all the *Danes* then resident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* massacred all the *French*, inhabiting *Sicilia*, as we have formerly declared. He dispossessed *Nicomedes*, son to *Prusias*, King of *Bithynia*; *Ariobarzanes*, King of *Cappadocia*; and *Philumenes*, King of *Paphlagonia*, of their estates; because they persisted faithful to his enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Grecians* to rebell, possessed himself of *Athens*, and divers places of importance in *Greece*, *Thrace*, and *Asia*; and allured all the Isles, except *Rhodes*, from their obedience to the *Romans*. And finally, having disturbed their victories, and much shaken their estate, for the space of 40 years, he was with much ado vanquished by the valour and felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey the Great*; three of the greatest Souldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* puissance so much pluck down his proud heart, as the rebellion of his son *Pharnaces*, against him; which he no sooner heard, but he would have poisoned himself; but having formerly so used his body to a kind of poison, allied, (which from his inventing of it, we now call *Mithridat*) that the venom could not work upon him, he slew himself. He is said to have been an excellent Scholar, and to have spoken perfectly the languages of 22 Nations; the languages of so many Nations which were subject to him. But neither his learning nor his courage could preserve him from those common miseries, which ordinarily attend a falling greatness. And so ended this long and tedious war, exceeding troublesome to the *Romans*, but withall very beneficial. For under colour of having given aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Galatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and both *Armenias*; inasmuch as it is truly said by *L. Florus*, totum pene Orientem & Septentrione involvit, that in his ruines he involved both the East, and North. But to proceed, after his death the Kingdom continued unto his posterity, but *Tributaries* to the *Romans*, till the time of *Nero*: when *Polemo* the last King hereof dying without issue, it was cantoned and divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bithynia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*; only that part of it which was called *Polemoniaca*, retaining the dignity of a Province, distinct and separate. And so it remained till the reign of *Constantine the Great*, who changing the names, lessening the bounds, and increasing the number of the Provinces, left only the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, in the state he found it. And for the rest, he cast it into two new Provinces, that towards the East, retaining the name, but not the bounds of the old *Polemoniaca*, wherein were the Cities of *Trapezus*, *Neo-Cæsarea*, *Cerasus*, *Comana Pontica*, *Palamonium*, and *Petrevum* *Civitas*, called afterwards *Iustiniana*; of which *Neo-Cæsarea* was the Metropolis. That towards the East, separated from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, by the River *Partheminus*, he caused to be called *Helenopontus*, by the name of *Helena* his Mother: and thereunto assigned the Cities of *Amasia* the Metropolis of it, *Ibora*, *Enchaita*, *Zela*, *Andrapus*, *Egeum*, *Climacus*, *Sinope*, *Anisus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this division held not long, both being united into one, and called *Helenopontus*, by *Iustinian*; continuing after that a member of the *Roman* Empire, till the coming of *David* and *Arxius* Comneni from *Constantinople*; whereof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabezond*, as before is said. But their estates being overthrow, it remains wholly to the *Turks*, who do now possess it.

The Arms of the Emperours of *Trabezond*, the greatest Princes of these parts, till the *Turks* subdued them, were *Or*, an Eagle volant *Gules*.

3 PAPHLAGONIA.

PAPHLAGONIA is bounded on the East, with the River *Halys*, by which parted from *Cappadocia*; on the West, by the River *Partheminus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; on the North, with that part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*, which was named *Galaticus*; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, and *Galatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the son of *Phineus*, eldest in it by his Father, who had newly conquered it.

The Countrey was but small, and of little power, and consequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The principal of such as were, were 1 *Gangra*, observable for a Council holden there in the Primitive times, Anno 339. commonly called *Synodus Gangrensis*. 2 *Conica*, or *Cometa*, of so convenient a situation, that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was master of

Galatia.

of this Countrey. 3 *Pompeopolis*, raised out of the foundation of some lesser town, by *Pompey the great*, and by him so named. 4 *Germanopolis*. 5 *Xoana*. 6 *Andrapa*, called afterwards *Nova Claudiopolis*, to difference it from another City of that name in *Pontus*.

This Province, though but small in circuit, was heretofore the seat of four different Nations, viz. 1. The *Tibareni*, of whom it is said, that they never waged war on any enemy, but they faithfully certified them before-hand, of the time and place of their fight. 2. The *Heptacometæ*. 3. The *Mossynoci*, both which were a people so beastly and shameless, that they used to perform the work of generation in public; not knowing that *Multa sunt honesta facta, quæ sunt turpia visa*: and 4. The *Heneti*, to whom the *Persians*, as we have already said, do owe their first original. The Kings which ruled in this Countrey, derived themselves from *Philomene*, who assisted *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his defence against the *Greeks*; in memory of whom, this Region for a while was called *Philomenia*. Applying themselves unto the times, they were always favourable to the strongest, serving the *Persian*, and submitting to *Alexander* as he passed that way; and so maintained their estate without much molestation, till the time of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*: who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great power in the lesser *Asia*, deprived *Philomene*, then King hereof, and took the Kingdom to himself, fortifying the chief Towns and places of it. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his death. But the Countrey being very much wasted, and most of the Cities of it destroyed and desolated in the course of that war; it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Galatia*. Not reckoned a distinct Province in the time of *Saint Peter*, who writing to the *Jews*, dispersed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwise esteemed than as a member of *Galatia*, in the time of *Polomy*. Afterwards it was joyned to *Pontus*, by the Emperour *Constantine*: part of it after that, with some parts of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperour *Theodosius*, and called *Honorius*, in honour of his son *Honorius*; whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus* properly so called, was made the Metropolis. But by *Iustinian* the name of *Honorius* being abolished, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again, the whole Countrey, as before limited, was governed by an Imperial Officer, whom he called *Prætor Iustinianus*: continuing under the command of the *Constantinopolitans*, till the taking of that City by the *Lathins*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabezond*, till the conquest of it by the *Turks*, by whom called *Rom*.

4 GALATIA.

GALATIA is bounded on the East, with *Cappadocia*; on the West, with the River *Sangarius*, and some part of *Pontus* specially so called, or *Metapontus*; on the North, with *Paphlagonia*; on the South, with *Lycania*. So called from the *Galls*, who having ranged over *Greece*, passed into *Asia*, and brought a great part of it under their command: but being broken by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Myssa* and the lesser *Phrygia*, were at last confined to this Countrey. It was also called *Galla Græcia*, from that mixture of *Galls* and *Grecians*; who uniting into one body when they came for *Asia*, were commonly called *Gallo-Græci*. By *Suillas*, *Græco-Galli*, and the Countrey suitably *Græco-Gallia*. Which mixture of *Grecians* notwithstanding, the *Galls* (being both the greater and prevailing Party) not only preserved their own Language, but in short time made it the common Language of the whole Countrey. And it continued so till *S. Hierons* days, who telleth us in the Preface to his Commentaries on *Saint Pauls* Epistle to this People, that it was *Simillimus Trevirensium*, a language like to that of the *Treveri*, or people of *Triers*. A sure and certain Argument of their first Original.

The Countrey very plentifull of all manner of fruits, even unto voluptuousness; and providently provided of the stone called the *Amethyst*, which is said to preserve from drunkenness the man that weareth it. The name doth signifie as much, derived from *A privativum*, and *μεινός, ebrius*, which cometh from *μεινός*, signifying wine.

The people had a custom in their publique funerals, to cast letters fairly written, into that last and fatal fire, wherein the dead body was to be burned; supposing that their friends should read them in the other world. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excelled all Nations: inasmuch that *Athenæus* telleth us of one *Arimæus* a rich *Galatian*, that he feasted the whole Nation for a year together with the *Sacrifices* of Bulls, Sheep, Swine, and other provisions, boyled in great Caldrons made for that purpose, and distributed amongst them in Tents and Booths erected for that entertainment. A brave flash of a vain-glorious hospitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Halys*, *Sangarius*, and some others. The Towns of most consideration in it were, 1 *Ancoya*, on the banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief City of the *Tectosages*, a *Gallick* Nation, and the Metropolis of the whole Countrey; memorable in Church-story for a *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, Anno 299. called *Synodus Ancyranæ*, but of most note at the present for the making of *Chamlets*, now called *Angeli*. 2 *Olenus*. 3 *Agrinæa*, Cities of the same people also. 4 *Tavium*, or *Tanium*, (for I find both names) the chief City of the *Trocmi* or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen statue of *Jupiter*, whose temple there was a privileged Sanctuary. 5 *Androsia*, 6 *Phabarena*, Cities of that Nation also. 7 *Therma*, a *Roman* Colony, so called of the hot Baths there; the chief City of the *Tolistobii*, as *Strabo*, or *Tolistobii*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8 *Talachbachora*, belonging also to that people.

Besides the Nations above named, here dwelt also the *Byceni* and *Procliminæ*; who had also their peculiar Cities, mentioned by name in *Strabo*, but of little or no observation in the course of story. Of all

Cappadocia

all which Nations, only the *Troasages*, were of *Gallick* Original; who with others of their Countrymen under the conduct of *Belgius* and *Brennus*, having ransacked *Pannonia* and *Illyricum*, fell at last into *Macedon*; where having tyrannized a while, and laid waste the Country, they were at last vanquished and expelled by *Antigonus Gonatas*. After this overthrow, under the conduct of *Lamurinus* and *Latorius*, they ferried over the *Hellspoint*, and subdued almost all *Asia Minor* on this side the *Taurus*; employed there by those petty Kings and States against one another: their reputation grown so great, that no Prince thought himself secure without their alliance, or able to make war without their assistance. The very *Spitzers* of that age; as mercenaries, but more faithful unto those that hired them. But being over-rigorous in compelling their neighbouring Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too severe in the exacting of their *Tributes*, they enforced *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by whose favour they had settled about the *Hellspoint*, to become their enemy. Vanquished by him, they were constrained to certain themselves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was called *Galatia*, and *Galligracia*. Here for a while they kept their ancient courage and estimation, molesting many times their neighbours, and sometimes letting themselves to hire in the wars of others; but in the end they lost both courage and esteem, and were *Galls* only in name, retaining little in them of their Ancestors' valour. For as most plants and trees lose much of their virtue, being transplanted into another soil: so these men lost their native courage, strength, and hardiness, being weakened by the *Asian* pleasures and delicacies. And as *Tully* saith, for a man to be good in other places, is no mastery; but in *Asia* to lead a temperate life, is indeed praise-worthy: so might one have said to the *Galls*, that to be courageous and patient of travel amongst the mountains, was no whit to be admired; but to have continued so amidst the delights of *Asia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But these men were so far from assailing the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they lost their own Country to *Manlius*, a *Roman* General. A war which *Manlius* undertook for no other cause, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable act performed herein, but that of *Chionnia*, the Kings wife, who being ravished by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilst he busied himself in telling the money agreed on for her ransom, to cut off his head; which she presented to her husband. But *Manlius* got little honour by his success, not being welcomed with a triumph, at his coming home, according to the *Roman* custom; because he undertook the war of his own accord, without commission from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Fendatories*. This happened *An. U. C. 564*. After which time, I find *Deiotarus*, by consent of the *Romans*, to reign here as King: who siding with *Pompey* in his war against *Cesar*, incurred the anger of the *Victor*; and had died for it, had not *Tully* pleaded his cause, and obtained his pardon. But he being dead, his Country in the time of *Augustus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lollius Paulinus* being the first President or Governour of it: enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and some part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galatians*. Reduced to its first bounds by the Emperor *Constantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodosius*; the one called *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris*, from its medicinal waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the Metropolis. In the falling of the *Eastern* Empire, it was partly seized on by the *Turks*; nor totally come into their hands, till the subverting of the Empire of *Trabesond*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chianger*.

S CAPPADOCIA.

CAPPADOCIA is bounded on the East, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Armenia Minor*; on the West, with *Galatia*; on the North, with *Pontus Polemoniacus*, and *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Lycania*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*. So called of the River, as *Pliny* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it, and *Galatia*.

The Country very plentiful of wine, and most kind of fruits, rich in mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Allom: affording also besides a mean sort of *Alabastrer*, good store of *Crystal*, *Jasper*, and the *Omyx* stone. But the greatest wealth hereof is their breed of horses, infinite almost in numbers, and fit for any service they can be put to. And this is universal, in all parts of the Country, but not the other: there being some parts of it mountainous and very barren, especially about the spurs and branches of the *Antitaurus*; which is a chain of hills thrusting out of the *Taurus*, and bending themselves unto the North, upon the edges of this Country, and the two *Armenias*. Here is also in this Country the mountain *Argus*, said to be of so great an height, that from one of the summits or tops thereof, a man of perspicuous eyes may discern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Country in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, so vicious and lewd of life, so monstrously addicted to all kind of wickedness, that besides the share they had in the old *Greek* proverb, of *τετα κεννα κδυστα*, they had some proverbs to themselves: *Καταδδυστα*, and *Καταδδυστα* *ησαν*, that is to say, a man of *Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian* Monster, being used *pro verbally*, to signify a man most extremely wicked. The words so used by *Gregory Nazianzen*, speaking of *Gregory* or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either *Suidas* or *Erasmus*, two right learned *Criticks*, understand him rightly. And they made good the Proverb in the times of the Gospel: *Gregory* that bloody butcher of *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Asterius*, *Eustathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch-Heretic *Eunomius*, being all of this Country. Yet such is the influence of Christianity, where once entertained, that this lewd disposition of the *Cappadocians* was so corrected and restrained by it, that this Country afforded as many godly Prelates, and courageous Martyrs, as any others whatsoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen* before remembred; who with *Gregory Nysian*, and

Cappadocia

and *St. Basil*, all learned and religious Bishops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongst many Martyrs of great faith and constancy, *St. George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Colonel or Tribune of soldiers under *Dio-clesian*, more celebrated in the Churches both East and West, than any other Saints in all the *Calendar*, the blessed Apostles and Evangelists excepted only, and for that reason made Patron of the Order of the *Garter* by King *Edward* the third. Finally, it is reported of these *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous also; inasmuch that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the mans blood was a poison to the Snake, and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Country, were 1 *Halys*, spoken of before, which had here its Fountain and Original; the end of *Croesus* Empire both in fire and fate, the utmost bound of his dominions on that side: which purposing to pass over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountered with, and vanquished by *Cyrus* the great King of *Persia*. 2 *Iris*, which ariseth in this Country also, and passing thorough it, and a part of *Pontus*, dischannelleth it self, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Seas.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperor *Tiberius*, after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Augustus Caesar*, by him called *Caesarea*: the Metropolis of *Cappadocia*, and the Episcopal See of renowned *St. Basil*. 2 *Nysa*, the See of *Gregory*, surnamed *Nysenus*, the brother of *Basil*. 3 *Nazianzum*, the Episcopal See of another *Gregory*, surnamed *Nazianzenus*: three men, which as for the piety of their conversation they were not equalled in those times; so for their admiral abilities in all kind of learning, nothing more inferior to the most eminent of the ancient *Greeks*. 4 *Tjana*, the Metropolis of *Cappadocia Secunda*, after the subdivision of it by the Emperor *Valens*. 5 *Archelais* in the Prefecture of *Gardnacrete*, so called from *Archelais* a *Cappadocian* King, the founder or repairer of it. 6 *Comana*, for distinctions sake called *Comana Cappadocia*, to difference it from another of that name in *Pontus*; by *Plutony* placed, I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*; as is also *Nysa* before mentioned. Memorable in old times for a Temple consecrated to *Belona*, whose Priests, and other inferior Officers of both Sexes, amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and upward; for maintenance of whom the Priests received the Revenues of the Region next adjoining to it; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the same kindred also. 7 *Dio-Caesarea*; called formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8 *Faustopolis*, so called in honour of *Faustina*, wife of the Emperor *Antoninus*. 9 *Andraca*. 10 *Phia*, 11 *Salambrida*, 12 *Campa*, spoken of by *Plutony*, with many others as obscure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the ancient Writers, is 13 *Erzurum*, situate on the very confines of the *Greater Armenia*, for that cause made the *Rendez-vous*, or place of meeting for the *Turkish* Soldiers when there is any expedition in hand against the *Persian*; at which place also after the ending of the war for the present year, they are disbanded and sent home to their several quarters. And 14 *Pterium*, not named in *Plutony*; but memorable for the great battle fought in sight thereof, between *Croesus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Persia*; in which *Croesus* having lost the field, and with it his Kingdom, found the Oracle true (though not in the sense which he expected) that *Croesus* passing over the River *Halys*, should overthrow a great estate, as indeed he did; but it was his own, and not the *Persians*.

That the *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togurmas*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been so fully proved already in our *General Preface*, that we shall not trouble our selves to repeat it here: Nor shall we need to say more in confuting of their opinion, who would fetch *Capthorim* out of *Egypt* from the rest of his brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been said. Their fortunes in the former times I find little of: subjected by the *Persian*, with the rest of *Asia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Croesus*, who before had given the law unto it, as to the *Phrygians*, *Paphlagonians*, *Bithynians*, *Mysians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given, together with *Alossa* his Sister, to *Pharnaces* a noble *Persian*, who had saved him from the fury of a ravenous Lion running upon him with full mouth, as he was a hunting. A noble loyalty, and no less royally rewarded. From him descended *Ariarathes* King hereof in the time of *Alexander the Great*; continuing steadfast in his duty to the Crown of *Persia*, when almost all the rest of the Kings of *Asia* yielded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to account in his march for *Persia*. But after his decease, *Perdiccas* having the command of the Army, set upon him, vanquished him, and most cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kindred as could be found. One of his sons, who fortunately had escaped this slaughter, spying his time, when the *Macedonians* were at wars amongst themselves, recovered his estate again, and passed it over to his off-spring: continuing in his line, without any subjection, till the time of that *Ariarathes*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his dominion, as was told before. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Successors, by their *charter* only: Continuing yet in state of Kings, till the death of *Archelais* the last King hereof; Who having angered *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life time of *Augustus*, as did others of the tributary States and Princes; was by him then possessed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting somewhat against the State. Where the old Prince, even spent with Age, the Gout, and some other Diseases, had without question been condemned by the servile Senate; but that one of the witnesses deposed, that he had said, that if ever he went back into *Cappadocia*, *Tiberius* should find, quales sibi nervi essent, what a man he was. Which moved such a laughter in the Senate, the old King being neither able to sit nor stand, that he was dismissed: *Tiberius* thinking that he could not punish him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King construed to the best, and in the way of gratitude, bequeathed his Kingdom at his death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly enlarged by the addition of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*: and so it stood in the time of

K k

Plutony,

Armenia
Minor, &c.

Ptolomy, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocius*, and *Polemoniatus*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided besides those into these eight *Præfectures*, that is to say, *Claniantensis*, *Sargaranensis*, *Gardiocretæ*, *Cilicia*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycæonia*, *Antiochiana*, and *Cætanina*. But *Pontus*, *Lycæonia*, and *Antiochiana* (he means *Pisidia* as I take it) being made Provinces of themselves, by the Emperour *Constantine*; it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cæsarea*, as is said before, was the *Metropolitan*: and so remained, till the Emperour *Valens*, a great Patron of the *Arian* faction, of purpose to despight *St. Basil*, who opposed that Heresy, created another Province out of it, called *Cappadocia secundæ*, whereof the *Metropolis* was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eastern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trabzon*; together with which it fell into the hands of the *Turks*; by whom the whole Province with the addition of *Pontus*, is now called *Anatolia*, after the name of that City, which the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his residence; and is said to yield yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* 60000 Ducats.

6. ARMENIA MINOR.

ARMENIA MINOR is bounded on the East, with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Major*; on the South, with *Mount Taurus*, which separates it from *Cilicia*; on the West, and North, with a long chain of Hills, called *Mons Scordiscus*, by some called *Mons Amanus*, by others *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reason of the name hereafter.

The Countrey of the same nature with *Cappadocia*, before described; in some parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* to inclosed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance: in others pleasant and delightful, well watered with sweet streams, and some fair Rivers issuing out of the Mountains, the principal whereof is *Melas*, so called from the blackness of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into these four Regions, that is to say, *Leviana*, *Aravena*, *Melitene*, lying on the *Euphrates*; *Moriana* more within the land towards *Cappadocia*: each of which had their several Cities, whose names are to be found in *Ptolomy*. The principal 1 *Melitene*, the chief City of the Region so called, and the *Metropolis* of the lesser *Armenia*. Called afterwards *Malaxia*, and now *Suur*: the Territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferior to the best of *Greece*. The City said by *Onuphris* to be a Colony of the *Romans*; much spoken of by *Eusebius*, and other Writers of Ecclesiastical story, for the piety of the *Christians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Persecution*. 2 *Nicopolis*, and 3 *Orómandus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his victory there obtained against the forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria*, and both *Armenians*. 4 *Garnace*, a well-fortified Town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gorneas*. 5 *Cucusun*, and 6 *Arabyssus*, memorable for the exile of *St. Chrysostom*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, confined unto these places by the power and malice of the Emperess *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his *Orthodoxie* in points of faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interred.

This Countrey was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* by their incursions and Colonies possessed themselves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*: continuing part of their estate till the war of *Mithridates* against the *Romans*; who being discomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thousand Horse to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had married his daughter. By whom at first neglected, and not suffered to come into his presence; but afterwards on the apprehension of the common danger, more esteemed and set by: inasmuch that his royal entertainment there, and the refusal of *Tigranes* to yield him up when required by the *Romans*, occasioned *Lucullus* to bring his forces into these parts, subduing all before him to the banks of *Euphrates*. His Victories being seconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Augustus*, this Countrey was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire: the greater *Armenia*, lying on the other side of that River, though conquered also in that war, not being taken into the account of the *Roman* Provinces, till the time of *Trajan*, *Augustus* thinking it an high point of wisdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond those banks. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eastern Empire; when wasted by the *Persians*, and subdued by the *Turks*; by whom called *Genech*, or as some say *Pegia*.

And so much of the Provinces of the *Pontick* Diocese, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*; converted to the *Christian* faith by the two great Apostles of the *Jews* and *Gentiles*; as appeareth by *S. Paul's* Epistle to the *Galatians*, and *St. Peter's* to the *Strangers* dispersed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Asia* and *Bithynia*.

7. ASIA PROPRIA.

Come we now to the *ASIAN* Diocese, and first to that part thereof which *Ptolomy* and others (for the reasons spoken of before) call *Asia Propria*. Antiently the most rich and flourishing part of all this *Peninsula*; and so affirmed to be by *Tully*, who telleth us that the *tributes* which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly sufficed to defray the publick charges for defence thereof, *Asia vero tam opima est & fertilis, ut & ubertate agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine passionis, & multitudine rerum rerum qua exportentur, facile omnibus terris antecellat*. But as for *Asia* (saith he) it is so fertile and so rich, that for the fruitfulness of the fields, variety of fruits, largeness of pasture-grounds, and quantity of commodities which were brought from thence, it very easily excelled all other Countreys. The for-

Phrygia
minor.

fortunes of the several Provinces we shall see anon. Brought under the command of the *Persians*, they continued subject to that Crown, for some generations: but at last taken from them by the *Greeks*, under the prosperous enligens of victorious *Alexander*. After whose decease, the Empire being divided among his Captains, *Asia* fell to the share of *Antigonus*, whose son *Demetrius* seized on the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and left *Asia* to *Seleucus Nicator*, King of *Syria* and the East, being also one of *Alexander's* heirs. The list from this *Seleucus*, was *Antiochus* called the Great, who waging war with young *Ptolomy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his father to the protection of the *Romans*, and otherwise practising against their estate, provoked the *Senate* of *Rome* to send *Scipio* (surnamed from his *Asian* victories) against him; who compelled him to forsake *Asia*, which the *Romans* presently took into their possession. But finding it agreeable to the present estate of their Affairs, (the Kingdom of *Macedonia* standing in their way) to make further use of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former war, they gave unto *Eumenes* the Provinces of *Lycæonia*, *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*; *Lycia* and *Caria* to the *Rhodesians*: knowing full well, that they could easily take them back again, when they saw occasion. More hereof in the story of the Kings of *Pergamus*, on the decease of *Attalus* the last King thereof; these Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*.

It contained only after the account of *Cicero*, the Provinces of *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Phrygias* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will consider it as divided into 1 *Phrygia Minor*. 2 *Phrygia Major*. 3 *Mysia*. 4 *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Asia* more especially so called. 5 *Lydia*, and 6 *Caria*.

7. PHRYGIA MINOR.

PHRYGIA MINOR, is bounded on the East, with *Mysia*, interposing betwixt it and the *Greater Phrygia*; on the West, with the *Helle-spont*; on the North, with the *Propontis*; on the South, with the *Ægean* Sea. Called *Phrygia* from *Phryx*, a River in the *Greater Phrygia*; or as some say, from *Phryxus*, the son of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*, who flying from the treacherous snares of his Mother-in-law, did here feat himself. *Minor* was added to it to distinguish it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was also called *Phrygia Helle-spontiacæ*, from its situation on that *Strait*: and *Troas*, from *Troas* the chief City of it; by which name it occur- reth in the book of the *Aët*. It was called also *Epistetus*, but the reason of the name I find not, except it came from the *Episteti*, a People dwelling on the East parts of *Bithynia*, and consequently near this place.

Chief Rivers of it, 1 *Scamander*, whose Banks stood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Hesiod* with the title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Countrey a little before they were to be married, used to bathe themselves, and to say these words, *Μέλας τὸς μὲν Ζεῦσιν ἀνδρῶν μαγδαρίαν*, that is to say, *Take O Scamander my Virginity*. Which opportunity *Cimon* an *Athensian* taking, clapped a Coroner of Reeds upon his head, like a River-god, and so deflowered *Callirhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another: occasioning thereby the leaving off of this foolish custom. It was also called *Xanthus* by the Poets, *Xanthus*, *bibbissens*, as in *Virgil*, and watered a little Region called *Lycia*, whence *Ovid* in his first Epistle useth *Lycius* *hæstium*, (*Sanguine* *Telepolemus* *Lyciam* *tep: fecerat hæstium*) to signify a *Trojan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*. 2 *Æsopus*, parting this little Region from the *Lesser Mysia*, the boundary of it on the North; as the Promontory called *Leitium*, is the furthest point of it towards the South. 3 *Simois*, now called *Simores*, falling into the *Helle-spont* not far from the Promontory called *Rhetæum* (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ætæus*;) but rising out of *Mount Ida*, an hill of this Region, on which *Paris* (being by his Father exposed to the fury of wild Beasts) judged the controversy of the golden Ball in favour of *Venus*; respecting neither the great riches of *Juno*, nor the divine wisdom of *Pallas*, but transported with a sensual delight, fatal in the end to the whole Countrey.

Cities of most observation in it, 1 *Dardannum*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Æneus*. 2 *Assus*, mentioned *Aët*. 20. v. 13. by *Pliny* called *Apollonia*; who telleth us that the earth about it is of such a nature, that it will consume a dead body in forty days. 3 *Trojanopolis*, whose name declareth its founder. 4 *Lyrnessus*, on the Sea-side, opposite to the Isle of *Leibos*, destroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the very first beginnings of the *Trojan* war, who brought thence amongst other captives the Lady *Briseis*, reserved by *Achilles* to himself for his part of the booty, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which caused such a deep displeasure in him, that he would not go into the field, till she were restored. 5 *Siganus*, the Port-town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the same name. 6 *Troy*, situate on the River *Scamander*, the beauty and glory of the East; called *Ilium*, and *Pergamus* for the reason to be shewn anon. A famous Town, from the people whereof, all Nations desire to fetch their original. The beauty of it may be (as some write) yet seen in the ruins, which with a kind of Majesty entertain the beholder: the walls of large circuit, consisting of a black hard stone cut four-square; some remnants of the Turrets which stood on the walls, and the fragments of great Marble Tombs and Monuments of curious workmanship. But certainly these are not the ruins of that *Ilium*, which was destroyed by the *Greeks*, but 7 *Troas*, or *New-Troy*, built some four miles from the situation of the old, by *Lysimachus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains; who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and called it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandria*, in honour of *Alexander* the Great, who begun the work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times called

K k k 2

Troas

Mysia.

or art. It hapned that one of the Vestal Virgins named *Claudia*, being suspected of unchastity, resolved to pur her self upon this experiment: and fastning her girdle to the ship, prayed to the Goddess, that if she were causelessly suspected, the ship might be suffered to go forward, which was no sooner heard than granted, *Claudia* drawing the ship up the water to *Rome*; where I leave the people wondering at the miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it stands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by some made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* knot placed in it also; but neither rightly. Not far off stood the Mountain *Dindymene*, overlooking the City, in which the Priests of *Cybele* had their usual residence, thence called *Dindymene*. 5 *Apamea*, situate not far from the banks of *Meander*, antiently a most flourishing Emporie, and the Metropolis of the whole Countrey, till *Constantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pacatiana*: making 6 *Symada*, the Metropolis of the first. 7 *Hireapolis*, and 8 *Laudicea*, two noted Cities in those times, the principal or the other Province. 9 *Juliopolis*, and 10 *Tiberiopolis*, so called from the Emperour to whose honour dedicated. 11 *Dorylaeum*, &c. Not known unto the antient Writers, but of more note in modern stories, are 1 *Sagusa*, the habitation of *Etrogul*, Father of *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*. 2 *Charachisar*, by the *Grecians* called *Melampyrus*, or the Black Tower, 3 *Bilixuga*, 4 *Einegal*, places of consequence and importance, taken by the said *Ottoman* from the *Christians*, in the first rise of his fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they descended (as was shewn before) from *Gomer* the eldest son of *Japhet*, and *Akenaz*, the eldest son of *Gomer*: of which, *Gomer* first placed himself in the mountainous Countreys of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleasant plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeria* (the posterity of *Gomer* being generally called *Cimmerians*) did preserve his memory. And as for *Akenaz*, he first took up his dwelling in the *Lesser Phrygia*, and the banks of the *Hellespont*; where was antiently a City and Territory called *Ascania*, some Isles adjoining called *Insulae Ascania*, the name of *Ascanius* also very frequent in *Troy* it self. An antient people they were doubtless, esteemed the antientest of the world by *Psammiticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this experiment; Desirous to inform himself to what Nation the privilege of greatest Antiquity did of right belong, he caused two children to be kept in a fold, where they were suckled by Goats; all mankind being prohibited upon very great penalties, to have recourse to them: All the language which the children learned from their speechless nurses, was no more than *Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* language signifieth bread; and being of no signification at all in any other which was then known to the *Egyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* on their side. But other Nations of the world not yielding to this sentence, by a *Writ of Error*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum*, impannell'd a new *Jurie*; wherein it was pronounced on the *Scythians* side, *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*. Where by the way, *Goropius Becanus*, makes the like use of this experiment, to prove the *High Dutch* to be the Original or Mother-tongue of the world: because *Becker* in that language signifieth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Countrey reigned *Niohe*, who preferring her self before *Latona*, the mother of *Phaebus* and *Diana*, had her children slain before her face by an unseen means, and was her self turned into a stone, as the Poets fable. Here also reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting wisdom to make use of it, is feigned to stand in Hell up to the chin in water, and that too under a tree whose fruit toucheth his lips; yet both the one and the other flie from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*,

—Tibi Tantale nulla
Dependuntur aquae; quæq; imminet, effugit arbor.
In English thus,
Thou canst not, *Tantalus*, those waters taste;
The tree just at thy lips, flies off as fast.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the tyranny of time or war, the *Phygians* were made subject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their command till the conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the stronger by the accession of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the Sword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Anisognus* one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the battel of *Ipsus*, to *Seleucus* the Conquerour, the first King of that race: following the same fortune after that with the rest of *Asia*, till they came to be possessed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Constantine* laying to it the *Greater Mysia*, made two Provinces of it: the one called *Salutaris*, from some miraculous cures there wrought by the Arch-Angel *Michael*, as was then generally believed; the other called *Pacatiana*, from *Pacatianus*, who in the time of the said *Constantine* was Prefect for the *Prætorium* of the East, and divers years before had begun his honors with the *Lieutenanship* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Constantinopolitans*, it became a prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selæucian* Family; possessed by them till the death of *Aladine*, the last King of that race: when seized upon, together with the *Greater Mysia*, and those parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Adin*, a great *Turkish* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, called by his name, *Adinia*, or *Adin-lis*; extorted shortly from his heirs by the house of *Ottoman*.

p. MYSIA.

Interposed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lyeth the Countrey of *MYSIA*, bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*; on the West, with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean Sea*; on the North, with parts of *Bithynia*,

Bithynia, *Propontis*, and the *Hellespont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Eolie*, and the *Ægean*. So called from the *Mysians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether these *Mysians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or some interlopers which thrust in afterwards amongst them, I find not determined. Most probable it is, they were natural *Phrygians*; being as superstitious in the worship of their several Deities, as any *Phrygian* of them all; and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, from the abundance of *Beech-trees* which grow amongst them; by them called *Mysa*. A people of so base and contemptible quality, that it grew into a common proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Mysiorum posterum*.

The principal Mountain of this Countrey is that called *Olympus*, situate in the North-parts hereof bordering towards *Bithynia*: which as it is called *Olympus Mysius*, to difference it from *Olympus in Greece*; so the people of the *Greater Mysia*, where this Mountain is, are called *Olympenii*, to difference them from the *Mysii* or *Mæsi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, those of most note besides *Ægeus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, are, 1 *Caicus*, on whose banks stands the City of *Pergamus*; and from thence passeth into the *Ægean Sea*, at the Bay of *Elaa*; and 2 the famous River of *Granius*, which hath his fountain in *Mysia Major*, and passing through *Mysia Minor*, fallerh into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the banks hereof, in his first essay against the *Persians*: by whom upon the first noise of his preparations he was so flighted, that *Darius* King of *Persia*, gave command to his Lieutenants residing in *Asia Minor*, that they should take him alive; whip him with rods, and so convey him to his presence; A notable example of the pride and folly of the *Persians*. But *Alexander* soon taught them another lesson. For though the *Persians* were, possessed of the higher banks of the River, with an intent to stop his passage; yet he resolved to charge them in the face of their strength: knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of so great advantage; he should not only lessen them in point of reputation, but begger an opinion of himself that he was invincible. And so accordingly it proved, the *Persians* being vanquished by him, and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Asia*, submitting to him on the noise of the Victory (as an Enemy not to be resisted upon equal terms) some few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wisely advised by *Machiavel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a passage, should with his ablest forces oppose the Assailant; because in all Invasions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they do not only discourage their Souldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that Enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partrakers, of being succoured and defended by such weak Protectors. Which caution if the *Persian* Commanders had observed either here, or at *Pyle Cilicia*, spoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not so easily subverted the *Persian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the men either naturally Cowards, or else prodigiously befotled.

It is divided commonly into *Mysia Minor*, or the *Lesser Mysia*, which lying on the West towards *Troas* and the *Hellespont*, is called sometimes *Mysia Hellespontica*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperour *Constantine*, made up that Province which he called the *Consular Hellespont*; and *Mysia Major*, called from *Olympus* which was in it, *Mysia Olympica*, and the Inhabitants *Olympenii*; which joyned by that Emperour to the Western parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he caused to be called *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reason formerly delivered.

Places of most observation in the *Lesser Mysia*, were 1 *Abydus*, standing on the narrowest of the *Hellespont*, opposite unto *Sestos* in *Thrace*; first built by the *Mysians* with the consent of *Gyges* King of *Lydia*, to whom the Countrey then belonged; Memorable both in the antient and modern histories. In antient story for the famous resolution of the Inhabitants, when besieged by *Philip* the father of *Persius* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into some distress, and hopeless of good conditions from him, the young men of the town who had bound themselves by oath to die rather than fall into his hands, set fire thereof, and barbarously slew themselves, with us many of the women and children, as could be met with. Which news being brought to *Philip*, moved so little compassion, that he said would give the *Abydeni* 3 days leisure to die; and therefore would not suffer any of his souldiers to enter the Town, then set open to him, either to take the spoil thereof, or hinder this bloody execution, till the 3 days and. An Modern story no less memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the reign of *Orchanes* the son of *Ottoman*, through the Treason of the Governors daughter: who bewitched with the person and valour of *Aderach-men*, a young *Turkish* Gallant, whom she had beheld from the Towers of the Castle, threw a letter to him as he drew near the wall; wherein she manifested her affection, and promised to make him Master of that fortress, if he would persuade his General to raise the siege, and come with a strong party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever since in the power of the *Turks*, well fortified, and one of the two Castles spoken of before, which defend *Constantinople* on that side from all force by Sea. 2 *Cyzicus*, seated in the *Propontis*, in an Island of the same name also, but so near the Continent, that it joyned to it by 2 bridges. The Metropolis of the *Consular Hellespont*, by consequence an Archbishop See in the prosperous times of Christianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother-Cities or Metropoles of their several Provinces. A town of wonderful strength and beauty, when first known to the *Romans*, called therefore by *E. Florus*, the *Rome of Asia*, who gives this Character also of it, *Cyzicum nobilitas civitas, arces, magnitudo, portus, turrisq; memorabilis*. *Altiataque litore illustrata*, that is to say, that the noble City of *Cyzicus* by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, both beautiful and illustrate the shores of *Asia*. Honored amongst many other goodly and magnificent buildings, with a glorious Temple the pillars whereof being 4 Cubits thick, and 50 Cubits high, were each of one piece of stone only; the whole fabrick all of polished Marble, every stone joyned unto the other with a line of Gold. In vain besieged

PERGAMUS. Sieged by *Mithridates* in the time of his war, who lost before it by the Sword, Pestilence, and Famine, no fewer than 300000 men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an *Earthquake*, the *Falling-Sickness* of the East, as before is said, it could never be restored to its former lustre: the very ruins of it daily made more ruinous, by transporting the Stones and Marbles to *Constantinople*, for the Embellishing of that City. 3 *Lampsacus* on the same *Propontis*, in which the beauly god *Periapus* was worshipped in as beauly a figure: *quem non denudo* (as wittily *Laetantius* scoffeth it) *ne quid appareat risu dignum*: supposed to be the same with the Syrian or *Phoenician Baal*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures. For this and on some other reasons, *Alexander* had conceived against it such an high displeasure when he was in *Asia*, that he resolved to raze it to the very ground. And seeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Ambassador from the Town to obtain his favour, commanded him to hold his peace; and sware as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatsoever he requested of him: whereupon *Anaximenes* intreated him to destroy the City, which now for his Oaths sake he could not do; and so this wicked City at that time escaped. 4 *Parium*, so called, as some say, from *Paris* the son of *Jason*, a Colony at first of the *Milesians*, of the *Romans* afterwards: *Troas* and this, the only two *Roman Colonies* in all the Province. By *Homer* called *Adrastia*; as *Lampsacus* in the same Author, is called *Pityusa*. More in the land, are 5 *Scepis*. 6 *Hiragerme*, both mentioned by *Ptolemy*, but of more antiquity than fame.

Chief Cities in *MYSIA MAJOR* or *OLYMPENA*, are 1 *Dainta*, in the North-parts, not far from *Olympus*. 2 *Apollonia*, near a large Lake sacred to *Apollo*, in the same parts also. 3 *Pala Scepis*, or *Scepis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Aegean Sea*, joyning upon *Troas*, or the Lesser *Phrygia*. 4 *Adramyttium*, mentioned *Act. 27*, where *Saint Paul* took ship to go to *Rome*. 5 *Antandrus*, on the same Sea also, now called *Saint Dimitri*; named at first *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmerians* here inhabiting (which sheweth that *Mysia* antiently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterwards *Edonis*, and at last *Antandrus*, and that either because built or repaired rather by the men of *Andros*, an Island of the *Aegean*, spoken of before, amongst the *Cyclades*; or because the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the son of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his ransom or rather in exchange for him, as the word doth intimate. 5 *Proteselene*, on the same coast also. More in the Land, 6 *Prapemissus*, 7 *Trojanopolis*, 8 *Alydda*, of which little memorable. 9 *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this tract, situate in a goodly plain on the banks of the River *Caicus*; of a small Town or Fortrefs made a stately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent Library containing 200000 Volumes; for the writing or transcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here first invented, which from hence to this day is called *Pergamenum*. Here also were those costly hangings first invented which we now call *Tapestry*; by the *Romans* called first *Aulae*, from *Aula*, signifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof (by whom invented) being the first room furnished and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous Physician, living very healthfully to the age of 140 years: his health preserved to so great age, by these means specially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2. Never eating any thing that was raw. 3. Always carrying about him some sweet perfumes. Finally, this was one of the seven Churches to which *Saint John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were originally a City of *Mysia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of *Lydian Asia*; within the limits whereof those seven Churches were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hereof which flourished here for some ages in such wealth and splendor, they came but from a poor and obscure original. The first of them one *Philetarus*, an *Ennuch*, belonging to *Antigonus*, one of the Great *Alexanders* greatest Captains; and after his death to *Lysimachus* King of *Thrace*, by whom trusted with his money and accompis. Fearing the fury of his Master then grown old and tyrannous, he seized on the Castle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 talents, which he offered with his service unto *Seleucus*, the first King of *Syria*. But both *Lysimachus* and *Seleucus* dying shortly after, he kept the money to himself, and reigned in this City as an absolute King; leaving the Kingdom at his death to his Brother *Eumenes*, no better man than a poor Carter, till raised by the fortunes of this *Ennuch*. *Eumenes* furnished with money, though of no great territory, was able by the *Galls* and other *Merceharies*, not only to preserve himself against the Syrian Kings, who laid claim to his City, but also to enlarge his bounds as he saw occasion. But the main improvement of this Kingdom hapned in the days of *Eumenes* the second, the son of *Attalus*, the brother and successor of this *Eumenes*: who being useful to the *Romans* in their wars against *Philip* of *Macedon*, and *Antiochus*, the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Aeolis*, *Ionis*, *Troas*, and both the *Mysias*; which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that war. The rest of the affairs hereof, till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this short Catalogue of

The KINGS of PERGAMUS.

- A. M.
 3668 1 *Philetarus*, the first King of *Pergamus*, of whom before 20.
 3688 2 *Eumenes*, brother, or as some say, the brothers son of *Philetarus*, vanquished *Antiochus*, surnamed *Hierax*, in a fight near *Sardis*; and awed *Seleucus Callinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*. 22.
 3710 3 *Attalus*, brother of *Eumenes*, restored *Ariathes* the *Cappadocian* to his Kingdom, and discomfited the *Galls*, compelling them to keep themselves within the Countrey since named *Galatia*. A Confederate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.
 3754 4 *Enmenes* II. son of *Attalus*, gratified by the *Romans* with the spoils of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditary Enemy to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, which he laboured the *Romans* to destroy

destroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more use of these *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow to less liking with them.

- 3782 5 *Attalus* II. Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdom was offered by the *Romans* in the life of his Brother, then less gracious with them; but he most gallantly refused it, to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.
 3792 6 *Eumenes* III. Brother of *Attalus* the second, and Tutor or Protector to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whose minority he governed the Estate, as King.
 3813 7 *Attalus* III. son of *Attalus* the second, succeeded on the death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdom but five years only, deceased without issue, and bequeathed it by his last Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had possession of so great a Legacy, *Aristonicus* the base son of *Eumenes*, made himself Master of *Mindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and Estates hereof. Against whom the *Romans* making war were aided by the greatest part of the *Asian* Kings; not seeing their own danger and destruction to draw near unto them, by letting such a potent neighbour come amongst them, to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this war, though they had the better of it. For being now made Masters of the Riches and Sweets of *Asia*, they took with them their Vices also: growing thereby to great riot, and unparalleled luxury; which overcame the rigor and severity of their former discipline, and made them apt for Faction, and those bloody quarrels, which proved the ruine of their State. So truly was it said by *Justine*, *Sic Asia facta Romanorum, cum opibus suis ista quoque sua Romanis transmissa*. This Kingdom, taking it in the largest extent thereof, being thus subdued and fetled as a *Roman* Province, had the name of *Asia*, according to the name of the Greater Continent; by *Ptolemy*, and others, called *Asia Propria*: continuing under the subjection of the *Roman* Emperours, till the translating of the Imperial seat unto *Constantinople*; as after that unto the Emperours of the East, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Selametic* family. Which being ended in the person of *Aladine* the second, those parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdom of *Carasus*, or *Carasus-III*; as those which had been laid to the Greater *Phrygia*, made up the *Adinian*: both of them swallowed up long since by the *Ottoman* Kings, the *Accessories* running the same fortune as the *Principals* did.

10. ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.

BESIDES the Proper *Asia* spoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* Kingdom; there was one part hereof which antiently had the name of *Asia*, before it was communicated to the greater Continent, or this whole Peninsula. This for distinctions sake the *Romans* called the PRO-CONSULAR ASIA; because committed to the government of one of their Pro-consuls (who had his residence in *Ephesus*, the principal City of this Province) together with the Consular *Hellepont*, and the Province of the *Istes of Asia*. This we have spoken of before, as also how the Countrey lying about *Ephesus*, had more especially the name of *Asia*, than any other: so specially, that *Erasmus* thereupon inferreth, that by *Asia* in the *New Testament*, (but more peculiarly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Asia* only in which *Ephesus* standeth.

This being agreed on for the name, we shall bound it on the East with *Lydia*, whereof it was antiently a part; on the West, with the *Aegean Sea*; on the North, with *Mysia*; and on the South, with *Caria*. And having so bounded it, we shall divide it into the two Regions of *AEOLIS*, and *IONIA*: that of *Aeolis* lying on the North, towards *Mysia*; as *Ionis* doth upon the South, towards *Caria*: possessed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of them so named.

Principal Towns in *AEOLIS*, are 1 *Acarnes*, over against the Isle of *Lesbos*, The Royal seat sometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*; who being once a Scholar of *Aristotle*, but unworthy of so good a Master, seized on this City, and here committed so great cruelties, that at last he was taken by the people, sewed in an Oxes hide, and so baited to death. 2 *Pitane*, on a little River so named, falling into *Caicus*, not far from the influx or fall thereof into the *Aegean*; in which Town they had an Art of making Bricks which would swim on the water. 3 *Elaea*, on the mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 4 *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Augustus*, called *Sebastopolis*. 5 *Cene* by *Strabo* called *Came*, by *Mela*, *Cunna*, not far from a Promontory of the same name. 6 *Cunna*, the principal and greatest of all *Aeolis*, the birth-place of *Ephorus* a learned man of elder times; and the habitation of *Silylla*, surnamed *Cumana*, to difference her from *Silylla Cumae*, so named from *Cumae*, a City of the Realm of *Naples*. 7 *Phocaea*, a Colony of the *Athenians*, so named from the multitudes of Sea-Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phocae*) which thrust themselves a shore at the building of it. The people hereof over-burdened by the *Persians*, and impatient of so great servitude as was laid upon them, forsook their Countrey, binding themselves by a fearful Oath, never more to return unto it: and after many and long wanderings came at last into *Gaul*, where they founded the famous City of *Marseilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Josephus* said to be descended of *Elisha* the son of *Javan*, who therefore calleth them by the name of *Elisai*. And it is possible enough that so it was, *Elisha* being planted in *Greece*, where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponnesus*; from whence some of his race in succeeding times might pass over into *Asia*, and possess those coasts. For that they were a *Greek* people, is confessed by all; the *Aeolic dialect* or phrase of speech, taking name from hence. Nor otherwise much mentioned in the course of story, than as partakers of the same fortunes with the rest of their *Asian* neighbours before related, and so not necessary to be now repeated.

IONIA, as a larger tract, requires a more particular and punctual description. For here the River *Lycus*,

Asia spec. Dist. Lycus falleth into the *Maander*, and here *Maander* and *Caystrus*, two of the most famous Rivers of *Asia Minor*, (of which more hereafter) fall into the *Egean*. Here is the renowned City of *Ephesus*, honored with one of the worlds *seven wonders*; the long abode of *St. Paul*, and the death and sepulture of *St. John*; the Promontory *Trogylum*, with a little Isle adjoining of the same name, mentioned *Act. 20. v. 15*.

Principal Cities of this tract, are 1 *Mysus*, on an arm of the Sea, assigned by *Artaxerxes*, together with *Lampfacus*, and *Magnesia*, to *Themistocles*; when being banished his own Countrey, he fled to his greatest Enemy for entertainment; and there met with more safety than *Athens* would, and more honour than it could afford him; So that he well might say (as he often did) *Periissem nisi periissem*. And on the other side, the King was so overjoyed at his coming to him, (as having now upon his side the man who had most hindered him in the Conquest of *Greece*) that many times in his sleep he was heard to clap his hands, and say, *Habeo Themistoclem Atheniensem*. In after times, the water drawing further off, the foyl brought forth such an innumerable multitude of Fleas, that the Inhabitants were fain to forsake the City, and with their bag and baggage to retire to *Miletus*: nothing hereof being left but the name and memory in the time of *Pausanias*. 2 *Erythra*, memorable for the habitation of one of the *Sibyls*, from hence called *Sibylla Erythraea*; of which Prophetesses we shall speak more when we come to *Africk*. 3 *Lebedus*, of most note in the elder times, for those publick Playes which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4 *Clazomene*, situate on a small Ile, near unto the shore, of much esteem amongst the *Romans* for the wines there growing; and no less honoured by the *Africans* for a beautiful Temple of *Apollo* seated near unto it. 5 *Priene*, the birth-place of *Bias*, one of the seven wise-men of *Greece*. 6 *Ipsus*, renowned for the great battel betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexanders* chief Commanders; the Victory wherein falling to *Seleucus*, with the death of his Adversary, ektated him in all the Conquests of his Master, except *Egypt* only. 7 *Tcos*, the birth-place of *Anacreon*, that lascivious and drunken Poet, hence surnamed *Teius*; the *Ovid* of the *Grecians* both for wit and wantoness: of both which it may well be doubted, whether the smoothness of the verse, or the wantoness of their expressions, be the more predominant. 8 *Smyrna*, a fair and ancient City, on a Bay thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*: the greatest part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the fairest on the side of an hill overlooking the waters. Destroyed by the *Lydians*, it was re-edified by *Antigonus* and *Lyfimachus*, two of *Alexanders* great Commanders; of good account in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the seven *Alian Churches*, to which *Saint John* inscribed his *Revelation*. Much traded and frequented to this very day, especially for *Chamleins*, *Groggrains*, and such Stuffs; made for the most part at *Ancyra*, the chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vended to the foreign Merchant. For government of the trade whereof, and of other commodities of these parts, the *English* Merchants have an Officer called the *Consul* of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it, amongst others, a goodly Temple dedicated unto *Homer*, said to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. 9 *Colophon*; most memorable for the Inhabitants of it, so skilled in *Horse-man-ship*, that the side on which they served in war was sure of Victory; whereupon *Colophonem addere*, to put a good end to any business, grew into a Proverb: It was also another of those Cities, which so ambitiously contended for the birth of *Homer*; of which there were seven in all, as the old Verfestell us, saying,

*Septem urbes certant de stirpe insignis Homeri,
Smyrna, Rhodus, Colophon, Salamis, Chios, Argos, Athena.*

Whether *Homer* purposely concealed his Countrey, that all places might challenge him for theirs, I am not able to say: But sure I am that *Paterculus* speaketh it in the commendation of *Hesiodus* (the next *Greek* Poet after him in course of time) that he had specified his birth-place: *Qui vitavit ne in id quod Homerus incidit, patriam & parentem testatus est*. 10 *Ephesus*, the Metropolis of the *Roman Asia*, and the seat of the Primate of the *Asian* Diocese: memorable in the purest times of *Christianity*, for being the Episcopal See of *Timothy* the Evangelist, the first Bishop hereof: 2ly. In that *St. Paul* directed to the people of it, one of his Epistles; and 3ly. for the burial of *St. John* the Apostle, who by some learned men of the elder times, is said to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead, but sleeping; building that thought upon that saying which went abroad among the Brethren, *that that Disciple should not die*, *Joh. 21. v. 23*. And no less memorable amongst the Gentiles for that sumptuous and magnificent Temple here consecrated to *Diana*; which for the largeness, furniture, and workmanship of it, was accounted one of the wonders of the World. The length thereof said to be 425 foot, 220 foot in breadth; supported with 127 Pillars of Marble seventy foot in height; of which twenty seven were most curiously engraven, and all the rest of Marble polished. The model of it contrived by one *Cleophon*, and that with so much Art and curiosity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finished. When finished, it was fired seven times, the last time by *Erasistratus*, only to get himself a name: which hapning on the same night in which *Alexander* the Great was born, gave occasion to that weighty but witty scoff, that *Diana* (she was counted one of the Goddesses of *Midwifery*) could not attend the preservation of her Temple, being then busied at the birth of so great a Prince.

As for those *Iones*, or *Ionians*, they were no doubt the descendants of *Javan*, the fourth son of *Japhet*, as hath been shewn before in our general Preface: but whether they came hither out of *Gracia*, or passed from hence into that Countrey, hath been made a question. The *Athenians* boasting of themselves to be *Aborigines*, men growing as it were out of the Soil it self, without any Ancestors, report that those *Ionians* were a Colony of their Plantation. But *Heccataeus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the

contrary, Saying, that the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from those of *Asia*; for that *Attica* was anciently called *Ionis*, *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus* doth declare expressly. Most probable it is, that *Heccataeus* was in the right; these parts of *Asia* lying so directly in the way from the Valley of *Shinaar* unto *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave some of his company here, when he ferried thence over to the opposite Continent. I know *Pausanias* ignorant of their true antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion* the son of *Xuthus*, and grandchild of *Dencalion*: wherein he came so near the truth, though he missed the men, that it was the Grandson of that man who escaped the flood, from whom both the *Athenians* and those *Ionians* had their true original. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aid to those *Ionians* against the *Persians*; who on this overthrow given to *Craesus*, pretended to the Lordship or Dominion of *Asia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch. Upon which ground, and the sending of fresh aid to them upon their revolve in the time of *Darius*, that King first undertook the invasion of *Greece*: *Xerxes* and the succeeding Kings pursuing that first quarrel with great animosities. After this yielding to the times they followed the fortune of the strongest, subject successively to the *Persians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Constantinopolitans*, and *Turks*, till the death of *Aladine* before mentioned: when both *Eolis* and *Ionis* got a new name, and are now called *Sarcans*, from *Sarachan* a Turkish Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine* seized upon this Countrey, and erected here a petit Kingdom, long since subdued by those of the race of *Ottoman*.

11. LYDIA.

LYDIA is bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*, and some part of *Pisidia*, from which separated by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with *Eolis* and *Ionis*, or *Asia* specially so called; on the North, with the Greater *Myfia*; on the South, with *Caria*. So called from *Lud*, the son of *Sem*, by some of whose posterity it was first inhabited. In the full Latitude and extent thereof, as anciently; comprehending *Eolis* and *Ionis*, the adjoining Provinces, it made the *Lydian Asia* spoken of before; within the verge whereof all the seven Churches were contained, mentioned by *St. John* in the *Revelation*.

The people of this Countrey are said to have been the first Coyners of Money, the first Hucksters and Pedlers, and the first inventors of Dice, Ball, Chess, and the like games: necessity and hunger thereunto enforcing them, according to that of *Persius*, *Artis Magister, ingeniiq, largitor venter*. For being sorely vexed with famine, in the time of *Atis*, one of the progenitors of *Omphale*, they devised these games; and every second day playing at them, beguiled their hungry bellies. Thus for 22 years, they continued playing and eating by turns: but then seeing that themselves were more fruitful in getting and bearing children, than the foil at that time in bringing forth sustenance to maintain them; they sent a Colony into *Italy* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the son of *Atis*, who planted in that Countrey, called at first *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuscany*.

This Countrey was also called *Mæonia*, and was thought to have been the native soil of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the seven contending Cities, and those which seem to have most colour for their claim, were anciently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was said before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Mæonides*, and *Mæonium* *Vates*: and in some Authors *Curmen Mæonium* is used for *Homer's* Poetical abilities, as *Carminis Mæonio consurgere*, in *Ovid*. *Bacchus* is also called sometimes by the name of *Mæonius*; but for a very different reason, viz. because anciently there were no trees in all this Countrey but the Vine only.

Principal Mountains of this Countrey are 1 *Sipylus*, and 2 *Tmolus*, this last of most account in regard of the great fruitfulness of it, covered over with Vines, and yielding abundance of the best *Saffron*. Chief Rivers of it are 1 *Hermus*, which rising out of *Phrygia Major*, passeth only by the skirts hereof, and so falleth into a fair Bay of the *Egean*, opening towards the Isle of *Clazomene*. 2 *Pactolus*, which rising at the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, falleth not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongst the Poets for its golden Sands. 3 *Caystrus*, no less notable for the abundance of Swans which swim thereon, whose Fountain is in *Phrygia Major* also, near the borders hereof; and his fall into the *Egean* also over against the Isle of *Samos*. 4 *Maander*, which rising out of a branch of the *Taurus*, in the furthest parts of the said *Phrygia*, towards *Lycania*; passeth by *Magnesia*, and endeth his course in the same Sea, near the City of *Ephesus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the least, as *Præsan* counteth them. Of which in general thus the Poet,

*Mæander toties qui terris errat in iisdem,
Et lapsus in se, sepe retorquet aquas.*

That is to say,

Mæander wandering in the self same soil,
Whose waters meeting do as oft recoil.

And in another passage thus,

Quique recurvatis, ludis Mæander in undis.

Mæander.

Meander plays his warty pranks,
In his so many winding banks.

The Country by reason of these Rivers was exceeding fruitful, abounding in all sorts both of wealth and pleasures, well cultivated and manured above ground, and underneath enriched with prodigious veins of Gold and Silver, and some precious gems. Which made the people, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more sensual and voluptuous, and less fit for action, than any plot of their new Masters could have brought them to; had not the natural delicacies of the soil itself contributed to the advancement of their design. And yet before they were sufficiently infamous for their luxury, and excess of riot, when best seen in wars: so that it is a marvel they were able to prevail on the neighbouring Nations, and bring them under their command; as in the times of some of *Cræsus* predecessors, it is said they did. Unless perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Mænas*, the great favorite of *Augustus* Caesar, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *Ubi res vigiliam exigeret, erat sancti infamnis, providens, & agendis; simulac aliquid ex negotio remitti possit, otio ac molliore penè uera feminam fluens*; No man more vigilant than he in times of business, nor woman more effeminate in his times of leisure.

Principal Cities of this Country were 1 *Sardis*, on both sides of *Pactolus*, the seat royal of *Cræsus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*; till the conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*. After which time, being taken by the *Grecians*, it so startled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his Attendants, to say aloud every day, whilst he was at dinner, that the *Grecians* had taken *Sardis*; continuing that *Memento* till it was recovered. Which course (I note this only by the way) was commonly observed in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Calice* did remain in the hands of the *English*; and might be profitably revived, till again recovered from the *French*. Overthrown by a most terrible Earth-quake (to which discomfiture of these *Asian* Cities had been very much subject) it was re-edified again at the cost of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the *Metropolis* of this Province, and one of the seven Churches of the *Lydian Asia*, of which the holy Spirit took such special notice. The others (besides *Pergamus*, already mentioned in the *Greater Mysia*, and *Ephesus*, and *Smyrna*, in the *Proper Asia*) were 2. *Philadelpia*, near, or on the banks of the River *Cassius*, the second City in account next to *Sardis* itself: and honoured with the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, as appears by the Acts of the *Constantinopolitan Council*, where *Eusebius* Bishop hereof doth subscribe himself, *Επισκοπος της Ευαγγελικης Μετροπολεως*, Bishop of the *Metropolis* of *Philadelpia*, in the Province of *Lydia*. 3 *Thyatira*, honoured with the same privilege also, as appears by the constant Order, observed as well in the *Civil* as *Ecclesiastical* Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The reason whereof (for otherwise it was contrary to the practice both of Church and State, to have in one Province more than one *Metropolis*) was the respect had to those several Churches, in regard of their primitive antiquity, and the foundation of them by *St. John* the Apostle, as it was generally believed. 4 *Laodicea*, by *Polomy* placed amongst the Cities of this Province, as it stood in his time, and before: but afterwards laid by *Constantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the *Metropolis* thereof (which honour *Hierapolis* had before enjoyed) it being well observed by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not dispose of their Provinces according to Nations; *αλλ' οὐδ' ἔτινος τῶν πρὸς ταῖς δυνάμεις, ἐν αἷς τὰς πόλεις διακρίνουσι*, but according to those *Districts*, or *Circuits*, in which they kept their Courts of Justice. Next unto these, there were of especial consideration, 5 *Magnesia ad Maandrum*, so called because situate on that River, to difference it from 6 *Magnesia pene Siplym montem*, another of the same name near the hill *Sipylus*. The first assigned over to *Themistocles*, together with *Mysus* and *Lampsacus*, as was said before. The other memorable for the great battle fought near unto it, betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*; the loss whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occasioned the loss of all his *Asian* Provinces on this side of *Taurus*, and the payment of 15000 talents for the charge of the war, besides some other hard conditions then imposed upon him. 7 *Abanda*, opposite to *Magnesia* on the other side of *Maander*, the people whereof, immediately on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not only sent Ambassadors to *Rome* to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did; but built a Temple to it, and appointed Anniversary Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made *Goddess*. A thing more to be wondered at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor people for bestowing on their City so divine an honour. 8 *Trallis*, on the banks of *Cassius*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Bishop and godly Martyr, writ the Epistle ad *Trallenses*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the son of *Sem*, is testified by the general consent of such ancient Writers as treat of the dispersions of the Sons of *Noah*: to which opinion the nearness of the names of *Lud*, *Ludim*, and *Lydi*, (or *Lydi*, as the *Grecians* call them) seem to give good countenance. Nor shall I here dispute it further, as a point unquestioned: the tale of *Lydus*, I know not what Nobleman that should name this Country, being taken up amongst the *Greeks* for want of more certain truths. Once sealed here, they grew up suddenly to a Kingdom: Amongst the ancient Kings whereof are numbered *Manes*, as the first, *Cotus*, and *Atis*, and then *Asius*, (from whom *Lydia* first, and after all the Continent, had the name of *Asia*) as his immediate Successors. After them I find mention of one *Cambletes*, said by *Athenaus* to be so great a Gormandizer, that in his sleep he eat his wife; and finding her hand in his mouth next mornings, slew himself for shame: and of another named *Andromytes*, as infamous for his filthy lusts, as *Cambletes* for gluttony. But the race of these Kings ending in *Omphale*, the mistress of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion spin amongst her Damocels; the *Heracleide* or posterity of *Hercules* succeeded next: of whom there is no constant and

continued

continued succession till the time of *Ardisius*, the 19th. in order of that line; who began his reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*. Under his Successors the affairs hereof so exceedingly prospered, especially under *Haliastres* the Father of *Cræsus*, that *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, *Baphlagonia*, *Mysia*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, acknowledged themselves Vassals to this Crown: conceived both in *Syria* and *Egypt*, by *Nebuchadnezzar*, gave him the prebeminence. But being come unto the height it hereof from the time of the said *Ardisius*, take in order following.

THE KINGS of LYDIA.

- A.M. 3190 1. *Ardisius*. 36.
3226 2. *Haliastres*. 14.
3240 3. *Azelos*, who overcame the people of *Sardis*. 12.
3252 4. *Candaules*, who shewing his wife naked to *Gyges*, was by him slain; who marrying his wife, succeeded him in his Kingdom. The whole Story is this: *Candaules* had to his wife a woman of unparalleled beauty: And supposing the greatness of his happiness not to consist so much in his own fruition, as the notice which others might take of it; intended to shew her in natures bravery to *Gyges*, the Master of his herds. *Gyges* at first disdained him from an attempt so foolish; but seeing no persuasion could prevail; he condescended. When he had seen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, *Candaules* cried to him, *οὐκ ἔστις Εὐφελδης Gyges*: which words the Queen marking, and seeing the back of *Gyges* as he left the chamber, the next morning sent for him: When holding a ponyard in her hand, she gave him his choice, either presently to be slain, or else to kill the King, and take her to wife, with the Kingdom of *Lydia* for her Dower. Of which two evils he made choice of that which he thought the least, and so killed *Candaules*.
3258 5. *Gyges*, the first of this new line, added *Ionia* to his other dominions. A Prince of so great wisdom, for the time he lived in, that all other Kings his neighbours (as it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them: occasioning thereby the fiction of a Ring he had, by which made invisible, when and as often as he pleased.
3305 6. *Ardis II.* the son of *Gyges*. 37.
3342 7. *Sardiatres*. 19.
3357 8. *Haliastres II.* of whom before. 57.
3406 9. *Cræsus*, the last King of *Lydia*, subdued *Doris* and *Æolis*; after which victories, he was overcome by *Cyrus*, King of *Persia*; in which battle, a son of *Cræsus* who had been dumb from his cradle, seeing a Souldier ready to kill his father, suddenly broke out into these words, *Rex est, cave ne occidas*. After his overthrow, and the Captivity of *Cræsus* (one of the richest Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Persian* Province, A.M. 3420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again subdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their horses of service, dispoiled them of all their armour, and trained them up in all manner of loose and effeminate living; weakening by this means a powerful Nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoining. After this they continued *Persian* till the Conquest of *Asia* by the *Macedonians*, in the division of whose spoils they fell to the portion of *Selucus* and the Kings of *Syria*: following the common fortune of the rest of this *Asia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire; it had the *Lower Mysia*, or *Mysia Olympica* annexed unto it: by means whereof the limits of each became so confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one, are many times ascribed to the other. In the falling of the Eastern Empire it was made (as all the rest of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that part of it which lyeth next to *Æolis*, subject to the *Carsian* Family; as the other parts towards *Phrygia Major*, were to the *Adinian*.

12 C A R I A.

C A R I A is bounded on the East, with *Lycia*; on the North, with *Lydia* and *Ionia*; on the West, with the *Ionian* or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South, with the *Carpasian*. So called from *Cares*, the Son of *Phoroneus* King *Argos*, once the Lord hereof; who is said to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Augury*; though others ascribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other Nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill called *Latmus*, the dwelling, or rather retiring place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the study of *Astronomy*, found out the changes and courses of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been her Paramour. Others add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a Cave under this Hill, and cast him into a dead sleep; (which notwithstanding, she descended sometimes to his him) whence came the old By-word, of *Endymionis somnium dormit*. Here is also in this Country the River *Salmacis*, said to infect all such as either drink of it, or bath in it: from whence the Poets raise the fiction of *Salmacis* and *Hermaphroditus* described by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida spolia sine sanguine & sudore*, mentioned by *Tully* in his Book of *Offices*, and there used for effeminate and wanton exercises.

Chios.

to the State of *Athen*, in the time of the *Peloponnesian War* (when almost all *Greece* banded against that City) they revolted from it, and were so straightly besieged by *Paches*, an *Athenian* Captain, that they submitted unto mercy. The General sends to *Athen* to know what should be done with the *Mitylenians*; Answer was sent, that he should put them to the sword. But the *Senate* on the morrow after, repenting of that cruel Decree, sent a countermand. These latter Messengers made no stay, but eating with one hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene*, just as *Paches* was reading the former Order; by this speed prevented. So near were these miserable people to a fatal destruction. Subdued by the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, they fell together with it to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours: from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and some other of these Isles, Anno 1124. by the State of *Venice*, upon a quarrel between them and the *Grecian* Emperour. Confirmed unto that Signeury by the Emperour *Baldwin*, and all the rest of the *Aegean* added to their portion; those above-named were again recovered by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas*, the *Greek* Emperour, then residing at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year 1335. the Emperour *Calo-Johannes* gave it to *Franciscus Catalusius*, a Noble Gentleman of *Genoa*, with one of his sisters, for her Dowry. By whose posterity enjoyed, till the year 1462. when *Mahomet the Great* incensed against *Dominicus Catalusius* the then Lord hereof, for the murder of his elder brother, a Vassal and Tributary of his Empire (those Princes paying to the *Turk* an annual tribute of 4000 *Ducats*;) but more for harbouring the *Pirates of Spain and Italy*, besieges him in *Mitylene* his principal City, which in 27 days (for so long it held) he constrained to submit unto him, and therewith all the Island also. Some of the chief families being removed unto *Constantinople*, upon some reasons of State, the main body of the people were permitted to remain here to till the land, and so continue to this day, with some few *Turks*, inconsiderable for their strength or numbers, intermixed among them.

3 *CHIOS*, the next to *Lesbos* both in site and bigness, lyeth opposite to the shore of *Ionia*, from which distant not above four leagues, is in compass about 126 miles. So called, as some say, from *Chione* a fair Nymph hereof, much sought after by many Suters: as others say, from *χαιος*, a *Greek* word signifying *Snow*, wherewith the Mountains of it are sometimes covered. And some again will have it take name from *Chios* the chief City of it, which being built in the form of the *Greek* Letter *χ*, first got that name unto it self, and afterwards did communicate it to the whole Island. *Isidore* in his *Origines* gives another reason, and will have it called so from a *Syrinck* word signifying *Mastic*, whereof there is plenty in this Isle. *Chios Insula* (saith he) *Syrā linguā appellatur, eo quod ibi Mastix gignitur*; *Syrinck Mastic* *Chion vocant*. And were it so, that *Chios* in the *Syrinck* did signifie *Mastic*, there could no better reason be assigned for the name: this Island being more furnished with that commodity, than any place in the world besides. A gum it is growing out of the *Lentisk* tree, which in the months of *July* and *August* the Inhabitant force out of those trees, by making with sharp instruments a deep incision into the barks of them; out of which the juice dropping is afterwards hardened like a gum, and in the *September* following gathered. A Commodity which yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sultanies*, every *Sultanie* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*: and therefore the selling of the *Lentisk* tree, at the time of the distilling of this precious juice interdicted, on the penalty of losing the right hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Island are *Corn* and *Oyl* in indifferent plenty, some *quarries* of most excellent *Marble*, a certain green earth like the rust of brass; some *Silks* and *Cotton-Wool*, but scarce in worth to those of *Smyrna*, and other places: *Honey* as good as any the World affordeth; and a sort of most delicious *Vines*, those specially which grow on the Mountain *Arvis*, now called *Amista*. Of which *Pliny* gives this commendation, *In summa gloria suere* *Thalium*, *Chiumque ex Chio, quod Arvium vocant*. Of all *Wines* (saith he) those of *Thassus* and *Chios*, are of best esteem; and of those of *Chios*, the *Arvisian*. *Strabo* extollet them in the *Superlative* degree, and calleth the Wine hereof, *δρον αειδον* *δρ* *Ερμινος*, incomparably the best of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, speaking of an *Epicurean*, or voluptuous liver, affirms, that he conceived it the supreme felicity, *Δειν ον σφαιδς, ε μιν δρον Αειδον*, to lie with *Thais*, and drink these *Arvisian Wines*. Here are also infinite store of *Partridges*, of a red colour, kept tame, and fed in flocks like *Geese*, in the Streets and *Greenswarths* of their Villages: some little Boy or Girl driving them to field, and calling them home again with a *Whistle*, when the night comes on.

The Island divided commonly into two parts, the *Higher*, called *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and West; hilly and rough, but intermixt with fruitful Vales and pleasant Rivers; the *Lower* opposite unto it, called *Catamorea*, swelled here and there with gentle hillocks, on which groweth the *Lentisk*. The whole inhabited by *Greeks* intermixt with *Genoese*, and (since their conquest by that people) some few *Turks* amongst them. Which mixture with the *Genoese*, tempereth the levity of the *Greeks* with *Italian* gravity: the better sort of people both in apparel, and manners, coming near the *Genese*, once the Lords of this Island; the common sort continuing their old *Greek* humour of mirth and jollity (not sensible of the *Turkish* Thraldom under which they suffer) with as much licentiousness as ever. And though this intermixture hath so corrupted their language, that neither the *Greek* nor the *Italian* be here rightly spoken, but a compound tongue made up of both; yet keep they their Religions still distinct and separate, as if they had never known another.

Here are reckoned in it six and thirty Towns and Villages, the principal whereof are, 1 *S. Elier*, in the North. 2 *Pigrine*, in the midst hereof; and 3 *Chios* is self, now called *Sio* (as is all the Island) one of the seven Cities contending for the birth of *Homer*; whose Sepulchre they pretend to shew in an old Castle near the Mount and Town of *S. Elier*, (which were it his, would be a better argument for his burial here, than it is for his birth.) The Town situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of the Country,

Samos.

Country, to which both industry and Art have given great advantage; there being few houses without Orchards of excellent fruits, as *Oranges*, *Lemons*, *Pomegranats*, *Citrons*, and a kind of *Fig*, much praised for their quickness of taste by the ancient *Romans*. It standeth on the East-side opposite to the shores of *Asia*, stretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the West-side backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did stand. The buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying: though otherwise secure once entered, and for directing of the entrance, a Lighthouse advanced by the *Genoese* (when Lords hereof) to give light by night, and serve for a land-mark in the day. Fortified on the North-side by a large and strong Castle, environed with deep ditches, well furnished with munition, and a *Turkish* Garrison. And because the Island is on all parts accessible, not naturally fortified with rocks, and dangerous precipices, as many others; besides this Castle, they have all along the Coast small Watch-towers, which with smoke by day, and fire by night, give notice unto one another of such Vessels as they see approaching: the *Guards* about the Castle being so intent also about their charge, that every minute of the night there goeth a word about the walls to declare their vigilance.

The *Chians* were at first a free people, governing themselves as a Commonwealth; and by reason of their many harbours, able to furnish out a Navy of 80 Sails, which gave them the Lordship of those Seas, till eclipsed by the *Rhodian*s. Besieged by *Philip* the father of *Perseus*, with his utmost power, who when he could not get it by force, proclaimed freedom to the Slaves (of which here were many) and liberty to marry with their Masters wives, if they would rebel against their Masters. And when this policy would not do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of indignation, he gave over the siege. At last they became subject to the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, and followed punctually the same change of fortunes, as did those of *Lesbos*; which we have spoken of before: till given by *Andronicus Paleologus*, one of the last *Greek* Emperours, to the *Justinians*, a noble *Genoese* family, assistant to him in his wars. Under them it continued as tributary to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*) to whom they annually paid eighteen thousand *Ducats*, till the year 1566. When *Solymán* the *Magnificent* picking a quarrel with them for some suspected correspondency with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greatest *Bassas*, to seize the Island. And he accordingly presenting himself before the City, with a strong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did so astonish and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other summons than the sight of his Navy, they surrendered themselves unto his disposing, upon *Easter-day*, being the same day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkish*, all save their Religion, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times.

4 *SAMOS*, is on the South-east of *Chios*, distant about five miles from the shores of *Ionia*; about eighty, or eighty seven in compass; environed for the most part, especially on the North-west, with inaccessible rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little use by reason of *Pirates* which infested those Seas. The soyl sufficiently enriched with most kind of fruits; abundantly plentiful of *Oyl*, and *Olives*, but of *Vines* altogether unfurnished; which is the more to be admired, in regard all the Islands and shores about it, produce them in so great a plenty. It stretcheth from the East to the West: and on the South part of it stood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before spoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the rest of the Island; now wholly desolate in a manner, because of the *Pirates*, and in most places very much over-grown with woods: becoming thereby very useful to those publick enemies, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the sudden put a Ship to Sea, for pursuit of their Robberies. The chief commodity it affordeth besides those above, is a medicinal Earth, usefull for *Chirurgery* and *Physick*: of which in former times were those Vessels made, called *Vasa Samia*; in great request amongst the *Romans*.

Antiently it had the names of *Dryusa*, *Anthemusa*, *Melamphyllus*, and *Ciparissa*; out-worn by that of *Samos*, which it still remaneth. Memorable in old times for the birth of *Pythagoras*, of one of the *Sibyls*, hence called *Samia*; and finally of the wife-man *Pythagoras* (a wiser then any of the seven wise Masters forenamed amongst them) who first brought Philosophy into *Greece*, and from thence into *Italy*. Once a free Commonwealth of no small esteem, the Institutions whereof are mentioned by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the several Commonwealths then being: afterwards made subject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a man so fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any mischance. Fearing lest such a long calm would bring on a tempest, he let fall into the Sea a most precious Ring, by him deservedly esteemed: that so it might be said he had some misfortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a fish brought accidentally to his table, he was overcome by *Orantes a Persian*, and brought to a miserable death. Leaving a notable example, that fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a sharp sting, hath alwaies some misery following in the train of a long concatenation of felicity. From this time forwards it ran the same fortune with the rest of these Islands; subject successively to the great Monarchies in former times, as of late times to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5 *ICARIA*, (now called *Niesria*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the West-ward of it, narrow, but extended out in length; the whole compass 22 ven and thirty miles: neighboured by two great Rocks, or little Islands, of old called *Melanibii*, now the *Fernaces*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night especially. Meantime inhabited at the present, though abounding in pasturage, and yielding sufficiently of corn; Havenless, and therefore the less frequented, yet that defect supplied by commodious Roads. In former times called *Dolichus*, then *Micris*, after *Ischia*: which name it held till the flight of *Dedalus* out of *Crete*. Who justly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pandarus* to his wife,

*Palmos,
Claros, &c.*

in her loves with *Taurus*, secretly with *Icarus* his son, fled out of that Island. And because he would be sure to out-strip the *Rowers* who pursued him, he added sails unto his Boat, which it is said he first invented. But *Icarus*, coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new device, clapped on too much Canvass, and bearing too great a sail, was here cast away. Hence the new name both to this Island, and the Seas adjoining to it: and the occasion of the Fable of *Daedalus* putting wings upon his shoulders, when he fled from *Crete*; and of his flying too high, whereby the wax melted which his wings were fastned with, and he perished in the water. Of which thus *Ovid*,

*Dum petit infirmis nimium sublimis pennis
Icarus, Icaris nomina fecit aquis.*

In English thus,
Whilst *Icarus* weak wings too high did soar
He fell, and gave name to th' *Icarian* shore.

6 PATMOS, now called *Palmosa*, is situate on the South of the other two; A little Island, not above 30 miles in compass. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, especially of wheat and pulse; of other commodities, and fruits, not so well provided. On one of these Mountains stands a town of the same name with the Island; having on the top thereof a Monastery of *Greek Calovers*; and on the bottom a fair Haven (I mean in reference to the Island.) Forty sail of Ships are said to belong unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in those provisions which the soil affordeth not: the soil about the town being so incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on or near it, but on such earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Island (as to others in other parts of the world) did the *Roman* Emperours use to confine offenders. A punishment laid by *Domitian* on *S. John the Divine*, who in this place writ his *Revelation* to the Churches of *Asia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Island. And the Inhabitants by tradition point unto an house on the North-side of the Town, in which it was written, and not far off the Cave where it was revealed. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. They also shew a dead mans hand, which they affirm to be his, the nails whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (saith *Maginnus*) claim it for the hand of one of their *Prophets*. Let them dispute the controversy, whilst we haste to

7 CLAROS, another Island not far off, containing about 40 miles in compass. Well stored with commodious Harbours, but very mountainous; some of those hills of such an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Ephesus* in *Ionias*, (though distant at least eighty miles) may be easily seen. It is now called *Calamo*. Neighbour'd by *Lero* (of old called *Ileron*) a little Island not above eighteen miles in circuit; but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furnishing the neighbouring Countries with some store of *Aloes*. Sacred in former times was *Claros* to *Apollo*; reckoned by him amongst his honours, in his brags to *Daphne*: where he declares,

*Mibi Delphica tellus,
Et Claros, et Tenedos, Pataxaze Regin servit.*

That is to say,
The folk of *Diphos*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*,
And Royal *Pataxa*, my Vassels are.

8 COOS, COS, or COUS, for by all these names it was called of old, is situate over against *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Aegean*, that is to say, in that part thereof which is called *Mare Myrtoan*, the *Myrtoan* Sea. A Sea so called, as some say, from one *Myrtillus*, the Coachman or *Charioteer* of *Oenomaus*, who having betrayed his race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Pliny* less probably conceiveth that it took name from *Myrtos*, a little Island not far from *Euboea*, a little too far off to extend its name to the shores of *Caria*. And therefore considering that *Lydia* antiently was called *Myrtus*, and that in those times *Aeolis*, and *Ionias*, lying on this Sea, were accounted but as parts thereof, I think we may resolve with more probability, that it deriv'd this name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea stands the Isle of *Coos*, now called *Lange*, affording Saylers as they pass by a most beautiful prospect, lying for the most part flat and level, but swelling towards the East with some graceful mountains, out of which issue many sweet and pleasant springs to refresh the Island which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypress* trees, *Turpentine*, and sundry other, both delightful and medicinal; but most especially celebrated for those rich wines, which the Good fellows of *Rome* so much loved to quaff, called *Vinum Cos*. It is in compass 70 miles, having a Town of the same name, in the suburbs whereof stood antiently the Temple of *Aesculapius*, famous and rich with the offerings of those, who having by his assistance (as they supposed) recovered health, came hither to make payment of their vows, and express their gratitude. It is now fortified with a strong Castle; held by a Garrison of *Turks*; and besides this, two Villages only in the Island, and both inhabited by *Greeks*.

In elder times it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria*, and *Nymphaea*, and at last of *Coos*. Memorable in being the Country of many famous men who were here born; viz. of *Hippocrates*, the Reviver of *Physick*, then almost decayed, who is hence called *Hippocrates Cos*. 2 *Sinias*, a Physician also; 3 *Ariston*, a Peripatetic Philosopher; 4 *Philetas*, as good an Orator, as a Poet; 5 *Nicias*, who for a time oppress'd the liberty of this people; and 6 of *Apelles*, the famous Painter; who to express his

art

*Carpathos
and
Rhodes.*

art in the picture of *Venus*, (rising naked out of the Sea) assembled together all the most beautiful women of this Island, uniting in that piece their divided perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stomalime*, one of the principal of this Island, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Augustus*, and there dedicated to *Cesar*, as the mother of the *Julian* family: the *Coans* in regard hereof, being eased of a great part of their annual tributes. Not much less memorable for which at once shewed them clothed and naked. *Perlucida nuntur vestes, ita, ut nude conspici possint*, as my Author hath it. These they called *Vestimenta Cos*, and *Vestes Cos*, so often mentioned by the Poets, especially in their *Amatoria*; as *Coa puellis Vestis*, in *Tibullus*; *Indue me Cois*, in *Propertius*; *Sive eris in Cois*, saith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others also, too many, and too long to be added here. I pass to

9 CARPATHOS, situate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Island, called hereabouts the *Carpathian* Sea. A rugged and unpleasing soil, full of difficult Mountains, but those mountains stored with quarries of most excellent Marble. In circuit about 60 miles, extending more in length than breadth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long since perished, that of *Carpathos* being still remaining, and still the principal one of them furnished with some Port or Haven; but small, and for the most part very unsafe. Situate in the middle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*, it hath continued hitherto in the possession of the State of *Venice* (if not taken from them very lately:) to whom being given with other of the Islands of these *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western forces, it hath the fortune or felicity to continue theirs, when almost all the residue were subdued by the *Turks*. The people *Greek*, of the communion of that Church, notwithstanding their subjection to a State of *Italy*.

10 RHODES, situate in the *Rhodian* or *Carpathian* Sea, lyeth over against the coast of *Lycia* in *Asia Minor*, from which distant about 20 miles. Formerly called *Ophiusa*, *Asteria*, *Ehrea*, *Trinachia*, *Pessia*, *Corymbia*, *Atalysia*, and at last *Macaria*; it settled finally and fortunately in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roses*, which the soil produceth, *Rhodes* in that language signifying a *Rose*, the Isle of *Roses*, as it were: but as the Poets say, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of these Seas, here deloured by *Apollo*; or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the daughters of *Apollo* begat on *Venus*. For so one of them thus declareth;

Insula Diſta Rhodos, de Sole et Cypride nata eſt.

Rhoda, from whom this Isle took name,
Of *Venus* and *Apollo* came.

The Island 140 miles in compass, enriched with a most temperate air, and a fertile soil, producing fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent pastures, adorned with trees which always do continue green: and in a word, so blest with the gifts of nature, that it gave occasion to the fable of those *Golden Showers*, which were once said to have fallen upon it. The wines hereof so excellent, and so rich of taste, that by the *Romans* they were used in their second courses, or reserved for the sacrifices of the gods, as too good for mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cause of which perpetual flourishing, and continual spring, is to be ascribed to the powerful influences of the *Sun*, so dearly cherishing this Island, or so much in love with it, that it is constantly affirmed that no day passeth wherein he shineth not clearly on it, be the air in all other places never so much over-cast with clouds, or obscured by mists. Feigned for that cause to have been naturally a meer Marish, altogether inhabitable, if not covered with waters; till loved by *Phaëus*, and erected above the waves by his vigorous influence.

Of the People we shall speak anon; Look we in the meantime on the places of most observation: 1 *Lindus*, (now *Lindos*) a petty Town, but formerly of more esteem: of note in those times for the Temple consecrated to *Minerva*, by *Darius* King of *Egypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As also for the birth of *Chares*, the *Archibest* of the huge *Colossus*, whereof more presently; but specially for the nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the seven wise men of *Greece*: the other six being *Solon* of *Athens*; *Periander* of *Corinth*; *Chilon* of *Sparta*; *Bias* of *Priene*; *Thales* of *Miletum*; and *Pittacus* of *Mitylene*. Seven men of whom the *Grecians* most immensely bragged, as if the World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number: for which decided handily by *Lactantius*, an old *Christian* writer, who scoffs their paucity, and calleth it a miserable and calamitous age, in quo septem soli fuerant qui hominum vocabula mererentur; in which there were no more than seven who deserved to be accounted men. 2 *Rhodes*, antiently, as now the chief City of it, the Island from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in later times, depending on the fortunes and strength hereof. No place in elder times held superior to it, for the conveniency of the Haven, magnificent buildings, delightful Orchards, and other excellencies. Situate on the East part of the Isle, on the declining of an hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a safe and commodious Haven: treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five strong Bulwarks, besides divers Sconces, and other out-works; this Town, and *Famagusta* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two strongest holds in the *Turkish* Empire. In former times, one of the principal Universities of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marſeilles*, *Tarſus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old Academies of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a most noted place of Study, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperour) did withdraw himself, when *Augustus* had declared

M m m 2

his

Salamine.

gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2 *Cerines*, situate near the Sea, strong by art and nature, and furnished with all things necessary to endure a siege, but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alfonso Palatinus* the unwarlike Governour, terrified with the great slaughter made at the sack of *Nicosia*, before the enemy came near it. At first called *Cecurania*, and said to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* King, when he first subdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Island to that Crown; built with a more temperate and wholesome air, than any other in the Country. 3 *Tremisus*, the birth-place of *Spiridion*, a Bishop of the *Primitive* times, renowned for miracles; many of which reported by *Sozomen*, lib. 1. chap. 10. and other Ecclesiastical writers. Wholly decayed, the ruine of it much contributing to the rise of *Nicosia*. 5 *Lapithus* (by *Pliny* called *Lapies*) on the banks of a small Riveret of that name, of so great note in former times, that it gave to this Division the name of *Lapechia*, in that part standeth the hill *Olympus*; (now the Mountain of the *holy Cross*) described before.

4 *SALAMINE*, the fourth and last Province of this Island, taketh up the whole East-parts hereof: So named from 1 *Salamis*, once the chief City of the Isle, and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Destroyed by the *Jews* in the reign of *Trajan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, sacked, and razed unto the ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclius*, it never could again recover: the *Metropolitan* See after that subversion, being removed to *Nicosia*. It was sometimes, and by some writers, called *Constantia* also; but that name could give it no more perpetuity than the other of *Salamis*; Memorable whilst it stood for the founder of it, being *Tancer* the son of *Telamon* King of *Salamis*, an Isle of the *Aegean* Seas; banished his Country by his Father, and settled in this Island by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phenicia*; as also for a famous Temple sacred unto *Jupiter*, hence called *Salaminius*. Out of the ruines hereof arose, 2 *Famagusta*, now the prime City of these parts; built as is said by *Costa*, the Father of *Saint Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the East end of the Island, in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one called the *Cape* of *Saint Andrew*, and the other *Cape di Griego*, or the head of *Gracia*. In compass not above two miles, in form four-square, but that the side towards the East stretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen foot in breadth, an old stone wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (opposite to *Tripolis*, a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South-east, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow passage not above forty paces broad, but after opening wider and wider, maketh a convenient Harbour, rather safe than large, assured both by the difficult entrance, and a chain crossed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified; the works of it of the old fashion, generally decayed except one Bulwark, which was but according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Palisades*, Curtains, Casemates, and all other Additaments: most gallantly defended by *Brigadine* the noble General, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who spent no less than 18000 great shot upon it; and at last yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3 *Aphrodisium*, so named of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4 *Asiopolis*, built also by one of the *Argives* Queens of *Egypt* (there being two others of this name, and the same foundation, now called *Lezare*, and antiently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*.) 5 *Tamassus*, of good note in the time of *Strabo* for rich mines of Brasse, as afterwards for abundance of *Verdgreene* and *Pitrit* found plentifully in the fields adjoining. 6 *Idalium*, near a mount of the same name, so called by accident. For *Chalceor* the founder of it being told by Oracle, that he should fear himself, and build a City, where he first saw the rising sun: one of his followers, seeing the Sun begin to rise, cried out *Idon* *Idon*, that is to say, behold the Sun. Which omen taken by *Chalceor*, he here built this City. But whether this were so or not (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple, neighboured by the *Idalian* Groves, so memorized and chanted by the antient Poets. So strong an influence had lust and sensuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Island was defiled with those brutish Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that impure deity: though to say truth, it was no marvel if having made their *Belly their God*, they made in the next place, their glory their shame.

The first Inhabitants of this Island were the posterity of *Cittim* the son of *Javan*, and grand-son of *Japhet*: who having seen his brother *Tarshish* settled in *Cilicia*, (where his memory is still preserved in the City of *Tarsus*) planted himself and his retinue in this opposite Island. The City of *Cettim*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Cittim*, as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the antientest of the Island; taking name from him; which with the authority of *Josephus*, and others of the antient writers, put it out of question. But being this Island was too narrow to contain his numbers, and willing to seek further off for a larger dwelling, he left here so many of his followers as might serve in time to plant the Country; and with the rest passed into *Macedon*, where we have already spoken of him. Made tributary first to *Amasis* King of *Egypt*, from which distant about three or four days sailing. Subjected afterwards to the *Phenicians*, a near neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring people, made themselves masters of the Sea-coasts and maritime places. *Cinyras* the Father of *Myrrha*, (by whom both Father and Grand Father to *Adonis*) is said to have been King of both. The like affirmed of *Belus* one of his Successors, who is said to have been the founder of the City of *Cittim*, named so (if not rather repaired than new built by him,) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the first Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Tencer* the son of *Telamon*, banished his Country, accompanied with many followers from *Salamis*, *Athenis*, and *Arcadin*, was settled in the East parts hereof; where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his first plantation. Yet so, that the *Phenicians* kept their former hold: it being evident in

Story

Story that *Elulus* one of the successors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*), and a Co-temporary with *Salmanassar* King of *Assyria*, passed over into *Cyprus* with a puissant Navy to reduce the *Citians* to obedience, who had then rebelled. The Island at first coming of *Tencer* hither so infinitely overgrown with woods, that the people were not able to till the Island. Inasmuch, that notwithstanding the great waste made of them, both in building ships, and casting metals, a law was made that every one which would should fell them, and take as much ground in severalty for his own inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for tillage. Encouraged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phenicians*, *Egyptians*, so bestirred themselves, that at last they brought it unto *Champagn*: parcelled out in succeeding times, amongst nine Kings, for so many *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did subdue all those petty Princes, yet he took not from them their Estates or titles: contented with the conquest of it, and an annual tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Mucmon*, we find *Evagoras*, and *Nicacles*, to whom *Iscrates* inscribed two of his Orations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander the Great*, *Cittium* itself (such was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not subject unto any other. The King whereof to indear himself with the Conquerour, gave to him a sword, *μαχαιρα* *δαμαστηρ*, saith *Plutarch*, an admirable sword, both for colour and lightness, which he after used in all his fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his estates amongst them, the Princes and people of this Island were in great distractions, not knowing to whom they might submit for their best advantage. But *Ptolemy*, who had seized on *Egypt* for his part of the spoil, being strong in shipping, ferled them by a personal visit; and fortifying some of the best pieces in it, assured the Countrey to himself. To him and his posterity it continued subject till the time of *Ptolemy Auletes*, the ninth King of this line in our Account, who gave it for a portion to one of his Brethren: in whose time, the *Romans*, without any colour or pretence of quarrel, but only to enrich themselves with the spoil of the Island, sent *Porcius Cato* to subdue it. And he at first assayed to get it with the Kings consent, offering him in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Priest-hood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainfull Office, and of high esteem among that people. But when *Ptolemy* for fear of worse mischief had made away himself by poison, *Cato* without more ceremony takes possession of it. And because *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Historian, hath so significantly expressed this business, and withall described so punctually the Estate of this Island; we will add this discourse from him, though somewhat repeated which was said before. *Cyprum insulam precat a Continente distantem, & portus suum, &c.* The Isle of *Cyprus*, far distant from the Continent, and well stored with *Harbours*, is famous, besides many *Municipal* Towns, for two principal Cities, that is to say, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*; the one sacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Isle so admirably fruitfully, and with all things furnished, that without the help of any foreign Nation, it is able of itself to build and rig for a ship, from the very keel unto the top-sail, and trim it with all tackle necessary for a present voyage. Nor do I shame to say, that with greater Avarice than Justice, the *Romans* did invade this Island, King *Ptolemy* my old Confederate and Ally, being unworthily proscribed, for no other reason, but that our Treasury was bare, our *Exchequer* empty. And he no sooner had prevented this dishonour by a quick & voluntary death, making away himself by poison, but the Island was forthwith made tributary, and the riches of it, *velut hostiles exuvia classis impositae & in urbem adductae per Catonem*, as the spoils of some conquered enemy, were brought on Ship-board, and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far, and to this purpose he.

I know there is another cause alleaged for the sending of *Cato* on this Errand, viz. that *Clodius* who was then *Tribune*, and spied the *Edict*, might have opportunity by his absence to revenge himself on *Cicero*, and some others of the opposite faction: but the main business was the money, as before was said; the prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thousand Crowns of coin new current. Which money and movables, amounting unto so vast a sum, he fearing to lose by Sea, divided it into many small portions, which he put into several boxes, viz. in every box two Talents and fifty *Drachms*. At the end of every box he fastned a long rope with a piece of cork; by which, floating above the water, the money, if by Shipwrack lost, might be espied again: which was not much unlike the *buoys* which Mariners fasten by long ropes to their Anchors, that they may be the sooner found. We see by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Countrey was very weak: *Avarius magis quam justus sumus affectus*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* also. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the division of the Empire assigned to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours: under whom it suffered, as all other parts of the Empire did, by the violent invasion of the *Saracens*, who spoiled and ransacked it in the time of *Constantine* the second, destroying then the City of *Salamis* or *Constantia*. But that tempest being overblown, they returned again unto that Empire, governed by a succession of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* usurping the *Græc* Empire, compelled *Isaacius Comnenus*, one of the blood Royal, to shift for himself: who seizing on this Island made himself King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191. when *Richard* the first of *England*, being denied the Common courtesie of taking in fresh water, and seeing his Soldiers abused by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Prisoner, but subdued the whole Island. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamides* King of *Armenia*, *Catenis*, *sed ne quid horum deesset, aureis vinxit*: So did our *Richard* keep a decorum towards this Prisoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but silver. King *Richard* having thus possessed himself of this Countrey, sold it for ready money, (which for the managing of his intended wars against the *Turks*, he most needed) unto the Templers: and taking it, upon I know not what discontent, again from them, he bestowed

bestowed it on *Guy of Lusignan*, the titular and miserable King of *Hiernsalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the title of that lost and shipwrecked Kingdom; with which title he and some of his Successors for a time were honoured.

In the posterity of this *Guy*, this Island continued free and absolute, till the year one thousand four hundred twenty three; when *Alecbella* (or *Melechnaser*) Sultan of *Egypt*, invaded this Countrey, took *John* King hereof Prisoner, ransomed him for 150000 Sultanies, restored him to his Kingdom, and imposed on him and his Successors, the yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was father to another *John*, whose two children were *Carlote* a legitimate daughter, and *James* a bastard Son. *James* after the death of his father, dispossessed his sister *Carlote* of the Crown, by the consent and help of the *Sultan of Egypt*; and the better to strengthen himself against all opposition, he took to wife *Catherine Cornari*, daughter by adoption to the *Venetian Senate*: whom at his death he made his heir, if the child he went withall (having then none by her) should die without issue, as it did, not long after it was born; and the feeing the factions Nobility too head-strong to be bridled by a female authority, like a good child relinshed her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian State*, Anno 1473. These defended it against all claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Egyptian*, and after to the *Turkish Sultans*, the 40000 Crowns before mentioned) till the year 1570. when *Mustapha* General of the *Turks*, wrested it from the *Venetians*, to the use of his Master *Selimus* the second, who pretended title to it as Lord of *Egypt*. The Governour of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loss was *Signior Bragadino*, who as long as hope of succours, means of resistance, or possibility of prevailing continued, with incredible valour made good the Town of *Famagusta*, in whose defence consisted the welfare of the whole Island. At last he yielded it on honourable conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Mustapha* the *Turkish* General inviting to his Tent the principal men of worth in the Town, caused them all to be murdered: and as for *Brigadin* himself, he commanded his ears to be cut off, his body to be head alive, and his skin stuffed with straw, to be banged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the prisoners and spoils were in two tall ships, and one Gallion sent unto *Selimus*; but he never saw them. For a Noble *Cyprian* Lady destined to the lust of the *Grand Seigneur*, fired certain barrels of powder; by the violence whereof both the vessels and the booty in them, were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroick act; inferiour unto none of the *Roman* *Dames*, so much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman*, than a *Christian* Lady.

Thus having summed up the affairs of this Island from the first plantation of it, till this last said conquest, I will lay down the succession of the *Cyprian* Kings of the Noble *Lusignan* Family, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of CYP R U S.

- 1 *Guy of Lusignan*, the titular King of *Hiernsalem*, created in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the first of *England*.
- 2 *Americus*, the brother of *Guy*.
- 3 *Hugh*, the son of *Americus*.
- 4 *Henry*, the son of *Hugh*.
- 5 *Hugh* II. son of *Henry*.
- 6 *Hugh* III. son of *Hugh* the second.
- 7 *John*, son of *Hugh* the third.
- 8 *Henry* II. the brother of *John*.
- 9 *Hugh* IV. son of *Guido*, the younger brother of *John*, and *Henry* the second.
- 10 *Peter*, the son of *Hugh* the fourth.
- 11 *Petrinus*, the son of *Peter*.
- 12 *James*, younger brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
- 13 *Janus*, the son of *James*, made Tributary by *Alechnaser*, to the Kingdom of *Egypt*.
- 14 *John* II. the son of *Janus*.
- 15 *Carlote*, sole daughter and heir of *John* the second, first married to *John* the Prince of *Pinigal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*; outed of her estate and Kingdom, by
- 16 *James* II. the bastard son of *John* the second, who by a strong hand seized upon it, and by help of the *Venetians* kept it during life.
- 17 *James* III. born after the decease of his father, whom he survived not very long. After whose death, being the last of this Family, the *Venetians* possessed themselves of *Cyprus*: which they invaded with no better title, than the *Romans* had done in former times; not likely to be blest with a long fruition, of that which they had so unjustly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here is to be observed, that these *Cyprian* Kings retaining the title of *Hiernsalem* (towards which they sometimes cast an eye) bestowed upon their greatest Subjects, and deserving Servitors, both titles of honour and Offices of State, belonging antiently to that Kingdom. So that we find amongst them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cesarea*, and a Lord of *Mount Tabor*; a Seneschal of *Hiernsalem*, a Constable, Marshal, and High Chamberlain of that Kingdom also. With better reason, though no doubt with as little profit, as the Pope gives Bishopricks and Archbishopricks in *Greece*, or *Egypt*. But those titular Offices are now quite extinct, though possibly some of the Titles of honour which were took from thence, may be still remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famagusta*, and *Nicosia*, on which the whole Island did

did depend, all other Cities of it, and the whole by consequence, were forced to submit to the *Turkish* Tyranny. The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal quality, either most cruelly massacred in the sack of those Towns, or banished for ever their native Countrey, as men whose living there might possibly endanger their new conquest: But the Countrey people, Artificers, and persons of inferior rank, permitted to enjoy both their lives and livelihoods, together with their several and respective religions, in the same manner as before: paying such ordinary taxes as were laid upon them. And so this goodly Island came into the hands of the *Turks*, who have hitherto enjoyed the possession of it: For notwithstanding that the *Venetians* in the year next following, with the help of the Pope and King of *Spain*, gave the *Turks* that great and memorable overthrow, at the famous battel of *Lepanto*; yet did they nothing in pursuit of so great a victory for the recovery of this Island; and indeed they could not, the confederates returning home, and dissolving their Fleet, as soon as they had secured their own estates by the overthrow of the *Turkish* Navy. And though the *Venetians*, to put the best face they could on so great a loss, so highly pleased themselves with the following Victory; that they put the same in balance with the loss of *Cyprus*; yet an ingenious *Turk*, to let them see the folly of so vain a boasting, compared the losing of *Cyprus*, to the loss of an Arm, which could not without a miracle be recovered; and the loss at *Lepanto*, to the shaving off of ones beard, which grows the thicker for the cutting, as indeed it proved: For the next year the *Turks* armed out another Navy, no less formidable than the other had been before; braving therewith the whole Christian Forces, either not then disbanded, or re-assembled.

What the Revenues of it were to the Kings hereof, I cannot certainly determine. The profits of Salt only, and that of the Custome-house, yielded yearly to the Seignery of *Venice*, when it was in their hands, a million of Crowns. For the Customs and profits of the Salt were farmed for 500000 Crowns per annum, which being turned into the chief *Cyprian* commodities, were counted double worth than money, when unladed at *Venice*: To which if we should adde the lands of the former Kings, and other wayes of raising money on the Subject, I cannot see, but the Intrado of the Crown must needs amount constantly to a million and a half yearly, if it were not more.

The Arms hereof were quarterly, first *Argent*, a Cross Potent between four Crosses *Or*; secondly Barre-wise of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Azure*, supporting a Lion Passant *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; thirdly, a Lion *Gules*; and fourthly, *Argent*, a Lion *Gules*; as *Bara* a French Herald hath given the Blazon.

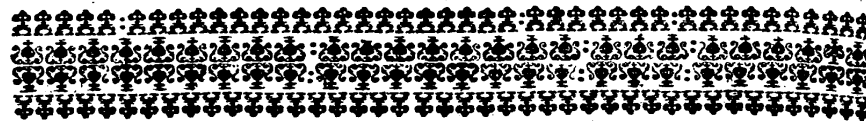
On the East of *Cyprus* towards *Syria* lie four small Islands, which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Cliclus*, not far from the Promontory of that name; both Promontory and Island now called *Saint Andrews*; and towards the West another little knot of Islets, which he calls *Carpasia*; but nothing memorable in either. So I pass them over.

There are in *Cyprus*;

Arch-bishops 2. Bishops 6.

And so much for CYP R U S.

OF



OF S Y R I A.

SYRIA is bounded on the East, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean Sea*; on the North, with *Cilicia*, and *Armenia Minor*, from the last parted by Mount *Taurus*; and on the South, with *Palestina*, and some parts of *Arabia*. The length hereof from Mount *Taurus* to the edge of *Arabia*, is said to be five hundred twenty and five miles; the breadth from the *Mediterranean* to the River *Euphrates*, computed at four hundred and seventy, drawing somewhat near unto a square.

In the Scriptures it is called *Aram*, and the People *Aramites*, because first peopled and possessed by *Aram* the son of *Sem*; though *Hamath*, *Arphad*, and *Sidon*, the sons of *Canaan*, did also put in for a share: and yet not called thus by the Scriptures only, but by some of the Heathen writers also. For *Strabo* doth not only acknowledge, that the *Syrians* in his time were called *Αραμαιοι*, but citeth *Possidonius*, a more ancient Writer, for proof that the *Αραμαιοι*, which *Homer* speaketh of, must be those *Syrians* further averring, that the *Syrians* called themselves by the name of *Aramai*, or plainly *Aramites*. But by the *Greeks* they are called *Syrians*, or *Syriani*, from the City *Tyre*, called antiently by the name *Syr*, or *Tyr*, (of which more hereafter:) either because the *Tyrians* or *Tsuriens*, had in those times the command of the Sea-coasts of this Countrey; or else that *Tyre* or *Tser* being the chief Mart-town of all those parts, was the place where they traded with these *Aramites*. Conform to which antient Appellations, the City of *Tyre* is again called *Syr*, and this Countrey *Soria*. Others conceive, that being when the *Greeks* first knew it, a part of the *Affyrian Empire*, the seat of which was then at *Ninive*, it was called *Syria* for *Affyria*: as afterwards *Affyria* had the name of *Syria* (of which more anon) when the seat of that great Empire was removed to *Antioch*. And this may very well be so, considering that by the like decurtation we have turned *Hispania* into *Spain*, as the *Greeks* before us did into *Spania*, by which name it occurs, *Rom.* 15. 28.

But here we are to understand, that though the *Syria* of the *Romans*, as it was a member of that Empire, was limited within the bounds before laid down, yet antiently as well the *Aram* of the *Hebrews*, as the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of greater Latitude: of which, because it may be usefull to the understanding of holy Scriptures, and of some *Classick Authors* also, I shall enlarge a little further. For *Aram*, taken in the largest acceptation of it, extendeth from the coast of *Cilicia*, North, to *Idumaea* towards the South; from the River *Tygris* in the East, to the *Mediterranean Sea* upon the West; containing besides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans* (in which *Palestine* also was included) *Arabia* the *Desert*, and *Petrea*, *Chaldea*, *Babylonia*, and all those Provinces to which the name *Aram* is either prefixed or subjoined in the Book of *God*, as *Arava-Naharaim*, *Aram-Sobab*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maachab*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, all mentioned in the holy Scriptures. Some do extend it further yet, and do not only bring *Armenia* within the Latitude of this name, which they derive from *Aram-minni*, whose neighbourhood to *Syria*, may give some colour to the error; but even those People of *Cappadocia* bordering on the *Euxine Sea*, the Inhabitants of which were antiently called *Lusco-Syri*, or *white Syrians*. But this not having any good warrant or authority wherewithall to back it, shall not come under the compass of this consideration. For the rest, I find it generally agreed upon amongst the learned, that *Aram-Naharaim*, is the same with the whole Countrey of *Mesopotamia*, so named both by the *Jews* and *Grecians*, because it is environed with the two famous Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*; which *Priscian* by a meer *Latine* name, would have to be called *Medanma* (but *Inter-Amna* by his leave would express it better.) And as for *Padan-Aram* wherein *Laban* dwelt, which is called *Sede-Aram* by the Prophet *Hosea*, *ch.* 12. v. 13. that is a part only of the other: the whole Countrey of *Aram-Naharaim*, or *Mesopotamia*, being divided into two parts; whereof the more fruitful lying Northward, is called *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whose Inhabitants *Xenophon* gives the name of *Syrians*; the barren and more desert lying towards the South, which by the same Author is called *Arabia*. For *Aram-Maachab*, mentioned *1 Chron.* 19. 6. it is conceived to be that part of

Syria

Syria, which was after named *Comagena*, whereof *Samosata* was the *Metropolis*, or Mother City. And as for *Aram-Sobab*, of which and of *Adadexar* the King thereof, there is so frequent mention in the Books of the *Kings* and *Chronicles*, it was the Province lying on the North-East of *Damascus*, and so extending to the banks of the River *Euphrates*, and is the same with that which afterwards was called *Palmyrena*, from the City of *Palmyra*. South-west of which amongst the petty Kingdoms on the North of *Gessur* in the land of *Palestine*, lay the Kingdom of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, confederate with *Ammon*, in the war which they had with *David*, *2 Sam.* 10. 6. Nor did the *Greeks* less extend the name of *Syria*, than the *Hebrews* did the name of *Aram*, if they stretched it not further. Certain I am, that *Strabo* comprehendeth the *Affyrians* in the name of *Syria*, where he affirmeth, that the *Medes* being overthrown. And in *Herodotus* it is said, that those whom the *Barbarians* call *Affyrians*, *Ἰνδοὶ Ἐδδαίον Ἰσθαλόντο Σέσιον*, were called *Syrians* by the *Greeks*. And to that purpose, *Justin* also, *Imperium Assyrii, qui postea Syri dicti sunt, Annos 1300 tenuere*. But these all writ after the time *Syria*, from whence they might more easily furnish themselves with Souldiers out of *Greece*, (as they did most commonly for all their military expeditions) caused all the other parts of their large dominions to be called, in tract of time, by the name of *Syria*. But on the other side, as the *Romans* extended not so far to the East and South, as the *Aram* of the *Hebrews* did; so it contained in the name of *Aram*; as being planted by a people of another race, and of different Fortunes, till brought together under the command of the *Babylonians*. In which regard we will treat severally of the natures of the soil and people; their Originals, Government, and successes, till we have brought them into one hand: and then continue their affairs as one joynr Estate. But first we will survey the ancient and present Fortunes of Christianity, and other Religions herein embraced or tolerated, wherein the whole, according to the bounds and limits before laid down, is alike concerned.

And for Religions in this Countrey here is choice enough; those namely of the *Mahometan*, *Christi-an*, *Pagan*, and one compounded out of all, which is that of the *Druisians*. The *Mahometan* embraced by the generality of the people throughout the whole, and by all that be in any office or authority, is only countenanced and approved of, though all the rest be tolerated. The *Pagan* entertained only in the mountainous Countreys bordering on *Armenia*; inhabited by a people whom they call *Curdi*, or the *Curdens*, supposed to be descended from the ancient *Parthians*, as being very expert in Bows and Arrows, their most usual Arms. A race of people who are said to worship alike both God and the Devil; the one, that they may receive benefits from him; the other, that he may not hurt them. *Se alios deos colere ne profitentur, alios ne necant*, as *Lactantius* doth affirm of the ancient *Graecians*. But their principal devotions are addressed to the Devil only, and that upon good reasons, as themselves conceive. For God they say is a good man, and will do no body no harm; but the Devil is a mischievous fellow, and must be pleased with sacrifices, that he hurt them not. And for the *Druisians* they are conceived to be the remainder of those *Franks*, (by which name the *Turks* call all Western *Christians*) who driven unto the mountains, (when they lost the Sovereignty and possession of the *Holy Land*) and defending themselves by the advantage of the place, could never be wholly rooted out by the *Turks*, contented at the length to afford them both peace, and liberty of their Religion. But they have so forgot the principles of that Religion, that they retain nothing of it but *Baptism*; and not that generally neither; accounting it lawfull most unlawfully to marry their own Daughters, Sisters, or Mothers: and yet conform unto the *Turks* in their habit only, wearing the white *Turbans*, as the *Turks* do; but abhorring Circumcision, and indulging to themselves the liberty of Wine, by law forbidden to the *Turks*. A people otherwise very warlike, stout, and resolute; with great, both constancy and courage, resisting hitherto the attempts of the *Turkish Sultans*. The Countrey they possess environed with the confines of *Joppa*, about *Cesarea Palestine*, betwixt the Rivers of *Jordan* and *Orontes*, extending Eastwards as far as the Plains of *Damascus*: so that here is no part of *Syria*, except *Comagena*, unto which their habitations reach not.

But for the *Christian Faith*, it was first preached here by some of the dispersed Brethren, (which fled from the rage of persecution) in *Phonice* and the City of *Antiochia*; amongst whom *St. Peter*, as he passed through all quarters, *Acts* 9. 31. is by the Fathers said to have been the chief. The Church more fully planted in it by *Barnabas* first, after by *Paul* and *Barnabas* jointly; Who spend there a whole year together, enlarged the borders of the Church; and gained much people, as is said *Acts* 11. v. 19. &c. inasmuch that here the Disciples were first called *Christians*, *v.* 26. Not called so accidentally, as a thing of chance, but on a serious consultation had amongst themselves, and a devout invocation on the name of God, to direct them in it. The word *Χριστιανισμ* used in the Original, importeth somewhat of *Oracular* and *Divine* direction. And certainly it standeth with reason that it should be so. For if upon the giving of a name to *John Baptist*, there was not only a consultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father called to advise about it; and if we use not to admit the poorest child of the Parish into the Congregation of Christs Church by the door of *Baptism*, but by the joynr invocation of the name of God for his blessings on it: with how much more regard of Ceremony and Solemnity, must we conceive that the whole body of Christs people were baptized into the name of *Christians*? And there is some proof of it too, besides probability and conjectures. For *Snidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus*, an old Cosmographer, do expressly say, that in the days of *Claudius Caesar*, ten years after the Ascension of our Lord and Saviour, *Eudius* received Episcopal consecration, and was made Pa-

N n n

triarch

triarh of *Antioch the Great* in Syria, succeeding immediately to St. Peter: then addeth, that at that time the Disciples were first called *Christians*, τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο ἐκ τῆς ἐκκλησίας τοῦ ἀντιόχειου, & ἔκ τῆς ἐκκλησίας τῆς ἑσπέρης, &c. i. e. *Euphrates* their Bishop calling them to a *Solemn Assembly*, and imposing this new name upon them, whereas before they were called *Nazarenes* and *Galileans*: A people so hated by the *Heathens*, that they ceased not to slander them from the first beginning. For as concerning this Sect, we know that it is every where spoken against, said the *Jews of Rome* to the Apostle, *Acts* 28. 22. *Tacitus*, a Roman, but a *Geniile*, goes yet further with them, calling them *homines per flagitia infames*, & *novissima meritis exempla*: the calumny in his time being strong and general, that at their private meetings they devoured Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Sisters. Which defamations notwithstanding, they grew in few years, so to great numbers, that they were a terror to their Enemies; though grievously afflicted, persecuted, and put to several kinds of death, under the ten famous Persecutions, raised against them, by Nero, Anno 67. 2 Domitian, Anno 96. 3 Trajan, Anno 110. 4 Marcus Antoninus, Anno 167. 5 Severus, Anno 195. 6 Maximianus, Anno 237. 7 Decius, Anno 250. 8 Valerianus, Anno 259. 9 Aurelianus, Anno 278. 10 by Dioclesianus, Anno 293. All, but this last especially, so extremely raging, that (as St. Hieron writes in one of his Epistles) there were martyred 5000 for each day in the year, except the first of January, on which they used not to shed blood. But *Sanguis Martyrum semen Ecclesie*. This little grain of Mustard-seed, sowed by Gods own hand, and watered by the blood of so many holy men, grew to great a tree, that the branches of it spread themselves over all the world: and got such footing, even in the Roman Army itself, (men commonly not of the strictest kind of Religion) that when Julian the Apostate had vomited out his soul, with *Vicisti tandem Galilee*, they elected Jovianus, though a Christian, for his Successor: with this acclamation, *Christiani omnes sumus*, We are also Christians. But see how the baptizing of Gods people by the name of Christians, in the City of Antioch, hath drawn me out of my way. I return again, both to the place, and to the Author. In whose evidence, besides what doth concern the imposition of the name of Christian upon the body of the faithful, we have a testimony for St. Peter being Bishop of Antioch, the first Bishop thereof (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at least) as is said positively by Eusebius in his *Chronology*, St. Hieron in his Catalogue of Ecclesiastical writers, Saint Chrysostom in his *Homilie de translatione Ignatii*, Theodoret *Dialog*. 1. St. Gregory *Epist.* lib. 6. cap. 37. and before any of them by Origen, in his *litter Homily* on St. Luke. With reference whereunto, and in respect that Antioch was accounted always, the principal City of the East-parts of the Roman Empire: (the Prefect of the East for the most part residing in it) the Bishop hereof in the first Ages of Christianity, had jurisdiction over all the Churches in the East, as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by Constantine the Great the Provinces of Cilicia and Isauria, with those of Mesopotamia and Osroene were after added; containing 15 Roman Provinces, or the whole Diocese of the Orient. And though by the subtracting of the Churches of Palestine, and the decay of Christianity in these parts by the conquests of the Turks and Saracens, the jurisdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much lessened: yet William of Tyre, who flourished in the year 1130. reciteth the names of 13 Archbishops, 21 Metropolitans, and 127 Episcopal Sees, yielding obedience in his time to the See of Antioch. Since which that number is much diminished, Mahometism more and more increasing, and Christianity divided into Sects and Factions: inasmuch as of three sorts of Christians living in these Countreys, viz. the Maronites, Jacobites, and the Melchites, only the Melchites are subordinate to the Church of Antioch, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And first for the Melchites, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of Antioch, and the greatest body of Christians in all the East; they are so named in way of scorn, by the Jacobite and Maronite Schismatics, separating without just cause from their communion. The name derived from Melch, signifying in the Syriack language a King, or Emperour: because adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and Decisions of preceding Councils, ratified by authority of the Emperour Leo, by whom subscription was required to the Acts thereof; and were in that respect, (as we use to say) of the Kings Religion. Conform in points of Doctrine to the Church of Greece, but that they celebrate divine Service as solemnly on the Saturday, as upon the Sunday: subject to the true and Original Patriarch, who since the destruction of Antioch doth reside in Damascus; and on no terms acknowledging the authority of the Popes of Rome.

Next for the Maronites, they derive that name either from Maroma, one of the principal Villages where they first inhabited; or from the Monastery of Saint Maron, mentioned in the first Act of the Council of Constantinople holden under Menas, the Monks of which called Maronites, were the head of their Sect. Some points they hold, in which they differ from all Orthodox Christians; other in which they differ only from the Church of Rome. Of the first sort, 1 That the Holy Ghost proceedeth from the Father only, without relation to the Son. 2 That the Souls of men were created all together at the first beginning. 3 That male Children are not to be baptized together, but at several times by one and one. 4 That Heretiques returning to the Church are to be re-baptized. 5 That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother till her purification, and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be past, which after the birth of a Male Child must be forty days, of a Female eighty. 6 That the Eucharist is to be given to Children presently after Baptism. 7 That the fourth Marriage is utterly unlawfull. 8 That the Father may dissolve the Marriage of his Son or Daughter. 9 That young men are not to be ordained Priests or Deacons, except they be married. 10 That nothing strangled, or of blood, may be eaten by Christians. 11 That Women in their Monthly courses are not

not to be admitted to the Eucharist, or to come into the Church. 12 And finally (which was indeed their first discrimination from the Orthodox Christians) that there was but one will and action in Christ; the Factors of which opinion had the name of Monothelites. Of the last kind, 1 That the Sacrament of the Lords Supper was to be administered in both kinds, 2 and in Leavened bread; 3 that bread to be broken to the Communicants (and not each man to have his wafer to himself) according to the first institution. 4 Not reserving that Sacrament, 5 nor carrying any part of the consecrated Elements to sick persons in danger of death. 6 That Marriage is nothing inferior to the single life; 7 That no man entereth the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgement; 8 That the Saturday, or old Sabbath is not to be fasted; 9 Nor the Sacrament upon days of fasting to be administered till the Evening. They withdrew themselves from the See of Antioch, and set up a Patriarch of their own, many ages since (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schism, the honourable title of the Patriarch of Antioch. His name perpetually to be Peter, as the undoubted Successor of that Apostle in the See thereof. Dispersed about the spurs and branches of Mount Libanus, where they have many Townships and scattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common speech the true ancient Syriack; that is to say 1 Eden, a small Village, but a Bishops See, by the Turks called Echeran. 2 Hatcheth, 3 Sherry, 4 Bolefa, or Blousfa, little superior to the rest in bigness or beauty, but made the seat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongst them. At such time as the Western Christians were possessed of these parts, they submitted to the Church of Rome; but upon their expulsion by the Turks and Saracens, they returned again to the obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever since depended. His residence for the most part at Tripolis, a chief Town of Syria; but when he came to visit his Churches, and take an account of his Suffragan Bishops (who are nine in number) then at Blousfa, as is said before. Won to the Papacy again by John Baptist a Jesuite, in the time of Pope Gregory the thirteenth, who sent them a Catechism from Rome printed in the Arabian language (which is generally spoken by them) for their instruction in the Rudiments of that Religion: yet so that their Patriarch still retains his former power, and the Priests still officiate by the old Liturgies of those Churches, in the Syriack tongue. So that this reconciliation, upon the matter, is but a matter of complement on the one side, and ostentation on the other; without any increase of Power or Patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the Jacobites, though dispersed in many places of this Countrey; yet since they are more entirely settled in Mesopotamia, where their Patriarch also hath his abode or residence, we shall there speak of them.

The language vulgarly here spoken is the Arabick tongue, continued here ever since the subjugation of these Countreys by the Saracens. But anciently they spake the Syriack and Phœnician languages. Of which, the first (for of the other we shall speak when we come to Phœnicia) was the very same with the Chaldean, (as the learned Brewood hath observed) either originally so, or else received by them when first conquered by the Babylonians. In which respect the Jews, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the language which they brought with them, the name of Syriack; being a compound of the Hebrew and Chaldean tongues: Chaldean for a great part of it, as to the substance of the words; but Hebrew as to the notation of Points, Conjugations, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original speech. And of this more hereafter also, when we come to Palestine. But whatsoever their language was in former time, it is now so overtopped by the Arabick, that it is spoken in four Villages of the Maronites only in all these Countreys; the Arabick being generally used in all the rest, as was said before.

Principal Rivers of these parts, are, 1 Chorsaus, called Chifon by the Hebrews, which hath its fountain in Palestine, but his fall in Phœnicia, not far from Mount Carmel. 2 Orontes, now called Saldino, and by some Writers Jordan the less, ariseth out of the hills called Pieria, not far from Mount Libanus; and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about Apamia, and passing by the great City of Antioch, falleth into the Sea not far from it. It was first called Tiphon, and took this name from one Orontes, who built first the Bridge over it, as we find in Strabo. 3 Eleutherus, which riseth out of some part of Libanus, and glided with a speedy course throw a strangely intricate Channel, into the Mediterranean Sea: guilty of the death of the Emperour Frederick Barbarossa, who falling from his horse as he pursued the Infidels, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lyeth buried at Tyre. It is now called Casmer. 4 Singas, by some said to be called Marfias also, which arising in the mountainous parts of Comagena, and passing by the City of Aleppo, falleth into Euphrates. 5 Euphrates, the most famous River of the East; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1 Carmel, which being properly of Phœnicia, we shall there speak of it. 2 Pieria, out of which the River Orontes hath its first Original. 3 Casius, not far from Antioch, said to be 4 miles high perpendicularly. 4 Libanus, famous for its multitude of Cedars growing thereupon; affording materials unto Solomon for the holy Temple. Besides which it affordeth such store of Frankincense, that some derived the name from liban, signifying Frankincense in the Greek; and so replenished with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen used to sing (as Galen telleth us) that God rained honey; and yearly filled their Pots and Vessels with the sweets thereof. This the most famous and greatest Hill of all these parts, extending in length 150 miles, that is to say from Sidon a City of Phœnicia, to Smyrna, one of the Cities of Cælo-Syria; and taking seven hundred miles in compass. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the Maronite Christians, who to keep that dwelling to themselves without the intermixture of Mahometans, do yearly pay to the Great Turk seventeen Sultanies a man, for every one above twelve years of Age: each

Phœnicia.

each *Sultany* being reckoned at seven shillings and six pence of our money. And yet those *Marenites*, though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the smallest *Sett*, for numbers, in all the East; not estimated to exceed twelve thousand households, by reason of the indisposition of this Mountain, in most places unfit for habitation. For besides the cragginess and steepness of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inaccessible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with snow, not melted in so hot a Climate at the nearest approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this name; the word *Leban*, in the Hebrew and Phœnician language, signifying *White*, or *Whiteness*; even as from the like *whiteness* of snow, the highest part of the *Panaan* hills had the name of *Canus*; and that perpetual Ridge of Mountains, which parts *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. 5 *Anti-Libanus*, opposite to the former, and from that so called; a rich, but little Valley only being interposed; out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring or Fountain, the hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it self. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or excursion of it, called *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives some hint, in which both pass for one, by the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Country was anciently divided into these six parts, viz. 1 *Phœnicia*, 2 *Palestine*, 3 *Syria* specially so called, 4 *Comagena*, 5 *Palmyrene*, and 6 *Cælo-Syria*, or *Syria Cava*. But *Palestine*, coming under a more distinct consideration, we shall now speak only of the rest.

I PHOENICIA.

PHOENICIA is bounded on the East and South, with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Syria*, properly and specially so called; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called by the *Græcians*, from the abundance of *Palm-trees* therein growing, the word *Phœnik* in that language signifying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etymons* and *Originations* pretended for it) the *Palm* was anciently the special *Cognisance* or *Ensign* of this Country; as the *Olive branch* and *Cory of Spain*, the *Elephant of Africk*, the *Camel of Arabia*, and the *Crocodile of Egypt*, being peculiar to those Countries. And in an old Coyn of the Emperor *Vespasian*'s, stamped for a memorial of his conquest of *Judea*, the Impress is a woman sitting in a sad and melancholick posture, at the back of *Palm-trees*, with these two words, *Judea Capta* inscribed thereon: in which, no question may be made, but that the desolate Woman signifyeth the Land of *Judea*, and the *Palm Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being seated immediately on the North, at the back of *Jewry*.

But it was thus first called by the *Græcians* only, the *Latines* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themselves, and the people of *Israel* their next Neighbours, they are called *Canaanites*, or the Posterity of *Canaan*, five of whose Sons, viz. *Zidon*, *Harkî*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chamaithi*, were planted here: the other six inhabiting more towards the South and East, in the Land of *Palestine*. For further evidence hereof we may add these reasons: first, that the same woman which in Saint *Matthews* Gospel, chap. 15. vers. 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by Saint *Mark*, chap. 7. vers. 26. called a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, where mention is made in the Book of *Josiah*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; the *Septuagint* (who very well understood the History and Language of their Country) call them *Baanîthi* or *Phœnicians*, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, the *Pæni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all dispute a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Original*, would answer that they were *Chamaî*; meaning (as Saint *Augustine* that Country-man doth expound their words) that they were Originally *Canaanites*, of the Stock of *Canaan*. And lastly, from the language of it, which anciently was the old Hebrew, *Canaanitish*, or the Language of *Canaan*; spoken both here and in *Palestine* also, before that Country was possessed by the House of *Jacob*: as appears plainly by those names, by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were called, when and before the *Israelites* came first to dwell amongst them, which are merely Hebrew. And so much, as unto the Language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* also, who in the entrance of his Book inscribed *Chanaan*, declares what profit may ensue from that undertaking to the Hebrew Tongue; *cujus Phœnicia lingua dialectus fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* language was a dialect only.

The Country of it self not great, extended in a good length, from the further side of Mount *Carmel*, where it joyns with *Palestine*, to the River *Volanus* on the North, by which parted from *Syria*; but withall so narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-coast; and therefore very rightly called *terra angustissima* by a modern Writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increase of trade (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the natural commodities which the land afforded: yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furnished with Oyl, Wheat, the Best sort of *Balm*, and most excellent Honey; the lower part hereof being designed for the seat of *Ashtor*, of whom *Moses* prophesied, *Deut. 32. v. 24. that he should dip his foot in Oyl*. So that the Country generally, was well-conditioned, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautiful Cities, than such a span of earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianus*, *Acetibis monti Libano Phœnicia Regio, plena gratiarum & venustatis, urbilis decorata magnis & pulchris, &c. &c.* Falling from Mount *Libanus*, lyeth the Country of *Phœnicia*, full of all graces and elegancies, adorned with great and beautiful Cities, of which the most renowned for the fertility of their soyl, and the fame of their achievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The People anciently, by reason of their *Marithæ* situation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almost all the Ports of the then known World, and sending more Colonies abroad upon foreign

Plantæ.

Phœnicia.

Plantations than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenious people, said to have been the first *Navigators*, the first builders of Ships, the first inventors of Letters, (of which hereafter more on some other occasion) and the first authors of *Arithmetick*, the first that brought *Astronomy* to an Art or Method; and the first makers of Glass. Defamed in holy Scripture for their gross *Idolatry*, by which they laid a stumbling-block at the feet of the *Israelites*: *Ashtorah* (or *Asarte*) the Goddess of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or some other, I dispute not here) being so highly prized amongst them, that *Solomon* himself, when he fell from God; made this one of his *Idols*. Once yearly; as *Eusebius* telleth us, they sacrificed some of their Sons to *Saturn*, whom in their language they called *Moloch*. And in the inmost retreats of *Libanus* had a Temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of most filthy lusts; intemperately using the natural Sex, and most unnaturally abusing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Christian* faith prevail so far, as to extinguish these ungodly rites, till *Constantine* finally destroyed both the Temples and *Idols*, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the shame and infamy. St. *Anstin* addeth, that they did prostitute their Daughters unto *Venus*, before they married them: and it is most likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* being so near neighbours, and subject for a time to the same Princes also; could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in so narrow a Region but what are common unto others; and shall here be spoken of. Most proper unto this is the River of *Adonis*, (now called *Canis*), so named most probably from *Adonis* the Dearly of *Venus*, whose rites are here performed with as much solemnity, as they be in *Cyprus*. His Obsequies celebrated yearly in the month of *June*, with great howlings and Lamentations, *Lucian* fabling that the River usually streameth blood upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*;) to give the better colour to their Superstitions. But the truth is, that this redness of the water ariseth only from the Winds; which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the stream a great quantity of *Minium* or red Earth, from the sides of those hills, wherewith the waters are discoloured. Such use can *Satan* make of a natural Accident, to blind the eyes and captivate the understandings of beloved people.

Chief Mountains of this Country are, 1 *Libanus*, spoken of before, which hath here its first advance or rising. 2 *Carmel*, which *Pytolomy* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmost part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Palestine*. Washed on the North side with the Brook *Chison*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea: steep of ascent; and of indifferent altitude; abounding with several sorts of Fruits, Olives, and Vines in good plenty, and stored with herbs both medicinal and sweet of smell. Theretreat sometimes of *Elijah*, when he fled from *Jezebel*; whose habitation here; after his decease; was converted to a Jewish Synagogue. To this place (being then in the possession of the Kings of *Israel*) did that Prophet assemble the Priests of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* follies, caused them to be cut in pieces on the banks of the River *Chison* near adjoining to it. Upon this visible declaring of the power and presence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew persuaded that *Oracles* were there given by God; by *Suetonius* called the God *Carmelus*. Where speaking of *Vespasian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial Dignity, he addeth, *Apud Jdeam Carmeli Dei Oracula consulentem ita confirmare sores, &c.* that consulting in *Judea* with the Oracle of the God *Carmelus*, he was assured that whatsoever he undertook should succeed well with him. Inafter-times the Order of the *Friers Carmelites*, as successors unto the *Children of the Prophets* left here by *Elijah*, had their name from hence: the ruins of whose Monastery are still to be seen, with a Temple dedicated to the blessed *Virgin*; and under that a Cave or Chappel, said to have been the lurking place of that holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Prolemais*, now nothing but a ruine of what it hath been, but formerly of great strength and consequence. Named *Ace* at the first, a refuge for the *Persian* Kings in their wars against *Egypt*; enlarged; or rather new built, by *Ptolomy*, the first of that race, by whom called *Prolemais*, which name still continued; though *Claudius Cesar* planting there a *Roman* Colony, would fain have had it called *Colonia Claudia*: after the conquest of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omer* the great Caliph, it returned towards its first name, and was called *Acce*, or *Acre*; both names still remaining in vulgar speech, as that of *Prolemais* amongst *Latine* Writers. Situate in the flourish of it on a flat or level, in form of a triangular-Shield; on two sides neighboured by the Sea which comes up close to it; on the third looking towards the Campaign: environed with a double wall, to each wall a Ditch, fortified on the outside with Towers and Bulwarks; within the walls so strongly housed, as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of Fortresses, and not ordained for private dwellings. In the midst of the City was one Tower of great strength and beauty, which had sometimes been the Temple of *Belzebub*, and was therefore called the *Castle of Fies*: on the top whereof was maintained a perpetual light, like the *Pharos* of *Egypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to such Mariners, as made towards this Port. Took from the *Christians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them writed by the *Turks* with the rest of *Syria*; it became *Christian* again, An. 1004. in the reign of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of the famous *Godfrey of Bouillon*; and second King of *Hierusalem*, by the help of the *Genoese*; who for their pains had the third part of the City assigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladin* the first, and Richard the first of England, An. 1191. it continued in the possession of the Kings of *Hierusalem*, notably defended by the *Hospitaliers* (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. when besieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand *Turks*, it was forced to yield, though lost by inches: and the *Turks* fearing lest the *Christians* would again attempt it; razed it to the ground: demolishing the

N n n 3

large

Phœnicia.

large walls and arches of it, which lie like massy Rocks on their old foundations. Memorable in those times for the brave service here done by the *Christians* of the Western parts, of which none more renowned than those of our *Richard* the first, and *Edward* the first. This latter here treacherously wounded by an Infidel, with a poisoned Knife, the venom whereof could by no means be asswaged, till his most vertuous wife (herein propoling a most rare example of conjugal affection) sucked it out with her mouth. And for the former, he became so terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that with their Children began to cry, they would say, *Peace, King Richard is coming*: and when their Horses started, they would spur them, saying, *What you fades, do you think that King Richard is here?* By the *Mamelucks*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for habitation rather than defence: not Peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have so many, but for the Haven adjoining: which though a small Bay and of very ill anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Western world, trading here for their Cotton Woolls; With which the neighbouring Countrey is abundantly furnished. I have staid the longer in this place, by reason of the great fame and importance of it, as being the last hold which the *Christians* had of all their conquests; with the loss whereof they laid aside all thoughts of those *holy Wars*: 2 *Tyre*, seated in a rocky Island, about seventy paces from the main Land; well built, and circular of form, as well by Art as Nature impregnablely fortified. A Colony of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Esay*, ch. 23. v. 12. called the *Daughter of Sidon*: but by them built upon an high hill; the ruins whereof by the name of *Palatium*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining still. Removed unto the Islands by *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tzor*, from the rocky situation of it (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the *Greeks* to *Tyris*, and from them taken by the *Latines*, though known to them also by the name of *Sora* (the *Tyrian Purple* being by *Virgil*, and some others of the ancient Poets, called *Sappanum Ostrum*;) and now at last returned to its first original name, vulgarly at this day called *Sor*. A City in eldest times of great trade and wealth: the Prophet *Esay*, ch. 27. v. 8. calling the Merchants hereof *Princes*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of those times both for Learning and Manufactures, especially for the dying of *Purple*, first here invented; and that as *Julius Pollux* saith, by a very accident: the Dog of *Hercules*, (or if not his, some Dog or other) whose lips by eating of the Fish called *Conchilis*, or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reason of the wealth and pleasures, her destruction was fore-signified by the holy Prophets: accomplished in Gods own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*: who with great industry and toil joyned it to the Continent. But his works being demolished by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrrians*, it was after seventy years again re-edified; and having flourished after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the Great was again demolished; to whose indefatigable perseverance nothing was impossible. For having filled the Channel with the stones and rubbish of old *Tyre*, and rammed them in with huge beams brought from *Libanus*, he made a passage for his Army: and having once approached the walls, so over-topped them with Towers, and Frames of Timber, that at last he made himself Master of it; putting to the sword all such as resisted, and causing two thousand of them to be hanged in cold blood, all along the Shore, for a terrour to others. This rendition of the Town was divined by the *Sooth-sayers*, who followed the Camp of *Alexander*, upon a dream which he had not long before. For dreaming that he had disported himself with *Satyres*; the Diviners only making of one word two, found that *Satyres* was no more than *Sa-tyrus*, that is *Tyrus*; and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again both her riches and beauties, she became a confederate of the *Romans* in the growth of their Fortunes; endued by them with the privileges of their City, for her great fidelity. Made in the best times of *Christianity*, the Metropolitan See for the Province of *Phœnicia*, the Bishop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Bishops. Subjected to the *Saracens* in the year six hundred thirty and six; and having groaned under that yoke for the space of four hundred eighty and eight years, was at the last regained by *Guarimund* Patriarch of *Hierusalem*, in the reign of the second *Baldwin*, the *Venetian* contributing their assistance to it, An. 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladine*; but finally brought under the *Turkish* thralldom, Anno 1289. as it still continueth. Now nothing but an heap of ruins, but the very ruins of it of so fair a prospect, as striketh both pity and amazement into the beholders; shewing them an exemplary pattern of our humane frailty. Subject at the present to the *Emir*, or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the best of the *Levant*; but of no great trading. 3 *Sarepta*, by the *Hebrews* called *Sarphat*, situate on the Sea-coast betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*. Memorable in holy Writ for the miracle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raising the poor Widows Son: in Heathen Writers for the purest *Wines*, little inferior unto those of *Falerum* in *Italy*, or *Chios* in *Greece*. Of which thus the Poet;

Vina mihi non sunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,
Quaque Serapiano palmite missa bibas.

In English thus,

I have no *Chian* or *Falernian* Wines,
Nor those of *Gazae* or *Sarepta* Vines.

4 *Sidon* the ancientest City of all *Phœnicia*, and the most Northern of all those which were assigned for the portion of the Sons of *Aser*: beyond which the Countrey of *Phœnicia* having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-coast, beginneth to open towards the East in a fine rich Valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once closed up from the rest of *Syria* with a very strong

Phœnicia.

strong wall, long since demolished. It was so called from *Zidon*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who first planted here; not (as some say) from *Sida*, the daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof: this City being mentioned in the Book of *Josias*, when no such *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightful Soyl, defended with the Sea on one side, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it and *Libanus*; from whence descended those many Springs, with which they watered and enriched their most pleasant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are said to be the first makers of *Crystal Glass*, the materials of the work brought higher from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made suitable in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principal workmen, both for Stone and Timber, in their several buildings of the Temple. The People hereof so flourishing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zachariah*, chap. 9. v. 2. calleth them the *wise Sidonians*. A City which at several times was both the Mother and Daughter of *Tyre*; the Mother of it in the times of *Heathenism*, *Tyre* being a Colony of this People, and the Daughter of it when instructed in the *Christian* Faith, acknowledging the Church of *Tyre* for its Mother-Church. The City in those times very strong both by Art and Nature, having on the North-side a Fort or Citadel, mounted on an inaccessible Rock, and environed on all sides by the Sea: which when it was brought under the command of the *Western Christians*, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and another on the South-side of the Port, which the *Templars* guarded. Won by the *Turks* with the rest of this Countrey from the *Christians*, and ruined by those often interchanges of fortune: it only sheweth now some marks of the ancient greatness; the present *Sidon* standing somewhat West of the old, and having little worth a particular description, in respect of what it was in her ancient glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or serving at the best for Gallies; with a poor *Block-house*, rather for shew than service: the walls of no greater strength, and as little beauty, and the buildings ordinary; but that the *Mosque*, the *Bannia* of Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are somewhat fairer than the rest: yet gives a title at this time to the *Emir* of *Sidon*, one of the greatest Princes of all this Countrey, of whom more hereafter. 5 *Berytus*, originally called *Geris*, from *Gerges* the fifth Son of *Canaan*, took this new name from *Berith*, a *Phœnician* Idol herein worshipped; and now called *Barutti*. Destroyed by *Tryphon* in the wars of the *Syrians* against the *Jews*, it was re-edified by the *Romans*, by whom made a Colony, and honoured with the name of *Julia Felix*; *Augustus* giving it the Privileges of the City of *Rome*. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the *Jews*, much adorned and beautified; and of no mean esteem in the time of the *Christians*, when made an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Tyre*. Being a place of no great strength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath sped better than the rest of these Cities (though stronger than this) retaining still her being, though not all her beauties; well stored with Merchandise, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call *Saint Georges*; in which there is a Castle, and in that an Oratory of the same name also. All sacred to *Saint George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the *Dragon*, and thereby delivered a Kings daughter, but what Kings I know not, nor they neither. 6 *Biblis*, sometimes the habitation of *Hevi*, the fourth Son of *Canaan*, and then called *Hevea*; afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, father and grandfather of *Adonis*, by his daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already spoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of such esteem in the Primitive times of *Christianity*, that it was made a Bishops See; desolate and of no repute since it lost that honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7 *Orthosia*, called also *Antaradus*, because opposite to *Aradus*, another old City of this tract; but in after ages called *Tortosa*, and by that name well known in the Histories of the Holy War, undertaken by the *Western Christians*. To whom it made such stout and notable resistance, that though besieged on all sides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, sitting down before it;) yet after three months hard siege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themselves with spoyling the adjoining Countrey. 8 *Tripolis*, seated in a rich and delightful Plain, more fruitful than can be imagined: one of which fruits they called by the name of *Amazza Franchi*, i. e. Kill Frank, because the *Western Christians*, whom they call by the name of *Franks*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is said to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis*, no less than 200000 Crowns. As for the Town, it standeth about two miles from the Sea, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*; so called because built by the joyned purples of 3 Cities, that is to say, *Tyris*, *Sidon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, till made one of the Episcopal Sees, belonging to the Archbishop of *Tyre* in the Primitive times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal Account by the time that the *Western Christians* warred in the *Holy Land*: when conquered by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the 4 Quarters of their Empire; which were, *Hierusalem* for *Palestine*; *Edeffa* for *Comagena*, or *Mesopotamia*; *Antioch* for *Syria*, and this for *Phœnicia*. Committed the first taking of it, to the custody of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholose* in *France*: whose Posterity, whilst it lasted, had from hence the title of Earls of *Tripolis*. A City, which I know not by what good hap, hath sped better than any of those parts, retaining still as much in strength and beauty as ever it had; if not grown greater by the ruine of all the rest. Situate two mile from the Sea, as before is said, but not above half a mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the West side of it; compassed with a wall, and fortified with seven Towers, of which the fourth is commonly called the Tower of *Love*, because built by an *Italian* Merchant, who was found in bed with a *Turkish* woman; for which he had forfeited his life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring bank of sand, which every day groweth greater and nearer to it; by which in time there is a Prophecy which saith it shall quite be choaked: On both sides of it many store-houses for the Merchant to stow his goods in, and shops to sell them; the way from thence unto the City, having on both sides very pleasant Gardens,

Phœnicia. Gardens, more curiously kept, than usually amongst the *Turks*. The Town it self stretched out in length from South to North, is situate, as before was said, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleasant springs into the chief of their Gardens: in which, and in those towards the Haven, and on other sides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great store of Silk-Worms; selling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. Their buildings generally low, and the Streets but narrow, except that leading towards *Aleppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook, at the East-side of the City are built two Bridges; and on the South-side a strong Castle mounted on an hill, built by the *French* when they had the custody hereof; now garrisoned for the *Grand Seigneur* with 200 *Janizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Phœnicia*, honoured with the residence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the most part dwelling in this Town; and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandretta*, removed hither some forty years ago by the *Turks* appointment; that Haven lying unfenced and more open to Pirates.

That the *Phœnicians* were descended of the Sons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being descendants of that stock, they were at the first governed like them, by the *Chiefs* of their Families, whom they honoured (as most Nations did) with the title of Kings. But most of the *Canaanitish* Kings being overcome and slain by *Josuah*, *Agenor*, a stout and prudent man, one of those many Kings which commanded in those parts of the Countrey, seeing how impossible it was to resist that enemy, borrowed some aid from *Egypt*, where he had his breeding, to make good the Sea-coasts of his Countrey: in which the *Philistines*, who interposed upon those Coasts betwixt him and *Egypt*, concurred also with him. By which assistance, and by the fortifying of *Sidon*, *Tyre*, and *Ace*, (or *Psolomais*) which were all the Cities of this Countrey that were then in being; he did not only preserve his own Estate, from the present danger, but left it so assured to the Kings succeeding; that neither *Solomon* nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Israel* durst attempt upon them. To *Agenor* succeeded his Son *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus*, his elder brother, going into *Greece* in search of his Sister *Europa*, ravished by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his death) from whom, as some conceive, this Countrey had the name of *Phœnicia*. And though I have declared my self for another reason of this name, which I like much better; yet I shall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bochartus*; who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*, (as if the old *Phœnicians* were such Giantly men) which must first be contracted in *Beannack*, then by the *Græcians* turned into *Pheanac*, and at last into *Phœnix*. Such far-fetched and extorted Originations never please my Faacy, who had much rather hearken to the old received opinions touching the first Originals of Names and Nations, where there is not very pregnant reason to persuade me otherwise; than strain my self so far for a new invention, or hearken unto those that do. But for what cause soever they were named *Phœnicians*, certain it is, they were a very active and industrious people, trading in the most parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Beotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain*; *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Carthage*, in *Africk*, were of their foundation. Nay, if we may believe *Bochartus*, there was no Island or Sea-coast in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cædalian*, *Gallick*, or *British* Ocean, wherein they did not keep some Factory, or erect some Colony. What Kings succeeded *Phœnix* in a constant and continued course, I can no where find. Most like it is they were not under the command of any one Prince: and that besides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were some others who called themselves Kings of *Phœnicia* also, as well as they. Of which sort were *Cynirus*, *Paphus*, and *Pygmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblis*, and lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*, as did also *Belus*, who gave some part of that Isle to *Tencher*, as is said before. There is also found mention of one *Phœstis*, a *Phœnician* King, at such time as the *Græcians* conquered *Troy*. After him none, till the subjugation of this Countrey by the *Babylonians*; *Tetramnestus*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in succeeding times, being Tributaries to the *Persians*, and no absolute Princes. Whether it were that the *Phœnicians* were made subject to the Kings of *Tyre*, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preserve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of *Tyre*, came in short time to be of very great repute, and to possess themselves of the coasts of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, and a great part of *Cyprus*; whereby, and by the benefit of their trade and shipping, they grew rich, and powerful, and of great consideration in affairs of the World. The names and history of whom I shall here subjoin, in this ensuing Catalogue of

THE KINGS of TYRE.

A. M.

- 1 *Abibalus*, as *Josephus*; *Abermalus*, as *Theophilus Antiochenus* calleth him, Co-temporary with *Samuel*; supposed to be the same which the Son of *Syrach* mentioneth, *Eccles.* 46. verse 18.
- 2 *Saron*, the Son of *Abibalus*, whom *David*, as *Eusebius* saith, compelled to pay tribute; complained of by that Prophet, *Psal.* 83. v. 7.
- 2931 3 *Hiram*, the Son of *Saron*, confederate with *David*, to whom he sent Cedars, with Carpenters and Masons, towards his buildings in *Jerusalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Philistines*; as he did afterwards to *Solomon* when he built the Temple. Much mentioned in the Books of *Kings*, and *Chronicles*. 53.
- 2955 4 *Balestarnus*, or *Bazarnus*, succeeded *Hiram*. 7.
- 2962 5 *Abdastarnus*, son of *Balestarnus*, slain by the four Sons of his own Nurse, having reigned 9 years; the eldest of which four, did for the space of 12 years usurp the Kingdom.

2983 6 *Astarnus*,

- 2983 6 *Astarnus*, brother of *Abdastarnus*, recovered the Kingdom to his house, out of the hands of *Syria propria*. the *Assyrians*. 12.
 - 2995 7 *Astornus*, or *Athornus*, as *Theophilus* calleth him, the younger brother of *Astarnus*. 9.
 - 3004 8 *Phelles*, the Brother of these three Kings, and youngest Son of *Balestarnus*, reigned eight moneths only.
 - 9 *Ithobalus*, called *Ethbaal*, 1 *Kings* 16. 13. Son of *Astornus*, slew his Uncle *Phelles*, and so regained his Fathers Throne; before which he was the High-Priest of the Goddess *Astarte*, or *Asarta*, (a dignity next to that of the King.) He was the Father of *Jezabel*, the wife of *Ahab*, so often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.
 - 3037 10 *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, Son of *Ethbaal*. 6.
 - 3043 11 *Mettimus*, by some called *Matgins*, Son of *Badezar*, and father of *Elisi*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.
 - 3052 12 *Pygmalion*, the Son of *Mettimus*, who slew *Sichens* the husband of his Sister *Elisi*, to get his riches; but yet was outwitted of his prey: his sister *Elisi* accompanied with her brother *Barca* (the founder of the Noble *Barcine* Family, of which *Annibal* was) and her sister *Anna*, flying into *Africk*; where she built the renowned City of *Carthage*. The names of his Successors we find not, till we come to
 - 13 *Elulau*, descended from a Son of *Pygmalion*, who overthrew the Fleet of *Salmanasser*, the *Assyrian*, in the Port of *Tyre*.
 - 14 *Ethobales*, or *Ethbaal* II. who vaunted himself to be as wise as *Daniel*, and to know all secrets, as saith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, chap. 28. v. 1, 2. And yet not wise enough to preserve his Kingdom from *Nabuchadonosor*; who after a siege of 13 years took the City of *Tyre*, and subjected it unto his Empire.
 - 15 *Baal*, the son and successor of *Ethbaal* the second, but a Tributary to the *Babylonians*. After whose death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by such similar Kings only as were sent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sidon* did recover breath in the fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the unsettledness of the *Persian*: yet being of the *Persian* faction; and having dependence on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therefore deposed *Strato* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrew the City of *Tyre*; in the taking whereof he had spent more time, than in forcing all the Cities of *Asia*.
- After this time *Phœnicia*, being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the fortune of the whole, subject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the house of *Seleucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans*; subject to the *Constantinopolitans*, till the fatal year 636. when subdued by the *Saracens*. Successively conquered by the *Turks*, *Christians*, and after their expulsion by the *Turks* again, then by the *Mamelucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the rest of *Syria*, by *Selimus* the first united to the *Turkish* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late, to the *Emir* of the *Druisians*, (commonly called the *Emir* of *Sidon*) of which people we have spoken before. A people who in the time of *Amurath* the third, were governed by five *Emirs* or Princes; one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who so resolutely resisted *Ibrahim Bassa*, *Ann.* 1585. This *Man-Ogli* then kept his Court or residence at *Andirene*, a strong place situate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he sent to make his peace unto the above-named *Ibrahim*, 320 *Archbuses*, 20 packs of *Andirene* Silks, and 50000 *Ducats*. At a second time he presented him with 50000 *Ducats* more, 480 *Archbuses*, 1000 *Goats*, 150 *Camels*, 150 *Buffes*, 1000 *Oxen*, and 200 *Weathers*. By these rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the present *Emir* of *Sidon*; who since the year 1600. hath reduced almost all the Countreys belonging once to five Princes, under his own Empire; containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barnat*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Ace*, *Saffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his seat of residence, *Nazareth*, *Capia*, *Mount Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This present *Emir*, by name *Faccardine*, was not long since driven out of his Countrey by the *Turks*, and forced to flee to *Florence*: but he again recovered his own, laid siege to *Damascus*, and caused a notable Rebellion in *Asia*; not quenched in a long time after. And finally, having possessed himself of the City and Castle of *Damascus*, prepared for the taking of *Hiersusalem* also; threatening to make the *Christians* once more Masters of it. This was in the year 1623. How he sped afterwards, and whether his Son, as stout and valiant as himself, hath since his death succeeded him in his Estates, I am not able to say: having of late heard nothing of them.

2. SYRIA PROPRIA.

SYRIA PROPRIA, or *Syria* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Palæstina*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Cilicia*; on the South, with *Phœnicia*, and some part of *Cæle-Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the Land of *Hamath*, so often mentioned in the Scriptures, the Kingdom of *Tui* or *Tuu*, next neighbour, and sworn Enemy to *Adad-nir* King of *Aram-Sabab*: who hearing of the great discomfiture which *David* had given unto that King, sent his Son *Joram*, or *Adad-nir*, (for the Scripture calls him by both names) with Presents to him, as well to congratulate his success, as to be assured for time to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in these parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Palæstina* (which we shall meet withal in the course of this work) either built by him or his Posterity. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am persuaded to believe by these following reasons, viz. 1. From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, conjoynd together,

Syria propria. as in *Esfay* 10. 9. and *Ier.* 49. 23. So in other places, viz. *Where are the gods of Hamath and Arphad?* 2 Kings 18. 34. *The Kings of Hamath, and the King of Arphad*, *Esfay* 37. 13. And we know well that *Arvad* was the name of an Island over against the mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, one of the Rivers of this Country: so called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus*; by which this Isle was known unto them. 2ly. By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Solah* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the East, with the King whereof (as bordering Princes use to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the most part were in open war. Of which see 2 *Sam.* 8. 9, 10, & 1 *Chr.* 8. 9, 10. 3ly. From the authority of *Saint Hierom*, who findeth mention in the Prophet *Amos*, ch. 6. v. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the *Great*, determineth it to be that City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principal City of this part, and indeed of *Syria*:) the title of *Great* being added to it, to difference it from some other Cities of this name of inferior note. And 4ly. from comparing the places in Scripture, with the like passage in *Josephus* the Historiographer. The Scripture telleth us, that *Hiersalem* being forced by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekias* the King was brought Prisoner to *Nebuchadnezzar*, being then at *Riblah*, 2 *King* c. 2. v. 6. to *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, v. 21. where the poor Prince first saw his Children slain before his face; and then miserably deprived of sight, that he might not see his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Josephus* where this sad tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblath* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiq.* 1. 10. c. 10. And if we ask *Saint Hierom* what he thinks of *Reblath*, he will tell us that it was *Urbs ea quam nunc Antiochiam vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On these grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of Scripture above-cited; though there were other Towns and Territories of the same name also.

The Countrey is naturally fertile; the hedges on the high-way sides affording very good fruits, and the adjoining fields affording to the Passenger the shade of Fig-trees. Were it not naturally so, it would not be much helped by Art or Industry; as being very meanly peopled, and those few people without any encouragement either to plant fruits, or manure the Land. Their Sheep are commonly fair and fat, but so overlaid in the tail, both with flesh and fleece, that they hang in long wreaths unto the ground, dragged after them with no small difficulty. *Pliny* observes it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* Sheep were a Cubit long, and had good store of wooll upon them. *Natur. Hist.* 1. 8. c. 48. And modern Travellers report, that the tails of these sheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and sometimes 30 pounds and upwards. The like hath also been affirmed of the sheep of *Palstine* comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the reason why the rumps or tails of sheep (and of no beast else) were ordained to be offered up in sacrifice, of which *Levit.* 3. v. 9. But besides the store of Wooll which they have from the sheep, they have also great plenty of Cotton Wooll, which groweth there abundantly; with the seeds whereof they sow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The stalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as tough as a Beans; the head round and bearded, in the size and shape of a *Medlar*, and as hard as a Stone: which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white soft *Bombast* intermixed with seeds; which parted with an instrument, they keep the Seeds for another sowing, and sell the Wooll unto the Merchant: a greater quantity thereof issuing from that little shell, than can be imagined by those who have not seen it.

The people heretofore were very industrious, especially about their Gardens; the fruitful effects whereof they found in the increase of their Herbs, and Plants. Whence the Proverb, *Multa Syorum Olera*. But withall they were observed to be very gluttonous, spending whole dayes and nights in feasting; great scoffers, and much given to laughter. Crafty and subtle in their dealings, not easily to be trusted but on good security: and so were the *Phanicians*, their next neighbours also. Hence came the *Greek* Adage which *Suidas* speaketh of, *Συροι οὐδὲ δούλῳ, Συρί contra Phaniceῖ*, used by them when two crafty Knaves endeavoured to deceive each other. They were noted also to be superstitious, great Worshipers of the Goddesses *Fortune*, but greater of their *Syrian* Goddesses, whatsoever she was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a womanish and effeminate nation, prone unto tears, and such as on the death of their friends would hide themselves in caves from the sight of the Sun. *Hierodotus* addeth, that they were wavering and unconstant, lovers of Playes and publick Pastimes, and easily stirred up unto Innovations. But at this time, they are almost beaten out of all these humours, having been so often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown servilely officious to them that govern them: not without cause, defective in that part of industry which before enriched them.

Where by the way we must observe, that this Character of the people, and that of the Countrey belong not to this part alone, exclusively of those which follow; but to all *Syria*, and every part and Province of it, except *Phoenicia*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its character by it self. The whole by *Protony* divided, besides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Celo-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and Subdivisions, as 1 *Pieria*, 2 *Cassotis*, from the hills adjoining. 3 *Seleucia*, 4 *Apamea*, 5 *Laodicea*, 6 *Cyrestica*, 7 *Chalcidice*, and 8 *Chalybanotis*, from their principal Cities. Of which in all he mulders up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of some note, most of them now grown out of knowledge, and many of them of no mark or observation in the course of business. So that omitting his method, we will follow our own, and take notice only of such places as anciently were, or at this present are, of most observation and importance in the course of Story: with reference notwithstanding to the subdivisions made by *Protony*, as they come in my way, reckoning *Cyrestica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Cassotis*, and the territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamea*, into *Syria Propria*; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*.

First

First then to begin with those Cities which lye most towards the East, we have in *Cyrestica*, 1. *Zugma*, *Syria propria*. on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, memorable for the passage of *Alexander the Great*, who there passed over his Army on a Bridge of Boats. 2 *Berraa*, supposed by some both ancient and modern Writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo*, but the position of the place agreeth not with that supposition; *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Cosmographers*, in the 72 degree of Longitude, and the 38 of Latitude: whereas *Berraa* is assigned by *Protony*, to the 36 degree of Latitude, and the 73 of Longitude. Besides that, the River *Singas*, on which *Aleppo* is situate, keepeth it self almost on an even course in the Latitude of 37. between 20. and 30 minutes over: which is more by a degree and a half than the site assigned unto *Berraa*. 3 *Cybrus*, as in the *Latine* Copies of *Protony*, mistook for *Syria*, once the chief City of this part, from hence called *Cyrestica*. 4 *Heraclea*, near which *Misra* had a Temple: in which, as in that sacred to her in *Laodicea*, they used once yearly to offer a *Virgin* for a sacrifice; but afterwards on the sight of that gross impiety, changed it to an *Hari*. 5 *Regis*, now *Rugia*, two dayes journey from *Antioch*, took by the *Chritians* in the beginning of the wars for the Holy Land. 6 *Hierapolis*, of great renown in those dark times of ignorance and Idolatry for the *Syrian* Goddess therein worshipped; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the Holy City: being formerly by the *Gracians* called *Callinice*; by the *Syrians*, *Magog*; one of the first seats of *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The Goddess so esteemed of in those wretched times, that from all parts, *Assyria*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and costly offerings. *Nero* himself, who scoffed at all Religions else, being for a while a great Votary of this *Syrian* Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and desied her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Selencus*, in the midt of the City, compassed with a double wall, about the height of 300 fathom: the roof thereof inlaid with Gold, and made of such a fragrant and sweet-smelling wood, that the clothes of them which came thither retained the scent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places inclosed for Oxen, and Beasts of sacrifice; and not far off a Lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their sacred fishes: the Priests attending here for their several Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, besides many more subservient Ministers. The tricks and jugglings of these Priests to deceive the people, he that list to see, may find them copiously described in the *Metamorphosis* of *Apuleius*: which, changing but the names and times, may serve for a relation of those gulleries and Arts of *Leger-de-main* which the *Friers* and *Pardoners* have practised in the Church of *Rome*. 7 *Chalyban*, whence the parts adjoining were called *Chalybanotis*; conceived by *Pestellus*, and some others to be *Chalepinum*, or *Aleppo*, but on no good ground: this City having one degree less of Northern Latitude, than *Berraa* had. 8 *Barbarisus*, in the same subdivision, near the banks of *Euphrates*. 9 *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwise memorable. 10 *Temedissa*, another Town of the same division, and as little famous. 11 *Seleucia*, so named from the Founder of it, the first Eastern Monarch of that race, and the greatest Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, sixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochus*, six by the name of *Laodice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Apamea* his first wife; besides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Asia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this the Countrey hereabouts had the name of *Seleucia*. 12 *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his Mother, from which the Region adjoining is called *Laodicea*: Built by him in the place where formerly stood the City *Rhamantus*, so called from a certain Shepherd, who being strook with a flash of lightning, cryed out amazedly *Rhamantus*, that is to say, *Dens ab excessu*; before which time it had been named *Lenca Alte*, from the whiteness of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is situate: the Countrey round about commended anciently for the best Wines, and choise of very excellent Fruits. 13 *Apamea*, so named in honour of *Apamea*, the wife of *Seleucus*; which together with *Laodicea* and *Seleucia* before mentioned, having the same founder, and maintaining a strict league of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Sisters. From this the Countrey near is called *Apamea*. 14 *Emesa*, (now *Hama*) the Episcopal See of *Eusebius*, hence called *Emesenus*, who flourished in the time of *Constantinus*, the Son of *Constantine*: in whose name are extant certain Homilies, justly conceived to be of a later date. The City seated in a spacious and fruitfull plain of *Apamea*, watered with many pleasant and cheerfull Riverets: once of great note, as may easily be conjectured from the walls hereof, which are still perfect and entire, built of polished stone, and of very large circuits; but the dwelling-houses so decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy observation. 15 *Epiphania*, in the cantred or subdivision of *Cassotis*; called at first *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the founder of it, and upon that account mistaken by *Saint Hierome* for another Town of the same name, in the Tribe of *Nephthali*; so different from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we shall then hereafter when we come to *Palstine*) that they can by no means be the same. But that old Town being gone to ruine, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*; obeyed therein as *Josephus* telleth us, by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* still called it *Amathas*, as in former times, *Antiqu.* 1. 1. c. 7. 16 *Laodicea*, which still preserveth its old name, being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the wars of the Holy Land, especially for the death of *R Baldwin* the first, Brother of *Godfrey of Bouillon*, and second King of *Hiersalem*, Anno 1118. 17 *Gabal*, the *Gabal* of *Protony*, and others of the ancient Writers, situate on the South of *Laodicea*, from which twelve miles distant; mentioned *Psal.* 83. as a confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumcised Nations, in their hatred and designs against the *Israelites*: at this day called *Gaballa* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembered in the Stories of the Holy Wars. 18 *Albaria*, distant two dayes march from *Antioch*, remem-

Syria propria remembered also in the wars of the Holy Land. 19 *Aradus*, one of the Co-founders of *Tripolis*, situate in a rocky Island of a mile in compass, directly opposite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and distant from the Continent about twenty furlongs. So called from *Arad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that name in the Prophet *Ezek.* ch. 27. v. 8, 11. This once a Kingdom of it self, containing not this Island only, but some part of the Continent; especially about *Antaradus* (so called because built over against it) situate on the Northern banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have spoken in *Phœnicia*. 20 *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; so named of *Daphne*, one of the Mistresses of *Apollo*, who was here worshipped by the name of *Apollo Daphneus*, and had here his Oracle and his Groves, with other the Additions appertaining unto those Idolatries: as much esteemed of, but more sumptuous than those of *Delphos*. The Grove about ten miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypresses*, and other trees, so tall and close to one another, that they suffered not the Sun to enter in his greatest heats: the ground perpetually covered with the choicest Tapestry of Nature; watered with many a pleasant stream, derived from the *Casalian* Fountains as it was given out; and yielding the most excellent Fruits both for taste and tincture, to which the wind and air participating the sweetness of the place, did add a most delightful influence.

A place devised for pleasure, but abused to lust: he being held unworthy of the name of a man, who transformed not himself unto a Beast, or trod on this unholy ground without his *Curtesan*, inasmuch as they which had a care of their good names, did forbear to haunt it. A fuller description of it he that lifts to fee, may find in the first Book and 18 chapter of *Saxomens Ecclesiastical History*, who is copious in it. The Temple said to have been built by *Seleucus* also, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperor; and therefore much resorted to by *Julian* the *Apistate*, for that purpose also. But the body of *Babylas* the Martyr and Bishop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the command of his Brother *Gallus*, then created *Cæsar* by *Constantine*, the Devil and his Oracles were both frightened away, as the Devil did himself confess to *Julian*: Who being desirous to learn here the success of his intended expedition into *Persia*, received this Answer, that no Oracle could be given so long as those divine bones were so near the Shrine. Nor was it long after, before the Idol and the Temple were consumed by a fire from Heaven; as was avowed by those who observed the fall of it: though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Christians*, and in revenge caused many of their Churches to be burned to ashes. 21 *Antioch*, situate in that part hereof which is called *Cæsotis*, first built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Asia*, by whom named *Antigonia*; but finished and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and slain him at the battle of *Issus*. Built near the place, and partly out of the ruins of an ancient City, in the second Book of *Kings* called *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*; *Hamath* the Great in the list of *Amos*; by *Josaphus* and the *Syrians*, *Reblata*. Memorable in those days for the Tragedies of *Jehonahaz* and *Zedechias*, Kings of *Judah*: the first of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty, by *Pharaoh Neco* King of *Egypt*, 2 *Kings* 23. 33. the other of his Eyes and Children by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was said before. In following times it was by some *Greek* Writers called *Epidaphne*, from the nearness of it to that Grove: as afterwards in the times of *Christianity*, by the name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God, either from the many miracles there done in the Primitive time; or from the great improvement which the *Christian* faith did here receive, where the *Disciples* first obtained the name of *Christians*. The Royal Seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*, and in the flourish and best Fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary residence of the *Præfekt* or Governour of the Eastern Provinces; next of the *Præfektus Prætorio Orientis*, who had not only the superintendency over the Diocese of the *Orient*, though that large enough; but also of the Dioceses of *Egypt*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending to his jurisdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured also with the residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, especially of *Vernus* and *Valens*, who spent here the greatest part of their times; and from the first dawning of the Gospel, with the seat of the *Patriarch*. A Title of such eminency in all times of the Church, the second in account to the See of *Rome* (till *Constantinople* being made the Imperial City, got precedence of it) that there are at this time no less than four great Prelates which pretend unto it: that is to say, the true *Patriarch*, governing the *Christians* of those parts, whom they call *Syrians* or *Melchites*; the *Pseudo-Patriarch* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the greater credit to their *Schism*, do assume this Title; and finally a titular *Patriarch* nominated by the Pope, who since the time that the *Western Christians* were possessed of these Eastern Countreys, hath assumed a power unto himself of nominating *Patriarchs* for *Alexandria*, *Hierusalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City seated on both sides of the River *Orontis*, about twelve miles distant from the shores of the *Mediterranean*; the River *Parfar* passing on the South-side of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration; compassed with a double wall, the outermost of which was of stone, the other of Brick, with four hundred and sixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Castle at the East-end thereof; and on the other side defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was adjoining a deep Lake, coming out of the River *Parfar*, before mentioned. Adorned in former times with many sumptuous Palaces, and magnificent Temples, answerable to the reputation of so great a City: till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamelukes*, men careless of all State and beauty in their fairest Cities, it began to grow unto decay. Recovered by the *Western Christians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a siege of 7 months, June 3. Anno 1098. confirmed in their possession by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very fight hereof within few days after, (June 28.) obtained against

Cor-

Com.igena

Corbanas, Lieutenant to the *Persian Sultan*; in which, with the loss of four thousand and two hundred of their own, they slew a hundred thousand of the Enemy. The Town and Territory given by the Conquerours to *Bohemund* a noble *Norman*, and Prince of *Tarentum*: who by practising with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the chief Towers thereof, afterwards called *St. George's Tower*, was secretly let into the City, and so made way for all the rest. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as some say, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his son, about ten years after; succeeded in this principality by *Tancred* and *Roger*, Princes of great renown in those holy wars: which last unfortunately slain by the *Turks*, not far from *Aleppo*, in the year 1120. *Baldwin* the second having revenged his death by a signal Victory, joynted this estate to the Kingdom of *Hierusalem*. Betrayed about sixty years after this, that is to say, in the year 1188. it came into the power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Egypt* and *Damascus*; and therewithal no fewer than five and twenty Cities which depended on the fortunes of it: the glories of this famous City so declining after this last Tragedy (but whether laid desolate of set purpose, or destroyed by the injury of the time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the sepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own sad ruins; hardly preserving the repute of a sorry Village. Such is the instability of all worldly glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembered the same day with *Antioch*.

As for the story of this Province, as a state distinct, we find it had a King of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the Kingdom of *Toi*, or *Tou* before remembre[d];) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Isles adjoining. Vassals in time succeeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who joined it over all the Sea-coasts hereof, and consequently had great influence on the Inlands also. And it continued in this State till the *Affirian* Kings began to turn their forces Westward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglah Phileser*, after the subversion of the Kingdom of *Damascus*; or by *Salmanasser*, after the destruction of that of *Israel*. The proud but dreadful vantage which *Senacherib*, the Succedour of those mighty Monarchs, made to *Hecchiab*, viz. where are the Kings of *Hamath* and *Arphad*, shews clearly that those Kingdoms had been conquered not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanasser*, or *Tiglah Phileser*. Afterwards in the struggles betwixt the *Babylonians*, and *Egyptians*, for the chief command, it was a while at the devotions of the King of *Egypt*, it being at *Reblata* in this Province, that *Jehonahaz* King of *Judah* was put into bonds, by the command of *Pharaoh Neco*, as was said before. But *Neco* being not long after vanquished by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown; and after followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Syria*.

3. COMAGENA.

COMAGENA is bounded on the East, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the West, with the Mountains called *Amanus*, which divide it from *Cilicia*; on the North, with *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with *Palmyrene*. Called also *Euphratenis* and *Euphratesia*, when a *Roman* Province; by reason of its situation bordering on that River.

The reason of the name I find not amongst my Authors: but find that many learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria*, which the Scriptures call *Syria Maacha*, mention whereof is made 1 *Chron.* cap. 19. vers. 6. gain-sayed by others, because they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manasser*; but with no great reason as I take it. For being it is joyned (in the 1. of *Chron.* 19. v. 6. above-mentioned) in the same action with *Mesopotamia*, and *Syria Sobah*; and not so only, but placed between them in the Method of that holy Pen-man, I dare not think but that they were all very near neighbours, and ranked according to the natural situation of them. Which agreeth very well with the site of *Comagena*, having *Mesopotamia* on the East, and *Aram-Sobah* on the South. Nor is it any stronger proof unto the contrary, that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manasses*; than if a man should say that there is no such Province as *Mansfield* in *High Germany*, because there is a Town of that name in *England*; or no such place as *Savoy* amongst the *Alpes*, because there is house of that name in *London*.

As for the people hereof, besides what they have common with the rest of the *Syrians*, they were of old much given unto *Divinations*, and for that cause derided thus in the sixth *Satyr* of *Juvenal*,

*Spondet amatores tenerum vel divitiis orbis
Testamentum ingens, calidae pulvisque Columbe
Tractato Armenius vel Comagenus Aruspex.
Pectora pulchrum rimabimur, extra Catelli,
Interdum & pueri. Faciat quod deserat ipse.*

Thus Englished by my honoured friend Sir Robert Stapylton,

A childless rich mans Legacy, or young love,
Are found 't' h' Lights of a warm trembling Dove,
By *Comagene* Sooth-sayers, they look into
A dead Chicks breast, the same th' *Armenians* do.

O o

They

only, but founded plainly on the Scriptures, of which see 1 King. 11. v. 23, 24. the Scriptures after this taking no notice of any other Kings of Syria (by the name of Kings of Syria) but of those that reigned in Damascus; who in short time had swallowed up the petit Kingdoms of Gessur, Ish-tok, Rehob, besides that of Sobab before mentioned.

The KINGS of SYRIA or DAMASCUS.

- 1 Adad, the Friend and Confedrate of Adad-ezar King of Sobab, in whose quarrel he was vanquished and slain by David.
- 2 Rezin, of whom the Scripture faith, in the 2 of Chron. that when David slew them of Sobab, he fled from Adad-ezar his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to Damascus, and dwelt therein, and reigned in Damascus.
- 3 Adad II. an Idumean, supposed to be of the family of Adad-ezar, but rather as I think of Adad, for fear of David fled to Egypt, where he married Taphnes, the Queens Sister: and hearing that both David and Joab were dead, returned again into his Countrey, and as some write, expelled Rezin out of Damascus, and reigned there as King.
- 4 Hezion, Successor unto Adad.
- 5 Tabrimon, the son of Hezion, as is said 2 King. 15. 18.
- 6 Ben-hadad, the son of Tabrimon, hired by Asa King of Judah, to aid him in his wars against Baasha of Israel.
- 7 Ben-hadad II. son of the former, twice invaded Israel in the reign of Ahab; but both times notably repulsed; the first time by a fall of 700 men at the siege of Samaria; the next at Aphec, where with the like number in effect he was taken prisoner, and his Army routed.
- 8 Hazael, Captain of the host to Ben-hadad, anointed King of Syria by the Prophet Elisha, whom God appointed so to do, that by his hands he might avenge himself on Ben-hadad, whom Hazael slew; but he proved as ill a neighbour to the Kings of Israel, as those before him. He attempted upon Judah also in the time of Joash, but bribed with the treasures of the Temple, he withdrew his forces.
- 9 Ben-hadad III. Son of Hazael, discomfited in three set Battels by Joash King of Israel.
- 10 Ben-hadad IV. son of Ben-hadad the third.
- 11 Ben-hadad V. son of Ben-hadad the fourth.
- 12 Ben-hadad VI. son of Ben-hadad the fifth, in the time of one of which three Kings, but which one we find not for a certain, Jeroboam the son of Joash King of Israel, subdued both Chatham, and Damascus: of which see 2 King. 14. v. 18.
- 13 Rezin II. son of Ben-hadad the sixth, and the last King of Damascus, who joyning with Pekah King of Israel, against Ahaz of Judah, enforced him to call unto his aid Tiglath Phalaser, King of Assyria; by whom Rezin was taken and beheaded, and the City of Damascus won; the Kingdom of Syria by that means united to the Assyrian Empire.

After this time, the Syrians continued subject to the Babylonian and Assyrian Monarchs: and in the overthrow of that Empire by the Medes and Persians, became a part of their estate: remaining so till the first battel betwixt Alexander and Darius, fought near Issus in Cilicia. The victory wherein falling to the Macedonians, gave him without more trouble than the siege of Tyre, the possession of Syria and Phœnicia. He dying not long after his conquest of Persia, this Countrey lay as it were at stake betwixt Ptolemy King of Egypt and Antigonus the chief Lord of Asia: but the possession of it, together with the rest of the Persian Empire, in both Asias, fell in conclusion to the share of Seleucus, for his many great and signal victories surnamed Nicanor; a man strangely preferred. For being at the first, Governour of Chælia only, he was forced to leave Babylon, and forsake his Province for fear of Antigonus, then dreadful to all the Macedonian Captains; and to flee into Egypt, where he became Ptolemies Admiral. After which Ptolemy fighting a pitched field with Demetrius, son to Antigonus, took Seleucus with him, and having won the battel, gave him aid and license to recover his former government. Seleucus well-beloved of the people, soon made himself Matter, not of Chælia only, but of all the Persian Provinces beyond Euphrates: and not long after (being seconded by his good friends Ptolemy, Cassander, and Lysimachus) he encountered Antigonus at Ipsus in Ionia, where Antigonus himself was slain, and his whole Army routed. This Victory made Seleucus Lord of all Asia, from whence passing over into Europe, he vanquished and slew Lysimachus: Seven months after which Victory, he was slain by Ptolemy Cerannus, whose Parron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the last survivor of all Alexanders Princes, and the only possessor of all the Dominions which his Matter had, by the way of conquest, Egypt excepted. His Successours, although they were Lords of all Asia, yet since in Syria they kept their residence, to the end that they might the better furnish themselves with Souldiers out of Greece, upon all occasions, as was said before, they were commonly called the Kings of Syria. But long they held not in that greatness of estate and power, which Seleucus left them: though being a full-bodied tree, and of several limbs, it endured the lopping off of many branches, and many a sad blow at the very root of it, before it fell. For in the time of Seleucus Callinicus, the fourth of this house, Asaces a noble Parthian recovered from it all the Provinces of the Persian Empire, lying on that side of Euphrates; and erected the so much celebrated Parthian Kingdom, whereof more in Persia.

And

And in the reign of Antiochus Magnus, so called for his Victories in Egypt, Judæa, and Babylonia, the Romans extorted from it all the Asian Provinces, on this side Mount Taurus, not wanting many provocations to incite them to it: for he not only had made war against Ptolemy Philopator King of Egypt, whom the Romans had taken into their protection; but stirred up the Cities and States of Greece against them: invaded Lysimachia, and some other parts of Europe, in defiance of them, and had received Annibal the Carthaginian, and Thuas the Ætolian, their most mortal Enemies, into his Dominion, governing his Councils by the influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that ambition and avarice, to add to their fame and Empire by the overthrow of so great a Prince, did persuade much with them. So that the point being brought to a ready issue, they pleaded it on both sides in the battel of Magnesia, a City of Lydia; to which Antiochus brought an Army of 300000 foot, and as many armed Chariots, besides store of Elephants, if the Roman Writers be not over-lavish in their reports. But rejecting the advice of Annibal, and committing his affairs wholly to Evil-Counselors, he was vanquished by no more than four Legions of Enemies; and for his peace compelled to quit all his Asian Provinces, on that side of Taurus, and to pay 15000 Talents in ready money for the charge of the war. The rest of his estates they were content he should enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile cessisset* (as Florus handsomly puts it on him) because he had so easily relinquished that. Afterwards in the civil broils among themselves, about the succession of the Kingdom, Alexander King of the Jews, took from them many of their best Towns in Palestine, as Joppa, Gaza, Anthedon, Azotus, Rhinocorura, almost all Samaria, and Gaulonitis, with Sybopolis, Gadara, and many other strong Towns in celo-Syria. Finally, when they had consumed almost all the Royal race, and changed their Kings no less than ten times in 40 years (a sure sign of a falling and expiring Kingdom) they were fain to cast themselves upon Tigranes King of Armenia, a puissant and successful Prince, till engaged in the quarrel of Antiochus against the Romans: by whom stripped of all his estates on this side Euphrates, he was fain to content himself with his own Armenia; leaving Syria to the absolute disposal of Pompey, who presently reduced it to the form of a Province. This said, we have not much more to do with the house of Seleucus, but to lay down their names, and times of their several governments, till we draw towards the last end of

The MACEDONIAN KINGS of SYRIA.

A. M.

- 3654 1 Seleucus Nicanor, the first King of this house. 31.
- 3685 2 Antiochus, surnamed Soter, or the Saviour; memorable for nothing so much, as marrying with Stratonice his Fathers wife, in his Fathers life-time.
- 3704 3 Antiochus II. by his flattering Courtiers surnamed Theos, or the God; but being poisoned by his wife he proved a mortal.
- 3719 4 Seleucus II. surnamed by the like flattery Callinicus, or fair Conquerour; because shamefully beaten by the Parthians.
- 3739 5 Seleucus III. called for the like reason Cerannus, or the Thunderer; the eldest son of Callinicus.
- 3742 6 Antiochus III. surnamed Magnus, the younger son of Callinicus, a Prince that imbraced many great actions, and was fortunate in his successes beyond Euphrates: he plagued the Jews, but lost all Asia Minor unto the Romans.
- 3778 7 Seleucus IV. called Philopator, the son of Antiochus, who first began to cast his eye upon the riches of the Temple at Hierusalem.
- 3790 8 Antiochus IV. surnamed Epiphanes, or the Illustrious, but more truly Epimanes, or the mad, the great scourge of the Jews; brother of Seleucus Philopator. With whom beginneth the story of the first Book of the Maccabees.
- 3802 9 Antiochus V. called by the name of Eupator, the son of Epiphanes; who by Lysius his Captain tyrannized over the poor Judæans, for the little time that he reigned; as did also
- 3804 10 Demetrius, surnamed Soter, son of Seleucus Philopator, by the hands of Nicanor: having possessed himself of the Diadem by the death of Eupator, slain in his favour by the Souldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards deposed for a time by Alexander Bala, pretending himself to be the son of Eupator, supported herein by the Antiochians.
- 3814 11 Alexander Bala, discomfited in his first battel by Demetrius, whom he slew and vanquished in the second; married Cleopatra Daughter of Ptolemy Philometor, by whose aid he was victorious. But a quarrel breaking out between them, Ptolemy invaded Syria, and caused himself to be crowned King of it; Alexander being slain by some of his Souldiers.
- 3819 12 Demetrius II. surnamed Nicanor, Son of Demetrius the first, recovered his Fathers Kingdom, a friend of the Maccabees, but so cruel to his own people, that he was driven out of his Kingdom by Tryphon General of his Armies.
- 3821 13 Antiochus VI. surnamed Enthous, the son of Alexander and Cleopatra, advanced unto the Throne by Tryphon, and after slain by him to make way for himself unto the Diadem.
- 3824 14 Tryphon, called also Diodorus, having driven out Demetrius, and slain Antiochus, made himself King.

MOUNT HERMON.



IN our passage out of *Cælo-Syria* into *Palestine*, we must cross Mount *Hermion*; a ledge of Hills; which beginning at the East point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places, and by several Nations called by divers names. By *Ptolomy* called *Alfadamus*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; by the *Phanicians*, *Syrion*; and by that name remembered in the Book of *Psalms*. But *Alfadamus* they are called only where they border upon *Cælo-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Trachonitis* from *Arabia Deserta*, they are called by *Moses* and the Scriptures *Hermion*, part of the Kingdom of *Og*, the King of *Basan*, as is said, *Joshuah*, ch. 12. v. 6. *Syrion* by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed; *Dent. ch. 3. v. 9*. Running farther after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead* or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonitis*, after the name of the Region along which they pass, and are conceived to be the highest part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long ridge of Mountains which there take beginning. And so we are to understand the words of the Prophet *Jeremy*, saying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to say, that as the head is the highest part of a man; so these Hills, or this part of them, was the highest of all the branches, or spurs of *Libanus*, called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that heap of stones which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a witness of the Covenant which was made betwixt them, *Gen. 31. v. 27*. the word signifying in the Original, *an heap of Witnesses*. And *Laban* said, *This heap is a Witness betwixt me and thee this day; therefore was the name of it called Galeed*, ver. 28. By these Hills, and the main body of the *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phenicia* and *Idumea* on the West; the land of *Palestine* is so shut up on every side, that no Fortrefs can be stronger by wit or Art, than that Countrey by Nature: the passages in some parts so narrow, as hardly to afford passage for a single person. *Claudius* undiq; montibus, hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concussis *Torrentium*, inde altis & implexis anfractibus sic contractis, ut per angustos collis vix pateat transitus viatori, as my Author hath it. I had almost forgot to add, that that part of these hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the name of *Hermion*, is in one place thereof called *Sihon*, as *Dent. 4. v. 48*. where it is said, that the *Israelites* possessed the Land from *Aroer* on the bank of the River *Arnon*, even to Mount *Sihon*, which is *Hermion*. As also that one of the highest tops or Summits of it, had the name of *Amans*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the fourth of the *Canticles*; by some mistaken for *Amans*, a branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the Lesser *Asia*, with which *Solomon* had but small or no acquaintance. And so having cleared our selves of so much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we pass over to *Palestine*: where we shall meet with it again, (or rather with the Western parts and branches of it) under the names of *Gilead* and *Trachonitis*, as a part of that Countrey.

OF PALESTINE.



PALESTINE is bounden on the East, with the Hills last mentioned, by which parted from from *Cælo-Syria*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, and some part of *Phanicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus*, which divides it from *Syria*, and the rest of *Phanicia*; and on the South, with some part of *Arabia Deserta*.

It was first called *Palestine* from the *Philistines*, the most potent Nation of those parts. A name first found in the History of *Hærodotus*, but generally used in times succeeding, by the *Greeks* and *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adequate name of the whole Countrey, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more restrained, and properly belonging to so much hereof, as was in the possession of the Tribes of *Israel*. And of this sort, are 1 *Canaan*, or the Land of *Canaan*, so called from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*, by whom first peopled after the flood. 2ly, The Land of *Promise*, because by God promised to *Abraham*, and his seed, for an habitation; 3ly, *Israel*, from the *Israelites*, or sons of *Jacob*, whose surname was *Israel*; 4ly, *Judea*, and by us *Jewrie*, from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most pre-eminent of the Tribes of *Israel*; And 5ly, *Terra Sancta*, or the Holy Land, because the subject of the greatest part of the Holy Scripture; and that the work of our Redemption was herein accomplished by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithstanding we must know, that though these names do many times by a *Synechdoche*, express the whole Countrey of *Palestine*; yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Israelites* were ever Masters of the whole: except only in the time of *David*, and of some of the *Macedonian* Princes, as also in some part of the reign of *Herod the Great*; all which had the good fortune to command it totally.

But being the most considerable people of it were the Tribes of *Israel*; we will first look upon the Countrey People under that capacity. And for so much hereof as was held by them, it is situate between the third and fourth Climates; the longest day being fourteen hours and a quarter. The whole length but 200 miles, and not above 80 in breadth; yet was of such a fruitful soil, that before the coming in of the *Israelites*, it had 30 Kings: and after the coming in of that people, so extremely populous, that *David* numbered a Million and 300000 fighting men, besides those of the Tribes of *Levi* and *Benjamin*. Not of the fruitfulness hereof more shortly.

As for the People they were by composition of a middle stature, but strong of body: in their best times a murmuring and stiff-necked generation, never well pleased either with God or Man, with their Priests or Princes; seldom conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much constant to themselves: So crippled in their goings betwixt Superstitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly: Idolatrous above measure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon*: and after that as superstitious and severe, in the point of their Sabbath; as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worship of Idols. No *Medium* on either side, but extreme in both. Divided anciently into these four ranks, that is to say, 1 *Jews*, 2 *Hellenists*, 3 *Proselytes*, and 4 *Samaritans*; all of them pretending a right unto this Countrey, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of these the first called *Jews*, from *Judah*, the predominant Tribe; and *Hebrews*, from *Heber* the son of *Seth*, grand-son of *Sem*, and one of the Ancestors of *Abraham*; were such as naturally descended of the Tribes of *Israel*, and lived for the most part in their own Countrey; adhering to the Law of *Moses*, and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Testament, from the book of *Genesis* to the book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called also *Israelites*, because descended from the loins of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave

gave the name of *Israel*, for his greater honour. But after the ten Tribes were carried away by *Salmassar* to an endless captivity: and two Tribes (with the remainder of the rest) returned from that temporary one which they found in *Babylon*, the name of *Israelites* was laid by, and that of *Jews* assumed, as more proper to them. These read the Scriptures, and executed all *Divine Offices* in their natural *Hebrew*.

2. The *Hellenists*, were such as were *Jews* by parentage, but lived dispersed in most Provinces of the *Roman Empire*: called by that name (we may *English* it, the *Græcizing Jews*) because they read the Scriptures in the *Greek* or *Septuagint* Translation; and performed all public Offices in that language also. In other things, as *superstitions* in their Sabbaths, as tenacious of their *Circumcision*, and others of their rites and ceremonies of the law of *Moses*, as the *Jews* of *Palestine*: and for that reason, scorned and derided by the *Gentiles*, amongst whom they lived; *Credat Judæus apella*, faith one of their Poets, relating to their circumcising; *Recutitque Sabbata palles*, faith another of them, with scorn enough unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illicritus & cæteris mortalibus contrarii*, faith *Tacitus*, a graver Author, of the whole body of their *Rituals*, or *Acts* of worship.

3. The *Proselytes* were such, as not being *Jews* by birth, or descent of parentage, conformed themselves unto their customs, and desired to be admitted to their Religion. And these were also of two sorts, the one called *Proselyti Porta*; and the other *Proselyti fœderis*. The first of these, admitted by the *Jews* to the worship of God, and instructed in the hopes of the life to come; were only tied to those precepts which the *Hebrew Doctors* call the *Precepts of the sons of Noah*: but were neither circumcised, nor otherwise conform to the Law of *Moses*. Which Precepts of the sons of *Noah*, so called, because supposed to be given by *Noah* unto his Sons, when he came out of the *Ark*, were seven in number: that is to say, 1 That they dealt uprightly with every man. 2 That they blessed and magnified the name of God. 3 That they worshipped not any false Gods, but to abstain from Idolatry. 4 To refrain from all unlawful lusts and copulations. 5 To keep themselves from theft and robbery. 6 And from shedding blood. And 7 not to eat the flesh or member of any beast, taken from it when it was alive, by which all cruelty was forbidden. These, though they were admitted to the worship of God, and might repair unto the Temple; yet because of their Uncircumcision they were not suffered to converse with the *Jews*, nor to come into the same Court of the Temple with them: but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart assigned them in the worship of God, which was called *Atrium Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the outermost of all. The other *Proselytes*, which were called *Proselyti fœderis*, conformed in all things to the *Jews*, as in Circumcision, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies: and were accounted of as adopted *Jews*, privileged as they were, to worship in the *Inner Court*; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile*; and in a word, partakers with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their race or parentage. These last in the New Testament called simply *Proselytes*, without any addition: the former by the name of *Zēstavaï*, or the worshipping *Gentiles*, of which see *Acts* 16. v. 14. & *ch.* 17. v. 4, 17. & *ch.* 18. v. 4, &c.

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they possessed a great part of this Countrey, which the *Proselytes* did not; yet were not so much *Jews*, as they. But of these more anon when we come to *Samaritania*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jews* themselves they are divided also into several *Septs*; as *viz.* 1 *Esseni*, 2 the *Sadducees*, 3 the *Scribes*, 3 the *Pharisees*, 5 the *Herodians*, and 6 the *Gaulonites*, or *Galileans*. The *Esseni* or *Esseni*, derive their name, as some conceive, from *Asa*, which signifieth *facere*, to do, because they laboured with their hands; as others say, from *Asa*, which signifieth *degenaratus*, or to turn *de-facere*, because they were much given to the study and practice of *Physick*. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The first time they were heard of, was in the time *Jonathan*, the brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, about 150 years before *Christ's* Nativity; then mentioned by *Josephus*, *Antiqu. Judaicæ* lib. 13. cap. 9. A *Pythagorean* kind of *Jew*, and not much differing in opinion from those old *Philosophers*, professing as they did, 1 Community of goods, 2 Abstaining even from lawful pleasures, 3 Forbidding of Oaths, 4 Forbearing Wine, and drinking Water, 5 Ascribing the conduct of affairs to fate or destiny. 6 And using only inanimate or unbloody Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but these the principal: forbidding marriage not being common to the *Sept*, but only to some few amongst them. And though we find no mention of them in the *New Testament*, the *Sept* in those times being small and inconsiderable; yet it is thought that *Saint Paul* alludeth to their Tenets: as when he adviseth *Timothy* to make use of Wine, and glanceth upon those who prohibited marriage. *1 Tim.* 4. 3. or condemned others in the use of meat and drink. *Coloss.* 2. 16. As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Monasteries*, or *Colleges*, and in every one had their *Magister*, or *Oratory*: admitting none into their fellowships or society, unless he brought all he had into their common Treasury; and not then neither under a three years Probationship. More of them he that listeth to see, may satisfy himself in that tract of *Philo*, intitled *De Vita Contemplativa*, where he most copiously describeth their *Institutes* and course of life: mistakingly applied by *Eusebius* to the *Primitive Christians*, as if that Tract had purposely been composed of them, by that learned *Jew*.

2. The *Sadducees* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander the Great*, and is thought to be the first founder of them, or from *Sadoc* an *Hebrew* word, signifying *Justice*; the men pretending to be so exact and strict *Justiciaries*, as if they would justify themselves before Gods Tribunal. The occasion of the *Sept* or heretic (for both it was) said to arise from a mistake of *Antigonus*, a right learned man, Who teaching that we ought not to serve God, as Servants do their Masters, for the hope of reward; occasioned *Sadoc* and *Baitus*, two of his Auditors, to conceive that there was no reward nor recompence for a godly life; and consequently no *Resurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. These were the most capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Act.* 23. 6, 8. *Mat.* 23. 3. *Luk.* 20. 20,

20. 20, 27. &c. But other *Dogmata* they had, not mentioned in the holy Scripture: ascribing nothing unto Fate, or Predestination, but all things altogether to a mans free-will; 2 Teaching the soul to be annihilated at the hour of death; 3 Rejecting all Traditions; and 4 Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moses*. In most of their opinions contrary to the *Scribes* and *Pharisees*, but joining with them both in oppoling *Christ*: and thought like *Sampsons* Foxes they looked divers wayes, and were tied together by their tails only; yet in those tails they carried fire-brands to destroy Gods harvest, and had done it, if they had been able.

3 But indeed the *Pharisees* were the men, who were the Master-wits in the Arts of *Mischief*, *Homines rebusis impietatis*, in the Fathers words. Fellows of such a perfect and concocted malice, that they were almost able to possess the devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to separate. *Separa*ists we may rightly call them. For they were first *apocryphus eis & vñov*, separated to the study of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpose at the feet of *Gamaliel*: And secondly, *apocryphus eis & vñov*, separated from the rest of mankind, by a more strict profession of sanctity; as the *Pharisee* boasted of himself that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might so seem unto simple men, they did thirdly separate themselves from the society and conversation of others not so pure as themselves, whom they called *populum terra*, or the Sons of the Earth, upbraiding *Christ* that he kept company with *Publicans* and *Sinners*: and more than so, used a particular kind of habit, and had garb unto themselves which no others had; using it for a by-word amongst themselves, that *Vestes populi Terræ, sunt conculcatio Phariseorum*. To which end, as their countenances were more clouded and severe than others; so did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broader size than others did: which, by the way, were *scrolls* of Parchment bound about their heads and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandements of God; foolishly so interpreting the words of *Deut.* And they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes, &c. c. 6. v. 8. They began at the same time with the *Sadducees*; which was about 300 years before *Christ's* nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, besides those specified above, which were also practicable, they maintained 1 A *Pythagorean Metempsychosis*, affirming that the soul of a righteous man passed from one into another, at the time of his death: from whence the divers opinions touching *Christ* our Saviour, *Mat.* 16. v. 14. are supposed to spring; as if his body had been animated with the soul of *Elias*, *John the Baptist*, *Jeremy*, or some other Prophet. 2 They adhered to tenacious to unwritten Traditions, that in comparison of them they neglected the written Law as either insufficient or impertinent: And 3 ascribed so much sanctity unto frequent washings, especially when they came from Market, *Mark* 7. v. 4. (where possibly they might meet with some unclean persons) and before their sitting down to meat, *Mat.* 15. 2. that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and wash, the *Pharisee* would rather chuse to wash than drink, though he died for thirst. More of them he that list to see, may find it copiously set down in the four and twentieth chapter of *Saint Matthew*; and thither I refer the Reader. By means of which pretensions to so great sanctity, and some other arts they had to abuse the people; they grew so strong, and had such store of followers, and dependants on them, that they became formidable in short time, to their Kings and Princes. Inasmuch that *Alexandra* durst not enter on the Government, in her childrens nonage, as *Josephus* telleth us, *Antiq. lib.* 13. cap. 23. until she had permitted all things unto their disposing; *ἡ δὲ ἄρχη ἐκείνην γινώσκουσα, &c.* and promised to do nothing without their advice. And this she did by the direction of King *Alexander*, her dying husband: whose Government, as she found by too bad experience had in many things proved unsuccessful, *ἡ δὲ τὴν ἐκείνην παρ' αὐτῆς*, because she had put some scorn upon them, and otherwise offended that prevailing Faction. A Faction so predominant amongst the People, faith the same *Josephus*, *Antiq. lib.* 19. cap. 18. *ὡς καὶ ἡ βασιλεία πλεονέχουσα, καὶ ἡ ἀρχὴ, &c.* that whatsoever they pleased to spread abroad either of the High Priest, or the King himself, how false or scandalous soever; it was received for truth without more dispute, or any enquiry made into it.

4. But of the *Pharisees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on, as either the Authors or Promoters of any *Sept* of Religion in the Jewish Church; but as the names of two opposite Factions in the Civil Scare. The first were such who depending upon *Herod's* fortune, as he did on the pleasure of the *Roman Emperours*; solicited the paying of tribute to the *Romans*: and earnestly pressed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more indebted to his Masters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground nick-named *Herodians* by the people, men that more endeavoured the greatness and estate of *Herod*, than the prosperity and liberty of their native Country. And possible enough it is; that some amongst them seeing the magnificence of *Herod's* Palace, and experimentally knowing his prowess; might fawn him to be the *Messiah*, so long looked for, and thereby own this name with a better Title, than the others did. Opposite unto these were those called the *Gaulonites*, (we may call the one the Court-Faction, the other the *Exile* of the Country or Common people;) so named from one *Judas a Gaulonite*, as *Josephus* calleth him, from the place of his birth; a *Galilean*, as *Gamaliel* calleth him, *Act.* 5. 37. from the place of his abode or habitation. By him the *Jews* were practised with to deny this tribute, telling them that it was a manifest token of their servitude, and that they ought to know no Lord; but the Lord of Heaven: drawing them finally on this ground into open arms, in which action he and his adherents perished, and were brought to nothing. Most of his followers were of *Galilee*, though he had some Disciples in *Hierusalem* and *Samaritania* also: and of these *Galileans* were those poor men, whose blood *Pilate* is said to mingle with their Sacrifices, *Luk.* 13. 1.

The Language of this people by them called the *Hebrew*, was naturally and originally the same which *Abraham* found in the Land of *Canaan*, at his coming thither: as hath been shewn before when we were in *Phœnicia*. Used by them conjointly till their subjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive,

Galilee.

Higher; *Zabulun*, and *Issachar* in the Lower: according to which distribution we will now describe them.

1 The Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, was so called from *NAPHTHALI* the sixth son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*; of whom at their first muster were found 53,400 fighting men, and at the second 44,540 able to bear arms. The land allotted to them lay on the West side of the River *Jordan*, opposite unto the Northern parts of *Issachar*: where before we left: having the West, the Tribe of *Aser*, and that of *Zabulun* on the South. Within which tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the Tribe of *Dan*: the chief of those which were with-held by the Gentiles, being *Chalcis*, *Avila*, *Heliopolis*, *Coes* accounted of as belonging to *Calo-Syria*; where they have been spoken of already.

That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN*, lay on the North-east part hereof, confronting the most Northern parts of *Issachar*, as before was said; where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, beside many others of less note. And it seemed destined to this Tribe by some old presage; the Eastern fountains of *Jordan* (which hath its original in this Tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Araham* gave to *Chedorlaomer* and his Associates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a possession in it. Of which see *Gen. 14. v. 14*. The Town of moment first called *Leshem*, by some Writers *Lash*: afterwards subject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon strength thereof made good against those of *Naphthali*; but taken by some adventurers of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is said *Jos. 19. 47*. That finding their own Country too little for them, they went up and fought against *Leshem*, which they took, and called *DAN*. Accompted after this exploit, the utmost bound Northward of the Land they took, the length thereof being measured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beer-sheba* in the South: remarkable for one of the *Golden Calves* which was placed here by *Jeroboam*, and for the two spring-heads of *Jordan*, rising near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans*, it was called *Panæa*, from a fountain of adjoining of that name: which with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zerodorus*, who held it of the *Roman Empire*, as before is said, was given by *Augustus Cæsar*, unto *Herod the Great*: and by him at his decease to *Philip* his youngest Son, with the *Tetrarchie* of *Issachar* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cæsarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius Cæsar*: partly to pre-serve the memory of his own name: and partly to distinguish it from another *Cæsarea* situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cæsarea Palestine*: and being so repaired by him, it was made the Metropolis of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name; *Mat. 16. 13*. when *Saint Peter* made that confession or acknowledgment of his Lord and Master, That he was *CHRIST the Son of the living God*. By *King Agrippa*, who succeeded him in his Estates, in honour of the Emperor *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cæsarea Panæa* in the time of *Ptolemy*; and simply *Panæa*, as before, in the time of *Saint Hierom*. Of this *Cæsarea* was that woman whom our Saviour cured of the bloody Flux, by touching the hem of his garment: who in a pious gratitude of so great a mercy, erected two *Statues* in this place, representing *CHRIST*, by whose command it was cast down, and a *Statue* of his own set up in the place of *Jehoiakim the Apostate*, by whose command it was cast down, and a *Statue* of his own set up in the place thereof, miraculously destroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long time before, an Episcopal See. Of less note there were, 1 *Haleb*, and 2 *Reccab*, both situate in the confines of it. And not far off the strong Town and Castle of 3 *Magdala*, (the habitation as some say of *Mary Magdalene*) where the *Pharisees* desired a sign of our Saviour *CHRIST*, as is said *Mat. 15. 39. 16. 1*. the same, or some place near unto it, being by *Saint Mark* (reporting the same part of the Story) called *Dalmanntha*, *chap. 8. 10, 11*. But whether this Castle did anciently belong to these *Danites*, or to those of *Naphthali*, or to the Half Tribe of *Manasses* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of those which were in the possession of the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, the Cities of most eminent observation were, 1 *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Junius* and *Tremelius* called *Chatzar*, the Regal City and Metropolis of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendezvous* of 24 *Canaanitish* Kings in the War with *Jos. 19. 47*; by whom it was taken notwithstanding, and burnt to ashes. But being afterwards re-built, it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who so grievously for the space of 20 years, afflicted *Israel*: till vanquished by *Deborah* and *Barak*. Destroyed in that war, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in good estate in our Saviours time, that it was then one of the Cities of *Decapolis*; in being to still, but known by the name of *Antiochia*. 2 *Capername*, seated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Country it was accounted the Metropolis, in the time of our Saviour, with whose presence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapolis*. Some marks of its former greatness it retained when *Saint Hierom* lived, who confessed it to be a Town of some good capacity; but so decayed in the time of *Breidenbeck* and *Bochardus*, that it consisted but of six poor Fishermens Houses. 3 *Hamath*, so called from *Hamathi* the Son of *Canaan*, planted in these parts; a Town of such esteem in the elder times, that it was reckoned one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *introitus Hamath*, or the entrance of *Hamath*; as *Numbers 34. 8. Jos. 13. 5. Judg. 3. 3. &c.* Mistaken by *Saint Hierom* for another of the same name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I say he is mistaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolemy* two degrees more Eastward than *Cæsarea Philippi*, the most Eastern City of all *Galilee*; and two degrees more North than that, though

Galilee.

the most Northern City of all *Palestine*. The ground of this millake we have seen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *D. mascus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Israel*, by *Jerubbaas* the second Son of *Jos. 20. 7*: and after called by the *Romans* (as were *Scythopolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and some others of the Cities of this tract) unto *Calo-Syria*. 4 *Kadesch*, to difference it from others of the same name, called *Kadesch-Naphthalim*, high seated on the top of an Hill, as is said *Jos. 20. 7*. the King whereof being taken and slain by *Jos. 20. 7*, it was made one of the Cities of *Refuge*, and given to the *Levites*. Most memorable for the Birth of *Barak*, who discomfited *Sisera*, Lieutenant of the Host of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the Jewish State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Episcopal See in the first ages of Christianity. 5 *Riblah*, watered with the Fountain of *Daphnis*, a little River, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: to which City, as some say (but I think erroneously) *Zedechias* the unfortunate King of the *Jews* was brought Prisoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, who caused his Children to be slain before his face, and then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Error in them that say it, the scene of this said Tragedy being by *Josephus* laid in *Riblah* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*; the same which in succeeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Josephus*, who for so long was Governor of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be so ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transfer that bloody Execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Country. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greatest Towns in the Tribe of *Naphthali*, should be capable of the Court and Train of that mighty Monarch; especially for so long a time, as he is said to have attended in that place, the success of his forces then before *Hierusalem*, and the disposal of the State when the Town was taken. 6 *Saphet*, another of the *Decapolis* Cities, strongly if not impregnablely seated; one of the strongest Fortresses of the Western *Christians*, as it was after their expulsion, of the *Turks* and *Sassanians*; who from hence waited and subdued all the neighbouring Country, as far as to the very Sea. The only place, nor of this Country only, but of all the East, in which the *Jews* (who possessed a third part of this Town) have any shadow of a Common-wealth. 7 *Beithanet*, mentioned *Jos. 19. 38*. made tributary unto those of this Tribe; though otherwise possessed by the *Canaanites* who held out against them. 8 *Carthani*, or *Kirinathaim* situate near the Mountain which in following times was called *Mount Christi*, because much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choice of his Apostles, as is said *Mark 3. 13*. and where he made also that Divine Sermon, recorded in the *5. 6. & 7. Chapters* of *Saint Matthews Gospel*. 9 *Miscoloth*, a place of great strength, but forced by *Bacchides* General of the Armies of the Kings of *Syria*, in the time of the *Maccabees*, to *Sidone*, a strong City, after called *Gennesareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it; is sometimes called the Lake of *Gennesareth*, as *Luke 5. 1*.

2 The Tribe of *ASER*, was so called from *Aser*, the 8th. Son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Zilphah* the hand-maid of *Leah*: of whom at their first Muster when they came out of *Egypt*, were found 41,500 persons, able to bear Arms, all above 20 years of age; and at the second Muster when they entered the Land of *Canaan*, 53,400 fighting men of the new increase. The portion of the Land allotted for their habitation was plentiful in Wine, Oyl, and Wheat, with great store of *Balsam*; extending from the Coast of *Sidon*, to *Ptolemais*, 30 miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eastward, to the Tribe of *Naphthali*, some twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolemais*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command: yet had they in this narrow compass many beautiful Cities, and Towns of note; which they were quietly possessed of, till their subjugation by the Kings of *Affria*.

The principal of those, and others which have since been founded, 1 *Aphik*, memorable for the great slaughter there made of the *Syrians*, when besieged by *Benhadad*: of whom 100,000 were slain by the *Israelites* under the leading of *Ahab*, and 27,000 killed by the fall of the Wall. 2 *Gabala* mentioned by *Ptolemy* amongst the mid-land Cities of *Phœnicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe; one of those twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refusal peopled by the *Israelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards re-built and strongly fortified by *Herod the Great*. 3 *Gisfalia*, a Town of great strength and consequence; the birth-place of *John* or *Jehocanan*, one of the three *Religious* in *Hierusalem* when besieged by *Titus*, where he did more mischief than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Masters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being re-built by the Authority of *Josephus*, then Governor of *Galile* for the *Jews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon compulsion. 4 *Canas*, for distinction sake called *Canas Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the Lower *Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that woman, whose Daughter, *Christ* delivered of an evil Spirit: called by *Saint Matthew* a woman of *Canaan*, Chapter 15. a *Syro-Phœnician* by *Saint Mark*, Chap. 7: the *Syro-Phœnician* of this Tract; being originally of the race of *Canaan*, as was said before. 5 *Heishlan*, or *Cethlan*, the furthest City of the North; as 6 *Messals*, or *Masfel*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aser*. Of later date there are 7 *Thoron*, a strong piece built by the *Christians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to hinder the excursions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, of great importance in the wars of the Holy Land, and giving name to the noble family of the Lords of *Thuron*: one of which being Constable to King *Baldwin* the third, lieth buried in the Chapel adjoining to it; a curious piece of work-manship, and Dedicated by the name of the blessed Virgin. 8 *Belfort*, so named from the strength and beauty of it; seated on the high grounds near the River *Naar*: and memorable for the great repulse which *Saladin* the Victorious King of the *Turks* received before it; being

Galilee.

forced to raise his siege with dishonor and loss, on the coming of the *Christians* Armies. Some of the Forts here are of the same erection, as 9 *Montfort*, and 10 *Mount-Royal* (or *Castellum Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended against the *Infidels*.

3. The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was so called from *Zabulon* the tenth Son of *Jacob* by his Wife *Leah*: of whom there mulctured near *Mount Sinai*, 57400 able men; and 65000 at their second muster, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Territory lay on the South of *Aser* and *Nephthali*, and the North of *Zabulon*; extending from the *Lake of Tiberias*, to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Jokneham*, the King whereof was slain by *Josiah*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2 *Zabulon*, or the City of men, a stately and magnificent City, till burnt to the ground by *Cestius*, a Roman President. 3 *Cana-Minor*, so called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aser*, the birth-place of *Nathaneel*, and as some say of *Simon Zelotes*: memorable for the marriage, at which our *Saviour* wrought his first miracle, of turning water into wine: Called in *St. John's Gospel* *Cana of Galilee*. 4 *Bersabe*, standing in the border betwixt both *Galilees*, and therefore strongly fortified by *Josephus* against the *Romans*. 5 *Dokhan*, where *Joseph* found his brethren as they fed their flocks; and where the Prophet *Elijah* brook blind the *Syrians*, who besieged him in it. 6 *Bethsaida*, situate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*; but most renowned for the miracles and preaching of our Lord and Saviour. 7 *Nazareth*, now a small village, seated in a vale betwixt two hills, not far from *Pithul* or *Acon*; upon one of which two hills it was formerly built; where still are to be seen the ruins of many Churches, here founded by the *Christians*; it being in the flourishing times of *Christianity*, an *Arch-Bishop's* See. Of great esteem, for being, if not the birth-place, yet the habitation of the Virgin *Mary*; who was her saluted with those joyful tidings by an *Angel*, as she sat in her Chamber. Of which Chamber it is said in the *Popish* Legends, that it was after the *Virgins* death had in great reverence by the *Christians*; and remained in this Town, till the *Holy Land* was subdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, Anno. 1291. Then most miraculously transported into *Scheyronia*; but that place being unworthy of the *Virgins* Divine presence, it was by the *Angels* carried over into the Sea-coast of *Italy*, Anno. 1294. That place also being infested with *Theeves* and *Pyrats*, the *Angels* removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her miracles were quickly divulged: inasmuch that *Paul* the 2d. built a most stately Church over this Chamber, and *Xistus* the fifth made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our blessed Saviour spend a great part of his life before his Baptism; from whence both he and his Disciples had for many years, the name of *Nazarenes*. 8 *Jotopata*, strongly seated on the top of a Mountain, near the *Lake of Gennesareth*; fortified by *Josephus* in the war with the *Romans*, but after a long siege taken by *Vespasian*, and in it *Josephus* the Historian, chief Governor of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9 *Tiberias*, raised out of the ground by *Herod* the Tetrarch, and named thus in honour of *Tiberius Caesar*. Situate in a fruitful soil, on the edge of the *Lake*, which afterwards took the name of the *Lake* or *Sea of Tiberias*: this City being held to be the greatest of the *Lower Galilee*, and the Metropolis of the *Decapolis* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called Saint *Matthias* from the receipts of the *Custom-house*; and near unto it that he raised the Daughter of *Jairus*. 10 *Bethulia*, more within the Land, seated on an high Hill, and of very great strength, as appears by the story of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. 11 *Japha*, a place of like strength, but forced by *Titus*; who in the fury of the storm slew in it above 15000 persons, and carried away with him 2000 Prisoners. 12 *Sephoris* or *Sippora*, the habitation of *Josachim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the blessed Virgin; fortified with strong walls by *Herod* the Tetrarch, who made it his Regal Seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that time, it had been made by *Gabinus*, one of the five *Juridical* *Resorts* for the *Palestinians*: after that, not without great difficulty forced by *Vespasian*; and is nothing now but a *Castle* known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Soffet*. The ordinary Residence, for the most part, of the *Turkish Sanziak* who hath the Government of this Province; and lately, if not still, of the *Emirs of Sidon*; *Faccardine* the late *Emir* having been made the *Sanziak* of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is *Mount Tabor*, famous for the transfiguration of our Saviour; for a sumptuous Chapel built on the top of the hill in memory of it, by the Empress *Helen*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great: and for the Fountain of the brook *Chison*, which presently divided into two Streams, runneth Eastward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*; and Westward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4. The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is so called from *Issachur* the ninth Son of *Jacob*, by his wife *Leah*, of whom were found at the first Muster 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the second Muster. Their lot, in the partition of the Land amongst the Tribes, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the Half Tribe of *Manasse* on this side *Jordan*, North and South; extending from that River to the *Mid-land* Sea. A Territory not so well replenished with strong and eminent Cities, as was that before; nor yielding so much matter of observation in the course of business.

Those of most note in it, 1 *Tarichaa*, on the side of the *Lake*, about eight miles from *Tiberias*, of great strength both by Art and Nature; as witnessed the notable resistance which *Vespasian* found when he besieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible slaughter. 2 *Cision*, a City of the *Levites*. 3 *Remith*, called also *Jarmuth*, an other City of the *Levites*; where the Hills of *Galboa* take beginning,

Samarit.

beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Westward, and the City of *Jezeel* towards the East. 4 *Em-badda*, near which *Saul* being discomfited by the *Philistines*, slew himself for grief, or else for fear of falling into the hands of those merciless Enemies, against whom he had so often returned victorious. 5 *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chison*, where *CHRIST* failed to life the Widdows Son. 6 *Hapharaim*, or *Aphraim*, on the banks of the same River also. 7 *Endor*, of chief note for the *Witch* with whom *Saul* consulted; and the discomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*, who perished at *Endor*, and became as the Dung of the Earth, saith the Royal *Psalmist*. 8 *Dabarath*, one of the Cities of refuge. 9 *Arthela*, not far from the Cave of the two Thieves, which so greatly infested *Galilee* in the time of *Herod*. And 10, of a later date the *Cattle of Spilgrims* (*Castellum Peregrinorum* in *Latin* Writers;) built by *Raymond*, Earl of *Toulouse*, and after fortified by the *Templers*, for the security of such as travelled to the *Holy Land*; and for long time the Magazine or Store-house of the *Western* *Christians*: now called *Tortosa*. Situate on the shores of the *Mediterranean* near a spacious bay; on the North side whereof *Mount Carmel*, described already.

As for those *Galileans* which succeeded in the place of these Tribes, they were for the most part originally such as were sent thither by *Salmanassar* to inhabit there, when the *Israelites* were led away into *Babylon* (as we have seen) but intermixed with some Remains of the ten Tribes, as was said before. And yet as it they had been wholly of the same extraction, with the rest of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much despised by the *Jews*, (as witnesseth that scornful by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: though these as *Orthodox* in Religion as the *Jews* themselves; which so zealously affected, that neither threats nor force could make them offer sacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperors; whom they looked on as the enemies of their Law and liberty. Brought under the Command of the King of *Jerry* by the *Maccabees*; and with the rest of that Kingdom bestowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod* surnamed *Antipas*, the second of his sons then living, with the Title of *Tetrarch*; which he enjoyed till the death of our Saviour; and on his deprivation (being banished to *Lyons* in France by the Emperor *Caligula*) bestowed upon *Agrippa* his Brothers son, the first King of the *Jews* so named. Under him and his son *Agrippa* the second, it continued till the general revolt of the *Jewish* Nation. Subjected by the sword of *Vitus* to the power of the *Romans*, it hath since followed the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

4. SAMARIA.

SAMARIA is bounded on the East, with the River *Jordan*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Galilee*; and on the South, with *Judea*. So called from *Samarit*, the chief City of it, of which more hereafter.

The Country interchangeably composed of Fields and Mountains, excellent good for tillage, and full of trees, yielding variety of fruits: watered both with the dew of Heaven, and many fresh springs which the Earth affordeth it; occasioning thereby abundance of grass, and consequently of *Milch* exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy; and no less populous, but now famed for neither.

The people for the most part, were originally the descendents of those *Assyrians*, whom *Salmanassar* sent thither to possess the dwellings of the Captive *Israelites*. Gentiles at first, till better instructed by the *Lyons* whom God sent amongst them, and after by the Priests sent thither by the Kings of *Assyria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moses*, and out of them learned the manner of the God of the *Lands*, 2 *Kin.* 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the rest of the sacred Canon; and no strict observers of this neither. And though at first they so embraced the worship of God, as that they still adhered to the gods of the Nations, where before they dwelt, as *Nergali*, *Ashimach*, *Nibh*, *Tartak*; and the rest of that rabble, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17: yet they were soon taken off from those impieties, and became zealous in the worship of one only God; erroneous chiefly in the place which was destined to it. The wicked policy of *Jezeboam* the Son of *Zechar*, was as natural to them, as they could not have possessed his estates without it: and therefore would not suffer their people to go up to *Hierusalem* to worship, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predecessors, that they erected no *Golden Calves* in *Dan*, and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: though to divert the people from the Temple of God, they would have a Temple of their own. *Mount Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as sacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the *Jews*. Disputatious enough in this, but not idolatrous and Schismatical too, as the others were; yet so conceited of themselves, and their own perfections; that they imagined themselves defiled by any company but their own. If therefore they had visited any of their neighbour Nations, at their return, they used to sprinkle themselves with urine: but if by negligence, or the necessity of business, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themselves, cloaths and all, in the next fountain. But in this the *Jews* cried quittance with them, not so much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *John* 4. 9. but loading them, on the other side, with all the bitterness of reproach and hatred. There are two manner of people (saith the son of *Sirach*) which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that sit on the

Samaritan.

Mountains of Samaria, the Philistines, and the foolish people that dwell at Sichem. *Ecclus.* 30. And this continued to the times of our blessed Saviour; whom when the Jews endeavored to reproach with their heaviest calumnies, they could find out none to greater advantage than he: he was a Samaritan; and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had conversed with Devils and familiar spirits.

Of these there were some *Seths*, also as amongst the Jews; 1. The *Dositheans*, so called from *Dositheus* or *Dosithai*, supposed to be the first Priest who was sent thither by the King of Syria: agreeing with the Jews in Circumcision; and the Sabbath; and the doctrine of the Messiah (in which last they differed from the common Samaritans, who was a *Saducee* in that point) but differing from them in some points of as signal consequence. For they rejected the traditions of all the Prophets, as not divinely inspired by the holy Ghost; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoreans*, abstained from marriage, like the *Essenes*; and in the point of Sabbath-keeping out-went the *Pharisees*; it being resolved upon amongst themselves that in what point soever a man was found on the Sabbath-day-morning, in the same he was to continue without intermission the whole day after. 2. The *Sebvians*, so called from *Sebus* or *Sebviah* one of the Complices of that *Dositheai*; who thought they kept all the public Festivals; as the Jews; and the other *Samaritans* did yet they kept them not at the same time: transferring the *Paschever* to August; the *Pentecost* to Autumnus; and the feast of *Tabernacles* to the time of the *Paschever*; not suffering for that cause to worship in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3. The *Guribani*, who kept the same Festivals, and observed the same times of those Solemnities, as the Law required; but kept only one of the seven days of those great Festivals, and laid by the rest, as days of ordinary labour. In other points not differing from the other Samaritans, who though at first possessed of all the land belonging to the Ten Tribes of Israel, were yet reduced at last to a narrower compass: shut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judea*, within the ancient territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*; and the other half Tribe of *Manasse*, on this side of the water.

1. The half Tribe of *MANASSES* on this side of *Jordan*, was situate betwixt *Issachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South; extending from the *Mediterranean*, to the banks of that River. In which the places of most consequence and consideration, 1. *Beth San*; environed almost with the land of *Issachar*, situate near the banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to streighten and be like it self, having been almost lost in the Sea of *Galilee*: first called *Nisa*, and so called by *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater* the founder of it, in memory of his Nurse there buried; but the children of *Manasse* not being able to expell the natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth San*, or the house of an Enemy. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded those parts of *Asia*, and compelled some of the Jews to serve them against the rest (whom notwithstanding their good service they put all to the sword) they new-built this City: called therefore by the *Grecians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Cela Syria*. Memorable in the old Testament for the hanging of the dead bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the walls hereof; by the barbarous *Philistines*; in the time of our Saviour, for being the greatest of all the *Decapolis* Region; as afterwards in the flourishing times of *Christianity*, for being the See of an Arch-bishop: now nothing but a desolate village, and a heap of rubbish; out of which many goodly Pillars, and other pieces of excellent Marble are often digged. 2. *Terzab*, used by the Kings of Israel for their Regal Seat; till the building of *Samaria*, and the Removal of it thither. 3. *Acrabata*, the Territory whereof called *Acrabataena*, was afterwards made one of the 120 *Toparchies* of *Judea*. 4. *Tibebus*, not far from *Samaria*, where the *Bastard Abimelech* was wounded with a Stone which a woman threw at him from the Wall, and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to slay him; that it might not be said he perished by the hands of a Woman. 5. *Ephra* or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt; near whereunto there stood an Altar, consecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*; and not far off, the fatal Stone on which *Abimelech* slew 70 of his Brethren. An heathenish cruelty; and at this day practised amongst the *Turks*. 6. *Asophun*, an ignoble Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Prothomy Lathurus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the Jews: which victory he used with so great barbarity, that he slew all the Women as he passed along, and caused young Children to be sod in *Caldrons*. 7. *Bezek*, the City of the bloody Tyrant *Adoni-Bezek*; whose story (touch'd upon before) see at large in *Judges* Chap. 1. By *Josephus* it is called *Bala*; and seemeth to be the place in which *Saul* assembled the chief strength of the *Ammonites*. 8. *Jezebel*, the Royal City of *Abah*, and the Kings of his race, situate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*: So near unto the borders of *Issachar*, that some have placed in it that Tribe. Memorable in sacred story for the stoning of *Ahab* by the Procurement of *Jezebel*; and the breaking of *Jezebel's* neck, by command of *Jezebel*: A City which gave name to the plains adjoining, called the valley or Plains of *Jezebel* (but by the name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Maccabees*, lib. 1. cap. 12.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean*; famous for the great and many battles which have been fought in it, especially of *Gideon* against the *Midianites*, of *Saul* against the *Philistines*; of *Abah* against the *Syrians*, of *Jezebel* against *Jezebel*, and finally of the *Christians* against the *Saracens*. 9. *Megiddo*, unfortunately observable for the death of the good King *Josiah*, slain hereabouts in a battle against *Pharab* Neo King of *Egypt*; and before that, of *Abaziah* King of *Judea*, who received his death wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoining, when pursued by *Jezebel*. 10. *Dora*, or *Dors*, as the Scripture calls it, on the *Mediterranean*

Samaritan.

not far from the Castle of *Pilgrims* in the Tribe of *Issachar*. A very strong and powerfull City and therefore chose by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having first treacherously taken; and barbarously murdered *Jonathan* the *Maccabean*, after he had received 200 talents for his Ranfome; and not less villainously slain *Antiochus* the six of *Syria*, his Lord and Master, whom he succeeded in his Throne: was by *Antiochus* the seventh, with an Army of 120000 foot, and 8000 horse, besieged in this City, and most deservedly put to death. 11. *Cesarea*, antiently called the Tower of *Seraton*, from *Seraton* a King of the *Zidonians*; new built by *Herod*; and by him not only beautified with a large Theatre and Amphitheatre, both of polished Marble, with a fair and capacious haven; which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honour of *Drusus Caesar*, Son-in-law of *Augustus*, he caused one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Drusus*; the City it self to be called *Cesarea Palestine*. The stateliness and magnificence of which City (when first built by *Herod*) he that lists to see, may find the same described at large by *Josephus* the Jew, in the 15th Book of *Antiqu.* cap. 13. In this City was *Cornelius* baptized by St. Peter; Here did St. Paul plead in defence of *Christianity* before *Festus* then the Roman President; and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was smitten by an Angel, and devoured by worms, after his rhetorical Oration, which his *Parasites* called the voice of God and not of man. The Metropolis of all Palestine, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Palestina Prima*, when by *Constantine*, or some of his Successors, cantoned into three: the first Bishop hereof being said to be that *Cornelius*, whom Saint Peter here initiated in the faith of *CHRIST*. 12. *Antipatrius*, another City of *Herod's* building, in the place where *Kapharsalama*, mentioned 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. had sometimes stood; who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near hereunto did *Judas Maccabaeus* overthrow a part of *Nicanor's* Army: and not far off, the Mountain where *Abdia*, the Steward of *Abah*, hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preserved against the fury of *Jezebel*: Finally to this City it was that Saint Paul was conveyed by the command of *Lysias*, to save him from the Jews, who lay in wait to destroy him.

2. The Tribe of *EPHRAIM* was so called from *Ephraim*, the second and youngest Son of *Joseph*; of Whom were mustered in the *Deserts* 45000 fighting men, and 25500 in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manasse*, on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South; extending from the River *Jordan* to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of most consideration, 1. *Saron*, on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatrius*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitful Valley, which reacheth from *Cesarea Palestine*, as far as *Joppa*. 2. *Lydda*, upon the same shores, where Saint Peter (virtute Christi; *in sua*) cured *Aeneas* of the Palsy. By the *Gentiles* it was called *Diospolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the *Christians* in the time of the holy wars, it had the name of Saint *Georges*; partly from a Magnificent Temple which the Emperor *Justinian* there erected to the honour of that blessed Martyr; but principally from an opinion which they had amongst them, that he suffered Martyrdom in that place. An opinion founded on mistakes, first of a *Cenotaphium*, or an empty Monument, erected in this City to preserve his memory, for the grave in which he was interred; the other, in taking the word *Passio*, used in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his suffering which is meant only of the story or celebration. But howsoever they intulced it by the name of Saint *Georges*, as was said before, and made it on that account also an *Episcopal See*. 3. *Ramatha*, or *Arama*, a City of the *Levites*, supposed to be the dwelling of *Joseph*, who begged of *Pilate* the body of *CHRIST*. 4. *Helon*, or *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* also; by some placed, and perhaps more fitly in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we shall hear further of it. 5. *Thermath-Charet*, given by the *Israelites* to *Josuah*, who enlarged the same, and made it a strong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave commander, one of the nine Worthies of the World; and afterwards made one of the *Presbyteries* of *Judea*, by the name of *Thamnatha*. 6. *Adasa*, or *Adarsa*, where *Judas Maccabaeus* with 3000 Jews, overthrew the Army of *Nicanor*. 7. *Jezebel*, called otherwise *Benaiab*. 8. *Silo*, situate on the top of a lofty mountain; the receptacle of the Ark, till taken and carried thence by the *Philistines*. 9. *Michmas*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabean* Brethren, situate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hierusalem*, now called *Byra*. 10. *Naiab*, where *Saul* prophesied. 11. *Berboron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*; but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow, which *Judas Maccabaeus* here gave to *Lysias*. 12. *Pirhatson*, on the mountain *Amalec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of Israel. 13. *Sichem*, called also *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times, of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who deflowered *Dinah* the daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cause destroyed by *Simcon* and *Levi*; repaired again, and afterwards by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground; a third time re-edified by *Jeroboam* the Sonne of *Nebat*, and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damascus*; yet notwithstanding these blowes it was of good esteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days, and converted many. Memorable for *Jacobs* Well which was very near it; more for its neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the blessings were to be read to the people (of which see *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Jos.* 8. 23.) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the use of the *Samaritan* Nation, at the cost and charge of *Sanballat* a great Prince amongst them. Who having married his Daughter to *Manasse*, brother of *Jaddus* the High Priest of the Jews, and fearing he would put

Index.

of the strongest Towns they had; and by that means so weakened them, that they durst not stir all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troublesome in the daies of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their army overthrowne, *Ita* and *America*, two of their strong Forts, took and razed; and the Town of *Gath* again dismantled. In the time of the idolatrous *Achaz*, associating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the destruction of *Judah*) they brake out again; took *Bethsames*, *Ajalon*, *Tinnah*, and some other Towns; carried away many Prisoners, and slew much people. But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them the greatest part of their Country, betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Which notwithstanding, they recovered to so great esteem, that the whole Country had from them the name of *Palestine*. But broken by degrees by the *Macedonians*, they lost both their power and reputation, passing in common estimate as a part of *Jewry*; the fortunes of which is followed for the times succeeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN*, is so called from *Dan* the fifth son of *Jacob*, by *Bilhab* the hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were muliered at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66400 at the second muster, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Epbraim*, on the North; *Simeon*, on the South; the Tribe of *Benjamin*, on the East; and the *Mediterranean* on the West.

Places of most note in it, 1. *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once a famous Mart-town, and the only Haven to *Judea* in foregoing times: the Town, where *Jonah* took ship to fly unto *Tarshish*; where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* from death to life; and where he lying in the house of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in vision taught the conversion of the *Gentiles*. This City they report to have been built before the *Flood*. And here they say reigned *Cepheus*, whose Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Persus* delivered from a sea-monster; some of whose bones the people used to shew to strangers, even to the flourishing of the *Romans*. Just as our Citizens of *Coventry* and *Warwick*, shew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunsmuir* heath, and the bones of I know not what Giant, slain by *Gay* Earl of *Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garrisoned by the *Syrians*; who having in the Port a Fleet of good power and strength, invited 200 of the chief Citizens to go aboard with them, and there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas*, and such as did escape the Fire fell upon his Sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, and the second time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers, by King *Lewis* of *France*, in the year 1250, the *Holy Wars* then drawing to their final end. Now nothing standing of it but two little Turrets where are certain *Hargubuffs* for defence of the Haven; none of the best; defended from the South and West winds with eminent Rocks, but exposed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unsafe than the open Seas, when engaged by Tempests. Not much frequented by the Merchants, who trade here but for Corrons only; and hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2. *Ramus*, by the *Moors* called *Ramula*, situate in a sandy plain on the rising of a little Hill; built of free stone, but the streets thereof narrow, and the Houses contemptible. More beautiful in the ruins of some Christian Churches, and a Monastery built by *Philip* the Good of *Burgundy*, where the House of *Nicodemus* stood; than in any of the remaining edifices. 3. *Jamnia*, near *Joppa*, where *Judas* burnt the rest of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was seen to *Hierusalem*, 240 furlongs off; mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and in the times of *Christianity* an Episcopal See; now not discernible in the ruins. 4. *Cedar* or *Cedron*, fortified against the *Jews* by *Cendabau* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hereabouts was overthrown by the *Maccabees*. 5. *Modin*, a small Town, but honored with the birth and sepulchre of those *Maccabees*; the Sepulchre being seven Marble Pillars of so great a height, that they served as a mark for Seamen. 6. *Gibbethon*, in the Country called *Makass*, a City of the *Levites*, but afterwards possessed by the *Philistims*, at the siege whereof *Nadab*, the son of *Ieroboam* King of *Israel*, was slain by *Baasba*, who succeeded; and *Omri* chosen King on the death of *Zimri*. 7. *Caraiathairim*, where the Ark of the Lord was kept for 20 years, in the house of *Aminadab*; that is to say, from the sending it home by the *Philistims*, till brought to *Hierusalem* by *David*. 8. *Beth-semer*, to which the Ark was brought by a yoke of Kine, turned loose by the *Philistims*: for irreverent looking into which there were slain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer than 50070 persons of this City. 9. *Tsarab*, near which is a fountain, called the fountain of *Ethiopia*; because *Philip* there laptized the *Ethiopian Eunuch*. 10. *Caspin*, taken with great slaughter by *Judas Maccabaeus*. 11. *Lachis*, remarkable for the death of *Amaziah* King of *Judah*. 12. *Ajalun*, a City of the *Levites* afterwards touched upon before in the Tribe of *Ephraim*, in the borders whereof we find it situate; and therefore by some Authors reckoned to the same Tribe, and by some to the other, in the valley whereof the Moon is said to have stood still at the prayers of *Josuah*, as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon*: the motion of the Heavens being said, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites*. To this Tribe also belonged the Town and Territory of *Dan*, or *Lebrim*; afterwards called *Cesarea Philippi*, in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALIM*; whereof we have there spoke already.

3. The Tribe of *SIMEON* was so called from *Simeon* the second Sonne of *Jacob*, by his first Wife *Leah*: of whom were found at the first multer 53000 able men; and but 22200 at the second multer, when they came into *Canaan*. Where they enjoyed but a small Territory to themselves, their lot falling amongst the *Philistims*, whom they were not able to expel: and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Judah*, where they were permitted to enjoy some Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards, in the reign of King *Hesekiah*, some

Fudān

Some of them possessed themselves of *Genahy* belonging to the Children of *Ham*; and others passing Southwards into *Iadumma* more the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the mountains thereof, and were in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themselves and their Children, many of them undertook the Office of *Slaves* or *Scrimers*; and dispersed themselves amongst the rest of the *Arabes*, teaching their children to write, and giving themselves to the employment of *Publick Ministers*: God herein verifying the curse which *Isaac* had denounced to *Esau*, that he should be divided and possessed in Israel. But for their fixed habitation *Abraham* left them by treaty 1732 to wit: *Dan* upon the North; and *Iadumma* on the South; the Tribe of *Judah* on the East; and the *Philistines* upon the West. Most of these he brought still to *Jerusalem* and sold as slaves amongst the *Philistines*, with whom *Abraham* and *Isaac* had to do; and probably of some other of their Kings and Princes, till subdued by the *Israelites*: Situate in the South border of *Canaan*, not far from the wilderness of *Beersheba*; but in a very healthfull air; called therefore *Paradise Salernitana* in the times succeeding; but *Sidon*, or *Ziglah*, belonging to the *Philistines* till the time of *David*, to whom given by *Achish King of Gath* for his place of retreat, when persecuted by *Saul*; from whom *Isaac* he lodged here all his goods and carriages; taken by the *Amalekites*, but the booty recovered from them speedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David*. 3. *Haima*: City of the *Levites*. 4. *Canaan Sepher*: that is to say, the City of *Books*; seated within the bounds of *Simon*, but belonging to *Judah*, which some hold to be the University or *Academy* of old *Palestine*. A City of the *Levites* also and at first possessed by the *Sonnes of Anak*; or men of a *Gigantike* stature; but taken by *Othoniel*, the sonne of *Kehem*, on the promise and encouragement which was given by *Calib*, that whose ever took it should have his Daughters *Achish* to Wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir*. *Jude*. 1. 1. known in the time of *Saint Hierom* by the name of *Dathin*. 5. *Ghorba*, conceived by some to be that place mentioned *Numb.* 14. 45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* pursued those of *Israel*. *Beersheba*, or *Pusom-juramenta*; so called of the Well of Waters; and the Oath which was there sworn between *Abraham* and the *Abimelechs*; *Gen.* 21. 31. Memorable in the Scripture for the *Grave* which *Abraham* there planted; the wandering of *Hagar* thereabout, when she was cast out of *Abraham*'s house with her young son *Ismael*; and the dwelling of *Isaac* for which cause called the City of *Isaac*. Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan*, the length whereof is often measured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan*; and for that cause well fortified by the Western *Christians*, when they were possessed of this Country; as standing on the borders of *Iadumma*, and the *Deserts of Arabia*, in the way from *Egypt*.

4. The Tribe of **JUDAH** was so called from *Judah* the fourth son of *Jacob*, by his wife *Leah*: of whom there were numbered at the first general muster taken near Mount *Sinai*, 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500 at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan*. The greatest Tribe, and therefore answerably fitted with the largest Territory; bordering on the *Dead Sea*, East; upon *Simcon* West; the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumeans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes; but otherwise unable to contain or feed those infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* mustering 470000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the rest of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native Sovereignty over all the others; the *Scoper*, the *Legislative* power, and the Worlds *Messiah* being all premised upon this.

5. Places of most observation in it, 1. *Arab*, situate in the entrance of *Judea*, in the way from the Wilderness of *Edom*. 2. *Hebron*, one of the antientest Cities of *Canaan*: the Seat of the *Giants*, called *Anakims*, or the sons of *Anak*. This word *Anak* signifieth a chain worn for Ornament; and it seemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the spoils of his enemies, wore a chain of gold, leaving both the custom and name to his posterity. We read the like of *Manlius Tergatus* in the Roman Histories. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a burial-place for his dead; in which his Wife *Sarah* was first buried, and after her four of the *Patriarchs*. Adjoining to this Town is the plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham* the Father of the faithfull, sitting in his Tent; was visited from Heaven by God in the shape of a man. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hiernsalem*; to this place came the Tribes to anoint him King over *Israel*; and thither came *Abalon*, under the pretence of paying his vows, to usurp the kingdom of his Father. 3. *Tecoa*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet; and also of that woman, who by the words which *Joab* put into her mouth, perswaded the King to call *Abalon* from exile, to the wilderness of this *Tecoa*, there assembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and *Mount Seir*, to overthrow *Juda*. But the Lord being appeased by the publique Fast, proclaimed and kept by *Jehoshaphat* and the people, sowed dissensions amongst them: so that the children of *Ammon* and *Moab* stood up against the inhabitants of *Mount Seir*, asserty to slay and destroy them; and when they had made an end of the Inhabitants of *Mount Seir*, every one helped to destroye anothers 4. *Cerich*, or *Carich*, the birth-place of *Judas*, hence surnamed *Elcariot* (or the man of *Carich*) who betrayed our Saviour, 5. *Jeiber*, or *Jatier*, in the North border of this Tribe, towards *Euthieropolis*, a City antiently of the *Levites*, and called in St. Hieroms time *Jeihira*, and then altogether replenished with *Christians*, is now nothing but the name remaining. 6. *Maresa*, the native Soyl of the Prophet *Micah*, near whereunto first *Aja* King of *Judah* discomfited the vast Army of *Terab* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, consisting of above a Million of men; and afterwards *Gorgius* was overthrown by *Judas Maccabeus*.

7. Етност

Judæa.

7. *Emmaus* (after called *Nicopolis*): memorable for the third overthrow which *Judas* gave to the said *Gorgias*; for our Redeemers shewing himself after his Resurrection to *Cleophas* and another of his Disciples; and for the *bas Bathet* heretofore, which gave the name of *Sabaturn* to this part of *Palistina*. The Sovereign virtue of which waters *Socomen* a *Christian* attributes to the washing of *Christ*; see in them, as he passed by at that time; but *Josephus* a *Jew* attributes (as it is most likely) unto natural causes. 8. *Hafor*, or *Chafor*; one of the frontier Towns towards *Idumæa*. 9. *Odalla*, or *Haddalan*, an ancient and magnificent City, taken and destroyed by *Josiah*; and lost after much enlarged and beautified by *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10. *Erila*, or *Keila*, where *David* sometimes hid himself when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the assault of the *Philistines*. 11. *Elontheropolis*, or the *Free City*; not farre from *Hebron*: a City of later date than any of *Judæa*, mentioned by *Strabo*, and much remembered by *St. Hieron*. 12. *Azecha*, not far from *Emmaus*, to which *Josiah* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon*, and his four Associates, whom he discomfited in the cause, and quagmire of the *Gibeonites*, molested by them for submitting to their common Enemy. Seated in the Valley of *Terebinth*, and of very great strength; presuming upon which, it revolted from *Joram* King of *Judæa*, at the same time that *Libna* and the *Edomites* had revolted from him. 13. *Beth-Sur*, or *Beth-Sora*, that is to say, the house on the Rock, so-called from the situation on a rocky hill, one of the strongest places of *Judæa*: Fortified first by *Roboam* the sonnes of *Solomon*, after by *Judas Maccabæus*; and finally made impregnable by his brother *Simon*. 14. *Adaram*, bordering on the *Dead Sea*, beautified also by *Roboam*. 15. *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took its name from the words of *Lot*: "Alleging that it was but a little one, Gen. 19. 20. as the word *Tibor* doth import, in whose escape it was preserved, being otherwise one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pentapolis*, doomed unto destruction; the other four *Sodom*, *Gomorrah*, *Adama*, and *Sebim* being at the same time destroyed by fire and brimstone. 16. *Masada*, frequently mentioned by *Josephus*, as a place of great strength both by Art and Nature, and as it is by him described (in the 7 Book de *Bello Jud. cap. 28.*) to be thought impregnable; and therefore made by *Herod* (in the time of his troubles) the place of refuge, in which he disposed of *Marianna* his betrothed wife, her mother *Alexandra*, with divers honourable Ladies; and where they were preserved in safety against all his Enemies, till he came armed with power from *Rome*, to dislodge their forces, which was done accordingly. First built by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, as a sure place of Refuge against the *Syrians*; and afterwards to esteemed by *Herod* for the reason above mentioned, that he not only much enlarged it with all the requisite additions of strength and beauty, but built within the verge thereof, a magnificent Palace. The whole environed with a wall of 7 furlongs compass, 12 cubites high, and 8 cubites broad, built of white stone, and situate on an high Mountain called *Collis Achille*, washed on the East-side by the *Dead Sea*, or *Lacus Asphaltites*, and by that secured; on the other sides fenced with such deep ditches; that it was a terror to any man to look down into them: besides which natural situation it was fortified by *Herod* with 27 Turrets; who left therein as in a place impregnable and inaccessible, a Magazine of Armes and all war like furniture, for an Army of 10000 men, all sorts of victuals to sustain them, and ground enough within the walls to yeeld corn sufficient, when time and a long siege should consume those victuals. A place of such strength and so great concernment, that it held out against the *Romans* (when *Vespasian* and his son *Titus* managed that great war) after all the rest of *Judæa* had been conquered by them. 17. *Libna*, a strong City seated in a Corner of *Judæa*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*. This City revolted from *Joram* King of *Judæa*, at the same time the *Edomites* did; and continued a free State, even as long as *Judæa* continued a Kingdom. 18. *Zip*, in the wilderness, wherein *David* hid himself from the fury of *Saul*: Hither, when *Saul* pursued him, *David* came into his Camp (the watch being all asleep) and took thence his spear, and a *Cruse* of oyl, and departed. *Abishai* indeed would fain have killed him: but *David*, though he knew that *Samuel* had by Gods command abdicated *Saul* from the Kingdom, and that himself was appointed in his stead, would not touch him; but left him to the judgement of the Lord, who appointed he was. 19. *Bethlem*, or (to distinguish it from another of this name of *Zabulon* so called) *Bethlem-Judæa*, where *Christ* was born; and the *Innocents* suffered for him, before he had suffered for them. In this general Massacre of young Children, a son of *Herods*, which was at nurse, was also slain; which being told unto *Augustus*, he replied he had rather be *Herods Swine* than his Sonne. His swine being safe in regard the *Jews* where forbidden hog-meat; but his *sonnes* frequently made away, upon fears and jealousies. A Town for this cause had in great respect by the *Primitive Christians*, beautified by *Helen* with a stately Temple, which yet standeth entire; by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by *Saint Hieron*) with some goodly Monasteries, in one of which the body of that Father lieth; and by the *Western Christians*, with a Sea Episcopall. 20. On the frontier of this Country towards the *Philistines*, was that strong Castle which *Herod* repairing, called *Herodion*; seated on a hill, the ancient unto which was made with 200 steps of *Marble*, exceeding fair and large. In this Country also are the hills of *Er-gaddi* in a Cave of which *David* cut off the lap of *Sauls* garment; and all along the bottoms whereof were the Gardens of *Balsamum* or *Ophobalsamum*, the trees of which, were by *Cleopatra* (at such time as she governed *M. Antony*, and the East sent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Egypt*; and *Herod*, who durst not deny them, plucked them up by the roots, and sent them to her.

5. The

Judæa.

5. The Tribe of *BENJAMIN* took name from the twelfth and youngest son of *Jacob*, by *Rachel* his best beloved wife, who died in that Child-birth: of which at the first muster near unto *Mount Sinai*, were numbered 35000 able men; and at the second muster, when they entered the *Promised Land*, there were found of them fit for Armes, 45600 persons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the folly of the men of *Gibeah*, all *Israel* arming against it as one man: For besides those that perished in the former battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the sword: the fury of the Conquerours after that great victory sparing neither man nor beast, nor anything that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities also which they came unto. So great an havoc was there made even of innocent Maidens, that when the edge of this displeasure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for those young men which had escaped; The other Tribes having bound themselves by a solemn Oath, not to bestow their Daughters on them: inasmuch that they were faine to provide themselves of Wives of the Daughters of *Jabesh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manassites* beyond *Jordan*, which they took by assault; and of the Daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by Stratagem. The whole story see at large in the book of *Judges*, Chap. 19. 20, 21.

The Territories of this tribe lay betwixt those of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Judæa* on the South; having the *Dead-Sea* to the East, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the West-ward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1. *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 Sam. 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* brethren, 1 Macc. 9. 73. 2. *Mispah*, famous in being the ordinary place of assembly, for the whole body of the people, in matters of War or Peace: as also in that standing in the midst of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the seat of Justice, to which *Samuel* went yearly, to give judgment to the people. 3. *Gebah*, the North border of the Kingdom of *Judæa* toward *Israel*. 4. *Gibeah*, the Country of *Saul*, the first king: where the abusing of the *Levites* wife by the young men of this Town, had almost rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Israel*. 5. *Al*, a great and strong City, in the siege of which the *Israelites* were first discomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had stolen the accursed thing, the Camp was purged, *Josiah* by a warlike stratagem surprized it. 6. *Gibeon*, the mother City of the *Gibeonites*, who prelagging the unresistable victories of the *Israelites*, came to the Camp of *Josiah*, and by a wife obtained peace of him and the people: Employed by them in hewing wood, and drawing water for the use of the *Tabernacle*, after the fraud was made know unto them; called *Nethinims*, *Ezr.* 4.3. from *Nathan*, which signifies to give, because they were given to the service of the *Tabernacle* first; of the Temple after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, slew some of them, for which fast the Lord caused a Famine on the Land: which could not be taken away till seven of *Sauls* Sons were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This famine did God send, because in killing those poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken, which *Josiah* and the Princes swore concerning them. In defence of those *Gibeonites* it was that *Josiah* waged war against the Kings of the *Canaanites*; and stayed the motion of the Sun by his fervent prayers. 7. *Jericho*, destroyed by the found of *Rams-Hornes*, was not only levelled by *Josiah* to the ground; but a curse inflicted on him that should attempt the re-building of it. This curse notwithstanding, at the time when *Ahab* reigned in *Israel* (which was about five hundred years after the ruine of it) *Hiel* a *Bethelites*, delighted with the pleasantness of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Josiah*) as he laid the foundation of the walls, he lost his eldest Son; and when he had finished it, and was setting up the Gates thereof, he lost also the younger. It may be *Hiel* when he began this work, minded not the Prophecie; it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Josiah*, not so much to proceed from the spirit of Prophecy, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being spoken in way of wish, or execration. And it is possible, it may be, he chose rather to build the eternity of his name on so pleasant and beautiful a City, than on the uncertain lives and issues of two young men. 8. *Anathoth*, the birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremy*, and the patrimony of *Aitnah* the high Priest, sent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when deposed from his office by that King. 9. *Nob*, called, 1 Sam. 22. 19. the City of the Priests, destroyed by *Saul*, for the relief which *Aimelech* the high Priest had given to *David*; the Ark of the Lord then residing there. 10. *Gilgal*, upon the bank of *Jordan*, where *Josiah* did first eat of the fruits of the Land, and kept his first *Paschever*; where he circumcised such of the people, as were born during their wandering in the Wilderness; and nigh to which he set up twelve stones for a memorial to posterity, that the waters of *Jordan* did there divide themselves to give passage to the twelve Tribes of *Israel*. Here *Agag*, King of the *Amalekites*, was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*, and here *Samuel* once every year administered Justice to the people. For being seated in the midst of the Land of *Israel* betwixt North and South, and on the East-side of the Country near the banks of *Jordan*, it served very fitly for that purpose: as *Mispah* also did, which stood in the same distance, in regard of the length of the Land of *Canaan*, but situate towards the West Sea, near the Land of the *Philistines*: used therefore interchangeably for the ease of the people. 11. *Bethel*, at first called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the vision which *Jacob* saw here, at going towards *Afopotamia*, as is said *Gen.* 28. 19. It signified the house of God, and was therefore chosen by *Jeroboam*, for the setting up of one of his *Golden Calves*; though thereby, (as the Prophet saith) he made it to be *Bethaven*, the house of vanity, *Osée* 4. 15. and *Jo.* 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdom of the ten Tribes, and the Southern border of that Kingdom on the coasts of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Aijah* the King of *Judæa*, and after that accounted as a member of his Kingdom, till the destruction of it by the

Judea.

the Chaldeans. Called with the rest of those parts, in the time of the *Maccabees* by the name of *Apherema*, which signifieth a thing taken away; because taken away from the *ten Tribes*, to which once it belonged, 1 *Maccab.* 11. 34. where it is said, to have been taken from the Country of *Saron*, and added unto the borders of *Judea*. 12 *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and said to have been added to the Realm of *Judah*, having been formerly the South border of the Kingdom of *Israel*; and therefore strongly fortified by *Baasha*, in the time of *Ash King of Judah*. 13 *Chadid*, or *Hadid*, one of the three Cities (the other two being 14 *Lod*, and 15 *Ono*) which were inhabited by the *Benjamites* after the Captivity. Destroyed in the wars with the Kings of *Syria*, and afterwards rebuilt by *Simon the Maccabean*.

But the chief glory of this Tribe, and of all the rest, and not so only, but of all the whole world besides, was the famous City of *Hiernsalem*; seated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be ascended with steep and difficult ascents (except towards the North) environed on all other sides also with some neighbouring Mountains, as if placed in the midst of an *Amphitheatre*. It consisted in the time of its greatest flourish of four parts, separated by their several Walls, as if several Cities; we may call them the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City*, seated upon their several Hills. Of these, that which we call the *City of Herod*, had formerly been beautified with the Houses of many of the *Prophets*, as in our Saviours time with that of *Mary the Mother of John Mark*, mentioned *Acts* 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Christians*: the Western part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod* (a wicked, but magnificent Prince) for cohesiveness, and for strength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, Fish-ponds, places devised for pleasures, besides those for exercise. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it; that on the South-East of the Wall, 50 Cubits high, of excellent workmanship, called *Adrian's Tower*, in memory of his beloved but insolent Wife, rashly murdered by him. Opposite to which on the South-West corner, stood the Tower of *Phasolus*, so called by the name of his brother, 70 cubits high, and in form resembling that so much celebrated *Egyptian Pharos*: and on the North wall on an high Hill, the Tower of *Hippiel*, exceeding both the rest in height by 14 Cubits, and having on the top two *Spires*; in memory of the two *Hippiel*, his very dear Friends, slain in his service in the Wars.

2. On the South-side stood that part which was called the *Old City*, possessed if not built by the *Jebusites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*: but after called the *City of David*, because taken by him; who thereon built a strong and magnificent Castle, the Royal Court and Manlion of the Kings succeeding. In the West part hereof stood the Tower of *David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cesar*, composed of Marble, and every where entered laid with Gold; and not far off, the house of *Annas and Caiaphas*, to which the Conspirators led our Saviour to receive his Tryal.

3. That which was called the *Lower City*, because it had more in it of the *Valley*, was also called the *Daughter of Sion*, because built after it, and did in Majesty and greatness exceed the Mother. For therein upon Mount *Moriah*, stood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon) and betwixt it and Mount *Sion*, on another Hill, the Palace which he built for Wife his Daughter of *Egypt*; and that which he founded for himself, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the Temple. West hereof on a lofty rock over-looking the City, stood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabees*, re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa* (though of *Herods* race) and not far off the Theatre of *Herods* building, adorned with admiral Pictures, expressing the many Victories and Triumphs of *Augustus Caesar*. In this part also stood Mount *Acra*, and on that once a Citadel built by *Antiochus King of Syria*; but razed by *Simon*, one of the *Maccabean* Brothers, because it over-topped the Temple; the house of *Helena Queen of Adiabene*, who converted from Paganism to Judaism, had here her dwelling, and here died; and finally *Herods Amphitheatre*, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained sometimes with such shews and spectacles, as were in use amongst the *Romans*. And in this part also on an high and craggy Rock, not far from the Temple, stood the Tower of *Baris*, whereon the same *Herod* built a strong and impregnable Citadel, in honour of *Marc. Antony*, whose Creature he first was, called by the name of *Antonias*, having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them 50 Cubits high, and the other 70. afterwards garrisoned by the *Romans*, for fear the *Jews* presuming on the strength of the Temple, might take occasion to rebel.

4. As for the *New City*, which lay North to the *City of Herod*, it was once a Suburb only unto all the rest; inhabited by none but mechanical persons, and the meanest Tradesmen; but after encompassed with *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with ninety Towers. The whole City fenced with a wonderful circumvallation on all parts thereof; having a Ditch cut out of the same Rock, as *Josephus* an eye-witness writeth, sixty foot deep, and no less than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. First built, say some, by *Melchisedek* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jebusites* themselves, say others: by whomsoever built, called at first *Jebusalem*, afterwards *Ierusalem*, with the change of one letter only: enlarged in time, when made the Royal Seat of the House of *David*, to the magnificence and greatness before described, till it attained unto the compass of sixty furlongs, or seven miles and an half. Unconquered for the first four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Israel*: and when *David* attempted it, the people presumed so much on the strength of the place, that they told him in the way of scorn, that the *Blind* and the *Lame* which they had amongst them (as the Text is generally expounded) should defend it against him. But as I think, the late learned Mr. *Gregory of Christ Church in Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, that the *Jebusites* by the *Blind* and *Lame* (as they knew well what the *Israelites* called *Blind* and *Lame*)

Judea.

did understand those *Tutelar Idols*, on whose protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*) for defence thereof: and then the meaning must be this, those Gods whom you of *Israel* call *blind* and *lame*, shall defend our Walls. Why else should *David* say (had they meant it literally) that his soul hated the *lame* and the *blind*? 2 *Sam.* 5. 8. or why should the people of *Israel* be so uncharitable, as to say that the *blind* and *lame* should not come into the House (or the Temple of God): were it meant no otherwise? But notwithstanding these vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Josh*, that fortunate and courageous Leader; and made the Royal seat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* 30000 workmen, which wrought by ten thousand every month; 70000 Labourers, which carried burdens; 80000 Quarry men, that hewed stones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overseers of the work, no less than 3300 men. The description of this stately Fabrick, we have in the first of *Kings*, cap. 6, 7. In the year of the World 2350 it was destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hierusalem*: rebuilt again after the return from the Captivity; but with such opposition of the *Samaritans* that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tools in one hand, and their swords in the other, to repulse, if need were, those malicious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not answerable to the magnificence of the former; so that the Prophet *Haggi* had good occasion to say to the people, cap. 1. ver. 3. Who is left amongst you that saw this House in her first glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in comparison of it? Nor fell it short thereof only in the outward structure, but some inward Additaments. For it wanted, 1 The Pot of *Manna*, which the Lord commanded *Moses* to lay up before the Testimony for a Memorial, *Exod.* 16. 32. 2 The Rod of *Aaron*, which only budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Israel*, and was commanded to be kept before the Ark of the Testimony, for a token against *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, *Num.* 17. 10. 3 The Ark of the Covenant, the making whereof we have *Exod.* 25. 10. and the placing it in the Oracle, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 *Kings* 6. 19. 4 The two Tables of the Law, writ by Gods own finger, and by *Moses* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5 The fire of Sacrifice, which came down from Heaven, mentioned *Levit.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 1. which by the Priest was to be kept continually burning, never to go out. This second Temple, partly because it was grown ruinous, partly because it seemed not magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the *Jews*, *Herod the Ascalonite* pulled down, and set up another in the place: making it not much inferior (if at all) unto that of *Solomon*, but far superiour to the other; immense & opulent Temple, as *Tacitus* most truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did sometimes vouchsafe his presence.

But here we are to understand, that by the Temple it is not meant the Fabrick only, or the house itself; but also all those several Courts with which encompassed, being four in number. That is to say, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the Priests Court, which was next unto the Temple; wherein stood the brazen Altar for the daily sacrifice, and the Laver for the washing of the Priests and the Sacrifice also: into which Court might none enter but the Priests alone. 2 Then there was *Atrium populi*, or the Peoples Court, separated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height, to which the people did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to say their prayers, and to make payment of their vows. In the middle of this Court, did *Solomon* make a brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Successors, 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afterwards in imitation of his Porch built before the Temple, were many Porches built about it, for the people to repair into in rainy weather; which gave to this whole Court the name of *Solomons Porch*, whereof see *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. Without that stood 3 *Atrium Faminarum*, or the Womens Court, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chron.* 20. 5. in the time of *Jehoshaphat King of Judah*; in which stood their Treasury, or poor-mans Box, mentioned in the one and twentieth Chapter of *Saint Lukes Gospel*: from whence this whole Court had sometimes the name of Treasury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20. where it is said, that these words spake *JESUS* in the Treasury, that is to say in the Womens Court; where the Treasury or Alm-Box stood: Betwixt these last was an ascent of 15 steps, on which the Levites used to sing those 15 Psalms, which do immediately follow the hundred nineteenth Psalm; upon each step one: from whence they had the name of *Psalms Graduals*, or *Cantica Graduum*, i. e. the Psalms or Songs of degrees. And so far all was counted Holy Ground, upon which none might tread but either natural *Jews*, or circumcised Proselytes, whom they called *Proselytised*, as before was said; or such of the other Sex (not natural *Jews*) who having received all outward initiations, had bound themselves unto the observation of the Law of *Moses*. 4 So was it not with the fourth and last Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the Court of the Gentiles; designed for the use of those Gentiles, whom they called *Proselyti Portae*, bound only unto the keeping of the Precepts given the Sons of *Noah*. For in that, as un sanctified ground (though counted part of the Temple also) did they permit a marker of sheep and oxen, the sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of money-changers, for the oblations of the people: stabling the poor Gentiles amongst their Cattel, and ranking them with the worst of them. And out of this Temple, or Court of the Temple, did *CHRIST* our Saviour cast the buyers and sellers, and overthrew the Tables of the money-changers; asserting it to its primitive and original use, which was to be a house of prayer for all the Nations. This last Court separate from the other by a wall of three Cubits height, adorned with certain pillars of equal distance, bearing this inscription, *MA SEI ANTIQVVS SVIS F. AN. MDCCLXIII. I. E. Let no Alien (or one that is no Jew) enter into the holy place*: And to this wall it is that the Apoitle alludeth, saying, *He hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us* (i. e. between the *Jews* and

R r r

Judea.

and Gentiles) making one of twain, Ephes. 2. 14, 15. interring hereupon, that the Gentiles are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow-Citizens with the Saints, and of the household of God. v. 19.

But to go forwards with the Temple, having continued in the gloriost to which Herod brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally destroyed by Titus, the son of Vespasian, in the 69 year after Christ's nativity. At what time the Temple of Delphos was utterly overthrown by Earth-quakes, and Thunder-bolts from Heaven; neither of them ever since repaired, though much endeavoured. The concurrence both of which two miracles evidently sheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the Jewish Ceremonies, and Heathen Idolatries; that so the Kingdom of his son might be all in all. For this destruction of the Temple of Hierusalem I may call a miracle, in regard it was done against the command of Titus; who was not only carefull to preserve it, before his Souldiers had put fire to it, but did all that possibly might be to quench it. His reason was, Josephus hath it, because the loss thereof would redound so highly to the prejudice of the Roman Empire, in being deprived of such a glorious and magnificent structure. But do he what he could with his utmost industry, there was no quenching of it till it was consumed. And it adds somewhat to the marvel, that this should happen on the tenth day of August, on which day the first Temple had been burnt by Nebuchadnezzar. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope I shall not be accounted superstitious for this observation) to see how happy or unfortunate, one or the same day hath been found unto divers persons. In the wars betwixt the French and Spaniards for the Realm of Naples, Friday was observed to be very lucky to that great Captain Gonsalvo; he having on that day given the French many notable overthrowes. Wednesday is said to have been fortunate to Pope Sixtus the fifth, for on that day he was born, on the same made a Monk; on that day created General of his Order; on the same made a Cardinal, then chosen to be Pope, and finally on the same inaugurated. To Henry the seventh of England, Saturday was observed to be very fortunate in all his actions; as was the 24 of February unto Charles the fifth, on what day soever: for on that he came into the World, and in that he took King Francis Prisoner at the battel of Pavia, and on the same received the imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or Saturday it was taken by Pompey, on the same by Herod, and on that also by Titus.

But go we forwards to Hierusalem as now it standeth, it lay in rubbish and unbuild (after the destruction of it by Titus) till repaired by Adrian: and then the Temple not so much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the Reign of Julian that Politick Enemy of the Church, who to diminish the infinite number of Christians by the increase of the Jews, began again to build this Temple. But no sooner were the foundations laid, but a terrible Earth-quake caft them up again, and fire from Heaven consumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other materials. As for the City it self, after the desolation in it which was made by Titus, it was re-edified by the Emperour Elms Adrianus, who named it Elms, drave thence the Jews, and gave it to the Christians. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this Mount Calvary is comprehended, which was not in the old before. As on the other side, a great part of Mount Zion, part of the City of Herod, and the soyl where the New City stood, are left out of this: the ruins of the other still remaining visible, to shew the ancient greatness and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it stands at present, it is now only famous for the Temple of the Sepulchre, built by Helena (whom most report to have been daughter to Cylus a British King) Mother to Constantine the Great. Much ado had the good Lady to find the place where the Lordsbody had been laid; for the Jews and Heathens had raised great hillocks on the place, and built there a Temple of Venus. This Temple being plucked down, and the earth digged away, she found the three Crosses, whereon our blessed Saviour, and the two Thieves had suffered. To know which of these was the right Cross, they were all carried to a woman, who had been long visited with sickness, and now lay at the point of death. The Crosses of the two Thieves did the weak woman no good, but as soon as they laid her on the Cross on which the Lord died, she leaped up and was restored to her former health: the occasion of the festival on the third of May by the Latins called Inventio sancta crucis: This Temple of the Sepulchre, even at the first building, was highly revered and esteemed, by the Christians of these parts. And even untill our daies, it is much resorted to, both by Pilgrims from all the parts of the Romish Church, who fondly and superstitiously hope to merit by their journey: and also by divers Gentlemen of the reformed Churches, who travel hitherwards, partly for curiosity, partly for love to the antiquity of the place, and partly because their generous spirits imitate the Heavenly and delight in motion. Whosoever is added to the sight of this Sepulchre, payeth nine Crowns to the Turkish Officers; so that this tribute only is worth to the Grand Signeur, eighty thousand Ducats to the Turkish Officers; so that this tribute only is worth to the Grand Signeur, eighty thousand Ducats to the Turkish Officers; so that this tribute only is worth to the Grand Signeur, eighty thousand Ducats to the Turkish Officers. The other building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible. Built of flint stones, Low, and but one roof high; flat on the top for men to walk on, and fenced with battlements of a yard in height to preserve them from falling: the under-rooms no better than vaults, and where they repose themselves in the heat of the day. Some houses near the Temple of Solomon, in the Palace of Herod, adorned with Arches towards the Street, where Passenger may walke drye in a shewre of rain; but not many such: nor any thing but the ruins left of the ancient buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles; and yet to those that take a survey thereof from some Hills adjoining, where the ruins are not well discerned from the standing edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleasing prospect. And as the place is, such is the people, inhabited for the most

Judea.

most part by Artizans of the meanest quality, gathered together of the scum of divers Nations: the greatest part consisting of Moors, and Arabians; a few poor Christians, of all the Oriental Sects, which dwell there for devotion, and some Turks, who for the profit which they make of Christians, are content to stay in it. Inasmuch that when Robert Duke of Normandy, being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of some of this rascal people; he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for England, and bad him say, that he saw Duke Robert carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils.

Come we now to the Tribe of Levi, though indeed not reckoned for a Tribe, because not planted close together as the other were; nor had whole Provinces to themselves, but mingled and dispersed amongst the rest of the people; having forty eight Cities assigned them for their habitation, proportionably taken out of the other Tribes. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly that they being set apart for his service, might be at hand in every place to instruct the People; and partly to fulfill the Prophecy which he had spoken by Jacob, who had fore-signified to Levi at the time of his death, that he should be divided in Jacob, and scattered in Israel. The like fortune he had prophesied of Simeon also, of the accomplishment whereof, so far as it respected to him, and the dispersion of his Tribe, we have spoke before. Now to make up the number of the twelve Tribes, Joseph was divided into Ephraim and Manasse; and the Levites were reckoned to belong unto that Tribe, within whose Territory, that City which they dwelt in, stood. Their maintenance was from the tithes or tithes, the first fruits, offerings, and Sacrifices of the people: and as it is in the eighteenth of Joshua, v. the seventeenth, The Priesthood of the Lord was their Inheritance. There were of them four kinds. 1. Punes or Tirones, which from their childhood, till the five and twentieth year of their age, learned the duty of their offices. 2. Graduates, which having spent four years in the study of the Law, were able to answer and oppose in it; 3. Licenciates, who did actually exercise the Priestly function; And 4. Doctors (Rabbins they use to call them) who were the highest in degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is said) the tithes, first fruits, and offerings of all the rest of the People; besides the 48 Cities assigned for their habitation: which last, with the several Territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the space of two thousand Cubits; seems to have been a greater proportion of it self, than any of the other Tribes (with reference to the small number of Levites) had in their possessions. Then for the Tithes, there was not only a full tenth set out of all kinds of increase; but such an imposition laid upon all sorts of grain, as came to more than a sixth part of the Crop it self. For first, out of six thousand bushels (and so accordingly in all after that proportion) a sixth part at least, (and that they termed the Terumah of the evil eye, or the niggards first fruits) was to be set forth as the first fruits of the threshing-floor; which was an hundred in the total. Out of the residue being five thousand and nine hundred bushels; the first Tithe paid unto the Levites, came to five hundred and ninety bushels; and of the residue, being five thousand three hundred and thirty bushels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the second Tithe, unto the Priest, which ministered in the Holy Temple; yet so, that such as would decline the trouble of carrying it in kind unto Hierusalem, must pay the price thereof at the Priests own estimate. Laying which several sums together, it appears demonstrably, that of six thousand bushels (& sic de ceteris) there will accrew one thousand two hundred seventy and one bushels to the Priests and Levites; and but four thousand seven hundred seventy and nine to the Lord or Tenant; which is not fully a sixth part, as was said before. Then had they the first born of mankind and all unclean beasts, redeemed at a certain rate; the first fruits of Wine, Oyl, and Wool; the first fruits of the dough, and of the firstlings of clean Beasts (their blood being sprinkled on the Altar, and the fat offered for a burnt offering) the Flesh remained unto the Priest. They had also the meat-offerings, the sin-offerings, the trespass-offerings, the shake-offerings, the heave-offerings, and the Shew-bread: as also of all Eucharistical Sacrifices the breast and the shoulder; of Others the shoulder, the two cheeks, and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the Skin; besides the free gifts of the people, appearing thrice yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the rest of the Tribes, though they had no whole Country allotted to them, as the others had. And so much for such parts of the Land of Palestine as were possessed in part, or wholly, by the Sons of Jacob; proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of Esau.

Rxx2

6 IDUM EA

IDUMAE A, or the Land of EDOM, is bounded on the East and South, with Arabia Petraea; on the North with Judaa; on the West, with the Mediterranean Sea. So called from the Edomites, or Children of Esau, whose name is Edom, Gen. 36. 1. the Father of the Edomites, vers. 43; by whom it was planted and possessed: or as others say, from the Idumaei, a people of Arabia; who in a mutiny being forced for to forsake their Country, came and settled here. The first the more certain of the two, therefore I adhere to that.

therefore I adhere to that.

The Country towards the Sea side very fat and fruitful; but where it bendeth towards *Arabia*, exceeding mountainous and barren. Heretofore it afforded *Balm*, not now; but still it hath some store of *Palmitres*, for which much celebrated by some writers of ancient times; as *Arbusto* *Palmarum* divers of *Idume*, in the Poet *Lucan*. Sandy, and full of vast defars, for which, and for the want of water, it is thought unconquerable. For though they have many Wells there for the use of the natives, yet to them only are they known; and not obvious at all to the eyes of strangers; no not upon the strictest search that can be imagined. But all places are not so well furnished, as appeared by the sad condition which the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom* were fallen into, when they led their Armies through the Defars of this Country, against the *Moabites*; finding herein no water for man or beast: insomuch that the King of *Israel* said, *Alas*, that the Lord hath called these three Kings together, to deliver them into the hand of *Moab*, 2 Kings 3. 10. Not otherwise delivered out of this perplexity: but by a miracle from Heaven: God sending them the next day an abundance of water, without wind or rain, or any other visible means, ver. 17, 20.

The people antiently rude and barbarous; greedy of change; in government, easily stirred to insurrections, and in love with tumults. Professed enemies to the *Jews*, till conquered by them; and when compelled by *Hyrcanus* to the *Jewish* Religion, they were at the best but false friends; and in the siege of *Hierusalem* by *Titus*, did them more mischief than all the *Romans*. At this time subject to the *Turk*, and differ not much in life and custom from the wild *Arabians*.

Rivers of note there can be none, where so little waters. One Lake it hath, though possibly it had been better, had they been without it, now small, and every day growing less; the passage being long since barred, which it had to the Sea. Antiently, though then narrow, it was two hundred furlongs, or five and twenty miles long; bordered on each side by hills of sand, which born by winds into the water did so thicken the fame, that it was not ealie to be discerned from the dry Island; insofmuch as whole Armies have been swallowed up in it. Thence called *Barathrum* by the *Latines*; The true name of it formerly was the Lake of *Sydon*. By the *Italians* it is now called *Lago di Terefa*, by the Natives *Banyema*; the utmost bound of *Palestine*, where it, joyneth on *Egypt*.

The chief Mountains of it, are, 1. Mount *Seir*, the first habitation of *Eſau*, after he left his dwelling in the Land of *Canaan*, to make room for *Jacob*, as is ſaid *Gen. 36. 7. 8.* Not called to unleſs by *Anticipation* (a thing not unſual in the Scriptures) till the coming of *Eſau* thither; the word *Seir* ſignifying *hairy*, or *bristled*, ſuch as *Eſau* is deſcribed to be, *Gen. 27. 11.* To this *St. Hierom* doth accord; deriving the name of *Seir* from *Eſau*, *Sumpto ab autore nomine.* His reaſon is, *Seir quippe interpretatur hiſpidus & pilofus qualis Eſau fuit.* So he in his Comment on *Eſuiab*, *cap. 21.* For the ſame cauſe, is the whole Countrey of *Edom*, ſometimes called Mount *Seir* in Scripture, by the name of this Mountain, as *2 Chron. 20. 10, 23.* The ſecond hill of note is that called *Caſſius*, not far from the Lake of *Sirbon*, now nothing but an huge heap of ſand; formerly famous for a Temple, of *Jupiter*, and the Sepulchre of *Pompey* the Great; Who being baſely murdered here (after his defeat near *Pharſalia* by *Julius Ceſar*) by the command of *Photomy* the younger, King of *Egypt*, unto whom he fled (or rather by the command of *Achilles* who then governed his Counſells) by the piety of a private Souldier was here interred, in an obſcure and homely, but honeſt Sepulchre. The Sepulchre afterwards re-edified, and made more ſuitable to the man, by the Emperour *Adrian*. The piety of the Souldier not a whit the leſs for the coſt of the Emperour; in whoſe name *Lucan* had beſtowed this *Epitaph*, on that ſtill Monument.

*Hic situs est Magnus, placet hoc, Fortuna, Sepulchrum
Dicere Pompeii; quo condi maluit illum,
Quam terra caruisse Socr.*

Which may be *Englised* to this purpose.

Here *Magnus* lies, Such, Fortune, is thy doom
That this vile earth should be great *Pompeys* Tomb.
In which even *Cæsars* self would rather have
His Son-in-Law interred, than want a grave.

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Dinhabath*, the City of *Bela*, the first King of *Edom*. 2 *Anib*, the City of *Hadar*, and 3 *Pain*, the City of *Hadar*, two others of the Kings hereof: which three are mentioned *Gen.* 36. 32. 35. 39. 4 *Buzanna*, placed here by *Ptolomy*, supposed to be the same with *BeerSheba* in the Tribe of *Simoon*, the utmost border South-wards of the Land of *Canaan*, of which more there. 5 *Caparosa*, 6 *Gammariarts*, and 7 *Elasa*, all of them mentioned by *Ptolomy*; which sheweth them to be of some consideration in those times, though now forgotten with the former. 8 *Anthedon*, on the South side of the River *Bezor*, opposite to *Gaza* in the Tribe of *Sissian*, which is situate on the Northern bank. A port Town, once of good repute, till desaced by *Alexander King of the Jews*: re-edified afterwards by *Herod* the Great, and named *Agrippias*, in honour of *Agrippa* the favourite and Son-in-law to *Augustus Caesar*. 9 *Rosfa*, a Fort of consequence, not far from *Mafadad*, before mentioned, when we were in *Judea*. 10 *Raphia*, taken by *Herod* in his way to relieve that Cattle. 11 *Raphia*, memorable for the great defeat which *Ptolomy Philopater* there gave unto *Antiochus* surnamed *Magnus*. 12 *Rhinocurra*, so called from a mishap which befell the inhabitants hereof, by mangling and desacing their nos. By *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Rhinocurula*; and at this time *Pharanica*. Memorable for an old but ill-grounded tradition, that here the world was divided by lots, betwixt the posterity of *Noah*: and so considerable in the wars of the *Holy Land*, that it was strongly fortified by *Baldin* the first, to obstruct the passage of such forces as usually came out of *Egypt*, to aid the *Turks*. 13 *Oftracene*, now *Stegioni*, on the Sea-side beneath *Anthedon*, and that part of the Countrey which from Mount *Cafius* hath the name of *Casotis*: ascribed by *Ptolomy* to *Egypt*; but being they are both on the North of the Lake of *Sirbon*, more properly belonging to *Palestina*. But most of these being now buried in their ruins, there are left none but a few Castles and scattered Villages: the Villages inhabited for the most part by *Arabians*, the Castles Garrisoned by *Turks*. The chief of which lying on the Sea, in the road to *Egypt*, are 13 *Hamones*, a small Cattle not far from *Gaza*, used chiefly for a Toll-booth, to receive customs of such Merchants as pass that way. 14 *Harifa*, a small Cattle also, serving specially for the same use; but stronger, and of more importance because near the Sea, from which not above two miles distant; and for that cause garrisoned with an hundred Souldiers: environed with a few houses, by reason of the commodity of the water, which is sweet and wholesome; else little better than a Desert. 15 *Catio*, another Cattle, or rather Toll-booth, with a garrison of about 60 Souldiers in it: seated in a place so desert and unfruitfull, that nothing vegetable groweth in it, but a few starved *Palm-trees*. The water which they have there, so bad and brackish, though esteemed good enough for the common Souldiers; that all which the Captain drinketh is brought from 16 *Tima*, a Town upon the Sea-shore, about twelve miles distant, and the sail upon this Coast towards *Egypt*.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Horites*, the *Horites* which dwelt in *Mount Seir*, as we read in *Genesis* cap. 14. vers. 6. that is to say, which dwelt in that hilly Country which afterwards was called *Mount Seir*. But whether it was so called from *Esaus* dwelling here, as is said before, or from *Seir* the *Horite*, mentioned *Genesis* 36. 20. as perhaps may probably be supposed; need not now come into dispute. Broken by *Chedorlaomer*, and his Associates, they were the more easily subdued by *Esau*. Who leaving the Land of *Canaan* to his Brother *Jacob*, *Genesis* 6. 7, 8. because those parts in which they dwelt did not afford them room enough for their several Cattel; came into this Country: and having destroyed the *Horites* from before them, succeeded in their habitations, and dwelt there in their stead even unto this day, *Deut.* 2. 22. This true, we find *Esau* in *Mount Seir*, before this remove: for it is said, that *Jacob* at his first coming out of *Mesopotamia* sent Messengers before him to *Esau* his Brother, unto the Land of *Seir*, the Country of *Edom*, *Gen.* 32. 3. And hence a question hath been moved, how *Esau* dwelling there before *Jacob*s coming, can be said to remove thither to make room for him. To this *Sir Walter Raleigh* and some others answer, that at the time when *Jacob* came out of *Paddan Aram*, *Esaue* dwelt in those parts of the Mountains which lye on the East of *Jordan*, called afterwards *Galaad* and *Mount Hermon*, by which *Jacob* must needs pass in his way to *Canaan*; which Mountains then were called by the name of *Seir*, and from thence *Syrion* by the *Ziddiquis*, or *Phanicians* in the ages following: from whence driven by the *Amorites* at such time as they vanquished those of *Moab* and *Ammon*, they were forced to fear themselves on the South of *Canaan*, where *Moses* found them. But with this I am by no means satisfied. For besides that it maketh *Esau* to carry a *Mount Seir* with him, wheresoever he went; it doth expressly differ from the plain words of Scripture, both in occasion, and the time of his settling there: the Victories which the *Amorites* had over the *Ammonites* and *Moabites*, being then fresh and newly gotten; when *Moses* with the children of *Israel* came into these parts; which was at the least 200 years after *Esau* did withdraw himself to the Land of *Edom*. And therefore I should rather think that *Esaus* finding himself distastied by his Father and Mother, in regard of his *Canaanitishe* marriages, and the hatred which he bore to *Jacob*, departed from them, and sojourned in the South parts amongst the *Horites* of *Mount Seir*; that thither *Jacob* sent his Messengers, to make peace between them, that the reconciliation being made, *Esau* returned unto the place where before he sojourned; and having brought thence his children, Cattel, and the rest of his substance, fixed himself again near the house of his Father: and finally, that on *Isaacs* death, finding his family increased, his herds and flocks augmented, and the rest of his substance also doubled by the death of his Father; he thought it fitt so to enlarge his dwelling and to remove once more to *Edom*. A thing not needfull to be done, had he dwelt in *Galaad*, *Hermon*, or any other part of that Mountainous Tract: considering the great distance betwixt those

The Judges and Captains of the HEBREWS.

A. M.

- 2454 1 *Moses*, a Levite, the Law-giver of the Hebrews, brought by him out of the Land of Egypt. 40.
 2494 2 *Josuah*, an Ephraimite, who settled them in the Land of Canaan. 33.
 2526 3 *Othoniel*, of Judah, by whom they were delivered from the Mesopotamians.
 2530 4 *Ehud*, a Benjamite, who rescued them from the hand of Eglon King of Moab.
 2610 5 *Deborah* the Prophetess, and *Barack* the Nephthalite, who discomfited the host of Jabin King of the Canaanites.
 2650 6 *Gideon*, a Manassite, who ransomed them from the power of the Midianites. 40.
 3690 7 *Alimelech*, the base Son of Gideon. 3.

A. M.

- 2693 8 *Tola*, of the tribe of Issachar. 23.
 2716 9 *Iair*, a Gileadite. 22.
 2760 10 *Iephtah*, a Gileadite, by whom the people were redeemed from the hand of the Ammonites.
 2766 11 *Isan*, of Bethlehem. 7.
 2773 12 *Elon*, a Zebulonite. 10.
 2783 13 *Aldon*, an Ephraimite. 8.
 2790 14 *Samson*, a Danite, the avenger of the People upon the Philistines.
 2809 15 *Eli*, the High Priest, in whose time the Ark was taken by the Philistines.
 2849 16 *Samuel*, the Prophet, of the Tribe of Ephraim, in the latter end of whose government, the people being weary of the command of their former Rulers, desired to have a King, to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

The Kings of the HEBREWS.

A. M.

- 2878 1 *Saul*, of the Tribe of Benjamin, the first King of the Hebrews, and an unlucky one to begin withall. 17.
 2890 2 *David*, the Son of Jesse, of the Tribe of Judah, the most Victorious King of the Hebrew Nation. 40.
 2930 3 *Solomon*, the Son of David, renowned for building of the Temple. The Kingdom afterward divided into Judah, and Israel.

The Kings of JUDAH.

A. M.

- 2971 1 *Rehoboam*, the son of Solomon the first King of Judah. 17.
 2988 2 *Abijah*, the Son of Rehoboam. 3.
 2991 3 *Asa*, the son of Abijah, discomfited the numerous Army of Zerah, the Ethiopian or Arabian King.
 3031 4 *Jehoshaphat*, the Son of Asa, a great Reformer of the State, both Ecclesiastical and Civil. 35.
 3056 5 *Jehoram*, the son of Jehoshaphat. 8.
 3064 6 *Ahaziah*, the son of Jehoram by Athaliah his wife, the Sister of Ahab King of Israel. 1.
 3065 7 *Athaliah*, the Daughter of Omri, and Sister of Ahab, having destroyed the Regal race of the house of David, usurped the Kingdom for 7 years.
 3072 8 *Josiah*, the only surviving heir of the house of David, restored by Jehoiahah the Priest, to the Throne of his Ancestors. 40.
 3112 9 *Amaziah*, the son of Josiah, vanquished by Josiah King of Israel, and a breach forced throw the walls of Hierusalem. 29.

The Kings of ISRAEL.

A. M.

- 2971 1 *Jeroboam*, the Son of Nebat, of the Tribe of Ephraim, the first King of Israel. 22.
 2993 2 *Nadab*, the son of Jeroboam. 2.
 2995 3 *Baasha*, of the Tribe of Issachar, having slain Nadab, reigned in his stead. 24.
 3019 4 *Ela*, the son of Baasha. 2.
 3021 5 *Zimri*, a King of 7 days only, the murderer of Ela, and his own executioner.
 6 *Omri*, the Captain of the host, who removed the Regal seat from Tirzah to Samaria. 8.
 3029 7 *Ahab*, the son of Omri, and husband of Jezebel, a Phœnician Princess.
 3051 8 *Ahaziah*, the son of Ahab. 2.
 3053 9 *Jehoram*, the Brother of Ahaziah. 12.
 3065 10 *Jehu*, the Captain of the host, vanquished and slew Jehoram, reigning in his stead. 28.
 3093 11 *Jehoahaz*, the son of Jehu. 17.
 3110 12 *Josiah*, the son of Jehoahaz. 16.
 3126 13 *Jeroboam II.* the son of Josiah. 41.
 3178 14 *Zachariah*, the Son of Jeroboam the second, after an Interregnum of 11 years succeeded.

- 3141 10 *Azariah*, the son of Amaziah, called also *Uzziah*; smote with a Leprosie by the Lord. 52.
 3192 11 *Iotham*, the son of Uzziah, or Azariah. 16.
 3208 12 *Ahaz*, the son of Jotham, in whose time, and on whose occasion, the Kingdom of Damascus was ruined by Tiglath Pileser King of Assyria; and the Tribes on the farther side of Jordan led into captivity. 16.
 3224 13 *Hezekiah*, the Son of Ahaz, a religious Prince; in whose time the Kingdom of the ten Tribes was destroyed by the Assyrians; and that of Assyria, by the Babylonians.

- 3253 14 *Manasseh*, the wicked Son of the good King Hezekiah, restored Idolatry, and put to death the Prophet *Esaiah*, for opposing his irreligious courses. 55.
 3308 15 *Amon*, the son of Manasseh, and as bad as he; slain by a conspiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but two years only.
 3310 16 *Josiah*, the son of Amon, a right godly King; unfortunately slain by Pharaoh Necho King of Egypt, at the battle of Megiddo. 31.
 3341 17 *Jehoahaz*, the son of Josiah, a King of three months only, deposed and sent Prisoner by Pharaoh Necho, to Riblah in the land of Hamath, since called Antiochia.
 18 *Jehoiakim*, the son of Josiah, and half Brother of Jehoahaz, advanced unto the Throne by Necho, who changed his name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Jehoiakim*. 11.
 3351 19 *Jehoiachin*, or *Iechoniah*, the son of Jehoiakim, at the end of three months led captive unto Babylon, with his Wives and Mother, and the great Officers of the Realm by *Nebuchadnezzar*.
 20 *Zedekiah*, another of the sons of Josiah, and brother by the whole blood of Jehoahaz, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of Jehoiachin, or *Iechoniah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling against his Benefactor, contrary to the Counsel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Prisoner in the 11th. year of his Reign, *Hierusalem* destroyed, the Temple ruined, and the People carried Captive to the Land of Babylon, A. M. 3362. where they lived in exile 70 years. Which time expired, Cyrus the King of the Persians, gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edifie their City and Temple. Which work being finished, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah*, and *Zorobabel*; and the Nation again settled in some part of their old possessions; they were after governed by their High-Priests, and the Council of the Elders, which they called the *Sanhedrim*, the High-Priest bearing the chief stroke, and being looked on as a man of the greatest power. And therefore I will here subjoin the Catalogue of so many of them, as governed the affairs of this Countrey, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of Babylon, till the time of the Maccabees; who managed the estate hereof both as Priests and Princes, till their subjection by the Romans.

The High-Priests of the JEWS.
after the Captivity.

A. M.

- 3427 1 *Josuah*, the High-Priest at the time of the Return, assistant to *Zorobabel* in re-building the Temple, which he lived not to finish; though continuing (as some say) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the names of his Successors being lost, the whole time is ascribed to him.
 3530 2 *Jehoiakim*, said to be the son of Josuah, in whose time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the Temple was finished, and the worship of God restored.
 3580 3 *Jonathan*, or *Johanan*. 30.
 3610 4 *Jaddus*, who entertained *Alexander* the Great, coming to *Hierusalem* (of whom more anon) the Brother of that *Manasseh*; for whose sake, and on whose occasion, the Temple on Mount *Gurazim*, was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.
 3630 5 *Onias* succeeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathan*; not by birth (as formerly) but by the Election of the People.
 3641 6 *Simon*, surnamed *Justus*. 9.
 3660 7 *Elenzer*, the Brother of *Simon*. 32.

- 3692 8 Menelaus, the brother of Eleazer, and Simon.
 3718 9 Onias II. 14.
 3732 10 Simon II. 10.
 3742 11 Onias III. the son of Simon the 2d.
 3787 12 Isafon, the Brother of Onias the 3d.
 3789 13 Menelaus II. the Brother of Isafon, in whose time the Temple was profaned by the Syrians, at the command of Antiochus Epiphanes.
 3794 14 Alcimus, under whose Government the Maccabees began to appear in defence of their Countrey, and Religion, by whom succeeded in the office of High-Priest, after his decease. Among these none of greater note than Iaddus, High-Priest at such time as Alexander the Great having conquered Syria, marched towards Hierusalem, and was encountred by this Iaddus in his Priestly vestments; assuring him in the name of the most high God, and making it demonstrable from the Prophecy of Daniel, that he should prosper in his enterprize against the Persians. An hope which Alexander did embrace with the greater confidence, because (as he affirmed to Parmenio his chief Commander) he had once at Diu, a City of Macedonia, seen in a dream or vision such a person as Iaddus was, so habited, and professing the same one God; by whom he was encouraged to pursue the action which he had in hand, with assurance of Victory. And upon this the Jews were so much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Laws, and to enjoy with freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own time. For shortly after his decease, they were on both sides plagued by the Kings of Egypt, and Syria, who ransacked their Cities, slaughtered their People, made havock of their goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of forbidden meats, and offer sacrifice unto Idols. At the last God raised up Mattathias, (descended from Asmonens a Priest of the rank of Jorab) and his five sons to resist these insolencies; who in the reign of Antiochus Epiphanes King of Syria, undertook the protection of the People, and gave unto the Syrians many notable overthrows; inasmuch that the Jews made choice of Judas surnamed Maccabaeus (the eldest of the five brethren) for their Prince or Governour.

The ASMONEAN Princes of JEWRY.

A. M.

- 3799 1 Judas Maccabaeus, the third son of Matthias above mentioned, one of the nine Worthies, vanquished three great and puissant Armies of the Syrians, conducted by Alcimus, Gorgias, and Lysias, men of great renown, being Commanders of the forces of Antiochus Epiphanes, before mentioned.
 3805 2 Jonathan, the Brother of Judas vanquished the forces of Bacchides and Alcimus, Captains of Demetrius King of Syria; and after many notable exploits and deeds of Arms, was treacherously murdered by Tryphon, aspiring at that time to the Syrian Diadem.
 3823 3 Simon, the elder Brother of Judas and Jonathan, subdued the Cities of Gaza, Joppa, and Iamnia, and cleared Judea of the Syrians; perfidiously slain in the course of his fortune, by his Son-in-law Ptolomy. 8.
 3831 4 Johannes Hyrcanus, the third son of Simon (his two other Brethren being in the power of Ptolomy) succeeded in the Government. He destroyed the Temple on Mount Garzim, conquered Idumaea, and subdued the Idumeans, compelling them to be Circumcised; transferred the war into Syria, and dying left the Sovereignty to his eldest son Aristobolus.

The ASMONEAN Kings of JUDAH.

- 3862 1 Aristobolus, caused himself to be Crowned, and was the first King of Judah after the Babylonian captivity; he starved his mother, and slew Antigonus his Brother.
 3863 2 Alexander, the Brother of Aristobolus, exceedingly enlarged the Kingdom of Jewry; by the conquest of Idumaea, and some parts of Syria; but was withal so great a Tyrant, that he causelessly slew of his own Subjects fifty thousand in battel; and commanded 800 of his principal enemies to be hanged before his face; he left behind him two sons: Hyrcanus who was at last slain by Herod after all his troubles, leaving no issue male behind him; and Aristobolus the father of Alexander, and of Antigonus, of whom more anon, of which two Alexander was the Father of another Aristobolus, the most beautiful Prince of all his time, and of Mariamne the Wife of Herod, by whose command they were most villainously murdered.
 3890 3 Alexandra, by some called Salome, the Wife of Alexander, following the counsel of her husband at the time of his death, committed her self and her Children into the hands of the Pharisees, then in great power and credit amongst the people; by means whereof she procured an honourable burial for her husband, obtained the Kingdom for her self, and finally left it to her Children, whose disagreements caused the ruine of this famous Family.

3899 4 Aristobolus,

Jewry.

- 3899 4 Aristobolus II. the younger Son of Alexander, an active Prince, and beloved of the Military Men, having presently after the death of his Mother possessed himself of the greatest part of the Forts and Castles by the forced consent of Hyrcanus his elder brother, succeeded in the Kingdom and High Priesthood also; both which he held with great trouble and opposition both from his brother and the Romans, whom most imprudently they call'd in to decide the Controversie. By Pompey sent Prisoner unto Rome (with Alexander and Antigonus his two Sons) he escaped thence and rais'd a new Army for the recovery of his Kingdom; but being forced to yield himself to Gabinius one of Pompey's Lieutenants, he was sent back again to Rome, where he dyed in Prison, having reigned three years and six months.
 3903 5 Hyrcanus II. a Prince of weak parts, and not fit for Government, was made High Priest in the first-year of his Mothers reign, but dispossessed of that dignity by Aristobolus his younger brother. Restored again by the favour of Pompey, he was again disturb'd in his possession by Alexander the eldest Son of Aristobolus, who escaping out of Rome, had raised some Forces, and began to dispute the Title with him, but was soon after discomfited by Gabinius afore-mentioned, and slain by Scipio, another of great Pompey's Captains. After the death of Aristobolus, which hapned in the year 3903. Hyrcanus was lookt on by the People, not only as their High Priest, but as their Prince and King, commonly called so by Josephus in the course of his History. His affairs managed for the most part by Antipater (an Idumean born, and the Father of Herod) his constant and most faithful friend in all his troubles, who govern'd the Estate with great care and prudence. But he being made away by poison, Antigonus the younger Son of Aristobolus, set on foot his Title to the Kingdom, and drew in an Army of the Parthians to make it good; by whose aid having treacherously inslaved Hyrcanus, he cut off his ears (to make him incapable of the Priesthood for the time to come) and sent him Prisoner to Babylon; taking upon himself the title of King, though never acknowledged for such by the Jewish Nation; but long he did not please himself with that title neither: For being besieged in Jerusalem by Herod, then newly created King of the Jews by the Roman Senate, and by him taken Prisoner in the sack of that City, he was sent in bonds to Mark Antony, and by him beheaded. As for Hyrcanus, the rightful Prince of this Countrey, he remained Prisoner for a time amongst the Parthians, till hearing of the death of Antigonus, he returned into Jewry, and lived contentedly under the Government of Herod, of whose greatness he had laid the first foundation, and was by him in fine most wickedly murdered.

The Idumean Kings and Princes of Jewry.

A. M.

- 3940 1 Herod the Ascalonite, surnamed the Great, son to Antipater the Idumean, was by the power of Mark Antony created, and by Augustus confirmed King of Jewry; under whom that Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater splendour, than ever it had been in since the time of David. A Prince of great magnificence, but of greater vices. During his reign, the Scepter being now departed from Judah, the Lord CHRIST was born.
 6 2 Archelaus, eldest son of Herod at the time of his death, succeeded with the title of King but in truth and reality possessed only a Tetrarchie, or fourth part of the Kingdom, though the best and largest of the four, containing Judea, Samaria and Idumaea. The rest of Herods Kingdom was divided into three other Tetrarchies i. e. the Tetrarchie of Galilee and Perea, given Herod Antipas; Secondly that of Ituraea, given to Philip, another of the sons of Herod; And thirdly, That of Abilene, conferred on Lysanias. Banished into France, his Tetrarchie was made a Province of the Roman Empire; governed by Pontius Pilate, at our Saviours Passion.
 16 3 Herod II. surnamed Antipas, Tetrarch of Galilee and Perea, on the banishment of Archelaus, succeeded him, as chief of the Herodian family, but not in his Tetrarchie, and at last followed him in his banishment also. This is he who murdered John Baptist, and in whose time CHRIST suffered.
 40 4 Herod III. surnamed Agrippa, in honour of Agrippa the son in law, and most trusty favourite of Augustus Caesar Nephew to Herod the Great, by his son Aristobolus begotten on Mariamne of the race of the Asmonees was by Caligula first invested in the Tetrarchie of his Uncle Philip, with the title of King, and next in that of Antipas also; and finally by Claudius, in that also of Lysanias; some part of the Tetrarchie of Archelaus being added unto his Dominions. This was the man that murdered James, and imprisoned Peter; and in the end was stricken by an Angel, and devoured by Worms.
 47 5 Agrippa Minor, son of Herod Agrippa, was he before whom St. Paul pleaded in defence of the Gospel; and the last which had the title of King of the Jews: for in his time the City of Hierusalem was destroyed by Titus; and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the Roman Empire. Anno 73.

And here it is to be observed, that when Salmanassar had subdued and captivated the ten Tribes of Israel, he sent new Colonies of his own to plant this Countrey; that so fruitful and well-situate a part of his Empire might yield its just tribute, and not lye open to the fury of the next Invader. But the Romans not having (it seemeth) so much policy or providence, as those whom they accounted barbarous; having laid the Countrey desolate, left it unfurnished of new Colonies: whereby the Persians, next the Saracens, and

S f f

Judea.

and after them the *Turks*, entering the *Roman Empire* at this door, have successively driven the *Romans* out of the whole house. Now that we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakened, and almost utterly rooted out the Jewish Nation, we will relate some of their particular massacres: which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the Enemy, than justly deserved by themselves; they wishing, though (I suppose) not desiring, that the innocent Blood of our Saviour should be on them and their children. First then the Inhabitants of *Cesarea* slew of the *Jews* in one day, about 20000, and such as fled were took and imprisoned by *Florus* the *Roman* Lieutenant of *Judea*. To revenge this slaughter, the *Jews* set upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmish 13000 of them were slain. The people of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the sword; they of *Damascus*, 10000; *Antonius* a *Roman* Captain, slew in *Afalon* 10000 of them; and *Cestius* another Captain, 8040 persons. Now to come to the wars here managed by *Vespasian*; This *Vespasian* in the siege of *Aphaca*, slew and took prisoners 17230 persons; In *Samaria*, 11600 persons; in *Isotopata*, 42200 persons: In *Toppa*, so many killed and drowned themselves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the rest so totally perished, that there remained none to carry tidings unto *Hierusalem*, of the loss of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were slain, and made captives, 45000 persons, besides those which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there perished 90000, and none left alive but only two women: In *Gasfala* 5000 men dyed by the sword; in the City of *Gadera* there were slain 32200, besides an infinite number which had drowned themselves. In *Hierusalem* it self, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the sword, and partly by the famine; the worse Enemy of the two; there were found 2000 in privies and sinks; and 9700 taken prisoners, inasmuch that 50 *Jews* were sold for a penny. So punctual was the Divine Justice in retaliating to this wretched people, according to the measure of their iniquities; that they who bought their Saviour for thirty pence, should be sold at thirty for a penny in the open market.

Now that *Hierusalem* was able to contain such a number of people, is evident, in that when *Cestius* was Lieutenant of *Jerry*, the High Priest did at his request, number the people which came thither to eat the *Paschal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and seven hundred thousand living souls, all found and purified: For to Lepers, or men having a flux of seed, or women in their monthly terms, or to strangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid siege to the City, it was in the feast of the *Passover*, when most of the people were there assembled; God (as it were) having thus imprisoned them. All these massacres, besides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite number which were slain in the fields and villages, which drowned themselves, and which were privately made away, amounting all to almost 2000000 of people, happened in the compass of four years; beginning at the 12 of *Nero*, and ending at the 2 of *Vespasian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till the year 136. For then this miserable people, having stirred two notable rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the last under *Adrian* the Emperors: were generally banished their native Country, and never again permitted to inhabit it, otherwise than as strangers. After this dissolution, the *Jews* were dispersed all over the world, and especially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell: yet they found everywhere so little favour, that having divers times been put to grievous murther and ransoms, they were at last thrust out of most of the Kingdoms of *Europe* also. They were banished out of *England* by *Edward* the first, Anno 1290. Out of *France*, by *Philip* the Fair, 1307. Out of *Spain* by *Ferdinand* and the *Catholique*, 1492. Out of *Portugal* by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, by *Charles* the fifth, 1539. Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romish* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*, in most Cities of *Italy*, especially *Rome* it self, where are no less than 15000, or 20000 of them; and also in the *Popes* Country of *Avignon*. The reason why they are permitted to live thus under the *Popes* nose, is pretended to be an expectation of their conversion, which is a meer pretence indeed; the true reason being the benefit hence arising to his Holiness's Coffers: the hopes of their conversion being very small, and the means less. For besides the scandal, *Idolatrie* & *acceptum*, by the *Papists* fond worshipping of Images, so peremptorily contrary to the first Table of the Law: they are not permitted to see any Book of Christian Religion, nor so much as the New Testament. And (which worketh much upon men of their metal) because at their conversion they must quit all their goods unto the Church, as being ill gotten, and by consequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptism they promise to renounce. They have also a Synagogue at *Amsterdam*, and are pretty thick spread over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who notwithstanding so hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they used to say in the dereliction of a thing, *I would I might dye a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk*, unless he be first baptized. And though their multitudes be so great both in *Theffalonica* and *Constantinople*, that it is conceived they do amount to the number of 160000 persons; yet are they not only contemned and hated, but there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous assembly of the common people, and constantly every *Easter*, where so ever they be, in danger of death. Inasmuch that if a *Jew* do but stir out of doors betwixt *Mandic Thursday* at noon, and *Easter Eve* at night; the *Christians* of the East amongst whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be sure to stone them; because at that time, they battered, derided, and in fine crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turks* Dominions, because employed as *Publicans* in gathering and enhancing the publick tributes, which they exact with all severity that may be, and improve unto the most. And no less hated in all parts of the *Christian* world, as Enemies to the *Cross* of *CHRIST*: so unreclaimably addicted to their ancient *Judaism*, and so abhorring from the conversation of other men; that it is not possible they should reap any other harvest, than contempt and scorn, from those amongst whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief; They are a people which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; especially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like Dogs, and used like slaves, yet never shew so much as an angry countenance. A Nation which will thrive where so ever

Judea.

ever they come, but most by usury and brokerage; not lending any thing but on pawns, and those once forfeited, never more redeemable. The best of both Sexes said to have an unfavourable rankness, not incident (if not caused by stultifness) to other people: from whom as different in their habit, as in their Religion. And as for that, they retain still *Circumcision*, as the badge & cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many ceremonies not prescribed by the Law, nor observed by the Antients: placing a void chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be present, though unseen at the solemnity. And upon this they are so besotted, that they conceive the female sex incapable of eternal life, because not capable of *Circumcision*; and therefore use to name them with no other ceremony, than at the six weeks end to have some young wenches lift up the Cradle with the child in it; which she that standeth at the head, giveth the name unto: Of their *Sabbath* too extremely doating, that they have added to the superstitions left them by the *Pharisees*: And herein they are so precise, that if a *Jew* travel on the Friday, and in the evening fall so short of his journey's end, that it amounts to more than to 2000 Cubits, or six Furlongs, which they account a *Sabbath-days* journey, there must he sit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a wood, or field, or the high-way side, without fear of wind or weather, of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for meat or drink: *periculo latronum praedantium, omni penuria item omni cibi potusq; neglectis*, as *Buxtorfius* hath it. And so far have they gone in despite of *Christ*, as to declare it unlawful to lift the Ox or Ass out of a ditch; permitted in the strictest times of *Pharisaical* rigor. So pertinacious in retaining the difference of meats and drinks, that they will by no means sit at the same table with other men, and so precise in the dressing of it, that they will eat of no flesh but of their own killing only; and that too with such cautions and reservations, that if any of the entrails be corrupt or dislocated, they will sell the whole beast to the *Christians* for a very trifle; Beneficial in that only to the neighbouring *Christians*. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, not so much out of dislike of that liquor, for they are generally good fellows, and love their bellies; as for fear the wine should be baptized: a Ceremony much used in the Eastern parts. Of the coming of their *Messiah* so full of hopes, that their is no great Warrior stirring, but they look upon him as the man; till some sad tragedy or other, which they suffer under that persuasion, makes them see their error: promising to themselves whensoever he cometh, a restitution of their Kingdom; and such felicity therein, in the literal sense of some Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more mystical and sacred meaning. That in good time (but Gods, not theirs) they shall be made partakers of the several blessings which those Texts do speak of, is both the hope and wish of all pious men; who cannot choose but grieve to behold the natural branches, so long dismembered and cut off from the tree of life. And this they neither hope nor wish for but on some fair grounds, presented to them by St. Paul: who said expressly, that when the fulness of the Gentiles is once come in, that then all Israel shall be saved; Rom. 11. 25, 26. The words are to plainly positive that they need no commentary. Or if they did, we have the general consent of the Antients, besides the constant current of most modern Writers; who cherish the glad hopes of their conversion to the Gospel, which the Apostle doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Athanasius*, *Hierome*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostome*, for the primitive times; *Beda* and *Hugo Cardinalis*, in the times succeeding; *Gorran*, and *Thomas Aquinas*, for those of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Balinger*, and *Peter Martyr* for the Reformed Churches; besides divers others of great note, so expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much; which he that doth desire to see, may find them with the explications of most *Christian* Writers, in a Book writ by Doctor *Wilket*, entituled *De generali & novissima Judaeorum vocatione*; and thither I refer the more curious Reader. Out of all I shall take these words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that passage of St. Paul to the *Romans*, viz. *Non ita Judaei perierunt ut nulla de illorum salute spes supersit*: The *Jews* (saith he) are not so wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there still remain some hopes of their salvation. Of their Salvation then by the Gospel of *Christ*, when the fulness of the Gentiles is once come in, we conceive good hopes; but whether there be any of their restitution to their temporal Kingdom, is a further question; and not so clearly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be somewhat in that Book which may seem to intimate it. That the opinion of being restored by the *Messiah* to that temporal power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, was prevalent as well amongst *Christ's* Disciples, as the rest of the *Jews*; is, as I take it, clear enough in the holy Gospel. In such a Kingdom and no other, did the two sons of *Zebedee* desire to sit on both hands of their Master; and the same was it and no other, which all of them expected, as appeareth by the words of *Cleophas*, Luke 24. 21. that *Christ* should have restored unto them. We thought said he, that this would have proved the man, that should have redeemed Israel. Redeemed Israel? from what? from sin and Satan, or the curse and bondage of the Law? Nor so, *ἀπὸ τοῦ ἰσχυροῦ δουλείας*; but from the yoke of vassalage, which the *Romans* had so lately imposed on them, say the Fathers rightly. Touching the same it was that they moved him saying, *Lord, wilt thou at this time, restore again the Kingdom of Israel?* Act. 1. 6. In answer whereunto our Saviour makes them no denial, as unto the thing, nor tells them that they never must expect such a restoration; but only puts them off as unto the time, and bids them rest themselves on the pleasure of God the Father, in whose hands the disposing of all Kingdoms was. It is not for you (saith he) to know the times and seasons, which the Father hath in his own power, ver. 7. By which answer (as it seems to me) there is a possibility of restoring them to their Kingdom also; though not in the *ad vñ*, at that very instant when they were most desirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know; that being a secret, which the Father hath reserved to himself alone.

But leaving these speculations of a restitution of the Throne of *Israel*, and the great power and privileges it may then enjoy; let us look back on the estate in which it flourished in the former times, when the forces and Revenue of it were at the highest. And first for the Revenues, they amounted in the time of *Solomon* (as is said 2 Chron. 9. 13.) to 666 Talents of Gold, besides the benefits of his Customs and Impositions; which cometh to two Millions, and nine hundred ninety and seven thousand pounds; of yearly income;

Judea.

income. A vast sum for such a little Kingdom. Nor can we reckon them at less, if they were not greater in the time of *David*: of whom it is affirmed, 1 *Chron.* 22. 14. that he left to *Solomon* an hundred thousand *Talents* of Gold, and ten hundred thousand *Talents* of Silver, towards the building of the Temple; besides three thousand *Talents* of Gold, and seven thousand *Talents* of Silver, formerly deposited for that purpose, as is said 1 *Chron.* 29. 4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a *Jew's Talent*, reckoning a *Talent* of Gold at four thousand and five hundred pound; and a *Talent* of Silver, at three hundred seventy five pound; will amount in our money to eight hundred and forty millions, and one hundred and twenty five thousand pounds. So vast a sum, that it had been sufficient to have built a *Temple* of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the *Temple* of *Solomon*, without other materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and industrious *Brerewood*, that by the *Talent* in those places we are to understand a far lesser sum than the ordinary *Hebrew Talents*: which whether it doth there signify a *Sicle* only, which is half a *Crown* of *English* money, as *Enopemus*, cited by *Eusebius*, was of opinion; or that every *Talent* of Gold, came to three Golden Crowns of *Athens*, which maketh forty five shillings of *English* money, as *Julius Pollux* hath it in his *Onomasticon*; I am not able to determine. But measuring it by the last estimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two millions and two hundred ninety and five thousand pounds: a vast sum for a King to leave in ready money, which was always exercised in war. And though I do not find expressly what the *Revenues* of *Judah* might amount unto, after the division: yet by one circumstance I find them to be very great. For it is written, 2 *King.* 18. 14. that the yearly tribute imposed upon *Hzechiah*, by the King of *Assyria*, was three hundred *Talents* of Silver, and thirty *Talents* of Gold; amounting (according to the ordinary *Hebrew Talent*,) which questionless is there intended) to two hundred forty seven thousand and five hundred pounds of *English* money: and therefore probably his ordinary *Revenue* must be thrice as much above that tribute; Else the *Assyrian* had not left him a subsistence for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the *Revenues* of this *Crown* were less to *Herod*, than formerly to *Solomon*, or *David*: considering his vast expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeasurable donatives bestowed upon *Augustus*, *Livia*, and the Court of *Rome*, together with the large *Legacies* he gave at the time of his death; not paralleled by any King before or since, though of a larger and more ample Territory than he stood possessed of.

What forces the Kings of the *Hebrews* were able to bring into the field, may best be estimated by the muster which *David* made, when he numbered the People: the enrolment of such as were able to bear arm, and fit for service, coming in all to five hundred thousand fighting men, in *Judah* only, and eight hundred thousand men, in the Tribes of *Israel*. 'Tis true, that *David* never brought into the field so vast a multitude; but when the Kingdoms were divided, and war denounced betwixt *Jeroboam* and *Abijah*, we find almost the whole number brought into the field: that is to say, eight hundred thousand on the side of *Jeroboam*, the King of *Israel*; and four hundred thousand by *Abijah*, the King of *Judah*. After this, out of that small Kingdom, *Asa* the Son of *Abijah*, being invaded by *Zarah* the Arabian or Ethiopian, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thousand men which was more then the enrolment made in the time of *David*. An infinite proportion for so small a Kingdom; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above belief: had not that God who said to *Abraham*, that his seed should be as the stars of *Heaven* for multitude, been able to have made it good.

As to the story and affairs of this Country since the time of *Adrian*, the *Jews* being all expelled their native Soil, and *Christianity* in fine prevailing over all those parts; it was inhabited as the rest of the Empire was, by men of that Religion only: in this Country so advanced and countenanced, that *Hilena* the Mother of *Constantine*, is reported to have built in it no less than two hundred Temples and Monasteries, in places of most note for the miracles of *Christ* our Saviour, or the dwelling of some of his *Disciples*. In the year 615. the *Persians*, under the conduct of *Chosroes* their King, became Masters of it; and possessed themselves of *Hierusalem* also: expelled thence by the valour and good fortune of the Emperor *Heraclius*, who recovering the *Cross* on which *Christ* suffered, out of the hands of the *Pagans*, carried it with as great a triumph into *Constantinople*, as *David* once did the *Ark* into *Hierusalem*; occasioning thereby the annual Festival on the 4th of September, called *Holy-Cross-day*, or *Exaltatio Sancte Crucis*. But this glory and rejoicing did not long continue: For within twenty years after the recovery of this City from the power of the *Persians*, it was again conquered and subdued by *Homar*, or *Aumar*, Caliph of the *Saracens*, An. 637. Under this yoke the captivated *Christians* had long suffered, when they changed the Tyrant, but not the tyranny: the *Turks* about the year 1079. overcoming the *Saracens*, and domineering in their stead. Twenty years did the *Christians* languish under this oppression, when one *Peter* an *Hermit*, travelling for devotion to the *Holy Land*, and being an eye-witness of the miseries under which they groaned; at his return, made his addresses to Pope *Urban* the second, acquainting him with the sad condition of the poor *Christians* in those Countries. A Council thereupon is called at *Clermont* in *France*, where the Pope (willing to employ the *Christian* Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home;) did so effectually advance and endear the business, that no fewer than three hundred thousand fighting men, under several Leaders, undertook the service. And it prospered so well with them in the first beginning, that having beaten the *Turks* out of *Asia Minor*, taken the great City of *Antioch*, and most of the strong Towns of *Syria*; they incamped before *Hierusalem*, and in short time took it, An. 1099. after it had been four hundred years and upwards, in the power of the *Infidels*. The City being thus gained, was offered with the title of King, to *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, Son of *William* the Conquerour: but he upon the hopes of the Kingdom of *England*, refused that honour, never prospering, as it was observed, after that refusal. *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*, had the next offer of it, which with a religious joy he accepted of, though on the day of his inauguration he refused the Crown: affirming that it was not fit for a *Christian* Prince, to wear in that City of a Crown of Gold, where the Redeemer of the World wore a Crown of Thorns. The

The Kings of Hierusalem.

- 1099 1 *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorraine*.
- 1100 2 *Baldwin* of *Lorraine*, brother of *Godfrey*, won *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria*.
- 1118 3 *Baldwin* II. surnamed of *Bruges*, Cousin of *Godfrey*, and *Baldwin*, the Former Kings; overcame the Sultan of *Damascus*, and enlarged his Kingdom by the addition of *Tyre*.
- 1131 4 *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having married *Milliscent* the daughter of *Baldwin* the 2. succeeded after his decease; unfortunately killed with a fall from his Horse.
- 1142 5 *Baldwin* III. Son of *Fulk* and *Milliscent*, fortified *Gaza* against the Caliph of *Egypt*; and recovered *Panade* from the King of *Damascus*.
- 1164 6 *Almericus*, the Brother of *Baldwin* the 3d. so distressed the great Caliph of *Egypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him; by whom slain, and his Kingdom transferred on *Sarracon*, the *Turkish* General.
- 1174 7 *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Almericus*, overthrew *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks* in a fight near *Ascalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.
- 1185 8 *Baldwin* V. Son of *Sibyll* the Sister of *Baldwin* the 4th. by *William* Marquess of *Montferrat*; unnaturally poisoned by his own mother, having reigned only five months, to make way for her second husband, called
- 1185 9 *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the last King of *Hierusalem*, that had the possession of the City, during whose time *Saladine* the Sultan of *Egypt* won that Kingdom, Anno 1187. which his Successors defended against all invasions, till the year 1517. in which *Selim* the first, Emperor of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, together with *Egypt*, to his Empire. When *Hierusalem* was taken by the *Christians*, it is said that the German Emperours name was *Fredericus*; the Popes; *Urbanus*; the Hierosolymitan Patriarch, *Heraclius*; and that so also were they called, when the *Christians* again lost it. This is the conceit of *Roger Hoveden*, in the life of *Henry* the second; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not see.

After the taking of *Hierusalem* by Sultan *Saladine*, the *Christians* retired their forces into some of the other Towns of the *Holy-land*; which they made good against the Enemy: and defended them under the government of these three Kings following, viz.

- 10 *Conrade* Marquess of *Montferrat*, husband of *Isabel*, the daughter of *Almericus* King of *Hierusalem*.
- 11 *Henry* Earl of *Campaigne*, second husband of *Isabel*.
- 12 *John* di *Brenne*, husband of *Mary*, or *Toland* as some call her, daughter of *Conrade* and *Isabel*, the last *Christian* King that ever had possession in *Syria* or *Palestine*: inhabited ever since by *Moor*s and *Arabians*; few *Christians*, and not many *Turks* but such as be in garrisons only. *Toland* the daughter of this *John* di *Brenne*, was wife to *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who in her right intitled himself King of *Hierusalem*: and so now do the Kings of *Spain*, as heirs unto, and possessors of the Kingdom of *Naples*. Concerning which title it would not be amiss to insert this story. When the wars in *Queen Elizabeth's* time, were hot between *England* and *Spain*, there were Commissioners of both sides appointed to treat of peace. They met at a Town of the *French* Kings, and first it was debated in what tongue the negotiation should be handled. A *Spaniard* thinking to give the *English* Commissioners a shrewd gird, proposed the *French* tongue as most fit: it being a language which the *Spaniards* were well skilled in; and for these Gentlemen of *England*, I suppose (saith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the language of their fellow-subjects; their Queen is Queen of *France*, as well as of *England*. Nay in faith my Masters, replied *Doctor Dale*, (a Civil Lawyer, and one of the Masters of Requests) the *French* tongue is too vulgar for a business of this secrecy and importance, especially in a *French* Town. We will therefore rather treat in *Hebrew*, the language of *Hierusalem*, whereof your Master is King; and I suppose you are therein as well skilled, as we in the *French*. And thus much for this title.

The Arms of the *Christian* Kings in *Hierusalem* was *Luna*, a cross crossed, *Sol*; which was commonly called the *Hierusalem Cross*. But for their forces and Revenues, I cannot see how any estimate may be made hereof, in regard they subsisted not by their own proper strength, but by the Purfes and the Forces of the *Western* *Christians*; more or less active in that service, as zeal, or emulation, or desire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom after the recovery thereof from the power of the *Turks*, were

1. Of the *Sepulchre*, said to be instituted originally by *Queen Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine* the Great, by whom the Temple of the *Sepulchre* was indeed first built: but more truly by *Philip* King of *France*, An. 1099. at such time as that Temple was regained from the *Turks*. Their Arms the same with that of the Kings before *blazoned*, representing the five wounds of our Saviour *CHRIST*. At the first conferred on none but Gentlemen of blood and fortunes; now saleable to any that will buy it the *Patron-Guardian*, who with a *Convent* of *Franciscans* doth reside near that Temple.
2. Of Saint *John* of *Hierusalem*, begun by one *Gerrard*, Anno 1114. and confirmed by Pope *Paschalis* the second. Their badge or Cognizance, is a White-Cross of eight points. Their duty to defend the *Holy Land*, relieve Pilgrims, and succour *Christian* Princes against the *Infidels*. They were to be of noble parentage and extraction: and grew in time to such infinite riches, especially after the suppression of the *Templars* (most of whose lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the several parts of *Christendom*, no fewer than 20000. Mannours; and of such reputation in all *Christian* Kingdoms,

Kingdoms, that in *England* the Lord Prior of this Order, was accepted the Prince Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminished, by the withdrawing of the Kings of *England*, and other Protestant Princes, from the Church of *Rome*: who on that change, seized on all the Lands of this Order in their several Countries, and either kept them to themselves, or disposed them to others as they pleased. Of these we shall speak more when we are in *Malta*, where they now reside: advertising only at the present, that their first *Great Master* was that *Gerrard* by whom they were founded; the last that had his residence in the *Holy-Land*, one *John de Villiers*, in whose time being driven out of *Palestine*, they removed into *Cyprus*, and in the time of *Fulk de Villaret*, Anno 1309. to the Isle of *Rhodes*; Out of which by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, Anno 1522. they removed from one place to another, till at last by the magnificence of *Charles the fifth*, Anno 1530. they were settled in *Malta*: and there we shall speak farther of them.

3. Of the *Templars*, instituted by *Hugh of Payennes*, Anno 1113, and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius*. Their ensign was a *Red Cross*, in token that they should shed their blood to defend *Christ's Temple*. They were buried *Cross-legged*, and wore on their backs the figure of the *Cross*; for which they were by the common people called *Cross-backs* or *Crouch-backs*, and by corruption, *Crook-backs*. *Edmund Earl of Lancaster*, second son to our *Henry the third*, being of this Order, was vulgarly called *Edmund Crook-back*; which gave *Henry* the fourth a foolish occasion to feign, that this *Edmund* (from whom he was descended) was indeed the eldest son of King *Henry the third*, but for his crookedness and deformity, his younger brother was preferred to the Crown before him. These Knights had in all Provinces of *Europe* their subordinate Governours, in which they possessed no less than 16000 Lordships: the greatness of which Revenue was not the least cause of dissolving the Order. For *Philip the fair*, King of *France*, had a plot to invest one of his Sons with the Title of *King of Jerusalem*, and hoped to procure of the Pope the revenue of this order to be laid unto that Kingdom, for support of the Title: which he thought he might the better do, because *Clement* the fifth then Pope, for the love he bare to *France*, had transferred his seat from *Rome* to *Avignon*. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being dissolved, the lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights *Hospitallers*, or of *St. John*. The crimes objected against this Order were, first, their revolt from their professed obedience unto the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, who was their Visitor: Secondly, their unspeakable pride; and thirdly their sins against nature. The house of our Law-students in *London*, called the *Temple*, was the chief house of the Knights of this order in *England*: and was by the Knights of *St. John*, whose principal mansion was in *Smithfield*, sold unto the Students of the Laws, for the yearly rent of 10 l. about the middle of the reign of *Edward the third*.

These three orders Mr. *Selden* (and deservedly) putteth not in his *Titles of Honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiss a woman; honourary Knight-hood, and the love of Ladies, going together like virtue and reward.

Thus much for *Palestine*.

OF



OF

ARABIA.



ARABIA hath on the East, *Chaldea*, and the Bay or Gulf of *Persia*; on the West, *Palestine*, some part of *Egypt*, and the whole course of the *Red-Sea*; on the North, the River *Euphrates*, with some parts of *Syria* and *Palestine*; and on the South, the main Southern Ocean. But at some times the name extended somewhat further; *Pliny* enlargeth it as far as to *Comagena*, the North part of *Syria*; in regard that many *Arabian* Colonies had been there planted by *Tigranes*; and *Xenophon* comprehended in it the greatest part also of *Mesopotamia*; because situate on the West of the River *Tigris*, and consequently the Western part of the *Assyrian Empire*, as the word *Ereb* doth import; from whence some derive the *Ety-mology*, and name hereof. Which notwithstanding, in the general esteem of Authors, it is bounded only as before.

As for the name, there be some that derive it from *Arabus*, a supposed Son of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*; others from three supposititious Sons of *Jannus Pater*, one of the pretended Grand Sons of *Cham*; who is fabled to have sent his Son *Arabus* into *Arabia Deserta*; *Petreus* into *Arabia Petraea*; and *Sabus* into *Arabia Felix*, the dwelling place of the *Sabeans*. And for this vain conceit, we are beholding to the *Berosus* of *Erie* *Annianus*. More probable is their conjecture, who derive the name from the *Hebrew*, *Arab*, signifying black; by reason of the swarth or tawny complexion of the inhabitants, who are *inter nigrum & fulvum*, as *Vertomannus* an eye-witness hath informed us of them; on the same reason as one of the Provinces of *Africa*, is commonly entituled the Land of *Negroes*. But the most likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from *Harabi*, which signifieth in the *Hebrew*, a Thief or Robber, such as the *Arabians* in all ages have been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *In the way thou hast sate for them, as an Arabian in the wilderness*, as our *English* reads it; *Tanquam Latro insidians in solitudine*, saith the *Vulgar Latine*, *Ier. 32*. *St. Hierome*, though he render it *quasi Latro*, as the *Vulgar* doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, that the word doth also signify an *Arabian*, *qua gens latrociniiis dedita usq; hodie incurat Palestina fines*, &c. which people being addicted to theft and robbery, do to this day (saith he) infest the coasts of *Palestine* which border neer them; and lay in wait for those which had any occasion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the observation of *Martin del Rio*; *Ad eo latrociniiis infames sunt, ut Hebraei Arabes latrones denotat, sicut Chanaanus Mercatorem, Chaldeus Mathematicum*; i.e. So infamous were they for their theft and frequent robberies, that it was a familiar with the *Jews* to call a thief by the name *Arabian*, as by *Chanaanite* to signify a Merchant, or to use the word *Chaldean* for a Mathematician. In the same sense they came in the succeeding times to be called *Saracens*, from *Sarak* or *Saraka*, an *Arabian* word, which signifieth to steal; whereof more anon: No otherwife then one of the *American Islands* had the name of *Ladrones*, or *Insula latronum*, given by *Magellanus*, from the thievishness of the Inhabitants, who had stoll his Cock-boat.

I have staid the longer on the name, because it doth express so much of the Character of the people also; living for the most part upon spoil and robbery, as all that travel that way know by sad experience. Of mean stature, raw-boned, tawny or swart complexioned, having feminine voyces; of swift, but noiseless gait, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no set-dwellings (except only in *Arabia Felix*) living in tents, which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of pasture, and hope of booty: for this last cause hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countreys, and having robbed, retire with a marvelous speed; Mounted on *Dromedaries* for that purpose, a beast of most incredible swiftness, furnished with little food, though without water to it, and will easily carry a man a hundred miles a day, without any refreshing. Nor are such Horses as they have, though but poor and lean, of less speed, or less patient of travel: whom they feed twice a day with the milk of Camels, and think them not worth keeping, if not able to outgo an *Ostrich*. As now, so formerly, all Horsemen, and but ill appointed; fitter to rob and spoil than to deal with Souldiers; as riding stark naked, and trusting rather to the swiftness of their Horses than any other resistance, where they were opposed.

Their language is the *Arabick*, so called from this Countrey, but not proper to this Countrey only; Spoken in all places where *Mahometanism* hath got any footing: The *Alcoran* being written in it, the publick Offices of their Religion performed in it, and the tongue taught in Schools as generally, as with us the *Latine*: but made the natural language in *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, the three *Arabia's*, *Egypt*, and all *Barbary*, except the Kingdom of *Morocco*. A great extent, but short of that which some give to it, who will have it spoken in two parts of the whole habitable world.

The Christian faith was first here planted by *St. Paul*, of whose being in *Arabia*, after his conversion, he telleth us, *Gal. 1. 17*. to which the coming in of the *Saracens* gave a great increase, in the time of *Mavia*, their Queen, during the Empire of *Valentinian* the first; *Moses* a man of exemplary piety, and famed for many miracles, being created their first Bishop; after more generally propagated over all the Countrey, by

Arabia
Deserta.

by their King *Alamandarus*; *Anastafius* then reigning in the East. But long it had not been received, when supplanted by *Mahometanism*, which had its first beginning here; and hath so universally overspread the whole face hereof, that now there are no *Christians* left in all the Countrey, except only in *Eltor*, a Port Town in the Bay of *Arabia Felix*; in *Arabia Petraea*, the chief City of *Arabia Petraea*, and in two small Monasteries about Mount *Sinai*.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles, but of so unequal and heterogeneous composition, that no general Character can be given of it: and therefore we must look upon it, as it stands divided into *Arabia Deserta*, 2 *Arabia Petraea*; 3 *Arabia Felix*, and 4 the *Arabick Islands*.

1 ARABIA DESERTA.

A R A B I A D E S E R T A (called *Berara* by the *Turks*) is bounded on the East, with *Babylonia*, on the West, with parts of *Palestine*, and *Arabia Petraea*; on the North, with *Palmyrene* and *Mesopotamia*, from which last it is parted by *Euphrates*; and on the South, by some parts of *Petraea*, and *Arabia Felix*.

It hath the name of *Deserta*, from the vast Deserts which are in it, and the un-inhabitedness thereof; called also by *Aristides*, *Aspera*, from the roughness; by *Servius*, *Inferior*, or the Lower, in regard of the situation of it more towards the River; by *Lucian*, from the frequent bottoms and valleys in it, *Arabia Cava*; and finally, by the *Jews* it was called *Kedar*, from the blackness or swarthiness of the People, the word in *Hebrew*, signifying as much as *Sun-burnt*; whence the people are by some writers called *Kedarani*, and by *Pliny* *Cedrei*.

But the common and most usual name of it, is *Arabia Deserta*, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a sandy Countrey full of vast Deserts; in which all such as travel use to carry their Provisions with them, and to guide themselves in their journey by the course of the Stars, though in some parts which lie near *Euphrates*, and the Mountains of *Arabia Felix*, it have some few Towns, and those resorted to by Merchants. But this is only in those parts, the residue of the Countrey being so desolate and waste, that one who had travelled in it, doth describe it to be so wilde a place, *Ut nec homines nec bestiae viderantur, nec Aves; imo nec arbores nec germen aliquod, sed non nisi montes saxosi, altissimi, asperrimi*, A Countrey, saith *Guilandinus Melchior*, where are found neither men nor beasts, nor so much as birds or trees, nor grass, nor pasture, but only stony, high and most craggy Mountains.

The people for the most part, used to dwell in Tents, alluded to by *David*, *Psal. 120. v. 5.* which they removed from place to place, as the pasture for their cattle failed them: taking no other care for houses than the boughs of Palm-trees, to keep them from the heat of the Sun, and other extremities of weather. Hence by the Ancients called *Scenites*, or men dwelling in Tents (in which respect the *Jews* call the *Tartarians Kedarim*, from the like course of life which these *Kedareni* or *Arabians* lived:) but the name reaching into the other parts of *Arabia* also, where they use the same kinde of living: of whom more anon.

Yet notwithstanding most memorable is this Countrey in sacred story, both for the dwelling place of *Job*, and the habitation of those Wife-men, who came out of the East unto *Hierusalem*, to worship *Christ*, the new-born King of the *Jews*. That *Job* was an inhabitant here, appeareth by the situation of his dwelling, being in the East, as is said in the story of him, *chap. 1. v. 3.* that is to say, the Countrey lying East to the Land of *Canaan*, as this part of it doth; and therefore called simply by the name of the East, as *Judg. 6. 3* where by the Children of the East, are meant expressly the inhabitants of *Arabia the Desert*, who together with the *Midianites* and *Amalekites* oppressed those of *Israel*. Secondly, by the ill neighborhood which he found from the *Sabeans*, who inhabited in this part also; and of the *Chaldeans* mentioned, *v. 17.* the next borderers to it: and Thirdly, by the inconsequences which needs must follow, if we place him, as some do, in the land of *Uz*, near unto *Damascus*. For how improbable must it be for the *Sabeans* of the Red-Sea, or the *Persian-Gulf*, or the *Chaldeans*, dwelling on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, to fall upon *Job's* Cattel grazing near *Damascus*, the Countreys being dis-joynted by such vast Deserts, and huge Mountains, that it is impossible for any strangers to pass them, especially with any numbers of Cattel, in respect of those large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extreme want of water in all that passage? and how impossible must we think it, that the pen-man of the story of *Job*, who certainly was guided in it by the Holy Ghost, should be so mistaken, as to place *Job's* dwelling in the East, if the Land of *Uz*, wherein he dwelt bordered on *Damascus*, which lay not on the East, but the North of *Canaan*? A City called *Uz*, or *Uz*, there was, situate near *Damascus*, so called from *Uz*, the son of *Aram*, *Gen. 10. 23.* A Land of *Uz* also amongst the *Edumites*, spoken of in the *Lamentations* of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *chap. 4. v. 21.* so called from *Uz*, one of the posterity of *Esau*, mentioned *Gen. 36. 28.* And finally, a Land of *Uz* or *Uz*, so called from *Huz* the son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*, mentioned *Gen. 22. 21.* which is that situate in this Tract, the habitation and possession of that righteous man: the Countrey hereabouts being called *Ausitis*, and the people *Ausiti*, though by mistaking in the transcripts, we finde them named *Aams*, or *Astis*, in the fifth of *Pliny*. The like I say also of the Wife-men, or *Magi*, who came to *Hierusalem* from the East, that they dwell in this Countrey, where the said *Pliny* placeth the City *Saba*; according unto that fore-signified by the Royal Psalmist, that the Kings of *Arabia* and *Saba* should bring their gifts, *Psal. 72. 10.* Confirmed herein by the situation of the Countrey lying East of *Canaan*; the authority of those Fathers who lived nearest to the time of our Saviours birth, *Iustin Martyr*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*; and by the testimony of *Guilandinus Melchior* above-mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the people hereof, that they came neither out of *Mesopotamia*, or *Arabia Felix*, as many wife-

men

Arabia
Petraea.

men do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia the Desert*, which City (saith he) when my self was there, was, as I judged, called *Semiscasac*.

Cities of note, in a Countrey so desert and uninhabited, we must look for few; yet some there are, inhabited by a more civil sort of people, whom they call by the name of *Moors*, giving that of *Arabian* to those only, who live roving and robbing up and down. *Pliny* gives the names of forty Cities and Villages in it (*civitates & vicus*, saith the *Latine*) the memory of most of which is now utterly perished. Those of most observation, 1 *Saba*, or *Saba*, the habitation of those *Sabeans* who pillaged *Job*; so called from *Sheba*, the grand-son of *Abraham* by *Keurah*, mentioned *Gen. 25. 3.* Of whom, and of the rest of that line, it is said, in the sixt verse of that chapter, that *Abraham gave them gifts, and sent them away from Isaac East-ward, unto the East Countrey*: now called *Semiscasac*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2 *Theman*, which possibly may be the Countrey of *Eliphaz* the *Themanite*, one of the visitants of *Job*. As 3 *Shuah*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bilad*, another of them, hence firnamed the *Shuhite*. 4 *Tharfacus*, by *Pliny* called *Aphipolis*. 5 *Zagmas*, near the *Persian Gulf*, in the Countrey of the *Ranbeni*, supposed to be descended from *Mishma* the fourth son of *Ismael*. 6 *Phuntion* the 36th. 7 *Oloth* the 37th. mansion of the Children of *Israel*. 8 *Rheganna*, another of those named by *Pliny*, in the Greek Copies called *Beganna*. Of any Town of note now being more then *Semiscasac*, before named, I finde nothing certain.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey, of whom there is any certain Constat, were the posterity of *Huz*, the son of *Nachor*, and the sons of *Abraham* by *Keurah*; of whose being settled in these parts, we had before good testimony from the Book of God: and intermixt with them lived some of the descendants of *Ismael* also. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Pliny* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their original from *Adheel* the third, and the *Ranbeni* from *Mishmai* the fifth son of *Ismael*, as some lay as they do, I see no reason but the whole Countrey might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar* the second son, as well as from the tawny complexions of the people of it. From them descended the Tribes or Nations spoken of by *Pliny*, that is to say, the *Orcheni*. *Chaucabeni*, *Ausiti*, *Mafoni*, *Materni*, and *Agrei*, besides the *Adubeni*, and *Ranbeni*, already specified. But being a dis-joynted people, not under any settled form of Government, nor possessed of any thing worth looking after, they were either held not worth the conquering, in regard of their penury; or else unconquerable, in respect of their Countrey, impassable for great Armies, by reason of the rolling sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying so near to the *Chaldeans*, they followed the fortunes of that mighty Monarchy; subjects unto it whilst it stood, and after Tributaries unto those who successively possessed themselves of the Supreme power. Not looked at by the *Romans*, or regarded by them, who aimed at wealth as honor, in their expedition: nor otherwise subject to the *Turks* at this present time, then as they make use of him and his protection in their frequent robberies: but counted of as a part of the *Turkish Empire*, because the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his subjects.

2 ARABIA PETREA.

A R A B I A P E T R E A (now called *Baraab*, *Baraab*, and *Barthalaba*) hath on the East, *Arabia Deserta*, and part of *Sinai* *Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*; on the West, the *Isthmus*, which joyneth *Africa* to *Asia*, and part of the Red Sea, or Gulf of *Persia*; on the North, *Palestine*; and on the South, a long ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the rockiness of the soil hereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called also by *Ethiops*, *Sicaria*, but I know not why: by the Hebrews, *Chus*, generally translated *Ethiopia*; by *William* of Tyre, *Arabia Secunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the first. By *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Pliny*, it is called *Nabathaea*, which name it had from *Nabaioth*, the eldest of the twelve sons of *Ismael*, though properly that name belonged only to those parts of it, which lay next *Judaea*: fruitful, though joyning to the Deserts: and thus remembered by the Poet, as an Eastern Countrey;

Eurus ad Anroram, Nabathaeque regna recessit.

Eurus unto the East did flie,
Where fruitful *Nabathe* doth lie.

The Countrey much of the same nature with the other, but in some parts thereof more fertile if well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich land, flourishing with variety of trade and traffick. But for the most part, full of untravellable Deserts, except to those which carry their provisions with them for fear of starving, and go in great companies, or *Caravans* for fear of robbing: and yet much travelled by Merchants who traffick into *Egypt*, and *Babylonia*; the commodities whereof they lay on Camels, which are the ships of *Arabia*, as their Seas; the Deserts. For upon one of these Camels, they will lay ordinarily 600. and sometimes 1000. pound weight: yet not afford him water above once in four days, not often in fourteen, if there be occasion. So that the Camel carrying so great a burden, and seldom fewer then 500. going in one voyage; the Merchant, if he scape it robbing, makes a rich return. Of these Deserts, the most memorable are those of *Sin* and *Pharan*, in which the *Israelites* so long wandred: not beset with water nor adorned with Trees, the Palm only excepted; nor furnished with water, but by rain or miracle.

The people of it for the most part, descended of the sons of *Chus*, and *Ismael*, intermixed with the *Midianites*, descending from *Abraham* by *Keurah*, and the *Amalekites*, descended probably from *Amalek*, the grand-son of *Esau*, mentioned *Gen. 3. 6.* but all united at the last in the name of *Saraceni*. This

name

Arabia
Petraea.

name derived, as some think, from *Sarra*, signifying a Desert, and *saken* which signifieth to inhabit, because they live for the most part in these desert places: as other say, from *Sarak*, signifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered: This last most suitable to their nature, and best liked by *Scaliger*. *Saraceni à vicinis dicuntur ab Elsarak*; i. e. *aspirant yoadiaol, quod rapinis videntur*. So he, in his second Book de *Emend. Temp.* A people not reckoned in the former times, till made remarkable by their conquest of a great part of the world; but always counted wilkie and Martial men. Of whom take this Character out of *Macrobinus*, 'The *Saraceni* (saith he) whom we are neither to wish for our friends, or enemies, are a Martial people, half naked, clad as far as the groin with painted Cassocks, ranging up and down on Camels, and swift Horses as well in peace as troublesome times. Not used unto the Plough, to plant Trees, or get their living by tillage; they wander from one place to another, without house or home, or any constant dwelling place, or the use of Laws; nor can they long endure the same either Air or Soil, the manner of their lives being always flitting, like ravenous Kites; which if they chance to spy a prey, snatch it up in their flight, or if they chance to fasten on it at it lyeth on the ground, they make no long stay. Their food is chiefly upon Venison, and store of milk, herbs which they gather from the ground, and birds which they get by fowling; but altogether ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their wives they hire only for a time, though for a shew of Matrimony they present their husbands with a Spear and a Tent, as in way of dowry; but they part with them when they please. Both Sexes most extremely given to carnal lusts; the women as rambling as the men, married in one place, and brought to bed in another; leaving their children where they fall, without more care of them. So far, and to this purpose he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1 That called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which passing through this Country endeth his course in the Red Sea. 2 *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the *torrent of Egypt*, which rising in this Country, and passing by the borders of *Idumaea*, hath its fall in the lake of *Sirbon*; and together with the waters thereof, loseth it self at last in the Mediterranean.

With Mountains it is better stored, and those of eminent observation, as 1 Mount *Sinai*, famous in all ages, for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times, for a Monastery of *Maronites* on the top thereof. The hill so high, that both shores of the Red Sea may be thence seen; but easie of ascent, by reason of steps cut out of the rock: which notwithstanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monastery made an Episcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the letters of *Eugenius* Bishop thereof to the Arch Duke *Charles*, An. 1569. complaining that the *Turk* had sold all their lands, and that himself and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy Vessels, and take up money on usury. Here is also a *Mesque*, or *Mosque* of *Turks*, who resort in pilgrimage to this hill, as well as the Christian. 2 Mount *Horeb*, where the *Israelites* worshipped the *Molten Calf*, about a mile and a half distant from Mount *Sinai*, but not so high on the top of which is a Church also; and a Monastery of *Coloires*, or *Greek Monks*, at the bottom, exceeding hospitable to strangers, whom they entertain at free cost, and cheerfully shew them all the places worth observation, which the Scripture mentioneth in that tract. Both hills by *Phelomy* called *Melani*, or the Black Mountains; the last now called *Orel*. 3 Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumaea*; and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of most observation, 1 *Petra*, the name given to this part, at first called *Rekem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*: afterwards called *Selah*, when pertaining to the *Idumaeans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Crab*. Best known in holy Scriptures by the name of *Selah*, beforementioned, which signifies the same with the *Latine Petra*. A City of great note and strength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 King. 14. 7. and by him called *Jock-bell*, but in vain besieged by *Scarnius*, a Roman General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the persuasion of *Antipater*, to take a sum of money and raise his siege. Nor did the Emperor *Trajan* speed much better at it, his Souldiers being still beat off in all their assaults, the very next man to him slain with a dart, and himself forced to cast away his Imperial habit, and flee for his life; the heavens themselves, if *Dion* (who is never sparing of the like prodigies) may be believed, fighting against the Romans with thunder, lightning, whirlwinds, and tempests, as often as they made any approaches to it. But in the end subdued with the rest of the Country. In such esteem, by reason of the strength of it, by the *Soldans* of *Egypt*, that they kept here their choicest treasures, and in the course of the Holy War, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Christians*, as the Key that opened the Gates of *Palestine*; on the South border whereof, not far from Mount *Hor* beforementioned, the Town is situate. The Metropolis of the Province when first under the Romans; and made the Seat of a *Latine* Bishop, when the Christians of the West were the Lords thereof. 2 *Bostra*, said to have been built by *Augustus Caesar*, because by him repaired, when decayed and ruined; afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the Romans. This last most certain, and for such testified by this ancient inscription, in an ancient coyn, COL. BOSTRAN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANAE? Memorable also for the birth of *Philip* the Emperor, one of that *Alexanders* next Successors; by whom it was caused for a time to be called *Philippus*; for the Metropolitan dignity removed thither from *Petra*, somewhat before the time of *Justinian*; but by whom I find not; and for being the Episcopal See of *Titus* (hence surnamed) *Bostranus*, a Reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the *Apostate*. A City of as great antiquity as the most that be, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 33. though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is still remaining, and well known by the name of *Busfereth*. 3 *Elama*, on a bay of the Red Sea, called hence *Sinus E. usiticus*. 4 *Pharis*, reckoned by *Phelomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderness of *Paran* seems to take its name. 5 *Berenice*, so called

Arabia
Petraea.

called from some of the Queens of *Egypt*, but better known by the name of *Esion g. ber*, one of the Stations or Incampings of the Children of *Israel*; and made by *Solomon* the ordinary harbour for his Ships, which sailed to *Ophir* in the East-Indies. 6 *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, giving name to the Wilderness or Desert of *Sur*, coming close up to it: remarkable for the first incamping of the Tribes of *Israel* after their miraculous passage over the Red Sea; and the defeat which *Saul* gave to the *Amalekites*, whom he smote from *Havilah* to this place. 7 *Havilah*, so called from *Havilah* the son of *Chus*, being the furthest border of these *Amalekites*, and *Israelites*, on the Gulf of *Perfis*, as *Sur* was on the Red Sea, or Gulf of *Arabia*. 8 *Madian*, so called of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, situate towards the Red Sea also; the City of *Jethro*, whose daughter *Zipporah* was the wife of *Moses*: who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, was by Gods secret providence directed hither; that keeping the flocks of *Jethro* in the Deserts adjoining, he might acquaint himself with the ways and passages, through which he after was to lead the house of *Israel*. 9 *Rephaim*, the incamping place of *Moses*, where he discomfited the *Amalekites*: and to which the said *Jethro* came to him with his wife and children, advising him to ease himself of some part of that burden, which the government of so great a people would else bring upon him. 10 *Kadesh-barnea*, the station of the Tribes, when the spies which were sent to discover the Land of *Canaan*, returned back unto them; memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Prophetess. And 11 *Thura*, no less memorable for the mutiny and punishment of *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the place remembered *Numb.* 33. 27. But others will have 12 *Makeloth*, mentioned v. 25. of that Chapter, to be the stage of that action; the Scriptures being silent in this particular. The rest of their encamping places, being most of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpose, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do also some of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accounted of by *Phelomy*, as Cities of this Province; but spoken of already in our Description of *Palestine*, to which more properly belonging.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Midianites*, the *Israelites*, the *Amalekites*, and the Children of *Chus*; who dwelling promiscuously together, are sometimes used for one another: the Merchants which bought *Joseph* of his Brethren, being indifferently called *Midianites*, and *Israelites*, *Gen.* 37. 28. and *Zipporah* the wife of *Moses*, who questionless was a daughter of *Madian*, being by *Miriam*, and *Aaron*, called an *Ethiopian* or *Chusite*, as in way of reproach, *Numb.* 12. 1. But being they were different Nations, and such as had some special engagement with or against the Children of *Israel*; we will consider them by themselves, till we have brought them into one body, by the name of *Chusites*, *Ethiopians*, or *Arabians*, which are all the same.

And first, the *MADIANITES* were such of the posterity of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, who preserving the knowledge of the true God, withdrew themselves from all communion with the idolatrous *Canaanites*, at such time as the rest of their brethren did associate with them; and settled themselves more towards the banks of the Red Sea, where they did all good offices to the children of *Israel*, as they passed through their Country. Of these the *Kenites* were a branch, as appeareth *Judges* 1. 16. where *Jethro* the Prince or Priest of *Madian*, is called a *Kenite*: some of which turned *Proselytes*, and dwelt with the *Israelites* in *Canaan*; of which race *Heber* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael*, who slew *Sisera*, was undoubtedly one. The rest, continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former courtesies) to withdraw themselves from them; lest they should perish with them in the same destruction. Afterwards we hear little of either people, losing their name in the greater Nation of the *Israelites*, with whom intermingled; or passing with them into the same common notion of *Arabians*, *Chusites*, or *Ethiopian*.

Secondly, Nor were the *AMALEKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance; descended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grand-son of *Esau* (though I deny not but there are some reasons to be urged against that opinion) and planted on the back of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or Out-work. A people mischievously bent against those of *Israel*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Esau* their fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently set on at *Rephidim*, when they supposed them spent and wearied with their flight from *Egypt*. And though discomfited in that battle, yet they continued in their malice against the Tribes, joining first with the *Canaanites* against them when they were in their March; and after with the *Midianites*, when not well settled in their new possession. A provocation to ill taken by the Lord of Hosts, because unnatural, and ill grounded, that he declared his resolution from the time of the Battle of *Rephidim*, to put out the remembrance of *Amalek* from under Heaven, *Exod.* 17. 14. Accordingly, when the Children of *Israel* were provided for it, he commanded *Saul* to set upon them, and to slay both man and woman, infant and suckling, yea, their sheep and cattel. But some of them escaped this slaughter, and fell not long after upon *Ziglag*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ransacked; but being by him followed on the first intelligence, they were easily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their malice yet survived their power; and what they could not do by their forces, they endeavoured to effect by joining with the *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, and other Enemies of *David*, in their wars against him. And this was ultimum conatum, one of the last flashes of their dying light: nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times succeeding, most of the Nation being worn out, and those few which were left, retiring to the Mountains of *Edom*, but thereof also dispossessed by the *Simeonites*, during the reign of *Hezekiah*.

Thirdly, The *ISMAELITES*, descended from *Ismael*, the son of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nations, and grown wondrous populous, spread themselves over a great part of

Arabia
Petraea.

of these three *Arabia's*: all of them either *Theives* or *Merchants*; trading to *Egypt* in (spicery, and balm, and myrrhe, or robbing those which traded in the like commodities. Called also *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as 1 *Chron.* 5. 10. *Psalms* 83. 6, &c. and by that name well known to many of the ancient Writers. A people for the most part of a vagabond and roguish life, more given to spoil, than any honest course of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be armed against them; so verifying the prediction which was given of *Ismael*, that he should be a wilde man, having his hand against every man, and every mans hand against him. Saint *Hierome* so conceives that Prophecy to have been accomplished. More fitly verified perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens* (by which, and by the name of *Scenites*, they were most generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made such foul havoc in the world, and were esteemed the common Enemies of all Civil Nations. Never so governable in their best and most orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one body with the *Chusites*, and the rest of those Nations: and then no further, then it stood with their lust or liking.

Fourthly, As for the *Chusites*, though they permitted the Nations above specified, to inhabit in those Deserts and waste places, which themselves either could not people, or cared not for; yet were they always of most power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground, containing now all *Petraea*, the South part of *Deserta*, and the Mountains which divide *Petraea* from *Arabia Felix*; which from them was called *Chus*, or the Land of *Chus*. Rendered in all places of the *Old Testament*, by the name of *Ethiopia*, first by the *Septuagint*, and afterwards by all the Fathers *Greek* and *Latine*, the *Vulgar* Translation of the Bible, and almost all the other Translations at this day extant. And rendered right enough at first, as in all times since, though by some mistaken: who having never heard of any other *Ethiopia* then that in *Affrick*, have transferred thither all those actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The *Septuagint*, no doubt, were not so ignorant of the affairs of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Masters. And he that looks into the History of *Herodotus*, who lived 150 years before that Translation; will finde, that by the *Grecians* they were called *Ethiopiens*; and called so questionless from the self same reason; that is to say, the swarthiness, or Sun-burntnefs of their complexion, as the *Ethiops* of *Affrick* were; that name being framed of the *Greek* word *Αἴθω*, signifying to burn; and *ὄψ*, a countenance; by reason of their tawny and Sun-burnt Countenances. For speaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceed, *Αἰθίοποι δὲ καὶ Ἀγυρῆσι καὶ Ἰνδοῖσι καὶ Ἰβηρίσι, &c.* *Arrianus*, (saith he) was Captain of the *Arabians*, (he meaneth the *Troglodytes*) and *Ethiopiens*, which are beyond *Egypt*: but the Eastern *Ethiopiens* were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from the other in the structure of their bodies, but their hair and voyce only; the Eastern *Ethiopiens* wearing their hair smooth, those of *Lybia* curled. The *Ethiops* of *Asia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Ethiops* of *Affrica* were arrayed with the skins of beasts. Here then we have an *Asian* *Ethiopia* in the time of *Herodotus*; the same acknowledged by *Pausanias* an old *Greek* writer, and by *Philostratus* after him, though they look for it in the wrong place: the first amongst the *Seres*, in the North of *Asia*; the other on the River *Ganges*, too much in the East. Nor doth *Ethiops*, one of the old *Cosmographers*, published by *Simlerus*, shoot more near the mark, who speaking of the River *Tigris*, saith that it burieth it self, and runneth under the ground in *Ethiopia*: Which though *Simler* doth interpret of these parts of *Arabia*, yet questionless that Authour meaneth it of the Countreys about Mount *Taurus*; where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having passed under those vast Mountains, riseth up again.

But what need further search be made to finde out the situation of this *Ethiopia*, when it is bounded out so plainly in the holy Scriptures? For when it is said *Zipporah* the wife of *Moses*, that she was an *Ethiopian* woman, *Numb.* 12. 1. who is well known to have been a native of this Countrey; and when it is said in 2 *Chron.* 21. 16. that the Lord stirred up against *Jehoram* the spirit of the *Philistims*, and of the *Arabians* that were near the *Ethiopiens*: it must needs be that the *Ethiopia* there spoken of, must be common to the rest of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Countrey wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, that he would lay waste the land of *Egypt*, from the Tower of *Syene*, even unto the borders of *Ethiopia*, *chap.* 29. 10. that is to say, from one end thereof unto the other: it followeth necessarily, that *Ethiopia* there meant, must be this part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Chus*, as the bound of *Egypt* most remote from the Tower of *Syene*, which all *Geographers* acknowledge to be in the extrem South parts thereof, towards the *Cataracts* of *Nilus*. For to expound it as some do, of *Ethiopia* in *Affrick*, on the borders whereof *Syene* stood; and stood so indifferently betwixt it and *Egypt*, that *Stephanus* an ancient Writer makes it very doubtful to which of the two it did belong, were to make the Scripture speak plain non-sense: as plain as if a man should say, that the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands* from *Graveling* to *Flanders*; or that the *Sword* hath ranged over all *England*, from *Berwick* to *Scotland*. As then we have found this *Ethiopia* of the *Old Testament*, to be near the *Philistims* on the one side, and the Land of *Egypt* on the other; so may we finde it to be bounded also on the East, with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*: the River *Gihon*, which is said to compass the whole Land of *Ethiopia*, (or the Land of *Chus*) *Gen.* 2. 13. being no other then a branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldea*. So that the translation of the *Septuagint* in reading *Chusites*, or the Land of *Chus*, by *Ethiopiens*, needs no such alteration or emendation as some men suppose. The mistakes (whereof there have been many) which arise from hence, not being to be charged on them or on their Translation, but on the ignorance of the Reader, or error of such *Expositors*, who dreaming of no other *Ethiopia* then of that in *Affrick*, have made the Scriptures speak such things as it never meant, and carried these *Chusites* into the *African* *Ethiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may be

Arabia Felix

be said, that the posterity of *Chus*, being streightened in their own possessions, or willing to seek new adventures, might have crossed over the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but seven miles broad where *Yan* to them, or receive it from them.

Now to go forwards with the story, the first great action attributed to these *Chusites*, or *Arabian* *Ethiops*, incorporated with the rest of those mingled Nations, is the expedition of *Zerch*, the King of *Israhel*, against *Asa* King of *Judah*, drawing after him an Army of a million, and three hundred Chariots of War (the greatest Army ever read of in unquestioned story) but for all that, discomfited by the Lord of Hosts, on the prayers of *Asa*, and all the spoil of that huge Army carried to *Hierusalem*. After this *Tirrahah*, another of these *Ethiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *Affrian* Kingdom might prove to him, prepared a puissant Army against *Senacherib*, then besieging *Libna*, threatening the conquest of all *Judah*, and invading *Egypt*: upon the news of whose approach, *Senacherib's* forces which were even upon the gaining of *Pelusium*, the gate of *Egypt*, were faine to dislodge and provide for their safety. For though *Herodotus* call *Senacherib* King of *Arabia*, and *Affria*; yet was he Master only of those parts of *Petraea*, bordering next unto them: or perhaps called so only in respect of those parts of *Syria*, and *Mesopotamia*, which were sometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*, as before is said. What hard to say. For besides that the same reasons of State obliging them to side with the *Egyptians*, were still in force; their giving *Necho* leave to pass through their Countrey with his Army to invade the *Babylonians* on the banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tirrahah* and *Zerah* were Kings of *Egypt* would never suffer such huge Armies to pass thorow the whole length of their Dominions; but principally because it is said in the holy Scriptures, that *Asa* having overthrown that vast Army of *Zerah*, smote all the Cities about *Gerar*, which formerly had belonged unto the *Philistines*; but were then possessed by these *Chusites* and their Associates. After this, either as Confederates or Subjects, we find them aiding unto *Xerxes*, in his War on *Greece*: and like enough it was, that in *Alexanders* march from *Egypt* towards *Perfia*, they submitted to him, as did all the other Countreys thorow which he passed. He being dead, *Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, sent *Athenani* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an ambush was discomfited by them; *D. meirius* the son of *Antigonus*, thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to sue for peace. In the time of the *Seleucian* race in *Syria*, we find them governed by Kings of their own, most of them called by the name of *Arctas*, of which one was of special note in the declining fortunes of the *Seleucians*, for Bidding very fair for the Crown of that Countrey; and being a great stickler in the Wars of *Jerry*, in the time of *Hircanus* the fourth King, of the race of the *Maccabees*, to whom at the request of *Antipater* the Father of good importance, which *Alexander* the Father of *Hircanus* had regained from the *Syrians*, and laid unto the Crown of *Jerry*, to which as parts of *Iudaea*, and anciently possessed by the Tribes of *Israhel*, he might make some claim. Another there was of the same name, and of no less power, whom we find to have been warred upon by *Herod*, about the time of the battel of *Altium*, and for the most part vanquished by him; and finally a third of more power than either, mentioned by *St. Paul*, 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damascus*. In the flourishing of the *Roman* fortunes, the Kings hereof having first aided *Mithridates* and *Tygranes*, in the war against them, submitted themselves unto *Lucullus*, being then no nearer to them then *Armenia Major*. The like they did to *Pompey* also, being then in *Judea*. First vanquished by *Athm Gallus* in the time of *Augustus*; but the victory not improved to an absolute conquest, till the time of *Trajan*, when partly by his personal presence, and partly by the valour and good fortune of *Palmas*, that they had Kings of their own (*Vassals* and *Feudatories* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing that condition till the rise of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

3 ARABIA FELIX.

ARABIA FELIX is bounded on the East, with the *Persian*; on the West, with the *Arabian* Gulf; on the North, with a long ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Deserta* and *Petraea*; and on the South, with the boundless Ocean. Environed on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impassable Mountains; in situation and figure much resembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the fertility and happy condition of it, being esteemed the most fruitful and pleasant Countrey in all *Asia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balsamum*, *Frankincense*, *Guld*, and *Precious Stones*: by *Curtius* called *Odorata fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincense*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a story, that when *Alexander* in his Adolescence or Boyage, was sacrificing to the Gods, and cast into the fire with both hands great store of *Frankincense* and *Myrrhe*, *Leonidas* his Governour, bid him be more sparing of those precious and dear commodities, till he was Master of the Countrey in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembering, when he had brought almost all the East under his obedience, he sent unto *Leonidas* a ship laden with *Frankincense*, bidding him from thenceforth serve the gods more liberally. But aswell for the reason of this adjunct, as a more perfect character and description of it, take along this of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who describes it thus. 'On the east and south hereof (saith he) are the happy *Arabians*, so called because so rich in corn; as well as plenteous in cattel, vines; and odoriferous spices of all kinds; shut up betwixt the *Red Sea*, and the *Persian Gulf*, and so acquainted with all blessings, which either element can afford: T c c well

Emperours of the common opinion of those men, whom in the first he whistled off with the infamous appellation of the Saracens.

But to proceed, It hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Eastern Emperour, joyned themselves unto him. They had long been displeased with their condition, and now hoped to mend it. Exasperated by *Julian* the *Apostate*, when they served in his wars against the *Persians*, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he had more store of steel than gold: but that they wanted a fit head to resort unto. Now serving *Heraclius* in the same War, they were used by his Officers in the same ill manner. Asking their pay, the *Treasurer* of the Army made them this church answer, that there was scarce money enough to pay the Roman and Grecian Soldiers; and must those Dogs be so importunate for their wages? Provoked herewith, and hearing the fame of *Mahomet*, they betook themselves to him: who strengthened by their forces, and the coming in of the rest of their Country men soon brought the three *Arabias* under his subjection. To which, having defeated the Emperour's Forces sent against him, he added some parts of *Syria* and *Egypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there died a violent and distempered, in the 70th. year of his Age, and three and twentieth of his impostures: in expectation of a resurrection, which he promised to perform at the end of three; grown full of stench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there interred: his Successors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that Religion after his decease, which they derided in his life; and calling themselves *Caliphs*, or *Vicars* General, to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of life; made intricate, nor more by their own confusions, than by the difference of those which we hasten; made intricate, nor more by their own confusions, than by the difference of those names by which they are presented to us by several Writers; according to the Times and Languages in which they writ.

The Caliphs or Emperours of the Saracens.

A.C.	A.H.	
622	5	1 <i>Mahomet</i> the Impostor, of whom before.
632	15	2 <i>Ebubezer</i> , or <i>Uqubar</i> , <i>Mahomet's</i> Father-in-law, and one of his Great Captains, supplant- ed <i>Ali</i> , to whom the Empire was designed by the will of <i>Mahomet</i> ; and took unto himself the name of <i>Caliph</i> .
634	17	3 <i>Hannar</i> , the second of <i>Mahomet's</i> Great Captains, having the Command of the Army under <i>Ebubezer</i> , succeeded him in the Estate; and added to it <i>Persia</i> , <i>Egypt</i> , <i>Pala-</i> <i>stine</i> , with great part of <i>Syria</i> and <i>Mesopotamia</i> .
947	30	4 <i>Osman</i> , the third of <i>Mahomet's</i> Great Captains, Husband of <i>Zeineb</i> , his second daugh- ter; succeeded under that pretence, and added all <i>Barbary</i> to his Empire. Distres- sed by the faction of <i>Hali</i> , and besieged in his own house, he slew himself, in the eigh- ty seventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign.
657	40	5 <i>Hali</i> , the Kinsman and next heir of <i>Mahomet</i> , and the husband of <i>Fatime</i> his eldest daughter, succeeded on the death of <i>Osman</i> : murdered by the procurement of <i>Mu-</i> <i>hawias</i> , near <i>Cusa</i> , in <i>Arabia Felix</i> .
660	43	6 <i>Muhawias</i> , having murdered <i>Hali</i> , his Son <i>Hafsem</i> , or <i>Ofsan</i> , and eleven of the Sons of that <i>Hafsem</i> , the twelfth only escaping with life (from whom descended the Fami- ly of the <i>Alavici</i> , and the <i>Persian Sophies</i>) assumed the Government as rightful Suc- cessor to <i>Osman</i> , whose Widow, the daughter of <i>Mahomet</i> , he had took to wife. He conquered <i>Rhodes</i> , <i>Cyprus</i> , and a great part of <i>Asia Minor</i> , and was the Founder of the Family of <i>Aben Humeyn</i> .
681	64	7 <i>Gizid</i> , the son of <i>Muhawias</i> , more skilled in Poetry than in Arms. 8 <i>Habdalla</i> and <i>Marwan</i> , Competitors for the Supreme Dignity; but carried at last by <i>Marwan</i> .
685	68	9 <i>Abimelech</i> , the son of <i>Marwan</i> , established the begun conquests of <i>Armenia</i> , and <i>Meso-</i> <i>potamia</i> .
707	90	10 <i>Uldor Ulit</i> , under whom the <i>Saracens</i> or <i>Moors</i> first conquered <i>Spain</i> .
716	99	11 <i>Zulcimin</i> , Brother to <i>Ulit</i> , whose Captain <i>Mulsumas</i> besieged <i>Constantinople</i> , till his Ships were burnt and his men consumed with the Plague.
719	102	12 <i>Hannar</i> , or <i>Hannar II.</i> Son of <i>Uldor Ulit</i> .
721	104	13 <i>Ixit</i> , or <i>Gizid II.</i> the brother of <i>Hannar</i> , with whom during his life he was joyned <i>Ca-</i> <i>liphs</i> , and after his decease enjoyed it wholly to himself.
725	107	14 <i>Evelid</i> , by some called <i>Ischam</i> , in whose time <i>Charles Martel</i> made such havock of the <i>Moors</i> in <i>France</i> , Anno 734. their General then named <i>Abderamen</i> .
743	125	15 <i>Gizid III.</i> the son of <i>Gizid</i> the second.
744	126	16 <i>Hyces</i> , by some called <i>Ibrahim</i> , the brother of <i>Gizid</i> the third, slain by <i>Marwan</i> .
745	127	17 <i>Marwan II.</i> the last of the house of <i>Benhumeyn</i> , slain by <i>Abdalla</i> , of the house of <i>Fatime</i> and <i>Hali</i> .
752	134	18 <i>Abdalla</i> , of the house of <i>Alavici</i> , or <i>Alabeci</i> , descended from <i>Hali</i> , and <i>Fatime</i> , the eldest daughter of <i>Mahomet</i> : called also the Family of <i>Abas</i> , because of their descent from <i>Abas</i> the Uncle of <i>Mahomet</i> , and perhaps Father unto <i>Hali</i> .
756	138	19 <i>Abdalla II.</i> 20 <i>Mahomet II.</i> surnamed <i>Bugiafer</i> , or <i>Abugefer</i> , who built the City of <i>Bagdat</i> , made from that time the constant seat of his Successors till their fatal period.

777	156	21	<i>Mahadi</i> .	9
786	168	22	<i>Musa</i> , or <i>Mosfer</i> .	1
787	169	23	<i>Aban</i> , or <i>Arachid</i> , who compelled <i>Irene</i> Emperess of <i>Constantinople</i> , to pay him tri- bute.	23
810	193	24	<i>Mahammad</i> , or <i>Adahomet</i> III.	
825	198	25	<i>Abdalla III.</i> who took and spoiled <i>Crete</i> , and overthrew the <i>Greeks</i> ; he also spoiled <i>Sicilia</i> , <i>Sardinia</i> , and <i>Corfica</i> .	17
832	215	26	<i>Mahomet IV.</i> wasted <i>Italy</i> , burnt the Suburbs of <i>Rome</i> , and harassed the fore-named Islands.	40

Others reckon these *Caliphs* to have succeeded *Mahomet* the 24.

815	198	25	<i>Mamon</i> .	13
827	210	26	<i>Mutezam</i> .	8
835	218	27	<i>Wack</i> .	4
839	222	28	<i>Mathucal</i> .	12
851	234	29	<i>Montacer</i> .	1
852	235	30	<i>Abul Hamut</i> .	6
858	241	31	<i>Almatex</i> .	4
863	245	32	<i>Mocadi Bila</i> .	7

After whose death, the *Egyptians* withdrew themselves from their
obedience due to the *Babylonian Caliph*, and chose one of their own, to whom all the
Arabians, and those of the *Mahometan* Religion, in *Africa* and *Europe*, submitted themselves. Of the
Egyptian Caliphs, when we come into that Country: take now with you the names only of the *Syri-*
an and *Babylonian Caliphs*; for story of them I find little or none: the power being totally in the
hands of the *Sultans* of the several Provinces, and nothing left unto the *Caliphs* but an airy title, the
shadow of that mighty Tree, which formerly had spread it self over most parts of the World.

The Babylonian Caliphs after the division.

A.C.	A.H.		A.C.	A.H.	
870	252	1	<i>Muteamad</i> .	21	
891	273	2	<i>Mutezad</i> .	8	
897	281	3	<i>Muchtaphi</i> .	8	
907	389	4	<i>Muchtedar</i> .	24	
931	313	5	<i>Elkaber</i> .	1	
932	314	6	<i>Ratze</i> .	7	
939	321	7	<i>Mutade</i> .	4	
943	325	8	<i>Mustapha</i> .	2	
947	324	9	<i>Macia</i> , and <i>Taia</i> .	44	
989	361	10	<i>Kadar</i> .	41	
			1030	412	11 <i>Kaim</i> .
			1035	417	12 <i>Mutladi</i> .
			1095	477	13 <i>Mustetaker</i> .
			1117	499	14 <i>Mustafschad</i> .
			1135	517	15 <i>Raschied</i> .
			1160	542	16 <i>Musteneged</i> .
			1169	551	17 <i>Mustazi</i> .
			1179	561	18 <i>Narzi</i> .
			1225	597	19 <i>Taher</i> .
					20 <i>Mustenatzer</i> .
			1255	638	21 <i>Mustazem</i> , the last <i>Caliph</i> , or High Priest of the <i>Saracens</i> of <i>Bagdet</i> , or <i>Babylon</i> , living in the account of a Prince or Emperour; or looked on as the Supreme Lord of the <i>Saracen</i> Empire: starved in his Castle of <i>Bagdet</i> , and his whole posterity rooted out by <i>Allan</i> , or <i>Haulon</i> the <i>Tartar</i> , in the first year of his reign. Yet there is still remaining a carcass of the old body, one whom they call <i>Caliph</i> , at whose hands the neighbour Princes use to receive their <i>Diadems</i> and <i>Regalities</i> : for so we find that <i>Solyman</i> the magnificent, after his Conquest of <i>Chaldea</i> , <i>Mesopotamia</i> , and <i>Assyria</i> , to have been by one of these poor titular <i>Caliphs</i> , Crowned King of <i>Babylon</i> , Anno 1513.

This unwieldy body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: lo-
sing to the Kings of *Castile* and *Navarre*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoese*, *Sardinia*, and *Corfica*; to
the *Norman*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally most of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks*
and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haulon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, starved *Mustazem* the *Babylonian Caliph*, in his
Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his posterity, (as before was said:) and *Sarracen* the first *Turkish*
King of *Egypt*, brained the last *Egyptian Caliph* with his Horseman's Mace; leaving not one of his issue or
Kindred surviving: The office of the *Caliphs* (as to matters which concern their irreligion, and the su-
preme determination of the doubts and controversies which occur therein) being now executed in the
Turk Dominion, by the *Mufti*, or Chief Priest of the *Turkish Mahometans*.

As *Mars* shewed himself a friend unto those *Saracens*, in their wars and triumphs; so also did *Phaë-*
pore down no less Celestial influence, on such as addicted themselves to Scholarship. *Bagdet* in *Chal-*
dea, *Cairo*, *Fes*, *Morocco*, in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their Universities: out of which came
the Philosophers, *Avicenn*, and *Averroes*; the Physicians, *Rhasis*, and *Mesue*; the Geographers, *Leo* and
Abulfada; and almost all the *Extraneous* and profound Writers (as *Hali*, *Agazet*, *Albunazar*, &c.) in
Astronomy; from whom a great part of our *Astronomical* and *Astrological* terms are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdom, Island, or Province which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but
the Kingdom of *Fes* and *Morocco* only: *Arabia* it self, the very first seat of their Power, acknowledging
a subjection to the *Turkish* Empire. For first *Peiras*, and *Deserta*, being subdued by the *Turks*, when they
conquered

The Babylonian Caliph. conquered Persia, or otherwise following the fortunes of the present Victor, were afterwards accounted of as subject unto the Mamalukes of Egypt, who out of that Country and all Syria, had by degrees dis- seized the Selzuccian Family. And as the Vassals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more molested Selimus in his march towards Egypt, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their night- Alarms, than all the forces of the Mamalukes, in the field against him. But Egypt being subdued, and the Mamalukes utterly destroyed, some of their Chiefs being gained by money, and the rest by promise of preferment; the whole Nation of these wild Arabs swore allegiance to him: continuing in accom- pany as Subjects, unto his Successors, but in effect doing what they list; governed as formerly by the Chiefs of their several Clanners, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the Turk than they do of the Christians. And as for Felix, it continued also in a free condition, in respect of any foreign power; till of late times the Turks and Portugals entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538. Solymán Bassa, Ad- miral of the Turkish Fleet against the Portugals, who had diverted the Trade of the Red Sea, and other- wise given offence to Solymán the Magnificent, by aiding the Persians, went with a strong Army to take Diu, a Town and Island of East India, then in their possession. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at Aden, one of the best traded Ports of Arabia Felix; invited the King there- of aboard, most treacherously hanged him, and surprized the City. The like he also did to the King of Zibit, the Port Town to Mecca: and by that means got possession of all the Coasts of this Country, bordering on the Red Sea, or Gulf of Arabia; of which the Turks still continue Masters. But in the Inland parts, and towards the Persian Gulf, of no power at all; nor suffered to travel up and down without a Pass, from some of the Arabian Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be set upon by the Na- tives, who brook them not. Some parts hereof which lie next unto the Isle of Ormus, made one King- dom with it; but the Kings originally of this Country, by whom the City of Ormus was first builded; and so continued till the taking of Ormus by the Portugals, Anno 1622. who since the taking of that Isle by the King of Persia, hold Mukshat, and some other pieces upon this Continent. Theretofore of the Country cantoned amongst a company of petty Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.

And so much for ARABIA.

OF

6 CHALDEA. 7 ASSYRIA. 8 MESOPOTAMIA.



These Provinces, which properly and originally constituted the Assyrian Empire, I have joyned together in the Title, because united in the Story and Affairs thereof; though severally to be considered in the Description and Chorogra- phy of them.

6 CHALDEA.

CHALDEA is bounded on the East, with Susiana, a Province of Persia; on the West, with Arabia Deserta; on the North, with Mesopotamia; and on the South, with the Persian Bay, and the rest of Deserta. Originally called Chasdim, from Chesed the fourth son of Nachor, the brother of Abraham. Chesed quogue quarus est, à quo Chasdim, id est Chaldæi postea vocati sunt, as St. Hierome hath it. But why the Chaldeans should derive their name from Chesed, being a People long before Chesed's birth, I am not able to determine: unless he taught them the first Principles of the Art of Astronomy; or was the Author of some signal benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards Babylonia, from Babylon the chief City of it; and at this day by Belonius, Acania; by the Arabians, Keldan; by the Turks, Curdistân.

But the name of Chaldeans sometimes went beyond those bounds, taking in some part also of Mesopota- mia, as appeareth by that passage of St. Stephen, saying, Acts 7. v. 2, 3, 4. That the God of glory appear- ed to our father Abraham, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran; and said unto him, Get thee out of this Country, and from thy Kindred, and come into the Land which I shall shew thee. Then came he out of the Land of the Chaldees, and dwelt in Charran, &c. Where clearly that part of Mesopo- tamia which lay next unto Assyria, where then Abraham was, is included under the name of Chaldea, or the Land of the Chaldees. Which I desire the Reader to take notice of, because I must make use of this observation in another place.

The Country by Heroditus said to be so fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily two hundred, and in some places three hundred-fold; the blades of wheat and barley being (as he affirmeth) four fingers broad. By Pliny it is said of the Babylonians, that they mowed their Corn twice, and seeded it a third time, or else it would be nothing but blades: and yet so, that the worst of their Land yielded fifty, and their best an hundred-fold increase. Nor is the nature of the soil so altered in long tract of time, but that (as late Tra- vellers have observed) it would in all likelihood attain to its first fertility, if it were ordered with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be said as to the natural fruitfulness and de- lights of this Country, then that it pleased God Almighty to make choice of some part hereoff for the ter- restrial Paradise or Garden of Eden, in which he placed our Father Adam, at his first Creation. For here that Paradise, by men both skilled in Divinity and Geography, is affirmed to have stood. Yet amongst all sorts of Writers we find different opinions. Some make Paradise to be a place of pleasure, and the four Rivers to be the four Cardinal Vertues; but these allegories on the Scripture are warrantable. Others place it in the air, under the circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, rise up again in those places where they are now found: but this is so vain a foppery, that I will not honour it with a confutation. Such as make Paradise local, are divided also into three ranks (for I omit the rest) whereof some place it under the Equator; but this agreeth not with the bounds prescribed by the Holy Ghost. Some conceive the four Rivers to be Tigris, Euphrates, Nilus, and Ganges; and that Paradise was the whole world; but this cannot be: for then when Adam was driven out of Paradise, it must also follow that he was driven out of the world, which were most absurd. Those of the soundest judgments place it here, in an Island which is made by the Rivers Tigris and Euphrates, and some branches running from them both: the uppermost of which is called Pison, (falsly rendred Ganges) which watereth the land of Havilah, or that part of the land of Havilah, which is now called Chusestân, or Susiana, a Province of Persia; and the lowermost is named Gibon (improperly by some translated Nilus) which compasseth the East parts of Arabia Petraea, by the Septuagint for the reasons above mentioned, rendred Ethiopia. And this agreeth both with the position

position of this Country, and the course of those Rivers. For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the Hebrew Text called *Hiddkel*, and *Perab*) do here joyn their Streams, is confessed on all sides. Then as for *Pison*, it is no other than that River by *Ptolomy* called *Baslinus*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more nearly *Piso-Tigris*, or *Pasi-Tigris*; *Pervent* ad *fluvium*; *Pestigerin* incolae vocant, as his own words are. A little stream, which watering the Land of *Havilah*, or the Country of the *Chavelsi*, or *Chaulafei*, or *Chaulalai* (for by these several names they are called amongst the Ancients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabatheans* an Arabian people) poureth it self into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it into the Gulf of *Persia*. And finally for *Gihon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maarsaris*, and by others *Maarsyrus*, it is no other then a branch of *Euphrates*, which watering the Land of *Chin*, or *Ethiopia Affrica*, take which name you will, loseth it self at last in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Country was extremely fruitful, yet in some places was it covered with a slimy matter, which the overflowing of the waters, and the nature of the soil together, did bring forth abundantly. Used by them in their buildings, in stead of Mortar, than which more durable and binding; and therefore chosen for the cement of the Tower of *Babel*, *Gen. 11. 3.* Some also tell of a cliff, which opening sendeth out such a stink, that it killeth Birds as they flie over it; and others of a like open place near a Town called *Air*, which continually throweth out boiling pitch (named therefore *Hell-moun* by the *Moors*) filling therewith the adjoining fields; and that herewith the people use to pitch their Boats. But this in some places only, the Country generally being both healthy and delightful, as before was said.

The people anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-saying and Divinations, and no less noted for being Authors of the first Idolatry that was ever practised in the World. Induced unto the last perhaps by the power of their Kings, who would needs confer divine honours upon some of their Ancestors. But to the first inclined by their own disposition, and the situation of their Country, yielding a fair sensible *Horizon* (for the *Rational* is alike in all places both in hills and valleys) and consequently profitable to the observation of the rising and setting of the Stars, whether *Heliacal*, *Acronical*, *Matutine*, or *Vesperine*, as the *Aristi* phrase it. Whereunto may be added the length of life in those elder times, furnishing them with the greater measure of experience, concerning the distinct motions of each several Orb, and the full period of the courses of each several Planer. Certain it is, that they grew so noted in this Art, that at the last every *Astrologaster*, or Figure-flinger, was called a *Chaldean*: *Genis nomine ad eos homines translati, qui sese illius sapientie specie venditabant*, as *Beza* hath observed in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the people thus flouted by the *Satyrists*;

*Chaldeis s. d. major erit fiducia, quicquid
Dixerit Astrologum, credent a fonte relatum
Ammonis, &c.*

That is to say,

*Joves Oracles no greater credit have;
Then Sooth-sayings of a Chaldee cozening knave.*

The language which was spoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldean* tongue; of great antiquity; and sanctified by the *Holy Ghost*, some Chapters of the prophesie of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* did not understand it, as appeareth by the words of the Officers of *Hozekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18. 26. desiring *Rabseke*th to speak to them in the *Chaldee* tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his blasphemies. A further proof may be, that a man may have some knowledge in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*; as many are no doubt, at this present day. But whatsoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards when the *Jews* came to live amongst them, during the Captivity: out of whose long commerce with them, both Nations lost their proper Languages, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriack*. Of this we spake before when we were in *Syria* and *Palestine*. And this is now the natural language of this Country, and its neighbour *Affrica*, but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabic*; not vulgarly spoken elsewhere, for ought I can find, but used by many others, in their sacred offices, by whom not commonly understood. For in this language, all the Sects of the Eastern Christians do officiate their publick *Liturgies*; that is to say, the *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who use the *Greek Liturgy*, amongst the Sectaries.) The like do also the *Indians* or *Christians* of *Saint Thomas*, the *Coptics* or *Christians* of *Egypt*, and the poor remainder of the Christians in the Isle of *Zocatar*, an Island on the coast of *Affrick*. Used to those *Liturgies*, when the Language was more understood amongst them; though now worn out of *Vulgar* knowledge by the over-spreading of the *Arabic*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkish* Conquests. In which the Prelates of these Churches have fallen into the great error of the Church of *Rome*: and without taking notice of the alterations, hapning in the *Vulgar* tongues of those several Nations, which are united under them into one opinion, keep up a language in their *Liturgies* which they understand not: as if the capacities of the people could be sooner raised, to the understanding of an unknown language, than the publick *Liturgies* be fitted unto their capacities. The ancient piety of the Church, and the Modern Languages of Gods people, are not inconsistent; though out of private ends some have taught us otherwise. But I fear this error (as some others) will not be so easily remedied, as reprehended. From the tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, pass we to the Religion it self, whose Sacred Offices are so celebrated.

The Christian Faith was first preached in this Country by *St. Peter*, of whose being in *Babylon* (the chief

chief City hereof) himself assureth us in the last words almost of his first Epistle: and other business he had none here, but to preach the Gospel. Much persecuted by the *Persians*, (who were then possessed of all these parts) it prevailed at last, Christianity growing up the faster for the cutting down. The *Patriarchal* See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, successor unto *Babylon* in repute and greatness, if not also in name: the Bishop whereof, by order of the *Nicene* Council, had the *Ecclesiasticall* jurisdiction of these parts with the name of *Catholique*; and the next place in *Sessions* at all publick assemblies of the Church, next after the *Patriarch* of *Hierusalem*. And besides this the *Indians* or *Christians* of *Saint Thomas* acknowledge him for their *Primate* or *Metropolitan*; as they did afterwards in his right, the *Patriarch* of *Musal*. At this present there are some remainders of Christianity, part of them *Jacobites*, but the most *Nestorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have spoken already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our passage forwards; So that without more delay we may take a view of their principal places. And in the first place we meet with *Babel*, (in the *Hebrew* signifying confusion) famous for confusion of languages which here happened. For immediately after the Universal deluge, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, the Son of *Sham*, perwaded the people to secure themselves from the like after-claps, by building some stupendous edifice, which might resist the fury of a second deluge. This Council was generally embraced, *Hebr* only and his Family, (as tradition goeth) contradicting such an unwise attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majesty, 5146 paces from the grounds: having its basis and circumference equal to the height. The passage to go up, went winding about the outside, and was of an exceeding great breadth; there being not only room for horses, carts, and the like means of carriage, to meet and turn; but lodging for man and beast, and (as *Vespegan* reporteth) grass and corn-fields for their nourishment. But God beholding from on high this fond attempt, sent amongst them (who before were of one language) a confusion of tongues: which hindred the proceeding of this building, one being not able to understand what his fellow called for.

Babylon, on the Bank of *Euphrate*, the antientest City in the World, on this side of the flood, first built by *Nimrod*, in the place destinated to the raising of the Tower of *Babel*, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdom: afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Simiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*, one of his Successors; and finally much increased both in bulk and beauty by *Neluchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himself the whole glory of it, laying in his pride, is not this the great *Babel* that I have builded? *Dan. 4. 30.* A City of great fame and state, accomped one of the worlds nine wonders, and deservedly too.

The compass of the walls 365 furlongs, (or 46 miles) according to the number of the dayes in the year; in height 50 Cubits, and of so great breadth that carts and carriages might meet on the top of them; finished in one year by the hands of 200000 workmen, employed daily in it. Situate on both sides of *Euphrate*, over which there was a sumptuous bridge, and at each end of that bridge a magnificent Palace: beautified also with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Pensile Gardens*, made with great charge, and born up with most lately Arches. In a word, so great and vast it was, that *Aristotle* saith, that it ought rather to be called a Countrey, than a City: adding withall, that when the Town was taken, it was three dayes before the furthest parts of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town must be understood of the surprize hereof by the *Medes* and *Persians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a Clerk as he was) in his marginal notes upon the *Polliticks* of that Author, hath most vainly told us. Which, whether it were that there were Gates at the end of every street, which made it be so long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not wakened from their drunken feast, in the time whereof it was surprized, I determine not. Revolting in the time of *Semiramis*, the news came to her as she was ordering her hair: whereupon, leaving her head half-dressed she went and belieged it; never ordering the rest of her hair, till she had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophons Cyri-paideia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euphrate* ran quite thorow the Town, round about whose banks, the politick Prince cut many and deep channels: into which when the *Babylonians* were securely merry at a general feast, he suddenly drained and emptied the River, conveying his own forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Channel; and in a little time made himself master of it. From the *Persians* it revolved in the reign of *Darius Hystaspes*: and that sustenance might not be wanting to the men of warre, they strangled the most part of the women, being thought in actions of this quality, not so much as necessary evils. When they had for twenty months so obstinately defended the Town, that the *Persians* had less hope than ever of prevailing; *Zopyrus*, one of *Darius* Captains, mangling his body, and disfiguring his face by cutting off his nose and ears, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the tyranny of his King. They crediting his words, and knowing his prowess, committed the charge of the whole army unto him, as a man, to whom such barbarous usage had made the King irreconcilable. But he taking the best opportunity, delivered both the Town and Souldiers into the hands of his Sovereign. Which made *Darius* often say, that he had rather have one *Zopyrus*, than twenty *Babylons*. Here died *Alexander the Great*, after whose death the *Grecian* Captains regarded rather of their own ambitions, than the common loyalty, divided the Empire among themselves; leaving the body of the King 8 dayes unburied. A wonderful change of fortune, that he who living, thought the world too small for his valour, being dead should find no place big enough for his body. After this taking of it by the *Macedonians*, the glories and magnificence hereof began to decline, lessened unto a fourth part in the time of *Qu. Curtius* the historian; in solitude hereof reduced to desolation in the dayes of *Pliny*; and being turned into a Park, in which the Kings of *Persia* did use to hunt, in the time of *Saint Hierome*. That wondrous change occasioned partly by the injury of time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat Royal of their Empire more towards *Greece*; but principally

principally by *Seleucus Nicanor*, who offended with the *Babylonians* built the City of *Seleucia*.

3 *Seleucia*, the second City of note in all this Country, situate in a place more commodious and healthy, near the meeting of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and about 48 miles more North than *Babylon*; out of which he drew 50000 persons for the peopling of it. Nor did this new City rob the old only of its power and greatness, but also of its very name; being called *Babylon* in some of the ancient Authors; *Βαβυλων* *πρωτη* *της* *Μεσοποταμιας*, *Βαβυλων* *κατα* *μακρον*, as (for one) by *Stephanus*. In the primitive times of *Christianity*, the Bishop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldeans*; with a superintendency over the *Christians* of *India* also, as before was said. But this *Supplanter* was in time brought to ruin also. And

4 *Bagdad*, a new City raised from the ruins of it: built near the foundations of *Seleucia* by *Bagisfer* the twentieth *Caliph* of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as some write) of eighteen Millions of Crowns; which because of the many Gardens contained in it had the name of *Bagdad*, the word so signifying in the *Arabick* tongue. First built upon the Western bank of the River *Tigris*, near to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095. removed to the other side of the River, by *Mussetaber*, the 45 *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; because less subject to the inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned still for the same City, as if built by *Bagisfer*; By whom being made the seat of his Royall Residence (whose Successors were from hence called the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*) it flourished in great pride and splendour: till taken and sacked by *Allan*, or *Haalon* a *Tartarian* Captain, who here starved *Mussetaber*, the last *Caliph* of it, and rooted out his whole posterity: as if the *Caliphate* and the City were to end together. But the Town revived again, though the *Caliph* could not; continuing to this day a City of great wealth and traffick, but nothing comparable unto what it was for beauty and bigness; being not above seven miles in compass, and having nothing in the buildings to be justly bragged of. Taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* with the rest of the Country, it became subject to the *Turks*; from them recovered by *Abas* the King of *Persia*, Anno 1625. and again recovered by the *Turks*, about the year 1640. In which changes it can be no marvel that she hath lost much of her former splendour. Maintained especially at the present by the trade of *Aleppo*, to which, besides such goods as go up the water, there pass yearly many *Caravans*, or troops of *Merchants*, each of them having in it some hundreds (if not thousands) of *Camels* laden with commodities. For whose safe lodging, as they pass the waies being generally ill provided for Travellers, in these Eastern Countreys; there are some houses of receipt built at the publick charge, or by some special Benefactor, to preserve his memory: most of them strong, and many very fair and lovely, which in the dominions of the *Persians* they call *Caravane Rahes*; in the *Turkish* *Canes*. And for communicating the success of their buisness unto the place from whence they came, they make use of *Pigeons*, which is done in this manner. When the *Hen-Pigeon* siteth, or hath any young, they take the *Cock*, and set him in an open Cage: whom, when they have travelled a daies journey, they let go at liberty, and he strait flieth home to his Mate. When they have trained them thus from one place to another, and that there be occasion to send any advertisement, they tie a letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by some of the house, advertised thereby of the estate of the *Caravan*. The like is also used betwixt *Ormus*, and *Balsora*. But of this enough.

5 *Ctesiphon*, on the River *Tigris*, not far from *Seleucia*, by whose fall it rose; occasioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, speaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the building of *Seleucia* to neer unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhaurientiam*, *Ctesiphontem juxta tertium ab ea Lapidem condidit Persis*. First built, saith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*, afterwards beautified and walled by *Pacorus*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the Seat-Royal of the *Persian* Kingdom. Many times besieged and assaulted by the *Roman* Emperours; but most commonly without success; and amongst others, by *Julian* the *Apostate*, that bitter enemy of the Gospel, who here breathed out his soul to Satan, in these dying words, *Viciisti tandem Galilæe*. But *Vardanes* (whosoever he was) cannot of right be called the first founder of it, who raised it rather from the rubbish of an old foundation: this City being the same with that which *Moses* calleth *Calne*; and *Ezekiel*, *Caneb*, *Gen. 11.* and *Ezek. 27. 23.* and therefore rightly said by *Pliny* to be built in *Chalantide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6 *Sipparum*, remarkable for the great Trench made neer it, to receive the overflowings of *Euphrates*, which otherwise might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*: in compass 1280 furlongs or 160 miles; in depth 20 fathoms. A vast and expencefull work; but that nothing was to be admired, when *Babylon* it self was up and in full prosperity.

7 *Apamia*, a City of *Seleucus* foundation also, situate at the fall of *Pison* into the River of *Tigris*.

8 *Vologesia*, placed by *Polomy* amongst the Cities of *Chaldeæ*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Assyria*; built or repaired by one of the *Vologeser*, Kings of *Persia*, and from him denominated.

9 *Borsippa*, by *Polomy* called *Barsisa*, memorable for the great Victory, which *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch, obtained here against *Nabonidus* the King of *Babylon*, by *Scaliger* called *Darius Medus*, (of which more anon): whom having vanquished, he pardoned him (as he saith) his life, and gave him the government of *Carmania*.

10 *Balsora*, a Port Town to *Babylon*, situate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Persicus*, and consequently of great wealth and trading: the riches of *Arabis*, *Persia*, and some part of *India*, being landed here, and so carryed to *BABYLON*, and thence up the water to *Aleppo*. Supposed to be the City of *Theredon*, mentioned by *Polomy*; built or repaired by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long since taken from the *Turks* by *Abas*, the *Persian*.

ASSYRIA is bound on the East, with *Media*, from which parted by the mountain called *Cothras*; on the West, with *Mesopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tigris*; on the South with *Sassania*; and on the North, with some part of *Turcomania*, so called from *Assur* the Son of *Sem*; by whom first inhabited. But having long since lost that name, as to vulgar speech, it is by *Niger* called *Adrinfa*; by *Mercator*, *Sarb*; by the *Turks*, *Azerum*.

The Country very plain, and level, exceeding fruitfull, and abounding in Rivers. For besides *Tigris* which washeth one whole side thereof, *Protoplus* assigneth to this Country the Rivers of 2 *Lycus*, 3 *Cyprus* and 4 *Gorgos*; all of good note, and all of them increasing, with their tributary Streams, the greatness of *Tigris*.

The people were antiently great warriors, and together with the *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans*, commanded a great part of the East; extending their dominion from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*; insomuch that not the people of this Province only, but of all the Provinces almost of this spacious Empire, had the name of *Assyrians*. The men for all this exceeding formal in their habit, wearing long robes which trailed on the very ground, their hair long, their hats or Caps *Pyramidal* like the *Persian* *Miters*; not stirring out of doors but perfumed with Musk, rings on their fingers, and a Scepter in their hands; and very frequent in their washings, especiall after copulation. As for their women, it was an ancient custome with them, to expose the fairest unto sale in the open Market; and the money given for those, to put off such as were deformed and not so amiable. And hence perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this lesson, of giving less portions with such daughters as will sell themselves; but greasing the fat sow (as the saying is) with the addition of some hundreds: which made the merry fellow say, *That the money were a good match if the wench were away*.

The *Christians* faith was first here planted by *Saint Jude*, and took such deep root in that plantation, that it could never be pulled up; notwithstanding the cruel persecutions raised against it, by the Kings of *Persia*: who when they saw there was no means to destroy it by violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with heresie. And to that end, as also to revenge himself upon the Emperour *Heracletus*, a great Champion of the *Orthodox* belief against *Nestorianism*, *Chosroes* the great King of *Persia* enforced all the *Christians* of his Empire unto those opinions, which he knew that Emperour condemned; permitting none who were counted *Catholicks* within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to instruct them otherwise, (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Persian* Empire) *Nestorianism* prevailed so far, that it extended over all the Countreys East of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; and Northwards too amongst the *Tartars*, of which more hereafter. Governed by their own Patriarch, who resideth at *Mosul*, now the chief City of this Country; and honoured by his people with the Title of *Jacelich*, mistaken or pronounced amiss for *Catholique*: an attribute given antiently to all *Orthodox* Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Nestorians*, were, 1 That there were two persons in our Saviour, as well as two natures; but yet confessing that *CHRIST* from the first instant of his conception, was both God and man. 2 That the blessed *Virgin* ought not to be called *Queen* or the *Mother of God*; but yet acknowledging her to be the *Mother of God the Son*. 3 That *Nestorius* condemned for these opinions in the third and fourth General Councils, was an holy man; for whose sake they condemn *Saint Cyril* his professed Antagonist, and all those Councils wherein any censure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough, (their rejecting *Episcopal* infirmation excepted only.) As 1 in celebrating the Sacraments of the Lords Supper with leavened bread; 2 communicating in both kinds; 3 enjoying no necessity of auricular Confession; 4 contracting marriages in the second degree of Consanguinity; 5 permitting second and third marriages unto men in Orders, after the death of their first wives; 6 not praying before the Cross, nor giving religious worship to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for these *Nestorian* Sectaries, if so named aright, considering the qualifications added unto their opinions; now (but corruptly) called *Nestorians*: the greatest Sect of *Christians* in all the East.

The solemnities which these *Christians* use in contracting marriage, because not very usual, I will here relate. Their wives they never see till the day of their marriage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her parents for her. Agreed upon the business, they meet in the Chancel of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the *Bridegroom* and his friends standing on the one side; the *Bride* and her kindred, on the other. When there, the *Coffice* or Church-man biddeth the *Bridegroom* to put his hand thorow the hole in the Partition, and take his *Bride* by the hand, which he doth accordingly: the mother of the *Bride*, with a sharp-pointed instrument, made of purpose, pricking the *Bridegroom*s hand all over, with sufficient eagerness. If when he feeleth the smart, he lets go her hand, they take it for a sign that he will not love her; but if he hold her fast, and wring her hand till she cry again, they take it for a very good Omen, and are glad they have so well bestowed her. After the marriage is consummate, if a male child be born unto them, the Father loseth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldest Son: so as if the Fathers name be *Moses*, and his Sons name *Joseph*; the Father is no more called *Moses*, but *Abu-Joseph*, or the Father of *Joseph*. So highly do they reverence marriage, and the fruit thereof, posterity.

It was antiently divided into these six parts, 1 *Arraphschitis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; so called for *Arphaxaditis*, or the plantation of *Arphaxad*, the Son of *Sem*. 2 *Alidene*, bordering on *Mesopotamia*, so called, *quasi* *Adidat*, or inaccessible, because fenced with such unfordable Rivers,

Christians under his obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced since unto 50000. That which they hold as *Jacobites*, distinct from all other Christians is 1 The acknowledgement but of one nature, one will, and one operation (as there is but one person) in Christ our Saviour. 2 y. In signing their Children before Baptism, in the Face or Arm, with the sign of the Cross, imprinted with a burning Iron. 3 Retaining *Circumcision*, and using it in both Sexes. 4 Affirming the Angels to consist of two natures, Fire, and Light; and 5 Honouring the memory of *Dioscorus* (of *Alexandria*) and *Jacobus Syntactes*, condemned by the ancient Councils. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, are,

1 Not enjoying the People the necessity of *Confession* to a Priest, before they admit them to communicate.

2 Not admitting Purgatory, nor Prayers for the Dead.

3 Administering the Sacrament of the *Eucharist* in both kinds.

4 Allowing the marriage of Priests; And

5 Teaching that the souls of men deceased, are not admitted presently to the *Vision* of God, but remain somewhere in the Earth, to expect Christs coming. In which last, (setting aside the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; so to the first (touching the unity of natures in our Saviour Christ) they have of late added such qualifications, as possibly may make it capable of an *Orthodox* sense.

Chief Rivers of this Countreys (besides *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, of which more hereafter,) 1 *Chaboras*, which rising in Mount *Mafus*, passing directly South, falleth into *Euphrates*; also doth 2 *Syngarus*, by *Pliny*; called *Musca*, arising out of the Mountain *Syngarus*; which is but the more Western part of the said Mount *Mafus*. Which names of *Musca*, *Mafus*, and the *Mafeni* (being the name of a People dwelling thereabouts) shew plainly that they go upon very good grounds who place *Masch*, or *Mefsch*, one of the sons of *Aram*, in these parts of the Countrey.

It was divided anciently into, 1 *Anthemafus*, 2 *Chalcitis*. 3 *Caulanitis*. 4 *Accabene*. 5 *Ancorabilis* and 6 *Ingine*: each part containing several Cities or Towns of name. These six when conquered by the *Romans*, reduced unto two Provinces only, viz. 1 *Mesopotamia*, lying on the South of Mount *Mafus*, or the head of *Chaboras*; and 2 *Ofshoene* on the North: this last so named from one *Ofshoes*, the Prince or Governour of these parts in the time of the *Persians*, as *Procopius* telleth us.

Chief places of the whole, 1 *Edessa*, the Metropolis of *Ofshoene*, situate on the River *Scirtas*, which runneth thorow the middle of it, not far from the fall thereof into *Euphrates*. Memorable for the Story of *Agbarus* before related, amongst Church-Historians: and in the *Roman* Histories, for the death of the Emperour *Caracalla*, slain here by the appointment of *Macrinus*, Captain of his guard. The occasion of this. The Emperour conscious to himself of his own unworthiness, employed one *Maternianus* to enquire amongst the Magicians in the Empire, who was most likely to succeed him: by whom accordingly advertised that *Macrinus* was to be the man; The letters being brought unto *Caracalla*, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the rest of the Packets, to the hands of *Macrinus*, (whoby his office was to be attendant on the Emperours person) that he might open them, and signifie unto him the contents thereof at his better leisure. Finding by this the danger in which he stood, he resolved to strike the first blow; and to that end entrusted *Martialis*, one of his Centurions, with the execution; by whom the Emperour was here killed, as he withdrew himself, *Levanda vesica gratia*, as my Author hath it. So impossible a thing it is to avoid ones Destiny; so vain a thing for any Prince to think of destroying his Successor: and therefore it was very well said to *Nero* in the times of his tyranny, *Omnis licet occideris, Successorem tuum occidere non potes*, that though he caused all the men of eminence to be forthwith murdered; yet his Successor would survive him, and escape the blow. But to return unto *Edessa*, in following times it was made one of the four *Tetrarchies* of the Western Christians, when they first conquered *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*; the two first Governours or *Tetrarches*, successively succeeding *Godfrey of Bouillon* in the Kingdom of *Hiernsalem*. But in the year 1142. it was again recovered by *Sanguin* the Turk, Father of *Noradin* Sultan of *Damascus*, and by the loss thereof, no fewer than three Arch-Bishopricks withdrawn from the obedience of the See of *Antioch*.

2 *Cologenbar*, another strong peece adjoining, besieged on the taking of *Edessa*, by the same *Sanguin*, who was here stabbed in a drunken quarrell by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort saved for that time.

3 *Nisibis*, situate somewhat to the East of Mount *Mafus*, called also *Antiochia Mygdonie*, from the River *Mygdonius*, which runneth thorow it; and afterwards *Constantia*, from *Constantius* the Son of *Constantine*. A City of great note in those elder times, a *Roman* Colony, and the Metropolis of the Province of *Mesopotamia*, properly and specially so called: which being besieged by *Sapor* the King of *Persia*, (*Constantius* ruling in the East) and in no small danger to be lost, was gallantly defended by *James* the then Bishop of it, whom *Theodo* calls not only, *Episcopus Civitatis*, sed *Principem & Ducem*, not the Bishop only of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, lib. 2. cap. 31. So little inconsistency was there found in those early daies, betwix the *Episcopall* function and civil business, that the Bishops were not interdicted from the Acts of war, when the necessities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after most unworthily delivered to the said *Sapores*, by the Emperour *Jovinian*; which drew along with it, in short time, the loss of the Province.

4 *Ur*, seated on the East of *Nisibis*, betwixt it and *Tigris*; and so placed by *Ammianns* who had travelled this Countrey. Conceived to be the Birth-place of *Abraham*, and called *Ur* of the Chaldees, Gen. 11. 28. either because the *Chaldees* were in those daies possessed of the place; or because the name of *Chaldean* did comprehend aliothose parts of this Countrey which lay towards *Tigris*, as was shewn before.

before. For that the place from which *Terah* the Father of *Abraham* did return to *Haran* in *Mesopotamia*, was rather situate in this coast where *Ur* is placed by *Ammianns*, then betwix the Lakes of *Childea* and the *Persian* Gulf, where most Writers place it, may appear probable for the reasons which are here subjoined. 1 Because it is said by *Jalkna*, chap. 24. ver. 12. That *Terah* the Father of *Abraham*, and the Father of *Nachor*, dwelt on the other side of the Flood; that is to say, on the further side of the River *Euphrates*, and that too *ante agum*, as the *Septuagint*; *ab initio*, as the *Vulgar Latine*; in the first beginning. Which cannot be understood of any *Ur*, placed on or near the Lakes of *Chaldea*, those being on this side of that River. 2 Because all the rest of *Abrahams* Ancestors from *Phaleg* downward, were seated in the Northern parts of *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*: and it were strange that *Terah* should be planted so far from the rest of his kindred. 3 Because from *Ur* in *Mesopotamia*, near the banks of *Tigris*, the way to *Canaan* (to which *Terah* did intend to go) was directly by *Haran*: whereas if he had dwelt (as some say he did) by the Lakes of *Chaldea*, his way had been directly West thorow *Arabia Deserta*, and not to have travelled, with his family, so far North as *Haran*; and then to have fallen back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, crossing *Euphrates* twice with his herds and cattel. 4 *Haran*, the place to which *Terah* did remove, when he went from *Ur*, and from which *Abraham* did remove, when he went towards *Canaan* so named in memory of *Haran* the son of *Terah*: but called afterwards by the name of *Carræ*, and by that name well known to the *Roman* Writers for the death of *Crassus*, that wealthy *Roman*. Whose estate (besides the tenth which he offered to *Herules*, and three moneths corn distributed amongst the poor) amounted to 7100 Talents, which comes in our money, to one Million, 331250 l. But all his wealth could not preserve him from the slaughter, slain near this City, with the routing of his Army also, by *Herodes* King of *Parthia*: of which briefly *Lucan*,

miserando funere *Crassus*

Assyrias Latio maculavit sanguine *Carras*.

Which may be Englished to this purpose,

By a defeat lamented *Crassus* stains

With *Roman* blood the *Assyrian Carras* Plains.

Called the *Assyrian Carræ* by Poetical licence, because the *Assyrians* formerly had been Lords thereof. And no less memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous temple of the *Moon*, worshipped here (but in no place else) under both Sexes: some honouring it as a female Deity, then called *Dea Luna*; and others in the shape and dress of a man, and called *Deus Lunus*. But with this fortune and success, as saith *Spartianus*, *qui Lunam femineo nomine putabat nuncupandam, is mulierilus semper inferviat*; that they who worshipped it in the form of a Woman, should be always subject to their wives (I trow there were but few of that Religion) *qui vero Marem deum crederet, is uxori dominetur*; but he that worshipped it as a man, should preserve the mastery. 6 *Amida*, near the River *Tigris*, the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia*, when one Province only, and before it fell into the hands of the *Romans*; much beautified by *Constantius* the son of *Constantine*, by whom named *Constantias*. But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great strength, as a frontire Town against the *Persians*, and by them much aimed at. Honoured of late times with the Residence of the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Christians*, as the chief City of this Province; for this cause also made the dwelling of the *Pseudo-Patriarch* of the *Nestorians* (or *Nosstrans*) of the Popes erection; and the chief Seat also of the *Bassi* or other Officer, governing this Countrey for the *Turks*; by whom called *Caramit*, or *Kara Amida*, that is to say, *Amida the black*, because it was walled with black stone. 7 *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the meeting of *Chaboras* with *Euphrates* not far from *Carræ*; mentioned by *Stephanus*, and *Arrianus*, and by *Ptolomy* mistakingly called *Pharga*: the seat or first plantation of *Phaleg*, one of *Abrahams* Ancestors: *Serug*, another of them giving name to 8 *Sarug*, about a dayes journey off from *Haran*, spoken of by some later Writers. 9 *Singara*, on the River so named, a fortified City in the time of *Ammianns*, by whom mentioned, lib. 20. 10 *Bezabde*, mentioned by the same Author, by whom said to have been a very strong Fort, seated on a pretty high hill, and bending towards the banks of *Tygris*, before whose times it had anciently been called *Phanicha*. 11 *Virta*, supposed to have been the work of *Alexander* the Great, circled with Walls, environed with Half-moons and Bulwarks, and made unaccessible: in vain besieged by *Sapores* the *Persian* King, after the taking of *Bezabde*. The same perhaps with the *Birtha* of *Ptolomy*. 12 *Merdin*, not far from which in the Monastery of *Saphran*, is the Patriarchal See of the *Jacobite Se-tharics*.

The first Inhabitants of these Countreys, though united from the first beginning under the same Principles and form of Government, came from several Families: all the three sons of *Noah* concurring as it were in this Plantation. From *Nimrod*, *Havilah*, and others of the posterity of *Chus* the son of *Ham*, came the *Babylonians*: with whom *Chesed* the son of *Nachor*, of the house of *Sem*, intermingling families; or being the Author of their language, or of some other signal benefit; gave to them the name of *Chaldæans*, where came that of *Chaldeans*. From *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, and those of *Arphaxads* posterity, intermingled with the sons of *Mash*, the son of *Aram*, came the *Mesopotamians*, and *Assyrians*. And that *Japhet* also and his children may put in for a part, the neighbourhood of the *Medes*, and *Albanes*, descended from him, makes it somewhat probable.

But whatsoever Parents they descended from, *Nimrod* the son of *Chus*, made so bold with them, as to bring them under his command: planting in *Chaldea*, the Cities of *Babylon*, and *Calne*; in *Assyria*, *Nimive*, *Rhesem*, and *Caluch*; and finally *Rebbooth* (if that were *Birtha*, as some think it was)

The Assyrian Monarchs.

was) in *Mesopotamia*. By these strong Forts he curbed the native, and assured his power; being the first that altered the Paternal form of Government, and drew unto himself the Government of several Nations, not having any dependance upon one another. The foundation thus laid by him, his Successors soon raised the building to a wondrous height; advancing the *Assyrian* Empire, from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*: and that too in a shorter time than could be imagined, but that the world was then divided into petty States, not cemented together with the ligaments of power and policy: For though there be little found of *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod*, but that he spent most of his time in draining the marshes, and making firm ground of those vast fennes which lay near to *Babylon*, which were works of peace: yet by those and the like works of peace, he so settled his affairs at home, that he gave his son *Ninus* the better opportunity to look abroad: who mightily improved his Empire, and was the greatest and most powerful of all that line; extending his dominions from the River *Indus*, to the *Mediterranean*; and from the *Caspian* Sea, to the Southern Ocean. His Successors we shall find in the following Catalogue of

The Assyrian Monarchs.

- A. M.*
 1798 1 *Nimrod*, called by some *Saturnus Babylonius*, the son of *Chus*, and Nephew of *Cham*, was the first who altered the Paternal Government, and usurped dominion over others; making *Babylon* his Imperial City. 47.
 1845 2 *Belus*, or *Jupiter Babylonicus*, the son of *Nimrod*, whose Image was worshipped by the old Idolaters under the names of *Bel*, and *Baal*. 62.
 1907 3 *Ninus*, the son of *Belus*, conquered *Armenia*, *Syria*, *Media*, *Babylonia*, and the *Persian* Provinces; and removed the imperial Seat to *Ninive*, by him much beautified and enlarged. 52.
 1959 4 *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus* subdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* also, she was vanquished and slain by their King *Siamrobes*. Of this great Lady it is said, that she was born in *Acalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and exposed to the fury of wilde beasts. But being born not to die so ingloriously, she was brought up by shepherds, and at full age presented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in marriage to his only Son. Going with him to the wars, she fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her person and spirit, took her to his bed. This bred in him a greater affection towards her, so that he granted her at her request, the command of the Empire for five daies; making a *Decree*, that her will in all things should be punctually performed: which boon being gotten, she put on the Royall Robes, and (as some Writers do report) commanded the King to be slain. Having thus gotten the Empire, she exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army consisting of one hundred thousand Chariots of war, three millions of Foot, and half a million of Horse. A woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her insatiable lust: in which if the *Greek* writers say true (as we have no reason to believe it of so gallant a woman) she was very guilty.
 2001 5 *Ninus II.* the son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*. 2586
 2039 6 *Arias* 30. 2618
 2069 7 *Arabis* 40. 2638
 2109 8 *Belus II.* 30. 2668
 2139 9 *Amamitrites*. 2713
 2177 10 *Belochus Priscus* 35. 2732
 2212 11 *Belochus Jun.* called also *Balaus* 52. 2759
 2264 12 *Albades* 32. 2791
 2296 13 *Mamitis* 30. 2831
 2336 14 *Mancalens* 30. 2861
 2326 15 *Spherus* 20. 2901
 2376 16 *Mancalens II.* 30. 2939
 2406 17 *Sparetus* 40. 2984
 2446 18 *Acadades* 40. 3014
 2486 19 *Amintes* 45. 3084
 2511 20 *Belochus Jun.* 45. 3084
 2556 21 *Belopares* 30. 3126
 being 38 in all, there is scarce any thing remaining but the very names; registered in this order by *Berosus*, or rather by *Eriar Annus* a Monk of *Viturbum* in *Tuscany*, who hath thrust upon the world, the fancies of his own brain, under the name of that ancient Historian. The chief Kings of note after *Semiramis*, were,
 1 *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her Son; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants subdued the *Arrians*, *Babrians*, and *Cassians*; but was otherwise a man of effeminate and unkingly carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the elder *Bucchois*, so much celebrated amongst the *Grecians*.
 2 *Belus* the second, who recovered that Countrey which afterwards was called *Jndaa*, to the *Assyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predecessor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the sword of *Abraham*;) and subdued many other Nations.

3 *Belochus*

3. *Belochus Priscus*, the tenth King, who by some Writers is said to be the Author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Aspicium*. For of Sooth-saying there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Aspicium*, quasi *Avispicium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the right hand, or on the left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *avi sinistra*, good luck, because in giving, the right hand is opposite to the receivers left) or from the number of the Birds, whence *Romulus* had promised to him the Empire, before his Brother, because he had seen the double number of Vultures: or lastly, from the nature of them, whence the same *Romulus*, seeing the *Vultures*, was (saith *Florus*) *speci plenius urbem bellatricem fore, ita illi sanguini & praeda assuetæ aves pollicebantur*.

2. *Aruspicium*, ab *Aras inspiciendo*, in which the Sooth-sayers observed whether the Beast to be sacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the entrails were of natural colour, exulcerate, &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Histories afford variety of examples in this kind; I need give no particular instance. A kind of *Divination* said to be practised first by the *Tuscan*, or *Iturians*; instructed in the knowledge thereof by one called *Tages*, who appearing to certain Plough-men out of a Furrow, taught them this mystery, and so vanished.

3. *Tripudium*, so called quasi *Terripudium*, and *Terripavium*, from the trembling or shaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future successes, by the rebounding of crumbs cast unto Chickens. We have an instance of this in the life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being feditiously busy in promoting the Law *Agaria*, was fore-warned by the keeper of his Chickens to desist from that enterprize; because when he had thrown the crumbs to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens only, and the same without eating went back again; which was taken for a sign of ill luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been of good. But *Tiberius* slighting the advertisement, and pursuing his design, was the same day slain.

4. *Augurium*, so called ab *avium garritu*, was a prediction from the chirping or chattering of birds; as also from the sounds and voyces heard they knew not whence, nor on what occasion. In which latter kind the death of *Cesar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his house; and the poisoning of *Germanicus* by the founding of a Trumpet of its one accord: In the former, an Owl screeching in the Senate-house, was deemed ominous to *Augustus*; and a company of Crows following *Sejanus* to his house, with great noise and clamor, was judged to be fatal to that great Favorite: and so it proved.

4. *Manitus*, the thirteenth King; who revived again the ancient Discipline, corrupted by the sloathfulness and effeminacy of his Predecessors; and by the terrour of his name awed the *Egyptians*.

5. *Afcadates*, the eighteenth King, more absolute in *Syria* and the Western parts, than any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardanapalus*, the last King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern so great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conspire against him. By whom, associated with *Belochus* Governor of *Babylon*, he was besieged in his City of *Ninive*: and there reduced unto such extremities, that gathering his treasures all together, he burnt himself and them in one funeral Pile; *eo solum facto virum imitatus*, as is said by *Justine*. The treasure which he is said to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thousand Millions of pounds of Silver: which in our *English* money comes to twenty thousand and five hundred Millions of pounds. A mass of money, which as it must be long in gathering, so probably it had not seen the Sun in many years, and therefore grown rusty, might require a fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his life with that, in which he placed his *Summum Bonum*: It may be in spite unto his enemies, and it is possible it might be in policy, that so great a treasure not falling to the possession of his foes, might so much the more dislike them from making resistance against, or detaining the Empire from his next rightful Successors. For it is of all things most foolish, both to lose our Treasure, and with it to enrich our Adversaries. On which consideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian Fleet* at *Gades*; and the *Genoese* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their lading might not come into the possession of their enemies, the *English* and *Mahometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Medea*, and *Persia* with the adjoining Provinces; *Belochus* strengthened himself in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Assyria*.

The new Kings of Assyria, and Chaldea.

A. M.

3146. 1. *Phul Belochus*, the beginner of this new Monarchy, or race of Monarchs.
 3194. 2. *Phul Assur*, destroyed *Galilee*, and subdued the Kingdom of *Dimeficus*; the same who is called *Tiglah Pileassar* in the holy Scriptures.
 3217. 3. *Salmansar*, who destroyed *Samarina*, and ruined the Kingdom of *Israel*, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonassar* of the *Chronologers*.
 3227. 4. *Sennacherib*, whose blasphemous host was vanquished by Angels from heaven, and he himself murdered by his two sons, *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*. 7.
 3233. 5. *Afferbaddon*, who revenging his Fathers death on his brothers, was deposed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat-Royal transferred from *Ninive* to *Babylon*. 10.
 3243. 6. *Merodach Baladan*, Governor of *Babylon*, succeeded his Master in the Throne, conceived by some, to be the *Mardacarpades* of *Ptolemy*; by others, to be also the same King, who by his Captain *Holofernes* did so plague *Judea*.
 3283. 7. *Ben Merodach*, the son of *Merodach Baladan*. 21.

- The new Kings of Assyria and Chaldea.
3304. 8. Nabopolassar, who vanquished Pharaoh Necho King of Egypt. 25.
3339. 9. Nabuchodonosor the great, by some called the Hercules of the East, who conquered Egypt in the life of his father; with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of Babylon. He joyned also with Assyages King of Medes, in subverting the proud City of Nimve; and in the eighteenth year of his reign destroyed Jerusalem, and carried the people captive unto Babylon. But in the last seven years of his reign he was so distracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beasts of the field; according to the word of God spoken by Daniel, Chap. 4. during which time his son Evilmerodach, his daughter Nicocris, with Niglissas her husband, and Labaradach their son, governed his Empires as Protectors; and therefore are by some reckoned as Kings. Finally, Nabuchadnezzar having recovered his senses, was again restored unto the Throne; and dyed, when he had reigned in all 44. years.
3383. 10. Evilmerodach, the son Nabuchadnezzar, slain by Assyages, King of the Medes. 26.
3409. 11. Balthassar, son of Evilmerodach (the Nabonidus of Berosus) a Prince of a dissolute and cruel nature, was in the latter end of his reign assailed by Cyaxares the son of Assyages (whom the Scriptures call Darius Medus) and by Cyrus the Persian: by whom he was slain in the seventeenth year of his reign, and the Empire of the Babylonians was transferred to the Medes and Persians. A. M. 3426.

That this was the end of Balthassar, is the common opinion. But Josephus Scaliger in his learned and industrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be slain in a tumult by his own people: who elected into the Empire a Nobleman of the Medes, called in prophane stories, Nabonidus; in divine, Darius Medus; who after a 17. years reign was slain by Cyrus King of the Persians. But by the leave of so worthy a man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet Jeremy, had pronounced (Chap. 27.) That all Nations should serve Nabuchadnezzar, and his son, and his sons son; whereas Nabonidus was a Prince of strange blood, and so the Nations were not to serve him; and in Balthassar, the sons son of Nabuchadnezzar, was this word accomplished. But let us examine his argument, and withal the scoffs, which very prodigally he bestoweth on such as maintain the contrary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of Chronologers; *boni & diligentes viri*, good simple meaning men; & *addunt alia nihil veriora*, are his first Compliments. *Ut igitur, quod Chronologorum est, omnes respiciant*, &c. therefore that they may repent their ever being Chronologers, he bringeth in Berosus, cited by Josephus, in his first book against Apion. But Berosus there maketh Nabonidus (to whom he saith the Kingdom of Balthassar was by the people delivered) to be a Babylonian, and not as Scaliger would have him say, a Nobleman of the Medes; neither can the authority of Berosus countervail that of Daniel, who in Chap. 6. telleth Balthassar, that his Kingdom should be divided among the Medes and Persians. His second argument is drawn from the nature of the word, *αβασιλειας, & βασις & βασις αβασιλειας τω ερωτω*, as it is in the same Chapter, and Darius the Mede took the Empire: by which word took is implied (saith he) not a forcible invasion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we answer, that Darius indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him by Cyrus, and his army consisting of Medes and Persians, who according to the word of God, had taken it from Balthassar, Darius being then absent. *Quid si prolatvero* (saith he) *cum cognominatum fuisse Medum*? he hath yet one trick more than all these; and Medus must not be the national name, but the surname of Darius, which he proveth out of a fragment of Megasthenes, cited by Eusebius, in his worke *De Preparatione Evangelicæ*, where he is called *Μήδης* (*ουαλις & ισαυ Μήδης*) &c. an argument of all others the most slight and trivial. For besides that *Μήδης* may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and besides that, it thwarteth the places of Jeremy and Daniel, already quoted; it is diametrically opposite to another place of the same Daniel, in his ninth Chapter; where he is called *Darius, of the seed of the Medes*. Of this Darius more anon when we come into Media. As for Nabonidus, quæst. onlets he was the same with Balthassar. For besides that Josephus, and Berosus, attribute to either of them the reign of 17 years, the same Josephus (who might best know the truth in this case) telleth us that Balthassar was by the Babylonians called Nabonidel, a name not so great a stranger to Nabonidus, as Scaliger's Darius, or Herodotus his Labinitus. But in this we must pardon Joseph. Scorn and contradiction was a part of his essence. For had he not been in some things singular, in all peremptory, he had neither been a Scaliger, nor the son of Julius.

But leaving Joseph to the singularity of his own conceits, we find nothing done by the Assyrians or Chaldeans after this subjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of so great an Empire. Successively invaded by the Medes, Persians, and Macedonians; then by the Persians again, afterwards by the Saracens, next by the Turks, a third time by the Persians, once again by the Turks of the Ottoman Family, unto whom now subject: never endeavouring to assert in the way of war, or opposition, either their ancient reputation, or their native liberties; but suffering themselves to be won, lost, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrellsome Masters, as if they had not title to their own Country, but were born to follow the fortunes of all pretenders. The reason of which is principally to be ascribed to the form of Government used amongst the Persians, which was so Despotic and absolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the people conquered by them in the nature of slaves; not suffering any to grow great in a state of inheritance, or to enjoy any place of power and profit under them in the conquered Provinces, but at the pleasure of the Prince; as it is now used amongst the Turks of the Ottoman Empire. By means whereof, the great men having no alliances amongst themselves, and as few dependants amongst the people, were never able to make head against the Conqueror; but in the fall of the present Prince fell together with him: it being a good rule of Machiavel, that where the ancient Nobility is in good regard, linked in alliances with themselves, and well respected by the common and inferior people,

people; there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conqueror, to win a Country, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other side, where Nobility is quite worn out, and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of slaves, there both the conquest will be easie, and soon assured. For to what purpose should the Subjects resist the Conqueror, or stand any longer to their King, then he stands to himself, when they are sure the Conqueror can lay upon them no heavier burdens, then they were accustomed to before, and have withall a flattering hope, that their new Masters may be gentler to them, then their former were? It fares with them no otherwise then with Egypt's Asi, which refused to take the opportunity of an escape from the hands of the enemy, by which he was taken, because he knew it was not possible they should lay more load upon his back, then his old Master made him bear. To which condition the Chaldeans and Assyrians being brought by the Persians, and never accustomed to the taste of a better fortune, have followed the same successes as the Persians did, falling together with them from one hand to another; the particular account of whose estate we shall finde in Persia, taking this only for the close, that when Solymann the Magnificent had discomfited Tamas King of Persia, and taken the great City of Bagdat; Caramit, Merdin, and the rest both in Assyria, Chaldaa, and Mesopotamia, submitted to him without any resistance, and received his Garrisons. And for a confirmation of his estate, he received at the hand of the Caliph of Babylon (who by an old Prerogative had the nomination or confirmation, at the least, of the Kings of Assyria, and the Sultans of Egypt) the Royal Ornaments and Ensigns, Anno 1534. incorporating by that means those Regions into his estates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left a Beglerbeg at Bagdat to command in chief, and divers Sanziacks in their severall and respective Provinces. And though the Persian Kings have since taken, & are still possessed of some places of importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the said investiture, and the long possession following on it, for Provinces of the Turkish Empire: as I do Media of the Persian, though Tauris and some other pieces of it be possessed by the Turks.

MOUNT TAURUS.



MOUNT-TAURUS is a constant and continual ridge of hills, which extend from the Mediterranean to the Indian Seas; running thorow the whole length of Asia from West to East, and dividing it, as the Equator doth the Globe, into North and South. It was called *Taurus* from the word *Tur* or *Tamr*, which in the Syriac and Chaldean signifieth a Mountain; the common name of all high mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reason of its greatness and continued length: yet so, that it had other names also in some parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it passed, and on which it bordered. The course whereof is thus set down by Sir Walter Raleigh: premising only, that it beginneth in the Province of Lycia, a Region of Asia Minor, neer the Mediterranean. These Mountains (saith he) which sunder Cilicia from the rest of Asia the less, on the North thereof are called *Taurus*; and where they part it from Comagena a Province of Syria, they are called *Amannus*. On the East side of the River *Euphrates* (which forceth it self a way thorow it) it sometimes resumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in Ptolemies three first Tables of Asia, and sometimes taketh the name of *Niphates*, as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain appellation, so long as they bound Armenia from Mesopotamia. After the River *Tigris* hath also cut them asunder, they continue the name of *Niphates* altogether, untill they separate Assyria and Media, but then they call themselves *Coatras*: although between the upper and lower Media, they appear not always, but are seen discontinued, and broke in pieces; such parts of it as are found in the middle of that Country being called *Orantes*; those which lie more towards the East being named *Coronus*; out of the Southern parts whereof issueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the antient Persia from Carmania. Continuing further Eastward by the name of *Coronus*, they give unto the Parthians and Hyrcanians, their proper Countreys: and afterwards change themselves into the Mountains of *Seriphi*, out of which riseth the River *Manargus*. And now beginning to draw towards the end of their course, they first make themselves the South border of *Bactria*, and are then known by the name of *Parapanisus*: and after take unto themselves the name of *Caucasus*, where the famous Rivers *Indus*, *Hyaspis*, and *Zaradrus*, have their first beginnings. In this point do they hold their heads exceeding high; to equal the Mountains of *Imanus*, whom they encounter within the 35, 36, and 37. Degrees of Latitude, and the 140 Degree of Longitude: known by no other name then this, till finally they terminate their course in the Indian Seas. So far, and to this purpose, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the antient Writers could trace the course of this Mountain, no further then the meeting of it with *Imanus*; yet later observations follow it to the wall of China: the parts beyond *Caucasus* being now known by the names of *Delanguer*, and *Nangroco*. But this is to be understood only of the main body of these Mountains, which hold on in an even course from West to East; nor of those spurs and branches of it, which shoot either to the North, or South; such as are the *Anti-Taurus* in some parts of the lesser Asia; the *Gordiean Hills*, and the *Montes Moschici*, with those which *Pliny* calleth *Pariadri*, others *Pariadri*, in Armenia Major; and that of *Caboras*, which sheweth it self on the North East of Assyria, with divers others.

In such a continual course of Mountains it must needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not easily subdued, nor so soon reduced unto civility, as such who were possessed of places less defensible, and fitter for commerce and traffick with the rest of mankind. And they continued in these late times, the last which were brought under by the Turk and Persians, the mightiest Monarchs of those parts; though bordering on, or totally environed with their dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance: one towards the West where it closeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth Syria Comagena from Armenia Major; the other towards the East, separating Media from Hyrcania. For want of other names to describe them by, we will call the first the Kingdom of *Aladenles*, and the last the Kingdom of *Bahaman*; according to the names of the two last Kings.

The Kingdom of *AL ADEULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it self as far towards the East, as to the banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part Mesopotamia from Armenia Major. Inhabited by a people naturally very fierce & warlike, more famous for nothing then their want of all things; who as men dwelling in a rough and barren Country, could little profit themselves by husbandry, and therefore gave themselves to grazing; breeding on their pastures some store of horse and camels, which they sold to others, but especially maintaining themselves and their families by hunting and stealing. Supposed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the lesser Asia, which by long and continual wars in the former Ages, were forced to forsake their dwellings, and for safety of their lives to fly to these unpeopled & desolate Mountains.

Mountains. Where searching every hill and dale, and following the opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly the mildest Temperature of the Air, and most chearfull aspect of the Sun: they built in many places poor Villages, and afterwards some better Towns. The principal of which is named *Manna*, so called as it is conceived from the River *Marfus*, which rising out of the Mountain *Calene*, passeth by the same, and not far off falleth into the River *Euphrates*.

When it was made a Kingdom first, it is hard to say, the Kings hereof being mean and inconsiderable in the eye of the world; nor worth the conquering, and wanting power to conquer others and enlarge their territories: nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himself with reigning over Rocks and Mountains. The last was *Aladenles*, so much spoken of in the Turkish Histories, and by them called the Mountain King. Conceived by some writers to have been the Author of such a Paradise, as we shall find described when we come to *Drangian*, a Province of Persia; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him most really and truly known, in the stories of the former times; was the stout opposition which he made against the Turks, in their wars with Persia: He had before given no small check to the proceedings of *Bajazet*, the second, in his conquest of the *Caramanian* Kingdom; and no less troubled *Selimus* the Son of *Bajazet*, in his Persian wars, impeaching what he could the greatness of the Ottoman Family. Fought with by *Selimus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of courage, till betrayed by *Alis Big*, General of his horse, and seeing his Army terrified by the shot of the Turks, he was fain to flee. But being at last taken, and put to death by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdom was converted to a Turkish Province, Anno 1515. and so continueth to this day.

The Kingdom of *BAHAMAN* was situate more towards the East, amongst the Mountains which divide Media from Hyrcania, as before was said. The Mountains in those parts so high, that Travellers at the end of a two days journey, may discern the middle Region of the Air to be beneath them: exceeding troublesome to ascend, about 50 miles in height when once got to the top; but more dangerous by reason of the Rocks and Precipices, in the going down: full of inhospitable streights, and so cold and barren, that were not Sovereignty a temptation above all resistance, no man would take upon him the command of so poor a Kingdom. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great quantity of Sulphur, which makes it sparkle in the night, like the hill *Vesuvius*, in Italy; by means whereof here are many Hot-Baths, three of them walled about, two open; to which resort unsound and decrepit people, in very great multitudes. The chief Town of it *Lary-Joon*, in the ordinary road or pass betwixt Omial the last Town of Hyrcania, and *Dumoon* the first of Media. But the Kings Seat was in a Village called *Rynas*, where he had a Castle so built upon the best advantages of art and nature, that it seemed invincible: adorned, above, with gardens, flowers, and most pleasant fruits; and furnished beneath with a Rivulet of purest water, which pleasantly passing thorow the Castle, fell into the *Valleys*. A Castle of so large a circuit, that besides the Kings Family or Court, it was able to admit a garrison of 10000 men. The last King hereof was the forefaid *Bahaman*, derived from a line, descent of Royal Ancestors, comparing for antiquity with the Persian *Sophies*: who though ill-neighbourred on both sides, by the Tartarian on the one, and the Kings of Persia on the other; yet had they with great fortune, policy, and valour, maintained their Royalties against all pretenders. But *Alas* the late Persian *Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced Hyrcania, picked a quarrel with *Bahaman*: pretending that by the opportunity of his situation he might rob his Caravans, hinder his progress towards the Hyrcanian Sea, and run into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which rising from Mount *Taurus* watered and enriched his Persian Territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected; yet it was cause enough of quarrel that he might do so: and therefore is besieged in his Castle of *Rynas*, with an Army of 30000 men. Finding no possibility to prevail by force, the General of the Persians proceeds by treachery: invites the old King into his Camp under colour of parley, and by his means drew his two Sons out of the Castle to the parley also. Whom having got into his power, he first caused their heads to be cut off; and after making use of their seals and signers, obtains a surrender of the place; and with it the possession of this mountainous Kingdom, Anno 1601. or thereabouts, united ever since to the Crown of Persia.

Xxx

OF

Armenia
Major.

to a discernible and super-eminent height above all the mountains of those parts: became not the resting place of the Ark, till after a further course towards the East, they were grown to their fullest height; which is in those parts of it betwixt *Scythia*, and *Persia*, which are called Mount *Caucasus*: not that Mount *Caucasus* which lieth on the North of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrus* is said to rise; but that which lieth on the East-side of the *Caspian Sea*, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imanus* do cross each other. But of this elsewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the principal whereof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordian Mountains*, called in some writers, *Cordice*, from whence the Province had the name of *Gordienae*, but most commonly called *Cordene*, bordering on *Affria*. The Kingdom once of *Zarbius*, who liiding with *Lucullus* against *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* murdered with his wife and Children; but honoured by *Lucullus* with a stately and magnificent funeral. 2 The 2d Province of note is called *Cotene*; near the *Montes Moschici*. 3 *Tosren*; bordering on the River *Cyrus*. 4 *Colthene* on the banks of *Araxes*. 5 *Sophene*; near the turnings of the River *Euphrates*; mistook by some industrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6 *Bassine*, on the North-Welt, near the springs of that River. But what Cities did belong to each, I find no where specified.

Those of most consequence in the whole, 1 *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Caput Gentis*: of most esteem in those times, and the Seat-royal of the Kings of *Armenia* from its first foundation. Built by *Artaxerxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the perswasion of *Anibal*, whilst he abode in this Countrey: who liking the situation of the place, drew on it the model of a strong and gallant City, according to which Plat-form it was presently built. Taken and sacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Caribulo* in the time of *Nero*; it never could revive again to its former splendour: in the middle ages called *Efeschia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coim*; if not built rather out of the ruins of it. A City memorable for two great batels near unto it; the first between *Lucullus* on the one side, against *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were victors: the second between *Selimus* Emperour of the *Turks*, and *Hysmael* the *Persian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were conquerors, Anno 1514. A victory which he bought with the loss of 30000 of his best men, and such a terror to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it the only day of doom. The fields adjoining to the Town wherein this cruel batel was fought, called the *Chalderan fields*. 2 *Sebastia*, now *Snuflia*, seated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the *Mountain Taurus*; the residence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their first separation from the See of *Constantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: so named in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebastos*. But of late divested of that dignity, the Patriarchal See, by reason of the fierce wars raging in this Countrey, betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monastery of *Eomeazin*, near the City of *Eruan* in *Persia*; in the dominions of which King these *Armenian Christians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Jephelins*. 3 *Tigranocerta*, beautified and enlarged, if not first founded, by *Tigranes* above-mentioned, by whom replenished with people of several Nations, whose Countreys he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdom: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Pailant, who sent not somewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great resistance, those several Nations not agreeing amongst themselves: and therein besides other Treasure, no less than 8000 Talents in ready money. The City situate near a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Niceforinus*. 4 *Arsamosata*, by *Pliny* called *Arsmote*, on the banks of *Euphrates*. 5 *Cholna*, so called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, one of the first Planters of this Countrey. 6 *Baraza*, by the Emperour *Leo* much enlarged and beautified; dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7 *Arasarata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*. 8 *Theodosopolis*, built on the foundation of some of the more ancient Cities, by the Emperour *Theodosius*, and of him thus named. 9 *Colonia*, the strongest and most defensible City hereof, when possessed by the *Romans*. 10 *Clamassum*, a strong Town on the banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the first in his way towards *Persia*, and therewith livery and *seisin* of the rest of this Countrey, since wholly conquered by his Successors. 12 *Charis*, not far from the same River also, supposed to be the *Chorisa* of *Ptolemy*, of which not long since the ruins only; but in three weeks so repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, Anno 1579. that it is thought to be impregnable. 13 *Thespia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Thespiis*, and to the Region called *Thespiis*; but now not in being. 14 *Aramis*, now of greatest name, and esteemed the Metropolis of this Countrey: situate in that part of the Lake of *Paslan* (the *Martiana palus* of the ancient Writers) which lieth next to this Countrey; and by that well fortified: the only City of *Armenia* possessed by the *Persians*, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 15 *Fan*, both for natural situation, and the works of art, accounted by the *Turks* for their strongest Bulwark in these parts against the *Persians*; and for that cause well garrisoned, and as well munitioned.

This Countrey was first planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, and by *Mesech* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their families or Colonies possessed the same: the one leaving the remainder of his name in the *Montes Moschici*; the other in the Town called *Cholna*, and the Region called *Colthene* by *Ptolemy*, *Cholobate* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdom as soon as any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Nimrod* the third from *Nimrod* finding *Bazanes* King hereof, whom he forced to acknowledge his superiority, and to aid him in his wars against *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*. Kings of most note in times succeeding, (for we have no constant Catalogue of them) were 1 *Araxes*, who being warred on by the *Persians*, was promised victory by the *Oracles*, on the sacrifice of his two fair daughters. Willing to satisfy the Gods, and yet spare his children, he sacrificed two of the daughters of *Misalsus*, a noble man of this Countrey: by whom in revenge hereof his own daughters were slain, and him-

self

self so solely followed, that swimming the River then called *Helmus*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2 *Artaxa*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; spoken of before. 3 *Tigranes*, the most mighty King that ever reigned in *Armenia*, to which he added by his prowess, *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in *Asia Minor*, the whole Countreys of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phenicia*. But tiding with *Mithridates*, whose daughter he had married, against the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrow in two great batels, and oured of the greatest part of his dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had succeeded *Lucullus* in command of the Army, and trusting more unto his goodness than a wife man would, he put himself into his power: by whom condemned in a great sum of money for the charge of the war, and stripped of all the rest of his Estates, he was suffered to enjoy *Armenia Major*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sophene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto itself, and the lesser *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of some practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried Prisoner unto *Rome*, and his Countrey brought into the form of a Province. 4 *Artavasdes*, circumvented by *Mar. Antony*, who led him Prisoner to *Rome*, but (certainly, ne quid honori ejus decisset, aureis, as the Historian tells us of him) it was in Chains of Gold for his greater honour; giving *Armenia* to one of the Sons of *Cleopatra*. And though, 5 *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Successors held it but as Vassals of the *Roman Empire*: the Senate after that confirming, and sometimes nominating the *Armenian Kings*. Continuing in this Estate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the *Pontick Diocesis*) who adding *Mesopotamia* also unto his Dominions, made *Tigris* the Eastern border of his Empire, which *Augustus* thought fit to limit with the banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajan's* time, in the reign of *Constantinus*, *Julian*, and the Emperours following; whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Justinian* the second (he began his Empire, Anno 687.) when subdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperour, but soon lost again, it continued subject to the *Saracens*, till the breaking in of the *Turks*, Anno 844. of whom more anon. The greatest part of the *Turks* emptying themselves into *Persia*, and other Countreys which they took from the Eastern Emperours; the Christians of *Armenia* began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom governed, till again subdued by *Ottoman*, or *Hoccat* the Son of *Cingis*, the first *Cham* of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make so absolute a conquest of it, as to extinguish either Christianity, or the race of the Kings: *Haiton*, surnamed *Armenius*, reigning after this, and going in person to *Mongo*, the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, 1257. And in our own *Chronicles*, in the reign of King *Richard* the second, we find mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian King*, who came hither to sue for aid against the *Turks*; by whom then dispossessed of his Estates. By *Ussan-Cassanes*, one of the Princes of this Countrey, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Persia*, Anno 1472. it was made a Province of that Kingdom: and so continued till the year 1515. when conquered by *Selimus* the first, and by him made a part of the *Turkish Empire*; more fully settled and assured in the reign of *Amurath* the third, who by causing many Forts and Garrisons to be planted in it, made the conquest absolute.

The Arms of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, governed by Princes of its own of the Christian faith, were *Gules*, 3 heads of a Buck *Argent*, Crowned *Or*.

2. COLCHIS.

COLCHIS is bounded on the East, with *Iberia*; on the West, with the *Euxine Sea*, and part of the *Tartars Precopenses*; on the North, with *Tartary*, from which parted by those vast hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucasus*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which separated by the *Montes Moschici*.

The reason of the name I find not. Nor can yield unto *Bochartus*, who fetcheth the original of the name and Nation, from *Castubim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*: the Etymology of the name being too much wreited, and *Egypt* too far off to give a being to *Colchis* in those early dayes: though possibly in times succeeding, the *Egyptians* hearing by the *Greeks*, of the wealth of the Countrey, might send Colonies of their people thither, as to other places. It is now called *Mengrelia*.

The Countrey said to be very fruitful, if the care of the husbandman were not wanting. The vines they plant at the feet of great trees, which twining about the arms thereof lade them full of Grapes: with which, and other fruits rising from the Earth, they used of late times to furnish the Store-houses of their Kings, for want of ready money to fill his Coffers; their tributes being paid in such commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of Gold, found in the sands of their Rivers issuing from the *Caucasian Mountains*. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*; χρυσον οὐκ ἐν τῷ καυκασῶν ὄρει, ἀλλὰ ἐν τῇ γῇ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ποταμοῖς. Many of their Springs, saith he, which come out of *Caucasus*, carry veins of Gold. The like saith *Strabo* also, and some other Ancients. With which, and out of their rich Mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings hereof were so well furnished with those Metals, that the furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now so destitute of both, that the people for want of money to buy and sell with, are enforced to barter their commodities, and change one for another.

The people at the present very rude and barbarous; so inhumane and void of natural affection, that they sell their children to the *Turks*. The better sort of them much given to belly-cheer, dancing, and singing loose sonnets of love and dalliance, using much wine in their entertainments, which the more their guests drink, the better welcome; inflamed wherewith they offer them for a cooler their wives or Sisters, with

Colchis.

charge to yield them all content, esteeming it no small credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the women much averse from the entertainment, whether to please themselves, or obey their husbands, let them tell that can.

The Christian faith was first here planted in the time of the Emperour *Justinus*, by whose persuasion *Taurus* Prince of the *Colchis*, then at the Court in *Constantinople*, became a Christian; and being baptized, was returned back into his Countrey, with the title of King. But *Cabades* the King of *Persia* much offended at it, proclaimed war against him: which hindered the further progress of the Gospel, till the year 860. About which time *Methodius* and *Cyril*, two reverend men, were by the Patriarch of *Constantinople* employed in this service; which they successfully effected: in that regard they hold to the communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the jurisdiction of that Patriarch. To whom conform in most dogmatical points of their Religion, and in many practical. And though they have a distinct language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate Divine Offices in the *Greek* tongue, and follow the *Rituals* of that Church; which few of them understand any better, than the *Vulgar* Papists of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany*, do the *Latine* Service. Whether it be that they have no learned men amongst them either to translate their old *Liturgy*, or to compose a new, or that they hold all alterations in Religion to be matters of danger; or that ignorance is the best mother of devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The chief Rivers of this Countrey, are 1 *Hippus*, 2 *Cyanus*, 3 *Charisus*, all rising out of the *Caucasian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*. 4 *Phasis*, the principal of all, rising out of the *Montes Moschici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there called *Bom*. Navigable with smaller Vessels a great way up into the Countrey, and with great ships, 18 miles from the Sea. Memorable amongst the Ancients for the landing of the *Argonauts*, in the mouth thereof; and those delicate Fowl called from hence *Phasides*, or *Phasiini* (*Phasians*) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this expedition of the *Argonauts*, being the most remarkable action in those elder ages of the world, when Piracy and depredations were accounted for *Heroical* virtues; it was no other than the adventure of some noble *Gracians*, for the gold of *Colchus*. The age wherein it hapned, was about the 11 year of *Gideon*, the Judge of *Israel*. The chief Adventurers, *Jason*, *Orpheus* the famous Poet, *Cassor* and *Pollux* the sons of *Tindarus*, *Telamon* and *Peleus*, the Sons of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Læertes* the Father of *Ulysses*, *Amphiarus* the South-sayer, *Hercules*, *Theseus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. These moved with the great noyse of the wealth of *Colchus*, and the riches of King *Ætes*, then therein reigning, resolved upon a voyage thither, embarked in a ship called *Argo*, (whence the name of *Argonauts*) whereof one *Typhis* was chief Pilot. Passing the *Hellspoint*, *Propontick* and *Thracian Bosphorus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea: and after many difficulties and strange Adventures (which such *Knights Errants* could not choose but encounter with) they landed in the River *Phasis*, and came to the Kings Court, and there were kindly entertained. But finding the Kings Treasures to be too well guarded to be took by force (said by the Poets to be kept by a Dragon always waking) they practised with *Medea*, the daughter of *Ætes*, to assist them in robbing her Father. Who being in love with *Jason*, on promise of marriage with him, assented to it: By whose Artifices (which the Poets call *Magicall Charms*) the *Guardians* being circumvented, and the treasure gotten, they all, together with *Medea*, embarked again, and after a long and dangerous voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the substance of the Story; which being the greatest and most notable voyage which the *Gracians* in those early days had undertaken, occasioned the Poets to advance it to the highest pitch, and to disguise it with many fictions, and ingenious fancies: But not without some ground entituled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the design). For the Rivers, as before was said, having Golden sands, which fell down from the Mountains (as in many other parts of the world they are found to have:) it was the custom of the people to lay many Fleeces of wool in the descent of those Rivers, in which the grains of Gold remained, though the water passed through; which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true.

But leaving these Adventurers to pursue their fortunes, let us go forward to survey the *Colchian* Cities; the principal whereof, 1 *Dioscurias*, a Town of great wealth and trade, founded by *Amphitus*, and *Telchius*, two *Spartans*, the Charioters of *Cassor* and *Pollux*, and so named in honour of their Masters, whom the *Greeks* call *Aibovvgs*: which two *Spartans* passing further East, were afterwards the founders of the Nation from them called *Heniochi*, or the Chariot-drivers. A Town of such resort by Merchants from most parts of the world, that here were spoken 300 different Languages; inasmuch that the *Romans* (as *Pliny* saith) were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters for dispatch of business, and negotiating with those Merchants. 2 *Sybaris*, the Seat-Royal of the *Colchian* Kings, about nine miles from which was the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonauts*. 3 *Siganus*, near the mouth of the River *Cyanus*: as is also, 4 *Æa*, by *Ptolemy* called *Æapolis*, an *Egyptian* Colony, planted here by *Sesoftris* (in the time of *Rehobom* the Son of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted, but without success, the conquest of *Colchis*. 5 *Neapolis*, so called from the newness or late foundation of it when that name was given. 6 *Phasis*, so called from the River upon which it is situate, retaining both the site and name to this very day: the ordinary residence of the *Turkish* Beglerbeg, by whom called *Phasum*. 7 *Alvati*, a well fortified place. More in the Land are placed by *Ptolemy*, 8 *Meclitus*, 9 *Sirace*, 10 *Zadris*, 11 *Surium*, &c. not much observable in old Story, nor now known at all.

The first Inhabitants of this Countrey, most probably, came out of the neighbouring *Armenia*, and therefore the Posterity of *Eul* or *Chul*, from whence perhaps the name of *Colchis*; to whom in tract of time,

Iberia.

time, some Colonies out of *Egypt* (a seafaring people) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth hereof, did adjoin themselves; the *Colchians* on that ground, (or from some part of his Army left there by *Sesoftris*) being said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be the ancient off-spring of the *Egyptians*. The most ancient of their Kings was *Ætes*, spoken of before: who entertaining *Phryxus* flying out of *Greece* from the fury of his stepdame *Ino*, with great store of treasure; occasioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of *Colchus*, disguised under the fiction of the *Golden Fleece*. Of most note after him, *Selances*, and *Eshbors*, who first discovered the rich mines of Gold and Silver; of which metals they made all their *Itensils*, even the beams of their Chambers. The fame whereof drew thither *Sesoftris*, the great King of *Egypt*; who being vanquished in the field was fain to lay aside all those hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Egypt* in worse state than he came; but that he left behind him an *Egyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*; which after occasioned others of that Countrey to repair hither also. Living in peace and unmolested from this time forwards, they were unhappily ingaged by *Tigranes* of *Armenia*, to side with him against the *Romans*, and in his overthrow gave such advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of *Colchis* was fain to submit himself to *Pompey*, to dismiss his forces, leave his fainness, and finally to redeem his peace, by sending to him a Bedstead of purest Gold, and many other rich presents. After this, the *Romans* had here their Agents, and received hence some annual profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Distressed between the *Persians* and *Constantinopolitans*, they had much ado to stand upright; though betwixt both they kept themselves in a kind of liberty: as of late times, betwixt the *Persians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, their too potent Neighbours. But at the last, Anno 1579. *Amurath* the third, to make the safer passage for his forces into *Georgia*, sent *Muzales* his Admiral, with a great Fleet into the *Euxine* Sea: who coming up the River *Phasis* took the City of *Fassum*, fortified it; and laid so certain a foundation of a future conquest; that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demolish some of his fortifications, yet they were afterwards repaired, and *Fassum* made the seat of a *Turkish* Beglerbeg, as it still continueth.

3. IBERIA.

IBERIA is bounded on the East, with *Albania*; on the West, with *Colchus*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; and on the South, with the *Montes Moschici*; by the first mountains parted from *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and by the last from *Armenia Major*.

It was so called from the River *Iberus*, which running thorow it, falleth at last into the more noted River *Cyrus*. But is now called *Georgia*, and that as some say from Saint *George* the *Cappadocian Martyr*, whom here they have in very great reverence, as their tutelary Saint and Patron: as others say, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Bishop, by whose preaching they were brought unto Christianity; and some again will have them called properly *Gordians*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their near neighbourhood to those mountains. But the most probable opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongst other of the *Caspian* nations. Though to say truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth somewhat further than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending also that part also of *Armenia Major* which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Countrey of *Albania*, if I guess aright.

The Countrey for the greatest part, is covered with Mountains, Woods, and Thickets, and in that regard unconquerable for the difficulty of the mountainous passages; yet notwithstanding it is very fruitful in many places, having many fertile Plains, and wealthy Vallies; well watered, and of great increase to the husbandman, if he be not wanting to himself in care and industry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written; that they were a very warlike nation, and used to set as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had slain Enemies in his life: as also that those of the same Tribe or Family had all things common; he being the Ruler, which was eldest: and that some of them did derive themselves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cause never marrying out of their own kindred. The present *Georgians* very warlike, strong of body, and valorous in fight; for a long time defended themselves and Countrey from the *Turks* and *Persians*, with great prudence making use of the one against the other. But overpowered by the vast multitude of *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have lost many of their best Forts, and much of their liberty.

The Christian faith was first here planted in the time of *Constantine the Great*, by means of a Christian captive woman (such extraordinary wayes doth God find out to promote his Gospel): who being of a most devout life, and exemplary piety, had by her Prayers to *CHRIST* restored a young child to health which was thought past cure; and healed the Queen hereof of a desperate malady, when no help of Physick would prevail. Whereupon the King sent Ambassadors to *Constantine*, desiring Ministers and Preachers to be sent to *Iberia*, to instruct the people in the faith; which was done accordingly. Since that time Christianity hath flourished in this Countrey without interruption; though by *Mahometans*, and *Pagans*, on all sides encompassed: agreeable in doctrinal points to the Church of *Greece*, whose *Rituals* also the People do to this day follow. Not subject for all that to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own Metropolitans only; who hath under him about 18 Bishops; and resideth for the most part, in Saint *Katharines* Monastery on Mount *Sinai*. By means of which remote dwelling of their principal Pastor, *Mahometanism* hath got some footing, and *Jesuitism* began to creep in amongst them. The occasion of which last was this.

About the year 1614. the *Persians* making an inroad into this Countrey, took the City of *Cremet*, and therein *Cetana*, the mother of Prince *Teimurazes*; whom, leading her captive into *Persia*, and not able to prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they most cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jesuits* then travelling in those

Iberia.

those Countreys, and willing out of that sad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholique cause, cut off the head of a dead man whom they found in the way, anointed it with oyl and odours, brought it into Georgia, and signified unto the Prince, that they had with them the head of the blessed Martyr *Cetaba*: desiring leave to live in some Monastery, and have the keeping of the holy Relique committed to them. This easily believed, and granted, the head was placed with great honour in the Church of Saint George, at *Alerdall*: much resort to it from all parts by diseased persons: whom if past cure, the *Jesuites* sent home again, prescribing them in the way of preparation a long time of repentance; if curable by outward means which they applied, the cure was presently ascribed to the holy Relique. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Proselytes* to themselves; and had no small hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimurazes* to submit himself to the Pope, as the *Vicar of CHRIST*. When in the heat of all their glories, a letter cometh from *Macla*, a Lady attendant on the Prince; (but then living in *Persia*, as a slave or bond-maid) signifying that her Matter by her perswasion, had got into his power the body of his mother *Cetaba*; which he might ransom if he pleased: two Travellers withall, who came out of *Persia* with the *Jesuites*, reporting what they see them do with the dead mans head. By which means the *Imposture* being discovered, the body of the Queen was sent for, the false Relique was cast out of the Church, and the false *Jesuites* into Prison, and next out of the Country.

Rivers of note I find not any, either in *Ptolomy* or any of our modern Writers, but what are touched upon before, except only the River of *Iberia* spoken of already from which the Country is thus named. The whole in general so destitute of waters, that *Pompey* in his march this way against the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 bladders filled with water, for the use of his Army.

Places of most antiquity and importance in it, 1 *Artaxissa*, 2 *Vasada*, 3 *Luhinn*, 4 *Armistia*, all named by *Ptolomy*; this last by *Pliny* called *Harmisus*. 5 *Cremen*, the chief City now possessed by the Georgians. 6 *Cachete*, honoured with a fair Church, the most beautifull of all the Country, dedicated by the name of Saint George. 7 *Triala*, where are to be seen the ruins of a large City, and many Churches; by what name anciently called, I find not. 8 *Alinnacala*, or the Golden Castle, a strong Fortrefs, and the ordinary residence of the Georgian Princes, since the time of the wars betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*. 9 *Archibelech*, a strong Castle taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in his wars against *Tamas* King of *Persia*, and ever since holden by the *Turks*. 10 *Teflis*, a large and capacious Town, forsaken by the Georgians at the coming of *Musapha*, General of *Amurath* the third against the *Persians*: who liking the situation of it, caused it to be repaired and fortified, planted thereon an hundred pieces of Ordinance, and left therein a Garrison of 6000 Souldiers. 11 *Lori*, distant from *Teflis* about two days journey of a Carriers pace, strengthened with a lofty Castle, environed with deep ditches, and a thick wall, amounting to a mile in compass. Seized on by *Ferat Bassa*, the Successor of *Musapha*, who repaired the walls, planted thereon 200 small pieces of Ordinance, and garrisoned it with 7000 *Turks* for defence thereof. 12 *Tomanis*, a short days march from *Lori*, the Country lying betwixt both full of rich fields and pastures, abounding with corn, fruit, and cattel. Nigh unto which the said *Ferat* raised a new Fortrefs, for the better command of the Streights and passages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and so to *Teflis* (the Key of *Media* or *Sirvan*) the wall whereof being 1700 yards in compass, he caused to be planted with 200 pieces of Artillery and with incredible diligence cut down a thick wood which lay before it, which otherwise would have been a receptacle of Thieves, or Enemies. 13 *Glicia*, 14 *Bafcapan*, possessed and fortified by the *Turks*, to make good their footing in this Country. But possibly most of these strong holds now possessed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, though within the Country of the Georgians; that name not being limited to *Iberia*, as was said before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were such who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*, from whom this people at the first, as *Josephus* hath it, had the name of *Thobeli*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the nations in it of most note were the *Tibureni*, *Messynaci*, *Chalybes*; and of less esteem the *Biseri*, *Sapiri*, *Macroni*, &c. united at the last in the name of *Ileri*, from the River *Ileri*, of which *Pliny* speaketh, the principal of all this Country. Too fruitfull of increase for so narrow a dwelling, some of them put themselves to seek their fortunes; when after long wandering they fell upon the Coast of *Spain* next the *Pyrenes*, where they staid themselves; giving the name of *Ileri* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Country; Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid against the *Romans*, they came in accordingly: and in his fall discomfited by *Lucullus* in three several battels, were fain to stand upon their guard as well as they could: first holding fair with *Pompey* who succeeded *Lucullus* in his charge; But breaking out again on a new temptation, they were encountered by him. In which battel 9000 of their men being slain, and 1000 taken, they were constrained to sue for peace; not otherwise to be obtained till *Artaxes* the King of these *Iberians*, gave his Sons for Pledges. After this *Feudatories* to the *Roman*, and *Gracian* Emperours, till the fatal inundation of the *Saracens* had so weakened that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledged no more subjection to those of *Constantinople*, till *Constantinople* itself became the Imperial seat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whose quarrels with the *Persian* *Sophies*, this Country began to suffer a new invasion; some Towns and Forts of it being taken by *Solyman*, in his march or passage against *Tamas*. Afterwards in the time of *Amurath* the third, who set his mind most eagerly on the war with *Persia*, a great part of it was subdued by *Musapha* the *Turkish* General: who inviting the widow Prince and her two Sons to come to his tent, sent the young Princes to *Constantinople*; and by that means had opportunity to assure his purchases. And though the *Persians* did their best to assist the Georgians, yet proved they but a kind of miserable comforters; as much punishing or plaguing this poor Country with their aids, as the *Turks* by their armies. So that now it stands divided betwixt the *Grand Signior*, and

its natural Princes: the Georgian Princes holding the greatest part; but the *Turks* being in possession of the strongest holds; kept by them under colour of securing their way to *Persia*, for which this Country is indeed but unhappily seated.

Albania.

4. ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the East, with the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with *Iberia*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; on the South, with the *Meschi*: So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it; and of late called *Swiria*; but reckoned in these last ages as a part of *Georgia*.

The Country of so rich a soil, that without the least labour of the husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her store; and where it is but once sown, will yield two or three reapings. But being ill husbands on it in former times, they occasioned *Strabo* to give them this note for a remembrance, That they needed not the use of the Sea, who knew no better how to make use of the Land. The people anciently so simple, that they could not reckon above an hundred; ignorant of weights, measures, and the use of money. Old age they had in high esteem, but held it utterly unlawful to make speech of the dead. And of these *Pliny* doth report, that they were gray-headed from their very youth, and could see as well by night as by day; the verity of which last may be somewhat questionable. But withall they are affirmed to have been a stout and courageous people, strong bodies, patient of toil and labour, as they are at this day. And well the men may be courageous and stout, where the women are so truly masculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted credit, that they were exercised in Arms and Martial feats, as if descended lineally from the ancient *Amazons*; whom *Plutarch* placeth in this tract; reporting some of them to be aiding to these *Albanians*, in their war with *Pompey*: which possibly might be no other, than some the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Soana*, giving name to the *Soani*, one of the nations of these parts mentioned by *Pliny*. 2 *Cafius*, 3 *Gerrus*, 4 *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albani* came unto this people. 5 *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrus*) spoken of in *Armenia Major*, but more properly belonging to this Country; because herein it hath its spring, and the greatest part of its course also. For rising out of the Mountain *Caucasus*, which shuts up this Province on the North, it passeth thence towards the middle of it, till it come to the borders of *Armenia*; where it beginneth to bend more towards the East: and having received into its Channel all the former Rivers, besides many others of less note, falleth with twelve mouths into the *Caspian*, or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Mountains of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations: the *Montes Meschi* on the South; and *Caucasus* upon the North, being rather common boundaries betwixt several Nations, than peculiar unto any one; though

Cities and Towns I find many in it, but little of them more than their very names. 1 *Chabata*, by *Pliny* called *Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Insignor Albania urbs*, the most noted City of this Country. 2 *Albana*, so called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was seated. 3 *Teleba*, 4 *Namechia*, 5 *Thelba*, 6 *Getarra*, near unto the influx of the River *Cyrus*. How these are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to say. The chief now being, and worthy to be so accounted, is the City of *Derbent*, situate near the *Caspian* Sea; from which to *Teflis* a City spoken of before, remain the foundations of a high and thick wall; affirmed to have been built by *Alexander* the Great, to defend these parts, against the irruptions of the Northern unconquered nations. The Town environed with two walls, and so defended by difficult and narrow passages of the rocks, that it is not easily accessible: but taken for all that by *Musapha* the *Turkish* General, Anno 1587. and made the ordinary residence of a *Turkish* Bassa. Conceived to be the *Caucasia Porta* of the Ancients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the title of *ingeni naturæ miraculum*: by *Egesippus*, for the strength of it called *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which, by the *Turks* called *Demir-can*, the word signifying in their language, a gate of Iron. The other places of this tract are either of no account and estimation, or else are specified before amongst the Cities and good Towns of the Georgians, of whose Country this is now a part: yet we may add 2 *Salvan*, upon the borders of *Media*. 3 *Sancta Maria*, north of *Derbent*; both of them on, or near the banks of the *Caspian* Sea.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, seem to have been of the plantation of *Gether* the Son of *Aram*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whose memory was long preserved in the City of *Getarra* before mentioned; So called by him, or some of his Posterity, in remembrance of him. The People living somewhat out of the common road, were little troubled with Invaders from foreign parts; neither the *Persians*, nor *Macedonians*, looking so far North. Nor possibly had the *Romans* taken notice of them, had they not engaged themselves with *Tigranes* first, and afterwards with *Mithridates*. Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000, and well beaten by him, they were content to sue for peace. But finding that the *Iberians* also had took up Arms, they engaged again; leaving an Army of 12000 horse and 90000 foot, in which *Orexes* their King, with his brother *Cass*, were in person present. And though they had made good the banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the most part only with skins of beasts, they made but small resistance against the *Romans*: notwithstanding the gallant charge of *Cass*, who assaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour to be slain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving pledges unto *Pompey* for their good behaviour; we find little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the time of *Trajan*: Who having conquered, and reduced *Armenia Major* to the form of a Province, resolved to shew his power to these neighbouring nations: and to that end imposed a King on the *Albani*, of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, do their homage to him, in times succeeding no news of them; either because remote from the stage of Action, or serving under the

Albania.

the command of some greater nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered: by *Occidan*, or *Hæcæta* the *Chans* of *Tartary*, together with *Iberia*, and *Armenia*, they were a while subject to that Empire: and passing in succeeding times by the name of *Georgians*, did partake of the same fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turks*, who by reason of the strong footing which he hath gotten amongst them, is become a dreadful neighbour to them; if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief.

Thus having taken a survey of all the Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire, both in *Europe*, and *Asia*, and touched upon the means by which they are possessed of *Egypt*, whereunto all the rest of their hold in *Africa*, serves but for an accessory: we will now look upon the story of this people; their first original, the great success of their affairs, the Princes under whose command they have made these conquests. Which having done, we will proceed to a Description of the Persons, Manners, and Conditions of the *Turks*, themselves, their power and policy; with other things considerable in so great an Empire.

And first for the original of the *Turkish* Nation, they were most probably the Descendants of those *Turca*, whom *Pliny* and *Pamponius* place about the Fennes of *Maotis*. Of whom thus *Mela*, speaking of the *Gelani*, a *Scythian* people; *Juxta* *Thyrasageta*, *Turcæque*, *vastæque sylvas occupant*, *alunturque venando*, &c. Next unto them (saith he) live the *Thyrasageta*, and the *Turca*, possessed of vast woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and desert Country with continual rocks; as far as to the *Armenians*. And *Pliny* mustering up the barbarous nations of those parts, joyns the *Turcæ* (or *Thyrasageta*) with the *Turks*, and places them next the *Armenians*, as *Mela* doth; *visque ad solitudines salubres, vallibus asperis*, spreading themselves unto the rough deserts, and woody vallies. Not known by action (though by name) till the time of *Tiberius*, the second, who began his Empire Anno 577. when pressing hard on the *Avares*, a neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forsake their seats and pass into *Europe*; where they made themselves masters of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary*. In the time of *Heraclius*, we find them with other barbarous Nations, at the siege of *Constantinople*, but under the command of the *Persians*. After which they began to set up for themselves, and in the year 763. made a road into those Countreys which we last described; and loading themselves with prey and booty, returned home again. But liking better of these parts than their own poor dwellings, in the year 844. they brake once more thorow the *Caspian* Streights, and passing through *Uria*, seized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themselves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*. In which wide and spacious Countrey they roamed up and down, without any certain habitation, removing their herds and families from one place to another, as they had formerly been used to do in the fennes of *Maotis*; and as the *Tartars* and wild *Arabs* do untill this day. And so they lived, a poor and contemptible nation, till *Mahomet* the Sultan of *Persia*, rebelling against his Lord and Master the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, called in these *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a signal victory. The victory obtained, the *Turks* desire their wages, and a fair dismissal; but could speed in neither: the Sultan being loth to part with such a necessary mischief, till his affairs were better settled; and therefore shutting up the passages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them. Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader, they began to spoil and waste the Countrey; a multitude of needy people, and some of the discontented Soldiers, coming daily to them. Assailed by the *Persians*, in the first battel they not only got a notable victory, but such store of Armour, Horses, and other necessities, as made them able to encounter with the Sultan himself, whom having overthrown and slain in the second fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclaimed Sultan or King of *Persia*, in the year one thousand and thirty, or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongst the *Turks*, two most noted Tribes; the *Selucian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the *Selucian*, *Tangrolipix*, *Culm* *Muses*, *Melch*, and *Ducat* were the heads: of which, *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that Clan or Family, was settled in the throne of *Persia*: *Culm* *Muses* furnished with an Army against the Christians, possessed himself of a great part of *Asia Minor*: *Melch* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Cousin the *Persian* Sultan, were vested into the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, with their several Territories. But the line of *Tangrolipix* and the rest being all worn out, as hath been shewn in our descriptions of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*; the man of most nobility amongst the *Turks*, was *Ottoman*, the chief of the *Oguzian* Family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Machan*, a small territory in the Realm of *Persia*. Which *Solyman*, flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Persia*, was drowned in crossing the River *Euphrates*, as he passed with his few Subjects towards *Asia Minor*, the best place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the chief-ship of his Tribe to *Ethrogul* his Son: who obtained of the last *Aladin* of the *Selucian* Family, the Village of *Sagunt* in *Bithynia*, for himself and his small handfull of people. To him succeeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the year 1280. who to revenge some injuries done unto his people by the improvident Christians, took from them Cattle after Cattle; and in the end possessed himself of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperial Seat of the *Græcian* Emperors. Emboldened with such great successes, and hearing of the death of *Aladin* the second, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himself the Title of Sultan, Anno 1300. from which before he had obtained. To this time, and these small beginnings, we must reduce the first foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire; increased unto its present greatness, by the courage and good fortune of these Princes following.

The Kings of the *Turks* of the *Oguzian*, or *Ottoman* Family.

- 1300 1 *Ottoman*, or *Osman* the Son of *Ethrogul*, the first *Turkish* Sultan of this line, added to his small territory the greatest part of *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, and some part of *Pontus*. 28.

1283

- 1328 2 *Orchanes*, took the City *Prusa*, and made it his residence; and was the first that had footing in *Europe*, where he got *Gallipoli*, and other pieces. The Ottoman Emperors.
- 1350 3 *Amurath*, won the *Thracian Chersonese*, the strong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countreys of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was slain by a common Soldier in the fields of *Cosova*. 23.
- 1373 4 *Bajazet*, made himself master of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achidia*. He was taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himself in an Iron Cage, in which the insolent Conquerour used to carry him. 26.
- 1399 5 *Solyman* the eldest Son of *Bajazet* succeeded in the peaceable possession of the *Turkish* Provinces in *Europe*; but passing with an Army into *Asia*, for the recovery of those parts, thereof usurped by *Machmet* his youngest Brother, he was forced again into *Europe*, to make head against *Musa* *Bajazet* his third Son (employed by *Machmet* in that diversion); who having there vanquished and slain him, Anno 1406. succeeded for a time in the Throne at *Adrianople*.
- 1404 6 *Machmet* the youngest Son of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince, first wrested from his brother *Isha* (*Bajazet* second Son then living) the City of *Prusa* with the dominions thereunto belonging, thereupon taking to himself the Title of King or Sultan, by degrees recovered all which his Father had lost unto the *Tartars*; afterwards making use of *Musa*, for the supplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him presently into *Europe*, where he fought with him, vanquished and slew him about the year 1416. Thereby uniting in his own person the whole *Turkish* Kingdom, which he enlarged with the more absolute conquest of *Dacia*, part of *Slavonia*, and the rest of *Macedon*. 17.
- 1416 7 *Amurath* II. subdued the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achidia*, *Thessaly*, *Epirus*; he shook the State of *Hungary*, and dyed before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

The Ottoman Emperours.

- 1450 8 *Machmet* II. surnamed the Great, and first Emperor of the *Turks*, conquered the two Empires of *Constantinople*, and *Trabesond*, twelve Kingdoms, and two hundred Cities. 31.
- 1481 9 *Bajazet* II. subdued the *Caramanian* Kingdom, and part of *Armenia*; and drove the *Venetians* from *Morea*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.
- 1512 10 *Selimus*, having poisoned his Father, subverted the *Mamelucks* of *Egypt*; bringing it together with *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the yoke of the *Turks*. 7.
- 1519 11 *Solyman* II. surnamed the Magnificent, surprised *Rhodes*, *Belgrad*, *Buda*; with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Affrya*, *Mesopotamia*. 48.
- 1567 12 *Selimus* II. an idle and effeminate Emperour, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians*, the Isle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moors*, the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and *Algiers*. 8.
- 1575 13 *Amurath* III. took from the disaffected *Persian*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Tanrus*; and the Fort *Gavarino* from the *Hungarians*. 20.
- 1595 14 *Machmet* III. took *Agria* in *Hungary*; which Kingdom in all likelihood had been lost, if he had pursued his victory at the battel of *Kereskura*. Never but then in any battel, and then so frightened that he durst never see the face of an Army afterwards.
- 1603 15 *Achmat*, who the better to enjoy his pleasures, made peace with the *German* Emperour, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.
- 1618 16 *Mustapha*, brother to *Achmat*, succeeded, which was a novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdom; it being the *Grand Signeurs* common policy to strangle all the younger brothers: howsoever this *Mustapha* was preserved, either because *Achmat* being once a younger brother, took pity on him; or because he had no issue of his own body, and so was not permitted to kill him.
- 1618 17 *Osman*, or *Ottoman* II. succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha*; and being unsuccessful in his war against *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* slain in an uproar, and *Mustapha* again restored: yet long enjoyed he not his throne; for the same hand that raised him, plucked him down again, and seated young *Amurath* in the place.
- 1623 18 *Morat* (or *Amurath* the IV.) Brother of *Osman*, of the age of 13 years, succeeded on the second depolition of his Uncle *Mustapha*, who proved a stout and masculine Prince, and bent himself to the reviving of the ancient discipline. To the great good of *Christendom*, he spent his stomach on the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.
- 19 *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Morat*, preserved by the *Sultans* his mother in his brothers life; and by her power depolished again for interdicting her the Court. He spent a great part of his reign in the war of *Crete*, against the *Venetians*; but without any great success.
- 1648 20 *Machmet* IV. Son of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vast Empire, containing all *Dacia*, and *Greece*, the greatest part of *Slavonia* and *Hungary*, the Isles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurican Chersonese* in *Europe*; of all the Isles, and Provinces, which we have hitherto described, in *Asia*; and in *Africa* of all *Egypt*, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Suachem*, and *Eracco*. Nor is their title inferior to so vast an Empire, *Solyman* thus styling himself in his Letter to *Villerius*, great Master of the *Rhodes*, at such time as he intended to invade that Island: i.e. *Solyman* King of Kings, Lord of Lords, most high Emperour of *Constantinople* and *Trabesond*, the most mighty King of *Perlia*, *Syria*, *Arabia*, and the Holy Land; Lord of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*; Prince of *Meccha*, and *Aleppo*, Ruler of *Hierusalem*, and Sovereign Lord of all the Seas and Isles thereof.

As

As for the persons of the *Turks*, they are generally well-complexioned, of good stature, proportionably compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things superfluous; hot and venerous, servile to their Prince, and zealous in their Religion. They nourish no hair upon their heads, except it be a Tuft on the top of their Crowns; by which they think that *Mahomet* will snatch them up into Paradise at the day of judgement. For which reason they keep on of all lides, though never so poor, accounting it an opprobrious thing to see any men uncover their heads; saying when they dislike of any thing which they see, or hear I had as lief thou hadst shewn me thy bare skull. In their familiar salutation they lay their hands on their bosoms, and a little incline their bodies; but when they accost a person of rank, they bow almost to the ground, and kiss the hem of his garment. Walking up and down they never use, and much wonder at the often walking of Christians. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory exercise with his companion; a *Turk* demanded them whether they were out of their way or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloister, why come you downwards? If to the nether end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief recreation, which they also follow with much laziness; sitting on Carpets in the shadow, and sending some of their slaves to fetch their arrows. They prefer, as they pass the streets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made master of his sword with whom they walk. As they shave their heads, so they wear their beards long, as a sign of freedom; but their slaves keep theirs shaven and close cut.

The women are of small stature, for the most part ruddy, clear, and smooth as the polished Ivory; as neither afflicted with the weather, and often frequenting the baths: of a very good complexion, seldom going abroad, and then masked; lascivious within doors, pleading in matters of incontinency, and they are accounted most beautiful, which have the greatest eyes, and are of the blackest hue. Every *Turk* is permitted to have four wives, and as many slaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending women being drowned, and the man dismembered. These women live in great awe and respect of their husband, never sitting with him at the Table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into some room. If their husband hath been abroad, as his coming in they all rise from their stools whereon they fate, kiss his hand, and make an obeysance, and stand as long as he is in presence. The children which they have, they carry not in their arms as we do, but straddle on their shoulders; they live immured from the sight of the world: and permit not any male children, no not their own sons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their husbands they cannot be divorced, but on special occasion: but the husbands may put away their wives, or give them to their slaves, when and as often as they list. Far better is it with the sisters or the daughter of the Sultan; to whom when her father or brother bestoweth her on one of the *Bassas*, he giveth her a dagger, saying, I give thee this man to be thy slave or bedfellow; if he be not loving, obedient, and dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this Canzharre or dagger, to cut off his head. When they are married, their husbands come not to bed unto them, till they are sent for, and then also they creep in at the beds feet. That every any of their Ladies make use of their daggers, I could never read. Only I find, that *Luizia Bassa*, the chief man of the Empire next the Sultan himself, and of him very much beloved; having given his wife, which was sister to *Solymann the Magnificent*, a box on the ear, was upon complaint by her made, thrust from all his honours, banished into *Macedon*, and had doublets been slain, if the Emperours love and his own merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the Sultans daughter; her Sons being accounted as meer and ordinary *Turks* only, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they should be apt to harbour some aspiring thoughts.

The better sort of the *Turks* use the *Slavonian* Tongue, the vulgar speak the *Turkish* language; which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Persians* their words of State; from the *Arabick*, their words of Religion; from the *Gracians*, their words or terms of war; and from the *Italians*, their terms of navigation.

They were formerly Idolatrous Pagans, and were first initiated in *Mohometanism*, when they got the Sovereignty of the *Persian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1. The *Saffi* or *Novices*; 2. The *Calif*, or Readers; 3. The *Hogi*, or writers of books, for printing they use not; 4. The *Napi*, or young Doctors; 5. The *Caddi*, whereof there is at least one in every City, to judge of offences; 6. The *Mudressi*, who use to oversee the *Caddis*; 7. The *Mudlis*, or principal Church Governours under the *Musli*. 8. The *Cadelescas*, whereof there are only three, one of *Greece*, the other for *Anatolia*, the third for *Egypt* and *Syria*; and these sit with the *Bassas* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporal suits. 9. The *Musli*, whose sentence in law and religion is uncontrollable. He abaseth not himself to sit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more reverence to the Emperour, than he doth to him.

His forces are either for the Sea, or the Land. His Sea forces are great in regard of his spacious sea-coasts, vast woods, and number of Subjects. He never suffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he shewed his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his only vessels, which being unable to cope with ships of any bigness, were not only the occasion of that overthrow, but also have heartned the *Florentine*, with six great ships of war only, to swagger in the Seas; so that for more safety, the tribute of *Egypt* is of late sent to *Constantinople* by land. The Captain *Bassa*, or Admiral, notwithstanding with a Navy of 60 Sail, makes a yearly progress about the Seas, and Sea Towns, to annoy the enemy, suppress Pyrates, collect the tributes, and to redress the abuses committed in the maritime Towns, belonging to the Admiralty: which annual circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*.

Their land forces are either horse or foot. They which served on horseback, are the *Spahi*, or *Aspi*: these latter serving to weary the enemies, and dull their swords with their multitudes; of whose bodies the *Janizaries* use to make mounts, whereon to assault the wall of a besieged Town; and are by them

them so contemned, that a *Janizary* once sold two of them for a sheeps-head. As for the *Spahi*, they till they are enrolled into pay, are of the same original and education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the same name, *Azamogians*. Their pay is ten Aspers a day. The *Turk* is able and doth maintain 150000 Horse at little or no cost, which no other Prince can do with 14. millions of Gold. For whereforever any Parcel of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men; whom they call *Timariots*. These are to pay unto the Emperour certain rents, and at their own charges, to fend to his wars so many Horse, excellently appointed for the field: and which is the chief point of their service, to keep in awe the subjects, in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, dispersed in all quarters of his Dominions; the people can no sooner stir, but these will be assembled and fall upon them. These *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 257000 have their abode in *Europe*; and 402000 in *Asia*, and *Africa*. Were it not for these *Timariots* as the *Turks* saying is, no Grass would grow, where the *Grand Signeurs* Horse hath once set his hoof: for if the care of manuring the ground were committed to Pailants, and not to military men; the greatest part of this Empire would grow waste and desolate. These *Timariots* were instituted by *Ottomon*, the first *Turkish* King of this Family, and a curse by him laid on them that should annihilate the institution. The name is derived from the *Turkish* word *Timay*, signifying a stipend.

But the Nerves and Sinews of this warlike Body, are the *Janizaries*; who by original being Christians, are chosen by the *Turkish* Officers, every five years, out of his *Europæan* dominions: and so distributed abroad to learn the language, customs, and Religion of the *Turks*; afterward according to their strength, will, or disposition, placed in divers chambers. They of the first chamber are preferred, some to be *Chanciers*, such as go on Embassies, and execute judgments, others to *Sanziacks*, or Governours of Cities; some to be *Bassas*, or Commanders of Horsemen; and others to be *Beglerbegs*, (*id est*, Lord of Lords) to command the rest in general. They of the other chambers, are the *Janizaries*, or *Pretorian* Souldiers of the Guard; to whose faith and trust the care of the Emperours Person is committed. The tithing of these young springals is as we have said, every fifth year; and often sometimes, as occasions serve. By which means he not only disarmeth his own subjects, and keepeth them from attempting any stir or innovation in his Empire: but spoileth all the Provinces he most feareth, of the Flower, Sinews and strength of their People; choice being made of the strongest youths only, and fittest for war. These, before they are enrolled in pay, are called *Azamogians*, and behave themselves with much submissiveness towards their Seniors and Governours: but when once they are honored with the title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride, and haughtiness; till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither now can any of their sons be accounted, any other than a natural *Turk*, (whom of all the rest they account the basest) the eldest only excepted: to whom this privilege was granted by *Amurath* the third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000, of which 16000 are always resident in *Constantinople*. In this City they are diversly employed, being as Constables, to see the peace kept; as Clerks of the Market, to see to the weights and measures; as Officers, to arrest common offenders; as Warders, to look to the gates, to guard the houses of Embassadors, and to travel with strangers for their more safety; in which charge they are very faithful. Their pay is but five Aspers a day, and two gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, and 100 men being their greatest preferment: yet are they very obsequious to their Captain or *Agâ*, who is in place inferior to the meanest *Bassâ*, though in power perhaps above the chiefest. For the crafty *Turks* joyn not power and authority, and if they observe the *Janizaries* to love and respect their *Agâ*, they quickly deprive him of life and office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the first, *An. 1365*. their greatest establishment *Amurath* the second: the name signifieth young Souldiers. Now concerning these *Janizaries*, we will farther consider the sway they bear in designing the Successour; 2. Their insolency towards the Emperour, and his Officers: 3. Their behaviour in the vacancy of the Throne: and 4. Their punishments.

1. Concerning the first, I never find any particular sway the *Janizaries* carryed, in the designation of their Emperour, till the death of *Mahomet the Great*: when the *Bassas* having chosen *Cortus* the Son of *Bajazet*, were over-ruled by the *Agâ* and his *Janizaries*; who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*. Though I am not ignorant, that when this *Mahomet* succeeded in the Throne, the joyful acclamations made by the Souldiers, was accounted the chiefest sign of his secure and perpetuated establishment. But the chief instance of their power herein, was the intronizing of *Selimus* the first, who being but the seventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not only preferred by them before his brethren in his Fathers life time; but by their aids also he severally mattered them, and in the end poisoned his Father. To omit other examples, even of late *Anno 1622*. they slew the young Emperour *Ofmen*, drew his Uncle *Musapha* out of Prison, and established him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the first example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the reign of the above mentioned *Bajazet*: when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Bassâ* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperour, They would teach him like a drunkard, a beast, and a rascal as he was, to use his great place and calling with more sobriety and discretion. Not long after, conceiving further displeasure against the said *Bajazet*, they shook their weapons against him, and refused to take him into the midst amongst them; and were not, without great and vile submission on his part, appeased. Against *Selimus* the first they also mutined, when being resolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better pursuit of his victories against the *Persian*; he was by them forced to turn home unto *Constantinople*. Against *Solymann* they mutined so violently, that they compelled him to displace *Rustan* his chief *Bassâ* or favorite. Against *Amurath* the 3d. for placing over them

a new *Aga*, they so strongly opposed themselves, that first they set fire to *Conf-antiochia*, and burnt therein, besides shops and ware-houses, twenty five great Inns, seven Temples, and 15000 houses : and in the end contrained him to give them money, and to yield all into their hands two of his chief Confessors, by them supposed to be their adversaries ; whom they drew about the Streets. Finally, (to omit the tumult, 1622. above-named) in the year 1600. they grew so discontented with *Mahomet* the 3d. that they not only threatened to destroy the Principal Officers of the Court, and the banishment of the *Sultans* his Mother, but the deposing of himself also.

his Mother, but the depoling of himself also.

3, Now for the third, I find it to have been the custom of these *Janizaries*, between the deaths of an old Emperor, and the beginning of a new, to commit divers insolencies; as the rifling of the houses of the *Jews* and *Christians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Bassas*, and principal men about the Court, whom they suspected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outrageous mischiefs. Of these we find frequent mention, as after the death of *Amarath* the 2d. and *Mahomet* the Great: at which last time the Merchants of *Constantinople*, being natural *Turks*, escaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Bassa* avoid the fury of their Swords. This Spoil they took for to certain a due, that if they were disappointed of it, they would presently raise commotions both in Court, Field, and City; unless some present satisfaction were made them. To this end, *Ackmat* distributed among them, two millions and an half of Ducats; *Selimus* the first, two millions; others made an increase of their daily pay. But *Selimus* the 2d. distributing among them 100000 *Sultanies* only, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had enlarged his bounty: & the great *Bassas* were rapped about the pate with their *callivers*, for perfwading them to quietness. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious liberty, which in the vacancy of the Empire was usually committed; the death of the old Emperour was with all secrecy concealed, till the arrival of the new. To omit others, I will instance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the first, and *Solyman* only. This *Solyman* died at the siege of *Siegh* in *Hungary*, which was fo *Mahomet* the first, and *Solyman* only. This *Solyman* died at the siege of *Siegh* in *Hungary*, which was fo cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Bassa* the space of twenty days; that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had possessed himself of *Constantinople*, and came also to the Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately strangled the Physicians and Apothecaries, which knew of his death, commanded the Souldiers to go on in their siege; and divers times shewed them the Emperour sitting in his Horse-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he used to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead body, sitting still in the same manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the first, the *Bassas* of the Court called their *Divanos*, as formerly they used, gave order for the levying of an Army, as if some war were intended; and the Kings Physicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him to cure. But the Pensioners and *Janizaries* misjoyning the matter, with all eagerness desired to see him; which when the *Bassas* durst not deny, they appointed the next day for their visit. The next day the body was apparelled in royal large Robes, placed in a chair, at the end of a long gallery; and a little boy cunningly set behind him to move the Kings hand to his head, as if he should stroke his beard, as his manner was: which signs of life and strength the Souldiers seeing, held themselves contented, and so was his death concealed the space of 41 days.

4. As for the last, These insolent and unufferable pranks committed so commonly by these masterful slaves, so exceedingly stomachd *Bijazes* the 2^d. that he secretly purposed with himself, for curing so dangerous a disease, to use a desperate remedy ; which was to kill and destroy suddenly all the *Janisaries*. It is like that this *Bijazes* being a Scholar, had read how *Constantine the Great* had call'd the *Prætorian* Souldiers, and destroy'd their camp, as men that were the causes of all the stir in his Empire, and whose pride was come to an intolerable height ; and having the same cause to destroy his *Janisaries*, and whose pride was come to an intolerable height ; and having the same cause to destroy his *Janisaries*, hoped to have done it with as much ease and safety as the other did. But they having notice of the plot, for the time continued so united and linked together, that he durst not then attempt it ; and afterward siding with his Son *Selimus*, cast him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperors never durst punish them openly ; but when any of them prove delinquent, he is sent privately in the night time to *Pera* over against *Constantinople* ; where, by the way he is drowned, and a piece of Ordinance shot off, to signify the performing of the *Sultans* command.

Now for the Emperors themselves, we will consider them in matters of pleasure, in matters of ceremony, and in matters of State; the last being considerable in three main points, which are the murdering of their brethren, the removing of their Sons, their revenue, and therein a touch of their government. To these we will add, what apparent *symptomes* may be observed to prognosticate the standing, decreasing, and increasing of this puffed Monarchy.

1. For the first, he hath not so few as 500. (sometimes 1000) choice Virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themselves, all slaves born of Christian Parents, and indeed the rarest beauties of his Empire. When he is disposed to take his pleasure with any of them, they are all ranked in a gallery; and the is by the *Agas* the women prepared for his bed, to whom he giveth his handkercher. She that beareth him the first Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultane's* (Queen Mother we may call her) neither can he make any of them free, unless he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are strictly looked too, and liberally provided for, and not seldom times are belov'd by the succeeding *Sultan*, on his great *Baſſes*, and such as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principal honour. They are attended on by women, and Eunuchs; theſe being not gelded only, but deprived of all their genitals, and supplying the uſes of nature with a silver quill: which inhumane cuſtom was brought in among them by *Selimus* the second, because had seen a Gelding cover a Mare.

2. These ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the most part the building of a *Mosche* only to help to the salvation of their souls; or towards them by others, which are most apparent in the entertainment of Embassadors. For when such come to his presence, they are led between two of his Courtiers,

Courtiers, and coming before the Throne (on both sides whereof the *Bassas* sit with admirable silence, resembling rather *Statues* than men;) they bow themselves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breast, but never uncovering their heads, which (as we before noted) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts towards a Prince so glorious. The reason why they are thus brought in between two, is said to be for their greater honour: but is indeed a fear they have left the *Grand Signieur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embassie, should be stabbed. Which wariness they have used, ever since the time that *Miles Coblitz*, a *Servian*, scrambling from among the slain at the battel of *Caffova*, and being admitted to the speech of *Amurath* the first, the Author of that overthrow, stabbed him into the belly with his dagger.

3. Amongst all the jarres and discontents that be, none have been with more unkindness begun, or more earnestly prosecuted, than those of brothers; and that not only in private families, but in the Stems of Princes: the multitude of Pretendants, being the original of most civil wars. To prevent these public emotions, the Emperors of *Habassia* use to immure up all their younger children, in the hill *Amassa*; the *Persians* do put out the eyes of their younger brothers, and the *Turks* do murder them: strange and horrid courses, whereby to avoid the fear of a war in the State, they stir up a war in their own bowels. The first amongst the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the first, on his brother *Jasup*; whom immediately after his Fathers death, he strangled with a Bow-string: this being the only instrument of their *Fratricide*, because thereby none of the blood-royal of *Ottoman* is spilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the Great, caused his young brother then at nurse, to die the death; and was not without much ado perfwaded from being the executioner himself. *Amurath* the third, caused his five brethren to be at once strangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his Son, no fewer than nineteen in one day. By this course they imagine their own estate to be infinitely secured, as knowing that *Musapha* a younger Son, stirred a rebellion against *Amurath*; and *Zemes*, against *Bajazet*; both the second of those names: that *Solyman*, *Musfa*, and *Isa*, severally afflicted *Mahomet* the first; and *Cocant*, *Selmus*, the first of these names also. But yet they will not know, that nothing sooner putteth their younger Brothers into these acts of hostility, than an inevitable certainty of a violent and unnatural death: whereas were they but sure of life, and a liberal and Princely maintenance, it is more than probable, they would rest content, as in other Kingdoms the younger Princes do. And notwithstanding their barbarous policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the counterfeits have heretofore much disturbed the quiet of their Predecessours: for thus we find *Amurath* the second to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Musapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet*, then late deceased; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of fedition in their neighbours Countries. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*, after that a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them, two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm so often troubled with these *Mock-kings*, as *England*; a counterfeit *Richard* the 2d. being made in the time of *Henry* the 4th. a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Henry* the 6th. a counterfeit *Duke of York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the 7th. and a counterfeit *Edward* the 6th. under *Q. Mary*. To prevent these walking spirits, *Mahomet* the third, laid out the dead bodies of his Father and nineteen brethren, as a common spectacle for all that passed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Signieur Musapha*, miraculously escaped the Bow-string twice; 1. when his brother *Achmat*, and 2ly. when *Osmen* his young Nephew were made *Sultans*; and was the first in this Empire that ever did succeed in the collateral line, as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the second, on the death of *Morat* or *Amurath* the fourth, his elder brother.

4. The removing of the young Princes is done for three reasons: 1. to wean them from the pleasures of the Court; 2. to train them up in arms, and inure them to hardships; 3. y. and principally to avoid the danger of a Competitor, whereof old Princes are especially jealous. The common places destined to this Princely exile, are *Amasia*, in *Cappadocia*; *Magnesia*, in *Lydia*; and such like Towns of *Natalia*. Neither do the old Sultans by such a great distance think themselves secure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons actions, and have intelligence of almost every particular thought: the least suspicion being cause sufficient to destroy them. So we find *Mustapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopefulllest branch that ever sprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been shamefully strangled by the command of his father; upon a rumour only of a marriage, which he was said to have negotiated with the *Perfians* Kings Daughter. When these Princes are once settled in their government, it is a crime meriting no less punishment than death, to depart thence and come unto *Constantinople*, before their Fathers death; or unless they are by their Fathers sent for. Of this we have a Tragical example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the second: who desiring to see the fashion of his Fathers Court, left *Magnesia* to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a seafaring man to *Constantinople*, and having obtained his desire, he returned to his charge. This strange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variously interpreted; stirred such jealousies in the suspicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him secretly poisoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it consisteth either in money received, or in money saved. The money saved, is first by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his wars, without any pay but the spoil of the Enemy. And secondly by the *Timariots*, who nourish and bring into the Field more Horſe, than any Prince in Chriſtendom can keep (as we have already ſaid) for 34 millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Boterus*) is only 15 millions of *Sultanies*, which is nothing in reſpect of ſo great an Empire: the chief reaſon whereof is the Tyrannical government of the *Turk*, which deters men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their eſtates; as knowing all their

OF

MEDIA and PERSIA.



Here I have joyned together also, because the affairs thereof have been so united, in making up the second of the four great Monarchies, and running the same fortunes ever since; that they are hardly to be parted in course of story, though each must have unto it self a distinct Chorographie. First then, we begin with MEDIA.

MEDIA is bounded on the East, with Parthia, and some parts of Hyrcania, Provinces of the Persian Empire, on the West, with Armenia Major, and some part of Assyria; on the North, with the Caspian Sea, and those parts of Armenia Major, which now pass in the account of Georgia; and on the South, with Persia. So called from Madai the Son of Japhet, by whom first planted and possessed, after that general dispersion made at Babel. Known by this name amongst the ancients, both Greeks and Romans; but at this time Sheirvan by the Turks and Persians: the word signifying in the language of this Country, a Milkie-Plain.

The Country of a large extent, and of so different nature, as one would think it not the same. The North parts lying betwixt Mount Taurus and the Hyrcanian Sea, very cold and comfortable: so barren, that for the most part they make their bread of dried Almonds, and their drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and those but of Apples; nor any droves of tame cattle, as in other places, their food being generally on Venison, or the flesh of wild beasts took in hunting. But on the South-side of the Taurus, the soil is very rich, and the Country pleasant, plentiful both of corn and wine, and all things necessary; full of fat pastures, some of them so large in compass, that 50000 Horses do graze upon them.

The people anciently great warriors, as those who ruined the great Empire of the Babylonians; and laid upon themselves and their own vertue, the foundation of the second Monarchy. But being not long after incorporated into the same Empire with the Persians, have not only ever since followed the same fortunes with them, but participate of their nature also: and therefore we shall hear more of their Character, when we come to Persia. Polygamie anciently amongst them, so far from being esteemed a sin or an inconvenience, that it was a punishment for the common Villager to have less than seven wives; or the woman, if of noble birth, fewer than five husbands. In their wars they use commonly to envenom their Arrows with an oyl or liquor, made of a bituminous water called Naphtia; whereof there is great plenty both here, in Persia, and Assyria. The Oyl called Oleum Mediaceum, from this people only, because their invention, and by them most mischievously used. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being shot from a slacker bow (for a swift and strong motion took away its vertue) did burn the flesh wherein it fastned with so great a violence, that nothing but dust could mitigate the fury of it; water increasing rather than diminishing that malignant flame.

The Christian Religion was first here planted by S. Thomas, but never had the happiness to be so universally embraced, as in other places, alwayes opposed and suppressed, either by Paganism in the time of the old Persian Kings; or by Mahometanism, since the first conquest of this Country by the power of the Saracens. Some Christians yet there be amongst them either of the Armenian, or Nestorian Sects, (as in all other parts of the Persian Empire) the specialties of whose Religion have been elsewhere spoke of. Here live also very many Jews, indulged the free exercise of their Religion: many of which are Descendants of those Tribes, which were transplanted hither by Salmanassar. But the Religion generally embraced and countenanced, is that of Mahomet, according to the Sophian or Persian Sects; the Language of which Nation they do also speak, though they had a language of their own, different from that of the Parthian, Elamite, or Persian, as appeareth, Ait. 2. v. 9. where they are reckoned as distinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1 Orontes, 2 Coronus, 3 Chaboras, the boundary betwixt Media and Assyria, 4 Pasonium, 5 Lagoas; all of them (except Chaboras only) the disjointed branches of Mount Taurus: which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his course besides.

One of these flow their principal Rivers, 1 Amandus, 2 Strate, and 3 Carindus; of greatest eminence in this Country, in the time of Ptolomy, but otherwise of no great account or observation. 4 Canac, the Divider of this Province from Armenia Major, but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Add hereunto the great Lake, now called Argis (by the Persians Vashlan) but by Strabo named Marianna Palus, situate in the confines of Assyria, Media, and Armenia; of the fish whereof dried by the Sun and wind, and sold into divers other Countreys, the people of these parts raise a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many Provinces, the principal of which 1 Tropatene, 2 Charomithrene, 3 Darites, 4 Marciane, 5 Amariace, and 6 Syro-Media: these and the rest reduced to two in the latter reckonings, viz. Atropatia, and 2 Media Major.

1. ATRO-

Asroptia.

1. ATROPATIA is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt Mount Taurus and the Caspian Sea. So called from that Atropatus, Governor of these parts in the time of Darius, the last Persian Monarch; who so valiantly held out against the Macedonians. The Tropatene, (as I take it) of the ancient Writers. A barren, cold, and inhospitable Country, as before described: and for that cause allotted for the dwelling of many of the captive Israelites, brought hither by Salmanassar when he conquered that Kingdom: their numbers being found so great in this Northern Region, that Benjamin the Jew, reckoned no fewer than 50000. of them in one City only, which he calleth by the name of Madai. And that great numbers of them were transplanted hither, appeareth by that passage, 2 Kin. 17. 6. where it is said, that they were placed in Halah and Habor by the River of Gozan, and in the Cities of the Medes. Now Halah or Chalah seems most probably to be that Region of Assyria which Ptolomy calleth Chalateni, in the North of that Country, towards Media, Habor, or Chabor, to be that Mount Chaburus, which pertaineth this Country from Assyria, in which Mountainous tract there was in those times a City of the same name also. Betwixt which City and the banks of the Caspian Sea, I find in Ptolomy the City Ganzania; in the 40th. and 40 minutes of the Northern Latitude: in which there are apparent footsteps of the name of the River Gozan, upon whose banks it was most likely to be seated.

Places of most observation in it, 1 Hamadum by Benjamin the Jew called Madai, replenished in his time with families of the captive Israelites. 2 Ganzania, another dwelling of those Tribes, spoken of before. 3 Mandagorsis, of which nothing extant but the name. 4 Gelan, inhabited by Gela of the ancients, whom the Greeks call Cadusis. 5 Bochu, more towards the Caspian Sea, hence called Mare de Bochu. 6 Eres, a place of great richness, but possessed by the Turks, and made the residence of some of their principal Officers: taken by Mustapha General of the Turkish forces in the time of Amurath the 3d. and by him fortified as the Gate and entrance of this Country. 7 Samachia, or Shamaki, betwixt Eres and Derbent, taken by Osman Bassa, at the same time, Anno 1578. and made the residence of a Beglerbeg, Anno 1583. Conceived to be the Cyropolis of Ptolomy, by the Persians called Cyrechbata; bearing the name of Cyrus the great Persian Monarch, by whom built or beautified. Remarkable at the present for a Pillar of flint-stones, inter-woven with the heads of many of the Persian Nobility, most barbarously slain by one of the late Sultans, and this Pillar here erected for a terror to others.

2. MAJOR MEDIA, or MEDIA specially so called, is that part hereof; which lieth on the South of the Mountain Taurus. Commended by the Ancients, for one of the goodliest countries in all Asia: the fields (saith Ammianus) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatness and fertility very rich, and no less pleasant for fresh Springs and cleer veins of water: where one may see plenty of green Meadows; and in them a breed of generous Horses, which they call Nisai, mounted by as valiant and generous Riders, who with great jollity use to go unto the wars, and charge furiously upon the Enemy. The men commended by Polybius (κατὰ δύναμιν ἀνδρῶν, &c.) as well as the Country.

Cities of most note in it, 1 Ecbatana of as great antiquity as Babylon; for we find that Semiramis the wife of Nimus in a war made against the Medes, who had then rebelled, taking an affection to the place, caused water-courses to be made to it from the further side of the Mountain Orontes, digging a passage through the hills, with great charge and labour. Destroyed by the injury of time, it was re-edified by Daces the sixth King of the Medes; and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by Seleucus Nicanor, Successor unto Alexander in his Asian Conquests. For beauty and magnificence little inferior to Babylon, or Ninive, before described. In compass 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 Italian miles. The walls thereof affirmed in the Book of Judith, to be 700 Cubits high, 50 Cubits broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 Cubits higher; all built of hewn and polished stone, each stone being six Cubits in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be understood only of the innermost wall, there being seven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each distinguished by the colour of their several Pinnacles; which gave unto the eye a most gallant Prospect. From which variety of colours, it is thought to have the name of Agbatba, or Agbathana. In former times, the ordinary residence of the Monarchs of the Medes and Persians, in the heats of the Summer; as Susa (the chief City of Susiana) in the cold of Winter. The Royal Palace being about a mile in compass, was built with all the cost and cunning that a stately mansion did require: some of the beams thereof of silver, and the rest of Cedar; but those of Cedar strengthened with Plates of Gold. Said by Josephus to be built by the Prophet Daniel. Which must be understood no otherwise in the truth of Story, than that he over-saw the Workmen, or contrived the Model; appointed to that office by Darius Medus, to whom the building of the same is ascribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the Parthian race, it became a ruin. 2 Tauris, situate in or near the place of Ecbatana, out of whose rubbish it was built. Distant 150 miles from the Caspian Sea, under the shadow of Orontes, now called Barutia; but opening Southwards, towards a large and spacious Campagne, in compass about six miles, and beautified on the South-west within a large and pleasant Garden, the work of Sultan Tamas, who resided here often; the buildings for the most part of brick, with flat Roofs (as generally in all the East) well peopled, as containing 200000 persons of all sorts and Sexes. Of great trading, till subdued by the Turks, by whom it was thrice taken within very few years, viz. by Selimus the first, Anno 1514. by Solymann the Magnificent, Anno 1530, and by Osman Bassa, general of Amurath the 3d. Anno 1585. But this last finding it too chargeable to be always garrisoned, and not otherwise tenable but by force, pulled down the walls, and build a large and capacious Citadel: both Town and Citadel recovered by Emir-Hamze Mirza, Prince of Persia, and father of Sultan Soffy, Anno 1614. after it had been for an hundred years a continual prey unto the Turks. 3 Arfacia, so named by Ptolomy, and by the same conjectured to be built by some of the Parthian race. Ruined long since, but more beautifully revived than ever in the present. 4 Cabbin, raised from the ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the banks of a little River, which serveth it for household uses, but not for traffick.

Exceedingly

Exceedingly enriched by the removal of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamus*; partly invited thereunto by the richness of the soil, and the commodiousness of the place; but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his Dominions. In compass about seven miles, beautified with a large market-place, many stately *Mosques*, and the *Sultans* Palace: this last adjoining to the first, convenient enough, but neither of great state nor beauty. 5 *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the book of *Tobit*, so called from *Rem* or *Ragas* the son of *Phaleg*, the founder of it: situate near the spacious Plain, so memorable for the great breed of Horses spoken of before; and therefore in that Book called the *Plain of Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Europus*, and so stands in *Ptolomy*. 6 *Nassivan*, supposed by some to be the *Artasata*, more probably the *Naswana*, of the *Ancient Writers*: a place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Persian* wars. 7 *Araville*, on or near the banks of the great lake *Argis*, spoken of before: the birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Ader*, the first Authors of the *Sophian* Sect; and the burial place of Sultan *Hysmael* the first *Persian* Sultan of that line. 8 *Sultania*, about six dayes journey from *Tauris*, environed with high Mountains; the tops of which continually covered with Snow, may be seen farre off: founded by *Alyaptus*, the 8th. King of the Sixt or *Tartarian* Dynasty; and by him made the Royal Seat of the *Persian* Sultans, whence it had the name. But ruined by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former splendour, but the *Mosques*, or Temples (one of them, the fairest in the East) which the *Tartars* spared. 9 *Troyan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, situate in a large Plain, but not far from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleasant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environed with a wall of greater Circuit than the City. 10 *Tarcoman*, in the middle way betwixt *Tauris* and *Cashin*. 11 *Damoon*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 300 houses, nor here considerable but for the signification of the name; which is said to signifie a *Second Plantation*: and being situate at the foot of so high a Mountain, occasioneth some of the *Jews* to think, that the *Ark* rested not far off, as perhaps it did. 12 *Marant*, in the Extremity of the Countrey, but of of lesser note.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the posterity of *Madai*, as before was said; *Ragan* the Son of *Phaleg* taking up those parts, which lay next *Affria*. Divided in long tract of time into several Tribes, as the *Cadusi*, *Amariacle*, *Margasi*, *Sagarti*, *Debrices*, *Tapyri*; and some others. Governed by Kings immediately from the first Plantation; for we find that *Pharnus* King hereof, was overthrown and slain by *Ninus* the grand-son of *Nimrod*. After this made subject to the *Affrians*, their Kings were only titular, as the best but *Homagers*, perhaps no better than *Provincial* Governours, under that great Monarchy. Of most esteem amongst them was that *Arseus*, who with an Army of 800000. men (if the number be not mistaken) incountre. *Cadusi*, by whom discomfited and slain. But the *Cadusi* so broken, that they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Persians*; and so continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the last of these *Provincials*, and the first Monarch of the *Medes*. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to see his Lord and Master in a womans dress, spinning among his Concubines; and otherwise behaving himself in a brutish manner; which so moved him, that he resolved to be no longer subject to so vile a Monster. Communicating his thought unto *Belochus*, Governour of *Babylon*, and well seen in *Astrology*, he was encouraged to proceed; and sped so well, that having made themselves Masters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them shrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his Estates. To *Belochus* fell *Affria*, and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the West of *Tigris*: to *Arbaces*, *Media* and the rest, which now make up the Kingdom of *Persia*. But being a mild Prince, and desirous by fair and gentle means to assure his Empire, he confirmed the *Persian* *Satrapas* in their former Governments; reserving nothing to himself but a titular Sovereignty. Of whom and his Successors more, when we have taken in the rest of the Provinces.

PERSIA.

PERSIA is bounded on the East, with *India*; on the West, with *Media*, *Affria*, and *Chaldea*; on the North, with *Tartary*; on the South, with the main Ocean. So called from *Persis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave law to all the rest: as that is said to do from *Perseus*, the son of *Jupiter* and *Dane*; affirmed by the *Gracians* to have conquered these *Eastern* Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus *Isidore*, *Petrus populi à Persio Rege sunt vocati, qui à Græcia in Asiam transiens illi barbaras gentes gravi diuturnoque bello perdomuit, et vltimò nomen subactæ Gentis imposuit*. In the Scripture it is constantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the son of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Persians* had subdued *Babylon*, and transferred the supreme Monarchy to themselves; we find this people called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Persian* seems to come) the word *Paras*, (or *Pharas*) signifying as much as Horsemen. Given therefore to this Nation, as it is supposed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not only taught them the art of horsemanship, but set forth a law, that it should be a reproach to any man to go on foot; *five milium sine parum itinere: esset conficiendum*, whether the journey that he had to go were long or little. Called sometimes also *Achemenides*, from *Achemenides* the Son of *Perses*, one of the first known Kings hereof; and by that name, (*Non tot Achemenies armanth Sula Sagittis*) they occur in the second of *Propertius*. Where by *Achemenia Sagitta*, he means *Persian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, stretched out in length from the 82. degree of *Longitude*, to the 120. being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23. degree of *Northern Latitude*, to the 43. being 20 more. According unto which position, with reference to the heavenly bodies, we shall find it seated under the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth, *Climates*: the longest summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours almost three quarters; and fifteen hours one quarter in the parts most Northwards.

The

The Countrey not alike in all places, as it is impossible it should in so great a compass. But generally it is of a pure and wholesom air, the high hills shading it on the one side from the heat of the *Clim* under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sea, wherewith encompassed, cherishing a great part thereof. And so it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*; *Regio non alia in tota Asia salubrior habetur; temperatum caelum, hinc perpetuum jugum opacum & umbrosum, quod assuulat; illinc mare adjunctum, quod modice tepore terra fovet*. Then for the Earth, it is by reason of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and sandy; in many places destitute of water; in the South parts thereof few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by consequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatness of it: men loving to inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the use of water. Which notwithstanding, it is furnished with all necessaries both for life and pleasure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as shall be shewed in the description of the several Provinces.

The people antiently were trained up to the wars, but chiefly unto *Archery* from their very childhood: indulged the liberty of having as many wives as they pleased; they never saw the children begotten of them, until five years old. At that age sent unto their Fathers, they were taught presently to handle the *Bow* and *Arrows*. Upon this ground we find the *Bow of Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeremy*, Chap. 4. and the *Quiver of Elam* by the Prophet *Isaiah*, Chap. 22. v. 6. as the Arms peculiar to that Nation, or most used amongst them. They were good *horsemen* also, and well skilled at their Dart and Slings, till wealth and ease, and the pride of so great an Empire, made them wholly feminine: depriving them of those abilities both of mind and body, wherein they did excel most Nations in their harder times. In all their fortunes very obsequious, if not fervile, to their Kings and Princes; in whose presence it was a crime to spit: but to deny obedience unto his commands an offence so heinous, as was not to be punished with less than the loss of life, and want of burial. In this observance of their Kings followed, if not outstripped, by the modern *Persian*. A race of men, affirmed to be *cantiorum hominum tenuissimi*, the most meek or patient of the world, especially compared with those of the same Religion, the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of learning, as the *Turks*; but studious, many of them in *Physick* and *Astrology*; most of the better sort much delighted in *Poetry*, which they give their minds to. For the most part addicted to *hospitality*, magnificent in expence, Lordly in their complements, fantastical in their Apparel, maintainers of *Nobility*, and desirous of peace. Such as apply themselves to *Trades*, and *Mechanick* Arts, prove excellent in the making of Silks, and Cloth of Gold: those which begate themselves to war, proving very good Souldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their cost, who by their long wars against them have got nothing but blows. The women said to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightful in the sequestrations of pleasure.

Their Religion at the first was *Paganism*, wherein directed principally, by their Priests or *Magi*; men of a strict austere life, forbidding outward ornaments, and the use of gold; making the ground their bed, and the herbs their food; their whole time spent in offering to the Gods the Prayers and Sacrifices of the people, as if they only might be heard; or else in divinations, and foretelling of things to come, from whence the names of *Magick* and *Magician* are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and Nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not only *Philosophi*, lovers of wisdom; but *Philoseli*, the lovers of God. Of such esteem, that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Persian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the discipline of the *Magi*: and of such power and intimacy in the Royal Court, that one of those *Magi*, on the death of *Cambyses*, possessed himself of the *Persian* Monarchy. In a word, such as the *Druides* were to the *Galls* and *Britains*, the *Gymnosophists* or *Brachmans* to the ancient *Indians*, and the *Chaldeans* in the Empire of *Babylon*; the same, if not of greater sway in affairs of moment, were the *Persian* *Magi*. And *Persians* they must be if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Countrey being to be admitted of that Society: though by a *Metaphor*, applied to the Professors of the same Arts, though of other Countries, as those which came from the East to worship *Christ*, are by *St. Matthew* called *Magi*. (*Mat. 2. 1.*) though they came from *Arabia*.

The people then were *Gentiles* as to their Religion; and besides other Gods which the *Gentiles* worshipped, they were great *Idolaters* of the *Fire*: which they offered Sacrifice unto in time of peace, and carried it with them as their *Tutelar Diet*, in the time of war. At what time (especially if the King were there in person) it was born in the very front of their Army, attended on by their *Priests*, and followed by a train of boyes all clothed in Scarlet, to the number of 365. according to the number of the dayes of the year. In this equipage, with a great deal of pomp belides, did *Darius* set forwards to fight with *Alexander*; at the battel of *Issus* in *Cilicia*. A superstition derived from them to the *Medes*, and *Affrians*, their next neighbouring Nations, and not extinguished to this day in some parts of this Countrey; in which many of these *Fire-worshippers* are still remaining. But from a God, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman*, *Usher*, and to attend on Kings and persons of greatest eminence: used to be born before the Emperors of *Rome*, as a point of State. Inasmuch that *Commodus* though fallen out with his Sister *Lucilla*, permitted her notwithstanding to enjoy her Seat in the publique Theatre, & *non compulsi autem aut*, a fire to be born before her, as in former times, as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Christian faith was first planted in the Provinces of the *Persian* Kingdom, by *Saint Thomas* the Apostle, and held in all points answerable to those of the *Catholic* Church; till *Sapor* to despight the Emperor *Heraclius*, a right *Orthodox* Prince, commanded that all the Christians in his Dominions should conform themselves to the opinions and tendries of the *Nestorian* Sect, by that means universally spread over all these Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled some *Armenian* Christians, who with their Patriarch removed hither; when their own Countrey was made the seat of a long and miserable war betwixt the *Persian* and the *Turk*; but found not here to safe a dwelling as they did expect: 1200 of them being slain by *Alas* the late *Persian* Sultan, on a suspicion that they went about to

reason:

SUSIANA.

reconcile themselves to the Pope of Rome (whom he held to be more inclinable to the Turk than to him) in the year 1609. Which notwithstanding (so miserable a condition do these Christians live in) he suffered two Convents of *Augustine* and *Carmelite* Friars, to be settled at the same time, even in *Span-hav* it self; and many *Jesuits* to live peaceably up and down the Countrey, which serve for little else than to give intelligence. Here are also many *Jews* dispersed over all the Provinces of this Empire; allowed their *Synagogues*, and Publique Places of Assembly. But the Religion publicly authorized and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, imposed on this Countrey by the *Saracens*, when by them subdued: differing in some points from the *Turks*, especially about the true Successor of that false Seducer (of whom more anon;) the cause of the long wars betwixt those Nations.

As for the *Persian* Language, it is very antient, supposed to be as old as the Confusion at *Babel*: some words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra* which lived in the *Persian* Court, have been made use of in some parts of the holy Scripture. A tongue which still hath left some remainders of it, in the Language of the modern *Persian* (as those of judgement in this tongue have delivered to us;) notwithstanding so long tract of time, and the conquest of this Countrey by the *Greeks*, *Arabians*, *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not spoken only in this Countrey, nor limited within the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; but used also in the Court and Camp of the *Great Mongul*, and some parts of *Zagathay*; and where not vulgar unto all, studied and understood by persons of more eminent fort, as the *Latine* by the Gentry of these Western parts. Inasmuch as he that hath this Language, may travel over all the East without an Interpreter.

Rivers in the South parts there are but few, as before was said, and those few not navigable; by consequence of little note or estimation. The principal of those that be, are 1 *Eulens*, the chief River of *Susiana*, emptying it self into *Sinu Persicus*: a River of so pure a stream, that the great *Persian* Kings would drink of no other water. The Northern parts more plentifully stored with that commodity, as having in it the famous Rivers of 2 *Ochus* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongst the Antients, because it was navigable; opening with a fair Channel into the *Caspian* Sea, to which it hasteneth from *Mount Taurus*: and so doth also, 3 *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a fatal bound to these great neighbours. A River which the *Persians* have seldom passed to enlarge their Dominions, but they received some notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*; and when the *Tartars* made over it under the conduct of *Saba* the *Chem* of *Zagathay*, for the invasion of *Persia*; they were shamefully beat back again by *Hysmael Sophie*. Nor is it less memorable in old stories, for the famous passage of *Alexander* over it, in pursuit of the murderers of *Darius*. For having followed *Bessus* to the banks of this River, and not knowing how to pass over his men, there being neither Stairs upon it, nor timber near at hand to build them, he caused a great number of bags and bladders to be stuffed with *Straw*, and so in three days transported his Army. So that I may truly say with his own Historian, *Nummius* *Confilius* quod necessitas subiecerat, initit; necessity is the best Author of fine inventions. 4 *Ziobris* in *Hyrcania*, which rising out of the same mountainous tract (as the two last mentioned) after a long course above ground in the open light, hideth himself again for the space of 38 miles, and then breaketh out at a new fountain, and falleth into 5 *Rhadaga*, another chief River of those parts. And this *Alexander* the Great found to be true; by casting two Oxen into the River *Ziobris*, which by the current of the stream were carried under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its rise again. 6 *Hidero*, by what name known unto the Antients I am not able to say, but of great note amongst modern Travellers, for the fall thereof into the Sea: so steep and strong, that the people are said to sacrifice or banquet under the fall thereof, the stream so violently shooting over their heads, that it never wetech them.

Mountains of most note, are those which pass by the name of *Taurus*, which having left *Media* on the West, passeth through the Northern Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; dividing *Parthia* from *Hyrcania*, and *Paropamisus* from *Bactria*, and *Aria* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Coronus*, the *Scythian* hills, *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*; whereof more as occasion serveth in their proper places.

It is divided into the particular Provinces of 1 *Susiana*, 2 *Persis*, 3 *Ormuz*, 4 *Carmania*, 5 *Gedrasia*, 6 *Drangiana*, 7 *Arachosia*, 8 *Paropamisus*, 9 *Aria*, 10 *Dartbia*, 11 *Hyrcania*, 12 *Margiana*, 13 *Bactria*. Which we will severally survey in the *Chorography* and story, till we have joynted them altogether in the *Persian* Monarchy; and then pursue the History as conjunct and fashioned into the body of one Empire.

1. S U S I A N A.

SU S I A N A is bounded on the East, with *Persis*; on the West, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldea*; on the North, with *Affrya*; on the South, with a branch of the River *Tygris*, and some part of the Gulf of *Persia*.

It was so called *quasi Cusiana*, or the Land of the *Chusites*, from *Chus* the eldest Son of *Ham*, and the Grand-son of *Noah*; by whose Son *Havilah*, it was first peopled; and therefore called in Scripture the land of *Havilah*: this being that land of *Havilah*, which the River *Pison* is said to compass, in the Book of *Genesis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that land of *Havilah* lay on both sides of the River *Euphrates* (which the Country of *Susiana* doth not) and was the Eastern bound of the *Ismaelites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in those parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is said in the first of *Sam.* chap. 15. ver. 7. to have smitten the *Amalekites* from *Sur* to *Havilah*, that is to say from the *Red Sea* to the gulf of *Persia*: it must be understood of *Havilah* in the first extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the East Indies (so called from a Son of *Jockan*) or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the East side of

SUSIANA.

of *Euphrates*, and is that *Susiana*, in which now we are: it being nowhere found that *Sau* was so great a Traveller as to see the *Indies*; or of such puissance as to force a passage through the Countries of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being lost, that of *Cusiana* or *Susiana* did still remain; preferred to this day in that of *Chusestan*, by which now called.

The Countrey memorable in the Scriptures for *G. Id.* *Bd. liam*, and the *Onyx-stone*; which doth abundantly set forth the richness and commodities of it: *Bdellium* being a Tree (for of the other two nothing need be said) about the bigness of an *Oliver*, yielding a certain Gum very sweet to smell to, but bitter of taste; which in time hardeneth to a *Pearl*, as *Engubinus* and *Beroaldus* have delivered to us.

Divided antiently into many particular Regions, or at least known by several names in its several quarters. For where it bordered upon *Tigris*, it was called *Melitene*; *Cabandone*, where it touched upon *Persis*; where it confined on the *Elymeans*, it had the name of *Cissia*, and near the Wall or Ditch called *Kallinus Pafni*, it was called *Characene*. Watered belides *Eu'ans*, and *Tigris* before spoken of; with the Rivers *Orontes*, and *Masæus*; with that branch of the River *Tigris* which *Ptolemy* called *Basium*; *Caritis*, *Pasi-Tigris*; and the Scriptures, *Pison*.

Chief Cities hereof, 1 *Aracca*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*, the same which the Scriptures call *Erech*, and one of the four which *Nimrod* built in the first beginning of his Empire, *Gen.* 11. Rememored by *Tibullus* for the Fountains of *Naphta* (of which the *Medians* made their *Oyl* spoken of before) a bituminous liquor, easily taking fire, but not easily quenched. Of which thus the Poet;

Arct. Areccæis aut unda perhospita Campis.

Where by *unda perhospita*, he meaneth that bituminous liquor called *Naphta*, issuing from the fields of *Erech*, as the learned *Salmasius* hath observed in his notes on *Solinus*. 2 *Susa*, the *Susian* of the Book of *Hester*, and *Nehemiah*; honoured with the residence of the *Persian* Monarchs in winter, as *Ecbatana* in Summer. Situate on the River *Eulens*, by the Prophet *Daniel* called *Blai*. Built, as some say, by *Memon* the Son of *Ithobus*, slain by the *Thessalians* in the *Trojan* wars: the walls whereof as *Cassiodorus* hath reported, cemented with Gold. But nowsoever, it was doubtless a magnificent City and of infinite wealth: *Alexander* finding in it 50000 *Talents* of Gold uncoined, belides Silver wedges, and Jewels of inestimable value. Memorable for the great feast here made by *Abusurnus*, of 183 days continuance, for his Lords and Princes: imitated by the *Persian* Sultans to this very day; who with a Royal Feast of the like continuance, do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruin, and perhaps not that. 3 *Elymais*, the chief City of the *Elymei*, by *Ptolemy* (unless his Copies be corrupted) mistakingly called *Eldimeis*. Situate on the banks of *Eulens* also, near the border of *Persis* (the Nation of the *Elamites* or *Elymei* taking part of both Provinces.) Of great note antiently for a sumptuous Temple of *Diana* sacrilegiously ranfacked by *Antiochus*, of which see 1 *Mac.* 6.2 and of such wealth, by reason of the concourse of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Sextus Sulpitius* calleth it *Oppidum opulentissimum*, a most opulent City. 4 *Sela*, on the banks of *Eulens* also; reckoned by *Ammianus* amongst the most eminent of this Province: so named from *Selah*, the Son of *Arphaxad*, who first planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Sela* is ascribed by *Eusebius*, in his *Hexameron*, *Σαλὰ ὁπ' Ἐσαῶνος*, are that Authors words; perhaps more truly than to *Memon*: and unto whom the Original of the *Cossai*, whom *Ptolemy* placeth in this tract, is referred by *Eusebius*. 5 *Tarfiana*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice only of the chiefest), the same no doubt which *Ptolemy* calls *Tariana*, and joyns next to *Sela*. 6 *Agra*, upon the banks of *Tigris*, not far from *Erech*. But there is little left of these, but what is to be found in the antient Writers; now hardly visible in their Ruins. The Towns of most note now remaining, being 7 *Jasroone*, inhabited for the most part by *Jews*, of which here are no fewer than a thousand Families; supposed to be the descendants of those whom *Salmanassar* transplanted out of the Kingdom of *Israel*. 8 *Sann*, 9 *Casta*, of which little memorable.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Chusites* of the house of *Havilah*, the Son of *Chus*; an evident footstep of whose name we have in the *Chavilai*, whom *Pliny* placeth in this tract, by other Writers called the *Chaulotai* & *Chaulasiti*, as before was noted, with whom were joyn'd in the first plantings of this Countrey, the *Cossai* and the *Susiani*, descended from *Sala* the Son of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elymei*, the posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*. Betwixt the two last Nations long and frequent wars, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Affrya* composed the differences, by making both subject to their Empire. After this, nothing memorable in the story of it; till the transplanting of the ten Tribes into the Regions of *Affrya*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Israelites* were removed thither; so many of this Nation were sent out (with others) to possess themselves of the void places of those Tribes. Called *Cusheans* by the *Jews*, because the most considerable number of them came from this Province, called in the Scriptures *Cush*, by *Josuephus* *Cutha*; and by him reckoned for a Region of *Persia*, as indeed it was, the time where he lived considered; different only in the Dialect or form of speech; that Countrey which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*; being named *Cush* by the *Chaldeans*; by the *Persians*, *Chusestan*: that name continuing to this day.

2. P E R S I S.

PE R S I S hath on the East, *Carmania*; on the West, *Susiana*; on the North, *Mediana*; and on the South, some part of the *Persian* Bay or *Sinu Persicus*, which took name from hence. The reason of the name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in fine gave both name and Law to the rest of this Empire. It had antiently been called *Cephene*; but now most commonly by the name of *Fars*, or *Pharsistan*; more near to *Pharus*, the old name of it, both in the *Arabick* and *Hebrew*.

Such

Perfis.

Such parts hereof as lie towards the North are cold and hilly, nor apt to bear either fruit or corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very clear. Those parts which lie towards the *Persian Gulf*, of as bad a nature, though of different quality; sandy, and hot, and beareth little fruit but *Datt*, and few trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both there lyeth a rich and pleasant Country, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel; great store of *Roses*, of *Rose-water* consequently: wherewith and with those skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occasion, they use to furnish all the adjoining Provinces. And to make up the Character of a happy Country, to which nothing wanteth, it is well stored with *Lakes* and *Rivers*; the chief wherof are 1 *Bagradas*, which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2 *Rhodomanes*, by some called *Araxes*, now *Bindimir*, on whose banks flood the renowned *Persepolis*. 3 *Orontes*, dividing *Perfis* from *Susiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4 *Brisoana*, ending its course in the same Sea also.

Mountains of note I find not any, but those which part this Region from *Susiana*. Not known by any special name (for ought I can find;) but of sufficient note for the difficult passages out of one Country into the other, called *Pyla Persidis*; defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Persian*, against *Alexander the Great*, who was here very handsomly beaten, and forced to save himself by a close retreat. And though *Alexander* was shewed a *By-path* afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* ere he was aware: yet he was taught by this hard lesson, that if those who kept the straits of *Cilicia*, and the banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made like resistance; he had not bought the *Persian Monarchy* in so cheap a Market.

It was divided antiently into *Paraticine*, bordering on *Media*. 2 *Mardiene*, joyning on the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*. 3 *Misilia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the several Nations intermingled here as in other places, had their several Cities. The chief wherof 1 *Asinza*, seated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas* and *Brisoana*. 2 *Jonacapolis*, on the same Bay also, near the influx of *Rhodomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3 *Asima*, more within the land, now called *Lanbila*. 4 *Marrasium*. 5 *Otroatis*, or *Orebat*, as some Copies have it. 6 *Pasarracha*, in the Greek text of *Ptolemy* called *Pasagada*, and *Pasagrada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the first *Persian Monarch*, which was violated by a Souldier of *Alexanders*, in hope of finding some rich booty, he met with nothing but this modest inscription, *Cyrus ego sum qui Perlicum regnum constitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum telluris invidias, qua corpus meum obtegatur*. The Sacrilegious Souldier though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7 *Persepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the East, called therefore *Regia Orientis* by *Qu. Curtius*; situate near the banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the most part of *Cypress* wood; the walls of the houses being made of Marble, digged out of an adjoining Mountain. Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at large describes it, to be the richest and goodliest City in all the world. And well we may believe him for the richness of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents* in ready money for his own share, after the Souldiers had made what spoil they listed of Coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unspeakable value. But the chief beauty of it was the Royal Palace, built on an Hill, environed with a treble Wall, the first of 16 Cubits height, the second of thirty, and third of sixty, all of them of black polished Marble, with stately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Turrets; which gave to the beholders far and near a most goodly Prospect. Nor was the inside of less beauty, than the out-side of Majesty: the Roof thereof shining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings Throne being wholly composed of Gold, and the richest Pearls. But rich and stately though it were, and one of the greatest Ornaments of the Eastern world; it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit consumed with fire, at the instigation of *Lais* that infamous strumpet; as in revenge for so many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Persians* formerly had burnt in the *Grecian* wars. And though *Alexander* in his sober sense did repent him of it, and gave order that it should be re-edified; yet did it never rise to its former height: the Conqueror dying shortly after, and that purpose with him. So ruined in the age of *Qu. Curtius*, (who lived in the time of *Claudius Caesar*;) that he professeth *vestigium ejus non inveniri nisi Araxes amnis ostenderet*, that no footsteps of it had been found, if not shewn and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whose banks it stood. But by the fall thereof rose 8 *Shiras*, now the chief City of this Province, situate in a fair large Plain hemmed about with Mountains, under one of which it is pleasantly seated; in compass about nine miles, well built and beautified with fair Gardens and magnificent Mosques: two of which larger than the rest, are made more eminent by the addition of two *Spires* or Steeples covered with a painting of Gold and Azure; the fabricks for the most part of *Mosaic* work, as light also by night as day, by reason of a thousand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is said by a modern Traveller) which for good wine, pretty women, pleasant fruits, and a gallant People, may hold comparison with the best in *Persia*. 9 *Miyown*, on the North-east of *Shiras*, delightfully situate amongst the woods and fruitful pastures, and blessed not only with good Wine, but wholefome waters; of which last, few parts of *Persia* have much cause to brag. 10 *Bannarum*, on the South-west of *Shiras* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the ruins of an ancient Castle, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain. 11 *Goyanm*, a Town of a thousand houses. 12 *Berry*, of no great bigness; but of most esteem, by reason of a fair Mosque, a School for the *Arabick* tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their false Prophets; of which the *Persians*, besides *Mahomet*, and *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The first Inhabitants here were of the posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, and such who under his conduct were settled here; called from hence *Elamites* in the usual stile of holy Scriptures by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, *Elymæi*: who spreading themselves into *Susiana*, and by degrees also into other Provinces, became so considerable, that the name of *Elamite* and *Elam* were of great renown: having a language to themselves distinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Alg. 2.* and comprehending under that appellation, the adjoining Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*, where

Carmania.

where *Susa* is said to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Persia*, hath been shewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of the *Masabata*, *Rapsi*, *Hippophagi*, *Suzai*, *Megores*, and *Stabei*, were at first under the command of their own Princes only: amongst which *Cherdorlamer* is of greatest fame, who having the conduct of some *Assyrian* Troops: and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Assyria* invaded *Palestine*, subdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* prisoner, and in the end were overthrowen by the forces of *Abraham*. Of no note after this expedition, till the time of *Perse* the Father of *Achamenes*, who being Provincial Governour of these Countries under *Sardanapalus*, joyined with *Arhaes* and *Belochus* in the War against him: and by the victory got for himself the dominion over those estates, which he had formerly ruled for the *Assyrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the Supreme Lords. Whose Successors, till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order thus:

The KINGS of PERSIS.

- 1 *Perse*, from whom perhaps the name of *Persis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Perseus* the son of *Danae*; or the son of *Perseus* by *Andromeda*.
- 2 *Achamenes*, from whom the *Persians* had the name of *Achamenii*, and the succeeding Kings were called *Achamenides*.
- 3 *Cambyses*, in some places of *Herodotus* called also *Darius*.
- 4 *Cyrus*, from whose second son named *Teispes*, descended that *Darius*, the son of *Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the present Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.
- 5 *Cambyses II.* the son of *Cyrus*.
- 6 *Cyrus II.* surnamed the Great, son of *Cambyses*, and of *Mandane* the daughter of *Astages* King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrowen the *Babylonian* Empire; and translated thereby the Supreme power to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Of which more hereafter.

3 C A R M A N I A.

C A R M A N I A is bounded on the East, with *Gedrosia*, and some part of *Aria*; on the West, with part of *Persis*, and the Gulf of *Persia*, from hence called also by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*; on the North, with *Parthia*; and on the South, with the main *Indian Ocean*. So called from the *Carmanic* chief people of it: but the reason of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Chyrmian*; those parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolemy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being now named *Alsinia*, and by some *Dulcinda*.

The Country for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited. That part which *Ptolemy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being truly such; a Wilderness or very *Desart*, having in it neither Town nor Village, but some scattered houses, and those but ill provided of food and necessities; full of unprofitable Sands; destitute of Water, and of a very hot and unhealthy Air. And though the other part hereof which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea-coast of above 200 leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themselves into it, yet are they not the Richer by it; the shores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers small; so that they neither have good Port, nor safe coming to it. The best Commodities hereof (besides their *Manufactures*) are *Dates*, *Myrrhe*, *Arsenic*, some few Mines of Silver, more of Brass and Iron, and good store of *Alabaster*. In which regard, the Inhabitants hereof were antiently called *Ichthyophagi*, because they lived wholly upon Fish, the Country yielding little else for the life of man. *Carmania sine veste ac fruge, sine pacore ac sedibus, piscium carne vescuntur, carne vescuntur, prater capita toto corpore hirsuti*. The *Carmanis* (saith *Pomponius Mela*) have neither fruits, nor raiment, nor house, nor cattel; but cloath themselves with the skins, and feed themselves with the flesh of Fishes; hairy not only on their heads; but over all their bodies also. Where by the way, *Ammianus* (*Marcellinus*) must be out in his informations, who telleth us of these very *Carmanis*, that their Country though far less than that of *Arabia Felix*; and far more obscure; was as well replenished with Rivers, and for fertility of soil not inferior to it. But we must understand the one of the best parts of *Carmania*; the other of *Deserta* only.

Amongst the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the rest, he mentioneth, 1 *Saganis*, 2 *Sagarus*, and 3 *Hydracrus*. Of which *Saganis* only is named by *Ptolemy*, the other Rivers, or the same under divers names, being 1 *Dara*, 2 *Andaninus*, 3 *Catharapsis*, 4 *Achindanus*, 5 *Salarus*, (the *Sagarus*, as I take it of *Ammianus*) 6 *Caudriacus*, 7 *Zorambis*, and 8 *Samidace*, most of them falling into the Gulf of *Persia*, few Navigable, or of any use in the way of Trading.

Mountains of most note 1 that called *Senuramis*, from some exploit of that great Lady. 2 *Strongis*, so named from the roundness of it; and 3 a continued ridge of Hills, dividing this Country from *Gedrosia*.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Cantharis*, 2 *Agris*, 3 *Tisa*, honoured by *Ptolemy* with the names of Cities. 4 *Cyrza*, and 5 *Gocharta*, two Port-Towns. 6 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conquerour, who hereabouts kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon. 7 *Portuspana*, by *Ammianus* called *Oryspana*, and by him reckoned amongst the fairest and richest of all the Country. 8 *Armuzia*, (or *Armuzium* as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the shore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory near adjoining, and to the noble Isle of *Ormuz*, of which more anon. 9 *Gumbrois*,

Carmania.

not long since a poor Village; but since the fall of *Ormuz* (from which not above nine miles distant) grown a populous Town, consisting at the least of a thousand houses. 10 *Fasques*, at the opening of the Persian Gulf into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it called *Carpella*, is of late named *Caput Persicum*. 11 *Carmania*, the Metropolis or mother City of the Province, in former times of good esteem; *Fasques*. 12 *Carmania*, the Metropolis or mother City of the Province, in former times of good esteem; and now of passing good repute both for Cloth of Gold, and the making of the best *Scymitars*. A weapon (wherefoever made) of such value amongst the *Mahometans*; and so esteemed of by the *Turks*, that upon (wherefoever made) of such value amongst the *Mahometans*; and so esteemed of by the *Turks*, that upon the overthrow of the Navy at the battle of *Corfu*, Anno 1574. most of them who were taken Prisoners, threw their *Scymitars* into the Sea, for fear the *Christians* should be masters of such excellent weapons. It is now called *Chirman*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12 *Lar*, more within the Land towards *Persia*, seated in a barren and inhospitable Country, full of huge heaps of sands, both loose and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind steth into Plains and Mountains: without Grass, Water, Herbs, or any other necessary for the use of Travellers; the City being served with rain water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in Cisterns. The City notwithstanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long since to the number of 5000 houses: of which the greatest part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an Earthquake: now most remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces square; a goodly Mosque, adorned with *Mosack* work, and a strong Castle seated on the top of an hill, furnished with great plenty of Ordnance brought hither from *Ormuz*. This once a Kingdom of it self, or the head City of a Kingdom, acknowledging no subjection to the *Persian* *Sophies*: still conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli*, Chawn Duke of *Shiras*, who sent hence as much treasure as was said to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole posterity, Anno 1604. or thereabouts. 13 *Tecan*, or *Dea-chow*, a Town of the jurisdiction of *Lar*, not far from which is a huge wall cut out of the solid rock by incredible labour, which served formerly both for the boundary and defence of that sandy Kingdom against the *Persians*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the posterity of *Salta*, the son of *Chiu*, who wanting room on the Coast of *Arabia Felix*, where they were first planted; passed over into *Sophia* (from them so named) an Island of the *Persian* Gulf; and afterwards into the main land of *Carmania*, where they built and gave name unto the City of *Sabis*, which we find in *Ptolemy*. Divided in some tract of time into the several Nations of the *Sazote*, *Ara*, *Charadre*, *Chelonophagi*, *Cabadine*, and *Pasagarde*.

Neither the People nor the Country memorable in the way of story; but by Accident only: it being here that *Alexander* being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, in imitation of *Bacchus*, who first conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually feasting with his friends, on a scaffold drawn with eight horses; his Companions following in their Chariots: some adorned with Purple and Silk, others with Flowers and Green Boughs; themselves wearing Garlands on their heads, and carrying their carowling Cups in their hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler seen: all their Armour, was Cups, Barrells, and Flaggons; their Skirmishing Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Mintrells, playing on their Flutes; by Women Dancing, Boyes shouting, all playing the drunken Fools most naturally. Thus march they through the Country of *Carmania*, in as great dissoluteness as if *BACCHUS* himself had indeed been there, and led the Mummery; and for seven whole dayes this sottishness continued. So that *Curtius* well observeth, *Si quid virtus saltem adversus comessantes animi fuisset, mille hercule viri, modo & sobrii, septem dierum crapula graves in suo triumpho capere potuerunt*: a thousand *Persians*, sober and well provided, had their hearts been answerable to so good an opportunity, might have destroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the honour of their Country, and their own liberty.

4 O R M U Z.

ORMUZ, not so much memorable for the greatness, as the wealth, and the conveniency of the situation of it, is an Island situate in the entrance of the *Persian* Gulf: commanding not long since, over some part of the Continent of *Carmania*, and some few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and most of the Islands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to speak of the Isle it self, we must take a brief survey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Persicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, so famous, so full of Islands, and so much frequented (I use the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the same which *Ptolemy* calls *Amuza*) a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or Foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants call *Maces*, the passage is so strait and narrow, that one may very easily see to the opposite shore. The Strait once passed, the Bay beginneth to open and enlarge it self, as far as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balsora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfalls is lost in the Sea. The whole Gulf measured by the shores, of Orbicular form, in compass 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 Italian miles) in all the Coasts and sides whereof the Villages and Towns stand exceeding thick, affording frequent passage to and fro for shipping. So far, and to this purpose lie. To which description of his, so exact and punctual, our late Navigations have not added much, but the change of names: the whole Bay being now called *Mare Elkarisse*, and the entrances thereunto the Straits of *Balsora*; these last so called because they opened the way to the Town of *Balsora*, the most noted Empory of those parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Isles hereof, besides those on the *Arabian* shore, of which we have already spoken, are 1 *Taxiana*

Gedrosia.

1 *Taxiana*, on the Coast of *Susiana*. 2 *Tabinia*. 3 *Sophtha*, and 4 *Alexandria*, or the Isle of *Alexander*, on the shores of *Persia*. Of which that which is called *Sophtha*, seems to take name from *Sabia* the son of *Chiu*, planted upon the opposite shore of *Arabia Felix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Sabis*, which we find in *Ptolemy*: And finally joining to *Carmania*, there are the Islands called, 5 *Sagdana*, the chief Town whereof was anciently named *Milua*; and 6 *Porachtha*, situate at the very mouth of the Straits; now called *ORMUS*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Amuza*, in *Carmania*, near adjoining to it, and unto which it did in former times belong.

This Island situate as is said at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Persia*, is in compass about 20 miles long, and full of Rocks, in a manner barren of all necessities except salt, wherewith their very rocks are covered, and of salt-stones many houses built. So destitute of all things fitting for the life of man, that the Inhabitants had all their victuals, even the very water which they drank, from some of the adjoining Countries: The air so hot in time of Summer, that the people rest themselves in Caves covered over with wood, where they stand or sit in water up to the chin; and have loop-holes in the tops of their houses to let in the wind. Which notwithstanding, in regard of the situation, it was of late one of the richest Empories in all the world; the wealth of *Persia* and *East-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by water to the River *Euphrates*, and so by Boats, or on Camels backs, to *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Trisopolis*; from whence dispersed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to some beyond.

The people hereof in their persons, habit, and Religion, participate somewhat of the *Arabians*, but most of the *Persians*. *Mahometans* for the most part, of the *Sophian* Sect: the rest, but few in number, of the *Christian*; to which converted by the preaching of Father *Gasper*, a *Portugal* Jesuite, since the falling of that Nation there.

The chief and only City was of the same name with the Island, founded some seven hundred years ago by one *Mahomet Dranku*, descended from the Kings of *Saba* in *Arabia Felix*: who with many families of the *Sabaans*, passed over the Straits into *Carmania*, and the Isles adjoining, and liking the situation of this Island, built this City in it; which he called *Ormuz*, or *Amuizium*, according to the name of the Town and Promontory, upon which it lieth. The City seated at one end of the Isle, about two miles in compass; well built, and adorned with a fair Market-place, some Churches, and a well fortified Castle furnished with all necessities to maintain a Siege. By reason of its wealth and resort of Merchants, grown to such esteem, that it gave occasion to this Distich;

*Si terrarum Orbis quaquaque patet annulus esset,
Illic Ormuzium gemma decusque foret.*

That is to say,

Were all the World a Ring, this Isle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the Stone.

It was first under its own King, whose dominion extended also into some part of the Continent on either side, and over all the rest of the Islands within the Gulf. His Revenue of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was discovered under the conduct of *Albuquerque*, Anno 1506. Who having fortified some part of it for their own defence, and made it the Staple of their Trade for the *Indian Merchandise*, so enriched the same, that the Revenues of those Kings (though *Vassals* and Tributaries to the *Portugals*) amounted to 140000 *Seriffs* yearly. In this flourishing state it stood till the year 1622. when *Abas* the Sultan of *Persia*, having received some affront at the hands of the *Portuguese*; or desirous to remove the trade of *Ormuz*, to some Port of his own; gave order to *Emangoly Chawn*, the Duke of *Shiras*, to lay siege unto it, with an Army of 15000 men. Who seeing no hopes of mastering it by his land-forces only, furnished himself with the Ships and Cannon of some *English* Merchants to whom he promised many things which he never performed. For being once master of the City, he destroyed it utterly, removing the Ordnance to *Lar*, the wealth thereof to his own treasure of *Shiras*, the materials of the houses to *Gombroon* spoken of before: the *Portuguese* and *Christian* natives passing over unto *Maukhabat*, in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the *English* Captains that ventured in it, were disappointed of the spoil which they did expect; yet so much honour hath been given by the King of *Persia*, to the *English* Nation; that their Agent who resideth at *Gombroon*, takes custom of all strangers which do traffick thither.

5 G E D R O S I A.

GEDROSIA is bounded on the West, with *Carmania*; on the East, with *Cambaja* or *Guzarat*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Drangiana*, and *Arachosia*. The reason of the name I find not. Now by *Mercentor*, called *Gest*; by *Castaldus*, *Circan*.

The Country desolate and barren; like the worst part of *Carmania*, much destitute of fresh water, and covered over with loose sands, dangerous to the native and stranger both. Some rain they have, but not sufficient to allay the heat and drought which they suffer under; and yet by reason of that heat it affordeth in some places *Nard* and *Myrrhe*, with some other spices. Some Brooks here are, or rather Torrents, which falling from the hills do somewhat qualifie the indispotion of the soil, and make it habitable: The chief of which was called *Arbius* anciently; the chief Mountain, *Batim*.

Towns of most name in it, 1 *Rhagiana*, honoured by *Ptolemy* with the name of a City; and 2 a Port or Harbour called *Malierum portus*, or the Haven of Women. 3 *Arbis*, upon the banks of the River

Aria.

stole from heaven) he made the highest part of Mount *Caucasus* his study: where the inward care he had to accomplish his desire, might justly have been compared to a *Vulture* gnawing on his entrails; and of this opinion is Saint *Augustine*. But far more memorable is it made for being the resting place of the Ark of *Noah*, whereof we have already spoken in our General Preface.

Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Namibia*, and 2. *Ortoffpana*, both named by *Ptolemy*, and reckoned by *Ammianus* for the most famous of this Country. But in what their fame consisted I cannot find. 3. *Parsiana*, 4. *Gazaca*, 5. *Doroacana*, 6. *Bagarda*; all named by *Ptolemy*; but not else observable. 7. *Candahor*, now the *Metropolis* of the Country, a Town of great Trade, by reason of the situation of it on the borders of *India*; in that respect giving to the whole Country the name of *Candahor*. By which name it is reckoned for a Kingdom, and used amongst the many titles in the *Stile Imperiali*. Nothing considerable of it in the course of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Persian* Monarchs, it followed the fortune of the rest till these later times; when the *Persians* being over-laid by the *Tartars*, it became subject to some Kings of the race of *Tamerlane*, reigning in this Province, till brought under by the same subject to some Kings of the same extraction. Finding those Kings intent on the Conquest of *India*, they freed themselves from all subjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600. or thereabouts; when the last King, unable to defend himself against *Abdaxa*, King of the *Usbeques* (a *Tartarian* people, but subject in some sort to the Crown of *Persia*) surrendered his Kingdom to *Echobar* the Great *Mongul* (descended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whose dominions border close upon it. Recovered to the *Persian* Crown by *Mirza* the son of *Abas*, and the Father of *Soffie* the now Sultan; a Prince of much gallantry, but of more misfortunes: the *Persian* *Sophies*, since that conquest, using the title of Kings of *Candahor*, in the *Regal* style.

9 ARIA.

ARIA is bounded on the East, with *Paropamisus*; on the West, with *Parthia*; on the North, with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*; from which last parted by the Mountain *Bagom*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, especially by the *Greeks*; till changed (as they say) into *Media*, on the coming thither of *Medea*. For so *Pausanias*, amongst others, Παισιππίαν τῆς ἡμετέρας λέγουσιν ὡς ἔστιν ἡμετέρας, i. e. coming into the Country then called *Aria*, she caused it after her own name to be called *Media*. But the name of *Aria* was not lost though it were removed; remaining proper to this Country till these later ages; now changed with little alteration, into that of *Eri*.

The Country much subject unto heats, environed with Deserts, Heaths, and Forests; yet near the Mountains which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have some fruitful *Champaigns*; bearing very good fruits, and amongst others, a strong wine, and of long continuance; keeping both taste and colour above 80 years. They have also here a *Drug* somewhat like to *Syrrhe*, and a kind of *Saphyr*, but not right.

Rivers of note I meet with none but that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Arius*, by the name of the Province, making a *Lake* of the same name. The Fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Paropamisus*, and the fall thereof in the said *Lake*: the waters of it first increased by a nameless Stream, falling from the Mountains called *Seriphi*, being that part of *Taurus* which divideth this Country from *Margiana*.

Anciently it was populous and well-inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Those of most consequence, 1. *Aria*, on the banks of the River *Arius*, the seat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* speaketh of in this Tract: but whether they received this name from the Province, or bestowed their own name upon it, I determine not: 2. *Bataxa*, 3. *Sotera*, 4. *Orbitana*, 5. *Sarmagana*, 6. *Artacanda*, by Strabo called *Artacana*, 7. *Nisibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolemy* and *Ammianus*, 8. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the Great Conquerour, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians*, for the better awing of the Country, which by some former rebellions had been troublesome to him. But these, and most of those remembered by *Ptolemy*, being grown out of knowledge, there remain now of special note, 9. *Heri*, or *Eri*, seated not far from the place of the ancient *Aria*, but much superiour to it in strength and greatness. Said by *Maginus* to be in compass thirteen miles, and so plentifully stored with *Roses*, that the inhabitants of the Country call it the *City of Roses*. Naturally of a strong situation, compassed about with a very good Wall, and watered with deep Channels, conveyed unto it by *Tamerlane*, that most puissant *Tartar*, by whom either founded or repaired. 10. *Sasnar*, a place of good importance, and the second in esteem next to *Heri* it self.

The old Inhabitants were the *Mastarami*, *Nisai*, *Astareni*, the *Cassirota*, *Obares*, *Drachma*, *Borgi*, *Paranti*, &c. united together in the name of *Arians*, by that name subject to the *Persians*, and subdued by *Alexander*. Against whom when they had rebelled and were worked by him, they were compelled to betake themselves to the strength of a Cave, seated upon the top of an inaccessible Rock, and with small force easily defended. But to *Alexander* nothing was impossible. For piling up a great mass of Timber equal unto the mouth of the Cave, when the wind served, he put fire unto it; and by that means so filled the Cave with fire and smoke, that ved opportunely, he put fire unto it; and by that means so filled the Cave with fire and smoke, that some of them were stifled, some half burnt, and the rest forced to yield to the Victors mercy. Nor was this the only action of note during that Rebellion, though it was the greatest. The common Soldier also had this honour in it. *Sarlibarzan*, a *Persian*, whom *Alexander* had trusted with the Command of this Province, had drawn them unto this Revolt, and became their Head. Who to the express his courage in the sight of the *Arians*, challenged the proudest He of the *Macedonians*, to a single combat. The challenge cheerfully accepted by one *Erignis*, one of the most aged in the Army:

Parthia.

Army: and saying aloud, *ostendam quales milites Alexander habet*, he valiantly charged upon the Rebel; and at the second *venew* slew him. The *Arians* after this trial of their disabilities, remained in quiet, taking the same fortunes as the rest of the *Persians* did, in their change of Masters. Of late, by *Mahomet* *Codubanda*, it was aliened for a time from the Crown of *Persia*, and given to Sultan *Abas*, his second son; who took unto himself in his Fathers life time the title of the King of *Heri*. But coming to the Crown by the murder of his elder Brother, and the death of his Father, he united *Heri* once again to the *Regal* *Diadem*; but kept it as a distinct title in the *Royal* style.

10 PARTHIA.

PARTHIA is bounded on the East, with *Aria*; on the West, with *Media*; on the North, with *Hyrcania*; and on the South, with that part of *Carmania*, which by *Ptolemy* and others of the Ancients, was called *Deserta*. The reason of the name we shall see anon. But that name being laid aside, it is now called *Arach*.

The Country walled as it were round with Mountains, and in most parts overgrown with Woods; by which defended by those heats to which otherwise it would be subject, it produceth many things of necessary use for the life of the people; but nothing for riot and excess. In other places where the shade of the Wood is wanting, the whole Country is in a manner but a sandy Desert, dangerous to Travellers, and impassable even with the help of *Guides*; the sands continually driven from one place to another, taking away all tracts of a beaten way. For which cause there be certain Castles at each three miles end, built at the Kings charge, as well for the direction as the reception of Passengers; and Causeys of many miles in length, in some other places, for their better travelling; the sands of each side of them so loose and light, that if a man should fall aside, he were lost remediless.

The people anciently were very courageous and stout, as commonly they are in all barren Countries, and were withal of a *Schythian* extract and original. Exceeding spare of diet, and good reason for it, the Country not affording any superfluities; but otherwise much given to pleasures, allowing themselves plurality of Wives and Concubines. Good horsemen, and to that so used, that they consulted of all business both private and publick, when they were on horse-back. Such lovers of the wars, that they accounted no man happy after his decease, but who died in battle; esteeming of all others but as fools or Cowards. Their Souldiers for the most part *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto their weapons, and to manage horses: inasmuch as of 50000 Horse which the *Parthian* King had in the field against *Marcus Antonius*, there were not above 800 *Free-men*. But their greatest fame consisted in the handling of their Bow and Arrows, esteemed the best *Archers* in the World, and not undeservedly; having the Art of shooting backwards, and making their Retreat or Flight more terrible than their charge or onset. Whence that of *Seneca*;

*Terga conversi metuenda Parthi,
The Parthians flight
Doth most affright.*

Which, with the manner of their fight, more copiously described by *Lucan* thus:

*Pugna levis, bellumque fugax, turmaque fugaces,
Et melior cessasse loco quam pellere miles.
Illita terra dolis, nec Martem cominus unquam
Ausu pati virtus, sed longè tendere nervos.*

Which I find thus Englished to my hand:

Light skirmish, fleeing war, and scattered bands,
And better Souldiers when they run away,
Than to cut off an Enemy that stands.
Their crafty Galk-thraps on the ground they lay,
Nor dares their courage come to down-right blows;
But fight best farthest off, most trusting to their bows.

From hence it was that *M. Crassus*, in his expedition against them, being told by an *Astrologer*, that his enterprise would prove unprosperous, by reason of some ill aspect which he had found in *Scorpio*; *Tushman* (said he) *I fear not Scorpio, but Sagittarius*. And to these warlike exercises of Horse and Archery, the temper of the air and soil, gave no small advantages; the dry air seasoning their Bow-strings, and their large fields affording them sufficient room to train their horses. *Calum enim quod siccum est, nervos intentos facit; Regio tota plana est, & ob eam rem equis accommodata*, as it is in *Dion*. But this is to be understood not of *Parthia* only, but the whole Country of *Persia*; subject at that time to the power of the *Parthian* Kings. Next to these *Parthians*, the English have been looked on formerly, as the ablest Bow-men; having gotten by their Bow and Arrows as many notable victories over the *French*, as the *Parthians* ever did obtain upon the *Romans*. But at this time *Archery* both here, and elsewhere, is quite laid aside, the Gun silencing all offensive weapons; how justly I determine not. The point hath been long since debated betwixt Sir *John Smith* and Sir *Roger Williams*; many great wits appearing upon either side; and the sum of their several Arguments drawn up together by Sir *Clement Edmunds*, in his judicious observations upon *Cæsars Commentaries*, to which the Reader may repair for his satisfaction. All I

Margiana
and
Bactria.

Master. In all times since, they have been looked upon as Members of the *Persian Empire*, till the conquest of it by the *Tartars*; in the distractions of whose great Empire after *Tamerlane's* death, it fell to some Princes of his house, who governed here under the vassalage and protection of the *Tartars of Zagathay*. Recovered not long since to their old obedience, by Sultan *Alas*: who for the better settling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat Royal from *Spanhawn*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Cashin*, to *Asnaraffe*; then a small Town, now the chief of this Country.

12 M A R G I A N A.

MA R G I A N A is bounded on the West, with *Hyrcania*; on the East, with *Bactria*; on the North, with part of *Tartary*, from which severed by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Aria*; divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*, which runs thorow the Country: but is now named *Tremigen*.

The Country environed with Mountains, and in most places of it full of sandy Deserts. But where it is watered with the Rivers, *Arias* and *Margus*, it is very fruitful, stretching it self into a large and spacious Plain, containing in the circuit near 200 miles. The Plain once compassed with a wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*: more memorable for the huge stocks of *Vines* which are said to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and sometimes bearing branches of Grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired, in regard there is no other place near unto it, where the Vine will grow. And if the *Ark* rested on the top of Mount *Caucasus*, as it is most probable it did; why may not this be some of the remainder of that first Vineyard which was planted by *Noah*, when he descended from these Mountains; as is affirmed by the constant tradition of the people which inhabit here?

The people mixt of *Scythian* and *Persian* breed, partaking of the fierceness of the one, and the behaviour of the other. Conform unto the *Persians* in Religion, Language, and Apparel; distinguished from them in the colour of their Turbants only, which are commonly *Green*: and therefore by the *Persians* called *Jeslbas*, or *Green-caps*; the Turbants of the *Persians* being always red.

Chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which rising out of the foot of the Mountains, and passing thorow the midst of the Province, receiveth into its channel the River, 2 *Arias*, hastning out of *Aria*; and so together lose themselves in 3 *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*. Out of the joint streams of which several Rivers, is made a large Lake now called *Sabacambes*, but anciently *Palus Oxiana*, from the principal River.

Places of most observation in it. 1 *Alexandria*, or *Alexandria Margiana*, for distinction sake; one of the six towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Country: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*, next *Antiochia* from *Antiochus Soter* King of *Syria*, by whom fortified with a very strong wall. It is now called *Indion*, and esteemed for the chief of the Country. 2 *Jesinium*, seated on the confluence of *Margus* with a nameless River issuing from the *Seriphian* Mountains. 3 *Nigean*, as the printed Books of *Ptolomy* call it, but mistook for *Nisaa*, or *Nysaa*. 4 *Argadina*. 5 *Rhea*, of which nothing memorable. 6 *Maran*, near to which *Ismael* the first of the *Sophian* race, discomfited the forces of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Massagetes*, and the *Parni*, taking up the mid-lands; the *Derbicce* bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the East. United by the name of *Margians*, they were subdued by the Kings of *Persia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to his Empire: who to assure himself hereof built six Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the East; all situate on the tops of hills, and built at such convenient nearness that they might afford succour to each other, as occasion served. After this nothing singular in the story of them; involved in the same fortunes with the rest of *Persia*, till *Persia* was conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, though the rest of the *Persian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoke by *Gempas*, the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Persia* for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactria*, are still subject to them.

13 B A C T R I A.

BA C T R I A or *BACTRIANA*, is bounded on the West, with *Margiana*; on the East and North, with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamisus*, from which parted by the Hills so named, and the Mountain *Caucasus*. It took this name from *Bactri*, the chief City of it; and is now called *Chorassan*, but by some named *Bactra*.

The Country towards the River *Oxus*, is for the most part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all sorts of fruits excepting Olives; rich metals, and some precious stone, as *Emeralds*, *Chrysolites*, and *Jacinthes*. Plenty of pastures there be also, well stored with Cattel, and those of bigger bulk then in other places. But the greatest part hereof to the South and West, is nothing but a sandy Desert; and by reason that the sands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be discerned: inasmuch as Travellers rest all day, and take their journey in the night, that they may guide themselves by the course of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being lost or buried, whilst alive, in that sandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puissant and warlike Nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Assyrians*, nor with less by the *Persians*; always in arms, cruel, and resembling the *Scythians*, whose near neighbours they were, and (which may very well pass for their greatest virtue) *multum à Persarum luxu alienantes*, abhorring naturally from the *Persian* luxuries. But withal unnatural to their Parents, whom when old they cast unto their dogs, kept for that purpose, and called *Cane Sepulchrides*, or burial dogs. The women gorgeous in apparel, and proud of gesture, but prodigal of their bodies to their meanest slaves.

Bactria.

The men to this day do retain their ancient stoutness; but hard beset betwixt the *Persians* and the *Tartars*, who severally pretend a dominion over them.

No Province of the *Persian Empire* hath so many Rivers. The principal of which are 1 *Artamis*, and 2 *Zariaspe*, mingling streams together; as do also 3 *Ochus*, and 4 *Orgomanes*; all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a boundary betwixt the *Persian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either, we have spoke already.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 *Bactria*, the Metropolis or the chief City of it, situate at the foot of the Mountains *Sogdii*, giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Behchor*, and still keeps the dignity of the Metropolis: the seat of the Chief Priest or Bishop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Country also doth now belong) having here his residence, in power and reputation equal to the King himself. Well fortified, and stored with all military provisions: the birth-place (as *Magimus* saith) in these later Ages of *Avicenna*, that learned Philosopher and Physician; and in the first Ages, of *Zoroaster* the more learned *Astrologer*. 2 *Ebusimi*, once the Regal seat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of *Regia*. 3 *Zariaspe*, or *Charispe*, the chief City of the *Charispe*, a great Tribe of this Country. 4 *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Amianus*: these two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5 *Encratidia*, built or repaired by the *Macedonians*; as the name, being merely *Greek*, doth seem to intimate. 6 *Alicodra*, as ancient as the rest, but of no great note in the course of business. 7 *Isfigia*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of those before spoken of: superiour to *Behchor* in elegancie, state and greatness, though not in dignity; and held by some to be the pleasantest of the East.

This Country was as soon peopled as any since the general *Deluge*. It had not else been possible that *Zoroaster* King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him assaulted, should bring into the field an Army of 400000 men of this, and perhaps some other of the neighbouring Provinces, as most credible Writers say he did. Encountering *Ninus* with this Army he prevailed at first, and slew of the *Assyrians* near an hundred thousand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his forces, invaded him a second time with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 20000 Horse (the greatest on record in all Ages since that time, except that of *Semiramis*;) with which he overcame *Zoroaster*, slew him in the field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaster* is ascribed the invention of *Astronomy*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being studied before the flood, (if *Seth's* Pillars mentioned by *Josephus* be of any credit;) and therefore probably no otherwise to be ascribed to *Zoroaster*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or because he first committed that unto writing, which he had received by tradition; or because he brought those confused notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being slain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the wife of *Menon* (but on the merit of that service made the wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became subject unto the *Assyrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Bessus* a tall and cruel Traitor, did command this Province: and having villainously slain *Darius*, his Lord and Master, assumed unto himself the title of King of *Persia*, under the name of *Artaxerxes*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes* one of his Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruel death: the *Bactrians* became subject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in that State; one *Throdatus*, who formerly had the Government of it for the *Syrian* Kings, taking unto himself the title of King, and the possession of the Country, about the same time that *Asaces* and the *Parthians* made the like revolt. Wrested from his posterity by one *Euthydemus*, the recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cause put to the trial of a battle. In which, though *Antiochus* had the better, and shewed more personal valour in it than any time after: yet he was glad to come to a composition, and left to *Euthydemus*, both the Crown and the Country. Made not long after an accession to the *Parthian* Kingdom, it continued part thereof whilst that Kingdom stood; and in the time of *Ptolomy* (as long time before) had for the chief tribes or nations of it, the *Sattarae*, and *Zariaspe* towards the North; the *Comani*, or *Coamani* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in the South, the middle parts being taken up by the *Thucari*, said to be *gens magna*; the *Scorda*, *Savadii*, *Morice*, *Tamlyzi*, *Amarispe*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Persian* State, one of the last Nations which submitted to the new Pretenders: and at this time so neutral betwixt the *Persians*, and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is not wholly under the power of either. More averse from the *Persian* Government, since the alteration of Religion made there by *Hysmael*, and the rest of the Sect of *Mortis Hali*: these *Bactrians* being of the old race of *Mahometans*, which adhered to *Hummar*, *Osmen*, and *Abubeker*, as the true Successors of their false Prophet; and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* faction, whom they call commonly *Cuphers*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of *Mahomet*.

Thus having taken a survey of those several Provinces, which constitute the *Persian Empire*, and shewn by what means they were first united into one estate: we must next look upon the names and actions of those mighty Monarchs, who have successively, and from time to time enjoyed the Sovereignty. By what good chance *Arbeses* from a Deputy or Lieutenant of *Media*, obtained the Diadem for himself, we have shewn before: and we have shewn how liberally he enfeoffed the *Vice-Roy*s of the several Provinces (which in the division made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his share) in the propriety and command of those Countries, which before they held. Nothing reserved unto himself, and his posterity, but the title only; and perhaps some acknowledgments made to them, as the Lords in chief. Nor left he less liberty to his own *Medians*, than to the rest of the Provinces; which turning to licentiousness was so hurtful to them, that they were glad at last of that wholesome severity, which *Dioce*, a more Lordly King, began to exercise: who taking to himself a guard, building the Royal City of *Ecbatana*,

found in the Treasury of *Damascus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Susa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoined; in that of *Pasagardis*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Perspolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; besides the infinite riches of the Treasury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly specified: An huge and most un-speakable sum! Fourthly, in that the gold and riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, sent from *Persia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (besides which every Captain and common Souldier had provided and laid up for his own maintenance) loaded ten thousand Mules, and five thousand Camels.

After this overthrow of the *Persian* Monarchy, the *Persian* lay Nation obscure 535 years, viz. from the 3635 year of the world, to the 228 year of C H R I S T: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Successors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Arfacidan* Kings of *Parthia*. *Mesa S. Napier*, &c. as *Herodian*, "For after *Darius* had lost his Kingdom to *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, and after &c. as *Herodian*, "the Victor himself was dead also, the more potent Captains divided *Asia* among them. But discords "often arising, and the *Macedonians* puissance, by these often broils, not smally broken; *Arfaces* one of "the *Parthian* Nobility, periwaded the barbarous people of the East, and among them the *Persians*, to "cast off the *Greek* yolk, and stand for their liberty: he himself taking upon him the title of King, and "investing himself with a Diadem, A. M. 3718. The *Persians* by this revolt, got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the Tyranny, but the Tyrant only: these *Parthian* Princes lording it with as high an infolency, as ever the old *Persian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria* did before. From this *Arfaces*, all the rest of his Successors, and those too of the family of *Artabanus*, or second race of *Arfacidan* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperors that of *Cesar*, or the old *Egyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their usual stile was *Rex Regum*, or King of Kings: and by that stile with arrogance and insolence enough, *Vologeses* thus inscribed his letters to *Vespasian* the *Roman* Emperor, viz. *Arfaces*, *Rex Regum*, *Flavio Vespasiano*: giving himself the title of King of Kings, but the other nothing but his bare names only. To which, *Vespasian* without taking notice of the *Parthians* pride, returned his answer to him with this superscription, *Fl. Vespasianus Regi Regum Arfacidi*: whether with more scorn or modesty, it is hard to say. They also called themselves the Brethren of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefest Gods they worshipped. Great Princes questionless they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the world besides: whose names and acts occur in these following Catalogues of

2. The Arfacidan or Parthian race of the Kings of Persia.

A. M.

- 3718 1 *Arfaces*, the founder of the *Parthian* family.
- 3741 2 *Mithridates*, or *Arfaces* the 2d. assaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men, but without success.
- 3761 3 *Pamphilius*.
- 3773 4 *Phraartes*, the Son of *Pamphilius*.
- 3783 5 *Mithridates* II, brother of *Phraartes*, subdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.
- 6 *Phraartes* II, slain in a war against the *Scythians*.
- 3857 7 *Artabanus*, Uncle to *Phraartes* the 2d.
- 8 *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*.
- 9 *Mithridates* III, brother of *Pacorus*.
- 3903 10 *Horodes*, brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and caused to be slain in his own light. He also vanquished *M. Crassus*, and slew 20000 *Romans*: and because *Crassus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he caused molten gold to be poured down his throat. A miserable death, but in respect of the divine Providence, a most just revenge upon him for his sacrilege, in robbing the Temple of *Hierusalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the disgrace which thereby hapned to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompensed by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*, who slew great numbers of them in a pitched field, and amongst others, *Pacorus* the Kings Son: the day of the battle being the same, in which *Crassus* had before been vanquished. After this Victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the first *Triumph* that ever the *Romans* had held for a *Parthian* Victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have shrewdly shaken it at the least; had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that service. Finally, *Horodes* was slain by his Son *Phraartes*.
- 11 *Phraartes* III, a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruel, as the murder of his own father and many of his brethren doth clearly evidence. Against him marched *Marcus Antonius* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an absolute overthrow; of 16 Legions, scarce six returning home in safety. This King submitted himself and Kingdom unto *Augustus*, restoring the *Roman* enligens, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Crassus*. The only mark of the *Parthians* subjection, was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperours of *Rome*; which also was of no long continuance.
- 12 *Phraartes* IV, Son of *Phraartes* the 3d, whom he slew and succeeded.
- 13 *Horodes* II, Son of *Phraartes* the fourth, slain in a conspiracy.

14. *Vonon*

- 14 *Vonon*, substituted in the place of *Orodes*, but outed by
- 15 *Tiridates*, who was also dispossessed of his life and Kingdom by *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of courage, and being offended with the two last Kings, because they either had received the Kingdom, or at least the Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperours. Which *Artabanus*, though descended either from a female, or some of the Collateral line of the former family, yet being not direct heir thereof, he is looked on as a stranger to the blood of the *Arfacidan* the family of *Arfaces* giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which family we have the names of twelve Kings successively reigning: the most considerable of them being *Chofroes*, the 8th. King of this line, from whom the Emperor *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Persian* Crown, by *Sapores* the 9th. King of the next *Persian* Dynaity. But for those twelve Kings of this house, they are these.

The third Dynaity of the Kings of Persia, and the second of the Parthian Race.

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 <i>Artabanus</i> . | 7 <i>Pacorus</i> . |
| 2 <i>Bardanes</i> . | 8 <i>Chofroes</i> . |
| 3 <i>Goteris</i> . | 9 <i>Parthaspates</i> . |
| 4 <i>Vonones</i> . | 10 <i>Vologeses</i> II. |
| 5 <i>Vologeses</i> . | 11 <i>Vologeses</i> III. |
| 6 <i>Artabanus</i> II. | 12 <i>Artabanus</i> III. the last King of this |
- new race of the *Parthians*, whose overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the first *Persian* King of the 4th Dynaity, occasioned the translation of the Diadem to the natural *Persians*; after it had continued in two *Parthian* families, for the space of 470 years. Which Translation, as it was wrought by the irresistible power of God, who only hath the disposing of Crowns and Scepters; so in the way of second causes it may be principally referred to the barbarous massacre of this people, by *Antoninus Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperor; Who having negotiated a marriage with the daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to solemnize the nuptials, was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choicest of his Souldiers, and other Subjects, in *Triumphal* Ornaments. Which honourable train was no sooner come near his Army, but he commanded his Souldiers, (on a watch-word given) to put them all to the Sword, the King himself hardly escaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* succeeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* set upon him to revenge that slaughter. But understanding after a long fight of three dayes continuance, that *Macrinus* had slain *Caracalla*, they made peace with him: but were so weakened and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Persians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation, the Regal power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Persian* (his name perhaps suggesting some high thoughts unto him) did so well husband the opportunity, that he slew *Artabanus* the last King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the royal seat into *Persia*. Yet was not this so easily effected, the *Parthians* notwithstanding their former losses, maintaining another cruel fight for three days together; so difficult was it to vanquish that Nation, when their forces were broken; impossible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this success, sent a peremptory embassie to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman* Emperor, to have all the Provinces of *Asia*, which had formerly belonged to the *Persian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not so easily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to suppress so insolent an Enemy, marched towards *Persia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his Enemy more work, he divided into three parts: whereof the first was to march into *Media*, the second into *Persia*; the third himself led in the mid-way between both, to succour both, or be succoured by both, as occasion required. But his device succeeded not happily; for his two Armies being by the *Persians* broken, he with much danger and haste retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Persian* Kingdom; the establishment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperor being vanquished, and taken prisoner by *Sapores*, the second King of this race. So that now the name of the *Persian* grew so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Constantine the Great*, transplanted many of the Colonies and Garrisons of the North-west part of the Empire, into the East; to keep the *Persian* from growing too far upon the *Roman* Provinces; and removed also the seat of the Empire higher unto them, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*. And thus having shown the beginning and establishment, the foundation and building of the new Kingdom of the *Persians*: take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, until they once more lost the sovereignty of their own Nation, and became slaves again to more barbarous Masters.

The fourth Dynaity, or race of the Persian Kings.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 238 1 <i>Artaxerxes</i> 15. | 380 10 <i>Artaxerxes</i> II. 11. |
| 243 2 <i>Sapores</i> 31. | 391 11 <i>Sapores</i> III. 5. |
| 272 3 <i>Ormisdates</i> 1. | 396 12 <i>Vararanes</i> IV. 10. |
| 275 4 <i>Vararanes</i> 3. | 406 13 <i>Isdigerdes</i> 21. |
| 278 5 <i>Vararanes</i> II. 16. | 427 14 <i>Vararanes</i> IV. 20. |
| 294 6 <i>Vararanes</i> III. | 447 15 <i>Vararanes</i> V. 17. |
| 294 7 <i>Narsetes</i> 7. | 464 16 <i>Perozes</i> 20. |
| 302 8 <i>Misdates</i> 7. | 484 17 <i>Valens</i> 4. |
| 310 9 <i>Sapor</i> II. 70. | 488 18 <i>Cabades</i> , dispossessed by |

A a a a z

499

499 19 *Lambases* 4.
503 20 *Cabades*, again reitored.
533 21 *Cofroes Magnus* 48.
581 22 *Hormisdas* 8.
589 23 *Cofroes II.* 39.
628 24 *Siroes I.*
629 25 *Abhefir.*
26 *Sarbatts.*
27 *Barnarius.*
630 28 *Hormisdas II.* the 28. and last King of the race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth *Dynasty*: of whom besides the two first Kings, whose Acts are spoken of before, the most remarkable were, 1 *Vararanes* the second, in whose time *Carnus* the Emperor passing over *Eufrates*, and laying siege to *Ctesiphon*, was there slain by a Thunderbolt. 2 *Narsetes*, the son of *Vararanes*, who first discomfited *Galerius*, one of the *Casars*, in the Empire of *Diocletian*, and totally ruined his Army: for which *Galerius* being forced to lacquey it by the Emperors *Charlot* in his Purple Robes, was so highly shamed, that to recover his credit he set upon *Narsetes* once again, routed him, and took Prisoners his wives and children. 3 *Sapores* the second, the Son of *Misdates*, who began his reign before his birth. For his Father dying without issue, left his wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having signified by their art to be a male, the *Persian* Princes caused the Crown and Royal Ornaments to be set upon his Mothers belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puissant Prince he proved; holding continual war with *Constantine*, and his Successors, till the death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the best part of *Mesopotamia*: but withal a great Persecutor of the *Christians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are said to have suffered in his time. 4 *Idigertes*, a Prince so esteemed of by *Arcadius*, the Eastern Emperor, that he made him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his Son *Theodosius*: which trust he Royally performed, and was a great friend unto the *Christians* in his own dominions. 5 *Cabades*, first outed of his Kingdom by *Zamafpes*, and reitored again, was the first *Persian* King who permitted the free exercise of the *Christian* Religion. He flew *Zelzibers*, a King of the *Huns* coming to his aid against the *Romans*, because he had before promised to assist the Emperor; and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of his estate. 6 *Cofroes* the Son of *Cabades*, surnamed the Great, a constant Enemy to the *Romans*, from whom he conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and sacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the war brought home to his own doors, by *Mauritius*, who was afterwards Emperor, and his own Countries in a flame, he took such thought of it, that he died of a Fever. 7 *Cofroes* the second, as great an Enemy to the Emperor *Heraclius*, from whom he took all that was left of *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hierusalem* itself; most of it recovered by *Heraclius*: in despite of whom he caused all the *Christians* in his Kingdom to turn *Nestorians*. 8 *Hormisdas* the second, the last of the *Dynasty*, who being first weakened by Civil and Domestick diffentions, was vanquished by *Hannur* and his *Saracens*, Anno 634, burying to the glory of this renowned Nation in the grave of oblivion, or at least subjection.

The *Saracenic* Caliphs, having added this Kingdom to their huge Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*: not one Supreme for the whole Kingdom, but several Governours or *Sultans*, for each several Province: called by new names, and moulded into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorazan*, *Mouzenabar*, *Uzbek*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of themselves, and warring upon one another, as their humors led them, without relation to the *Caliph*, or Lord in chief. During which bustles it so happened, that *Mahomet*, the Sultan of *Persia* (so called because he was the chief in command and power) picking a quarrel with his neighbour the Sultan of *Babylon* (Pisafiris he is called in some *Christian* Writers, by whom taken or mistaken for the *Caliph* himself) made war upon him. But finding him countenanced and supported by the power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then possessed of some part of *Armenia* Major, to come in to his aid: by whose means he overthrew the *Caliphs* forces, and might have got the Sovereignty of *Persia* unto himself, if he had used his victory and his friends, with any tolerable discretion. But denying to pay these *Turks* their wages, and send them home, he occasioned them to make head against him, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader; to whom being once in arms, several discontented persons of the natural *Persians*, did unite themselves. Encouraged with which additions, and being furnished with Horse and Armour, and other necessaries, by the spoil of the Country, they give battle to the Sultan himself: whom having vanquished and slain, *Tangrolipix* by the joint consent of both Armies is made King of *Persia*, the Founder of

The fifth Dynasty, or the Turkish Race of the Kings of Persia.

- 1030 1 *Tangrolipix*, of whom sufficiently before.
2 *Axin*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Calm Muses*, his neer Kinsman, was sent with great forces against the *Christians*; whom he dispossessed of a great part of *Asia Minor*.
3 *Balak*, Sultan of *Persia*, in the beginning of the wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the Western *Christians*; against whom he is reported to have sent his forces. Of whose Successors I find nothing till the time of
1198 4 *Cassanes*, the last King or Sultan of the *Turks*, vanquished in the year 1202. by the *Cham* of *Partary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the death of *Axin*, or his next Successor, the *Turks* lost the sovereignty of *Persia*, though they kept the possession of some parts of it; the Sovereignty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*: and that it was so held by both, till the *Tartars* dispossessed the one, and destroyed the whole progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the opinion of *Benjamin Tudelensis*, a learned Jew, which had travelled most part of the East; to whose judgement herein I subscribe, as most found and rational.

The

The Sixth Dynasty, or the Tartarian race of the Kings of Persia.

- 1260 1 *Haalon*, or *Ulab-Kukhan*, by Occata the great *Cham*, made King of *Persia*; exterminated the whole race of the *Caliphs* of *Bagdes*.
1266 2 *Hakkakibon*, the son of *Haalon*.
1282 3 *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haalon* called *Tangador*, who made himself a *Mahometan*, and was named *Hamed*, the brother of *Hakkakibon*.
1284 4 *Argon-Khon*, the eldest Son of *Hakkakibon*.
1292 5 *Geniotkhon*, brother of *Argon-Khon*.
1295 6 *Badukhan*, the Uncle of the last, of which three there is little memorable.
1296 7 *Gazan*, the Son of *Argon-Khon*, who made *Casbin* his Imperial seat.
1305 8 *Alyapin*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is said to have been the founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the brother of *Gazan*.
1317 9 *Abusaid*, Son of *Alyapin* the last of the race of *Haalon*, that reigned in *Persia*. After whose death, Anno 1337. (being the 736. of the *Mahometan Hegira*) the more potent Princes of the *Tartars* seized on the several parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himself King of that part or Province, which he was possessed of. And amongst them *Gempas* the Sultan or Soldan of *Parthia*, (though a *Persian* born) put in for a share, and made himself Master of his own Province, and some parts adjoining: made on that ground by some of our *Christian* writers (who very imperfectly have transmitted to us the affairs of this Country) the sole King of *Persia*. In this confusion it continued till the coming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind driving all before him, composed the differences, by getting all unto himself. But as Philosophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance; so the course of business and the success of actions may instruct us also, that a Kingdom forced to bow under the command of a prosperous Army, is not so well assured to the Victor; but that fury of the war once past, it may return again to its former liberty, or open a more easy passage to some new Invader. And so it fared with the conquests and successes of *Tamerlane*, whose issue quickly lost this Kingdom, and almost all the rest of his other purchases: leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly by his own imprudence, in cantoning his Estates amongst his Children; and partly by the weakness of his Successors in the Realm of *Persia*, this Kingdom did relapse immediately to the same confusions in which he found it; having almost as many Sovereign Kings, as Provinces. Most of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the house of *Tamerlane*, and those who afterwards succeeded in the Title of Kings of *Persia*, of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Dynasty: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithstanding the great and prosperous successes of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Persia*, (and well enough content with that:) such as they were, we find them in this order following.

- 1405 10 *Mirza Charock*, the fourth Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in his appointment in the Realm of *Persia*.
1447 11 *Olegbeg*, Son of *Mirza Charock*, vanquished and slain by his own Son.
1450 12 *Abdalatife*; slain not long after by his own Souldiers.
1451 13 *Abdulla*, the Son of *Olegbeg*, and brother of *Abdalatife*, vanquished by
1453 14 *Abusaid II.* descended from *Moroncha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded on the death of *Abdulla*.
1461 15 *Zenzes*, whom some call *Jooncha*, others *Malaonchres*, discomfited and slain in battle by *Ussan-Cassanes*, Anno 1472. which was about 70 years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The seventh Dynasty of the Turcoman, or the Armenian race of the Kings of Persia.

- 1472 1 *Ussan-Cassanes*, by some called *Asymbeim*, by others more truly *Ozem-Azambec*, was the Son of *Tracheton*, one of those poor *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Princes, dispossessed by *Bajazet* the first, and reitored by *Tamerlane*; Encroaching on his neighbours, he was warned to desist by *Zenzes* last *Persian* King; with whom encountering in a pitched field he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the victory.
1478 2 *Jacub*, the second Son of *Ussan-Cassanes*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne; and repulsed the *Mamalucks* out of *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*, which they had invaded: He was after poisoned by his wife.
1490 3 *Julaver*, a Kinsman of *Jacub*, succeeded him in the estate, which he held only three years, and then left it to
1493 4 *Baisinger*, a Prince of the same blood; who living in adultery with the wife of *Jacub*, had conspired his death. 2.
1495 5 *Rustan*, assaulted by *Aider*, or *Secnider*, of the *Sophian* faction, who then began to be of power.
1498 6 *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the last King of this *Turcoman* or *Armenian* race; first vanquished *Secnider* at the battle of *Derbent*, and cut off his head: but was after overthrown and

A a a 3

and slain by *Hysmael* the son of *Aider*; upon the the quarrel and occasion which here fol-
loweth.

M. hem: the Impollor and first Emperour of the *Saracens*, by his last Will and Testament, bequeathed the succession unto that Estate, to *Hali* his neer Kins-man, and Husband of *Fatime* his Eldett Daughter. But *Abndezar*, *Hannmar*, and *Osmen*, three powerful men, and the Chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, successively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, supplanted first, and afterwards vanquished and slain by *Mubuvias*, a great man of war, who succeeded in it; and to secure himself therein, slew *Hafem* or *Ossan*, the son of *Hali*, and eleven of the sons of that *Ossan*; the twelf called *Musa Ceredine*, elcaping with life. From him descended lineally one *Guine*, the Lord of *Ardeville* in *Media*; who considering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the establishing of that high honour in his own family, as the right Heirs to it. A man of so great reputation among the people, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conquest of *Persia*, thought it no dishonour to his greatness, to bestow a friendly visit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his son, called *Aider*, who afterwards for the purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Tzophy*; the word so signifying in that language: who also proved of such esteem and power with all sorts of men, that *Ussan-Cassanes*, the first King of the *Armenian* or *Turcoman* race, thought fit to make him Husband unto one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the son of *Ussan*, and some of his Successors, seeing him grow unto such power and estimation with the common people; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to deprefs him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the Case then stood, practised to add unto his party under the popular pretence, of reforming things that were amiss in their Religion; and grew so powerful in the end, that he gave battel unto *Ruffan* and *Alamat*, the two last Kings of the former race. But *Alamat* having got the victory, caused him to be slain; and delivered *Hysmael* and *Solyman* his two sons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual prison. But *Amazar*, a man of a more ingenious disposition, afforded them not only liberty, but also good education: insomuch that *Hysmael Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertook revenge for the death of his Father, which work he fulfilled, having overcome and slain King *Alamat*, and his son *Elvan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King, or *Shangh* of *Persia*, altered the form of Religion: making *Hali*, and himself the true Successors of *Mahomet*; but condemning *Abndezar*, *Hannmar*, and *Osmen*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schismatics*.

Hence proceeded the bloody Wars, which to the *Persians* loss, have hapned between them and the *Turks*: the *Persians* burning whatsoever Book or Monument they finde concerning those three; and the *Turks* holding it more meritorious to kill one *Persian*, than seventy Christians. *Strabo* in his Commentaries, writing purposely of the Acts of *Hysmael*, saith, that the Jews on some fond conceit, were periwaded that he was the *Messiah*, they had so long looked for: But it proved quite contrary, there never being Prince that more vexed and grieved them.

The eighth Dynasty, or *Sophian* race of the Kings of *Persia*.

- 1505 1 *Hysmael Sophi*, the founder of this family, overthrown by *Selimus* the first, in the *Calderas* fields. 20.
- 1525 2 *Tamas*, the Son of *Hysmael*, vanquished by *Solyman* the Magnificent, who took from him the Countries of *Chaldaea*, *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*, with some part of *Media*. 53.
- 1578 3 *Aider*, the second son of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdom, imprisoning his elder brother; but his cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona*, his own Sister, having only reigned 15 days.
- 4 *Hysmael II.* eldest son of *Tamas*, restored unto his Fathers Throne; but murdered with the privy of his Sister also, who found him of too rough a nature for her to govern; having reigned neer two years.
- 1579 5 *Mahomet Codabanda*, advanced unto the Throne by his Sisters faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his first entrance caused her to be beheaded for the former murders. During his time, not fully settled in the State, *Amurath* the 3d. by his Lieutenants won from him almost all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.
- 1585 6 *Alas*, the second son of *Mahomet*, having treacherously practised the death of *Mirza*, his elder brother, succeeded his Father, recovered almost all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candabor*, and *Hyrcania*, to the Crown of *Persia*.
- 7 *Soffie*, the Nephew of *Alas* by his son *Mirza*, (whose eyes he caused to be put out on a false suspicion) at the age of fifteen years succeeded: committed by his Grand-father during his minority to the protection of *Emangoly*, *Chawn*, or Duke of *Shiras*. A Prince, who since he came to age, hath had a good hand against the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdad* and other places, which had been taken from them in time of *Alas*.

The Government of these *Persian* Kings, though it be despotical and severe, hath a great deal less of the Tyrant in it, than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: these cherishing their Brethren, maintaining Nobility amongst them, and encouraging industry; which makes them to be better served than the *Turk*, or *Tartar*; to both whom they are far inferiour both in power and treasure. Their Officers

Officers of State, and men of principal employment, for the most part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the East): such Persons being thought most trusty, because abtracted from the obligations of wife and children, they study more the Princes service than their own advantages. Their forces consist most of Horse, to which they are inclined more generally, than to serve on foot; and yet the greatest body of Horse which they have brought at any time into the field, came not to above 30000; but those well furnished and appointed, maintained on *Lordships* and Estates after the manner of the *Turkish Timariots*. The Foot-Souldiers of his own Countries, but poor and raw, and very seldom stand their ground, that defect being for the most part supplied by *Mercenaries*. The inconveniency of which being found by *Sultan Abas*, he served himself of children bought of Christian Parents neer the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian Sultans* had their *Mamaluks*) whom they call by the name *Cozal-Bassas*, or *Red-caps*, so named from the colour of their *Turbans*: trained up by them in their Religion and warlike Discipline, as the *Turks*, their *Janizaries*; yet far inferiour to the *Turks*, against whom if they have prevailed since the time of *Abas*, they may ascribe the greatest part of their good fortune to those Divisions and Rebellions, which in these late times have been frequent in the *Turkish* Empire. And as for their Sea-forces, they are inconsiderable. For though they have large Sea-coast both on the *Persian* Bay, the *Caspian* Sea, and the Southern Ocean; yet are they very poor in shipping: suffering the *Moscovite* to ingross the trade of the *Caspian* Sea; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the Southern Ocean; as formerly that also of the *Persian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormuz*.

The Revenues of this Kingdom in the time of *Hysmael* the first *Sophi*, were exceeding great: insomuch that *Tamas* his Successor, to ingratiate himself with all sorts of people, released them of all kinds of Customs imposed on Merchandise, either imported or exported. And this they say amounted to the sum of 90000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a million and 800000 Crowns of annual income. Which notwithstanding, his Revenue was computed at four or five millions of Crowns yearly; raised out of Domain lands, the tenth of fruits, the profit of mines, and the fine paid by every subject when he sets up shop. But *Tamas* finding this not to be sufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his money, and thereby for the present his Revenues also. Since that they have been much empaired by the Conquests made upon them by the *Turks*; who had got from them so much land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*, and yielded to the Grand Signeur one million of yearly income: whether improved again or not to their former height, I am not able to determine.

And so much for *Persia*.

O F

OF TARTARY.



TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with China, the Oriental Ocean, and the Straights of Anian (if such Straights there be), by which parted from America; on the West, with Russia, and Podolia, a Province of the Realm of Poland; on the North, with the main Scythick or Frozen Ocean: and on the South, with part of China, from which separated by a mighty wall, some part of India, the River Oxus, parting it from Bactria, and Margiana, two Persian Provinces; the Caspian Sea, which separates it from Media, and Hyrcania; the Caucasian Mountains, interposing betwixt it and Tercomania; and the Euxine, which divideth it from Anatolia, and Thrace. So called from the Tartars, a puissant and mighty people now possessed hereof; the reason of whose name we shall shew hereafter.

It containeth all those great and spacious Provinces, which the Antients called *Seres*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Sace*, *Sogdiana*, the greatest part of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europea*: extending it self the whole length of Asia from the River Tanais, to the Eastern Ocean; taking in *Taurica Chersonesus*, and some other parts of Europe also. So that if we measure it by miles, it is said to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South: a greater quantity of ground than the Turkish Empire, but of less fertility and accompt.

In measuring by the way of degrees, it reacheth from the 50 degree of Longitude, to the 195. which is 145. degrees from West to East: and from the 40th. degree of Northern Latitude, unto the 8th. which is within ten degrees of the Pole it self. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the first Climate, where the longest day in Summer is 15 hours, till they cease measuring by Climates; the longest day in the most Northern parts hereof, being full six moneths; and in the winter half of the year, the night as long.

The Countrey lying under such different Meridians, and such distant Climes, must needs be such, as no general Character can be given of it; and therefore we shall defer that with the names of the Rivers, and chief Mountains, to the description of the several and particular Provinces. But for the people, being much of the same nature in every part, we may take the measure of them here. Affirmed to be of square Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noses, ugly countenances, swart of complexion, not so much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps far enough off) as their natural sturdiness. Barbarous everywhere in behaviour, especially in those parts which they call *Asiatica*, and *Antiqua*: but withal very strong of body, swift of footmanhip, vigilant in time of service, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The women suitable to the men, scorning or wanting ornaments to set themselves out; or when they do, they seldom go beyond copper, feathers, or such precious gew-gaws.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was said; eating their Enemies when they take them, as in way of revenge; first letting out their blood which they receive into Cups, and use it as wine unto the feast. Though swift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on Oxen; about whose necks, as about Horses, when they travel, they use little bells, with which musick they are much delighted. Their speech, even in their common talk, is a kind of whining, and their singing little better than the howling of Wolves. They eat commonly with unwashed hands, the dirt and grease about their fingers serving as a sauce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink use Mares milk. Homely of habit, made of the coarsest stuff, and reaching no lower than the knee: and if they go the charge of furs, contrary to the custom of other people, they wear the hairy side outwards, and the skin next their own bodies; only to shew the richness of their Apparel. And yet so proud in this beggary, that they account the Christians but as Dogs, condemn all the rest of the world, and think their Cham the only considerable Prince; by whose name they swear, as by their Gods.

In matter of Religion it is hard to say, whether Mahometanism, or Paganism, be of most extent: some parts hereof being wholly Pagan, some wholly Mahometan, and some mixt of both. But of the two the Pagan is the better Gentleman, as being of the elder house, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of Mahomet not being entertained amongst them, till the year 1246.

And yet these have not so prevailed, as to extinguish the remainders of Christianity, of which there are amongst them many several Churches. The Christian faith first planted amongst the Scythians, by the preaching of Saint Andrew, and Saint Philip, two of the Apostles. Overgrown in these later Ages by the Sect of Nestorians, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to instruct them in more Orthodox Tenets. Before the prevailing of the Tartars, besides the Circassian Christians, of whom more anon, there are in the most remote parts of Tartary, whole Kingdoms of that Religion; as namely that

that of *Tenduch*, then the chief of all: besides some numbers of them in *Tangut*, *Cauchintees*, *Cassar*, *Samarcan*, *Karhim*, *Suchair*, *Ergimul*, and *Caraiam*; where in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who surveyed these parts about the year 1270. they lived intermingled with the Pagans. Not to diminish since the conquest of those Countries by the Tartars, but that they are of a considerable number, especially in *Cathay* it self: where they are said to have a Metropolitan in the City of *Cambalu* (the principal City of that Empire) and he so honoured by the great Cham, that for a time they receive their Crowns from no hands but his.

As for the Tartars, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard*, said to be the off-spring of the Ten Tribes, whom *Salmanasser* led away captive; and that especially for three reasons. The first is, that the word *Tartar*, by which name (saith he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, signifieth in the Syriack and Hebrew tongues, a Remnant. But unto this it is answered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as some; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they first dwelt, as most think: and again, that though the Hebrew and *חורר* signifie a remnant, yet can it not properly be applied to the Tartars; who so infinitely exceed the Jews, that they cannot be thought to be a remnant of them. Secondly, he alledgeth for proof thereof, that this people use circumcision, the character of the Jewish Nation. And hereunto it is replied, that circumcision was common to many people, besides the Jews, as to the Egyptians, Ethiopians, &c. and that rather as a national custom, than a religious ordinance; and again, that the Tartars cannot be proved to have received circumcision, before they received Mahometanism. Thirdly, there is brought to confirm this opinion, a place of *Esdra*, cap. 13. lib. 2. where it is said, that the Ten Tribes (that they might the better keep Gods Statutes) passed over the River *Euphrates*; and after a journey of one year and a half, came into a Country called *Arsareth*. To re-fell which, those of the contrary opinion find no better course, than by shewing the impossibilities of it. For the Tartars (when their name was first known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, observed not the Sabbath, nor any other point of Jewish Religion; and so the Ten Tribes retired not hither to keep Gods Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite West from *Affrica*, and those places, to which *Salmanasser* transplanted the Israelites; and so it could not be passed over in a journey towards the North. And Thirdly, it is very improbable, that the Ten Tribes should either be so simple, as to leave *Affrica*, where they were peaceably settled; or so valiant, as to force a passage through those Countries of *Scythia*; which neither Persians, Greeks, or Romans were able to withstand in the best of their fortunes.

To let pass therefore all imaginations of a foreign Pedigree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of Scythians; who pressed by want, or otherwise oppressed by the King of *Tenduch*, unto whom they were subject, armed themselves against him, obtained a memorable victory, and settled *Cingis* their chief Captain in the Royal Throne, Anno 1162. After which, growing of more power, and enlarging their dominions further; they united in the name of Tartars all the Scythian Nations: as *Mahomet* did those of the three Arabias, in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many several Tribes of the German Nations, were united in the names of *Franks*, or *Almans*. Not known in Europe by this name, till their many great and signal victories had made them formidable; which was about the year 1212. within very little of which time they had made themselves Masters of a larger Empire, than that of *Macedon*, or *Rome*, in their greatest glories. But being of a hasty growth, it decayed as suddenly; the greatest part of their European purchases, being conquered from them by the Dukes of *Moscow*, and the Kings of *Poland*, as their acquets in Asia, and *Africk*, by the Turks and Persians. Yet still are they possessed of so large a Territory, that were they not distracted into several States; or did those several States depend upon one Supreme: that one Supreme might very easily give law unto all his Neighbours, and make the Turks and Persians, tributaries, as in former times. But laying aside these speculations, of what they might do if united under one command: let us now look upon them as they are divided into these five parts, that is to say, 1 *Tartaria Precopensis*, 2 *Asiatica*, 3 *Antiqua*, 4 *Zaghai*, and 5 *Cathay*.

I. TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS.

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the East, with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*; on the West, with the River *Borysthenes*, now called *Nieper*, by which last parted from *Podolia*, a Province of Poland; on the North, with part of Russia; and on the South, with some part of the Euxine Sea: by this accompt lying totally within Europe.

It had the name of *Precopensis*, from *Precopia* a chief Town thereof. By some called *Tartaria Minor*, to distinguish it from the greater body of that people: the Inhabitants hereof most commonly passing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*, in which their Cham or Emperor doth reside most usually. The Country by them now possessed, part antiently of *Sarmatia Europea*, was inhabited by a warlike Nation called the *Tauri*: from whom those parts hereof which lie betwixt the Empire of Russia, and the two Rivers *Tanais*, and *Borysthenes*, were called *Tauri-Scythia*; that which shooth out into the Sea, encompassed with the Euxine on the one side, and *Palmus Montis* on the other, being called *Taurica Chersonesus*. In the description whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made bold with some part of Asia, to lay together the estate of the Russian Empire: so now to satisfy for that trespass, I shall make bold with part of Europe, to lay together the discourse and affairs of Tartary.

The whole Countrey plentiful of fruits, and the soil indifferently disposed to tillage and grazing, though more accustomed unto the last: the people more delighting in their herds of cattel, than in the tillage of their Garners. Camels, Horses, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great store of de-

Tartaria
Deserta.

if he did, he added by that action somewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the Roman Empire: this people being never reckoned amongst their Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name, of their infesting the Roman Territories (as the other barbarous Nations did): except they passed in the account of the *Goths, Avars, Huns, Avars, or* other of the *Scythian, or Sarmatian* people; by which the majesty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Perfians, Greeks, and Romans* were not able to do, was with ease effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Jochata, or Haccata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Batu, or Roysa*, one of their most renowned Commanders, subdued all these parts; together with *Russia*, on the North, *Bulgaria, and Hungaria* on the East. Subject at first to the command of the Great *Cham* of *Cathania*, as the rest of the *Tartarians* were, they came at last to have a Prince of their own; one *Lochtan Cham*, descended from the aforesaid *Batu*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at last of so great power, by conquering the *Asiatick Tartars* which lay nearest to them, that *Mahomet the Great* thought fit to keep them down before grown too strong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha*, then possessed by the *Genoese*, made himself master of the greatest part of the *Taurican Chersonese*, and the Port of *Tanaïs*; thereby commanding both *Maeotis* and the *Euxine Sea*. In the time of *Selimus* the first, who had married a daughter of this *Crim-Tartar*, (for so they call him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men against his Father; the *Turks* and these *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* should aid the *Turk* upon all occasions, with 60000 horse, if it were required; that they shall not make war with any of their neighbours, (except the *Moscovite* without leave of the *Turk*; that they shall pay yearly to the *Grand Signior* in the way of tribute, 300 *Christians*; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or deposition of his Predecessor, shall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royal Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that estate; that in reward of these services, the *Crim-Tartar* shall have yearly from the *Grand Signior* 5500 *Ducates*, in the way of pension; and succeed finally in the *Turkish* Empire, if ever the male issue of the house of *Ottoman* should chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, against the *Perfians, Poles, Hungarians, Moldavians*, and indeed whom not? and that with great and puissant Armies; the *Great Cham* sometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects (leaving but one man in an house to attend their cartel); and sometimes adding 50000 *Circassians*, and others of the *Asian Tartars*. And for the *Moscovite*, whom he is left at liberty to assault by this Capitulation, he hath had so hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571. he pierced as far as to the City of *Mosco*, and set fire on the Suburbs: which flaming into the City built most of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 miles in compass, within the space of four hours burnt the greatest part of it, and therein no fewer than 800000 of all sorts of people: A quarrel not to be composed; the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdoms of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, which the *Russe* possesseth; but even to *Moscovia* it self, as hath there been shewn. Nothing so punctual is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the contract; who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worst his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his Slave or *Vassal*. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling *Mahomet* the *Crim-Tartar* for a design to intercept *Osman Bassa*, in his way from *Perfia* to *Constantinople*; authorised the said *Osman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by some of his own Counsellors (corrupted with *Turkish* Gold) were strangled with a Bow-string; *Islan* a brother of the *Crim*, first sworn a *Vassal* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkish* Beglerbeg or *Bassa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of succeeding in the *Turkish* Empire, if the house of *Ottoman* should fail, hath been already taken into consideration, in our discourse upon that subject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to say; his Subjects having little money, and living most upon the bartery of their Cattel. But besides what he hath in Lands or Customs, and the 5500 *Ducats* yearly which he receiveth from the *Turk*; he hath the tenth of all the spoils which are got in the wars, and a *Checkine* for every Captive, for some two or three (whosoever taketh them) according unto their estates.

As for his power, what he can do in Horse, we have seen already; and as for Foot, and Ammunition, and other necessities, he is supplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth sometimes espouse his quarrels); by whose assistance they have brought the *Moscovites* to some extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Signior*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Bathori*, (whom *Amurath* the 3d. commended to the Crown of *Poland*) sent Ambassadors to negotiate his election to that Kingdom: and to induce them thereunto, promised them in his letters amongst other things, that their *Pope* should be his *Pope*, their *Luther* his *Luther*; and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with Horse-flesh. His Embassy entertained with *Laughter*, as it well deserved.

2. TARTARIA DESERTA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the West, with *Precopensis*, and the Empire of *Russia*; on the East, with *Antiqua*, and *Zagathay*; from which last parted by the River *Span*, which falleth into the *Caspian* Sea about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kien*, from East to West: on the North, with the *Scythick* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucasian* Mountains, and some part of the *Caspian*.

It took this name from the many *Deserts* which are in it; and is called also *Asiatica*, to difference it from *Precopensis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or because it taketh up the whole Continent of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Plolomy*, except some part hereof incorporated into the *Russian* Empire.

The

Deserta.

The Country of it self sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and industrious people, would yield large increase: as appears by the ill husbandry of the *Tartars*, who sow nothing on it but *Adill* and *Punicum* (grains unknown to us) and yet without giving it any tillage, receive very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a Nation that hateth *Agriculture*, and laugheth at *Christians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (so they call our bread) neglect all that which is not of a rank pasture for their Herds and Cattel; moving from one place to another, as the *Grafs*, fableth them; which maketh it so full of *Deserts*, and so empty of Towns, as to deserve the name of *Tartaria Deserta*.

The people or Inhabitants of it are of several sorts; derived from three several Originals, and disposed in three several parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly idolaters, now reckoned as a part of *Zigathay*, and there we shall hear further of them. 2. The *Circassians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the most part *Christians*; and 3. The *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mahometans*. These again subdivided into several Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*: of which the most considerable are, 1. the *Nagarian Tartars*, 2. the *Zavolhenses*, 3. the *Thumenenses*, 4. the *Kirgessi*; besides the *Hordes* or Kingdoms of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, added unto the Empire of *Russia*, where described already; and others of inferior note, not here considerable.

But before we come to speak of these people in their several places, we must first look upon the whole Country, as presented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: bounded by *Polomy* as before, save that it did extend more Westwards; and was unknown to him in the Northern parts of it; now possessed by the *Moscovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of fourty several Nations which did then inhabit it; and of about as many Towns of good estimation. Of which there are but few or none remaining; and for the names of some of the principal of them, we shall have them presently.

Rivers of most note in it, 1. *Marabius*, 2. *Rhomblus* the Greater, and 3. the *Lefs*; 4. *Anticus*, 5. *Theophanius*, 6. *Psathis*, 7. *Thysiris*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Vardanes*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and *Maeotick* Fennes, 10. *Odonis*, 11. *Alnata*, and 12. *Rha*, paying their Tributes to the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of these the principal is *Rha*, by the modern *Latines* called *Volgo*, by the *Tartars* *Edi*; rising in *Russia*, not far from the City of *Mosco*, (where we have described it.) Most memorable, besides the seventy Mouths or Channels, wherewith it openeth into the *Caspian*, for a *Medicinal* and wholesome root growing on both sides thereof; which the Physicians call *Rha*, by the name of the River; and for distinctions sake *Rha Punicum*, to difference it from *Rhabarb*, or *Rha Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this last being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Ob*, a River unknown to *Plolomy*, rising out of the Lake of *Kien*, a Lake in bigness like the Sea, and full of many little Islands (most of them inhabited.) Which River at its first parting from this Lake, is said to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing still bigger and bigger, emptieth it self at last into the Northern Ocean; the present boundary betwixt the *Russian*, and the people in the North of this Country.

Principal Mountains of this part 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River issuing out of it. 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caspian* Sea. 3. *Montes Cerannii*, lying in the furthest parts hereof (then known unto my Author) to the North and East. 4. *Caucasus*, or *Caucasii Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caspian* Seas; and parting *Sarmatia Asiatica*, from *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*. A chain of Hills of which *Aristotle* saith, *acumine & latitudine omnium maximis*, &c. that for height and breadth they are the greatest of the East; the tops whereof are lightened by the Sun-beams in midnight till almost day-break, when it is dark night in the valleys beneath. Not passable for horse or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* shore) but at one place only, called *Sarmatia Pyle*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucasie Porte*, from the Hills adjoining. Situate in the 81 degree of *Latitude*; and not far from the *Caspian* Sea: but that so intricate and narrow, that very small force may keep it against strong Armies. So carefully did Almighty God in his heavenly Providence, shut up this fierce and barbarous people, from the rest of Mankind, by such unfordable Waters, and impassible Mountains: not to be freed out of this Prison, till he thought good to use them, as the Executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the punishment of sinful and impenitent Nations. This said, we will consider those particular Nations, which before we named, and are now possessed of it in their several places.

1. Opposite to the *Precopenses* lie the *CIRCASSIANS*, extended from the *Cimmerian Bosphorus* and the Fennes of *Maantia*, towards the Eastern shores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the space of 500 miles; and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name imposed on them by the *Tartars*; whereas before, they were called by *Pliny*, *Zige*, by some writers *Zychi*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Plolomy*.

The Country very fitly feared for trade and Merchandise, as having a fair and large Sea-coast, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of those spoken of before passing thorow these tracts:) and not a few capacious Bays, and commodious Havens. Of which the principal were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Ceretic*, *Synada*, and *Batu*, two known Havens, and specified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. But these conveniences not much looked after by the present Inhabitants, who are more inclined to ransoms, than to trades, or Merchandise. A stout and Military people, trained to their weapons from their childhood; and sold as soon as trained to it by unnatural Parents. For from these parts did the *Mammalukes* of *Egypt* fetch their first Original; and from hence supply themselves with a perpetual *Seminary* of slaves and Souldiers raised by degrees unto the highest dignities of that slavish Empire; And from these parts the *Persian Sophies* are supplied with their *Coxzel-Bassas*, disciplined and instructed by them like the *Turkish Janizaries*.

B b b b

The

Deserta.

The Christian faith was here planted in the year 860. or thereabouts, by the Ministry of Cyril (or Chirvill) and Methodius; employed in that service by the Patriarch of Constantinople. In which respect their Churches are of the Greek Communion, conform thereto in rites and doctrine, and of the jurisdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters practical. For it is ordinary with these half Christians, not to baptize their children till eight years old; to hear divine service standing without their Churches, into which they very seldom enter (especially the Gentlemen) till the 40th. or (as some say) the 60th. year of their age: dividing the whole course of their life betwix God and the Devil, in dedicating their youth unto Theft and Robbery, their old Age (when they can no longer commit those villanies) to the difficult business of repentance.

Places of most observation amongst the Ancients, 1 *Cimmeria*, a Town and Promontory, so called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief people of these parts, of whom more anon; situate on the very shore of the *Bosphorus*, from hence denominated. 2 *Phanagoria*, in old times a well-traded Empory; situate on a little Island raised out of the Sea, by the care and industry of the *Greeks*, who had here a Factory. 3 *Apathurgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturnum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* surnamed *Apaturia* (which name she gave unto this place:) because (saith *Strabo*) when the Giants assaulted her, she craved help of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. 4 *Gerusa*, by *Pliny* honoured with the title of *Civitas*; of *Hercules*, who slew them all one after another. 5 *Oennontia*, near the mouth of the River *Thesys*; the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called *Saint Georges*. 6 *Amphacis*, bath the name of a City also. The names of their chief Havens we have seen before. But few of these, or any other mentioned by the ancient Authors, being now visible in their ruins: the chief of those which are now extant, are 1 *Locoppe*, 2 *Conioe*; but of no great note.

The people anciently though divided into the several Tribes of the *Thersagete*, *Zige*, *Turca*, the *Hunnas*, *Avares*, and *Maotes*, all noted Nations; besides the *Coaxira*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambe*, *Pselii*, and others as obscure as they; were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which those several tribes concentrated. Descended in the right of that common original, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, first planted in the Mountainous places of *Albania*: his posterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themselves in the Mountains called *Cimmerini*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, some of them passed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmerii*, not unknown to *Pliny* in whose time it was extant: and others in some tract of time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themselves in these parts; here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, and generally to all the people descended of them. From these particularly, as *Mesech*, *Magog*, and *Tubal*; the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Asia*, the *Moscovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians*, are to fetch their Original: all of them great and puissant Nations, and all involved promiscuously in the name of *Scythians*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable expedition, which they made into *Media* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Lesser Asia*: the *Cimmerians* by themselves alone, or by them as principal; the rest of these *Sarmatians* in a body together as a *Scythian* People. Distressed with want, or to disburden their small Country of superfluous multitudes, these *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulassus*, King of *Affria*, communicating their design with the rest of the *Scythians*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the course of the *Euxine* Sea, and passing thorow the Country of *Colchis*, first seized on some parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their carriages, and the weakest of their train, with sufficient guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they possessed themselves of *Sardis*, the Royal City, and after of the rest of the Country, or the most part of it; *Ardis*, the Son of *Giger*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withstand them. Both betides being wearied with long war, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like case betwixt the *Saxons*, and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the business: assigning to the *Cimmerians* all the rest of the Country, or the most part of it; and settling his *Lydians* in the rest. By this transaction there were so good correspondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyaxares*, King of the *Medes* invaded the Country of these *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invasion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*; *Halyattes* did espouse the quarrel, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and blood, they became one people; or at least passed not under the account of strangers, or the name of *Aliens*. Such end had this most notable expedition of these *Cimmerians*; not much remembered after this, for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many petty Princes, but all associated with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*: that King being so great amongst them, that his Son *Machabes* having married into some of their families, was made King of *Bosphorus*. But *Machabes* having made his peace with *Laelus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in succeeding times, till the invasion of the *Tartars*, by whom subdued, they acknowledge at first the Great *Cham* for their Sovereign Lord: whose power declining, they have successively been subject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Moscovite*; but most commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their nearest neighbour, and most able to hurt them. And him they furnished on command, with 50000 horse for the *Grand Signers* service: yet so, that they supply the *Persian* with his *Coxzel-Bassus*, and some mes serve under him for pay, as they do, under any which will entertain them. Governed like the *Swissers*, by their several *Commonalties*: yet so, that every *Commonality* hath some principal man (which the *Swissers* have not) whom they call *Morfeys* (that is *Dukes*) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt these and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greatest

Hordi

Deserta.

Hordi or Tribes of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of these the *Crim*, or *Precopenes* were a *Caffling* only; proceeding out of this great Swarm or Nest or Hornets, though afterwards they became their masters. Of the Country or the People we say nothing here, having sufficiently spoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, situate on the River *Volga*, and from thence so named: *Volgar*, and *Bolgar* differing but little in Orthography, and not much in sound.

This Country, as I take it by the situation, should be that which *Plutarch* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether so called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted alliance; or that he had made any *Congress* there, or from some other Prince of the same name, I determine not. And in this tract were those two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Plutarch* called *Columna Alexandri*, in whose time they stood without defacement: there being also *Ashes* erected to him, or in memory of him, near the Banks of *Tanais*, occurring in the same Author by the name of *Ara Alexandri*. Which probably occasioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander* in pursuit of the *Scythian* war, as far as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the course of his actions, that he never got beyond the River *Jaxartes*; distant from *Tanais* no less than 2000 miles.

This Tribe first governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, was in the year 1506. subdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made subject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Bassins* the Great Duke of *Moscovy*, who thereupon assumed the title of King of *Bolgar*: which his Successors still preserve, with the Town it self; well garrisoned to keep open the whole course of the River *Volga*, by which they manage the great trade of the *Caspian* Sea. But for the main body of this people, they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a limb of the same body with him; and are subject unto his commands: though by reason of their neighbourhood to the *Moscovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themselves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. East of the *Zavolhenses*, on the other side of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, spreading as far as the borders of *Zagathay*, and declining Southward towards the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Montes Hippici*: Accompted the best men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruel than the rest: void of all Arts, not having, or contemning Money, or the use of Corn. *Hest-flesh* and *Mares Milk*, their best diet; the flesh either roasted by the Sun, or heated by continual hanging at their Saddle-bow. And with such cheer (nor worse nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinson* and other English men in their travells to the *Caspian*, from the River *Volga*. Their chief Town, if possibly it deserve that name, is called *Scharajirzik*, the Residence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Sellibare*, where the said *Jenkinson* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by several *Morfeys*, the Heads or Chiefs, no doubt, of their several Clans: agreeing well enough together against the *Moscovite*; whom they infect with frequent inroads, and put him to the charge of continual Garrisons at *Casan*, *Astrachan*, and *Wiatka*. Their wars for the most part only *Predatory*, rather to get some present booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their dominion; and therefore commonly pacified, and sent home with presents. The Great Duke is so good a Statesman, as to think the expence of Money cheaper than that of Blood; especially when he hath to deal with such an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of consequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and consequently nothing to be got but blows. Their *Morfeys*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharajirzik* was the Chief; to whose direction, and appointment (especially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly submit themselves.

4. Betwixt these *Nagaians*, and the *Circassians*, lie those Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, spreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*: but intermixt with the *Heselites*, and *Bschurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of less power. Their life for the most part in continual motion, removing with their wives and families from one place to another; and governing themselves in their removes, by the light of the *Pole-star*. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentile*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number: not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a Tree, though they stink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or sweetened, before they return back to the same Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Priests*, by whom sanctified and besprinkled in their publick meeting, with a certain mixture, compounded of Blood, Milk, Earth, and Cow-dung, a most sweet Consecration, but good enough for them that desire no better. And yet with these the *Moscovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to send them every year some presents; for fear they should joyn with the *Nagaians*, or otherwise disturb him in his *Caspian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of these *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolhenses*, and the territory of *Wiatka* in the Empire of *Russia*. A warlike people, and living near a dangerous neighbour: for which cause they do not straggle so abroad in petty companies, as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the most part much delighted in *Negromancy*, and *Conjurations*. In which the Devil besetles them, that he suffereth them to raise tempests; and sometimes, by *Diabolical* illusions, to defeat their enemies. The only *Hord* of all *Deserta*, which still continue in obedience to their natural Lord, the great *Cham* of *Cahay* (if such *Cham* there be.) And unto these we may adjoyn the *Molgomozans*, all *Gentiles*, and the most barbarous of all: living in Caves, and feeding upon Worms, and Mice, and Serpents, and such other vermine as would be poison unto any but such *Molgomozans*, who are more poisonous than those Creatures.

These *Hordi*, together with the Kingdoms of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, and such of the *Russian* Provinces as lie on the East of *Tanais* and the River *Dniina*, make up that Country which anciently passed under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatice*: inhabited originally, by the Descendants of *Gomer*, *Mesech*, *Tu-*

Zagathay.

bal, Magog, the Sons of Japhet, spreading themselves more Northwards as they grew in numbers, out of Albania, Iberia, Colches, and the Pontick, or Cammerian Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the Olanda, Gerri, Samocolchi, Sucani, Seci, Scimnite, Agartie, Merdi, Canapfeni, Chanider, Basilici, Hyperborei, Hippophagi, and others of as little note: these last so called from their eating of horses, which dyet they have left unto their Successors. So like in manners and conditions, to the neighbouring Scythians, that they passed commonly by that name, and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into Asia the Greater; at such time as the Cimmerians fell into Asia Minor. For passing without opposition thorow the Sarmatian Straights, where they might have been easily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Country of Albania, they fell into Media: where they were encountered (but victorious,) by Phraartes, then King of the Medes. Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, assayed it by cunning; and first perswaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countries, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon, full of prey and presents, they marched towards Egypt, but were met in Syria by Psammiticus the Egyptian King, who had heard of their coming; and thought it best to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his greater cost. Out-lying the Median (as of the two, the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treasures, and so sent them back again into Media, from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that people, and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their tributes, and using all kind of infolencies: till in the end; Cyaxares, the Son and Successor of Phraartes, acquainting some of his most faithful subjects with his design, caused the better part of them to be plentifully feasted, made them drunk, and slew them; recovering thereby the possession of his whole estate. Afterwards, imitated by the English in their Hock-tide slaughter. Such of them as escaped this blow, and were not willing to be subject to the Kings of Media (as many of them were): were suffered to return home by the same way they came; where at their coming, they found foul work made by their wives and their slaves, the story whereof we had when we were in Russia. After this we hear nothing of them in the stories of the Greeks, and Romans, unless those Amazons, who attended their Queen Thalestris, when the belittled avilite on Alexander, were rather of these Sarmatian Amazons, than of those of Pontus and Thermodon, as I think they were: the nearness of their dwelling to Hyrcania, in which place they found him, inducing me to his opinion. But possible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that some of these Sarmatian tribes, though by other names, hearing of the successes of the Huns, Avars, and other barbarous Nations, which made havoc of the Roman Empire, might joyn themselves unto them, and make up their numbers: those nations being else too small to compound such Armies, as by them were brought into the field against the Romans, without such like helps. What their estate hath been since subdued by the Tartars, hath been shewn already.

3. ZAGATHAY.

ZAGATHAY is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imans*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen Ocean*; on the West, with *Tartaria Deserta*, from which separated by the River *Scane*, and the Lake of *Kity*; and on the South, with the *Caspian Sea*, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Persia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the great *Chims*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imamm* of the ancient writers.

The Country spreading out so far, on all sides, as before appeareth, comprehendeth all those Provinces and tracts of ground, which anciently were called 1 the Country of the *Saca*, 2 *Sogdiana*, with 3 *Zagathay*, specially so called, 4 and *Turchestan*, included antiently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imamm*; and 5 the *Terra incognita*, which *Ptolomy* makes to be the Northern boundary of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a survey of all which particulars, we shall find the temper of the whole.

1. *SACA*, or the Country of the *Sacans*, is bounded on the East, with the Mountain *Imans*; on the West, with *Sogdiana*; on the North, with *Zagathay*, properly and specially so called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Saca*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not.

The Country antiently either barren, or ill manured; full of vast Forests, wide Deserts, and the like uninhabitable places. Few or no Cities in it, and not many villages (*ciuitates autem non habent*, as my Author hath it) the people living most part in Caves, or otherwise wandering up and down with their droves of cattle; called for that reason *Nomades* by some antient writers. The name not proper to these only, but common to all those who followed the like roving life, as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Libya* and *Nuvidia* in *Africa*. Only one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (*λιθινὴ πύργος*, in the Greek) or the Castle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the most part by *Camels*, or travelling only with those Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was antiently into many Tribes, the *Carate*, and *Comari*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Missigete*, and *Comeda*, near the Hills called *Alcatanus*; the *Byle* and *Grynei*, more within the Country. All joyned in one by the name of *Saca*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progress into *Armenia* (to which they had an easie passage by the Northern banks of the *Caspian Sea*) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacafena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there slain by the *Persians* in the middle of their Feakings, they left there also some resemblance of their name, in an annual festival called *Saca*; celebrated by the *Persians*, in memorial of their good success in the war against them. Such as stayd here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the first *Persian* Monarch, did so good service to that Prince,

Sogdiana.

Prince, that *Amorges* the King of these *Saca*, is said to have rescued him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwise he had been slain, or taken Prisoner. In the declining of that Kingdom, they were subdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian*, and *Sogdian* wars; who hereabouts, by *Cohortanes* a noble *Persian*, was presented with a Bevy of beautiful Ladies; one of the which was that *Barsine* whom he made his wife, and had by her that *Hercules*, whom *Polysperchon* and his faction proclaimed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or suffered; as they have been made by the opinion or mistake of others; who building Castles in the Air, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Ancestors) from this Original: as if they were called *Saxons*, quasi *Saca-fones*; or the Sons of the *Saca*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of these *Saca*, when they left these parts, must be great, or little. If little, how can we conceive it possible; they should force their way through those valiant Nations of both *Sarmatias*, who to the last maintained their liberties and estate against the *Romans*? If great enough to force their passage (for stout and provident Nations use not to give passage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it possible they should be shut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Cher-fonse*? The *Saxons* then, whatsoever they were, were no Sons of the *Saca*; and what in likelihood they were, hath been elsewhere shewn.

2. *SOGDIANA* bath on the East, the *Saca*; on the North and West, *Zagathay* specially so called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Country, though of themselves a spur or branch of the Mountain *Caucasus*.

The Country indifferently fruitful, and very rich in pasturage, because very well watered. For besides *Oxus*, and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The principal of which, 1 *Dymus*, and 2 *Araxates*, both navigable, and capable of very good ships; both also running down the hills with a headlong course, and passing thorough the champaign Country, empty themselves at last in the lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolomy* saith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of most consideration are, 1 *Drepfa*, the Metropolis or mother-City of this people. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus* *Darapsa*; situate on the River *Oxus*. 2 *Oxiana*, on the same River, and from thence denominated. 3 *Marcuca*, on the same River also. 4 *Alexandria*, called for distinctions sake, *Alexandria Oxiana*, which name declareth both the founder and the situation. 5 *Alexandria*, for the same cause of distinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either because the last City which he built in these parts, or because it lay furthest off on the borders of the *Scythians*; against whose invasions or irruptions it was said to be built. 6 *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7 *Cyroschata*, more memorable, and not less antient, than any of those named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyropolis*; built by *Cyrus*, to fortifie his borders against the *Scythians*. It held out against the great *Macedonian*, a long time: and he himself coming nigher to the walls, than discretion would permit an ordinary General, had such a blow on the neck with a stone, that he fell to the ground, his eyes swimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for slain. But reviving he took the Town by a mine, and levell'd it with the ground, in revenge of so great a danger.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydrace*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Chersasmii*, near the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jasi*, and *Tachori*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepfiani* in the East parts bordering on the *Saca*; whose chief City was *Drepfa*; descended from their several roots, but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own person, as before was said; at the solicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Persian*, it rebelled again: Who being suppressed, and the Country in some measure quieted, *Arimazes*, a native of the Province, renewed the war. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of such notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force nor fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 5000 of his youngest and most active men, on the promise of great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noise, to shew themselves at the back of the Enemy. Which having performed with the loss of 30 of their company, *Alexander* sent one *Copbes* to *Arimazes*, to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back: who terrified with what he saw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was scourged and crucified for his labour. So necessary in the Art of war-fare is a peece of wit. After this time, it ran the same alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Persians* did; till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom still subject.

3 *ZAGATHAY* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Cathay*; on the West, with *Turchestan*, and part of the *Caspian Sea*; on the North, with the Country of the *Sarmydes*, the *Terra Incognita* of the Antients; on the South, with the *Saca*, and *Sogdiana*. Antiently part of *Scythia intra montem Imamm*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the first Prince hereof, since the time of the *Tartars*.

The Country reasonably fruitful, but not so rich in the natural temper of the soil, as the industriousness of the people, more civil far than any other of the *Tartars*; studious of good letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenious as *Mechanick*; will skilled in *Manufactures*, and very seldom without the confluence of foreign Merchants. Populous, and well-stored with Towns and Villages; both for their own more commodious dwelling, and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1 *Jaxartes*, now called *Chesel*, the principal of all this Country: great of it self, but made much greater by the waters of 2 *Dais*, another River of good note, rising out of the mountain called *Norofus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with those streams they are dischannelled in the *Caspian Sea*. 3 *Jartus*, and 4 *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are

nels of the *Serican* temper. Or else, we must correct the Copies of *Ptolemy*, by the History of *Arrianus* *Marcellinus*, who instead of *Anthropophagi*, placeth the *Althropagi* in the self same tract. The other Nations not distaind with the like reproaches, are the *Singgi* and *Anali*, nor far off the *Auzacian* mountains; the *Piale* near the River *Ochardai*; the *Gerani*, and *Rhabbani*, their nearest neighbours; the *Thraani* dwelling towards the East, the *Baba* and *Ostovor* more towards the South. These with the residue, governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an Elephant for the service of the Common-wealth, as was said before. And more than this we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad to their wares, and having little speech with Strangers, when they come amongst them. Being vanquished by the *Chana*, a *Scythian* Nation, from whom it is like that it took the name of *CATHAY*; (for in this we go by conjecture) they continued under Kings of their own, till subdued by the *Tartars*, against whom they made such stout resistance, being besieged by *Cingis* in their principal City, that when they wanted stones to cast out of their engines, they supplied that want with molten silver; and held it out so long, that *Cingis* finding victuals to grow short in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man should be eaten. But at the last being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens massacred, and their King or Emperor (as some call him) slain: after whose death, and not before, *Cingis* assumed the title of *Chan*, or Emperor. The residue of their Story we shall have hereafter.

SCYTHIA EXTRA IMANUM was bounded on the East with *Serica*, on the West with *Iman*, on the South with *India extra Gangem*; and on the North with the Countries comprehended in the name of *Alay*, which *Ptolemy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Scythia* because planted by a brood of the *Scythians*. *Extra Imanum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Scythia* which lay on the West side of that Mountain, nearest unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Country, have the name of *Alay*.

To look upon it as it standeth by the name of *Scythia extra Imanum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring Nations: the Mountains called *Auzacii*, *Cashi*, and *Ennodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*; as *Iman* joyntly to both the *Scythias*, which it divided antiently the one from the other: though now this last be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, because the *Tartars* on both sides of it, profess themselves subjects to that *Chan*. This the most famous Mountain in the East of *Asia*, beginning at the shores of the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean; and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or *Indian* Seas. By which account it divideth the *Greater Asia* into East and West, as *Taurus* doth into North and South, which Mountain it crosseth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140. as before was said. That part hereof which lyeth on the South of *Taurus*, was by the Ancients called *Bitigio*; and by the modern is named *Gates*: of which we shall speak more when we come to *India*. That on the North of *Taurus*, called *Iman* properly, was antiently most memorable for dividing the vast Countreys of the *Scythians*, into *Scythia intra Imanum*, and *Scythia extra Imanum*; a division much observed by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of some of the *Chans* of *Tartary*; most generally known by the name of *Alay*, but by some called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 2 *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hills so named. 2 *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chauranai*. 3 *Sata*. 4 *Issodon Scythica*, so called to difference it from the other of that name in *Serica*. These with the rest, and all the Country, as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolemy*, inhabited by the *Alti*, *Hippophagi*, or horse eaters, a diet still used by the *Tartars* or modern *Scythians*. 2 The *Issodons* who are said by *Pomponius Mela* to make carousing cups of their Fathers heads, first trimmed and guilded. 3 the *Cauranai*, and 4 the *Chata*, who being (as it seemeth) the most potent Nation, caused all the rest to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name also to the conquered *Seres*. Besides the possessions of which Tribes, there was also the Regions of *Achissa*, *Cusisa*, and *Auzanatis*; these last so called from the Mountains upon which they stand. More then this we have not to say of this Country by the name of *Scythia*, there being nothing memorable of it in the course of story, or worth the observation in the way of Chorography.

ALAY is bounded on the South with *Cathay*, specially so called, and part of *China*; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*; on the West with the great Mountain *Iman*; and on the East with the Nations or Countries of the Eastern *Tartars*. So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty Mountain, which the *Tartars* in their Language call by the name of *Alay*.

The Country utterly unknown to the ancient Writers, and not much canvassed or travelled by our Modern pens. In which respect I shall now trouble my self no further, than by giving a brief touch on the several parts of it. Of which the most that can be said, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not something in them of further use. Now for these Provinces the principal of them are, 1 *Cascar*, 2 *Chesmur*, 3 *Lop*, 4 *Camul*, 5 *Tainfu*, 6 *Caindu*, 7 *Carazan*, 8 *Cardandan*, 9 *Erginul*, 10 *Tanguth*.

1. *CASCAR*, bordering on the North-West of *China*, a *Mahometan* Country, but admitt'g of some Christians also; the largest Kingdom in all *Alay*, except *Tanguth* only, and furnished with many Towns or Cities both of Trade and Note, the principal whereof are, 1 *Hiachan*, the Royal City of this Country, and a Mart famous for concourse of Merchants, and variety of Merchandises. 2 *Cialie*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom so named, but subject to the King of *Cascar*, who in the year, 1603. was called *Mahomet Chan*, a Prince of some credit in those parts, but neither equal in Power to the King of *Tanguth*. The people generally rude and barbarous, in so much that some parts here of both sexes do indulge themselves this mutual privilege, that if the husband or the wife be absent above twenty dayes, the other party is at liberty to marry again.

2. *CHESMUR*.

2 *CHESMUR*, the Inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters* and *Inchanters*, causing the dumb *Idols* to speak, the winds to rise, and the Sun to be darkned. For studying which black Arts (if they come to them by study) they have many *Monasteries*; in which their *Hermits* or *Monasticks* live a strict kind of life, and are very abstemious.

3 *LOP*, memorable for a great Desert of thirty dayes journey; so true a Desert; that whosoever doth not mean to be starved, must carry all his victuals with him. Dangerous to Travellers, if not before-hand made acquainted with their danger: the evil spirits uling to call men by their names, and make them go astray from their company, where they perish with famine, or are devoured with wild beasts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4 *CAMUL*, an Idolatrous Country, the people whereof accompt it a great honour to them to have their wives and sisters at the pleasure of such as they entertain. From which brutish custom when restrained by *Mango Cham*, they petitioned him at three years end to be restored again to their former liberty; protesting they could never thrive since they left that custom. Which desire of theirs was at last granted, and is still in use.

5 *TAINFU*, more civil than the rest, the people being very industrious and good Artificers; making the most part of the Arms which are used by the *Chan*; and some also which they sell to Merchants.

6 *CAINDU*, with a Town in it of the same name, of great resort by Merchants (such as we commonly call *pitt Chinmen*) for *Womens veils* here made, with very great Art, of the Barks of Trees. And it is well that they have Veils to hide their shamefulness, the Women of this Tract being prostituted unto every Traveller.

7 *CARAZAN*, inhabited by a barbarous and savage people, who in the day time live in dens for fear of Serpents, with which (and some of them 10 paces long, and ten spans in thickness) they are much infested; and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lions. They have an use, that when any stranger cometh into their houses, of an handsome shape, to kill him in the night: not out of desire of spoil, or to eat his body; but that the soul of such a comely body, might remain amongst them.

8 *CARDANDAN*, near *Carazan*, and as savage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their bodies, which they count for the greatest Ornament. In case of sickness they send not to the Physician, but the next *Inchanters*; who taking Counsel of the Devil, apply some remedy; or if they think the man past cure, they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help; and so put him off.

9 *ERGIMUL*, possessed by an Idolatrous people, but mixed with some *Mahometans*, and *Nestorian Christians*. In which Country they have certain Bulls as big as Elephants, with mains of fine white hair, like silk, some of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine engender a race of strong and laborious beasts, not inferior in that kind to Oxen. Here is also found a beast of an exquisite shape, but not bigger than a Goat, which at every full Moon hath a swelling under the belly; which being cut off by the Hunters, and dried in the Sun; proveth to be the best *Musk* in the World.

10 *TANGUTH*, the greatest and most potent of all the rest, bordering on the North of *Cathay*; specially so called, and (like to that) inhabited by an industrious and laborious people, amongst whom the Art of Printing is said to have been extant a thousand years. Blessed heretofore with a great increase of Christianity; but now the *Gentiles* or *Idolaters* make the greatest part, with some *Mahometans* amongst them. And for the serving of those Idols, they have not only many large and beautiful Temples, built in the manner of Christian Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 persons; but also many fair *Monasteries* for the use of their *Volaries*, and *Recluses*. They are possessed of many Towns most of them well fortified, and planted with good store of Artillery. The chief of which, 1 *Sachian*, bordering on the Desert of *Lop*, inhabited by some of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they first used the Art of Printing. 2 *Campion*, the Metropolis, or Mother City of this Country; where the Christians in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair Churches: now over-numbered by the *Gentiles*, who have here many *Monasteries* for the use of their Idols, and many Religious persons dedicated to their service only. Who though they live more honestly than the rest of their Order, and hold it an impiety to tempt a woman to the act of lust; yet if the woman make the offer, they hold it no small sin to refuse her curtesie. 3 *Santa*, a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Succuir*, as being 5 dayes journey from the one, and 6 dayes journey from the other; by which we may conjecture at the long extent of this Kings Dominions. 4 *Succuir*, situate amongst Mountains clothed with *Rhubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the world; but so neglected by the Natives, that did not the foreign Merchant bring it into request, they would scorn to gather it. This once a Kingdom of it self, made subject afterwards with *Tanguth*, to the *Chan* of *Cathay*, or the great *Chan* of *Tartary*: But the fury of this Tartarian tempest, being overblown, the Kings of *Tanguth* did not only recover their

CCC

and end

Antiqua.

whole world. For this cause every day as soon as he hath dined, he causeth his Trumpets to be sounded, by that sign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the earth, to go to dinner. A fine dream of universal Monarchy. At the death of the *Chams*, the seven chief Princes assemble to crown his son; whom they place on a black course cloth: telling him, if he reign well, heaven shall be his reward; if ill, he shall not have so much as a corner of that black cloth to rest his body on: then they put the crown on his head, and kissing his feet, swear unto him fealty and homage. And at the Funeral of these great Monarchs, they use to kill some of his *Guard Souldiers*, whereof he hath 12000 in continual pay; saying, *Ita & domino nostro servite in alia vita. Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obsequies of *Mango Cham*, no fewer than 10000 were slain on this occasion.

These *Chams* are for the most part severe Justicers, and punish almost every small fact with sudden death; but their especially: Inasmuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a pail of milk from a womans head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the womans out-cry was apprehended, and cut asunder with a sword; so that the blood and the milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* punished with less than death, and so ordained to be by the Laws of *Cingis*, their first Emperor: a wiser man, than possibly could be expected from so rude a Country, and of so little breeding in the knowledge of Books or Business; the *Tartars* being utterly without the use of Letters, till the conquest of the *Huyri*, a *Cathian* nation, but of Christian faith.

What forces the *Great Cham*, in the height of their power, were able to draw into the field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, consisting of 1200000 Horse and Foot, as was said before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we shall find them not inferior to the greatest Princes. For *Cublay Cham*, long after the division of this great Estate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the field against *Naiian* his Uncle, and one *Caiadas*, who had then rebelled, an Army of 100000 Foot, and 360000 Horse: there being 500000 Horse on the other side. Which made almost a million of men in both Armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, and those of *Tur-Chistan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the first is said to have been able to raise 300000 Horse, and the last an hundred thousand more. For standing forces, he maintains 12000 Horse, distributed amongst four Captains, for the guard of his person; besides which he hath great forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occasion be: so that he need not fear any outward invasion, and much less any homebred Rebellions. But on the other side, admitting this for truth which before is said, we find him of no power at Sea, by he is Land-locked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he have any Port in the North-east parts of this long Country, where it joyneth on *Tartaria Antiqua*, it is so far off, and so much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his power, and not much to his purse.

Of the *Revenues* of the *Cham*, I can make no estimate, but may conclude them to be what he list himself: he being the absolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of Wool, Silk, Hemp, Corn, and Cattel. Then doth he draw into his own hands all the Gold and Silver, which is brought into the Country; which he causeth to be melted, and preserved in his treasury: imposing on his people in stead of money, in some places *Cockle-shells*; in others, a black coin made of the bark of trees, with his stamp upon it. And besides this he hath to himself the whole trade of *Pearl-fishing*, which no body upon pain of death dare fish for, but by leave from him. So that his treasury is conceived to be very rich, though his Annual income be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have prosecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors; yet must confess I am not very well satisfied in the truth and reality of the thing itself: it being rather my opinion, that there is no such man at this present time as a great *Cham* of *Tartary*, with Sovereign Power and Jurisdiction over all the other members of that vast body; but that this Empire being broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the conquered Countries did by little and little return again to their former Governments, or else were seized on by the *Viss Chams* or Governors of the several Provinces. For first I consider it as impossible that there should be such a mighty Monarch, of such absolute authority, such an infinite power, and such unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the space of an hundred years and more we should hear neither tale nor tidings of them, no not so much as of their names, especially in an active age, and when this great building of the world, hath such Caisements in it. For it must needs seem strange to a rational man, that neither *Jenkinson* who passed into *Persia* by the *Caspian* Sea, nor *Sir Robert Shirley* who spent much time in the *Persian* Court, nor *Sir Thomas Roe*, or *Sir Diddmore Cotton* (the first Embassadour to the great *Mongul*, the other to the *Persian Sophie*) should tell us any thing of this Prince, if such Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India*, the next neighbouring Country, should bring us home no tidings of him, or the *Jesuites*, with all their diligence should not find him out. Secondly, I consider it is a thing improbable, that if there were any such mighty Prince, keeping his Royal Court in the City of *Cambalu*, so near unto the Kingdom of *China*, he should permit the beggerly Nations of the Eastern *Tartars* to conquer that rich and mighty Empire in so short a time, he in the mean season sitting still as a dull spectator, neither considering his own danger, nor putting in for a share of so great a booty. Thirdly, I observe that in the treating of a Marriage between *Xanchius* the great King of the Eastern *Tartars*, now reigning in *China*, with a daughter of the King of *Tanguth*; the King of *Tanguth* is called Prince of the *Occidental*, or Western *Tartars*, by which name the *Chineses* call all the *Tartars* inhabiting the vast Countries of *Altay* and *Cathay*, specially so called, (as being Westward of themselves; and the Eastern *Tartars*;) which

Title

Antiqua.

Title the King of *Tanguth* had not merited or durst have assumed unto himself, if there had been any such great *Cham* then reigning in *Cathay*, and residing in *Cambalu*, as our Authors speak of. And fourthly, I observe it as a matter probable, that as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces upon the death of *Tamerlane*, the *Precopenses*, or *European Tartars* submitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the Power and Government of whose Successors, they do still continue; and much of the *Asiatick Tartary* being subdued by the *Moscovites*, the neighbouring *Tartars* did return to their ancient Government by *Hordes* or Tribes; that so the Kings of *Tanguth* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees possess themselves of the greatest part of all *Altay*, if not of some part of the *Proper Cathay* also. And therefore that some of the last great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other then the Kings of *Tanguth*, or the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, in whom (if any where) remaineth the Succession of the House of *Cingis*.

From these Premises I conclude, that all which hath before been spoken touching the great power, authority, and revenue of the great *Chams* of *Tartary*, must either be referred unto the times of their greatest glory, when their Empire was entire, or not much dismemored; or else relate, with some qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tanguth*. But these are *observations* and *considerations*, with the conclusion issuing from them, I willingly submit unto better Judgments.

And thus much for TARTARY.

OF

them; so strait, that a man standing in the middle, may see either end: each end being shut up with a Gate of great strength and beauty; and those Gates fortified and strengthened with thick plates of iron. Generally greater and more stately than those of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegance which the *Magnificent Churches* and more sumptuous buildings for the dispatch of publick business, in these parts abound with; and their private houses for the most part are also low, and destitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries, the principal ornaments and graces of *Architecture*. Nor are their Cities built on any for resort, or trade, but for strength and safety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the walls of brick or stone, strong above belief, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places: and every night the Gates not only locked, but sealed; not to be opened till unsealed by the principal Magistrate. So like they are to one another that we may say with *Ovid* on the like occasion.

— *Facies non omnibus una,
Nec diversa tamen, qualem decet esse fororum.*

Which I find thus Englished by *G. Sandis*,

Amongst them all no two appear the same,
Nor differed more then Sitters well became.

But not to rest our selves on this general Character, let us take a more particular view of some of the principal. And in that list we find, 1 *Quinsay*, called *Sunkien* by the Natives, situate somewhat towards the South, on the Western borders of this Kingdom, where it confineth on *Cashy*; of this Town many things are reported beyond all belief, as namely, that it contained once in circuit an hundred miles, and had in the midst of it a Lake of 30 miles compass; in which Lake were two goodly Islands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all necessities, either for majesty, or convenience; in which are celebrated the publick Feasts, and the marriages of the better sort; The Lake nourished with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polysanga*, and *Cacamaican*; on which Rivers 12000 Bridges are said to have lifted up their stately heads: and under whose immense Arches, great Ships with sails spread abroad, and *top and top gallant*, might and did usually pass. It is also said to have had ten Market-places, each of them four miles asunder, and every one in form *quadrangular*, the sides thereof half a mile in length. Here were said also to be twelve Companies of Trademmen or Artizans, each Company having 12000 shops, and in all a million and 600000 Families. But whatsoever it was in the former times, certain it is that at this time (if it hath at this time any being at all) partly on the removal of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and since to *Nankin* and *Pekin* by the *Princes* of the house of *Hombu* and partly the fury of the Wars, and partly by the violence of Earth-quakes; it hath lost no small part of her ancient beauty and renown. 2 *Unguen*, famous for the abundance of *Sugar* there made. 3 *Nankin*, seated 9 leagues from the Sea, on the great River of *Kiang*, whereon ride for the most part the Kings ships, besides such as belong to private men. The Town in compass no fewer than 10000 of the Kings ships, besides such as belong to private men. The Town in compass 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and stately Gates: The streets in length two leagues, wide and paved; the number of houses is about 200000 so that it may equal four of the fairest Cities of *Europe*. 4 *Pekin* or *Paglia*, in the middle of the Province so named (being one of the four Northern Provinces, which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdom) where the King continually resideth; and that, either because the air hereof is more healthful and pleasant, than any of the other; or because it lieth near unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetual War: so that from hence the dangers which may by their invasions happen unto the Country, may with more convenience be either prevented, or resisted. The City said to be inferior to *Nankin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Souldiers, and Magistrates, occasioned by the Kings abode. Environed on the North with two walls, of so great breadth, that twelve horsemen may run abreast upon them; on the North with one wall only, but that so strong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear a little annoyance on that side as they do on the other. But the greatest Ornament hereof is the Royal Palace, compassed about with a triple wall, the outwardmost of which would well environ a large City, within which space, besides the many lodgings for *Eunuchs* and other Courtiers, are Groves, Hills, Fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleasure, larger in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royal Palaces of *Europe*: First built by some of the *Tartar* Kings of this Country in imitation of the Royal Palace of *Xaindu*, mentioned in *Chatay*, honoured sometimes with the residence of the *Chims* themselves, which as it gave unto the City the name of *Pekin*, that is to say, the Court or City of the King, in the language of *China*, so gave it occasion unto some Writers to make this and *Cambalu* the same, both names being of the same signification, though in divers Languages. 5 *Canton*, supposed to be the *Cattigara* of *Ptolomy*; by the *Chinois* called *Quamchen*, the least of the *Metropolitan* Cities of this Country, but beautified with many triumphant Arches, a navigable River, large streets, and many goodly Bridges. Fortified with deep trenches, 83 Bulwarks, and seated in so rich a soil both for Fowl and Cattel, that here are said to be eaten daily 6000 Hogs, and 12000 Ducks, besides proportionable quantity of other victuals. If this be one of the least of their *Metropolitans*, what may we fantasie of the greatest? A Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City itself; but at night excluded, and forced to find lodging in the Suburbs. By reason of which restraint they have settled their Mart at *Macao* the Port Town to this; where they have their Factor, and many families; the Town being almost wholly peopled by them. 6 *Leatung*, the chief City of *Leatung*, (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the first Town taken by the Eastern

Tartars

Tartars in their attempts upon this Kingdom, by this door 'making themselves' an entrance into all the rest. 7 *Ninguyuen* made the *Metropolis* of *Leatung* after the taking of *Leatung* by the Eastern *Tartars*: 8 *Sigan* or *Sigan*, the chief City of *Xenfi* another of the four Northern Provinces, and honoured sometimes with the Kings residence. 9 *Xuoking* on the south side of the River *Cienhang*, one of the fairest Cities of *China*; so environed with sweet Waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty, as rounding it in a Boat; consisting of large and fair streets paved on both sides with white square stones; and in the middle of them all runs a Navigable Channel whose sides are garnished with the like ornament; and of the same stone there is also built many fair Bridges, and triumphant Arches; the houses being all of the same stone also, which render it the neatest (though not the biggest) City in this mighty Kingdom: 10 *Suchuan*, about two dayes journey from the Sea, seated in Marishes like *Venice*, but more commodiously, because those Marishes are of fresh water; the streets and houses founded upon Piles of Pine-tree; with many bridges, and conveniences for passage both by land and water. Well traced, as the fittest Center for dispersion of Merchandise from all the other Ports of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of Ships, almost denying faith to the eyes, which would think all the Ships of *China* to be here assembled. So infinitely rich, that the small Region whereof it is the head containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the King yearly income. 11 *Hamsu*, or *Hanchen* on the North side of the River *Cienhang*, out of which furnished with a Channel of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Chequian*, about two dayes journey from the Sea, in compass less than *Nankin*, but better builded: no place in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other pleasures; but all employed for shops, houses, and other edifices. So beautified with Triumphant Arches, erected to the honour of deserving Magistrates, that in one street there are 300 of great mass or workmanship. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-sides of the Channels watering every street, beset with trees of shade, and most excellent fruits: and in the middle of the City a round high Mountain, which gives the eye a gallant prospect into every street. And not far off a pleasant Lake, of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with Groves and Gardens, and the Lake itself even clothed with Vessels of all sorts, on which the Citizens use to feast, and entertain their idle time with Plays and Spectacles. Two Cities so replenished with all kinde of pleasures, that the *Chinois* use it for a Proverb, *Thien Xam, thien thum, Hamsu hum*, that is to say, Look what the Hall or Presence-Chamber is in Heaven, that *Hamsu* and *Suchuan* are on earth. 12 *Fochea*, beautified amongst many other stately Structures, with a Magnificent Tower erected on 40 marble Pillars, of great elegance, cost, and bigness, every pillar being 40 spans in height, and 12 in breadth: not to be parallel'd, as some say, by any the like work in *Europe*. 13 *Lochian*, in which are 70000 families. 14 *Colans*, famous for the best Porcellaine. 15 *Sciannay*, by some called *Thienin*, a station to which an incredible number of Ships resort, both by Sea and River from all parts of this Kingdom; seated within 24 hours sail of the Isle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with strong Garrison, and a Navy. Situate in a pleasant and wholesome soil, the whole Country so set forth with trees, as if it were one continued Orchard. So populous, that it containeth 40000 households, most of which get their livelihood by weaving Cottons: it being supposed that here are 200000 persons which attend that Manufacture. 16 *Chinchiansu*, whence by a River made by hand, there is a passage to *Suchuan*; the water of which never freezeth, and for that cause so clogged with ships in time of winter, that the passage is stopped with the multitudes of them. 17 *Zuanchen* a most rich and beautiful City environed with large waters, and the only Southern Port within the Land, to which Ships or Boats may have access. 18 *Caiton* or *Caifang*, seated upon the River *Kiang*, a City once of three Leagues in compass, whose harbour was seldom without 500 Ships, and sometimes honoured with the Seat or Residence of the Kings themselves; most miserably destroyed Anno 1642. by *Zunchinus* the late King of this Country, who breaking down the dams and sluices to let in the River, for the dislodging of some Thieves and Out-laws, who had then besieged it, gave it so great and forcible a passage towards the Town, that it bare down the greatest part of the houses of it, and therein drowned above 300000 of the Natural Citizens; before which time the *Metropolis* or chief City of the Province of *Honan*. 19 *Kaiangchen* on the South-side of the River *Croccus*, the richest and the fairest City in these parts of the Country, commodiously seated to command that River. 20 *Chatking* the head City of the Province of *Quangung*, for the strength and conveniency of its situation thought fittest for the seat of *Tungty*, the last declared Emperor of the *Chims* against the *Tartars*. 21 *Quelin* the chief City of the Province of *Quangfi*. 22 *Taitung* the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Xanfi* or *Cansay*, another of the four Northern Provinces, but not else observable for any thing I finde of it, either in point of Trade or Story. 23 *Nanchang* a chief City of the Province of *Kianfi*, of which little memorable; and less of 24 *Cergiron*, but that it is like unto the rest in form and structure.

Besides the Provinces before mentioned, there are three others not directly under the dominion of the Kings of *China*, though depending on it, that is to say, 1 the Province of *Suchuen*, 2 the Island of *Canton*, 3 the Island of *Cheuxan*.

1. The Province of *Suchuen*, lieth on the Southwest of this Kingdom of the same nature both for soil and air with the rest of *China*, but possessed by a more warlike people; the women here being trained up to fears of Arms, and so well practised on their weapons, that when the Queen hereof went to the aid of the Emperor *Vanley* against the *Tartars*, Anno 1618. she took with her a small Army of 3000 women, performing Actions not unworthy the bravest men: the chief City hereof is called *Cingm*, of great capacity, and so exceeding populous withal, that *Changhienchungm* (that most barbarous Tyrant) caused no fewer than 600000 of them (men, women and children, all indifferently) to be slaughtered in one day before his face. The whole Country governed for a long time by its own Kings of the same *Tai-mingian*

D d d d

mingian race with the Kings of China, from whom having received their investiture, they were afterwards of absolute authority over their own subjects, who acknowledge no other King but him. And in this State it did continue, till the year 1644. when *Changhienchungus*, whom before I named, entering into this Country with his rabble of Rogues made a Conquest of it, murdered the young King, Son to the *Amazonian Queen*, which before we spake of: dispeopled the great City of *Chingus*, butchered at one timetwenty thousand Priests, at another time eighteen thousand Students; and finally committed such unspeakable outrages, that the *Tartars* in meer pity to that wretched people, sent an Army against him, by which he was vanquished, and slain; this Province thereupon submitting to the *Tartars* as their great deliverers.

2. *Corea*, is an Island of the *Eastern Ocean*, not far from the North-East of *China*, over against the fall of the River *Talo*. The quality of the soil, the dimensions of it, and what Cities it containeth in it, I have no where found. The people far more warlike than those of *China*, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Japonites*, with whom they have always either open wars, or uncertain peace. Invaded by those Islanders and in danger to be conquered by them, they made an offer of their Country to the King of *China*; who having repulsed the Invaders, restored their Country freely to them, without laying any other Imposition on them, than of love and gratitude, which obligations those of *Corea* have discharged most fully. For when *Vanley* the late Emperour of *China* was first invaded by the *Tartars*, they sent unto his aid twelve thousand men well Armed, and exercised in the Wars; increasing their supplies in the time of *Thrinkins*, who next but one succeeded *Vanley*. Drawing the whole storm upon themselves by those friendly aids, they were accordingly assisted by the King of *China*, whose forces came so seasonably in the heat of a Battel between the *Coreans* and the *Tartars*, that the *Tartars* after a long and terrible fight, were driven out of the Island, but with such incredible loss on all sides, that few or none escaped of the Army of *China*, seventy thousand of the *Coreans* slain, and the *Tartars* leaving fifty thousand of their men behinde them; after this they were unmolested, till the fatal and final Conquest of the Kingdom of *China*, when seeing the *Tartars* Lords of all, and no possibility of resistance, they submitted to them, about the year 1648. upon condition of retaining their Hair and Habit, which no extremity of personal danger, or fear of publique desolation, could compell them to alter.

3. *Cheuxan*, is an Island of the same Seas, on the South of *Corea* opposite to the City of *Nympus* in the Main Land of *China*; an Island which being heretofore a dwelling place of poor Clowns and Fishermen only, is now become a potent Kingdom. For *Lu. Regulus*, chosen by a party of his own to succeed to the broken Crown of *China*, and finding no hopes of withstanding the great power of the *Tartars*, retired himself into this Island with his friends and followers, followed not long after by great multitudes of the Natural *Chinise*, who chose rather to forsake their Country, than to conform in hair and habit to the will of the *Tartars*; Infomuch that there are now found in this Island threescore and ten Cities, with a strong and formidable Army, which hitherto hath contemned all the *Tartarian* Power and Forces, and watch for some happy occasion to advance again their Kingdom in *China*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the *Sina*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, were towards the North, the *Semantini*, bordering a mountain of that name, and the only one remembered in all this Country: more Southward, the *Acadria*, and *Aspiethra*; Towards the Sea the *Anabasta*, and *Ichthyophagi* (these last so called from living wholly upon fish.) United into one body by the name of *Sina*, and known by that name to the *Romans*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, who boundeth them on the North with *Serica*, on the West with *India extra Gangem*, and on the East and South with a *Terra Incognita*: which though it make up the least part of the Modern *China*, *Serica* touching only on a Corner of the Northwest of it, and the main Ocean washing it on the East and South: yet the *Arabians* in their *Tzinin*, and our late *Latine* Writers in their *Sina* and *Sinenium Regnum*, do from hence give the denomination to this mighty Kingdom. How far they stretched beyond the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, and whether they subdued the Eastern and more Northern Nations, or were Conquered by them, it is hard to say; nor is it easie to resolve, from what original these and the rest of the Inhabitants do derive themselves, whether from the *Indians*, or the *Scythians*: or that it was primitively planted by some of the posterity of *Noah*, before the enterprise of *Babel*: which last may probably be concluded from the extream populousness of the Country, the many magnificent Cities; their Industry and Ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their neighbours, more ignorant in those things than themselves. And hereunto the *Chronicles* of *China* seem to give some ground, which tell us of three hundred and forty Kings, which for the space of four thousand years have therein reigned. For as their *Chronicles* inform us, (if they may be credited) the Countrey being without Rule or settled Government, was first reduced into order by one *Pitey*, the Son of *Ezelem*; by whom the people were instructed in *Physick*, *Astrology*, *Divination*, and the Art of Tillage: to which, this *Pitey*, having found out the way of cutting or sawing Timber, added the use of Ships and Houses, and many other the effects of *Mechanical* hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of his Commanders, subdued a great part of the Countrey, he drew them into Towns and Villages; distributed them into Offices, and several Trades, disposing those of the same Trade into Streets by themselves; and commanding that no man without leave from himself, or his Officers, should follow any other Trade than that of his Father. He prescribed them also the fashion of their Garments, taught them the art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdom well established unto his Posterity. Of this race there are said to have been 217 Kings, who held the State 2257 years. The

The last of them was that *Tzaintzon*, who being ill-neighbourd by the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) is said to have built that vault wall spoken of before: extended 400 Leagues in length, and at the end of every League a strong *Rampart* or *Bulwark*, continually garrisoned, and well furnished with all warlike necessaries. He being slain by some of his Subjects, burdened and waited with his work, the race of *Pitey* ended; and that of *Anchosan* succeeded, a Prince of much prudence, but greater courage. In his line it continued under 25 Kings, but frowly shaken towards the close by a Civil War, betwixt *Tynthey* the 23. of his house, and his Nephew *Lampy*. Hardly well settled under *Quinty* the last of this house, when *Tzolun*, a great Tyrant of the other faction, set upon him, and slew him. And so the majesty of the blood-royal being trod under foot, the Crown was also tossed from one hand to another, and made a prey unto the strongest: there being of the race of this *Tzolun*, eight Kings, reigning 62 years; Of the race of *Dian*, five Kings, who reigned thirty one; Of the race of *Izoy*, three only, who reigned thirty seven; Of the race of *Tenco*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 294 years; and eight there were who reigned 120 years, of the house of *Tamtzon*. Of other upstart families to the number of five, were fourteen Kings also, who governed only for the space of 66 years: And then one *Zaitzon*, deriving himself from *Vuey*, the first King of this Countrey, obtained the Kingdom; and seventeen of his Posterity, for the space of 320 years, governed with much peace and honour. Forfar, the last King of that Royal Family, foretold by Prophecy that he should be deprived of his Kingdom by one who had an hundred eyes, neglected the *Advertisment*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agreeable to that prediction, when vanquished by *Chifan-baan* (which word signifieth an hundred eyes) Lieutenant unto *Ufan*, a *Tartarian* Prince, but *Fendatary* and Vassal to the Great *Cham*. *China* thus made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was governed for the space of 93 years, under nine *Tartar* Kings, Tributaries to the Great *Cham*, and dependants on him: the *Chams* themselves many times passing into *China*, and abiding there according as their pleasures or affairs did invite them to it, which occasioned such a continual intercourse betwixt those of *China* and *Cathay*, that they have much participated ever since that time, of the manners and customs of each other. But here it is to be observed, that the *Tartars* spent almost as much time in the Conquest of *China*, as they did in the possession of it; the war being first begun, Anno 1206. finished 1268. the *Tartars* being totally outed when they had reigned here 90 years only, that is to say, Anno 1358. or thereabouts. For then it hapned that a mean person called *Hugh*, considering with himself the discontentedness of the *Chinise* under so long Bondage, the luxury of the *Tartars*, effeminated with the pleasures of that Countrey, and the unwarlike temper of *Gino Cham*, then reigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raised to himself so strong a party, that in short time he drove the *Tartars* out of all; forcing them to betake themselves to those parts of the Eastern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom of *Ninche*.

1. Finally turning towards the West, he not only recovered back th *China* such parts thereof (as had been layed unto *Cathay*, and incorporated with it by the *Tartars*; but growing thereby a formidable neighbour to the *Cham* himself: Advanced for this great service to the Crown of *China*, Anno 1269. he took unto himself the name of *Hungus* (our late Writers commonly call him *Hombu*) which signifieth as much as the famous Warrior, and gave unto his children, and their posterity, the name of the *Taingian* Family; which they still continue. For the recovery of this Country, great *Tamurlane* mustered up his Forces, and though *Hombu* brought into the field 350000 horse and foot, yet nothing could resist the powerful genius of that mighty Conquerour, who obtained here a signal Victory with the death of 60000 *Chinise*: But wisely moderating his prosperity, and mainly bent upon his war against the *Turks*, he thought it his best and safest way to let the people of *China* have a King of their own, imposing on him a fine of 300000 Crowns in ready Money, a certain Annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions, which as they were pleasing to the Victor, so they were not destructive to the vanquished. By means hereof it came to pass, that such a long communication in affairs of State, having passed between *China* and *Cathay* (those of *China* in old times lording it over part of the *Cathayans*, as the *Cathayans* in late times did over the *Chinise*) there grew a great resemblance between both Nations, in manners, conditions, arts and manufactures, as before is said, which circumstances layed together, may afford some reason why in some Writers, easily misguided by such probabilities; *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the same. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinise* extend in old times, onely over part of *Scythia*, but also over part of *India*, and some of the *Oriental* Islands. But the Princes of the house of *Hombu* finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their desires; abandoned all the *Accessories* and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereunto, not only by their own moderation, but by some misfortunes which befell them. For as we finde that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempests, lost no fewer than 206 of their Ships and Gallies, resolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the *Seas*, which had used them so unkindly: So the *Chinise* having received a great overthrow, and loss of 800 Ships, nigh unto *Zoilan*, they freed all the Islands from obedience unto them, and contented themselves with the bounds which nature had bestowed on them. And of their moderation herein, we have a very rare example. For when the people of *Corea*, a small Island abutting on the confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*; they submitted themselves unto the King of *China*: who having repulsed the enemy, and thereby freed his own Countrey from danger, presently redelivers over unto the *Coreans*, their Town and liberty. A rare fact of a contented people. Which whether it favoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this family hath the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the space of 266 years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Bong*: who being the twelfth of this line, succeeded his elder brother, unfortunately slain with a fall from an horse. Reported for a Prince of good disposition, great judgement, and a severe Juticiary. This *Bong* (otherwise called *Vanly*) begun his Reign, Anno 1573. governing this King-

comprehendeth all the *Tartarian* Countreys beyond *Imans*, it being well known that *Campion* and *Succir* are two Cities of *Tanguth*, and not of the proper *Cathay*, or *Cathay* especially so called. In the third rank of proofs they instance in the similitudes, or resemblances betwixt both Countreys, and both people, which are so great and visible in temperature of Air, fertility of soyl, and pleasantness of situation, in customs, in ingenuity, Arts and Manufactures, as may be thought to carry an Identity, or sameness with them; which sameness or identity they do also finde, in *Pequin* the chief City of *China* and *Cambalu*, the supposed chief City of *Cathay*, being two words of the same fence and signification though of divers sounds; for *Pequin* signifieth the Court or City of the King in the *Chinian* language, and *Cambalu* signifieth the Court or City of the *Cham*, in the language of *Tartary*. The like they also have observed of the Royal Palaces, adjoining to the said two Cities, to like in the vast greatness and extent of the outer walls, the Parks and Forrests intermingled, the magnificent form and structure of the inner Palaces, with all the rest of the particulars before recited, that a man might very well conclude them to be one and the same, adding withall that such an immense, and unparalleled work, as the great *Cham* Palace called *Xaindu*, must needs require more hands and a longer time, than the great *Cham* (considering their continual wars, and little intervals of leisure) could bestow upon it. But their 4 head proofs, which seems indeed to be the strongest, they derive first from the Testimony of *Benedicta Goes* above mentioned, who without taking notice of any such Countrey as *Cathay*, in so long a journey, telleth us that at *Ciales* a City of the Kingdom of *Cascar*, and not far from *China*, he was first informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the same; 2ly. From the Testimony of an old *Mahometan* Pilgrim, who returning from *Meccha* by *Lahor* (the Royal seat and City of the great *Mongull*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambalu* the chief City of *Cathay*, which Kingdom had in it one thousand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a very mighty Prince, and having a strength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Malacca* and *Pegu*, and that much Merchandize was brought into that Countrey by Sea: which if it be not meant of *China* (to which the story may agree in all particulars) must needs be one of the loudest lyes that ever came from the mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a *Pilgrim* either; our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* specially so called, no access thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring those Elephants from *Pegu* and *Malacca*, which the Pilgrim dreamt of. 3ly. A clearer Testimony of some other *Mahometans* repaireing to *Pequin* every fifth year, either as Merchants or Embassadors, or as both together; by whom the Jesuites there living were informed, that in the Dominions of the *Persian*, and the great *Mongull*, from whence they came, the Kingdom of *China* was called by no other name, than by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Countrey of that name, but *China* only. And 4ly. from the asseverance of *Pantogia*, another Jesuite; who in his letters dated from *Pequin* much blameth our ordinary maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*; whereas (saith he) *China* or *Sinai* is *Cathay*, as this *Pequin* where we now are is the City of *Cambalu*; which two last evidences coming from the pen of one who had lived many years in *China*; and not conducting any way to the advancement of the *Catholique* cause, must needs be thought to carry some great credit, and authority with them.

These reasons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we must then act *Penelope* part, unravelling all the web which before was woven, *Atque iterum in lana omne redibit opus*, in the Poets language; which that we may the better do, and with as little defacements to the whole piece as possibly we can, I shall thus proceed. First then it is to be conceived that *Cathay* specially so called was an aggregate body, containing many several Kingdoms, and distinct Eitates, though Homagers to the Kings of *Cathay* or dependants on them: as anciently in the Realm of *France*, besides the Kings of *France* themselves, there was a King of *Burgundy*, a King of *Metz*, a King of *Soissons*, a King of *Orleans*; and after that a Duke of *Normandy*, a Duke of *Bretagne*, a Duke of *Aquitaine*, and Earl of *Champagne*, and Earl of *Tholouse*, all absolute and uncontrollable in their own Eitates. And then the Kingdom of *Tanguth* which we placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*, must be made one of the Kingdoms of *Cathay*; and *Demercan* whom we ranked in the Catalogue of the *Chams* of *Tartary*, must be brought a peg lower, and looked on as a King of *Tanguth* only, and no more than so. 2ly. It must be taken for granted, that the *Tartars* having conquered the Realm of *Cathay*, and afterwards, by the help of that people, subdued *China* also, caused all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the same latitude and parallels with it, and much of the same nature and complexion, both for Soyl and Air; giving unto the Southern parts (which was the true and proper Countrey of the *Sine*) the name of *Mangi*, transferred afterwards by some Authors to the Countrey generally: and having thus extended the name and Territory of *Cathay*, the first foundation of their greatness, they fixed their Regal seat in the City of *Pequin*, which by a new *Tartarian* name (but of the same fence and signification) was from thence called *Cambalu*. Thus in the first place the French Kings of the *Caroline* Family, communicated the name of *France* (East *France* it was most commonly called) to the greatest part of *Germany*, then conquered by them; the *Cassilians* of *Spain* extended the name of *Castile* on every side, as they got ground upon the *Moors*, till it became the largest Province of any one name in all that Continent; and *Roger* Earl of *Cicily*, having conquered the Eastern parts of *Italy* (which now make up the Kingdom of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the further *Cicily*, and himself to be Crowned King of both, by the name of King of both the *Cicilies*. And in the second place, the Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germany*, are by the French called Dukes *De Deux-ponts*, by the late *Latine* Writers *Duces Bipontani*, all in the same fence and signification; the Town of *Schertzogen Bosch* is by the French called *Bois le Duc*, by *Latine* Writers *Sylva ducis*; and here at home the Military Towns or Stations of *Leodorum*, *Colonia*, *Presidium*, *ad Lapidem*, and *Portus Magnus*, were turned by the conquering Saxons (the former significations being still retained) into *Bedford*, *Colchester*, *Warrick*, *Stoneham*, and *Portsmouth*, commonly

now

now called *Portsmouth*; *Castrum Alatum* into *Edinburg* by the *Picts* or unconquered *Britains*. 3ly. We may take it for a truth unquestioned, that *Hombu* having expelled the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed his Royal seat at *Nanquin*, on the South side of the River *Kiang* (though paying both fine and tribute to victorious *Tamurlane*) did afterwards on *Tamurlanes* engagements beyond the Mountains, and the canonizing of that great Empire amongst his children, expell them out of the North parts also; his Successors thereupon removing the Court to *Pequin* (from hence forth known again by its true, proper, and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that dangerous Enemy, *Jernsalem*, commanded to be called *Elia* by the Emperour *Adrian*, and *London* named *Augusta Tri-nobantum* by some other of the *Roman* Emperours; returned to their old names again, as soon as that authority failed which imposed the new. And 4ly. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might still retain the name of *Cathay*, and being most traded by the *Persian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be best known by that name in their several Countreys: so by dividing this great Empire into so many parts, removing the Imperial Seat to *Samerchand*, on the other side of the mountains, erecting many new Eitates out of the ancient Prefectures, and Governments of *Cathay* it self, and parceling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tanguth*, *Cascar*, and such other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themselves in those opportunities, the true *Cathay* might lose that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to those parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundians*, *Lombards*, *Vandals*, *Hungars*, lost those names at home, in their ancient and native habitations, which still remain unto those Countreys that were conquered by them. These reasons and considerations I willingly submit to the Readers Judgment, being my self so great a *Sceptick* in this point that I dare determine nothing positively on either side. It is enough that I have layed the cause open without partiality, or byassing on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the evidence.

OF

OF INDIA.

INDIA is bounded on the East, with the Oriental Ocean, and some part of *China*, or as some others say, with a great Countrey called *Mange* (not much known unto us of *Europe*) interjected betwixt it and *China*; on the West, with the *Persian Empire*; on the North, with some branches of Mount *Taurus*, which divide it from *Tarsary*; and on the South, with the *Indian Ocean*. So called from the River *Indus*, the nearest of esteem and note in all the Countrey, towards these parts of the world.

It is conceived to be the largest Countrey of any one name in the world, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of such a great extent on the Sea-coasts of it, that it was as much as a Ship could sail in 40 days. Extended from 106, to 159 degrees of *Longitude*; and from the *Aequator* to the 44th degree of Northern *Latitude*. By which account it lieth from the beginning of the first, to the end of the sixth *Clima*: the longest Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 hours only, and in the parts most North, 15 hours and an half.

Concerning the monstrous Fables which the ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Countrey, give me leave to say, that as the Poets used of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with strange fictions, and prodigious metamorphoses; or as our modern *Geographers*, in the Maps of the world, fill up those unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain description, with strange pictures and uncouth shapes of beasts and trees; so also the Writers in former ages have filled the more remote Countreys, of which they knew little, with such impossible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the fables of men with dogs heads; of men with one leg only, yet of great swiftness; of such as live by vent; of men that had but one eye, and that in their foreheads; and of others, whose ears did reach unto the ground. It is reported also that this people by eating a dragons heart and liver, attain to the understanding of the languages of beasts; that they can make themselves, when they list, invisible; that they have two tubs whereof the one opened yields wind, the other rain, and the like. But these relations, and the rest of this strain, I doubt not but the understanding Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the same minde with *Cureus*, *Plura equidem transcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare ausus sum quod dubito, nec subducere sustineo quae accipi*: I may perhaps relate some things which I do not credit, but shall not let them pass without some censure; that so I neither may impose any thing on the Readers belief, nor defraud him of any thing conducible to his contentation.

The Countrey, (to report no more of it than it doth deserve,) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the air; two Summers, (or one as long as two,) and a double increase; blest with all things which are either necessary to the life of man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with Mines of Gold and Silver, and with precious stones; with spices of all sorts, and Civets; with the best *medicinable* drugs, metals of all kinds, except *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all sorts of Cattel, except horses. Somewhat defective also in Wheat and Vines, that so this Countrey might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed also for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinoceros*, Elephants. These last more favouring of reason and humane ingenuity, or else more tractable and docile, than any brute Creature whatsoever. Of this we have a fair instance in the story of the Acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* fate on, finding his Master strong and lusty, rushed boldly into the thickest of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himself out of the battel, kneeled down, and into his own trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his master. The greatness of the Creature makes it yet more admirable, that either he should have soul enough of his own, to attune so vast a body; or being of such strength and bigness, should submit himself to the instructions of another: some of these *Indian* Elephants, as *Aelianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high, and as many long; and in breadth or thickness about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford less plenty or variety, than we find on shore: yielding abundance of the richest and fairest Pearls, huge shoals of fish, and amongst them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that land-monster the Elephant. For though the ordinary dimension of the Whale be but 36 *Cubits* in length, and eight in thickness: yet *Nearchus* in *Arianus* is said to have measured one, in these *Indian* Seas, which was of the length of 50 *Cubits*, and of breadth proportionable: not to say any thing of that incredible report of *Pliny*, who speaketh of some *Indian* Whales, which were nine hundred and threescore Foot, or four Acres long.

The people are of five sorts, and as many Religions, that is to say the Natural *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2ly *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago, possessed

themselves of some Sea-Towns, driving the Natives up higher into the Countrey. 3ly *Jews*, scattered and dispersed (as in other places) into all parts of it; 4ly *Tartars*; in those parts and Provinces which are under the Great *Mongull*; and 5ly *Portuguese*, who have many Colonies and *Factories* in the Ports and Islands, but brag as if they had made a conquest of all the Countrey. Which notwithstanding, considering that the Natural *Indians* are by far the greatest number, we must relate to them only in the Character which is made of this people. Affirmed to be tall of stature, strong of body, and of complexion inclining to that of the *Negroes*: of manners civil and ingenious, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The Common sort but meanly clad, for the most part naked; content with no more covering than to hide their shame. But those of greater Estates and Fortunes (as they have amongst them many ancient and Noble families) observe a majesty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparel; sweetening the salt with oyls, and perfumes, and adorning themselves with Jewels, Pearls, and other Ornaments befitting. They eat no flesh, but live on Barley, Rice, Milk, Honey, and other things without life.

The Women not of much fairer complexion than the men, yet of lovely countenances, wear their hair long and loose, but covered with a thin veil of *Calicut Linn*. Their ears hung with many rings, so great and heavy, that they are torn, and stretched to much disproportion; their noses also ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their estate and quality. Servilely obsequious to their husbands, whose affections they divide amongst them without jarre or jealousy: the men allowed here, as in all the East, the use of many wives, whom they buy of their Parents for a yoke of Oxen; and may marry as often as they list. In which they have too great a privilege above the women, who after the decease of their common husband, do either burn in the same flame with him, or else are forced to doom themselves to perpetual Widow-hood. But of this we may speak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The Christian faith was first planted in these Countreys, by Saint Thomas, from whom the remainders of Christianity take denomination; and unto whom the Records and *Miniments* of that Church do ascribe their conversion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the Chaldean tongue, and translated into Latine by Father John Maria Campanin a *Jesuite*, we find it thus, *Per D. Thomam evanuit error Idololatriæ ab Indis, &c. i. e.* By Saint Thomas, the errors of Idolatry vanished out of the *Indies*; by Saint Thomas, they received the Sacrament of Baptism, and the Adoption of Sons; by Saint Thomas, they believed and confessed the Father, the Son, and Holy-Ghost; by Saint Thomas, they kept the iait received of one God; And finally by Saint Thomas, the splendour of saving doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body as they say, intombed in the City of *Maliapur*, upon the Coast of *Choromandel*; the truth of which tradition I dispute not here. But this plantation of the Gospel by the hand of Saint Thomas was not universal over all the Countrey; but in some parts and Provinces only: or else was forced to give ground a while to prevailing *Heathenism*. For in the reign of *Constantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the further-side of the River *Ganges* (for so I understand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the ministry of one *Frumentius*, of the City of *Tyre*; who having spent the greatest part of his time amongst them, was employed in that service, and consecrated the first Bishop (for those Churches) by the great *Athanasius* of *Alexandria*. But being the foundation of this building was laid by Saint Thomas, the remainder of *Christians* here being, ascribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Christians* of Saint Thomas. Governed originally by their own Bishops, subordinate to an Archbishop of their own also, residing at *Quag*, male fifteen miles from *Cochin*; one of the chief Cities of this Countrey: who for a long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Adul*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by these *Christians* of *India* he is still termed. The number of the *Christians* computed at 15 or 16 thousand families; or at 70000 persons in the account of others: inhabiting for the most part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the outlets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, stretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called Cape *Comari*. The points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*, 1 Their administering the Sacrament of the Eucharist in bread seasoned with salt; 2 Administering in both kinds, but using instead of wine (which is scarce or not at all to be had in this Country) the juice of Raisins softened in water over night, and so pressed forth; 3 Not baptizing children untill 40 dayes old, except it be in danger of death; 4 Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Cross; 5 Allowing one marriage to their Priests, but debarring the second; 6 In painting God with three heads on one body, to denote the Trinity; 7 Denying the use of extreme unction; and 8 Not acknowledging the Popes Supremacy: but besides these remainders of those ancient *Christians*, there are some others now of late of a new plantation, by the pains and travel of the *Jesuites*, though not with such success here, as they found in *China*: many of the Inhabitants partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by the power of the great *Mongull*, having embraced *Mahometanism*; and being consequently less inclinable to admit the Gospel, than when they were in the condition of their natural *Gentilism*. Yet have they made such good progress in it, that *Echelar* the *Mongul*, not only founded a fair Church for the use of the *Christians* in the City of *Agra* (the Regal City of that Empire) but committed to the care of the *Jesuites* the education of two Princes of the Regal Family. And possibly they might have made a great increase of *Christians* before this time, had they not been opposed therein by Sultan *Curroon*, a bitter Enemy to their proceeding, in the reign of his Father, and no great favourer of their time. Insomuch that hearing a *Jesuite*, called *Francisco Carst*, report unto his Father how miraculously a wooden Cross of his had escaped the fire, he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire presently made, and the same Cross to be thrown into it, upon these conditions, that if the Cross consumed not, his Father and himself would become *Christians*; but if it did, the *Jesuite* should be burned in the same fire with it. A fiery tryal which the poor *Jesuite* had much ado to put off

off, and preserve his credit. Howsoever by their practising amongst the old Christians they have gained one point of very great consequence and importance to the Church of Rome. For in the year 1599, by the solicitation of the Jesuits and others, the Indian Christians renounced their obedience to the Patriarch of Mosul, and submitted their Churches to the Jurisdiction of the Pope of Rome, in a National Synod held at Linsamp, not far from Malinapur, by the Archbishop of Goa (the Primate of the Portugals in those parts) not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the Romish Tenets, but delivering all their Books and Liturgies to be altered and reformed by the said Archbishop, according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of Rome, which was done accordingly.

But these comparatively to the rest, come not to an haudfull; the main body of the People wallowing in their Gentilism; and still retaining many of those ancient Customs, which they used of old: as viz. 1 Not knowing their Wives after they have born them two children: 2 Nor keeping them, if after five years cohabitation, they can raise no issue by them, but then exchanging them for others: 3 Rewarding none for any military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands the head of an enemy: 4 Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or sickness. To these they have since added others of a later invention, perhaps more barbarous; of which we may have opportunity to speak anon. Their Priests or learned men, in the time of old were called *Brachmanes* from one *Brachman*, the prescriber of their Rites and Laws, by whom instructed in the Rudiments of their Philosophy; some of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnosophists*; who were to them as the Chaldei to the Assyrians; the Magi, to the Persians; and the Druides, to the ancient Britans. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the most part an austere and solitary life, in Caves, and Deserts; feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abstaining from all carnal pleasures; but that time past, they may indulge themselves more liberty, and admit the company of women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Priests. Of these, the great Alexander, when he was in this Country surprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many strange questions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himself confessed) some not unsatisfying though strange answers. To these *Gymnosophists*, or *Brachmans*, the *Bramines* do now succeed, both in place and authority; but differ from them most extremely in point of learning, and the civilities of their lives: these *Bramines* being the most impure, libidinous, and sensual beasts in all the Country; privileged with the first nights lodging of every Bride, which when sated with their filthy lust, they sell, or traffick with, to strangers, serving as Stallions to old men, and as Pandars to young; so fleshed in wickedness, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a man but the voice and shape. *Mahometanism* is also entertained in a great part of the Country, first brought in by the Tartars, and neighbouring Persians, unto whom conterminous; but much increased by the victories of the Great Mongul: who being originally a Tartar, and of that Religion, hath caused it to be propagated in most parts of his large dominions.

Mountains of most note in it, besides *Caucasus*, and some other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the Tartarian and Persian Empires, 1 *Sardonis*, full of Mines of those precious stones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2 *Vindius*, 3 *Bittigo*, 4 *Adisatbras*. 5 Those called *Apocopi*, and 6 Those named *Orodii*. And on the further side of *Ganges*. 7 *Beyrrus*. 8 *Maandrus*. 9 Those called *Damusi*, and 10 *Semanthinus*; part of this last extending also unto *China*. All of them very fruitful in the production of Mines, and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all is that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Bittigo*, and is now named *Gates*; the Southern part of the great Mountain *Imans* spoken of before: extended from Mount *Caucasus*, where it crosseth the *Taurus* in right Angles, to Cape *Comari*, a known Promontory of *Industan*, or the higher *India* (which it divideth into East and West) for the space of 400 leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Possellus* a Learned Writer, to be that Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the 10th of *Genesis*, where it is said to be the utmost Eastern limit of the Sons of *Jektan*, *Gen. 10. v. 30*. With probability enough, for ought I can see; the Sons of *Jektan* being settled in these parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the Persian Empire which lie nearest to them. And so far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Possellus*, as to affirm of this Mount *Sephar*, that it is *Mons India*, an Indian Mountain: both of them grounding on Saint *Hierom*, who expressly saith, *Sophora mons Orientis in India, juxta quem habitaverunt filii Jectan*, i. e. that *Sephar*, or *Sopher*, is the name of a Mountain of the East in *India*; neer to which dwelt the Sons of *Jektan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we should transfer it into *America*, as I see some do; and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*, which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other and thence as some will have it to the Streights of *Magellan*. Which should we grant, we must not look for *Jektan*, or the Sons of *Jektan*, either in *Arabia Felix*, where *Bichartus* placeth them; nor in the Eastern parts of *Asia*, where most probably they may be found; but we must cross the vast Oriental Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; besides, that granting this for true, we must allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moses*, which no Author that I ever met with did so much as dream of.

Rivers of most note are, 1 *Indus*, which ariseth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Ancients called *Paropamisus*, the Moderns, *Nangroet*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a course of 900 miles, falleth into the Ocean at seven Mouths, that is to say, 1 *Sagappa*, being the most Western, 2 *Sinubum*, 3 *Aurum*, 4 *Cariphi*, 5 *Sappara*, 6 *Sabalassa*, 7 *Lonibare*, the most Eastward. But five of these being choaked with Sands, or drawn into the neighbouring Channels, there now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and ancient Stories, for giving name unto the Country, and that so celebrated Voyage of *Alexander*, who sailed down it towards the Indian Ocean: the voyage

holding

holding above five moneths, of which there is said to have passed no day wherein he failed not 15 miles, *India intra Gangem*, or 600 Furlongs. 2 *Ganges*, which riseth as some say from the Mountain *Imans*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Imans* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is first collected into a Lake, or Pool (supposed by others for the fountain and original of it) whence with a gentler pace it passeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is said by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers. In the narrowest place of eight miles breadth, in the broadest 20, seldom so shallow but that the depth thereof is 100 fathoms, or 20 Geometrical paces. Parted into five great Channels it falleth at last into the Sea: the first of which most towards the West, is called *Cambysum*, 2 *Magnum*, 3 *Camberychnus*, 4 *Psin-dysmonus*, and 5 that which leth furthest towards the East, called *Amboli*. This River erroneously supposed to be that *Pison* which watered *Par. dise*: and to encrease the reputation of the error, we find it countenanced by *Jesphus*, and other no less eminent names; and also backed by some traditions of the people which inhabit neer it. By whom it is affirmed, that one of the *Bengalan Kings* sent men up the River, who came at last to a pleasant place, blest with a fragrant Earth, sweet air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth so possess them, that at the mouth of this River called *Ganges*, such as are weary of this world use to cast themselves into the current, and are presently devoured by a fish called *Sea-dogs*, by whom they hope to find a quick passage to *Paradise*. The occasion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from those words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Pison*, that it compassed the land of *Havilah*; which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River must be *Pison*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For besides *Havilah* the Son of *Jektan*, planted in some part of *India*; there was another *Havilah* the Son of *Chus*, settled in the land of *Havilah* or *Chusana*, not far from *Babylon*: this last indeed watered by the River *Pison*, and the first by *Ganges*; too far asunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken for mistaken one for another. But not less famous, because none of those which neighboured the garden of *Eden*; perhaps of greater fame than any of those which did. For to this River do the superstitious *Indians* make their solemn Pilgrimages; vainly conceiving that they shall be sure of their eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the people ascribe the fertility of the Countreys adjoining, as the *Agyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Countrey anciently, and at this present is, divided into two main parts, (each subdivided into many particular Provinces) viz. 1 *India intra Gangem*, 2 *India extra Gangem*. Of each of which we will first take a brief survey, with reference to the state and story of it in preceding times; and then consider them with reference to the present age.

I. INDIA INTRA GANGEM.

INDIA INTRA GANGEM, is bounded on the East, with the River *Ganges*, till it falleth thereof into the Sea; and after that with that large and spacious Bay, called anciently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*: on the West, with *Paropamisus*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, Provinces of the Persian Empire; and part of the Arabian Seas; on the North, where it is broadest, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*, and other parts: and on the South, where it endeth in a sharp point or Promontory, by *Ptolomy* called *Commariu extrema*, but now Cape *Commari*, with the Indian Ocean. So named from being situate on this side of *Ganges*; by the moderns, *Indostan*.

The Countrey of the same nature formerly, as it is at the present, not altered but by changing of the channels of *Indus*; which being shifted by an Earthquake, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a sandy Desert: *Indus* (as many other of the Indian Rivers) fanning and enriching all the land which it overfloweth. The people of those elder times much like the *Scythians*, especially in their course of life; living without Cities, Temples, Houses, in their moveable Tents: their food the bark of a tree called *Tala*, which served for bread; and the flesh of Bucks, Does, and other Venison; with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them Free men, but no Slaves to be found amongst them. Less warlike than the *Scythians*, but as great contemners of death as they; the very women contending eagerly amongst themselves, which should accompany their Husband (one Husband having many wives) to his Funeral Pile. Of which thus Saint *Hierom*, *He igitur contendunt de amire viri, & amplio summa certantium est ac testimonium castitatis dignum morie censeri*. A Custom still retained amongst them; of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said in another place.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Hydespes*, by *Ptolomy* (and by him only) called *Bidaspes*, one of the furthest bounds of *Alexander's* conquests. 2 *Sinasus*, 3 *Coa*, 4 *Acisnes*, very memorable in the Gets of *Alexander*. 5 *Sandabilis*, 6 *Zaradrus*: all coming from the Northern Mountains, and all falling (Hydespes with three other Rivers first received into it) into the greater bed of *Indus*. 7 *Diana*, 8 *Suralus*, and 9 *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10 *Naragonas*, issuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11 *Barris*, from *Bittigo*. 12 *Chaberis*, from *Adisatbras*. 13 *Tindis*, from the hill called *Naxentius*: and 14 *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of less note. By what names called at the present, I determine not; nor finde I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtless to be found in 1 *Catamul*, 2 *Cebcha*, 3 *Ray*, 4 *Chenao*, 5 *Relibis*, all tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6 *Taphi*, 7 *Hirunda*, 8 *Chambel*, 9 *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with such others of the principal Rivers as are now known by name to us, shall occasionally be touched on in that which followeth. Besides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Gets of *Alexander*,

Mandao.

The reason of the name I find not, nor any thing memorable of the Country; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolemy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambate*, *Caspiria*, *Cylindrine*, and *Sauftene*: subdued by *Alexander* in his expedition into *India*: the famous Rivers of *Acefinis*, and *Hydaspis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their source. So that it seemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdom of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of most importance in it. 1 *Lahur*, or the Eastern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the fairest and most ancient City in both the *Indies*; of most esteem for wealth and greatness. In compass about sixteen miles, and honored for a while with the ordinary Residence of the Great *Mongul*, till on the burning of his Palace, spoken of before, he removed his Court to *Caximir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at last to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldest son, or heir apparent, sent thither for avoiding all occasion of factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding trade, as being the chief staple for the Spices in these parts, and other commodities of *India*, from hence transported into the *Persia* by the way of *Candahor*, the principal Town of *Arachosia*; and so to *Spahin*, the chief City of the *Persia* Empire; where they are sold, by reason of so long and chargeable a journey, at excessive rates. It is said that 12000 Camels at the least, pass every year thorow it with their lading; besides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormuz*, till that Town was taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great mass of treasure which a late Governour hereof did leave behind him. At whose death *Echabar* the *Mongul* (for the *Mongul* is the heir General unto all mens wealth) found in his Coffers three millions of Gold ready coined, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoined, and some store of Jewels; besides Horses, Elephants, Household furniture, and other goods almost invaluable. 2 *Sultan pware*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good esteem. 3 *Ashce*, in the common Road from *Lahur* to *China*; reported in the description of the good esteem. 4 *Ashce*, a *Portugal Jesuite*, to be a months journey from *Lahur*, and yet in the same travels of *Benedictus a Gores*, a *Portugal Jesuite*, to be as great as this Province with it. Which if it be true, either the Province must be large, or his journeys short: or if not true, we must remember that we had it from the pen of a *Jesuite*. And yet as great as this Province or Division is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns of consideration, which may be said with confidence to belong unto it; unless perhaps we may reduce under this Division the Kingdoms of *Halaican* and *Buchor*, of which last the chief City is called *Bucor succor*, enriched by the neighbourhood of the *Indus*, but not else observable.

3 MANDAO.

THE Kingdom of *MANDAO* is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*; on the East, with *Delly*; and on the West, with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao* the chief City of it.

The Country more mountainous and rugged than the rest of these Provinces, by reason of the many branches of Mount *Bitiggo* (the Southern part of the *Imau*) which do over-run it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The men, as most of those who live in such Mountainous Tracts, of a Warlike temper, comparatively with the rest of the *Indians*: the women here anciently as valiant as the men in other places; riding astride, and practised in the Arts of Horsemanship; for that cause called *Amazons*; some of which are said to be still remaining. Inasmuch as it is written in the stories hereof, that the King of this Country not long since going to the Wars, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife, marching in the Front of two thousand women, all well mounted and prepared for service.

Chief Cities hereof. 1 *Mandao*, seated on the banks of the River *Mandava*, (the *Manda* of *Ptolemy* and the Ancients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, said to be 30 miles in compass; yet so well fortified and furnished with all manner of necessaries for defence and resistance, that it held out twelve years against *Mirumudin*, or *Merhamed* the Great *Mongul*, who then besieged it. Surrendered at last, and with it the Kingdom. Memorable for the great battle fought before it, betwixt the said *Merhamed*, then coming to the relief thereof, and *Badurim* King of *Cambala*, who had then distressed it: in which *Badurim* lost his Tents and Treasures, and was fain to flee assigned unto *Din*. to crave aid of the *Portugals*. 2 *Moltan*, which being mistaken for another Town, or not the same name, on the Western side of the *Indus*, is by some Writers, said to have been once the chief City of a Kingdom, or a Kingdom rather of it self, but of no great note: the women were of though not so good Souldiers as their Ancestors of the female sex, yet to come as near them as they can, use boots and spurs when they take a journey, and so fitted lit astride the saddle. 3 *Scernus*, on the River so called, of more antiquity than greatness, as is also, 4 *Polymothie*, the *Palibothra* of *Ptolemy* and others of the ancient Writers; then the chief Town of the *Palibothres* (by *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Prafi*) a People of as great authority and power as any in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it self of great power and wealth, till *Badurim* King of *Cambala* having conquered the Realm of *Citor*, and therewith a great part of *Singa*, made an attempt upon this also. *Galgee* then King of *Mandao* finding himself too weak for so strong an Enemy, craved aid of *Merhamed* (or *Mirumudin* as the *Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*; then reigning in *Chalul* or *Arachosia*, and possessed of some parts of *India* also, since the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own Subjects, some mercenary *Persians*, and a great body of *Zagathian Tartars*, from whom originally descended, came in two set battels, the first at *Doceti*, the next at *Mandao*, and following his blow possessed himself of the whole Kingdom of *Cambala*. But not content with that success, quarrelled the *Mandao* King in whose aid he came; besieged him in his principal City, which at last he won, and therewithal the Kingdom

Delly.

Kingdom also: the wretched King shewing hereby both a fair evidence and example to succeeding Ages, that the easiest way for a Prince to ruine his own estate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Foreign power into his own Dominions; which he cannot as easily thrust out, as he hath brought them in.

4 DELLY.

DELLE, is bounded on the West, with *Mandao*; on the East, with the Kingdom of *Botanter*; on the North, with the Eastern parts of *Pengab*; on the South, with the Eastern parts also of the Kingdom of *Agra*. So named from *DELLY*, the chief City of it, by some called *Della*.

The Country, besides what is common to it with the rest of *India*, is said to be more abundantly stored than any other part of it, with Horses, Elephants, and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing singular, except it be that many of them taking more delight in thievery than honest trades, live for the most part upon spoil; but those especially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being such of the nobility or better sort, who since the conquest of their Country by the Great *Mongul*, have lived like *Out-laws* on the Mountains. Of the same temper with the *Reibutes* in *Cambala*, and the *Agwans* in *Sanga* and *Dalsinda*; who rather then submit themselves to a Foreign yoke, (as they count that of the *Mongul*) chuse to forsake their proper dwellings, and all honest ways and means of living.

Places of most importance in it. 1 *Delly*, a City not only honoured heretofore with the residence of the Great *Monguls*, who from hence pass in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongst their most knowing Subjects; but beautified with many sepulchres of their ancient Kings, whose Funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deserted of late times, by the Great *Monguls*, moving their Courts from place to place, as they enlarged their Empire, and increased their conquests: yet still a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains and Commanders, do frequent the same, and have their houses of pleasure and retirement in it. 2 *Tremel*, upon the Western side of the River *Mandao*; but not much observable. 3 *Doceti*, memorable for the great battle fought near unto it, in which *Merhamed* the *Mongul* overthrew the forces of *Badurim*, and thereby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambala*.

This Country governed a long time by its natural Princes, was at last conquered by some *Moors*, or *Saracens*, coming from *Persia* and *Arabia*, but I find not which; who grew to so great power and wealth, that *Sanofaradine*, a *Mahometan*, one of their Descendants, dreamt of no less than the conquest of all *India*, if not of the whole Continent of *Asia* also. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for the beginning of the Ottoman Empire) subdued by little and little all the neighbouring Princes which made head against him; he pierced at last into *Canora*, now called *Decan*: and conquering a great part of it, returned back to *Delly*. The pursuit of his victories he left unto one *Abdessa* his Lieutenant there, who added the rest of that Country to his Masters Territories, but kept the possession to himself: confirmed therein by *Sanofaradine*, with the title of *Regent*. But *Sanofaradine* dying in a War against the *Persians*, left for his Successor a son so unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him unto other Masters, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithstanding of sufficient power to preserve it self, from any of their equal neighbours, till the rising of the Great *Mongul*: whose puissance being unable to withstand, it submitted at last to *Adabar*, the son of *Merhamed*, the second Emperour of this line: who to assure himself of the peoples loyalty, and conquests, settled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next prosperous emergency, as before was noted.

5 AGRA.

THE Realm of *AGRA* is bounded on the North, with *Delly*, and *Mandao*; on the South with *Sanga* and *Cambala*; on the West, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the Kingdom of *Cambala*; on the East, with *Oristan*, or *Orissa*. So called from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the Seat Royal of late times of the Great *Monguls*.

The Country said to be the best and most pleasant of *India*, plentiful in all things, and such a delicate even piece of ground, as the like is hardly to be seen. Well watered, as with other Rivers, so most especially with those of *Tamlico* and *Jemena*; which last runneth thorow the midst of it, North and South, or rather from the North-west to the South-east, from whence bending more directly Eastwards, it falleth at last into the *Ganger*, or that which is supposed to be *Ganger*, for the head of that great River is not certainly known. The people for the most part Gentiles, *Mahometanism* coming in with the Great *Mongul*; and generally inclining somewhat to the *Pythagorean*. For such as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena* neither eat flesh, nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they esteem so sacred, that thereof they usually make their temple, and say their prayers therein, but naked (in which posture they both dress their meat and eat it) lodging upon the ground, being imposed by them as a penance, and so conceived.

Places of most esteem herein. 1 *Fatipore*, or *Fettibarri*, on the West side of the River, a very fair and goodly City; once beautified with a Royal Palace here built by *Echabar* (after the removal of his Court from *Caximir*) with many spacious gardens belonging to it; but much decayed, since the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which most of the stones are carried, and no small quantity of Corn sowed within the Walls. 2 *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*, inferior to *Lahur* for wealth and greatness, but far more populous: the constant residence of the Court here in these later times; drawing to it

CANARA.

was taken hence, to succeed unto it. Of the same nature, as it seemeth, with the hill *Amara* in *Ethiopia*, or the *Abassine* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a people called *Venazarari*, by Religion *Gentiles*, and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sa Nofaradine*, a *Mahometan*, and King of *Dilly*: who driving the Inhabitants into the Hill-Countries, possessed himself of a great part of it, compelling them to submit unto his Religion. The residue hereof subdued by *Abdessa*, whom *Sa Nofaradine* left here to pursue the War, was by him governed with great justice for 20 years; when dying he left his Government to his son *Mamudza*, confirmed by the Successor of *Sa Nofaradine* in his Fathers *Regency*, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudza* soon finding that the young King was of no great Spirit, not only refused to pay the Tribute imposed upon him, but took unto himself the title of King of *Decan*, giving this name unto the Country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a Mungrel body of *Christians*, *Mahometans*, and *Gentiles*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Customs, or Religion; the word *Decan* signifying in that tongue, as much as an illegitimate brood, or a body of Bastards. Out of these he made choice of twelve (others say eighteen) whom he appointed Governours of so many Provinces: not daring to trust any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the Country; and hoping that these *Slaves* so promoted by him, would be more subject to command. But here his silly hopes deceived him. For these *Slaves* either governed by their Masters example, who had done the like unto the son and heir of *Sa Nofaradine*; or presuming on their own strength, and some foreign aids, left to their Master nothing but an empty title; each one becoming absolute in his several Province. Nor did his successors for any long time enjoy that title; *Daquem* the last of them being taken at *Bider* his chief City: and thereupon the name of King usurped by every one of those petit Tyrants. Reduced at last into fewer hands, such of them as were left, became considerable Princes, as appeareth by the great Army raised by *Idalcen* for the siege of *Goa*. But in the end, distressed on the one side by the *Portugals*, who embarrased their trade, and invaded on the other side by the great *Mongul* with most puissant Armies; *Melle* entitled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampore*, were in fine subdued by *Echebar* about the year 1600. Against whom and his Successors, though the *Venazarari* still hold out, as the *Resbutos* or *Rasbooches* do in the Realm of *Cambaja*; and that the King of *Amdanagar*, and perhaps some other petit Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country; the residue of these *Royaleties*, and petit Princes, (if any of them be remaining) being *Hangers* or Vassals to him. Against whose further Progress to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* so greedily aimed at, the puissant Kings of *Narsinga*, and those of *Malabar* have opposed their power; whose Kingdoms and Estates we must next survey, before we take a view of those other Provinces which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9 CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof anciently it was a part;) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the East, with *Narsinga*, from which separated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the West, with the Ocean. The reason of the name I find not, nor much worth the searching.

The Country hath a fair Sea-coast, with many capacious Harbors to it, which cannot but add much to the wealth thereof; as liberally furnished in the in-land parts with Rice, Figs, and Sugars; but destitute of Wheat, Pulse, and Barley. Not much the poorer for that want, the people either not knowing or not regarding the use of bread; but living on such fruits as the earth produceth of it self, without the charge or care of the husbandman. In other things but little differing, if at all, from the rest of the *Indians*: their Religion for the most part *Paganish*, but intermixt with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it, 1 *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2 *Onor*, a Port Town of good note, sometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3 *Baticalia*, situate in the richest part of all this Country; never possessed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4 *Mangalor*, a Town of great wealth and trade; fortified with a strong Castle, once destroyed by the *Portugueses*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narsinga*, who is Lord of this Country. 5 *Muyendre*, more within the land. And so is also, 6 *Lispor*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant. 7 *Solfette*, in a Peninsula of 20 miles compass, containing 36 Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants; the Town about 9 miles from *Goa*, and subject with the whole Peninsula, to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now subject to the Kings of *Narsinga*, but formerly under the command of its own Princes: the name of *Canara*, comprehending in those times all that Country also, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Nofaradine* and *Abdessa*, and by *Mamudza* cantoned into many *Presettures*, this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narsingan*, who taking his advantages, in the Minority of one of their Princes, became Master of it. And when the *Idalcen*, (for I take that not so much for the name of a man, as a Title of dignity) quarrelled his possession of it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdom of *Decan*; *Chrimmarao* then King of *Narsinga*, brought a powerful Advocate to defend his right; that is to say, an Army of 606000 Foot, 29650 Horse, and 537 Elephants; every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four men in it: With which strong Argument the *Idalcen* being confuted in the Schools of War, with much difficulty saved himself, though he lost his cause: the *Narsingan* ever since continuing quiet in the possession of this Country; except only some of the Sea Towns in the power of the *Portugals*; who in the year 1567 destroyed in those few places by them possessed, no fewer then 200 of their *Idol Temples*, with many of their *Pagodas*, or *Idols* in them; converting the Rents and Lands to which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raised from the several Ports which they hold herein, to the maintenance of a Colledge of *Jesuites* in *Solfette*, and other Religious houses founded by them, in their other Cities.

Malabar.

10 MALABAR.

MALABAR is bounded on the North with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gangerago*; on the East, with the great Mountain *Gates*, by which divided from the Realm of *Narsinga* South-east; on the West and South, with the main Indian Ocean. On the Coast, whereof it doth extend for the space of 300 miles; that is to say, from the River *Gangerago*, to the Cape *Comori*: which I conceive to be the *Commaria Extrema* of *Pyolome*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing answerable to the length, not above 50 miles where broadest, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Conus*.

The Country more populous, for the bigness, then any in *India*, enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitful soil; well watered, and indented with many *Creeks*: unfit for Corn, but plentiful in Rice, and all manner of Spices, as Ginger, Cinamon, *Cassia*, Pepper, and most excellent fruits. Amongst their Trees, there is one whose name my Author speaks not, which bears Dates like unto the Palm; out of which they have not only Wood for fuel, but they draw from it Wine, Sugar, Oyl, fine Cloth, and Cordage; another Tree, which beareth Cotton, and Cypress, or Cobweb-lawn, of the leaves whereof they make a fine stuff like to *Satin* or *Taffete*. They have also great store of Apes, and Monkeys, Parrots, Parakeets, and other Creatures not known in these parts but from thence: not to say any thing of their Lions, Elephants, Bears, Bugles, common to them with others of their Indian Neighbours. The flowers there always in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green, by reason that the Air is so sweet and temperate.

The people are of coal-black colour (differing therein from the rest of the *Indians*), swarth and complexioned like the *Olive* well limbed, and wearing their hair long and curled; about their heads an handkerchief wrought with gold and silver; and about their middle a cloth, which hangeth down to conceal their nakedness. Of manners treacherous and bloody, more properly to be termed desperate than stout and valiant; and for more fury in their Wars, they use poisoned Arrows, as they do also in their thieving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, and more besotted generally on their Idolatries, than the rest of these Nations. The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worship, seated upon a brazen throne, and crowned with a rich Diadem; from his head issue out four horns, from his mouth four tusks; his eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his nose flat and ugly, his visage terrible, his hands like claws, his legs and thighs like those of a Lyon. In a word, we cannot paint the Devil in a more ugly figure than they do their God. Unto this *Pagode* or his Priest, they offer the virginity of all their daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privie parts, a *Bodkin* of gold or silver; upon which the *Bride* (married most commonly at ten or twelve years of age) is forcibly set; the sharpness of it being such, that it forceth out the blood in great abundance: and if the prove with child that year, it is said to be of his begetting, and more esteemed. Others with more humanity, in stead of torturing their daughters on this wretched Idol (parallel almost to the offering of their sons to *Moloch* amongst the *Syrians*) present them to the *Bramini*, or *Idol-Priest*, to be deflowered the first night of the wedding: and without one of these two handsets no man is suffered to enjoy the use of his wife, nor their Kings themselves. More privileged yet than many women neighbouring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themselves with their husbands bodies; but may have many husbands either successively or at once, as they list themselves: and if at once, she sends her children to that husband (as we know who did) who she thinks to have the best right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we said before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be cantoned into many Kingdoms. Divided at present, and long since, into those of 1 *Cononor*, 2 *Calicut*, 3 *Granganor*, 4 *Cochin*, 5 *Cai-Colam*, 6 *Conlan*, and 7 *Travancor*.

1 *CONONOR* joyneth to *Canara*, extending Southward on the shore about 20 miles; where it bordereth on the Kingdom of *Calicut*. The chief Cities of which, 1 *Cononor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built and beautified with a very fair Haven, no more safe than spacious, capacious of the greatest vessels, and for that cause much frequented by foreign Merchants; but especially by the *Portugals*, who for the assuring of their trade have here a Citadel, erected and well garrisoned with the Kings consent. 2 *Cota*, not far from *Cangeracco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*, 3 *Peripatan*, on the confines of *Calicut*. 4 *Murabia*, 5 *Trampatan*, 6 *Main*, intermediate Towns; but not much observable.

2 *CALICUTE*, South from *Cononor*, extending on the Sea-shore 25 Leagues, and situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Pandarane*, on the skirts of *Cononor*. 2 *Tunor*, a retiring place of the Kings. 3 *Partangale*. 4 *Chatua*, on the borders of *Granganor*. 5 *Chale*, a strong piece, once in the hands of the *Portugueses*, but in the year 1601 recovered by the King of *Calicut*, who had besieged it with an Army of 90000 men. 6 *Capacote*, the Haven of *Calicut*. 7 *Calicut*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea three miles, and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houses, but standing some of them far asunder; mean and low built, few of them exceeding the height of a man on horse-back; the soil being so hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cause unwall'd. Inasmuch that Merchants houses are here valued but at 20 Crowns, those of the common sort at no more than ten. Which notwithstanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Persians*, *Syrians*, *Indians*, yea the very *Tartars*; these last from the furthest parts of *Cathay* (taking *Cathay* in that general sense, as it comprehendeth all the Countries of the *Tartars*, between the

Malabar.

the Mount of *Imam*, and the Eastern Ocean) being 6000 miles distant from it, inasmuch that it is said by some of the Spanish Writers, that when *Vasques di Gama*, the first discoverer of the way to the East Countries by the Cape of good Hope, first arrived in this Haven, he found in it no fewer than 1500 Merchants Ships of all sorts, but without Anchors and the compass, few of them fit for a Sea-fight, nor able to sail (in regard they had not the use of the compass) but by shore-winds only. The common staple in those times of all Indian Merchandise, till distracted into several Ports by the power of the Portuguese, who being more industrious, and better Architects, have forced a foundation on the Shore for a very strong Cattle; by which they do command the Haven, and receive Custom of all Merchandise going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of Calicut, he besieged it with 100000 men: and though the Portuguese held it out a whole winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it; but first demolished it to the ground, that it might not be made usefull to those of Calicut. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no less wantonness; the men here using to change wives with one another, to confirm their Amities: and the women spending their whole time in adorning themselves with Rings and Jewels about their ears, necks, legs, arms, and upon their breasts, though going naked for the most part, one would think that a little dressing might suffice them. If covered, it is only with a Smock of Calicut, a kind of linnen cloth here made, and from hence so called: and that not used but by those of the better sort.

CRANGANOR lieth on the South of Calicut, a small Kingdom, and affording little worth the speaking of; but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of those old Christians, whom they call *Christians* of St. Thomas. Cranganor, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and exposed, to publick scorn both by the Idolaters and Mahometans, amongst whom they live. The City rich, commodiously built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with his crooked streams the most part of the Country, makes it far and flourishing.

COCHIN, more South than Cranganor, extended on the shore for the space of 40 leagues: and therein many Christians of the first Plantation, besides some Converts made of later times by the Jesuits. Towns of most note herein, 1. *Angamale*, the Archbishops See of those ancient Christians; fifteen miles from Cochin. 2. *Cochin*, a Bishops See, but of later erection; and the chief City of this Kingdom, which takes name from hence. Situate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Maugat*, by which almost encompassed like a *Dumy Island*. Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very safe and spacious; as also by the friendship of the Portuguese Nation. By whose power and favour they have not only freed themselves from the King of Calicut, to whom before they did acknowledge some subjection; but drawn from thence a great part of the traffick also: this King permitting them to erect a Cattle on the Haven, to secure their trade, which the other on good reasons of State forced them to destroy. The King hereof in some respect superior unto him of Calicut, when a Vassal to him: this King being the Pope, or chief Bishop, as it were, of all the *Bramines*; for which cause revered by all the Kings of Malabar, (as the Pope by many Princes of these Western parts) who look upon him as the head of their superstition, and pay him many annual duties.

CAI-COLAM is on the South of Cochin, with which agreeing both in the temper of the Air, and fertility of the Earth: which notwithstanding, the King hereof is not so rich as his neighbors. Here live also many of the old Christians, taking name from Saint Thomas: but those so destitute of Priests and Ministers to instruct them in the Principles of Christianity, that once in three years there came some formerly from the Patriarch of *Muzall* in *Affrya* to baptize their children. Better I hope provided for in these later dayes, since their embosoming and reconciliation to the Church of Rome. Their chief Town of the same name with the Country, hath a very fair Haven, in the fashion of a *Semi-Circle*; well traded till destroyed by the Portuguese, but since that re-edified. Of less note there are many both Towns and Villages, but such as do deserve here no particular mention.

COLLAN, upon the South of *Cai-Colam*, extended 20 leagues more Southwards upon the Shores; is said to be destitute of Corn, but plentiful of Pepper, and most sort of Spices. So stored with Horses, and fit Riders to serve upon them, that the King hereof keeps 20000 Horses in continual readiness either for invasion or defence. This Kingdom, as the rest before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Conlan*, 24 miles from Cochin, and once a Member of that Kingdom; of great resort by foreign Merchants, by reason of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary seat of the *Cobritin*, or chief Priest of the *Bramines*, till moved to Cochin; and held to be the Metropolis or Mother City of all Malabar; the rest being thought to be but Colonies of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many Christians, as well of the original foundation of Christianity, as of the late improvements which are made by the Jesuits.

TRAVANCOR, called also *TRANCANOR*, reacheth from the Kingdom of *Conlan*, to the Cape of *Comari*, and turning towards the East, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cael* in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar* or *Narsinga*. By which accompt it hath the benefit of the Sea on all sides except towards the North: reaching in breadth from the West Seas unto the East about 90 miles. The Country as the rest before, inhabited by many with the name of Christians, if they may be called so which want Sacraments: the condition of these *Thomean* Christians in former times being so unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the Jesuits, (if the Jesuits may be believed from whom we have it) they had seen no Priest, nor other Minister of the Gospel. Chief Towns hereof, (for of those many others of less note I shall make no mention) are 1. *Travancor*, the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well built, nor of very much trading. 2. *Quilacare*, the head City of a peculiar

Signeury,

Narsinga.

Signeury, but held of the Kings of *Travancor*, as their next and immediate Lords, though all those Kings also *Fundatories* of the Crown of *Narsinga*. And were that the worst *Fennre* by which they hold, it might be tolerable; but there is a matter of worse consequence which attendeth these beforesaid Princes. The Kingdom here is but a pomp of 12 years continuance, and then endeth in a sad *Catastrophe*. For at the end of those twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilacare*, prayeth before the *Idol* above mentioned, then mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapestry, and in the sight of all his People gathered together to behold this strange solemnity, curteth off his nose, ears, lips and other parts, which he casts towards the *Idol*, and in conclusion cuts his own Throat for his final Sacrifice: his designed Successor being present at this bloody Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was *Scepter* bought at so dear a rate: For though all Crowns be lined with thorns, yet here the pomps of Sovereignty be less lasting than in other places; the entrance full of fears, and the end, of horrors.

These Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900, or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into these seven, by *Sarama Perimal*, the sole Monarch. He by the solicitation of some *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein so devout, that he resolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, there to end his dayes. At his departure he divided his Estates into these seven parts, distributing them amongst the nearest of his Kindred; assigning unto him of *Conlan*, the prehemine in sacred matters, and the Imperial dignity unto him of *Calicut*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to say, Chief Emperor, or as some write, a God on Earth. He only privileged with the right and power of *Coinage*; the rest to be subordinate, if not subject to him. From *Perimals* setting forwards to the City of *Meccha*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings and begin their years; as the Christians from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Helts were punctually observed. But the Kingdom of *Calicut* being weakened by the power of the Portuguese, the other Kings began to free themselves from that subjection, and in the end to cast off all relation to him, and to his *Prerogatives*. Yet still he is esteemed of more Power and Majesty, than any of the rest of the Kings of *Malabar*; and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have no where met with, but conjecture them to be very great; first in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from most parts of the World in his Port of *Calicut*; the Customs and Imposts upon which must needs be of exceeding value; and secondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are said to equal some Kings in *Africk*, and Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

Quid Domini facient? audent cum talia Fures;

And if the man such riches have,
Then what must he that keeps the Knave?

What Forces he is able to raise may be fully seen by that which hath been said before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 men besieging and taking in the fort of *Chalem*, with another of 100000 beleaguering the Cattle which the Portuguese had built near his City of *Calesud*. And when the said Portuguese stirred up the King of Cochin to make head against him, he fell upon them suddenly, both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Souldiers, and 200 good Vessels of war for the Service at Sea. Sufficient force to reduce the rest of these petty Kings to their old acknowledgements; but that some of them to avoid the danger, have put themselves under the *Vassallage*, or protection at the least, of the *Great Mongul*; others by suffering the Portuguese to build forts in their Kingdoms, have engaged them in defence of their Estate against this pretender. His forces consist most of Foot, Horse being unserviceable in these Countries, by reason of those many Rivers which interlace it; and these Foot are compounded most of Gentry which they there call *Nairon*, trained to their weapons when they are but seven years of Age; every one to that weapon which he most delighteth in; which makes them very expert and nimble at them: much privileged for that cause by the Lawes of the Countrey; and so esteemed of by the King, that out of them his Sisters choose what men they please to their *Husbands*; some of them by that means being made the Fathers of the King succeeding.

Nothing else memorable touching the affairs of *Calicut*, but the way of succession to the Kingdom: the Crown descending upon none of the Kings Children, but on the Son of his eldest Sister, or nearest kinswoman. For being that one of the *Bramines* hath always the maiden-head of his Queens; and that some of these *Stallions* are continually allowed to keep them company; it is presumed, or very probably supposed, that the Queens Children are the *Bramines* and not the Kings.

8. NARSINGA

NARSINGA is bounded on the South, with *Travancor*; on the West, with the Mountain *Gates*; on the North, with *Orissan* or *Orixá*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narsinga*, the chief City of it, and the Royal residence of the King.

The Country is said to be in length 600 miles, or as some say, of as much extent as can be travelled in six months; plentiful in the same commodities which the rest of *India* doth afford, except Pepper and some other Spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not so well furnished with Rivers as some other places; which want is liberally supplied by water falling from the Mountains and received into trenches, meers, and Lakes, which do wonderfully cool, moisten and enrich the Land, causing the Corn and Cattel to prosper above all imagination. Most destitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year passe without rain, they fall into such extremities, that they are fain to sell their children.

The People in Religion *Gentiles*; so worshipping one God, as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature; that they joyntly the Devil or their *Pagodes* in communion with him, whereto indu-

F f f f

e e e

Narsinga.

ced by the perfusion of their beauly *Bramines*, who thereout suck no small advantage. Some Christians there are intermixt, of the *old Plantation*, especially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*: but not so well instructed in the *Principles* of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*, nor to dissuade them from the use of some *Heathenish* customs, though barbarous, inhumane, and against all reason: not used in any place, but amongst the *Indians*. Amongst which I reckon for most savage, the forcing of poor women to burn themselves with their husbands bodies, the womens kindred not the husbands thrusting them on these hard conditions, who reckon it a disgrace to their Family, if she should refuse. And because they will be sure not to have that infamy stick upon them, they have ordered that the woman who shall so refuse, must shave her head, and break her Jewels, and not be suffered to eat, drink or sleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miserable than the Flames which they seek to shun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greediness, and to contend which shall be formost: she being thought to have been most loving during his life, which is now most willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her self to his *Manes*, at the Funeral Pile: whereunto thus alludeth the Poet:

Et certamen habent, letibi, qua viva sequatur.

Conjugium; pudor est non licuisse mori.

Ardens vitrices, & prebent pectora flamme;

Imponuntque suis ora perusta viris.

A flame 'tis not to dye: they therefore strive,

Who may be fam'd to follow him alive.

The Victor burns, yields to the flame her breast;

And her burnt face doth on her husband rest.

Chief Cities of this Countrey, 1 *Cael*, on the borders of *Travancer*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Conlan*, now to those of *Narsinga*; the people whereabouts called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Christians*, who live for the most part by fishing for *Pearl*, which they sell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalan Merchants*. 2 *Goleunda*, the chief City of the Province called *Muslipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian Sect*; but a Vassal to the Kings of *Narsinga*. 3 *Chandagrin*, one of the Seat-Royals of the King. 4 *Prepest*, three miles from *Chandagrin*, memorable for a yearly Feast here celebrated in honour of *Pereimal* (once sole King of *Malavar*) reckoned for a Saint at least in these parts of *India*: the offerings at which accustomedly amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5 *Chadambaram*, the Mother City of those *Pagan Solemnities*, which are done to *Pereimal*, who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of Annual Rent, all consumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Pereimal's* head. 6 *Madura*, honoured with the residence of the *Chochanada*, or the Chief *Prelate* of the *Bramines* of this Kingdom; so numerous, that in this Town, and the Territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thousand. The seat also of one of three *Naiab*, or Tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narsinga*; the other two residing at 7 *Gingi*, and 8 *Tanagar*, the chief Towns of their Principalities, but not else observable. 9 *Maliapur*, called also *St. Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of the Apostle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolaters Indians*, whose Posterity in other things like unto other men, are said to have one leg and foot as big as an Elephant: a punishment inflicted on the whole Generation for sin of their Ancestors: How true this is, I cannot say, but sure I am that *Dorotheus* saith, that he resteth at *Calamina*, where he was slain with a dart. However the *Portugals* to make some use of the old Tradition removed some bones from this place, which were said to be his, and enshrined them in *Goa*, their own City: much visited by profitable *Pilgrims*, to their great enriching. The City once so large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the use of divers Nations which resorted thither. In these later dayes desolate and forlorn, inhabited onely by some old Christians, till the *Portuguese* began again to people it with new Colonies. 10 *Choromandel* giving name to a large Sea-Coast, lying on the West-side of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11 *Cassa*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Countrey, but buried quick in the same grave with him. 12 *Negapatan*, in the same Region, inhabited for the most part by *Saint Thomas Christians*. 13 *Tarnassari*, once the head City of a Kingdom so called, the King whereof was able to bring into the field 100000 horse and foot, and 100 armed Elephants, but now subject to the King of *Narsinga*. The people black, but so out of love with their own colour, that they willingly prostitute their wives or daughters, to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14 *Bisnagar*, once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is sometimes called the King of *Bisnagar*. In those times 24 miles in compass, with nine Gates in it, (amongst others) continually guarded with Souldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elsewhere equalled. In the year 1565, sacked by four of the *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joint Forces had invaded this Kingdom, it became desolate and forsaken; and the Court removed to 15 *Peneagada*, eight dayes journey within the Land (*Bisnagar* being seated on the borders of *Decan*) but long it had not staid there when removed to 16 *Narsinga*, where it hath ever since been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdom, unto which it gives name; though the King many times calls himself by the name of that City where he resideth for the present.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to say, these Eastern parts not being known at all till these later times, nor well known in these. About the year 1550, their King then reigning was imprisoned by three of his Captains or Commanders; who shewed him only once a year to his Subjects, paring the power and government amongst themselves. He being dead, and his Son kept in the like restraint, *Rumargio* the first Captain ascended the Throne, *Timaragio* managed the Estate, and *Bengabe* commanded the Army. But these Usurpers being overthrowen by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565, *Timaragio* the Survivor

Orissan.

Survivor took the charge of all; whose sonne, to make himself sure of the Kingdom, murdered his imprisoned Sovereign (the life and liberty of Kings being much of a date) whence followed many broils and troubles touching the succession, till settled in the person of *Chrimarao*, the undoubted Heir; who did not only restore peace and quiet to *Narsinga* it self, but recovered *Canara* out of the hands of the *Idolcan*, who had before endangered his citare therein. Of the great Army which he led against this *Idolcan*, we have spoke already: adding here only, that before he went upon this enterprize (called the journey of *Rachiol*) he sacrificed in nine days 2036 Beasts to the Country Idols, the flesh whereof he capped to be distributed amongst the poor. Roused at first, and being persuaded by some about him to go out of the field, he is said to have made this Noble Answer, that he had rather the *Idolcan* should boast that he had slain him, than vanquished him. And thereupon leaping into the thick of his enemies, and well followed by the valiantest of his Friends, he obtained the victory. But this vast Army of 600000 foot, 30000 Horse, 537 Elephants, with necessities answerable to such infinite multitudes, speaks only what he can do on extreme necessity, or when he hath some long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better measured by their standing forces, than by necessitated Levies. And herein this Prince comes not much short of his greatest neighbours: his standing bands consisting of 40000 *Nairos*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, which serve on foot; 20000 Horses, who are either *Persians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants; well paid, and kept in continual readines; his foot defraided out of his *Revenues*, his Horse maintained like the *Turks Tamariots*; out of certain Lands distributed amongst his Captains (some of which are said to have a million of Crowns per Annum) to furnish him with these stable bands of Horses and Elephants.

As for his *Revenue*, it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the rest the expence of his household, and the entertainment of his Foot. This sum amassed together out of the Lands, mines, and forfeits of the Countrey, which are wholly his; and the waters of some Rivers (sold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth; the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which, the mines, forfeits, and one third of the lands, he retaineth to himself; the other two being divided amongst his Captains. So that it is no marvel if to such a Countrey yield him such an income, considering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it should yield no more.

9. ORISTAN.

ORISTAN or ORIXA, is bounded on the South, with *Narsinga*; on the West, with *Deli* and *Sanga*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Botanter*; on the East with the Gulf of *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*: so called from *Orissa*, the chief City of it.

The Countrey hath plenty of Rice, cloth of Cotton, and a fine stuff like silk, made of grasse, and there called *Terva*; with which together with *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Myrabolins*, and other commodities here growing, they use to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Orissa* only. The people so well governed, or so hating theft, that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Monguls*, a man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the same temper and religion with the rest of the *Indians* subject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moisten and refresh it; but none so beneficial to the Kings hereof as the River *Guanen* (of old called *Chaberis*) the waters whereof esteemed sacred by the Kings of *Calicute* and *Narsinga*, and much used by them in their sacrifices and superstitious purgations, are wholly ingrossed by this King, who selleth them to those Princes at excessive rates. Besides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-coast, of 350 miles in length; that is to say, from Cape *Guadarino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narsinga*, to Cape *Laogora* in the East, which parts it from *Bengala*: But for all that not very much traded, because not so well provided of commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far less Territory.

Towns of most note herein, 1 *Orissa*, on the Sea-side, or nor far from it, the best traded Port of all this Kingdom; to which the name thereof is to be ascribed, as the Head City of the Countrey. 2 *Catech*, six dayes journey within the land, the ordinary residence of their Kings, before it was subdued by the Great *Monguls*. 3 *Angeli*, a well-frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laden with *Indian* Wares. 4 *Bacoli* or *Bacola*, more within the land, and once the head City of a Kingdom, but a very poor one. 5 *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat flesh, or kill any beast. 6 *Senepate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deserves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom; but that the Kings hereof were *Gentiles*, subdued not many years since by the K. of *Patanaw*: and both grown weaker by that war, by *Ech*, the Great *Mongul*.

10. BOTANTER.

BOTANTER (under which name I comprehend all those Petit Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-East of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Orissan* and *Patanaw*; on the West, the River *Guenga* or *Chaberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Pengad*; on the North, the *Zagathian Tartars*; divided from it by some branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the East the famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Botia*, the principal City of *Botanter*, which is the chief of these small Kingdoms.

The Countrey great, of three months journey in extent, full of high Mountains; one of which may be

Patanaw.

seen five dayes journey off; in which are said to dwell a people with ears of a span long or more, whom otherwise those of the Valleys count as *Apes*. In those parts which are next *Pengal*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more inclined to the *Olive* colour. Their garments they wear close to their bodies, so strait that one cannot see a pleit or wrinkle; and those they never put off by night nor day whilst they are able to ha: go on: nor do they wash at any time, for fear of defiling so pure a Creature as the water. Content with one wife (devised to be held a miracle in these Eastern parts) and yet *cobab* not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *South-ayer* is to tell them what to do with his body; according to whose direction (first consulting his Books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongst them. The principal, 1 *Battia*, the *Metropolis* of it. 2 *Chamur* of which little memorable. 3 *Kakares*, the second Kingdom of this rank, large, but exceeding mountainous, as being over-run by the branches of Mount *Caucasus*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named of *Kakares* the chief Town thereof, by some called *Negariot*, their Staples for the sale of their cloth, (most of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinays*, and *Tartarian Merchants*, who resort frequently to those Markets. This is a distinct Kingdom of it self, the Kings whereof are called *Dermains*, but *Vassals* to the great *Mongul*. And so is he of 3 *COUCHE*, another Kingdom of this Tract, fronting upon *Cauchin-China*, beyond *Ganges*; so called from *Couche*, the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reason that it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good pastures by that means, and those well stored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Deer, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build *Hospitals* for them, in which when lame and old, they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them; their small money being *Almonds*.

4. *GOUREN* the most Northern Realm in this General division, so called of *Gor*, or *Goren* the chief Town of it. The Country in some parts mountainous, out of which springeth the River *Sicilly*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*; the rest a kind of Desert or unpeopled Country, joyntly close to *Couche*. In which are few Villages, grass (or reeds rather) longer than a man, and therein many *Buffis*, Tigeis, and other wild Beasts; none wilder than the Theeves, who frequent the wildernesses.

In this Tract also are the Kingdoms of 5 *RAMME*, and 6 *REGON*, joining upon *Zagathay*, or enclining towards it; possessed by the *Mongul Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before: but *Fenditaries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachossia*, who commanded in the North East of *Persia*, and these North parts of *India*; and from those places drew his Army or the greatest part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galsee*, the King of *Mandac*. Here is also the Kingdom of 7 *TIPPUVA*, naturally fenced with hills and mountains; and by that means hitherto defended against the *Mongul Tartars*, their bad neighbours; with whom they have continual warres. But of these Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be said, and that little of no certain knowledge; those parts being hitherto so untravell'd, that they may pass in the Account of a *Terra Incognita*.

11. PATANAW.

PATANE or **PATANAW**, is bounded on the North, with the Realms of *Butanter*; on the East, with *Ganges*; on the West, with *Orissan*; and on the South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patanaw* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom of this name in the further *India*; but whether it were so called because a Colony of this; or from some resemblances in the nature of the several Countries, or from the signification of the word in the *Indian* language, I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that though they have the same name, yet they are under several Governments, and situate in far distant places: no otherwise agreeing than in some resemblances, as *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolshire*.

The Country yieldeth veins of Gold, which they dig out of the pits, and wash away the earth from it in great Bolls. The people tall, and of slender making, many of them old: great Praters, and as great dissemblers. The women so bedecked with silver and copper, especially about the feet, that they are not able to endure a shoe. Both Sexes use much washing in the open Rivers, and that too intermix together in their natural nakedness; especially such as live near the banks of the River *Jemena* (esteemed more holy than the rest) which from *Agra* passing thorow this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Patane*, a large town and a long one, built with very broad streets; but the houses very mean and poor, made at the best of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The *Metropolis* of this Kingdom, because the ancientest, and that which gives the name unto it. 2. *Bannaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the *Gentiles* from remote Countries use to come in *Pilgrimages*, to bathe themselves in the holy waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flourishing, and beautified upon the Rode with handsom Villages. 3. *Siripur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of this Country; not yet subdued by the great *Monguls*. 4. *Ciandican*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jesuits* when blamed by them for the worship of so many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the law of God and nature: For causing them to rehearse the *Dicatalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more against those commandements in worshipping so many *Pagodes*, than they themselves in worshipping so many *Saints*. 5. *Satagam*, a fair City (for a City of *Moors*) once part of *Patanaw*, since ascribed to *Bengala*.

The people of this Country properly called *Patanawans*, but corruptly *Paribians*, were once of great command and power in these parts of *India*. Lords for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*.

Bengala.

la, into which driven by *Babur*, the *Mongul Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grand-father of *Echebar*. Their last King being slain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joined in an *Aristocracy*, and warring upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their successors attempted *Orissan*, and added that also to their Estate, but they could not long make good their fortunes; subdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, and made subject to him. Three of them, viz. the Prince of *Siripur*, the King of *Ciandican*, and he whom they call *Mansadalin*, retain, as yet (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their ancient *Paganism*, as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometanism*, have vassal'd themselves to the great *Mongul*, now the Lord *Paramount* of the Country.

12. BENGALA.

BENGALA is bounded on the North, with *Patanaw*; on the East, with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*; on the South and West, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth in length on the Gulf and River 360 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land: A Country stored with all things necessary to the life of man, great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and long Pepper. Such abundance of Silk, and Cotton, and of Flesh and Fish, that it is impossible that any Country should exceed it in those commodities. And which crowns all, blest with so temperate and sweet an air that it draws thither people of all sorts to inhabit it. Here is also, amongst other rarities, a Tree called *Moses*, which beareth so delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* to sin.

The natural Inhabitants for the most part, are of white complexion, like the *Europeans*, subtil of wit, and of a curious disposition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandize, if not somewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with some smattering in *Philosophy*, *Physick*, and *Astrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparel: not naked as in others of their *Indian* Provinces, but clothed in a shirt or smock reaching to their feet, with some upper Garment over that. The women of an ill name for their unchastity, though *Adultery* be punished with cutting off of their noses. Near, if not curious and too costly in this one custom, that they never seeth meat twice in the same Pot, but for every boiling buy a new one. In Religion, for the most part *Mahometans*, especially on the Sea-shores, which lay most open and commodious to the *Arabians*; by whom *Mahometanism* was here planted many ages since.

Of Rivers we need take no care having spoken of *Ganges*; That with its many channels may abundantly serve to water so small a Province. But hereof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now unto the Cities. The principal whereof, 1. *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, situate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned one of the most beautiful Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by *Pilgrimages*, by reason of the holiness and divine operations ascribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it; there being few years in which not visited by three or four hundred thousand *Pilgrims*. 2. *Gouros*, the seat-Royal of the ancient Kings. 3. *Catigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4. *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and situate in those times on the banks of *Ganges*; now by the changing of the Channel (occasioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a league off from the River. 5. *Porto Grande*, and 6. *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Governments. Places like the *Aylum*, which was built by *Romulus*; whereunto such as dare not stay in their own Countries, or any well regulated Cities, use to make their resort; privileged here to live in all kind of licentiousness.

Here is also in the North parts of this Province, or adjoining to it, the City and Kingdom of *ARACHAN*; lying along the banks of *Ganges*, but so remote from the Sea, that it is 50 miles distant from the nearest branch of it. Wealthy and populous withall; governed heretofore by a King of its own, so wallowing in wealth and sensual pleasures, that he had in this City and the parts adjoining twelve Royal Palaces or *Seraglios*, all stowed with women for his lust. Now subject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, betwixt which it lyeth, to the Empire of the Great *Monguls*.

There are some small Islands in the Gulf of *Bengala*, which I account unto that Kingdom. 1. *Baracata*, now called *Basse*. 2. *Barasse*, of which name there are five in *Protolmy*, three of them by *Alexator* said to be *Mindanao*, *Cailon*, and *Sabur*. 3. Two, called the Islands of *Good Fortune*, by him placed under the *Aequator*, and said to be inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters; as also were three more which he calls 4. *Saadidhe*, now named *Cainam*. 5. *Insula Satyrarum*, or the Isles of *Satyres*, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like *Satyres*. And 6. those called *Maniolas*, in number ten, (now *Islas de Pracel*) reported by *Protolmy* to be so stored with *Adamant* stones, that they violently drew to them any ships or vessels which had iron in them; for which cause they which used these Seas fastned the planks of their ships with wooden pins. But our later *Navigators* find no such matter, unless perhaps it may be in the exploits of *Sir Huon of Bourdeaux*; where indeed we meet with such an Island, in the course of his *Errandrie*.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we find it of a different constitution from the rest of the Kingdoms of these parts. Not governed by a Family of successive Princes, descended from the Stem of a Royal Ancestry, as the others are. Chance, or necessity, had brought thither many *Ambassadors*, or *Ethiopian*s, who made a conquest of the Country; and chose a King out of themselves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regal honour to the *Ambassine* Nation, they procured thence yearly certain thousands of *Slaves*; whom they trained up unto the wars, advanced unto the highest commands in civil and military service; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Sovereign: as the *Mamlucks* in the Kingdom of *Egypt*, whom herein they followed. By some *Arabians* trading with them,

Fiss 3

they

Mandas. they came in time to admit *Mahometanism* amongst them; on the Sea-coasts especially. Dispossessed first of some part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagan*, by the *Patenians*, when driven to seek new dwellings by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartars*; and of their whole Kingdom, by the valour and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the rest of his estate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this side of *Ganges* (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narsinga* being but a Parenthesis in the construction of this sentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his descent from the *Mongul Tartars*, one of five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almost all the greater and lesser *Asia*, unto his estates, left *Persia*, with the parts of *India* which lay nearest to it on the North, to *Myrza Charrok*, his fourth sonne. But his issue failing in *Abdala*, the 4th. of that line, those estates fell to *Abusaid*, descended from *Maromcha*, the third sonne of *Tamerlane*: Whose sonne and successor called *Zenzes*, by some *Malaomeres*, being dispossessed of the greatest part of the Kingdom of *Persia*, by *Ussan-Cassanes*: the rights of all, with the possession of *Arachosia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Paropamisus* (now *Candahor* or *Sablestan*) together with so much of *India* as was held by those Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger sons of *Abusaid*: whose posterity laying hold on such opportunities as were offered to them, have made themselves Masters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whose Successors and their achievements we shall here present.

The Great Mongul.

- 1473 1 *Hamed*, the son of *Abusaid*, of the race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conquest of *Persia* by *Ussan-Cassanes*, succeeded in *Chabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realm of *India* subject to the *Tartars*.
- 1500 2 *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, in danger to be dispossessed of most of his Estates by the neighbouring *Uzbekes*, living upon the borders of *Persia*, *Tartary*, and *India*, whom at last he quieted; enlarging his dominions by the Conquest of some part of *Patanaw*, and other Kingdoms in the North.
- 1532 3 *Hamoyen*, the sonne of *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, commonly called *Emanpaxda*, vanquished by the *Parthians*, or *Patanians*, and their confederates, craved aid of *Tamas*, the 2d. *Persian* Monarch of this line, on promise to conform to the *Sophian Sect*: and by that aid confirmed and settled his affairs, but held himself to the former Principles of his Religion.
- 4 *Merhamed* or *Miramudius*, sonne of *Emanpaxda*, called in by *Galgae* the King of *Mandas*, against *Badurim* the *Cambaian*, vanquished the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields, and conquered the Kingdoms of *Mandas*, and *Balassia*, with some other Provinces.
- 5 *Adabar*, the sonne of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambaia*, unto his Dominions.
- 1550 6 *Mahomet Selabdin*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the most fortunate and victorious Prince of all this family, subdued the Kingdoms of *Caximir*, *Agra*, *Deccan*, *Orissa*, *Bengala*, *Patanaw*, and divers other of less note.
- 1605 7 *Selim*, surnamed *Jangheere*, the son of *Echebar*, who added nothing that I hear of, to his fathers conquests.
- 1627 8 *Blockie*, the grandchild of *Selim* by his eldest sonne, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* at *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-father; but shortly after made away by *Asaph Chawn*, to make room for
- 1627 9 *Curroon*, the third son of *Selim* or *Jangheere*, and son-in-law unto *Asaph Chawn*; having by his own Ministers, and the hands of his father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal blood, succeeded into the Estates, and was crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, still living for ought I hear to the contrary.

To look a little on these Princes, their estate and power; in matters of Religion they have generally been *Mahometans*, that Religion being long since embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally descended. But not so scrupulous or precise in that profession, as to endeavour the suppressing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his son *Jangheere*, being so inclined unto *Christianity*, that they permitted the *Jesuites* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* itself, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, that being doubtful what Religion to adhere unto, he caused 30 Infants to be so brought up, that neither their Nurses nor any body else should speak unto them, resolving to addict himself to the Religion of that Country, whose language should be spoken by them, as most agreeable to nature: and he did accordingly. For as those Children spoke no language, so was he positive and resolved in no Religion; Able to see the vanities of *Mahomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the strictness of *Christianity*. And though *Selim* who succeeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects, declared himself for that Religion; yet his affairs being once settled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as *Neutral* as his Father; Sultan *Curroon* now Reigning, of the same *Neutrality*, and tis well he is so; there being no Religion so impure and bloody, which he would not dishonour by his known ungraciousness.

The

The Language spoken by these Princes, and their natural Subjects the *Magores*, or *Mongul-Tartars*, *India*, &c. is said by some to be the *Turkish*. But I think rather that it is some Language near it, than the very same: And that the Language which they speak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* people) differ but in *Dialect*, a sprinkling of the *Persian* intermixt amongst them. A mixture not to be denied, in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the intercourse which their Subjects of those parts have with these of *India*, and that the greatest part of their Soldiers, Officers and commanders, are supplied from thence.

Their Government is absolute, if not *Tyrannical*, the *Great Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every mans estate which is worth the having: the persons and purses of his Subjects at his sole disposing; so that he may amass what treasures, and raise what forces for the Wars his need requireth; or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Ministers shall suggest unto him. First, for his *Treasures*, it is conceived that his *Revenue* doth amount yearly to fifty Millions of Crowns, and there are reasons to persuade that it may be more. The Country very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the world, the *Impost* upon which is of infinite value; besides the vast sums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countries whatsoever, which hold traffick here; their commodities not being to be parted with but for ready coin. The whole land being also his, he estates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himself; and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleasure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themselves, but him it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbents death, to enter on the whole estate of the *Tenant* by the way of *Eschear*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him of course, the wife and children of the deceased being fairly dealt with, if he content himself with the personal estate, and leave the Land to them to begin anew. For instance, of those huge sums which in so rich a Country may be had this way, it is said that when the *Vice-Roy of Labor* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three millions of Gold, besides Silver, Jewels, Horses, Elephants, Furniture and Goods, almost invaluable: And of one *Raga Gagnar*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the *Great Mongul* seized of his into his hands 3400 pound weight of Gold, besides Plate and Jewels. Besides these means of heaping treasure, all the Mines of the Country are wholly his, and the *Prebends* given by all sorts of *Suters*, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his presence which comes empty-handed. Finally, if *Badurim*, which was King of *Cambaia* only, could bring into the field at once 500 Tun of Gold and silver to pay his Army; and after the loss of all that treasure, advanced upon the sudden the sum of 600000 Crowns, which he sent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to succor him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite *Treasures* must we think this Prince to be master of, who hath more than four times the estate of the King of *Cambaia*, and far more trading now than in former times!

By the like Parallel we may conjecture somewhat at his Forces also, *Badurim* the *Cambaian* brought into the field against *Merhamed*, and the King of *Mandas*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horses, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 pieces of brass Ordnance, of which were 4 *Basilisks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen: and 500 Carts loaded with powder and shot. What then may we conceive of this Prince, who is Lord of so much a greater estate than he; but that his *Levies* may be raised proportionably to so great Dominions? But because possibly *Badurim* did extend himself to the utmost of his power, and having lost two Battels was never able to recruit again, which no wise Prince would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any such hazards on the loss of a Battel, can in an instant raise 50000 Elephants, 300000 horse, and Foot proportionable, and yet have stock enough for an *Aster-game*, if that he should chance to lose the first. But it is seldom that he hath advanced to so high a *Muster*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Deccan*, he had but an Hundred thousand men, and a thousand Elephants for fight; though possibly of all sorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in time of *Progress*, it is said that his followers of all sorts amount unto two hundred thousand, & that his tents do usually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithstanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire have not only been at a stand, since the death of *Echebar*; but the *Raibooches* in *Cambaia*, the *Venazarari* in *Deccan*, and other puissant Rebels in other parts of his Dominions, hold out still against him; some of them being said to command as much land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in readiness 20000 horse and 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature or Divine Providence have given to Empires, as to men, a determinate growth, beyond which which there is no exceeding.

2 INDIA EXTRAGANGEM.

INDIA EXTRAGANGEM is that part of the great Continent of *India*, which lieth on the further side of the River *Ganges*, from the spring or fountain of it, wheresoever it be, to the Fall thereof into the sea by the fifth and last mouth thereof, which is called *Antiboli*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this side of that River. From hence extended Eastward as far as *China* and the *Oriental Ocean*, on other parts bounded as before.

The Country in those elder times, to renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it had the name of *The Silver Region*, and an other of *The Golden Chersonese*: this last supposed to be the *Opbir* of *Solomon*, of which more hereafter. The people of the same nature and disposition, in the elder times, as those which did inhabit on the hither side of the *Ganges*; not so well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reason of the remoteness of their situation; nor so well discovered at the present. So that the best accompt we shall be able to give of it (though that lame enough) will not be so exact and

particular

Bramia.

punctual as of that before; with reference either to the State hereof in the times of the Antients, or the affairs of it in these days.

Mountains of most note in it, 1 *Bepyrus*, 2 *Maandrus*, 3 *Semanthinus*; and 4 those called *Damasi*, touched upon before, in our general discourse of *India*. Out of which, and from other Springs, flow these following Rivers, 1 *Catabeda*, 2 *Borsanna*, 3 *Sadua*, 4 *Temala*, 5 *Bosynga*, 6 *Chrysaoras*, 7 *Polandus*, 8 *Attabus*, these three last in the part hereof called the *Golden Chersonese*, 9 *Daonias*, and 10 *Dorias*, rising out of the Mountains called *Damasi*. Others there are whose names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now distinguished, it is hard to say. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1 *Balanga*, 2 *Cirtatha*, 3 *Tafale*, 4 *Tugma*, and 5 *Malihura*, have the name of being the *Metropoles* of their several Nations. 6 *Triglyphus*, only honoured with the name of *Regia*: more memorable perhaps for the *white Crows*, and *bearded Hens*, which are said to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat-Royal of some petty Prince. After these 1 *Sada* on the banks of the River *Sadus*, 2 *Samba*, 3 *Salara*, 4 *Colis*, 5 *Zabe*, and 6 *Sinda*, have the name of Cities, 7 *Baracura*, 8 *Berabinnu*, 9 *Belynga*, 10 *Tacola*, 11 *Sabana* and 12 *Thiboubastus*: are marked out for the most noted *Empories*, or Towns of Trade; the memory of *Sabana* being still preserved in the Frith of *Sabaun*, betwixt this *Chersonese* and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by those special Adjuncts, of which, 1 *Cocconagora*, and 2 *Balonca*, in the *Golden Chersonese*; 3 *Rband-marcoia*, in the Midlands, 4 *Pentapolis*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, called *Antibolus*; 5 *Aganagara*, near the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6 *Corygaza*, one of the principal Towns of the *Maranda*, may be some of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, besides the *Maranda* last spoken of, were the *Gangarides*, and *Gan-geni*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacorai*, bordering on the Mountain *Bepyrus*; as the *Tilada* on *Maandrus*; and the *Animache*, and *Caboca*, near the hills called *Damasi*. The *Balada*, said to be crooked, short and thick; but of a cheerful aspect, and clear complexion: of which composition also the inhabitants of the *Golden Chersonese* were observed to be: the *Barra*, and *Cudus*, on the Bay called *Sinus magnus*; the *Liskori*, a theevish and Piratical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of so hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow. These, with the rest, too many to be here recited, the issue in most likelihood of *Charviah* and *Saba* the sons of *Jockan*; of whom we find so many footsteeps in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabaracu*, *Siam*, *Sabana Emporio*, *Subanus Fluvio*; and in the Countries now called *Ava*, and the Kingdom of *Cavellan*. Of any of their actions we find little in ancient stories, or of the power of any of their former Kings but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander*, that he and the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Agramenes* (the most powerful King of all those Countries) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horse, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to trye *Malleries* with him; yet his Souldiers were so terrified with it (remembering the hard bout which they had with *Pernu*) that no persuasions could prevail with them to go further Eastward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unless the conversion of the *Indians* in the time of *Constantine*, may be applied to those on that side of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the later observations and discoveries of it, we find it (as most barbarous Countries else still reduced to order) dismembered and subdivided into many estates; almost as many Realms as Cities, and distinct governments amongst them, as Tribes and Nations. Most of them *Gentiles* in Religion, with whom the name of *Christ* and *Christianity* not so much as heard of, till the coming of the *Jesuits* thither; who have not only obtained leave, but some invitations, for the promoting of the *Gospel*. And for *Mahometanism*, though it had got some footing on the Sea coasts of the Gulf of *Bengala*, lying most convenient for the trade of the *Arabian Merchants*; yet on the North, and midland parts, and those towards *China*, and the *Oriental Seas*, it was as little heard of as *Christianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them, to which as many of the rest as are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are those of, 1 *Brama*, or *Barma*, 2 *Cauchin-China*, 3 *Camboia*, 4 *Jangoma*, 5 *Siam*, and 6 *Pegu*.

1 BRAMA.

THE Kingdoms of *BRAMA* or *BARMA* have on the West, the River *Ganges*; on the North, part of *Cathay* in *Tartary*; on the East *Cauchin-China*; and on the South, the Kingdom of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramanes*, or *Brames*, possessed for many ages past of these North-West Counties. By the transposing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdoms of *Barma*.

The Country of these *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the nearest of the *Peguan* Kingdoms, for the space of 150 Leagues, but far more from West to East: watered with many great remarkable Rivers, issuing from the Lake *Chiamay*, which though 600 miles from Sea, and emptying it self continually into many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compass, and is nevertheless full of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and the commodiousness of the Lake, the Country is wonderfully enriched, as *Egypt* by the overflows of *Nilus*. Which notwithstanding, there are in it many huge forests, in the West especially; and therein many Lyons, Tygers, Ounces, Serpents, and other Creatures of a mischievous and hurtful Nature.

The whole Country containeth the Kingdom of 1 *Calam*, 2 *Prom*, 3 *Melinta*, 4 *Miranda*, 5 *Bacan*, 6 *Tangu*, 7 *Ava*, and 8 *Brama*.

Of

Cauchin

OF 1 *MELINTAY* and 2 *MIRANDA*, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the rest, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the first rising of his fortunes; becoming the foundation of his following greatness. Of 3 *BACAM*, it is said that it is plentifully enriched with Mines, both of Gold and Silver. In 4 *CAVILAN*, commonly and contractedly called *CALAM*, we find apparent foot-steps of the name of *Cavilah* the son of *Jockan*. Of the rest more is to be said, not much.

5 *PRUCM*, though it be a little Kingdom, is exceeding populous, and stored with a warlike People. Given by the second King of *Pegu* of the *Tanguum* Race, to a younger sonne, who being by his Father commanded to the Siege of *Mormolan* which had then revolted, not only did decline the service, but rebelled against him, and by the strength of this small Kingdom held it out three years. But seeing his Father's fortunes in a manner desperate, he repented of his disobedience, and went unto his aid, with an Army of 50000 men of his Natural Subjects. Treacherously poisoned on the way by his chiefest Counsellor, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6. *TANGU*, is the name of one of these *Bramian* Kingdoms, so called from the chief Town thereof: formerly subject with the rest of the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their several Vice-Royes. One of which taking his advantage of the wars between the Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to set up for himself, and husbanded his affairs so well, that he became sole Lord of these *Bramian* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the rest in this part of *India*. Not long enjoyed by his Successor, when dispossessed and slain by one whom he married to his Sister, and made Governour of this very Province. In which he bore himself so stiffly, that being sent for by his King to aid him against some of his Rebels, and to bring all the Inhabitants of the Country with him: he answered that he would send one half; to send all, unreasonable. Incensed with which denial, the King armed against him; but he put the Leaders to the sword, and seized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and despairing of reconciliation, he took upon himself the title of King of *Tangu*; and to secure himself therein, joined with the King of *Arrachan* against his Sovereign; whom he most barbarously slew (after he had put himself into his hands) with his wife and children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of his villany, subdued not long after, with the rest of these *Indian* Princes, by the King of *Barma*; of which more hereafter.

7. *AVA*, another of these Kingdoms, and one of the plantations of *Cavilah* also; is liberally furnished with all things necessary for the life of man. It affordeth also store of *Rubies*; which they dig out of the Mountains; a certain creature which breeds *Musk*, together with great plenty of horse and Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*, which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built, issuing out of the Lake of *Chiamay*, and communicates the same to the whole Province. Subject for many ages past to the King of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is said; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling against the sonne and successor of his Benefactor, and by him slain in single Combat; this Kingdom was conferred on a sonne of the Conqueror. A Prince of more virtue than his Brother, and one which grew at last unto so great power, that in the bustle or combustions of the Kingdom of *Pegu*, he surprised or forced the Fort of *Sieriangh*, formerly given unto the *Portugals* by the King of *Arrachan*; slew all the Souldiers, and spirited *Philip de Brites*, who commanded it. After which, gathering together the dispersed *Peguanes*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himself a good bargain by it; if the sudden coming of the King of *Barma*, had not spoiled his markets.

8. *BRAMA* or *BARMA*, the most Southern of these *Bramian* kingdoms, the King whereof was *Feudatary* to the Kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no account when the *Portugals* came first acquainted with *India*, nor in many years after; now of most renown. For sitting still when all the rest of their neighbours were embroiled in wars, they gathered so much power and strength that in the end, one of the later Kings hereof observing how the forces of his neighbouring Princes were consumed, and their treasures wasted, levied an Army of 300000 fighting men; 40000 Elephants; with all things suitable. And with this power subdued the kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odia*, (the two chief Cities of these parts) invaded the Kingdom of *Siam*, and possessed himself of it; making in little time all the lesser Princes to become his *Tributaries* as they still continue.

2. CAUCHIN-CHINA.

CAUCHIN-CHINA is bounded on the West, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the East, with part of the Great Realm of *China*; on the North extending towards *Tartary*; on the South bordering on *Camboia*.

The Country aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great store of silks, of which the Inhabitants make *Tassata*, and other stufes. It affordeth also plenty of *Porcellane* Earth, which being made into Cups, Dishes, and other Utensils of household, is sold by the name of *China-ware*: well counterfeited of late amongst us, by putting a white crust on our *Potters* earth; as near for use and shew as the natural *China*.

The people very stout and warlike, especially for Foot-service, though they have many horses here, and those fit for war. Well-practised on their *Petees* also, on which they spend great store of powder, but not so much in war, as in sports and triumphs; yet making much more than they spend, the earth in some parts yielding very fit materials for that commodity. Trained up to *Manufactures*, especially to the making

Camboia.

king of Powder, Silks, and *Procellanes*, which they sell to the *Chinese*. Idolaters for the most part, as are those of *China*, whose Characters and language they also use: but so that there appear some inclinations unto *Christianity*, in many of them, who have erected many *Crosses*, and do admit the pictures of the *Blessed Virgin*, and the final judgment. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progress in the Gospel, if they had met with better Teachers than these *Laymen* Books.

The chief City hereof is called *Chanchin-China* by the name of the Province, situate on a River coming out of *China*; and passing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Country divided into three Provinces, and as many Kings, over which one *Paramount*; but he and they the Tributaries of the King of *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Island called *Ainao*, ten miles from the land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fishing for *Pearls*. The only Province of the *Indies*, which is wholly subject to the power of a foreign Prince; the *Portugals* holding in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces.

3. CAMBOIA.

CAMBOIA is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin-China*; on the East and South, with the Ocean; on the West, with parts of the Kingdom of *Siam*, and the Realm of *Jangoma*. So called from *Cambola* the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Cambola* specially so called.

1 **CHAMPA**, the Northern part hereof bordereth on *Cauchin-China*, and is liberally provided of all necessaries: besides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in silver, much used in *Bathes*, and at the funerals of great persons. This a distinct Kingdom of it self, but subject with the rest to the King of *Burma*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Country, is situate neer the Sea-side, and of very good traffick.

2 **CAMBOIA** specially so called, lieth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Country, well stored with Elephants and *Rhinoceroses*, which last the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth also great plenty of a sweet-wood, which they call *Calamba*, as precious and as much esteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the same, or some Species of it as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Flesh, and Fish; Well-watered with the River *Mecon*, which issuing out of *China*, and having received many lesser streams fallerh first into a great Lake of 300 miles compass, and thence into the *Indian Ocean*; making betwixt the Lake and that an hundred Islands. By the overflowings of this River the whole Country is enriched (as *Egypt* by the like overflowing of *Nilus*): the inhabitants at those times betaking themselves to their upper Rooms, and passing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be strong and warlike, though more inclined to merchandise and navigation than to deeds of Arms. Idolaters of the worst kind, esteeming Men and Beasts of a like condition in regard of any future judgment: of late beginning to set up, and adore the *Cross*, which is (it seems) the first Principle of Religion in which the *Friers* are wont to instruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet by these new Teachers, from burning the women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning their Nobles with the King, used only here; but voluntarily to express their loves, not upon constraint.

The chief Towns of it, 1 *Cambola*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia* and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Situate on the River *Mecon* before it was destroyed; where it hath its fall into the Sea; well traded, as the Staple for all this Country, the commodities whereof are brought hither, and here sold to the Merchant. 2 *Chudurmuch*, twelve leagues from *Cambola*, on the same River also. 3 *Coul*, on the Sea-side in the very South-west Angle of all the Country. The Kings whereof, once absolute, and at their own disposing, till invaded by a vast Army of the neighbouring *Laos*: in which their King being slain, and his forces weakened, his sonne and Successor was constrained to become a *Vassal* to the crown of *Siam*. But fearing the loss of his estate, when that Kingdom was made subject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598, he applied himself unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninsula* (part of his dominions) extending three leagues into the Sea; and sent to the *Jesuits* for some of their *Society* to live and preach amongst his people. Not able for all these honest Policies to preserve himself from being made a *Fendatary* of the King of *Burma*.

4. JANGOMA.

JANGOMA, or the Country of the *LAOS*, is bounded on the East, with *Cambola* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Mecon*; on the West, with the River of *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdom; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Burma*.

It took its name from *Jangoma* the chief Province of it; the other two (for there be three of them in all) being those of *Lavae*, and *Carrey*. All of them joyned together called the Country of *Laos*, by the name of the people, a mighty Nation and stout, by Religion *Gentiles*, naked from the middle upwards, and trussing up their hair like a cap. Their Country very rich and level, but very ill neighboured by the

Gueoni

Gueoni (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name *Gangigu*) who possess the mountains: whence falling in great companies to hunt for men whom they kill and eat, they commit cruel butcheries amongst them. Inasmuch as this people, not able to defend themselves against their fury, or rather wanting good Leaders to conduct and order them (for it is said that they can make a million of men) were fain to put themselves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no further than the humour took them.

Towns they have none of any note, except those three which give name to the several Provinces; and those of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the most part live on the banks of their rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber; or else upon the Rivers in boats and shallops, as the *Tartarians* said the *Defarts* in their Carts or Wheel-houses. One of their Rivers (commonly called River of *Laos*) said to extend 400 leagues within the land, as far as *Tartary*, and *China*; and from July to September to invert its course, and flow back strongly toward its fountain. Not governed by any certain rule or order, till they submitted to the Patronage of the King of *Siam*; and then no other than they listed; though for their sakes, that King engaged himself in a war against the *Cannibals*, their most deadly enemies, accompanied with 25000 foot, 20000 Horse, and 10000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of those *Cannibals* (of whom otherwise they had been devoured) in the year 1578, they defended the River in great multitudes, to the number of 200000, and fell into the Realm of *Cambola*. But they made an unprosperous adventure of it. For though the King of *Cambola* lost his life in the battell, yet he gave them such a fatal blow, that they were almost all slain, drowned or captivated in the fight. Weakened wherewith they became an easie prey to the *Vice-Roy* of *Tangu*, when he first made himself sole Master of this part of *India*. Who giving to his brother the Kingdom of *Ava*, and leaving to his eldest Son the Kingdom of *Pegu*, with the Sovereignty over all the rest, conferred this Country, with the title of King of *Jangoma*, on a younger Son. But he, begotten on a daughter of the King of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole *Indian Empire*, was easily perswaded by the *Talapies*, (so they call their Priests) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his claim by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*, by whom that King was slain, and his Kingdom wasted. How he sped afterwards I find not. But probable it is, that he submitted with the rest to the King of *Burma*.

5. SIAM.

SIAM, is bounded on the North, with *Jangoma*, and part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, save that it toucheth on the East, with a part of *Cambola*; and on the West, with a point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all those Kingdoms which pass under this name, as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Country of greater length than breadth, stretcheth it self Southwards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninsula* or *Demy-Island*, called anciently *Aurea Chersonesus*, or the *Golden Chersonese*: one of the five famous *Chersoneses* or *Peninsulas* of the elder Writers; the other four being *Peloponnesus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Chersonese* neer *Propontis*, the *Taurican Chersonese* in the *Exzine*, and the *Cimbrian Chersonese* in the North of *Germany*, now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the *Golden*, superadded to it, from its plenty of gold, for which much celebrated by the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans* (and therefore not improbably thought by some to be *Solomons* *Ophir*) still famous with the rest of the Countreys of the Kingdom of *Siam*, for abundance of Gold, Silver, Tinn, and other metals; great quantity of Pepper sent yearly thence, with store of Elephants, and Horses: the whole Countrey very fat and fertile, well stored with Rice, Corn, Grafs, and all other necessaries.

The people generally much addicted to pleasures, if not to Luxury; delighted much with Musick and rich apparel; and such as stand much upon their honour. For their instruction in good letters they have publick Schools, where their own Laws, and the mysteries of their own Religion, are taught them in their natural Language; all other Sciences in strange tongues understood by none but by the learned. To til-lage they can frame themselves, and are painfull in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanical Arts*, which they put over to their *Slaves*. In Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, worshipping the four Elements amongst other Gods; to each of which as they are severally affected, so are their bodies to be disposed of: either burnt, buried, hanged, or drowned, after their decease; as in their lives they were most devoted to the Fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some *Christians* here also in and about the parts possessed by the *Portugals*; but more *Mahometans*: who possessing two hundred Leagues of the Sea-coasts of this Country, have planted that Religion in most part of the Country now by them possessed.

It containeth in it many Kingdoms, some of little note; those of most observation, 1 *Malaca*, 2 *Patane*, 3 *Jor*, 4 *Muantay*, and 5 *Siam*, properly and especially so called. Of which *Malaca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, for and *Patane* are possessed by the *Arabians* or *Saracens*, the other two have followed the fortunes of the Kings of *Siam*.

1. The Kingdom of *MALACA* taketh up the South part of the *golden Chersonese*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Protonny* calleth *Malanconia*, in the extreme South-point hereof neer unto *Sabana*, then a noted *Empory*, for the space of 270 miles. So called from *Malaca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Musicana*, or built very near it, from whence this Tract is called by *Sirabo*, *Muscani Terra*. The City seated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here said to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflowings whereof, and the nearness of it to the

Line

Cherson.
Anrea.

Line (being but two degrees in the North) the Air hereof, and all the Territory belonging to it, is very unwholesome; and for that cause the Country but meanly populous. In compass it is said to be 20 miles, of great wealth, because of almost infinite trading; for Spices, *Engments*, Gold, Silver, Pearls, and precious Stones, the most noted *Empory* of the East. Infomuch that it is said by *Ludovico Barthelemi*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more ships than any one City in the world, more by far since the coming of the *Portugals* to it, than it was before. The people (as in all this tract) of an Ash-colour, with long hair hanging over their faces, bloody and murderous, especially when they meet one another in the Night. Few other Towns of any note, in a place so unhealthy, except a *Sinapura*, situate East of *Malaca*, near the Promontory of old called *Magnum*; supposed by some to be the *Zabe* of *Ptolomy*; and that more probably than that it should be his *Palura*, as *Maginnu* would have it; *Palura* being a City of the *Higher India*, and different at the least 20 degrees of Longitude from any part of this *Chersonese*. But whatsoever it was called in the former times, it was in these later ages the mother of *Malaca*; the greatest part of the Trade and people being removed from thence to this newer foundation: before which time it was the best frequented *Empory* in these parts of the East. 3 *Palo Zambilan*, 120 miles on the West of *Malaca*, from whence to *Sinapura*, coasting about the Southern Cape (now called *Cape Liampo*) we have a Sea shore of 270 miles, as before was said. No other habitation of any reckoning, but a few Sheds upon the shore for the use of Fisher-men, and some scattered Villages in the land: the People dwelling most on Trees for fear of Tigers.

This Tract in former times possessed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1258. became a Kingdom of it self; founded by *Paramisera*, and some other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the tyranny of their own King, came into this Country, where they were lovingly received by *Sangeffinga*, then reigning under the *Siamite* in *Sinapura*. Him they perfidiously slew, and invested *Paramisera* in his Dominion. Oured of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to seek a new dwelling, and after two or three Removes, fell upon the place where *Malaca* now standeth, which City, pleased with the commodiousness of the situation, he is said to have built. The trade of *Sinapura* in short time removed hither also, which so increased the Wealth and power of the Kings hereof, that joyning with the *Moors*, who began to plant themselves on the shores adjoining, and receiving withall the Law of *Mahomet*, they began to cast off all subjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the Son and Successor of *Paramisera* had submitted his new-raised Kingdom, and became their *Homager*. Incensed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500. sent out a Navy of 200 Sail to distress it by Sea, and an Army of 30000 men and 400 Elephants to besiege it by Land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindered by Tempests, and the inficiencies of some of his Souldiers, the *Portugals* in the year 1511. under the conduct of *Albuquerque* had possessed themselves of it, who built there a Fortress and a Church. And though *Aldinus* the Son of the expelled King (whose name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Estate, and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the Kings of *Jor* and *Achen* (two neighbouring Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have severally and successively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they still keep in defiance of all opposition which hath been hitherto made against them.

2. North unto that of *Malaca* lieth the Kingdom of *JOR*, *JOR*, or *JOHOR*, so called of *Jor*, or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the most part by *Moors*, or *Saracens*, *Mahometanism* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Country also. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of so much power, that joyning his Land-forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he besieged *Malaca*, and built a Royal Fort before it: in which, when taken by *Paul de Lima* by the defeat of this King, were found 900 pieces of brass Ordnance. After this, picking a quarrel with the King of *Pahan*, he burnt his Houses, Barns, Provisions, and the Suburbs of the City it self: but in the course of his affairs was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Isle of *Sumatra*) his old confederate, who after 29 dayes siege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this King or Kingdom, I am not able to resolve. In former times it did acknowledge him of *Siam* for the Lord in Chief.

3. More Northward yet lieth the Kingdom of *PATHANE*, denominated from *Patane* the chief City of it: but different from *Patane* in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *Yorkshire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* from *Holland* in *Lincolnshire*, as hath been fully shewn before. The City made of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and composed together: the *Mosquit* onely (most of the people being *Mahometans*) is built of Brick. The *Chinoise* make a great part of the Inhabitants of it, infomuch that in this small City there are spoke three Languages, viz. the *Chinese*, used by that people; the *Malayan* (or language of *Malaca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this small Crown is *Fendatory*. Built of such light stuff and combustible matter, it must needs be in great danger of fire; and was most miserably burnt in the year 1613. by some *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of some of their Fellows: at which time the whole City was consumed with fire, the *Mosquit*, the *Queens* Court, and some few Houses, excepted only. The Country governed of late years by *Queens*, who have been very kind to the *English* and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories* in *Patane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late *Queen* a little before that dismal fire, offended with the King of *Pan* or *Pahan*, who had married her Sister, and reigned in a little Island not far off, she sent against him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 men: by which compelled to correspond with her desires, he brought his *Queen* and her Children with him to make up the breach.

4. The Kingdom of *SIA M*, strictly and specially so called, is situate on the main-land (the rest before described being in the *Chersonese*) betwixt *Cambodia* on the East, *Pegu* on the West, the Kingdom of *Muantay* on the North, and the main Ocean on the South. The chief Cities of it, 1 *Sacotai*, memorable for a Temple made wholly of metall 80 spans in height, raised by one of the Kings; it being

Pegu.

the custom of this Country, that every King at his first coming to the Crown, is to build a Temple; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2 *Quedao*, renowned for the best Pepper, and for that cause very much frequented by foreign Merchants. 3 *Tavay*, upon the Sea-coast where it joyneth to *Pegu*. Whence measuring along the shores till we come to *Champa*, before mentioned, being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Chersonese* into this Account) we have a Sea-coast of the length of 600 leagues. 4 *Lugor*, upon the Sea-side also, near that little *Isthmus*, which joyneth the *Chersonese* to the land; from whence to *Malaca* is 600 miles fall all along the coast. 5 *Calantan*, the head City of a little Kingdom, but subject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6 *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiously seated on the River *Menam*, for Trade and Merchandise. So populous and frequented by foreign Nations, that besides the Natives, here are said to be thirty thousand households of *Arabians*. The Houses of it high built, by reason of the *Annual* deluge, during which time they live in the Upper-rooms; and unto every house a boat for the use of the family. Those of the poorer sort dwell in little sheds, made of Reed and Timber; which they remove from place to place for the best convenience of their Markets. And yet so strong, that being belieged by the *Tanguan* Conqueror, then King of *Pegu*, An. 1567. with an Army of fourteen hundred thousand fighting men, for the space of 20 months together; it resolutely held good against him: not gained at last by force, but Treason, one of the Gates being set open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Christianity; but hitherto so ill instructed in the principles of it, that they maintain, amongst many other strange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years, (from what time I know not) the world shall be consumed with fire; and that under the ashes of it shall remain two Eggs, out of which shall come one man and one woman, who shall people the world anew.

5 *MUANTAY* the last of these Kingdoms, lieth betwixt *Jangoma* and *Siam*; memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Udie*, the principal of all the Kingdoms of *Siam*, and the usual residence of those Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Calpumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the wars, and in continual readiness for present service. For though this King be Lord of nine several Kingdoms, yet he useth none of them in his wars but the natural *Siamites*, and those of this City and the rest of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is said that for the use of this City only (being feated like *Venice* upon many little Islands not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 Skiffes, and Shallops; serving to waite the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great strength, and almost impregnable. But being being beleaguered by the *Tanguan* or *Bramain* Conquerour with ten hundred thousand fighting men (an Army big enough to have buried a greater City than this, if every man had but cast a shovel full of earth upon it) it was won at last.

The Government of these Kings of *Siam*, was absolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being sole Lord of all the Land in his Kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to *Husbandmen*, during life or pleasure, but never passed over unto any the right of Inheritance. And these he grants unto his Subjects, besides rents in money, upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horse, Foot, and Elephants: thereby enabled without further charge unto the Subject, to levy 20000 Horse, and 250000 Foot for present service; besides far greater numbers out of the residue of his people, if occasion be. And for his ordinary Guard he was said to keep 6000 Souldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which Beasts he is reported to have 50000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the war. By reason of so great a power he became Master of the Realms of *Cambodia*, and *Champa*; held those of *Malacha*, *Jor*, *Pahan*, and *Patane*, as his Vassals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangoma* and the *Laos*, under his protection. But when the fatal time was come, and that his City of *Siam* was betrayed to the King of *Pegu*, he poisoned himself upon the news: his Son becoming Tributary to the *Peguan* Victor. This Son of his, too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a Son of the *Peguan*, a vicious and tyrannical King, degenerating from the gallantries of so worthy a Father by whom he was besieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting men. Unable to resist his Army if he had presently declared such a resolution, he entertained the King with Treaties, and promises of delivering the City to him, till the third month after, (which was *March*); when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Country, for 120 miles about; by which sudden and violent inundation, and the Sword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there perished all of this great Army, except 70000. After this blow, the conquering *Siamite*, Anno 1600. besieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon: and dying in the year 1605. left his estate unto his Brother. Whose Son succeeding, settled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *English* Merchants, Anno 1612. and was in a fair way of obtaining the sovereignty of *Pegu*, then destroyed and waited, if the violent and unrelenting coming of the King of *Burma* had not crossed him in it: to whom now subject with the rest of the *Indian* Princes, on that side of the River.

6. PEGU.

PEGU is bounded on the East, with *Jangoma*, and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Bramai*, on the West and South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City, as that by the name of the River upon which standeth. Divided commonly into the Kingdoms and Estates of 1 *Vermi*, 2 *Macin*, 3 *Orrachan*, 4 *Martavan*, and 5 *Pegu* specially so called.

Pegu.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a small Kingdom bordering upon *Bengala*; and so denominated from *Verma*, the chief Town thereof. A Kingdom which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moors* and *Mahometans*, which can be said of no other of these *Indians* Kingdoms.

The People black, naked above the Waiste, and covered beneath it only with a veil of Cotton; in matter of Religion, *Gentiles*; and in war right valiant. This last apparent by the long and frequent wars which they had with the *Peguans*; to whom made tributary in conclusion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN*, so called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of these *Peguan* Kingdoms. Of small esteem, but for the great quantity of the Sweet-wood, by the *Latins* called *Lignum Vita*, by the *Natives Calamba*, so much in use for Funerals and Bathes, (as was said before) held also by the *Indians* for a sovereign and unparallel'd *Medicine* against many dangerous diseases; great quantities whereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchant. One of the first Kingdoms which was conquered by the King of *Burma*, (upon whom it bordereth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN*, or *Arrachan*, lieth on the West of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*; environed round with Mountains, and impassable Woods. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Dianga*, taken and destroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the King of *Arrachan*, An. 1608. 2 *Sundiva*, likewise in an Island unto which it gives name, six leagues off from the Continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, An. 1602. and from them taken by this King about two years after, and made a member of his Kingdom. The Island 30 leagues in compass, very strong, fruitful, and the Town well fortified. 3 *Arrachan* the head City, which gives name to all, distant from the Sea 45 miles, but seated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the Desolation of which State the King hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, besieged the second *Peguan* King in the Castle of *Alcao*; and had betwixt them the whole pillage of that wealthy City, together with the possession of the best Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Arrachan*, in triumph, leading with him the white Elephant of the King of *Pegu*, sumptuously adorned; the brother and two sons of the *Peguan* following in the *Pugant*. A solemn and magnificent entry. The better to assure himself of his new Dominions, this King bestowed upon him who had taken his son, and put him to a grievous ransom; they brake out into open wars. In the pursuit whereof, after many losses, the King recovered from them the Isle of *Sandiva*; and manning out a Fleet of 1200 sail (of which 75 were of so great burden, as to carry every one, twelve pieces of Ordnance) and in that Fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 greater pieces, besieged the fortress: assisted in that action also by the King of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his design, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613 as before is said, had he not been outed in the mean time of his own Kingdom, by the King of *Burma*: of whose great rise, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Arrachan*, were the first foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richest of these Kingdoms, lieth South to *Arrachan*, a little turning towards the West. The soyl so fertile, that it yieldeth three Harvests in a year; and sent annually fifteen Ships to *Cochin*, and as many to *Malaca*, laden with Rice. Rich also in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steel, Brass, Silver, Gold, and *Rubies*, and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forests well-stored with Harts, Bores, and *Buffoles*; store of Pines and Palms: the woods with *Sugar-Canes*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and shrubs either medicinal or odoriferous. The principal City it called also *Martavan*, lieth upon an Haven open at all times of the year, and not choaked with sands, as usually other Havens are in the *Indian winter*: of great trading, much splendor, and a temperate air. Faithful unto the last to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were subject; and in that constancy they twice repulsed the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the most part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* caused two of his cowardly Captains to be cast into a Chaldron of scalding Oyl; and at the third Assault became of Matter it. *Bannalaum* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themselves in the Woods and Desarts.

5. *PEGU*, the most predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Crescent* or half-Moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on that coast from *Negrals* unto *Tavan*, the next Town of *Siam*, for the space of three hundred miles, and upwards; but little less in breadth, if not quite as much. So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs through the middle of it, and gives this name also unto *Pegu* the most noted City.

The Soyl hereof exceeding fruitful, by reason of the annual overflowings of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth also many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make wax) store of *Elephants*, and abundance of Parats which speak plainer, and are much fairer than in any place else.

The people of a mean stature, somewhat corpulent, and naturally beardless. If any stragling hair thrust forth, they always carry Pinners with them, to pull them out. Nimble and strong, but yet not very fit for war; spending too much of their strength in the love of women, to which most passionately addicted. They black their teeth, because they say that dogs teeth be white; & wear no cloaths but on their heads

and

Pegu.

and about their nakedness. Said by the *Jews* to be descended from some of the Tribes of *Israel*, confined hither by *Solomon*: but by the *Peguans* themselves, to be begotten of a Dog and a *China woman*, which were saved here upon a Shipwrack. By Religion for the most part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every world: more *Orthodox*, in assigning after this life according to the merits of the party deceased, one place of Torments, and another of Delights and pleasures, if they had not added a third also for satisfaction.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Casui*, seated in a Territory full of Woods, as those Woods of *Tigers*, *Wild Bores*, *Apes* and *Parats*; the houses made of *Canes*, which serve here for timber, (some of them being as big as Hogs-heads) covered over with thach. 2 *Jicabel*, a great City on the River *Pegu*. 3 *Dian*, on the same River also, where they make Barks or Vessels as big as *Galeasses*; which serve both for trade and habitation. 4 *Coilan*, a City four-square, and each square four miles. 5 *Lanagon*, a pleasant Town, and full of *Palm-trees*. 6 *Dala*, in which were the Kings Stables for his ordinary *Elephants*: his four *White Elephants* (for so many he had) being always kept about the Court, not seen abroad, but in great solemnities, when trapped in furnitures of Gold; and no less honoured by the people, than the King himself; called therefore King of the *White Elephant*, by the neighbouring Princes. 7 *Silvaupede*, where many victualing Barks are made to serve for dwelling on the Sea. 8 *Meccao*, where they use to unload such goods, as are to pass by Land to *Pegu*. Neighbour'd by the strongest Cattle in all this Kingdom, and therefore chosen by the King for his place of Retreat, when distressed by the Kings of *Arrachan*, and *Tangu*. To the last of which making choice to yield up his person, with his Wife and Children, because he had married him to his Sister, he was by him perfidiously and basely murdered. 9 *Sirlangh*, a strong piece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arrachan* to the *Portugals*; and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Britto*, in the year one thousand six hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good against him, and the King of *Tangu* his Associate for the space of thirteen years together, was at last forced to yield himself prisoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a spit. 10 *Pegu*, the glory of these parts, great, strong, and beautiful: Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old* inhabited by Merchants, the new by the King and his Nobility. The houses made of Wood, but covered with Tiles; a *Coco-Tree* before every house yielding a comfortable shade, and a pleasant shew. The streets as straight as any line, and so broad that ten or twelve men may ride abreast in the narrowest of them. In figure square, each square having five Gates, besides many Turrets; all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with walls of stone environed on all sides with great Ditches; and in the midst the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, most sumptuously gilded: but specially the Temple or *Idol-chappel*, the walls whereof were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleasure as the world could yield: his Empire not extending only over these Kingdoms now described, but over all the Provinces or Kingdom of the *Bramones* also; which he governed by his several *Vice-Roys*, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* Kings. A happiness too great to continue long. For in the year 1567, the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his faction, and reputation of his virtues, entered into rebellion, and slaying the Nobles of the Land, usurped that Kingdom. After this he subdued the Cities and Kingdoms of *Calin*, *Melinay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Bramones*, and therefore taking to himself the title of the King of *Brama*, because his fame and fortunes took their rise from his victories over them: Following the course of his successes, he first assailed the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulsed with loss. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleaguered *Pegu*, and subdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the siege of *Siam*, had yielded it to him. Dying he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grandsons; the Kingdom of *Jangoma*, to a younger son, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Sovereignty over all the rest, to his eldest son, a Prince of vicious and tyrannical nature; and not more cruel to his Subjects, than they disobeyed him. Whereupon preparations are made on both sides, the people to defend their liberty, the King to preserve his Royalty. During these civil discords, the titular King of *Siam*, whose late overthrow was not yet fully digested, came violently into the Country of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Grass, and Fruits, killing man, woman, and child, and having satisfied his Fury, returned to his home. This spoil of the fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unsupportable famine, which consumed all the Inhabitants of this flourishing Kingdom, except such whom the *Gramaries* of the City of *Pegu* preserved, Anno 1598. For here the Fathers devoured their children, the stronger preyed upon the weaker; not only devouring their more fleshy parts, but their entrails also; nay they broke the up skulls of such as they had slain, and sucked out their brains. This calamity incited another Tributary Prince of *Tangu*, to make his best advantage out of his neighbours affliction; though made his brother-in-Law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For justly fearing the displeasure of his angry Prince, to whose aid he had refused to come, when sent for by him, he joyned himself with the King of *Arrachan*, besieged his Lord and Sovereign in the Fort of *Meccao*. Brought to extremities, the unfortunate Prince, thought best to put himself into the hands of his brother of *Tangu*, who assailed and entered *Pegu*, where he found as much treasure as 600 Elephants, and as many Horses could conveniently carry away; this havock being made, he villainously murdered the King, Queen, and their Children, and departed; leaving the gleaming of his spoil to the King of *Arrachan*: who, Anno 1600, was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Burma* having with an Army of an hundred thousand fighting men, and four-

Gggg 2

ey

Pegu.

ty thousand Elephants, subdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*, followed the currents of his Victories; conquered *Siam*, drove the King thereof from *PEGU*; where he hath built a most Magnificent Palace: and is now the sole Monarch of the twelve Kingdoms of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-settled Estate, we cannot yet understand: what his *Revenues* are, what his Government, what his Forces. Merchants, whose inquisitiveness into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading; cannot give us any full satisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statists* are not permitted to observe; and such of the Natives as could give us the most light, are not suffered to travel. Only we may conjecture by the great wealth of those several Princes, and the vast Armies by them raised in their several Territories; that his *Annual Revenues*, *Casualties*, and united Forces must be almost infinite.

And so much for *INDIA*.

OF

Japan.



OF

The Oriental Islands.



THE ORIENTAL ISLANDS, so called from their situation in the *Oriental*, or Eastern Seas, may be divided into the Islands of 1 *Japan*, 2 the *Philippina*, and Isles adjoining, 3 the Islands of *Bantam*, 4 the *Moluccoes*, 5 those called *Sinde*, or the *Celebes*, 6 *Java*, 7 *Borneo*, 8 *Sumatra*, 9 *Ceylan*, and 10 certain others, of less note.

I. JAPAN.

JAPAN is an aggregate body of many Islands, separated by small *Gulfs*, *Streights*, and turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be 66. in all; others ascribe that number to so many Kingdoms, into which these Islands (be they in number more or less) use to be divided. But whatsoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find) there are three only of account, to which the several petit Kingdoms are now reduced: that is to say, 1 *Japan* specially so called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms, of which 26 are under the King of *Memo*, 12 under the King of *Amagance*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferior note. II. *Ximo*, which containeth in it nine Realms, the principal whereof are those of *Bungo* and *Figen*. III. *Xicomu*, which comprehendeth four only of these petit *Seigneuries*.

JAPAN, the chief of all these Islands, to which the residue may be accounted of but as *Appurtenances*, is situate over against the *Streights* of *Anian*, (if such *Streights* there be) towards which it looketh to the North: distant from *New Spain* on the East 150 leagues, or 450 *English* miles; and 60 leagues, from *Canton*, a Province of *China*, opposite to it on the West. On the South it hath the vast Ocean, and those infinite shoals of Islands which are called the *Philippina*, and the Isles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from West to East 200 leagues, but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in some places not above ten leagues over, and in the broadest parts but thirty.

The Country Mountainous and barren, but of a very healthy air, if not too much subject unto cold: yet in some places they have Wheat ripe in the month of *May*; but their Rice, which is their principal sustenance, they gather not before *September*. The surface of the Earth, clothed with woods and forests, in which some *Cedars* of so tall and large a body, that one of them only is sufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it stored with divers metals, and amongst others with such inexhaustible mines of gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth some of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in his time, with sheets of gold, as ours in *Europe* are with lead. But I find no such matter in our latter travellers. Their fields and Meadows full of Cattle, but hitherto not made acquainted with the making of Butter; their fens much visited by wild Ducks, as their house-yards with Pigeons, Turtles, Quails, and Pullen.

The People for the most part of good understanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and subtle in their dealings. Of body vigorous and strong, accustomed to bear Arms until 60 years old. Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads shaved off. Patient they are of Pain, ambitious of glory, incapable of suffering wrong, but can withal dissemble their resentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no man for his poverty, so it come not by his own unthriftiness, for which cause they detest all kinds of gaming, as the ways of ill-husbandry; and generally abhor *Slandering*, *Theft*, and *Swearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feasts in black; their teeth they colour black also to make them beautiful: they mount on the right side of the Horse, and sit (as we are used to rise) when they entertain. In *Physick* they eat salt things, sharp and raw; and in their salutations, they put off their shoes. The very *Antipodes* of our world in customs, though not in site: and the true Type or Figure of the old *English Puritan*, opposite to the *Papists* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that opposition. In other things they do much resemble those of *China*, if not the more ceremonies of the two: washing their Infant-children in the nearest River, as soon as born; and putting off their shoes when they go to meat.

The People have but one language, but that so intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it seems rather to be many languages than one. They have long used the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough they might have from *China*: the Characters whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and signify not only letters, but some whole words also. In matter of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven; and giving divine honour to wild beasts, and the Stags of the Forests: but

Gggg 3

specially

Banda.

3. The Isles BANDAN.

THE Isles of BANDAN are in number seven, that is to say 1 *Mira*, 2 *Rosalargium*, 3 *Ali*, 4 *Rom*, 5 *Norra*, 6 *Gannape*, the last of all, continually burning, and for that cause deserted of its inhabitants; and 7 *Bandan*, bigger than any of the rest, and therefore giving name to all. Situate South of the *Philippines*, in the seventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitful of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all these parts, for which cause never without the concurrence of foreign Merchants from *Java*, *Malacca*, and *China*; and of late times from these Northern Countries of *Europe* also. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a *Peach*, or *Peach-tree*, the innermost part whereof is the *Nutmeg* itself, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the Arabian name of *Maciz*, or *Mace*; and over that the fruit it self, as it is in *Peaches*, *Malacotons*, and such fruits as those.

The People barbarous and rude, slothful, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living confusedly together without rule or order. Some of them still continue in their ancient *Paganism*; but the greatest part are thought to be *Mahometans*; in which Religion very zealous, and so devout, that they will not go unto their work or worldly businesses, till they have visited the *Mosquits*, and done their devotions. A shame or Pattern shall I say in this, unto many *Christians*! All of them bloody and revengeful; but yet so far from wronging the body of a Dead Enemy, that they use to bury it with sweet Odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principal, 1 *Nera*, and 2 *Lontoor*, joyned in a league against the rest; the quarrel rising from the cutting down of certain trees, proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loss of their common liberty. Subject in shew to the King of *Butone*, one of the *Moluccoes*, but too much at their own disposing. They had not else entered into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchful *Hollanders*, they did not only settle four *Factories* there; but for the security of their trade, and to awe the *Natives*, they have built three Forts. They had also turned one of their *Mosquits* to a *Fortress*. Whereat the people were so incensed that they promised liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it: who falling desperately on, fired it over their heads, and killed every man of them. The *English* Merchants have some trading also in these Islands, more acceptable than the other, because not so insolent, and grounding their possession on a better title; the people of *Lontore*, voluntarily submitting themselves to the protection of King *James*, the first Monarch of the *British* Islands, and to his use giving possession of their Country to Captain *Robert H. yes*, Novemb. 24. 1620. The like done at the same time by the Inhabitants of *Wayre*, and *Rosfingeng*, two other Islands, which if they be not the same with those of *Mira*, and *Rosalorgium* spoken of before, are probably some lesser Islands, neighbouring to *Poleon* and *Poolaway*, of which more hereafter.

There is not far off another Island, not in this accompt, called *Timor*, situate in the tenth degree of Southern Latitude; the chief of many little Islands which lie round about it; but not else observable, except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. The MOLUCCOES.

THE MOLUCCOES are in number many; the King of *Terenate* which is one of them, being said to have dominion over 70 Islands; but the determinate number of them I do no where find. Situate on both sides of the *Aequator*, and consequently of an hot and intemperate air: the soil so dry and spongy, that it sucketh up the greatest shewre of Rain that doth fall amongst them, before it can pass into the Sea. Not very well furnished with necessaries for the life of man; but that defect supplied with the abundance of Spices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Mastic*, *Aloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities; for which, the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But 'tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of these Islands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees yielding blossoms, first white, then green (at which time they yield the pleasantest smell in the world) and last of all red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature so extreme hot that if a Pail of water should only stand in the room in which they are cleaned and sorted, the *Cloves* in two days would dry it up. Of which nature the unspun Silks of *China* are affirmed to be.

The People for the most part *Idolaters*, intermixt with some *Mahometans* dwelling on the shores; and of late times with *Christians* in their several *Factories*. Of several *Originals*, and different languages, but all in general fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedness. Few of them clothed, nor much caring to hide their shame. Not civilized by the cohabitation of more modest and civil Nations. Pity such ill conditions should be lodged in such handsome bodies: the people being said to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for strength and valour not followed by any of them.

Of all the Islands which pass under this name, there are not above five or six of any reckoning; that is to say, 1 *Terenate*, 2 *Tidor*, 3 *Macir*, 4 *Rackian*, 5 *Muchian*, and 6 *Botone*: none of them above six leagues in compass, many not so much; the whole cluster of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 leagues in the circumference, yet of such consequence & importance, that the two famous voyages of *Americus Vesutius*, and *Ferdinand Magellanus*, the first employed by *Emanuel King of Portu-*

Selebes.

gall, the other by *Charles* Emperour and King of *Spain*, were undertaken only to find out the next way unto them.

Of the rest, *Muchian* and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; so hath *Botone* also, if that be one of them; the King whereof had antiently some title and authority over those of *Bandan-Macir*, and *Muchian*, are subject to the King of *Terenate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion, and said to be the Lord of 70 Islands. This the most puissant Member of this scattered body; and for that cause most aimed at by all Competitors; the *Spaniards* having here one *Fortress*, and the *Hollanders* three: both Nations hated by the *Natives*, whom they consume and waste in the wars betwixt them; but of the two the *Spaniard* looked on by the people as the more a *Gentleman*; the other stomached and despised for their *forbidden* dealings. Nothing else memorable in the story of *Chorographie* of them, but that they were discovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the reign of *Charles* the fifth, who employed him in it, *An. 1519*. And that there is in *Terenate* a prodigious Mountain, in height above the clouds of the Air, and in nature agreeing with the Element of Fire, which it seems to mount to; huge flames whereof, with dreadful Thunders, and a dark smok, it sends forth continually. Reckoned by some amongst these Islands, but howsoever neighbouring near them, are those of *Poleone*, and *Poolaway*; the first more plentiful of *Cloves*, the second more proper for the *Nutmeg*, but both acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Kings of *England*; for *Poleone* by the general and voluntary Act of all the chief men of the Country, was surrendered into the power of King *James*, the possession of it being given for his Majesties use to Captain *Courttop*, Decemb. 23. *An. 1616*. no other Nation at that time having any interest in it, or Pretensions to it, which notwithstanding it was not long after seized on by the insolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to restore it upon Composition, cut down all the *Clove-trees*, so to deprive the *English* of the benefit of them. *Poolaway* made the like surrender at the same time also, declared by setting up the *English* colours on the top of their Castle, giving to *Courttop* a green turf (whereby as by *Livery* and *Seitin*) to take possession of the Country, promising the annual tribute of a branch of *Nutmegs*, and that they should sell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmegs* to any, but to those of the *English* Nation. The like done also at or near the same time, by *Wayre* and *Rosfingeng*, two other Islands of these Seas, which if they be not those two of *Bandan*, pointed at before, must needs be brought within the number of this scattered Company.

5. The SINDÆ or SELEBES.

NEAR the *Moluccoes*, and almost intermingled with them, are a set of Islands which *Ptolomy* calleth *SINDÆ*, and the Moderns, *SELEBES*; many in tale, but not above four of any *neighbour*, that is to say, 1 *SELEBES*, 2 *Gilolo*, 3 *Amboina*, 4 *Mavasser*; of which the two first are situate under the *Aequator*, and the last somewhat on the South of it: all of them in time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by *Anthrophophagi*, and a long time after; in so much as the Kings of the *Moluccoes*, did use to send their condemned perions into these Islands, there to be devoured. Which said in general, we will take a more particular view of them, as they lie before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the rest, and hath under it many lesser Islands, is large and rich. The soil thereof exceeding fertile, the people tall and comely, and of colour, not so much black as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late. Governed by many Kings or petty Princes, the cause of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are said to have been converted to Christianity, and for that cause much hated by their heathenish Subjects, who thereupon rebelled against them. It is situate West of the *Moluccoes*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Christian Kings: but possibly not so called until their conversion; the proper name thereof being *Cian*. 2 *Nilon*, in the South, and 3 *Terolli* in the North parts of it.

2. *GILLOLO*, called also *Batachina*, is one of those Islands, which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Moro*. Of large extent, conceived to be half as big as *Italy*. By that accompt (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater than *Zeilan* is in compass, though of less reputation: that being governed by its own Princes, this subject for the most part to the King of *Terenate*. Situate East of the *Moluccoes*, exceeding plentiful of *Rice*, well stored with wild Hens, and on the shores provided of a kind of *Shell-fish*, which in taste much resembleth Mutton. A tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread; and of the sap or juice of it they compose a pleasing drink, which serveth them instead of Wine. The air intemperately hot; the people well proportioned, but rude and savage; some of them *Gentiles*, some *Mahometans*, of which last Religion is their King; The chief Town of it is *Batchame*, or *Batachina*, (whence the new name unto the Island) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their *Factory*.

3. *AMBOINA*, South of the *Aequator*, and the third of the *Sindæ*, hath many Islands of less note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compass about five hundred miles said by *Maginus* to be extremely rough and barren; which must be understood with reference to some kinds of grain. For otherwise it is very fertile, abundantly productive of *Rice*, *Citrons*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, *Coco-nuts*, *Sugar-Cane*, and other fruits; and very plentiful of *Cloves*. Which last, as it makes some to reckon it amongst the *Moluccoes*, so may it be the reason why the Island is defective in such fruits as require much moisture: the *Clove* being of so hot a temper, as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moisture of the Earth, which is near unto it.

The people much given to *Piracy*, wherewith they do infect all the neighbouring Islands. Defamed for *Cannibals*, or man-eaters: it being here a constant custom, that when their Parents were grown old, or sick of any incurable disease, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Amboina*, by the name of the Island. First taken by the *Portu-*

gals,

Borneo &
Java.

gals, and by them secured with a strong fortress: during whose power here, the *Jesuites* who had in it their several Residences, converted many to *Christianity*. But in the year 1605, the Island and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen of Hagan*, for the States of the United Provinces: who having cleared the Country of the *Portuguese* Forces, possessed themselves of it. Received by the natives at their first coming, with Joy and Triumphs: but they got little by the change, as they found soon after; their new Masters being more burdensome, and insufferable, than the old had been. For claiming in the right of Conquest, they think they may oppress the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingross all trade unto themselves as the true *Proprietaries*. Infamous even amongst the rude and savage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity executed upon some of the *English* (the greatest Patrons under God which they have in the world) whom in the year 1618, they most cruelly tortured, and most wickedly murdered; under colour of some plot to betray their Fortresses: but in plain truth for no other reason but because they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. West of *Amboina*, and South-West of *Celebes*, lieth the fourth of these Islands called *MACASSAR*, said to contain from East to West 600 miles; plentiful of Rice, Flesh, Fish, Salt, and Cotton-Wool; not destitute of Gold and Pearls and well stored with *Sandar* (*Sandalum* it is called in *Latin*) a medicinal wood, growing like a Nut-tree: of several colours, white, red, yellow, but the red, the best: the fruit in making like a Cherry, but of no esteem. In some parts overgrown with woods, in which certain fiery *Flies* make nightly such shining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the middle covered with high Mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The people for the most part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the Sea-coasts with some *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Sendere*, the Kings Seat, situate near a large Lake, very commodiously for traffick. 2 *Macassar*, an *English* Factory, so called according to the name of the Island.

Near to these Islands, and somewhat North to *Batachina* are some other Isles, plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man, but inhabited by a thievish and *Piratical* people: the principal of which 1 *Ternio*, 2 *Sanguin*, 3 *Solor*, 4 *Moratay*, in which last they eat *Battata* Roots instead of bread, besides some others of less note. Most of the people *Gentiles*, except those of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Christian Faith, by some of the *Jesuites*, hath brought many of his subjects to the same Religion.

6 BORNEO.

West of these *Celebes*, lieth *BORNEO*, of more note and greatness, than any hitherto described, in these *Indian* Seas. In compass, after their account who speak most sparingly, 2200 miles; but as some say, no less than three months sail about. Situate under the *Aequator*, which parteth the dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Lau*: opposite on the North to *Camboja*; on the South, to *Java*; on the East, to *Celebes*; on the West, unto the Isle of *Sumatra*.

The Country said to be provided naturally of all things necessary; yet said withal to be unfurnished of Asses, Oxen, Herds of Cattel, except only Horses, and these but of small stature neither: the greatest riches of it being *Campfire*, *Agarick*, and some mines of *Adamants* erroneously conceived by *Mercators* to be the *Insula bona Fortune* spoken of by *Ptolomy*; that being seated opposite to the outlets of *Ganges*, in the Latitude of a hundred forty five Degrees, and fifteen minutes; this Eastward some Degrees of the *Golden Chersonese*, and consequently twenty Degrees distant at the least from that Island in *Ptolomy*.

The people generally more white than the rest of the *Indians*, of good wits, and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two Religions: the King of *Borneo* and his Subjects being all *Mahometans*; those of *Lau* still remaining in their ancient *Gentilism*. These think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; ascribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* especially; whom they salute at his first rising with great Reverence, saying certain verses. Their publick businesses are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Counsellors* of State meet, and ascend some tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* rise, and then go to the *Senate-house*. The same Apparel generally of both Religions; but thin, by reason of the great heat of the Air: a shirt of Silk, or of *Calicut*, or some such slight stuff, worn more for modesty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Borneo* situate in the North-West part of the Island near a goodly bay, but in the middle of the Pens like the City of *Venice*, and seated as that is, on *Piles*; the building sumptuous, of hewed stones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The Town so large as to contain 25000 families. 3 *Taiopura*, 4 *Tamoras*. 5 *Malano*, all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodious Havens. 6 *Sagadana*, a Factory of *English*. 7 *Lavi*, on a large Bay in the South-East part of the Island, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Lau*. 8 *Paro*, on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*, and directly opposite to *Borneo*: that being seated on the North-West, and this on the South-East of the Island. Betwixt these two Kings is the whole divided; but so, that he of *Borneo* hath the greatest part of it, and therefore keeps the greater State: not to be spoken with, but by the mouth of some of his own *Interpreters*; and in his Palace served by no other Attendants, than *Maids* or *Women*.

7. JAVA.

Opposite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Isles of *JAVA*, two in number; both situate South of the *Aequator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly distinguished into *Major* and *Minor*, or the greater and the lesser *Java*.

1. JAVA.

Java.

1. *JAVA-MAJOR*, the more Northward of the two, and by much the bigger, is said to be in compass 3000 miles, and that by them who elsewhere reckon *Borneo* for the biggest of these Seas. But the truth is, that the South-parts of this Island not being perfectly discovered, make the measurement thereof to be very uncertain. Conceived most probably to be the *Jabadiu* of *Ptolomy*, the most Northern part whereof is placed by him in the eighth degree of *Southern* Latitude: said by him to afford much gold and silver, to be exceeding fruitful of all other necessities; and finally that the name did signify *verre vif*, or the Island of Barly. All which agreeeth punctually with the present Island, the word *Jabadiu* signifying a kind of grain much like our *Barly*; and *Diu* in the *Persian* and *Indian* tongues signifying an Island. And so in *Jabadiu*, we have found the Island of *Java*, the mutation of B. into V. being very ordinary.

Then for the riches and fertility of it, it is said to yield great plenty of Fruits, and Corn, but of *Rice* especially; flesh of all sorts, salted and sent from hence into other Countries; great store of Fowl, both wild and tame; plenty of Gold, some precious Stones, and the best kind of Brass; Silks in abundance, and great quantities of Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, and some other Spices. In a word so befriended by the bounty of Nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitome Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a lesser Volume. But withal it is much exposed unto storms and tempests, from which seldom free.

The people of a middle Stature, corpulent, and of broad Faces, most of them naked or covered only with a slight silken stuff, and that no lower than the knee; accomplished the most *Civil* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their descent from *China*: but withal treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careless of their words; to which so used, that they count it not amongst their *F-mis*. And therefore when a King of theirs had broke promise with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he answered that *his tongue was not made of bone*. Cruel they are also said to be, & implacable, if once offended: accustomed of old to eat the bodies of their friends: accounting no burial so honourable, nor obsequy so applaudive. This also a custom amongst many of the rest of the *Indians*, and so hath it been ever since the beginning of the *Persian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hystaspes* understanding of this custom, and withal knowing how the *Gracians* use to burn their dead; sent to the *Greeks*, that it was his pleasure they should eat the bodies of their dead: But they used all means of persuasion and entreaty, not to be forced to so brutish and barbarous a custom. Then commanded he the *Indians* to conform themselves to the fashion of the *Gracians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greeks* did to eat them. So impossible it is for a custom either to be suddenly left off, or to seem undecent and inconvenient, if once thoroughly settled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*, according to the fancy of their several Kings, whereof in this Island there are very many; one for every great Tribe, or more powerful Family. Zealous in their Religion which so ever it be, as appears by the sad story of the Daughter of the King of *Ballambua*, murdered by her Husband the King of *Passarua*, the second night after her wedding, with all her Attendants, because they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in some common Principles they agree well enough, punishing *Adultery* with death; in which case the woman chooseth her nearest Kinsman for her *Executioner*: but otherwise spending the Day and Night in much Sloth and Dalliance. Of the two, *Gentilism* is the more diffused, because most ancient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very swift growth, and of a great increase for so short a time.

Their chief Towns, 1 *PANARUCAN*, near a burning hill, which in the year 1586. brake forth exceedingly, oppressed infinite numbers of men, and cast great stones into the City for three dayes together. 2 *Joriam*, a Town of 1000 Households, the Inhabitants whereof are *Gentiles*, and have their Temples in the Woods: the Chief-Priest of whose superstition hath his dwelling here, of great authority and power over all the Island. 3 *Ballambua*, 4 *Passarua*, 5 *Taban*, 6 *Matara*, 7 *Dannia*, 8 *Taggal*, 9 *Surrabia*, 10 *Gatabaon*: the Seats of so many of their Kings; some of them also furnished of convenient Havens. 11 *BANTAM*, the seat also of a King, but of most trade in all the Island, seldom without the company of *English*, *Portuguese*, and *Hollanders*; the principal Factory of the *English* in all the *Indies*, though they have many besides this. The Town unwholesomely seated in a moorish ground, and much subject to fire. 12 *Sunda*, situate in a place abounding in Pepper. 13 *Agracan*, a convenient Port; Here was also in the time of *Ptolomy* a Town called 14 *Argyropolis*, or the *Silver City*, long ago destroyed. And now there is, 15 *Sura*, a new Town in the Territories of the King of *Bantan*, built by some of the Subjects of the King of *Passarua*, who being oppressed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a constant Succession, adopting some of the other *Javans* into their Society, as they find their number to diminish.

Of the story of this Island I can say but little. Divided into many petit and inconsiderate Kingdoms; and those divided too by Mountains; crossing the Island in the middle from West to East, which cut off all commerce and correspondence betwixt one another. Some of these Kings *Mahometans*, some *Gentiles*, as before was said; all subject or *Homagers* at least to one of the Kings of the *Gentiles*, who hath his dwelling in the midst of the Island. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be richest, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greatest Territory; whose Family after long war and blood-shed, began in the murder of his Daughter, is said to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Passarua*. These Kings much revered by their subjects, and so well obeyed, that whatsoever they command, is done, be it never so dangerous.

2. JAVA-MINOR,

Java.

2. *JAVA MINOR*, situate on the South of the other, is said to be 2000 miles in compass, and to be very near the firm lands of *Terra Australis incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not so much on certain knowledge as uncertain conjecture) to be of the same nature and condition with the greater *Java*. The Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Pandua Venetum*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and dearest friends, and to worship all day whatsoever they saw first in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, distinguished by the names of their principal Towns. Six whereof he had seen, which are these that follow. 1. *Felech*, where the Townsmen were *Moors*, and the Peasants, *Gentiles*. 2. *Basma*, which did acknowledge the *Great-Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any tribute. 3. *Samara*, where none of the *North-stars* could be seen. 4. *Samtri*, in which some men were said to have tails like Dogs. 5. *Fanfur*, in which they have a Tree, the wood whereof put in water, will sink like Iron; of which they use to make *Lances* that will pierce an Armour. And 6. *Dra-gorian*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious, but that the people of it use to eat their nearest kinsmen; and that no *Prodigie* at all, because used by others.

To these two we may joyn *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Java*, fertile of *Rice*, but otherwise of its waterish and moist a Soil, that the men and Cattle use to go knee-deep when they sow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the East the same *Java* the Island *Baly*, exceeding populous for the bigness, supposed to contain 600000 Inhabitants; and very well provided of *Bulls*, *Buffals*, *Goats*, *Horses*, *Swine*, many kind of fruits, and some store of metals.

S. SUMATRA.

SUMATRA lieth on the North of the greater *Java*, betwixt it and the *Streight of Sincapura*, the most Southern Town of *Golden Chersonese*. The *Streight* in that place so freight and narrow, not above a Musket-shot in breadth, that some conceive this Island to have been formerly joyned unto it by some little *Isthmus*; since worn away by the violence and working of the Sea; and that this Island, and not the Land of *Malaca*, was that *Golden Chersonese*, which we find in *Ptolemy*. More probably by far, than that we should run after it to the Isle of *Japan* situate on the East of *China*, so far from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North-west to the South-East, is said by some to be 900. by others but 700. miles, the breadth 200. and the whole compass one and twenty hundred. Strangely affirmed by some Writers to be the biggest of all the East; who yet assign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Situate under the *Equator*, which divideth it into two parts, very near an equality; that on the North-side reaching unto five degrees, that on the South-side but to seven degrees from the line it self. By which account there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and a night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by consequence must be very hot, but withal unwholsom: not so much in regard of the extrem heat, as by reason of the gross vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers, which are found to be in it; and the thick Woods which intercept the free course of a purging wind. The soil not capable of such grain as in other places, except *Rice* or *Millet* (for I know not otherwise how to render the *Latine*, *Millum*) but yielding *Ginger*, *Pepper*, *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and *Cassia*, in great abundance. It affordeth also great plenty of Wax and Honey, store of Silks and Cottons, rich Mines not only of Tin, Iron, Sulphur, and other Minerals; but of Gold such quantity, that some conceive this Island to be *Solomon's Ophir*. And if *Pedrunks Sirie* one of the Kings of this Island, in a letter written to King *James* did not brag too impudently; it may be probable enough. For by that letter it appeareth that all the furnitures of his house, and trappings of his Elephants and Horses, with all his Armour, were of pure Gold, and that he had in his Dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entitleth himself in his *Regal Stile*.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cunning *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundred and thirty years since, at what time by the diligence of some *Arabian Merchants* trading to this Island, *Mahometanism* began to spread upon the Coasts. But in the inland parts of the Country they are *Gentiles* still, and still retain amongst them their old barbarous customs. The most loving men unto their Enemies that were ever known; for otherwise they would never eat them. Having eaten, they use their skulls instead of money, which they exchange or barter for such necessities, as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthiest man amongst them, who hath most of this coin. Those of the other Religion, though in most points and customs they agree with the rest of the *Mahometans*, have this one singular to themselves: which is, that once every year on a certain day they go solemnly unto their *Mosquits* to see if *Mahomet* be come, leading a spare Horse for him to ride upon: which (missing him) is mounted at their coming back, by the best man in the company. Of any great Progress that *Christianity* hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That there are many and great Rivers, hath been said before, but their names I find not. Here are also many Mountains, and those great and high; that of most note called *Balabannu*, said to burn continually. Out of which, or not far off do arise two Fountains, of which the one is said to run pure Oyl, and the other the best *Balsamum*: which I bind no man to believe but such as have seen it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Achen*, the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom; beautified with the Regal Palace,

lace, to which they pass thorow seven Gates one after another, with green Courts between the three outermost; those three continually guarded with women expert at their weapons, and using both swords and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his person. The materials of this Palace mean, but the furniture costly, the walls thereof being hanged commonly with *Velvet* and *Damask*, and sometimes with cloth of Gold. 2. *Pedir*, 3. *Pacom*, 4. *Cambar*, 5. *Menantabo*, 6. *Aura*, and 7. *Andragille*, the seats of so many of their Kings. 8. *Passaman*, a Town of great Trade, but situate in a Moorish and unhealthy place; found so experimentally by too many of the *English*, who have there their Factory. 9. *Priamun*, and 10. *Tecoo*, of a more healthy air, but not so commodious in their Havens as is that of *Passaman*: these three Towns standing in that part of the Country where the *Pepper* groweth.

All that we know touching the story of this Country, is, that the *Portugals*, when they first came hither, found in it nine and twenty Kings; reduced since to a smaller number. For *Abraham*, sometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Arabians* subdued the Realms of *Pedir* and *Pacom*. *Aladine* who succeeded him, being once a *Fisherman* and grown famous for his exploits at Sea; was by this King preferred to the marriage of one of his Kinswomen, made his Lord *Admiral*, and by him trusted with the protection of his son and heir: of whom in stead of a Protector he became the murderer, and usurped the State unto himself. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdom of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Mamucabo*; and almost all the rest in the North part of the Island. In this Kings time, the *English* were first settled in their Factory there. Grown old (an hundred years at least) he was imprisoned by his eldest Son, impatient of a longer stay, alledging that his age had made him unfit for Government, Anno 1664. The name of the New King, *Sultan Pedrucks Sirie*, who in his Letter to King *James* spoken of before, styles himself the sole King of *Sumatra*: either with greater brags than truth, or else because the Kingdoms of *Tecoo*, *Priamun*, and *Baronse*, being conquered by him, all the rest were become his *Tributaries*. Associated with the forces of the King of *Tora* or *Iohor*, who had married his Sister, he besieged *Malaca*, and distressed it: But being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his displeasure upon his *Confederate*, and subdued that Kingdom; who with the King of *Siak* (some other petty Prince near *Tor*) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1613 brought Prisoners to *Achen*.

The Government of this King is absolute, and meerly arbitrary, executing what he hath a mind to, without form of Law. So cautelous, that without his *Placard* no stranger can have *Ingress* into his dominions, or free *Egress* out of them. Nor is admittance to his presence granted unto any whom he first sends not for by an Officer with a *Gilded Staff*. He is conceived to be strong both by Sea and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained, able to put to Sea 120, or if need be 300. Gallies and *Frigats* fit for any service, most of which carry *Demi-Cannon*, *Culverin*, *Sakar*, *Minion*, and other the like Ordnance of Brass. So great a Matter of his Subjects, that in 21 dayes he had a goodly Channel drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Of his *Revenues*, I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of *Golden Furnitures* which he hath about him.

And now I am fallen on this Kings Gold, I cannot but take notice of some Islands on the West of *Sumatra*, called *Anra Insula*, or the *Golden Islands*; the chief of which named *Andramanis*, is possessed by *Cannibals*, or *Man-eaters*. Opposite unto which on the East side of this Island, are those called *Linga*, *Banca*, and *Bintam*; which last is said to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious Station for shipping. The houses built of Stone, but thatched, except that of the King (for even these sorry Islands love to have a King of their own, whose house more eminently seated, is more handsomely covered.

9 ZEILAN.

West of *Sumatra*, somewhat inclining to the North, is the Island of *ZEILAN*, ten Degrees distant from the *Equator*, and near adjoining to the Promontory in the higher *India* which *Ptolemy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only; the whole circumference at 700 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the situation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the ancient Writers. *Ortelius* and most other intelligent men of these later times are of that opinion. Only *Mercator*, who hath carried the *Golden Chersonese* to the Isle of *Japan*, and fixed *Taprobane* in that of *Sumatra*, (in which last I must confess he hath many Partners) will have this Island to be that which *Ptolemy* calls *Nanigeris*, though that be four Degrees more West than the Promontory of *Cory*, to which this Isle in former times seems to have been joyned.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, that this *Zeilan* or *Ceylan* is the *Taprobane* of the Ancients, we will a little look on the State of that Island, with reference to the times when those Authors lived. By *Ptolemy* affirmed to be plentiful in *Rice*, *Honey*, *Ginger*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Precious Stones*, and all kind of metals. By *Pliny*, that the Gold is purer, and the Gems fairer than any in *India*; that there were also Groves of *Palm-trees*, and great store of Elephants, is declared by *Strabo* and some others. Watered with many fair and pleasant Rivers, viz. 1. *Sonaa*, 2. *Azanna*, 3. *Baracca*, 4. *Gauders*, 5. *Phasis*: the Hills in many places having a full prospect over the adjoining Valley; the chief of which were *Malea*, and those called *Calibi*, the Vales perpetually enriched with the choicest fruits. Exceeding populous for the bigness, and stored with many Towns of note. Of which *Magamnum* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*. 1. *Alargana*, 2. *Jogana*, 3. *Sindocanda*, 4. *Hodoca*, 5. *Nabartha*, 6. *Digana*, 7. *Dionysopolis*, 8. *Bocana*, 9. *Avathu*, 10. *Procurum*, 11. *Nagadiba*, and 12. *Anu-bingara*.

H h h h

bingara.

An Advertisement to the Reader touching the ERRATA of this PART.

I have adventured to prove the Alamatha of Ptolomy to be the Chamath, or Hamath-Sobab, of the Holy Scriptures: The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will easily find out the scope and meaning. Yet if this shall not be approved of, I should then think it to be that Elam or Helam where David discomfited the Army of the Mesopotamians; mention whereof is made 2 Sam. 10. v. 16, 17. In the next place he is to know, that Fol. within the compass of five lines, in the victory which Asa King of Judah obtained against the numerous Army of Ethiopians, is twice repeated: in the first place ascribed to Jethir, in the next to Maresha, (though the other also hath good Authors) let that of Jethir be supplied in this manner following: 5 Jethir, or Jathir, in the North Border of this Tribe towards Eleutheropolis: a City anciently of the Levites, in St. Hieroms time called by the name of Jethira, and then replenished altogether with Christians; now nothing but the name remaining. 6 Maresa, &c. And finally whereas Ajalon, p. is placed in the Tribe of Ephraim, and page in the Tribes of Dan, the reason is, because being situate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by some Writers ascribed to Dan, and by others to Ephraim. The like may be also said of Michpas, mentioned also in two Tribes according as it is disposed on by several Authors.

A T A B L E OF THE LONGITUDE and LATITUDE OF THE CHIEF T O W N S and C I T I E S Mentioned in this Book.

A	Long.	Lat.		Long.	Lat.
Chen	132.30	3.40	Cauchin China	140.30	20.0
Aden	82.0	13.50	Cranganor	113.0	9.40
Agra	118.10	44.0	Cerafo	73.0	44.40
Aleppo	72.30	38.0	Choromandel	115.20	22.30
Amboino	162.50	4.20 A	Chester	115.10	3.0
Amodabat	169.50	23.10	Chianfu	147.30	27.30
Antioch	72.30	39.0	Chirman	98.30	27.30
Apamon	61.30	43.40	Cincapura	136.43	1.10
Arachan	129.10	10.24	Cochin	114.0	9.40
Ardevat	140.50	25.0	Colmucho	117.30	6.40
Arminig	76.0	41.0	Comeri	115.10	7.10
Ava	142.30	27.50	Coulan	114.30	7.10
Amisfro	66.30	44.30	Cantan	149.0	25.0
			Chanl	109.40	17.30
B			D		
Babylon	81.20	33.0	Damascus	74.30	35.0
Baccu	88.50	42.0	Decan	113.20	44.0
Balsora	82.40	31.10	Delly	114.0	19.10
Banda	164.0	45.0 A	Derbent	84.53	42.20
Batigalla	111.30	12.40	Diu	108.0	20.30
Bengala	125.10	21.20	Durnate	137.50	7.50
Bethlehem	65.45	31.50	E		
Bisnagar	114.20	14.10	Ephesus	60.30	39.40
Bulgar	88.30	54.30	Eres	87.40	40.50
C			Ergimul	150.0	58.20
Calul	112.20	31.0	F		
Cainda	137.30	47.40	Famagusta	69.20	30.30
Calecut	112.40	10.30	Falso	57.50	45.40
Cambala	161.10	51.40	G		
Camboia	142.20	11.40	Gabara	80.50	36.10
Campion	148.0	57.30	Gaza	70.50	39.10
Cannor	112.50	11.0	Gest	107.30	26.30
Candabor	110.40	33.40			
Cepha	68.50	48.0			
Calamines	149.0	9.0			

Hhhh 3

Gilolo

COSMOGRAPHIE, The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF A F R I C K,

AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

OF *A F R I C K*.



A F R I C K is bounded on the East by the *Red Sea*, and Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Asia*; on the West, by the main *Atlantick Ocean*, interpoling betwixt it and *America*; on the North, by the *Mediterranean Sea*, which divides it from *Europe* and *Anatolia*; and on the South, with the *Ethiopic Ocean*, separating it from *Terra Australis incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Parted from all the rest of the World, except *Asia* only, to which joyned by a narrow *Isthmus*, not above 60 miles in length, and memorable for the great design which *Cleopatra* the last Queen of *Egypt* had upon it, which in brief was this. When *Mark Anthony* was encountered by *Augustus* in the Naval battel of *Actium*, *Cleopatra* fearing the success, fled through the midt of all his Fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her guard. Being come to the North part of this *Isthmus*, she gathered together all her portable treasures, and intended to hoist her shipping out of the *Mediterranean*, and hale them over the Land to the *Red Sea* from whence she had purposed to take sail, and together with her Sweet-heart *Anthony*, and some other choicest friends, to seek out some other place of dwelling far enough from the *Romans*. But from this, *Anthony* who fled after her, and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at last disswade her.

The Form hereof is like a *Pyramis* reversed; the *Basis* of which, from *Tanger* on the Strait of *Gibraltar*, to the point where it joyneth unto *Asia*, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 *Italian miles*, the *Coma* of it very narrow. But from the *Coma* or *Pyris* to the most Northern part of the *Basis*, it extendeth it self the space of 415 miles, being much less then *Asia*, and far bigger then *Europe*.

By the *Grecians* it is called most commonly *Libya*, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the *Ethiopians*, *Aikebulam*; by the *Indians*, *Besicath*. But the most noted name thereof is *Africa*, which *Iosephus* out of *Cleodenus* and *Polybistor*, deriveth from *Epher* or *Apher*, one of the Nephews of *Abraham*, by *Midian* the son of *Keturah*. The *Arabians*, by whom it is called *Ifrichea*, derive it from the Verb *Faruch*, signifying to divide; because more visibly divided both from

from their own Country, and the rest of the World, than any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the Greek Fables fetch it from one *Afer*, a companion of *Hercules*, whom he attended unto *Spain*; some fetch it out of *Aphar*, an Hebrew word, signifying *Dust*, agreeable to its sandy and dusty soil: *Festus* an old Grammarian, from *A Privatium*, and the Greek word *φειν*, which imports a Country void of cold, as suitable to the fiery temper of the Air. By *Bochartus*, who brings all from the old *Phœnician*, it is said to be derived from *Penne*, *Spica*, an ear of Corn; which mollified into *Feric*, came at last to *Africa*, that is to say, a Country plentiful in Corn. Which Etymologie of his, may receive some countenance from that great plenty of Corn, which was bred in this Country: especially in those parts hereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africk*, whereof we shall speak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africk*. But in my mind, (if that from the Hebrew *Epher* or *Aphar*, be not worth accepting) I should prefer the Etymon of *Festus* before any other: unless we might be sure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Suidas* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we would seek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in some older Writers, i. e. *Olympia*, *Oceanica*, *Eschatica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonia*, *Hesperia*, *Ortygia*, and perhaps some others, it is enough to our design to take notice of them.

It is situate for the most part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Aequator* crossing it almost in the very midst: and for that cause supposed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with such strange people, as hardly did deserve to be counted men. *Pomponius* among others, was of this opinion, guessing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by such strange Brutes, as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like dogs; 2 The *Scyapodes*, who with the shadow of their foot, could and did hide themselves from the heat of the Sun; 3 The *Gamosaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the use of weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the sight of men; 4 The *Blennyes*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their breasts; The *Aripanis*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be men, but the shape and making of their bodies. These people (as they thought) possessed some small portion of the mid-land parts of this great Country; the rest they knew not, or conceived to be uninhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late discoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Country proving in most parts to be well inhabited; and the coolness of the nights, by mists, dews, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

*Quodque die Solis vehemēti excanduit æstus,
Humida nox reficit, paribusque refrigerat horis.*

That is to say,

What the Sun burns by day, the Night renews,
And doth as much refresh with moistning dews.

For notwithstanding that it be in some places full of sandy deserts, a disease incident to some parts of *Arabia*, *Persia*, and other Countries of a more Northernly situation: yet it is said by some, who speak it upon knowledge, that the greatest part of those Regions which lie under the Line or near it, (both in *America* and here) have so many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, such abundance of Cedars and other stately Trees of shade, so many sorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing, and at all times beautified with blossoms; as may make them hold comparison with any others, supposed to be of a more temperate situation.

But as was said before, the Ancients knew not much of this Country, and therefore spoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-say. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian* employed by that State, discovered much of the Western Shores of this great Peninsula, yet he ventured not much into the Land: nor did his Journal (either suppressed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to pursue those Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* Tongue, but since translated into Greek, and published at *Basil* by *Sigismund Gelenius*, Anno 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that some *Phœnicians* in the days of *Pharao Neco*, passing down the *Red Sea*, should sail about the Coasts of *Africk* to the Straits of *Gibraltar*; and to return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what those Ages disbelieved or esteemed impossible, is now grown ordinary: the Circumnavigations about this Country being very frequent, since first performed by *Vasques de Gama*, an adventurous *Portugal*, in the year 1497. being 80 years after, or thereabouts, from the time that the *Portugals* first attempted the discovery and circumnavigation of the Coasts of *Africk*, which at the last, to the no small glory of their Nation, was accomplished by them. For so it happened that having extended their Dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*; and having withal a large Sea-coast, and fit for shipping, they turned their Forces on the *Moors*, which dwelled in *Africk*, from whom they took many of their best Towns which lay along upon the shores of the main *Atlantick*. Encouraged by this good success, *Henry Duke of Visce*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the first, resolved to spend his purse and credit upon new discoveries. And to that purpose, having had some conference with some persons of knowledge and experience in *Cosmographie*, he draweth together the best men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means and his own good fortune he first discovers the Isle of *Madera*, An. 1420. The Isle of *Holy Port*, Anno 1428. The Islands of *Cape Verd*, Anno 1440. the Maritime parts of the Land of *Guinea*, Anno 1452. which fair foundations being laid, and the way opened to those great discoveries, which after followed; that glorious Prince deceased in a good old Age, Anno 1463. leaving this

this Character behind him, that he was the first that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; discontinued after his decease above 20 years, it was resumed again by King *John*, the second of that name, who by the conduct of *Diego Con*, Anno 1486. discovered the Realms of *Angola*, and *Congo*, with the Isle of *St. George*; and thereupon resolves in the next year following to try his fortunes for compassing the whole Coasts of *Africk*, thereby to find a way to the wealth of *India*, in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diaz*, who passing beyond *Cape Verd*, discovered first the *Princes Island*, and sailing from thence Southward to the furthest Promontory (since called the *Cape of Good Hope*) returned home again; either discouraged by cross winds, or unruly Seas, or the untractableness of his Mariners, or by all together. The man to whom the honour of this enterprise was reserved, was that *Vasques de Gama* above mentioned, employed in this service by King *Emanuel*, Anno 1497. who having in his way, discovered the Islands of *St. James*, and *St. Hellen*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew de Diaz* durst not pass, gave it the name of *Cabodi Buena esperanza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*, because of the good hope it gave him of finding the desired way to the trade of *India*; and having so doubled this Cape, and got *Africk* on the left hand of him, he kept his course on towards the North, till he discovered the Countries of *Quiloa*, *Mofambique*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which last he contracted an especial friendship, and by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Calicut* in *East-India*, from whence with infinite joy and honour, he returned to *Lisbone*, Anno 1500. The design followed the next year by *Alvares Capralde*, furnished with 12 ships and 1500 Souldiers; but he being cast upon the Coasts of *Brasil*, and diverting wholly in a manner, on the discovery of that large Country, it was pursued the next year with greater strength, by *Vasques* and his brother *Stephen*, afterwards by *Ferdinand de Olmeda*; and *Alphonso de Albuquerque*, and divers others of that Nation, and finally by the *Englisb*, *Hollanders*, Merchants almost of every Country which have any Trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the later Ages are better instructed in the particulars of it, than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman Empire*, and some parts adjoining upon *Egypt*, more than the strange beasts, and more strange reports which they had from hence; occasioning hereby the By-word, *Africa semper aliquid apportat novi*.

Touching the State of *Christianity* in this great Continent, it is very weak; most of those Regions which *Christian Religion* had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mahometanism* having since regained from *Christianity*: inasmuch that not only the North part of *Africk* near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Gospel once so exceedingly flourished, that three hundred Catholick Bishops were at one time banished thence by *Genfericus* King of the *Vandals*, is at this present utterly void of *Christians*; (except some few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*:) but even in all this vast Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely *Christian*, but the Kingdom of *Habassia* only, and perhaps not that; none where the *Christians* are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but only *Egypt*; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and some few Towns upon those Coasts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have those Nations gotten by our late Discoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godliness*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or dispersed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly so called, *Egyptians*, *Habassians*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and some *European Christians*: the *European Christians* only in their Forts and Garrisons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns, where Trade is stirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-coasts bordering on the *Red-Sea*; but wandering in great hordes or companies all about the Country with their wives and children: the *Habassians* and *Egyptians*, in their several Kingdoms: The *Africans* again subdivided into *Moors* and *Cafers*; of which the *Moors* are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*, the *Cafers* dwelling in the in-land and more Southern parts, not discovered anciently, in their wonted *Genilism*. Accordingly, the Languages herein spoken are different also; The *Portugal* or *Spanish* being used by the *Europeans*; 2 The *Chaldee* or *Syriack* by the *Jews*; 3 The *Arabic*, by those of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* only; 4 The *Habassian*, and 5 The *Egyptian*, in those Kingdoms: 6 That called *Aquel-amarig*, or the Noble language, supposed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with some *Arabian* words, and spoken generally in *Morocco*, and so amongst some of the Inhabitants of *Barbary*, nearest to Mount *Atlas*: 7 That named *Sungai*, used in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8 That called *Gubeo*, spoke by those of *Ethiopia inferior*, and such of the Land of *Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the State of the *Roman Empire*, it contained only the Dioceses of *Egypt*, *Africk*, and part of the Diocese of *Spain*. The Diocese of *Egypt* subdivided into the Provinces of, 1 *Lybia superior*, 2 *Lybia inferior*, 3 *Thebais*, 4 *Angustanica*, 5 *Arcadia*, and 6 *Egyptus*, especially so called; distinguished by other names in the *Nicene Council*: That of *Africk*, into *Tripolitana*, 2 *Byzacena*, 3 *Zeugitana*, 4 *Numidia*, 5 *Mauritania Casariensis*, 6 and *Mauritania Sitifensis*; the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the Diocese of *Spain*. The rest of this Peninsula, as they never conquered, so it never was much taken into consideration. But being more perfectly discovered now than in former times, (though not so perfectly as that I can be able to promise an exact account of it) it is divided commonly into these seven parts; 1 *Egypt*, 2 *Barbary*, or the *Roman Africk*, 3 *Numidia*, 4 *Lybia*, neither of which the same with those of the ancient *Romans*; 5 *Terra Nigritarum*, 6 *Ethiopia superior*, and 7 *Ethiopia inferior*. Such of the Islands as do not properly belong unto any of these, shall make up the eighth. In the Descriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Planiatrem*, and begin with *Egypt*, as being peopled and possessed before all the residue.

EGYPT is bounded on the East with *Idumæa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the West with *Barbary*, *Numidia*, and part of *Lybia*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean Sea*; on the South with *Ethiopia Superior*, or the *Abyssine Empire*.

This Country in the holy Scriptures is called *Misraim*, from *Misraim* the son of *Cham*, and Grandson of *Ham*, by whom first planted after the Flood, the Foot-Steps of which name do remain amongst the *Arabians*, who still call it *Misre*. Named in the same regard in the Book of *Psalms*, the Land of *Ham*: a name retained in some of the sacred Offices of the old *Egyptians*, where (as *Plutarch* witnesseth) it was called *Chemia*, for *Chemia* no doubt; as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the first stock of their Nation. In prophane Authors it hath had the several names of 1 *Aeria*, from the serenity of the Air, which is never clouded; 2 *Psamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, washing two sides of it; 3 *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges* a supposed King thereof; 4 *Melampodius*, from the black colour of the soil; 5 *Ostia*, from their God *Ostus*, here in high esteem; 6 and finally it was called *Egyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the rest, either from *Egyptus* the brother of *Panamus* once King hereof, (in the stories of this Nation better known by the name of *Ramefis*;) or from *Egyptus* the old name of the River *Nilus*, by whose annual over-flowings made both rich and famous; and of the soil and rubbish which that River brought with it from the higher Countries, it was by some supposed to have been raised into firm land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in some Writers by the name of *Nili donum*, or the gift of *Nilus*. Yet some there be who would have it called *Egyptus* for *Aiguphtus*, and that derived from *Ai* and *Coptus*, which signifieth the Land or Country of *Coptus*; that being supposed to have been anciently the chief City of it. And some again will have the name derived from *Chioth*, by which the *Egyptians* call themselves to this very day.

It containeth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Asna*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Ethiopia*, 562 Italian miles: in breadth (exclusively of *Cyrene* and *Lybia*) from *Rosetta* unto *Damietta*, or from the most Westerly branch of *Nilus* to the farthest East, 160 of the same miles; to which adding of those two Provinces makes a great accession: Situate under the second and fifth Climates, so that the longest day in Summer is but 13 hours and an half.

By reason of this Southernly situation of it, the Air is here very hot and offensive; so that to avoid the insupportable heats thereof, and to have the benefit of some fresh wind, the Inhabitants are accustomed to build high Towers in all their Towns, on which they use to solace and refresh themselves. The soil made fruitful by the over-flowings of *Nilus*, (whereof more anon) is so exceeding plentiful of all sorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum populi Romani*, the Granary or Store-houfe of the People of *Rome*: which City it did annually furnish with four months provision; inasmuch that it was said by *Pliny*, that the greatness of the *Roman Empire* could not long continue without the Corn and wealth of *Egypt*, the plenty or famine of that City depending wholly on this Country. It abounds also with rich Pastures, in which they feed great store of *Camels*, *Horses*, *Asses*, *Oxen*, *Sheep*, and *Goats*; greater of growth than usually in most places else; and by reason of the moorishness of the Country, they have great store of Fowls. Of Poultry they have also good numbers about their houses, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the sitting of the Hen, but the heat of *Furnaces*, or *Ovens*; in which their eggs are orderly laid in dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is also liberally furnished with great plenty of Metals, some precious Stones, good Wines, and the choicest Fruits, as *Lemons*, *Oranges*, *Pomgranates*, *Citrons*, *Figs*, *Cherries*, and such as these, excellent both for taste and colour. Of Palm-trees also great abundance; of which though we have spoke before, yet we shall here more fully declare the nature and strange properties of them. They grow in couples, Male and Female, both thrust forth Cods full of seed, but the Female is only fruitful, and that not except growing by the Male, and having his seeds mixt with hers. The pith of these Trees is an excellent Salad, better than an *Hartichoke*, which in taste it very much resembleth. Of the branches they make Bedsteads, Latices, &c. of the leaves, Baskets, Mats, Fans, &c. of the outward husk of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner, Brushes. The fruit it bears, best known by the name of *Dates*, are in taste like *Figs*: and finally, it is said to yield whatsoever is necessary to the life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never so ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the burden; but still to resist the heaviness of it, and to endeavour to lift and raise it self the more upwards. For this cause planted in Church-yards in the Eastern Countries, as an Emblem of the Resurrection: in stead whereof we use the *Ewe-tree* in these cold Regions. For the same reason, given to *Conquerours* as a token of Victory; it being the Emblem or Hieroglyphick of a Soldier's life. Hence figuratively used for precedence, as, *Huic equidem consilio palmam do*, in *Terence*; sometimes for the victory it self, as *Non auferent tamen hanc palmam*, in *Pliny*; & plurimarum palmarum homo, for a man that had won many prizes in the Fence-School, as in *Tully*, *pro Roscio*: more naturally for the sign of Victory, as in that of *Horace*,

Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.

That is to say,

The Palm, of Victory a sign,
Equals men to the Powers Divine.

The

The People, though the Country lie in the same Climate with *Barbary*, are not black, but tawny, or Olive-coloured, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela* to weep and mourn over the bodies of their dead, dashed over with dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having embalmed them, to lay them in some inward Room of their Houses: the men to keep themselves at home, for the household business, the women to follow Merchandise and affairs abroad; the men to carry burdens upon their heads, and the women theirs upon their shoulders: *Antipodes* in these last to most other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious people, the first Inventors of *Geometry*, *Arithmetic*, *Physick*, as also of *Astrology*, *Necromancy*, and *Sorcery*. They first taught the use of Letters to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*; by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accustomed at the first to express their concepts in the shape of Birds, Beasts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*; of which two or three examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity* they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: for a Year, they painted a Snake, with his tail in his mouth, to shew how one year succeeding another, kept the world still in an endless circle. For a Month, they painted a Palm-tree, because at every new Moon, it sendeth forth a new branch. For God, they painted a Falcon; as well for that he soareth so high, as that he governeth the lesser Birds. For Integrity of life, they painted fire and water, both because these Elements are in themselves most pure, and because all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was Admiration to the Gods, they painted a Fish, because in their Sacrifices the Priests never used them; and the like. From this manner of expressing ones self, the invention of Letters is thought to have had its original (though learnt by them no question of the children of *Israel*, when they lived amongst them;) the History whereof, take briefly and word for word, out of *Tartius*. *Primi per formam animalium Egyptii*, &c. The *Egyptians* first of all expressed the conceptions of the mind, by the shapes of Beasts; and the most ancient Monuments of mans memory, are seen graven in stones; and they say, that they are the first inventors of Letters. Thence the *Phœnicians*, because they were strong at Sea, brought them into *Greece*; and so they had the glory of that, which they received from others: For there goeth a report, that *Cadmus* sailing thither in a *Phœnician Ship*, was the Inventor of that Art amongst the *Greeks*, when they were yet unexperienced and rude. Some report that *Cecrops* the *Athenian*, or *Livius* the *Theban*, and *Palamedes* the *Græcian*, did find out sixteen Characters at the time of the *Trojan War*; and that afterwards *Simonides* added the rest. But in Italy the *Etrurians* learned them of *Demaratus* the *Cuthinian*; and the *Alorigines* of *Evander* the *Arcadian*. So far *Tartius*. That the *Phœnicians* were the first Inventors of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were hereinskilled before either: yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-master to the *Greeks*, I think I may with safety maintain, having *Lucan* in consent with *Tartius*.

Phœnices primi (famâ si creditur) ausi
Mansurum rudibus vocem signare figuris.

Phœnicians first (if fame may credit have)
Durd in rude Characters our words engrave.

Of this mind also is *Isidore* of *Sevil* in the first book of *Originations*, who also addeth, that for that cause the Fronts of Books, and the Titles of Chapters were written in Red letters, as it is by some still in use. *Hinc est quod & Phœniceo colore librorum capita describantur, quia ab ipsis litera initium habuerunt*, cap. 3. As for these less vulgar Letters, which the *Latines* call *Cyphra*, and whereof every exercised Statesman hath peculiar to himself; they were first invented by *Julius Cæsar*, when he first began to think of the *Roman Monarchy*: and were used by him in his Letters to his more private and tried friends, that if by misfortune they should be intercepted, the contents of them should not be understood; *Idem & apud istos monitis & cyphra, ne olvis litterarum lesio cuius esset*. *Augustus* one of the greatest Politicians of the World, had another kind of obscure writing; for in his Letters of more secrecy and importance, he always used *τὸ συντομὴν καὶ συντομὴν*, to put the Letter immediately following in the order of the Alphabet, for that which in ordinary Writing he should have used. As for *Brachygraphy*, or the Art of Writing by short Characters, so useful for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is spoken: I find in *Dion*, that *Mæcenus* that great favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*, and favourite of Learning, did first invent them, *ad celeritatem scribendi, for the speedier dispatch of writing*; *καὶ τὸ πρὸς ἡμετέραν συντομὴν* (they are the very words of my Author) *καὶ τὸ πρὸς ἡμετέραν*. *Isidor* in the second Chapter of his book above mentioned, ascribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Liberius* or *Freed man* of his *Mæcenus*; and to *Tertius Persannius*, and *Philargius*, who added to this invention. Yet had all they their chief light in it from *Tullius Tiro*, a *Freed man* of *Cicero's*; who had undertaken and compassed it in the *Prepositions*, but went no further. At the last it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into order and method; the whole volume of his contractions consisting of 5000 words. *Deinde Seneca contraxit omnium, digestos, & aucto numero, opus esset in quinque millia*.

So eminent in Arts and Learning were the old *Egyptians*, that from them *Pythagoras* and *Democritus* learnt their Philosophy; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their Forms of Government; *Orpheus* and *Homer* their Poetical fictions of the Gods. Particularly here flourished *Aristarchus* the famous and learned Grammarian; 2 *Herodiana* a diligent Student and searcher into curious Arts; 3 *Ammonius*, the master of *Plotinus*; 4 *Didymus* surnamed *Chalcenterus*, for his indefatigable Industry in several Sciences; 5 *Marathon*, an old Historian, of whom we have nothing but some fragments; 6 *Appianus*, an Historian of a later date, whose works are extant; 7 *Didymus* the Grammarian; 8 *Cl. Ptolemaeus* the Geographer;

9 *Achilles* Statius the Poet; 10 And before all the profound Philosopher *Mercurius*, surnamed *Trismegistus*. And after their conversion to the Faith of Christ, 1 *Pantenus*, the first Reader of Divinity, in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2 *Origen*, and 3 *Clement* *Alexandrinus*, both skilled in the Universality of Learning; 4 *Dionysius*; 5 *Atanasius*, and 6 *Cyril*; all three Bishops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their several times.

This notwithstanding their Religion before the embracing of *Christianity* was the worst of *Gentilism*; these people not only worshipping the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, creatures of greatest use and glory; nor only sacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollus*, and the rest of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their several times of some publicke benefit to mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing Divine honours to *Crocodiles*, *Snakes*, *Serpents*, *Garlick*, *Leeks* and *Onions*. For which, as worthily condemned by the *Christian* Fathers; so most deservedly exposed unto publick scorn, by the pens of the Poets;

Porrum & cape nefas violare, & ledere morsu;
Felices populi, quibus hæc nascuntur in Hortis
Numina! — Quis nescit qualia demens
Egyptus portenta colat; &c.

Which may be rendered to this purpose;

To bite an Onion or a Leek, is more
Than deadly Sin. The Numen they adore
Growes in their Gardens. And who doth not know
What monstrous Shapes for Gods in Egypt go?

But the God most esteemed by them, and by all sorts of the *Egyptians* the most adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Oxe, with a white star in his forehead, the Effigies of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs only in his tail. But it seemeth his Godship, was not so much respected by strangers. For *Cambyses* when he conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his Sword thorow the Thigh, and caused all his Priests to be scourged: And *Augustus* being here, would not vouchsafe to see him, saying, *Θεὸς ἂν ἢ βῆς ἀγορεύουσιν ἡ ὁδὸς*, that the Gods and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the object of his devotions. A speech most truly worthy for brave an Emperour.

But it is time we should proceed to a Survey of these *Egyptians*, as they stand at the present, much differing from the Ingenuity, and Abilities, of their Predecessors; nothing but Ignorance and Barbarisme to be found amongst them. For such as have observed the nature of the Modern *Egyptians*, ascribe them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Ancestors; prone to Innovations, devoted to Luxury, Cowardly, Cruel, addicted naturally to cavil, and to detract from whatsoever is good, and eminent. In their dealing with other men, more observant then faithful, of a wit much inclining to Craftiness, and very eager on their profit. Of person, of a mean stature, Tawny of complexion, and spare of Body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themselves to *Merchandize*, grow rich by Trading, reasonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in their drefs and Fashion. Those in the Country, who betake themselves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a savage and nasty people, crufted over with dirt, and stinking of smোক; fit company for none but those of their own condition. Nothing now left amongst them of the Arts of their Ancestors, but an affectation which they have unto *Divinations*; to *Fortune-telling* great pretenders; by which, and some cheating-tricks in which very well practised, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and so get their livelyhood; occasioning the *Vagabonds* and straglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the same false Arts, to assume their names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an *Hochpot* or Medley of many Nations, *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, the natural *Egyptian* making up the least part of the reckoning.

The Women of the same complexion with the men, but well formed and featured, did they not too much affect a seeming *Copulency*; which if they cannot get in flesh, they will have in cloaths. Very fruitful in child-bearing, and quick of dispatch when they are in labour: some of them having three or four children at a Birth; those that are born in the eighth month living to good Age, and not in danger of death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities, cover their faces with black *Cypres* bespotted with red; their armes, and ancles garnished with bracelets and hoops of Gold, Silver, or some other Metal. Those in the Country, for a veil, use some dirty clout, having holes only for their eyes, which little is too much to see and abstain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the custome in all places else, the women use to make water standing, and the men couring on their knees.

The *Christian* Faith was first here planted by *S. Mark*, whom all Antiquity maketh the first Bishop of *Alexandria*. His successors, till the time of *Heraclius* and *Dionysius*, chosen continually out of the *Priestery* or Cathedral-Clergy; afterwards out of the Clergy at large. Their Jurisdiction settled by a Canon of the Council of *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole *Diocess* of *Egypt*, (taking the word *Diocess* in the Civil notion) containing *Lybia*, *Pentapolis* and *Egypt* specially so called: to which, though *Epiphanius* adds *Thebais*, *Maroticus*, and *Ammoniacus*, yet he adds nothing in effect; *Thebais*, and *Maroticus* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniacus* was of *Lybia*. Afterwards the *Ethiopian* or *Abassine* Churches became subject to this Patriarch also, and do acknowledge to this day some relation to

to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens*, and the subjugation of this Country, *Christianity* fell here into great decay; languishing so sensibly since those times, especially since the conquest of it by the *Turks*; that whereas *Brocardus* in his time reckoned three hundred thousand *Christians*; in the last estimate which was made of them, they were found to be but fifty thousand. This small remainder of them, commonly called *Coptis*, either from the Greek word *κόπτα*, *Scindo*, because they retained the use of *Circumcision* with their *Christianity*; or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reside; or finally by *Abbreviation* from *Egyptis*, corrupted from *Egypti*, their own National name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithstanding in some particulars, in some from all *Christian* Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The points most proper to them, 1 Using *Circumcision* with their *Baptisme*, but rather as a National than Religious custome; though in that sense also laid aside, as is said by some, by the persuation of some Legates from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Caire*, An. 1583. 2ly. Conferring all sacred Orders under the *Priesthood*, on Infants immediately after Baptism; their Parents, till they come to sixteen years of age, performing what they promised in their behalf, viz. Chastity, fasting on Wednesday and Friday, and the four Lent of the year. 3ly. Reputing Baptism not to be of any efficacy, except ministered by the Priest, in the open Church, in what extremity soever. 4ly. And yet not baptizing any Children till the fortieth day, though they die in the interim. 5ly. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Eucharist*, as soon as Christened; 6 Contracting Marriages even in the second Degree of Consanguinity, without dispensation; 7 Observing not the Lords day, nor any of the Festivals, except only in Cities; 8ly. And in their Liturgies, reading the Gospel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, 1 Administ'ring the Sacrament of the Lords Supper under both kinds; 2ly. Administ'ring in leavened bread; 3ly. Admitting neither *Extreme unction*, nor the use of the *Eucharist*, to those that are sick; 4ly. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead, 5ly. Not using Elevation in the Act of administ'ring; And 6. Reckoning the Roman Church for Heretical, and esteeming no better of the *Lutins*, then they do of the *Jewes*. In these opinions they continue hitherto against all Opponents and persuasions. For though *Baronius* in the end of the sixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath registred an Ambassage from *Marcus*, the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8; wherein he is said to have submitted himself and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*; yet upon further search made, it was found but a Cheat, devised to hold up the reputation of a sinking cause. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* still adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practice and Solicitation of some bulie *Friars*, have been drawn to be of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and to use her Liturgies.

Among the *Rarities* of this Country, some were the works of Nature, and some of industry and magnificence. Of this last kind I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramids*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their several kinds, the envy of the Ages past, and the astonishment of the present. Look we first on the *Pyramids*, many in number, three most celebrated, and one the principal of all; situate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Western banks of *Nilus*. This last, the chief of the Worlds seven Wonders, square at the bottome, is supposed to take up eight Acres of ground. Every square 300 single Paces in length, ascended by 255 steps, each step above three Foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top consisting but of three Stones only, yet large enough for 60 men to stand upon. No Stone so little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the Arabian Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the rest for others of those mighty Princes) who employed in it day by day twenty years together, no fewer than 366000 men continually working on it. The charges which they put him to, in no other food than *G. slick*, Radishes, and Onions, being computed at a thousand and eight hundred Talents. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is said to be the worke of a Daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Hersdorns* writeth) both to finish her Fathers undertaking, and raise her own unto the height, by the prostitution of her body, requiring but one stone towards the Work from each one of her Customers; but the Tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater Truth, though affirmed by *Josephus*, and supposed by many good Divines, that the drudgery put upon the *Israelites* did concern these *Pyramids*; the Materials of these works being Stone; their employment, Brick. But past all doubt, advanced by those considerate Princes upon good advice, and not for ostentation only of their power and glories. For by this means they did not only eternize their memory to succeeding Ages, but for the present kept the Subject from sloth and Idleness; who being a people prone unto Innovations, were otherwise like enough to have fed that sin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

As for the *Labyrinth*, it was built by *Psammiticus* on the banks of the River *Nilus*, situate on the South of the *Pyramids*, and North of *Arsinoe*, or the City of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compass of one continued Wall a thousand Houses, and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had only one entrance; but innumerable turnings, and returnings, sometimes one over another; and all in a manner, invions to such as were not acquainted with them: the building more under ground, then above; the Marble stones laid with such Art, that neither Wood, nor Cement was employed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers so disposed, that the dores upon their opening, did give a report no less terrible then a crack of Thunder. The maine entrance all of white Marble, adorned with stately Columns, and most curious Imagery. The end at length being attained, a pair of Staires of 90 Steps conducted into a gallant Portico, supported with Pillars of *Theban* stone, which was the entrance into a fair and spacious Hall, (the place of their general Conventions) all of polished Marble, set out with the Statues of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Darius*, in the *Cretan* Labyrinth; though

though that fell as short of the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferior unto *Pseumiticus*, in Power and Riches.

Next unto these, I place the Isle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Island opposite unto *Alexandria*, once a mile distant from the Land, but joyned to the Continent by *Cleopatra*, on this occasion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea, used to exact some Tribute or acknowledgment out of every Island within those Seas, and consequently out of this. Their Ambassadors sent unto *Cleopatra* to demand this Tribute, she detained with her seven dayes, under colour of celebrating some solemn *Festivals*; and in the mean time, by making huge dams and banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and speed, united the Island to the shore; which finished, she sent the *Rhodians* away empty handed, with this witty jeer, telling them that they were to take Toll of the Islands, and not of the Continent. A work of great rarity and magnificence, and that incredible speed, wherewith it was finished. As for the Watch-Tower, called in *Greek* and *Latine* *Pharos*, by the name of the Island; it was built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, for the benefit of Sailers, (the Seas upon that coast being very unsafe and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deservedly esteemed another of the Worlds seven Wonders: the other five being 1 the *Mausoleum*, 2 the Temple of *Ephesus*, 3 the Walls of *Babylon*, 4 the Colossus of *Rhodes*, and 5 the Statue of *Jupiter Olympius*. This Watch-tower, or *Pharos*, was of wonderful height, ascended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein lights burned nightly, as a direction to such as sailed by Sea. The Materials were white Marble; the chief Architect, *Sostratus* of *Gnidus*, who ingraved on the work this Inscription. *Sostratus* of *Gnidus*, the Son of *Dexiphanes*, to the Gods protectors, for the safeguard of Sailers. This Inscription he covered with *Plaster*, and thereon ingraved the name and title of the King, the Founder: to the end that the Kings name being soon wasted and washed away, his own, which was written in Marble, might be eternized to posterity, as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cesar* pursuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having discontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Souldiers, had his Navy which here lay at Anchor assaulted by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolomies* servants, *Cesar* himself being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the skirmish he halted to the *Pharos*, meaning to succour his Navy in person: but the *Egyptians* making towards him on all sides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and swim for his life. And though (to avoid their Darts) he sometimes ducked, yet held he still his left hand above the water, and in it divers Books, which he carried safe unto his Ships, and animating his men, got the victory. It is said that *Egypt* hath only two doors; the one by land, which is the strong Town of *Peleusium*, or *Damiata*; the other by water, which is this *Pharos*: *Tota Egyptus maritimo accessu*, *Pharo*; *pedestre vero*, *Pelusius*, *velut claustris munita existimatur*, saith *Oppian*.

Amongst the Rarities of Nature, we may reckon those strange Beasts and Fishes, proper almost unto this Country, i. e. the *Crocodile*, the *Ichnemnon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horse) the *Iliu*, the *Aspe*, and many several sorts of Serpents. To speak of which particularly were a work more proper to a Natural History, then a Geographical. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* then all the rest, cannot be parted within silence; A creature of a strange nature, hatched of an Egg no bigger then that of a *Turkie*, and yet increasing to the length of thirty foot; his tail as long as all the rest of his body, with which he is accustomed to inchain his prey, and draw it into the River; his feet armed with claws, and his back with impenetrable Scales; his mouth so wide (of which he moveth only the upper Jaw) that he is able to swallow a whole Heifer; equally used to both Elements, but better lighted in the water, then on the land; Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and such as usually flies from those which dare set upon him; and easily vanquished by the *Dolphin*, who swimming under the water woundeth him in the belly, where assailable only. Whether so easily destroyed by the *Ichnemnon* (a kind of Water-Rat) skipping into his mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers say, hath of late been questioned.

Of less dispute, but not less rarity in nature, are these that follow. 1 That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a Cloud do sometimes happen to dissolve upon them, it bringeth on their bodies innumerable Sores, and strange diseases. 2 The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are said to follow on the same. Of which it is thus said by *Lucan*:

*Terra suis contenta bonis, non indiga Mercis,
Aut Jovis; in solo tanta est fiducia Nilo:*

*The earth content with its own wealth, doth crave
No Foreign Mart, nor Jove himself; they have
Their hopes alone in Nilus fruitful Wave.*

This *Nilus* from the 15 day of June, swelleth above his Banks, for the space of 40 dayes; and in as many more, gathereth his waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen Cubits, then the earth is deficient in her abundance of increase, for want of moisture; and if the waters surmounted the superficies of the Earth, more than seventeen Cubits; then like a drunken man, it cannot produce its natural operation, as having its stomach (as it were) over-laid, and surcharged with too much liquor; but if the mean be granted, there is no Country which can brag of the like Fertility; the Corn being all housed before the 20th. of May. During this Inundation, they keep their Beasts and Cattel on the tops of such little hills, which either the providence of nature, or the Industry of man hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decrease of the Waters: and on these Hills also stand the most of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood, like so many Islands; and holding a commerce and continual traffick by the entercourse of Boats and Shallops, by which they do transport their Marketable commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth

not

not thus over-flow the Country, it is not only the Fore-runner to a following dearth, but prognosticeth some ensuing mischief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the testimony of good and creditable Authors, who have told us that in the 10th. and 11th. years of *Cleopatra*, the River increased not at all: and that it was noted as a Fore-teller of the Fall of those two great, but unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweetheart *Antonius*. A second commodity which ariseth from the overflowings of *Nilus*, is the health which it bringeth with it in most parts of the Country; the Plague which often-times miserably rageth, upon the first day of the flood, abating instantly: insomuch that whereas 500. may die of that disease in the City of *Caire* but the day before, there dieth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River, is, that keeping its waters united in a body together, after it falleth into the Sea, it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further then any part of it can be seen from the shore. Add unto these the many living creatures which the slime thereof engendereth, on the withdrawing of the River to its natural Channel: whereof *Ovid* thus,

*Sic ubi deservit madidos Septemfluvius agros
Nilus, & antiquo sua fuvina reddidit alto;
Plurima Cultores veris Animalia glebis
Inveniunt.*

Which I English thus;

*So when the Seven-mouth'd Nile the fields forsakes,
And to his ancient Channel him betakes;
The Plough-men many living Creatures find,
By turning up the mud that's left behind.*

Amongst which Creatures so ingendered, are said to be such innumerable heaps of *Frogs*, that if Nature, or Divine Providence rather, did not furnish this Country with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured, the Plague of *Frogs* would come a second time upon them, to their utter destruction.

On the Banks of this River also grew those sedge Weeds called *Papyrus*, of which Paper was made in former times, which I reckon amongst the Rarities of *Egypt* also, but a Rarity of Art and Nature mixed. They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moistning them with the glutinous waters of the River, they pressed them together, and after dried them in the Sun, by means of which invention, books being easier to be transcribed and reserved then formerly, *Ptolomy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*: and understanding how *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this Egyptian Paper, strived to exceed him in that kind of magnificence, prohibited the carrying of it out of *Egypt*. Hereupon *Attalus* invented the use of Parchments, made of the skins of Calves and Sheep; from the materials called *Membranae*, and *Pergamenta* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cause, that in short time the Egyptian Paper was worn out of use; in place whereof succeeded our Paper made of Rags; the Authors of which excellent invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the use of these Papers and Parchments were first made known, I observe three ways of writing amongst the Ancients, (I hope I shall be pardoned this short digression.) 1 On the inward side of the Bark of a Tree, which is in *Latine* called *Liber*; and whence Books have the name of *Libri*. 2ly. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Caudex*, gave the *Latines* occasion to call a Book *Codex*. 3ly. They used to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to signify; from whence a Letter-carrier was named *Tabellarius*. The instrument wherewith they wrote, was a sharp-pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*; a word now signifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of Phrase which any man useth: as, *Negligens stylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus stylus*, in *Cicero*. I should have also noted, that they used sometimes to write in Leaves; That the *Sibyls* Oracles being so written and scattered abroad, had the name of *Sibylla Folia*; and that from thence we have the phrase of a Leaf of Paper. But of this Argument enough.

Now to these Rarities of nature, and magnificent Industry, most of them neer the River *Nile* or relating to it, we are to add another of far greater moment, and such as plainly seemeth to be supernatural, which is, that about five miles from the City of *Caire*, there is a place, in which, on every Good Friday yearly, their appear the Heads, Leggs, and Armes of men, rising out of the ground, to a very great number: which if a man draw neer unto them, or touch any of them, will shrink again into the Earth. Supposed by some to be an Imposture of some Water Men only; who stick them overnight in the Sands, and keeping them secret to themselves, obtain thereby the ferrying over of many thousands of people, to behold the sight. But *Stephen Duplet*, a sober and discerning man, in the opinion of *Egnartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwise of it; affirming soberly that he was an Eye-witness of the wonder, that he had touched divers of these rising Members; and that (as he was once so doing to the head of a Child) a man of *Caire* cryed out unto him, *Kali Kali ants materasde*, that is to say, Hold, hold, you know not what you doe. A strange Forerunner (if it be of undoubted credit) of the Resurrection of the whole Body, presented yearly, in the Rising of these several parts.

Having thus done with the Rarities concerning *Nilus*, and that great increase of wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural Commodities of the Earth: let us next look on the Red Sea, and the great Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of Trading. A Sea whereof we have spoken already, as to the reason of the name, the extent thereof, and the several

Iiii 3

Islands

Islands contained in it, and therefore shall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Country, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous passage of the *Israelites* through it as upon dry-land, and the drowning of *Pharaoh* *Cenchres* and all his people, at large commemorated in the books of Holy Scriptures : as also for that through it the Spices of *India*, and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria* ; and thence by the *Venetians* dispersed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*. I suppose I shall not do amiss to set down Historically out of *Galiano*, a relation of the beginning, continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received its great Commodity. Know then (saith he) that *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, 277 years before the Incarnation, was the first that set on foot this Navigation : Colir (of old called *Myos*, *Hormos*) on the Sea-side being the ordinary Haven, out of which they hoysed Sail for *India* ; and into which they returned, full Fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by Land conveyed to *Coptus*, and so down the Nile to *Alexandria*, by which Traffick the City grew exceeding Rich ; inasmuch that the Customs-house there yielded *Procl.* Auletis 7 Millions and an half of Gold yearly. The Romans being Lords of *Egypt*, enchaned the Customs to double that sum : they sent into *India* every year (as *Pliny* witnesseth) 120 Ships, whose lading was worth 1200000 Crowns ; and there was made in return of every Crown, 100. When the *Vandals*, *Lombards*, *Goths*, and *Moors* had torn in pieces the Roman Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to cease. At last perceiving the inconvenience, they began anew ; conveying the Indian Commodities, partly by Land, partly by Water, unto *Caplia* in *Taurica Cherfoneus*, belonging to the *Genoese*. Next *Trabezond* was made the Mart-town, then *Sarmachand* in *Zagataie*, where the *Indians*, *Turkish*, and *Perlian Merchants* meet to barter Wares : the *Turks* conveying their Merchandise to *Damascus*, *Barutti*, and *Aleppo* ; from whence the *Venetians* transported it to *Venice*, making that the common Emporium of *Christendoms*. Once again, viz. Anno 1300. the *Soldans* of *Egypt* restored the passage by the Red-Sea ; which having continued more then 200 years, is now discontinued by the *Portugal*, *Spaniards*, *English*, and *Dutch*, which bring them to their several homes by the back-side of *Africk* : So that not only the Traffick of *Alexandria* is almost decayed, and the Riches of the *Venetians* much diminished ; but the Drugs and Spices have lost much of their vertue, as impaired by too much moisture in so long a Voyage. So much faith he, touching the course and alteration of this Trading, to which I shall take leave to add, that for the better and more quick return of such Commodities as were usually brought into this Sea, some of the Kings of *Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it, to the River *Nilus*, passable by ships of great burden ; the marks of whose proud attempts are remaining still. *Sesostris* was the first who designed the work, having before with good success cut many Trenches from the River, and some Navigable, into many places of the Country ; by which unprofitable Marshes were drained, the Country strengthened, Trade made easie, and the people better furnished with water than in former times. *Darius* the great *Persian* Monarch, seconded the same Project ; so did one of the *Ptolomies* ; The like is said of a *Capricious Portugal* in these later times. But they all gave it over on the same consideration ; which was a fear, least by letting in the Red-Sea they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a second Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Asia Minor* which lay nearest to them : that Sea being found to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*, and the flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to understand, that all which hitherto hath been spoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* strictly, and specially so called ; containing only so much of the Country of *Egypt*, as lieth upon the Banks and Channels of the River *Nilus* ; and not to all that tract of ground, which lay betwixt the Red-Sea, and the borders of *Lybia*, which was reckoned in the compas of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, much less as comprehending *Lybia* and *Cyrene* also, though now accounted Members of that great Body, and anciently parts, or Provinces of the Diocesis of it. For *Egypt*, in the largest sense and acception of the word, may be, and generally is divided into these three parts, viz. 1. *Egypt*, in the general Notion, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the borders of *Idumea* to the *Roman Lybia*, or *Marmarica*, lying Westward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleoticum* ; and on the borders of *Ethiopia Superior*, from the said Red-Sea, to the Country of *Lybia Interior*. 2. *Lybia*, or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly so called, and the Province of *Cyrene*, or *Pentapolis*. And 3. *Cyrene*, or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Lybia*, to the greater *Syrtis* ; where it bordered with that part of the *African Diocesis*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this first acception of it we shall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains and chief Cities ; which done, we shall describe the other in their proper places ; and then unite them all in the General Story.

As for the Mountains of this Country, there are very many : there were no living else for the people in the time of the overflowings of the River. The principal of those, 1. Those called *Montes Lybici*, lying in a long chain on the West of *Nilus* ; 2. *Abastrinus* ; 3. *Prophyrus* ; 4. *Troicus* ; 5. *Basilanus* on the East thereof. Betwixt these Hills the course of the River is so hemmed in on both sides, that at the upper part of the stream, where it first entereth into *Egypt*, the space betwixt the Mountains, is not above four miles broad ; enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Caire* to thirty seven ; then opening wider and wider, till we come to the breaches of the Delta, as the Country doth increase in breadth. On these and other of the Mountains and lesser Hills, stand most part of the Towns, the receptacles of the Country-people in the time of the Flood, rising when least, to fifteen Cubits, or seven yards and an half.

Rivers of note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that ; that being sufficient of it self to enrich this Country, which otherwise would be nothing but a Sandy Desert. The Head thereof not in the Mountains of the Moon, as was once supposed, but in the Lake *Zemire* in *Ethiopia Interior* ; passing from thence through the Higher *Ethiopia*, or *Habassine* Empire, till it falls at last into this Country ; and running in one continual Chanel (excepting where it brancheth into little Islands, as it sometimes doth) before its influx into the Sea, is divided into seven great streams, opening into the Sea with so many

many mouths. Namely ; 1. *Heracleoticum* ; 2. *Boluiticum* ; 3. *Schaniticum* ; 4. *Patinicum* ; 5. *Mendicum* ; 6. *Caniticum* ; 7. *Pelusiaticum*. The first and last of these Currents, (which are the only two now left) being far distant from the others, and growing into one, at the first point of the Rivers division, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*, because to such as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Asia*, it seemeth that Letter in the Greek Alphabet. Now because *Nilus* runneth in its certain Channels, and that the people have no other water to make use of, for all necessities ; there are many bye-trenches and deep Ditches cut in convenient places, (by the care and magnificence of their Kings) to receive its Waters, and to communicate them to the people, who know almost no other drink than the Waters thereof, and indeed they need not ; the Waters of this River being of such excellent, both taste, and virtue, that when *Pescennius Niger* saw his Souldiers murmur for want of Wine ; What (said he) do you grumble for Wine, having the Waters of Nile to drink ?

But beside the Waters of this River, and the Trenches of it, the people are supplied with that Commodity by Lakes, and artificial Channels, which serve for watering their Cattle, tempering of Mortar for their buildings, and other such inferior uses ; sometimes perhaps for drink for the poorer sort, who cannot be conveniently furnished with the waters of Nile. Amongst the Trenches (which were many, as before was said) those of most estimation were the Works of *Ptolomy*, and the Emperour *Trajan* ; the first falling into that branch of the Nile, which maketh the Isle called *Heracleotis* ; the other into the main body of it, not far from *Caire*. These two, by reason of the many fresh Springs which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authors : and betwixt these was seated the Land of *Gessen*, extending from *Nilus* to the Red Sea, on the East and West. The chief of note amongst the Lakes, were those called, 1. *Marootis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Pliny* called *Arapotes*, *Maria* by *Ptolomy* ; all which names are now lost, and changed into that of *Lago di Antacon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Laccus*, supposed to be the same which in the book of *Maccabees* is called *Asphar*, lib. 1. cap. 9. And 3. *Moris*, now called *Bucharia*, more memorable then the rest. In compas 3500 furlongs, 50 fathoms deep, in the midst whereof were two Pyramids 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it : the Fifth of this Lake, for one six months in the year, said to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the Kings Exchequer ; for the other six, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Amari*, into which the Trench, or River called *Ptolomeus*, doth discharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the Red-Sea.

The whole divided anciently into two parts only. 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extrem branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which Letter it seemeth to him who standing on the Sea-shore could take a view of it, as before was said. 2. That called *Thebais*, from *Thebe* the principal City of it, comprehending all the rest of the course of that River, shut up on both sides with the Mountains spoken of before. But this Division leaving out all those parts hereof, which lay on the East-side towards the *Arabian Golfs*, and on the West, as far as to the borders of *Lybia Marmarica* : the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 Centreds, or Districts, by them called *Nomi* ; increased in the time of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, to 46. *Ortelius* out of divers Authors hath found 20 more. When conquered by the Romans, and made a Diocesis of the Empire, it was divided into four Provinces, (not reckoning *Marmarica*, and *Cyrene* into the account) that is to say, 1. *Egyptus* specially so called, containing all the Delta, and the District or *Nomus* of *Maroutica*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2. *Augustanica*, so called from *Augustus Caesar*, on the East of the Delta, betwixt it and *Arabia Petrea*. 3. *Arcadia*, so called from the Emperour *Arcadius*, in whose time it was taken out of *Thebais*, lying on both sides of the River, from the Delta to the City of *Antinous*. 4. *Thebais*, extending on both sides of the River from the borders of *Lybia Marmarica* to the Red-Sea, (as the other doth) from *Antinous*, unto *Ethiopia* ; Divided otherwise by some, into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Ethiopia* to the City of *Antinous* ; *Mediam*, stretching thence to the point of the Delta ; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the rest. But at this time, that part hereof, which lieth on the South and East of *Caire*, is called *Sand*, or *Salid* ; honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the ancient *Pharaohs*, because nearest unto *Ethiopia* their most puissant neighbour. 2. That betwixt *Caire*, *Rosetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Erris*, wherein the *Ptolomean* Princes did most reside ; because most convenient for receiving supplies of men, from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Caire*, to *Tenefe* and *Damiata*, is now called *Marimna*, in which the *Turks* and *Mamluks* made the seat of their Empire ; because more neighbouring to the *Christians*, whom they stood in fear of, as likeliest to invade them upon that side. In the whole Country there was reckoned in the time of *Amasis* the 24. no fewer than 20000 Cities ; but if the Towns and Villages be not reckoned in, I should much doubt of the account. By *Diodorus Siculus* it is said that there were 3000 in his time ; but *Ortelius*, on a diligent search, finds 300 only.

Those of most note in the Province of *Augustanica*, 1. *Pelusium*, the most Eastern City of *Egypt* towards *Idumea*, situate on the most Eastern Channel of *Nilus*, called hence *Pelusiaticum* ; by *Ammianus* said to be the work of *Peleus* the Father of *Achilles*, commanded by the Gods to purge himself in the Lake adjoining, for the murder of his brother *Phocus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to those who came thither by Sea ; the Metropolis of the Province of *Augustanica*, the birth-place of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, and the Episcopal Sea of *S. Isidore*, surnamed *Pelusiotes*, whose eloquent and pious Epistles are still extant. Out of the ruins hereof (if not the same under another Title) arose, 2. *Damiata*, memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the *Christian Armies* ; for none more then that under *John de Breanne*, the Titular King of *Jerusalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, An. 1220. During which (being of 18 months continuance) the Famine and the Pestilence so extremely raged, that the Town in a manner was dispeopled, before the *Besiegers* knew any thing of their condition ;

condition: till in the end two venturous Souldiers, admiring the silence and solitude of so great a City, in a *Bravado* scaled the walls; but found no man to make resistance. The next day the whole Army entered, where they found in every house, and every corner of the streets, whole heaps of dead bodies, none to give them Burial. A lamentable and rueful spectacle! 3 *Heros*, or *Civitas Heroum*, in the *Arabian Isthmus*; at the very bottom of the *Gulf*; remarkable for the first interview betwixt *Jacob* and *Joseph*, after his coming into *Egypt*. 4 *Heliopolis*, or the City of the *Sun*, now called *Belzimus*, in the Scriptures *On*, of which *Potiphar* the Father of *Arsenath* (whom *Pharaoh* married unto *Joseph*) was Priest, or Prince, as is said *Gen. 41.45*. Given (as *Josephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the Sons of *Jacob*; by consequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Rameses*, or *Goshen*; and memorable in times succeeding for a publick Temple built for the *Jews*, with the consent of *Phyladelphus* (whom *Pharaoh* married unto *Joseph*) the High-Priest, then dispossessed of his Authority and Office by the power of *Antiochus*: a Temple much esteemed by the *Hellenists*, or *Grecizing Jews*; and though *Schismatical* at the best in its first original, yet not *Schismatical* and *Idolatrous* too, as was that of *Mount Garizim*. 5 *Babastis*, somewhat more North than *Heliopolis*, by some of the ancients called *Auaris*, by the Scriptures *Pileseth*, another City of that tract; now better known by the name of *Zioth*: supposed to be the same which the *Notitia* calleth *Casra Judaeorum*; memorable in times of *Paganisme*, for a famous Temple of *Diana*. 6 *Arsinoe*, on the shore of the *Red Sea*, so called in honour of *Arsinoe*, sister of *Philadelphus*, and wife to *Lyfimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards called *Cleopatra*, in honour of Queen *Cleopatra*; now better known by the name of *Sues*. Of great commerce and trading in the time of the *Ptolomies*: Now almost abandoned; and would be utterly deserted, were it not made the station of the *Turkish* Gallies, that command the *Gulf*: which being framed at *Caire* of such Timber as is brought thither by Sea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and sometimes from the shores of the *Euxine Sea*; are again taken in peeces, carried from *Caire* unto this City on the backs of Camels, and here joynted together. Conceived to be the same which in former times was called *Baal Zephon* (of which see *Exod. 14.9*.) the last incamping-place of the Tribes of *Israel*, who from hence passed through the *Red Sea*, as upon dry Land. 7 *Gleba Rulra*, by the *Greeks* called *Hiera Bolus*, and sometimes *Erythra Bolus* also, more neer the *Latine*; the redness of the soyl giving name unto it: situate on the River or Trench of *Tralan*: more memorable for a misfortune that befel it than for any thing else; purposely burnt by *Amenophis* the fifth, upon this occasion. Being blind, he was assured by some of his *Wizards*, that if he washed his eyes with the Urine of a Woman, which had never known any but her own Husband, he should be restored unto his sight. After a long search and many vain tryals, he met with one whose water cured him; whom he took to wife: and cauling all the rest whom he had made tryal of, to be brought together to this Town, he set fire on the City, and burnt both it and all the women there assembled; which Tale, if true, is little to the honour of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of most note and observation in the Province of *Egypt*, strictly and specially so called, are 1 *Alexandria* situate Westward of the *Delta*, over against the Isle of *Pharos*; and built upon a Promontory thrusting it self into the Sea; with which on the one side, and the Lake *Mareotis* on the other, it is exceeding well defended: the Work of *Alexander the Great*, and by him peopled with *Greeks*, immediately after his conquest of *Egypt*. The Regal Seat of the *Ptolomies*, whilst *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom: and afterwards the Metropolis of it, when a *Roman* Diocesis. Adorned with many stately buildings; of which most memorable the *Serapinus*, (or Temple of their God *Serapis*) for sumptuous workmanship, and the magnificence of the Fabrick, inferior to none but the *Roman* Capitol: and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had stored it with 700000 Volumes; unfortunately burnt in the War against *Julius Caesar*. A City of great trading, and infinite Riches; *phylus* *empor* *et* *diuulpius*, the greatest Empory of the World, as is said by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens so abound in all licentiousness both of life, and speech, that they spared not the Emperor himself, if he came in their way. But they paid dearly for their folly. For *Caracalla* not so patient of a Contumely as some wiser Princes, having felt the lashes of their Tongues, when he was amongst them, assembled all the youth of the City, as if out of them he would have chosen some to attend his Person: and suddenly gave command to his Souldiers, to put them all to the sword. A slaughter so great and universal, that the River *Nilus* coloured with the blood of the slain, might not improperly at that time be called a *Red Sea*. In this City, Anno 180. *Danteus* read both *Divinity* and *Philosophy* to all such as would come to hear him: which as it is conceived to give the first hint to the instituting of *Universities*, in the rest of *Christendome*; so from that small beginning the *Schools* of *Alexandria* grew to great and eminent, that *Nazianzen* calleth them *Naribus* *indivisiis* *egregiis*, the shop, or work-house, as it were, of all kinds of Learning. Much short of what it was even in point of Trading, especially since the diversion of the Spice Trade from the Bay of *Arabia*; and utterly divested of those beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the present by a mixture of Nations, *Moor*s, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Christian* *Cophites*; more for some little gain which they reap by Traffick, than any pleasure in the place. Now called *Scandaria* by the *Turks*, remarkable only for the house of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the most part in *Caire*) and a Church in which *S. Mark* their first Bishop was said to be buried. 2 *Cinopus*, situate East of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*; so called from *Canopus* the Pilot of *Menelaus*, who having suffered shipwrack upon this coast, was there interred by his Matter. A Town so branded in old times, for varieties of all kind of beastliness, and Luxury, that as *Seneca* very well observed, he that avoided the viciousness and debauchery of it, could not scape the infamy: the very place administering matter for suspicion. 3 *Rosetta*, on the same branch of the River, and not far from *Canopus*, out of whose ruins it arose; built by a *Slave* of one of the *Egyptian* Caliphs; unwall'd and destitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all sorts

of commodities, and well frequented by the Merchant. 4 *Nicopolis*, now called *Munia*, the Monument of some eminent Victory, and probably of the conquest of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town standing within 30 Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5 *Aphroditis* and *Aphroditopolis*, so called from *Venus* who was here worshipped: situate betwixt the two middle branches of the *Nile*. 6 *Sais*, betwixt the same branches of the River also; whence that *Nomus* or Division had the name of *Saites*. It is now called *Sibiti*, or *Signiti*. 7 *Plinthine*, on the Sea-side; and 8 *Hierax*, more within the Land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Mareotica*.

In *Aradia*, called also *Hepanomis*, because it contained seven of the *Nomi* or Divisions, into which *Egypt* was distributed by the *Macedonians*, the places of most note were and are 1 *Memphis*, on the Western banks of *Nile*, not far from the sharp point of the *Delta*, where the River first beginneth to divide it self; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian* *Pharaohs*: by one of which who removed the Seat Royal from *Thebe* hither, it is said to be built, and called thus by the name of his daughter. In compass, when it flourished, about 20 miles; great, populous, and adorned with a world of Antiquities; amongst others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, and *Serapis*, beset with *Sphinxes*: now nothing left of the Ruines of it, but the Statues of some monstrous Resemblances, sufficient to shew what it hath been formerly. The *Pyramides* before described, stood not far from hence; to which the Poet relateth, saying,

Barbara Pyramidum sileat miracula Memphis.

*Let barbarous Memphis brag no more
Of her Pyramides, as before.*

3. *Babylon*, called for distinctions sake, *Babylon Aegyptiorum*, built on the other side of the River; and somewhat more unto the North: said to be founded by *Cumbyfes* the *Persian* Monarch, the first that made this Kingdom stoop to the yoke of a foreigner; and by him peopled with some *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans*, transplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruins; amongst which, many of the *Christian* Temples and Monasteries do lie there in rubbish; the Castle whereof served long after for the Garrison of the three Legions, appointed to defend this Country in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by some to be the *Babylon* mentioned by *S. Peter*, in his 1 Epistle *cap. ult.* which the following words, and *Mark my Son*, (*S. Mark* being the first Bishop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apostle of *Egypt*) may make somewhat probable, but the truth and reality hereof, I dispute not now. Out of the ruins of this City arose, 3 *Caire*, now, and for many Ages past, the chief of this Country: raised from the ashes of old *Babylon* by the *Chaliphs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamaluks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compass not above eight miles, but full of Streets, the number of which said to be 18000. every one of them fortified with a Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every several street an impregnable fortress. Found so by *Selimus* the first, when he conquered *Egypt*, who spent three dayes in forcing his way through it with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean; the publick, especially the *Mosques*, beyond thought magnificent. Visited every seventh year with a dreadful Pestilence; yet still so populous, that it is conceived to be in good health, if there die not above a thousand in a day, or 300000 within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards, both within the City, and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleasant Lake; but made more pleasant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual solace and delights. Fortified at the South end with a stately Castle (the Palace of the *Mamaluks* Sultans) situate on the top of a Mountain; overlooking the City, and a great part of the Country also. So large, that it seemeth a City of it self, immured with high walls, divided into many partitions of several Courts, in times past the places of exercise; and entered by dores of Iron. Destroyed for the most part, by *Selimus*, for fear of the giving opportunity to some rebellion; or envying the *Mamaluks* the glory of having been the Masters of so brave a Mansion: that which is left, now serving for the habitation of the *Turkish* *Bassas*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4 *Mahared*, or *Maharea*, not far from *Caire*; the soil whereof is said to be so rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with Sand or Gravel, so moderating the extreme rankness of it. 5 *Arsinoe*, on the West side of the *Nile*, and somewhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before described; called also (to difference it from another of the same name on the shore of the *Red Sea*) the City of *Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monster. 6 *Niopolis*, or *Nili Civitas*, in the Island called *Heracleotis*, made by the imbracements of the River: most memorable for being the Episcopal Sea of *Cheremon*, a right godly Prelate; of whom see *Eusebius* in the 6 Book and 34 Chap. of his Ecclesiastical History. 7 *Trois*, on the Eastern stream which makes that Island, not much observable but for giving name to the *Montes Troici* lying near unto it; out of which were digged the stones which made the *Pyramides*. 8 *Cynopolis*, in a little Island upon the water. 9 *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercury*; called also *Hermopolis magna*, to difference it from another that name not far from *Alexandria*, to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10 *Antonius*, now *Antidi*, founded by *Adrian* the Emperour, in honour of *Antonius* his especial favourite; the most Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11 *Dionysias*, or the City of *Bacchus*, situate on the Southern end of the Lake of *Mueris*, in the *Nomus* or Division called *Oasis parva*. 12 *Clymas*, upon the shores of the *Gulf*, a *Roman* Garrison.

Cities of most note in the Province of *Thebais*, 1 *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antoninus*, one of the greatest of this part. 2 *Ptolomais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolomies*, and the goodliest City of this Province, succeeding unto *Thebe* both in power and greatness. 3 *Saites*, a fair and large Town.

six dayes journey from *Caire*, going up the water; but by what name called amongst the Ancients, I do nowhere find. Affirmed (erroneously, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joseph* and *Mary*, when they fled with *CHRIST* our Saviour from the tury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now somewhat ruinous, of the foundation of *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*. The City much resorted to (on the strength of this Tradition only) by many aged *Christian Cophites*, who desire to die there. 4 *Dispolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the banks of the River. 5 *Tentyra*, in a little Isle so called, made by the circlings of the Nile: The Inhabitants whereof were the only men who durst encounter the *Crocodile*: A creature of a terrible name, but a cowardly nature; of which it is said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that it assaulteth those which flee from it, and fleeth from those who do assault it: In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is said by the Apostle *James*. 4. 7. that if he be resisted, he will flee from us; Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Est Leo, si fugias; si stas, quasi Mulca recedit.

*Give ground, a Lyon he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.*

6. *Coptos*, upon the head of a Trench or water-course, which falleth into the *Nilus*, on the South of *Tentyra*, but on the other side of the River; in old times, a most noted Empery for *Indian* and *Arabians* wares: from whence not only the *Christians* of this Country, are thought to have the name of *Cophites*; but the whole Country to be originally called *Egyptus*, from *Ai-Coptus*, or the Land of *Coptus*.

7. *Thebe* the residence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Busris*, in compass 140 furlongs, or 17 miles and an half; called also *Hecatompyla*, from the number of an hundred Gates which were said to be in it. So beautified with Colosses, Temples, Palaces, the Sepulchers of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State, that it was thought *πανδαλιανή* *ἡ πόλις* *αὐτῶν* *ἡμετέρας*, to be the *Nonesuch* of the world, Decayed on the removing of the Court of *Memphis*, it became a ruine so long since, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Juvenal*; as he telleth us, saying,

Aique vetus Thebe centum jacet obusta portis.

*Old Thebe, yielding to the Fates,
Lies buried with his hundred Gates.*

8. *Abydos*, now called *Aburick*, once the Seat-Royal of *Memnon*, from thence called *Memnonium*, renowned for the Temple of *Osiris*; more for the *Statute* of *Memnon*, which though made of stone, did at the rising of the Sun yield a vocal sound. 9. *Ephantis*, on the banks of Nile, neighbouring by *Crophi* and *Mophis*, two sharp Rocks, betwixt which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the *Lesser Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we shall speak more fully in *Ethiopia*. The City seated in an Island of the River Nile, on the borders of *Ethiopia sub Egypto*, (as the Ancients called it) known unto *Ptolomy* by the name *Elephantina*, but to our Ecclesiastical writers by the name of *Tabenna*. Memorable in times of Heathenism for the Town and Temple of *Onnechis*, wherein stood the *Nilometerium* or standing pillas, by which they did observe the increase of the River; removed since to the *Cattle of Michius*, two miles from *Caire*: in times of *Christianity*, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tabenisfota*. 10. *Syne*, (now *Asina*) a little North of *Ephantis*, situate directly under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by some *Astronomers*; which when the Sun entered into that Sign, was wholly enlightened with his beames, without any shadow: so perpendicularly did the body of it stand over the pit. This the last City of *Egypt*, towards *Ethiopia*.

And now I should proceed, according to my Method in other places, to the Story of *Egypt*: but being that *Lybia*, and *Cyrene*, are now accounted Members of it; the fortunes whereof they have also followed in all or most of the mutations of State and Government; I shall first take a view of them as the limbs of this body, and shew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed,

2. MARMARICA.

2. *LYBIA* or *MARMARICA*, lieth on the East, *Egypt*, properly so called; on the West *Cyrene*; on the North, that part of the *Mediterranean Sea*, which was hence called *Mare Lybicum*, and sometimes *Parthenium*; and on the South, some part of *Ethiopia Superior*.

It had the name of *Lybia*, from the old *Greek* word *λύβη*, signifying *Black*, agreeable to the complexion of the people, which is black and swarthy; *λύβη*, *antiqua lingua Græca niger*, saith a learned Writer: or possible enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word signifying *Thirst*, as suitable unto the nature of the soile, which is dry and *Sandy*, in which respect called by the *Greeks*, *Xero-Lybia*, or *Lybia sicca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from these Coasts towards *Greece* and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybi*, and the Promontory in *Sicilie* opposite unto it, that of *Lilybaum*. It was also called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmaride*, a chief People of it, though placed by *Ptolomy* in *Cyrene*; and sometimes *Barca*, from *Burca* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Marmarica*, by both names united.

The

The Country for the most part very dry and barren, and but meanly peopled; inso much as *Alexander* passing thorow part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the space of four dayes saw neither Man, Beast, Bird, Tree, nor River. Covered over in most places with a thick light sand, which the winds remove up and down continually, turning Vallies into Hills, and Hills into Vallies. Found by *Cami* lyse to his cost, who as basely esteeming of the Gods as he did of his Subjects, sent part of his Army into this Country to destroy the Temple above mentioned: but in the passage towards that prohibited place, fifty thousand, of them were overwhelmed and smothered in a storm of sand; the rest with much ado escaping. Called therefore *Xero-Lybia*, or *Lybia sicca*, as before was noted; and *Lybia sitiens*, thirsty *Lybia*, (— *per calidas Lybiæ sitientis arenas*) in that verse of *Lucan*.

The people, Neighbours unto *Egypt*, and consequently much of the same condition. Said by *Herodotus*, (by whom they were called *Adrynachide*) to be governed by the like Laws and Customs, as the *Egyptians* were; but to differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark and black, of constitution lean and dry, and inclining to *Melancholy*; angry on every little occasion, very litigious, and eager prosecutors of their dues. By an old observation amongst themselves, they obtained both from Beef and Hog-meat. So obstinate in denying their accustomed *Tributes*, that he who could not shew the marks of his sufferings for it, either *Black* or *Blind*, was accounted no body: And so resolved to conceal any thing disgraceful to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a Robbery, no torment could compel him to tell his name. At this time, little differing in person, temper, or condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Mours*, and *Arabers*, intermixt amongst them.

Converted to the Faith of *Christ*, with, or not long after the rest of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the *Patriarchate* of *Alexandria*; whose jurisdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*: to the calling of which famous Council, this Country occasionally concurred, by bringing into the World that wretched *Arian*; who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils* had disturbed the Church. His *Heresie* condemned in that famous Council; but his person, by the Divine justice of God, received to a more remarkable punishment. Being sent for by the Emperour *Constantine* to make a *Recantation* of his former *Heresie*, he first writ out a Copy of his own opinions, which he had in his Bosome; and then writing out the *Recantation* expected from him, took Oath that he did really mean as he had written: which words the Emperour referred to the *Recantation*, he to the Paper in his bosome. But God would not be so cozened, though the Emperour was. For as he passed in triumph through the streets of *Constantinople*, he drew aside into a private house of ease, where he voided his guts into the draught, and sent his Soul as an *Harbinger* to the Devil, to make room for his Body.

Not more infamous for the birth of this *Miscreant*, who denied the Divinity of *Christ*; than famous for the birth of one of the *Sibyls*, hence surnamed *Lybica*, by whom the same had been fore-shewn. Which *Sibyls* seem to have taken denomination from *Διοῦ Σύβης*, i.e. *Jovis consiliorum conscia*. They were in number ten, viz. 1. *Persica*, 2. *Lybica*, 3. *Delphica*, 4. *Cumaen*, 5. *Samla*, 6. *Hellepontica*, 7. *Tiburina*, 8. *Albunea*, 9. *Erythraea*, and 10. *Cumina*; which last is affirmed to have written the nine Books of *Sibyls*. They were all presented by an old Woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay so great a sum of Money as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the old woman burnt three of them, requiring as much money for the other six, as for all: which being denied, she also burnt an other three, asking as much for the three remaining, as for the rest; which *Superbus* amazed, gave, and the old Tror vanished. These books contained manifest tokens of the Kingdom of *Christ*, his Name, his Birth, and Death. They were burned by the Arch-traitor *Stilico*. So that those Prophecies of theirs, which are now extant, are for the most part only such as had been extracted out of other writings, where their Authority had been quoted. Concerning which, though *Caesaron* and some other of our great *Philologers*, conceive them to be *piæ fraudes*; composed of purpose by the Fathers of the *Primitive* times, to win credit to the Faith of *CHRIST*: yet dare I not so far disparage those most Godly men, as to believe they would support so strong an edifice with so weak a prop; or borrow help from falshood, to evict a truth. Or if they durst have been so impudently venturous, how ealie had it been for their learned Adversaries, *Prophyrus*, *Julian*, and the rest of more eminent note, to have detected the *Imposture*, and silenced the *Christian Advocates* with reproach and scorn? But of this enough here, more at large elsewhere.

Rivers of note I find not any. 'Tis well, if in a Conuntry so full of *Sands*, there be any at all: some *Lakes* I meet with in my Authors, the principal of which, 1. *Lacus*, 2. *Lacus Lacomedis*, now *Linsamos*, 3. *Clearius*; sufficient to preserve their few Cattel from the taint of thirst. The Mountains of note note, those called *Anogambri*, 2. and that named *Azar*; this last extended West and East in a straight line, from the 51 degree of Longitude, to the 53. 3. *Alphus*, 4. *Odomus*, 5. *Tmodus*, 6. *Alpis*, not much observable, but that they serve for *Land-marks* to discover the Country.

Towns of note there are none now in it. Of most esteem in former times, 1. *Batrachus*, by some called *Menelaus*, an Haven-Town, 2. *Phbia*, and 3. *Anesiphra*, two Port-Towns also. 4. *Tetrargia*, so called from its four Towers, the *Antipyrgus* of *Ptolomy*. 5. *Mesuchis*, more within the Land, 6. *Mazacila*, another midland Town. 7. *Charcola*, mentioned amongst the chief Cities of this tract, by *Anania-nus*. 8. *Paratonium*, now *Porto-rassa*, which with *Pelusium* are by *Florns* called the two Hornes of *Egypt*; which whosoever held fast, would be sure to master it. By some old writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus* and *Strabo*; from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, seated very near it. So anciently honoured with an Oracle, (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is said to have come hither to enquire of her death; *Persus*, and *Hercules*, touching their adventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great: but the Oracle by that time had learnt to flatter; and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the Son of that God whom he came to worship. The Temple

Temple seated in the middle of a vast sandy Desert, environed with a pleasant and delightful Grove, about six miles, or more in circuit; watered with wholesome Springs, refreshed with a temperate air, and shaded with fruit-bearing Trees, which carried in their leaves a perpetual Spring. Portended with a triple wall, within the first whereof was a Royal Palace of the Kings, within the second a Seraglio for his women, in the third Lodgings for the Officers of Court; The Oracle truly placed (so the Priests would have men) in the third Lodgings for the Officers of Court; Before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the Oblations were first washed, then offered. A place of great repute in sacred and civil estimate; all the adjoining Country taking hence the name of *Ammoniac*, and by that name reckoned amongst the Provinces of the Patriarchate of Alexandria. 9 *Antiphras*, on the East border of it towards Alexandria. 10 *Barce*, called after wards *Ptolemais*, by the name of one of the *Ptolemies*, by whom repaired and beautified. Of such account, that from hence the whole Country had the name of *Barce*, and the Inhabitants of *Barce*, (*Latēgū* *parentes Barcei*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Libyarchas* and *Bassachites*, in the North; the *Ogomi*, *Bukry*, and *Adymachida*, in the South; the *Goniatas*, and *Prosalitas*, in the midland parts; the *Libyegyptii*, bordering nearest unto Egypt; with the people whereof so intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one name and nation. Others there were of less, or as little note, but all descended properly of *Naphthum*, the son of *Misraim*; from whom the name of *Neptunus*, originally a *Libyan* Deity, seems to be derived: yet so that *Lobabin*, his brother, must come in for a share; as it is conceived, of the *Libyegyptii* before mentioned. Being then of the same original with those of Egypt, they followed the same fortunes also, till the times of the *Ptolemies*; by whom sometimes given for portion, with the title of a Kingdom, to their younger Children. By the last will and Testament of *Apion*, the last King hereof, a Bastard-son of *Ptolemy* surnamed *Euergetes*, the seventh King of that house; bequeathed unto the Senate and people of *Rome*: By whom first suffered to live under them, as a *Free-Estate*, till the conquest of Egypt; then reckoned as a part of that, and so accordingly described by *Ptolemy*; where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammonica*, occurs amongst the *Nomi*, or Divisions of it. Afterwards made a distinct Province of that *Dioecese*, and governed by a Lord President, under the *Præfectus Augustalis*, or Supreme Commander for the Emperours.

3. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the East, with *Marmarica*; on the West, with *Africa Propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and some part of the *Mediterranean*, and the Greater *Syrtis*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya Inferior*, or the Deserts of *Libya*.

It took this name from *Cyrene* the chief City of it, from whence sometimes also called *Cyrenaica*; by *Pliny* and some other Roman Writers it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, viz. 1 *Cyrene*, 2 *Ptolemais*, 3 *Arfinoe*, 4 *Darnis*, 5 *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the same reason *Libya Pentapolis*, the name of *Libya* extending over many of these Roman Provinces. And finally, at the present, it passeth with that last described by the name of *Barce*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the Greater *Syrtis*, unto Egypt, is no less than 1300 miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Country in the South parts desolate and barren, stored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the people living up and down in scattered houses, and at such a distance, as if it were in so many Islands. Destitute not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping; if any fell, it was dried up presently by the Sands. But within fifteen miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful, and well inhabited.

The people in old times were said to have been utterly ignorant of buying and selling, of fraud and stealing, not knowing, or not caring for the use of money; content with little, not superfluous in their Cloaths, or buildings; their houses for the most part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Osier-twigs. Much altered in the first part of their Character, since the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thievish Nation, given wholly to Robbery and spoil. So lazie, that they will not manure, or till their Land, but provide themselves with Corn from *Sicily*; laying their Children to pawn for it, till by their Thieving they can raise a sufficient sum to discharge the debt.

One only River I find in it, but of fame enough to serve for many; By *Ptolemy* called *Lathon*, by *Pliny* *Lethes*, by the Poets *Lethe*. Swallowed by the earth not far from its first original, it riseth up again about *Berenice*; fained therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create forgetfulness in all them that drink of it; it being the condition of the dead to remember nothing. Thence the occasion of the fancy. Some Lakes I find also in it, whereof one occasioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the land (where indeed more necessary) near *Pallurus*. With Mountains better stored, (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, 1 Those called *Herculis Arena*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Country East and West; 2 *Bucolicus*, on the South of those; and 3 *Volpos*, a long ridge of hills, bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of most note in it, 1 *Apollonia*, in the East parts, near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*. 2 *Cyrene*, in the West of that; once of such power, that it contended with *Carthage* for some preeminencies: Then the chief Lady of this tract; which it gave this name to. The birth-place of *Erastosthenes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon of Cyrene*, whom the Jews compelled to carry our Saviours Cross. 3 *Ptolemais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arfinoe*, built, or repaired by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*; the Episcopal City of *Synesius*, a learned and religious

religious Bishop of the Primitive times, as appears by his Epistles extant. 4 *Arfinoe*, on the East-side of the River *Lathon*; so called in honour of *Arfinoe*, the sister of *Philadelphus*, and wife of *Magus* once King of this Country. 5 *Berenice*, on the Western bank of the said River; so called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the same name) the daughter of *Magus*: the furthest Town of all this Country, bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the greater *Syrtis*. This last a Quick-sand very dangerous to Mariners, in compass 635 miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6 *Paliurus*, more within the land, but on the borders of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7 *Apinungis*, now *Langi-fari*, by *Ptolemy* called *Apuchi Fanum*. 8 *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules*, near the greater *Syrtis*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing the Orchards of the *Hesperides* of their golden Apples. Those *Hesperides* said to be *Argle*, *Arethusa*, and *Hesperethusa*, the three daughters of *Atlas*: their Orchard placed by *Ptolemy* betwixt this Tower and *Paliurus*; by *Pomponius*, in the Atlantick Islands; by *Virgil*, in *Mauritania Tingitania*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and possibly in all alike. 9 *Zemithus*. 10 *Acabis* in the mid-lands; all worn out of memory. 11 *Fessan*, of greatest name now, though scarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Abeka* on the East, the *Barce* near the Greater *Syrtis*, the *Macainta* and *Laganici*, near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably descended from *Naphthum* the son of *Misraim*, of whom there still remain some foot-steps in *Apuchi Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Apuchus*. This *Apuchus* by some mistakingly called *Autuchus*, and by the *Greeks* said to be the son of *Cyrene*, and the brother of *Arifsaus*: who being sent out to seek their fortunes, *Arifsaus* fell into the Isle named *Caos*; and *Apuchus*, or *Autuchus* into *Libya*, both by them first planted. *Neptune*, the Deity of this Country, by the Egyptians called *Neptimus*, seems to come from *Naphthum*; most highly worshipped by this people, because he first taught them the Art of training horses to the Coach, or Chariot; in which the *Cyreneans* after grew to expert, that they could drive their Chariots in a round, or circle, and always keep their Chariot-wheels in the self-same track. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan* landing in this Country, had built the City of *Cyrene*; and found it in so good a course of life and Discipline, that in short time it came to have dominion over the most part of this Country, and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warred on by *Apyres* King of Egypt, they sued unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their assistance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themselves, they craved aid of *Ptolemy* the first of that race; by whom they were finally subdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a Son of his last wife by a former husband, whom he had married to *Arfinoe* one of his daughters; it came again to the Crown of Egypt, by the marriage of *Berenice* the daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the Son of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*. Alienated from which Crown again, for the preferment of some of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of the *Ptolemies*, the last King hereof, to the people of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Augustus Caesar*, by whom united in one Government with the Isle of *Crete*; but made a Province of it self by the following Emperours: never since separated from the fortune and affairs of Egypt, to which now we hasten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of Egypt was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the question in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythian*, being not easily decided. Whether it were so ancient, as the Egyptians say, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, that they had the memory and story of 13000 years; and a succession of 330 Kings in the time of *Amasis* the second, who was Contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if understood of Solar years, measured by the course of the Sun, must not be allowed of; because it maketh them many thousand years older than the Creation; but if of Lunar, which is most agreeable unto the account of the Egyptians, who reckoned their years by months: it will amount unto no more than 1000, or 1100 years, and so fall answerably to the times following after the Flood. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and those of 24 or 25 several Dynasties; the matter is not so soon made up. For either those Kings, must not be all Kings or Supreme Lords of Egypt, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their several Regents, or Viceroyents, armed with Regal power; those Dynasties not the successions of so many Regal Families, but of their Substitutes and Lieutenants, many of which might live successively under one Supreme; or else we must needs look on Egypt as distracted in those times, into several Kingdoms, amongst the Princes of those Dynasties before remembred; or finally, we must look for some of those Kings and Princes before the Flood. By either of these wayes, the business may be well agreed. For if that most of them were but the names of several Regents, (as probable enough it is) there might be many such in the reign of one King; according to the Kings fancy, the merit of particular persons, or the necessities of State: Changes of great Officers, especially if grown too great, are not new nor strange. If they were all Kings, or Supreme Rulers, (as is also probable) we find not any thing of moment to persuade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their several parts (as in other Countreys in those times) till the greater had devoured the less. Or if they were the names of such Sovereign Princes, as had the sole command of Egypt before the Flood, (as some think they were) they might amount in all to so great a number, and so many Dynasties; the iniquity of those times, the ambition of great persons, and consequently the short lives of the Kings being duly pondered. That Egypt and most part of the World was peopled before the Flood, hath been already proved in our General Preface: If peopled, then no question under some form of Government: the names of which Governments (call them Kings, or Rulers, or what else we please) might be preserved in Egypt on pillars of brass or stone; or otherwise transmitted by tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Misraim*, by whom this Country was first planted after the Confusion of Babel. But that old stock of Kings and people being destroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Misraim* succeeded next in their desolate dwellings: yet so, that

K k k k

the

- himself to be Crowned King of Syria, but again relinquished it, 35.
- 3829 7 Ptol. Euergetes II. for his deformity called *Physcon* the brother of Ptol. Philometor; a wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest part of his reign in a causeless war against Cleopatra, his Wife and Sister, 29.
- 3858 8 Ptol. Latharus reigned 16 years with Cleopatra his Mother, by whom dispossessed of his Estate for the space of ten years; after her death was sole Lord of Egypt. His brother Alexander being taken by the Queen-mother as her Associate, in the time of his deprivation, and passing in the account of the Kings of Egypt.
- 3892 9 Ptol. Auletes, the Son of Latharus, surnamed also *Dionysius*, whose brother being seized by him in the Isle of Cyprus, was most unjustly stripped of it by the power of the Romans; and he himself ousted of Egypt by his own subjects, but restored by the aid and love of Pompey.

These Ptolemaean Princes of Egypt, were for the most part in wars with the Kings of Syria, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquished; neither Prince having cause to boast of his bargain. After the death of Cleopatra, whose life and love with Marcus Antonius I will not now relate, this Country fell to the share of the Roman Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour hereof was but a Gentleman of Rome; no Senator being permitted to come into it; it being a maxim of State, not to suffer men of great houses to come into that Country, whose revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was Egypt. For besides the natural situation of the place, very defensible; and besides the abundance of Money, with which it was vested; this Country alone furnished the City of Rome with Corn, for four Months yearly. Whence Vespasian being chosen Emperor by the Syrian Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his concurrent Vitellius, bateden hither: to this end only, that detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by famine compel the City of Rome to stand at his devotion: *Ut urbem quoque externe opis indigam fame urgeret*, as the Historian hath observed. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperours sole Peculiar: afterwards made (as well it might) an entire Diocese of it self, subordinate to the *Præfæctus Prætoris Orientis*. In the division of the Empire allotted to the Constantinopolitans, whose Government being thought to be insupportable by this wanton people, they called in the Saracens: by whom the Greek Garrisons were cast out, and the Country made subject to Hammar the third of the Caliphs. Afterwards, weary of them also, they would have a Caliph of their own, revolting totally from the Caliph of Bagdat. So that from this time forwards we shall meet with two Caliphs at a time; the one residing at Cairo in Egypt, to whom the Saracens, or Moors of Spain and Africk did submit themselves: the other at Bagdat, who Lorded it over all the rest, at least as to the Supream title, and some chief Prerogatives; though the main power was cantoned and disposed of among their Sultans.

The Third DYNASTY, or the CALIPHS of EGYPT.

A.C.	A.H.		A.C.	A.H.	
870	247	1 Achmades, or Achmat, 10.	1035	412	11 Mustertzer Billahi, 60.
880	257	2 Tolun, 3.	1096	472	12 Musteale, 5.
883	260	3 Hammaria, 29.	1100	477	13 Elamir Bahacan Illahi, 35.
903	280	4 Abarun, slain by Mustaphi, the Caliph of Babylon.	1135	512	14 Elhapit Ladin Illahi.
					15 Etzahar.
940	317	5 Achid Muhamid, the Son of Tangi, 3.			16 Elphaiz.
943	320	6 Abiguid, the son of Achid, 27.			17 Etzar Ledin Illahi, the son of Elphaiz, the last Caliph, or King of Egypt, of the race of Phatime: the Turks succeeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning which we are to know,
970	347	7 Meaz Ledin, Illahi, of the race of Phatime and Hall, 5.			
975	352	8 Aziz, the Son of Meaz, 21.			
996	373	9 Elbachain, 23.			
1019	396	10 Etaber Leazidun Illahi, 16.			

know, that Elphaiz the Father of Etzar, being overpowered by Americus King of Hierusalem, craved aid of Norradine the Turkish Sultan of Damascus; which he received under the conduct of Sarracon, or Shirachoch, a right valiant and stout Commander: who taking his advantages, not only cleared the Country of Americus, but got the whole Kingdom to himself; dashing out the brains of Elphaiz with his Horseman's Mace. And though Etzar his Son assumed for a while the title of Caliph; yet the destruction of himself, and the whole Phatimean Family, rooted out by Sarracon, soon put an end to that claim; and left the Kingdom in the peaceable possession of the Turkish Sultans.

The Fourth DYNASTY, or the Race of the TURKISH KINGS or CALIPHS of EGYPT.

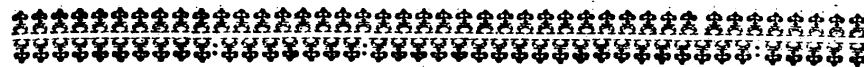
- 1163 1 Afereddin, surnamed Shirachoch, called Sarracon, by the Christian Writers; the first of the Turks which reigned in Egypt: of the Noble Family of Ainh.
- 1186 2 Zeli-beddin, called Saladine by the Christian Writers, the Son (or as some say, the nephew) of Sarracon or Shirachoch; confirmed in his Estate by the Caliph of Bagdet, under whose jurisdiction he reduced the Egyptian Schismatics. He obtained also the Kingdom of Damascus, conquered Mesopotamia, and Palestine; and in the year 1190. regained the City of Hierusalem. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to succeeding Ages, nor to glorify him in the Kingdom of Heaven, but the saving knowledge of CHRIST JESUS.
- 1199 3 Elaziz, the second Son of Saladine, succeeded in the Realm of Egypt; which he exchanged afterwards with his brother Eladel for the Kingdom of Damascus.
- 4 Eladel, or El-Aphtzel, by the Christian Writers called Meledine, succeeded upon this exchange, in the Kingdom of Egypt: and overcame the Christians, without the loss of a man, at the siege of Caïre, by letting loose the Sluces of Nilus; which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleasure.
- 1210 5 Elchamul.
- 1237 6 Melech Essalach, by the Christian Writers called Melechfala, the son of Elchamul, who overcame Lewis the 9th of France: and going with that King towards Damietta, was slain by the Souldiers of his guard, called Mamalucks.
- 1242 7 Elmutan, the Son of Melech Essalach, succeeded, for a time, in his Fathers throne. But the Mamalucks being resolved to obtain the Kingdom for themselves, enforced him to flee to a Tower of Wood, which they set on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran close by it) was there drowned: and the Mamalucks settled in the Kingdom, An. 1245.

These Mamalucks were the Offspring of a People on the banks of the Euxine Sea, vulgarly called the Circassians: whom Melechfala either bought of their Parents, or (at the second hand) of the Tartars, then newly Masters of those Countreys, to supply the want of valour in the idle and effeminate people of Egypt; and out of them selected a choice Band of men, for the Guard of his person. Knowing their strength, and finding their opportunity, they treacherously slew Melechfala their Lord and Maker; appointing one Azeddin Ulek, a Turcoman by Nation, and therefore by most Christian Writers called Targumensis, (one of their own number) a man of great spirit and valour, to succeed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supreme Authority into the hands of the Egyptians; and not permitting their own sons to enjoy the name and privilege of Mamalucks; they bought yearly certain numbers of Circassian slaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the Egyptians, by them to be instructed in the Egyptian language, and the Law of Mahomet. Being thus fitted for employment, they were taught the Discipline of War, and by degrees advanced unto the highest Offices of Power and trust; as now the Janizaries are in the Turkish Empire: in choice and ordering of whom, as the Ottoman Turks were preceded by those of Egypt, so it is possible enough that the Janizaries may make as great a Change in the Turkish Empire, as the Mamalucks did in the Egyptian. So unsafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the sole guard of his person, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of such, whom nor the sense of natural duty, but the hopes of profit or preferment, may make useful to him. For thus we finde, that Constantine a King of the Britains, was murdered by his Guard of Pilts: most of the Roman Emperours, by the hands of those whom they intrusted, either with the guard of their persons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Estates of Italy, have been brought into the extreamest dangers, by trusting too much to the honesty of mercenary Souldiers and Commanders. Take we for instance the proceedings of Giusepe Piccino, who with his Followers first took Pay of Ferdinand the first of Naples; left him, to fight for his vowed Enemy, John Duke of Calabria, the Son of Rene Duke of Anjou; whom he also forsook in his greatest need. The like we finde of Francisco Sforza, first entertained by the Duke of Milan, from whom he revolted to the Florentines, from them to the Venetians; and being again received into the Pay of the State of Milan, made use of their own Army to subdue that City.

is said to have doubled: But whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the rest in Corn, I determine not. Certain it is, that there was yearly shipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperour, Two hundred thousand Measures of Wheat, every Measure weighing Twenty hundred pound weight; which cometh to Seven Millions and an hundred forty thousand of our *English* Bushels; sold by him, or distributed gratis amongst the Poor, as he saw occasion. So that there might be very well some abatement in Money, considering that the Corn amounted to so great a sum. Nor were they much less, if ought at all, when the *Mamucks* ruled in this Countrey. For *Campson Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no less than Ten Millions of *Ducats*, at one clap, amongst his Souldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical Government, and partly through the discontinuance of the usual Traffick through the *Red Sea*, receive no more than Three Millions of Crowns; one of which is hoarded in his own Coffers; the second is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Bashaw*, for support of his charge; the third is distributed among his Garrison-souldiers, and such of them as by Land guard his own Million to *Constantinople*; for by Sea he dareth not venture it, for fear of the *Florentine*, who with a few Ships Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

And so much for EGYPT.

OF



OF BARBARY.

BARBARY is bounded on the East; with *Cyrenica*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantick* also; on the South, with Mount *Atlas*, by which separated from *Lybia Inferior*, or the Desarts of *Lybia*.

It containeth in it the whole *Dioecse* of *Africk*, and part of the *Dioecse* of *Spain*: subject in former times to the Commonwealth of *Carthage*, and the great Kings of *Mauritania*, an *Numidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninsula*; and afterwards extended it over all the rest of the Country, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the subjugation of it by the *Saracens*, by whom called *BARBARY*: either from *Barbar*, signifying in their language an uncertain murmur, such as the speech of the *Africans* seemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, signifying a *Desart*, which doubled, made up first *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It is situate under the third and fourth *Climates*: so that the longest Summers day in the parts most South, amounteth to thirteen hours three quarters, increased in the most Northern parts to fourteen hours and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantick* Ocean to the greater *Syrtis*, for the space of 1500 miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narrowest, 100 miles; but towards the *Straits*, where broadest, almost three hundred.

The Countrey in such parts as lie nearest to the *Mediterranean*, is full of hills, covered with woods, and stored with plenty of Wild-beasts; provided reasonably well of most sorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, inasmuch that most of the Inhabitants live of *Barley*-bread. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a *Champaign* Countrey, watered with many pleasant Rivers issuing from that Mountain, and liberally furnished with *Cherries*, *Figs*, *Pears*, *Plums*, *Apples* of all kinds; abundance of *Oyl*, *Honey*, *Sugar*; some Mines of *Gold*, and that for purity and fineness no where to be bettered. Here are also besides large Herds of *Cattel*, some *Elephants*, *Lions*, *Dragons*, *Leopards*, and others of the like savage nature, and of *Apes* great multitudes; *Horses* good store, of excellent both strength and beauty. But taking it in the best parts, it falleth extremely short of that infinite fertility; which is ascribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For besides the miracle of five hundred Ears of *Corn* growing on one stalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, that not far from the City of *Tacape*, in the way to *Leptis*, a man might see a great *Date*-tree overshadowing an *Olive*, under the *Olive* a *Fig*-tree, under that a *Pomgranat*, under that a *Vine*, and under all, *Pease*, *Wheat*, and *Herbs*; all growing and flourishing at one time. It is affirmed also by the same Author, that the *Vine* beareth twice a year, that some fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that a piece of ground of four cubits square, was usually rented out at so many *Dinarii*: by which accompt, (as the learned *Budaus* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground must be worth yearly, 12800 of the *Roman Sestertii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparalleled increase of the Fruits of the Earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The people are of a dusky colour, but inclining to blackness; much of the same nature with the *Arabians*, by whose numerous families formerly they were overspread; but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of body, well skilled in *Horsmanship*, but impatient of labour; covetous of honour, inconstant, crafty, and unfaithfull: studious in matters of their Law, and in some of the *Liberal Sciences*, especially *Philosophy* and the *Mathematicks*, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countreys they are admitted to be Readers: They are also said to be stately of gate, exceeding distrustfull, in their hate implacable, and jealous of their women beyond all compare. The women of a comely body, and well featured, beautiful in blackness, of delicate soft skins; and in their habit and apparel beyond measure sumptuous: so drest, to make themselves more amiable in the eyes of their husbands; for otherwise not permitted to stir abroad, and seldom to see any body but those of their own houses.

The Language spoken at the present in most of the *Maritime* Towns, except those of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabic* tongue. In those two Kingdoms, and most part of the Countrey-Villages, the *Punick* or old *African*, the ancient languages of the Countrey: the *Punick* spoken in all places where anciently the *Carthaginians* were of any power; the *African* (whatsoever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not subject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder; which though it was the Language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it spread so far as to extinguish or suppress the old natural tongues: and in the Colonies themselves so much degenerated in short time, so barbarously and imperfectly spoken; that a Sister of the Emperour *Severus*, who lived in *Leptis*, a *Roman* Colony, coming to *Rome* to see her Brother, spoke it so incongruously, that the Emperour was ashamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of *S. Augustine*, an *African* Bishop, were preached in *Latine*, because preached in *Hippo* his Episcopall See, which was then a Colony of the *Romans*; yet he confesseth that he was sometimes faine to use such words as were not *Latine*, to be the better understood of his Congregation.

The

The Christian Faith was first planted, in that part hereof, which was called *Africa Propria*, by *Epaenetus*, one of the 70 Disciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopsis*, affirmed to be the first Bishop of *Carthage*: In *Mauritania*, by *S. Simon* the Apostle, surnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphrastes* addeth, that *S. Simon Peter* preached here also, when by the Decree of *Claudius Caesar* he was forced from *Rome*; and at his going hence, left *Crescens* his Disciple to promote the work. But by whomsoever planted first, it found good increase, and was so propagated in short time over all this Country, that in the year 250. or before, there were in it above 90 Bishops; for so many were assembled in the Synod of *Labesum*: and in the year 398. when the faction of the *Donatists* was of greatest power, we finde no fewer than 214 Catholic Bishops, met together in the Council of *Carthage*. Which as it is an argument of the great increase of *Christianity* in those parts of *Africa*; so it shews also that the Church was in ill condition; so overpowered by the violence of that mighty faction, who had at least 270 Bishops of their own opinion; that the *Orthodox* party was necessitated to increase the number of Bishops, for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary side, if ever the difference should come to be examined in a public meeting. These Bishops ranked into six Classes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Bishops of each Province subject to their own *Metropolitan*, who in this *Dioecese* (contrary to the usage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them subordinate to the *Primate of Carthage*, originally invested with *Patriarchal* jurisdiction over all these parts. *Latius fusa est nostra Provincia: Habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritania duas sibi coherentes*, are *S. Cyprian's* words. Which shew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better Geographer, than an Historian or Divine. He would not else have told us in such positive terms, that those of *Barbary* remained in their old *Idolatri*, till 250 years before *Mahomet's* birth; at what time they received the Gospel, and not before. But the good man mistook the reviving of the *Orthodox* faith, in the time of *Justinian*, after it had been long suppressed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* faction (who at one time banished hence 300 Catholic Bishops) for the first planting of the Gospel. Otherwise not to be excused. But after this *Reviver*, it held not long, when suppressed by the *Saracens*, and so suppressed, that except it be in some few Towns possessed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of *Christianity* to be discerned in all this Country; *Mahometism* being elsewhere universally embraced amongst them.

Amongst the men of most note for Souldiery, which have been born in this Country, we may reckon *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three sons: 2 *Annibal*, 3 *Asdrubal*, and 4 *Mago*; men hardly to be paralleld in any Ages: 5 *Masfinissar*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Contemporaries: and in the following times, 6 *Septimius Severus*, the *Roman* Emperour. Amongst those addited to the *Muses*, those of most note, 1 *Terence*, 2 *Apuleius*. But for *Divines*, no Region in the world afforded men of more eminent note, nor better deserving of the Church. 1 *Tertullian*, 2 *Cyprian*, 3 *Julius Africanus*, 4 *Arnobius*, 5 *Lactantius*, 6 *Victorinus Afer*, 7 *Optatus Meleвитanus*, 8 *Vidor Uticensis*, 9 *Fulgentius* 10 *Primasius*. And above all, the most learned and divine *S. Augustine*; a man of such admirable abilities, and indefatigable industry, so constant a Defender of all *Orthodox* doctrines against the *Heresies* of those times, that he deservedly got the name of *Mullens Hereticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Country besides *Mount Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it self) 1 *Phorce*, 2 *Heptadelpus*, and 3 *Atlas minor* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; 4 *Cinnaba*, 5 *Garae*, 6 *Madethubadus*, and 7 those called *Gariphi*, in *Cesariensis*; 8 *Thambes*, 9 *Mampfarus*, 10 *Usaleus*, and 11 *Zuchabarnus*, in *Africa Propria*. Of which, and others, we may speak more, if occasion be, in our description of the Provinces in which they are. And for the Rivers of most note, though none of any long course in so narrow a Country; we have in *Tingitana*, 1 *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantic*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2 another of the same name, and the same exit also, but far more to the North, towards the *Streit of Gibraltar*; 3 *Molochuth*, mollified by *Saluts* the Historian into *Mulucha*, and by him placed betwixt the *Numidians* and the *Moors*; 4 *Malva*, the boundary at this day, betwixt the Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Algiers*; 5 *Phihuth*, of more fame than any, of which more anon: in *Cesariensis*, 6 *Nasabath*, 7 *Sifaris*, and *Sorbetos*: in *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunes*, 8 *Rubicatus*, which issuing out of *Mount Thambes*, falleth into the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*; 9 *Triton*, which issuing out of the hill called *Usaleus*, and making the great Fenn called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its course also in the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10 *Bagradas*, the greatest in all this tract, which rising out of *Mount Atlas*, first runneth towards the East, and then receiving from the hill called *Mampfarus* the addition of another Stream, passeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his course.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and Land-marks, I should now proceed to the description of the several Provinces hereof, as in other places. But because each part almost hath had for these later times its particular History, and that it is divided at the present into several Governments, and under the command of several Princes: I will here lay down so much of the Story of it as concerns the whole, before such division; and afterwards pursue the History and Geography of the several parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Country was first peopled by *Phut* the third Son of *Cham*: who leaving his brother *Misraim* well settled in the Land of *Egypt*, passed towards the West; and leaving *Lehabim* his nephew betwixt him and *Misraim*, possessed himself of all the rest from the greater *Syris* to the Ocean. Remainders of whose name we finde in the River *Phut*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Phihuth*, with but little difference, save that it favoureth more of the *African* roughness) near which *Jesephus* findeth a Region called the Country of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phuteans*: seconded herein by *S. Hierom*, who speaking of this *Regio Phutenfis* in *Mauritania*, (where the River *Phut* is placed by *Ptolomy*) voucheth in general terms the testimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latine*. So that of this there is no question to be made. Such Nations as descended of this Plantation, shall be hereafter spoke of in their several Provinces. Governed at first by the Chiefs of their several families; but in the end, reduced

duced under the command of the Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two first, Natives of this Country, of the race of *Phut*; the last descended also of the seed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the conquest of their Country by the Children of *Israel*, forced to seek new dwellings, and having store of Ships to transplant themselves and their Families; settled in the maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa* properly so called. For, that the people of those parts, though lost into other names and families, were anciently of a *Canaanitish*, or *Phenician* race, may be made apparent, 1 By the nearness of their Language, the *Punic*, or *Phenician*, and old *Hebrew* tongue, differing only in the dialect and pronunciation. 2 By the name *Tani*, or *Phani*, little differing from that of the *Phenices*. 3 By this testimony of *S. Augustine*, who telleth us in the Comment on *St. Paul's* Epistle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finished by him; *Interrogati Rustici nostri quid sint, respondent Punici Chanani*; that is to say, that when any of the Inhabitants of this Country (he himself was one) were asked what they were, they answered, *Chanaanites*. 4 By we finde in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyses* having totally conquered *Egypt*, intended a war against the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it seemeth) of some power: but the *Phenicians*, being the only Sea-faring men *Cambyses* then had, absolutely denied to be employed in that service; they being sprung from the same Tree, that the *Carthaginians* were. 5 By we read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagrius Scholasticus*) how on two marble-pillars, situate nigh unto *Tingis*, or *Tanger*, there was in the *Phenician* language and Character engraved, *Nos fugimus a facie Josuah predonis, filii Nave*; that is to say, We flee from the face of that Robber, *Josuah the son of Nun*. The settling of this people there, a great incitement questionless unto *Dido*, to come thither also: who feared as much danger from her brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whose hands had been embred in the blood of her husband; as the others did from the sword of *Josuah*. Gathering together all her Treasures, which were very great, accompanied with her brother *Barca*, and her sister *Anna*, she set sayl for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after stood the City of *Carthage*, she obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigness, than she could compass round with an Oxes hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byrsa*, which at first it had. First founded in, or about the year of the world 3070. which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomon's* Temple; 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the destruction of *Troy*. By which account (I note this only by the way) it is impossible that *Dido*, or *Elisa* (for by both these names we finde her called) should ever see the face of *Aeneas*, unless it were in picture, or imagination; and therefore as impossible she should either fall in love with him, or be got with Child by him, or finally kill her self on her being forsaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with most sorts of men. Hereunto consenteth *Ansonius*, who honouring the Statue of this abused Princess with an Epigram of 18 Verses, amongst others gives us these four.

*Invida cur in me simulasti Musæ Maronem,
Fingeret ut nostra divina pudicitia?
Pos magis Historicis (Lectores) credite de me,
Quam qui furta dictæ, concubitusque canunt.*

Why didst thou stir up *Virgil*, envious *Muse*,
Falsly my name and honour to abuse?
Of me let *Histories* be heard, not those,
Who to the World, *Jove's* thefts and lusts expose.

Credible it is, that *Aeneas* being driven on the Coast of *Africk*, was by some Prince their courtously entertained, as a man whose fame had been his harbinger: but why the story should be fastned on *Dido*, I see not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her self, gave occasion to the Poet to fain, that it was for the love of *Aeneas*: whereas it was indeed to avoid the lust and fury of *Iarbas*, a potent King of the *Gethuli*, a powerful Nation neighbouring those parts of *Africa*, in which *Carthage* stood, who violently desired to have his pleasure on her.

But to proceed; This City thus founded in a place commodious for Trade and Merchandise, in short time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire mercenary Souldiers (of which the needy *Mauritanians*, and *Numidians*, did afford good store) they conquered all the Sea-Coasts from *Cyrene* to the *Streits of Hercules* (now called the *Streits of Gibraltar*): and so much also towards the South, as was worth the conquering; within which space possessed of 300 Cities. Grown to such height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongst them the Kings of *Numidia*, and *Mauritania*, were at their devotion: They began to cast their eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy Island, lying near unto their Coast; which questionless they had possessed, if the *Romans* envious of their greatness, and fearing their neighbourhood, had not took upon them the defence of the *Mamertines*, and under that pretence got some footing in it. The end of this war, after many brave exploits on both sides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*: their abandoning all the Islands betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 *Talents*, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And such end had the first *Punic* war, managed for the most part in *Sicily*. During which time, and the first war there managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it self was twice invaded: first by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracuse*, (or so commonly called) and afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General, but with no other great success, than the spoil of the Country. The second followed not long after, but the Scene was altered; begun in *Spain*, prosecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the son of *Amilcar*, descended from *Barca* the brother of

Dido

Dido or *Elisa*: who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increased his reputation and experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes*, into *Italy* it self; defeated the Armies of the *Romans*, and slew some of their Consuls: so prosperous in the battle of *Canna*, where the whole strength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good fortune, and made use of his Victory, he might within four or five days after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africa* from the forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently translated the war to *Carthage*. The issue was, that on the loss of the battle of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were necessitated to submit themselves to the will of the Conquerour: that is to say, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships, and Gallies excepting ten; to make no war without leave of the *Romans*, to pay for the charges of the war, 10000 *Talents*; and such other extremities. So ended the 2^d *Punic* war, *An. V. C. 602*. And the third followed not long after, nor any way occasioned by those of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the people of *Rome*, who would not think themselves safe whilst that City stood; and therefore sent another *Scipio* to lay siege unto it. By whom, after a long and stout resistance, it was at last taken and destroyed: the Treasure which was found in it, notwithstanding their former losses, and the low estate it was reduced to, besides what was consumed by fire, and reserved by the Souldiers, amounting to 470000 pound weight of silver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thousand pounds of our *English* Money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewith all the rest of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed against her, and aided the *Romans* in these wars; yet they soon found their own fortunes buried in the self-same Grave. Subverted one after another, as occasion was, they became all subject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Estates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of these were reckoned seven in all, that is to say, 1 *Africa Propria*, called also *Zengitana*, and *Proconsularis*, 2 *Byzacena*, 3 *Tripolitana*, 4 *Numidia*, 5 *Mauritania Casariensis*, 6 *Sitensis*, and 7 *Tingitana*. Of which the last (I know not why) was laid to the *Diocefe* of *Spain*, called therefore *Hispania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other side of the Sea, by some elder Writers: the other six made up the *Diocefe* of *Africa*, subordinate to the *Præfatus Prætorio* for *Italy*, who had here his *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till subdued by the *Vandals*, a German Nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb*, on the Coast of the *Baltick*; where now lie the the Dukedoms of *Mecklenbourg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory still retained there in the title of those Princes, who call themselves *Duces Vandalarum*; and in the Confederacy of the *Hanse*-towns, called by some *Latine* Writers, *Civitates Vandalice*. A Nation of great power, and numbers, (the *Burgundians* being only a part of these) one of the five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11th year of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul*, by the treacherous practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Western Empire; and after an abode of three years, passed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi*, and *Alani*, their Associates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them also. So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperours Vicegerent in *Africa*: who intomacking to see his Office bestowed on *Cassinus* an unworthy man, and his enemy, betrayed the Country to these *Vandals*, in the last year of the life and reign of *Gunderic*, an *Arian* in Religion, as were the rest of the Nation, to which induced by their neighbourhood and acquaintance with the *Goths*: which *Herese* as they brought with them into *Africa*, driving thence all the Orthodox *Christians*, so they continued in it till their extirpation.

The Vandal Kings of AFRICA.

A. C.
412 1 *Gundericus*, who first invaded *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Africa*. 16.
428 2 *Genferius*, who at the request of *Eudoxia* the Widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy*, and sacked the City of *Rome*, the Spoil whereof for 14 days he gave to his Souldiers: but at the request of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterward married, he did not burn it. This *Eudoxia* was wife to the Western Emperour *Valentinian*; who having a minde to a Lady of *Rome*, the wife of one *Maximus*, he cunningly slipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his finger, and by that token sent for the Lady to the Court; and when she was come, ravished her. To revenge this disgrace, *Maximus* slew *Valentinian*, made himself Emperour, and forced *Eudoxia* to be his wife. But

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals*, (having continued in *Spain*, and *Africa*, 146 years) by the valour of *Belisarius*. Who after this good service, was employed by *Justinian* against the *Goths*, then reigning

A. C.

the stomacking a match so unequal to her high birth, and having some incling of the manner of her husbands death, sent for *Genferius* into *Italy*. This *Genferius* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.
476 3 *Honorius*, Son of *Genferius*. 7.
484 4 *Gundebundus*, Son to *Genzo* the brother of *Honorius*. 15.
499 5 *Trafimundus*, Brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.
523 6 *Hildericus*, the Son of *Honorius*, deposed by
530 7 *Gilimir*, the Son of *Genzo*, one of the Descendents of *Genferius*; overcome by *Belisarius* a worthy and politic Leader, whom the Emperour *Justinian* employed in that service.

Tunis.

reigning in *Italy*; against whom he proceeded very fortunately: but being, on I know not what envy, called to *Constantinople*, his eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his bread at the Gate of the Temple of *S. Sophia*. A bad reward for so good a servant. But to go on, *Justinian* having regained *Africa*, to honour his new Conquest, exempted it for the command of the *Prætorio-Præfatus* of *Italy*, to which formerly subject; and encreasing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Isle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of it self: appointing his *Præfatus Prætorio Africa* to reside in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his charge; which he then also raised to a *Consular* Province, having in former times been *Proconsular* only. But long it held not in this Rate: For in the year 647. the *Romans* were finally expelled by *Hueba*, a famous Leader, whom *Osman*, the third *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, had designed to this service. *Africa*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongst the Provinces of the *Saracenic* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the *Caliphs* growing less and less, and every one of their *Sultans* or Provincial Officers, getting what he could for himself; this Country was distracted into many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at last reduced to four of most consideration: that is to say, the Kingdoms of 1 *Tunis*, 2 *Tremesen* or *Algiers*, 3 *Fesse*, and 4 *Morocco*. To the *Geography* and *History* whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the fifth place, the Isles of *Barbary*.

1. TUNIS.

The Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in *Latine* called *Regnum Tunetanus*) hath on the East *Cyrene*; on the West, the Kingdom of *Algiers*, or *Tremesen*; on the North the *Mediterranean*; on the South Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis* the chief City of it; extended all along the Coast of the *Mediterranean* for the space of 800 miles or thereabout, but the breadth not answerable.

The Country towards the East, barren and destitute of water; but in the Western parts, sufficiently plentiful of Corn, and other Fruits, and generally well set with Trees. The people more patient of labour than the rest of *Barbary*, and for that cause perhaps more healthy: but questionable of so good constitution, that they live commonly to great age, unless a violent death prevent them; and are not much afraid of sickness, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as some call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*; called since *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the present *Numidia*, lying on the other side of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countries, besides those spoken of already, were 1 *Andas*, 2 *Buzara*, 3 *Cinna*, 4 *Dias*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5 *Gillins*, by some named *Gigion*, and 6 those called *Thizibi*. Rivers of most esteem with them, though not much with others, besides those mentioned before. 1 *Ampsige*, now called *Colb*, and by some *Sas Gemar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremesen*; 2 *Catuda*; 3 *Cyniphat*, issuing from the Hills called *Zuchabarus*, and falling into the Sea not far from *Tripolis*. Besides which there were some great Lakes; the chief whereof, 1 *Hippontes* near Mount *Cinna*; 2 the Lake of *Pallas*, or that called *Palus Tritonia*, where *Minerva* was said to have shewed her self the Inventress of Spinning and of Oyl, and for that much worshipped by this people; 3 *Sylura*, another great Lake; but not so famous as the former, because not honoured by a Goddess.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into these four parts, viz. 1 *Africa* specially so called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Ampsige* to the lesser *Syrtis*; 2 *Tripolitana*, from the lesser *Syrtis* to the greater; 3 *Numidia*, lying on the West of *Zengitana*, or *Africa Propria*: and 4 *Byzacena*, so called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the Territory whereof so extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of Corn were sent to *Rome* in the time of *Augustus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitianus Nero*, growing on one stalk. But this division being long since worn out of memory, it is divided at the present into the Provinces of 1 *Ezzab*, 2 *Tripolit*, 3 *Tunis*, 4 *Constantina*, 5 *Bugla*.

1. *EZZAB*, is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A small Region, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich, (the richer, in regard they are free from *Tributes*:) their wealth not rising from the commodities of their own Country, which affordeth them little else besides *Dates* and *Olives*; but from such Merchandise which they buy of the *Venetians*, and sell to the *Numidians*. The richest, those of *Mesrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath some, but none of note: the chief of which, 1 *Mesrata*, 2 *Sibeca*, both upon the Sea; of which the first gives name unto that little Province spoken of before. Of more note in the former times was *Phileni Villa*, situate on the greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory then called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Sura*; memorable for the adjoining *Altars*, called *Phileni Aræ*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occasion. Some controversies being grown betwixt those of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their Bounds; it was agreed, that two men at a set hour should be sent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meer-stone* of their several Territories. The *Phileni*, two brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were so quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Country of the *Cyrenenses*, before they were met; wherewith the *Cyrenenses* much enraged, put to them this choice, either to go so much back again, or to die in the place. This last accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Country before their own, for preservation of whose name and honour to succeeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect these *Altars*.

2. West of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*, which together with *Ezzab* made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in Barley; but more commodiously seated in regard of the Sea, which is here more safe for navigation;

Tunis.

tion; the former lying wholly on the greater Sirtis. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Leptis Magna*, so called, to distinguish it from another, but of less note, and therefore called *Leptis Parva*, situate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A Town of so great wealth and Trade, that it was worth a Talent daily to the *Carthaginians*. 2 *Euphranta*, called also *Pyrgos Euphranta*, from some strong Tower in it on the Western bank of the greater Sirtis. 3 *Ciniferna*, on the Eastern side of the River *Cyniphus*. 4 *Calis*, the utmost City of this Province Westward; the same which *Ptolemy* calls *Tacapa*, situate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the left-*ser Sirtis*. 5 *Salrath*, and 6 *Heva*; not else observable, but that together with *Leptis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7 *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with Colonies from those three Cities before mentioned. A City of great name and Riches, till destroyed by the *Saracens*. By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colleges, and Hospitals; and flourishing in much wealth and Lustre, it became a Kingdom of it self, but subject to the Kings of *Tunis*, till taken by the *Genoes* with a Fleet of 20 Sail, and by them sold to the King of *Fesse*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter of Navar*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the Catholic, the first Monarch of Spain: whose Nephew *Charles* the 5. conferred it on the Knights of *S. John of Hierusalem*, then expelled from *Rhodes*: whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Bassa* General of *Selimus* the second, dispossessed by force, An. 1551. Since that the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish* B. glerleg, for these African Provinces; and made an usual retreat for *Pirates*, who infest these Seas, and do much mischief to the Coasts of *Sicily*, *Italy*, and others of the *Christian* Countries.

3. The Province of *TUNIS*, lying Westward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up so much of this Kingdom, as anciently contained the Province of *Bizacena*; and so much of the *Roman Africa*, as lyeth on the East of the River called *Gaudihubar*, the *Hipponites Lacus* of the ancient writers. The Country anciently so fruitful, that it yielded usually an increase of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, besides the testimony of approved Authors, the wonderful, if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may serve sufficiently. Now indigent, and so unprovided of all Grain for the use of their families, that they are fain to furnish themselves out of other places: the people not daring to manure or sow their land, for fear of the *Arabians*, who ever and anon fall into these parts, and spoil what they meet with.

Places of most note in it, in the elder times, 1 *Adrumetum*, or *Adrumysus*, now called *Machometta*, once a *Roman* Colony, and the Metropolis of the Province of *Byzacena*; by consequence, in the times of *Christianity*, an Archbishop's See: walled and repaired by the Emperour *Justinian*, and by his command called *Justiniana*. 2 *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal*, before his battle with *Scipio*, and *Nadagar*, memorable for the great battle, betwixt the two renowned Generals of *Rome* and *Carthage*; not parallel'd since their own times, nor in those before them. In which the great Controversie between those Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* shewed his singular judgment in ordering his Souldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in horse, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage*, constrained to fight in a place of disadvantage, he could do no marvels: the *Romans*, with the loss of no more than 1500 of their own men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians*, in the fight and chase. 4 *Salera* the first place took by *Scipio*, after the landing of his Army. 5 *Uica*, a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greatest ships; much spoke of in the wars of *Carthage*, and memorable for the death of *Cato* (hence surnamed *Vician*) who here slew himself, for fear of falling into the hands of *Cesar*. It is now called *Biserta*. 6 *Bizacium*, seated in a liberal and fruitful soil, as was shewn before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7 *Ruspinum*, made by *Cesar* the seat of his war in *Africa*, against the Sons and faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times succeeding, for being the Episcopal See of *S. Fulgentius*. 8 *Thysrus*, remarkable for the Tragedy of the *Gordiani*: Of which the Father in this City was saluted Emperour by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximinus* then their Emperour, whose *Procurator* they had slain in a tumult: but his party being discomfited by *Capellianus*, whom *Maximinus* sent against him, and his Son killed in the defeat; upon the hearing of the news, he here hanged himself. 9 *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held out longest for the *Mercenaries*, in their desperate Rebellion against the *Carthaginians*; by which the Estate of that great City was in danger of ruine, at the end of the first *Punic* war. 10 *Carthage*, once the Lady and Mistress of *Africa*, situate in the bottom of a safe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one side only, where joyned unto the Land by a narrow Isthmus, about two miles and an half in breadth. In compass 24 miles, but measuring by the outward wall, it was 45. For without the wall of the City it self, there were three walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults under ground of thirty foot deep; wherein they had place for 500 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horses, and all their Provender, and Lodging in those Out-streets for the Riders of the said Horses, and for 20000 Foot besides, which never came within the City to annoy or pester it. On the South-side stood the Cattle called *Byrsa*, which took up two miles and an half in compass: first built by *Dido*, on that ground which she obtained of the *Lybians*, when she got leave to buy only so much Land of them, as she could compass round about with an Oxes hide. In that, the sumptuous Temple of their ancient Deities, *Juno*, *Apollo*, *Asculapius*, *Belus*. On the West-side, a standing Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by so narrow a passage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a stately City we have with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the foundation and affairs of this mighty City we have spoke already. The Government of it first by Kings, those absolute enough at first, afterwards limited by the Senate; and finally made merely titular by the power of the people: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Aristotle*, in the 2 of his *Politicks*. Their Territories, before the second

Punic

Carthage.

Punic war, when they were at the greatest, extended on the Sea-coasts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syria* to the *Streits*, and so unto the River *Iberus*, for the space of 2000 miles in length: their Revenues answerable, and readily brought in, by reason of their infinite trading. Which made the *Roman* people think themselves unsafe, whilst this City stood. Resolved on the destruction of it, they sent against it *L. Martius*, and *M. Manlius*, their two Consuls, with a puissant Army: to whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the preservation of the City it self, which was faithfully promised. But when they had withal given up the sons of their principal men, to be sent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future Loyalty; they were told that a City confided not in Walls, but in Laws and Government. These with the Corporation, should remain as formerly; the Town to be removed ten miles further off, where there was no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was resolved to abide the utmost: but they wanted necessities for resistance. That want supplied for want of Iron to make Arms, with Gold and Silver; the houses pulled down to furnish them with timber to build a Navy; the noble Ladies cutting off the hair of their heads, to make Ropes and Cordage; 25000 Women lifted to defend the Walls. But the fatal moment being come, a second *Scipio* is sent thither to disperse the work; by whom at last the Town was taken, and for 17 days together consumed with fire: the Queen and multitudes of the people burning themselves in the Temple of *Asculapius*, because they would not fall into the hands of the *Romans*. Redified by *Julius Caesar*, and made a Colony, it recovered some part of her former lustre; but so, that her chief glory was rather to be sought for in her ancient, than her present fortunes. *Populi Romani Coloniae Iulie Imperii ejus pertinax annis, & priorum excidio rerum, quam opes presentium clarior*, was her character in the times of *Pomponius Mela*. But in the last estate, accounted for the Metropolis of the Diocese of *Africa*, the Residence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief Primate of the African Churches; who had 164 Bishops under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* stood. Destroyed in the succeeding time by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the reputation of a City of no mean importance, till the year 1270. at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9th. and thereupon deserted by its old Inhabitants, it began to languish, and was at last reduced to nothing but a few scattered houses, not above five and twenty shops, one Temple; all the rest a ruine. So truly said the ancient Poet;

Sic patet exemplis Oppida posse mori.

Thus by examples do we see,

That Towns may die as well as we.

Of chief note at the present, 1 *Tunis*, supposed to be the *Themisa* or *Thumisa* of *Ptolemy*; of small account till the last destruction of *Carthage*, by whose fall it rose. Situate not far from the ruins of that famous City, in compass above five miles, and in that compass said to contain 10000 households. Of great traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of foreign Nations; chiefly from *Genoa*, and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the *Holy Wars*, for the sieges and successes of two of our English Princes; that namely of King *Edward* the first, in his fathers life time; and that of *Henry* the fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*: by both which (though the last served only under the command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Composition; *Lewis* the 9. commonly called *S. Lewis*, dying at the first siege of it. 2 *Goletta*, a strong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a Demy-Island, divided from the main Land by two narrow passages, but so that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty by *Charles* 5. An. 1535. together with the *Turkish* Navy riding in the Lake fast by it; but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years after, An. 1574. 3 *Cairoan*, built by *Hucla*, who first conquered *Africa* for the *Saracens*, in a sandy Delart, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36 from any part of the Sea, to secure himself from any invasion, which the commodiousness of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the first founder of it, with an admirable Temple raised on Pillars of Marble; who placed also in it a College of Priests, and made it the chief Residence of his posterity for the space of 170 years, who reigned here under the great Caliphs as the *Sultans* of *Africa*. Destroyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424 year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco* and still of such esteem amongst these *Mahometans*, that their chief men are brought thither to be buried from all parts of the Country, hoping by the prayers of those Priests to find a shorter way to Heaven, than in other places.

4. More Westward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, so called from *Constantina* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hipponites*, now named *Gaudihubar*, to *Constantina* a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the same with *Mons Audus* in *Ptolemy*. The soil hereof said to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of fruits, and great store of butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Orosius* called *Oradus*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1 *Tabraca*, on the East; and 2 *Hippo Regius*, on the Western bank of *Rubricatus*: both *Roman* Colonies, but this last most famous, in being the Episcopal See of renowned *S. Augustine*. 3 *Bonni*, the birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about an hundred miles from the Sea; but situate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: so rich and fertile, that the Town flourisheth to this day; adorned with a sumptuous Mosque, and never without the company of Merchants coming from *Genoa*, *Tunis*, and the Isle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits and Butter. 4 *Thaburnica*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 5 *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the same nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6 *Culcuza*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moor* now called *Cucutina*, but *Constantina* by the *Latines*, and most Nations else, now the chief City of this Province, situate near a Mountain of the same name, near the edge of *Bugia*. An ancient City, but containing

LIII 2

Algiers.

waisted by continual wars. Nor have the people any peculiar *Character*, but what belongeth to others of these *Africans* also.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Guagya*, inconveniently seated, as paying their accustomed Tributes to the King of *Tremesen*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here so numerous and powerful, that the Kings themselves of this small Kingdom were fain to buy their peace of them at excessive rates. 2 *Tigedent*, sometimes famous, and abounding with men of learning; now almost forsaken, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of these *Arabians*. 3 *Tebecrit*, inhabited for the most part by Weavers. 4 *Brekeh*, the Inhabitants whereof use to paint a black Cross on their Cheek, and another on the Palm of their hands: the reason of which custom they are ignorant of, but some conceive it to be a remembrance of their *Christianity*. 5 *Ned-Roma*, built as the people do pretend, by the ancient *Romans*, as an *Epitome*, or Abridgement of that mighty City, to which it is said to have some resemblance; and that imported by the name, which signifieth in their language, *Like to Rome*. Perhaps the same which *Platony* calleth *Novum oppidum*, or the New-Town, then a *Roman Colony*. 6 *Batha*, once a great City, since decayed by Wars. 7 *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, said to contain no fewer than 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infesting with their Gallies the Coasts of *Spain*; till taken from *Ferdinand* the *Catholic* by *Peter of Navar*, An. 1506. since which time peopled and possessed by the *Spaniards*: In vain belied by the said *Turks*, An. 1562. 8 *Masfalgivir*, a fair and spacious Haven on the same Sea also, and taken by the said *Peter of Navar*, about the same time. 9 *Hartsgol*, in former times of much esteem amongst the *Moors*; but being destroyed by the King, or Sultan of *Caïroan*, it bequeathed his greatness unto *Tremesen*, which after grew into renown. To *Tremesen*, once adorned with many beautiful *Mosques*, and five sumptuous *Colledges*, curiously wrought with *Moswick* work. So populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 Families; and so well fortified, that it held out seven years against *Joseph* the great King of *Fesse*: not taken after that, though they were very much weakened by *Abulthisen*, or *Albobacen* his Son and successor, under a siege of 30 months. By those, and the succeeding troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in strength and beauty. More ancient, 11 *Siga*, an *African City*, and a *Roman Colony*; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bocchus*, sometimes Kings of this Country. 12 *Arsenaria*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13 *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Bocchus*, after such time as this Country was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Casura*, in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, whose *Fendatories* the Kings hereof were then accounted; or as some say, in honour of *Claudius Cæsar*, by whom it made a Colony: the *Metropolis* of it also when a *Roman Province*, which from hence was called *Casuriensis*. Situated in, or near the place where *Oran* now stands, which seemeth to have risen out of the ruins of it. 14 *Saldæ*, a *Roman Colony* also, out of whose ruins rose *Algiers*. 15 *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gezir*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, situate near the Sea, in the form of a *Triangle*, with an Haven to it; but neither great, nor safe from the North-winds, which do much annoy it. The buildings very beautiful; the publick Inns, *Bathes*, and *Mosques*, exceeding sumptuous; every Trade having a several place, or street by it self. But that which is the greatest grace of it, is the situation of the houses (standing in even streets one above another, upon the rising of a steep Hill; so that the windows of one street, or row of houles do all along overlook the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a most pleasant prospect. A City not so large, as strong; and not so strong, as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retreat-place of the *Turkish* Pirates, who domineer so infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations that frequent those Seas. Famous also for the shipwrack which *Charles* the fifth here suffered, who besieging this Town, lost in the Haven of it at one Tempest, besides an infinite number of *Karvels* and small Boats, divers strong Gallies, 140 Ships, a great many excellent pieces of Ordnance; such a number of gallant Horses, that in *Spain* the race of Horses for service had like to have been lost for ever; and above half his men. It long enjoyed the benefit of proprietary Princes, (but *Homagers*, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremesen*) till such time as *Selimes*, and *Mahomet*, falling out, made the first, and that an irreparable breach in the Government. For *Selimes*, to strengthen his side, implored the aid of *Hairaccius Barbarossa*, a noble Pirate; who taking his best advantage, slew the disjoynted brethren, and settled himself in the Kingdom: which he had scarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Barbarossa* his brother, An. 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Bugia*, and was so renowned for Martial prowess, that *Solyman* the magnificent made him Lord High-Admiral of his Fleet: which Office, when to the prejudice of *Christendom* he had fortunately and for long time undergone, he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom; the Kingdom of *Tremesen* being made subject to the *Turks* much about that time. 16 *Tetnan*, and 17 *Sargil*, situate Westward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Piracy.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman Province*, were the *Herpidiani*, *Taladusi*, *Thalussi*, *Malchubii*, *Maccureli*, *Chime*, and others of as little note; the most predominant Nation being the *Masfysli*, over whom (and in that over all the rest) reigned *Syphax*, spoken of before, unfortunately famous for his tragical love to *Sophonisba*: for whose sake siding with the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans*, he was vanquished and sent prisoner to *Rome*. His Kingdom given to *Masfysli*, King of the *Numidians*, continued in his line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then bestowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*; part of whose Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperour *Claudius*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Vandals*, and then by the *Saracens*; it followed the fortunes of these last, while they stood and flourished: But growing into many distractions, and every Sultan, or Provincial Governour shifting for himself, it became a Kingdom, under the title and title of the Kingdom of *Tremesen*. The Majesty of it much impaired by *Abulthisen*, or *Albobacen* King of *Fesse*, who brought it not long after under his command. Recovering after some short time

its

its former liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and so continued till the time of *Abuchemen*: who incurring the hatred of his people, because by his supine neglect the *Spaniards* had surprised and taken *Oran* and *Masfalgivir*, their two best Havens, made an easy passage for his brother *Anzeiden* to the Regal diadem. *Abuchemen* scarce well settled, lost it to *Hairadine Barbarossa*, An. 1515. and he to *Charles* the fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was restored, becoming *Homager* and Tributary to the Crown of *Spain*. But his successor *Abdulla*, weary of the *Spanish* servitude, put himself under the protection of *Solyman* the magnificent, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his decease, he left the possession of his Kingdom also; ever since subject to the *Turks*: whose *Beglerbeg* or Supreme Officer for these *African Provinces*, resides for the most part in *Algiers*, and hath 40000 *Timariots* under his command.

3. FESSE, and 4 MOROCCO.

These Kingdoms I have joyned in title, because united for the most part in the story and affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Estate under the *Xeriffes* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of History, though of a different consideration in the way of Geography.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly so called; divided anciently into *Tingitana*, and *Stifensis*; *Cæsariensis* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Masfysli* and the rest of the Inhabitants of it, of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accompanied any part thereof, till the death of *Jugurth*; when given to *Bocchus* King hereof, in reward of his Treason, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name was first given; the word *Tania*, signifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britannia*, *Lusitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps some others; and the name of *Mauri* given them *Ab rā Maupā*, which signifieth amongst other things obscure or black, by reason of the darkness of their complexion. Accompted in their times, an hardy, but a bloody people; careless of life, fearless of death; implacable, if once offended, their thirst of revenge not to be quenched but by blood. *Mauri sunt genus hominum suapte natura cadis avidissimum, nihilque non facile audens, & desperatis similes, contemptu viz. mortis & periculorum.* A Character given of them in *Herodians* time, and it holds good still: notwithstanding the intermixture of *Goths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the same Nation with them, and passing by the same name in the Writers of the middle time. Post hæc *Mauri totam Hispaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam &c. dominio suo manciparunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Moors* we are to understand the *Saracens*, which came out of *Africk*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1 *Atlas Minor*, so called, to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is seven degrees more North, but shooteth, as that doth, with a point or Promontory into the main *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South of *Silla*. 2 *Durdus*, extended also into *Cæsariensis*. 3 *Diur*. 4 *Phocra*, of which little memorable. Rivers of most note, 1 *Sala*. 2 *Sabur*. 3 *Zilia*. 4 *Phuik*. 5 *Diur*. 6 *Cusa*; all falling into the *Atlantick*: this last the same, as I conjecture, which our modern Writers call *Ommirabili*. And for the rest, we must find amongst them, 1 *Sisfemel*, 2 *Tensiff*, 3 *Niffir*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Metagonites* near the Straits, giving name unto *Metagonitis* an adjoining Promontory, the *Succosii*, *Verbica*, *Nestheres*, *Vacunta*, *Voli*; and on the East-side the *Mauræsii*: These last participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the *Latines*, *Mauri*; by the *Greeks*, *Maurusi*: The Etymology as before. Their descent originally from *Phut*, the Son of *Cham*; whose memory preserved here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Chanaanites*, of the same extraction, served but as an Accessory. From those two Fountains sprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*. Governed by Kings; the most considerable of which, when first known to the *Romans*, was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his friend and son in law, into the hands of the *Romans*: gratified for that Treachery with the Country of the *Masfysli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hirpsal* one of his Sons was, not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole Estates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax* and *Masfysli* united by this means in the person of *Juba*, one of his posterity, the most potent Prince of all these parts: who falling in the African War against *Julius Cæsar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman Empire*; *Crispus Salustius* being made the first Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Ampfagus*, he gave to *Bocchus*, and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but descended of the old Regal family. *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* against *Augustus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other side, dispossessed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Fesse*) in which confirmed for his good service, by the conquering Emperour. *Juba*, the Son of the former *Juba*, grown famous for his eminent learning, was of a Prisoner made a Prince: invested after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his father, except *Numidia*: and by the bounty of *Augustus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the marriage of *Selene*, daughter of *Antony* and *Cleopatra*. After whose death, and the death of *Polomy* their Son, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the Patrimony of the *Roman Empire*: divided into two Provinces, viz. *Cæsariensis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Ampfagus*, now the Kingdom of *Tremesen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Western Ocean. This last divided into *Tingitana*, and *Stifensis*, (the River now called *Ommirabili* being the boundary betwixt them) by the Emperour *Constantine*: who leaving *Stifensis* to the Diocess of *Africk*, laid *Tingitana* (why I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*, they became Members of those Empires; in the declining

7. More East, betwixt *Hafscora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *T E D L E S*, bounded on the East, with the Kingdom of *Tremesen*; and on the North, with that of *Feffr*, from which last parted by the River

Fesse.

with three Colledges, many Baths, and Hospitals, and some beautiful Temples; one of them larger, though not fairer than that of Fesse; in both Towns men of the same Trade have a street by themselves, for greatness, wealth, and numbers of people, esteemed the third City of this Kingdom. 3 *Dubdu*, an ancient Town, but not much observable. 4 *Turrit*, seated on the top of an Hill, in the midst of a plain, but compassed about with *Deserts*. 5 *Beni Jessiten*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greatest bravery and wealth consisteth: the women here wearing Iron-rings for ornaments to their Ears and Fingers. 6 *Tezergui*, subject to the *Arabians*. 7 *Adaggia*, the most Eastern Town of all the Region; situate in a *Peninsula*, made by the confluences of *Muliso* and *Miloua*. In this Country is the head of the River *Subur*, which rising out of a great Lake in the woods of the Mountain *Seligus*, and receiving many lesser waters, with a large and navigable stream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northwards of *Chaus* lieth the Region called *GARET*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*; and reaching East and West, from the River *Malva*, where it bordereth on *Tremesin*, to that of *Nuchor*, where it toucheth on *Errif*, and *Afgara*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but twenty. The soil in most places dry and desert, like the Sands of *Numidia*: especially all along the banks of the *Malva*; near unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Chaus*, it is wholly *desert* and unpeopled, nor well inhabited in the most fruitful parts of it, being full of Mountains; the worse for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, possessed of 1 *Chefusa*, and 2 *Medela*, two chief Towns hereof. 3 *Pannon de Peles*, by some called *Felez de Gomera*, situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains; built by the *Africans* or *Goths*; but now in the possession of the *Spaniards* also. 4 *Jafferis*, situate on the Sea also, founded by the *Mahometans* of the *Marine* Family, 5 *Tezzoras*, standing on an Hill, to which there is but one passage only.

5. Weltward of *Garet* lieth *ASGAR*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: Shut up on the South East-side with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which last runneth the River *Lucus*, called *Lix* by *Ptolomy*. The Aire hereof very temperate, and the soil as fertile; supplying with the over-plus of its Commodities, the Mountainous parts of *Fesse*, and the *deserts* of *Garet*. Once full of Towns, till ruined and destroyed by the wars. A Monument whereof, 1 *Gimma*, built by the ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2 *Larache*, in *Latine* *Larisse*, the *Lixa* of *Ptolomy*, situate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Lucus*, and furnished with a good Port, but of difficult entrance; garrisoned when possessed by the *Moors* with 300 light horse, and 300 *Harcenziers*; but better fortified than before, since possessed by the *Spaniards*, into whose hands it was put by *Muley-Shek*, king of *Morocco* and *Fesse*, when worsted by *Muley Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the civil Wars betwixt them. 3 *Chsar Elcabir*, given by *Almanfor* to a poor Fisher, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he lost his Company in Hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a stately Hospital.

6. On the North of *Afgara* is the Province of *EL-HABAT*, or *HABAT* coasting along the *Atlantic* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streits*, in length 100 miles, about 80 in breadth. The Country very plentiful of all manner of necessaries, and very well Peopled; the Mountains which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times replenished with many Cities, both of the Foundation of the *Goths*, *Romans*, and old *African Moors*, now much diminished by the Wars. Those of most note, 1 *Ezaggan*, the Inhabitants whereof by an ancient privilege granted by the Kings of *Fesse*, were licenced to drink wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a Mountain near the River *Guargu*, about 35 leagues from *Fesse*; and garrisoned with 400 horse for fear of the *Portugals*, who sometimes make their excursions thither. 2 *Bafra*, once a walled Town, and the walls still standing, but very little or no Town in them. 3 *Homur*, sometimes well peopled, but now little inhabited, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coast. 4 *Banirendo*, in a manner deserted for the same reason. 5 *Alcazar*, to distinguish it from another of this name, called *Alcazar Guer*, taken together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier* by *Alonso* the fifth of *Portugal*, Anno 1470. Nigh to which Town the three Kings, *Sebastain* of *Portugal*, *Mahomet*, and *Abdemelech*, Competitors for this Kingdom, were slain in a day. There was also slain at the same time, the great English Rebel *Stuckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, Anno 1570. Where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church: by whom appointed for the Conquest of *Ireland*, and for that end furnished with 800 Souldiers paid by the King of *Spain*; and by his Holiness created Marquis of *Leinster*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Caterlogh*, Viscount of *Marragh*, and Baron of *Rosse*. Thus furnished, he began his journey towards *Ireland*, Anno 1578. but hearing of these Wars, and desirous to make a party in them, he lost all his honour with his life. 6 *Arzilla* a Sea-town, 70 miles distant from the *Streits*, now possessed by the *Portugals*. 7 *Tanger*, a great Town, and very ancient, distant from the *Streits* about 30 miles, belonging to the *Portugals* also. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Canaanites*, and by them built at their first coming thither, when they fled from the Sword of *Josuah*; testified by the two Pillars erected near this City, which before we spoke of: and from that name caused all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingitana*. Made afterwards a Colony by the Emperor *Cladius*, who named it *Traducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and out lived the new. Near to this Town it is said that *Hercules* overcame *Anteus*, a monstrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was an high Mountain called *Abyla*, opposite to which in the Coast of *Spain*, was another called *Calpe*, on which the said *Hercules* placed his so famous Pillars. 8 *Septa*, or *Senia*, situate on, or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the title of an Earle to *Julian*, who first brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colledges, and Learned men: taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *English*, An. 1415. and now in the possession of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the Estates of *Portugal*, which in the late revolt

Fesse.

revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. 9 *Julia Constantia*, so called, and made a *Roman Colony*, by *Augustus Cesar*. 10 *Laxia*, a *Roman Colony* of the Plantation of *Cladius*, in old times said to have been the Court, or Palace of the Giant *Anteus*. Not far from whence (that *Anteus* might not dwell alone) the old Geographers have placed the habitation of *Gerion*, as proper a Gentleman as himself, in a small Island of the *Streits*, called *Gerionis Insula*, and by some *Erythia*.

7. Eastward of *Habat* is the Province of *E R R I F*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Nochor* (supposed to be the *Molochub* of the Ancient Writers) by which parted from *Garet*: A mountainous and cold Country in respect of the rest of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Forrests; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without some herds of Goats, though otherwise not well stored with Cattel. In length 140 miles, in breadth 40 only; inhabited by a race of valiant men, but excessive Drunkards. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages; The chief of which, 1 *Mazagon*, near unto the *Streits*; a very strong Town, and of great importance, but possessed by the *Portugals*: in vain besieged by *Abdalla* the first, with an Army of 200000 men, An. 1562. 2 *Mezeem*, seated on a Mountain. 3 *Beni-Jirso*, of like situation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Professors of the *Mahometan Law*, who here publicly taught it, as in a University; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Destroyed together with the Library of it, by some wicked Tyrant, An. 1509. the Books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats. 4 *Terga*, 5 *Togassa*. 6 *Gelbe*; of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of these two Kingdoms, we must next look upon them also in the general story, from the time of the *Saracenic* conquest; First let into this Country by the Treason of *Julian*, and for a while subject to the great Caliph, or Successor of *Mahomet*: afterwards to the King, or Caliph, of *Cairoan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, these Provinces with the rest were afflicted by them; till the rising of the Kingdom of *Fes*: begun in the person of *Idris*, of the blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his daughter *Fatima*; commonly called the Family of *Alaweci*; who persecuted by the opposite faction, fled into *Mauritania*; where he grew into such reputation, that in short time he got both Swords into his hands. Dying about the 185 year of the *Hegira*, he left his power unto his son, of the same name with his Father, the first founder of *Fesse*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the water, one of his sons (but his name I find not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raising by that means a faction in the house of *Idris*, which occasioned the subversion of the Kingdom of *Fesse*, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alaweci*, for the space of 270 years. The estate hereof first weakened by *Abu Tefin*, or *Tevifin*, of the house of the *Almoravides*, or *Lantunes*, and so weakened, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Joseph Abu Tefin*, or *Telephine*, his son and Successor; then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocco*, to suppress that Family: Who killing the Princes of that line, and 30000 of their subjects, brake down the walls which parted the two Cities from one another, united them by bridges, and so made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the dissention of the *Saracens* there amongst themselves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom, unto his Dominions: held by his Successors, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: the Catalogue of which Princes, called the house, or Family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades*, is this which followeth.

The Kings, or Miramomolims of MOROCCO.

A. Ch.
1068

- 1 *Tefin*, *Tevifin*, or *Telephine*, the first of the *Almoravides*, that reigned in *Africk*.
- 2 *Joseph*, surnamed *Telepinus*, the son of *Tefin*, founded *Morocco*, subdued the Kingdom of *Fesse*; and added the Estate of the *Moors* in *Spain* unto his Dominions, An. 1091.
- 3 *Hali*, the son of *Joseph*.
- 4 *Abu-Hali*, the son of *Hali*, supposed to be the publisher of the works now extant in the name of *Avicenne*, compiled at his command by some of the most learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquished and slain by.
- 5 *Addelmou*, or *Abdel-Mumen*, the first of the *Almohades*; of obscure parentage, but raised to so great power by the practises of *Almohad* a juggling Prophet of those times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of the *Almoravides* both in *Spain* and *Africk*, An. 1150. to which he also added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoan*.
- 6 *Joseph II.* or *Aben-Joseph*, the son of *Abdelmou*.

- 7 *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, surnamed *Almonfor*, a puissant and prudent Prince, of whom much before: son of *Joseph II.*
- 8 *Mahomet*, surnamed *Enaser*, or the Green, the brother of *Almanfor*. Discomfited by the *Christians* of *Spain*, at the battle of *Sierra Morena*, An. 1214. lost his dominions, there being slain in this battle 200000 of the *Moors*, as some Writers say; who add, that the *Spaniards* for two dayes together burnt no other fewer but the Pikes, Lances, and Arrows of their slaughtered Enemies, yet could not consume the one half of them.
- 9 *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Enaser*, by his son *Buxaf*: slain at the siege of *Tremezir*, a Castle of *Tremesin*, which was held against him.
- 10 *Amorcad*, a kinsman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his Estate, and slain by *Budebuz*, of the same house of the *Almohades*.
- 11 *Budebuz*, the last of the house of the *Almohades*, settled in this estate by the aid and valour of *Jacob Aben-Joseph* the new King of

Malta.

from the one Sea to the other : and so commanding both the Havens. Built since the departure of the *Turks*, impregnable fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valetta* the great Master, who so gallantly repulsed their fury. In this Town the great Master hath his Palace, and the Knights their several *Alberges* or Seminaries; all very fair and handsome buildings. 4 *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Lamoret*, lying in the Eastern Haven, at the extremity of which Promontory in a Demy Island stands the great Castle of *S. Angelo*, built on a Rock, opposite to *Valetta*, on the other side of the Haven; and strong impregnable by the *Turks*, who in vain besieged it. 6 *Isola* a small City and better deserving by name of a Town, situate in another Promontory, on the South of the other, defended on the Westside by a strong Platform, at the point of the Foreland; and on the Eastside, by the impregnable Castle of *S. Michael*; in vain assaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill success at the Siege hereof, gave over the enterprize, and failed home.

The people of this Island originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with some *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicily*, as before was said. For the most part dependant on the Fortures of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till subdued by the *Saracens*: By the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moor*s, and by *Charles* the first given to the Knights of the *Rhodes*, not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, An. 1522. These Knights are in number 1000; of whom 500 are always to be resident in the Island. The other 500 are dispersed through *Christendom*, at their several Seminaries, in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; and at any summons, are to make their personal appearance. These Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number seven, viz. one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergne*, one of *Provence*, one of *Castile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Country where he liveth; is of great reputation. An eighth Seminary they had in *England*, till the suppression of it by *Henry* the 8th. Concerning yet they have some one or other, to whom they give the title of *Grand Prior* of *England*. Concerning the original and riches of these Knights, we have spoken when we were in *Palestine*; now a word or two only of their places, and the election of their great Master. None are admitted into the Order, but such as can bring a testimony of their *Gentry* for six descents: and when the Ceremonies of their admission (which are many) are performed, they swear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiors*, to live upon the Revenues of their Order, only, and withal to live chastly. Of these there be 16 of great authority (Councillours of State we may fitly call them) called the *Great Crosses*: out of whom the Officers of the Order, as the *Marshal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellor*, &c. are chosen: and who, together with the Master, punish such as are convicted of any crime, 1. by degrading him, 2ly by strangling him; and 3ly, by throwing him into the Sea. Now when the *Great Master* is dead, they suffer no Vessel to go out of this Island till another be elected, lest the *Pope* should intrude on their election; which is performed in this manner. The several Seminaries nominate two Knights, and two also are nominated for the *English*: these 16 from amongst themselves choose eight; these eight choose a Knight, a Priest, and a Friar-servant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Crosses*, elect the great Master. The great Master being thus chosen, is stiled (though but a Friar) *The most illustrious, and most reverend Prince*, the Lord Friar N. N. Great Master of the Hospital of *S. John* of *Jerusalem*, *Prince* of *Malta*, *Gaules*, and *Goza*. Far different I assure you, from that of the first Masters of this Order, who called themselves only *Servants* to the poor *Servitors* of the Hospital of *Jerusalem*; or that of the Master of the Temple, who was only intituled *The humble Minister* of the poor *Knights* of the Temple.

This Island is conceived to yield to the great Master the yearly rent of 10000 *Ducats*, the greatest part whereof ariseth out of *Cotten-wool*: besides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Estate, the tenth part of the prizes which are won from the *Turks*; and certain thousands of *Crowns* yearly out of the treasure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the best *Commanderies* in every Nation. And for the scowring of the Seas, and securing their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 *Souldiers*, and to carry 16 pieces of Ordinance, with which they make excursions many times to the coasts of *Greece*.

And so much for BARBARY.

MOUNT

MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Lybia Interior*, we must pass over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of hills, of exceeding great height, and of no small length. So high that the top, or Summit of it is above the Clouds, at least so high that the eye of man is not able to discern the top of it. Extat in hoc *Mari mons cui nomen Atlas* (saith Herodotus) ita sublimis, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non possint. Yet notwithstanding, it is always covered with Snow in the heats of summer. Difficult of ascent by reason of the sharp and craggy precipices, which occur in many places of it; the rest where plainer, and more even, of such wondrous steepness, that the precipices of the Rocks seem the safer way. Full of thick Woods, and yielding to the Countries on the North-side of it, the greatest part of the Rivers, which refresh and moisten them: and where it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman Africa*, of such self-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth, not planted, grafted, or inoculated by the hand of man. The beginning of it is on the shores of the Western Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick Ocean*; in the 26 Degree, and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude: and passing on directly Eastward, draw near unto the borders of *Egypt*, part of *Marmarica*, or the *Roman Lybia*, only interposing. It is now called *Anchisa*, and *Montes Clari*: And took the name of *Atlas* from *Atlas* King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; famed by the Poets to be turned into this hill by *Perseus*, and the head of *Medusa*. Of the daughters of this King, their golden fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Hesperides*, we have spoke already; though some remove the place of their habitation more into the West (then by us disposed of) and others into certain Islands of the Western Ocean, which we shall meet withal hereafter. He was said to have been a man of such wondrous height, that the Heavens rested on his shoulders; of which, when weary, he discharged his burden on the shoulders of *Hercules*; the ground of the fiction either taken from the height of the Mountain, the top whereof seemeth to touch the sky; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Astronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets; In which knowledge he instructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more Authentick description of it, take it thus from *Virgil*;

— Jamq, volans apicem & latera ardua cernis
Atlantis auri, Calum qui vertice fulcit.
Atlantis, cinctum assidue cui nubibus atris
Piniferum caput, & vento pulsatur & imbr.
Nix humeros infusa tegit, tum flamina mento
Præcipiant senis, & glacie riget horrida barba.

Which may be Englished in these words:

Then flying, he the top and sides descries
Of *Atlas*, whose proud head supports the skies.
Atlas, whose Piny head with Clouds inclosed
Is to the storms of winde and rain exposed.
Now hides the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
Upon his Chin; his Beard with ice ore-grown.

OF LYBIA INTERIOR.

LYBIA INTERIOR is bounded on the North, with *Mount Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary*, and *Cyrenaitica*; on the East, with *Lybia Marmarica*, interposed betwixt it and *Egypt*; and part of *Aethiopia Superior*, or the *Habassine Empire*; on the South with *Aethiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the West with the main *Atlantick Ocean*.

The reason of the name we have seen before, given to this Country in regard of its contiguoness and resemblance to the other *Lybia*; or else because descended from the Children of *Lechaim*, by which that Country was first planted. For of King *Lybs*, or Queen *Lybia* (the daughter of *Euphrates*, and *Cassiopea*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I shall take no notice. Distinguished from the other, by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main land of *Africa*, the other being partly a *Martine* Country.

Of the nature of the soyl and people we shall speak anon, when we come to take a view of its several parts. Look we now on it as it stood in the time of the *Romans*: when, though not so well travelled, or discovered as in these last times: yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and situation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns; than any of our later Writers have presented to us. The Rivers of most note, 1 *Salathus*, 2 *Chusurus*, 3 *Ophiodus*, 4 *Noius*, 5 *Musis*, 6 *Sobus*, 7 *Doradus*. 8 *Stachiris*, and 9 *Masticholus*; all of them paying tribute to the Western, or *Atlantick Ocean*. Mountains of most note. 1 *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salathus*; 2 *Sagapola*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*. 3 *Rysadins*, from whence *Stachiris*. 4 the Mountain called *Deorum Currus* (of

Lybia Des-
serta.

of are very courteous to strangers, whom they entertain at free cost; and choose rather to marry their daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. 5 *Eboacah*, the most Eastern Town in all this Country, distant about 100 miles from the borders of Egypt. 6 *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for the Wells or Fountains of the Sun. The waters whereof being lukewarm at the Sun-rising, cooled more and more till noon, was then very cold, and so continued until midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural Antipathy with the Sun, hottest when that was furthest off: and cold when nearest. 7 *Masueba*, seated on a Rock, garrisoned by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marius*, in the prosecution of that War. 8 *Caspa*, the chief City of all this tract, said to be built by *Hercules*; but questionless of very great strength, *angustus arcis* and *nisque vallatus*, made inaccessible (saith the Historian) by the thick Sands, and multitudes of Serpents which were harboured in them; but easily forced by *Marius* in his Wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly destroyed by *Cesar* in his war against *Juba*.

It seems by this, that those people neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the disposal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing; and so they have been also in these latter times. For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of wisdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long possessed themselves of those parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698; but within twelve years (*An. 710.*) they subdued this Country, and planted their Religion in it, though not themselves. Nor was *Amet*, the first Xeriff of *Morocco* warm in that estate, when he thought it best for him to secure himself in it by the conquest of this: to whose successors, the chiefs of the Tribes of hereof render some acknowledgements.

2. LYBIA DESERTA.

LYBIA DESERTA, is bounded on the North with *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid*, to which contiguous; on the East, with *Nubia*, a Kingdom and Province of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, with the land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the West, with *Gualata*, another Province of these *Negroes* interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantick*.

The reason of the name of *Lybia* we have had before. To which *Deserta* was added upon very good reasons, as well to difference it from the other *Lybia*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to express the barren and sandy condition of it: in which respect by the *Arabians* called *Sarra*, signifying in their language a rude and inhabitable Desert, as this Country is. So truly such, that men may travel in it eight days together without finding water, or seeing any trees and no grass at all. The water which they have is drawn out of pits, exceeding brackish; and many times those pits so covered with the Sands, that men die for thirst: the *Merchants* therefore carrying their water with them on the backs of *Camels*; which if it fail, they kill their *Camels*, and drink a water which they wring out of their guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as these *Deserts* be, they are very much travelled by the *Merchants* of *Fesse*, and *Tremesen*, trading to *Agades* and *Tombutum*, in the land of *Negroes*.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in shape or qualities; but if a worse of quality, it must be the *Lybian*. They did once worship a God called *Psaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then set at liberty, to say these words, *viz. Psaphon is a great God*: which the simple people hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine honours. Converted at last to the *Christian* Faith, they remained a while in the profession of the Gospel: exterminated by the *Saracens* about the year 710, who having added *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid* to their former conquests, planted their Superstitions in this Country also.

This Country is divided (as others into Provinces) into five great Deserts, to which those of less note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the borders of *Gualata*, (interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantick Ocean*) and extending Eastward to the Salt-pits of *Tegaza*; having on the South, *Gualata* and *Tombutum* in the land of *Negroes*; so destitute of water, that there is one pit only at the end of each hundred mile, brackish and unwholesome; and in the Deserts of *Azaad* and *Ariouan*, which are parts of this, but one in an 150 or 200 miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eastward, to the Desert of *Targa*: bounded on the North, with *Segelmesse*, and *Tibellati*, *Numidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the Deserts of *Ghir* and *Guber*. So void of water, (especially in that part thereof which is called *Goguden*) that in nine dayes travel there is not so much as one drop to be seen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eastward to the Desert of *Ighidi*; and reaching from *Tegorwin* in the North, to the Desert of *Agdez* in the South: the best conditioned part of all this Countrey, well watered, of a temperate Air, and a soil reasonably fruitful. In length from North to South 300 miles; and liberally stored with Manna, which they gather into little Vessels, and carry to *Agdez* to sell. Mingled in water or with portage it is very cooling; and drank of in their Feasts, as a special dainty.

4. *LEMBTA*, extendeth from the Deserts of *Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of these two there is little to be said in general, but that this last was discovered lately by one *Hamar*, a guide to a *Caravan* of *Merchants*; who blinded with the Sands wandered out of his way, and causing sand to be given him at every twenty miles end, found by the smell at last that they begun to draw nigh some inhabited Place; and told them of it forty miles before they came to it.

Cities

Lybia Des-
serta.

Cities of note we hope for none, where we finde no water. Of such as go for Cities here, the most considerable, 1 *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, resembling Marble; which the Inhabitants, being twenty days distant from any habitation, and consequently many times in danger to die for famine, exchange Victuals with the *Merchants* of *Tombutum*, who come thither for it. Much troubled with the South wind, which doth so drive the sands upon them, that it causeth many of them to lose their sight. 2 *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known resting place, and a great refreshment to the *Merchants* in the midst of these Deserts. 3 *Gualata* on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy people. 4 *Toberanm*, of little note, but that it serveth for a Stage or halting-place to the weary Traveller. Of which kind there are said to be others at the extremities or ends of each several Desert; the *Havens* of such men as sail in these sandy Seas, but not else observable.

Nor is there much, if any thing, observable of them in the way of Story, but that not looked after by any of the great Conquerors, either *Greeks* or *Romans*, much of the Country was possessed by *Arabian* Colonies (men fit enough to plant in such barbarous Nations:) at such time as the *Saracens* planted their Religion here. The Government of the Country since, as it was before, by the Chiefs of their several Clans, or Families, who as they know no Law themselves, so do the people shew as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions, differing but little from brute Beasts more than in shape and speech.

And so much for LYBIA INTERIOR.

OF

TERRA NIGRITARUM.

ERR A NIGRITARUM, or THE LAND OF NEGROES, is bounded on the East, with *Aethiopia Superior*; on the West, with the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the North with *Lybia Deserta*; and on the South, with the *Aethiopic Ocean*, and part of *Aethiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigritæ*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolomy*: and they so named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

The Country very hot by reason of its situation under the *Torrid Zone*; yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in some places always green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, specially in those parts which lie within the compass of the overflowsings of the River *Niger*; and on the further side of the River *Savanna*: abundantly well stored both with Corn, Cattel, and Garden-ware for the use of their Kitchins; well Wooded, and those Woods well furnished with *Elephants* and other Beasts, both wild and tame. Their greatest wants (but such a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-trees*; few of which they have; and those they have, bear one kind of fruit only, which is like the *Chestnut*, but somewhat bitterer. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greatest welfare consisting in the over-flowsings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the inundations of *Nile*. In some parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver, very fine and pure: so that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of discovering *New Worlds* as much as *Wealth*; they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as at the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the most part so rude and barbarous, that they seem to want that use of Reason which is peculiar unto man; of little wit, and destitute of all Arts and Sciences; prone to luxury, and for the greatest part Idolaters, though not without some small admixture of *Mahometans*. When the *Portugals* first sailed into these Coasts, the People hereof took the Ships for great *Birds* with white wings; and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were usually painted on the beaks of the ships, were the eyes by which they saw how to direct themselves in their course. *Guns* seemed to them, for their hideous noise, to be the work of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be perswaded but that they were the work of *Gods own hands*. The very *Nobles* (if so noble a name may without offence be given to such blackish people) are so dull and stupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to civil society: and yet so reverent of their *King*, that when they are in his presence, they never look him in the face, but sit flat on their buttock, with their elbows on their knees, and their hands on their faces. They use to anoint their hair with fat of Fishes, which makes them stink more wretchedly than they would do otherwise. Of complexion they are for the most part *Cole-black*, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South-side of the River *Senaga*, they are only *Tawny*; which the *Blacks* so much in love with their own complexion, that they use to paint the *Devil white*; which I find thus verified.

*The Land of Negroes is not far from thence,
Nearer extended to th' Atlantick Main;
Wherein the black Prince keeps his residence,
Attended by his jetty coloured Train:
Who in their native beauty soft delight,
And in contempt doth paint the Devil white.*

They have tried all Religions, but agree in none. Idolaters at the first, as others the Descendants of Cham: Afterwards it is said they received the Rites and Religion of the Jews, (but the time and occasion of it I do no where find); in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the last, Christianity prevailed in some Kingdoms of it. In the year 973. Mahometism began to get ground amongst them, by the diligence and zeal of some of the Preachers of that Law: the first who were seduced that way being those of Meli; after which Tombuto, and then Gualata, were infected with the same poyson also. In the end, all the rest of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of Borneo, some part of Nubia, and the Coasts of the Atlantic Ocean, which continue in their ancient Gentilism: Christianity being confined to a corner of Nubia (if still there remaining) and some few Garrisons belonging to the Crown of Portugal. And as they are of different Religions, so are they also of several Languages: those of Gualata, Guinea, Tombutum, Meli, and Gungoti, speaking the Language called Sungui; the Gulerioi, Canoter, Cheseña, and Gangreter, &c. that called Guber: Gualata, a language of its own: and those of Nubia, one resembling the Arabic, Chaldaean, and Egyptian.

Mountains of most note in it, in the former times, were those of 1 *Arualtes*, and 2 *Arangu*, and 3 that called *Deoram curru*; this last supposed to be the same which is now called *Punta de Lopes Gonfalez*, but that more probably, which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large *Prasmonitory*, thrusting

thrusting it self into the Sea; discerned afar off by the Sailor and the Country people, as well by reason of his height, teaching to the clouds, as the continual lightnings and thunders which do issue thence.

Rivers of most note, besides *Nile*, which watereth it on the East, is *Senaga*, or *Canaga*, which riseth out of the Lake of *Gunga*, supposed to be the same which *Ptolemy* calleth *Lacum-Cheloniadem*. And if so, then must this be the River *Giris* of which he saith that having fallen into that Lake and there swallowed up, is thence produced another River, whose name he telleth not; little inferior unto *Nyba*, for the length of its course, the variety of strange creatures which are bred therein, or the distinction which it maketh in the face of this Country: the people on the one side of it being Black, on the other Tawny; the soil on the one side very barren, on the other fruitful. In the end having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantic* by two great Out-lets: the *Niger*, a River better known to *Ptolemy* by name than nature; now found to have its rise from a great Lake, within two degrees of the *Equinoctial*; whence running Northwards for a time, he hideth himself under ground for the space of 60 miles together; when rising up again, and making a great Lake, called the Lake of *Borno*, the bendeth his course directly Westward; and taking in many less *Channels*, he reacheth the earth into many Islands, and at last falleth into the Sea. Of as long course, and the same wondrous nature as the River *Nilus*. For from the fifteenth day of June it overfloweth all the adjacent fields, the space of 40 days together; and in so many more, recolletheth his waters into their proper channels: the whole Country being indebted to these inundations for its fertility, which otherwise could be but small, (since the drinels of the soil can afford no exhalations, whereby clouds may be generated, and the earth refreshed with moistures, or revived with dews.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Prolomy*. 1 *Nigira*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, 2 *Panagra*, 3 *Malacath*, 4 *Anyath*, 5 *Thomnodacana*, 6 *Saluce*, and others to the number of 17 in all; situate all along the course of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the situation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the ancient Towns and People being quite defaced; we must look upon it now as it standeth divided at this time into several Kingdoms, as at the least in all, (some say many more) the chief of which are these that follow.

2. *ORA ANTEROSA*, a largetract of ground on the *Western Ocean*, extended from *Cape Blanco* to the River *Carnaga*, sandy and barren, but reasonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanaghi*, were accounted formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized since the *Portugals* and other *Christian* Nations began to trade there; of middle stature, complexioned between black and ash colour; great liars, very treacherous, poor and parsimonious, and very patient in extremis both of heat and hunger. The chief Towns, *1 Porto do Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*), and *2 Porto do Riscatto*, two frequented Havens, thus named occasionally by the *Portuguese*, at their first coming thither. 3 *Arguin*, a strong Fortrefs of the *Portugals*, situate on or near the Promontory now called *Cape Blanco*; and giving name unto some Islands, five or six in number, lying near unto it, called the *Isles of Arguin*; inhabited by a barbarous people, named the *Azanahays*, but of no great note. These coasts discovered first by the *Portugals*, Anno 1482. under the conduct of Prince *Henry*, son of *John* the first; or by his encouragement and directions.

² *QUALATA*, distant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of *Ora Antiochia* being interposed) is but a small Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with some Territories of ground and petty *Hamlets* belonging to them. Fruitful only in *Dates*, Mill, and Pulse; but of these two last no great abundance. The Inhabitants Cole-black, hospitable towards strangers to their power, but poor and miserable; without Laws, settled form of Government, Gentry and Judges.

3 *AGADEZ*, bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Deserts* of *Lybia*; the people of it generally given to grazing, their houses made of green boughs, which upon every change of Pasture they carry with them. So that we are to look for few Towns among them, but these moveable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the most part by *Merchants* *Strangers*, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremesen*. The Town well walled, the houses of a better building than the Country promiseth; the people civiller, and more fair conditioned than the rest of the *Negroes*, seated commodiously on a River which falleth into the *Senaga*, and by that means hath correspondence with the Ocean also. The King hereof a Tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, payeth him 15000 Crowns of Annual Tribute.

4 *CANO*, a large Province on this side of the River *CANAGA*, full of Woods, Mountainous, and in some parts Defart; but plentiful enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons, and Pomegranates, with good store of Cotton-wool. Well watered besides that great River, with some lesser Streams. Sufficiently populous, and stored with good Towns and Villages, the habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen; as the chief Town called *CANO* is of wealthy Merchants. This the Seat-Royal of their King, a *Tributary* also unto him of *TOMBO*, environed with a wall, built of a Chalk-stone, as most part of the houses are.

the *Amomum* of the Sina; *Amomum* being the name of a sweet perfume growing in *Assyria* and *Armenia*. But then it should be written *Sinamomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*; yet to give the greater credit to the former opinion, they of *Ormus* call it *Bar-China*, or the wood of *China*. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Æthiopia* it self; The people of it in old times were said to have been great *Astrologers*; the first ordainers also of sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were also noted to be very good *Archers*, and to draw the longest and strongest Bows of any Nation: the *Persian* Bow (though those the greatest of all *Asia*) being only three cubits long; but these of *Æthiopia* four. *Numitur etiam Æthiopes quatuor cubitorum arcibus*, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is said also by *Hierodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their *Arrows* small, but strong, for the most part poisoned; *Æthiops* also by *Hierodotus* *Vulgera*, as we find in *Claudius*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But *geminata venenis Vulgera*, as we find in *Claudius*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to spend our time too much upon these particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two strange things of this Country: 1 That the Air and Ground are so parching hot, that the people not only dare not go out of doors without shoes, but that they roast their meat also by setting it in the Sun. 2 That there is a Lake whole waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding salt and unpleasing; but at all other times most sweet and delicate to the palate.

This Country being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy* laid together, is but meanly populous, the *disposition* of the Climate, and the drie barrenness of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cause *Africa* is by *Strabo* compared to a *Leopard's* skin, the distance of whose Spots sheweth the difference of the Towns and habitations in those torrid Countries. A Country scarce in Wheat, but plentiful in Rice, Barly, Beans, Pease, and the like; they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all sorts, and infinite herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally, there is no Country under Heaven fitter for increase of Plants, and Living Creatures, if industry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are destitute of many necessary things, which otherwise the natural commodities of the Country would supply them with. For they have here great store of *Flax*, but make no Cloth; plenty of *Vines*, yet make no *Wine*, except it be to serve the palaces of the King and the *Patriarch*; abundance of *Sugar-canes*, and Mines of *Iron*, but know not how to make use of either unto any advantage. Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig Channels or trenches, to derive their waters to the rest of the land which want them; those Rivers almost choked with *Fish*, their Woods crammed with *Venison*, which they trouble not themselves to catch.

By this we may conjecture somewhat of the people also; Lazie and given unto their ease, ill clothed, and not much better housed; extremely inclined to *Barbarism*, destitute of all learning, not to be credited unless they swear by the life of their Emperours; they have a *Smith* equally with the Devil: their colour is generally Olive-tawny, excepting onely their King himself, who is alwayes of a white complexion, a wonderful prerogative, if true. This blackness of their bodies, by the Poet attributed to the burning of the world by *Phaeton*.

*Sanguine tum credunt in corpora summa vocatos,
Æthiopiūm populos nigrum traxisse colorem.*

Which may be Englished thus:

Their blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part,
The *Æthiopsians* grew so black and swart.

But the true cause hereof, whatsoever it be, may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we cometo *America*.

The *Christian* Faith was first made known in this Country, by the *Eunuch* of *Queen Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip* the *Evangelist*, and one of the *Seven*; more generally embraced by the pains and preaching of *St. Matthew* the Apostle hereof; but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the reign of *Abraham*, Anno 470. who in his life entituled himself the Defender and Propagator of the Religion of *CHRIST*, and after his death was generally honoured as a Saint. Suppressed in part by the coming in of the *Antiques* and other *Arabians*, it was again revived and more universally received than in former times, in the reign of *David* King of the *Axumite* *Æthiopsians*: who in a War against *Dumma* the King of the *Homerites* in *Arabia Felix*, solemnly vowed to the God of the *Christians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the victory: and so accordingly he did, sending his Ambassadors to the Emperour *Justinian*, for some Bishops and other learned men to instruct his people. The particulars of those Opinions wherewith they have since corrupted the purity of the true Religion, I find thus registred. 1 They use to circumcise their Children, both males and females; 2 They baptize the males 40, and the females 80 dayes after their circumcision; 3 After the receipt of the Sacrament, they are not to spit till Sun-set; 4 They profess but one Nature and one Will in *CHRIST*; 5 They accept only the three first General Councils; 6 Their Priests live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg; 7 They baptize themselves every *Epiphany* day in Lakes and ponds, because that day they suppose *Christ* to have been baptised by *John* in *Jordan*; 8 They eat not of those Beasts, which in the old Law are reckoned for unclean; 9 They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewish Sabbath*, equally solemn with the *Lords Day*; 10 They administer the *Encharist* to Infants presently after birth, equally solemn with the *Lords Day*; 11 They teach, that the Reasonable soul of man is derived from their parents by *seminial propagation*; 12 That Infants dying unbaptised, are sanctified in the womb, by virtue of the *Encharist* reparation; 12 That Infants dying unbaptised, are sanctified in the womb, by virtue of the *Encharist* reparation; And finally, they shew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they

they say, by the Apostles assembled at *Hierusalem* for that purpose; the Contents whereof they observe most solemnly. These are the most material points in which they differ from the Tendries of the *Catholic* Church. And there are other points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, as viz. 1 Admittit in both kinds; 2 Without either *Elevation*, or *Reservation*; 3 Rejecting magic images; and 4 Extreme *Unction*; 5 Allowing the first marriages to their Priests and Bishops; and 6 In renouncing all relation to the Church of *Rome*; who to the business of these Churches is a very stranger; and so hath been from the very first foundation of them. For it appears by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabick*, and translated into *Latine* by *Pisanus*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna*, as they called him) of these *Abassine* Churches, was in those times subordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacie by the Fathers, which were there assembled; and constantly ever since approved and practised by these Churches: in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembered before their own. To this Patriarch, by an ancient privilege belongeth the tenth place in the *Sessions* of all General Councils; the Archbishop of *Seleucia* (or *Babylon*) only interposing betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Hierusalem*. Elected by the *Abassine* Monks of *St. Antonies* Order remaining in *Hierusalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, (of which Order, and of whose jurisdiction he must always be) he is sent into this Country to take his charge: where in some points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal privilege with the Emperour himself; and in *Spiritual*, hath the sole power of excommunicating an obstinate sinner. All other Ecclesiastical Dignities, from the Bishoprick to the lowest Benefice, are conferred by the Emperour only.

The principal Mountains of it in the former times, had the names of 1 *Prionotus*, 2 *Iesus*, 3 *Monodactylus*, 4 *Gaurus*, and 5 *Mont Saturnum*; all of them in that part which was called *Trogloditica*: 6 *Garbala*, 7 *Elephas*, and 8 *Masse*, in the Isle of *Meroe*: the rest of the Country flat and level, or the hills not eminent. Rivers of most note, 1 *Astapus*, (now *Abanni*) arising out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena*. 2 *Astaboras*, now *Tacusi*; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3 *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whose Spring unprofitably sought for in the elder times, is now said to be out of the Lake *Zemire* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Equator*: whence passing through spacious Deserts, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms, he at last entereth into this. Here in some places struggling amongst broken Rocks, and left free passages, he falleth with such a wonderful noise into the Vallies beneath, that a Colony planted by the *Persians* near one of these *Cataracts*, (so they call those huge falls of his) were so dulled and deafened with the noise, that they were faine to abandon their habitations. Nor doth it only dull and deafen the neighbouring people, but the very hills do seem to tremble at the noise it maketh. Of which thus the Poet,

*Cuncta tremunt undis, et multo murmure montes,
Spumens invictis albescit fluctibus amnis.*

Which may be Englished in these words;

The noise the Mountains shakes, who roar for spite
To see th' unvanquish'd VVaves cloath'd all in white.

Of these *Cataracts* there are two most noted: the one called *Cataractes Major*, in the borders of this Country towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Phila*, and *Pseleus*, *Æthiopian* Cities; the other called *Cataractes Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syene* the last City of that Country towards this. So turbulent is this River amongst the Hills. And yet as terrible as these Falls are supposed to be, one may divers times see the Country people in a little Boat not able to contain above two persons, to venture down them without fear: appearing after they have been long tossed in the water, a great distance off, as if they had been shot out of an Engine. Nor is he of such quiet passage in the open Countries, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are faine to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels to receive his waters, which if not curbed and lessened by such wayes as these, might by some sudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in respect whereof the Sultans of *Egypt* have paid for long time to the *Abassine* Emperours, an annual tribute. Which when the Great Turk, supposing it a needless charge, had once denied: this people, by the command of their Emperour, did open their Sluces, and brake down the Dams: whereby the water fell so violently and so fast unto *Egypt*, that the Turk was not only glad to continue the tribute, but to give them great sums of money to make up their works. But others say, that this acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptian* Kings, not so much for keeping up the waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Abassine* Emperours should divert the Stream, and so deprive that Country of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are also said to be some Lakes of that poisonous nature, that whosoever drinketh of them, doth either immediately fall mad, or else is troubled for long time with continual *dreams*. Of which thus *Ovid*:

*Æthiopsque Lacus; quos si quis faucibus hausit,
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate soporem.*

Which may be paraphrased in these words:

Who doth not know the *Æthiopian* Lake?
Of which whoever drinks, his thirst to slake

Æthiops

Amara.

3 ANGOTE.

ANGOTE is bounded on the North, with *Tigremas*, on the West, with *Nilu*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Amara*; on the East, with *Dancali*, and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of Hills and Vallies, both extremely fertile, productive of the choicest fruits, and great herds of Cattel. The people eat but once in 24 hours, and for the most part make that meal in the night; their diet raw Venison, or smoked Beef: the money most in use amongst them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which cost of using Salt, Pepper, and the like, instead of money, was in former times amongst most people the onely battery, or way of exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glancus* golden Armour was valued at an hundred Kine, and *Diomedes* Armour at ten onely. Afterward in Justice commutative, it was deemed convenient, to have some common Judge, or valuation, of the equality or inequality of goods: the invention of which, the Jews attribute to *Cain*; the *Grecians* to *Hermodice* the wife of *Midus*, the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nummus*, or *pecunia* from *pecus*, because it was ordained by Law: *Pecunia*, either because in elder times the chief of their wealth consisted in Cattel, as now among the *Irish*; or from a Cow (*Pecus*) which was stamped on it: and *Moneta*, a monendo, as *Suidas* saith; because when the *Romans* stood in need of money, *Junio moneta*, *Junio* admonished them that they should use Justice; and there should be no want of money. To this Goddess, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worshipped it in the figure of a Woman holding a pair of Scales in one hand, and a Cornucopia in the other: by the Poets called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfitly, the greatness of her power considered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I find not much spoken of the Countrey in the way of story; nor meet I with the names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unless that 1 *Angote* it self, as also 2 *Augana*, 3 *Ginnamora*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may possibly be so called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4 AMARA.

AMARA hath on the North, *Angote*; on the South, *Damut*; on the West, it stretcheth towards the Nile; and on the East, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Countrey very plain and champion, little swelled with Hills, sufficiently fruitful, and well stored with all sorts of Cattel. The chief City of it called *Amara*, by the name of the Province, situate in the midst of the Empire, and though not much distant from the *Equator*, if not plainly under it, yet blessed with such a temperate air, such a fruitful soil, such ravishing pleasures of all sorts, that some have taken (but mistaken) it for the place of *Paradise*: So strangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and humane industry, have joyned their helps together to enrich and beautifie it.

But that which is the greatest Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, situate in a large and delightful plain: the bottom of the Hill in circuit 90 Miles, and a dayes journey high; the Rock so smooth and even (but lesser and lesser towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly polished: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through wop) that no wall can be more evenly polished: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the light; so easie of ascent, that one may ride up with great pleasure, and in the midst of the Ascent a spacious Hall, as it were: to rest in: the top it self is a large plain, 20 leagues in circuit, compassed with an high wall, to the end that neither man nor beast fall down upon any chance; beautified towards the South with a rising Hill, out of which issueth a sweet Spring, which watering the several Palaces and Gardens of it, uniteth it self into a Lake for the use of Cattel: the plain enriched with all sorts, both of fruit and grain; adorned with two magnificent Monasteries, in each of which are founded 1500 Knights of the Order of St. Anthony, a Religious Militia; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger sons of the Emperour are continually enclosed, to avoid sedition. They enjoy there whatsoever is fit for delight, or Princely education; and from hence some one of them, who is most hopeful, or best liked, is again brought out, if the Emperour die Sonless, to be made Successor. This Mountain hath but one ascent up, as before was said, which is impregnable fortified; and was destinate to this use, Anno 470. or thereabouts, by the Emperour *Abraham Philip*, advised hereunto, as he gave out, by an heavenly vision. In one of these Palaces is a famous Library, where-in are said to be many Books, which with us are either in part, or totally lost: as the Oracles of *Enoch*, with the mysteries which escaped the flood, being by him engraven on Pillars; the whole works of *Liwy*, and others. Which being heretofore translated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabick* Tongue (when having plundered all the most famous Libraries of the East and West, they burnt the Originals, out of a Plot to make that Language as renowned and as generally studied, as the *Greek* or *Latine*) are said by some good fortune to be here preserved.

5 DAMUT.

DAMUT hath on the North, *Amara*; on the West, *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Goiamy*; and on the East, the great Lake of *Barcena*, and some part of *Zanguebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Extior*. The Countrey plentifully furnished with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits and living Creatures of all sorts. For none more famed than for their *Slaves*, sold in great numbers into *Aravia*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, *India*; and much esteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in War, dexterity in buisness, but specially for their fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this cause placed

Goiamy.

placed in Offices of great trust and power, by many of the *Eastern* Princes: who using a tyrannical Form of Government, and not daring to trust the Sword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto places of Court, or Council; do for the most part arm these *Slaves*, and trust them also with the conduct of their chief affairs. A trust, in which they never falsified, or failed in a true discharge, but when presuming of their power, and those advantages which so great a trust and power had preferred to them; they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Bengala*; and kept it many years in a subjection of the *Abassin* *Slaves*; wherewith they still made up their numbers, till outed not long since by the *Great Mogul*.

The Oxen of this Countrey are said to be near as great as Elephants; their Horns so large that they serve as *Tankards* to carry, and as *Barrels* to keep either wine or water. Here is also said to be a kind of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wild, fashioned like an Horse, but no bigger than an As; but we must think these *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinoceros*, or else we shall very much mistake the truth of the matter. And for the people (to go them both over once again) they are for the most part *Gentiles*; some *Christians* intermix amongst them, who have sundry Monasteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the Principality of *Coucha*, said to have more Gold in it than all *Aravia*; a Mountain all of Gold, if the *Friars* say true. The people *Gentiles*, but the Prince not long since gained to the *Christian Faith*; into which he was baptized by the *Abbot* or chief Governour of the Monastery on the hill *Amara*: *Graden* the Emperour being his Godfather, by whom named *André*. And here they have an hill of great height, and very difficult ascent; from the top whereof they use to cast headlong such of the Nobility, as by the Emperours sentence are condemned to die. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom or this Principality, I am not able to resolve, unless, 1 *Damut*, and 2 *Coucha* may be two, and the two most eminent, as giving name to those Estates.

6 GOIAMY.

GOIAMY hath on the North, *Damut*; on the West, *Bagamedrum*; on the South and East, some Provinces of the other *Æthiopia*. The Countrey in the North parts full of *Deserts* and Rocky Mountains, in the residue plentifully furnished with all things necessary. Great store of Gold they find, but drossie; the people not knowing how to refine and purifie it; or loth here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way; for fear of drawing in the *Turks* and *Arabians*, to partake of the booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers, or rather *Torrents*, which come tumbling down the hills with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall, making a noise, not much inferiour to a clap of Thunder; and amongst other *Lakes*, two of special note, which for their greatness seem to be Seas; in which as some report, *Mermaids* and *Tritons*, or Men-fishes use to shew themselves; and out of which it is thought by others, that the Fountains of *Nilu* do arise; and both true alike. But past all doubt the *Abassins* themselves are of this opinion; and therefore in the title of the *Negaz*, (so they call their Emperour) he is termed King of *Goiamy*, with this addition, In which are found the Fountains of *Nilu*. Deceived alike in their opinion touching this particular, the Springs, or Fountains of that River being further South; though possibly having lost himself in these vast *Lakes*, and issuing hence into a more contracted Channel; he may be said to have a second birth from hence, though not the first. And these I take to be the *Lakes* which were discovered by the *Romans* in the time of *Nero*. Who following the delign of some other great Potentates, *Sesostrius*, *Cambyzes*, *Alexander*, and *Philadelphus*, in discovering the true Original of this famous River; employed to Centurions in that service; who aided in it by the then King of the *Æthiopians*, are said to have come at last unto certain great *Marishes* (most probably the lower and sedgey parts of these *Lakes* now mentioned) of whose extent the Inhabitants themselves were ignorant, nor possible to be discovered any further, the Weeds having so overgrown the Water, that there was no further passage to be made by Boat, and less by wading.

Between this Countrey and *Damut*, which we last passed thorow, is said to be a Province of *Amazons*, warlike and fierce, and very expert at the Bow; whose Queen knoweth no man, and by the rest honoured as a Goddess. These, they say, were first instituted by the Queen of *Saba*; as true, as that which some have added of the *Phoenix* visible in this Countrey, of *Griffons*, and of *Enyls* so big that they make a shadow like a Cloud. Which strange reports I have here added, to supply the defect of Towns and Cities, of which I meet not with so much as the naked names; as undiscovered places in our *Maps* and *Charts*, are filled up with *Monsters*.

7 BAGAMEDRUM.

BAGAMEDRUM, or *SAGAMEDRUM*, (for I find both names) lieth on the West of *Goiamy*; betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nilu*; and keeping all along the course of that River, as far as *Gnagere*, or *Meroe*, encountreth with the Southern point of *Barnagasso*. Some do extend it also beyond that Island, but making the whole length thereof but 600 miles, do confine themselves. The greatest Province of this Empire it may probably be, *ceteris hujus Æthiopie amplissimum*, as they say it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it must be 1500 miles, not 600 onely.

The Countrey plentiful in Mines of the purest *Silver*, which they cannot draw thence but by fire, which makes it run like long rods, or ropes of Metal. And yet as large and wealthy as they say it is; I am more to seek for Towns and rich Cities in it, than in the *Deserts* of *Libya*, or the sands of *Aravia*. Mer-

Since discovered
a Scotchman named
to be so.

Infinitely of Books

Barnagasso.

Merchants and Travellers for the most part go no further than the Sea-coasts of the Country: of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the In-lands; and of the Natives, such as have travelled abroad into other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant men, know little more of their own Empire, than the place they lived in. Or probably their best Cities not containing above a few houses, few of them so many, and those patched up of starch, dirt, and hurdles, (unless some of the Nobility, or wealthier Merchants are provided better;) they may have no greater reason to speak much of them; or to acquaint us with the names of such sorry places; as to indeed not worth the naming. Which I conceive to be the true condition of most, or all the In-land Towns in this large Empire.

8 BARNAGAS SQ. a hill

BARNAGNES, or BARNAGASSUM, hath on the West *Guaqere*, or the Isle of *Mero*; on the Southwest as some say, a point of *Begumdrum*; on the South, *Dangali* and *Adel*; on the East, the *Red Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it stretcheth towards *Egypt*; the Kingdoms of *Jesim* and *Sua*, possessed by the *Mahumans*, being interposed.

The Country very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well stored with pleasant Rivallets, besides the neighbourhood of the Red Sea on the one side, Nile and Abnakh on the other. Remarkable for a *Admannia* in the Western part of it, which being spacious in the beginning groweth thick by little and little, and then enlargeth it self again to a League in circuit. On the top thereof a Royal Palace, a Church, a Monastery, and two very large Cisterns, with a piece of ground able to entertain and keep 500 men. To be ascended one way only, and that by a certain mark; to which being come, they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets, to the top of all; not to be took by force, by reason of the impossibility of ascent: nor by long siege, or any extremity of Famine, in regard it yields provision enough to maintain it self. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province against *Turky* and *Moors*.

and *Moors*. It containeth besides *Barnagasso* it self, the two Provinces of *Cusila*, and *Dasila*; though rather subject to the Governour, or Vice-Roy of it, than parts and members of the same. Towns of most moment in the whole, 1 *Beroa*, or *Barma*, conceived by some to be the *Colony of Ptolomy*, the residence of the *Vice-Roy*, situate on a pleasant and fishful River. 2 *Zameta*, honoured sometimes also with the *Vice-Roy* preference; but rather as a retiring place in times of leisure, than a Town of strength. 3 *Suachen*, situate in an Island of the *Red Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richest Cities of the Eastern parts; and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, secured by nature from all storms, of smooth tides, full Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great ships of burden. Situate in a little Island, the whole circumference whereof it taketh up; insomuch that Vessels of all sorts, both within the Haven and without, do usually unlade themselves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the Ship-beaks serve for bridges. A wealthy and well traded Town both by Sea and Land, to which from the more In-land parts of the *Abassine* Empire, the Mountains open a safe passage for the carriage and re-carriage of their commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long since, with all the rest of the Country lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, or *Bassa*; whom in imitation of the *Romans*, they call the *Beglerbeg of Abassia*; as if by the possession of this small part of that Empire, they would entitle the *Grand Signior* unto all the rest. The Town conceived by some, to be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Opisium Sabaticum*, or rather *Sabatiticum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Succa* of *Pliny*, or *Succa* of *Pliny*, as *Pliny* calleth it, of the Ancient Writers. And some again will have it to be the *Succa* of *Pliny*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodites* (who are called *Succae* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whose part of the Country it is seated, and to which name it hath some resemblance. 4 *Bisum*, not far from *Erecco*, remarkable for a Monastery situate on the top of an high Rock, environed with dreadful Precipices upon every side; in which live 3000 *Monks*, eating by three and three together, in a common *Refectory*: this being the chief of six others in this Province of *Barnagasso*, the furthest not above 30 miles distant. For maintenance of whom, and a great number of poor Children which they daily feed, besides the riches of all the Mountain in which it standeth (fruitful and rich, and at least 30 miles in compass) they have many good Farms at the foot of the said Mountain, and an hundred small Villages appertaining to them, out of which they raise yearly great provision of Corn, and above 2000 head of *Cattel*; their Revenues out of *Tigremoon* being reckoned in. A Revenue able to maintain them and their Hospitality, in regard their *Novices*, or young *Monks* are sent abroad to earn their living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the husbandry of the house: the elder only being found at the charge of the Monastery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5 *Erecco*, another noted Port on the *Red Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a passage openeth through the Streets of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suachen*, conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolomy*, the *Adulonis* of *Pliny*, now in possession of the *Turks*, or at their command. 6 *Santar*, 7 *Gjabel*, 8 *Luccari*, and 9 *Abrach*, these four last in the Province of *Dasila*.

This Country at the present, and for long time past, is subject both to the Great *Negus*, or the *Presfigin* of *Ethiopia*, and the *Grand Seigneur* of the *Turks*; naturally subject to the one, and tributary to the other. Governed by a King of their own, whom they call *Barnagassu*, by the name of his Province, a Vassal and *Homager* to the *Ethiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly tribute of 150 of the best breed of Horses, besides some quantities of Silk, and some other commodities: but so ill neighboured by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay also to the *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa* resident at *Snacben*, 1000 ounces of Gold yearly for a *composition*. For the *Turks* having by the conquest of *Egypt* made themselves Masters of those Countries towards *Ethiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Ama-*
maluck

malneck Sultans; within short time (*viz.* An. 1558.) possessed themselves also of the Town of *Sinabuba* and the parts adjoining; made it the residence of one of their *Beglerbegs* or *Bassia's*, and gave him the title of *Beglerbeg of Bassia*, as before was said: Forgotten by the industrious Collector of the *Turkish History*, in his enumeration of the *Beglerbegs* or *Bassia's* of *Africk*. To this they added not long after all the rest of the Sea-coasts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after some short breathing made a further invade; in which they did to waste the Country, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagassian* (not being aided by the *Neguz*) to this *Composition*.

D. ngali.

9. DANGALI, & 10. DOBAS.

South and South-east of *Barnagasso*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI*, and *DOBAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red-Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahomedans* or *Arabian Moors*, both in continual enmity with the *Abissine* Emperours; and both of like nature, in regard of the soil, and people.

DANGALL hath on the North, *Barnagasso*; on the South, some part of the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the East, the *Red-Sea*; or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the West, *Dokas* before mentioned. It taketh up some part of the *Arabick Bay*, within the Streits of *Babel-Mandel*; and without those Streits, the greatest part of that spacious Bay, which anciently was called *Sinus Aualiticus*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Mofylon*, (neighbour'd by a noted *Empire* of the same name) now the Cape of *Docono*; neer unto which the Sea makes a little *Gulf*, and suddenly streitneth it self again; so as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve leagues broad. And in this *Channel* are five or six *Islands*, which hinder the passage; so as Sailors must have good experience to avoid the Rocks which lie neer those *Islands*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Bebuli*, or *Babel*, which gives name to the Streits of *Babel-Mandel*, a narrow Frith, opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* or *Indian* Ocean. 2 *Pella*, a well-frequented Port, conceived to be the same which *Strabo* calleth *Aniphila*; not found by that name in *Ptolomy*. 3 *Zagmani*, and 4 *Zama*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Læcea*. 5 *Docono*, neer the Cape so called, and therefore probably the *Mojylon* of the antient Writers. 6 *Dandali*, not far from the Sea-side, which gives name to the Kingdom. Nothing else memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great *Lakes*, wherein live *Crocodiles*, as in *Nilus*.

On the South-west of *Dangali* lieth the Realm of *DOBAS*, extended on the West to the borders of *Angote*. The Country large, containing twelve, or as some say, 24 several *Prefectures*: Of good Pasturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater lize than in other places, and those for number not easily matched in all this Empire. The people full professed Enemies of the *Christian* faith, that they suffer not any man to marry, till he hath killed twelve *Christians*. Some reckon them for *Tributaries* to the *Prete*, or *Neguz*; but it is only when they lift: so far from being *Contributions* towards the support of his estate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their Towns, 1 *Doba*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom. 2 *Bally*, upon the same River on which *Dobas* standeth, but more near the head.

II. ADEL.

ADEL is bounded on the North, with some parts of *Dangali*, and the *Red-Sea*; on the South, with *Adea*; on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Indian or Arabian Ocean*; on the West, with *Fatigar*: extended on the *Sea* coast from the Cape of *Docono*, to the Cape of *Guardafiu*, conceived most probably to be the *Aromata* of *Ptolomy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

• The Country plentiful of Fleth, Honey, Wax, Corn, Gold, and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, and many of those Sheep of such burdenned Fleeces, that their tails weigh 25 pounds: some Kine they have, which have horns like a Stag; others but one horn only, and that in the fore-head, about a foot and an half long, but bending backwards. The people inhabiting on the Sea-coasts, are of *Arabian* parentage, and of the *Mahometan* Religion; those towards the Inland Countries, of the old *Ethioppick* race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Zeila*, a noted Port-town, situate in or neer the place where *Ptolomy* placeth *Avallites*: stored with variety of merchandife, and yielding some representation of *Antiquity* in the building thereof, being *lime* and *stone*; materials not much used amongst them in these later times. Of great both beauty and esteem, till the year 1516. when sacked and burnt by the *Portugals*; before that time the most noted Empery of all *Athiopia* for the Indian trade. 2 *Barbara*, seated on the same Sea-coast, well frequented by Merchants, and possibly may be the *Mundi* or *Malao* of *Ptolomy*; neighbored by a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mount Fellez*. 3 *Mette*, another of the Sea-towns neer the Cape of *Guardafu* supposed to be the *Acané* of the Antient writers. 4 *Assam*, 5 *Selir*, and 6 *Bidar*, on the Sea-coasts also. 7 *Arar*, the principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Country formerly a member of the *Ethiopian Empire*, is of late grown to so great strength and reputation, that the Kings hereof have freed themselves from all tigns of subjection to that Crown, and think themselves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power by *Gradagna*, or *Gradameth*, who reigned here in the year 1540. by whom *Clandium* the *Neguz* was so overlaid, and his Country so destroyed by continual incursions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himself into the heart of his Eitates, and crave aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their assistance, and the help of their shor, he was twice victorious; yet in the third battel he was vanquished, and in the

Adel. the fourth, *An.* 1559. slain upon the place. This King accounted for a Saint by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual wars against the *Christians*, did so establish the affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it so well settled unto his Successors, that the *Abassine* Emperour hath ever since left it out of his *Titles*; though many other of those small Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial* *Stile*, in which he hath as little power as he hath in this. It is said also that in the battle wherein *Claudius* was slain, and his Army routed, consisting of 60000 Foot, and 5000 Horse of his own Subjects, besides the *Portugals*, the King of *Adel* got into his possession the greatest mass of *Coin* and *Treasure* that was ever seen. A victory obtained as well by policy as force: the *Abassines* being seldom fought with, or their Country waited and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the strict observance of their *Lenten Fast*, they were grown so weak, that they were not able to discharge their domestick businesses, and therefore most unable to resist a prevailing Enemy.

12. ADEA.

ADEA, or ABEX, as some call it, hath on the North, the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South and West, some parts of the *Abassine* Empire; on the East, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafu*, where it joyneth with *Adel*, along the greatest part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the reason of which name hereafter.

The Country plentifully fertile, shaded with Woods and spacious Forrests, and those Woods liberally furnished both with Fruits and Cattel; the *Champagne* Country not less fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other necessities, besides a great store of Horses. The people of an *Olive-colour*, in some places more inclined to black: Not clothed, but from the girdle downward; nor very well armed in time of war, but with poisoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original extraction, whose language they retain with some little difference in pronunciation.

Places of most observation in it. 1 *Aden*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, because the old residence of the Kings. 2 *Corsur* upon the Sea-coast, sometimes called *Opone*, then a noted *Emporie*, and situate near the Promontory called *Zingis extrema*. 3 *Azun*, and 4 *Zuzelle*, supposed to be the *Essina*, and *Tonica*, of the Ancient Writers. 5 *Magadaxo*, a petty Kingdom of it self; a wealthy and well traded Town, situate in a fruitful and delightful soyl, and neighboured by a safe and capacious Haven: much traded by the *Portugals*, whom bring from *Adere* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambata* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* commodities; which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abassine* Slaves, which last they value as the chiefest merchandize which this Country yieldeth. First built by some *Arabian Moors*, who flying from the King of *Laza* their mortal Enemy, under the conduct of seven brethren, came into these parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was said; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-coasts of both *Æthiopia*, as far as to the *Cape dos Corrientes*, which is somewhat to the South of the *Tropic of Capricorn*. The Kings hereof in former times, *Vassals* to the *Abassine* Emperour, to whom they paid an yearly tribute; this Kingdom still remaining amongst his titles: but since the taking of *Magadaxo*, made so obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Estate of the *Abassine* in it is but merely titular.

13. FATIGAR, & 14. XOA.

FATIGAR hath on the East, *Adel*, and some part of *Aden*; on the West, the little Realm of *Xoa*; on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Country *Champagne*, sufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furnished with pleasant and delicious fruits. Most memorable for a Lake of twelve miles in compass, on the top of a Mountain, well stored with Fish; from whence and from the rest of the Mountain issue many Rivers, which much enrich the Vallies and Fields adjoining. The chief Town hereof, (if any one be better than other) I conceive to be *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or so called from it.

Westward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of *XOA*, bordering West on *Amara*; Southward upon *Damus*; furnished with great store of Corn and Cattel, but not much beautified with Towns of any consideration. Nothing observable in the History, or Description of it, but that together with *Fatigar* and others of the mid-land Provinces, it hath continued constant in obedience to the *Abassine* Emperors, notwithstanding all those misadventures which have hapned to that Empire in these latter days.

15. BARUS.

ON the South-East of *Aden*, lieth the Province of *BARUS*, extended Eastward to some part of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and touching at the Western point, upon that of *Fatigar*. The soyl and people much of the same condition, with the rest of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Christians* for the generality in the mid-land parts. Those *Christians* subject (as the rest) to the *Abassine* Emperour; but he hath neither place of strength, or consideration in all the Country: those of most note. 1 *Brava*, once a Free Town, and governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*, by twelve Aldermen, or *Common-Councillors*, descended from the seven *Arabian* brethren by whom first built; the founders of *Magadaxo* also, as before was said. But now, together with 2 *Pate*, and 3 *Gogia*, all

all upon the Sea, made subject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken under the Conduct of *Tristan de Cunha*.

Besides these, there are many other Kingdoms mustered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the swelling vanity whereof we shall see anon) but of so little observation in the course of business, and so obscure in the esteem of such as have spoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to finde their names: and having found their names, to bid you not to seek for more; there being nothing else in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the body aggregated of these several Members, it was first planted, as is noted and proved elsewhere, by *Ludim* the son of *Mizraim*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the first Ages of time, but by an Error of *Josephus*: who giving too much credit to some *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the reputation of the *Jews* to the highest pitch, telleth us a story, how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moses*; the City of *Meroe* besieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands, by *Tharbis* the daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married to him. All this not only questioned, but rejected by discerning men, as a *Jewish* Fable, that hath no ground to stand upon in true Antiquity. With little better fortune, and as little truth do the *Æthiopians* tell the story of their own *Original*. By whom we are informed, that *Chus* the son of *Cham*, first reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom succeeded his son *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*: that from the death of *Dedan* till the reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the people lived in Caves and holes digged under the ground; as did the *Troglodytes*, an ancient Nation of this Country, in the times long after: that *Arac* first built the City of *Aruma*, and by that pattern taught them the use of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend is the story of *Maqueda* a Queen hereof, and fourth from *Aruch*; whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Testaments, for the *Royal Visit* which she bestowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Child by *Solomon* when she was in his Court, she was delivered of a Son, whom she caused to be called *Melech*, or *Mellech*; and at the age of 20 years, to be sent to his Father. By whom instructed in the Law, and circumcised, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into his Country, with *Azarias* the Son of *Zadok* the Priest, who had stolen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen resigned the Empire to her Son. His Successors afterwards called *David*, till *Indion* (as they call him) the Eunuch of Queen *Candace* returning home, baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the substance of the Legend, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Gospel.) That *Chus* planted in *Arabia* hath been shewn already, as also what absurdities must needs arise from supposing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore most probable it is, that this Country was first peopled by the Children of *Indim*, as before was said. To whom the *Abassines* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added: and in some tract of time be of such great power as to put their name upon the Country. For that the *Abassines* were originally an *Arabian* people, appears by *Stephanns*, one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Arrianus* (an ancient Author than himself) hath told us this, *'Abassini* *ἄρχοντες* *Ἀραβίας*. Another *Stephanns*, and he a very learned Grammarian and Lexicographer, hath, as he thinks, decided the controversy, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus* the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Æthiopians*: and for this cause hath sided us with this pretty *Criticism*, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Sameth*, must be rendered *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia*, when writ with *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controversy: it being evidently clear, that both *Sheba* the son of *Chus*, and *Sheba* the son of *Regma*, were originally settled in *Arabia*, as hath there been shewn; though I deny not but that some of the Posterity of *Chus* in those elder times, (before the coming over of the *Abassine* Nations) might either out of too much populosity, or desire of change cross over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up such part of this Country as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled, with whom conjunct at last, both in name and government. And for *Maqueda* (supposing that to be her name) she was doubtless Queen of the *Sabaans* in *Arabia Felix*; not of the *Æthiopians*, in the waste of *Africk*. For besides the longsomeness of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* by this Lady, would never have suffered *Egypt* to have layen in quiet, whilst *Sesuc* the King thereof made war upon *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon* also; and so by consequence his half brother. But to leave these uncertain Fables; the first action of moment which we meet with in unquestioned Story, touching these *Æthiopians*, is that which hapned betwixt them and *Cambyses* the *Persian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Persia*, conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Æthiopia* unto *Egypt* also. Upon this resolution, he sent Ambassadors to that King, to search into the passages of his Country, and discover his strengths; and by them sent a Tun of wine, some Bracelets, a purple habit, and a box of sweet Oynments, to present him with. Which Presents being tendered to him, he looked upon the Unguents and the purple Robe as too slight; and effeminate; th Bracelets he conceived to be bonds, or fetters, and openly laugh at them; as too weak to hold in a prisoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleased, and sorrowed that his Country yielded no such liquor. But understanding well enough what this *visit* aimed at, he gave the Ambassadors at their parting, (amongst other gifts) an *Æthiopian* Bow of great length and strength; requiring them to tell their Master, that until every *Persian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the *Persian*, as before was noted) it would be no safe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cause to thank the Gods for giving the *Æthiopians* so contented minds, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from *Egypt* by vast Mountains, we finde them not looked after by the *Macedonians*. Nor had the *Romans* meddled

Adea.

medled with them, had they not been provoked by *Candace*, the Queen hereof, during the Empire of *Augustus*: who having made a War on Egypt, was by *Petronius*, Governour of that Province, brought to such conformity, that she was fain to sue for peace, and to purchase it with the loss of some part of her Country. To keep them quiet for the future, *Phile* an *Æthiopian* City, but on the borders of Egypt, is made a Garrison for the *Romans*, and the Seat of their *Deputy* for these parts: held by them till the Empire of *Dioclesian*, and by him abandoned, because the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the *Æthiopian* Kings were reckoned of as friends to the *Roman* Empire: in so much as *Justinian* sent unto *Heliophem*, as *Justin* his Successour did unto *Archetas*, the then Kings of this Country; so, crave their brotherly assistance against the *Persians*.

Of their Conversion to the Faith in the reign of a second *Candace*, (unless as *Pliny* thinketh, *Candace* was the general name of all their Queens) we have spoke already. To which the *Æthiopians* add, that after the baptizing of their first *Philip* (the Son of that *Candace*) by the hands of the *Eunuch*, the Emperours succeeding had the name of *Philip*; Till the religious life of *John*, a Cotemporary of the Emperour *Constantin*, honoured as a Saint after his decease, made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of *John* prefixed that of *Presbyter*, because (as they affirm) he executeth as well the *Sacerdotal* as the *Regal* Office; *Rex idem hominum, Divinusque Sacerdos*, the very *Anima* of the Poet: And this so commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Prester John*, and his Estate the Empire of *Prester John*, with nor truth at all. Others more probably conceive, that this vulgar name of *Prester John*, is but a corruption, or mistake for *Præstarian* or *Precious John*, and that the word *Prete* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no less. And yet I more incline to those, who finding that the Word *Prestegan* signifieth an *Apostle*, in the *Persian* tongue; and *Prestegani*, an *Apostolical* man; do thereupon infer that the title of *Padescha Prestegiani*, an *Apostolick* King, was given unto him for the *Orthodoxie* of his belief. Which not being understood by some, instead of *Prestegiani*, they have made *Priest John*, in Latine *Presbyter Johannes*: as by a like mistake, one *Tregent* (or *Prægian* as the French pronounce it) Commander of some Gallies under *Leuw* the 12th. was by the English of those times called *Prior John*. *Prestegian* then, not *Priest John*, is his proper adjunct; contractedly, but commonly called the *Prete*, by the Modern French, who usually leave out *s* before a consonant. Their Empire greater heretofore, than it is at the present, shrewdly impaired of late times by the *Turks*, and *Arabians*: of which the first have taken from him all his Country, from the Isle of *Mero* unto Egypt, with all the Sea-coasts of *Barnagasso*; the later as much encroaching on them, on the rest of the *Maritime* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they suffered more, than the Kings of *Adel*; who have divers times laid waste their Country, discomfited some of them in the open Field, and in the year 1558. slain their King in battel; Not cured of those wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who succeeded *Claudius* that was slain in battel, was so far from being able to revenge the death of his Predecessour, that being suspected to incline to *Mahometanism*, he was defeated by the under-King of *Barnagasso*. Since which time they have so languished by intestine dissensions, that though *Alexander* the third (if there were ever such a King, which I find much doubted) is said to have settled his affairs by the aid of the *Portugals*; and that some strange successes have been since reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Estate hereof hath been so imbroyled in civil Wars, and so many of their Emperours successively murdered, that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakened, and the Country made a prey to impuissant Enemies. For in the year 603. the Emperour *Alelech Gogad*, who succeeded in the Throne by the depolition and imprisonment of his Predecessour (under colour of bastardy) was not long after slain by one *Zexelezens*; and *James*, or *Jacob* advanced unto the Empire: *James* not long after vanquished, and slain in the Fields of *Guera*, by one *Sazinofius* (contractedly by some called *Susneas*) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for their safety. What became of the two eldest I have nowhere found. The youngest called *Zaga Christos*, after many hazardous wanderings, and accidents, arrived at last into Italy, and thence he came to *Paris*, An. 1638. where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being restored to the Throne of his Fathers; For *Sazinofius*, or *Susneas*, immediately upon the victory had possessed himself of the whole Empire; though for a time so terribly disquieted with Treasons and Conspiracies, that in the year 1607. he was fain to sue for aid to the King of *Spain*, and tender a submission of the *Abassine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the spirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not so easily be laid down (though there followed a long calm between) but that it brake out again within few years after (that is to say, about the year 1628) more violently then it did before: a powerful Rebel starting up, who followed by an Army of 50000. had questionless dispossessed the *Prete* of his whole Dominions, if not prevented and discomfited beyond expectation. For it hapned that one *Vermile* a Frenchman, a Jeweller by Trade, but exercised in the wars of *Holland*, understanding that the *Abassine* Emperors was much delighted with the rarities and Jewels of *France*, found means to convey himself into the Court, where understanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels in the Arts of war, he gat leave to have the disciplining, or training of 8000 men, with which small Army he utterly discomfited and routed that vast body of Rebels, and was thereupon deservedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the last news of any certainty that hath come from thence: (it being An. 1634. in which that victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of some new commotions, An. 1648. the particulars and truth whereof must be sought elsewhere.

Yet notwithstanding these disasters, these later Emperours have still preserved their Majesty amongst their Subjects, whom they hold in servitude enough, though they keep not such a distance as in former Ages,

Ages; when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and used to throw himself but thrice in a year; viz. on *Christmas*, *Easter*, and *Holyrood* day: by which retiredness it was thought that he made his presence more acceptable; some holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majesty of a King, than to make himself too common an object for the eye of the vulgar. The like kinde of state was once kept by those Kings of *France* of the first *Merovignian* line; who withdrawing themselves from all publick affairs, used only to shew themselves (as we have already said) on *May-day*. A greater retiredness than this, was that which *Pellada* Queen of the *Tentieri* (a people of the *Rhene*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have used; for when the rest of the *German*s then in arms, sent Ambassadors to her, to inform her of their victory against the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to speak to her, or to see her; *Arcebant aspectu, quo venerationis plus inesse*. Such a keeping of state, the polick Prince *Tiberius* used, when the *German* Legions mutined; for he daigned not himself to see them pacified, but sent his Son; the reason was; *quia majestati major è longinquo reverentia*. And no doubt the same keeping of distance wayed much with him, when he forsook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Caprea*: though I deny not, but a propension to follow his unnatural pleasures the more securely, together with his deformities on his face, had also their powers upon his resolution.

The title of this great and mighty Emperour, (but neither so great, or mighty in power, as title runneth thus: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of G O D, the Pillar of Faith, sprung from the stock of Judah, the son of David, the son of Solomon, the son of the Columnne of Sion, the son of the seed of Jacob, the son of the hand of Mary, the son of Nahu after the flesh, the son of St. Peter and Paul after the spirit; Emperour of the higher and lesser Æthiopia, and of the most mighty Kingdoms, Dominions, and Countries of Xoa, Goa, Caffares, Fatigar, Angora, Balignazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, where are the Fountains of Nile, Amara, Banguamedron, Ambea, Vangucum, Tigremaon, Sabaim, the birth-place of the Queen of Saba, Barnagassum; and the Lord of all the Regions unto the confines of Egypt*.

It seemeth by this title, that these *Æthiopian* Emperours, however the truth of it may goeth, conceive themselves to be sprung from *Solomon*, and *Maqueda*, (or *Nizaula*, as *Joseph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by some reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the same with those of the Tribe of *Judah*, which are a *Lyon Rampant* in a field Or: and that the Motto of them is to this effect, viz. *The Lyon of the Tribe of Judah shall overcome*. But *Barn*, an expert Herald, giveth this Prince no such Coat-armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a cross portate *Mars*, charged with a crucifix *Sol*, between two scourges of the second. And yet not altogether to discredit the old Tradition, so generally received amongst them; it may be probable enough, that when the *Abassins* came into *Æthiopia*, some of the *Sabeans* their next neighbours came along for company, and amongst them some of the Royal race of the Queen of *Sheba*; with some of which, by reason of their great Nobility, some of the *Abassine* Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impossibility, but that *Solomon* (considering his course of life) might get a son upon the body of that Queen, from whom the *Æthiopian* Princes might be thus descended.

As for the Government of these Emperours, it is absolutely *Regal*, or to say better, perfectly *Despotical*: the people being treated by them more like slaves than subjects; taking away *Signeuries*, and giving them unto whom he pleaseth, the deprived party not daring to expresse the least discontent. By them so revered, that it was antiently a custom, if the King were blinde, or lame, or maimed, for the subject to inflict on his own body the like impression: still had in so much honour by the greatest subject, that at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his *Pavilion* as they pass by, though he be not in it. He on the other side, seldom appeareth to his subjects, but with his *Crown* upon his head, and a *Silver-Crucifix* in his hand; his face then covered with a piece of *Watchet-Taffata*, which he lieth down, and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his Forces and *Revenues*, some of our late Observators speak nothing but wonders. Some say his Empire reacheth from the *Red-Sea* to the *Atlantic* Ocean, and from one *Tropic* to the other: Some, that he is of so great Riches, that he is able to purchase a moiety of all the world; if it were to be sold; others, that he is able to raise for any present service, a Million of men. And he himself is said to have offered to the *Portugals*, one Million of money, and another of men, if they would employ it in a war against the *Infidels*. But notwithstanding these great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be such a *Miracle*, as some of these Reports have made him. For they that speak most knowingly of his *Revenues*, affirm that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being discharged, he coffereth up but three Millions of Crowns per annum; which is no great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of war and trouble, will be easily waited, or brought into a narrower compass. And yet to make up this *Revenue*, besides the Crown Lands, or *Demain Imperial*, he layeth some *Tax*, or other upon every house, receiveth the tenth of all that is digged out of their Mines; and levieth on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaseth to chuse, so it be not that in which the Lords themselves inhabit.

This though it be no great *Intrado*, considering the large extent of his Dominions, and form of his Government; yet it is greater in proportion than his Forces are. For notwithstanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag, of raising a Million of men for present service; it is well known that he was never able to advance half that number, in his greatest necessity; and amongst those whom he can raise, there are but few who can deserve the name of Souldiers. For the people being poor and beggerly, and brought up in a servile and base condition; are naturally destitute of that courage and alacrity of spirit, which should be in men professing Arms, or fit for noble undertakings; and are besides, on certain jealousies of State, so diffused from war, that they know not how to use their weapons when there is occasion.

sion. So that for my part I consider him as a weak and *impotent* Prince, of no authority, or influence out of his Dominions; nor able to defend himself from the continual incursions of his Neighbours (some of them mean and petit Princes) which lie nearest to him. *Land-locked* on every side from Traffick and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon Nothward by the *Turks*; confronted on the West, by the King of *Borneo*, who possesseth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the East, continually bearded and baffled by the King of *Adel*, sometimes a *Vassal* of his own; and on the South, with the *Galle*, a barbarous Nation of the other *Æthiopia*, who lay all waite before them wheresoever they come; and finally in these later times by his own Subjects also. Injuries not to be indured, had he power to help it.

But the chief Stay of this Estate, is an *Order of Knighthood*, entituled by the name of *St. Antony*, to which every Father that is of the Degree of a Gentleman, is to destinate one of his sons, if he have above two, but not the eldest. And out of these they cull about 12000 Horse, which are to be the standing Guard of the Emperours person: their Oath is, To defend the *Frontiers* of the Empire, to preserve *Religion*, and to make head against the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbots* of this Order (for it is partly *Religious*, partly *Military*) live in the Mountain of *Amara*; where they have two *Monasteries*; as well for the training up of these Knights in the time of their youth, as their *retirement*, when grown old and discharged from service.

The Arms of this Empire we have seen before.

And so much for ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

OF

OF ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulf of *Arabia*, to the Southern Ocean) on the West, with the *Æthiopic Ocean*; on the North, with *Terra Nigritarum*, and the higher *Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Corner*, with the Main Ocean parting it from the Southern undiscovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reason before delivered; *Inferior* was added for distinctions sake, because somewhat of a lower situation than the other is. By *Strabo* called *Æthiopia Interior*, because lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge than the neerer did: and by late writers for the contrary reason, called *Æthiopia Exterior*, because situate without and beyond the other.

It comprehendeth all *Ptolomies* *Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia sub Ægypto*, and all those lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of *Terra Incognita*. The Country so little discovered in those elder times, that we find mention only of some eminent Mountains, as 1 *Canchis*, 2 *Lon*, 3 *Ziphia*, 4 *Barditis*, 5 *Moschi*, one only Region known by name, called *Agisimba*, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a large extent. The people not distinguished here, as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kind of diet; some of them being called *Anthrophagi*, from their eating of men, and others *Ichthyophagi* from their living on fish. Of these, the first inhabited on the Eastern shores, near the Bay of *Barbaria*; the principal of which had the name of *Rapiti*: the last on the shores of the Western Ocean, near *Magnus Sinus*, or the Great Bay; called also from their Western situation, by the name of *Hesperii*. Nothing else told us of these parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the *Lakes* or *Fens* of *Nilus*, were occasioned by the great abundance of snow, which fell from the Mountains of the *Moon*: and that in many parts hereof, there were *Rhinoceros*, *Tygers*, *Elephants*, but these last all white.

Such was the face of this Country in those elder days. The Character of it at the present, generally and in brief, is thus given by *Aubanus*, viz. That it is *mountainous* in the West, *sandy* in the midit, and *desart* towards the East. But for the several qualities of the soyl and people, being of very different tempers; we shall give the better description of them in their several *inclosures*, than as presented thus in *common*. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills, and Rivers, of most reckoning in it; the principal of their Mountains are 1 those called *Camaberes* in the Province of *Angola*; 2 *Luna Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopia*s, now found to belong to this alone. A chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the *Tropic of Capricorn*; full of sharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and savage People: the *Valleys* underneath of so great a depth, that they seem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Country is the Lake of *Zembre*, so much renowned for giving birth to the greatest Rivers of the world; though it self but 50 miles in compass. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1 *Nilus*, which passing through some part of this Country, and travelling the whole length of the *Assian* and *Egyptian* Empires, endeth its long course in the *Mediterranean*. 2 *Zaire* the greatest of all *Africa*; but unknown to the Antients, which running Westward through the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the lesser streams of 1 *Vamba*, 2 *Barbela*, 3 *Coanza*, 4 *Lelunda*, makes many Islands in his way; and at the last by a mouth of 28 miles wideness disgorgeth his full stotack in the Western Ocean. 3 *Cuama*, which making his passage towards the East, and much increased by the addition of six great Rivers; after a long course of 700 miles (in all which it is navigable) loseth it self in the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean; and 4 *Fluvium Spiritus Sancti*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*, which shaping a course opposite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in conclusion in the Southern Seas. It is divided most properly into these four parts, that is to say, 1 *Zanguebar*, 2 *Monomotapa*, 3 *Casraria*, 4 *Manicongo*. Some also add the Country of *Aian*, subdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel*, and *Ades*. But these we have ascribed, with better reason, to the other *Æthiopia*, within the bounds whereof they are wholly situate.

I. ZANGUEBAR.

ZANGUEBAR, or ZANZIBAR is bounded on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, or the *Indian Ocean*; on the West, with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*; on the North, with the higher *Æthiopia* only; on the South, with *Monomotapa*. The reason of the name I find not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agisimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia Interior*, and in so much of the other also as lieth on the South of the River *Rapiti*; now called *Quilimanci*, by which parted from the Kingdoms of *Adel*, and *Ades*. The Country on both sides of that River, known in old times by the name of *Barbaria*, giveth to a large adjoining bay the name of *Sinus Barbaricus*, and was much famed in those elder times, for the best sort of *Myrrh*: the *Myrrha Trogloditica*, and *Myrrha Barbara*, or *Barbarica*, being used for the same, by some of the Antients; because the *Troglodites*, and the people of this *Barbaria*, joyned on one another. Here was also in those elder times a good race of *Ginger*, of which saith *Discorides*, *Μάκας φλοιὸς ἐν τοῦ ἑλίου ἐν τῷ Βαββαῖν*, that it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbaria*. Where by the way, the *Scholiast*, upon that Author, and *Pliny* in the 12. Book, have been much mistaken; of which the first takes this *Barbara* or *Barbaria* for some part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh that the *Myrrha* of these parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the drossiness and coarseness of it.

Mombaza. as if so called only because unrefined. The principal Town hereof called *Rapta*, by the name of the River, seated not far from the Sea; and by reason of the great Trade of it, esteemed the Metropolis of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolemy*. A noted Promontory of the same name was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called, the Country is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflowed with unruly Rivers; and withal so full of Woods and Forrests; that for want of passage for the wind, the air is generally (as in all Fenny Countries of the like obstruction) exceeding pestilent. The people of complexion black, and of curled hair; *Mahometans* on the Sea-coasts; in the In-land parts *Idolaters*; extremely given to Witchcraft, and Divinations. Naked above the waite, and beneath covered only with the skins of beasts, or some such mingled colour stuffe, as the *Scottish Plaid*. The *Mabrs* which dwell on the Sea-coasts, use to adventure on the Seas in little Vessels, sowed together with leathern thongs, and calked with *Gum*; having no other sails in them than the leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of a slight making, as those used antiently by the *Britans*, whereof thus the Poet:

*Primum cana salix, madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim; casaque induta juvenco
Velloris patiens, tumidum supercunat Amnem.*

Which I finde thus rendred to my hand:
The moistned Oser of the hoary Willow
Is woven first into a little Boat;
Then cloath'd in Bullocks hides, upon the Billow
Of a proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to say, 1 *Melinde*, 2 *Mombaza*, 3 *Quiloa*, 4 *Mosambique*, 5 *Sofala*, all along the Coasts; 6 *Moehemage*, 7 *Corova*, 8 *Calen*, 9 *Anzuga*, 10 *Monza*, 11 *Badin*, 12 *Mombra*, 13 *Mombico*, 14 *Embroe*, and 15 *Macaos*, more within the Land. Of the nine last, not being perfectly discovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we shall now be silent. But the first six lying upon the shores, or near it, and consequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like *Adventurers*, shall be surveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of *Adea*, in the *Higher Ethiopia*, from which parted by the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimanci*: so named from *Melinde*, the chief City of it, well walled, and feared in a fruitful and delightful soyl; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Flesh, Limons, Citrons, and most sorts of fruits; but not well furnished with Corn, the greatest part whereof is brought out of *Cambasia*, a Province of *India*. The houses built of lime and stone, after the manner of *Europe*. The Inhabitants on the Sea-coasts, of *Arabian* breed, and of that Religion; those of the In-lands, which are of the original Natives, for the most part *Heathens*. Most of them of an Olive-colour, but inclining to white; the Women generally of as white complexions as in other places; but they have some black people also. And all of them more civil in their habit, course of life, and entertainment in their houses, than the rest of this Country. Great friends unto the *Portugals*, and befriended by them, ever since the kind entertainment which they gave unto *Vasques de Gama*; whom they furnished with *Pilots* to direct him in his way to *India*, when first discovered by that people, *An. 1497*.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of these perit Kingdoms, of the same nature for the temper of the soyl and people, that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombaza* the chief City of it, situate from *Melinde* about 70 miles, in a little Island of 12 miles compass; but of good influence on some part of the Continent also. The Isle and City said to have some resemblance unto the *Rhodes*. The Town about a league in circuit, environed with a wall, and fortified with a Castle; the streets thereof very narrow, but well built, most of the houses being brick, and the *Mosques* capacious. The King hereof a *Mahometan*, as are most of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the *Christians*. For which cause, and upon some discourtesies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vasques de Gama*, *An. 1500*. but abandoned again by reason of the unhealthy air, not well agreeing with the constitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards having taken in *Alibeg* and five *Turkish Gallies*, sent thither, *An. 1589*. by the *Portugal Vice-Roy* residing in *Goa*; there being taken at that time (besides the spoil of the City) all the *Turkish Gallies*, and in them 23 greater, and as many lesser Pieces of Ordinance. Such of the *Turks* and *Citizens* as escaped the slaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themselves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Imbians*, a man-eating people, who had before besieged the City; and gathering up such gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King, and as many of the principal *Citizens* as they could get into their hands. 2 *Ampaza*, the second Town of note, was taken by the *Portugals*, about two years after.

3. *QUILOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Country rich and pleasant, the Inhabitants for the most part of *Arabian* Ancestry; of complexion near unto a white: their women comely, sumptuous in attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their houses, which are generally well built and richly furnished. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whose honour they are very tender) the people of this *Quiloa* are said to have a strange custom amongst them, more to be mentioned for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the sowing up of the private passages of nature in their female Children, leaving only a small vent for their urine. Thus sowed, they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be married. And she that is by her Husband found to want this sign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kinde of ignominy sent back to her Parents, and by them as disgracefully received.

It

It took this name from *Quiloa*, the chief Town thereof, situate in a little Island, but neer the shore, *Mosambique*, from which parted by a narrow *Fryth*, opposite to the mouth of the River *Corova*, by some called *Quiloa*. First built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*, by *Ali*, the son of *Sultan Hishen*; who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, because their Mothers were *Persians*, and his an *Abassine*, sought new Adventures in these parts, and bought this Island. His Successors grown rich and powerful by the trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land: and so adorned *Quiloa*, the chief Town of their Kingdom, that for sumptuous and magnificent buildings, there were few like it in those parts. Proud of their many good successes they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom under the conduct of *Vasques de Gama*, *An. 1500*. the City itself was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave some Fortresses erected by them in convenient places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a quarrel with *Abraham*, then the King of this Country; whom in the year 1505. they deposed from his Kingdom, and placed another in his Throne, under colour of not paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* rose in Arms, displaced their new King, demolished their Fortifications, and sent them to learn better moderation in their prosperous Fortunes, *An. 1509*. The business coming after to composition, the *Quiloa* covenanted for the yearly Tribute of 1500. Marks of Gold paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quiloa*. So called of *Mosambique* the chief City of it, situate in a little Island, the principal of three; opposite all of them to the mouth of the River *Moghincats*, and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Prassum*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*, and by him made the furthest known place of all this Coast. In the Island there are said to be sheep whose tails are 25. pound weight, as in other places of these Countreys and some parts of *Syria*; Hens, black in feathers, flesh, and bone; and if fodder, make the water as black as ink, but yet sweeter in taste than any other. Of Pork good store, the more, because the people are for the most part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all Hog-meat is forbidden. The in-land parts more barren, but very populous: so ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* first came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they sold fifteen Kine; and then fell out among themselves, who should have the Bell. The Town conveniently seated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very strong Castle, in the hands of the *Portugals*: who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, use to call in here, and fit themselves with all things necessary to pursue their voyage. A Town of so great wealth and trading, that the Captain of the Castle in the time of his Government, (which continueth only for three years) is said to say 300000 *Ducats* for his Lawful gains, out of the Gold that cometh from *Sofala*. A gain so great, that at the end of his three years, he is to serve for three years more at some place or other of the *East-Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return to his native Country. Such of that Nation as are suffered to inhabit here, are enjoined to be married, to the end the Island should be well peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwise perhaps might have few else in it, but the Garrison Souldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants.

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Mosambique*, from which parted by the River *Caama*, the greatest River of those parts, and thence extended to the Mountains which they call *Manica*, by which separated from *Monomotapa*. So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it; situate in a little Island (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoining. Both Town and Island subject unto the power of the *Portugals*; who have a Fort, the better to secure the *Factory* by them here erected, one of the richest in the world; the People bringing hither great quantity of Gold (of which they have most plentiful Mines) which they exchange with them for their cloth, and other commodities. It is supposed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two Millions yearly. The supposition so agreeable to all other circumstances, that little question need be made of the truth thereof. Inasmuch as this Country for its abundance of Gold and Ivory, is by some thought to be that land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* sent; and of this opinion *Ortelius* in his *Thesaurus* was the first Author; but in my minde, upon no probable conjectures, and against very strong presumption. For first, *Ophir* the son of *Ishtar*, of whom mention is made in the 10. of *Gen. vers. 29*. and from whom the land of *Ophir*, in all likelihood took its name, is in the next verse said to have planted in the East: whereas this *Sofala* is situate South-west from *Chaldea*; in which the confusion of Tongues, and dispersing of the People, began. And secondly, it is impossible for the Navie of *Solomon* which lay at *Ezion Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*, to have spent three years in coming hither, and returning: which we finde to have been the usual time of finishing the voyage to *Ophir*, 1 *King. ch. 10*. *Ophir* then is some part of *India*; But whether it were the Island of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*; or one of the *Molucco*'s, or the land of *Malacca*, called by the Ancients *Anrea Chersonesus*, I dare not determine; considering what worthy men maintain these several opinions.

6. *MOEHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only inland Province of any note, hath on the East *Mombaza*, and *Quiloa*; on the West, the famous River *Nilus*; on the North, some part of the Dominions of the *Abassine* Emperours; on the South, *Mosambique*. The Country very plentiful of Mines of Gold, yet the People use it not for money; but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and *Taffatus*, with which they use to cloath themselves from the Girdle downwards; Instead of money, they make use of Red Counters, much resembling Glass. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacy with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are also subject a wild and cruel people, called *Agas*, inhabiting on the Lake *Zemba*, and the banks of the *Nilus*; dispersed about the fields in their homely cottages, black, *Cannibals*, and of an horrible aspect; more horrible than otherwise they would be, by drawing lines upon their cheeks with an Iron-Instrument, and forcing their eye-lids to turn backwards. By the assistance of this people, the

Monomotapa. the King of *Monomotapa* hath hitherto preserved his Estate against the King of *Monomotapa*: and they themselves by some of their own Leaders did so distress the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a small Island, where he hardly escaped a violent and untimely death, most of his people being starved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the rest of these Provinces, we can say but little; and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the most part from one another, both in speech and behaviour; each Village under a several King, and each in continual quarrel with its next neighbours; whom if they overcome, they eat. At leisure times they live by hunting, and the flesh of Elephants. And amongst these, but more upon the borders of the *Abassine* Empire, I place the *Galla*; a Nationless Nation, as it were, without house or dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agags* (whom some call *Jagge* or *Giacqui*) are affirmed to be; who watching their advantages, and joyned together in some Arts of doing mischief, have made of late such desolations in the Countries of the *Presbyter-John*.

2. MONOMOTAPA.

MONOMOTAPA, BENOMOTANA, or BENOMOTAXA (for by all these names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Chama*, by which and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*; on the West, and South, by the River of the *Holy-Ghost*, by which separated from *Casraria*; and on the East, by the main Ocean. So that is almost an Island; said to contain in compass 750 *Spanish* leagues, or 3250 *Italian* miles.

The Air hereof is said to be very temperate, and the Country very good and pleasant, yet full of Forests. Well watered, besides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1 *Panamé*, 2 *Lunga*, 3 *Arruga*, 4 *Mangeano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their sands. By means whereof, it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great store of Pottage; on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beasts very large and great: such store of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reason, but to make Merchandise of their Teeth: their Gold Mines great and small, reckoned to 3000; some in the hills of *Magnice*, others in the Province of *Matuca*, and *Boro*: the places where the Mines are, known without further Art in the discovery of them, by the dryness and barrenness of the soil; as if nature could not hoord up gold in her spacious bosom, but she must need be barren of all good works.

The People are of meane stature, and black complexions; but strong and active, courageous, and of such footmanship, that they run on Horses. Their Apparel *Cotton-Cloth*, which they make or buy from some other place: their Diet *Flesh, Fish, Rice, Mill*, and an Oil called *Susman*. Their Religion, *Paganism* for the most part; yet they worship not Idols, but believe in one God only, which they call *Mozimo*; and seem not much averse from the *Christian* faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They punish nothing more severely than *Witchcraft, Adultery*, and *Thief*: and in the punishment of *Delinquents* they use no Prisons, but execute them as soon as apprehended; which is the reason that the *Vulgar* have no doors to their houses, that being a privilege for the Nobles. They may have as many Wives as they will, but the first the principal, and her Children only to be heirs: the women here very much respected (as a second *England*) the Emperor himself, if he meeteth any of them in the streets, giving them the way. Not to be married, till their *Menstrua* or Natural purgations testify their ability for conception; and therefore they solemnize the first *Flux* thereof with a liberal Feast.

Provinces of most note in it, and adjoining to it, but reckoned as Members of this Empire, are

1. *Matuca*, rich in Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botonghi*; who though they dwell between the *Line* and the *Tropic*, have in the winter such deep snows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not speedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy Ghost*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corvientes*, (*Caput Currentium* in the *Latines*) wealthy in far pastures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her unexhaustible Mines of Gold. Most memorable for a large, and in those times an impregnable Fortress, built formerly by some foreign Prince to secure the Mines; built of square stones, and every stone of marvellous greatness, without any sign of cement or other mortar; the walls hereof 25 spans thick, but the height not answerable; over the Gate certain characters written, which the most learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of some of the *Ethiopian* or *Abassine* Emperours, when their power and Empire was at the highest. By the Inhabitants, who conceive it to be a work beyond humane power, it is thought to have been built by Devils: but by those who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, ascribed to *Solomon*, though situate 510 miles more Westward than *Sofala*, by their own account. The Air here very cold, by reason of the sharp blasts coming from the *Pole-Antarctic*; so much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other fuel, but what they make themselves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4. *QAITICU*, both furnished with Gold also in their Mines and Rivers, but not so pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet such as serves their turn so well, as to spoil all industry: the people here being very careless in providing necessities, which they presume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will buy them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHABAN*, governed by a King of its own, but Vassal and Tributary to the Emperour of *Monomotapa*; the King whereof in the year 1560. was Chritened by *Gonsalvo Silveria* a *Spanish* Jesuite by the name of *Constantine*; his Queen baptized by the name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further progress of *Christianity*. Touching 6 *Matana*, 7 *Melemba*, 8 *Quinbebe*, 9 *Bertece*, and 10 *Bavagui*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their names.

Cities

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the houses being here so thin, that from the border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is said, there is no sign of any building either old or new. The principal of those that be, 1 *Tongum* in the Province of *Inhaban*, and the Seat-royal of those Kings; memorable for the baptism of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2 *Simbu*, supposed to be so called from the *Agisimba* of *Polomy*, the chief Town of the Province of *Torre*, or *Baine*; distant from *Sofala* one and twenty days journey, and neighboured by the remains or ruins of the old Fortresses before described. 3 *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperour makes his usual residence; giving this name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himself, whom they call *Benomotaxa*, or *Monomotapata*, the word in their language signifying a King or Emperour.

The King hereof, accounted one of the greatest of *Africa*, hath under his command, besides the Provinces described, some part of *Casraria*. Of great riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which so abundantly supply all the Royal occasions, that he exacteth no kind of tribute from his Subjects, but some certain dayes service in his Works; and from his Nobles gifts and presents, without which none of them are to come before him. His forces great, the multitudes of men considered; but weak for want of skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern service, the Arms they most use being only Darts and Targets. For which cause, (and in regard the people of the subject Kingdoms are so prone to *Rebellions*, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the *Tributary* Kings as Hostages of their Fathers loyalty) he wagem *mercenary* Souldiers of other Nations, whom he distributeth abroad in his several Provinces: and amongst these it is affirmed, that he hath a strong Battalion of *Amazons*, a warlike race of women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the out-skirts of *Zanzibar*; compared by some for their fidelity and prowess, to the *Turkish Janizaries*. And yet not trusting wholly to the faith of these *Mercenaries*, it is said that he keeps 200 *Mastives* for the Guard of his person. Much revered by his Subjects, by whom he is served upon the knee; and when he cougheth or drinketh, all those that are about him make such a shout, that the Town rings of it. In one particular they differ from most Nations else, which is, that such as are admitted into his presence are bound to sit down, in token of reverence; to stand before him, being a sign of the greatest dignity, which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced *Christianity* in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonsalvo* the Jesuite, by the name of *Sebastian*, that being the name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning. But afterwards on the suggestions of some *Arabians* then in great place about him, having caused the Jesuite to be slain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 men, under the conduct of *Francisco Barreto*; to whom he offered very honorable amends for the injury done: But *Barreto* having in hope swallowed all the Gold in the Country, would not admit of any peaceable agreement; but referred the business to a battle; in which being overcome himself, and his whole forces not long after consumed by sickness, the hopes of *Christianity*, and the *Portugals* interest in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. CASRARIA.

CASRARIA is bounded on the East, with *Ria di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*; on the South, and West, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to some parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Casra*, which in the *Arabian* tongue signifieth an *Heretic*; a name by them given to *Christians*, *Heathens*, and those of their own Religion also, which differ in opinion from them; but given to this Region by some late Writers, because destitute of another name.

The Country, for so much of it as hath been discovered, is said to be full of great Herds of Cattel, and flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, *Foxes*, *Hares*, *Ostriches*, *Pelicans*, *Heron*s, *Geese*, *Ducks*, *Pheasants*, *Partridges*; in a word all things necessary for the life of man, were it somewhat better stored with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally stored with Woods, and Forests: the Hills thereof intermix with glassie Vallies, that pity 'tis so beautiful and rich a Country should be inhabited by so barbarous and rude a people; who being utterly unprovided of towns and houses, live in woods like beasts. Of colour black, thick lips, flat noses, long-shaped heads, and most monstrous ears; extended far beneath their shoulders, by hanging in them Iron-chains, Glass, *Butlers*, *Bells*, and such ponderous bables. These Ornaments common to both sexes, who also use (for their greater beauty) most hideously to dash themselves in all parts of their bodies, even their very bellies; as if no lace could better fort with their naked skins; with which only, except some flap of an Hide, or other leather to hide their privities, they are here apparelled.

Their best habits for the most part are the Hides of Beasts, undressed, unfashioned, just as they tear them from the flesh; but when they cloath themselves with Sheep-skins, they have so much wit as to wear their fleece next to their bodies in cold weather, which at other times they expose (with no small pride and glory) to the open view. Their voice so inarticulate, that it is hard to be distinguished into words and syllables; which being compared with that brutishness, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to say, whether the people generally may be thought to be men in the skins of beasts, or beasts created in the likeness and shape of men. But they make a greater use of their Cattle, than for Garments only, their raw flesh serving them for food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks, uncleaned, and with all the filth in them, in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearls, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countries. Gold here so vilified, that they exchange it gladly for Brass, or Iron, and that not only quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in such senseless disproportion, as rendreth Brass and Iron the more excellent metals.

But

Manicongo.

But amongst all the several Nations which inhabit this most flourishing Country, none are more barbarous than those whom they call the *Imbians*, dwelling not far from the *Cape of good Hope*; tall, square, and strong, addicted always to War and Rapine, and feeding on the flesh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying Friends, whose death they hatten for the *Shambles*; The skulls of whom they use for their drinking Cups. Their Weapons poisoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they always carry fire before them, menacing thereby to roast, or boyl all such as they overcome. Their King (if such a sacred name become such an impious Monitor) they account for Lord of all the Earth; as the *Portugals*, of all the Seas: and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not only threateneth the destruction of men, but shooerth his poisoned Arrows against Heaven it self, as often as the rain or heat offends him. In the year 1589. about 80000 of them made an inroad into *Zanzibar*, laid desolate all the Country as far as *Mombaza*, which City they besieged, sacked, and devoured the people of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our description of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, scarce so much as houses; and those so mean that they deserve not to be so called: except it be some sheds on the Sea-sides, for the use of Saylor's. Of most note in it is, *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen or sixteen Leagues on the North-West from the *Cape of good Hope*: not so much noted for the buildings adjoining to it (if there be any such) as the Bay it self; environed on all sides with a pleasant Country, enriched with variety of Herbs, not only pleasing to the sense, but very Medicinal for many diseases, especially for those that are troubled with the *Scorbute* (or *Scurvy*, as we use to call it); the Hills adjoining, stored with great multitudes of Cattle, both Sheep and Cows, though less in size than those in these Northern parts: great helps unto our Sea-men in their Eastern-voyages; for here such as are to sayl towards the *Indies*, use to rake in fresh water, and make provision of things necessary for so long a voyage. I have heard that some of our *English* ships in their return from the *East-Indies*, seized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on ship-board, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end that having learned the *English* tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Estate and Affairs of this Country. One of these who was called *Goore*, being brought to *London*, (for the other died upon the way) was diered and cloathed according to the *English* fashion, gratified also with brass Rings, Beads and such other things, by which they thought they might most gain upon him to affect the change of his condition. But *home is home*, though it be but *homely*, as the saying is. For this poor wretch having learned so much *English* as to bemoan his own misfortunes, would throw himself upon the ground, and cry out with great anguish and vexation of spirit, *Goore home go, Soldania home go, Goore home go*; out of which unquietness of humor, when they could not get him, they sent him back in the next ships which were bound for the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he saw any ship with *English* colours, he would very joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his neck (as their custom is) and readily perform all good offices towards them; yet so that it was found withal, that by discovering to the Natives how low esteem the *English* had of Brass and Iron, they thenceforth raised the value of those richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for such sorry trifles, as have been spoken of before.

But that which is of most consideration in all this Country, is the *Cape* it self; discovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their first *Indian* undertakings; by whom, for the continual Tempests which he found about it, it was first called *Tormentosa*. But afterwards the *Portugals* having doubled the *Cape*, and thereby finding good hopes of a prosperous voyage, they caused it to be called *Cabo di Banna Speranza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*: *Vasques di Gama*, the first discoverer of this way to the wealth of *India*, being then their Admiral, An. 1597. It consisteth of three great points or head-lands, of which that which is neerest us, is the *Cape of good Hope*: the middlemost hath the name of *Cabo Falso*, because mistaken for the other, by some of the *Portugals*, returning homewards; the third called *Cabo della Guglia*, or the *Cape of Needles*, by reason of those sharp points which shooer towards the Sea. On the top of the *Cape*, a large and pleasing plain, adorned with great variety of flowers, and covered with a carpet of grass; it is called the *Table of the Cape*, and yieldeth a large prospect over the Sea on all sides. The Sea here is very rough and tempestuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkind: whereupon a *Spanish* Captain being fore vexed with a storm, expostulated with GOD, why he suffered his good *Catholicks* to endure such torments; and permitted the *English* Hereticks, and Blasphemers, to pass so easily.

The Country is not subjected to any one Prince, the *Natives* being governed by the *Chiefs* of their several *Clans*; nor find I hitherto that either the *Portugals*, or *Spaniards*, have took possession of any one part of it, in the name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the best title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom possession was taken of it in the reign of King *James*, by one Captain *Fitz-Herbert*, who called the *Ascet* unto the *Table King James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his beget any good title, or whether the title of a Country lying so far off be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *Statesmen*.

4. MANICONGO.

MANICONGO is bounded on the South, with *Casraria*, and the Mountains of the *Moon*; on the West, with the *Aethiopic*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the Realm of *Bein*, and other parts of the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the East, with *Zanzibar*, and some part of the *Abissine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the principal of those many Kingdoms which are united in this Name.

The

The Air hereof so temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*; inasmuch as the people do not use to change their garments, or make more fire then, than at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the nights so equal to the dayes, that for the greatest part of the year there is little difference; the Countrey being situate under the *Egnator*, though more of it on the North than the South thereof. Not over-hot notwithstanding in the heats of Summer, by reason of the cool windes which then blow continually; and the great dewes, which falling in the night make some compensation for the extreame fervour of the day. The soyl so exceeding fruitfull in the production of herbs, plants, fruits, and such store of Pasturage; that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of Sheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares and Conies: Elephants of that bigness, that their teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of so vast a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; not to say any thing of their Fowl, both wilde and tame, which they have here in great abundance.

The people of mean stature, black of complexion, thick lips, and having the apple of the eye of divers colours, which makes them ghastly to behold; strong and long-lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In Religion for the most part *Heathens*, some worshipping the Sun and Moon, others the earth, as the Mother and Nurse of all things; and some again, wilde Beasts and Serpents. So populous, that without any sensible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is supposed that they sell 28000 *Slaves* to the *Portugals* yearly; by whom they are sent into *Brasil*, there to work in the Mines and Sugar-houses. The *Christian* faith admitted in some few of their Provinces, but specially in that of *Congo*; where first preached, in the reign of John the 24. King of *Portugal*, An. 1490. by *Gonzalvo de Sufa*; who having converted and baptized the Kings Unkle, and one of his Sons, prevailed so far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did embrace the *Gospel*. Received there by the people with such infinite joy, that when their first Bishop came to live amongst them, they caused the wayes from the Sea-side to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fish, Venison, and other necessities, to testify their joycings in that happy change. And though many of the Subjects in the other Provinces were baptized accordingly, and for a time embraced the Faith; yet after some small trial of it they relapsed to their former *Heathenism*; either unable, or not willing to conform to so strict a Rule.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey, 1 *Bengo*, 2 *Coanza*, 3 *Dande*, 4 *Barbela*, 5 *Ambrizi*, 6 *Loza*, 7 *Zaire*. This last the greatest of them all, if not of all *Africk* also: Of which, though we have spoke already, we shall add this here, That it falleth into the *Aethiopic* Sea with so great a violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen sometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural sweetness; not intermingled nor corrupted with the salt Sea-waters. Nor can the people sayl above five miles against the stream, by reason of the *Cataracts*, or huge falls which it hath from the Mountains; more terrible and turbulent than those of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of most note, they are 1 *Sierra Compida*, or the Long Mountain; 2 *Mons Crystalli*, or the *Crystalline* Mountain, so called from the abundance of *Crystal*, which is found therein; 3 *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the Sun, of excessive height; 4 *Montes Sal Nitri*, so called from the abounding in that kinde of Mineral; and 5 the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich in Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general muster in the stile Imperial; wherein their King calleth himself King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Sandi*, *Banga*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abundi*, *Matana*, *Quisoma*, *Angola*, and *Cucango*; Lord of the *Congemets*, *Amozale*, *Languelungi*, *Anzichib*, *Cacchi*, and *Zanghi*. Many of these not so well discovered, as to afford us any matter fit for our discourse; the principal of those that be, are,

1. *ANGOLA*, bounded on the South, with *Casraria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the East, with some part of *Zanzibar*; on the West, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of Silver, and most excellent Copper; some store of Kine and Horses brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their tails, (the wearing whereof is held for a special ornament,) than keep for any other use: their chiefest diet being *Dogs*, which they fat for the *Shambles*; and to that dainty so affected, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give twenty slaves and upwards for a good large Dog. By this we may conjecture somewhat at the nature of the people, who besides this, are said to be much given to *soecery*, and *divinations* by the flight of Birds, skilful in medicinal herbs and poisons, and by familiarity with the Devil, able to tell things to come. Permitted as most *Pagans* are, to have as many wives as they will; who with the rest of the women, whether maids, or widows, use at the first sight of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare bums in defiance of her, as the cause of their troublesome purgations.

In this Countrey are the Mountains called *Cantaberes*, rich in Mines of Silver; but those Mines not suffered to be digged, for fear of drawing some unnecessary war upon them: so that they use *Glasses* for Money, and therewith also do adorn the persons of greatest eminence. Their principal City called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal residence of their Kings; but not esse observable.

This Countrey was first discovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Diego Can*, Anno 1486. the King hereof at that time *Vassal* unto him of *Congo*, and so continued till that King did embrace the *Gospel*: whereupon they revolted from him, and have since subsisted of themselves without such dependence. At first they held good correspondency with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffick in their Dominions: But after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many of them as they found in *Cabazza*, An. 1578. under colour of some pretended

Pppp

Pemba.

pretended treason. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of these parts for the King of Portugal, arming such people as he had, with two Gallies and some other Vessels passed up the River of *Coanza*, waiting the Countrey on both sides. Against whom the King of *Angola* raised an Army of a Million of men (as some Writers tell us:) but amongst those multitudes of men, there were so few Souldiers, that an handful of the *Portugals*, aided with some of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, *An. 1582*. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King hereof hath expressed some good affections unto *Christianity*; sending unto the King of *Congo* for some *Priests* to instruct him in it, but obtained them not; the State of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the upper hand, built, or repaired a strong Fort, situate near a convenient Bay, by which they did not onely secure their Trade, but command a great part of the Countrey, till dispossessed thereof by the treachery and falshood of the *Hollanders*, *An. 1640*. or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themselves from the Crown of *Spain*, a Cessation from all Hostility with them, was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after a firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles whereof it was conditioned, that this peace should not begin in the *East-Indies*, till the end of the year, nor in *Brasil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces which were abroad, to make themselves Masters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugals*, which they could lay hold on, who following these instructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, were by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Castles as their special friends, which presently they possessed themselves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a very weak Bark to seek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the Isle of *St. Thomas*.

To this King belong also the two Provinces of *Matana*, and *Quisima*, though both used in the titles of the King of *Congo*: of which the first lying towards the Sea, is said to be of a wholsom air, and a fertile soil; outwardly furnished with fruits, and inwardly with Mines of *Chrystall* and other metals; but not very rich, for want of some convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great Lake called *Aque Lunda*, was once governed after the manner of a Common-wealth; but tributary at that time to the King of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke, by reason of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars against him.

2. *BAMBA* hath on the South the River of *Coanza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North, the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Songo*; on the East, *Pemba*; on the West, the *Ethiopic*, or *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of Silver, well stored with Beasts and Birds, as well tame as wilde. Amongst the Birds, *Parrets* both green and gray, and many which are taught to sing; not much as wilde. Amongst the Beasts of most note, is that called the inferior for their musk to the birds of *Canaries*. Amongst the Beasts of most note, is that called the *Zebre*, shaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly so streaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and those streaks naturally set in such even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye a most pleasing object. But wilde, and of so swift a foot, that *Velox ut Zebra*, to be as swift as a *Zebre*, is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Portugals*. The men so strong, that it is said of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or strike a Slave quite thorow the middle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a Vessel of wine, weighing 325 pound weight, containing the fourth part of a But; and hold it so till it be quite drawn out. It containeth in it many *Signories*, most of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1. *S. Paul*, situate on the Sea-side, opposite to the Isle of *Loanda*; inhabited for the most part by *Portugal* Families. 2. *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is situate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Lofo* and *Ambrize*.

3. *PEMBA* hath on the West, *Bamba*; on the East, the Lake *Zombre*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*; and on the South, *Angola*. Esteemed to be the richest and most pleasant Countrey of all *Manicongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beset with *Palm-trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are alwayes green. The water of so good a nature, that it never hurteth any that drink of it: the Aire exceeding wholsom, and the earth as fruitful; productive of all sorts of grain, but specially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *mustard-seed*, but bigger, which they grinde in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferiour to Wheat. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbarism* since the coming of the *Portugals* thither; whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparel. So well skilled in the vertues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Physician*, *Chirurgian*, and *Apothecary*. Anciently clothed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained still by the *Villagers* and poorer sort, in some part of the Countrey. Their chief City, formerly had the name of *Banza*, so called, because the Kings Court (as the word doth signifie,) but since the receiving of the Gospel it is called *S. Savours*: distant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (since it became *Christian*) with a *Bishops See*, and a fair Cathedral, in which are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers, and Ornaments accustomedly belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it self situate on the side of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a spacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compass, full of Villages, Burroughs, and scattered houses; which are thought to have 100000 persons, most of them *Portugals*, and their Servants.

4. *BATTA* hath on the West, and South, *Pemba*; on the East, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and those called *Sal nitri*; on the North, *Pango*. Of the Soil and people there is nothing singular to be said, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more military, and better furnished for the Wars than the rest of these Provinces: necessitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and savage people, dwelling about the spurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jaggas* or *Giacchi*. These naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Serra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous parts of this Region, under the conduct of one *Elombe*, where they are since grown into a people,

and

Anzichana

and become a terrour to their neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans flesh, which they prefer before that of Beeves, or Mutton; nor yet so qualified by the change of their Countrey, as to build houses, sow or plant, or to breed up Cattell; finding it far the easier life, to maintain themselves by the labour and spoil of others. And which is yet most strange of all, though they have each of them many wives, ten or twenty a piece, yet they have no children, but strangle them as soon as born, lest they should be an hinderance to their often wandrings. But as *Pliny* once said of the *Esseni*, *Gens aeterna est in qua nemo nascitur*; so we may also say of these, that they do not want succession, though they breed no children: selecting out of their Captives and stolen children, some of either Sex, (but neither steal nor take them captive, under twenty years old) to be the *Seminary* (as it were) of a new posterity. Against these *Monsters* those of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwise able to defend themselves, their wives and children, from their hands and teeth: inasmuch as this one Province, though none of the biggest, is able to raise 70000 men, well armed, and fit for any service. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province; situate on the banks of the River *Leanda*, and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*; who is alwayes of the blood Royal, honoured sometimes with sitting at the Kings own Table, which none else may do, and of so great authority in all consultations, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. *PANGO*, is bounded on the South, with *Batta*; on the East, extended to the Mountains of the *Sun*, which close up this Countrey; on the North, with *Sunda*; and on the West, with parts of *Pemba*, and *Songo*. Of the people, little singular, of the Countrey left. Neighbourd on the North-east towards *Sierra de Christall*, with the *Languelungi*, supposed by some to be the *Ethiopes Hesperii*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*; a barbarous Nation, but of so considerable power, that they are found amongst the rest in the *Stile Imperial*. This once a Kingdom of it self, not subject till of late times to the Kings of *Congo*. The chief Town of it called *Pango*, is seated on the Western bank of the River *Barbele*; the ordinary residence of the *Vic-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. *SUNDA*, is bounded on the South, with *Batta*; on the North, with the great River *Zaire*; on the East, with *Barbele*; and on the West, with part of *Songo*. The Countrey rich in several Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other; because it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives, and Armour; well furnished also with *Martrons*, *Sables*, and other Furs of great esteem amongst Foreign Merchants. This is the best Region of this Kingdom, not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*; nor much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which is common careth to the whole.

7. *SONGO*, is bounded on the East, with *Batta*, and *Anzichana*; on the West, with the *Ethiopic*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the Kingdom of *Loanga*; and on the South, with the River *Ambrize*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both sides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here so turbulent and broad, and so full of Islands, that the one part of it hath little or no commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Countrey; in which is nothing singular for the Soil or People.

8. *ANZICHANA*, hath on the West, part of *Songo* and *Loanga*; extended thence unto the East, as far almost as the Lake of *Zembre*; on the North, some part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it: The cruellest Cannibals in the world; for they do not onely eat their Enemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that they may be sure not to want these Dainties, they have *Shambles* of mans flesh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous withall, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when sold joyn't by joyn't, than if sold alive; they will cut them out, and sell them so upon the *Shambles*. Yet with these barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be so cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will discharge 28 Arrows (for so many do their *Quivers* hold) before the first of them falls to the ground: and of so great fidelity to their Masters, and to those which trust them, that they will rather choose to be killed, than either to abuse their trust, or betray their Master: For that cause more esteemed by the *Portugals*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the same and that onely, worthy of so good a Countrey; said to be rich in Mines of Copper, and very plentifull of *Sanders*, both red and gray; which tempered with *Vinegar*, is found by the *Portugals* to be a certain remedy against the *Pox*; as the smok thereof against the head-ache. Towns they have none, or none at least of any reckoning, which deserve place here.

9. *LOANGO* hath on the East, *Anzichana*; on the West, the *Ethiopic*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guinea*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South, the Province of *Songo*, from which parted by the River *Loanga*, whence it hath its name. The Countrey very hot, as lying under the Line, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more stored with Elephants, than any other of these parts; stretching in length 200 miles within the Land, and for the most part very well watered. The Inhabitants, whom they call *Bramas*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accustomed (as the *Anziqui* and other of these barbarous Africans) unto *Circumcision*. Governed by a King of their own, once subject to the Kings of *Congo*: but of late times, both he and the King of the *Anziqui* (for they are also under the command of one *Sovereign Prince*) have freed themselves from that subjection: though still the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1. *Penga*, the Haven to the rest. 2. *Morumbia*, 30 Leagues more Northwards, and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns, being more civil than the rest, apparel themselves with the leaves of *Palm-trees*; but not so well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realms of *Congo*, who out of

Pppp a

the

Loanda.

the leaves thereof well cleansed and purged draw a fine long thred, of which they make Velvets, Damasks, Satens, Taffaties, Sarcenets, and the like fine Stuffles.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom seated on the Continent, let us next look upon the Islands. The principal of which *LOANDA*, situate over against the Town of *S. Paul*, in the Province of *Bamba*, said to be first made out of the sands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coanza*, cast into an heap, and at last made into an Island. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the same name with the Island, possessed by the *Portugals*. The Island deitute of Rivers, but so well furnished with waters, that every where within less than half a yard digging, they finde sweet and good Waters, so contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be salt and brackish; when it floweth towards the Island, then most fresh and sweet. But most remarkable is this Island for the *Cockle fishing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, rake up together with the sands, in baskets, and part them from the sand, as they lie on the shore; the shells of which being naturally distinguished into divers colours, serve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, instead of money; which is a matter of such moment unto this King, that he entertains a Governour in the Island for no other reason, but to take care about this fishing.

Besides this, there are many Islands in the River of *Zaire*, now subject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars against them: fighting in Boats which they made of the bodies of a Tree, by them called *Liconde*. The tree so big, that two or three men or more are not able to fathom it: insomuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largest of them, able to contain 200 men. Upon the shores of these Islands, and in others of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have so great numbers of *Anchours*, that in winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of these several Members, and of the rest expressed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*: so called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now distinguished from the rest by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or of better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and Name unto them. Discovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diego Can*, An. 1486. at what times these Kings were at the greatest: called by their subjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the word *Mani* signifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated since to the Kingdom also. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath since hapned in this Kingdom, may best be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of CONGO.

- 1486 1 *John*, not so called till converted to the Faith of *Christ*; and then baptized by this name, in honour of *John* the 24. King of *Portugal*, Anno 1490. in whose reign this discovery and Conversion hapned.
- 2 *Alphonso*, eldest Son of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Christian* Faith, and for that opposed by *Pans Aquitine* his younger Brother: whom with a very small Army, zealously invocating the assistance of *Jesus Christ*, he is said to have vanquished. A Prince, who during his long reign of 50 years did seriously promote the *Gospel*, and caused all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furnished in convenient places.
- 3 *Pedro*, the Son of *Alphonso*, in whose time was founded the Colledge of 28 *Canons*, in the Cathedral Church of *S. Crosse*, in the Town of *S. Saviours*.
- 4 *Francisco* the Son of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.
- 5 *Diego*, or *James*, one of the Kinsmen of *Francisco*, in whose time Religion growing into discredit, by the scandalous lives of some of the *Secular Clergy*; *John* the 34. King of *Portugal*, sent four *Jesuites* thither; who are said to have converted in

five moneths 5000 persons, and to build three Churches.

- 6 *Henry*, the brother of *Diego*, after a sharp War touching the Succession, in which were slain all the *Portugals* of *S. Saviours*, except the *Priests*, at last succeeded: not long after slain in battel against the *Arzigues*.
- 7 *Alvarez*, the Son of *Henry*, forced by the *Jaggies* or *Glacchi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himself, together with the *Portugal* *Priests*, to an Island of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till restored to his Crown by the aid of *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*, after by famine he had lost almost all his company.
- 8 *Alvarez* II. Son of *Alvarez* the first, who much sollicitated *Sebastian* and *Henry* Kings of *Portugal*, to send him a new supply of *Preachers*; the old store being wasted in the Islands of *Zaire*.
- 9 *Alvarez* III. Son to *Alvarez* the 2d, not being born in Lawfull wedlock, was opposed by one of his Sisters and a younger Brother, both of Lawfull birth; whom he overthrew, Anno 1587. and in the place of the Victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revenues* of these Kings of *Congo*, I am able to say nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great power and riches. His *Riches* visible by the great treasures which he draweth from the *Mines* of *Silver*, and of other Metals in his Kingdom; from the trade of *Cockle-shells*, the onely Money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himself; the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from *Elephants* Teeth; the *Presents* which he hath in way of Tribute, from the King of *Angola*.

Angola. And though it be not easie to say what he layeth up yearly, because he hath not his *Revenue* in Coin, as most Princes have; yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furnished with all things, as any Monarch in *Africa*.

As for his *Forces*, they consist most in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and used to the Wars, would make him formidable to the rest of the *African* Princes. And though he hath no garrisons or Towns of War, but must trust, if once invaded, unto *Castles of bones*; yet he doth rest secure enough from all fear of danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raise against his *Rebels*, or any of his invading neighbours, 400000 men out of *Bamba* onely; all armed according to their manner, and 70000 men at least, well exercised in Wars against the *Jaggies*, from the Province of *Batida*; besides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The Arms of this King are *Mars*, five Swords meeting in *Base Sol*: Which Coat was taken by *Alphonso*, the second King in this Catalogue, because in the battel which he fought against *Panse Aquitine*, he and his Souldiers saw (or supposed they saw) such a number of shining Swords hanging in the Air, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And so much for *Æthiopia Inferior*.

PPPP 3

Of

Of the ISLES *of* AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Isles of *AFRICK*, we must observe another course than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Asia*: these Islands not belonging to any part of the *Continent*, nor under the command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the account of whose Estates they might be considered; but being all of them independent and *sui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themselves apart. In our *Chorography* of which, and the stories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to travel; beginning first with those that lie in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and so proceeding by the *Cape of Good Hope*, through the main *Atlantick Ocean* to the Streets of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the shorter passage into *America*, and there *ad Diva et Materiam*, conclude our journey. These then we will consider either joyn't, or separate, as delivered to us by the names of 1 The *Aethiopiack Islands*. 2 *Socotara*. 3 *Madagascar*. 4 *Mohelila*. 5 *Mauritius*. 6 *St. Hellens*. 7 *Ascension*. 8 *St. Thomas*. 9 The *Princes Islands*. 10 The *Island of Ambowen*. 11 The *Gorgades*, or Islands of *Cape Verd*. 12 The *Canaries*, or the *Fortunate Islands*. 13 *Madera*. 14 The Island of *Holy Port*, and 15 The *HESPERIDES*; of all which, the four first onely are dispersed in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, all the rest scattered up and down in the main *Atlantick*, on this side of the famous Promontory, called the *Cape of Good Hope*.

1. THE ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.

1. **T**HE *ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS*, so called, because they lie upon the Coast of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all those which lie on the further side of the *Cape of Good Hope*, or scattered, or dispersed in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean* (for by those names these mighty Oriental Seas are most commonly known) of which we have spoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore shall say nothing here which concerns the same, but for the Islands of those Seas, such as we comprehend here under the name and notion of *Æthiopiack Islands*, which were onely known unto the Ancients, they are more in number, than in weight: some of them situate within the Streits of the *Red Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*: others without those Streits, in the open Ocean.

Sea, or the Gulf of Arabia: others without those Straits, in the open Ocean.

1. Of those within the Straits, not reckoning such as lie upon the shores of *Aravia Felix*, of which we have already spoken; there is 1 *Afritie*, or *Alfrata*, now called *Cassia*. 2 *Arva* *Pelladis*, so called from some Altar of that Goddess, which was there erected. 3 *Gysperis*, by *Pliny* called *Cyris*, but *Gysperis* in *Justinian's* Code, renowned in former times for its plenty of metals. 4 *Macaria*, or the fortunate Islands, so called from the fertility and pleasures of it. 5 *Orneon*, or the Isle of *Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6 *Daphnis*, by *Ptolomy* called *Daphnie*, opposite to a famous Port-Town of the same name in the Continent. 7 *Bacchias*, so called from *Bacchus*, unto whom consecrated. 8 *Anti-Bacchias*, so named, because opposite to it. 9 *Acanibinis*, supposed by some to be now called *Anguotina*. 10 *Insula Diadori*, conceived by the Learned to be the same which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and given name unto the Straits, or entrance of the Bay of *Arabia*, now called the Straits of *Babel Mandel*. 11 *Isidis Insula*, memorable for a Temple dedicated to the Goddess *Isis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Isidis*; the same which is now called *Pasfua*, as *Bel-forest* thinketh. 12 *Mundi*, an Island in the Bay of *Avalites*, opposite to a noted *Empory* of the same name on the shores of that Bay. Besides all which, we finde in *Ptolomy* two Islands by the name of *Thrisfides*; two more, called *Chelonitides*, or *Cathreia*, two others passing by the name of *Gomidas*; together with the Isles of *Azyron*, *Pan*, and that called *Insula Magorum*: which make up one and twenty in all, but of no note, or observation in the course of business, or the conduct of humane affairs.

III. Of such as lie upon the shores of the Red Sea, and in some

Those of most note in the open Ocean, which still preserve the name of the *Red Sea*, and is sometimes called the *Indian*, sometimes the *Arabian* Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hyphasis* are but four in number, that is to say, 1. *Myrice*, by the Translator of *Plotom*, called *Myrfica*; 2, 3, two Islands called by the name of *Mensan*, a degree more Northwards than the other; and 4. *Amicufia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Infula*, as called by *Plotom*, the most North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the most noted Island of this Sea. I know that many Learned men will have this Island to be that, which *Plotom* and others of the Ancients call *Diocoridis*; but because *Diocoridis*, by all those Ancients, is made to be an Island of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Isle of *Africa*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our best modern *Geographers*, that *Socotara* lieth over against Cape *Guardafu*, (the *Armenia* of *Plotom*, as before is said) from which distant not above 30 leagues; which site and distance fort well with *Amicufia*, but can by no means be applied unto *Diocoridis*: *Amicufia* being placed but two Degrees on the East of that Promontory, in the Longitude of 85. whereas *Diocoridis* is situate from it almost four degrees, in the Longitude of 86. and 40 minutes; belides as great, or greater difference in their several Latitude. So that supposing it for granted, that *Socotara* is that Island which was anciently called *Amicufia*; and having cleared my way so far; I now proceed to the Description and affairs thereof.

2. SOCIO-

2. *SOCOTARA.*

2. **SOCOTARA**, the greatest Island of these Shores, is situate, as before was said, against Cape Guardafiy, from which distant about 30 leagues; *Abadennry*, a small Island lying in the middle, that is to say, 15 leagues from the Cape, and 14 from the Island. The length hereof 60 miles, 25 the breadth; divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height, the top of which are for the most part covered with sands. The Island extremely vexed with winds, and molested with dryness, inasmuch as it is destitute of most things necessary for the life of man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but some small quantity of Mill, Dates, and some kinde of Fruits. Provided notwithstanding of some good Pastures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furnished with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnamon*, *Dragons blood*, which is a red Gum issuing from the bark of a Tree; and the best *Aloes* in the world, from hence called *Aloes Socotrina*.

The people of an *Affe-colour*, very rude and barbarous; their bread for the most part of *Dates*; the rest of their food being milk and butter; their hair long, and their clothing onely enough to hide their nakedness. The *Women* as good Souldiers as the Men, countenancing, or occasioning the tradition of the *Arabians*, that they came from the *Amazons*; And the better Husbands of the two, governing all affairs both within and without. All of them by profession *Christians*, governed by a *Bishop* of their own, with some few *Priests*; but ignorant enough of all things which concern *Religion*. More generally *Circumcised* than *Christened*, though both used among them. *Jaculites* in *Sett*, as the *Avassines* their Neighbours are; and zealous worshippe: of the *Cross*, which they alwayes hang about their necks. So pertinaciously addicted unto *Magick*, and therein so expert, that they bring incredible things to pass: not to be weaned from those *black Arts*, though the *Bishop* excommunicate all such as use them. They hold opinion that *St. Thomas* suffered shipwrack upon their Coasts, as he sayed towards *India*; and that his Ship being drawn to land, was turned into a Church: but it appeareth neither by their life, or Doctrines, that any *Apostolical* man hath feet foote amongst them.

They live for the moit part in *Cavus*, or *Cubbins*, of no other stufte than the boughs of Trees ; so that we are to look for few Towns among them. The principal. 1 *Zocoras* giving name to the Iland, the place of the Kings refidence, and a B:shops See. 2 *Tamirind*, and 3 *Delifja*, two Port-Towns, and reasonably well traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4 *Coro*, and 5 *Benin*, two other Ports, poffessed and garriſon'd by the *Portugals*. The King hereof a Vaffal to the King of *Ertac*, one of the petit Princes of *Arabia Felix*, not far from *Aden*; in Habit and Religion *Turkiſh*: Attended on when the *Relater* was there, An. 1614. by five Camels and five Horſes onely, yet thoſe all in the Iland.

Nigh hereunto are two Islands, (those possibly which *Ptolomy* calleth *Menan*) the one inhabited by men only, and the other by women; who do meet at their accustomed times to preferre their kinde, but make no long stay; the Air of the one being found unhealthy for the continuition of the other Sex. The other Islands of these Coasts, scattered up and down in the Bay of *Bambarta*, (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolomy*) as 1 *Don Garcia*. 2 The three brethren. 3 *St. Brandon*. 4 *Francis*, 5 *Mascadenna*. 6 *Comoro*, and many others of as small note, are not worth the speaking of.

3. *MADAGASCAR.*

3. **M**ADAGASCAR, the greatest of the world, is situate over against *Mosambique* in *Aethiopia Inferior*: supposed to be the *Menuthias* of *Ptolemy*, the onely Island by him named on the Coast of that Countrey; but by the *Portugals* called the Isle of *St. Lawrence*, because discovered by them on the day of that Saint, *An. 1506*. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 miles, (which is longer than *Italy*) and 4000 in compass: the middle part hereof oppolrite to the Promontory, which *Ptolemy* calleth *Prassinus*, now the point of *Mosambique*, from which distant 170 miles: in reference to the Heavenly bodies, situate from the 17 Degree of Southern Latitude, to the 26th.

The Country plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Honey, Wax, Cotton-wooll, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Limons and other cooling Fruits, some store of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from those of *India*, red Sanders, Saffron, Amber, and some Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to lay any thing of their Beeves and Muttons, so large, and good, and so good eate, that for a two-penny Bead, or some such trifle, they will fell Beeves and Sheep of good taste and bigness: such numbers of Elephants, that they fend thence yearly great store of *Ivory*. And amongst other rare Fruits, they have plenty of those, which they call *Cocos*, or *Cocconuts*; a kinde of *Date* as big as a Cabbage; the liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, tastes like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two men: and like good *Ale*, it affords not only meat and drink, but cloathing; as also furniture for their houses, tackle for their ships, fuel for the fire, and timber for building; the body of the Tree being strait and high, and towards the top diversified into many branches. A Country far too good for so bad a people.

For they, as Travellers report, and most Writers tell, are treacherous, inhospitable, ignorant, both of Prayers and Festivals; destitute of the distinction of time into years and months, not knowing any proper names for the days of the week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked, except their *privities*, which they cover with Cotton; *Idolaters* in the mid-land parts, and *Mahometans* upon the shores. Commendable only for their hate to *Polygamy*, and retraining themselves to one wife; the defiling of the Marriage-bed severely punished: but otherwise so eager upon *copulation*, that their Boys at the age of twelve years, and the Girls at ten, think they stay too long, if they keep their *Virginities* any longer; some

Mohelia, & Mauritius.

some of them, like *Quartilla* in *Petrinus Arbiter*, begin to early, *ut nunquam meminissent se Virgines fuisse*, that they remember not the time when they lost their *Maidenheads*. Of colour they are black, and of strong composition; their breasts and faces cut and pink, to appear more beautifull. Much given unto the wars, well armed according to their Countrey manner, and exceeding good *Archers*. Amongst them there are some white people, said to come from *China*.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their names I finde not: and at the mouths of those Rivers some convenient Havens, into which they admit the forein Merchants, but suffer none to come on land; which the Merchant hath no cause to be sorry for, finding himself not safe on shipboard from their treacherous practices. So that we can give but small account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their names: as viz. 1 *St. Augustines*, on a fair Bay in the South-west point, as 2 *Gangamar* in the North-east of it; 3 *Antabostia*. 4 *Point-Antogil*. 5 *Santo-Jacobo*. 6 *Mututana*. 7 *Angoda*. 8 *Elerendo*. 9 *Andro-arco*; and 10 *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, so entituled by some zealous *Romanists*, in hope to have it thought that the Popes of *Rome* have got some footing in this Island.

This Island known, but very imperfectly, in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many strange things of it: but none more strange than that of the Bird called *Ruck*, of such incredible strength and bigness, that it could snatch up an *Elephant* as easily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Discovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506, as before was said; and since frequented by the *English* and *Holland Merchants*: by whom we are informed no further touching the Estate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four parts, under so many Kings, each of them in continual Wars against one another, but well enough agreed to defend themselves against the coming in of strangers. Yet as some say, they would be well enough content with an *English Plantation*: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more courteous than the *Portugals*, and not so covetous as the *Dutch*; or else by the strength of our shipping, and the reputation of our interests in it, to keep off all others.

4. MOHELIA, & 5. MAURITIUS Island.

ADjoyning to *Madagascar*, and as it were attending on it, I finde divers Islands; some on the North-west, some directly East. On the North-west we have 1 *Mottey*. 2 *Chamree*. 3 *Mohelia*, and 4 *Joanna* Island; on the East, 5 the Island of *Mauritius*, and 6 *Englands Forrest*. Of these *Mauritius* is the greatest, but *Mohelia* the best inhabited.

4. *MOHELIA* situate on the North-west of *Madagascar*, is about 20 miles in length, and 16 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, *Coconuts*, Limons, Oranges, Pom-Citrons, Pulse, *Sugar-Canes*; store of Fish taken on the shores, and other necessities. The people of complexion black, of composition large and strong; courageous, affable, less treacherous than their Neighbours of *Madagascar*. Of the same Language and Religion with those of *Aravia*, from whence they seem to have descended; but by reason of their commerce and intercourse with the *Portugals*, they speak that tongue also. The Women of the like complexion, to amend which, and seem more lovely, they pink their arms and faces in several shapes. Both sexes no otherwise apparelled than their natural Garments, with some *Plantane* Leaves about their middle to hide their shame.

Their Religion that of *Mahomet*, as before is said: their Priests in great esteem amongst them; so their Temples also: which they keep clean and neatly matted, not suffering any man to enter with his shoes on his feet. Their chief Town *Merianguea*, at the West end of the Isle, strong and well garrison'd. Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities; one of the last Kings leaving two daughters, the one married to a *Native*, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the East of *Madagascar*, is the Isle of *MAURITIUS*, so called by the *Hollanders* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whose time they first set footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by some *Cygnus*. In compass about 100 miles; well stored with Beeves, Hogs, Goats, most sorts of Fish; and liberally endowed with all the blessings of Nature, sweet Waters, most delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any use both of food and building; plenty of *Ebony* of all colours, but the best coal-black. Yet altogether destitute of humane Inhabitants: inasmuch as we may say of this, as the Poet of the World, before man was made:

*Sanctus his Animal, mentisque capacis altus
Deerat adhuc, & quod dominari in cetera possit.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

But yet the Chief, with Supream power posselt,
Was wanting, he that should command the rest.

Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, and the Isles therein.

HAVING thus looked upon such Islands, as lie on the Eastern side of *Africk* in the *Indian Ocean*, let us come homeward by the *Cape of Good Hope* into the main *Atlantick*, the greatest body of waters, which is given to us by one name in any of our Cosmographers, either old or new: A name peculiar to that part of the Western Ocean, which lieth between the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and the Land of *Negroes*, to which Mount *Atlas* sheweth it self with a cloudy top, and gives name to the Seas adjoining, but generally communicated to all that vast Region of waters, which lieth between *Spain* and *Africk*, on the one side,

side, and the new world, or *America* on the other side: Extended further by *Strabo*, and some others of the Ancient writers, who not knowing any thing of the interposition of *America*, carry the name of the *Atlantick* to the shores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this Sea on the East and South. *Macrobius* goeth further in it, affirming positively, *omnem terram, quæ à nobis colitur, Atlantico mari (quod Oceanum appellamus) circumfundit*, that the whole habitable world (so far as it was then known, and peopled) was compassed round about with the *Atlantick Ocean*. The like affirmed by *Julius Firmicus* also, by *Aristotle* in his book de *Mundo*, and by others, who have took it upon their Authority. And though some parts hereof, which wash the Western-shores of *Ethiopia Inferior*, be called the *Ethiopic Ocean*; yet that doth derogate no more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantick*, than that some parts of the *Mediterranean* should be called *Mare Siculum, Sardinum, Tyrhennum, Creticum*, according to the shores of those several places which it passeth by; which having said in general of the Sea it self, according to our Method in other places, we next proceed unto the rest of the *African* Islands, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea, and this side of *Africa*.

6. St. HELENS, and 7. the Isles of ASCENSION.

AND the first Isle we meet with in this side of *Africk* is 6. the Isle of *St. Helens*, situate on the West of the *Cape of Good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southernly Latitude, no other Island interposing betwixt *Madagascar* and it, except those of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tisram de Acugna*, near the *Cape* it self; but of so little note, as not worth the naming. The Island very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with so steep an ascent, that the *Mariners* have amongst them a merry saying, that a man may choose whether he will break his heart going up, or his neck coming down.

It was thus called, because discovered by the *Portugals* on *St. Helens* day; not then inhabited, nor since, the King of *Spain* suffering none to dwell there, because it had been an unlawfull receptacle for uncustomed Goods; whereby he lost exceedingly both in Power and Profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the first Discovery, with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as also with Figs, Limons, Oranges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly, and grow all the year long. Intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refresh themselves, and bestow their sick, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Used for the same purpose by the *English*, and *Hollanders*, who to domineer about the Island, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor near it, or own their Property, if they see any shipping in the Rode. No buildings in it but the ruins of a little Chappel, destroyed by the *Hollanders*; and some fragment of a little Village begun by some *Portugal* Mariners, but demolished by the King of *Spain*.

7. North-west from hence is the Isle of *Ascension*, so called, because discovered on *Ascension* day; but not inhabited, nor any use at all made of it for ought I can finde. Of the same bigness with *St. Helens*, 30 miles in compass, and about 700 *English* miles distant from it.

8. St. THOMAS, 9. the PRINCES Island, and 10. the Isle of ANNIBON.

THE Island of *St. THOMAS* is situate directly under the *Equator*; of Orbicular form, the Diameter being 60 miles, by consequence the Perimeter, or compass 180, and just so many from the shore of the Realm of *Congo*. At the first discovery nothing but a continual Forest, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negroes*; these last brought hither from the opposite Continent: with whom the Air agrees so well, that they attain generally to 110 years of age, few of the *Portugals* unto fifty. The air so vehemently hot, that it fortheth not with the constitution of the *Europeans*.

The Countrey destitute of Wheat, which if sown here, turneth all to blade, and brings forth no Ear: nor will any fruits here prosper, that have any Stone in them: but so abundant in *Sugar-Canes*, and well stored with Sugars, that 40 ships are hence loaded yearly with that one Commodity, for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or Sugar-houses, and in each of them 200 Slaves, in some 300, which belong to the works. Six dayes in seven these Slaves work for their Masters, and the seventh for themselves; which they spend in sowing and planting their Seeds, Fruits, and Provisions. Whereby the way, these *Sugar-works*, or *Ingenios* are a late Invention; the boyling and baking of Sugar (as it is now used) not being above 200 years old; and the refining of it more new than that: first found out by a *Venetian* in the dayes of our Fathers, who is said to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his Son a Knight; who (though he was no Knight of the *Post*) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of boyling and refining Sugars, our Ancestors not having such luxurious Palaces, sometimes made use of rough Sugar, as it came from the *Canes*; but most commonly pleased themselves with honey, more wholsome, because more natural than these forced inventions. But to proceed in the description of this Island, in the midst thereof there is said to be a woody Mountain, over-shadowed continually with Clouds: which so moisten the Trees that grow there in a great abundance, that from thence falleth a sufficient quantity of waters to refresh their fields, and feed their *Sugar-Canes*, notwithstanding the extrem heat of the Clime and Air.

The Religion here allowed of is the *Christian* onely, first preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a Bishop, his title the Bishop of *St. Thomas*; but his charge extendeth also over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo*. The principal City of it hath the name of *Pavafan*, a Colony of *Portugals*, consisting of 700 Families, or about that number: situate on a fine River, and a pleasant Haven: seldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither in

The Gorgades, in exchange for Sugars, Wheat, Wine, Cheese, Hides, and other things more necessary than those *Sagars*, for the life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders* in the year 1599. but again recovered, or abandoned; and since possessed again by the *Hollanders*, not as before by force of Arms, but by fraud and falsehood, at the same time, and by the same dishonest Arts by which they made themselves Masters of the Castle of *Angola* before mentioned. And though the *Portugal* Ambassador presented this injurious dealing to the *States of Holland*, yet all the answer he could get at the present was, that their people had done nothing, but what was justified by that clause of the Article, that both sides might take and keep, whatsoever they could within such a time; and though the Ambassador replied very rationally in behalf of his Country, and pretends the restitution both of this Island, and that Cattle, by all honest Arguments, yet he could then get no reason from them; and whether they have done the *Portugals* any Justice since, as to those particulars, I am not able to determine.

9. *THE PRINCES ISLAND*, (*Insula Principis* in the *Latine*) so called, for that the *Revenues* of it were allotted to the Prince of *Portugal*; is situate in three Degrees of the Northern Latitude. The Country very fruitful for the bigness of it; but not much observable: except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clerchagen*, Anno 1598. abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended, as is fit for a *Princes* Island, by a *Mess of Chaplains*, viz. 1 the Isles of *St. Matthew*. 2 *St. Croix*. 3 *St. Paul*, and 4 *St. Conception*: and waited on by seven servants (so many Islands near *Cape Verd*) all in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbacene*. But because the former four yield no matter of *History*, and these last seven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having said thus much of them, to have said enough.

10. South-west hereof, but on the other side of the Line, lieth the Isle of *Annobon*, (*Insula Annoboni* as the *Latines* call it.) So named, because discovered upon *New-years-day*. Inhabited, and of very good fishing all along the Coasts of it; but that fishing made unsafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venomous and hurtful Creatures, which are said to be about the shores in great abundance.

11. The GORGADES, or Isles of CAPE VERD.

11. *THE GORGADES*, or Islands of *Cape Verd* (*Insula Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are 9 in number; called by the last name, because situate over against *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negroes*. Their names, 1 *St. Anthony*. 2 *St. Vincent*. 3 *Buenavista*. 4 *St. Lucies*. 5 *Insula Salis*, the Isle of Salt. 6 *Del Fogo*, or the Isle of Fire. 7 *St. Nicholas*. 8 *Maggio*, or *Majo*. 9 *St. Jago*. Some add to these a tenth, called *Brava*, Discovered all in the year 1440. by a *Genoise* called *Antonio de Noli*, employed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry Duke of Vise*, one of the younger sons of King *John of Portugal*, the first of that name. Of the most little to be said. The principal, and indeed the onely ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, *St. Jago*. 1 *Majo*, is of most repute for a *Le* of two leagues long; the waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2 *Del Fogo*, is called from the Flakes of fire which it sends forth usually; and tell so thick upon the ship of *Sir Anthony Sherley* when he took the Island, *An. 1596*. that one might have writ his name in the ashes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3 The principal of all *St. Jago*, yet but seven miles long; Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleasant Valleys, and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Riblera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; situate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and sacked by *Sir Francis Drake*, in the year 1585. and after by *Sir Anthony Sherley*, *An. 1596*.

The name of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almost forgotten. Given to those Islands, as supposed (but I cannot see upon what grounds) to be the seat of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation, or dwelling place of *Medusa*, and her two fair sisters. This *Medusa* said, or rather fabled by the Poets, to have been a Woman of great beauty; Who either for suffering her body to be abused by *Neptune*, in one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her self before *Pallas*, had by the said Goddess, her hair turned into Snakes; and this property annexed unto them, that whosoever looked on her, should be turned into Stones: which quality was retained after she was slain, and beheaded by *Perseus*. Thus and far more fabulously the Poets. The Historians (for as some think, *omnis fabula fundatur in historia*) relate, how this *Medusa* was indeed a Lady of such exceeding beauty, that all men that saw her, were amazed: and of such a wife and subtle brain, that for that cause onely men attributed unto her a Serpents head. She abounding in wealth, and by *Piracy* molesting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Gracians*, under the leading of *Perseus*, who in a single combat slew her. *Perseus* when he plucked off her helmet, admiring that beauty which he had destroyed, cut off her head, and carried it into *Greece*: where the people beyond measure wondered at the rare composition of her face, and the exceeding beauty of her hair: and are therefore said to have by her head been metamorphosed into stones. *Pausanias* in his *Corinthiacks* so reports the story.

12. The CANARIES.

THE CANARIES are in number seven, situate over against the Coast of *Lybia Interior*; so called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and other of the Ancient Writers they were called *Insula Fortunata*, the fortunate Islands: and amongst them of greatest note for being made the fixed place of the first *Meridian*; removed since to *S. Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But those Ancients knew but six of them by name, and in the naming of these six do not well agree. By *Pliny*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are said to be, 1 *Ombrio*, 2 *Junonia Major*, 3 *Junonia Minor*, 4 *Capraria*, 5 *Nivaria*, and 6 *Canaria*. By *Ptolomy* thus reckoned. 1 *Aprofita*, 2 *Hera*, *The Canaries* (or *Junonia*) 3 *Pluitania*, 4 *Casperia*, 5 *Canaria*, and 6 *Pincuria*. Where we may note also to our purpose, that though these Authors disagree in all the rest of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Translators unto *Ptolomies Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one: which sheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canary Islands* unto all the rest. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their fruitfulness, and other excellencies; in which respects, several Countreys, in those times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1 *Canary*. 2 *Palma*. 3 *Tenariffe*. 4 *Gomero*. 5 *Ferro*. 6 *Lansarote*, and 7 *Erlerte-Ventura*.

1. *CANARIA*, or *Canaria Magna*, because the biggest of the Cluster, is said to be 90 miles in compass, and to contain 9000 persons: Plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, Sugar-Canes, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which, and of their Cheese, and the skins of Beasts they raise great profit: but from nothing more than from their Wood (whereof they have very great abundance) used by the Clothier for the well colouring of his Cloth. From hence and from the other of these Islands which bear this name; come the fine singing Birds called *Canary birds*; and so do also those rich Wines, (the fruit of the *Rhenish* Grape transplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A sort of Wine, if not sophisticated and abused, which is said to fume less into the head, please the *Palat* more, and better help the natural weakness of a cold stomach (if moderately and discreetly used) than any other Wines whatsoever. Brought hence in such abundance to supply our luxury, that no less than 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yearly into *England* and the *Netherlands* onely.

2. *PALMA*, one of the least in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in Wine and Sugars, abundantly well stored with Cattel, and great plenty of Cheese; and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spanish Fleets*, as they pass to *Brasil*, and *Perna*. This Island together with *Canary*, and *Tenariffe*, make up the Bishoprick of the *Canaries*. One of the Bishops whereof was that *Melchior Canis* a *Dominican* Friar; whose works now extant in defence of the Church of *Rome*, shew him to have been a moderate and learned man, and Master of a perfect *Ciceronian* stile. The residue of the Islands are of the Diocese of *Madera*.

3. *TENARIFFE*, somewhat less than the *Grand Canary*, but of the same fertility and condition with it, is most remarkable for a mountain of so great a height, that it may be seen 90 leagues at Sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 miles high, others 15 leagues, and some advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. With truth enough most of our Travellers and Geographers hold it to be the highest in the whole world. The Form, *Pyramidal*, in shape agreeing to those *Prodigies* of Art and Wonder, the *Egyptian Pyramids*. The top whereof ending in a sharp point, called the *Pike of Tenariffe*, is said to be seldom without snow; and therefore probably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*.

4. *HIERO*, or *FERRI* *Insula*, so called from the *Iron Mines* therein, is by some thought to be the *Pluitalia*; by others the *Aprofita* of *Ptolomy*; and some again more probably, the *Ombrio* of *Pliny*, if this and *Ptolomies Pluitalia* be not one and the same; as for my part I think they be. And it might possibly have those names in the *Greek* and *Latine*, because it hath in it no fresh waters but what they do receive in showers, and preserve in *Cisterns*: it being added by late Writers (which the ancients knew not) that these showers do daily fall upon them from the Leaves of a Tree, which alwayes covered with a Cloud doth distill these waters; preserved in a large *Cistern* underneath the Tree, for the use of Man and Beast throughout the Island.

5. *GOMERA*, now as civil and well cultivated as any of the rest, was the most barbarous of all when first discovered: it being here and here only, the ordinary sign and evidence of their Hospitality, to let their friends lie with their wives, and receive theirs in testimony of reciprocal kindness: for which cause here as in some places of the *Indies*, the sisters Son did use accustomably to inherit.

6. *LANSAROTE* the first of these Islands which was made subject to the Crown of *Castile*, discovered by some adventurous *Biscains*, *An. 1393*. by whom spoiled and pillaged, and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality, brought away Prisoners into *Spain*. On this discovery the Kings of *Castile* challenged a propriety in all these Islands; of which more anon. In this of *Lansarote* there was an *Episcopal See* erected by Pope *Martin* the 5th removed unto the Isle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholic*.

7. *ERLERT-VENTURA*, of the same nature with the rest, supposed to be the *Capraria* of *Pliny*, and the *Casperia* of *Ptolomy*; but not else observable. Near unto these, but not within the name and notion of the *Fortunate*, or *Canary* Isles, are certain others of less note, that is to say, 1 *Gratiosa*. 2 *St. Clara*. 3 *Roca*. 4 *Lobos*. 5 *Alegance*; and 6 *Inferno*, small and of no account, nor yielding any matter of observation.

The knowledge of these Islands being lost with the *Roman Empire*, they lay concealed and undiscovered till the year 1330. or thereabouts; when an *English*, or as some say, a *French* Ship, distressed by tempest, did in that misfortune fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the reign of King *Alphons* the fourth, *Lewis de Ordo* was designed for the conquest of them. Who being repulsed at *Gomera*, *Anno 1334*. gave the enterprize over, though on this ground the *Portugals* build their first claim unto these Islands. But the news spreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the sixth thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, Son of *Alphons* de la Cerde the right Heir of *Castile*, by the old name of the *Fortunate Islands*; and to assist him in the conquest, caused *Levies* of Soldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy*. Which coming to the ears of the *English* Ambassadors in the *Popes* Court, they feared that some transport had been made of the *British* Islands (than which they thought that none could better deserve the name of the *Fortunate Islands*) and in all haste dispatched a Post to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the danger.

Madera.

danger. The people at the time of this first discovery, were so rude and ignorant, that they did eat their flesh raw for want of fire ; and killed, or rather turned up the earth with the horns of Oxen, for want of Ploughs, or Tools of Iron ; their beards they shaved with a sharp flint, and committed the care of their Children to the nursing of Goats. To kill a beast was conceived to be the basest Office that could be possibly put upon them, and therefore commonly imposed on Prisoners and condemned person ; who being thus made the common *Slaughter-men*, were to live separate from the rest. Their Government by Kings, in each Island one ; whom at their deaths, they set up naked in a Cave, propped against the wall with a staff in his hand, and a Vessel of Milk fast by him, the better to enable him for his journey to the other world ; and leaving him in the Grave with these solemn words, *Depart in peace, O thou blessed Soul*. The like Funeral they bestowed also on the chief of their *Nobles*. Yet was not the Government in those times so purely *Regal*, but that they had a Common Council (as it were) out of all the Islands, consisting of 130 persons : who did not onely direct in *Civil* matters, but in *Sacred* also, prescribing to the people both their Faith and Worship ; and for their pains were privileged with the first nights lodging with every Bride, which the Husband was to offer to some one of them.

But to return unto the Story, nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerde*, in pursuance of the Popes Donation, it hapned in the year 1393. that some Adventurers of *Biscay*, letting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to seek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongst these Islands. And having pillaged *Lansarote* as before was said, and observed the number, greatness, and situation of all the rest, returned into *Spain*, with great store of Wax, Hides, and other commodities, with which those Islands did abound : extremely welcom to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Cassile*, and did intend from that time forwards to possess himself of them. By *Katharine* one of the daughters of *John Duke of Lancaster*, the Dowager of this King *Henry*, during the minority of *John* the 2^d, the Conquest of them was committed to *John of Betancourt*, an adventurous *French-man*, (conditioned he should hold them under the Sovereignty of the Crown of *Cassile*) by whom four of the Islands were subdued, though he himself perished in the action, An. 1417. Young *Betancourt* the Son, not able to subdue *Canary*, to which most of the Islanders had retired ; fortified himself as well as he could in the Isle of *Lansarote*, and took unto himself the title of King : which he left not long after to one *Mennais* ; in whose time the Islanders under his command received the Gospel, and had a See Episcopal in the Isle of *Lansarote*. But this new King making money by the sale of his Subjects, (as well of the new *Christians*, as the old *Idolaters*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Cassile* ; and *Pedro Barva de Campos* with three Ships of war is sent against him : with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Cassile*, he sold his interest in these Islands to one *Fernando Peres* a Knight of *Sevil*, who by the wealth and power of that City made good his purchase, and left it unto his Successors. But we must know, that the posterity of this *Peres* enjoyed the four lesser Islands onely ; *Canaria* it self, *Tenariffe*, and the Isle of *Palmer*, being under the command of their own Kings. And so continued till the reign of *Ferdinand* the Catholick, who in the year 1483. under the conduct of *Alphonso de Mexica*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two noble Captains, became master of them ; and translated the Episcopal See from *Lansarote* to the Great *Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim these Islands in right of the first discovery, yet the possession hath gone alwayes with the Crown of *Cassile*. Divided at the present into two Estates, (but the one subordinate to the other) *Gomera*, *Lansarote*, and *Mierra*, being in the hands of some private Subjects, those which belong unto the Crown, being *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuente-Pentura*, are said to yield yearly to the King 50000 *Ducats* ; the Seat of Justice being fixed in the Isle of *Canaria*, unto which all the rest resort as they have occasion.

13. *MADERA*, & 14. *HOLY PORT*.

13. **MADERA**, the greatest Island of the *Atlantick*, is situate in the Latitude of 32. over against the Cape of *Cantin* in *Morocco*; in compass 140 miles, some add 20 more. So called of the wilderness of Trees there growing, when first discovered; the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latins* call *Materia*, and we *English* Timber: with which the Ile was so overgrown, that the best way to clear it and make it habitable, was by consuming them with fire; which rag'd so horribly for the time, that the people employ'd in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refresh themselves. But the Husbandry was well bestow'd; the *Ashes* making for good *compost* to enrich the Soil, (as burning the Turf of barren lands, and ploughing the *Ashes* of it, on some grounds with us) that at the first it yielded sixty-fold increase. And though the first virtue of that experiment be long since decayed, yet still it yieldeth thirty-fold in most places of it; fruitful withall of a kind of Plant used in dying Clothes, which is hence called *Mader*; and of *Sugar-Canes* in such a wonderful manner, that for a time the fifths of the *Sugars* herein made amounted yearly to 60000 *Arrobes*; now not half so much. The Ile wonderfully fruitful also of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choicest Wines; the Slips whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more Grapes than leaves, and Clusters of two, three, and four spans long: The Hills well stored with Goats, the Plains with numerous Herds of Cattel; the Woods with Peacocks, Thrushes, Pigeons: these last to ignorant of the injury which Man might do them, that at the first coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would suffer themselves to be taken up; but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

The whole Island in all parts well watered, having besides many pleasant Springs, eight handfom Rivers, wherewith the Earth refresh'd and moistned, yields the sweeter Herbage; which otherwise by reason of the heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be so nourishing. The chief City of it hath the name of *Fouchial*, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of Justice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Junonis*, or *Antolala*, as many learned men conceive, and again forgotten; it was of later times discovered

discovered by one *Machan*, an *English*-man, who was cast upon it by a tempest, *An. 1344.* who burying there his wife, or some other woman which he had in his company, writ on her tomb his name, and coming thither, with the cause thereof; which gave the *Portugals* occasion to look further after it. Desolate, and unpeopled at the first discovery, now exceeding populous: and of no small advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which first united, *An. 1410.* under the conduct of *Prince Henry*, before mentioned.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI* *Id.* of the Isle of *HOLY-PORT*; is distant from *Madera* about 40 miles; neighbouring the Coasts of *Mauwritania Tingitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Pholomy*. So called, because discovered by some *Portugal*-Mariners (by the direction and encouragement of the said *P. Henry*) on *All-hallows* day, *An.* 1428. Desolate and uninhabited at the first discovery, but now very well peopled. In compass about 15 miles; well stored with Corn and Fruits, great shoals of Fish upon their shores, plenty enough of Bees and Goats: but such abundance of Conies (bred of one *Doe* Coney brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no less pestered with them in these later times, than the *Baleares* were of old; insomuch that they were out of hope to withstand the mischief, or repair the damages sustained by them. A little Island not far off, breedeth nothing else. The chief Town of it *Porto-Santo*, or *Holy-Port*, seated on a convenient Rode, but a sorry Haven, was taken by Sir *Amias Preston*, in our wars with Spain, *An.* 1596. but being sacked and spoiled; was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was said, and reckoned for the most remote Colony which the *Carthaginians*, or *Phœnicians* had in the Western Ocean; beyond which they conceived the Sea to be unnavigable, (proved otherwise by *Hanno's* voyage) choaked with mud and weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (*Ethiopum populus alit ultima Cerne*) by *Pestus Rufus*, and others of the Ancient writers.

15. *THE HESPERIDES.*

15. **THE HESPERIDES**, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are said to be two in number, situated in the *Atlantic* Seas, but we find not where. Much memorized and chanted by the Ancient Poets, for giving a safe and pleasant habitation to the daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the name of *Hesperides* also); the curious Gardens by them planted, and the *Golden Apples* of it which were kept by a Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Historians* remove these Gardens out of the Sea, into the main Land of *Africk*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already spoken of. Which notwithstanding, it is granted that there were anciently some Islands in the *Atlantic* Ocean, noted by this name, and said to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord: and therefore probably the same which *Plutarch* in the life of *Sertorius* calleth *Insule Atlanticæ*, and describeth them thus: “Αὐτὰς δύο νῆσους, ἀπὸ τοῦ μεγάλου ἡπείρου χωριστάς, &c. They are (saith he) two Islands parted by a narrow Strait of the Sea, distant from the main Land of *Africk* 10000 furlongs, which in our account cometh to 1250 miles) called also the Isles of *Blessed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Islands*. They have rain there very seldom, but a fine sweet Dew, which makes the Earth exceeding fruitful both for tillage and planting fruits, which sometimes grow without any care or labour of the husband-man; sufficient by their plenty and sweetness to maintain the people, much given to ease, and hardly troubling themselves with any business. The Air for the most part very temperate, never extrem in any changes of the season; the rigor of the Northern, and Eastern winds, being by so long a passage thither very much abated; as on the other side the Western and South-Eastern winds do much refresh it with such Mists as they bring from the Sea, to the great comfort of the people. A place so generally sweet, that the barbarous people in it have a constant and approved opinion, that these should be the *Elysian Fields*, the seats of the blessed souls departed, described by *Homer*: with the report whereof *Sertorius* was so highly taken, that he intended to have given over the pursuit of the Civil wars, and there to spend the rest of his days in peace and happiness; which he had done, if the *Cilician* men accustomed unto spoil and rapine, had not took him off. So far and to this purpose *Plutarch*. But what these Islands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great distance from the Coast of *Africk*, they cannot be the *Fortunate Islands* spoken of before) I cannot easily determine: unless we should conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Islands of *Cuba* and *Hispiniola*, or the Coasts of *America*; to the Story and *Chorography* whereof we are now to hasten.

And so much for the *Iles* of *AFRICK*.

[illegible]

A Table of the LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the
principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

A.	Long.	Latit.		Long.	Latit.
A Gadez	39 20	25 30	Malta	46 0	35 30
Alexandria	67 0	31 20	Manicongo	47 20	7 0 A.
Algiers	33 0	35 20	Morocco	20 0	30 30
Amara	63 30	5 0 A.	Adelinde	71 20	3 20 A.
Angola	45 10	7 0 A.	Meroe	68 20	16 15
Asina	66 30	25	Mezzata	47 40	30 40
Azamor	18 30	32 40	Alina	28 50	06 20
Atquin	11 10	20 20	Mombaza	72 0	4 50 A.
Adrimetum			Mofambique	70 20	14 40
			Memphis		
B.			N.		
Babel Mandel	80 01	12 50	Nubia	60 0	17 40
Bagamedrum	62 36	6 0	O.		
Barca	62		Oran	29 40	35 0
Benin	41 0	7 40	P.		
Bona	37 10	35 40	Palma	6 20	28 0
Borne	44 30	17 10	Pasfar	59 40	1 20 A.
Brava	74 30	0 30	Q.		
Budomel	10 20	14 30	Quiloa	69 50	8 56
Bugia	34 30	35 10	R.		
Babylon Egypt			Rameses	68 30	30 50
C.			S.		
Caire	67 30	30 0	Sabains	68 20	8 40
Cyrene	53 30	32 0	Septa	22 0	35 40
Canaria	9 30	27 20	Snachem	72 40	18 40
Carthage			Sus	27 30	
Cirta			Salla		
D.			T.		
Damiata	60 0	33 40	Tangier	30 50	35 0
Damut	51 0	15 20	Tefethne	16 10	30 0
Dancalis	65 0	17 30	Tegnit	27 40	28 10
Dara	66 50	12 0	Telent	17 0	30 30
Docono	78 20	12 30	Tenariffe	8 10	27 30
F.			Theffet	20 0	29 10
Fatigar	74 0	2 40 A.	Telefine	29 0	34 10
Fesse	21 50	32 50	Tigremahon	65 0	6 0
Fierro	6 20	26 30	Tombuto	20 50	15 0
Fort ventura	11 0	28 0	Tunis	40 0	36 0
Fouchial	8 10	31 30	Thebes im Egypt		
G.			V.		
Gamba	64 49	70 30 A.	Vella	77 0	13 0
Guoga	55 0	22 0	Utica		
Goyami	57 0	14 0 A.	Z.		
Gualata	13 30	23 30	Zacatera.	88 0	12 50
Guber	29 26	10 40	Zegreg	36 40	14 40
H.			Zella	80 0	11 20
Holy Port	10 0	33 30	Zigec	45 50	40 50
I.			Zimbau	59 0	25 20 A.
Lancerot	11 40	29 30			
M.					
Madagascar	77 0	19 0 A.			
Midaxo	46 0	5 10			

A is the Mark of a Southern Latitude.

COSMOGRAPHIE, The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHIE AND HISTORIE OF AMERICA,

AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

By PETER HEYLYN.

Matth. 24. 14.

Et predicabitur hoc Evangelium regni, in universo orbe, testimonium omnibus
Gentibus: & tunc veniet consummatio.

S. Hieronym. in locum.

Signum Domini adventus, est Evangelium in toto Orbe predicari, ut nullus sit
excusabilis: quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

LONDON,
Printed for A. S. 1665.

COSMOGRAPHIE, The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AMERICA, AND ALL THE Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles of it.

OF AMERICA.



AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick Ocean*, and the *Pergivian Seas*, by which parted from *Europe*, and *Africa*; which Seas, the Mariners call *Mare del Nort*; on the West, with the *Pacific Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long, but narrow *Streit*, called the *Streits of Magellan*; the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island*, or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: *New*, for the late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vesputius* an Adventurous Florentine, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to find out those parts, came from the directions and example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places, which *Americus Vesputius* never saw, it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*. The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used than that of *America*, is, the *West-Indies*: *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it, from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mistook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Sea-men used to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural presumptions, than Demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries. Their Reasons drawn. 1 From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the world, which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Ancients was by supposition, at the best by Demonstration only, and not in fact; or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2ly It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discovered a great Island in the Western Ocean, and after a long voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous voyage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) informs us that he sailed not Westwards, but more towards the South: and therefore this great Island, whatsoever it was, (whether *Medera*, or some one of the *Fortunate Islands*, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3ly It is alledged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantick Ocean*, *Lybiam & Africam adæquans* (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Lybia*, and *Africk* properly so called: which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and

therefore possibly never extant but in some mens fancies. 4ly. That *Aristotle* in the book *de Mundo* (if that book be his) speaks of an Island very fruitful, and full of navigable Rivers; discovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Island being affirmed by that Author, to be *Mulorum iterum itinere a Gadibus remota*, hath made some men conceive it to be this *America*, or some of the great Islands of it. As if it might not be as well one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*; or some other of the Islands in the Road of *Hannor* voyage. Certain I am, that One of the best friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly lose such an opportunity of enabling their performances in *Navigation* (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no such place as is there described by that Author, whofoever he were. 5ly. Some have produced these Verses of *Seneca*, to inferre a knowledge of this Country amongst the Ancients, viz.

*Venient annis secula seris,
Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum
Laxet, & ingens pateat tellus,
Novosque Typhis delegat Orbes,
Nec sit Terris ultima Thule.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

In the last dayes an age shall come,
Wherein the all-devouring Fome
Shall lose its former bounds, and shew
Another Continent to view.
New-worlds, which Night doth now conceal,
A second Typhis shall reveal;
And frozen Thule shall no more
Be of the Earth the furthest Shore.

But this Argument can bring no necessary, nor so much as a probable inference, of any such Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* shewing as well the continual dangers, as the possible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were more Lands discovered, than those formerly known. 6ly. Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is said in the holy Scriptures to have sent for Gold. But *Ezion-Geber*, which is there also said to be the station where his Navy lay, was situate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had sent this way, his shipping must have lain at *Joppa*, or some other port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence set forwards through the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and so plainly Westward. 7ly. Finally, in the History of *Wales* writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the son of *Owen Gwynedd* Prince of *Wales*, of purpose to decline engaging in a civil war raised in that Estate, in the year 1170. put himself to Sea; and after a long course of Navigation, came into this Country: where after he had left his men, and fortified some places of advantage in it, he returned home for more supplies; which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the rest of that Nation. To which some add, that here is still some smattering of the *Welsh*, or *British* tongue to be found amongst them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Penguin*, and the like: in which regard some sorry Statesmen went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the Sovereignty of these Countries; Others more wise, dissuaded from that vain Ambition, considering that *Welsh-men*, as well as others, might be cast upon those parts by force of Tempest; and easily implant some few words of their own among the people there inhabiting. And though I needs must say for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they say, than those which look for this new World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Islands of *Aristotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Discoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet am I not so far convinced of the truth thereof, the use of the Mariners *Compass* being not so ancient (without which such a voyage could not be performed;) but that I may conclude with more satisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer said once of *Britain*, then newly conquered by the *Romans*; *Britannia qualis sit, qualesque progenet, mox certiora & magis explorata dicentur*; quippe jura diu clausam aperit ecce Principum maximus (he means *Claudius Caesar*) nec indomitum modo sed & incognitum ante se Gentium Victor: So may we say of *America*, on these late discoveries. What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do; and shall know more certainly then in former times; since those puissant Kings of *Spain* have laid open almost all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquished, but even unknown Nations. For God remembering the promise of his Son, that his Gospel before the end of the World should be preached to all Nations; stirred up one *Christopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Avoy*, in the Signeury of *Genoa*, to be the instrument for finding out those parts of the World, to which the sound of the Gospel had not yet arrived. Who being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not persuade himself (the motion of the Sun considered;) but that there was another World to which that glorious Planet did impart both his light and heat, when he went from us. This World he purposed to seek after, and opening his Design to the State of *Genoa*, An. 1486. was by them rejected. On this repulse, he sent his brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the seventh of *England*; who in his way hapned unfortunately into the hands of Pirates, by whom detained a long while.

but at last enlarged. As soon as he was set at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*; where his Proposition found such a cheerful entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Christopher Columbus* was sent for to come thither also. But God had otherwise disposed of his rich purchase. For *Christopher*, not knowing of his brothers imprisonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his service to have been neglected; and thereupon made his desires known at the Court of *Castile*: where after many delays, and six years attendance on the business, he was at last furnished with three ships only, and those not for Conquest, but Discovery. With this small strength he sailed on the main Ocean more than 60 days, yet could see no Land, so that the discontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny; and partly out of scorn to be under the command of a Stranger, partly desirous to return, would not go a foot forwards. Just at that time it hapned, that *Columbus* did discern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour, than they did before: and probably conceiving that this clearness proceeded from some high habitable place, restrained the time of their expectation within the compass of three days, passing his word to return again, if they did not see the Land within that time. Toward the end of the third day, one of the Company called *Rodrigo de Triane* (he deserves to have his name recorded, being no otherwise rewarded for such joyful news) descried fire; an evident Argument that they drew near unto some shore. The place discovered was an Island on the Coast of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guahani*; by *Columbus* *St. Saviours*; now counted one of the *Lucas*. Landing his men, and causing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Cross thereof, which he erected near the place, where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took possession of this *NEW WORLD*, for the Kings of *Spain*, Octob. 11. An. 1492. Afterwards he discovered, and took possession of *Hispaniola*; and with much treasure, and content, returned towards *Spain*: Preferred for this good service by the Kings themselves, first to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms, with this Inscription, for *Castile and Leon*, *Columbus hath gotten a NEW WORLD*; and in conclusion unto the title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the Isle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Discovery being sent to Pope *Alexander* the 6. by the Kings of *Castile*, he very liberally bestowed upon them all those Countries, which they already had, or should afterwards discover in the Western world; advising them to use their diligence and endeavours for converting those people to the Faith; which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furnished with 18 Ships for more Discoveries, and his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governour of the Countries discovered by him, they took along with them one *Buyl*, a Benedictine Monk, as the Popes Vicar General, accompanied with the learned *Clarks*, which were to be assistants to him in the converting of that people to the Christian Faith. In this second voyage he discovered the Islands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the Town of *Isabella* (afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo*) in *Hispaniola*; from whence for some severities used against the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was sent Prisoner into *Castile*, but very honourably entertained, and absolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third voyage, in which he discovered the Countries of *Paria*, and *Cumana*, on the firm Land, with the Islands of *Cubagna*, and *Margarita*, with many other Islands, Capes, and Provinces, which shall be touched upon particularly in their several places. In the year 1500. he began his fourth and last voyage, in the course whereof, coming to *Hispaniola* he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicholas de Ovendo*, the then Governour of it; after which scouring along the Sea-Coasts, as far as *Nombré de Dios*, but adding little to the fortune of his former discoveries, he returned back to *Cuba*, and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about six years after (that is to say, An. 1506.) he departed this life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tombe, bald in it self, and otherwise exceeding short of so great a merit. Of which I must tell you by the way, that the *Philip*, whom the *Versifier* (I do not say the Poet) called *Philippus Hispanus*, should rather have been called *Philippus Austriacus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip of Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Joan*, Sole Daughter and Heir of the Kings of *Spain*, and after the death of *Isabella* succeeded in the Realm of *Castile*, or else the Epitaph must be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the 2. Son of *Charles* the fifth, who was not born until the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above 20 years after. Now for this Epitaph, such as it is, it is this that followeth:

*Christophorus genuit quem Genoa Clara Columbus,
(Numine percussus quo nescio) primus in Altum
Descendens Pelagus, solem versusque cadentem
Directo cursu, nostro haec addita Mundo
Litora detexit, Hispano paritura Philippo:
Audenda hinc aliis plura, & majora relinquent.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

I *Christopher Columbus*, whom the Land
Of *Genoa* first brought forth, first took in hand
I know not by what Deity incited,
To scour the Western Seas, and was delighted
To seek for Countries never known before.
Crown'd with success, I first descried the shore
Of the *New World*, then destined to sustain
The future yoke of *Philip* Lord of *Spain*.
And yet I greater matters left behind
For men of more means and a braver mind.

Dying

COSMOGRAPHIE, The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AMERICA, AND ALL THE Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles of it.

OF AMERICA.



AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick Ocean*, and the *Pergivian Seas*, by which parted from *Europe*, and *Africa*; which Seas, the Mariners call *Mare del Nort*; on the West, with the *Pacifique Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long, but narrow *Streit*, called the *Streits of Magellan*; the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island*, or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: New, for the late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vespusius* an Adventurous Florentine, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to find out those parts, came from the directions and example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places, which *Americus Vespusius* never saw, it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*. The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used than that of *America*, is, the *West-Indies*: *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it, from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mistook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Sea-men used to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural presumptions, than Demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries. Their Reasons drawn. 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the world, which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Ancients was by supposition, at the best by Demonstration only, and not in fact; or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2. It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discovered a great Island in the Western Ocean, and after a long voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but *Viſtals*, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous voyage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) informs us that he layed not Westwards, but more towards the South: and therefore this great Island, whatsoever it was, (whether *Medera*, or some one of the *Fortunate Islands*, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3. It is alledged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantick Ocean*, *Lybiam & Africam adæquans* (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Lybia*, and *Africa* properly so called: which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and

therefore possibly never extant but in some mens fancies. 4ly. That *Aristotle* in the book *de Mundo* (if that book be his) speaks of an Island very fruitful, and full of navigable Rivers; discovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Island being affirmed by that Author, to be *Multorum dierum itinere à Gadibus remota*, hath made some men conceive it to be this *America*, or some of the great Islands of it. As if it might not be as well one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*; or some other of the Islands in the Road of *Hannus* voyage. Certain I am, that one of the best friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly lose such an opportunity of enabling their performances in *Navigation* (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no such place as is there described by that Author, whosoever he were. 5ly. Some have produced these Verses of *Seneca*, to inferre a knowledge of this Country amongst the Ancients, viz.

*Venient annis secula seris,
Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum
Laxet, & ingens pateat tellus,
Novosque Typhis delegat Orbes,
Nec sit Terris ultima Thule.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

In the last dayes an age shall come;
Wherein the all-devouring Fome
Shall lose its former bounds, and shew
Another Continent to view.
New-worlds, which Night doth now conceal,
A second Typhis shall reveal;
And frozen Thule shall no more
Be of the Earth the furthest Shore.

But this Argument can bring no necessary, nor so much as a probable inference, of any such Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* shewing as well the continual dangers, as the possible effects of *Navigation*; that there might be, nor that there were more Lands discovered, than those formerly known. 6ly. Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is said in the holy Scriptures to have sent for Gold. But *Ezra-Geber*, which is there also said to be the station where his Navy lay, was situate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had sent this way, his shipping must have lain at *Toppa*, or some other port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence set forwards through the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and so plainly Westward. 7ly. Finally, in the History of *Wales* writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the son of *Owen Gwynedh* Prince of *Wales*, of purpose to decline engaging in a *Civil war* raised in that Estate, in the year 1170. put himself to Sea; and after a long course of *Navigation*, came into this Country: where after he had left his men, and fortified some places of advantage in it, he returned home for more supplies; which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the rest of that Nation. To which some add, that here is still some smattering of the *Welsh*, or *British* tongue to be found amongst them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Penguin*, and the like: in which regard some sorry Statesmen went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the Sovereignty of these Countries; Others more wise, dissuaded from that vain Ambition, considering that *Welsh-men*, as well as others, might be cast upon those parts by force of *Tempest*; and easily implant some few words of their own among the people there inhabiting. And though I needs must say for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they say, than those which look for this new World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Islands of *Aristotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Discoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet am I not so far convinced of the truth thereof, the use of the Mariners *Compass* being not so ancient (without which such a voyage could not be performed;) but that I may conclude with more satisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer said once of *Britain*, then newly conquered by the *Romans*; *Britannia qualis sit, qualesque progenies, mox certiora & magis explorata dicuntur*; quippe jam diu clausam aperit ecce Principum maximus (he means *Claudius Caesar*) nec indomitum modo sed & incognitarum ante se Gentium Victor: so may we say of *America*, on these late discoveries. What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do; and shall know more certainly then in former times; since those puissant Kings of *Spain* have laid open almost all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquished, but even unknown Nations. For God remembering the promise of his Son, that his Gospel before the end of the World should be preached to all Nations; stirred up one *Christopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Neroy*, in the Signeury of *Genoa*, to be the instrument for finding out those parts of the World, to which she found of the Gospel had not yet arrived. Who being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not persuade himself (the motion of the Sun considered;) but that there was another World to which that glorious Planet did impart both his light and heat, when he went from us. This World he purposed to seek after, and opening his Design to the State of *Genoa*, An. 1486. was by them rejected. On this repulse, he sent his brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the seventh of *England*; who in his way hapned unfortunately into the hands of *Pirates*, by whom detained a long while,

but

but at last enlarged. As soon as he was set at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*; where his Proposition found such a cheerful entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Christopher Columbus* was sent for to come thither also. But God had otherwise disposed of his rich purchase. For *Christopher*, not knowing of his brothers imprisonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his service to have been neglected; and thereupon made his desires known at the Court of *Castile*: where after many delays, and six years attendance on the business, he was at last furnished with three ships only, and those not for Conquest, but Discovery. With this small strength he sailed on the main Ocean more than 60 days, yet could see no Land, so that the discontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny; and partly out of scorn to be under the command of a Stranger, partly desirous to return, would not go a foot forwards. Just at that time it hapned, that *Columbus* did discern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour, than they did before: and probably conceiving that this clearness proceeded from some high habitable place, restrained the time of their expectation within the compass of three days, passing his word to return again, if they did not see the Land within that time. Toward the end of the third day, one of the Company called *Rodrigo de Triane* (he deserves to have his name recorded, being no otherwise rewarded for such joyful news) descried fire; an evident Argument that they drew near unto some shore. The place discovered was an Island on the Coast of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guanahani*; by *Columbus* St. *Saviours*; now counted one of the *Lucayos*. Landing his men, and causing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Cross thereof, which he erected near the place, where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took possession of this NEW WORLD, for the Kings of *Spain*, Octob. 11. An. 1492. Afterwards he discovered, and took possession of *Hispaniola*; and with much treasure, and content, returned towards *Spain*: Preferred for this good service by the Kings themselves, first to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms, with this Inscription, for *Castile and Leon*, *Columbus hath gotten a NEW WORLD*; and in conclusion unto the title of Duke De la *Vega*, in the Isle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Discovery being sent to Pope *Alexander* the 6. by the Kings of *Castile*, he very liberally bestowed upon them all those Countries, which they already had, or should afterwards discover in the Western world; advising them to use their diligence and endeavours for converting those people to the Faith; which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furnished with 18 Ships for more Discoveries, and his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governour of the Countries discovered by him, they took along with them one *Buyl*, a Benedictine Monk, as the Popes Vicar General, accompanied with the learned *Clarks*, which were to be assistants to him in the converting of that people to the Christian Faith. In this second voyage he discovered the Islands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the Town of *Isabella* (afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo*) in *Hispaniola*; from whence for some severities used against the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was sent Prisoner into *Castile*, but very honourably entertained, and absolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third voyage, in which he discovered the Countries of *Paria*, and *Cumana*, on the firm Land, with the Islands of *Cubagua*, and *Margarita*, with many other Islands, Capes, and Provinces, which shall be touched upon particularly in their several places. In the year 1500. he began his fourth and last voyage, in the course whereof, coming to *Hispaniola* he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicholas de Ovendo*, the then Governour of it; after which scouring along the Sea-Coasts, as far as *Nombre de Dios*, but adding little to the fortune of his former discoveries, he returned back to *Cuba*, and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about six years after (that is to say, An. 1506.) he departed this life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tomb, bald in it self, and otherwise exceeding short of so great a merit. Of which I must tell you by the way, that the *Philip*, whom the *Versifier* (I do not say the Poet) called *Philippus Hispanus*, should rather have been called *Philippus Austriacus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip* of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Jean*, Sole Daughter and Heir of the Kings of *Spain*, and after the death of *Isabella* succeeded in the Realm of *Castile*, or else the Epitaph must be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the 2. Son of *Charles* the fifth, who was not born until the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above 20 years after. Now for this Epitaph, such as it is, it is this that followeth:

*Christophorus genuit quem Genoa Clara Columbus,
(Numine percussus quo nescio) primus in Altum
Descendens Pelagus, solem versusque cadentem
Directo cursu, nostro hactenus addita Mundo
Litora detexi, Hispano paritura Philippo:
Attenda hinc aliis plura, & majora relinquent.*

Which may be Englished in these words:

I *Christopher Columbus*, whom the Land
Of *Genoa* first brought forth, first took in hand
I know not by what Deity incited,
To scour the Western Seas, and was delighted
To seek for Countries never known before.
Crown'd with success, I first descried the shore
Of the New World, then destined to sustain
The future yoke of *Philip* Lord of *Spain*.
And yet I greater matters left behinde
For men of more means and a braver minde:

Dying

Dying he left two Sons behind him, of which the youngest called *Ferdinand* died unmarried, the eldest called *Diego*, succeeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedom of *Vega*, and married *Marie* of *Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*; but having (as it seemeth) no issue by her, he spent the greatest part of his Estate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, spoken of before, which he furnished with 12000 Volumes, and endowed with a liberal revenue to maintain the same. But though his Family be extinct, yet his Fame shall live, renowned to all posterities, as the first discoverer of this new world, and consequently the greatest and most Fortunate advancer of the *Spanish* Monarchy, though in his life time so maligned by most part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla* being sent into those parts for redress of grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him prisoner into *Spain*. Nor did they only stick after his death, to deprive him of the honour of this *Discovery* (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard*, whose *Cards* and *Descriptions* he had seen) but in his life would often say, that it was a matter of no such difficulty to have found these Countries; and that if he had not done it when he did, some body else might have done it for him. Whose peevishness he confuted by this modest artifice, desiring some of them, who insolently enough had contended with him touching this *Discovery*, to make an Egg stand firmly upon one of its ends. Which when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruizing one end of it, made it stand upright; letting them see without any further reprehension, how easie it was to do that thing which we see another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was seconded by *John Cabot* a *Venetian*, the Father of *Sebastian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the seventh of *England*; who in the year 1497. discovered all the North-East Coasts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South to *Newfound-Land*, and *Terradi Labrador* in the *North*, causing the Roycelets to turn Homagers to that King and the Crown of *England*. Next after him succeeded *Americus Vespasius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, employed therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, An. 1501. on a design of finding out a nearer way to the *Moluccas*, than by the Cape of good Hope, who though he passed not further than the Cape of St. *Augustines* in *Brazil*, without so much as having a sight of the great River de la *Plata*, which washeth the South-parts of that Country; yet from him (to the great injury and neglect of the first Discoverers) the Continent, or main Land of this Country, hath the name of *America*; by which still known, and most commonly called. Followed herein by divers private Adventurers and undertakers, out of all parts of *Europe*, bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellanus* was the first that compassed the whole world, and found the South passage, called *Eretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake*, *Cavendish*, of *England*, *Frobisher*, and *Davies* attempted a *Discovery* of the North-west passage; *Willoughby* and *Burroughs* of the North-east. So that according to that elegant saying of the learned *Verulam*, in his *Advancement of learning*; this great building the world, had never thorough-light made in it, till these our days: by which as almost all parts of *Learning*, so in especial this of *Navigation*, and by consequence of *Cosmography* also, hath obtained an incredible proficiency in these later times.

For in the Infancy and first Ages of the world, (pardon me I beseech you this short, but not unprofitable digression) men lived at home, neither intent upon any Foreign Merchandize, nor inquisitive after the lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours: or in the language of the Poet,

*Nondum cesa suis peregrinum ut viseret Orbem,
Montibus, in liquidis Pinus descenderat undas.*

The *Pine* left not the Hills on which it stood,
To seek strange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had instructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preservation of himself and his children from the general *Deluge*: the posterity, which descended from him, had thereby a pattern for the making of Ships and other Vessels (perfected in a more length of time) whereby to make the waters passable, and maintain a necessary intercourse betwixt Nation and Nation. 'Tis true, the Heathen Writers which knew not *Noah*, attribute the invention of shipping to sundry men, according to such Informations or Traditions, as they had received: *Strabo* to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus*, to *Neptune*, who was therefore called the God of the Seas; and *Tibullus*, to the people of *Tyre*, a Town indeed of great wealth and traffick, and the most famous Empory of the elder times; saying

Prima ratem ventis credere dicta Tyrens.

The *Tyrians* first the Art did find
To make Ships travel with the winde.

And questionless the *Tyrians*, and the rest of the *Phanicians*, enjoying a large Sea-coast, and many safe and capacious Havens, being in these times most strong at Sea, and making for many fortunate Navigations into most parts of the then known World; might give the Poet some good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phanicians*, the *Egyptians* (their next neighbours) might derive the Art of *Navigation*, though being an ingenious people, they did add much to it. For whereas the first Vessels were either made of the body of some great Tree, made hollow by the Art of man; or else of divers rods or twigs fashioned into a Boat, and covered with the skins of Beasts (which we have spoken of before, when we were in *Sangnebar*, and which are still in use amongst these *Americans*:) the *Phanicians* brought them

them first into strength and form; but the *Egyptians* added Decks unto them. By *Danaus* King of *Egypt* when he fled from his brother *Ramefis*, the use of shipping was first brought amongst the *Greeks*: who before that time knew no other way of crossing their narrow Seas, but on Beams or Rafters tied to one another. Nave primus ab *Egypto* Danaus adventit; ante enim Ratibus navigabatur, as it is in *Pliny*: where we may see the true and genuine difference betwixt *Rattis*, and *Navis*; though now both used indifferently for all sorts of shipping. Amongst the *Greeks*, those of *Crete* were the ablest Sea-men; which gave occasion to *Aristotle* to call *Crete* the Lady of the Sea: and to *Strabo* to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following times, the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were most considerable in this kinde; and by the benefit of their shipping much distressed the *Romans*. But so it happened (as all things do and must concur to Gods publick purposes in the alteration of Estates) that a Tempest separating a *Quinqueremis* or Gally of five banks of Oars, from the rest of the *Carthaginian* Fleet, cast it on the shore of *Italy*: by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Ship-wrights, soon became Masters of the Sea. That *France*, and *Spain* were taught the use of shipping by the *Greeks*, and *Phanicians*, is a thing past questioning: *Marseilles* in the one being a *Phoecean*, and *Gades* in the other a *Tyrian* Colony. As for the *Belgians*, and the *Britains*, it is probable that they first learnt it of the *Romans* (though formerly they had some way to transport themselves from one shore to the other:) For *Cæsar* telleth us of the *Belgae*, *Ad eos Mercatores minimè comment, that they were not at all visited by Foreign Merchants. And the same Cæsar found the Seas betwixt France, and Britain, so ill furnished with Vessels, that he was fain to make ships to transport his Army: Singulari Militum studio circiter sexcentis & duodetriginta Naves invenit, as his own words are.*

Having thus brought Navigation to the greatest height which it had in those days; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Vessels, and the Tackle unto them belonging. That the *Phanicians* first invented open Vessels, and the *Egyptians* Ships with Decks, hath been said before: and unto them also is referred the Invention of Gallies, with two Banks of Oars upon a side; which kind of Vessels grew so large in the course of time, that *Ptolomy Philapater* is said to have made a Gally of 50 banks. Great Ships of burden, called *Circææ*, we owe to the *Cypriots*; Cock-boats, or Skiffs (*Scaphæ*) to the *Illyrians*, or *Liburnians*: Brigantines, (*Celoces*) to the *Rhodians*: and Frigots or light Bar ks, (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phæliæ*, and *Pamphyli* (which we may render Men of War) were the invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phæliis*, a Town of *Lycia*, in *Asia Minor*. As for Tackle, the *Boeotians* invented the Oar; *Dadalam*, and his son *Icarus*, the Masts and Sails: Which gave occasion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete*, they made wings to their bodies; and that *Icarus* soaring too high, melted the Wax which fastened his wings unto his shoulders, and thereby perished; the truth being, that presuming too much on this new invention, he ran himself upon a Rock, and was cast away. For *Hippagines*, vessels for transporting of Horse, we are indebted to the *Salaminians*; for grappling hooks, to *Anarcharsis*; for Anchors, to the *Tuscan*; and for the Rudder, Helm, or Art of Steering, to *Typhis* the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*: who noting that a Kite, when she flew, guided her whole body by her Tail; effected that in the devices of Art, which he had observed in the works of Nature. By these helps some great Voyages were performed in the elder times; the greatest those of *Jafon*, *Ulysses*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of these, *Jafon* and his companions, sayled in the ship called *Argo*, through the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulysses*, through the *Mediterranean* only; small gullets, if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander's* journey so famous, and accounted then so hazardous, was but sayling down the River *Indus*, and four hundred furlongs into the Ocean. And for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt*, it is very apparent, that they went with great leisure, and crawled close by the shore-side: otherwise it had been impossible to have consumed three whole years in going from *Ezion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the usual time of these voyages, as appeareth in 1 *King*. 10. 22. After the fall of the *Roman* Monarchy, the most potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean*, were the *Genoese*, and *Venetians*; in the Ocean the *English*, and the *Hanse-towns*; neither of which ever attempted any great discoveries.

But in the year 1300. one *Flavio* of *Malphi* in the Realm of *Naples*, found out the Compass, or *Pixis Nautica*, consisting of 8 winds only, the four principal, and four collateral: And not long after, the people of *Bruges*, and *Antwerp*, perfected that excellent invention; adding 24 other subordinate winds or points. By means of this excellent Instrument, and withal by the good success of *Columbus*, the *Portugals*, Eastwards; the *Spaniards*, Westward; and the *English*, Northwards; have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions: which had been utterly impossible to have been performed, and had been foolishly undertaken, when that help was wanting. I know there hath been much pains taken by some learned men, to prove the use of the *Mariners Compass* to be far more ancient, than is now commonly pretended. *Fuller*, a very learned and industrious man, but better skilled in the *Hebrew* tongue, than the *Philologie* of the *Greeks*, and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phanicians* (the most famous Sea-men of old times): but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the cause. Nor is it possible that such an excellent invention, so beneficial to the common good of all mankind, should have been forgotten and discontinued, for the space of more than 2000 years, if ever the *Tyrians*, and *Phanicians* had been Masters of it: who could not possibly conceal it (had they been so minded) from the Common *Mariners*, or they not have communicated it for gain, or desire of glory, to the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, under whom successively they lived. As little moment do I find in some other Arguments, as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the ancient Writers, or the *Perforia* of *Plautus*, should be by them intended of the *Mariners Compass*. For plainly the *Perforia* of *Plautus*, is no other than that piece of tackle, which our *Mariners* now call the *Bolin*; by which

which they use to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every wind. And so much doth appear by the Poet himself, in the Comedie which he calls *Mercator*; saying, *Hinc ventus nunc secundus est, cape modo Versoriam*. So called from *Verso*, to turn often, or from *Versum* the first Supine of *Verbo*: whence *Velum versare* is a common phrase amongst the *Latines*, used for the shifting of the Sail as the winde doth vary. As for the *Load-stone*, it is called indeed *Heracleus Lapis*, *Ἡρακλῆος λίθος* by the *Greeks*: not because *Hercules Tyrinus*, whom the *Phanicians* invoked when they were at Sea, had first found out the vertue of it, as our *Fuller* thinketh; but because first found neer *Heraclea*, a City of *Lydia*, *Ἡράκλειος πόλις* ἢ *Ἡρακλῆος τὸ ἐν Λυδία πόλις*, saith *Hesychius* the old *Grammarians*. Called for the same reason *Magnes*, by the writers both *Greek*, and *Latine*; because first found in the Territory of *Magnesia*, a City of *Lydia* also, whereof *Heraclea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us of the *Greeks*, *Ἡράκλειος λίθος πρὸς τὴν Μαγνησίαν ἀπιδύσκει, διὰ τὸ Ἡρακλῆος τὴν Μαγνησίαν εἶναι*: *Heracleum Lapidem quidam Magnesium reddiderunt; quia Heraclea pars est Magnesiæ*. Called for the very same reason *Lydim Lapis* also, but by them known only as a touch-stone. Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latines*.

*Quam Magneta vocant patrio de nomine Graii,
Magnetum quia sit patriis de finibus ortus.*

Which Stone the *Greeks* do *Magnes* name,
Because it from *Magnesia* came.

But I have rambled further than I did intend, drawn by the vertue of the *Load-stone* too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America*; where the *Spaniards* at their first Arrival found the people without all manner of Apparel, nought skilled in *Agriculture*, making their bread either of a Plant called *Maize*, or a kind of Root called *Juca*: a Root wherein is a venomous liquor, not inferior to the most deadly poysons; but having first squeezed out this juice, and after dried and prepared the Root, they made their Bread of it. They worshipped Devilish Spirits, whom they called *Zemes*; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of *Cotton wool*, like our *Childrens Babies*: to which they did great reverence, as supposing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them; and to blind them the more, the *Devil* would cause these *Puppets* to seem to move, and to make a noise. They stood also in so great fear of them, that they durst not displeasure them: for if their wills were not fulfilled, the *Devil* trait excuted vengeance upon some of their Children; so holding this infatuated people in perpetual thraldom. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not seen, that they thought the *Christians* to be immortal: wondering exceedingly at the Sails, Masts, and Tacklings of their Ships; themselves knowing no Ships or other Vessels, but huge Troughs made of some great-bodied Tree. But this opinion of the *Christians* immortality (in the sense they meant it) did not long continue: for having taken some of them, they held their heads under the water, till they had quite choked them; by which they knew them to be mortal like other men. Quite destitute of all good learning, they reckoned their time by a confused observation of the course of the Moon; and strangely admired to see the *Spaniards* know the health and affairs of one another, only by reading of a Letter. Of a plain and honest nature, for the most part they were found to be; Loving and kind in their entertainments, and apt to do good Offices both private and publick, according to their understandings: encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond some certain Hills (but they knew not where) those which lived honestly and justly, or offered up their lives in defence of their Country, should find a place of everlasting peace and happiness. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls immortality, and of some *liberty* for the future reception of it, that we finde some tract, or other of it in most barbarous Nations. And as for *Gold* and *Silver*, which the new-come *Christians* so adored, they esteemed them no otherwise than as dross: though many times they adorned themselves therewith for the colours sake; as they did also with shels, feathers, and the like fine *Gew-gaws*.

Of complexion, most of these *Americans* were reasonably fair and clear, little inclining unto blackness: notwithstanding that a great part of this Country lieth under the same parallel with *Ethiopia*, *Lybia*, and the Land of *Negrees*. So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as some imagine) the cause of that blackness; though accidentally it may turn the skin into such a colour as we see in many Country-Lasses, even in colder *Climates*, whose faces are continually exposed to the Sun and Weather. Others more wise in their own conceits (but in no bodies else) will have the natural Seed of the *Africans* to be black of colour; contrary both to sense and reason, Experience and true natural Philosophy being both against it. And some will have this Blackness laid as a curse on *Chama*, (from whose posterity the *African* Nations do derive themselves) because, forsooth, he had carnal knowledge of his wife when they were in the *Ark*: a fancy as ridiculous, as the other false. So that we must refer it wholly to Gods secret pleasure; though possibly enough the curse of God on *Chama* and on his posterity (though for some cause unknown to us) hath an influence on it.

Touching the Original of this people, it is most probable that they descended from the *Tartars*; for which there are some Arguments of especial weight. For first, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*; as having no remainders of the Arts, Learning, and Civilities of it. And secondly, that they came not from *Africa*, in regard they have no black-men amongst them, except some few which dwell on the Sea-coasts over against *Guinea* in the Land of the *Negrees*, from whence they are supposed to have been brought hither by some Tempest, or other. Thirdly, that they have not the least token, or shew of the arts and industry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that side of *Asia*. The affirmative Arguments prove first, that they came from *Asia*; next in particular from *Tartary*. That they

they came out of of *Asia*, is more than manifest, in that the West-side of the Country towards *Asia*, is far more populous, than the East towards *Europe*: of which there can be no other reason assigned; than that these parts were first inhabited, and that from hence the rest was peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this people, and the particularities thereof, their incivility, and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are most like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the West-side of *America*, if it be not Continent with *Tartary*, is yet disjoyned by a very small Strait, as may be perceived in all our *Maps* and *Cards*, as also in the Description of these Countries: so that there is into these Countries a very quick and easie passage. And fourthly, the people of *Quivira*, which of all the Provinces of *America* is the nearest unto *Tartary*, are said to follow in their whole course of their life, the seasons and best pasturing of their Cattel, just like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*: an evident argument of their Original descent.

But from what Root forever they did first descend, certain it is that they had settled here many ages since, and overspread all the parts and quarters of this spacious Continent; there being no place, which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found desolate, or waste, and without Inhabitants. But their numbers much diminished since these late Discoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themselves most inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked people: killing them up like sheep appointed to the slaughter, or otherwise consuming them in their Mines and works of drudgery. And had not *Charles* the fifth ordained with most *Christian* prudence, that the *Natives* should not be compelled to work in the *Mines* against their wills; but that the *Spaniards* should provide themselves of *Slaves* elsewhere: the *Natives*, in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of *Christianity* and the Gospel. For so exceeding barbarous and bloody were they at their first coming thither, that *Haithney*, a Nobleman amongst them, being persuaded to embrace the *Christian* faith, demanded first what he should get by being of that Religion: and was answered, that he should get *Heaven* and the joys thereof: Then would he know, what place was destinatoe such as died unbaptized; and was answered, that they went to *Hell*, and the torments of it. Finally, asking unto which of these two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told they went to *Heaven*; he renounced his baptism: protesting that he would rather go to *Hell* with the unbaptized, than to live in *Heaven* with so cruel a people. The rest were driven unto the *Fons*, like so many Horses to the watering place; and received into the Church of *Christ* without any instruction: insomuch that one old Frier (as himself confessed to *Charles* the fifth) had Chritened 700000 of them, and another of that rank 300000. never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the *Christian* faith, or points of Religious conversation, (except it were to be obedient to their Pastors and Teachers.) Yet here I must confess, (for I am loth to defraud any man of his due) there hath been made a great improvement of *Christianity*: the number of *Christians* in this Country, being thought by some Learned man of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all those of the *Latine* Churches in *Europe*. And though perhaps constrained at first unto it as a new Religion, and of a stricter Rule than that which before they had; yet by long time and education it is now grown more plausible and familiar to them. The Church hereof governed by the four Archbishops of 1 *Mexico*, 2 *Lima*, 3. *S. Foy*, and 4 *Dominico*; who have under them 25 Suffragan Bishops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this new world came first acquainted with the old, *Isabel* Queen of *Castile*, would not permit any of her husband *Ferdinando*'s subjects, to be planted here, viz. *Arragonians*, or *Valentians*, but licensed the *Castilians*, *Andalusians*, *Biscains*, and the rest of her own people only, envying the wealth hereof to the rest. When she was dead, *Ferdinando* licensed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding only the *Portugals*. But so rich a prize could not so warily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *English*, and now of late the *Low-country-men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniards* harvest; who well hoped to have had a Monopoly of so wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any rival or competitor the possession (I cannot say the love) of a Country so abundantly fruitful. For though some of the Kings of *Spain*, have been used to say, that they loved the *East-Indies* as their *Mistress*; only, in whose favour they could patiently endure a Rival; but esteemed *America* as their wife; in whose love they could not brook a Competitor, without foul dishonour: yet by his leave (or without it rather) some of his neighbours have made bold with his wife, in these later times; though in the affections of his *Mistress* they have greater interest. But these attempts of the *English* and *Hollanders*, have been an occasion of great strength to the whole Country. For whereas in our first Wars with *Spain*, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time, our private Adventurers found the Sea-coasts almost naked of defence, and thereupon made many a rich and prosperous voyage to these parts: the *Spaniards* upon sight of that weakness and disadvantage, so strongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the reign of that Queen, we were not able to accomplish that with great and publick Forces, which before had been performed by small and private. Which caused our *Captains* and Adventurers, failing oftentimes in the Continent, to make up their Market on the Seas, in the return of the *Spanish* Navies, as they yet do.

This New World is very plentiful of Spices, Fruits, and such Creatures which the old World never knew; stocked with such store of Kine and Bulls; (brought hither out of *Europe* since the first discovery) that the *Spaniards* kill thousands of them yearly, for their tallow and hides only. Blest with such abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines, more Gold than Earth: a Metal which the *Americans* not regarding, greedily exchanged for *Hammers*, *Knives*, *Axes*, and the like tools of Iron; for before they were wont to make their Canoes, or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of fire. Other particularities shall be specified in the particular Descriptions of the several Countries. I shall now only take a brief view of such of their Beasts and Fowls, as either this old World did not know, or knew not in such shapes and qualities, as are there presented. Their *Lynx* less in great-ness

nels than those in *Africa*, are said to be of colour gray, and so nimble as to climb Trees; their Dogs snowed like *Foxes*, but deprived of that property which the *Logicians* call *Proprium quarto modo*, for they could not bark; their *Hogs* with talons sharp as *Razors*, and the navil of their bodies on the Ridge of their backs: their *Stags*, and *Deer*, without *Horns*; their *Sheep* (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable as with us, for food and raiment, but accustomed to the carrying of burdens, some of 150 pound weight. Amongst such strange *Beasts* as this *old World* knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whose name I finde not) whose forepart resembleth a *Fox*, the hinder part an *App*, except the Feet only which are like a Mans; beneath her belly a receptacle like a Purse, where she keeps her young, till they be able to shift for themselves; never coming thence but when they suck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a barbed Horse, seeming to be armed all over, and that with Artificial (rather than natural) Plates, which do shut and open. The *Vicugna* resembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the *Fleece* whereof they make Rugs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the Belly finde the *Bezoar*, sometimes two or three, a sovereign *Antidote* against Poisons and venomous Diseases. A kinde of *Hare* resembling a *Want* in his feet, and a *Cat* in his tail; under whose chin nature hath fastned a little Bag, which she hath also taught him to use as a *Store-house*: for in this, having filled his Belly, he preserveth the remnant of his *Provision*. The *Pigritia*, a little Beast (not so named for nought) which in fourteen days cannot go so far as a man may easily throw a stone. Then for their *Birds*, they have them there in such variety of colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly represent in Feathers whatsoever they see drawn with Pencils: inasmuch as a *Figure* of *S. Francis* made of Feathers, was presented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whose eye could not discern them to be natural colours, but thought them Pencil-work, till he made tryal with his fingers. One called the *Tominejo*, of all colours, so little that it seems no bigger than a Bee or Butter-fly; the mouth thereof no bigger than the eye of a needle; yet yielding not to the *Nightingale* in the sweetness of its note and Musick: the Bird and Nest put into Gold Scales, not weighing above 24 grains, yet beautified with Feathers of so many colours, especially in the neck and breast, that the *Indians* make great use of them in their *Feather-pictures*. Others as big, as these are little. The *Condors* of such strength and greatness, that they will fall upon a *Sheep* or *Calf*, open it, and eat it. Like Miracles of nature have they in their *Fruits* and *Plants*, more proper unto *Natural History* than to this Discourse: and many medicinal Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the consideration of the Learned *Herbalists*. I am too much a Fool to be a *Physician*, and therefore will not deal in such things as are out of my Element. Yet somewhat of this kind we may chance to meet with, in the Description and Survey of the several Provinces, into which this *new World* is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninsulas*; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana*, from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, supposed (for the most Northern parts of it are not yet discovered) to contain 13000 miles in compass. That towards the South, hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Country of *Peru*; the circumnavigation whereof is reckoned at 17000 Italian miles. The *Isthmus* which joyneth these two together, very long but narrow; in some places not above twelve miles from Sea to Sea; in many not above seventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the Strait of *Darien*, from a River of that name in *Peruana*; neer unto the *Isthmus*: and is so small a Ligament for so great a Body, that some have thought of turning these two *Peninsulas* into perfect Islands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Council of *Spain*, the cutting of a navigable channel through this small *Isthmus*, so to shorten their common voyages to *China*, and the *Moluccoes*. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly because if he should employ the *Americans* in the work, he should lose those few of them, which his people have suffered to live; partly because the *Slaves* which they yearly buy out of *Africa*, do but suffice for the Mines and Sugar-couses; but principally, lest the passage by the *Cape of good hope*, being left, those Seas might become a receptacle of *Pirates*. Which doubtless was a very prudent and Politick consideration. Many times I have read of the like attempts begun, but never of any finished. *Sesostris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius* of *Persia*, one of the *Ptolomies*, and a late capricious *Portugal* had the like Plot, to make a passage from the *Red-Sea* to the *Mediterranean*: so had *Cesar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Isthmus*. Another of the same nature had *Charles the great*, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danow*; the like had *Lacius Vetus*, to joyn the *Rhene* and the *Rosne*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicamor* also King of *Syria*, intended to have made a channel from the *Caspian* to the *Euxine Sea*; an infinite project. But neither he nor any of the rest could finish these works; God it seemeth, being not pleased at such proud and haughty enterprizes. And yet perhaps the want of treasure hath not been the least cause, why the like projects have not proceeded: besides the dreadful noyes and apparitions, which (as we have already said) continually affrighted the workmen.

Not less observable than this great but unsuccessful design of cutting a passage through the *Isthmus*, from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but a like successful Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous *Englishman*, in a passage over it by Land. This man being one of the Followers of *Sir Francis Drake*, arriving in a small Bark with 70 of his Companions, a little above *Nombre di Dios*, the chiefest Town of all the *Isthmus*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company, guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entered the South-Sea, went to the Isle of *Pearls*, where he stayed ten days; intercepted in two *Spanish Ships* (who feared no Enemy on that side) 60000 pound weight of Gold, 200000 pound weight in bars of Silver, and returned in safety to the Land. And though by the mutiny of some of his own Company, he neither returned into his Country, nor unto his Ship: yet is it

an

an Adventure not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other; and by the *Spanish Writers* recorded with much admiration.

But to return to the Division of this Country; and the two main parts thereof which this Strait uniteth; *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninsula*, may be most properly divided into the Continents, and Island: the Continent again into the several Provinces of 1 *Estotiland*, 2 *Nova Francia*, 3 *Virginia*, 4 *Florida*, 5 *Californis*, 6 *Nova Gallicia*, 7 *Nova Hispania*, 8 *Guatimala*; each of them branched into many subdivisions, and lesser Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninsula*, taking in some part of the *Isthmus*, as before we did, hath on the Continent the Provinces of 1 *Castella Aurea*, 2 *Nova Granada*, 3 *Peru*, 4 *Chile*, 5 *Paraguay*, 6 *Brasil*, 7 *Gniana*, and 8 *Paria*; with their several members, parts, and particular Regions. The Islands with belong to both, dispersed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mare del Sur*; where there is not any one of note, but 1 Those called *Los Ladrones*, and 2 the Islands of *Solomon*; or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mare del Norte*, reduced unto 3 the *Caribes*, 4 *Porto Rico*, 5 *Hispaniola*, 6 *Cuba*, and 7 *Jamaica*. In the survey of which particulars we will begin with those which lie on the North-east of this great Continent, not possessed by the *Spaniards*: and passing thorow the Plantations of such other Nations, as have any footing in the same, come by degrees to the Estates of the King of *Spain*; that we may lay them altogether without interruption: beginning with *Estotiland*, the most Northern part, and that which (as some say) was discovered first.

Rrrr

OF

OF ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend those Regions of *Mexicana*, which lie most towards the North, and East; hath on the East, the main Ocean; on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the West, some unknown Tract not yet discovered: and on the North, a Bay, or Infer of the Sea, called *Hudsons Streits*, and called so from *Henry Hudson an English man*, who by this way endeavoured to find out a more commodious and quick passage to *Cathay* and *China*, than had been formerly discovered, It comprehends, 1. *Estotiland* specially so called. 2. *Nova Suedia*, and 3. the Isles of *Bacalaos*.

2 *Terra Cortialis*. 3 *New-found Land*, and 4 the Isles of *Bacalan*.
1. And first *Esosiland*, Ipecially so called, is the most Northern Region on the East-side of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudsons Streits* on the North, and *Terra Cortialis* on the South. The soyl sufficiently enriched with natural endowments, said to have in it Mines of Gold, and other Metals; but I doubt it lieth too much North for Gold, whatsoever it may do for Brasse and Iron. The people rude and void of goodnes, naked, notwithstanding the extreme cold of the Country; not having either the wit, or the bodies with the skins of those Beasts which they kill by hunting; though their belaire to cover their bodies with the flesh thereof; said by the first *Discoverers* to sow Corn, to make Beer, or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Green-land*; as also to have many Cities and Castles, some Temples consecrate to their Idols, where they first sacrificed men, and after eat them. The Language which they speak, expressed in *Characters* of their own; but some knowledge of the *Latine* tongue there had been amongst them, and *Latine* books in the Library of one of their Kings, understood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Country by the first *Discoverers*, who were certain *Fishermen* of *Freeze-land*, cast by a Tempest on this Coast about the year 1350. Six of them only got on Land, where all died save one : who after along wandering from one Princes Court to another, found means to return into his own Country : the King whereof called *Zichumi*, being a great *Adventurer* in the feats of Arms, prepared for the further Discovery and Conquest of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice* : who desiring to see the Fashions of the world, furnished a ship at their own charges, and passing the *Streits of Gibraltar* held their course Northward, with an intent to see *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by tempest on this Island, *An*. 1380. they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly prosperous in a War against those of *Norway* : who liked *Nicolo* so well, that he gave him a command in his Navy, and under his good conduct won many Islands, discovered *Green-land*, and provided for the conquest of *Estotiland* also. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the business was pursued by his brother *Antonio*, the King in person making one in the undertaking : who liked the Country so well, being once possessed of it, that he built a City in it, and there determining to spend the rest of his days, sent back *Antonio* unto *Freeze-land*, with the most of his people.

This is the substance of the story of the first Discovery, published long since by one *Francisco Marcellino*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been considered of as they might have been, we had not so long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the World. But whither it were that their reports were esteemed as fabulous by the *States of Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Discovery; there was nothing done in pursuance of it: *Zichumi* never going back to his own Country, and *Freezland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite lost again, till these latter dayes. Said in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well stored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for their refreshing: the Haven where they landed, to be called *Cape Trin*; the people to be of small Stature, fearful, and to hide themselves in Caves, at the sight of the *Freezlanders*: that there was a Mountain alwayes burning, or calving smoak; together with a certain Spring, whence issued a water as black as Pitch; but no such Cities, Forts, and Temples, as the *Fishermen* spoke of. The Country Weit from *Freezland* 1000 miles.

spike of. The Country West from *Freezeland* 1000 miles.

To give you the face of it as it stands at the present, it is said to be well cultivated, fruitful of all necessaries for the life of man, and rich in Metals, but extreme cold : watered with four Rivers, which rising out of an high Mountain in the midst of the Country, disperse themselves over all parts of it. The people said to be more ingenious, of better judgments, and more skilled in most *Mechanick Arts*, than the rest of the *Americans* were at the first Discovery ; which argueth some more civil people to have been formerly amongst them. Their Garments of the skins of beasts, or Sea-Calves ; with which also they covered the out-side of their Boats, to keep out the water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whither the name of *Cape Trin* be still remaining, I am not able to discover ; this Country lying still for the most part hidden in a *Northern Mist*. All we can say, is, that some *English* names have been imposed of late, on some Capes and Promontories lying on the Northern shores here-of towards *Hudsons Streets*, by *Hudson* and such others of the *English Nation* who pursued that Enterprise : Of which sort are *Prince Henrys Foreland*, towards the East, almost at the entries of those *Streits* : and then proceeding towards the West *Cape Charls*, *Kings Foreland* ; and last of all, *Cape Walsingham*, at the end thereof, where these *Streits* open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudsons Bay*. But of these more particularly in another place ; where we endeavour the Discovery of such parts of the world as are yet unknown, and so within the compass of a *Terra incognita*.

2. *TERRA*

2. T E R

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North, *Estotiland*; on the South, *Canada*, or *New-France*. So called from *Caspar Corterialis*, who in the year 1500 left his name unto it. It is called also *Terra di Laboradoro*, both from the pains required of the Husband-man; and the greate recompence which it gives him: In the same sense; as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples*, is named *Terra di Lavoro*: By the French, who succeeded in the possession hereof after the *Spaniards* had forsook it, it was called *New-Bretagne*; with reference to *Bretagne* in France, their own natural Country.

The people at the first coming of Corterials were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, swift of foot, and very good Archers: their clothing of Beasts-skins, their habitations *Casas*, or some sorry Cottages; their Religion *Paganisme*, or none; their directions *South-Siding*. Not so forgetful of the Law which Nature had planted in them; as not to know the necessary use of *Mortification* extremely to themselves: Better conditioned at the present than in former times; by their near neighbourhood to the *French*, and commerce with *Forerimers*: affirmed to be very well disposed to feed most generally on fish, and to adorn themselves with *Bracelets* of bials, or silver. Their chief *Towns*, 1. *Brefi*. 2. *Santa Maria*. 3. *Cabo Marzo*, of which little memorable.

3 Cabo Marzo, of which little memorable.

The Country first discovered by *Sebastian Cabot*; the Son of *John Cabot*; before mentioned: who in the year 1497. at the Charges and encouragement of King *Henry 7th.* setting sayl from *Bristol*; first made the discovery of these parts, as far as to the Latitude of 67 and an half, (which brings *Essequitand* within the compass also of his discoveries.) The Land which he first saw, he called *Prima Vista*; and an Island lying before it he called *St. Johns*, because discovered on the day of *St. John Baptists*. They found upon the Country plenty of *White Bears*, Stags greater than ours; Scut-fishes of a yard long, and such store of *Cod-fish* (which the Inhabitants called *Baccalaos*) that their multitudes sometimes stayed his ships: hence the occasion of their name. Returning home, he found great preparations for a war in *Scotland*; so that nothing else was done in this Discovery by the *English* Nation. But three years after, *Gaspard Corterialis a Portuguese*, setting sayl from *Lisbon*, fell upon those parts of *Cabots* Discoveries, which since bear his name: from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of *Italian* workmanship, left there most probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of: drowned in the Sea, or slain by the *Salvages* on the Land, as was his brother *Michael*, in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the *French* having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, cast an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Brest* to a Town hereof, (according to the name of a noted Port in little *Bretagne*;) but whether they settled any Colony in it, or only did resort unto it in the way of trading, I am not able to determine.

3. **NEW-FOUND LAND**, (*Terra Nova*, as the *Latines* call it) is a great Island, lying on the South of *Corterialis*; from which parted by a *Frith*, or *Streit*, called *Golf des Capheaux*. So called from the late discovery of it, when discovered first, though it be some scores of years ago: as *Wickhams* Colledge in *Oxford* hath the name of *New Colledge*; though founded divers ages past; because it was the *Newest* when that name was given.

The dimensions of the Country I have nowhere met with. But for the quantity hereof, it is said to be better inhabited in the North-parts, than in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for habitation. Furnished upon the Sea-coasts with abundance of Cod-fish, as also with Herrings, Salmon, Thornbacks, Smelts, Oysters, and Muscles with Pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Country, naturally beautified with Roses, sown with Pease, planted with itately Trees, and otherwise diversified, both for pleasure and profit: the Aire hereof never very extreame, more temperate in the depth of winter than with us in *England*, the Brooks being never so frozen over, that the Ice is able to bear a Dog; and those little Froths but seldom holding three nights together. The people of reasonable stature, full-eyed, broad-faced, but beardless, their face coloured with *Oker*; their houses, Poles feet round, meeting together in the top, and covered over with skins; an *Heartib*, or fire-place in the midst; their Boats of Bark, twenty foor-long, and four in breath, not weighing above 100 pound weight; every of which will carry four men, and is by them carried to all the places of their Removes.

Places of most importance in it are the several *Havens* (of which it is conceived to have more, and more commodious, than any one *Iland* of the world for the bigness of it :) not beautified with Towns, or buildings, but yielding very safe stations to the greatest ships. The chief whereof 1 *Remoua*, or *Roignefe*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-east Angle of the *Iland*; of much resort for fishing, from several Countries, 2 *Portus Formosus*, or *Fair-Haven*, three miles North of the other; capable of great ships, and bearing into the main Land above 40 miles. Situate in the Latitude of 40. and 40 minutes. 3 *Thornbay*, by the Portugals named *Enseada Grande*. 4 *Trinity Bay* on the North of *Cape S. Francis*, by the Portugals called *Bahia de la Conception* : a large Bay, five miles broad in the narrowest place; yet safe withal and of very good Anchorage. 5 *Bona Vista*, the name of a Port and Promontory. 6 *White-Bay*, or *Bay-Blanche*, as the French call it, safe and capacious, on the North of the Promontory of *S. John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Grat*, on the North-east Angle of the *Iland*, is no Port of note. Then on the South-side of the *Iland*, and the West of *Cape de Raz*, is 7 *Port Trespasser*. 8 *Port Fresence*, and 9 *Port des Basques* (or the *Biscains* Haven;) and on the West-side, having doubled the *Cape de Raze*, in the South-west Angle of the *Iland*, there is 10 *S. Georges Bay*: all of them safe, capacious, and of great resort.

4. Before the Island, at the distance of 25 leagues from *Cape de Ruy*, lieth a long bank, or ridge of ground, extended in length many hundred leagues, in breadth 24 leagues where broadest, in other places but sixteen: and all about it certain Islands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACALAO S* (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitudes of *Cod-fish* (by the Natives called *Bacalaos*) which swarmed hereabouts; so numerous, that they hindered the passage of his ships,

Rrrr 2

3

New found
Land.

as before was noted, and lay in such shoals upon the Coasts, that the Bears caught them with their claws and drew them on land. The Government at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the most formal expressions of duty and reverence used to rub their Noses, or stroke their foreheads: which if the King observed, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had so adored him, he turned his head to his left shouldier, as a mark of favour.

The first Discoverers of this Country (but not known then to be an Island) were the two *Cabots*, *John*, and his son *Sebastian*, employed herein by *Henry* the 7th. 1497. as before was noted. The business being laid aside at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot*, two of *Bristol*: who taking a more perfect view of it than was took by the *Cabots*, ascribed to themselves the discovery of it, and animated *King Henry* the 8. unto the enterprise: which was done *An*. 1527. but with ill success. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britons* of *France* had resorted to it; and changed the names which by the *English* had been given to the Bays and Promontories. But the *English* would not so relinquish their pretensions to the *Premier Seign*. And therefore in the year 1583. *Sir Humphrey Gilbert* took possession of it in the name of the *Queen of England*, interdicted all other Nations the use of fishing, and intended to have settled there an *English* Colony. But being wracked in his return, the sending of the Colony was discontinued till the year 1608. when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Bristol*, who most successfully performed it: the Colony so prospering in a little time, that they had *Wheat*, *Rye*, *Turneps*, *Coleworts*, of their own sowing; some probability of *Metals*, a certainty of *Sables*, *Musk*, and other precious Commodities, besides their fishing; though that the great occasion of their settling there. Such plenty is there found of *Ling* and *Cod-fish*, all about the Coasts, that ordinarily our men take 200 or 300 of them within four hours space; which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*.

OF

Nova
Francia.

OF
C A N A D A.

CANADA is bounded on the North, with *Cortierialis*; on the South, with *New-England*; on the East, with the Main Ocean; the Countries lying on the West, either not yet discovered; or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greatest, not of this Province only, but of all this *Peninsula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiscovered parts of this Northern Tract: sometimes enlarged into great Lakes, and presently reduced to a narrower channel, with many great windings and *Reaches* in it. Having embosomed almost all the rest of the Rivers of this Country, it emptieth it self into the Great Bay of *St. Lawrence*, over against the Isle of *Assumption*, being at the mouth 40 leagues in breadth, and 150 fathom deep.

It is also called *Nova Francia* from the *French*, who following the tract of *Cabot*, and *Cortierialis*, made a further Discovery of these parts, and planted several Colonies in them. The business first undertaken by *Jaques Cartier*, *An*. 1534. received here gladly by the *Natives* with singing, dancing, and expressing much sign of joy: pursued by *Monsieur Roberval*, sent thither in the year 1542. by *King Francis* the first, not only to discover the Country, but to plant some part of it, who built there a fair Fortrefs for his great safety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their several times.

The nature of the soil, and people, we shall best discover in the several parts of it; each differing from one another, and so not easily conformed to a general Character. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole, 1 *Canada*, of which before, 2 *Pemegonet* or *Norumbegue*, as some call it, of which more hereafter. 3 *Quimbeque* falling into the Ocean as the others do, 4 *Rio S. John*, ending its course in a large Bay called *Bay Francoise*, interposed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the rest of this Country. 5 *Les trois Rivières*, which rising far North, and passing through two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*, 6 *Saguenay*, of the same Original Course, and Fall. A River of so strong a Current, that it suffereth not the Sea to flow up its Channel; so deep, that in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards; and having received many lesser streams, looseth it self at last, where the other doth.

It containeth in it several Regions of *Nova Francia*, specially so called, 2 *Nova Scotia*, 3 *Norumbegue*, and 4 the Isles adjoining.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA* specially so named, is situate on the South of *Cortierialis*; and on the North of the great River *Canada*, towards the East; but on both sides of it, in the Western and more inland parts. The Country naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, *Martens* and Foxes, whose flesh the People did eat raw (till more civilized) having first dried it either in the smoak or Sun; as they do their Fish. They have also store of Conies, Fowl and Fish great plenty; one Fish more memorable than the rest, which they call *Adobuel*, whose body and head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greatest Jewels are their Chains of *Esgurrie*; a shell-fish of the whitest colour, excellent for the itching of blood: which they fashion into Beads and Bracelets, and so wear, or sell them. Not very plentiful of fruits, or fit for tillage; yet it breedeth some Corn, and of Pulse good plenty. The Air more cold than in other Countries of like height, partly by reason of the greatness of the River, which being wholly of fresh water, and so large withal, chilleth the Air on both sides of it; partly because of the abundance of Ice, and those hills of Snow, which the North-winde passeth over in the way to this Country.

The People, when the *French* first discovered them, very rude and barbarous; few of them furnished with houses, but removing from one place to another, as their food decayed; and carrying all their goods with them (a thing easily done) upon those removes. Such as lived towards the Sea, or the greater Rivers, somewhat better housed. For in the day time they fish in their Boats; which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them upside down, sleep under them. As ill apparelled as housed; for they went all naked, except a little piece of skin before their *Privities*. Some of them had their heads quite shaven, excepting one Bush of hair on the top of the Crown, which they suffered to grow to the length of an Horsés Tail, tied up with Leather-strings in a knot. Each man allowed his two or three wives a piece; and they so constant to their Husband, that they never marry after his death, but keep themselves continually in a mourning habit: a vizard as it were, made of Grease and Coal-dust, which they spread over all their bodies. The women labour more than the men, both in fishing and husbandry; digging the ground instead of Ploughing, with certain pieces of wood, where they sow their *Maiz*. (a Plant of which they maketh their bread, in most parts of *America*.) *Idolaters* in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are most of them at this day; the *French* and others which have planted in these Northern parts, having added little more unto *Christianity*, than by the Colonies they brought with them. Yet in the midst of this darkness they saw so much light, as to believe that when they died they went immediately to the Stars; from thence conveyed to certain green and pleasant fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the immortality of the soul, and that there was some place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1 *Hochelega*, round in figure, compassed about with three Courses

Nova Scotia. Course of timber Ramparts, one within the other; sharp at the top, about two Rods high, with one gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kind) with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50 great houses, in the midst of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their fire on. Situate far within the Land, about six or seven leagues from the banks of the River *Canada*, in the most pleasant part of the Country; and therefore made the seat of their King, whom they highly revered, and carried him on their shoulders sitting on a Carpet of skins. 2 *Stadae*, or *Stadacone*, and 3 *Quebecque*, which the French call *S. Croix*, on the course of the same River also; this last Colony of the French. 4 *Tadonfac*, a safe but small Haven, not capable of above 20 ships, at the mouth of *Sagunay*. 5 *Francis Roy*, a Castle built by *Monsieur Roburval*, when he came first into this Country. 6 *S. Lewis*, designed for a French Colony by *Monsieur de Champlain*, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Country (tull of little Islands) in the Lands of the *Iroquois*, inhabiting on the South of the River *Canada*, into which it emptieth it self at the last.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA* containeth that part of the Countries of *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, which the French call *Acadie*, or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninsula* or *Demy-Island*;) with so much of the main land as lieth between the River *Canada* and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoise*, from the River of *S. Croix* upon the West, to the Isle of *Assumption* on the East. So called by King *James*, in the Grant of these Countries to Sir *William Alexander*, after Lord Secretary of Scotland, and by King *Charles* for his approved fidelity most deservedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters-Patents of which Donation bear date Anno 1621. What time the French having been outed of their holds here, by Sir *Sam. Argal* Governor of *Virginia*, had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themselves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Course of that River. And in pursuance of this Grant, the said Sir *William Alexander* in the year 1622. sent a Colony hither: and having procured a new Map to be made of the Country, caused the *Peninsula*, lying on this side of the *Bay Francoise*, to be called *Nova Caledonia*; that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria*; giving new names also unto most of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accomplishment of which business, he obtained also a Patent for advancing a certain number of persons to the hereditary dignity of *Baronets*, or *Knights of Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly; distinguished from others by a Ribbin of *Orange tawney*: the money raised upon which Patent, was to be wholly employed towards this Plantation. But being unable with those helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burden for a private person) or willing to employ his money to more profit, he sold *Port-Royal* to the French; and after discontinued his endeavours in it.

Places of most importance in it. 1 *Port-Royal*, in *Acadie* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay-Francoise*, once made a Colony of the French by *Monsieur de Monts*, An. 1604. continued with much difficulty till the year 1613. when destroyed by Sir *Samuel Argal* then Governor of the English Plantations in *Virginia*, by reason that the *Jesuits*, whose neighbourhood he liked not, had begun to nest there. Sold since again unto the French, as before is said, by whom still possessed. 2 *S. Lukes Bay*, by the French called *Port au Monton*. 3 *Gaspé*, a noted Port in *New-Alexandria*, opposite to the Isle of *Assumption*. 4 *Gachepe*, on a fair Bay in the same Coast also.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the North-East, *Nova Scotia*; on the South-West, *Virginia*. The air is of a good temper, the soil fruitful, and the people indifferently civil, all of them, as well men as women, painting their faces. The men are much affected to hunting, and therefore never give their daughters to any, unless he be well skilled in that game also. The women are here very chaste, and so well love their husbands, that if at any time they chance to be slain, the widows will neither marry, nor eat flesh, till the death of their husbands be revenged. They both dance much; and for more nimbleness, sometimes stark naked. The Sea upon the Coasts so shallow and so full of Sands, that it is very ill sailing all along these shores. The Towns, or Habitations rather, so differently called by the French, Portuguese, and Spaniards, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet most have formerly agreed upon *Norumbega*, or *Arampec*, as the Natives call it; said to be a large, populous and well built Town, and to be situate on a fair and capacious River of the same name also: But later Observations tell us there is no such matter; that the River which the first Relations did intend, is called *Pempegouet*, neither large nor pleasant; and that the place by them meant is called *Agguncia*, so far from being a fair City, that there are only a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the barks of trees, or the skins of beasts. Howsoever I have let it stand on the first reports, it being possibly enough that the Town might fall into decay, deserted on the coming of so many several Pretenders; and that the Sheds, or Cabins which the last men speak of, may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoining to these Countries of *Canada*, are several Islands not joyned in any common name, but yet deserving some consideration in this place and time. The principal whereof, 1. *NATISCOTE*, called the Isle of *Assumption*, situate in the very mouth of the River, was first discovered by *Jacques Carter*, An. 1534. in length 35 leagues, seven, or eight in breadth. The Island very plain and level, of a fruitful soil, beautified with trees of several sorts, replenished with great plenty both of Fowl and Fish, and furnished with convenient Rods, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited, for ought I can finde. 2. *RAMÉE*, a frie of little Islands in the great Gulf of *St. Lawrence* on the South of *Natiscote*, first found out, or frequented by the Citizens of *St. Mala* in *Bretagne*, An. 1590. of great resort for the Morfe fishing, used upon the Coasts, which is here so gainful, that a French Bark in a very little time killed 1500 of them. These Morfes (take this by the way) are a kind of Sea-Horses, or Sea-Oxen; with two teeth of a foot long growing downwards out of the upper Jaw, sold dearer than Ivory, because esteemed a Sovereign Antidote against poysons. They have also four feet, no Ears, the Horns

about

about half an ell in length; the skin when dressed, twice as thick as that of a Bull; their flesh when young, as sweet and tender as Veal. So fat and unctuous, that with the bellies of five of them; there is made usually an Hogs-Head of *Train Oil*, as good as that of the *Whale*. 3. *BRIOTON*, a small Island on the South of the *Ramee*, about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich soil, far pasturage, well shaded with tall and lofty Trees; and neighboured by a smaller Island called *Iste-Blanche*, of the like fertility. 4. *BRIOTON*, (*Insula Britonum*) so named from *Jacques Briton* a Frenchman, in the time of *Francis* the first, called also the Island of *St. Lawrence*, is situate on the South-East of the Isle of *Brien*: in form triangular, in compass about 80 leagues; pleasant and fruitful, though for the most part swelled with hills. Delitute of Rivers, but interlaced with great Arms of the Sea, well stored with shell-fish; and in the midst thereof a great Lake full of little Islands: the Woods replenished with plenty of Deer, black Foxes, and a bird called *Penguin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the Portuguese did sometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the Air too cold for them, they again deserted it. The chief Haven is by the English called *Newport*; by the French *Port aux Anglois*, from the great resort of the English to it, in regard of their fishing. 5. *ISLE DE SABEL*, by the French so called from the Sands which lie high about it; distant from the *Breton-Isle* about 30 leagues to the South; 15 leagues in compass, but more long than broad, and of unsafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the safety of the place, attempted twice by the French, and once by the Portuguese; but without success. 6 Others of less note, as *Menego*, and *Les Isles des Oisieux*, I pass over purposely, there being nothing, or but little to be spoken of them.

So it appears by this account, that though the French have given the name of *Nova Francia* to all these Countries; yet they never had the honour of the first discovery, wherein the English and Portuguese had precedence of them: nor are possessed of any considerable part thereof, the Scots putting in for a large share; the English Masters of the best Ports, and all the Islands of the Country in the hands of the *Salvages*. Of these some great and powerful Nations over-sway the rest. The chief whereof are the *Troquois* on the North-East of *Norumbega*, neighboured by the *Ochataignins*, the *Albomequins*, and the *Neukerines*, the *Souriquois*, and *Eschimbins* of *Acadie*, and *New Alexandria*: the *Montagnets*, and the *Atogovantans*, on the banks of the *Canada*. All of them stout and hardy people, false of their words, treacherous in their practices, and merciless in their revenges. So well acquainted with the factions and divisions of *Europe*, that they know how to make use of one Nation against another; and by that means to keep themselves in their first estate, without being subject unto any. So that the footing which the English, French, or Scots have obtained amongst them, serves rather to secure themselves in the way of their Trading, than to entitle them unto any possession, or command in the Country; the French being shut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*; the Scots pretending only to a Bay or two in the South of *Acadie*; and the English being only Tenants at the will of the Natives, for such convenience of fishing as they have in the adjoining Islands.

VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North, *Canada*; on the South, *Florida*; on the East, *Mare del Noort*; the Western boundaries not known, or not well discovered, as will appear by the Survey of its several Provinces; Premising first that *Virginia* in the full latitude thereof extendeth from the 34th. Degree where it joyns with *Florida*, unto the 44th. where it quartereth on *Norumbega*.

The Inland parts hereof are mountainous and barren, full of thick woods, a Receptacle for wilde beasts, and wilder *Salvages*. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitful, as will appear by the Survey of its several Provinces; Premising first that *Virginia* in the full latitude thereof extendeth from the 34th. Degree where it joyns with *Florida*, unto the 44th. where it quartereth on *Norumbega*.

The first Discovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, *An. 1497*. did first entitle the Crown of *England* to this Country. The Design after seconded by *Mr. Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petit Kings, or Princes hereof, who did Homage to King *Henry the 8th.* then sitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Westminster*: but nothing further done in pursuance of it. And though *John Verazzani* a noble *Florentine*, at the incouragement and charge of King *Francis the first, Anno 1524.* discovered more of the Country then *Cabot* did; yet the *French* too much in love with the pleasures of *France*, or intangled in Civil wars amongst themselves, looked no further after it: Insomuch that the Country lying thus neglected, was re-discovered by the charges and direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then Captain of the *Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno 1584.* who sending Master *Philip Amadas*, and Master *Arthur Barlow* upon this employment, did by them take possession of it in Queen *Elizabeth's* name; in honour of whom he caused it to be called *Virginia*. The next year he sent hither a Colony, under the conduct of the noble Sir *Richard Greenvile*: who not supplied with necessaries for their subsistence, returned home again. In the year 1587. a second Colony is sent hither, but as successless as the first: the business being undertaken only on a private Purse, not owned as the interest of the State, or of publick moment, till the year 1606. In the mean time the North parts of this Country being more perfectly discovered by Captain *Bartholomew Gosnold, An. 1602.* and the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to say, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into these three parts. 1 *New-England.* 2 *Novum Belgium.* 3 *Virginia* strictly and specially so called. To which the Isles of the *Bermudas* shall come in for a fourth.

NEW-ENGLAND hath on the North-East, *Norumbega*; and on the South-West, *Novum Belgium*. So called by the *Adventurers* by whom first planted, not so much because opposite to *Nova Albon*, as some men conceive; as in imitation of the like adjuncts of distinction, given by the *French* and *Spaniards*, to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like.

The Country situate in the middle of the *Temperate Zone*, betwixt the degrees of 41. and 44. equally distant from the *Arctic Circle*, and the *Tropick of Cancer*; by consequence, naturally of the same degree of heat with *France*, or *Italy*. But by reason of the thick mists which arise from the Seas adjoining, those heats so moderated, that the Air is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *English* body. The soil not only fruitful of such Commodities as grow there naturally; but also of all sorts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great store of Woods, and Trees, both for fruit and building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Salt and Fish upon the shores; and as for *Turkies*, *Partridges*, *Swans*, *Geese*, *Cranes*, *Ducks*, *Pigeons*, such a full variety, as serves not only for necessity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of most note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many sorts of Fish, some Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Malts, Cables, Timber fit for shipping; in a word, whatsoever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might be at better rates, and with far less trouble be supplied from hence; at least, if we believe the *Relations* of it, published in the year 1622.

The people for the most part well enough disposed, if not roughly handled; hospitable, and more civil than the rest of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of Religion, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *English*, at their first settling there, *An. 1608.* they would use to say that King *James was a good King, and his God a good God, but their Tanto naught.* Which *Tanto* was an evil spirit, which did haunt and trouble them every *Moon*, and therefore they worshipped him for fear. Which notwithstanding, I find not any great increase of *Christianity* amongst the *Natives*: our *English* Undertakers thinking it sufficient if they and their houses served the Lord, without caring what became of the Souls of the wretched people, which hitherto have sate in darkness and the shadow of death, notwithstanding those *New lights* which have shined amongst them. And as for those *New-comers* which have planted there all *English*, though some immediately out of *Holland*; I cannot better tell you of what strain they were, than in the words of *John de Laet, Novi Orbis lib. 3. cap. 8.* where he observeth, *Primos hosce Colonos, uti & illos qui postea accesserunt, potissimum aut omnino fuisse ex eorum hominum Secta, quos in Anglia Brownistas & Puritanos vocant, quales non pauci & in Belgium superioribus annis se receperunt, & hinc ad socios sunt profecti.* They were (saith he) either for the most part,

part, or altogether of that *Self*, which in *England* are called *Brownists* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly betaken themselves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to joyn with their Brethren in *New-England*.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Tamescot*, where our men found Oysters of nine inches long. 2 *Nansic*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this tract. 3 *Sagadahoc*, of most note, and deservedly too. Of a mile and an half broad at the mouth or influx, and so upwards for the space of a dayes journey: where it maketh a large Lake three dayes journey broad, with six Islands in it; nourished with two large Channels, the one from the North-east, the other from the North-west, each of them rising from a Lake, the least of which four dayes journey long, two broad, the other double it. Of less note, 4 *Apanawapick*, 5 *Ramassoc*, 6 *Alhamabaga*, &c.

The Country on the Sea-side full of notable Havens, populous, and very well inhabited, in somuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the space of 70 miles above twenty Havens, some of them capable of 500, or 1000 sail: most of them sheltered from the furies of wind and Sea, by the interposition of some Islands, of which about 200 lie upon that Coast. In the space of 70 miles he reckoneth forty Villages of the Barbarous people, the chief of which, 1 *Macadacut*, 2 *Segocket*, 3 *Pemmaquid*, 4 *Nusconcus*, 5 *Kennebecque*, &c. all called by the name of some Brook, or water, upon which they were seated. Since added by the *English*, 1 *S. Georges Fort*, the first Plantation of the *English*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagadahoc*, in a Demy-Island, *An. 1607.* 2 *New Plimouth*, seated in a large and capacious Bay; at the first building (*An. 1620.*) consisting of nineteen families only, but in short time improved to an handom Town: which as it was the first Town, so it was the first Church which was seled there, modelled according to the form of *Mr. Robinsons* Church in *Holland*, (that notorious Separatist), and after made a pattern to the rest of these Churches: each absolute and Independent in it self, without subordination unto any Superior. For my part, I behold *Episcopacy* as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Christ*. But if there were no other Pretenders to it, than *Presbytery*, and *Independencie*; I should as soon look for the Scepter and Throne of *Christ* (as they please to phrase it) in the Co-ordination of *New-England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the Kirk of *Scotland*. 3 *Bristol*, upon the Sea-side also, but more North than *Plimouth*. 4 *Barstable*, so called with reference to a noted Sea-town of that name in *Devonshire*; as 5 *Boston*, with like reference to as noted a Sea port in *Lincolnshire*. 6 *Quillipiack*, on the Bay of *Massachusetts*; a Town of an old name, but a new Plantation.

This part of *Virginia* first discovered by Captain *Gosnold, An. 1602.* and the next year more perfectly served by some of *Bristol*; was by King *James An. 1606.* granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, to be planted and disposed of for the publike; Sir *John Popham*, then Chief Justice of the Common Pleas, being one of the Chief also in that Commission. By his encouragement, and principally at his charge, a Colony was sent thither, *An. 1607.* under the Prelidency of Captain *George Popham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, who built the Fortrefs of *S. George* at the mouth of *Sagadahoc*. But the President dying the next year, and not long after him the Chief Justice also, the Colony despairing of good success, returned home again. Successfully again attempted, *An. 1614.* the Undertakers were resolved to make further tryal of their fortune; and in the year 1616. sent out eight ships more: but it never settled into form till the year 1620. when by the building of *New-Plimoth*, and some encouragements sent thence to bring others on, it grew in very short time to so swift a growth, that no Plantation for the time ever went beyond it. The growth of *Old Rome* and *New-England* had the like foundation: both Sanctuaries, *Ad qua turba omnis ex finitimis gentibus novarum rerum cupida conflavit*, as *Livy* telleth us of the one; resorted to by such of the neighbouring Nations, as longed for innovations in Church and State.

2. **NOVUM BELGIUM**, or **NIEU-NEDERLANDT**, hath on the North-east *New-England*; on the South-west *Virginia*, specially so called. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their Plantation in it, *An. 1614.* the Country being then void, and consequently open to the next Pretender, according to that *Maxime* in the Civil laws, *Que nullius sunt, in bonis dantur occupantibus*. And yet they had some better title than a bare *Intrusion*, having bought *Hudsons* Cards and Maps, and otherwise contented him for the charge and pains of his Discovery, *An. 1609.* of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38 degree and an half, to the 41. 15. of a good temperate both of Air and soil: fruitful of those things which the earth brought forth of its own accord; abundance of wild Grapes, and Nuts, Trees of great height and bulk for shipping; plenty of Herbage; store of plants, the effects of nature: and where the people did their part, such increase of *Maize* (a plant of which they make their Bread) as shewed their care and industry to be well bestowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furnished (within their command) with Wheat and other sorts of Grain; as also with Flax, Hemp, and such other Commodities, as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Woods replenished with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the Rivers not inferiour to any, in *Senegons*, *Salmons*, and other the best sort of Fish, which can swim in the water.

The people, though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the same disposition with the other *Salvages*. Clad in Beasts-skins, for the most part without certain dwellings; and dwelling together many Families of them under one poor roof, made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the bark of Trees. Their household stuff a Tobacco-Pipe, a Wooden-dish, and an Hatchet made of a broad flint; their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of fishes. Their Religion *Idolatry*, or worse; their chief God the *Devil*, whom they worship under the name of *Menetto*; but with less pomp and Ceremony than is used in *Africk*. Of manners, fearful and suspicious (not without good cause) wonderful greedy of revenge; but if well used, tractable and obedient unto their Superiours; fickle, but very faithful unto those who trust them; conceived

*Noun Bel-
gism.*

conceived to be inclinable to the Christian Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of those who had studied godliness more than gain.

Rivers of note they have not many. That want supplied by many large and capacious Bayes, all along the Coast; the principal of those that be 1. *Mainhutes*, by some called *N. Jovius*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Nord-Rivier*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-Port*; so called by *Cornelius May* the Master of a ship of *Holland*, at their first Plantation; another Channel of it, which from the noise thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying it self against an Island called the *Isle of Nats*. The River about 15. or 16 fathom deep, at the mouth thereof, affordeth a safe Road for shipping, but of difficult entrance. 2. *Swad-Rivier*, so called, because more Southerly than the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not so well discovered.

Towns here are few either of the old or *New Plantations*. The *Natural* Inhabitants live together in Tribes, many Families of those Tribes under one Roof, as before was said; but those Families to remove from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a scattered Village. Nor do I find that either the *Hollanders* or the *English* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to Building. The title of the *Dutch* being subject unto some disputes; and the Possession of the *English* not confirmed, and sealed. *Huafish* an *Englishman*, had spent some time in the Discovery of this Country, and given his name to one of the Rivers of it: With him the *Hollanders* An. 1609. as before is said, compounded for his Charts, and Maps, and whatsoever he could challenge in the right and success of that his Voyage. But they were hardly warm in their new habitations, when *Sir Samuel Arkel*, Governour of *Virginia*, specially so called (having dispossessed the *French* of that part of *Canada*, now called *Nova Scotia*; An. 1613.) disputed the possession with them; alleging that *Hudson*, under whose Sale they claimed that Country, being an *Englishman*, and licensed to discover those Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or dismember it (being but a part or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour submits himself and his Plantation to his Majesty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for; and under him. But a new Governour being sent from *Amsterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes; but began to fortify himself, and entitle those of *Amsterdam* to a just propriety. To which end, he gave unto the Country the name of *New-Netherland*, conferred new names on all the Bays and Rivers of it; and possessed himself of a little Island near that Branch of the *Nord-Rivier*, which themselves call *Hell-gate*: where he laid the foundation of a Town, called *New-Amsterdam*; and built a Fortress by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he garrisoned; and planted with five pieces of Cannon; Complaining whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him represented to the *States of Holland*: it was declared by the said *States* in a publick instrument, that they were no wayes interested in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *West-Indian* Company of *Amsterdam*; and so referred it wholly to his Majesties pleasure. Which being declared, a Commission was forthwith granted to *Sir George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, to plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARY-LAND*; the like not long after to *Sir Edmund Pleydon*, for planting and possessing the more Northern parts which lie towards *New-England*, by the name of *New-Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then seem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there, for the sum of 2500. l. yet taking advantage of the troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raised their demands to a greater height; but furnished the *Native Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to use their Weapons. A most mischievous and wicked Act; not only tending to the damage and discomfitment of the present Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Christians out of all these Countries: But the best is they were the first that smarted by it. The *Salvages* thus armed and trained, fell fowl upon them, destroying their Farm-Houses, and forcing them to betake themselves to their Ports and Fastnesses: What hath been since done (for the giving of new names to some of the old places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *English*, I can hardly say; but I fear that little will be acted or to little purpose, till it be made a work of more publick interest.

3. *VIRGINIA* specially so called, hath on the North-East *Nieu-Netherland*; on the South-west, *Florida*; the name restrained to this part only, since the two last Plantations, which before was common to the whole. The Country lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. degree of Northern Latitude: by consequence the Aire inclined unto heats, if not refreshed and moderated by a constant Gale of Eastern winds, which they call the *Brize*, and the blasts driving on it from the open Seas. Diversified most pleasantly into hills and valleys; the Mountains clothed with woods, and the Fields with fruits. The soil so fruitful, that an Acre of Land well ordered will return 200 Bushels, or 25 Quarter of Corn. Said also to be rich in veins of *Allom*, as also Pitch, Turpentine, store of Cedars, Grapes, Oyl, plenty of sweet Gums, several sorts of Plants for the Dyers use, some Mines of Iron and Copper, of Timber trees almost infinite numbers; as also great abundance of Cattel, Fish, Powl, Fruit, and of *Malz* no scarcity. Some *Christal* found amongst the Mountains, on the shore some *Pearls*; nothing deficient either in the soil, or Aire, for the encouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The People are but few in number for so large a Country, and those as different in size, as in speech or manners; some of them whom they call *Sasques-hanoxi*, of so vast a greatness, that in comparison of the *English* they seemed as Gyants: clad with the skins of Bears and Wolves in so strange manner, that the head of the Beast hung before their breasts instead of a *Jewel*; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other side, whom they call *Wigocomock*, of so low a stature, that in relation to the other, they appear as *Dwarves*. But generally they are all of tall stature, well limbed; for the most part without Beards; and the one half of the head kept shaven: clothed in loose Mantles made of the skins of Deer, with an Apron of the same to hide their nakedness; the rest of their Bodies painted over

Bermudaz.

over with figures of Serpents, or of some other Creature of a horrid shape. Strong and accustomed to the cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconstant, crafty, and somewhat more industrious than the rest of the *Salvages*; but given to anger, and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they worship all things (and them only) which are like to hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, &c. So that it may be said of them, as once *Lactantius* said of the ancient *Romans* (did not the ignorance of these poor Wretches render them excusable, and make them fitter objects for our Prayers and pity, than our scorn) *Dignissimi homines qui Deos suos semper haberent presentes*. One Devil-God above all the rest (they call him *Oke*) whom they worship, as themselves confess, more for fear than love. Not yet converted from these horrible and gross Idolatries, by the long neighbourhood of the *English*; accused in that respect most justly by those of *Rome*.

No Country for the bigness of it can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers. The principal of which 1. *Pawhatan* (so called by the name of that petit *Roiteles*, whose Territory it passeth through) which having run a course of an hundred miles, and Navigable all that way by smaller Veils, is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad. 2. *Apamatuck*. 3. *Nansamund*, and 4. *Chikabamania*, all Tributaries to the Sea about three miles broad. 5. *Pamunke*, fourteen miles more North than *Pawhatan*, but of lesser note. 6. *Topah-mock*, Navigable 130 miles. 7. *Patawomeck*, passable by Boat 140 miles, and six or seven miles broad, where it falleth into the Sea; increased by many lesser streams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well stored with Fish. 8. *Pantuxcut*, of a shorter Race, but a deeper Channel than moit of the former (16 or 18 fathom deep) and of more choice of Fish than the others are.

Along the Banks of these Rivers dwell their several Tribes, scarce any one of which making up an hundred men (that of *Patawomeck* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30. and some not so many. Their habitations not containing above ten or twelve houses a piece, but in those houses sundry particular families are for the most part covered with the Barks of Trees; so placed, that the common Market place standeth in the midst, at an equal distance: the houses of their *Weroances* (or the Chiefs of their Tribes) and that which serveth them for a Temple, being somewhat finer than the rest. And of these habitations some are presented to us by the names of *Oomoke*, by the *English* called the blind Town. 2. *Pemoke*. 3. *Shyconke*, said by my Authors to be *Civitas ampla*, a large City, but we must understand him with Relation to the rest of this Country. 4. *Chovanoek*. 5. *Secatan*. 6. *Mattaken*. 7. *Weopomioke*. 8. *Pyskokonok*, said to be inhabited by none but women. 9. *Chipano*. 10. *Muscumunge*, both upon the Sea; moit of them called by the name of those several Tribes which inhabit in them.

In reference to the *English* and their Plantations, we are to know that they made choice of the South-side of a large and goodly Bay, for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thrusting it self a great way up into this Country, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before mentioned, is by the *Natives* called *Chesepack*, and yeldeth the only safe entrance into this part of the Country: the *Capes* thereof for that cause fortified by the *English*; that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of moit note which have been either since built, or frequented by them. 1. *James Town* (*Jacobopolis*, so named in honour of King *James*), on the South-side of that Bay, not far from the River *Chikabamania*: first founded in the year 1606. at what time it was trenched about, and some Ordnance planted on the Works. 2. *Henric Town* (*Henricopolis*) so named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the eldest son of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 18 miles from *James Town*. 3. *Dales-gift*, so called, because built and planted at the charge of *Sir Thomas Dale*, An. 1610. 4. *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*. 5. *Keoughtan*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Chesepack*, very much traded by the *English*. 6. *Wicocomoco* the chief Town of *Pawhatan*, one of the *Roiteles* of this Country; much courted by the *English* at their first settling here, and a long time after: a *Crown* being sent him by King *James* with many other rich presents, the better to sweeten and oblige him; but for all that he proved a treacherous and unfaithful Neighbour.

The sum of the affairs of this last Plantation, is, that the business being resumed in the year 1606. and a Commission granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the work; they fell in hand, by the Counsel and encouragement of Captain *Smith*, with the building of *James Town* (having first fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a Colony of 100 men. These being almost consumed by Famine and other miseries, were the next year recruited with 120 more brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire having casually consumed their Houses, once again discouraged them. But the Houses being reedified, and a Church added to the Houses, by the industry of *Smith* their Governour, the Colony began to flourish, and to increase in reputation amongst the *Salvages*: especially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Pawhatan*. In the year 1609. the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 persons, (and of them 200 expert Souldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns; 300 Muskets, with Victuals and Ammunition necessary; and 39 of their *Weroances*, or Petit-Kings Tributaries, and Contributors to the *English*. *Sir Thomas Gates* and *Sir George Summers*, sent thither with 9 ships and 500 men, lost a great part of their numbers in the *Isle of Bermudaz*: the rest not well according with the old Plantation, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three ships more, Anno 1610. But falling into a desperate sickness, and come home to *England*, he recommended the estate of the *English* there to *Sir Thomas Dale*, who furnished them with Men, Cattel, and other necessaries: after whom came *Sir Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and some heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry Earl of Southampton*, the affairs here began to settle in a prosperous way: when unexpectedly on *Henry* falling on them (fearing no such treachery) killed 340 of their men; and

Bermudaz. and had also then surprized *James Town*, if one of the *Savages*, who had received the *Christian Faith*, had not discovered their intention. Since that, recovered of that blow, it went happily forwards: and might by this time have been raised to some power and greatness; if the *English* by diverting on some by-Plantations, and by employing indigent and necessitous persons in so great a work, had not discouraged the design. For certainly one might say of this Plantation; as the *Scripture* doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few, or none were sent unto it (except the principals) but such as were in distress, or debt, or some way or other discontented: men never likely to advance and pursue a business of such publick interests. Commendable howsoever in this particular, (though perhaps that commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themselves constantly to those *Forms of Worship* which were established and observed in the Church of *England*.

As for the *Natives* of the whole, they were divided (as was said) into several Tribes, every Tribe under the command of their several Chiefs: which Chiefs, though many in number, and of little power, knew well enough how to keep their State unto their Subjects, and to shew it also unto strangers. For when *Powhatan* was pleased to give audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the rest of the *English* sent from *Smith*, they found him upon a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather, imbrodered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of Skins like an *Irish* Mantle: at his head and feet an handsome young woman; on each side of the room twenty others, with their necks and shoulders painted Red, and about their necks a great Chain of Beads; his principal men sitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithstanding this great State, (and great it was indeed for such petit Princes) he and the rest became so subject to the *English*, that in *Smith's* time they did not only pay their Tributes, or Contributions, but at his command would send their Slaves and Subjects to *James Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the Colony. And it is probable enough that those of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerful Plantation (as followed with the stronger zeal, and carried on by the united purses of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence also amongst the *Natives*, though I find it not expressed in so many particulars.

4. The Isles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number (some say 400 at the least) are situate directly East from *Virginia*, from which they are distant 500 *English* miles; 300 of the same miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John Bermudaz*, a Spaniard, by whom first discovered. Called also the *Summer-Islands*, from the shipwrack of *Sir George Summers* upon that Coast; so much delighted with the sadfates of the misadventure, that he endeavoured what he could to settle a Plantation in it.

That of more fame and greatness than all the rest, to which the name is now most properly ascribed, is situate in the Latitude of 32 and 30 minutes. Well stored, when first discovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers fruits, Mulberries, *Palmettes*, Cedars: as also of Silk-worms, *Pearls* and *Amber*, and such rich Commodities: of Fowl so infinite an abundance, that our men took a thousand of one sort, as big as a *Pigeon*, within two or three hours. The Aire heereof very found and healthy, found by experience (the best argument in such a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *English* man; yet terribly exposed to Tempests of Rain, Thunder, and Lightning. For which, and for the many shipwacks happening on the Coasts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be said to own it, the *Mariners* have pleased to call it the *Island of Devils*. The soyl affirmed to be as fertile as any; well watered, plentiful in *Maize*, of which they have two Harvests yearly; that which is sowed in *March*, being cut in *July*; and that which is sowed in *August*, being mowed in *December*. No venomous Creature to be found in all the Island, or will live, brought hither. And besides these Commodities, of so safe a being, so fenced about with Rocks and Isles, that without knowledge of the passages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the Haven; yet with such knowledge, there is entrance for the greatest ships. The *English* have since added to these strengths of nature, such additional helps, by Block-houses, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of *Impregnable*.

It was first discovered (but rather accidentally than upon design) by *John Bermudaz*, a Spaniard, about the year 1522. and thereupon a Proposition made in the Council of *Spain*, for settling a Plantation in it; as a place not to be avoided by the *Spanish Fleets*, in their return from the Bay of *Mexico*, by the *Streits of Bahama*. Neglected notwithstanding, till the like accidental coming of *Sir George Summers*, sent to *Virginia* with some Companies of *English* by the Lord *De la Ware*, An. 1609. Who being shipwracked on this Coast, had the opportunity to survey the Island; which he so liked, that he endeavoured a Plantation in it, at his coming home, An. 1612. the first Colony was sent over under *Richard More*, who in three years erected eight, or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordinance. An. 1616. a new supply is sent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applied themselves to sowing Corn, setting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and planting that gainful Weed *Tobacco*. An. 1619. the business is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the Publick, many great Lords and men of Honour being interested in it: Captain *Butler* sent thither with 500 men, the Isle divided into Tribes, or Cantreds, to each Tribe a Burrough; this whole reduced to a settled Government both in Church and State, according to the Law of *England*. After this, all things so succeeded, that in the year 1623. here were said to be three thousand *English*, ten Forts, and in those Forts fifty pieces of Ordinance; their numbers since increasing daily, both by Children born within the Island, and supplies from *England*.

OF FLORIDA.



FLORIDA is bounded on the North-east, with *Virginia*; on the East, with *Mare del Nourt*; on the South, and some part of the West, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the rest of the West, with part of *New Galicia*, and some Countries hitherto not discovered. Extended from the River of *Palmis* in the 25. degree of Latitude, to *Rio de Secco* in the 34. which evidently speaketh it for a Country of large dimensions.

It was first discovered by the *English* under the conduct of *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1497. afterwards better searched into by *John de Ponce*, a Spaniard, who took possession of it in the name of that King, Anno 1527. and by him called *Florida*, either because he landed there upon *Palm Sunday*, which the Spaniards call *Pascua di Flores*, or *Pascha Florida*; or else quia *Florida erat Regio*, by reason of that fresh verdure and flourishing estate in which he found it. But by the *Natives* it is said to be called *Jaguasfa*.

This Country lying Parallel to *Castile* in *Spain*, is said to be of the same temper both for Air and Soil, but that it is abundantly more fruitful: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of *Maize* (the natural Bread-Corn of the Country) which they sowe twice a year, viz. *March* and *June*, and reap in the third month after, laying it in some publick Barns, and thence distribute it to the necessities of particular persons. Well stored with several sorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Chesnuts, Grapes and Plums of both excellent taste and colour: Beasts wild and tame, of all kinds which these Countries yield; and of like sorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forests full of the largest Oaks, and the softest Cedars; some Cypress Trees, and Bays, of a large proportion: with great plenty of that Wood which the Inhabitants call *Pavane*, and the French name *Sassafras*, the bark whereof is Medicinal against some diseases; and another Tree which we call *Esquine*, affirmed to be a Sovereign and present remedy for the French Disease. It is also said to be enriched with some Mines of Gold and Silver; neglected by the *Natives*, till the coming of the Spaniards and French, put a price upon them: and to have in it *Emeralds* of great worth and beauty, with many *Targuifes* and *Pearls*. Others report that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongst them, came from some ships which had been wracked upon those Coasts: contrary whereunto it is said by the *Natives*, that in the Hills which they call *Apalatei*, there are found great Veins of a reddish Metal, which the French concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to search into them.

The people are of an Olive colour, great stature, and well proportioned; naked, except their Privities, which they hide with the skins of Stags: their arms and knees stained with divers paintings, not to be washed off; their hair black, and hanging down as low as their thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of dissimulation. So stomachful, that they do naturally love War and Revenge, in so much that they are continually in War with one or other. They are crafty also and very intelligent, as appeareth by the answer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a Spaniard, who was here amongst them, An. 1594. For when he went to persuade the people that he was the Son of God, and came to teach them the Law: Not so, replied a *Floridan*, for God never bad thee to kill and slay, and work all kind of mischief against us. The Women when their Husbands are dead, use to cut off their hair close to their ears, and throw it on his Sepulchre, and cannot marry again, till their hair be grown long enough to cover their shoulders. *Hermophredites* are here also in great plenty, whom they use as beasts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kind of drudgery. They have all a gross belief of the Souls immortality, but are otherwise Idolaters.

Mountains before mentioned, supposed by the inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of most note. 1. *Rio Secco*, 2. *Rio Grande*, 3. *Serravahi*, the two first named so by the Spaniards, and the last by the *Natives*. 4. *Garunna*, 5. *Ligeis*, 6. *Axona*, 7. *Seguana*, and 8. *Charente*, so called by the French, according to the names of the best Rivers in France; both French and Spaniards having severally and successively the possession of it. Here are also 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers; 10. *Rio de Nieves*, or the River of Snow; and 11. *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the Holy Ghost; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular description of these Rivers, their rise, course and greatness, I find not in any of my Authors. Only *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River, called *Porte Riale*, reckoned the chiefest of this Country, the mouth whereof is three miles broad; where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the West, and the other pointing to the North. Some of these Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with Crocodiles, a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water.

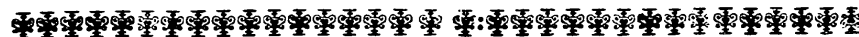
The Country not so well discovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly distributed into several Tribes, as were all Nations of the World at their first Discovery. The principal of these they reckon the *Quereues*, *Marianes*, *Canagadi*, *Camoni*, *Avavares*, and *Malicones*, the *Susilas*, *Quitones*, and other names not usual unto us of Europe; though these more passable than many which have gone before: mollified perhaps by the French, and Spaniards, and not presented to us in their natural roughness; all governed by their *Paracossi* or several Chiefs, and those at deadly Feuds, and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as

The Lucios. of delicate Springs. Others there are to the number of 24, or thereabouts, whose names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we find nothing of them but their very names, I shall not trouble myself with the Nomenclature.

Of all in general it is said that they obeyed their King so strictly (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high rock, they performed the same; though he gave no reason but his Will. The *Women* of so perfect beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forsook their own Countries to enjoy their *Loves*: their shape and beauty the more discernable, in regard not suffered to wear any thing till their *purgations*: nor alter that, but nets of *Cotton* filled with *Leaves* of Herbs. But now and long since, there are neither men nor women to be found in any of them: the people being long since wasted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*; or consumed by *Famine* and *Diseases*, or otherwise made away in *Prisons*, and by several torments, to the number of a *Million* and 200000, as some have told us. And so we pass unto the other side of those Northern Countries, and opposite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the main Land of *Florida*, that when we fall into the Countries now possessed by the *Spaniards*, we may not wander out of them till this work be finished, except it be to take a progress into some of the Islands, which cannot otherwise be visited but by such a *Start*.

OF

Quivira:



OF

CALIFORNIA.

SCAPE CALIFORNIA in the large and general acception of it, containeth all those Provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the West side of that Northern Peninsula, beyond *Nova Galicia*, and *New Spain*: though in the stricter, limited to that Province only which lieth on the other side of a long and spacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *California*. But taking it in the largest sense, it hath on the West *New Spain* & *New Galicia*, and so unto those undiscovered parts which lie furthest North, to the Straits of *Anian*. So witnesseth *John de Laet*, l. 6. c. 11. CALIFORNIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum *Nova* Hispania atque *Gallicia* ad Occidentem obijcitur, ad extremos America Septentrionalis terminos, & Fretum quod vulgo *Anian* vocant. Limited in the stricter sense and acception of it, to an Island (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the West hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the *Chorographie* and Story of it, we must divide it into the Continent, and the Island; the Continent subdivided into the two large Provinces of 1 *Quivira*, and 2 *Cibola*; the Island into 3 *California* specially so called, and 4 *Nova Albion*.

And first, the Continent of this part which we call *California*, hath on the East some parts of *Nova Galicia*; and besides that, those vast and undiscovered Countries, which lie on the West side of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the opposite shore: bounded on the North with the unknown parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-west, with the Straits of *Anian*, if such Straits there be; on the West with the Sea interposing betwixt it and the Island, called *Mer Vermiglio*; and on the South and South-west, with the rest of *Nova Galicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Nort*. A River which rising in the 40 degree of Northern Latitude, first parteth *Tigues* a Province of *Quivira*, from that of *New Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Galicia*; and after a long course fallen into the Sea, called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cinola*, another of the Provinces of that Division. Divided as before was said, into the two great Provinces of 1 *Quivira*, and 2 *Cibola*.

1 *QUIVIRA*, taking up the most Northern parts of this side of *America*, is said to be very plain and level; of few trees, not many houses, nor much stored of people; quite destitute of fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for mans life but the flesh of Beasts, which they eat raw, and swallow down in great bits without any chewing. The men apparelled in Bulls skins from the head to the feet; the women, though in a cold Country, with no other garment than their hair, which they wear so long, that it serveth them in stead of a Veil to hide their nakedness. They live in *Hordes* and Companies, like the *Hoards* of the *Tartars*, not having any certain dwellings (except some chief men) but remove from one place to another, like the ancient *Nomades*. Near Neighbours unto *Tartary*, from whence (not being much distant from it) it is supposed that the Inhabitants first came, and from hence by degrees peopled all *America*.

The Country being full of Herbage, breeds great store of Cattel, differing not much in bigness from those of *Europe*, but that they have an high bunch betwixt their shoulders; bristled upon the back like Bores, with somewhat which resembleth the mane in Horses, and the beard in Goats; their legs short, and clad with fetlocks, their horns short, but sharp; the whole Beast of an aspect so horrid, that an Horse will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in these Beasts lie all their riches, these being to this people, as we say with us of our *Ale* to Drunkards, meat, drink, and cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houses, or at least the covering of them; their bones, bodkins; their hair, thread; their sinews, ropes; their horns, maws, and bladders, vessels; their dung, fire; their Calves skins budgers to draw and keep water; their blood, drink; and their flesh, meat. There is thought to be some traffique from *China*, or *Cathay*, hither: for when *Vasques de Coronado* conquered it, he saw in the further Sea certain ships, not of common making, which seemed to be well laden, and did bear in their prows the figure of *Pelicans*; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of these two. I know, some place this Country more within the Land; and others are so far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it close unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coasts, upon good authority; though I deny not but that some parts hereof may be more remote. Or else to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; that the maritime parts being known by other names, the *Inlands* might retain more specially the name of *Quivira*, as we have seen in many other Countries before described.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, because I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Seio*, the other called *Cenic*, and the third *Tigues*, which I look upon as the maritime parts of the same one Country, but better peopled and frequented than the *Inlands* are, because lying in the way of traffique. The principal Towns of which Provinces, 1 *Acu*, or *Acuco*, a small Town, but situate in a strong and defensible place, about which groweth some store of *Cotton*, which from the place the Natives call by the name of *Aenco*. 2 *Tigues*, on the banks of a River so called; inhabited by a stout and courageous people, who being resolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when besieged by *Vasques de Coronado*, after they had held out

Nova Albion. It is also told us of this people, that each family is ordered by the Father of it, without other government: yet so well managed, that they allowed but one wife to a man, and punished *Adultery* with death; the *Maids* not suffered to converse, or talk with men before their marriage, but to abide at home and work; the *Widows* not to marry again, till they had mourned at least half a year for the death of their husbands. Matters more favouring an *Utopian* Common-wealth, than a *Californian*.

Places of moit observation in it, 1 The *Capes* of *S. Clara*, and *S. Lucas*; the first on the South-east point of the Island towards *New Galicia*; the other on the South-west towards *Asia*. 2 *S. Croesus* (*Sinus S. Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the *Cape* of *S. Clara*; so called because discovered upon *Holy Rood* day. 3 *Cabo di las Plaias*, more within the Bay; so named, because the shore shewed in little Hillocks, without grafs or shrubs, the *Spanish* word signifying as much. 4 *Cabo Boxo*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other side may be easily seen) in the *Latitude* of 29. 5 *S. Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Island of the same name, with some Cottages in it. 6 *S. Thome*, an Island of 25 leagues in compass, at the mouth of the Gulf; rising towards the South in an high Mountain, under which a convenient Road for shipping, the Sea being thereabouts 25 fathoms. Then on the other side towards the Sea, we have 7 *S. Abad*, a convenient Haven, surrounded with a Country which seemed rich and pleasant. 8 *Cape Trinidad*, a Promontory well known to Sea men. 9 *Cape de Cedro*, so called from the *Cedars* growing near it, in the *Latitude* of 28 and 15 minutes; with an Island not far off, of the same name also. 10 *Cape Enganno*, in the *Latitude* of 31. 11 *Puebla de las Canoas*, so named from the multitude of *Boats* (by themselves called *Canoes*) which the people used, four degrees more Northward than that *Cape*. And 12 *Cabo de Galera*, so named from the resemblance which it had to an *Hat*, in the *Latitude* of 36. But these two placed by *John de Laet* within the Country of *Seyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quivira*. Understand here, that these are only the names of places, not of Towns, or Villages, (for whether there be any such, I am yet unsatisfied;) and that there are many other Promontories, Bays, Rivers and Islands on both sides of this Region, which I find no names for.

The first discovery of this Country we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez* (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534. furnished out two ships from the Haven of *S. Jago* in the Western shores of *Hispania Nova*, to search these Seas: who making some small progress in it, encouraged him the next year to pursue it in person; and passing up the Gulf as high as to the River of *S. Peter and Paul*, (so called, because discovered on the 29 of June, the Annual Feast of those Apostles) for want of victuals and other necessary provisions, returned back again. The business having slept a while, was in the year 1539 awakened by *Francisco de Ulloa*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before: who did not only search to the bottom of the Gulf, but having thoroughly canvassed all the Eastern shores, he turned his course, and made as fortunate a Discovery also of the Western Coasts. Landing, he took possession of the Country with the wonted Ceremonies, for the King of Spain; and in the place set up a *Cross* to serve as a remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando the Alarcon*, who discovered many leagues up the course of the supposed River of *Buena Guis*; where *Niguacatus*, one of the Chiefs of their *Clans*, or *Tribes*, did submit unto him: advancing so far towards the North, that at the last he heard news of *Cibola*; but unprovided at that time for a journey thither. And on the other side, *Rodrico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coasting along the Western shores of this Country, discovered two small Islands beyond *Cape Galera*; the one of which he called *S. Luke*, and the other the Island of *Possession*: and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinia*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was *Gold* and *Silver*; and hungry honour yielding but a poor subsistence: the further search of these Countries was quite laid aside; almost as little known now, as before *Columbus* first set sail upon *New Discoveries*.

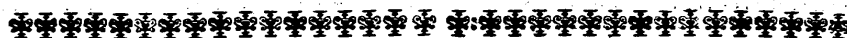
4 *NOVA ALBION* formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but some part of this Island; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and so Northwards as far as to *Cape Blanco*, as they call it now. Discovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the World, Anno 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England*, his own Country, which was once called *Albion*.

The Country abundantly replenished with Herds of Deer, grazing upon the Hills by thousands: as also with a kind of Conies, in their feet somewhat like a *Wunt*, and on each side a Sack where they keep such victuals as they cannot eat. The flesh of these Conies serves the people for food; and of their skins the Kings or Chiefs of their several Tribes, make their Royal Robes. The men quite naked, the women with a piece of Mar in stead of an Apron, chaste, and obedient to their husbands. Their houses made of Turf and Oiler, so wrought together, as serves to keep them from the cold: in the midst whereof they have an *Hearth* where they make fire, about which they lie along upon Beds of Bulrushes. What Towns they have, and whether they have any or not, and by what names called, if they have any, must be referred to a further Discovery: there being nothing to that purpose delivered hitherto. And yet not feared so far North, but that it may be capable of a further light, if any noble Undertakers would adventure on it.

The *English* were no sooner landed, but the Inhabitants presented themselves before the *General*, with presents of Feathers, and Kalls of Network made of Bull-rushes; which he received and required with great humanity. The news of their Arrival being carried further, one of their Kings thought fit to bestow a visit on them: A person of a goodly stature, attired in *Cony-skins*, with many tall men attending on him; one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of bone, but the Crowns of knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniously composed. After him

him followed many of the common sort, every one having his face painted white, black, and some *Nova Albion*: other colours; and every one with some present or other in their hands, even the very boyes. Being brought into the *Generals* presence, the Mace-bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not understood: and that being ended, the King caused the Crown to be put upon the *Generals* head, and the three Chains about his neck; the Common-people offering sacrifices about the fields, in great solemnity. Not to be interdicted those superstitions, though the *English* (whom they took for Gods) seemed offended at them. Finally, after much kindness expressed on both sides, the *General* promising in the name of the Queen of *England*, to take them into his protection; he caused a Pillar to be erected in the place: on which he fastned the Arms of *England*, the Queens name, and his own; and so returned unto his ships. But the Country lying so far off, that no benefit could redound by it to the *English* Nation, but the honour of the first discovery; the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at last quite left out of the Maps, or Charts; only a Point or Promontory, by the name of *Po de Francisco Draco*, being left unto us to preserve his memory. And though we have caused the name of *Nova Albion* to be restored unto the Maps, as it was before, yet we must let the Reader know; that the name of *New Albion* hath been given lately with as much propriety, but more hopes of profit and advantage to that part of *Virginia* which lieth betwixt *Mary-Land* and *New England*, as before was noted.

Opposite to *Cape Blanco*, and the extrem North parts of *America*, the supposed Kingdom of *ANIAN*, from whence the Straits of *Anian* which are thought by some to part *America* from *Asia*, do derive their name, is conceived to lie. Supposed, and supposed only, for not certainly known: the very being of such a Kingdom, and such Straits, being much suspected.



OF

NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Nova Hispania*, or *New Spain*, on the West, with *Mexvermiglio*, better known heretofore by the names of the River *Buena Guia*, and the Gulf of *California*; the Countries beyond it on the North, not discovered hitherto. So called because of some resemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallia*, a Province of *Spain*, in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for distinctions sake.

It is situate between the 18th. and 28th. degree of the Northern Latitude, which measured from the Port of the *Nativity*, (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Nvidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the most Northern border of *Cinaloa*, makes 300 leagues: the breadth hereof, for so much as is possessed by the *Spaniards*, but an hundred only. But taking in *New Biscay*, and *Nova Mexicana* into the Account, the breadth will be greater than the length.

The Air hereof generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat than cold; many times subject unto Thunders and great storms of rain; but for the most part of so found a constitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old age; contagious diseases seldom known amongst them. The ground by consequence somewhat of the driest, if not moistened with the morning Dews, which fall very frequently, and whether by the temperature of the Air, or Soil, apt to produce a kind of Gnat (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a Bean, which by their stings do very often plague the people, and raise blisters on their bodies as big as *Walnuts*.

The Country more Mountainous than plain, and in most parts sandy; Quarries of stone in many places, but little Marble, or any other stone of value. Good store of Mines of Brasse and Silver, few of Gold or Iron, and amongst all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The soil so rich, that it yields 60 measures of Wheat for one; and for one of *Maize*, above two hundred: the Rivers plentiful of Fish, and the Woods of Beasts; great store of Bees without stings, which make their Honey in the Forests without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, *Malcotons*, and other *European* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the Olive: of which the last is most an end undermined by *Emmets*; and the first thrusts out such a harvest of Leaves (occasioned by the natural rankness of the ground) that they seldom come to their perfection.

The people wavering and inconstant, apt upon any discontent to forsake their houses, betake themselves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their ancient *Barbarism*. Crafty, and docile even in matters which concern Religion; but slothful and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages. Much given to singing, dancing, and sometimes to drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquor, few of them would betake themselves to the cares of Husbandry. Of stature reasonably tall; their Garments for the most part a shirt of Cotton, with a mantle over it, fastened with two Buckles about their shoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatness of their several Tribes: those Tribes commanded by their Chiefs, who succeed hereditarily; but subject to the Judges and other Officers of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themselves generally to *merchandise*, and the search of Metals; some few to Husbandry and grazing, but make not the best use which they might of the Country: for though here be great plenty both of *Sugar-Canes* and of *Caccineels*, yet they neglect to refine the one, and attend the ordering of the other; finding perhaps an easier, or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountain of most note in all this Country, is that betwixt *Guadalajara* and *Zacatecas*; a league in height, but of such a precipice withal, that no Horse nor Cattel can ascend it: their other Hills rocky, but clothed with Woods full of vast Pines, large Oaks, and great store of Wolves. The River of most name, is that called *Baxania*, which rising out of the Lake of *Mechnacan* in *Nova Hispania*, falls down a Cataract about four leagues from *Guadalajara*, of ten fathoms deep, and so tumbleth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place fordable, nor having any passage over it but on Reeds and *Raffs*, on which the passenger sitteth with his Commodities, his Horse swimming by; not safe at any time, and at most time dangerous. Some Lakes here be of 20, some of 12 leagues compass; environed with rich Pastures on every side. Those of less note shall be remembered in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of 1 *Cinaloa*, 2 *Conliacan*, 3 *Xalisco*, and 4 *Guadalajara*; on the Western shores: 5 *Zacatecas*, 6 *New Biscay*, 7 *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all these somewhat shall be said, though of each but little.

1 *CINALOA*, is the most Northern Province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the West with the supposed River of *Buena Guia*, and some part of the Bay of *California*; on the East, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepefuan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cibola*; on the South, with *Conliacan*.

The air for the most part clear and healthy, the soil far and fruitful, productive of *Maize*, Pulse, a sort of long Pease which the *Latines* call *Phasoli*, but we have no proper *English* name for; of which abundantly plentiful. Great store of Cotton-wool, wherewith both Sexes are apparelled. Well watered with

with the Rivers, 1 *Petalan*, 2 *Tamochala*, 3 *Paschua*, 4 *Taquim*; of no long course, all of them rising from the Hills of *Tepefuan*, and those but 36 leagues distant from the Sea-shores. By reason of these Rivers here are very rich Pastures, which breed great store of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattel.

The people are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards* by a hand breadth, warlike and strong, not conquered by the *Spaniards* without great difficulty; their Arms a Bow and poisoned Arrows, with great mastie Clubs. Their Garments for the most part of Cotton-wool; their hair nourished to a great length, which the men tie up in a knot, but the Women suffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes at the first coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without clothes at all, but to hide their shame; most miserably poor, worshippers of the Sun, and not a few *Cannibals* amongst them.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *S. Philip* and *Jacob*, situate on the bank of a River, about 42 leagues from the Town of *Conliacan*, but of no great note. 2 *S. Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards* planted here long since; and re-inforced by a supply brought thither in the year 1554. by *Francisco de Tharras*; scarce able to defend themselves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon disturb them with a fresh alarm. Besides these here are only some scattered Villages, and those not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Country, when they first made themselves Masters of it, under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1542. People every where submitting without any resistance, or if they gathered to an head, soon dispersed again. For what could naked men do against an Army?

2 *CONLIACAN*, or *QULUCAN*, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coasting along the Bay of *California*, which it hath on the West, and part of *New Biscay*, on the East. The Country well provided of fruits, inferior unto none for all sorts of provisions; and not without some Mines of *Silver* found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it, 1 *Rio de Mucheras*, or the River of *Women*, in the North part of the Province; so called because the *Spaniards* found there more women than men, occasioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*, 2 *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River, both sides whereof are very well peopled. 3 *Piafla*, more towards *Xalisco*.

The people not much different from the rest of *Gallicia*, save that their Women were more handsome, both for dress and personage: all clothed in Garments of Cotton-wool, when first known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the men not free from the sin of *Sodom*. Their houses neatly thatched with straw; and over the *Lintels* of the Doors some Paintings, as shameless as the very fowlest of *Aretines* Postures. Ignorant of Gold, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted, to their cost, with *Silver*; which they are compelled to dig, and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Piafla*, on the River so called about a days journey from the Sea; well built, and artificially contrived in respect of others; never recovered of that blow which it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conquest of this Country waited all before them. 2 *Quinola*, near *Rio de Mucheras*. 3 *Quintrabarris*, an old Town, but new named by the *Spaniards*, because it consisted of four parts. 4 *El Leon*, an old Burrough which from a *Lyon* there found, had this new name also. 5 *Conliacan*, on a River so named, once the chief of this Province. 4 *S. Michael*, on the River of *Women*, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the latitude of 15, but afterwards deserted, or removed rather to a fitter place; and now fixed in the Valley of *Harrova*, two leagues from the Sea, in a flourishing and wealthy soil both of Corn and Pasture. The whole Country conquered by the *Spaniards*, Anno 1531. under *Nonnez de Guzman*, most barbarously burning down the Towns, and destroying the people; as if they came not to subdue, but root out the Nation.

3 *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as some Writers call it, hath on the North, *Conliacan*; on the South, *New Spain*; on the East, the Province of *Guadalajara*; on the West, the large Bay of *California*. So called from *Xalisco* the chief Town of it, when subdued by the *Spaniards*.

The soil hereof very fit for *Maize*, which it yields good store of, but not often herbage good for Cattel, which is reckoned for their greatest want. The North parts called *Chiametla*, of the two most fruitful, and better peopled; having in it store of Wax and Honey, with some Mines of *Silver*. The people formerly *Man-eaters*, and much given to quarrel; from which Reformed since their Conversion to the Gospel. Tenacious still of one of their ancient Customs, which is, to carry the smallest burden upon their shoulders, and not under their arms; which to do they think very much unbecoming.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *S. Sebastian*, 2 *Rio de Spiritu Sancto*, and 3 the great and famous River of *Barrania*, spoken of before. Upon the banks of which are situate their most principal Towns, viz. 1 *Xalisco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards* *Sierra de Xalisco*, thrusting it self into the Bay of *California*, over against the Islands called the *Three Maries*; the City taken and destroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1530. 2 *Campostella*, now the chief City of the Country, and a *Bishops* See; founded by the said *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1531. when he had fully conquered the Country: by whom peopled with *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Sancto*. But founded in a place, and so bad an air, destitute both of food for men, and grass for horses; as plainly shewed him to have better judgment in Soldierly than in *Architectural*. 3 *Pariscation*, a small Burrough on the Sea-side, and in the extremity of this Country towards *Nova Hispania*, near the Port of *Natividad*. 4 *S. Sebastian* in *Chiametla*, on the River so called, first built by *Francisco de Tharras* above mentioned; who having found hereabouts some rich Mines of *Silver*, brought thither in the year 1554. a new *Spanish* Colony; and building houses for his *Miners* in convenient places, occasioned the whole Tract to be called *de Tharras*.

4 *GUADALAJARA* hath on the West, *Xalisco*; on the East and South, some parts of *Nova Hispania*; on the North, the Province of *Zacatecas*: well watered with the River *Barrania*, which runneth

Guadalajara.

neath through the midst thereof, some of his by-streams moistening the other parts. The Country very wealthy in Mines of *Silver*, plentiful of *Maize*, and fortunate in the production of *Wheat* and such other fruits, as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the people we have before, applied in general to all the Natives of *New Gallia*, but most peculiar unto these.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Guadalajara*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *New Castile*, and giving name unto the Province, situate on the banks of the River *Barania*, or some branch thereof, in a sweet air, and a most rich and pleasing soil; where founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1531. when he had perfected his Conquest: better advised in the choice of the place, than in that of *Compostella* before mentioned. A City of so good esteem, that it passeth for the Metropolis of all *New Gallia*; honoured with the Courts of Judicature, the residence of the Kings Treasurers, and a Bishops See, removed hither from *Compostella*, An. 1570. Beautified on this last occasion with a fair Cathedral, a Convent of *Franciscans*, and another of *Augustine Friars*. 2 *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the said *Nonnez* in that part of this Country, which is called *Tepique*; but not else observable. 3 *Santa Maria de los Lagos*, built by the same Founder, 30 leagues on the East of *Guadalajara*; and the best defence of all this Province against the *Chichimecas*, a barbarous and untamed people on the North and East parts of this Country: who harbouring themselves in the thickest of the Woods, and some unknown Caves, do many times prey upon the Country; which they would utterly destroy, if not thus repressed.

5 *ZACATECAS* is bounded on the South, with *Guadalajara*; on the North, with *New Biscay*; on the West, with *Culiacan*, and some part of *Xalisco*; on the East, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Country of a different nature. In the West parts called properly *Los Zacatecas*, rich in Mines of *Silver* (no one Province more,) but destitute of *Wheat*, *Maize*, Water, and all other Provisions; as if it were designed for some wealthy *Miser*, who could live upon the sight of Treasure. The Eastern parts properly called *Xalitpa*, not so well furnished with *Silver*, but most abundantly provided with all sorts of fruits; their Woods replenished with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving entertainment to some Bird, or other: in a word, nothing wanting in it, either for necessity, or pleasure. Of the people, I find nothing singular, but that they are affirmed to be more industrious than the most of their Neighbours; whether by force, or nature, (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their *Silver-mines*) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Los Zacatecas*, neighbored by most wealthy Mines, 40 leagues on the North of *Guadalajara*; inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciscans*. 2 *S. Martin*, 27 leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were first opened by *Francisco de Tharra*, before mentioned; who with many slaves, and all things necessary for a War, was sent upon that errand by *Lewis de Velasco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, An. 1554. The Town inhabited by a Colonie of 400 *Spaniards*, besides women and children. 3 *S. Lukas*, and 4 *De Avinnon*, built amongst Mines as wealthy as those before, by the same *De Tharra*: as also was 5 *Erena*, a small Town, but of the same estate for *Silver*; distant from *Zacatecas* 15 leagues towards the North-west. 6 *Nombre di Dios*, in the most Northern parts of this Country, 68 leagues from *Guadalajara*, the foundation of the same *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the *Natives*, and quieted them after some Rebellions by gentle usage, built this Town in a pleasant and fruitful soil: and having got the Government of the Countries which he had discovered, drew hither so many of the *Spaniards* and chief men of the *Natives*, by granting them the propriety of some *Silver Mines*, that it became the chief and best peopled Town of all this Province. 7 *Durango*, in the valley of *Guadiana*, about eight leagues distant from *Nombre di Dios*, peopled by a Colonie of *Spaniards* conducted thither by *Alonso Pacheco*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this treasure. 8 *Xeres de Frontera*, first built for the repressing of some of the *Salvages*, who used to infest the borders towards *Guadalajara*, during the Regencie of the Marquess of *Villa Manrique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *OXITIPA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, subdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, employed therein by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1529. at that time Governour of that Province. Disembred from it since the conquest of *Zacatecas*, and made a Member of the *Presellure* of *New Gallia*. The chief Town of it called *S. Lewis*, built in a pleasant Valley by the said *Pacheco*, and by him peopled with a Colonie of *Spaniards*: the Town not distant from *Panuco* above twenty leagues.

6 *NOVA BISCALIA*, or *New Biscay*, hath on the South, *Los Zacatecas*; on the West, *Cinaloa*; on the North, *Nova Mexicana*; the Countries towards the East not discovered hitherto. So called by *Francisco de Tharra*, by whom first subdued, from the near neighbourhood which it had unto *Nova Gallia*, of which since reckoned for a part.

The Country subject in the Winter to great Frosts and Snows; but notwithstanding well provided for all things necessary, and wonderfully enriched with Mines of *Silver*. They have also some of *Lead*, which serve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the other; used to this purpose not alone in these Mines of *New Biscay*, but in those also of *New Spain*. The people resolute and stout, not conquered at the first attempt, nor won so much by force, as by fair persuasions.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *S. Barbara*, and 2 *S. Johns*, about three leagues distant; built only for the benefit of the Mines adjoining. 3 *Ende*, the furthest Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North; of whom a Colonie was there planted (by reason of the adjoining Mines) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did also fortifie it by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Distant from *S. Barbara*, and *S. John* about twenty leagues, and an hundred and twenty leagues from *Los Zacatecas*. More North by seventy leagues at least, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniards*, are said to be those four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Ciudades*; but I have nothing of them certain.

Nova Mexicana.

This Country first subdued by *Francisco de Tharra*, who after he had built *Durango* in the North parts of *Los Zacatecas*, and assured that Province, advanced with a Troop of 130 horse for the Discovery and Conquest of his Northern Neighbours. Encountered at the first more with hunger and thirst, than with any opposition of the Inhabitants; inasmuch that they were fain to eat their Horses: and afterwards by the Rebellion of the *Natives*, who killed the greatest part of such Horses as were left uneaten. But not discouraged herewith, nor with the many difficulties which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his passage thorow the Woods by the swords of his Souldiers, he prevailed at last; and having settled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinaloa*, which he also Conquered; and planted there a Colony in the Town of *S. Johns*, as was said before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA*, is bounded on the South, with *New Biscay*; on the West, with *Quivira*; the Countreys on the North, and East, not discovered hitherto; though some extend it Eastwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 Leagues from the Town and Mines of *S. Barbara*, and how much beyond that none can tell; the Relations of this Country being so uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare say nothing positively of the Soil or People, but much less of the Towns and Cities which are said to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Espejo*, a Citizen of *Mexico* in *New Spain*, by whom discovered and subdued.

For first, they tell us of the People, that they are of great stature (and that like enough) but not so probable, that they have the Art of dressing *Chamois* and other *Leather*, as well as the best *Leather-Dresser* in all *Flanders*: or that they have Shoes and Boots so well sewed and soled, that no *Sboe-maker* in all *S. Martins* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the houses well built of Lime and Stone, some of them four Stories, and in most of them Staves for the Winter Season. The Streets even, and ordered in an excellent manner. Particularly they tell us of a Town called 1 *Chia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cuame*, which is said to contain eight Market-places, and all the houses to be plaistered and painted in most curious manner. 2 Of *Aconia*, that it is situate on the top of a Rock, a great Town, yet no way unto it but by Ladders; and in one place a pair of stairs but exceeding narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well fortified by Nature (they say true in that, if any things were true which they tell us of it) and all their water kept in Cisterns (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3 Of *Conibas*, on a Lake so called, the City seven Leagues long, two broad; (a second *Ninive*) but the Houses scatteringly built amongst Hills and Gardens, which takes up a great deal of the room: Inhabited by a People of such strength and courage, that the *Spaniards* only faced it, and so went away. Much of this stuff I could afford you; but by this rate we may conjecture of the rest of the *Feast*.

The Country first discovered by *Augustino Royaz*, a *Franciscan Friar*, Anno. 1580. who out of Zeal to plant the Gospel in the North, accompanied with two other Friars of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the Adventure. But one of the Monks being killed by the *Salvages*, the Souldiers played the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram*, a Friar of the same Order (from whose mouth we must have the former Fictions) desirous to preserve the lives of his Fellows which staid behinde, encouraged one *Antonio de Espejo* a Native of *Corduba*, but a Citizen of *Mexico*, to engage in such an holy Cause: who raising a Band of 150 horse, accompanied with many Slaves, and Beasts of Carriage, undertook the business. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchi*, *Pasnegates*, *Tobosi*, *Pakarabyes*, *Tarrabumares*, *Tepoanes*, and many other as hard names, which he passed thorow in his way. But coming at the last to a great River which he called *Del Norte* there he made a stand; caused the Country on both sides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, situate in the 37th degree of Northern Latitude, and distant from old *Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name since changed to that of *S. Foye*, but still the Metropolis of that Province, the Residence of the Governour, and a pretty Garrison consisting of two hundred and fifty *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming hither, viz. 2 *Sucorro*, so called by the *Spaniards* because of that succour and relief they found there for their half-starved Bodies. 3 *Seneca*, 4 *Pilabo*, and 5 *Sevilleta*, old Towns, but new Christianized by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Gospel, each of them beautified with a Church. 6 *S. Johns*, built afterwards in the year 1599. by *John de Onate*, who with an Army of five thousand followed the same way which *Espejo* went; and having got a great deal of Treasure, laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the most I dare relye on for this Country: And this hath no such Wonders in it, but what an ealie Faith may give credit to: though I had rather believe the *Friers* whole Relations, than go thither to disprove any part thereof.

Tttt

OF

Mechuacan.

out of other Countreys, to recover their health. Well stored with Rivers, some Lakes, innumerable Springs of running water, and here and there some *hot Bathes* issuing from the Rocks. The soyl so plentifully productive of all sorts of Grain (even to admiration) that in some parts hereof four measures of Seed have brought forth 600 measures of the same Grain, in the following Harvest. Well wooded, and by reason of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Pastures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all by reason of its Medicinal Herbs, and Plants, of very soveraign nature for the good of Mankind. It affordeth also store of Amber, Mulberry Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and such other things, as chiefly serve for Pomp and Pleasure.

The People tall of stature, but strong and active: of a good wit, and skilled in many excellent *Manufactures*. They speak four languages of their own; but that most generally used, is by the Spaniards called the *Tarascan* tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious language, yet most of them speak the *Spanish* also. More pliant to the manners and apparel of that Nation, than the rest of *New Spain* (the *Mexicans* excepted only) and so inclinable to the Gospel, that they are almost all gained from their old Idolatry. Inasmuch that the whole Countrey being divided into 50 Parishes, every Parish hath its several Priests and inferior Ministers, who in the language of the place do instruct the people, in which they preach to them, and hear their Confessions: besides many Convents of *Dominicans*, and *Augustine* Friars.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns, or *Burroughs*, besides scattering Villages; 90 of which have *Free Schools* in them, and almost every one a *Spittle* for relief of the sick. The principal thereof, 1 *Zimzanza*, the seat of the old Kings of *Mechuacan*; in the first times of *Christianity* in this Countrey, made a Bishops See, till removed to *Pascuar*. The first Bishop, *Vasquez de Quiroga*. 2 *Pascuar*, of no great note at present, but that the Bishops See was removed thither, because nearer to *Mexico*; from which distant 47 leagues. 3 *Valladolid*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Bishops See, removed hither from *Pascuar*, and here finally settled in a fair Cathedral, An. 1544. Situate near a large Lake (said to be bigger than that of *Mexico*) which doth not only afford the City great store of Fish, but yieldeth them the opportunity of several pleasures which they take in Boats upon the water. The Lake and City by the Natives called *Guayangareo*. 4 *S. Michael*, in the way from *Mexico* (from which distant about 40 leagues) to the silver Mines of *Zacatecas*. First built by *Louis de Velasco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to defend the people of this Province from the *Chichimecas*; a barbarous, and hitherto an unconquered people, who terribly molest the Nations upon whom they border. 5 *S. Philips*, built at the same time by the said *Velasco*. 6 *Concepcion de Sayla*, seventeen leagues from *Valladolid*; 35 from *Mexico*; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez*, the Vice-roy, An. 1570. to be a Stage for travellers, in their journeys Northwards. 7 *Guaxanato*, bordering on *Pannco*, and not far from *S. Jago de Los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea, we have 8 *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Galicia*, two miles from the Ocean; a Town of not above 30 houses, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and safe Road for Shipping (by the Spaniards called *Malacca*) which makes it seldom without the company of *Saylers*. 9 *Natividad*, (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly set sail to the *Philippine Islands*; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendish* in his Circumnavigation of the World. 10 *S. Jago de Buena Esperanza*, a little on the South of *Natividad*; the shores whereof are said to be full of Pearls. 11 *Columbia*, ten leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other, built in the year 1522. by *Gonzalvo de Sandoval*. 12 *Zacatula*, by the Spaniards called *Concepcion*, situate on the Banks of a large (but nameless) River; which rising about the City of *Tlascala*, passeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the Spaniards hither, was a distinct Kingdom of it self, not subject nor subordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were most of the Princes of these parts: the Frontiers of the Kingdom fenced with stakes of wood, like a *Palizado*, to hinder any sudden incursion of the *Mexican* Forces. The last King called *Tangayuan Bimbicha*, submitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, An. 1522. and willingly offered himself to Baptism. But the Spaniards were not pleased with either, because deprived thereby of the spoil of the Country. But at last *Nonnez de Guzman*, then President of the Courts of Justice in *Mexico*, picked a quarrel with him, accused him falsely (as is said by the very Spaniards) of some practices against his King; burnt him alive with most barbarous and unheard of cruelty, and so confiscated his Estate.

3. *MEXICANA*, is bounded on the East, with the Gulf of *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mechuacan*; on the North, with *Pannco*; and some part of *Nova Galicia*; on the South, with *Tlascala*, and part of the Southern Sea. So called from *Mexico*, the chief City not of this Province only, but of all *America*.

It is in breadth from North to South, measuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130 leagues; thence growing narrower in the midland parts hardly above sixty; and on the shores of *Mare del Zuv*, not above seventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other, that is to say, from the point of *Libos* in the Province of *Papanla*, on the Gulf of *Mexico* to the Haven of *Acapulco*, on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of miles I do not where finde. But measuring it from 17 degrees and an half of Latitude, unto the 22d, and allowing something for the slope, we may conclude it to be much of the length, as it is breadth, that is to say, about 130 leagues.

The Countrey is inferior to *Peru* in the plenty and purity of Gold and Silver, but far exceeding it both in the *Mechanical* and *Ingenious Arts*, which are here professed, and in the abundance of Fruits and Cattel: of which last here is such store, that many a private man hath 40000 Kine and Oxen to himself. Fish is here also in great plenty; that only, which is drawn out of the Lake whereon *Mexico* standeth, being reported worth 30000 Crowns yearly, to the Kings Exchequer. The people for the most part witty and industrious, full of valour and courage; good Handycraftsmen, if they stoop so low as to Trade and *Manufactures*; rich Merchants, if they give themselves to more gainfull traffick; and hardy Souldiers, if

trained

trained up and employed in service. Their ancient Arms were Slings, and Arrows; since the coming of *Mexicans*, the Spaniards practised on the *Harcubize*. In a word, what was said before of *New Spain* in general, as to the soyl and people of it, is most applicable to this.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *Los Topes*, which parteth this Province from that of *Tlascala*. 2 *Citula*; and 3 *Mila*, both running Eastward towards the Gulf. 4 *Papagayo*, in the way from *Mexico* to *Acapulco*; with a fair bridge over it. 5 *Las Balsas* of aviolent course, and in bigness equal unto *Tagus* in Spain; passable onely by a bridge made of Rafts and Reeds, not very strongly joyned together. 6 The River of *S. Francis*, both large and swift, but in some parts fordable. Mountains of note I finde not any which require a more particular consideration; and so pass them over the more easily.

Towns of most note in it, 1 *Mexico*, the seat of an Archbishop, and of the Spanish Vice-Roy, who hath the power to make Laws and Ordinances, to give directions, and determine controversies; unless it be in such great causes which are thought fit to be referred to the Council of Spain. This City was first situate in the Lakes and Islands, like *Venice*; every where interlaced with the pleasant currents of fresh, and seawaters; and carrying a face of more civil government than any of *America*; though nothing, if compared with *Europe*. But the Town being destroyed by *Cortez*, it was built afterwards on the firm Land, on the Edge of the Lake, and bordering on a large and spacious Plain. The Plain on which it bordereth, is said to be 70 leagues in compass, environed with high Hills; on the tops whereof the snow lieth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great Lakes, the least of them forty miles in circuit, the one salt, and the other fresh: each of them alternately ebbing and flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the salt Lake standeth the City of *Mexico*, with many other goodly Towns, and stately houses; on which Lake also, 50000 Wherries are continually plying. The Town in compass six miles, and containeth 6000 houses of Spaniards, and 60000 Indians. It is a by-word, that at *Mexico* there are four fair things, viz. The Women, the Apparel, the Horses, and the Streets. Here is also a Printing-house, an University, and a Mint; the Cathedral Church, ten Convents of Nuns, several houses of Jesuits, Dominicans, Franciscans, Augustinians, and other Religious Orders; some Colleges, many Spittles, and Hospitals, and other publick buildings of great state and beauty. By the Natives it was anciently called *Temiztitan*, the name of *Mexico* being given on a new occasion, of which more hereafter: most miserably endamaged by the breaking in of the waters, An. 1629. which swelled so high that they not only overwhelmed the meaner houses, but the Vice-Roy's Palace; drowned many thousands of the People, and destroyed the household-stuff of the rest. Occasioned by the avarice of the Kings Ministers, who had inverted the Money to their private use, which should have fortified the banks. But being a rich and wealthy City, it soon recovered of that blow, attaining in short time to such infinite riches, that generally the Merchants, Traders, and Artificers, do brave it in a greater state, and more splendid Equipage than any people under Heaven of the like condition. 2 *Tezcuco*, situate on the same Lake, but six leagues from *Mexico*; heretofore twice as big as *Sevil*: and for the beauty of the streets, and elegance of the houses, not inferior to any. Served with fresh water from the Hills, brought in Pipes and Conduits, though feared on the brink of a salt Lake. 3 *Quilavaca*, built wholly in the Lake-like *Venice*, and therefore by the Spaniards called *Venezuela*; a City of 2000 households: the way unto it over a Causeway made of slits; half a league long; and about twenty spans in breadth. 4 *Uztacpalapa*, half in the Lake, and half without, with many Ponds of fresh water, and a beautiful Fountain. A City of 10000 households, six leagues from *Tezcuco*, and two from *Mexico*. 5 *Mexicaltzingo*, a Burrough of 4000, and 6 *Chyucan*, one of 6000 Families: both upon the Lake: beautified in the times of their Paganism with many Temples, so gorgeously set out to the eye; that as far off they seemed of silver; most of them now converted into Monasteries, and Religious houses. 7 *Chulula*, the fairest of all the Lake, scarce excepting *Mexico*, with which it anciently contended both for state and bigness: said to contain 20000 Families, and to be beautified with so many Temples, that their Towers equalled the number of the dayes of the year. The people so addicted unto their Idolatries, and so barbarous in their bloody and beastly Sacrifices, that no fewer than 6000 Infants of both Sexes were yearly murdered on their Altars. 8 *Mesitlan*, seated on an high Hill, begirt about with most pleasant Groves, and shady Woods. A Town of about 30000 Inhabitants, the Villages about the Hill being reckoned in: situate 14 leagues, or two days journey from *Mexico*, in the way to the Province of *Pannco*; the high way on both sides set with fruitful Trees, to the great comfort and refreshment of the way-faring men. 9 *Clantimoltepe*, twenty leagues from *Mesitlan*, a Mannour to which 40000 of the Natives do owe suit, and service. 10 *Antequepe*, on the South of the City of *Mexico*, at the foot of the Mountain *Propampetche*; a Town belonging to the Marquess of *Valla*, and seated in the most delicious place of all *New Spain*. 11 *Acachibca*, on the North-East of *Mexico*, betwixt it and the Gulf, bordering on the Province of *Papanla*. 12 *Acapulco*, an Haven-town of the South-sea, situate on a safe and capacious Bay; at the entrance of it a league broad, and in the body of it full of convenient Stations and Docks for shipping: so that it is accounted the safest Haven of all those Seas. At the bottom of it towards the West, stands the Town and Castle, the Castle opportunely seated on a little fore-land, both to command the Town, and secure the Port; well walled and fortified with four very strong Bulwarks, on which are planted good store of Ordnance; the Garrison consisting ordinarily of 400 Souldiers: strengthened the rather in regard of the usual intercourse which is betwixt this Port and the *Philippine Islands*.

The Original Inhabitants of this Countrey (as far at least as their Records are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the most rude and barbarous Savages of all these parts; together with the *Otomies*, somewhat more civil than the rest, but yet rude enough. By these possessed till about the year 902. as it is conjectured from their Annals, when vanquished and dispeized by some new comers, whom they called by one name *Nawalacos*: issuing as it is conceived from those parts of *Galicia Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, An. 720. or thereabouts; but lingering in their march, and waiting all the Countreys

Mexicana.

as they lay before them. Of these there were seven Tribes in all, i. e. the *Sachimilci*, the *Chalce*, the *Tepaneca*, the *Culua*, the *Tlaximilci*, the *Tlascalteca*; all of them settled in these parts, and the five first about the Lake, before the coming in of the 7th Tribe, which was that of the *Mexicans*, so called from *Mexi* their chief Caprain; who much delighted with the situation and conveniences of *Temistitan* then a ruined Town, caused it to be rebuilt and beautified, by the name of *Mexico*. This town from that time forwards was reputed the head-City of their Common-wealth; the six Tribes governing in common, or the Chiefs rather of those Tribes in the names of the whole, after an Aristocratical manner. But weary at the last of this equal power, which the prevalency of some Tribes had made very unequal; the *Mexicans*, one of the weakest of the Tribes, oppressed by the rest, resolved to separate themselves, and to commit the ordering of their affairs to a King of their own. At first elected by themselves, but afterwards when they had conquered most of the other Tribes, the choice intrusted unto six, one for every Tribe, (the *Tlascalteca* which was the seventh of their Tribes, and the Founders of *Tlascala*, governing themselves long before, as a State apart;) who in their choice had an especial eye on those which were strong and active, and fit for military employments; the people holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their Kings, if once they were reputed Cowards. The *Polity* and *Institutes* of this *Mexican* Kingdom, I forbear to write of, further than as they lie before me in the way of their Story: digested by the government and succession of their several Kings, whose names and actions do occur in the following Catalogue of

The KINGS of MEXICO.

- | | |
|---------|---|
| A. Ch. | A. Ch. |
| 1322 1 | Acampitzli, Nephew to the King of <i>Comilacan</i> , but of the <i>Mexican</i> blood by the Fathers side, elected for the first King; who joyned <i>Comilacan</i> and <i>Tongancan</i> unto his Estate, and settled that Kingdom at his death in the way of Election. |
| 1373 2 | Vitzavitzli, Son of <i>Acampitzli</i> , subdued the tribe of the <i>Sachimilchi</i> , and others of the neighbouring Nations. |
| 1394 3 | Huizilbihuel son of <i>Vitzavitzli</i> , conquered the Tribes of the <i>Chalce</i> and <i>Culua</i> , with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants. |
| 1415 4 | Chimalpupuca, Son of <i>Huizilbihuel</i> , won the Town of <i>Tequixtiauac</i> , and reduced the rebellious <i>Chalce</i> under his command. |
| 1425 5 | Ischobalt brother of <i>Huizilbihuel</i> , by the valour of his Cousin <i>Tlacaelle</i> , freed himself from the Yoke of the <i>Tepaneca</i> , to whom the <i>Mexicans</i> had before been Tributaries; and added their dominions unto his Estate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whose death the <i>Electors</i> by a joyned consent chose <i>Tlacaelle</i> for their King, as a man of whose vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refused it, saying, that it was more convenient for the Common-wealth, that another should be King, and that he should execute that which was for the necessity of the State, than to lay the whole burden upon his back: and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the publick, as well as if |
| | he were. Upon this generous refusal they made choice of <i>Moteczuma</i> the first. |
| 1438 6 | <i>Moteczuma</i> , one of the Brothers of <i>Chimalpupuca</i> , brought in the custom of using no other Sacrifices at their Coronations, but of such <i>Prisoners</i> as the new King should first take in the wars. By the valour and good fortune of <i>Tlacaelle</i> , he subdued so many of the Nations (whose names I hold unnecessary to be here repeated) that he extended his Estate from one Sea to the other. |
| 1467 7 | <i>Axayacaci</i> , the Nephew of <i>Ischobalt</i> by his Son <i>Tecocomoliqueto</i> , enlarged his Empire by the conquest of <i>Tezentepeque</i> , 200 miles from <i>Mexico</i> , to fit himself with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of <i>Tlatelmeco</i> who rebelled against him, to so hard a streit; that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple. |
| 1479 8 | <i>Ticocatzli</i> , the Son of <i>Axayacaci</i> , added Twelve Cities, with their Territories, to the <i>Mexican</i> Empire. |
| 1484 9 | <i>Abnczozin</i> , Brother of <i>Ticocatzli</i> , extended his Borders to <i>Guatimala</i> , repaired or rebuilt a great part of <i>Mexico</i> , and brought thither a channel of fresh Water. |
| 1502 10 | <i>Moteczuma</i> II. Son of <i>Axayacaci</i> , before his Coronation conquered 44 Cities. He ordained that no <i>Plebeian</i> should bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18th year of his Reign was subdued by <i>Cortez</i> . |

As for this *Cortez*, to whom the *Spaniards* stand indebted for the Kingdom of *Mexico*, he was born in *Medelline*, a Town of *Extremadura*, 1485. and in the nineteenth year of his Age, employed himself in the Trade and business of *America*, for the improvement of his Fortunes, Anno 1511. he went as Clerk unto the Treasurer for the Isle of *Cuba*, where he husbanded his Affairs so well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep, and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in short time he was able to put in 2000 *Castellins* for his stock, as Partner with *Andrew de Duero*, a wealthy Merchant. Grown richer, he was taken to be Partner with *James Velasquez*, in the Discovery of *Tabasco*, and the parts near *Jucatan*, An. 1518. And

And now resolved to venture all his stock both of Friends and Money, he furnished himself of eleven *Ships*, and with 550 men set sail from *Spain*, and arrived at the Island of *Acomamill* (now called *Santa Cruz*;) and sailing up the River of *Tabasco*, sacked the Town of *Potonchon*, the Inhabitants refusing to sell him victual. After this by the help of his Horse and Ordnance, he discomfited 40000 of the naked *Savages*, gathered together to revenge themselves for the sack of that Town; and received the King thereof in Vassallage to the Crown of *Spain*. Being told that *Weltward* he should meet with some *Mines* of Gold, he turned his course for the Haven of *S. John de Ulloa*; where landing he was entertained by *Tendilli*, Governour of the Town and Country for the King of *Mexico*: who understanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of so great an Emperour (of which *Tendilli* had informed him by especial Messengers) he sent him many rich Presents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the sight hereof, he resolved to go unto the place where such Treasures were; took possession of the Country in the name of *Charles* the fifth King of *Spain* and Emperour; and building there the Town of *la vera Cruz*, left in it 150 of his men. Attended by no more than 400 Foot, 15 Horse, and six pieces of Ordnance, he pursued his Enterprize; by practice gained unto him those of *Zempoallan*, and *Tlascalla*, whom he understood to be ill-affected to *Moteczuma*: assisted with whose Forces he passed on for *Mexico*, sacked the Town of *Cholulla* (a Town of 40000 households) in his march, kindly received into *Mexico* by the frightened King, whom he caused to acknowledge himself a Vassall to *Spain*, and to present him in the name of a Tribute, with so much Treasure, as amounted to 160000 *Castellins* of Gold. A quarrel growing not long after, *Moteczuma* the unhappy King was by one of his own Subjects killed in the Tumult, and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. But aided with the whole Forces of the *Tlascalans*, and a recruit of more *Spaniards* (sent thither on a Design against him) he made up an Army of 100000 *Savages*, 900 *Spanish* Foot, 80 Horse, 17 pieces of Ordnance; and having with great diligence made ready a Navy of 13 Gallies, and 6000 Canoes or Boats; laid siege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a siege of three moneths, the City is taken, sacked and burnt, August 13. 1521. But afterwards rebuilt more beautifully than it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hands of the *Spaniards*, by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private Adventurer; endowed for that good service by *Charles* the fifth with the Town and Territory of *Ticoantepeque*, in the Province of *Guanaxaca*, and many other fair Estates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the title of Marquess of *Valla*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are said to have worn a Crown resembling that which is now used by the Dukes of *Venice*. His Coronation held with great pomp, but most bloody Sacrifices. His *Revenues* thought to be almost infinite, raised out of all Commodities and paid in kinde, whether *Natural* or *Artificial* only: the King participating of the fruits of all mens Labour, and sharing with them in their wealth: some paying in Cups full of powder of Gold, of two handfuls a piece; some *Diadems*, and Beads of Gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; *Turkeſſe* stones, Golden Targets, rich Feather-Pilures, &c. Not to say any thing of matters of inferior value: all which in such a wealthy and large Estate, must needs afford him a *Revenue* equal to the greatest Monarch. And for the encouragement of his Souldiers and Men of War, here were ordained three Orders of Knighthood, (or at least such distinctions of personal merit, as had resemblance to such Orders:) the first distinguished by a Red Ribband, the second called the *Lyon* or *Tyger* Knight, and the third the *Gray Knight*, all privileged amongst other things to be clothed in Cotton, wear Breeches; to adorn themselves with Gold and Silver, and to have Vessels gilt or painted; high points; and not permitted unto any else. But it is time that I proceed to the rest of the Provinces.

4. *TLASCALLA* lieth betwixt *Mexicana* and *Guanaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred Leagues; the breadth along the shores of the *Gulf* reckoned 80 Leagues, on the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of *Maize* which they make their bread of; the word in that Language signifying *Locum Panis*, or the place of Bread; the same with *Bethlehem* in the Hebrew.

The Country very plentiful both of Corn and Cattel, full of rich Pastures, and wonderfully stored with *Maize*: Level and plain except towards the Sea, where occurreth a large chain of craggy Mountains. The richer in the fruits of Nature for those fair and pleasant Rivers, wherewith it is watered; the principal of which 1. *Rio de Grijalva*, so called from *John de Grijalva*, who first discovered it; employed herein by *James Velasquez*, the advancer of *Cortez*. 2. *Rio de Zempoall*, so called from the Town of *Zempoallan* about which it riseth. 3. *Zahuate*, which makes its way thorow the chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the *Gulf*. 4. *Rio de Zactula*, a River of the longest course in all this Province; rising near *Tlascala*, and falling many Leagues off into *Mare del Sur*. The People much of the same nature with those of *Mexico*, though upon jealousies of State their most bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good use; to advance their Conquests on that Kingdom.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Tlascala* it self, which gives name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a Common-wealth, according to the Democratical Models. Situate on a little Hill betwixt two Rivers: and in the middle of a large, but pleasant Plain, 60 miles in compass. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, that it contained 300000 Inhabitants; now scarce 50000. It had four Streets (or rather Quarters) each of them governed by a Captain in time of war: and in the midst a Market-place so fair and spacious, that 30000 persons might assemble in it, to buy and sell, or for any other business. 2. *Puebla de los Angeles*, (the City of Angels) but most commonly *Angelos*; built by *Sebastian Ramirez*, An. 1531: in the way from *Vera Cruz* to the City of *Mexico*, from which last 22 leagues distant. A Bishops See; and thought to contain in it 1500 Families. 3. *Zempoallan*, on the River so named, the Inhabitants whereof did great service to *Ferdinando Cortez* in his conquest of *Mexico*. 4. *Napulmeca*; of great resort for a Fair of Cattel; and such a kinde of Court for ordering the trade thereof,

GUAXACA.

as we call the *Pie-powders*. 5 *Guaxocingo*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, situate at the foot of the burning Mountain beforementioned; by the ashes and embers whereof the fields are many times annoyed. 6 *Segura*, or *Segura de la Frontera*, in the Region of *Tepecac*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the conquest of *Mexico*, with fair streets and handsome houses; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*. 7 *Vera Cruz*, the first town built in this Countrey by the said *Cortez*, now a *Bishop's See*: situate neer unto the Gulf, and a great thorow-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which distant about 60 leagues. 8 *S. John de Ulloa*, the most noted Port of all this Province; fenced with a Peer against the fury both of winds and sea; defended naturally by Rocks and Quicklands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both sides of the entrance. 9 *Medellin*, built by *Cortez*, An. 1525. and planted with *Spaniards*: so called in memory of a Town of the same name in *Extremadura*, in which he was born; situate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlascalans* were originally one of the seven Tribes, which drove the *Chichimecas* out of their possessions: and either finding no room left for them on the Banks of the *Lake*, or else willing to subsist alone; withdrew themselves from the rest, founded the City of *Tlascalala*, and there erected a *Democratical* Estate. Stomached for this by the other Tribes, and many times invaded by those of *Mexico*, after they had subdued the rest; they still maintained themselves against all attempts; and in the end assisted *Cortez*, in the destruction of that Kingdom they so deadly hated. Privileged for that reason by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of tribute (except it be an handful of Wheat for every person) and suffered to live under his protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name, said to contain 200 good Towns and Burroughs, 1000 Villages and upwards; and in them 150000 of the Natives, besides *Spanish* Colonies. Distributed into 36 *Clases* or *Rural Deantries*, for Ecclesiastical Government, in which are thought to be 30 *Convents* and Religious Houses.

5. *GUAXACA* is bounded on the West, with *Tlascalala*; on the East, with *Jucatan*, and *Chiapa*, one of the Provinces of *Guatemala*; on the North, with the Bay of *Mexico*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zurr*. Extended on the South-sea to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to fifty only: in breadth from Sea to Sea where it bordereth on *Tlascalala*, 120 leagues; not above 60 where it confineth on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxaca* once the chief Town of these parts, now named *Atteguera*.

The Air hereof very sound and sweet, and the Soil as fruitful: plentiful not only of those commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Countrey; but of such quantities of *Silks*, and store of *Mulberries*, that if the Natives paid their *Tithes* as the *Spaniards* do, that very Revenue would suffice to endow five *Bishopricks*, as good as that which is there already. Scarce any River of this Countrey, but hath Sands of Gold: such plenty of *Cocainele* (a rich grain used in dying *Scarlets*, of which before) as also of *Cassia*, Gold, Silver, and other metals; that if the people did but adde some industry to the wealth of the Countrey, they might be the richest men in all *America*. But being naturally slothful, and impatient of labour, they lose all opportunities of gathering riches, and live but from hand to mouth, as we use to say. Docile enough, and so indulgent unto those who take pains to teach them, that here are reckoned 120 *Convents* of *Dominican* Friars, besides other Schools: these last conceived the greater number.

It is subdivided into many particular Provinces (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*) as 1 *Misteca*, 2 *Tutopeque*, 3 *Zapoteca*, 4 *Guazacoalco*, 5 *Guextaxatla*, and 6 the *Vale* of *Guaxaca*; this last most memorable, in that it gave the title of *Marquess* del *Valle* to the famous *Cortez*. Towns of most observation, 1 *Tezcuotlan*, once the chief Town of *Zapoteca*, and the seat of their King. 2 *Cuicatlan*, of great note for a *Labyrinth* not far off, hewn out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3 *Antequera*, in the Valley of *Guaxaca*, a stately City, and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*; as that with *Marble-pillars* of great height and thickness. 4 *S. Misson* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5 *S. Jago* in the Valley of *Nexapa*, seated upon a lofty hill. 6 *Del Spiritu Santo*, distant about three leagues from the shores of the Gulf, in the Province of *Guazacoalco*; the foundation of *Gonsalvo de Sandoval*, An. 1526. 7 *Aguamilco*, or *Guamilco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South-sea; much used by those which trade from *Peru* to *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern Seas. By consequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpose both by *Drake*, and *Cavendish*, in their voyages about the world. 8 *Taccoatepeque* a Port of the same Sea also, but of far less note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650. inhabited by 150000 of the Natives liable to tribute, besides women and persons under age, not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6. *JUCUTAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a *Demi-Island*, is fastened to the Continent only where it meets with *Guaxaca*; the furthest point of it opposite to the Isle of *Cuba*. Discovered first by *Fernandez de Cordova*, employed therein by *Don Christopher Morante*, An. 1517. and called *Jucutan*, not as some conceit it, from *Jutan* the son of *Heber*, who they think came out of the East, where the Scripture placeth him (*Gen. 10. 30.*) to inhabit here; but from *Jucutan*, which in the language of the Countrey signifies, *What say you?* For when the *Spaniards* at their first coming hither asked the name of the place; the *Savages* not understanding what they meant, replied *Jucutan*, that is, *What say you?* whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compass of it, taking the Province of *Tabasco* into the account, is said to be 900 miles, or 300 leagues. The Air hot, and the Countrey destitute of Rivers; not otherwise provided of water but by pits and trenches, which abundantly supply that want. Sufficiently barren, the soil not bearing Wheat, or any *European* fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of Gold or Silver, or any other Metal, to enrich the people; who must either live by trades and labour, or else beg their bread. Nothing remarkable in the Countrey, but that here seemed to be some

remnants

remnants of *Christianity*, at the *Spaniards* first coming hither: the people constantly observing a kind of *Baptism*, which they call in their own language a *second birth*, expressing by that word a *Regeneration*; not suffering any one to marry until so initiated. And possible enough it is, that this may be the Countrey upon which *Madoc* or *Owen* fell; who though he might by some good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he should make any such second voyage hither, as is said in their *Chronicles*, I by no means grant.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 *Merida*, almost in the navel of it, situate in the 20th degree of *Latitude*; the ordinary seat of the Governour, and the See of a *Bishop*: distant from the Sea on each side, about twelve leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought to have some resemblance. 2 *Valladolid*, 30 leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a most sumptuous Monastery of *Franciscan* Friars. 3 *Campeche*, (or *S. Francisco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) situate on the shore of the Gulf. A Town when first known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000 Houses, and beautified with such monuments of art and industry; as shewed that there was somewhat in this people which was not barbarous, since that no more observable, than for being suddenly surprized by *Parker*, an *English* Capt. An. 1596. who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the Town, and many Prisoners; besides a great ship full of Gold, Silver, and other the like precious Commodities, designed for the King of *Spain*'s own use. 4 *Tabasco*, situate in the best part of this Countrey, so different from all the rest, that it is made by some a distinct Province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nuestra Señora de la Victoria*, most commonly *Victoria* only; and that in memory of the first fortunate *Victory* which *Cortez* had upon this people, arming themselves against him for the sacking of *Pontonchan*. 5 *Pontonchan*, sacked by *Cortez* for denying to supply him with victual. 6 *Salamanca*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coast of this Countrey lie many Islands, viz. 1 *La Zorra*. 2 *Desconocida*. 3 *Triangulo*. 4 *Vermeja*. 5 *Los Negrillos*. 6 *Los Alacranes*, all within the Gulf. Without it, 7 *Zaratan*, 8 *Pantoia*, 9 *Lamanay*, 10 *De Mucheres*, or the Isle of Women; 11 *Coxamul*, by some called *Acusamil*. This last the biggest, as 15 leagues long, 5 broad; and the most remarkable, as being the usual way which the *Spaniards* travelled in their discoveries of this Countrey, from the Isle of *Cuba*. For here first landed *Ferdinando de Cordoba*, An. 1517. who passing over to *Jucutan* (but four leagues distant) brought back nothing but stripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grijalva*, in the same pursuit; who passing by *Jucutan* to the Province of *Guaxaca*, left his name behind him to a River. And finally here landed the most fortunate *Cortez*, who coasting about the *Demi-Island*, landed near *Tabasco*, and there first handled his good fortune with a notable *Victory*. Yet neither the Island nor *Peninsula* discovered perfectly, till the year 1527. when both subdued by *Francisco de Montejo*, to the Crown of *Spain*. The Island now called *Santa Cruz*.

OF

OF GUATIMALA

GUATIMALA is bounded on the North, by *Jucatan*, and the Gulf of *Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, (or the South-east rather) with *Castilla Aurea*; on the West, with *New Spain*. Extended 300 leagues in length, upon the Coasts of *Mare del Zur*; but measuring by a strait line, not above 240: the breadth thereof 180 leagues, where broadest; in most places narrower. So called from *Guatemala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the seat of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice.

The nature of the Soil and People (if differing in any material thing from those before) we will consider in the View of those several parts, into which this Country is divided. The principal whereof, 1 *Chiapa*, 2 *Verapaz*, 3 *Guatemala* specially so called, 4 *Honduras*, 5 *Nicaragua*, 6 *Veragua*. The rest of less note, easily reduced to these.

1. *CHIAPA* hath on the West, *New Spain*; on the East, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucatan*; and *Mare del Zur*, upon the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much less in breadth, and anciently inhabited by four Nations, all of several Languages.

The Soil not very natural for Corn or Fruits, though Pot-herbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and *Lentils*; yet Vines and other richer fruits seldom come to good. *Wood-Vines* they have, which yield a very pleasant pulp; and if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their trees, most of them greater than in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the *Cypresses*; whole Woods of *Walnuts*, but the Nut not so big as those of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield *Rosin*, some such precious gums, as in other places are not usual; and some there are whose Leaves being dried into a powder, afford a sovereign plaster for excruciate sores. And they have need too often to make use of these Plasters, the Country being full of *Snakes* and other venomous Creatures (some of the *Snakes* no less than 20 foot in length) whose poison being strong and deadly, doth require such helps. Of the People nothing singular, that I have met with; but that they are more musical and exact in painting, than the rest of the Natives.

Towns of most note in it, 1 *Ciudad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapenses*, at the foot of an hill; situate in a round Plain, encompassed about with Mountains like an *Amphitheatre*: afterwards made a Bishops See, and privileged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by such City-Magistrates as they call *Alcaldes*. 2 *Chiapa*, in a vale adjoining; before the building of the other, of most note in this Province: yet still before it in regard of its situation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and *Maize*, than all the rest of the Country. 3 *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zoqueques*, possessed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars. 4 *Copanxatzila*, the principal Town of twenty five which the *Queleues* held in this tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the same *Dominicans*. 5 *S. Bartholomews*, another Town in the Territory of the same *Queleues*: neer which is said to be a great Pit, or opening of the earth, into which if any man casts a stone, though never so little, there presently followeth a loud and fearful noise, like a clap of thunder. 6 *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvaradi*, when he was Governour of these parts; the chief Town of a little Province called *Soconusco*. 7 *Casapualca*, a small Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the fields adjoining, the waters whereof are noted to rise and fall, as the Ocean doth flow or ebbe, and at equal distances of time. Of thirteen Townships which the *Zelteles* were possessed of, I finde no one named; though painted all of them, and set forth to the eye of the Traveller, with *Cocinele*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon these *Rarities* of nature, I cannot but take notice (though somewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which turns wood to stones: of a Spring in the Cantred of *Tafixa*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry; of another in the same Cantred, which for one three years, though it rain never so little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and so successively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many lesser streams, is swallowed up neer a Village of the *Chiapenses*, called *Oiztulan*, never after seen. None of them famed for *Golden Sands*, as are those of *Guaxaca*; though it be thought there be some Veins of gold and silver, but hitherto neglected for want of *Slaves* to work in the Mines.

2 *VERAPAZ* is bounded on the West, with *Chiapa*; on the East, with *Guatemala*, and *Honduras*; on the North, with *Jucatan*; and on the South, with the Territory of *Soconusco*. In *Latine* called *Provincia Vera Pacis*, by the *Spaniards* *Verapaz*; because not conquered by the sword, but won to the obedience of the King of *Spain*, by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friars.

The

The Country 30 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high Hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitful Plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which so hinder the free passage of the winds, that the Aire hereof is very shewery: Inomuch that for nine monthes in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reason of this moisture much annoyed with *Mosquitos*, a kinde of *Gnats*, very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwife (as with Fish and other necessaries) they were well provided. No Mines of Gold or Silver discovered hitherto, though the *Spaniards* have many times in vain attempted it. Instead whereof some of their Trees drop a kinde of *Amber*, which they call *Liquid Amber*; some, *Mastick*, and some other Gums: they have also many Medicinal woods, as *Sarzaparilla*, that called *China wood*, and many others.

The people tractable and conform to the *Spanish* Government, except the *Lecandones*, and *Pachutecl*, some Remainers of the ancient *Salvages*; who keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Country, have hitherto retained both their Native freedom, and their old *Idolatry*. No Towns herein possessed by the *Spaniard*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. The principal of these St. *Augustines*, not so much memorable in it self, as for the neighbourhood of a Cave betwixt two Mountains; from which the Rain descending turns into *Alabaster*, naturally fashioned into Pillars and other *Powtratures*. Into which also many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joyned into a body, make an handfom River, able almost at the first appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they also have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*: but of so little use and Trading, that I finde no name for it, unless it should be that *Tzapapa* which *Herrera* speaks of, by whom placed in *Guatemala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* specially so called, is bounded on the West, with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa*; on the East, with *Nicaragua*; on the North, with *Honduras*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacificque Ocean*. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, and on the shores of *Mare del Zur*, not above seventeen. But reckoning in *Tzalcos*, *Chaluteca*, and *S. Savians*, three adjoining Regions, by some made Provinces distinct; the dimensions of it must be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Country Mountainous, but withall very full of Rivers; by consequence commodious, both for fishing and hunting. Fruitfull of Wheat, *Maize*, and other Provisions, but those fruits not lasting. Not so much subject unto rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with winds. Full of rich Pastures, and those Pastures of great Herds of Cattel; good store of Cotton-wooll, some *Balsamm*, and other Medicinal Liquors; as also of the best *Sulphur*, and many *Apothecaries* Drugs, which I have no skill of. The people Pusillanimous and fearfull, greater proficient in *Christianity* and Civility, than most of the *Salvages*: but so that it is thought they would relapse again to their ancient *Paganisms*, and revive again their old barbarous customs, if not held in by the byidle of fear, and the curb of power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Women good Spinners.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *Guacapa*, a River of a course but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and Navigable half the way; which falleth into *Mare del Zur*. 2 *Lempas*, watering the Burrough of St. *Savians*; which hath its rise from a great Lake, and his fall in the same Sea also. Here is also said to be a Lake near the Village of *Tstepeque*, of the waters whereof are made both *Sulphur* and *Allom*. And here is said to be a *Volcano*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being spent; yet the sad Monuments of his Furies do remain among them; another not far off which still casts out smok.

Towns of most note, 1 *Guatemala*, or St. *Jago de Guatemala*, the chief Town of the Province, situate on a little River betwixt both *Volcanos*, by one of which most terribly wasted, Anno 1541. But being re-edified, it hath since exceedingly flourished, by reason of the Bishops See, the residence of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice. 2 St. *Salvador*, 40 leagues East-wards from *Guatemala*, by the Natives called *Guzuculan*; situate on the River *Guacapa*, seven leagues from the Sea, and neighboured by a great Lake of five leagues compass. 3 *Acaxutla*, at the mouth of the same River, the Port Town to St. *Savians*. 4 St. *Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Samsonate*, the most noted Empory of this Country; the Place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain*, and those of *Peru*. 5 St. *Michaels*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonsica*, which serves unto it for an Haven. 6 *Xeres de Fontera*, the chief Town of the Cantred of *Chulucan* (by which name it was formerly known) situate on the Frontiers towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South-east of the Bay of *Fonsica*: that Bay so named in honour of *Roderick Fonsica* Bishop of *Burges*, and President of the Council for the Indies, An. 1532. by *Giles Gonzales de Avila*, who first discovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Islands, four of which inhabited, and plentifully furnished with Wood, Water, and Salt.

4. *HONDURAS* hath on the South, *Guatemala*, specially so called; on the West, the Bay, or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*: on the North, and East, the Sea called *Mare del Norte*; on the South-East, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatemala* specially so called. In length from East to West by the banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras*, imposed upon it from the depth of the Sea, about the principal Head-land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Country either Hills, or Valleys, little *Champagne* in it; fruitful of *Maize* and Wheat, and of very rich Pasture; made so by the constant overflowings of their Rivers about *Michaels*; which do not onely foyl their Grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1 *Hangara*; 2 *Chamalucon*. 3 *Ulna*, all neighboured by fertile fields, and pleasant Meadows. Some Mines of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet discovered: the people being so slothfull and given to idleness; that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Land; and therefore

Nicaragua. fore not easily intreated to toyl for others, but where necessity and strong hand doe compell them to it.

Towns of most note, 1 *Valladolid*, by the Natives called *Commyagna*, 40 leagues distant from the Sea, situate in a pleasant and fruitful Valley, on the banks of the River *Chimalucon*; and honoured with a Bishops See, fixed here about the year 1558. built near the place where once *Francisco de Monteio*, Governour of this Province had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530. by the name of *S. Maria de Commyagna*. 2 *Gracias di Dios*, 30 leagues Westward of *Valladolid*, built by *Gabriel de Rojas*, An. 1530. to be a place of defence for those who worked in the *Mines*, against the *Savages*. But finding himself unable to make it good, he defaced and left it; Re-edified again by *Gonsalvo de Alvarado*, and since well inhabited. 3 *S. Peters*, eleven leagues distant from the Port of *Cavallos*, but seated in a most healthy air; and therefore made the dwelling place of the *Farmers* of the *Kings Customs*, who have their houses in this Town, and follow their business in the other, as occasion is. 4 *Porto de Cavallos*, so called from some *horses* thrown over-board in a violent Tempest; the most noted Haven of these parts, and strong by natural situation: but so ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Captain *Christopher Newport*, and An. 1596. by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deserted on those spoils, and not since inhabited. 5 *S. Thomas de Castile*, 18 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally strong, and fortified according to the Rules of Art: to which, as to a place of more strength and safety, *Alonso Briado de Castilla* President of the Sessions of *Guatemala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6 *Traxillo*, seated on the rising of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers (one of them that which is called *Haguana*) distant from *Cavallos* 40 leagues to the East, and 60 leagues to the North of *Valladolid*: surprized and pillaged by the *English*, An. 1576. Not far hence towards the North-East lieth the Cape of *Honduras*, from whence the shore drawing inwards till it joyn with *Jucutan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay called the Gulf of *Honduras*. 7 *S. George de Olancha*, so named of the Valley *Olancha*, in which it is seated; a Valley noted heretofore for some golden Sands, which *Guaquepe*, a River of it, was then said to yield.

5. *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North, with *Honduras*; on the East, with *Mare del Nort* and the Province of *Veragua*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the West, with *Guatemala*. By *Diego Lopez de Salcedo*, who first subdued it, it was called the *New Kingdom of Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither, would not be so lost.

The Country destitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua*, called *Costa Rica*, reckoned a Province of it self. The want hereof supplied by a great Lake, or a little Sea, called the *Lake of Nicaragua*, 120 leagues in compass, ebbing and flowing like the Sea; upon the banks of which stand many pleasant Villages and single houses. A Lake well stored with Fish, but as full of *Crocodiles*: and having made its way by a mighty *Cataract*, emptieth it self into Sea about four leagues off. Not very rich in Corn, (most of which is brought them from *Peru*) but well stored with Cattel: level and plain, and shadowed with frequent Trees; one amongst others of that nature, that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth presently. Affirmed to be as full of *Parrots*, as *England* of Crows; stored with great plenty of Cotton-wool, and abundance of *Sugar-Canes*. In a word so pleasing generally to the eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mabumets Paradise*.

The people for the most part, speak the *Spanish* tongue, and willingly conform themselves to the *Spanish* garb, both of behaviour and apparel: well weaned from their old barbarous customs, retained onely by some Mountainers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good stature, and of colour indifferent white. They had before they received *Christianity*, a settled and politick form of Government. Only as *Solon* appointed no Law for a mans killing of his Father, so had this people none for the killer of a King; both of them conceiving that men were not so unnatural, as to commit such crimes. A Thief they judged not to death, but adjudged him to be a slave to that man whom he had robbed, till by his service he had made satisfaction. A course more mercifull, and not less just, than the loss of life.

Chief Towns hereof: 1 *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, situate on the Lake aforesaid, the Residence of the Governour, and the Bishops See; built in a sandy soyl, and begirt with Woods. 2 *Granada*, on the same Lake, sixteen leagues from *Leon*; beautified with a fair Church and a strong Cattle, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova*: the City seated in a liberal and wealthy soyl, well furnished with *Sugar-Canes*; for the refining of which here are many *Work-houses*, which they call *Ingenios*. 3 *Segovia*, distant from the former about 30 leagues, rich in veins of silver. 4 *Juen*, (all called according to the names of some Towns in *Spain*) situate at the end of the Lake aforesaid; from whence by a long and narrow Channel it disembogueti into the Sea, near the Port of *S. John*. 5 *Realio*, about a league distant from the Port of *Possession*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees and 40 minutes; inhabited for the most part, by *Shipwrights* and *Mariners*. 6 *Nicoia*, giving name to a little Territory, within the bounds whereof standeth 7 *Avarinas* also. 8 *Cartago*, 40 leagues from *Nicoia*, equally distant from both Seas, on each of which it hath a convenient Port: this Town the principal of that part, which is called *Costa Rica*.

6. *VERAGUA* bath on the West, *Costa Rica*; on the East, bounded with the *Distric* of *Panama*; washed on both other sides by the Sea: extended 50 leagues in length from West to East; not above 25, where narrowest, from one Sea to the other. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of greatest note in it at the first Discovery.

The soyl hereof Mountainous and exceeding barren, not fit for tillage, and less usefull in feeding Cattel; it sufficiently provided of *Maise* and Pot-herbs: but else of little necessary for the life of man; unless the people could eat *Silver*, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but especially of *Gold*, here are such never-perishing *Mines*, that the *Spaniards* think them able to supply all wants, and cure all Diseases. Once being asked what made them so greedy of that Metal; it was answered, That they were much

Veragua. much troubled with grief of heart, for which Gold was a most Sovereign Medicine. And as the Country, such the people, hardy, courageous, and warlike, and such as bear the *Spanish* yoke with great impatience: the stoutest and most untameable people, being bred most commonly in mountainous and woody Countries.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1 *Veragua* which gives name unto it. 2 *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Tetra*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purposed to have settled a *Spanish* Colony, for the better transporting of his Gold. But finding that the Cannel, on the ceasing of some rain which had fallen before, was become so shallow, that no ship could go in, or out, he gave over that purpose. 3 *La Trinidad*. 4 *La Concepcion*; all falling into *Mare del Noort*. Their chief Towns, 1 *Concepcion*, on the Mouth of that River, the seat of the Governour. 2 *La Trinidad*, on the banks of that River, near the port of *Belen*, and six leagues East-wards of *La Concepcion*. 3 *St. Foy* (oppidum *St. Fidis*) twelve leagues from *Concepcion* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt, and cast their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4 *Carlos*, not far from the shores of *Mare del Zur*. 5 *Philippina*, on the West of *Carlos*. Each seated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bays lie a Frie of Islands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongst them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco*, *Cabaio*, *St. Marie*, *St. Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the people being dragged into the Continent to work in the *Mines*.

This Country oweth its first Discovery unto divers men, according to the several Members and divisions of it. The last in order, being the first that was discovered, but the last that was conquered had the honour to be visited by *Columbus* himself. Who driving up and down these Coasts in the year 1502. hit on the entrances of the River, which afterwards he caused to be called *Belen*; where hearing that there was plenty of Gold in the *Mines* of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him as was said before, and finding nothing fit to sustain his men; he bent himself, though unwilling, to a further search. He had before touched upon *Honduras* also, but I find not that he landed on it: the settling of these Countries being destinated to another hand. Twenty years after this the most fortunate *Cortez* having fully quieted and composed the affairs of *Mexico*, resolved to make his Master Lord of the rest of *America*. And to that end sent out his Officers and Commanders into several parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he subdued *Guatemala*; *Hondura*, by *Christopher de Olid*: *Veragua*, and *Nicaragua*, by *Gonsalvo de Cordoba*. But fearing lest the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he resolved to visit them in person. Attended by a choice Band of 150 Horse, and as many Foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in October, 1524. and held on his progress as far as to *Truxillo*: where finding that *Gonsalvo de Cordoba* had so plaid his Game, as there was no necessity of going further, he made a stand, having marched above 400 leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in April 1526. he came home to *Mexico*; with whose return we conclude also our survey of the Northern Peninsula, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexicana*.

And so much for *MEXICANA*.

Uuuu

OF

OF

PERUANA

PERUANA, the other of the two great *Peninsulas*, into which the vast Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now stand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramid* reserved; more answerably thereunto than *Africa*, though that so resembled. Joyned to the other by a strait and narrow *Isthmus*, called the *Straits of Darien*, whereof we shall have opportunity to speak more anon: which looks but like a stone mis-laid in so great a building; or the first step, by which we are to climb the top, as in other *Pyramids*.

The name derived from *Pern*, the chief Province of it; the *Circumnavigation* said to be 1700 miles. Nothing else to be said in the general, but what will serve more fitly for particular places; except it be the description of some prime Mountains and principal Rivers: which being of too long a course to be reckoned unto any one particular Province, may more properly deserve place here. Of these the chief 1 *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons*, called by the first name from *Francisco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who first discovered it; by the second, from the *Amazons*, a kind of stout and warlike Women, who are said to have inhabited on the banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Pern*, the fall in the North-Sea, or *Mare del Noort*. A River of so long a course, that the said *Orellana* is reported to have sayled in it 5000 miles, the several windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of so violent a current, that it is said to keep its natural taste and colour, above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the Channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accomplished 60 leagues from one point to the other. 2 *Orenoque*, Navigable 1000 miles by ships of burden, and 2000 miles by Boats and *Pinnaces*; having received into it an hundred Rivers, openeth into the same Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Islands (some equal to the *Isle of Wight*): the most remote of those Channels 300 miles distant from one another. By some it is called *Raliana*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the discovery and description of it; or rather in discovering it so far, as to be able to describe it. 3 *Maragony*, of a longer course than any of the other, affirmed to measure at the least 6000 miles, from his first rising to his fall; and at his fall into the Sea, to be no less than 70 leagues from one side to the other. More properly to be called a Sea, than many of those great *Lakes*, or largest Bays, which usually enjoy that name. 4 *Rio de la Plata*, a River of a less course than the other, but equal unto most in the world besides; in length from its first Fountain 2000 miles, in breadth at his fall into the Sea, about 60 leagues; and of so violent a stream, that the Sea for many leagues together, altereth not the taste of it. All these, as they do end their Race in the *Atlantick*, so they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at least some *Spur*, or branch of that great body.

But before we venture further on more particulars, we are to tell you of these *Andes*, that they are the greatest and most noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Timama* a Town of *Popayan*, in the New Realm of *Granada*; and thence extended South-wards to the Straits of *Magellan*, for the space of 1000 leagues and upwards. In the breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narrowest; and of so vast an height wihal, that they are said to be higher than the *Alpes*, or the head of *Caucasus*, or any of the most noted Mountains in other parts of the World. Not easie of ascent, but in certain Paths, by reason of the thick and unpassable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof which lie towards *Pern* (for how it is on the other side, or by what people it is neighboured, is not yet discovered;) barren, and craggy too wihal, but so full of venomous Beasts, and poysonous Serpents, that they are said to have destroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Pern*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a people as rude and savage as the place, and as little hospitable. The most noted Mountain of *America*, as before was said, and indeed the greatest of the World. Of fame sufficient of themselves, not to be greatness by the addition of impossible Fignments, or improbable Fictions. Among which last I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius* a right learned man, who will have these Mountains to be that which the Scripture calleth by the name of *Sephar*, *Gen. 10.30.* and there affirmed to be the utmost Eastern limit of the sons of *Jektan*: the vanity and inconsequences of which strange conceit, we have already noted when we were in *India*.

Proceed we now unto the particular descriptions of this great *Peninsula*, comprehending those large and wealthy Countries, which are known to us by the names of 1 *Castella Aurea*. 2 The New Realm of *Granada*. 3 *Pern*. 4 *Chile*. 5 *Paraguay*. 6 *Brasil*. 7 *Guyana*. and 8 *Paria*, with their several Islands. Such other Isles as fall not properly and naturally under some of these, must be referred unto the general head of the *American Islands*, in the close of all.

OF

CASTELA del ORO.

CASTELA del ORO, Golden Castile, (*Aurea Castella*, as the *Latines*) is bounded on the East and North, with *Mare del Noort*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, and some part of *Veragua*, on the South with the New Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Castile*, with reference to *Castile* in *Spain*, under the favour and good fortune of the Kings, whereof it was first discovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for distinction sake; and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the first Discoverers found in it. It is also called *Terra Firma*, because one of the first parts of *Firm land*, which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before discovered nothing but some *Islands* only.

The soyl and people being of such several tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will consider both apart in the several Provinces, of 1 *Panama*. 2 *Darien*. 3 *Nova Andalusia*. 4 *S. Mariba*. and 5 the little Province *De la Hacha*.

1. *PANAMA*, or the district of *Panama*, is bounded on the East, with the Gulf of *Straba*, by which parted from the main land of this large *Peninsula*; on the West, with *Veragua* on the Provinces of *Guatemala* in *Mexicana*; washed on both the other sides with the Sea. So called, of *Panama*, the Town of most esteem herein, and the Juridical resort of *Castella Aurea*.

It taketh up the narrowest part of the Strait, or *Isthmus*, which joyns both *Peninsulas* together: not above 7 or 8 leagues over in the narrowest place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto Bello*, if measured by a strait line from one Town to the other; though 18 leagues according to the course of the Road betwixt them, which by reason of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of some attempts to dig a Channel, through this *Isthmus* to let the one Sea into the other; and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by land, we have spoke already.

The air hereof foggy, but exceeding hot, and consequently very unhealthy, chiefly from *May* unto *November*: the soyl either mountainous and barren, or low and stony; naturally so unfit for grain, that it yieldeth nothing but *Maize*, and that but sparingly; better for pasturage, in regard of its plenty of grass, and the goodness of it: so full of Swine at the *Spaniards* first coming hither, that they thought they never should destroy them; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity. As for the Inhabitants, whatsoever they were formerly, is not now material: most of the old stock rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room; so that the Country in all parts; except towards the Sea, is almost desolated, or forsaken.

The Country as before was said, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers: the principal whereof, 1 *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Lagartos*, or the River of Crocodiles, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noort* betwixt *Nombré de Dios*, and *Porto Boleno*. 2 *Sardinilla*. 3 *Sardina*. 4 *Rio de Colubros*, or the River of Snakes; and 5 *Rio de Comagre*, all falling into the same Sea. Then on the other side 6 *Chepo*, whose sands in former times yielded plenty of Gold: 7 *Rio de las Balsas*, on the banks whereof groweth great store of timber for the building of ships. 8 *De Congos*, emptying it self into the Bay of *S. Michael*.

Towns of most note, 1 *S. Philip* seated on a safe and strong Haven called *Porto Belo*: built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the second, but by the counsel of *John Baptista Antonelli* to be the staple of the trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama*: partly in regard of the unhealthiness of *Nombré de Dios*, where it was before; but chiefly because that Town was found to have lien too open to the invasions of the *English*. Fortified with two strong Castles (on each side of the Haven one) but for all that furnished and pillaged by the *English* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. 2 *Nombré de Dios*, conveniently seated in the Upper-sea, for a Town of trade; and for that reason made the Staple of such commodities as were trucked betwixt *Pern*, and *Spain*; which brought for *Pern*; or brought from *Pern*, and from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there shipped for *Pern*; or brought from *Pern*, and landed at *Panama*, were by land brought unto this place, and here shipped for *Spain*. It took this name from *Didaco Niqueza* a *Spanish* Adventurer, who having been distressed by tempests was driven in here; and bid his men go on shore *en nombre de Dios*, in the name of God. In reference hereunto by the *English*, borrowing a *Greek* word, it is called *Theonimia*. Of great trade once, on the occasion before mentioned: but in the year 1584. the trade was removed unto *Porto Belo*, by the counsel of *Antonelli* before named; and some years after that, the Inhabitants also. To hasten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake*, served exceeding fitly. 3 *Acla*, on the Coast of the same Sea also, but on the South-Side, East of *Nombré de Dios*. 4 *Nata*, or *S. Jago de Nata*, situate on the lower Sea on the borders of *Veragua*. East of *Nombré de Dios*. 5 *Panama*, the chief City of *Castella Aurea*, the Residence of about 30 leagues on the West of *Panama*. 6 *Panama*, the chief City of *Castella Aurea*, the Residence of the Governour, of the Courts of Justice, honoured with a Bishops See, a Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lima*; and beautified with three fair Monasteries; and a Colledge of *Jesuits*. Seated in the 9 degree, or North: and so near the Sea, that the Waves come close unto the Wall. A Town through which

OF

LUUU2

Darien.

which the Wealth of Spain, and Peru, passeth every year: yet not containing above 350 houses; the number of the Souldiers greater than that of the Citizens. 6 S. *Crux la Real*, a league from *Panama*; inhabited totally by Negroes brought out of *Guinea*.

This Province was the first of those on the *Firm land*, which were discovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Island lying on the shore near *Porto Belo*, which he caused to be called *Los Bastimentos*; because being cast hereon by chance, he found good store of *Maize* and other provisions, called *Bastimentos* by the Spaniard. But the chief Islands of this Province, are those which *Columbus* never saw, called the *Islands of Pearls*; situate in the Southern Sea, opposite to *Panama*, from which distant 17 leagues or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called *Tararequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the rest of them rather *Rocks* than Islands. Much famed not only for the abundance, but the excellency of the *Pearls* there found; fairer than those of *Margarita*, and *Cubagua*, so much commended. Once very profitable to the Spaniards, till by their cruelty and covetousness they unpeopled the Islands, and destroyed the *Pearls*, inhabited now only by a few Negroes, and some *Slaves* of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Masters Cattel, in the fields and pastures.

2 *DARIEN* hath on the North, the *Distrikt* of *Panama*; on the South *New Granada*; on the East, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name, and the *Gulf* of *Uraba*; and on the West, the main Southern Ocean.

The Country of a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil: so happy in the production of *Melons* and such other fruits, that within twenty days after they are sown, they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth *Grapes*, and other fruits; either natural hereunto, or brought hither from *Europe*. A tree here is called *Hovo*, not elsewhere known; the shade of which is conceived to be so wholesome, that the Spaniards seek them out to sleep under them. Out of the Blossoms of it they distil a perfumed Water; of the Bark a Bath or *Lavatory*, good for the opening of the pores, and redress of weariness; and from the Roots they draw a Liquor which they use to drink of. Of Beasts and Fowl great plenty, whether wild or tame; and some of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1 *Darien*, whence it hath the name; A clear water, and much drank of, but of a slow course and a narrow channel; able to bear no bigger Vessels than those of one piece of wood used among the *Salvages*; we may call them *Troughs*. But with this slow course it falleth at last into the *Gulf* of *Uraba*, a large Arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is said to be eight leagues over. 2 *Rio de las Redas*, and 3 *De la Trepadera*, both emptying themselves into the *Gulf* of *Uraba*: 4 *Corobaci*, on the same side of the Country also: 5 *Beru*, a River of the South-Sea, not much observable, but that some have laboured to derive the Etymologie of *Peru*, from thence.

Towns of most note, though few of any, 1 *Darien*, on the Bank of the *Gulf* of *Uraba*; oftentimes so unhealthy by the Mists which do thence arise, that the Inhabitants use to send their sick people to the fresh Air of *Corobaci*, to revive their spirits. By the Spaniards it was called *S. Maria Antigua*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Eucifus* a Spanish Adventurer. An. 1510. and grew so suddenly into wealth and reputation, that within four years it was made an *Episcopal* See. But being built too near the Banks of the *Darien*, in a moorish and unhealthy place, both the *Episcopal* See, and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the Spaniards have been planted here; but either forsaken by themselves, or destroyed by the *Salvages*: so that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the *Gulf* of *Uraba*, the Spaniards have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but some few scattered houses in all that tract, for the use of the Natives; who formerly made their Nests like Birds, on the tops of trees. 2 *Bliza*, 3 *Los Angadesor*, two small Villages on the other side of the Country, possessed by the *Salvages*. Besides these, and some sorry sheds here and there dispersed, all the rest a Desert. So that not being able to maintain the reputation of a distinct Province, the government hereof hath of late been devolved on the *Presiēt* of *Panama*.

3 *NOVA ANDALUSIA* hath on the West, the River *Darien*, and the *Gulf* of *Uraba*; on the East, the Province of *S. Martha*; on the North, the main Ocean; and on the South, the new Realm of *Granada*. So called with reference to *Andalusia* a Province of Spain. Called also by some Writers *Carthagena*, from *Carthagena* now the chief City of it.

It is in length from the *Gulf* of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 80 Leagues, and neer upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of woods, but in those woods great store of *Rosin*, *Gums*, and some kinds of *Balsams*. Here is also said to be a Tree, which whosoever toucheth, is in danger of poisoning. The Soil, by reason of the abundance of rain which falls upon it, very moist and spewie; inso-much that few of our *European* fruits have prospered in it. Few veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*; where the Spaniards at their first coming, found great store of treasure. But it was taken out of the Graves and Monuments of the dead, not found in Mines, or digged for as in other places: such being the reputation of that Territory in former times, that the Nations far and neer did carry the bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantity of Gold, Jewels, and other Riches. The Natives very fierce and stout, while they were a People: But giving the Spaniards many overthrowes before fully conquered, they have been so confumed and wasted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1 *Rio de los Redos*, and 2 *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3 *Zena*, which passing through the Province above-mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean,

Ocean, over against the Island *Fuerte*. 4 *S. Martha*, of long course, and much estimation. Fortified in the most Southern parts of the New Realm of *Granada*; near the *Equinoctial*; it passeth through the whole length of that Kingdom; and at the last mingleth its streams with those of the River *Magdalen*, not far from *Mopox*. By the Natives it is called *Caucu*. And as for Mountains, those of most note are a continual Ridge of Hills, by the Spaniards called *Cordillera*, by the Natives *Able*; craggy and difficult of ascent; in breadth affirmed to be 20 leagues; but the length uncertain, the furthest ends of them towards the South not discovered hitherto.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Carthagena*, situate in a sandy Plain, fifteen degrees distant from the *Equator*: well built, and for the bigness of it, of great wealth and store; consisting of 500 houses, or thereabouts; but those near and hand some beautified with a Cathedral Church, three Monasteries, and one of the best Havens of all *America*. Well fortified on both sides, since the taking of it by Sir Francis Drake, who in the year 1585, took it by assault, and carried thence besides innumerable fairs, 240 brass pieces of Ordnance. 2 *Tulu*, by the Spaniards called *S. Jago*, twelve miles from *Carthagena*, memorable for the most sovereign Balsam of all these parts, called the *Balsam of Tolu*, which is inferior to all to the *Balsam of Egypt*. 3 *Mopox*, or *Santa Cruz de Mopox*, near the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalen*. 4 *Baraneta de Malambo*, on the banks of the River *Magdalen*, six leagues from the Ocean, where such Commodities as are brought by Sea for the New Realm of *Granada*, are stored up, shipped and carried by Lighters, or small Boats up the River: 5 *Sebastian de Bana*, situate by Alfonso de Ojeda, An. 1508. in the first attempt upon this Country, situate on a rising ground near the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a league and a half from the Sea. 6 *Villa de Maria*, 30 leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4. *S. MARTHA* hath on the West, *Nova Andalusia*; on the East, *Rio de la Hacha*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, the New Realm of *Granada*: about 70 leagues in length, and as much in breadth. So called from *S. Martha* the chief City of it.

The Country mountainous and barren, not fit for pasturage, or tillage; productive notwithstanding of Limons, Oranges, Pomgranates, and such other fruits as are brought hither out of Spain. The air on the Sea-Coasts very hot and stinking, and in the midland parts as cold, because of the neighbourhood of some Mountains always covered with snow. The principal of those Mountains, a long Ridge of Hills, by the Spaniards called *Las Sierras Nevadas*, or the *Snowy Mountains*; discernable by the Marriners 30 leagues at Sea; by whom called the Mountains of *Tairona*, from a Vally of that name beneath them; the Inhabitants whereof by the advantage of those Hills, have hitherto preserved their liberty against the Spaniards. The rest, though subject to the Spaniards, have their several Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant and ill-natured people; made worse perhaps than indeed they are, by reason of their hate to the Spaniards, whose government they live under with great unwillingness.

Chief Rivers of this Province, 1 *Rio Grande de la Magdalena*; which hath its fountain in the Hills of the New Realm of *Granada*, not far from the *Equator*; but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Carthagena* and *St. Martha*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees: where dividing it self, it maketh an Island of five leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; discernable for ten leagues space from the rest of the Main, by the taste and colour of the water. 2 *Rio de Cazaze*, which falleth into the *Magdalen*, as doth also 3 *Casar*, by the Natives called *Pompatan*: which having its fountain near the City of Kings in the Vale of *Upar*, passeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4 *Ayuma*, another River of this Tract: accompanied with whom he runneth Westward for the space of 70 leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalen*, as before is said, near the Forrest of *Alpuente*. 5 *Bubia*, 6 *Pirax*, 7 *Don Diego*, 8 *Palamin*, 9 *Gayza*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of most observation, 1 *St. Martha*, situate on the shores of the Ocean, in the Latitude of ten degrees and 30 minutes; neighboured by a safe and convenient Haven, defended from the winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an *Episcopal* See. Small, and ill built when it was at the best; nor well recovered of the spoil it suffered by Sir Francis Drake, An. 1595. and by Sir Anthony Sherley the next year after. 2 *Tenariffe*, on the Banks of the *Magdalen*, 40 leagues from *St. Martha*. 3 *Tanalameque*, by the Spaniards called *Villa de las Palmas*, twenty leagues to the South of *Tenariffe*. 4 *Ciudad de los Reyes*, or the City of the Kings, situate in the Vale of *Upar*, on the banks of a deep and violent River, called *Guatapori*; which not far off falleth into the *Cesar*: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Tobrona*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of Spain. 5 *Ramada*, by the Spaniards called *New Salamanca*, in the same Valley of *Upar*; as liberally furnished with veins of Brasse, as it is with Stones. 6 *Ocana*, on the Western reach of the River *Cesar*, equally distant from its confluence with *Ayuma*, and its fall into *Magdalen*.

5. *RIO DE LA HACHA* is the name of a little Province lying on the North-East of *S. Martha*: environed on two sides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the West) with a large and spacious Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo de Venezuela*: the extremities hereof North-west; called *Cabo la Vela*: on the North-east, *Cabo di Cogni bocca*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a small Town, consisting of no more than an hundred houses, but big enough to give name to so small a Province. Built on a little Hill about a mile from the Sea; the Haven inconvenient and exposed to the Northern winds, but the soil about very rich, fruitful of all such Plants as are brought from Spain; well stored with veins of Gold, excellent Salt-wiches, and some Gems of great worth and verue. Distant eight leagues from *New Salamanca*, and 18 leagues from the *Cape la Vela*: surprized and sacked by Sir Francis Drake, Anno 1595. 2 *Rancheria*,
uuuu 3

De la Ha-
cha.

ria six leagues on the East of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the most part by such as get their living by *Pearl-fishing*. 3 *Tapia*, five leagues from *La Hacha*, and almost as much from the Sea: the Fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca*, were terribly wasted by the *English*, in the year aforesaid; because the Governour of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000 *Ducats* not to burn that Town, would not stand to his bargain.

These Countries discovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was said; were afterwards brought under the power of Spain, by two several men, employed in the subduing of their several parts; *An* 1508. To *Didaco Niqueza* was allotted the government & conquest of those parts hereof, which lie on the West of the Bay of the *Araba*, containing the Praefectures of *Darien* and *Panama*, by the name of *Castella del Oro*. And to *Alfonso Ojeda*, all that lay on the East of that Gulf, by the name of *New Andalusia*. But these two finished not the work, though they first began it: *Enciso* discovering further on the River of *Darien*, than *Niqueza* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panama* and the best of their trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Praefectures of *S. Martha* and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and subdued by the *Spaniards*) being added to it. One of their last Kings which held out against the *Spaniards*, was called *Abeica*, who had his Palace on the top of a Tree (as most of his subjects had their houses;) from which when *Francisco de Vasquez* a *Spanish* Captain could by no other *Rhetorick* win him to descend, he laid his Axe to the Root, and began to fell it: which seen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his life and Palace at the will of his Enemies.

O F



O F

NOVA GRANADA.



NOVA GRANADA, or the New Realm of *Granada*, is bounded on the North, with *Castella Aurea*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Venezuela*. The Countries lying on the South, are not yet discovered, shut up with vast Hills, and impassable Mountains, except only in those parts which lie near the Sea, where the way lieth open to *Pernu*. Thus called by *Gonsalvo Ximenez*, the first Discoverer; who being a Native of *Granada* in Spain, gave this name unto it.

It is in length 130 leagues, and as much in breadth; reckoning *Popayan* for a part of it, though by some made a distinct government. So that we may divide the whole into these two parts, *Granada* specially so called, lying on the West, and 2 *Popayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA*, specially so called, hath an Air for the most part, well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and shortness of days. The Country full of Woods, but of great fertility, well stored with Corn and Pasturage, many Herds of Cattel; some veins of Gold and other Metals, and in that part hereof, which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of *Emeralds*: and amongst their Woods, that called *Guajacum*, Medicinable for the *French* disease, grows in great abundance. The people tall and strong of body, not very industrious, the greatest part of their time being spent in songs and dances. The Women of a white and more clear complexion than any of their neighbours, and more handsomely habited, apparelled in black, or party-coloured Mantles, girt about their middles; their hair tied up, and covered most an end with *Chaplets* intermixt with flowers, and artificially composed.

Rivers of note find not any, but those of *S. Martha*, and *S. Magdalena*, described before: nor any distinction of it into several Provinces, but that the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Pancher*, *Colyma*, and *Musi*, by which the *Salvages* were distinguished, when first known to the *Spaniards*; with reference to which the principal of their Towns are by some described:

Towns then of greatest note, 1 *S. Foy de Bagota*, but commonly *S. Foy*, the Metropolis of this new Realm, the See of an Archbishop, and the seat of the Governour. Built by *Gonsalvo Ximenez de Quesada*, at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the banks of which they used to sacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, besides those of the Natives; and situate in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude. 2 *S. Michael* twelve leagues on the North of *S. Foy*, a well-traded Market. 3 *Toycama*, in the Territory of the *Pancher*, a barbarous and man-eating people, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards*; and Masters of the richest part of all the Country. The Town about 15 leagues from *S. Foy*, toward the North-East; and seated on the banks of *Pati*, a little River, which not far off is swallowed up in the body of *Magdalen*. 4 *Tudela*, is the Country of the *Musi*, and *Colyma*, two warlike Nations; situate on the banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colony of the *Spaniards* at their first coming hither; but deserted by them not long after, for fear of the *Salvages*, though the want of Provisions was pretended. 5 *Trinidad*, on the same River, but somewhat lower, and more remote from the *Salvages*, by whom notwithstanding much annoyed; the fields thereof full of veins of *Crystal*, *Emeralds*, *Adamants*, and *Chalcedonians*. 6 *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the same Territory of the *Musi* and *Colyma*, *An* 1572. 7 *Tunia* so called according to the name of the Tribe, or Province, in which it is situate; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might serve for a Retreat and Fortrefs against the *Salvages*; now a well-traded Empery, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impress 280 Horse for present service. 8 *Pampelma*, 60 leagues from *S. Foy*, toward the North-East, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattel. 9 *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiana*, the furthest Town of all this Province on the North-East towards *Venezuela*: As to *S. John de Los Llanos*, or *S. John* upon the Plains is in the South-East, 50 leagues from *S. Foy*, and seated in a corner full of veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA* lieth on the West of *New Granada*, strictly and specially so called; from which parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Country; on the North bounded with *Nova Andalusia*, or *Carthagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the West. Extended in length from North to South 130 leagues at the least; and from the River to the Sea, betwixt 30 and 40.

The Country over-cloyed with rain, breeds but little Maize, less Wheat, and almost no Cattel; though in some places richer than it is in others. The people anciently *Man-eaters*; and as rude as any, now more industrious and affable than the other *Americans*; especially about *Popayan*, where the foyl is also better tempered than in other places. The Rivers of most note, beside that of *S. Martha*, which we have spoken of already; and some lesser streams which fall into it; are 1 *Rio de S. Juan*, 2 *Rio de Cedros*, 3 *Rio de S. Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greatest note, 1 *Popayan*, called by the name of the King hereof, when first known to the *Spaniards*; situate on a nameless but pleasant River, in the midst of a Plain, of great wealth,

Popayan.

wealth, and healthy air, in two Degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern Latitude: the ordinary residence of the Governour, and See of a Bishop. The building fair unto the eye, but slight, excepting the Cathedral, and a Monastery of the Friars called *Demeride*, which are strong and lasting. 2 *Antiochia*, (or *Santa Fides de Antiochia*) on the borders of *Nova Andalusia*, 100 leagues distant from Popayan. Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Martha*, from which twelve leagues distant. 3 *Caramanta* on the *Martha* it self. 4 *Patia* in a pleasant Valley, on the banks of a small River, but of excellent water. 5 *S. Anne* in the *Centred* of *Anserman*, by which name it is sometimes called: Built on a little Hill betwixt two sweet Rivers, and compassed round about with a Grove of most pleasant fruits. 6 *S. Jago de Arma*, the chief Town of the *Centred* of *Amphistiane* in a Territory very rich in Gold, but otherwise unprovided of all manner of necessaries: Fifty leagues to the North-East of Popayan. 7 *Cathage*, in the Province of *Quimbala*, 22 leagues from *S. Jago de Arma*, seated in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, seven leagues from the River of *S. Martha*. 8 *Cali*, a league from that River, but on the banks of another, in the latitude of four degrees: neighboured by a vast and mighty Mountain, at whose foot it standeth: where built by *Sebastian de Betalcazar*, the first discoverer of this Country. 9 *Bonaventure*, on a Bay so called in the Southern Ocean: a small Town, but of great use for the conveyance of the Commodities of *New Spain* unto Popayan, and other Towns of this Province. 10 *Timana*, 80 leagues from Popayan towards the East, at the foot of that vast ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far South-wards as the Straits of *Magellan*. 11 *S. Juan de Pasfo*, situate in a pleasant Valley but one degree from the *Aequator*. 12 *Sebastian de la Plata*, so called of its Silver Mines in the South-East confines of the Province. 13 *Almagra*, on the sides of a plain, but barren Mountain. 14 *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Ghien*; in a barren soyl, were not Gold, a supplement of all wants, which is there found in some abundance.

To this Province belong also some Islands in the Southern Ocean, that is to say, 1 The Isle of *Palme*, South of the Cape of *Corrientes*, so called from the abundance of *Palms* which are growing in it. 2 *Gorgona*, opposite to the mouth, or outlet of *Rio de S. Juan*, an Island of three leagues in compass; the Hills so high, the Vallies so extremely low, the Sun so little seen amongst them, and the Woods so dark, that some have likened it to Hell. Not much observable, but that it did afford a lurking place unto *Francis Pizarro*, in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulsed from landing on that Coast. 3 *Del Gallo*, a small Island, nor a league in circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Country thus divided into two *Presidencies*, but both subordinate to the *Juridical Resort* in the City of *S. Foy de Bagota*; is indebted for its first Discovery to two several persons. *Granada* specially so called, was first discovered by *Gonsalvo Ximenez de Quesada*, employed therein by *Ferdinand de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canary Islands*, *An* 1536, who passing up the River of *Magdalen* without molestation (more than the difficulties of the ways through Fens and Forrests) as far as the *Centred* of *Bagota*, was there encountered by that King, whom he easily vanquished: and wasting all his Territories, carried with him thence great quantity of Gold, Emeralds, and other Treasure. The residue of those *Petit Princes* which then governed in their several Tribes, either submitted to him without opposition, or else were vanquished at the first rising. Having discovered and subdued every several Province, and miserably murdered *Sangipa* the last King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made use in subduing the *Panches*, he caused it to be called *The new Realm of Granada*, for the reason formerly laid down: and summing up the spoils he had gotten in this easie war, he found them to amount to 18000 Emeralds, 191294 *Pezos* of the finest Gold, 35000 of a courser, and inferior alloy. In his return he heard the news of *Sebastian de Betalcazar* marching on the other side, of the River of *S. Martha*; who having at the same time discovered and subdued the Province of *Popayana*, was beating out his way towards the North-Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Francisco Pizarro* the Conquerour of *Peru*, made Governor of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having secured all the Country to the very Sea; resolved to open a way homewards through those Regions, which lay betwixt his own Province, and *Mare del Noort*: And this he did resolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Country, full of Gold, was in that Tract possessed by *Popayan* and *Columba*, two *Petit Princes*, but yet the greatest in those parts. Encountred in his march by the Roycelets of *Patia* and *Pasfo*, he soon made them weary, and retire themselves into the Woods and impassable Mountains; and passing slowly on, came at last to *Popayan*. Where though the *Salvages* entertained him with some frequent skirmishes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to possess themselves of their best Towns, and to build others in such places as they thought convenient. But this was after the first Conquest, according to the coming over of succeeding Colonies: The first Conquest being finished, *An* 1536. when the *New Realm of Granada* was subdued by *Ximenez*.

OF

OF PERU.

PERU is bounded on the East, with that vast ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the North with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*; on the South with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the first of note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Country, occasioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 leagues, but the breadth not equal. In some places 100 leagues broad, in others 60. in the rest but 40. more or less according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of so different a nature from one another, as if they were far distant both in site and soyl. These parts the *Plains*, the *Hill-Countries*, and the *Andes*: the *Plains* extended on the Sea-shore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Vallies; the *Sierra*, or *Hill-Countries*, composed of both. Each part stretched out from North to South, the whole length of the Country; the *Plains* from the Sea-shore to the *Hill-Countries*; for the most part ten leagues broad, in some places more; the *Hill-Countries* 20 leagues in breadth where narrowest, and as much the *Andes*. In the *Plains* it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the *Hill-Countries* rain from September to April, after that fair weather. In the *Hill-Countries* the Summer beginneth in April, and endeth in September; in the *Plains* their Summer beginneth in October, and endeth in April. So that a man may travel from Summer to Winter in one day; be frozen in the morning at his setting forth, and scorched with heat before he come to his journeys end. Some other differences there are, as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Forrests, whereas the *Hill-Countries* are bare and naked; the *Plains* where there are store of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea besides, sandy and dry; and in most places destitute both of Fruits and Corn; in some parts of the *Hill-Countries* where there are no Rivers, and rain but seldom, plenty of Roots, *Maize*, Fruits, and all other necessaries. In the *Plains* there never bloweth any but the Southerly winde, though it bring no rain with it; and in the *Hills*, winds from every coast, and of every nature, some bringing rain, some Snow, some claps of Thunders, and others fair weather at the heels of them. Inasmuch that it is observed, that such of the Inhabitants of the *Plains* as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find such pains in the head and stomach, as fresh-water Souldiers when first Sea-sick.

Not to pursue these differences any further in the several parts, we will look upon the whole in gross: which we shall find but meanly furnished for the bigness, with those commodities which so large a Country might afford: inasmuch as many of the people live most on Roots, here being little Wheat, and not such quantities of *Maize* (the ordinary bred-grain of the *Americans*) as to serve their multitudes. Nor find I that the Cattel of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increase. Instead of which they have in their Woods and Pastures infinite numbers of beasts somewhat like wilde Goats, (which they call *Vicaguer*) and great store of a kind of Sheep, by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for fleece and burden; as big as a small breed of Horses, but in taste as pleasing as our *Mutton*, and no less nourishing. A Creature so well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himself over-loaded, no blows, or violence shall make him move a foot forwards, till his load be lessened; and of so cheap a dyer, that he is content with very little, and sometimes passeth three whole dayes without any water. The Camels of these parts, are not much unlike them.

This as it is by some accounted for a Creature proper to this Country, only (though in that mistaken) so may it pass amongst the *Rarities* hereof: many of which it hath both in Beasts and Plants, and in inanimable bodies also. Amongst their Plants they have a *fig-Tree*, the North-part whereof looking towards the Mountains, bringeth forth its Fruits in the Summer only; the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitful only in Winter. Some as deservedly do count the *Coca* for a wonder: the leaves whereof being dried, and formed into *Lozenges*, (or little Pellets) are exceeding useful in a journey. For melting in the mouth, they satisfy both hunger and thirst, and preserve a man in strength, and his spirits in vigour: and generally are esteemed of such foreign use, that it is thought that 100000 Baskets full of the Leaves of this Tree are sold yearly at the Mines of *Potosi* only, each of which at the Markers of *Cusco* would yield 12 d. or 18 d. a piece. Another Plant they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a sick person, will instantly discover whether he be like to live or die. For if on the pressing it in his hand he look merry and cheerful, it is an assured sign of his Recovery; as on the other side, if dead and troubled. Amongst their Beasts, besides those spoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanaco*: of which it is observed that the Males stand Centinel on the Mountains, while the Females are feeding in the Vallies; and if they see any man coming towards them, they let out their throats, to give their Females notice of some danger near; whom when they come up to them, they put in the front of the Retreat, interposing their own bodies betwixt them and their enemy. Not want they Rarities of nature even in things inanimate: here being said to be a round Lake near the Mines of *Potosi*, whose water is so hot, though the Country be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themselves, are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the Banks: there being in the midst thereof a boiling of above twenty foot square. A Lake which never doth decrease, though they have drawn a great stream from it to serve their *Metal-Mills*.

More profitable, though less rare, those *Metals*, which those Mills are made for; and not less profitable, one

one of those Vulgar Plants, I mean Tobacco, growing more abundantly here than in other Countries of America: for which cause, and the resemblance which it hath to *Henbane*, in form and quality, it is called the *Henbane* of Peru, by *Gerrard* and some others of our Modern Herbalists. A Plant, which though in some respect being moderately taken, it may be serviceable for *Physick*: yet besides the consumption of the purse, and impairing of our inward parts, the immoderate, vain, and phantastical abuse of this stinking weed, corrupteth the natural sweetness of the breath, stupifieth the brain; and indeed is so prejudicial to the general esteem of our Country-men, that one faith of them, *Anglorum corpora, qui huic plantæ tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degenerasse videntur*. The two chief Vertues ascribed unto it (pardon me I beseech you this short digression) are, that it voideth *Rheume*, and is found to be a sovereign Antidote against *Lues Venerea*, that loathsome Disease of the French Pox. For this last, like enough it is, that so unclean a Disease may be helped with such an unsavoury Medicine. But for the second it may perhaps consist more in opinion, than truth or reality; the *Rheume*, which it is said to void, being no more than what it breedeth at the present. We may as well conclude, that *Builed-Ale* is good for the breaking of winde (which effect we find commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the same winde which it self conveyed into the Stomach. But Tobacco is by few now taken as Medicinal; it is of late times growne a Good-fellow, and fallen from a Physician to a Complement. An humour which had never spread so far amongst us, if the same means of prevention had been used by the Christian Magistrates, as was by *Morat Bassa* among the *Turks*: who commanded a Pipe to be thrust through the Nose of a *Turk* whom he found taking Tobacco, and so to be carried in derision all about *Constantinople*. It is observed that the taking of Tobacco was first brought into England, by the Mariners of Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1585. And that it hapned not unfitly in the way of an Antidote to that immoderate use of drinking, which our Low-Country Souldiers had brought out of the Netherlands much about that time, An. 1582. Before which time, the English of all Northern People were deemed to be most free from that *Swinish Vice*, wherein it is to be feared that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the Dutch. Certain it is, that it is taken so excessively by both these Nations, that I may justly say with a learned Fleming, *Herba ejus, non dicam usui, sed abusu, non modo in Anglia, sed in Belgio: & alibi, insanum in modum jam adolevit*.

But the greatest riches of this Country is most out of sight, hid in the Bowels of the earth, but found in those never-decaying Mines of Gold and Silver; more eminently abounding in this one Province than in all America. For instance whereof we may take the Silver Mines of *Potosi*, discovered in the year 1545, the fifth of which, payable into the Kings Exchequer, amounted in forty years to 11 millions of *Reesers*, every *Pezco* being valued at six shillings and six pence; and yet a third part of the whole was discharged of that payment. By this one we may guess somewhat of the rest, as by the proportion of one member, the dimensions of the whole body may be probably aimed at; unless the riches of these Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by some knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold than Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arias Montanus*, and some other very learned men, that this Peru is that land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon's* Navy went for Gold; induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chron. lib. 2. cap. 3. ver. 6. That the Gold was the Gold of Parvaim*. A fancy not of so sandy a foundation, as many others of that kinde, if Peru had been the old name of this Country, and not newly given it by the Spaniards. By means whereof not only Spain, but all Europe also is better furnished with gold and silver, than ever formerly. For in the first Ages of the World our Ancestors the Britains (I must digress here once again) had no other money than Iron-rings, and Brass rings, which they used for instruments of Exchange; and in the Roman Provinces, we read that the most usual materials of their coyn, was both times Brass, and sometimes Leather. *Corum forma publica percussim*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which last sort we find that *Frederick* the Emperour made use at the siege of *Millain*; and the English, in that me of the Barons Wars. And why not so? considering that no longer since then in the year 1574, the Spaniards being then reduced to some extremities, made money of *Past board*. But this hapned only in Cases of necessity, the two Metals of gold and silver having for many hundred years (though not in such abundance as in later times) been the chief Instruments of Exchange and Barter betwixt man and man, and questionless will so continue to the end of the World. I know Sir *Thomas More* in the second Book of his *Utopia*, preferreth Iron before Gold, because more necessary for all uses; *Mo sine quo non magis quam sine igne atque aqua vivere Mortales queant*: and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring gold and silver into contempt, telling us how the *Utopians* use to empty those Metals, in making Chamber-pots, and vessels of more unclean necessities; eating and drinking for the most part in glass or earth. He telleth us also how they make chains and fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious slaves, and Malefactors; how they punish infamous persons by putting Gold Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their ears, and chains of Gold about their necks: how they adorn their little children with precious Jewels, which gayer, when they come to Age, and see them worn by none but such little children still, they use to cast away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys leave off without constraint; their Babies, Cobnuts, and other *Crepundia*. He further telleth us how the Ambassadors of the *Antemollis* (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongst them richly and gloriously attired, were took for slaves, by reason of their Golden Chains, and the meanest of their Followers thought to be the Ambassadors: how the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing Jewels, as if they had been children still; and how the People laugh at their chains of Gold, as being too weak to shackle such sturdy Fellows. Now though it pleased that wise State to have any Gold or Silver at all amongst them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any esteem which themselves had of it; but therewith to provide themselves of Foreign aids, and pay their Armies, when the necessities of their affairs, or other reason of State did require the same. How this device would sort with the humours of those People, whom *Lucian* antiently did Fable, and some of later times more really do fancy to have their dwelling in the Moon; I am not able

able to say, as having hitherto had no commerce, nor correspondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though possibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and find it to fort well enough with their condition. Certain I am, this sublimary World of ours will never brook it. And so I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of Peru: the extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver, which those and the rest of the New World have furnished the Old World withal, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men, to be the cause of the dearth of all commodities at the present times, compared unto the cheapness of the times foregoing. For where much is, there greater prices will be given, than in other places. And yet there want not some that add also other causes, of the high prizes of our days: viz. Monopolies, Combinations of Merchants and Craftsmen; transportation of Grain, pleasure of great Personages, the excess of private men, and the like: but these last I rather take to be consequences, the first being indeed the principal. For (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savil*, hath it in the end of his notes on *Tacitus*) the excessive abundance of *res viles* *viles* *viles*, things which consist merely on the contentment of men, draweth necessarily *res viles* *viles*, those things which nature requireth, to an higher rate in the Market. *Capta ab Augusto Alexandra (saith Orosius) Roma in tantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quam antehac, rerum venalium pretia statuerentur*. As for that question, whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which supplyeth it self with money by Traffick and the works of Art; or that which is supplied by Mines growing, as the gift of nature; I find it by this tale in part resolved. Two Merchants departing from Spain to get gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buyeth Moors to dig and delve with; the other fraughtheth his vessel with sheep: and being coming to the Indies, the one finding Mines, set his slaves to work, and the other hapning in grassie ground, put his sheep to grazing. The Slaves grown cold and hungry, call for food and cloathing; which the Sheep-master by the increase of his stock had in great abundance; so that what the one got in gold with toil, charges and hazard both of life and health; he gladly gave unto the other in exchange or Bartery, for the continual supply of Victuals, Clothes, and other necessities for himself and his servants. In the end the Mines being exhausted, and all the money thence ailing exchanged with the Shepherd for such necessities as his wants required: home comes the Shepherd in great triumph, with abundance of wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the English and the Hollanders by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick did in conclusion weary the late King of Spain, King Philip the second, and out-vied him (as it were) in wealth and treasure; notwithstanding his many Mines of Gold and Silver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexico*, *Guinea*, some in Spain and Italy, and these of *Peruana* which now we handle, and which have given occasion unto this Discourse, or Digression rather.

It is now time to take a view of the People also, affirmed to be (for the most part) of great simplicity; yet some of them (those especially which lie near the Equator) to be great dissemblers, and never to discover their conceptions freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in Wars, well skilled in managing such weapons as they had been used to, and fearless of death; the rather prompted to this last by an old opinion held amongst them, that in the other world they shall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great person, who was attended on in his life; they use to kill and bury with him one or more of his servants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living, much like the Jews; but not in habit: conform therein to the other Salvages, but that those cover their upper parts with some decent garment, and leave the other Members bare. But this is only near the Equator; both Sexes elsewhere wearing Mantles to their very Heels. Habited in one fashion over all the Country, except the dressing of their heads, wherein scarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his fashion to himself. The Women less esteemed here than in other places, treated as Slaves, and sometimes cruelly beaten upon slight occasions: the men (as St. Paul saith of the ancient Gentiles) leaving the natural use of the woman, and burning in their lusts towards one another. For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the Spaniards, they received that recompence which was meet.

Rivers of most note 1. *S. Jago*, on the borders towards *Popayana*; a River of a violent course, and so great a depth, that it is 180 fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2. *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over against the Isle of *Puna*, on the further side of the Equator; an Island of twelve Leagues in compass, and exceeding fruitful. 3. *Guagaguil*, of a longer course than any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur* on the South of *Tombez*; over against the Isle of *Lobos*. No Island after this of note upon all this Coast. If any come in our way which runneth towards the East, we shall meet with them in the view of the several Provinces; and so we shall of the Hills or Mountains which are most considerable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to lose themselves; in compass 80 Leagues, and usually Navigable with ships and barks. The waters of it not so salt as those of the Sea, but so thick that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many habitations, as good as any in Peru. By a fair water course or River it passeth into a less Lake, which they call *Aulaga*; and thence most probably findeth a way into the Sea, or else is swallowed in the Bowels of that thirsty earth; but the first more likely.

It is divided commonly into three Juridical Resorts, viz. of 1. *Quito*, 2. *Lima*, and 3. *Charcos*; each having under it many several and subordinate Provinces, too many and of too small note to be here considered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greatest reckoning, 1. *Quito*, 2. *Los Quijos*, 3. *Lima*, 4. *Cusco*, 5. *Charcos*, and 6. *Cello*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the midlands; to which the Islands of it shall be joyned in the close of all.

1. *QUITO* is bounded on the North with *Popayan*; on the West with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the East, with that of *Los Quijos*. So named from *Quito* the chief Town and Province of the first division,

Quito.

The Soil as fertile and as fit for the fruits of Europe, as any other in Peru: well stored with Cattel, especially the *Pacos* or *Peruvian* sheep; and plentifully furnished both with Fish and Powl. In many parts great store of Nitre, of which they make most approved good Gunpowder; and in some Rivers, especially that of S. Barbara, many veins of Gold. The people generally industrious, especially in making of Cloth of Cotton, equal almost to silks for fineness; of constitution strong and healthy, but given to lying, drinking and such other vices: with which they are so much in love, that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the Christian Faith; nor willingly reclaimed from their ancient Barbarisms. Extremely punished with the Pox, an hereditary disease amongst them; the very Girls and untouched Virgins infected with it, that neither Tobacco, Guajacomo, nor Sarsaparilla, all which this Country doth afford in a great abundance, is able to preserve them from it.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 Carangues, a large and sumptuous Palace of the ancient Kings, so named because situate in the Territory of the Carangues, a barbarous, bloody, and man-eating people; subdued by Guayanacapa, one of the mightiest of the Kings of Peru; from whom revolting, and withal killing many of his Ministers and Garrison-Souldiers, they were upon a second conquest brought to the banks of a great Lake, into which 20000 of them being killed, were thrown. The Lake from thenceforth called Yaguarcocha, or the Lake of blood. 2 Otavallu, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferior to the other; yet giving name unto the Cantred in which it standeth. 3 Quito, the chief of this Reour, and once the Regal seat of its proper Kings (till made subject by Guayanacapa before mentioned) the ruins of whose Palace are now remaining. By the Spaniards it is called S. Francisco, built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the Equinoctial; well fortified, and as well furnished with Ammunition: inhabited by about 500 Spaniards besides the Natives. The streets whereof strait and broad; the buildings decent: the principal of which, the Cathedral Church, the Courts of Justice, and two Convents of Dominican, and Franciscan Friars. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a Flaming Mountain, or Volcano; which in the year 1560 cast out such abundance of cinders, that if a rain had not happened beyond expectation, had made great spoil upon the place. 4 Tacunga, fifteen Leagues from Quito; and 5 Rhibamba in the Territory of the Purusis, 40 Leagues from that; each of them honoured with another of those ancient Palaces. 6 Thomebamba neighboured by another of the Kings Palaces, but more magnificent than the former; situate in the Country of the Canares: amongst whom anciently the Women tilled the Land, and did all without doors: whilst the Men staid at home and spun, and attended housewifery. 7 Cuenca 64 Leagues from Quito, on another Road, situate in a Country full of Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, and veins of Sulphur. 8 Loxa, sixteen Leagues Southwards of Cuenca, situate in the fifth degree of Southern Latitude, and in a sweet and pleasant Valley called Guixibamba, between two fine Riverets. The Citizens well furnished with Horse and Armour, but not otherwise wealthy. 9 Zamora, twenty Leagues on the East of Loxa; and 10 Jaen, 35 from that: both situate in the Province of Quachimayo, and both so called in reference to two Cities of those names in Spain: Then on the Sea-coasts, there are, 11 Portus Votus (Puerto Viejo as the Spaniards call it) not far from the Sea-side, but in so ill an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the first Towns of this Country possessed by the Spaniards, who digged up hereabouts the bones of a monstrous Giant; whose Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12 Callantu the Port Town to Porto Viejo, from whence the Trade is driven betwixt Panama and Peru; the Town itself situate in a rich vein of Emeralds. 13 Guayaquil, or S. Jago de Guayaquil, called also Gulata; seated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, near the influx of the River Guayaquil; a noted and much frequented Empory. 14 Castro, a Colony of Spaniards planted, An. 1568, in that part of this Country, which they call Provincia de los Esmeraldas, bordering on Popayan. 15 S. Michael, by the old Natives called Piura, the first Colony which the Spaniards planted in Peru, but otherwise of no estimation. 16 Payta, a small Town, but neighboured by the safest and most frequented Haven of all this Country; as guarded from the wind by the Cape of S. Helens on the North, and Punta Plurina on the South; two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt An. 1587. by Captain Cavendish. Who at the same time also pillaged the Isle of Puna, the most noted Island of this Trae, situate in the Bay of Tombez, as was said before. Fruitful of all things necessary to the life of man; Parats for pleasure, Sarsaparilla for his health. The people in preceeding times so stout and warlike, that they maintained a long War with those of Tombez, till in the end composed by the mediation of the King of Peru, to whom the King hereof (for a King it had) became an Homager, as since their embracing of the Gospel, to the Kings of Spain.

2. LOS QUIXOS, lieth on the East of Quito, and the West of El Dorado, (one of the Cantreds of Guayana, so called from its abundance of Gold:) little different in the nature of the soil and people from the Province of Quito; but that this is somewhat the more barren, and less stored with those rich metals which the Spaniards come for. The People have also a distinct tongue of their own, though they both understand and speak the Peruvian language.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 Baeza, built in the year 1559. (which was within two years of the first discovery of this Region) by Giles Ramirez de Avila; 18 leagues from Quito towards the East: now the seat of the Governour. 2 Archidona, 20 leagues on the South-East of Baeza. 3 Avila, on the North of Archidona; so called with reference to Ramirez de Avila before-mentioned, or to a Town of that name in Spain. 4 Sevilla del Oro, a Colony of Spaniards, as the others are.

On the East of this Province lieth the Cantred of Camelans, inhabited by a blockish and ignorant People, and destitute of all things necessary for the comforts of life. Most mercilessly tormented, and cast to Dogs to be devoured, by Pizarro, because they could not fiew him the readiest way to some richer Country than their own; this being the most barren Region of that part of Peru, which they call La Sierra, or the Hill-Countries. More Eastwards yet in that part, which they call the Andes, lie the Cantreds of the Bracomori, commonly called Juan de Salinas, by the name of the first Discoverer of it: A Country not inferior

Lima.

inferior unto many for the quantity of Gold, superior to any for the pureness of it. Chief Towns of which, 1 Valladolid, 2 Loiola, by the Natives called Cumbinama. 3 S. Jago de las Montañas (or S. James of the Mountains) all Spanish Colonies; and all of the foundation of John de Salinas a Loiola, once the Pro-Prefect of the Province, by whom first thorowly subdued to the Crown of Spain.

3. LIMA, called also LOS REYES, is bounded on the North, with Quito; on the South, with Charcas; on the West, with Mare del Zur; on the East, with Colloa and the Province of Cusco. So named from Lima or Los Reyes, the chief City of it. Extended from the sixth to the fifteenth Degree of Southern Latitude: or measuring it from the Promontory del Aguja North, to Arequipa on the South, it reacheth to 250 leagues. The Soil of the same nature with that of Quito, but more distributed into Vallies, and better peopled.

Places of most observation, 1 Miraflores in the valley of Zuma, 110 leagues on the North of Lima, and about five leagues distant from the Sea; on which it hath an Haven belonging to it, called Chencepen. The Town well seated, and inhabited by a wealthy people, made such by the abundance of Sugar-canes in the neighbouring Valley. 2 Truxillo, in the rich and flourishing Valley of Chimo, on the banks of a small, but pleasant River, and about two leagues from the Sea; where it hath a large, but unsafe Haven, which they call El Azzeife de Truxillo. The Town it self situate in the 7th Degree and 30 minutes of Southern Latitude: well built and rich, one of the principal of Peru; inhabited by 1500 Spaniards, besides the Natives, and beautified with four Convents of several Orders. 3 La Parilla, in the valley of the Santa, in which it standeth, and by which it is furnished with a safe and convenient Road for shipping; 20 leagues Southwards of Truxillo, and neighboured by rich Mines of silver, not long since discovered. 4 Arnedo, seated amongst Vineyards in the Valley of Chanca, ten leagues North of Lima. 5 Lima, by the Spaniards called Ciudad de los Reyes, or the City of Kings, situate in the Valley of Lima, the most fruitful part of all Peru, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees and an half. Built with much art, for all the chief streets answer to the Market-place; scarce any private house which hath not water conveyed into it from the River; environed round about with sweet fields, and most pleafant gardens. The founder of it Francisco Pizarro, who laid the first stone on Twelf-day (which the Spaniards call the Feast of Kings) whence it had the name, An. 1553. A Town of greater wealth than bigness, the Riches of Peru passing yearly thorow it; well housed, whether we respect the private, or publick Edifices: the Cathedral Church, made after the model of that of Sevil; the Convents of Religious Orders, the Courts of Justice, and the Palaces of the Archbishop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly buildings; the Cathedral Church so well endowed, that the Revenues of the Archbishop do amount yearly to 30000 Ducats, besides what belongeth to the Canons and other Ministers. 6 Collao, the Haven-town to Lima, from which two leagues distant, a Town of 600 Families, for the most part Sea-men; every house having some Cellar in it for the stowage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, &c. for the use of Mariners; besides those, publick Ware-houses for the several Commodities which pass from Lima hither, or from hence to Lima. Unfortified till the year 1579. when sacked and spoyled of infinite Treasures by Sir Francis Drake; since that time strengthened by two Bulwarks, and a wall of Earth, with 30 pieces of Brass Ordnance planted on the Works. 7 Pachacama in the Valley so called, but four Leagues on the South of Lima: memorable for a Temple, in which Pizarro found above 900000 Ducats of Gold and Silver, not reckoning in those infinite treasures which the Souldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8 Guarco, a Colony of 300 Spaniards, sixteen leagues on the South of Pachacama; environed with the best fields for Wheat in all Peru. 9 Valverde, in a Valley of the same name, so called from the perpetual greenness of it; best furnished with Vines, and those affording the best Wines of all this Country. A large Town consisting of 500 Spaniards, besides women and children; and other inhabitants of the Country: well traded, considering its distance from the Sea (Puerto Qomado the Haven to it, being six leagues off) and beautified with a fair Church, an Hospital, three Frieries, and the handsomest Women of these parts. Distant from Lima 35 leagues. 10 Castro Verreyna, in the Valley of Chocoleocha, 60 leagues from Lima, enriched with Mines of the purest Silver, digged out of a dry and barren hill, always covered with Snow; and standing in so sharp an air, that the Spanish women will not be delivered in it, but are carried further off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that vein of Tobacco, which our Good-fellows celebrate by the name of the right Peruvian. 11 Arequipa in the Valley of Quilca, 120 leagues from Lima, a pleasing and delightful Town; which situate at the foot of a flaming mountain, (from which in the year 1600. it received much harm) enjoyeth a fresh and temperate Air, and a Soil always flourishing. The silver of Plata and Potosi passeth thorow this Town, and is shipped for Panama, at an Haven belonging to it; situate on the mouth of the River Chile (upon which Arequipa standeth) but distant from the Town about 14 leagues. 12 Caxamalca, more within the land, but more towards the North, heretofore beautified with a Royal Palace of the Kings of Peru; memorable for the imprisonment and murder of Atabalipa, or Atahualpa, the last King of this Country, vanquished not far off by Francisco Pizarro. 13 Cachapoyas, in the Cantred so called, the best inhabited of any one Cantred of those parts, supposed to contain in it 30000 of the Natural Inhabitants, which pay duties to the King of Spain; and so esteemed for beautiful women, that from hence the Kings were anciently furnished with their Concubines. 14 Leon de Guanaco, (the addition given it from the Province in which it standeth) a Colony of Spaniards, rich, sweet, and very pleasantly seated: beautified heretofore with a most magnificent Palace of the Kings; as now with some Religious Houses, a Colledge of Jesuites, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midland Towns there are, but of no great note, and therefore purposely passed over.

4. CUSCO comprehendeth, as the chief, all those several Provinces of the Hill-Countries, and the Andes, which lie Southwards of the Province or Cantred of Guanaco. Blest with a sweet and temperate

X x x

Ai.

Los Charcas.

belief amongst those *Barbarians*; and that belief drew many to take part with the *Incas*; by that aid victorious. This is supposed to have happened 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an end to this flourishing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Country, which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoining Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Incas*, as the *Egyptians* *Pharaohs*, the *Tartars* *Cham*; the word *Inca* signifying an *Emperour*, as *Capa Inca* (by which they sometimes called them) the only *Emperours*. Much revered by their Subjects, and so faithfully served, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of *Treason*. Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to *indeed* their Subjects, and keep them out of leisure to foment new factions. The way of *indemnity*, by the fair and satisfactory distribution of the spoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands, or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: allotting the first unto the service of the Gods; the second for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A distribution far more equal than that of *Lycorgus*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cause of Wars, they kept the people busy in the works of *Magnificence*; as building *Palaces* in every one of the *Conquered* Provinces, which served not only as *Forts* to assure the Conquest, but were employed as *Stores-houses* to lay up Provisions, distributed amongst the people in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of greater trouble, so of chiefest use, was the crossways they made over all the Countrey, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome*, and *Egypt*. For they were forced to raise the ground in many places to the height of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flattest Plains; to cut through some Rocks, and underprop others that were ruinous; to make even such ways as were uneasy, and support the *Precipices*; and in the Plains to vanquish so many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a sandy Countrey must needs carry with it. Kept to these tasks, the people had no leisure to think of practices; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they saw it tended to the *publick benefit*. And for the *Caciques* (so they call the *Nobility*) the *Inca* did not only command them to reside in *Cusco*, to be assured of their persons, but caused them to lend their Children to be brought up there; that they might serve as *Hofpages* for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered also that all such as repaired to *Cusco* the Imperial City, should be attired according to his own Countrey fashion; so to prevent those *Leagues* and *Associations*, which otherwise without any note, or observation, might be made amongst them. Many such *Politic* Institutions were by them devised, which had little of the *Barbarous* in them; and clearly shewed that there were other Nations which had *Eyes* in their Heads, besides those of *China*. What else concerns the Story of them, offereth it self in the following Catalogue of

The KINGS of PERU.

1. *Mango-Capac*, descended of the chief of the first seven Families, the first who laid the foundation of this puissant Monarchy; subdued the *Cannaries*, and built the City of *Cusco*.
2. *Sinchi-Rocha*, eldest Son of *Mango*; subdued a great part of *Collao*, as far as *Chancay*.
3. *Longue-Tupangui*, the Son of *Sinchi*, conquered *Chiquito*, *Ayavire*, the *Canus*, and the Inhabitants about *Tiucaca*; the first advancer of the service of *Viracocha*, from whom he did pretend to have many *Vissis*.
4. *Mayta-Capac*, the Son of *Tupangui*, subdued all the rest of *Collao*, the Provinces of *Chuquiana*, and a great part of the *Charcos*.
5. *Capac Tupangui*, or *Tupangui II.* the Son of *Mayta*, enlarged his Kingdom Westward unto *Mare del Sur*.
6. *Rocha II.* or *Tucha Rocha*, eldest Son of *Tupangui* the second, enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the conquest of the great Province of *Antabuyallam*, and many others.
7. *Jahuar-Huacac*, Son of *Rocha* the second, added to his Estates (by the valour of his brother *Mayta*) all the Southern parts from *Arequipa* to *Tacaman*. Deposed by the practice of his Son.
8. *Viracocha*, the Son of *Huacac*, having settled and enlarged his Empire; raised many great and stately Works, and amongst others many *Aqueducts* of great use but charge. For fear of him, *Huancaballa*, King of the *Chuncus*, with many thousands of his people, forsook their Countrey.
9. *Pachacutec-Inca*, Son of *Viracocha*, improved his Kingdom by the conquest of many Provinces lying towards the *Andes*, and South-sea; with that of *Caxamalca* Northwards.
10. *Tupangui III.* or *Tucha Tupanchi*, Son of *Pachacutec*, subdued the *Conches*, and *Moxes*, with some part of *Chile*.
11. *Tupangui IV.* or *Tapac Tucha Tupanchi*, Son of *Tupangui* the third, extended his Dominions as far as *Quito*.
12. *Huayna-Capac*, or *Ghuaynacapa*, Son of *Tupangui* the fourth, the most mighty Monarch of *Peru*, conquered the whole Province of *Quito*; and is supposed to be the founder of those two great Ruins spoken of before.
13. *Huascar*, or *Ghuascar Inca*, the eldest Son of *Ghuaynacapa*, after a reign of five years deposed and slain by his brother.
14. *Atahualpa*, or *Atabaliba*, the third Son of *Ghuaynacapa*, by the daughter and Heir of the King of *Quito*: into which Kingdom he succeeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of *Quito*, he came upon him with such power, that he overcame him, and so gained the Kingdom. Vanquished afterwards by *Pizarro* at the battel of *Caxamalca*, he was taken Prisoner. And though he gave in ransom for his life and liberty, an house piled up on all sides with Gold and Silver, valued (as some say) at ten Millions of Crowns; yet they perfidiously slew him.

15. *Mango*.

1533.

15. *Mango-Capac II.* the second Son of *Ghuaynacapa*, substituted by *Pizarro* in his brothers Throne; after many vicissitudes of Fortune, was at last slain in the City of *Cusco*; and so the Kingdom of the *Incas* began and ended in a Prince of the same name; as it hapned formerly to some other Estates.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who subdued this most potent and flourishing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the *Spanish* Empire; and we shall finde that he was born at *Tunigligo*, a Village of *Ycaur*; and by the poor Whore his Mother, laid in the Church-porch, and so left to Gods providence: by whose direction (there being none found that would give him the breast) he was nourished for certain dayes, by sucking a Sow. At last one *Gonsalves*, a Souldier, acknowledged him for his Son, put him to Nurse, and when he was somewhat grown, set him to keep his Swine; some of which being strayed, the boy durst not for fear return home, but betook himself to his heels, ran unto *Sevill*, and there shipped himself for *America*; where he attended *Alonso de Oieda* in the discovery of the Countreys beyond the Gulf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his voyage to the South Sea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the conquest of *Panama*. Grown rich by these Adventures, he associated himself with *Diego de Almagro*, and *Fernando Luques* a rich Priest: who betwixt them raised 220 Souldiers, and in the year 1525, went to seek their Fortunes on those Southern Seas, which *Balboa* had before discovered. After divers repulses at his landing, and some hardship which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took some of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the wealth of the Countrey; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commission for the conquest of it: excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furnished he landeth in *Peru* again, at such time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two brethren for the Kingdom: and taking part with the faction of *Gonsalves*, marched against *Atabaliba*; whom he met with in the Plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a parley, than to fight a Battel. *Pizarro* taking this advantage, picked a quarrel with him, and suddenly charged upon him with his Horse and Ordnance, slaying his Guard without resistance; and coming near the Kings person (who was then carried on mens shoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him prisoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 80000 *Castellans*; and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 *Markes* (every *Mark* weighing eight ounces) of his household Plate; and in the spoil of *Caxamalca*, almost infinite riches. This, with the Kings ransom, came to so great a summe, that besides the fifth part which *Pizarro* sent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his brethren kept unto themselves; every Footman had 7200 *Ducats*, and every Horseman twice as much, for their part of the spoil; besides what they had gotten in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miserable King, their prisoner, hath been shewn already. Upon which Act, though they put many fair preferences, yet God declared that he was not pleased with their proceedings; few of the greatest undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro* in reward of so great a service, was made the first Viceroy of *Peru*, and created *Marquess* of *Anatilia*: yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief companion, who had raised a strong faction in that State; he was after slain at *Lima*, by some of that faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befell all the rest; his brother *John* slain by the *Peruvians*; *Martin* in *Lima* with himself; *Ferdinando* secretly made away in prison; and finally *Gonsalves* the fourth brother (with the Son of *Almagro*) severally executed for their Treasons and Insurrections, which they had acted in this Countrey against their King. So little joy doth wealth ill gotten bring along with it, to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whose strange both fortunes and misfortunes in the course of his life, are to be paralleld onely with the like of *Sinan*, a great *Bassa* in the Court of *Selimus* the first; who being born of base Parentage, as he (being a Child) was sleeping in the shade, had his genitals bitten off by a Sow. The *Turkish* Officers which usually provided young boyes for the service of the *Grand Seigneur*, being in *Epyrus* (for that was *Sinan*'s Countrey) and hearing of this so extraordinary an Eunuch, took him among others along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the great, *Bajazet* the second, and his Son *Selimus*, he so exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief *Bassa* of the Court; and so well deserved it, that he was accounted *Selimus* right hand, and was indeed the man, to whose valour especially, the *Turks* owe their Kingdom of *Egypt*; in which Kingdom then not fully settled, he was also slain.

But to return unto *Peru*, no question but the *Forces* and *Revenues* of it were exceeding great. For though we finde no particular multiers which they made of their men; or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field; yet by their great successes, and many victories, we may conclude them to be masters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of conduct. Nor can we otherwise conjecture at the greatness of their yearly *Income*, but by the greatness of their Treasure; so infinite and almost incredible, that all the Vessels of the Kings House, his Table and Kitchen, were of Gold and Silver; *Statues* of Giants in his Wardrobe, together with the resemblances in proportion and bigness, of all the Beasts, Birds, Trees, Plants, and Fishes, which were found in that Kingdom, of the purest Gold; *Ropes*, *Budgers*, *Troughs*, *Chests*, all of Gold, or Silver; *Billets* of Gold piled up together, as if they had been *Billets* of Wood, cut out for the fire; three houses full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, besides infinite other Treasures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew so wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an horse, 60 Crowns for a small Vessel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shooes: Consuming all upon their lusts, and sacrificing their Gods of Gold to their God the Belly.

Los Charcas.

belief amongst those *Barbarians*; and that belief drew many to take part with the *Inga*; by that aid victorious. This is supposed to have happened 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an end to this flourishing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Country, which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoining Provinces, under their Domination. Their Kings were called *Inga*, as the *Egyptians* *Pharaohs*, the *Tartars* *Cham*; the word *Inga* signifying an *Emperour*, as *Capa Inga* (by which they sometimes called them) the *only Emperours*. Much revered by their Subjects, and so faithfully served, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of *Treason*. Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to *indeed* their Subjects, and keep them out of leisure to foment new factions. The way of *indeedment*, by the fair and satisfactory distribution of the spoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands, or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: allotting the first unto the service of the Gods; the second for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A distribution far more equal than that of *Lycorgus*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cause of Wars, they kept the people busied in the works of *Magnificence*; as building *Palaces* in every one of the *Conquered* Provinces, which served not only as *Forts* to assure the Conquest, but were employed as *Store-houses* to lay up Provisions, distributed amongst the people in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of greater trouble, so of chiefest use, was the cross-ways they made over all the Country, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome*, and *Egypt*. For they were forced to raise the ground in many places to the height of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flattest Plains; to cut through some Rocks, and underprop others that were ruinous; to make even such ways as were uneasy, and support the *Precipices*; and in the Plains to vanquish so many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a sandy Country must needs carry with it. Kept to these tasks, the people had no leisure to think of practices; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they saw it tended to the publick benefit. And for the *Caciques* (so they call the *Nobility*) the *Inga* did not only command them to reside in *Cusco*, to be assured of their persons, but caused them to lead their Children to be brought up there; that they might serve as *Hofstages* for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered also that all such as repaired to *Cusco* the Imperial City, should be attired according to his own Country fashion; so to prevent those *Leagues* and *Associations*, which otherwise without any note, or observation, might be made amongst them. Many such *Political* Institutions were by them devised, which had little of the *Barbarous* in them; and clearly shewed that there were other Nations which had *Eyes* in their Heads, besides those of *China*. What else concerns the Story of them, offereth it self in the following Catalogue of

The KINGS of P E R U.

1. *Mango-Capac*, descended of the chief of the first seven-Families, the first who laid the foundation of this puissant Monarchy; subdued the *Cannares*, and built the City of *Cusco*.
2. *Sinchi-Rocha*, eldest Son of *Mango*; subdued a great part of *Collao*, as far as *Chanacara*.
3. *Longue-Tupanguis*, the Son of *Sinchi*, conquered *Chiquito*, *Ayaviri*, the *Canas*, and the Inhabitants about *Tiisaca*; the first advancer of the service of *Viracocha*, from whom he did pretend to have many *Visits*.
4. *Mayta-Capac*, the Son of *Tupanguis*, subdued all the rest of *Collao*, the Provinces of *Chiquiapa*, and a great part of the *Charcas*.
5. *Capac Tupanguis*, or *Tupanguis II.* the Son of *Mayta*, enlarged his Kingdom Westward unto *Mare del Sur*.
6. *Rocha II.* or *Tucha Rocha*, eldest Son of *Tupanguis* the second, enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the conquest of the great Province of *Antabuyallam*, and many others.
7. *Tahuar-Huacac*, Son of *Rocha* the second, added to his Estates (by the valour of his brother *Mayta*) all the Southern parts from *Arequipa* to *Tacaman*. Deposed by the practice of his Son.
8. *Viracocha*, the Son of *Huacac*, having settled and enlarged his Empire; raised many great and stately Works, and amongst others many *Aqueducts* of great use but charge. For fear of him, *Hancoballia*, King of the *Chincas*, with many thousands of his people, forsook their Country.
9. *Pachacutec-Inca*, Son of *Viracocha*, improved his Kingdom by the conquest of many Provinces lying towards the *Andes*, and South-sea; with that of *Caxamalca* Northwards.
10. *Tupanguis III.* or *Tucha Tupanchi*, Son of *Pachacutec*, subdued the *Conches*, and *Moxes*, with some part of *Chile*.
11. *Tupanguis IV.* or *Tapac Inca Tupanchi*, Son of *Tupanguis* the third, extended his Dominions as far as *Quito*.
12. *Huayna-Capac*, or *Ghuaynacapac*, Son of *Tupanguis* the fourth, the most mighty Monarch of *Peru*, conquered the whole Province of *Quito*; and is supposed to be the founder of those two great Roads spoken of before.
13. *Huascar*, or *Ghuascar Inca*, the eldest Son of *Ghuaynacapac*, after a reign of five years deposed and slain by his brother.
14. *Ashualpa*, or *Ambaliba*, the third Son of *Ghuaynacapac*, by the daughter and Heir of the King of *Quito*: into which Kingdom he succeeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his brother to do Homage for the Kingdom of *Quito*, he came upon him with such power, that he overcame him, and so gained the Kingdom. Vanquished afterwards by *Pizarro* at the battel of *Caxamalca*, he was taken Prisoner. And though he gave in ransom for his life and liberty, an house piled up on all sides with Gold and Silver, valued (as some say) at ten Millions of Crowns; yet they perfidiously slew him.

15. *Mango*.

1533.

15. *Mango-Capac II.* the second Son of *Ghuaynacapac*, substituted by *Pizarro* in his brothers Throne; after many vicissitudes of Fortune, was at last slain in the City of *Cusco*; and so the Kingdom of the *Inga*s began and ended in a Prince of the same name; as it hapned formerly to some other Estates.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who subdued this most potent and flourishing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the *Spanish* Empire; and we shall finde that he was born at *Trulliglo*, a Village of *Navar*; and by the poor Whore his Mother, laid in the Church-porch, and so left to Gods providence: by whose direction (there being none found that would give him the breast) he was nourished for certain dayes, by sucking a Sow. At last one *Gonsalles*, a Souldier, acknowledged him for his Son, put him to Nurse, and when he was somewhat grown, set him to keep his Swine; some of which being strayed, the boy durst not for fear return home, but betook himself to his heels, ran unto *Sevill*, and there shipped himself for *America*; where he attended *Alonso de Oieda* in the discovery of the Countreys beyond the Gulf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his voyage to the South Sea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the conquest of *Panama*. Grown rich by these Adventures, he associated himself with *Diego de Almagro*, and *Fernando Loques* a rich Priest: who betwixt them raised 220 Souldiers, and in the year 1525, went to seek their Fortunes on those Southern Seas, which *Balboa* had before discovered. After divers repulses at his landing, and some hardship which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took some of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the wealth of the Countrey; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commission for the conquest of it: excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furnished he landeth in *Peru* again, at such time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two brethren for the Kingdom: and taking part with the faction of *Guscar*, marched against *Ambaliba*; whom he met with in the Plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a parley, than to fight a Battel. *Pizarro* taking this advantage, picked a quarrel with him, and suddenly charged upon him with his Horse and Ordnance, slaying his Guard without resistance; and coming near the Kings person (who was then carried on mens shoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him prisoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 80000 *Castellans*; and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 *Marks* (every *Mark* weighing eight ounces) of his household Plate; and in the spoyle of *Caxamalca*, almost infinite riches. This, with the Kings ransom, came to so great a summe, that besides the fifth part which *Pizarro* sent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his brethren kept unto themselves; every Footman had 7200 *Ducats*, and every Horseman twice as much, for their part of the spoyle; besides what they had gotten in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miserable King, their prisoner, hath been shewn already. Upon which Act, though they put many fair pretences, yet God declared that he was not pleased with their proceedings; few of the greatest undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro* in reward of so great a service, was made the first Viceroy of *Peru*, and created *Marquess of Anathla*: yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief companion, who had raised a strong faction in that State; he was after slain at *Lima*, by some of that faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befell all the rest; his brother *John* slain by the *Peruvians*; *Martin* in *Lima* with himself; *Ferdinando* secretly made away in prison; and finally *Gonsalles* the fourth brother (with the Son of *Almagro*) severally executed for their Treasons and Insurrections, which they had acted in this Countrey against their King. So little joy doth wealth ill gotten bring along with it, to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whose strange both fortunes and misfortunes in the course of his life, are to be paralleld onely with the like of *Sinan*, a great *Bassa* in the Court of *Selimus* the first; who being born of base Parentage, as he (being a Child) was sleeping in the shade, had his genitals bitten off by a Sow. The *Turkish* Officers which usually provided young boyes for the service of the *Grand Signeur*, being in *Epyrus* (for that was *Sinan*s Countrey) and hearing of this so extraordinary an Eunuch, took him among others along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the great, *Bajazet* the second, and his Son *Selimus*, he so exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief *Bassa* of the Court; and so well deserved it, that he was accounted *Selimus* right hand, and was indeed the man, to whose valour especially, the *Turks* owe their Kingdom of *Egypt*; in which Kingdom then not fully settled, he was also slain.

But to return unto *Peru*, no question but the Forces and Revenues of it were exceeding great. For though we finde no particular matters which they made of their men; or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field; yet by their great successes, and many victories, we may conclude them to be masters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of conduct. Nor can we otherwise conjecture at the greatness of their yearly Income, but by the greatness of their Treasure; so infinite and almost incredible, that all the Vessels of the Kings House, his Table and Kitchen, were of Gold and Silver; Statues of Giants in his Wardrobe, together with the resemblances in proportion and bigness, of all the Beasts, Birds, Trees, Plants, and Fishes, which were found in that Kingdom, of the purest Gold; Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, Chests, all of Gold, or Silver; Billers of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Billers of Wood, cut out for the fire; three houses full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, besides infinite other Treasures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew so wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an horse, 60 Crowns for a small Vessel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shooes: Consuming all upon their lusts, and sacrificing their Gods of Gold to their God the Belly.

OF

CHILE.



CHILE is bounded on the North, with the Desert of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in length, interposed betwixt it and *Pern*: on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Straits of *Magellan*; and on the East as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main *Atlantick*; the Countreys lying on the East, betwixt it and *Paraguay*, not well discovered.

This Countrey lyeth wholly beyond the Tropick of *Capricorn*, by consequence in the temperate Zone; extended in length from the borders of *Pern*, to the mouth of the Straits, 500 Leagues; but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile*, from the word *Chil* (which in more tongues than ours doth signifie as much as Cold) from the extrem coldness of the Aire and Clime; so vehement here in our Summer *Solstice*, that many times both the Horses and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardened like a piece of *Marble*.

The Soil hereof in the midland parts, Mountainous and unfruitful; towards the Sea-side, level, fertile, and watered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: productive of *Maize*, Wheat, and most excellent Pasturage; plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, store of Cattel, and Wine enough for the use of the people; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* prospering here exceedingly, as do also all the Fruits and Plants, which are sent from thence into this Countrey. The people very tall and warlike, some of them of a *Gigantine* stature, affirmed (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high; yet well conditioned with this greatness, where not much provoked. Their garments of the skins of Beasts, their Arms Bow and Arrows: white of complexion, but as *hirsute* and shaggy haired as the rest of the *Salvages*.

Rivers of note there are not any but what will fall within the view of its several Provinces: Divided commonly into 1 *Chile* specially so called, and 2 *Magellanica*.

1. **CHILE** specially so called, is bounded on the North, with the Desert of *Alacama*; on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the East, with some unknown Countreys, lying betwixt it and *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*; not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reason of the name, together with the nature of the Soil and People, we have seen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontory near the influx of it, in the Northern borders of this Province. 2 *Rio de Coquimbo*, 3 *La Ligua*, 4 *Topocalma*, 5 *Cacapo*, 6 *Canten*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*; and besides these, a nameless, but more famous River, which in the day time runneth with a violent current, and in the night hath no water at all. The reason of it is, because this River having no constant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the Snow falling from the Mountains; which in the heat of the day melted into water, is precipitately carryed into the Sea; but congealed in the coldness of the night, yields no water at all, whereby the Channel becometh empty.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Gopiapo*, giving name to a fertile Valley, in the most Northern tract hereof; and neighboured by a small, but commodious Haven. 2 *Serena*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea-side, not far from the influx of *Rio de Coquimbo*, on whose banks it is seated; where built by *Baldivia* the Conquerour and first Governour of this Province, *An. 1544*. The Territory round about it rich in Mines of Gold: the Town it self of 200 houses, but so well peopled, that at the landing of some of the *English* under Captain *Drake*, they presently sent out 300 Horse and 200 Foot to compell them back unto their Ships, which they did accordingly. 3 *S. Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 houses in it) because the Residence of the Governour, and the Courts of Justice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and some Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Priests; situate in the 34 Degree of Southern Latitude, on the banks of the River *Topocalma*, at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val paraíso*, the best and most noted of this Countrey; out of which the *English* under *Drake* took a Spanish Ship, and therein 25000 *Pezoes* of the purest Gold, besides other Commodities. 4 *Concepcion*, 70 Leagues on the South of *S. Jago*, situate on the shores of a large and capacious Bay (by the Natives called *Penco*) by which and the mountains on all sides so strongly fenced, that the Governour, when distressed by the *Salvages* (as sometimes they are) retireth hither for safety. Well fortified in such places as are accessible, and garrisoned with 500 Souldiers, besides the Townsmen. Opposite hereunto lyeth the Isle of *S. Mary*, so near the shore, that it seems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea; fruitful and very well provided of Swine and Poultry, but the people so in fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Concepcion*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5 *Auracón* (so I think they call it) a strong Fortrefs in the Countrey of the *Auracans*, the most potent Nation of these parts; who weary of the Spanish yoke, revolted against *Baldivia*, overcame him in a set fight, and at last killed him: this piece being thereupon forsaken, and of no more use. 6 *De los Confines*, built by *Baldivia* in the borders of the Countrey of those *Auracans*, to serve for a defence to the Mines of *Ongol* near adjoining:

joining: distant from the Sea-shores about 18 Leagues, enlarged by *Garcias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Villa Nueva de los Infantes*. 7 *Imperiale*, in the 38 Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude; situate on the banks of the River *Canten*, an Episcopal See, and the best Fortrefs of the *Spaniards* in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colony of *Spaniards* in the year 1551. and by *Baldivia* called *Al Imperiale*, because they found an Eagle with two heads made in Wood, on the doors of their houses; a monument perhaps of some *Germans*, who had here been shipwrackt. A Town of so great wealth and power, before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a war betwixt them and the *Auracans*, spoken of before, they are said to have brought into the field 300000 men. 8 *Villa Rica*, another Colony of *Spaniards*, 16 leagues on the South-East of *Imperiale*, and 25 leagues from the shores of *Mare del Zur*. 9 *Baldivia*, the most noted Town of all these parts, situate in the Valley of *Gnadalanguen*, in the Latitude of 40 degrees, or thereabouts: adorned with a safe and capacious Haven, and neighboured by Mines of Gold of such infinite riches; that *Baldivia* (by whom built for defence of those Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each single workman, 25000 Crowns a man; and sometimes more. Sacked by the *Salvages*, *An. 1598* since repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10 *Osnoro*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chiloe*, (or *Ancud*, as the *Salvages* call it) situate in a barren soil, but well stored with Gold, and thought to be more populous than *Baldivia* it self. 11 *Castro*, the most Southern Town of all this Province, in the Latitude of 44. built in a large and fruitfull Island of the Bay of *Ancud*, said to be 50 leagues in length, but the breadth unequal; in some parts nine, in others not above two leagues. 12 *S. Juan de la Frontera*, on the further side of the *Andes*, towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong also certain Islands lying on the Coasts and shores hereof. 1 *S. Marter*, spoken of before. 2 *Mocha*, upon the South of that, five leagues from the Continent, fruitful of Grain, and very good Pasturage; sufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the descendants of those *Americans*, who fled hither to avoid the tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their liberty against that Nation: of which so jealous, that they would not suffer the *English* under *Drake* and *Cavendish* to land amongst them, for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or some friends of theirs. 3 *Castro*, which we have spoken of already.

2. **MAGELLANICA** is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*; on the South, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Straits of *Magellan*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Mare del Norte*, or the main *Atlantick*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom first discovered, of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the Straits, 300 leagues in breadth: from one Sea to the other, where broadest, above 400 leagues; in some but 90 onely, and in others less, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramid*. The inland parts of the Countrey not yet discovered: those on the Sea-side observed to be rocky and unfruitfull, exposed for the most part of the year to such bitter colds, that the Snow lyeth alwayes on the Mountains. The people said to be tall of stature, and some of them of a *Gigantine* bigness, reported to be ten, or eleven foot high; and by the *Spaniards* for that reason are called *Patagons*. Both great and less, sufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurnished of any houses, notwithstanding the rigour of the cold.

No houses doth imply no Towns, and therefore we must look for none in so rude a Countrey, as hath not hitherto conversed with more civil Nations. So that the most that we can do, is to Coast the shores, and see what names of Ports or Promontories we can finde therein. And first upon the Sea-coasts towards *Mare del Zur*, they place (beginning at the North, and so descending) 1 The Promontory called *Cabo de las Islas*. 2 The Port, or Haven of *S. Stephen*. 3 The Valley of *Nuestra Señora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4 The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5 *Porto de los Reyes*. 6 *Ancon Sinfalida*, on the banks of a semi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few Islands. 7 *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of *Victory*, situate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the Straits; so called from the name of the ship in which some of *Magellanes* Souldiers did first compass the World. For *Ferdinand Magellano* a noble *Portugal*, and well skilled in Navigation, at the persuasion, or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom (upon some discontents received in the Court of *Emanuel King of Portugal*) he had made offer of his service; undertook the finding out (if possible) a shorter cut to the *Moluccos*, than discovered formerly. In the year 1520. he began his Voyage, his Fleet consisting but of 5 ships, whereof that called the *St. Antonio* forsook him in some great displeasure, and returned to *Spain*, another of them being lost not long after in a storm, keeping along the Coast to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October*, fell upon the Cape of *Virgins*, at the very entrance of this Strait, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon: and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of these *Narrow Seas*, since called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entred into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreshed himself in a little Island called *Juvaganava* he passed unto that also, but not far from the *Philippines*, the Prince whereof called *Hamabar* he perswaded to become a Christian, baptized him by the name of *Charles*, and finally engaging in a quarrel of his against the King of *Mantuan*, or *Mattan*, an adjoining Island, where he was unfortunately slain, *An. 1521*. After his death *Serran* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70 of his men being treacherously slain by *Hamabar*, the other three ships departed with no more than 15 men aboard them, which put them to a necessity of burning one of their ships, that they might have men enough to make good the others; with these two Ships they came at last to the *Moluccos*, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themselves; that called the *Trinity*, under Capt. *Spinoza*, designed for *Panama* in *New Spain*, from which driven back by contrary winds to the Isle of *Tidore*, was seized on, and spoiled by *Antonio Brito* a Captain, commanding there a small Navy of the King of *Portugals*. The other Ship, which by a happy omen was called *Victoria*, having

Magellanica. having in her but 47 *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebastian del Cano*, after a long and dangerous Voyage, wherein it was thought that he had failed at the least 14000 leagues, returned to *Spain* in safety, and brought the welcom news of their good success.

We use to say that Sir *Francis Drake* was the first that sayled round about the World, which may be true in a qualified sense; viz. that he was the first Captain, or man of note that achieved this enterprise, *Magellanus* perishing in the midst of it; and therefore is reported to have given for his device, a *Globe*, with this Motto, *Tu primus circumdediti me*. This navigation was begun, *An.* 1577. and in two years and an half with great vicissitude of fortune, finished; concerning which his famous Voyage, a Poet then living, directed to him this Epigram:

Drake pererrati novit quem terminus orbis,
Quemque simul mundi vidit iterque polus:
Si tacant homines, facient te sidera notum:
Sol nescit cumis non memor esse sui.

Drake, whom th' encompass'd Earth so fully knew,
And whom at once both Poles of Heaven did view:
Should men forget thee, Sol could not forbear
To chronicle his fellow Traveller.

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, these *Magellan* straits, are in the 52 degree; and are by *M. John Davis*, who professeth to know every Creek in them, thus described. "For 14 Leagues within the *Cape of S. Mary*, lyeth the first strait, where it ebbereth and floweth with a violent swiftness: the strait not being fully half a mile broad, and the first fall into it very dangerous and doubtfull. Three leagues this strait continueth, when it openeth into a Sea eight miles long, and as much broad; beyond which, lyeth the second strait, right West-South-west from the first; a perilous and unpleasant passage, three leagues long, and a mile in breadth. This strait openeth it self into another Sea, which is extended even to the *Cape of Victory*; where is the strait properly called the strait of *Magellan*; a place of that nature, that which way soever a man bend his course, he shall be sure to have the wind against him. The length hereof is 40 leagues; the breadth in some places two leagues over, in others not fully half a mile. The Channel in depth 200 Fathoms, so no hope of Anchorage, the course of the water full of turnings and changings; withall so violent, that when a Ship is once entred, there is no returning. On both sides of it are high Mountains continually covered with snow; from which proceed those counter-winds, which beat with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place assuredly not pleasing to view, and very hazardous to pass. So far, and to this purpose *M. Davis*.

But to proceed, the way thus opened, was travelled not long after, *An.* 1525. by *Garcias de Loyasa*; next in the year 1534. by *Simon de Alcarazo*, and four years after by three ships of the *B. shop of Placenza* in *Spain*; but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure thorow; till undertaken and performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, *An.* 1577. after which it grew more familiar amongst the Seamen. However, we are so much debtors to the attempts of others, as that we owe to them the most part of the names of those Bays and Promontories, which they discovered in the search: though many of them since new named by the *English*, and *Hollanders*. Those of most note, proceeding from *Cabo de la Vittoria*, 1 *Cabo de Quade*. 2 *Cape Gallant*. 3 *Cordes Bay*. 4 *Cape Froward*, being the very point or *Comes* of this great *Pyr. mis*. 5 *Porto Famine*. 6 A little Isle called *Elizabeths Island*, and at the exit of the Strait into *Mare del Noirt*, the *Cape of Virgins*. Then bending Northward toward the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the main Ocean, 1 *Rio de la Cruz*, neighboured by a Promontory called *Cabo de las Barreras*; where *Magellanus* staid all September, and the greatest part of October, in expectation of an opportunity to discover further. 2 The Bay of *S. Julian*, out of which he set sayl for this adventure, about the later end of August, leaving there two of his companions condemned of mutiny. 3 The Port of *Desire*. 4 A large Promontory called the *Cape of S. George*. 5 The out-lets of a fair River, named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6 A goodly Haven entituled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7 The Cape called *Punta de tierra plana*. 8 The Bay of *Amegada*. 9 The Promontory called the *Cape of S. Andrews*. And 10 the River of *S. Anne*, beyond which lieth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the most that I can say touching *Mag. Illica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points and Promontories; and this is nothing (as we see) but a *Nomenclator*. It must be better peopled and more discovered, before it can afford discourse of more variety. All we can adde, is that the passage back again from *Mare del Zur* to the *Atlantick*, hath not been found so safe and easie, as from the main *Atlantick* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted first by *Ladrillero* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Garcia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*, and attempted onely performed not long after the Voyage of Sir *Francis Drake*, by *D. Pedro Sarmiento*, employed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no less danger; so much, that few have since endeavoured to return that way.

As for the fortunes and affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to understand that it was first discovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro's* chief friends and associates. But he having other designs in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himself, and to out *Pizarro*, did discover it only: the conquest of it being reserved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro*, on the settling of his affairs by the death of *Almagro*, had employed in that action. He going souldier-like to work, not only did subdue the people; but as he gained ground, built some Fortresses, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. This done about the year 1544. his ill luck was to meet with a more stubborn and

and untractable people, than either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who quickly weary of the yoke, besieged one of his Forts, encountred *Baldivia* himself coming with too small a power to relieve his people, vanquished and slew him in the field. Some adde that they poured Gold into his throat (as the *Parthians* are reported to have done to *Craesus*) bidding him *satiare himself with that which he so much thirsted*. After this blow given in the year 1551. the *Salvages* recovered the rich Vallies of *Avance*, *Tucapel*, and *Purene*; which they keep from them till this day: The Towns of *Los Confines*, and *Villa Rica*, both on the borders of those Vallies, then deserted also. Nor staid they there, though they took time to breathe a little. For in the year 1599. (having provided themselves of 200 Corslets, and seventy Muskets) they brake out again; surprized and sacked the Town of *Baldivia*; forced *Imperiale* after a whole years siege, to surrender without any conditions; and in the year 1604. took *Osorno* by famine. Of thirteen Cities, which the *Spaniards* had possessed amongst them, they had taken nine; some of them since recovered, but the most demolished. As ill it thrived with them in *Magellanica*, where *Pedro de Sarmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies, to command those Streits, *An.* 1584. The one he ferled near the mouth of the Strait, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jesus*, and left therein 150 of his men; the other he intended on the narrowest place of the Strait, to be called *Ciudad del Rey Philip*, which he resolved to fortifie, and plant with Ordnance. But winter coming on, he left there others of his men, promising to relive them shortly with all things necessary. But such as was his unhappy fate, that after many shipwracks and disappointments which befell unto him, in the pursuit of his design; he was at last taken by the *English*, under the command of Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, who was there in person: and his two Colonies, for want of timely succours, either starved at home, or eaten by the *Salvages*, as they ranged the Countrey.

And so much for CHILE.

OF

OF PARAGUAY.

PARAGUAY is bounded on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the East, with the main *Atlantick*; on the North, with *Brasil*; On the West, with some unknown Countreys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River *Paraguay* (one of the greatest of the world) which runneth through it: the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great store of *Silver* they expected from it.

The Countrey (for so much as hath been discovered) is said to be of a fruitful Soil; capable of Wheat and other of the Fruits of *Europe*; which thrive here exceedingly: nor do the Cattle increase less which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horses multiplying in a wonderful manner. Well stored with *Sugar-Canes*, and not unfurnished with *Mines*, both of *Brass*, and *Iron*; some veins of *Gold* and *Silver*, and great plenty of *Amethysts*. Of Stags great plenty, and of *Monkeys* almost infinite numbers; not to say any thing of *Lyons*, *Tygers*, and such hurtful Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the people there is nothing said, but what hath been before observed of the other *Salvages*.

Chief Rivers of it, 1 *De la Plata*, whose course we have described already. 2 *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, so called from the chief Town by which it runneth. 3 *Zarcavanna*, which riseth in the Countrey of the *Diagnitas*, and falling into a Lake at the end of his course, doth from thence pass into the body of *De la Plata*. 4 *Estero*, which rising in the Valley of *Chalacqui*, and passing through two great Lakes, meets with 5 the *Bermelo*, and both together fall into *De la Plata*, near the Town of *St. Foy*. 6 *Pilcomayo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Potosi*, in the Province of *Charcos*; but his fall in the same River with those before. Then on the North-side of that River, there is 7 that of *St. Salvador*, or *St. Salvador*, as the *Spaniards* call it; 8 *Rio Negro*, or the *Black River*, of a longer course; but buried in the end, as the other is, in the deeps of *La Plata*. 9 *Tiquana*, and 10 several others, whose united streams make the great River *Parana*, the second River of esteem in all this Countrey: But swallowed in that of *Plata*. Besides these 11 *Rio de St. Martin*, and 12 *Rio Grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of 1 *Rio de la Plata*, 2 *Tucuman*, and 3 *La Cruz de Sierra*. The rest not conquered by the *Spaniard*, or not well discovered, cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both sides of that River; ascending many leagues up the water, but not extended much upon either side. The reason of the name, the quality of the Soil and People we have seen before.

Chief Towns hereof 1 *Buenos Ayres*, or *Nuestra Señora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Ciudad de la Trinidad*, seated on the Southern bank of the River of *Plata*, where built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, Anno 1535. Deserted by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cabeza de Vacca*, Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned; and finally in the year 1582. re-edified and planted with a new Colony. Situate on the rising of a little Hill, in the 34 degree and 45 minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64 leagues from the mouth of the River; fortified with a Mud-Wall, and a little Castle, with some Pieces of Ordnance; yet neither large, nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. 2 *St. Fe*, or *St. Fidei*, 50 leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the same side of the water, near the confluence of it with the River *Estero*: of the same bigness as the other, but somewhat richer; the people here being given to Cloathing, which Manufacture they exchange with the *Brasilians* for *Sugar*, *Rice*, and other necessary Commodities. 3 *Nuestra Señora del Assumption*, but commonly *Assumption* onely, higher up the River, from the mouth whereof 300 leagues distant: situate in the Latitude of 25. and almost in the midst betwixt *Peru* and *Brasil*; well built, and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Countrey. Inhabited by three sorts of men, first natural *Spaniards*, or which here are accounted 400 Families; 2 The *Mestizos*, begotten by the *Spaniard* upon the *Natives*; and 3 *Mulatto*, born of the *Spaniards* and the *Negroes*; of which two last here are thought to be many thousands. Not far off is a great Lake, called *Tupnam*, in the midst whereof an huge Rock, above 100 Fathom high above the water. 4 *Ciudad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Ontiveros*, by the *Natives* *Guayra*, 80 leagues North from the Town of *Assumption*; situate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitful Soil, but a sickly Air; for which cause, and the frequent Insurrections of the *Salvages*, but meanly peopled. 5 *St. Anne*, on the banks of the same River *Parana*; 6 *St. Salvador*, on a River of the same name. Besides these, there are up the River above *Assumption*, three noted Ports. 7 *Puerto de Guaybiano*. 8 *Puerto de la Candelaria*, and 9 *Puerto de los Reyes*; but whether Towns, or onely Havens on that River for dispersing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to say. The last save one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas*, and the death of 80 of his men, by the hands of the *Salvages*.

2. *TUCU-*

2. *TUCUMAN* lieth on the West of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the Confines of *Chile*, *Tucuman* through which they make their way unto *Mare del Zur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata*: unto *Mare del Norte* the exact bounds hereof to the North and South, not yet resolved on.

The Countrey, for so much hereof as lieth towards *Chile*, well manured and fruitful; that towards *Magellanica*, barren, untilld, and not well discovered, no veins of *Gold*, or *Silver* in it, though situate in a temperate and agreeable Air. Watered by the two Rivers of 1 *Salado*, so called from the brackishness and saltiness of it; and 2 *Del Estero*, spoken of before, so named, because sometimes it breaketh out of his banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and habit, in both which they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof 1 *St. Jago del Estero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Varco*: the principal of that small Province, honoured with a Bishops See, and the seat of the Governour; and distant about 180 leagues from *Buenos Ayres*. 2 *St. Michael de Tucuman*, seated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitful soil, both for Corn and Pasturage, distant 28 leagues from *St. Jago*. 3 *Talavera*, or *Nuestra Señora de Talavera*, but by the *Natives* called *Especo*; situate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitful Soil, and inhabited by an industrious people, grown wealthy by their Manufactures of Cotton-wools, which grow hereabouts in great abundance: with which they drive a great trade at the Mines of *Potosi*, from hence distant but 140 leagues. 4 *Cordoba*, in a convenient place for trade, as being equally distant from *St. Juan de la Frontera*, in the Province of *Chile*; and *St. Foy*, in *Rio de la Plata*; 50 leagues from each; and seated in a Road from *Peru* unto *Buenos Ayres*; much travelled consequently by those who go from *Peru* to *Brasil*, or *Spain*. 5 *New London*, and 6 *New Cordoba*, built at such time as *Gaspar de Mendoza*, Son of the Marquess of *Cannete*, and Vice-Roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Besides these, 7 *Morata*, 8 *Chocimoca*, 9 *Sococha*, and 10 *Calabina*; Townships belonging to the *Natives*.

3. *LA CRUZ DE SIERRA*, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guapay*, and in the Countrey of the *Chiquitos* and *Chiriguanaes*, two Tribes of the *Salvages*. By some accounted to *Peru*, because under the Jurisdiction of *Charcos*: but so far distant from the nearest bounds of that Province (100 *Spanish* leagues at least) that I think fitter to account it to the Province of *Paraguay*; betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guapay* it is wholly seated.

The Soil abundantly productive of *Maize* and *Wines*, plenty of moist sorts of *American* fruits, which I can give no *English* name to; a kind of *Palm*, of whose trunk they make great store of meal, of good taste and nourishment. But neither Soil nor Air agreeable to the fruits of *Europe*, which ripen slowly, and soon die. So destitute of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make use of Rain-water, preserved in pits: the cause of no small wants, and of many great murders, the people either dying for thirst, or killing one another for some water to quench it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Sancta Cruz*, situate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but situate in an open field, enlarging it self into many Plains, and thirty Vallies: neighboured by a Brook, or *Torrent* breaking from the Rocks; which four leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth supply the Town with Fish. 2 *Baranca*, 60 leagues from the Mines of *Potosi*. 3 *Tomina*. 4 *Lagunilla*, and 5 *Tarixa*; three Forts erected for defence of this Province against the incursions and Alarms of the *Chiriguanaes*. 6 *Nezva Rioja*, once a Colony of the *Spaniards*, but sacked and dispeopled by the *Chiriguanaes*, when the Count of *Nezva* was Vice-Roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nusso de Chaves*, who in the year 1548. first discovered those parts, was treacherously slain by one of the *Salvages*.

The principal Nations of this Countrey, when first known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Querandies*, *Timbues*, and *Carcates*, the *Chanes*, *Chiminci*, *Guaranies*, the *Guayacurves*, *Cacoves*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both sides of the River of *Plata*: the *Tucumanes*, *Juries*, and *Diagnitas*, in the Centred of *Tucuman*; more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no hold, the *Chunesses*, *Xagueffes*, *Xicoaes*, and the *Xarayer*, great and powerfull Nations, hitherto unconquered. The first discovery of this Countrey ascribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spanish* adventurer; who in the year 1515. passing up the River to the Latitude of 34 Degrees, and 40 minutes, and unadvisedly landing with too small a power; was there unfortunately slain. The design after prosecuted by *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1526. who sailed against the stream as high as the River *Parana*: at the reception of which, the great River called till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortresses called *Fort Cabot*; and 30 leagues more up the River, that called *St. Anne*, (both long since ruined) where *Diego Garcia* a *Portugall* found him, in the year next following. In the year 1535. the business was resumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*; and sent *John de Ayolas* to discover Northwards; of whose unhappy end we have heard before. Nor fully settled till the year 1540. when *Alvares Nunez*, commonly called *Cabeza de Vacca*, made a more full discovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing since done for the further planting of the Countrey, though some places have been marked out for new Plantations; here being little *Gold* and *Silver*, and consequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

And so much for PARAGUAY.



O F B R A S I L.

BRASIL is bounded on the East, with *Mare del Noort*, or the main *Atlantick*; on the West, with some undiscovered Countreys, lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragnon*; and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reason of the name I finde not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called *Brasil*-wood, which was found amongst them; as the famous Isle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of *Cypresses*.

It reacheth from the 29 to the 39 Degree of *Southern Latitude*; or measuring it by miles, it is said to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the Sea to the *Andes*; which mult be understood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwise all that which is possessed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Brasil*, is so short of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they possess nothing but the Sea-coasts, and some few leagues (comparatively) within the Land; the greatest part of it being so far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been discovered.

The Countrey full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forests, diversified into Hills and Plains always pleasant and green. The air for the most part found and wholesome, by reason of the fresh winds which do reign amongst them; there being all along the Coasts certain quick winds rising from the South, about 2 hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants: yet in regard it is somewhat moist, it is held to be more agreeable to old men than to young. The soil in most parts very fruitful, were it not cloyed with too much rain; but howsoever liberally provided of *Sugar-Canes*, (no one Countrey more) for refining of which they have their *Ingenios* (as they call them) or *Sugar-houses* in most parts of the Countrey; in which they entertain many thousand *slaves*, brought hither yearly from *Guinea*, and *Congo*, and other maritime parts of *Africk*. A trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them; there being few years, in each of which they bring not out of *Brasil* to *Portugal*, 150000 *Arrobes* of *Sugar*, every *Arrobe* containing 25 Bushels of our *English* measure. Here is also infinite quantities of that red wood used in dying Cloath, which we commonly call *Brasil*-wood; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Countrey, or the Countrey rather from the Wood, I determine not:) The Trees whereof are of that incredible greatness, that whole Families live on an *Arm* of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the most of our Villages. In other Commodities common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular instance.

Amongst the *Rarities* hereof, are reckoned 1 the *Plant*, called *Copiba*, the bark of which being cut doth send out a *Balm*, the soveraign vertue whereof is so well known to the very beasts, that being bit by venomous Serpents, they resort unto it for their cure. 2 The Herb called *Sentida*, or *Viva*, which roughly touched will close the leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of sight. 3 A kinde of *Wheat* in the Valley near unto *S. Sebastian*, which is continually growing, and alwayes ripe; or never wholly ripe, because alwayes growing: for when one ear doth grain, another doth bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4 The *Ox-fish*, with eyes and eye-lids, two arms a cubit long, and at each an hand with five fingers and nails, as in a man; under the arms two teats, inwards like a Cow, in every Female. 5 A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All-Saints*, which had the face of an Ape, the foot of a Lion, and all the rest of a man; of such a terrible aspect, that the Soldier who shot him fell down dead: but this I rather look on as an aberration of Nature, than a rarity in her. 6 Beasts of such strange shapes, and such several kinds, that it may be said of *Brasil*, as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid apportat novi*; every day some new object of Admiration.

The people here are endowed with a pretty understanding; as may seem by him, who tartly blamed the covetousness of the *Spanish*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold; and holding up a wedge of Gold, cried out, Behold the God of the *Christians*! But in most places they are barbarous, the men and women go stark naked, and on high *Festival* days hang Jewels in their lips: these *Festival* days are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry, over the roasted body of a fat man; whom they cut in collops, called *Boucon*, and eat with great greediness, and much delectation. They have two vile qualities, as being mindfull of injuries, and forgetfull of benefits. The men cruel without measure, and the women infinitely lascivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reason of which one being demanded, made answer; because they had amongst them neither *Laws*, *Faith*, nor *Rulers*. They are able Swimmers, as well women as men; and will stay under water an hour together. Women in travel are here delivered without any great pain, and presently go about their business, belonging to good house-wives: The good man (according to the fashion of our kinder sorts of Husband in *England*, who are said to breed their *Wives Children*) being sick in their stead, and keeping their bed; so far that he hath broaths made him, is visited by his *Gossips*, or Neighbours, and hath *Junkets* sent to comfort him. And amongst these there are some *Rarities*, if not *Monstrosities* in nature: it being said of those which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like beasts, such as *Orson* is fained to have been in the old *Romance*; and probably so ingendred also; that the *Guaymutes* disbowel

Women

Women with Child, and roast the Children; and finally that the *Salvage* Nation of *Cambuchiana* have their Paps almost down unto their knees, which they tie about their waste when they run, or go faster than ordinary.

Rivers of note I find not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, than proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way, as we cross the Countrey, we shall not pass them over without some remembrance. And so proceed we to the division of the Countrey, not into Provinces, or Nations, as in other places, but into *Prefectures*, or Captainships as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we shall severally touch on as we trace the Coast, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata*, unto that of *Guiana*; that is to say,

1. The Captainship of *St. VINCENT* bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the most civil people of all *Brasil*. Chief Towns whereof 1 *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, capable of good ships of burden, but distant from the Main three leagues. A Town of no more than 120 houses, yet the best of this *Prefecture*; beautified with a Parish Church, and two Convents of Fryers. Taken and held two moneths by Sir *Tho. Cavendish*, An. 1591. since that environed with a Wall, and fortified with two Castles. 2 *St. Vincents* better built, but not so well fitted with an Haven; of about 70 houses, and 100 Inhabitants. 3 *Itange*, and 4 *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of lesser Vessels. 5 *St. Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleasant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River of *Inianibis*. A Town of about 100 houses, one Church, two Convents, and a Colledge of *Jesuits*; neighboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains, called *Pernabiacaba*. 6 *St. Phillips*, a small Town on the banks of *Inianibis*, which there begins to enlarge it self; and passing thence falleth at the last in the River *Parana*, one of the greatest Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. Of *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, so called, because entred into that moneth by *John Diaz de Solis*, An. 1515. neglected by the *Portugals*, it was seized on by the French under the conduct of *Villegagnon*, employed herein by Admiral *Chastillon*, a great friend of the *Hugonets*, to whom it was intended for a place of Refuge (as *New-England* afterwards for the like:) but within three years after their first coming thither (An. 1558.) regained by the *Portugals*, and the French put unto the sword. Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Collignia*, the Fort and Colony of the French, so named in honour of *Gaspard Colligni*, (commonly called *Chastillon*) by whose encouragement it was founded. Situate on the Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the French called *Ganabara*. 2 *St. Sebastian*, built at the mouth of the same Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the French, and fortified with four strong Bulwarks. 3 *Angra des Reyes*, distant twelve leagues Westward from the mouth of the Bay; not long since made a *Portugal* Colony. Besides these, there are two great Burroughs of the natural *Brasilians*, in which are said to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. Of the *HOLY GHOST* (*del Spiritu Santo*) one of the most fertile Provinces of all *Brasil*; well stored with *Cotton*-wool, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large and full of fish. The only Town of note in it, is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church dedicated to *St. Francis*, a Monastery of *Benedictines*, and a Colledge of *Jesuits*; the chief conveniency, a safe and commodious Haven, capable of the greatest Vessels.

4. Of *PORTO SEGURO*, the secure Haven, so called by *Capralis*, who first discovered it; when being tossed at Sea by a terrible tempest, he had here refreshed himself. Chief Towns hereof 1 *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity than *Fame*, of more fame than bigness; as not containing fully 200 Families. 2 *Santa Cruz*, three leagues from the other; a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: the Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Avera*, in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3 *Santo Amaro*, or *St. Omers*, once of great note for making *Sugars*, for which use here were five *Ingenios*, or *Sugar Engines*: deserted by the *Portugals* for fear of the *Salvages*, against whom they had not power enough to make good the place, and the *Sugars* destroyed of purpose, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. Of *DES ILHEOS*, or of the *Isles*, so named from certain Islands lying against the Bay on which the principal Town is seated, called also *Ilheos*, or the Island (with like Analogie as a Town of good note in *Flanders*, hath the name of *Insula*, or *Liste*) The Town consisting of about 150 or 200 Families, situate on a little River, but neighboured by a great Lake of 12 leagues in compass (out of which the River doth arise:) full of a great but wholesome fish, which they call *Axonatos*, some of which are affirmed to weigh 28 pounds. This Colony, much endangered by the *Guaymuri*, a Race of *Salvages* more *Salvage* than any of their fellows: who being driven out of their own Country, fell into this *Prefecture*, which they had utterly destroyed; if some of *St. Georges* Reliques, as the *Jesuits* tell us (but I finde no man to believe it) sent by their General from *Rome*, An. 1581. had not stayed their fury; and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. Of *TODOS LOS SANTOS*, or *All-Saints*, so called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lieth; in breadth two leagues and an half, 18 fathom deep, and full of many little Islands: but flourishing and pleasant, and well stored with *Cotton*-wool. A Bay in which are many safe Stations and Roads for shipping, and therefore of great use and consequence in those furious Seas. Memorable for the hardy Enterprize of *Peter Heyns*, a *Dutch-man*, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*; who in

Y y y

the

the year 1627. seized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, consisting of 26 sail of ships (four of them being men of War) all lying under the protection of the Ports and Castles, built for the safety of that Bay. For thrusting in amongst them with his own ship only (the rest not being able to follow) he so laid about him, that having sunk the *Vice-Admiral*, he took all the rest, conditioning only for their lives; notwithstanding all the shot which was made against him from the ships and Castles, and 42 pieces of Ordnance planted on the shore. Chief Towns hereof 1 *S. Salvador*, built on a little Hill on the North-side of the Bay, by the *Thomas de Souza*; adorned with many Churches, and Religious houses; and fortified (besides the Wall) with three strong Castles; the one called *S. Anthony*, the other *S. Philip*, and the third *Tapeffe*. Yet not so strong by reason of some Hills adjoining which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, An. 1624. recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and since lost again. 2 *Paripé*, more within the Land, four leagues from *S. Saviour*. 3 *Seregippe del Rei*, a small Town, and seated on as small a River, but amongst many rich Pastures, and some veins of silver.

7. Of *FERNAMBURCK*, one of the richest *Præfectures* for Tobacco, Sugar, and the great quantity of *Brasíl-wood*, which is brought hence yearly for the *Diers*, in all this Country; but destitute of Corn, and most other necessities, with which supplied from the *Cavaries*, and sometimes from *Portugal*. Chief Towns hereof 1 *Olinda*, the largest and best peopled of all *Brasíl*; containing above 2000 persons; not reckoning in the *Church-men*, nor taking the great number of *Slaves* which they keep for their *Sugar-work* into the account: for whose use they have here eight *Parochial Churches*, five Religious houses, and some *Hospitals*. Situate near the Sea-side, but on so uneven a piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a *Regular fortification*; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well built Castle; and that well planted with *Brasíl* pieces. Which notwithstanding, in the year 1595, the Castle and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they used to stow all their chief Commodities) were taken by Captain *James Lancaster*, and some few of the *English*; who having tarried in the Haven above a month, brought home with him eight of his own ships, four *French-men*, and three *Hollanders*; which came in by chance; all laden with the choicest Merchandise of *Brasíl*, and *India*. 2 *Amatta de Brasíl*, ten miles from *Olinda*, the Inhabitants whereof live by selling the *Brasíl-wood*. 3. *S. Laurencio*, a well frequented Village, but as yet unwall'd. 4 *Poincur*, upon a River so named. 5 *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of *S. Augustines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6 *Garafu*, about five leagues from *Olinda*, inhabited for the most part by poor and *Mechanical* persons, till the year 1632. when taken by the *Hollander*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This *Præfecture*, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque* (a great house in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* united: the Town of *Olinda* being took by them in the year 1629. the Port and all the *Avenues* unto it so strongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it.

8. Of *TAMARACA*, so called from an Island of that name, distant about five miles from *Olinda*; of no great note but for the Haven, and an impregnable Castle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a strong Balwark at the mouth of the Port, and so blocked it up, that it hath since been of no use to the *Spaniard*. This the least *Præfecture* in *Brasíl*, but withal the ancientest; extended three leagues only in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Monfanto* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly, when entire, thirty thousand *Ducats*. But his Rents much diminished, it not quite inverted, since the loss of the Haven.

9. Of *PARAIBA*, so called from a River of that name (but by the *Spaniard* called *Domingo*) of most note herein. On the banks whereof standeth *Paraiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, about three leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty good ships to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long since by 500 *Portugals*, besides *Slaves* and *Negroes*. Not walled, till they began to stand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loss of *Olinda*; but more secured by a strong Castle on the Promontory called *Cabo Dels*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, than by any works within the Land. A Castle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were possessed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoining Haven, called *Port Francois*; but ousted by the *Portugal*, An. 1584. who have since held their footing in it, but with fear of the *Hollanders*; especially since their taking of a little Island lying over against them, called the Isle of *Noronha*.

10. Of *RIO GRANDE*, so called from the River *Potengi* (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River; not made a *Præfecture* till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next *Pretender*, some of the *French* began to fix here, An. 1597. But the King of *Spain* not willing to have any such neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiba*, to drive them thence; which was done accordingly. But then the *Salvages* beginning to rise up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to seek aid from him of *Fernambuck*; by whose help having slain five thousand, and took three thousand of them, the rest became *Vassals* to the *Portugals*: who built here an impregnable Castle (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned and furnished with Ammunition and all other necessities; very few *Portugals*, except those of the Garrison, being yet come over.

11. Of *SIARA*, a late *Præfecture* also, in which the *Portugals* have no more than a Castle, with a dozen houses, or thereabouts, besides that of the Governour adjoining to it. So named from an Haven called *Siara*, but of no great note, and capable but of little Vessels. Of some trade in regard of the *Cry-*

stal, Cotton-wool, and some precious stones, found in the Country hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and pursue the Conquest; here being great plenty of *Sugar-Canes*, but no works to make it.

12. Of *MARAGNON*, an Island lying in the mouth of the great River so called, in the further parts of *Brasíl* Northwards, and many leagues distant from *Siara*, the last of their *Præfectures*; the Country intervening not yet discovered, or otherwise made known unto us, than by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the Coast. An Island of a fruitful soil, if pains and husbandry were not wanting: affording naturally *Maize*, and a Root called *Maniot*, both which the *Salvages* use for bread; good store of Cotton-wools, Saffron, *Brasíl-wood*, and the best Tobacco; and in some places *Balm* and *Ambur*. Watered with many fresh Rivers, and pleasant Springs: well-wooded both for Timber and Fuel: and in a word, blessed with so temperate an Air (though so near the *Equator*) that no place can be more commodious for the life of man. The people strong of body, healthy and long-lived without any baldness; industrious in their *Feather-works* and *Manufactures* of Cotton; the Women curious in ordering their hair, fruitful in Child-bearing, and that till 80 years old and sometimes more. Both Sexes naked till their marriage; and then apparelled only from the waist to their knees.

The Villages hereof possessed by the Natives, consisted but of four great Houses; each of them two, or three hundred foot in length, and twenty, or thirty foot in breadth; so placed as they resembled a *Quadrangular Cloyster*: And in each house so many households, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves* (for so they called them) contained three hundred persons, and some twice that number: Of these were twenty seven in all, whose names I hold impertinent to be mustered here: The total estimate of the people when the *French* came thither, amounting to 12000 souls. For the *French* trading in this Island, and carrying themselves courteously amongst the Natives, found them not unwilling to admit a Colony of that Nation, if sent over to them: by whose aid they might free themselves from all other *Pretenders*, and be instructed in the Gospel. Accordingly a Colony, and four *Capuchin* Fryers, are sent over to them, An. 1612. Some *Salvages* gained unto the Faith, and a strong Castle, called *S. Lewis* commodiously built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance; the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not rested there when dis-seized by the *Portugals*, sent thither under the Conduct of *Hierome de Albuquerque*, Anno 1614. Who to the Castle of *S. Lewis*, which the *French* had built, added those of *S. Mary*, and *S. Francis*, planted two Villages in the Island by the names of *S. Andrew*, and *S. Jago*, and ever since have held it without molestation.

13. Of *PARA*, the most Northern *Præfecture* of *Brasíl*, towards *Guiana*; so called from the River of *Para*, (supposed to be a branch of the River of *Amazon*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it, two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Channel fifteen fathoms deep; on the banks whereof (but on an higher ground than the rest) the *Portugals* have built the Castle of *Para*, in form *Quadrangular*, and well walled, except towards the River: the Country thereabouts inhabited by 300 *Portugueses*, besides the Garrison.

Now for the fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one *Supream*. Divided into many Tribes, and each Tribe governed by their Chiefs, as in other Countries. These Tribes so many, and the Muster of their names so useless, that I now forbear it. In this estate they lived when discovered first; but by whom first discovered, will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get some colour of a Title for the Crown of *Castile*, ascribe it to *John Pinson*, and *Diego de Lope*, two of their own Country; who as they say, had landed on it in the year 1500. before the coming of *Capralis*, though the same year also: The *Portugals* attribute the discovery of it to *Pedro Alvarez de Capralis*, sent by their King *Emanuel* to the *East-Indies*: who being driven over higher from the Coast of *Guinea*, took possession of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a Cross, giving the name of *Sancta Crucis*, or the *Holy Cross*, to this new discovery. That name changed afterwards to *Brasíl*, from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongst them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Vesputius* a Noble Florentine, An. 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation in the year 1503. were by *Emmanuel* employed in a further discovery. Who speeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals* did accordingly send over some Plantations thither. But a great controversy growing betwixt them and the *Spaniard*, to whether of the two it of right belonged: the *Spaniard* was content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull, or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the sixth (by whom the whole undiscovered World was divided betwixt those two Kings) it seemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of *Castile*. Enjoyed by this *Emmanuel*, and the Kings succeeding, till the death of *Sebastian* (which *Sebastian* the *Jesuits* look on as the Founder of all their Colledges in this Country) and by the *Spaniards* since the death of *Henry* (whose reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*; that Nation being so prudently jealous of their interests in it, that they would not suffer any of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongst them. By them possessed entirely without any Rivals (I mean for so much of the Country as they had subdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part; and got the *Præfectures* of *Fernambuck*, and *Todos Los Santos* (or the Bay) by the Right of War. The rest with all the other Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late Revolt of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, submitting unto *John* the 4th. of the house of *Bragance*, whom the *Portugueses* had made their King, Anno 1639.

And so much for *BRASIL*.

Yyyy

OF

OF GUIANA.



GUIANA is bounded on the East with the Main *Atlantick*, on the West with the Mountains of *Pern*, or rather some undiscovered Countries interposed betwixt them; on the North with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South with that of the *Amazons*. The reason of the name I find not, unless it be so called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon.

It is situate on both sides of the *Line*, extended from the fourth Degree of Southern, to the eighth of the Northern Latitude. The Air, notwithstanding this situation under the *Aequator*, affirmed to be temperate, the Eastern winds (which they call the *Brises*) constantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extreme heats thereof by their cooler blasts. The Country towards the Sea-side flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and swelled with hills: in all places so adorned with Nature's *Tapestry*, the boughs and branches of the Trees never unclothed or left naked, (fruit either ripe or green growing still upon them) that no Country in the world could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we shall see anon, when the particular parts hereof come into Discourse.

Of the People it is said in general, that they have amongst them no settled Government; and though they acknowledge some superiority in the Chiefs of their Tribes, yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they please. *Adultery* and *Murder*, which are only punishable, not otherwise expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer sort have two or three Wives, and sometimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, a like jealous of out their brains. Their wives, especially the elder, they use for *Servants*; and he which hath most such, is the greatest man. Without *Religion*, or any notion of a *Godhead*; not so far onwards on the way to the worship of the true God, as to be *Idolaters*: for though *Idolatry* be mistaken in the proper Object, it supposeth a *Deity*; and they who have this Principle, That there is a God, have learned one, and not the *Accompts* amongst themselves they keep with a bundle of sticks; which they diminish or increase according to the times of their contract. Their *Funerals* they solemnize with a *Feast*, but with such diversity in the deportment of both Sexes, that whiles the *Women* howl extremely, the *Men* perform the *Obsequies* with singing and excessive drinking; the one as improper for a *Feast*, as the other for a *Funeral*.

Rivers of most note in it, besides 1 *Orenoque*, and 2 the River of *Amazons*, and those rather boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, than proper unto this alone. 3 *Arrawari*, 4 *Conawini*, 5 *Cabiroung*, or *Cassipare*, all falling into the same main *Atlantick*, betwixt the River of *Amazons* and *Wiapoco*: the last arising out of the Lake of the *Arachosi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or influx into the Sea, and the last spans deep. 6 *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7 *Wia*, 8 *Cajane*, 9 *Marwine*, 10 *Essequibe*, a River of twenty dayes journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque* or *Rallana*.

The whole divided commonly into these four parts, 1 *Rio de las Amazonas*, or the River of *Amazons*, 2 *Wiapoco* or *Guiana* specially so called, 3 *Orenoque*, and 4 the Isles of *Guiana*.

1. **RIO DE LAS AMAZONES**, or the River of *Amazons*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the tract of that famous River. The soil in some places dry and barren, in others fertile and productive of the choicest fruits. Full of large Woods, and in those Woods most sort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongst others of most note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*) which they call the *Totoke*; a tree of great bulk, and as great a fruit; this last as big as a man's head, and so hard withal, that when the fruit grows ripe and ready to fall, the people dare not go into the woods without an helmet or some such shelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their brains. The kernels of it, for the most part ten or twelve in number, have the taste of *Almonds*, and are said to be provocative in point of *Venerie*. Of which the *Salvages* have this By-word, *Pigue secke in Sac* (that is to say, Eat *Totoke*), if thou wouldst be potent in the Acts of *Venus*. Here are also *Sagar-canes* in some places; and the Plant called *Pita*, the taste whereof is said to be like *Strawberries*, *Claret-wine*, and *Sugar*.

The principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Taos*, *Cocketumay*, *Pattencui*, *Tockianes*, *Tomoes*, and *Wackebanes* dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons*, and *Aromians* possessed of the Islands. Towns of note I have met with none amongst them; though every house (most of them 150 foot in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the least an hundred persons) might pass sufficiently for a Village. Yet they are safer housed than so, for otherwise their houses would afford them but little comfort in the over-flowings of the River, which drown all the Country: and therefore they betake themselves to the tops of trees and there remain like *Birds*, with their several families, till the waters be drawn in again, and the earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find some of these their dwellings called by proper names, as 1 *Matarem*, 2 *Rokery*, 3 *Anarcaprock*, 4 *Haaman*, 5 *Womians*, and 6 *Cogemymne*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The



The first Discoverer of this River and the parts adjoining, was *Orellana*, the Lieutenant of *Gonzales Pizarro*, whom his brother *Francisco Pizarro*, then Viceroy of *Pern*, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noise of some rich Countries beyond the *Andes*, he raised sufficient Forces, and passed over those Mountains; where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a boat, and sent this *Orellana* to bring in provisions. But the River which he chanced into, was so swift of course, that he was not able to go back; and therefore of necessity to obey his fortune in following the course of that strong water. Passing along by divers desolate and unpeopled places, he came at last into a Country planted and inhabited; where he first heard of the *Amazons* (by those *Salvages* called *Comapuyaras*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people: And in the end having spent his time in passing down this River from the beginning of *January* to the end of *August*, 1540, he came at last into the Sea; and getting into the Isle of *Cubagua*, sailed into *Spain*: the course of his voyage down the water he estimated at 1800 leagues (or 5400 English miles) but found no *Amazons* in his passage, as himself affirmed; only some masculine women shewed themselves intermixt with the men, to oppose his landing; and in some places he found men with long hair like women, either of which might make these parts believed to be held by *Amazons*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got Commission for the conquest of the Countries by him discovered; and in the year 1549 he betook himself unto the service. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at least, he could never hit upon the Channel which brought him down, though attempted often. Which ill success, with the consideration of his loss both in fame and fortunes, brought him to his grave; having got nothing but the honour of the first discovery, and the leaving of his name to that famous River, since called *Orellana*. The enterprize pursued, but with like success, by one *Pedro de Orsua*, in 1569, after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *English* and the *Hollanders*, have endeavoured an exact discovery, and severally begun some Plantations in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the others; their *Quarters* being beaten up by the neighbouring *Portugals*, before they were sufficiently fortified to make any resistance.

2. **WIAPOCO**, or *GUIANA* specially so called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both sides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath his name. A River of a long course, but not passable, up the stream above 16 miles, by reason of a *Cataract*, or great fall from the higher ground: in breadth betwixt that *Cataract*, and the *Essequium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Essequium*, or influx a whole mile at least, and there about two fathoms deep.

The Country on both sides of this River very rich and fertile; so natural for *Tobacco*, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. *Sagar-canes* grow here naturally without any planting, and on the shrubs great store of *Cotton*, and the Dye by some called *Orellana*. Plenty of *Penison* in their Woods, and of *Fish* in their Rivers, their fields well stored with Beasts, which themselves call *Moyers*; in shape and use resembling *Kine*, but without any horns. The people generally of a modest and ingenious countenance; Naked, but would wear cloaths, if they had them, or knew how to make them. Their bread is made of a Plant called *Cassavi*; of which also being dried and chewed, and then strained through a wicker vessel, they make a kind of drink in colour like new Ale, but not so well tasted, &c. of less continuance. The greatest part of their food is *fish*, which they intoxicate with a strong-scented wood, and so take them up as they lie floating on the top of the water. Much troubled with a Worm like a *Flea*, (by the *Spaniards* called *Nigua*) which get under the Nails of their Toes, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no less torture of the Patient, without speedy prevention: No better remedy found out, than to pour Wax melting hot on the place affected; which being pulled off, when 'tis cold, draws the *Vermis* with it, sometimes 800 at a pull. The *Women* of such easie child-birth, that they are delivered without help, and presently bring the Child to his Father (for they have so much natural modesty as to withdraw from company upon that occasion) who washeth it with water, and painteth it with several colours, and so returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleasant and goodly streams. The names of some of them on both sides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long course, a goodly River all the way, and at the mouth thereof to be large and broad; which passing through the heart of the Country, in the fourth degree and 40 minutes of Northern Latitude, may possibly occasion both the whole and this part more specially to be called *Wiana*, and by the *Dutch*, who cannot pronounce the *W*, *Guiana*. Certain I am, that by the name of *Wiana* I have found it written in approved Authors. But what need further search be made after lesser Rivers, (which will offer themselves to us of their own accord) when we have a Lake to pass over like a Sea for bigness, (*magnum famisum*, & *vastum infar maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Taos*, or *Jaos* called *Raponovisin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimen*: Situate about a dayes journey from the River *Essequibe*: and neighboured by the great and famous City *Manoa*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado* (or the Golden City) from the abundance of Gold, in Coyn, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was said to be in it. The greatest City, as some say, not only of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Ordaz*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his Mexican Wars, and by him condemned for a mutiny, put into a Boat alone without any victual, and so cast off to seek his fortune; affirmed at his return, that being taken by some of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then residing at *Manoa*, he entered the City at high-noon, travelled all the rest of that day, and the next also until night, before he came to the Kings Palace; but then he saith that he was led blind-fold all the way: And therefore possibly enough this City might be no such miracle as the story makes it; *Don Diego* being either abused by the reports of the

Y y y 3

Wiapoco.

the *Salvages*, or willing to abuse the world with such empty fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *English* have severally fought, and that with incredible diligence to find out this City, yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be said in the Poets language,

—Et quod non invenis usquam,
Esse putas nusquam— i. e.

That which is no where to be found,
Think not to be above the ground.

Nor is there much more credit to be given unto his *Relations* of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*; who being forsooth one of the younger Brethren of *Atabaliba* the last King of *Peru*, at the conquest of that Kingdom with many thousands of his Followers came into this Country; and subduing the *Caribes*, erected here a second *Peruvian* Monarchy. For besides that *Atabaliba* had no brethren but *Guasem* and *Mango* who both died in *Peru*, how impossible must it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing so well the thirst of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either suffer him to return and disclose the secrets of his State; or send him away loaded with Gold, as 'tis said he did; Who sheweth his Treasure to a Thief, doth deserve to lose it. And therefore letting pass these dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us descend to places of less *Magnificence*, but of greater reality. Amongst which I reckon 1 *Carip*, most memorable for a Colony of *English* there planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, An. 1608. situate on the banks of the *Wiapoco*, near the mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock so difficult of access, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Air so found and answerable to the constitution of an *English* body, that of 30 which were left there for three years together, there dyed but six, and those six rather by misfortune, and some crofs accident, than by any diseases. 2 *Gomeribo*, on the top of an hill near the mouth of the Bay of *Wiapoco*, possessed a while by some *Hollanders*, but soon deserted. 3 *Moeyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Marrwinen*. 4 *Cremnay*, on the other side of the same River, possessed by the *Caribes*: the King of the first (for each Tribe had its several Princes) being named *Maperitaka*, affirmed to be a virtuous man, and kind to strangers; of the later, *Minapa*. 5 *Tamparamunen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River. And 6 *Mareshego*, four dayes journey from the other; both possessed by the *Caribes*. The King, or *Cacique* of those last, at Captain *Harcourt's* being there (of which time we speak) named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of *Buff*.

The principal Families of this part, besides the *Yaoi*, or *Jagos*, and the *Marrsons* spoken of before, who possess almost all the Sea-coasts of this Country, are said to be *Armucca*, the *Sapayoy*, the *Mayi*, and the *Aracouri*; of different Languages, and Customs, though neer neighbours unto one another. Originally inhabitants of the Island of *Trinidad*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Country, possessed themselves of the Sea-shores, and the parts adjoining: each Tribe or Family being governed by its several Chief, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders* for a time had some footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their short stay amongst them, than to make the People disaffected to the *English*; of whose pretensions to these parts, and designs to plant them they had good intelligence. And so much was confessed by some of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance, how much the *English* were abused in those mis-reports. Afterwards in the year 1604. Captain *Charles Leigh* set sail from *Woolwich* on the *Thames*, and in May fell upon the River of *Wiapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, gratified with an House and Garden, and his Aid craved against the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took possession of the Country in the name of King *James* and the Crown of *England*; and caused the River of *Wiapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caroleigh*: but that name ended with his life, and that shortly after, he dying in his return on Ship-board. The design went forwards notwithstanding, and in the year 1608. an *English* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new possession taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before-mentioned, the Country further searched into by that Noble Gentleman, than ever formerly by any, or by any since. After three years, the Colony wanting fit supply, returned home again; the Plantation never since pursued, though by some projected. Yet so far are these *Salvages* beholden to the *English* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there against the *Caribes*, so at their going off they taught them the use of Arms, and put them into a posture of defence; inabling them thereby to preserve themselves against all their Enemies.

3. *O R E N O Q U E*, or the Province of the River *Orenoque* comprehendeth the North parts of *Guiana*, lying upon and towards the Banks of that famous River of which we have already spoken. The Country very rich and pleasant, consisting of large Plains, many miles in compass, adorned with the embroydery of Flowers, and unknown Plants, exceeding pleasant to the eye; and sometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furnished with rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Rivers liberally stored with Fish, and the *Forrests* both with Beasts and Fowls. No Country in *America*, not *Peru* it self, said to be comparable to it for abundance of Treasure. Some also add a whole Mountain of *Crystal* to be seen afar off from *Winecaporo*: and tell us (but in general terms) of more goodly Cities than elsewhere in all *Peruana*, but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *English* could ever see them, thought they diligently searched into most parts of this Country.

The

Orenoque.

The people, as of several Nations, so of several Natures: The *Capuri*, and *Macureos*, for the most part *Carpenters*, live by making *Canoas* or Boats, which they sell into *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinidad* for *Tobacco*; in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dyeth, they make great lamentation; and after the flesh is putrified and fallen from the bones; they take up the *Skeleton*, and hang it up in the house where he dwelt, decking his skull with *Feathers* of all colours, and hanging gold Plates about the bones of his arms and thighs. Of the *Tivitius* dwelling upon some of the Northern branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant People, and to have the most manly and most deliberate speech of any Nation in the World. A People which eat of nothing that is set or sown: the children of *Dame Nature*, and therefore will not be beholden for their livelihood unto Art, or Industry; using the tops of the *Palm* Tree for Bread; *Fish*, *Deer*, and *Swines* flesh, for the rest of their sustenance. The *Assany*, *Sayma*, *Wikeri*, and *Arornas*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with smoother hair: And to use Arrows dipt in so strange a poison, as doth not only bring death, but death with most unspeakable torments, especially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwack* of this Tract I find nothing singular, but that when any of their Kings or *Caciques* die, their wives and neerest of the kindred beat their bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink like spice.

Places of most importance in it (for to speak any thing particularly of those many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque*, were an endless labour) 1 *Comolaha*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but somewhat distant, in which they keep some Annual Fairs for the sale of *Women*. One of our *English* men, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1595. affirmed that he bought eight of them (the eldest not above eighteen) for a half-penny red-hafted knife, which he brought from *England*: But withal telleth us for his credit, that he gave them to some *Salvages* of his acquaintance. 2 *Morequito*, a known Port upon some branch of the *Orenoque*; of much use to the *English* in their first discovery of these parts. 3 *Wenicaporo*, so called from another branch of that River bearing this name; from whence was shewed an high Hill said to be of *Crystal*, but so far off, that it was thought better to believe than to go and see. Others report of this Mountain that above it there is a mighty River, which falling down this *Cataract* on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noise, as if 1000 Bells were knocked one against another. And possible enough it is, that this great fall of water discerned far off, may (with the help of Sun-shine) carry some resemblance of a *Crystal* Mountain. 4 *S. Thome*, situate on the Main Channel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 houses stretched out in length for half a mile, but slightly built, a Parish Church in the midst of it, and at the West end a Convent of *Franciscan* Friars. The only Town of all *Guiana* possessed by the *Spaniards*; not fortified till against the last coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1617. but taken by him at that time, and since that by the *Hollanders*, An. 1629. though by both quitted not long after; it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The several Nations of this Tract have been named before, Discovered first by *Diego de Ordaz*, Anno 1531. furnished with a Patent for the conquest of it by *Charles* the fifth. But not hitting on the right Channel, or otherwise not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain*: effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hierom de Ortal*, An. 1533. and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded further than the others, An. 1536. and finally by *Goncalvo Ximenez de Quesada* and *Antonio Berreo* with far better fortune; who beginning their journey from the *New Realm* of *Granada* in the search of *Guiana*, fell casually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly discovered till the year 1595. In which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Prisoner this *Antonio Berreo*, and learning of him the success of his Expedition, resolved upon the undertaking; and searched so far into the Country by the course of this River, that some have since called it *Ralianna*. The business followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Lawrence Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that service, who at his coming found the Country possessed by the *Spaniards*, by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable houses of the *Salvages* had been laid together like a Town; and all the *Natives*, who wished well to the *English*, dispersed and scattered. So that without any other effect of his journey, than the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he first discovered) he set sail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the Court, that a Colony of *English* should be planted there, and some proportionable force sent over to make good the Action. But the motion upon good advice rejected, first in regard of the distance of it from the main body of our strength: And 2ly. because the *Spaniards* bordering neer upon it, might easily call out small Forces and make the enterprise dishonourable to the *English* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of Honourable Achievements. It was permitted notwithstanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State: whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh*, and *Harcourt*, before spoken of. But they not being able to go through with so great a business, let it fall again. And so it rested till the last unfortunate Voyage of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licensed by Commission under the Great Seal to search into some Mines of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Country. A design followed with great hopes, by the Undertakers, most of them being person, of honour, and well attended: but so unfortunate in the issue (the *Spaniards* being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking of *S. Thome*, he lost his own Son, and a great part of his Forces: and after his return (not able with the residue to make good his ground against the Enemy) was executed on a former Attaindure, in the old Palace of *Westminster*, Octob. 29. Anno 1618. Of whom I cannot choose but note what is said by *Camden Clarendieu*, in his *Annals*: *Vir erat nunquam satis laudato studio & Regionis remotae detegendi, & Navalem Angliæ gloriam promovendi*. And so I leave him to his rest in the bed of peace.

Trinidad.

4. *THE ISLANDS* which properly are accounted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either scattered on the shore, in the mouths, or bodies of the greater Rivers: some of them not inhabited, others of no name; and none at all of any reckoning. Only the Isle of 1 *Trinidad*, and 2 *Tobago*, are of some esteem: which though somewhat further off from the shores of this Country, yet being that of *Trinidad*, lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* pass but for one *Presidio*, or *Provincial Government*, we shall describe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDAD*, or *Insula S. Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque* over against *Paria*, from which separated by a *Frith*, or *Strait*, by *Columbus*, who first discovered it, called *Boca del Drago*, or the *Dragon's mouth*, because of the dangerousness of the passage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth Degree of *Northern Latitude*; the most Southern Angle of it, called *Punta del Gallo*, as that on the North-East *Punta de Galera*. The *Frith*, or *Strait*, but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the interposition of four, or five little Islands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving only two entrances for shipping into the Gulf, called the *Gulf of Paria*. The length hereof 25 leagues, the breadth 18. of a cloudy and unhealthy air, but a fertile soil, abundantly well stored with such commodities as are of the natural growth of *America*, viz. *Maize*, *Sugar-Canes*, *Cotton-wool*, and the best kinde of *Tobacco*, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidad*. Here is also a sufficiency of Fruits and Cattel for the use of the *Natives*; and here and there some veins of Gold, and other Metals: such store of *Pitche*, that innumerable ships might be laden with it; but that it is conceived to be unfit for the carking of ships, because it softneth in the Sun. The place in which it groweth, by the *Spaniards* called *Tierra de Bren*, by the *Natives* *Pichen*.

The people of the same nature and disposition with the other *Americans*: distinguished into several Tribes, but most of them reduced under the power of two petit Princes. But the greatest part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, forsook their Country, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called *S. Joseph*, situate on the South-side of the Island, on the banks of a little River which the *Natives* call *Carone*, the ordinary residence of the Governour, who hath under him besides this Island the *Provinces* of *Guiana* and *El Dorado* (for so goes his Title) yet a small Town, consisting but of 40 houses when it was taken, *An. 1595.* by *Sir Walter Raleigh*; *Antonio Berreo* the Governour of it being then made Prisoner, who furnished his taker with many notions (and some utterly fabulous) towards the discovery of *Guiana*.

This Island first discovered by *Christopher Columbus*, in his third voyage, *An. 1497.* was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with some reference to the form hereof, shooting into the Sea with three *Points* or *Promontories*. Nothing else memorable in the fortunes and story of it, but what is touched upon before.

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North-East of *La Trinidad*, from which 8 miles distant: full of safe Harbours for the bigness, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well stored with Woods; amongst which some *Palmito Trees*, some like that of the *Brasil-wood*, others not elsewhere to be found. Of Fowl and Fish sufficient to maintain it self. Now called *New Walcheren*, with reference to an Island of that name in *Zealand*, by some of the *Low-Country-men*, who begin to plant there.

And so much for *GUIANA*.

OF

Cumana.

OF P A R I A.

PARIA is bounded on the East with *Guiana*, and the Islands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*; on the West with the *Gulf*, or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*; on the North, with the main *Atlantic Ocean*, or *Mare del Noort*; the Countries lying on the South not discovered hitherto.

It took this name from a mistake of the *Spaniards* (as *Pern*, and *Jacutin* on the like) who asking, as all men do, the names of those new Regions which they discovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were answered *Paria*, that is to say, *high Hills*, or Mountains (for here begins that ledge of Mountains which are thence continued for the space of 3600 miles, to the Straits of *Magellane*) and so hath it ever since held the name of *Paria*. By some Writers it is also called *Nova Andalusia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the soil and people being very different, will be more properly considered in the several parts: The whole divided into the Continent and the Islands, which with their subdivisions, may be branched into these particulars, viz. 1 *Cumana*, 2 *Venezuela*, 3 *S. Margarita*, 4 *Cubagna*, and 5 the lesser Islands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the East the *Gulf of Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the West *Venezuela*: on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it; on the banks whereof some *Dominican Fryers* (who first set footing in this Country) built themselves a *Monasterie*; that name communicated afterwards unto all the rest of this Tract.

It is extended East and West to the breadth of 110 leagues; the length thereof from North to South, said to be 400. But there is little of it known, and less of it planted by the *Europeans*; except some places near the Sea: there being no part of all *America*, the description whereof hath come so imperfectly to our hands, as they have of this. For except it be the names of some *Bays*, or *Promontories*, and of two, or three most noted Rivers, there is not much that doth require our consideration.

The Country, for so much as hath been discovered, neither rich nor pleasant; and consequently the less looked after: covered with shrubs, and overgrown with unprofitable briers and bushes. Heretofore famed for *Pearl-fishing*, all along the Coast, from the *Gulf of Paria* to that of *Venezuela*, called therefore *Cofia de las Perlas*; but that gainful trade hath long since failed it. Now only of esteem for a vein of most excellent *Salt*, found near the Promontory of *Araya*, and the Bay of *Cariboo*; gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and yet never diminishing. The parts adjoining take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontory bordering on the *Frith*, called *Boca del Drago*, the title, or appellation of Cape *Salinus*. Of some strange Creatures in this Country, as the beast called *Capi*; the soles of whose feet are like a shoe; a kind of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants, or *Pismires*; *Parots*, and *Bats*, of more than ordinary greatness, I forbear to speak.

Of the people I find nothing singular, except it be, that having plenty of good fruits, as of fish and flesh, they use themselves to a far worse dyet, feeding on *Horseleeches*, *Bats*, *Spiders*, *Grashoppers*, *Worms*, *Lice*, and such other Vermin. In other things they seem to have a mixture of all ill customs used amongst the *Salvages* of *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*; as multitudes of Wives, prostituting these Wives for the first nights lodging, to the *Piccos*, or *Priests*; and for any after, to their *Guests*; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting strange colours on their bodies instead of Garments, high-minded, treacherous, and revengeful; accustomed to the use of poisoned Arrows, which they envenom with Snakes blood, and other mixtures. In one thing only different from the rest of their neighbours, which is the fencing of their Grounds, or Orchards with a *Cotton-thred*, as high as ones Girdle; and an opinion which they have, that whosoever breaketh it, or goes over, or under it, shall die immediately. More safe in that persuasion, than by brazen Walls.

Rivers of most note, though of little, 1 *Rio de Canoas*, 2 *Rio de Neveri*, 3 *Cumana de Bardones*. The chief Havens, or Roads for shipping, 1 *Moxino*, 2 *S. Foy*. And 3 that called *Commenagot*. The places of most consideration, 1 *Cumana*, a Colony of *Spaniards*, on the bank of the River of that name; but distant about two miles from the Sea, on which it hath a safe and convenient Harbour; the Town so hedged about with Woods, that nothing can be seen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governours house, seated upon the top of a lofty Mountain. 2 *S. Jago*, a strong Fortrefs built by the *Spaniards* for defence of the Salt Lake, or *Salinas*, in the year 1622. on some intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpose to take them from him; fortified by the rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of Brasse. 3 *S. Michael de Neveri*, on the River so called, a Fort of the *Spaniards*. 4 *Guaniba*, a Village of the *Natives*.

The Country first discovered in the third voyage of *Christopher Columbus*; but the possession of it was first taken by two *Dominicans*; who out of a Religious zeal to plant the Gospel in these parts founded themselves a little Cell in the place where the Burrough of *Cumana* was after built, *An. 1513.* and doubtless had sped very well in their holy purpose, if some covetous *Spaniards* had not treacherously seized upon

Venezuela.

upon one of the *Chiefs* of their Tribes, and carried him with his Wife and Train into Spanish bondage. For this the poor *Monks* suffered death; I may call it *Martyrdom*; their death revenged by *Alfonso de Ojeda*, An. 1520. and he not long after slain by the *Salvages*, who also at the same time destroyed two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friars, which had been founded in the year 1518. A second force sent hither under *Gonzalvo de Ocampo*, wasteth a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs some of his people. But that strength being withdrawn, or defeated also, *Diego de Castellon* is sent over by the Council resident in *Hispaniola*, to secure the possession of the Country, by whom the Cattle first, and after the Burrough of *Cumana*, was built and planted. Some other attempts therewere for a further conquest, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the Cattle of S. *Michael de Neviri*, by *Hierome of Ortal*, and the discovery of some of the inland Provinces 150 leagues from the Seaside, by *Antonio Sedeno*, An. 1537. of which nothing followed, but the Registering of that tedious march.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the East with *Cumana*; on the West with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alfonso de Ojeda*, one of the first Discoverers of it, An. 1599. because he found a Burrough of some of the *Salvages* situate in the midst of the waters, to which was no passage but by boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from East to West 130 leagues; in breadth where broadest about 80. The soil so plentiful of all sorts both of Fruit and Grain; the Country so replenished with all kind of Cattel, and excellent Pastures to maintain them, that the neighbouring Nations call it by the name of the *Granary*. Such store there goeth from hence of Wheaten meal, *Biscoit*, Cheefe, Hogs flesh, Ox-hides, and cloath of Cotton ready made, as very well deserves that title. Here is also very great plenty of Fish, Wilde beasts for hunting, *Mines* of Gold and other Metals; besides an infinite deal of *Sarsaparilla* sent to Europe yearly.

The people of the same nature and disposition with those of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that Character. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and swim, as well as the men, to till the Land, and look to the business of the house, whilst the men hunt, or fish, to bring in provision. They count it a great part of beauty, to have very thick thighs; which they effect, by binding their legs hard below the knee, from their very Childhood. Shameless enough till married, after more reserved; though rather for fear of a divorce, than for love of modesty.

Rivers of note I meet with none; instead of which many convenient Harbours and capacious Bays. The chief, that called *Golfo triste*, from some shipwracks, or the like misfortune hapning to the Namer of it. 2 The Bay of *Coro*, or *Venezuela*, large and spacious, which by the *Frish*, or Streit of half a league over, receiveth the tribute of, 3 The great Lake called the Lake of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lago de Nuestra Sennora*, or our *Ladies Lake*, in compass about 80 leagues; on the banks whereof dwell many Nations of the *Salvages*, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain commerce with one another.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Maracayana*, the furthest Port upon the East, and one of the best on all this Coast; in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagna* had once a Garrison, under colour of defending the Country against the *Salvages*, but in plain truth to use it for an opportunity to seize upon their persons, and carry them away for *Slaves*. Those parts hereby unpeopled, or but meanly populous. 2 *Venezuela*, the most Western Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro*, situate in the Latitude of 11 Degrees: built on the Sea, where it hath an Haven on each side; the one capacious, but not safe; the other safe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a sweet and healthy air, and neighboured by the richest soil of all the Country, it hath been long the ordinary seat of the Governour, and the See of a *Bishop*, (Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Domingo in Hispaniola*.) Once suddenly surprized by the *English*, An. 1595. and burnt to ashes, but as suddenly repaired again. 3 *Caravalleda*, or *Nuestra Sennora de Caravalleda*, 80 leagues from *Coro* towards the East, seated upon the Sea near an unsafe Haven, and defended from assault by the Castle of *Caracas*, so called from the name of the Tribe in which it standeth. Near unto which the Hills arise to so great an height, that they seem to equal the *Pike* of *Tenariffe* so much talked of. 4 S. *Jago de Leon*, in the same tribe of *Caracas*, took by the *English* the same year. 5 *Nova Valentia*, 25 leagues from S. *Jago de Leon*, and from *Coro* 60. 6 *New Xeres*, lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *Nova Valentia*. 7 *Nova Segovia*, one league only from *New Xeres*; situate on the banks of *Baraguicemiti*, the most noted River of this tract. 8 *Tucayo*, in the Valley so called; not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich *Sugar-Canes*, for which some *Sugar-works*, or *Ingenios* are here lately built. 9 *Traxillo*, or *Nuestra Sennora de la Paz*, eighteen leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a *Factory* for the sale of their wares. 10 *Laguna*, on the bottom of the Lake itself; not else observable but for the multitude of *Tygers* which do haunt about it.

This Country discovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alfonso de Ojeda*, as before is said, was first pretended to for Neighbourhoods-lake, by the *Spaniards* planted in *Cubagna*. Afterwards *John de Anpuez*, by order from the Council resident at *Domingo in Hispaniola*, was employed in the Discovery of it, Anno 1527. But *Charles* the fifth having taken up great sums of money of the *Vesperi* a wealthy Family of *Augsburg*, pawned this Country to them; by whom *Ambrosius Alfinger* was sent with 400 foot, and 80 Horses, to take possession. But he and his Successors in that employment, not minding so much the Conquest as the spoil of the Country; the Council of *Domingo* undertook the business once again; and

in

Margarita.

in the year 1545. sent over one *John de Caravaya*, who treading in the steps of the *Germans*, or rather outgoung them in all sorts of Rapine, was outed on a second order by one *John Perez de Tolosa*, by whom the Province was reduced into some good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africk*, began to mutiny; but their Delign discovered, and themselves all slain. Peace and contentment following after all these troubles, the Country was in little time so thoroughly planted, and the Natives so encouraged in their several Tribes, that notwithstanding the destructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*, here were reckoned not long since above 100000 of the *Salvages*, not numbering those above fifty or under eighteen years of Age; who by an Order of the Council of Spain for these parts of America, are exempt from Taxes.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Island situate over against the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*; from the Main-land whereof it is distant about seven Leagues. So called from the abundance of *Pearls* which the *Spaniards* found at the first Discovery, which the *Latinists* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it signifie no other than the Vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were also store of those of the greater estimate, such as the *Romans* by the figure of the *Antiphrasi*, called *Uniones*, because they alwayes grew in couples. *Nalli duo reperiuntur indifcreti*, saith *Pliny*; unde nomen *Unionum* scilicet *Romanæ* impone re delictæ.

The Isle affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length, and six in breadth; situate under the 11. Degree of Northern Latitude. Well stored with *Pearls* upon the shores, when first discovered; but even then when most plentifully stored with that Commodity, she had not water of her own to quench her thirst, compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwise plentiful enough both of *Maize*, and Fruits. The People obsequiously servile to their Lords, the *Spaniards*; so long accustomed unto bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of most importance in it, 1 *Monpater*, in the East corner of the Island, a Fort of the *Spaniards*, built for securing their rich Trade of *Pearl-fishing*, and to defend their ships which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the house of the Governour. 2 *El valle de Santa Lucia*, two Leagues from the Sea, a Spanish Colony. 3 *Makanao*, the chief Village of the Natives.

This Island first discovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, An. 1498. grew suddenly into great esteem, by reason of the rich *Pearl-fishing*, which they found on the shores thereof. And in regard the Natives were so ready to betray their Treasures (of which themselves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the *Spaniards*, and obtained more liberties from the King, than the rest of the *Salvages*. Inasmuch that the *Spaniards* either could not or would not compel them to dive into the Sea for *Pearl*; but bought *Negro* slaves from *Guinea*, and the Coasts of *Africk*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive into the bottom of the Sea, many times seven or eight Fathom deep, to bring up the *shells*, in which that Treasure was included: where many of them were drowned, and some maimed with *Sharks*, and other Fishes. But that rich Trade is much diminished of late, if it fail not quite. The cause thereof to be imputed to the unsatiable avarice of the *Spaniards*, so greedy upon *Pearl*, that they destroyed the very Seed, and making gain of whatsoever they could meet with, for a little present profit lost the hopes of the future. The Island less famous, and not much frequented. Visited to its cost in the year 1601. by the *English* under Captain *Parker*, who received here 500 l. in *Pearls* for the ransom of Prisoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coast of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes*, to be sold for *Slaves*.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Island lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the first distant but one League, from the other six; it self in compass about three. Rich on the shores, by the abundance of *Pearls* which were found about them, but very beggerly on the Land. Destitute both of grafs and water, by consequence of Cattel also, except only *Conies*, and but few of those. So that like many a Gallant who spend all upon the back, and nothing on the belly, she had her out-side laced with *Pearls*, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their bread and water brought them out of other Countries; and their Fruits too, if they desired to have any; here being very few Trees, and those most of *Guaiacum*. But so abundant in this Treasure, that the Kings Fifths for many years amounted to 15000 *Ducats* yearly out of this poor Island.

In this respect it was presently resorted to, and possessed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony which they called *New Calix*: & grew in short time unto so great power, that they made themselves Masters of the Port of *Maracayana* in *Venezuela*, one of the best upon those Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the *Salvages* of *Cumana* had destroyed the Convent of *Franciscans* on the opposite shore, they cowardly forsook the Island, and fled to *Hispaniola*. Sent back again by the Council there, under the conduct of *James de Castellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautiful and strong than ever formerly. In great esteem as long as the *Pearl-fishing* did continue; now, with that decayed. Yet still the Island doth deserve some consideration, for a Fountain on the East part of it near unto the Sea: continuing, though the *Pearls* be gone; which yieldeth a *Biluminous* substance like Oil, *Medicinal* for diseases, and is found two or three Leagues off, floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of Mankind, and more easily found than the *Pearls* which sunk unto the bottom, and maintained our pride.

Four miles from hence, but appendant to it, lieth a little Island called *Coches*, three miles in compass, but so abundantly stored with *Pearls*, that it hath been worth in that one commodity for some moneths together, above a thousand pounds a moneth of our *English* money. First peopled, upon that occasion, An. 1529. but the occasion failing, the Plantation ended, the Isle being now unpeopled; as not worth the looking after.

5. THE

5. THE LESSER ISLANDS of this Prefecture or Provincial Government, lie all along upon the Coast of *Venezuela*, from East to West; the principal of which 1 *Tortuga*, 12 or 14 miles on the West of *Margarita*; four miles in length, hardly one in breadth; but yielding such good store of Salt, that three or four ships are laden with it every year. Well furnished with Goats and *Guyana*, but not else considerable: except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks; and yielding a convenient Harbour for the use of Mariners. 2 *Catrina*, by the English called the Isle of *Providente*, as the former is by the name of *Association*; both which being void of all Inhabitants and tame Beasts, were possessed by them about the year 1639, at such time as there was open war between *England* and *Spain*; After which, not being claimed by the *Spaniards* in making up the Peace ensuing, they were granted by King *Charles* by his Letters Patents under the great Seal of *England*, to certain Noblemen and Gentlemen, and their Successors, who for the space of 20 years, or thereabouts, have enjoyed them quietly; the Islands being planted by them with their several Colonies, and all things necessary to maintain and enrich the same. 3 *Bonaire*, opposite to the Bay of *Golfo triste*, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees; well furnished with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattel brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with some *Savages* out of *Hispaniola*, whom the *Spaniards* Christened and sent thither: some *Spaniards* with their Governour intermixt amongst them. The Island 16 miles in compass; not fruitful naturally but in Trees, which are great and numerous. 4 *Curacao*, nine miles on the West of *Bonaire*; and as many in compass. Of a more fertile soil by far, and of very rich Pastures: the People given to grazing and make good store of Cheese, transported thence to other places; the Island having toward the North, a convenient Harbour. 5 *Aruba*, on the North-East of *Curacao*, from which nine miles distant, in compass not above five miles, for the most part level. One hill it hath (amongst some others) fashioned like a *Sugar-loaf*. Inhabited by few *Savages*, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Islands on this Coast, as 1 the *Tostigos*, lying Eastward of *Margarita*, 2 *Blanca*, 3 *Orchilla*, 4 *Rocca*, and 5 the Isle of *des Aves*, or of Birds, interposed betwixt *Tortuga* and *Bonaire*; some of them rather Rocks than Islands: few stored with any living creatures for the use of men; and none of them at all with men to manure and dress them, I pass over here: and so proceed from these Islands of the Province of *Paria*, to those which are subordinate to the Council of *S. Domingo*, and make a Province of themselves. But first we must go back, and bring up some of the Islands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And so much of *PERUANA*.

OF

OF THE AMERICAN ISLANDS:

And first of those which are in

MARE del ZUR.



THE AMERICAN ISLANDS, scattered up and down the shores of this New World, are commonly divided into those of *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacific* Ocean; and those of the *Atlantic*, or *Mare del Noort*. The first so called by *Magellanus*, the first Discoverer: who passing through those troublesome and tempestuous Streits which now bear this name, found such a change upon his coming into the Main, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur* (quod a tranquillitate vocavit *Mare del Sur*, saith the Author of the *Atlas Minor*) from the calm and peaceable temper of it. By the *Latines* called *Mare Pacificum*, in the same regard. Called also the *Southern* Ocean, because of its situation on the Southside of *America*, in reference to some part of the *Gulf of Mexico*, and the Streits of *Anian*. Not known unto the *Spaniards* till discovered by *Nonnius Vasques de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Catiques* or petty Kings of the Country about *Nombre di Dios*; Who seeing the *Spaniards* so greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirst should be satisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the opposite shore, this *Balboa* being the chief man in that Adventure: who discovering further on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the rest that followed to the golden treasures of *Peru*: Executed notwithstanding this good service by *Don Pedro de Avila*, within short time after. But the more full discovery of it is to be ascribed unto *Magellanus* and some later Adventurers, though the *Spaniards* got nothing by the bargain. For formerly as long as the *Southern* Sea was unknown to any but themselves, they conveyed their Gold and treasures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loss or charge, and thought their Ports upon that shore to be unaccessible. But after the way unto this Sea was found out by *Magellanus*, *Drake*, *Cavendish*, and the rest of our English Adventurers did so scour these Coasts, that they left them neither Port nor Ship, which they did not tanck; as hath been evidenced before in some particulars.

As for the Islands of this Sea, they lie most of them so neer the shores, as if placed there by Nature to serve as *Outworks* to defend the *Continent*. Many in tale, but few of consideration; and of those few some of the chief have been described already in their proper places, as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The residue which lie too far off to come under such consideration, must be mentioned here; and those reduced to these two heads, 1 *Los Ladrones*, 2 the Islands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Islands situate betwixt the main Land of *America* and the *Philippine* Islands, in the Longitude of 185. and the 4 Degree of Northern Latitude. So called by *Magellanus* who first discovered them, because of the thievery of the Inhabitants (*Insula Latronum* is their name in *Latine*) who had stoln his cock-boat, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue still both their name and nature. Found such by *Cavendish* and *Noort* in their several voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying *Iron* (a commodity which they highly prize) but either closely or openly stealing whatsoever they met with. The people tall of stature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extremely active, and good *Divers*, continuing a long time under the water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; inasmuch as the *Hollanders* then with *Noort*, to make trial of it, cast five peices of *Iron* into the Sea, all fetched out by one of them. The *Women* as good at it as the men. Both sexes given to filthy and promiscuous lusts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their incontinency, the *Pox* having eaten up both their Lips and their Noses.

Their Religion is worshipping the *Devil*, whose Images they have in wood on the head of their Boats; the Chappel and the Saints for such devotions. But for the nature of these Islands, and what subjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of *Spain*, I am yet to seek. But like enough they yield as little as some others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authors to be parts of *America*.

2. The Island of *John Fernandes*, are two in number: so called from *John Fernandes* the first Discoverer, *Ann.* 1574. each of them five or six miles in compass, and about 300 miles distant from the shores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33 degree of *Southern* Latitude; rocky and barren, but well wooded, and those woods replenished with Goats, but their flesh not savory as in other places. Some store of *Sanders* there is in them, and of *Palms* so scarcity. Plenty of *Fish* upon the shores, for which cause visited sometimes

Z z z z

by

Caribes.

by the Spaniards lying in *Pern*: and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for shipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they pass this way. None else of note in all this Sea, but such as lie upon the shores of their several Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore passing through the *Straits*, and coming up unto the Islands of *Paria*, where before we left; we will now look on those of *Mare del Noort*, or that part of the *Atlantick* which washeth the shores of this *New world* (the reason of which names we have seen before) subordinate to the Counsel or Government of *S. Domingo*, viz. 1 the *Caribes*, 2 *Porto Rico*, 3 *Hispaniola*, 4 *Cuba*, and 5 *Jamaica*. The rest already spoken of in their proper places.

3. THE CARIBES.

THE *CARIBES*, or *Cannibal Islands*, are in number many; 27 of them known by their proper names; the rest of less note (though some of these of little enough) not yet so distinguished. Called thus in general, because inhabited by *Cannibals* and Man-eating people (at their Discovery) as the word *Caribes* doth import. They lie extended like a Bow from the coast of *Paria* unto the Isle of *Rico Porto*: of different temper, as must needs be in such variety; and therefore not within the compass of a general Character. Some of the principal we shall consider more distinctly; and for the rest it will be trouble enough to them, or else pass them by.

1. *GRANADA* the nearest of this crew to the Main-land of *Cumana*, is situate in the Latitude of 20 degrees and 15 Minuts; in form like a *Crescent* or half Moon, the two horns not a mile asunder, the whole length but six. Shaded all over with thick Woods, but notwithstanding of a rich and fruitful soil. A Haven in it of good use, but no Town of note. The people of the same ill condition with the other *Savages*, but more wit to hide it; most mischievously intended when they seem most kind; and then the more to be avoided.

2. *S. VINCENT* 18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of so blessed a soil, that it brings forth abundance of *Sugar-Canes* without charge to the Husbandman, watered with many pleasant Rivers, and full of safe and convenient *Bays* for the use of Mariners. In figure *Circular*, the Diameter being six miles over; the Circle by consequence eighteen. The people but of mean stature, slothful, and studious only for their Belly: their love to which makes them adventure in their small Boats, hewn out of the body of a Tree, to pass into the Continent, and return again, without help of the Compass; though distant from it at the nearest, above 30 miles.

3. *BARBADOS* on the North-east of *S. Vincent* in the Latitude, of 13 Degrees, and 20 Minutes. Of an Oval form 17 or 18 miles in compass. The soil in shew like that of *England*, but far more fruitful: on the East-side thrusting out it self with Points and Angles, which yield some *Bays*, but full of *Quick-sands*, and unsafe for shipping, on the South furnished with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very well provided for Fruits or Cattel, till made a Colony of the *English*; who have brought thither from their own Country, Swine and Kine; *Oranges*, and the like from others. The chief Commodity made hitherto of this Plantation, comes by the planting of *Tobacco*; and by a kind of course *Sugar* called *Barbadoes Sugar*, which must be quickly spent, or will melt to nothing. Were they in stock, and not forced to make a quick return of their Commodities, they might make here as good *Sugars* as in other places. Yet this Plantation said to be worth all the rest which are made by the *English*; who (as I take it) are the sole Colony in the Island: but at the courties of the *Spaniard*; without whose leave and liking not of force to hold it.

4. *MANTININO* on the North-west of the *Barbados*, by the *Savages* called *Mandanimam*, with little difference. Everywhere swelled with Hills, of which three most eminent for height: one of them, which way soever a man looks upon it, carrying the resemblance of an *Hut*. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr* the Historian, with none but *Women*: afterwards with a more fierce and barbarous people than the rest of these Islands: but neither Men or Women to be seen of late: whether destroyed, or removed further from the shores for fear of their destruction, is a thing uncertain.

5. *DOMINICA*, seated on the North of *Mantinino*, twelve leagues in length; exceeding fruitful of *Tobacco*, which they sell unto the *Europeans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other Instruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of *Hot-water*, and a commodious Haven at the West-side of it, into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The people as barbarous as ever *Cannibals* or *Man-eaters* to this very day: At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, and to no man trusty, but where they cannot hurt, or dare not. Both sexes wear their hair long, and colour their bodies over with *Oaker*. Yet bloody and barbarous though they be, they are ruled by a King of their own, distinguished from the rest in his dress or habit, whom they most readily obey.

6. *DESSEADA*, or the Land of *Desire*, on the North-east of *Dominica*, discovered by *Columbus* in his second Voyage; naked of Trees, and at the first sight afar off, not unlike a *Galley*. Of great use to the *Spaniards*, who always take it in their way from the *Canaries* to these parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The

Porto Rico.

The like use do they make of 7. The Isle of *GUADALUPE*, parallel to this, but directly Westward: at which the Fleets which come from *Spain* use to take fresh water, and there disperse themselves to their several Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in most parts of the Sea adjoining. North-east from hence lieth

8. *S. Maria del Antigua*, commonly called *ANTIGUA* only, and by some mistakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven leagues in length, and as much in breadth; difficult of access, and destitute of fresh water, but well replenished of woods, and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colony of the *English*, who do still possess it.

9. *S. CHRISTOPHER*, on the North-west of *Guadalupe* in the Latitude of 17 Degrees and 20 Minuts. The length six miles, the breadth in many places four, and in some but two: much swelled with hills, and towards the East provided of several *Salt-wiches*. The *French* and *English* had sometimes in it several Colonies: by whom the *Natives* were destroyed, or otherwise compelled to forsake their dwellings; convicted, as was pretended, of some manifest treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the sole possession; ejected by *Frederick de Toledo*, as he passed this way with his Navy; though suffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable then dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief employment and commodity lies in their *Tobacco*, by some much commended. Joining hereto, or but a league from it at the most, is

10. The Isle of *NIEVE*, affirmed to be five leagues in compass; well wooded, and as pleasantly watered; inasmuch as the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Dominica* used to come thither for their pleasures, but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for some *Bathes* or *Hot-waters*, found out by the *English*, who in the year 1528. placed a Colony in it. But whether substituting of it self, or a part of their Plantation in *S. Christophers*, I am yet to learn.

11. *SANCTA CRUX*, by the Inhabitants called *Ayns*, on the North-west of *S. Christophers*, and the South-east of *Porto Rico*, from which last distant 15 leagues. Woody and mountainous; not well provided of fresh waters; but on the West-side furnished with a safe and commodious Road, under the covert of the Mountains. Amongst their fruits some that resemble a *green Apple*; which tasted, so inflames the tongue, that for 24 hours it swelleth in so great extremity, as makes it altogether useless, but after that by little and little it abates again. The like hapneth also to the face, if washed before Sun-rising with their *Fen-waters*, which are very frequent in this Island; after the rising of the Sun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colony of the *English* also, but of later standing then those of *S. Christophers*, and *Barbados*.

Some of the principal of the rest, 1 *Anguilla*, 2 *Barbada*, 3 *S. Bartholomews*, 4 *S. Lucies*, 5 *S. Martins*, 6 *Montserrat*, 7 *Rotunda*, 8 *Saba*, 9 *Virgo Gorda*, & 10 *Smilero*; of which we have little but the names: the rest, though known by several names, are not worth the naming. Only we are to add concerning the whole Nation of *Caribes*, once here inhabiting, that they did usually hunt for Men, as Men for Beasts, roving as far as *Porto Rico* to seek after their prey; and what they caught, was sure to go to the pot, in the worst sense too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Isle of *Guadalupe*, found 30 Captive Children which were reserved to be eaten, and in their houses divers vessels filled with *Man's flesh*, and some upon the Spit ready to be roasted. Nor had they laid aside this diet, till after the year 1564. but how long I know not: For at that time a *Spanish* ship coming to water at the Isle of *Dominica*; they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Islands have been of late times well cleared of those Monsters; some of them brought unto better order, but the most destroyed as the common Enemies of mankind; the Islands where they dwell being either totally deserted, or taken up by the *Europeans* and their several Colonies.

2 PORTO RICO: And 3 MONICO.

PORTO RICO lyeth on the North-west of *Sancta Crux*, from which distant about 15 leagues, and near upon as many from *Hispaniola*, 136 leagues from the main Land of *Paria*, and not much less from the Cape of *Coguibaco* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Castilla Aurea*. It took this name from the chief Town and Haven of it; but was called by *Columbus* at the first discovery *S. Johannis Isola*, or the Isle of *St. Johns*; by the *Natives* *Boriquen*.

It is situate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern Latitude; in form quadrangular, but of a greater length then breadth, such as the *Geometricians* call *oblongum*: The length hereof being 30 leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Air hereof very pleasant and temperate, not scorched with furious heats in Summer, nor made offensive by the fall of continual rains; exposed sometimes (chiefly in *August*, and *September*) to the troublefomeness of sudden tempests, called *Hericanos*. The soil indifferently fruitful, though somewhat mountainous: here being (besides other Hills of inferior note) a ridge of high Hills which run cross the Country from the one end unto the other. Their chief commodities *Sugar-canes*, *Ginger*, *Cassia*, and great store of Hides; the *Europeans* Cattle having so abundantly increased, that they kill thousands for their skins, leaving the flesh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some *Mines* here were of Gold and Silver, but consumed long since. And so are all the *Natives* also; of whom, in that respect, impertinent to give any Character.

Z z z z

Chief

Hispaniola.

Chief Rivers of the Island, 1 *Cairobon*, 2 *Boyaman*: of divers fountains, and of several and divided courses. 3 *Luyfa*, & 4 *Ton*, two Rivers growing out of one. The Spring of that one in the Mountains of *Mayamo*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 leagues together, doth afterwards divide it self into those two streams. 5 *Guiano*, 6 *Arczibo*, 7 *Guadiabo*, of lesser note; but all of them, as well as all the rest before, concluding in some safe and capacious Haven.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Porto Rico* the chief Town, built in a little Island, on the North side of the greater, but joynted unto it with huge piles, and vault expences, by the command of *Philip* the first, *An. 1504*. Well built, with large streets, and convenient houses, according to the model of the Cities of *Spain*, and beautified with a fair Cathedral; the Bishop one of the *Suffragans* of the Archbishop of *S. Domingo* in *Hispaniola*. The Town unwall'd, but fortified with two strong Castles: the one of which secures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loss of 40 or 50 men, by *Sir Francis Drake*, *An. 1595*. but taken two years after by *George Earl of Cumberland*, who had a purpose to have peopled it with an *English* Colony. Discouraged from it by the death of 400 of his men, by change of Air, and some intemperance of Diet; he set sail for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Island, but the disfiguring it of 70 piece of Ordnance, and some part of their treasure, which he brought home with him. 2 *S. Germans*, in the Western part of the Island, but four leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Island, now both unfortified and small, 3 *Arczibo*, on the River so called. 4 *Luyfa*, the most noted Port of the Eastern parts, situate on the mouth of the River so named.

Eastward hereof betwixt it and *Hispaniola*, lies the Island of *Mona*, (might not this think we be so called by *Madoc ap Owen Gwynedd*, of whom before?) three leagues in compass; rocky and of a brackish earth; but fit for the production of Limons, Oranges, and such kind of fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off, but more towards the West, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *English* call it, where they found such infinite store of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as hail, and made them almost deaf with the very noise; their Eggs so thick upon the ground, that they loaded two boats with them in three hours, and could hardly pass forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Isle of *St. Johns*, it was touched upon by *Columbus* in his second voyage, *An. 1493*. but first inhabited by *John Ponce de Leon*, *An. 1510*. who being courteously entertained by *Aguabana*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colony of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Island, which he called *Caparra*. The Colony ten years after that removed to *Guanica*, and from thence to *S. Germans*: carrying with it the repute of the chief Town of all the Island, upon every remove till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it since hath fixed. The Island very populous for the bigness of it, when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives long ago consumed by several *Butcheries*; and as some write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* in all the Country. What else concerns the story of it, we have seen before.

HISPANIOLA.

HISPANIOLA lyeth on the West of *Porto Rico*; the distance we have seen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haity*, and by some *Quisqua*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hispaniola*, or little *Spain*; and of late times beginneth to be called *S. Domingo*, from the chief Town of it.

The form thereof *Triangular*, extended in a sharp Angle, called *Cabo del Enganno*, towards *Porto Rico*: the Western end fashioned like a Bay, or *Semicircle*; the Northern point of which is named *S. Nicholas*; the Southern, *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in some places 60, in some but 30, thence growing less and less till it come unto the Eastern Angle; the whole compass estimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 and 20 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Of an Air much infested with Morning-heats, but cooler in the Afternoon by the constant blowing of a Sea-gale, which they there call *Virson*.

The Country for the most part beautiful and flourishing; the Trees always in their Summer-livery, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual Spring. In many places swelled with high craggie Mountains, whence the name of *Hayty*, that word so signifying in the natural language of the Natives. Of such an excellent herbage, that the Cattel brought thither out of *Spain* have increased almost beyond *Arithmetic*; grown wilde for want of proper Owners; and hunted unto death like the Stags of the Forrest, though only to rob them of their skins. The soil so fertile, that in the space of sixteen dayes Herbs and Roots will grow ripe, and be fit to be eaten. So plentifully stored with *Ginger*, and *Sugar-canes*, that in the year 1587, there were shipped hence 27500. pound weight of *Ginger*, and 900. Chefts of refined *Sugar*; an evident argument of the riches and fertility of it. A further proof hereof may be, the rich Mines of Gold, in which they used to find Gold without mixture of dross or other metals. 2 The great increase of *Sugar*, one Cane here filling twenty, sometimes thirty measures. 3 The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in some places to an hundred fold. But the Mines were long ago exhausted, inasmuch as the Inhabitants are fain to use brass Money: but instead of those of Gold, they have found out others of Brass and Iron, and some few of *Silver*; but not much searched into of late for want of Workmen.

The reason of that want to be ascribed unto the Covetousness and Cruelty of the Spanish Nation: who out of an insatiable thirst for Gold, consumed the people in their Mines; and out of the like thirst for Blood, killed so many of them, that in few years they destroyed three Millions of the Natives. And it is probably supposed, that had not *Charles* the 5. restrained them by a Penal Edict from compelling

pulling the Natives against their wills to those works of servitude, there had not been one Native left in all this Island, nor in any other part of their Plantations. Such as are left, are said to be of low stature, of black hair, and a complexion somewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in manners, habit, or Religion from the *Spaniards* there.

Rivers of most note, 1 *Ozama*, on whose Banks stands *Domingo*, the chief Town of the Island, capable of the greatest ships to the very Wharf. 2 *Nigua*, which passing through the rich Pastures, or making the Pastures rich, by its secret virtue; runneth towards the West: as do also, 3 *Yaguimo*, 4 *Nizao*, and 5 *Neyba*, 6 *Hayna*, of a contrary course to the other three. 7 *Tapi*, or *Jacho*, which falleth into the Northern Seas. 8 *Nicayagu*, 9 *Cocitecnica*, 10 *Xunigue*. These three last famous heretofore for their Sands of Gold. Some speak of 30000 Brooks and Rivers, which are found in this Country; two parts of which vast number had their Golden Sands. A thing so far beyond the charity of the strongest Faith, (though reported by a grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-course, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided, when the *Spaniards* first came amongst them, into several Provinces or Kingdoms; as 1 *Higuey*, 2 *Jaguagua*, 3 *Samana*, in the Eastern parts. 4 *Yaguimo*, 5 *Boaruco*, and 6 *Xaragua*, towards the South. 7 *Guababo*, and 8 *Cabaya*, in the West: and in the North, 9 *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold; 10 *Maricao*. The Landing place of *Columbus*; and 11 *Maguana* in the center of the Island, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Canabo*, of greatest power of any of those petty Royalties. Another division of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all rising from one Mountain in the midst of the Island into four Divisions: the River *Jacho* running towards the North; 2 *Nubiba* hasting to the South; 3 *Tuna*, or *Juna* towards the East; and 4 *Hatibonico* to the West. But these divisions being long since grown out of use, we will survey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are 1 *S. Domingo*, first built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, *An. 1494*. on the East bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1502.) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governour of the Island to the opposite shore. Situate in a pleasant Country, amongst wealthy Pastures, and neighboured with a safe and capacious Haven: the houses elegantly built, most of them of stone, and the whole well walled, beside a Castle at the West end of the Peer to defend the Haven: enriched by the residence of the Governour, the Courts of Justice, the See of an Archbishop (and besides many Convents and Religious houses) an Hospital endowed with 20000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Esteemed of greatest Trade and concourse of Merchants till the taking of *Mexico*, and the Discovery of *Pern*; since that time sensibly decaying; and now reduced unto the number of 600 Families of *Spaniards*: the greatest part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negros*, *Mulatos*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by *Sir Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586. took it by force, and held it for the space of a month, burning the greatest part of the houses, and suffering the rest to be redeemed at a certain price. 2 *St. Salvador*, 28 leagues to the East of *Domingo*. 3 *Jaguana*, called also *Sancta Maria del Porto*, from a safe and beautiful Haven adjoining to it; situate in the West part of the Island, of no great bigness, consisting of no more than 150 houses, when it was at the greatest; but made much less by Captain *Newport*, who in the year 1591. burnt it to the ground. 4 *Cotny*, in the North of the Island, opposite to *S. Domingo*, from which distant almost 60 leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great esteem for its Mines of Gold. 5 *Concepcion de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*, for whose sake afterwards adorned with a See Episcopal. 6 *Puerto de la Plata*, 40 leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern shore, where built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by whom also fortified: the second Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Island. 7 *Acua*, now called *Compofella*, a noted Haven, and resorted to for *Sugars*, which it yields abundantly.

This Island was first discovered by *Columbus* (for I believe not that it was any of the fortunate Islands which we read of in the life of *Sertorius*) in the first voyage which he made: conducted thither by some of the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Cuba*: Landing, and gaining the good will of the *Savages*, by gentle usage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or *Caciques* to build a Fortrefs in his Country, which he called *Navidad*, or *Natividad* leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep possession: whom he found both mastered and murdered at his coming back. Being now better furnished for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Isabella*, (in honour of *Isabella* Queen of *Castile*) near the Mines of *Cibao*; which afterwards was deserted also, and the Colony removed unto *S. Domingo*: the *Spaniards* sending one Colony after another, till at last their number was increased to 14000. besides women and children. But having rooted out the Natives by their infinite cruelties, and exhausted the riches of the Country with as infinite covetousness, they betook themselves to fresher Quarries, abandoning the Island to devour the Continent. Once had the Islanders rebelled, and fortified themselves in the Province of *Boaruco*; a place so naturally strong, that there was little need of the helps of Art. Not brought to leave that fastness but on such conditions as made the *Spaniards* less insolent, and themselves less slaves.

CUBA.

CUBA lyeth on the West of *Hispaniola*, from which parted by a Frith or narrow Channel, interposed betwixt the two Capes of *S. Nicholas*, and that of *Maya*, Backed on the North with a frie of Islands, called the *Lucas*, and some part of the Peninsula of *Florida*; extended towards the East to the extrem

Cuba.

extrem point or Foreland of *Jucuman*, called *Cape de Cotoche*, from which distant about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Isle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West, that is to say, from *Cape Mexic* towards *Hispaniola*, to the Cape of *St. Anthony*, 230 Leagues; in breadth where broadest hardly 40, but fifteen in others. For the fertility of the Soil contending with *Hispaniola* for the preeminence; but in the temperature of the Air a great deal before it. Liberally stored with *Ginger*, *Cassia*, *Mistle*, *Aloes*, *Cinnamon* and *Sugar*, (not reckoning such commodities as are common unto this with others) besides great plenty of *Flesh*, and *Fish*; and of *Fowl* no scarcity. The *Gold* more droffie in the Mine, then in *Hispaniola*, but the *Brass* more perfect, *Hilly*, and full of lofty Mountains; but those Mountains clad with divers trees, some of which drop the purest *Rosin*, and the Hills sending to the Valleys many notable Rivers. Pestered with many sorts of Serpents; not so much out of any ill condition of the Soil and Air, as by an old Superstition of the *Savages*: in former times not suffered to kill them when they might (this being a dish reserved for the higher Powers) nor able afterwards to destroy them when it would have been suffered.

What other *Savage* Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they should not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may add in memory of the first Inhabitants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Island, addressed himself unto *Columbus* at his first coming hither, advising him to use his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the faults of men have two journeys when they leave this world; the one foul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel person; the other delectable and pleasant for the men of peace. It is said also of them they knew not the use of money, nor understood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*: *Tenants in common* to the blessings which the earth brought forth, and *Cobbers* of Nature.

Amongst the *Rarities* of this Island, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy substance, which is found frequently on the Seas into which it falleth, excellent for the *Calking* of ships: Secondly, a Navigable River (but the name not told us) the waters of which were so hot, that a man could not endure to hold his hand in them. They tell us also thirdly, of a Valley 15 Leagues from *S. Jago*, which produceth Stones exactly round, as if made for pleasure; but yet merely natural. But these no greater produceth Stones exactly round, as if made for pleasure; but yet merely natural. But these no greater *Rarities* then in other places: nor altogether so great as in *Hispaniola*. Of which they tell us of a fair River, whose waters are salt, and yet none but fresh streams fall into it: Of another Lake (three leagues in compass) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any Exit. Neither of these so strange or rare as the *Cucuyo*, a kind of *Scarabe* or *Beetle*: the eyes and wings whereof when opened give so great a light, in the darkest places, that a man may see to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle.

Rivers of most note, 1 *Cante*, much annoyed with *Crocodiles* (a Beast not common in these Islands, nor elsewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to such as repose themselves on the Banks of the River. 2 *Arimao*, which disburtheneth it felt neer the Port of *Xagua*. 3 *Ria de Porcos*, full of Rocks and quicksands, at the entrances of it. 4 *Rio Escondida*, passing betwixt *Habana*, and the Port of *Marcana*. 5 *Marien*, and 6 *Tanne*, of less note: Besides these there is *Xagua*, a safe Station and Road for shipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and spacious when once entered, above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all sides from the winds, that ships lie here in safety without any Anchor. Some other Bays there be as useful, though not so considerable.

Towns of most consequence, 1 *S. Jago* in the South part of the Island, situate about two leagues from the Main, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the most noted Port of all these Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velasquez*, An. 1514. Afterwards made a Bishops See, beautified with a Cathedral; some Religious houses; once not inferior unto any for numbers of People, though now few enough. 2 *Baracao*, 30 leagues on the East of *S. Jago*, the same Foundation as the other; and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben-wood*. 3 *Salvador*, by some called *Baymo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it standeth; built by *Velasco* in the most pleasant and richest part of all the Island; but not so fitly, as the other, for Trade and Merchandise. 4 *Porto del Principe*, an Haven Town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchie or bituminous liquor, spoken of before; which I conceive to be much of the same nature with the Fountains of *Naphia* in the East. 5 *Trinidad*, another of *Velasco*'s foundations, nine or ten leagues Eastward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now forsaken, and meer nothing. 6 *Havana* in the North parts, opposite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port; so strongly situate and fortified both by Nature and Art, that it seems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Castles; a greater then either opposite to the mouth of the Haven; all so commodiously built, and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and scatter the greatest Navy. Neer one of them standeth an high Tower, from the top whereof notice is given unto the *Guards*, of every ship that cometh within view of the *Watchmen*. The best assurance not only of this Island but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the most part with the seat of the *Governour*, and the greatest Trade of all these Seas: the Ships which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the Gulf, carrying here for one another, till all meet together, and setting sail from hence by the *Streits* of *Bahama*, amongst the Isles of the *Ducais*.

This Island one of the first which was discovered by *Columbus*: who having almost tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, first fell upon the Island of *Guanamani*, one of the *Lacair*, to which he gave the name of *S. Saviour*. From thence he sailed to *Baracao*, on the North of this Island, which he caused to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the Catholic, King of *Castile* and *Aragon*; at whose charge and the encouragement of *Isabella* his Heroick Queen, he pursued this enterprise. Landing, he asked the People if they knew *Cipango* (by which name *Paulus Venetus* calls the Isle of *Japan*) and they conceiving that he enquired after *Cibao* (of great note for the richest Mines in *Hispaniola*) pointed towards *Haiti*;

Jamaica.

Haiti; some of them going with him to conduct him thither. Cuba by this means laid aside, and all the thoughts of *Spain* upon *Hispaniola*, where they found many golden provocations to invite their stay; till hungering after more Gold, and some new Plantations, they passed over hither: and in few years by the prudent conduct of *Velasco*, got such footing in it, and made that footing good by so many Colonies; that their title and possession was beyond dispute; and so continued to this day.

6. JAMAICA.

JAMAICA lyeth on the South of *Cuba*, from which distant 20 leagues; and as much, or very little more from *Hispaniola*. Discovered in the second voyage of *Columbus*, by whom named *S. Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from East to West about 50 leagues, and in breadth 20. the whole compass estimated at 150: the middle of it under the 18 Degree of Northern Latitude. Of a rich Soil; abundantly provided of all things necessary: well stocked with Cattle, and no less plentifully stored with most sorts of Fruits, which either Industry or Nature have supplied it with. Great store of *Cotton-wool*; and such abundance of *Guacas*, (a Root whereof the *Savages* once made their bread) that it was deemed the *Granary* of the neighbouring Island. And were it not disurnished of convenient Ports (which is all the want of it) would be as much frequented by Sea-faring men, as any other in those parts. Once very populous, now destitute of all the natural Inhabitants: this Island, and that of *Porto Rico*, losing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniards* cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the men, but destroyed posterity: the *Women*, here and elsewhere so abominating their sad condition, that they strangled their Children in the birth, to the end they might not live to serve such a cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof (for though it be well watered, it hath no great Rivers) 1 *Sevilla*, in the North-part of the Island, beautified with a goodly Monastery, the Abbot whereof hath all *Episcopal* jurisdiction, and is privileged to wear a *Miter*; in nothing more enabled, then that *Peter Martyr* the Historian (to whose *Decades* all succeeding Ages are to be beholding, for the *Chorography*, and *History* of these parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2 *Melilla*, a small Town, but memorable for the unfortunate shipwreck of *Columbus*, on the shores adjoining. 3 *Oristan*, on the South of the Island, fourteen leagues from *Sevil*. 4 *De la Vega*, now a ruine only, once a *Spanish* Colony; and of great fame for giving the title of *Dukes* to *Christopher Columbus*, and his brother *Bartholomew*. Since whole time nothing hapned prejudicial to the State of this Island by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*; till conquered, but not held, by *Sir Anthony Shirley*, An. 1596.

Thus having took a short Survey of the several parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government committed chiefly to two great *Vice-Royes*, the one of *Nova Hispania*, who resides at *Mexico*; the other of *Peru*, who abideth at *Lima*; the principal Cities of those Kingdoms. The first hath jurisdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Galicia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Guatimala*, *Castella Aurea*, and the Prov'nces of the *Mexican* Islands; the other over those of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such scattered pieces as they hold in *Guiana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to some of these. Of these the *Vice-Roy* of *Peru* is of greatest power, because he hath the nomination of all the *Commanders* and *Officers* within his Government: which in the other are reserved to the King himself. But that of *New Spain* counted for the better preferment, because of its nearness unto *Spain* (in respect of the other) the beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the administration of Justice, and ordering the Affairs of the several Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lieth no Appeal: that is to say, 1 *Guadalajara*, for *Gallicia Nova*. 2 *Mexico*, for *New Spain*. 3 *S. Domingo*, for the Province of the Islands. 4 *Guatimala*, for the division so named. 5 *Panama*, for *Castella Aurea*. Then for the other Government, *Quito*, *Lima*, and *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*. 9 *Imperiale*, for *Chile*. 10 *S. Foy*, for the new Realm of *Granada*. From these, though no Appeal do lie in matter of Justice; yet both from them and the two *Vice-Royes* an Appeal may lie in affairs of State, or point of Grievance. And to this end there is a standing Council in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the Council of the Indies, consisting of a President, eight Counsellors, two Proctors, *Fiscal* (which we call the *Solicitors* General) and two Secretaries, besides other Officers: to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of these Countries; to appoint the *Vice-Royes*, to dispose of all the great offices (except those of the Government of *Peru*) and spiritual Dignities; to appoint *Vissers* to go into those Provinces for the examining the actions of all Officers, hearing the grievances of the People, and to displace or punish as they find occasion; but with the Kings privy and consent.

As for the *Estates* of private men, they which hold Lands or *Royalties* from the Crown of *Spain*, hold them but for life (except it be the Marquess of *Valla* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*) after their deaths returning to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldest son, or the next of blood; but so that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of theirs. And though they have many times attempted to make these *Commanderies* and *Estates* hereditary, and offered great sums of money for it, both to *Charles* the fifth, and *Philip* the second; yet they could never get it done; the Kings most prudently considering, that these great Lords having the command of the *Estates* and Persons of their several *Passals*, would either grinde them into powder without any remedy; or upon any *Inquisition* into their proceedings, take an occasion to revolt. Both dangers of no small importance, both by this uncertainty of their present Tenure, exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King receiveth hence, is said to be three Millions of Ducats yearly: most of it rising out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver: the rest by Customs upon Manufactures.

Jamaica.

factures and all sorts of Merchandise, and the Acknowledgments reserved upon Lands and Royalties. But out of this there goeth great *Exits*, that is to say, to the two Vice-roys 12000 Ducats; to the President and Officers of the Council of the Indies in Spain 20000 Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the several Courts of Judicature very liberal Pensions; to every Archbishop and Bishop, of which there are 29 in all, 2000 Ducats at the least, and to some much more to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite charges, in maintaining Garrisons, and entertaining standing Bands both of Horse and Foot, in several parts of this Estate; and the continual keeping of a strong *Armada*, to conduct his *Plate Fleets* to Spain, there must be made a great abatement, and the sum will bear it. For howsoever at the first his Revenue came from thence without any great charge more than the keeping a few Souldiers to awe the *Savages*; yet after he fell fowl with England, and startled the *Hollanders* to a Rebellion, he was compelled to fortifie all his Havens, and secure his Ports, and to maintain a strong *Armada* at the Sea to Convoy his Treasures. Before which time, the *English* (as is instanced in several places) did so share in his Harvest, that they left him scarce enough to pay his Workmen; which if they should attempt again upon any breach, they would find it very difficult, if not impossible, to effect any thing on the Coasts, as in former times; or indeed any other way but by making themselves too strong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from coming to him to supply his needs.

And so much for the *AMERICAN* Islands.

Having thus travelled over (with Gods blessing) the *known parts* of the World, and sailed through the most difficult Seas which embrace the same: we should now man our Barque again, and try what discovery we can make of the *Parts unknown*, or not so fully known to us as the others are.

atqui
Quo properas mea cymba? redi, satis ardua Pontus
Navimus; ecce Aulter pluvias jam cogere nubes
Incipit, hic tutum non est (mibi crede) morari.
Dum licet in Portum tendamus; nubila claram
Reddiderint ubi pulsa diem, revocabit ab Alto
Nos Triton Scopulo, atq; iterum tentabimus aquor.

That is to say,

But whether goes my Bark? Return, for we
Have sliced the capering Brine enough; see, see,
The Southwind 'gins to gather clouds apace,
'Tis no safe tarrying in so fierce a place.
While thou hast time retire thou wearied Bark
Into safe Harbour; when the clouds which dark
The Worlds bright eye shall be dispelled away,
And shining *Phœbus* make a lightsome day,
Tritons shrill Trump shall thee recal again,
From the safe Harbour to the foaming main;
And we with all our powers will boldly try,
What of this *UNKNOWN WORLD* we can decry.

A Table

A Table of the LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

A	Longit.	Latit.	General name	Longit.	Latit.
<i>Capulo</i>	276 0	18 0	<i>Guatimala</i>	319 20	15 20
<i>Almeria</i>	272 15	20 0	<i>Guatimala</i>	303 0	24 20
<i>Ancon</i>	321 0	6 20			
<i>Antegada</i>	296 0	50 0 A.	H		
<i>S. Anna Equitum</i>	318 10	27 30 A.	<i>Huignado</i>	310 30	54 0
<i>Antigna</i>	330 20	16 10	<i>Havana</i>	292 10	20 0
<i>Antiochia</i>	300 50	6 40	<i>Hochekaga</i>	300 50	44 10
<i>Arica</i>	300 30	20 0 A.	<i>Hunedo</i>	324 0	51 30
<i>Ascension</i>	353 20	18 50 A.			
<i>Aravala</i>	298 10	1 30	I		
<i>Acuzamil</i>	289 30	19 0	<i>Jabaque</i>	315 15	17 15
<i>S. Angustin</i>	293 0	29 50	<i>S. Jago</i>	298 10	30 10
			<i>Isabella</i>	305 20	18 50
B			L		
<i>Bahama</i>	296 30	27 0	<i>Lempa</i>	274 10	16 50
<i>Bachados</i>	322 0	13 0	<i>Lima</i>	296 40	23 30
<i>Bovincas</i>	296 50	15 50	<i>Loxa</i>	293 30	9 50 A.
			M		
C			<i>Malagnana</i>	306 0	23 40
<i>Campa</i>	351 40	62 50	<i>Malones</i>	279 40	13 40
<i>Cartagena</i>	300 0	20 10	<i>Maracapana</i>	312 10	8 0
<i>Carthago</i>	299 30	3 10	<i>Margarita</i>	314 10	10 50
<i>Caxamalca</i>	298 30	11 30 A.	<i>Mexico</i>	283 0	38 30
<i>Chesfapiake</i>	308 0	38 0	<i>Martha</i>	301 20	10 40
<i>Chiafmetlan</i>	260 0	25 40	<i>S. Michael</i>	291 40	6 10 A.
<i>Chile</i>	299 0	36 30 A.	<i>S. Michael</i>	327 10	47 20
<i>Colima</i>	267 20	19 50	<i>Mona</i>	309 30	18 0
<i>Collao</i>	300 0	16 0 A.	<i>Monsorate</i>	319 10	15 40
<i>Coquimbo</i>	301 20	20 40 A.	<i>Montroyal</i>	301 0	45 40
<i>Coranba</i>	316 20	33 0 A.	<i>Mopoxe</i>	301 10	10 0
<i>Coano</i>	259 40	31			
<i>Comillacan</i>	266 30	27 0	N		
<i>Cusco</i>	297 20	13 30 A.	<i>Navaca</i>	300 20	17 10
			<i>Nicola</i>	284 30	10 40
D			<i>Nives</i>	318 40	16 20
<i>Darien</i>	295 40	5 30	<i>Nombre de Dios</i>	294 30	9 20
<i>Descada</i>	320 0	15 20	<i>Nornmbea</i>	315 40	43 40
<i>Dominica</i>	359 40	14 0			
			P		
E F			<i>Paca</i>	302 50	13 10 A.
<i>Esfade</i>	305 10	47 40	<i>Paito</i>	290 30	5 10 A.
<i>Fernambuc</i>	351 40	9 20	<i>Panama</i>	294 30	8 30
			<i>Panuco</i>	270 10	22 20
G			<i>Pasto</i>	304 0	11 40 A.
<i>Gorgona</i>	295 10	3 20	<i>Pina</i>	296 20	3 0
<i>Granada</i>	310 20	11 0	<i>Plata</i>	305 0	19 50 A.
<i>Guayaquil</i>	294 30	2 30 A.			
<i>Guadalquabot</i>	282 20	31 0			
<i>Guanape</i>	294 50	8 10 A.			

Popeyan

1088

	Longit.	Latit.
Popayan	297 20	1 50
Possession	241 30	32 20
Potofi	315 10	21 10 A.

Q

Quicon	298 50	16 30 A.
Quintere	303 40	34 40 A.
Quito	293 10	10 0
Quivira	233 0	41 40

R

Roca	311 0	11 10
Raquelay	314 10	50 0

S

Saba	317 30	17 20
Salinas	321 40	53 0
S. Salvadore	321 10	5 0
Sante	294 40	9 30 A.
Sanna	309 0	16 50
Sorand	351 40	61 0

T

Tabaco	322 10	10 40
--------	--------	-------

	Longit.	Latit.
Tarnaco	270 15	14 40
Tarasco	275 40	18 20
Tefigos	316 10	11 0
Thomachamba	293 40	1 50 A.
Tignifana	305 20	16 0 A.
Tosbriges	274 40	19 0
Tortuga	303 50	20 20
Totonacac	248 20	36 0
Trinidad	295 50	21 20
Tumboc	291 40	4 10 A.

V

Valparaiso	300 0	33 0 A.
Vllao	242 10	30 30
Vlraha	297 20	7 30
Vlroca	301 0	14 50 A.
Woccap	307 30	34 0

Z.

Zacatila	269 4	20 0
----------	-------	------

A is the mark of Southern Latituede.

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

AN

AN
APPENDIX
TO THE
FORMER WORK;
Endeavouring a Discovery of the
UNKNOWN PARTS
OF THE
WORLD.

Endeavouring a Discovery of the
 UNKNOWN PARTS
 OF THE
 WORLD.
 ESPECIALLY OF
 Terra Australis Incognita,
 OR THE
 SOUTHERN CONTINENT.

BY PETER HEYLIN.

Horat. De Arte Poet.

—————Pictoribus atque Poetis
Quidlibet audendi semper fuit æqua Potestas.

L O N D O N,
Printed for A. S. 1665.

A N
A P P E N D I X
TO THE
FORMER WORK;

Endeavouring a Discovery of the
UNKNOWN PARTS of the WORLD.



AND here we are upon a new and strange adventure, which no Knight Errant ever undertook before. Of things unknown, as there is commonly no delire, so less discourse can probably be made upon them. By unknown therefore we must understand less known, or not well discovered; and in that sense we may as well endeavour to say somewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the discovery. And to say truth, even in the known parts of the world there is much unknown; as in the best and most flourishing Kingdoms of the Earth there is some waste ground, either not cultivated at all, or not so well inhabited as the rest of the Country. For besides many vast tracts of ground in the North and North-west parts of Tartary, and such parts of India as lie Northwards towards Delangher, Nangroor, the East parts of Caucasus, and the Realms of Cathay; it is conceived that the greatest part of the midlands of Africk are undiscovered to this day, or the knowledge of them so imperfect as comes near a nescience. And for America, not reckoning in the Northern Borders (which are in part to be the subject of this enquiry) it is affirmed of the Mid-lands by John de Laet (who hath made the most exact description of it that ever was extant) *Minima sui parte perlustratum esse*, that the least part of them hath been discovered hitherto to any purpose. Leaving these therefore as before, without further search, we will divide the UNKNOWN WORLD into these two parts, 1 Terra Incognita Borealis, and 2 Terra Incognita Australis; which with their subdivisions we will now pursue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS is that part of the Unknown World which lieth towards the North; and is to be considered in these three notions. 1 As directly under the Pole, which for distinctions sake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2 As lying to the North-east on the back of Europe and Asia; or 3 on the North-west, on the back of America.

1 *ORBIS ARCTICUS* is that part of Terra Borealis Incognita, which lyeth under or about the Arctic Pole; the situation and dimensions of which being taken with the Astralabe by an Oxford Friar, are by Mercator thus described out of the Itinerary of James Cnoxe of Boks le due, or the Bosche, a Town of Brabant.

"Under the Arctic Pole (saith he) is said to be a black Rock of wondrous height, about 33 leagues in compass, the Land adjoining being torn by the Sea into four great Islands. For the Ocean violently breaking thorow it, and disgorging it self by 19 Channels, maketh four Euripi, or fierce Whirl-pools, by which the waters are finally carried toward the North, and there swallowed into the Bowels of the Earth. That Euripus or Whirl-pool which is made by the Scythick Ocean hath five Inlets, and by reason of his streight passage, and violent course, is never frozen: the other on the back of Greenland, being 37 leagues long, hath three inlets, and remaineth frozen three moneths yearly. Between these two there lieth an Island on the North of Lappia and Biarmia, inhabited as they say by Pygmies, the tallest of them not above four foot high. A certain Scholar of Oxford reporteth, that these four Euripi are carried with such furious violence towards some Gulf, in which they are finally swallowed up, that no ship is able with never so strong a Gale to stem the Current, and yet that there is never so strong a wind as to blow a Windmill. The like reported by Giraldus Cambrensis in his Book *De mirabilibus Hibernie*. So far and to this purpose he. But Blundeville our Countryman is of another opinion

A a a a

North-East
Parts.

nion, as indeed who not?) neither believing that *Pliny* or any other of the *Roman Writers* came hither to describe this *Promontory*: or that the *Oxford Friar*, without the assistance of some cold *Devil* of the middle Region of the Air (and consequently able to endure all weathers) could approach so near as to measure these cold Countries with his *Astralabe*, or take the height of this *Black Rock* with his *Jacob's Staff*. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucians Dialogues*, than any serious discourse, we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The *NORTH-WEST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the back of *Estotiland*, the most Northern Province of *America*: by which it hath been much endeavoured to find out a passage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go so far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Straights of *Magellan*. Attempted first by *Sebastian Cabot*, An. 1497. at the charge of *Henry* the 7. of *England*. But having discovered as far as to the 67 Degree of Northern Latitude, by the mutinie of his Mariners he was forced to return; where finding great preparations for a War with *Scotland*, that business for the present was laid aside. Refused by *Gasper Cortezius* a *Portugal*, An. 1500. and after by *Stephen Gomez* a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525. but neither of them went so far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithstanding would not to give over, but first with 5 ships from the *Groyne*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, sent out by *Cortez*, pursued the enterprise, which proving as successful as the former had been, occasioned *Charles* the 5. then preparing for *Italy*, on the payment of 35000 Ducats by King *John* the third, to suspend the prosecution of it. Followed with greater industry, but as bad success by Sir *Martin Frobisher*, who made three Voyages for this purpose (the first of them in the year 1579.) and brought home some of the *Natives*: a Sea Unicorns horn (still kept in the great Wardrobe of *Windfor Castle*) and a great deal of the Ore of that Country, found upon trial, when in *England*, not to quit the cost. A great Promontory which he called *Queen Elizabeth's Foreland*, in whose name he took possession of it; and the Sea running not far off, he called *Frobisher's Straights*. The Seas full set with *Ice* Islands, some of them half a mile about, and 80 Fathoms above water; the people like the *Samoids*, the worst kind of *Tartars*, in their lives and habit. *John Davies* followed the design, Anno 1585. at the encouragement of Sir *Francis Walsingham*, then principal Secretary of Estate; and having in three Voyages discovered to the Latitude of 73 by reason of the many difficulties which he found in the enterprise, and the death of Mr. *Secretary*, he was fain to give over; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Estotiland*, the name of *Fretum Davies*, in the Latitude of 65 and 20 Minutes, by which name still called. After him followed *Weymouth*, *Hall*, *Hudson*, *Buison*, *Baffin*, *Smith*, all *English*. The result of whose endeavours was the finding of some cold Isles and points of Land, which they named King *James* his Cape, *Queen Anne* Cape, *Prince Henries Foreland*, *Saddle Island*, *Barren Island*, *Red-goose Island*, Digges his Island; all of them betwixt 80 and 81. and the imposing on some passages and parts of the Sea, the names of *Hackings Headland*, *Smiths Bay*, *Hudson's Straights*, *Mandlins Sound*, *Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their undertakings. Nothing achieved of publick moment but the Discovery of an Island called *Cherry Island* in the Latitude of 74, and the shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they caused to be called King *James* his *New-Land*, most commonly *Greenland*; where they found many white Bears, with white, grey, and dun Foxes, Partridges, Geese, and some other Provisions, Sea Unicorns Horns, great store of *Morses*, (or Sea-horses) the Oyl, and Teeth whereof yield no small commodity. But most considerable for the Trade of *Whale fishing*, which our men use yearly upon those Coasts; of whose Oyl, Bones, and Brain (this last supposed to be the true *Sperma Ceti*, now used as Medicinal) they raise very great profit.

3. The *NORTH-EAST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are those which lie on the North of *Russia* and *Tartary*, by which the like passage towards *Cathay* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with like success. Endeavoured first by *Sebastian Cabot*, the son of *John Cabot*, so often mentioned before, by whom trained up in the Discovery of the North-east parts of *America*. His employment failing here in *England*, he betook himself unto the service of the King of *Spain*; and coming out of *Spain*, An. 1549. was by King *Edward* the sixth made *Grand Pilot* of *England*, with an Annual Pension of 1661. 13s. 4d. In the year 1553 he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Discovery of *Russia*, and the North-east Voyages, undertaken and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *Chancellor*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinson*, and after prosecuted by *Pet* and *Jackman*. Some of which perished in the Action, and were frozen to death; their ship being found the next year hemmed about with ice, and a particular account of all things which had hapned to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Russia* (since that time made a common Voyage, without dread or danger) and passing down the *Volga* to the *Caspian Sea*, and by that to *Persia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophy*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594, and in some years after, tried their Fortune also, under the conduct and direction of one *William Barendson*, their chief Pilot; but went no further than the *English* had gone before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they passed, as if they had been the first Discoverers; with pride and arrogance enough. Nothing since done of any note or consideration for the opening of this North-east passage, or giving us any better account of the North of *Tartary*, or any Countries beyond that, but what we had many ages since out of *Paulus Venetus*, so that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly discourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant undertakings; yet when I look upon the nature of those Shores and Seas, those tedious Winters of ten months, with no Summer following; the winds continually in the North, and the *Main Ocean* paved with Ice so long together: I cannot chuse but rank the hopes of these Northern Passages amongst those Adventures which are only commendable for the difficulties presented in them.

TERRA

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

Terra
Australis.

With better hopes we may go forwards on the next Discovery, and try what may be done on *TERRA AUSTRALIS*, or the Southern Continent, though hitherto *INCOGNITA* also, almost as much unknown as the *Arctic* Islands, which none but my good *Friar* of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our learned *Brerewood*, to be as large as *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*; and that upon such strength of reasons, as cannot be easily over-born by any opposite. His Arguments in brief are these, 1. That as touching Latitude, some parts thereof come very near to the *Aequator*, if they come not also on this side of it: and as for Longitude, it keepeth along, though at several distances, the whole continual course of the other Continents. 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents, the Land which lyeth on the North-side of that Line, is four times at the least as large as that which lies South thereof; and therefore since the earth is equally poised on both sides of her Center, it must needs be that the Earth in answerable measure and proportion must advance it self in some places above the Sea, on the South-side of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By consequence, what is wanting in the South-parts of the other two Continents, to countervail the North-parts of them, must of necessity be supplied in the Southern Continent.

The Country being so large, so free from the Incumbrances of Frosts and Ice, and endless Winters; I have oft marvelled with my self that no further progress hath been made in Discovery of it: considering chiefly by the site and position of the Country, especially in those parts which lie nearest *Asia*, that there is nothing to be looked for elsewhere, either of profit or of pleasures, but may there be found. Whether it be, that there is some *Nil ultra* put to humane endeavours, or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the *Gospel*; or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themselves in *New Discoveries* till the *Old* be thoroughly planted, and made sure unto them; or that the *Merchant*, who in matters of this nature hath a powerful influence, thinks his hands full enough already; and being fettered in so many and so wealthy *Factories*, will not adventure upon more. Which of all these, or whether all of these together be the cause of this stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is that here is a large field enough for Coverousness, Ambition, or desire of glory to spend themselves in; enough to satisfy the greatest and most hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth, and Worldly pleasures; besides the *Gallantry* and merit of so brave an Action. Most which hath hitherto been done in it, hath been by the encouragements of the Vice Royes of *New Spain* and *Peru*: by the first of which we came acquainted with the Coasts of *Nova Guinea*; by the latter, with those Countries called the *Island of Solomon*; but whether Continents or Islands, not yet fully known.

And yet we must not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the honour, who passing thorow the *Straights*, which now bear his name, discovered those parts of it, which from the first thence seen he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Island. Nor do the *English* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did, was rather *Accidental*, than upon Design. For in the year 1593. Sir *Richard Hakluyt* being bound for the *Straights of Magellan*, was by a cross wind driven on some parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hankins his Malden Land*; A Promontory of it shooting into the Sea with three points, he called *Point Tremontain*; and a pleasant Ile not far off, by the name of *Fair Island*. Saying along these Coasts in the 50 Degree of Southern Latitude, for the space of 60 miles and upwards, he found the Country as he passed to be very pleasant; and by the fires which he saw in the night to be well inhabited. By the like accident, Anno 1599. *Sibald de Weert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the *Straights of Magellan*, fell upon some Islands of this Southern Continent, in the Latitude of 50 Degrees and 40 Minutes, which he caused to be called *Sibalds Islands*. And besides these we owe to the *Portugals* the discovery of such parts hereof, as they fell on in their way to the Eastern *Indies*; of which we have little but the names, as *Pitacorum Terra*, so called from the abundance of *Parrats* which they saw on the Coasts, over against the Cape of good Hope. 2 *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and possessed by *Idolaters*; with the two Kingdoms of 3 *Luach*, and 4 *Maletur*; all three against the Isles of *Java*, from which little distant.

But the greatest light we have to see by into this dark business, is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice-Royes of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was said. For in the year 1543, the Governour of *New Spain* then being, sent *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccos*, who in that Voyage made a Discovery of a rich and flourishing Country which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others since his time called *Terra de Piccinicoli*; and in the year 1563. *Castro* the *Licentiate*, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, sent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the conduct of *Lopes Garcia de Castro*, discovered the *Islands of Solomon*. To which if we subjoin the success of the *Hollanders* in the Discovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Lands adjoining; The best Description we can make of this Southern Continent, must be in the Chorography and History of their Adventures; viz. 1 *Terra del Fogo*, 2 *Insula Solomonis*, 3 *Nova Guinea*: beginning first with *Terra del Fogo*, because nearest to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO*, lies on the other side of the *Straight of Magellan*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now discovered to be an Island by one *Jacob Mayr* of *Amsterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Horn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 15 of June, Anno 1615. and on the 19 of January following they fell even with the *Straight of Magellan*. On the 24 of the same Month they had the sight of

A a a a a

another

*Insula
Solomon.*

another *Streight*, which seemed to separate this *Terra del Fuego* from the rest of the *Southern Continent*; and on the 25 they entered into it. That part of the Land which (being entered into the *Streight*) they had on the West, they called *Terra Mauritiæ de Nassau*; that on the East *Statenland*; the *Streight* it self, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the *Streight* they found to be in 55 degrees of Southern Latitude, and 50 Minutes; the waters running into the North-Sea with so violent an *Eddie*, *ut adversum maris æstium difficulter superare possemus*, saith he, who in the way of *Journal* or *Ephemerides*, hath described the whole course of this Voyage. In the whole course whereof nothing so much observable (besides this Discovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had lost a day (as must needs happen unto such, as in so tedious a voyage had travelled Westward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders*, and the rest of *Europe*; though they had calculated the days since their going out with all exactness. So that if there were any such *Morality* in the *Sabbath*, as some men pretend, these men must either keep their *Sabbath* on a different day from the rest of their Countrymen; or otherwise to comply with them, must be guilty of the breach of the *Sabbath*, all the rest of their lives. But of this more at large elsewhere. To return therefore to this *Streight*, it is said to be seven Dutch miles, or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentifull of good fish; especially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the inferting of which *Streights* into the third Edition of my *Microcosm*, I received a Letter at such time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon*, An. 1625 subscribed *G. B.* and a little under that, *Sub grunda floridum*: which whether it were the Gentlemen *Motta* or the *Anagram* of his name, I am not able to say, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his desires were satisfied in the next Edition of that work. "For my encouragement wherein, he gave me this direction following, The News (saith he) of this *New Streight* coming in to Spain, it pleased that King in the year 1618 to fend and search whether the truth were answerable unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader than the other, and not above seven Dutch miles long; decreed, that being the more easie and compendious way for Navigators, and less subject to dangers, his Auxiliary Forces should be sent that way into the *East-Indies*, to defend the *Philippine* and *Molucco* Islands, and the way by the *Cape of good Hope* to be left: In regard that every such voyage, requireth twice as much time: besides the variety of winds, and often change of the Air, not only troublesome, but full of diseases, consumeth the one half of the men before they return: Whereas this way gaineth time (and if need be, they may dispatch business in the West as they travel into the East) without any extraordinary danger or losse of men. So far the very words of my letter. The intelligence given me in this Letter, I find confirm'd in a Relation of the Voyage made by Captain *Don Juan de More*, Anno 1618. at the command and charge of the King of Spain, who presently arm'd and furnish'd eight tall ships to fend this new way unto his *Philippines* and *Moluccos*, under the conduct of *Petrus Michaelis de Cordelen*. Since it hath been found by experience, that even from our parts to the *Moluccos*, through this *Fretum de Maire*, is but a passage of eight moneths: *Sine ulla insigni navigantium clade*, saith the Narrator. But of this *Streight* enough, to satisfy my unknown well-willers request, and inform my Reader: extremely sorry that the Gentleman was not pleased to impart his name, that so his memory might have lived in these Papers, if they themselves be destinate to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the soil, it is said to be very full of Mountains; but those Hills apparelled with woods, intermixt with Vallies; the Vallies for the most part full of little Brooks which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good pasturage; the Sea-coasts well provided of Bays and Roads, not unsafe for shipping: though the Air everywhere, but chiefly near the Sea, be much subject to Tempests. As for the People, they are said to be of a white complexion; but their Face, Arms, and Thighs, coloured with a kind of *Oker*: of full stature and well-proportioned, their hair black, which they wear long to seem more terrible. The men most generally naked, the women only shaded on their secret parts with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deserve the name of houses; so that the most which we can doe is to Coast the Island. In which we find towards *Mare del Noort*, 1. A large Arm of the Sea, called *Entrado de S. Sebastian*. 2 The Cape of *S. Ives*. 3 *Mauritius* Island. 4 *Promontorio de Buen Suceso*, or the Cape of Good Success. Opposite whereunto in another Island is the Cape of *S. Bartholomew*; and betwixt them the *Streight* called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *New South Sea*, as they call it, there are 5 *Barnvelt's* Island. 6 The Islands of *S. Idelfonso*. 7 *Cape Horn* on a fair Promontory, in the South-west end, which doubled, the Country goes along with a strait shore, on which I find some Bays and Capes, but no names unto them; till we come to the Western entrances of the *Streight* of *Magellan*, opposite unto *Cape Victoria*, so often mentioned.

2. *INSULÆ SOLOMONIS*, or the Islands of *Solomon*, are situate on the West of *Terra del Fogo*, 11 degrees on the South of the *Equinoctial*. Discovered in the year 1567. by *Lopez Gracia de Castro*, sent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find our new Countries. By whom thus named, in hope that men would be rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from these Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18 the principal: Some of which 300 miles in compass, others 200, and others of them less, till we come to fifty, and beneath that, none. All liberally furnished with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and some veins of Gold. The chief of these eighteen are; 1 *Guadalcanal*, supposed to be the greatest of them; upon the coast whereof the Spaniards failed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and sacked, because the people of it in a sudden surprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2 *S. Isabella* 150 leagues in length, and

*Nova
Guinea.*

and 10 in breadth; the Inhabitants, some black, some white, some of brown complexion. 3 *St. Nicolas*, 100 Leagues in compass, inhabited by a People which are lack of hue, but said to be more witty than the other *Salvages*. All of them situate betwixt the *Streights* of *Magellan*, and the Islands of *Theories*; and yet not well agreed upon amongst our Authors, whether to be accounted Islands, or a part of the Continent: The Spaniards having failed 700 Leagues on the Coasts hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they pass generally in account for Islands; and by that name are under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governours, let them pass so still.

3. *NOVA GUINEA*, lyeth beyond the Islands of *Solomon*; in respect of us, proceeding as we have begun from the Land of *Fire*. Discovered, as before was said, An. 1543. by *Villa Lobos* (*Herrera* attributes the discovery of it to *Alvarez de Saavedra*, and sets its higher in the year 1527.) more perfectly made known, if I guess aright, by *Ferdinando de Quir*. Who being sent with two Ships to make a more full discovery of the Islands of *Solomon*, and taking his course about the height of the *Magellan Straights*, discovered a main Land coming up close to the *Equinoctial*, on the Coasts whereof he failed 800 Leagues, till he found himself at last in the Latitude of 15 Degrees, discovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purposed to settle a Plantation, and to that end presented a Petition to the King of Spain. This Country I conceive by the site and position of it to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up close as that doth, to the *Equinoctial*; and after turning to the South towards the *Tropick of Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Maletur*. And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I shall afford the Reader this Description of it, out of his *Memorials*, in which it is soberly affirmed to be a *Terrestrial Paradise* for wealth and pleasures. The Country plentifull of Fruits, *Coco-nuts*, *Almonds* of all sorts, *Pom-citrons*, *Dates*, *Sugarcanes*, and *Apples*: plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partridges, and other Fowl, with some Kine and Buffals. Nothing interior (as it seemeth) to *Guinea*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and from thence so named. For as he saith, he saw amongst them Silver and Pearls, and some told him of Gold; the Countries on the Coast seeming to promise much felicity within the Land. The Air he found to be whole and temperate, the Sea-shores to be full of *Baies*, *Havens*, and the Exits of Rivers, making shew as of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, some white, some like the *Mulattos*, others like the *Negroes*; diversified in Habit, as well as Colour. Their bread made of three sorts of Roots: without Government, but not without Religion; for they had their several Oratories and places of burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in dayly wars with one another; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other weapons, but all made of wood. Of this Country, whatsoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took possession in the name of the *Catholicke* King, and set up both a *Cross* and a *Chappel* in it; the Chappel dedicated to the *Lady of Loretto*.

The precise time of this Discovery I have nowhere found, but that the time spent about it is by him affirmed to be 14 years, to the no small endamage of his health and fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his Petition, or any thing else done by others in pursuance of his Propositions. Whether it were on any of the reasons before laid down; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the *Baies* or *Promontories*, as he passed along; but either took such names as were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for such names as were given before (till taking *Ferdinando Quir's* new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontory called *Cape Hermoso*, in the East parts hereof near the Islands of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Equator*. 2 Another in the Western part, but as near the *Equinox*, called *Point Primiro*. A third in the first bendings of the Coast towards the South, called *Cape de Buena D. fenda*, or the Cape of good desires, 4 *Rio de Valcanes*, 5 *Rio de Lorenzo*, 6 *Rio de S. Augustino*, on the East of *Cape Formoso* towards the *Straights*, 7 The Rivers of *S. Peter*, 8 *S. Paul*, 9 *S. Andrew*, And 10 *S. James*, betwixt *Cape Formoso* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certain of these last discoveries, and the greatest certainty we have of that little, is nothing but a List of names without any thing observable in the state and story of the same, they may still retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore I will try my fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and *Mexico*, or taking out Commission for a new Discovery, will make a search into this *Terra Australis* for some other Regions, which must be found either here or nowhere. The names of which, 1 *Mundus alter & idem*, 2 *Utopia*, 3 *New Atlantis*, 4 *Fairy Land*, 5 The *Painters Wives* Island, 6 The Lands of *Chivulry*, And 7 The *New World* in the Moon.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, another world, and yet the same, is a witty and ingenious invention of a learned Prelate, writ by him in his younger dayes (but well enough becoming the austerity of the gravest head) in which he distinguisheth the *Vices*, *Passions*, *Humours*, and ill Affections most commonly incident to mankind, into several Provinces; gives us the Character of each, as in the descriptions of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it: and sets them forth unto the eye in such lively colours, that the vicious man may see therein his own Deformities, and the well-minded man his own imperfections, translated afterwards into English, and called (as I remember) the *Description of Tenterbeley*. The Scene of this design laid by the Reverend Author in this *Terra Australis*; the *Decorum* happily preserved in the whole Discovery; the stile acutely clear, the invention singular. Of whom and his *New World* I shall give you that *Eulogie*, which the Historian doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neq. post illum qui eum imitari posset, inventus est*.

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country first discovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord Chancellor of England; and by him made the Scene of a Commonwealth, which neither *Solon*, nor *Lycurgus*, nor any of the Legislators of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fancied by *Plato*, *Aristotle*, *Tully*, or any who have written the *Idea's* of a form of Government, though not re-lucible to practice. Some of his Plots we have took notice of already, as *viz.* his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt by making

New
Atlantis.

making of those metals, Chains and Fetters for their Malefactors, Pans of Close-stools, Chamber-pots and Vessels of such unclean use; by imposing it as a penalty on infamous persons, to wear Gold Rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as also his device to prevent mistakes and dislikes in marriages, by giving the parties a full view of each other naked. Many more projects of this nature, some of them possible enough, but so unpracticable, so beyond hope of being looked on in the modelling of a Commonwealth, that we may reckon this device amongst those strange fancies, *que nunquam antea spe concepta, nendum opere tentantur*. The man indeed (considering the times he lived in) of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the Meridian of this Southern Continent, this *Terra Australis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place else.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Island of this Southern Continent discovered by Sir Francis Bacon, the learned Viscount of *S. Albans*; one of Sir *Thomas Mores* successors in the place of Lord Chancellor, but far before him in the Excellency and feasibility of his invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Island of the Western or *Atlantic* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike invincible. But for his falling on this Island, his description of it, the City of *Ben-Salem*, and the manner of his reception there, such handfom probabilities, and so fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the State of the World, it would seem a Reality. But above all things, the inventions and designs of *Solomons House*, for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving nature to the best advantages of life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond comparison. The man I must confess had his personal errors (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded, *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtissimi*, as *Paterculus* once said of *Piso*: not one amongst many thousands (so pursue that Character) *qui aut otium validius diligit, aut facilius sufficit negotio*. A man of a most strong Brain, and a Chymical Head. Who if he had been entertained with some liberal Salary, abstracted from all Affairs both of State and Judicature, and furnished with sufficiency both of means and helps, for the going on in his design, would, I am confident, have given us such a body of natural Philosophy, and made it so subservient to the publick good, that neither *Aristotle* or *Theophrastus* amongst the Ancients, nor *Paracelsus*, or the rest of our later Chymists, would have been considerable.

4. *FAERIE LAND*, is another part of this *Terra Incognita*; the habitation of the *Faeries*, a pretty kind of little *Fiends*, or *Pigmy Devils*, but more inclined to sport than mischief; of which old Women, who remember the times of *Popey*, tell us many fine stories. A cleaner and more innocent cheat was never put upon poor ignorant people, by the *Monks* and *Friars*. Their habitation here or nowhere, though sent occasionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings to our parts of the World. For not being reckoned amongst the good *Angels*, nor having malice enough to make them *Devils* (but such a kind of midling *Sprites*, as the *Latines* call *Lemures Larvae*) we must find out some place for them, neither *Heaven* or *Hell*, and most likely this. Their Country never more enobled, than by being made the Scene of that excellent Poem, called the *Faerie Queen*. Intended to the honour of *Queen Elizabeth*, and the greatest persons in her Court: but shadowed in such lively colours, framed so exactly by the Rules of *Poesie*, and representing such Ideas of all moral goodness, that as there never was a Poem more Artificial; so can no *Ethical* discourse, more fashion and inflame the mind to the love of virtue. *Invisurum facilius aliquem quam imitaturum*, shall be *Spencers Motto*; and so I leave him to his rest.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ISLAND*, is an Island of this *Tract*, mentioned by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his *History of the World*. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmineto*, a Spanish Gentleman, employed by his King in planting some Colonies on the *Streights of Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) who being taken prisoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about some Island which the *Maps* presented in those *Streights*, and might have been of great use to him in his undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Island*, saying, that whilst the Painter drew that *Map*, his Wife sitting by, desired him to put in one Country for her, that she in her imagination might have an Island of her own. His meaning was, that there was no such Island as the *Maps* presented. And I fear the *Painters Wife* hath many *Islands* and some Countries too upon the Continent in our common *Maps*, which are not really to be found on the strictest search.

6. The *LANDS OF CHIVALRIE* are such *Islands, Provinces* and *Kingdoms*, in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any known part of the World, and therefore must be sought in this. A gross absurdity, but frequent in those kind of *Writers*, who in describing the *Adventures* of their Knights, in despite of *Geography* (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjoyned Countries which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the description of many *Islands, Provinces*, and mighty *Kingdoms*, which as the ingenious Author of the *History of Don Quixot*, merrily observeth, are not to be found in all the *Map*. Of this sort is the Isle of *Adamantis* in Sir *Huon of Burdeaux*; the *Firm Island* in the *History of Amadis de Gaul*; the hidden Island, and that of the *Sage Aliant* in *S. Palmerin* of England; the *Islands of Lindaraza*, and the *Devillish Fauna*, with the *Kingdom of Lyra* (of which the *Amazonian Lady Archiflora* was the rightful Queen) and many others of that kind in the *Mirror of Knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primalison*, and *Belianis of Greece*, *Parismus*, the *Romance of Romanes*, and indeed who not of all that *Rabble*? Handfomely humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his *Island of Barataria*, of which the famous *Sancho Panca* was sometimes Governour, and the *Kingdom of Micomicona*, the Queen whereof was as handfomely personated by the discreet Lady *Dorothea*. And yet I cannot but confess (for I have been a great Student in these Books of Chivalry) that they may be of very good use to Children or young boyes in their Adolescence. For besides that they divert

divert the mind from worse cogitations, they perfect him that takes pleasure in them in the way of reading, beget in him an habit of speaking, and animate him many times to such high conceptions as really may make him fit for great undertakings.

7. The *NEW WORLD IN THE MOON*, was first of *Lucians* discovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a conscience, apotatizing from the faith in which he was bred. *Aristophanes* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcygia*, or a City of Cuckoes in the clouds. But *Lucian* was the first who found out this *New World in the Moon*; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his Dialogues a conceited Character. But of late times, that world which he there fancied, and proposed but as a *fantie* only, is become a matter of a more serious debate: and some have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another World in the Moon, inhabited as this is by persons of divers Languages, Customs, Policies, and Religions: and more than so, some means and ways proposed to consideration for maintaining an intercourse and commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the Earth may be a Planet, why may not this Southern Continent be that Planet, and more particularly that Moon, in which this other World is supposed to be? Certainly there are stronger hopes of finding a *New World* in this *Terra Australis*, than in the body of that Planet; and such perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleasure the later discoveries of America.

But I am no discourager of industry and ingenuity, which I love and honour wheresoever I find it. I know great Truths have many times been started upon less presumptions. Nor would I be mistook, as if in my pursuit of this *Terra Incognita*, I put a scorn on any of sublimer thoughts; or that I would have any man so much in love with the present World, as not to look for another World in the Heaven above. It is reported, that in some controversy betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Muscovie*, the King of *Poland* sent the *Muscovite* a curious Globe, representing the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each several Sphere. To which the *Muscovite* returned this unworthy answer, *Tu mihi Cœlum mittis, aut reddo mihi Terras de quibus contendimus*; You send me Heaven, saith he, but that will not satisfy, unless you give me back those Lands which are now in question. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not lose their part on Earth for all Heaven it self. Whom I desire, if any such peruse these Papers, to consider, that as much as the most flourishing Country which is here described, doth fall short of that Paradise wherein God placed our Father Adam, so much and infinitely more did that Earthly Paradise fall short of the unspeakable glories of the Kingdom of Heaven. To the diligent and careful search of which Heavenly Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of GOD which are here presented, and that vicissitude of humane affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to some serious thoughts of that mighty GOD who made all these Works, in whom is no shew nor shadow of change. To whom be given all Glory, both in this World, and that to come.

*Quicquid enim Lunæ gremio complectitur Orbis,
Permutat variâque vices, trepidoque tumultu
Æstuat, & nunquam sentit pars una quietem.
Nam ruit in sese, & civili vulnere semper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; aliâque renascitur ore,
Rursus ut intereat; sic non est omnibus unum
Partitus ingenium, non vis nativæ. Sed Orbes
Astriferi, & nitidi sublimis Regia Cæli
Immunis sentit, & vultu immutabilis uno
Perpetuum servat solida & sincera tenorem.*

The Verses are *G. Buchanans*, in his Book *De Sphæra*. Which I thus translate, and therewithall conclude this Work.

to call
stance of the
Alcoran, the book
Law, why so called
ly revered
thereof, &c. reduct
Commandments
Tables by which

The World beneath the Moon its shapes doth vary,
And change from this to that; nor can it tary
Long in one state: but with it self doth jar,
Kills and is kill'd, in endless Civil War.
New form'd again, 'tis but to die. The frame
Neither of Bodies nor of Minds the same.
But That above the Spheres, the Heavens on high,
In which GOD reigns in glorious Majesty,
Free from Old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Always presents it self in equal Grace.

Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, sed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.

FINIS.

New
Atlantis.

making of those metals, Chaines and Fetters for their Malefactors, Pans of Clofe-stools, Chamber-pots and Vessels of such unclean use; by imposing it as a penalty on infamous persons, to wear Gold Rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as also his device to prevent mistakes and dislikes in marriages, by giving the parties a full view of each other naked. Many more projects of this nature, some of them possible enough, but so impracticable, so beyond hope of being looked on in the modelling of a Commonwealth, that we may reckon this device amongst those strange fancies, *quæ nunquam antea spe concepta, nescimus opere tentare*. The man indeed (considering the times he lived in) of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the Meridian of this Southern Continent, this *Terra Australis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place else.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Island of this Southern Continent discovered by Sir Francis Bacon, the learned Viscount of S. Albans; one of Sir Thomas More's successors in the place of Lord Chancellor, but far before him in the Excellency and feasibility of his invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Island of the Western or Atlantick Ocean, mentioned in the Works of Plato, both alike invincible. But for his falling on this Island, his description of it, the City of *Ben-Salem*, and the manner of his reception there, such handsome probabilities, and so fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the State of the World, it would seem a Reality. But above all things, the inventions and designs of *Solomon's House*, for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving nature to the best advantages of life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond comparison. The man I must confess had his personal errors (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded, *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtissimi*, as *Paterculus* once said of *Piso*: not one amongst many thousands (to pursue that Character) *qui aut otium validius diligit, aut facilius sufficiat negotio*. A man of a most strong Brain, and a Chymical Head. Who if he had been entertained with some liberal Salary, abstracted from all Affairs both of State and Judicature, and furnished with sufficiency both of means and helps, for the going on in his design, would, I am confident, have given us such a body of natural Philosophy, and made it so subservient to the publick good, that neither *Aristotle* or *Theophrastus* amongst the Ancients, nor *Paracelsus*, or the rest of our later *Chymists*, would have been considerable.

4. *FAERIE LAND*, is another part of this *Terra Incognita*; the habitation of the *Fairies*, a pretty kind of little *Fiends*, or *Pigmy Devils*, but more inclined to sport than mischief; of which old Women, who remember the times of Popery, tell us many fine stories. A cleaner and more innocent cheat was never put upon poor ignorant people, by the *Monks* and *Friers*. Their habitation here or nowhere, though felt occasionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings to our parts of the World. For not being reckoned amongst the good *Angels*, nor having malice enough to make them *Devils* (but such a kind of midling Sprites, as the *Latines* call *Lemures Larvæ*) we must find out some place for them, neither Heaven or Hell, and most likely this. Their Country never more enobled, than by being made the Scene of that excellent Poem, called the *Faerie Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greatest persons in her Court: but shadowed in such lively colours, framed so exactly by the Rules of Poësie, and representing such Ideas of all moral goodness, that as there never was a Poem more Artificial; so can no Ethical discourse, more fashion and inflame the mind to the love of virtue. *Invisurum facilius aliquem quam imitaturum*, shall be *Spencer's Motto*; and so I leave him to his rest.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ISLAND*, is an Island of this Tract, mentioned by Sir Walter Raleigh, in his History of the World. Of which he was informed by Don Pedro de Sarmineto, a Spanish Gentleman, employed by his King in planting some Colonies on the Straights of *Mageellan*, (which we have touched upon before) who being taken prisoner by Sir Walter in his going home, was asked of him about some Island which the *Maps* presented in those Straights, and might have been of great use to him in his undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Island*, saying, that whilst the Painter drew that *Map*, his Wife sitting by, desired him to put in one Country for her, that she in her imagination might have an Island of her own. His meaning was, that there was no such Island as the *Maps* presented. And I fear the *Painters Wife* hath many Islands and some Countries too upon the Continent in our common *Maps*, which are not really to be found on the strictest search.

6. The *LANDS OF CHIVALRIE* are such Islands, Provinces and Kingdoms, in the Books of Errantry, which have no being in any known part of the World, and therefore must be sought in this. A gross absurdity, but frequent in those kind of Writers, who in describing the Adventures of their Knights, in despite of Geography (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjointed Countries which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the description of many Islands, Provinces, and mighty Kingdoms, which as the ingenious Author of the History of Don Quixot, merrily observeth, are not to be found in all the *Maps*. Of this sort is the Isle of *Adamant* in Sir Huon of Burdeaux; the Firm Island in the History of *Amadis de Gaul*; the hidden Island, and that of the Sage Alant in S. Palmerin of England; the Islands of *Lindaraca*, and the *Devilish Fauno*, with the Kingdom of *Lyra* (of which the Amazonian Lady *Archiflora* was the rightful Queen) and many others of that kind in the *Mirror of Knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primallion*, and *Belianis of Greece*, *Parisimus*, the *Romance of Romanes*, and indeed who not of all that Rabble? Handsomely humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his Island of *Barataria*, of which the famous *Sancho Panca* was sometimes Governour, and the Kingdom of *Micomicon*, the Queen whereof was as handsomely personated by the discreet Lady *Dorothea*. And yet I cannot but confess (for I have been a great Student in these Books of Chivalry) that they may be of very good use to Children or young boyes in their Adolescence. For besides that they

divert the mind from worse cogitations, they perfect him that takes pleasure in them in the way of reading, beget in him an habit of speaking, and animate him many times to such high conceptions as really may make him fit for great undertakings.

7 The *NEW WORLD IN THE MOON*, was first of *Lucians* discovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a conscience, apostatizing from the faith in which he was bred. *Aristophanes* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcygia*, or a City of Cuckoos in the clouds. But *Lucian* was the first who found out this *New World in the Moon*; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his Dialogues a conceited Character. But of late times, that world which he there fancied, and proposed but as a *fantasy* only, is become a matter of a more serious debate: and some have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another World in the Moon, inhabited as this is by persons of divers Languages, Customs, Policies, and Religions: and more than so, some means and ways proposed to consideration for maintaining an intercourse and commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the Earth may be a Planet, why may not this Southern Continent be that Planet, and more particularly that Moon, in which this other World is supposed to be? Certainly there are stronger hopes of finding a *New World* in this *Terra Australis*, than in the body of that Planet; and such perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleasure the later discoveries of *America*.

But I am no discourager of industry and ingenuity, which I love and honour wheresoever I find it. I know great Truths have many times been started upon less presumptions. Nor would I be mistaken, as if in my pursuit of this *Terra Incognita*, I put a scorn on any of sublimer thoughts; or that I would have any man so much in love with the present World, as not to look for another World in the Heaven above. It is reported, that in some controversy betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Muscovite*, the King of *Poland* sent the *Muscovite* a curious Globe, representing the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each several Sphere. To which the *Muscovite* returned this unworthy answer, *Tu mihi Cœlum misisti, at redde mihi Terras de quibus contendimus*; You send me Heaven, saith he, but that will not satisfy, unless you give me back those Lands which are now in question. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not lose their part on Earth for all Heaven it self. Whom I desire, if any such peruse these Papers, to consider, that as much as the most flourishing Country which is here described, doth fall short of that *Paradise* wherein God placed our Father *Adam*, so much and infinitely more did that Earthly *Paradise* fall short of the unspeakable glories of the Kingdom of Heaven. To the diligent and careful search of which Heavenly Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of GOD which are here presented, and that vicissitude of humane affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to some serious thoughts of that mighty GOD who made all these Works, in whom is no shadow of change. To whom be given all Glory, both in this World, and that to come.

*Quicquid enim Lunæ gremio complectitur Orbis,
Permutat variatque vices, trepidoque tumultu
Æstuat, & nunquam sentis pars una quietem.
Nam ruit in sese, & civili vulnere semper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; aliisque renascitur ore,
Rursus ut intereat; sic non est omnibus unum
Partitus ingenium, non vis nativa. Sed Orbes
Astriferi, & nitidi sublimis Regia Cæli
Immunia senis, & vultu immutabilis uno
Perpetuum servat solida & sincera tenorem.*

The Verses are G. Buchanans, in his Book *De Sphæra*. Which I thus translate, and therewithall conclude this Work.

The World beneath the Moon its shapes doth vary,
And change from this to that; nor can it tary
Long in one state: but with it self doth jar,
Kills and is kill'd, in endless Civil War.
New form'd again, 'tis but to die. The frame
Neither of Bodies nor of Minds the same.
But That above the Spheres, the Heavens on high,
In which GOD reigns in glorious Majesty,
Free from Old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Alwayes presents it self in equal Grace.

Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, sed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.

FINIS.

A TABLE of some Principal Things herein contained, not properly Reducible to the following INDEX.

A	Bader , a strange beast, the Rhinoceros of the Ancients 872	Aloe , a precious Wood worth its weight in silver, 886. <i>Aloe Zocotrina</i> , from what place it comes 991	of the Ancients <i>ib.</i> condemned of Heresie in the darker times of the Church <i>ib.</i>
Abasenes , by whom converted 966. their Heterodoxies and opinions <i>ibid.</i>	Abilene , the Tetrarchy of <i>Lysanias</i> , where it was 701. 719. why reckoned, <i>Luke</i> 3. amongst the portions of Herod's Children 701	Amara , a Mountain in <i>Ethiopia</i> , described 970	Antioch , the same with <i>Riblah</i> 694. its story 696
Abydos besieged by Philip of Macedonia, and in distress, is fired by the Inhabitants, who likewise flew themselves 655. betrayed since to the <i>Turks</i> by the Governours daughter <i>ibid.</i>	Adamites , why so called, and what 450. by whom destroyed <i>ibid.</i>	Amazons , why so called 645. their dwelling place <i>ib.</i> the sum and substance of their affairs 645	Antoci , what they are in Geography 24
Adolphus II. Earl of Berg shut up in an Iron vessel and miserably stung to death by Bees 411	Adriatick-Sea , whence it had the name 122. the great extent thereof in some ancient Writers <i>ib.</i> married to the Duke of <i>Venice</i> every Holy Thursday <i>ib.</i>	America , not known to the Ancients 999. by whom first discovered, 1000, 1001. the people of it not so black as the <i>Africans</i> 1004. that they are descended of the <i>Tartars</i> <i>ib.</i> The estate of Christianity in it <i>ib.</i> The ingenuity of the people in their feather pictures 1006	Antonius Army in distress, relieved by the prayers of Christians 454
Advice of an old Casique to <i>Columbus</i> 1084	Æolus why made the god of the Winds 86	Amethyst , a precious stone, and the virtues of it 647	Apennage , what 177
Æs Corinthium , what it was, how highly prized, and how occasioned 587	Æma , the violent burnings of it. 83. and the cause thereof 84	Amlanthus , a stone whereof cloth is made 615. which stained, is cleaned by fire <i>ib.</i>	Archery , where most practised in elder times 811. <i>Cezar</i> miss, good Archers 518. the excellency of the <i>English</i> at it 811. whether Guns, or that to be preferred <i>ib.</i>
Africa , whence it had the name 909. 910. the estate of Christianity in it, how much decayed. 911. the several languages therein spoken. <i>ib.</i> The monstrous things reported of it by some of the Ancients 910	Agbarus , Prince of <i>Edessa</i> , his message to our Saviour 773	Amphitrynes , what they were, and of their Authority 593	Aram the son of <i>Sem</i> , the founder of the <i>Syrians</i> 9. 684. the large extent of that name in Holy Scripture <i>ib.</i>
Albigenses , what they were, and why so called 226. The sum and substance of their story 216	Albigenes , what they were, and why so called 226. The sum and substance of their story 216	Amphiscii , why so called, and what they are in Geography 24	Arcepagites , what they were, and from whence so called 398
Alcoran , the book of the <i>Mahometan</i> Law, why so called 762. how highly revered <i>ib.</i> The Doctrinals thereof, &c. reduced unto eight Commandments <i>ib.</i>	Alfonso , Tables by whom compiled, and the cost bestowed in the compiling of them 272	Amylas <i>silentium perdidit</i> , a by-word, and from whence it came 77	Argonants , who they were, and whence so denominated 786. their expedition unto <i>Colchis</i> <i>ib.</i>
Alleson , of a French Gentle-man, concerning the cause of their civil broils 179	Almans , from whence so called 396. of what several Nations they consisted 429. their affairs and story <i>ib.</i>	Amysis <i>infans</i> , an old proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 77	Argesies , great ships of burden, whence they had their name 524
Almodad , the son of <i>Jocktan</i> , where most probably fixed 11		Anabaptist cuts off his brothers head 165. their furies and proceeding in the City of <i>Munster</i> 476. their demands in the insurrection of the Boors 543	Ariannes , a <i>Galatian</i> feasted the whole Nation for a year together 647
		Anakim , the name of a <i>Gigantine</i> race of men, and why given unto them 729	Aristomenes , strange escape out of prison 581
		Ananim , the father of the <i>Hamanientes</i> , an African people 13	Aristotle , the Precursor of Christ, in <i>rebus naturalibus</i> 2. why he conceived the World to have been eternal <i>ib.</i>
		Araxes , an old by-word, and the meaning of it 617	Arius , the Heretick his dissimulation and death 923
		Anchorets , whence so called 116. buried while alive <i>ib.</i>	Ark of <i>Noah</i> , where made 772. in what place it rested after the flood 78, 814
		Annals , what they are 204. and how they differ from Histories <i>ib.</i>	Armadilla , a strange beast in <i>America</i> , 429. the description of it 1006
		Anier , a feeling one of an <i>English</i> Captain to a scoffing demand of the French 179. a smart one of <i>Spinola</i> to <i>Maurice</i> Prince of <i>Orange</i> 68. of <i>Richard</i> I. to the Pope, writing for the Release of the Bishop of <i>Beauvois</i> 183. of the Conquerour concerning his imprisoning of <i>B. Odo</i> 192. of Dr. <i>Dale</i> to the Spanish Commissioners 749	Armenians , in what point they differed from other Christians, 783. how, and by whom their Church is governed <i>ib.</i>
		Anticyram naviget , a proverb, and to whom applicable 593	Armi , why first used 62. by whom first quartered 259. why those of <i>England</i> give place in the same <i>Efcocheon</i> to the Arms of <i>France</i> 322
		Antipodes , what they are 24. The net touching them decided by some	Arphaxad , the father of the <i>Chaldeans</i> 9. first settled in the Region, called <i>Arappathitis</i> , <i>ib.</i> & 771
			Arroba , a Spanish measure, the content thereof 1032
			Arvisan , Wines much celebrated 672. in what place they grow <i>ib.</i>
			Arundel , created a Count of the Empire by the Emperour <i>Rodolphus</i> , and afterwards Lord <i>Arundel</i> of <i>Wardour</i> , by King <i>James</i> 544
			Asia , whence so called at first 639. the several notions of the word, and in B b b b b what

A TABLE.

what sense used in holy Scripture
641. the estate of Christianity in
640. amongst whom divided *ib.*
Akenaz, the son of *Gomer*, first settled
in *Bithynia* and *Phrygia* minor 14.
642, 644
Aspendus Citharista, a proverb, and
the meaning of it 665
Assur, the son of *Sem*, where planted
9, 771. the *Assyrians* descended of
him *ib.* why so easily conquered by
all Invaders 779
Athens 588
Attila the Hun, why called *Flagellum*
Dei 217, 545. his bloody end *ib.* his
Coat of Arms 549
August, and *Augustus*, how they differ
777. whence they had their names
ib.
Augustine Confession, why so called
428. by whom, and where confirm-
ed 420, 428
St. *Augustine's* tart reply to an A-
theistical demand. 2. the Order of
Friars by him founded 114
Augustus, or an Essay of the Means
and Counsels, by which he reduced
the Common-wealth of *Rome* to
the state of Monarchy 44
Avi finiftra, what it meaneth, and the
reason of it 777
Aulæ, Tapestries, why so called, and
by whom invented 656
Austrasia, what Provinces it con-
tained, when first made a Kingdom
424. the story and Kings thereof *ib.*
Australis incognita, the vast greatness
of it 1091. why not yet discovered
ib.
B.
Abel, the attempt only of some
bold adventurers, and not of all
the sons of *Noah* 16. the languages
occasioned then, not 72. in num-
ber, as by some supposed 8. the stu-
pendious greatness of the project
769
Babylon *ib.*
Bacchus, called *Mævius* why 649
Baleares, why so called 284
Baltick-Sea, why so called 489. why
it doth not ebb, and flow like other
Seas *ib.*
Baltha not permitted by the Emper-
our *Adrian* to be used promiscu-
ously by both Sexes 165. The in-
conveniency arising from that in-
termixture *ib.*
Battel at *Antina*, and the success
thereof 147. between the *Sarmati-
ans* and their slaves 515, 518. of
Kerefture 544. of *Lepanto* 626. the
last betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*
King of *Persia* 772
Bedellum, mentioned *Gen.* 2. 12. what
conceived to be 803
Beaufort, why made the surname of the
Children of *John* of *Ganne* 197

Bel and *Baal*, whence the names deri-
ved 776. why called *Belzebub*, the
Lord of Flies 927
Beloraphensis, *Letter*, a by-word, the
occasion of it 663
Belge, the valiantest of the *Gauls* in
the time of *Cæsar*, and for what rea-
sons 360
Benedictines, or black Monks, by whom
instituted 115. their habit and in-
crease *ib.*
Berrie, abundantly stored with sheep
205. *Charles* the 7th. in derision
called King of *Berrie* *ib.*
Bezoar, the Sovereign nature of it
1006. found in the belly of a beast,
called the *Picague* *ib.* that of *Chi-
na*, and the East more excellent
than that of *America* 848
Bishops of *Spalato*, his *Levey*, *Aposto-
ly*, and death 553
Bishop conval, in most places with
Catholicity 36, 171, 175, 301, 484,
575, 710, 914. how, and why hated
by the *Bisants* 256. and the ill
consequents thereof *ib.* *Bishops*
not anciently interdicted from the
Acts of War 709
Black Friars, or *Dominicans*, by whom
founded 115. why so called *ib.*
Blind & *Lame*, mentioned 2 *Sams.* 5. 8.
what they were most probably 733
Bos in *Lingua*, a proverb, the meaning
and original of it 588
Botellus his strange adventure 871
Brachmanes, what they were amongst
the *Indians* 862. their authority and
course of life *ib.* succeeded in the
first by the modern *Bramines* *ib.*
Bracca, what 142
Brachygraphie, or the Art of short wri-
ting, by whom first invented 913
Britain, from whence the name pro-
bably derived 294. not from *Brut-
us* *ib.* that there was no such man,
proved *ib.* Southern parts thereof
called *England* 295. Its plenty and
ornaments briefly set forth *ib.* Plenty
of Mines therein 297. and num-
ber of Parks *ib.* Its Seas stored with
fish 298, 361. Quantity of flesh
spent in one City thereof 298.
Christian faith planted therein by
whom 301. first peopled out of
Gaul 307. counterfeit Kings of
England 795
Buccanture 146
Burgundians, why so called 222. when
first converted to the faith *ib.* their
affairs and story *ib.*
Biscainers, some of their Customs 255
C.
Cæsar, the name at first of the
Roman Emperours 59. after of
the designed Successour *ib.* the un-
fortunate end of most of them 60
Julius Cæsar's escape at *Pharus* 916
Cæsar Borghin, son of *Pope Alexander*

the sixth, after divers changes of
fortune, where slain 251
Calale taken by the *English*, and re-
taken by the *French*, when 188
Calat taken by the Earl of *Essex* 263
Caliph, the name of the Successors of
Mahomet 764. the succession of
them *ib.* 764, 765, 929
Caloir, what, and where feared 604.
their number, and manner of life
ib.
Cambyses his present to the King of
Ethiopia, with the Kings answer
return'd 975
Camps Catalaunici, where 115
Canes sepulchrales, what 814
Cæpæ est *Cæpæ Annibali*, a by-
word, and the occasion of it 70
Capuchin Friars, by whom first institu-
ted, and why so called 116
Cappadocians generally so lewd, that
they grew a by-word 649. not only
morally wicked, but naturally ven-
omous 650
Caracalla the Emperour slain by *Ma-
crinus*, where, and upon what occa-
sion 774
Capthar to be found in *Coptus*, a
Town of *Egypt* 13. carried against
all reason into *Cappadocia* *ib.* &
649
Cardinals, by whom first ordain'd 107.
the Election of the *Popes* assigned
to them only, and by whose autho-
rity 146
Carmel, a Mountain of *Syria* 889.
mistook by the *Græcians* for a god
ib. The Friars *Carmelites* thence
named *ib.* & 115
Carthusian Monks, by whom instituted
15. their strict kind of life *ib.*
Castellum, more likely to be found in
Cassotis than *Colchis* 13
Centaur, the fable of them, whence
it took beginning 601
Chaldaans, great Astrologers 768. the
name communicated unto all who
professed that Art *ib.* so called from
Chesed, the son of *Nachor* 767
Charles the 8th. of *Navar* his strange
death 253
Chaos, or first matter of the world, ex-
pressed by *Moses* in the names of
Heaven and Earth 3. how de-
scribed by *Ovid* *ib.*
Chaitsermauth, the father of the *Cha-
dromatite*, and *Indian* people 12
Chersonesus, what they are, why so cal-
led, and how many of them 484
Chimæra the Monster, what it was
663. and how tamed by *Bellerophon*
ib.
Chorography, what it is 28. how it dif-
fereth from *Geography* *ib.*
Christians, where first so called, and
with what solemnity 685. extremely
hated by the *Genites* 686. their
persecutions and increase *ib.*
Christmas,

Christmas's sports in *Twelf-tide*, by
whom first instituted 310
Chronologies, how they differ from Hi-
story 20. by whom best performed
ib.
Chus, the son of *Cham*, first planted in
Arabia 12, 756. His posterity (the
Chusites) why called *Ethiopi*ans
756. mistaken for the *Ethiopi*ans
of *Africk* 12, 756, 975
Chusites, why rendred *Ethiopi*ans in
our *English* Bibles 756. the Tran-
slation justified *ib.* the actions ascri-
bed unto them, not possible to be
undertood, of the *Ethiopi*ans of
Africk 975. the mistake laid on the
Expositors 756
Cimmerians the posterity of *Gomer* 14,
180. first settled in *Albania* and
Phrygia Major *ib.* & 154. gave name
to *Bosphorus Cimmerius* 404, 826.
In *Europe* better known by the
name of *Cimbri*, the same with the
Cimmerians 180, 404. the *Cimbri*
Cerberus named from them 484.
their attempt upon the *Roman* Em-
pire and overthrow by *Marins* 219
Cimon in one day overthrew the Sea
& Land-forces of the *Persians* 665
Cinnamon, what it is, where, and how
it groweth, and from whence so
called 965
Ciphers, or private Characters for wri-
ting, by whom first invented 913
Circassians, where they dwell 829.
their opinions and practice 830
Cistercians, or *White Monks*, whence
so called 115. by whom ordained
ib.
Cities, by whom first built, and on what
delign 6. the causes of the greatness
and magnificence of them 5
Citim, the son of *Japhet*, first settled in
the Isle of *Cyprus* 15, 680. his po-
sterity spreading into *Macedonia*
601, 605. from thence into *Æto-
lia*, and so into *Italy* 37
Climax, what they be, how many, and
how distinguished 23
Clovers, where they grow most plenti-
fully, and the nature of them 896
Coa, and *Pestis Coa*, a light Garment
much used by the Dames of *Rome*
675. the *Coin Wine* (*vinum Cui*) as
much cried up by the good-fel-
lows of that City 674
Coconuts, a most excellent fruit, and of
several uses 991
Cochinele, a precious Die, how, and
where it groweth 1032
Codrus his love to his Country 589
Colonies, why planted by the *Romans*
216. the number of them, and how
distributed *ib.* whether more use-
ful than a Fortrefs *ib.*
Colophonem addere, a proverb, and from
whence it came 658
Colossus of *Rhodes* 676

Commentaries what they properly are,
and how they differ from History 20
Constantine converted to the Faith, and
on what occasion 60. his new Mo-
delling of the Empire 62. of which
one of the chief subverters *ib.* He
called the *Pretorian* Guards 61.
his Donation forged 109
Constance, the Council there holden
427
Consuls, when first ordained in *Rome*
40. who the first sole Consul *ib.*
when the Office ended *ib.*
Copht, the name of the Christians of
Egypt, whence to be derived 915.
their Tenets in matters of Religi-
on, and Estate at the present *ib.*
Corbyantes, the Priests of *Cybele* 621
Cosmography defined 28. the general
Latitude of the Notion *ib.*
Corys his rare temper in mastering and
preventing passion 608
Cotton-wool, where it groweth, and
how 694, 954. & *passim* alibi.
Council of *Trent*. 438
Creation of the World, and the Mo-
tives of it 1. the concurrence of
each person to it 3. the matter of
it, and the method *ib.* how long
since done *ib.*
Crete, things most observable there
622
Crete mendacium 620
Crete *nefite* *Pelagus*, a Proverb, the
occasion of it 622
Crocodyles their monstrous shape, and
where most usual 916
Curetes, what they were, and from
whence so called 596, 620
Cyprian women their Unchastity 678.
The *Heroick* Act of a *Cyprian* Lady
682
Cyzicum besieged in vain by *Mithri-
dates* 656. its glorious Temple 655
D.
Dædalus observed as lucky, or un-
lucky unto divers men 99
Damasceus, how situated 701. *Dama-
scen* Plums, *Dama* *Roses*, and *Dama-
scen* Linnen, thence so called *ib.*
Damietta besieged and taken by the
Christians 919
Darius his fruitless War against the
Scythians 827
David George a monstrous Heretick,
and what his Tenets 362
Dedan the son of *Regma*, planted on
the shores of the *Persian* Gulf 13
Delinquents, how to be proceeded with
72, 73. gained more by favour
than by rigour *ib.*
Despot the title of Heir apparent in
the Eastern Empire 565. commu-
nicated to inferior Princes *ib.*
the *Despots* of *Russia* *ib.* of *Ser-*

via *ib.* of *Bulgaria* *ib.*
Diaries, what they are, and how they
differ from History 20
Dictators, what they were in the state
of *Rome* 42. a Catalogue of them
42, 43
Divination by Birds, and the kinds
thereof 777
Dioclesian depose himself, and follows
the Trade of a Gardener 533
Dodanum, the son of *Javan*, first settled
in *Rhodes* 16, 676. his posterity
passing into *Epirus* 598. and there
naming the *Dodanian* Grove 597
& 599
Dog-fish, how taken 386
Doftheans, a *Samaritan* Sect, and their
Superstitions 724
Drake Sir *Francis*; how said to be the
first that layd about the World
1062. by whom followed *ib.*
Drachmira her cruelty 450. swallow-
ed alive *ib.*
Druides, what they were, and from
whence so called; their chief seat
in *France* 200. in *Britain* 358
Drufians, what they are 685. of their
power and strength 693
E.
Ecco la Tice, a scoff used amongst
the *Italians* 144
Edgar rowed over *Dre* by eight Kings
324
Edward the 3d. his claim unto the
Crown of *France*, mistaken in our
common Chronicles 178, 179. not
prejudiced at all by the *Salique*
Law *ib.*
Egypt peopled in probability before
the Flood 925. some of the Dyna-
sties of their Kings to have been
before it *ib.*
Elam the son of *Sem*, where planted
9, 800
Election of *Popes* 112, 113. of the
Dukes of *Venice* 127. of the Ger-
man Emperours 481. of the great
Master of *Malta* 954. the ordinary
means for obtaining the Crown of
Bohemia.
Electors of *Germany*, how many 480.
by whom ordained *ib.* their Offices,
and how performed *ib.*
Elephants their vast greatness and do-
cile nature 860
Eliska the son of *Javan*, settled in *Elis*
of *Peloponnesus* 15. and after in the
Isles of *Greece* 579. thence called
the Isles of *Eliska*, *Ezek.* 27. 7, 15.
Emir of *Sidon*, what he is 691. his
power and strength 693
Endymionis somnium dormis, a Proverb,
the occasion of it 661
Enemics to be licensed flight 207. how
to be dealt withal when they are in
our power 73
Enterviers betwixt great Princes
reckoned inconvenient 146
E b b b b a E j a

A T A B L E.

Epaminondas slain at Mantinea 581
Escurial 271
Essen, why so called, their opinions and *Dogmata* 708
Etiologies, ridiculous of *Europe* 32.
 of the *Hugonots* 198. of the *Wallons* 361. of the *Lombards* 546
Ephesus, and the Temple there dedicated to *Diana* 658
Epoche, what it is in account of time 20. the several *Epoches* in story 6.
Eunuchs, why most employed by the Eastern Monarchs 823
Europe, whence so called 32. the Original languages it still in it 33
Exarch, what he was, and by whom ordained 93. his proper Territory *ib.* the Catalogue and succession of them *ib.*
F
Fides Arica, a Proverb, the Original of it 588
Fieds, a barbarous custom among the *Stots* 331. abrogated by *K. James* *ib.*
Fig-tree, why cursed by our Saviour 710
Fire, Worshipped by the *Litmani* 529. and by the *Persians* 801. carried in state before the *Romans* *ib.*
Fleas drive the Inhabitants from the City *Myra* 658
Flight, to be permitted an Enemy, and debarred a Souldier 207
Formalities of the homage done by *Edw.* the 3d. to the French King 215. at the Degradation of Priests 427. at the Investiture of the Dukes of *Carinthia* 437. of *Manrice* Duke of *Saxonia* 469. of *Albert* Duke of *Prussia* 534. of the Duke of *Muscovie* 522. at the admitting the new Duke of *Wurtzburg*, and interring the old 444. at the marriages of the Nestorians 771. at the Coronation of the *Great Cham* 846. at the presenting of Ambassadors to the *Grand Signeur* 794. 795. at the Funerals in *China* 850
Frein Guard dangerous to a Prince person 929. as foreign Aids unto a Kingdom 930. on what occasions usually fought, and when most necessary *ib.*
Fornication and Adultery punished with death 542
Franks, or *French*, of what Nations they consisted 232. Their actions and achievements *ib.* By whom converted to the faith, and on what occasion 175. their Character 174. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards* 179. the vaines of their Empire, and the reasons of the decay thereof 232, 233. The name of *Franks* given by the *Turks* to all Western Christians 691
Frankincense, where it groweth, and

how 758, 759. offered to the gods 757. *Frankincense* growing out of the Earth 454
Franciscans, or *Grey Fryers*, why so called, and by whom founded 115. by the French called *Cordeliers* *ib.*
Frederick the 1. suddenly drown'd 667
Free Cities, what they are, how many, and in what *Eitates* 403
Friers, and their several Orders 114. &c. in what esteem amongst the people 116
Fruitfulness of *Rhesan* 517. and *Podolia* 530

G
Gabatz, a Leprous kind of people, in what parts they dwell 213
Galileans, of what stock they were 719, 722. scorned by the *Jews* 723. Their zeal unto Religion 709, 723. our Saviour called a *Galilean* 719
Gallican Church, the power and privileges of it 176
Gaulonites, what they were 709. for what cause named *Galileans* *ib.*
Gentlemen of Venice, what they are, and in what esteem 127
Geography defin'd 21, 28. the benefit thereof 19
S. George the *Cappadocian*, a famous Martyr 649. his *Cenotaphium* at *Lidda* in the Holy Land 725. highly esteemed among the *Turks* 698. his bank in *Genoa* 141. made Patron of the most noble Order of the Garter 322
Germans, whence so named 396. how terrible at first to the *Romans* 404. their Original extraction *ib.* possessed of the Western Empire *ib.* the power of the Emperours impaired, and by what means 408. now merely titular 480
Geter, the son of *Aram* planted in *Albania* 10, 789
Gipsies, from whence they have both their names and feats 914
Gomer, the son of *Japhet*, first settled in *Albania* also 14, 404. of his posterity, see *Cimmerians*
Guthes, their Original, and first seat 502. their Kings before they left the East 503. their successes and affairs in *Italy*, 63, 64. in *France* 217. in *Spain* 248, 249
Grecians, in what they differ from the Church of *Rome* 576. by which maliciously, and unjustly persecuted *ib.* their language not of such extent as in former times *ib.*
Gortheni 724
Gnells and *Gibellines* whence so called, and when 131, 449. the fancy of the *Elfs* and *Goblins* derived from thence 131
Guelphian family, their Original 472
Guicciardine yielded by the Inquisition 109. and the substance of him in that place *ib.*
Guns, where invented, and by whom 399. not used in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* 849
Gyges, how he came to be King of *Lydia* 661. whence said to have a Ring, by which made invincible *ib.*
H
A Letter ominous to the State of *England* 833
Hannath, or the Land of *Hannath* 692
Haus-Town, why so called, how many, and of what power at Sea 403
Harios, whence used for the name a common prostitute 192
Harpies, the fable and the Moral 624
Hats, Archbishop of *Adantz*, deposed of *Ras* and *Mice* 477. So also *Pope* the Duke of *Poland* 735
Havilah the son of *Canaan*, first planted about *Babylonia* 1. called thence the Land of *Havilah*, in the second of *Gen.* 802
Havilah, the son of *Jockan*, first settled in *India* 22. the Kingdoms of *Ava* and *Chavilah*, so called from him 884
Hebrew, not the primitive language 17. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews* *ib.*
Hegira, the Mahometan *Epoche* 20. from whence so called 763. the insteadfastness of *Scalliger* about it *ib.*
Hellenists, what they were, and why so called 574, 708. in what differing from the other *Jews* *ib.*
Hercynian Forest, the beginning and extent thereof 404
Hermias the Tyrant sewed in an Oxes hide, and baird to death 756
Herodians, what they were, and from whence denominat'd 709
Heterosist, what they are in *Geography*, and from whence so called 24
Hieroglyphicks, what they were, and by whom first used 913. some particulars of them *ib.*
S. Hierome, a Father of the Church, where born 542. the Order of Monks by him instituted 115
History defin'd 20. the necessary use of it, and to whom 18, 19. how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commentaries*, &c. 20
Hook-tide sports, the Original of them, and from whence so named 318
Hollanders, their great strength at Sea 382. the great benefit they make by fishing on the Coast of *England* 298, 361. Their base cheat put upon the *English* at *Polevrom* 897. and bloody butchery at *Amboyna* 898
Holy Oyl of Rheims, in what state attended 186. not so ancient as the French pretend *ib.*
Homers

Homers birth, how contended for 658. where born, and why call'd *Maenides* 659
Huanacu, a strange beast, and the nature of it 1051
Hugonots, whence so called 198. Their great power once, and present condition 176
Hulor Chul, the son of *Aram*, in what parts first settled 978, 786
Hydrography what it is, and by whom best written 28
I
Isobites, what they are, and where most numerous 773. their opinions 774
Janizaries, their institution and number 793. their Office and power *ib.* their insolencies and punishments 793, 794. the likeliest men to carry the *Turkish* Empire, if the line of *Ottoman* should fail 797
Japhet, how made partaker of the blessing of God, *Gen.* 9. 27. both in the literal sense, and the mystical 33
Japyn, the name of the North-west winde, and why given unto it 75
Jarach, the son of *Jockan*, more probably to be found in *Arachosia*, than *Insula Hieracum* 10, 11
Javan, the son of *Japhet*, the father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* 579, 658
Jealousie, a predominant passion amongst the *Italians* 67. as also amongst the *Moor* and *Spaniards* 242. the *English* little subject to it. *ib.* 269. and the *Dutch* much less 361
Jesuites by whom first instituted 116. their vow of *Mission* *ib.* grown formidable to the *Pope* *ib.* industrious in planting Christianity in the barbarous Nations 851. Chief Factors for the Kings of *Spain* 246. They and the *Presbyterians* or *Puritan* Preachers the greatest Incendiaries of *Christendom* 116. expelled *Georgia*, on what occasion 788
Jetur the son of *Ismael*, the father of the *Iturians* 716
Jews not suffered to land in *Cyprus* 678. expelled out of *England*, *France* and *Spain* 746. in danger to be stoned every *Munday*, *Thursday* *ib.* The hopes and hinderances of their conversion *ib.* the restitution of their Kingdom not denied by *Christ* 747
Islands, how caused 21. whether better seated than the Continent 22
Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where settled 418. *Imperial Cities* *ib.* Free.
Indians, or *Christians* of *S. Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion 861. The submission of their Churches to the *Pope* 862

A T A B L E.

Indico, where and how it groweth 870
Influence of the heavenly bodies on particular Countries 17
Inquisition, when, and why ordained 245. the manner of proceeding in it *ib.* not admitted into many of the *Papal* Countries *ib.*
Interim of Germany, what it was, and how ill liked of all parties 428
Invention of Clocks and Watches 361. of Pictures in glass, and laying colours in *Oyl* *ib.* of Printing 384. of Guns 399. leather Ordnance 535. of wild-fire 630. of the Battle-ax 645. of Dice, Chefs, &c. 659. of Tragedies 671. of Sayls for Ships 674. of Arithmetic & Astro-nomy 689. of the purple Die 690. of Chrytal glass 691. of Pastors, Hour-glasses, Military Engines 83. of Comedies, &c. 84. of the Mariners Compaſs, 71, 1003. of Tackle for Ships *ib.* of Letters and Ciphers 913. of Brachygraphy *ib.* of Paper 917. of Watch-words 615
Ireland, why never Conquered till the reign of King *James* 347
Irish, their barbarous customs 341
Ishbmian Games 586
Israel and Judah, when divided 738. the reasons why no more United, though some opportunities were offered 739, 740
Italians derived from *Citim*, the son of *Japhet* 37. so called from the *Aethi-* lians, 37, 38. by whom converted to the faith 36. their scandalous lives, how punished, and by what instruments 64
Italy the name at first of the East parts of the Country only 76. communicated after to the whole 34, 76. the Kings thereof after the ruine of the Empire 66. abandoned by the Emperours, and for what reasons, 66, 67
Joan the Virgin, not a Witch, as the *English* 424. not so miraculously sent as the *French* pretend *ib.* what she was indeed *ib.*
Jockan, and his posterity settled originally in the East 10, 11, 862. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix* 10. greater of their transplanting into *America* 862, 1038
John Baptists head, how pitifully mangled by the *Papists*.
Julius Scaliger his centure of *Hesiodus* controuled by *Peleius* 592. his base character of the *English* 299
Joseph Scaliger his singularity about *Nabonides* 778. and *Darius Medus* *ib.* His insteadfastness about the *Hegira* 763
Julian the Apostate where he died 770
Judges of Hell, what, and who they

were 616, 621. and why so accounted of *ib.*
Justus Lipsius his unjust Censure of *Cassars* Commentaries 40
K
Kappa *κα*, a Proverb, and of whom intended 630
Karamanlis, & *Karamanlis* *regis* proverbially used for a wicked person 648
Kings called an Ordinance of man, and why 5. who of them anciently anointed 252. how they take precedence 321. not to use their people to the wars 394. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen* 415. Kings but for twelve years, and then must sacrifice themselves 877. Kings subject to Priests, where 969
Kings evil a disease 152. the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of *England* 318
Knighthood vid. Orders.
L
Labyrinth of Egypt 915. imitated by *Minos*, in that of *Crete* 621
Lachryma Christi 138. the expression of a *Dutch-man* thereon *ib.*
Lady of Loretto her Legend 722. the sanctuities of her Temple 97
Lamissou thrown an Infant into a fishpond, found by King *Agilmond*, brought up in Court, and after chosen King of *Longobards* 546
Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence so called 34. The *Latine* tongue not the language of *Italie* 36. The reasons of the spreading and extent thereof *ib.*
Lampſacus, how saved by *Anaximenes* when threatened by *Alexander* *ib.*
Laws of Oleron 238
League between *France* and *Scotland* 335. the condition thereof *ib.*
Lehalim the Father of the *Lybi-* *Egypti* 13, 926
Lemmer an infectious beast 494
Lemnia, or *Terra Lemnia*, the sovereign virtues of it 614. how made and ordered *ib.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ib.*
Letters, the first Original, and History, of them 913
Levites, why scattered and divided among the Tribes 735. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ib.*
Libanus a famous Mountain, why so named 687. the length, course and branches of it *ib.*
Libertas prophetandi, what, and where most in use. 523
Liburni the name of a light Vessel 554. and of such Chairs as we call *Sedans* *ib.* and from whence so named *ib.*
Lions 225. Its famous Mart *ib.* in it a Temple dedicated to *Augustus*, before whose Altar exercises instituted

Lipsius his unjust Censure of *Cassars* Commentaries 40
M
Macedonius, a strange beast, and the nature of it 1051
Macedonius, whence so called 198. Their great power once, and present condition 176
Mulor Chul, the son of *Aram*, in what parts first settled 978, 786
Hydrography what it is, and by whom best written 28
I
Isobites, what they are, and where most numerous 773. their opinions 774
Janizaries, their institution and number 793. their Office and power *ib.* their insolencies and punishments 793, 794. the likeliest men to carry the *Turkish* Empire, if the line of *Ottoman* should fail 797
Japhet, how made partaker of the blessing of God, *Gen.* 9. 27. both in the literal sense, and the mystical 33
Japyn, the name of the North-west winde, and why given unto it 75
Jarach, the son of *Jockan*, more probably to be found in *Arachosia*, than *Insula Hieracum* 10, 11
Javan, the son of *Japhet*, the father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* 579, 658
Jealousie, a predominant passion amongst the *Italians* 67. as also amongst the *Moor* and *Spaniards* 242. the *English* little subject to it. *ib.* 269. and the *Dutch* much less 361
Jesuites by whom first instituted 116. their vow of *Mission* *ib.* grown formidable to the *Pope* *ib.* industrious in planting Christianity in the barbarous Nations 851. Chief Factors for the Kings of *Spain* 246. They and the *Presbyterians* or *Puritan* Preachers the greatest Incendiaries of *Christendom* 116. expelled *Georgia*, on what occasion 788
Jetur the son of *Ismael*, the father of the *Iturians* 716
Jews not suffered to land in *Cyprus* 678. expelled out of *England*, *France* and *Spain* 746. in danger to be stoned every *Munday*, *Thursday* *ib.* The hopes and hinderances of their conversion *ib.* the restitution of their Kingdom not denied by *Christ* 747
Islands, how caused 21. whether better seated than the Continent 22
Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where settled 418. *Imperial Cities* *ib.* Free.
Indians, or *Christians* of *S. Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion 861. The submission of their Churches to the *Pope* 862

A TABLE.

tured of the *Greek and Roman Elo-*
quence *ib.*
Lami a strange beast in *Bohemia* 450
Lombards their Original and first
Kings 545, 546. their affairs in
Italy 64. the subversion of their
Kingdom there 65
Lud the son of *Sem*, the father of the
Lydians in *Asia minor* 9, 669
Ludim the son of *Mizraim*, the father
of the *Ethiopians* in *Africk* 13. im-
properly rendered *Lydians* in our
English Bibles, *Jer.* 46. 9. *ib.*
Luiber his birth 466. his first conten-
tion with the Pope 400. the success
and spreading of his Doctrine *ib.*
and by what means especially 402.
the Government of the *Luiberan*
Churches *ib.* the condition of their
Ministers 403. their Rites and Ce-
remonies not much different from
those in the Church of *England* *ib.*
Lysanias the Tetrarch of *Abylene*,
whose son he was 701. why re-
ckoned *Luk.* 3. among *Herod's* Chil-
dren *ib.*
M.
Machab his story 336
Madaai the third son of *Japhet*,
the father of the *Medes* 15, 798
Magi, what they were in *Persia* 801.
their esteem and power *ib.*
Mages, why used to signify the
Load-stone by the *Latine* writers
1004
Magog the son of *Japhet* settled in *Sy-*
ria propria, and the borders of *Ahe-*
ria 14, 695
Mahomet his birth and breeding
762. his design to Coyne a new Re-
ligion *ib.* the causes of the great
growth and increase thereof 764.
his success and victories *ib.*
Maires of the Palace, their institu-
tion and Authority 233. the Cata-
logue and succession of them *ib.*
Malefactors flying to *Geneva*, how
punish'd 161
Man, why created unarmed and
naked 4. the Image of God in him
what it doth consist in *ib.*
Many exercises allowed at *Geneva* on
the Lords day 161
Marcheta mulieris, a barbarous custom
of the *Scots* 331. whence named,
and by whom abrogated *ib.*
Mares, why used in battle among some
of the Ancients 570
Margaret Countess of *Henneberg*, deli-
vered at one birth of 365 Children
384
Mariners Compass, by whom first
invented, and by whom perfected
71, 1003. erroneously ascribed to
Solomon *ib.*
Maronites, whence so called, their Te-
nets, and place of dwelling 686.
Their reconciliation with the

Pope, but a matter of complement
687
Marrilla her valour in preserving *He-*
phastias from being surpriz'd by
the *Turks* 615
Massacres of the *Scythians* by the
Medes 816, 832. of the *Romans* by
Mithridates 646. of the *Danes* by
the *English* 317. of the *French* in
Sicil 88. of the *Hugonots* by the
French 176
Mastick, what it is, where growing,
and how gathered 672
Mastiff Dogs, why called *Moloss* by
the *Latines* 598
Mamulukes their Institution, Office,
and Power 929
Medusa the Fable, and true story
thereof 994
Melchites, what they are, and from
whence denominat'd 686
Merced, an Order of Religious per-
sons, their institution and employ-
ment 598
Mesekh the son of *Aram* planted
about *Mons Masius* 10, 774
Mesekh, or *Mosach*, the son of *Japhet*,
settled among the *Montes Moschici*
in *Armenia major* 15, 784
Mesha, and *Mount Sephir*, mentioned,
Gen. 10. in what place they were
11, 774, 862
Message of *Waldemar K.* of *Denmark*
to the Pope 484
Messene Servilius, a Proverb, the oc-
casion of it 581
Minotaur, the Fable, and true story of
it 621
Mithridates, the Author of the Anti-
dote to named 646. the sum and
substance of his story *ib.*
Miramomolines, what the word doth
signifie 950. the *Miramomolines* of
Morocco 949
Mizraim the son of *Cham*, the father
of the Nation of *Egypt* 13, 912
Monarchy the nearest form of Go-
vernment to that of God 5. the Mo-
narchs of *Spain* 289. of the *English*
Saxons 316. of the *Assyrians* 776.
of the *Medes* and *Persians* 817
Monastick life, how accounted of in
former times 116. whether to be
preferred before a sociable 117
Mony not the only instrument of ex-
change in ancient times 970. by
what names called, and why *ibid.*
made sometimes of Leather and
Pait-board 1052
Monks their Original and increase
114. by whom first brought under
certain rules *ib.* their several and
particular Orders 114, 115, 116
Mongul, a Tribe of the *Tartars* 844.
the Title of the great Emperor of
the hither *India* 882. the Cata-
logue and Succession of them *ib.*
Monument of *John Duke of Bedford*,

with the answer of *Charles* the 8th.
to a Courtier, who perswaded him
to deface it 192
Montmorency, the family extinct 184
Moors, the lust of *Roderick* occasioned
their coming into *Spain* 249. and
the lust of *Magnus* their expul-
sion thence 258. forced to quit
Spain 267
Morset, or Sea-horses, the description
and use made of them 1012
Mosack work, what it is 124
Moscovites, by whom converted, and
of what opinions in Religion 512.
512. from what Original they
come 520. their Government Ty-
rannical 525. the great Dukes ha-
bit and Royal state 523
Musli, or *Musfrones*, a strange beast
139
Musick, the several sorts and effects
thereof 653. used by the primitive
Christians in Gods publick service
ib.
Myrtum Mare, where it was, and
from whence so named 674
Myrtum postremum, a Proverb, and
the meaning of it *ib.*
N.
Names fatal to some Kingdoms
632
Napiba the nature of it, and where
most used 798, 803
Naphuchim son of *Mizraim*, where
first planted, 13, 924, 925. the name
of *Neptune*, by some said to be
thence derived *ib.*
National Animolities to what cause
ascribed 18
Navigation, the Original and story of
it 1002. what Nations most famous
for it in former times 1003. and
who at present *ib.*
Nemman Games by whom first institu-
ted and on what occasion 85
Netbinims what they were, and in
what employed 731
Nestorians, whence so called 771. their
Tenets in Religion *ib.* Solemnities
they use in contracting Marriage
ib. much hated of the Pope, and
why 773
Nimrod, the Founder of the *Babyloni-*
an and *Assyrian* Kingdoms, 12, 775,
776
Ninive 772
Noah's seven Precepts, or the Pre-
cepts of the sons of *Noah* 708
Nomades, where they dwell, and from
whence denominat'd 832, 940
Noradine's gallant answer made to his
Commanders 705
Normans what they were Originally
193, 494. their Actions and At-
chievements *ib.* when first fix'd in
France 193
North-East passage, by whom at-
tempted and pursued 1090. of the
North-

A TABLE.

North-West passage *ib.* the little
probability of doing any good in
either *ib.*
Nuns, why so called, and by whom
first instituted 117. their particu-
lar Orders *ib.* of ill report for their
unchastity *ib.* Nunnery of *Valdrude*
in *Hainault* 369
Nutmegs, how they grow, and where
most plentiful 896
O.
Bits of the Saints kept as Festi-
vals 608
Ocean, the collection of waters 27. the
causes of its ebbing and flowing *ib.*
the Etymologie of the name, and
vast greatness of it 292
Offa's Dike 322
Oleum Medicum, see *Naptha*.
Olympick Games, by whom first insti-
tuted and restored 579, 580. where
held, and who were Judges of them
579. All the Victors at one time of
one City in *Italy* 77
Opusaria, a kind of Divination 64. an
experiment of it *ib.*
Ophir not the Province of *Sofala* in
Ethiopia 981. where it rather was
11
Oracles which most famous 593. their
ambiguity and decay 593, 594.
Oratorians an Order of Religious per-
sons, by whom first instituted 116.
used for a counterpoise to the Je-
suites *ib.*
Orders of Knighthood, of *Avis* 280.
Alcantara 274. of the *Annunciada*
159. of *S. Andrew* 340. of *S. Anthony*
978. of the *Blood of the Lord Jesus*
Christ 147. of the *Bath* 322. of *Bar-*
romers *ib.* of the *Crescent* 200. of
Calatrava 274. of *Dutch* Knights
539. of the *Port-glaiue* 539. of the
Dragon 549. of the *Elephans* 500. of
the *Golden Flece* 392. of the *Gen-*
net 238. of the *Garter* 322. of the
Holy Ghost 239. of *S. Jago* 274. of
S. John 749. Great Master how cho-
sen, his title 954. of *Jesus Christ*
280. of *S. Michael* 239. of *S. Mark*
129. of *Merced* 273. of *Montesa*
288. of *Novo Scotia* 340. 1012. of
the *Pairie*, or twelve Peers 258. of
the *Round Table* 321. of the *Star*
238. of *S. Stephen* 135. of the *Se-*
pulchre 749. of the *Templars* 750.
of *S. Saviour* 288. of the *Glorious*
Virgin 129. of the *Lilly* 254
Ostracism, what it was, whence called,
and with whom in use 588
Ostrich, *Feathers*, why, and how long
the Cognizance of the Princes of
Wales 329
Quations, how it differeth from a Tri-
umph 41. from whence so called *ib.*
in what cases granted *ib.*
Ovid, why banished into *Pontus* 569
Oxenham his adventurous attempt
1006

Oysters grow on Trees 556
P.
Pasants slavery in *Livonia* 526
Palms anciently used as a sign of
victory 912. set by the Christians
in Church-yards, and for what rea-
son *ib.* of the rare nature of the
Tree 912, 957
Pamphyl, what they were 137
Paper, where first invented, and why
so called 917
Paradise, where it was indeed 767.
the several fancies and opinions
touching the particular *ib.*
Paradise terrestrial of *Aladine* 808
Parchment in *Latine* Pergamena,
where invented first 656, 917
Paris 185. never taken by force, why
ib.
Pasiphae, how far the Fable of her
may be thought historical 621
Patrisim first planted in the land of
Patros 13
Partition-wall, alluded to *Ephes.* 2. 14.
what, and where it was 733
Patridianum a new Order devised by
Constantine, and what it was 63
Pelithites, who, and why so called 725
Pellene vestis, a by-word, and the
meaning of it 578
Persepolis 804
Petalism, what it was, and where
most in use 85
Peter-pence, by whom first granted to
the Pope 113
Pericli and *Periari*, what they are in
Geography 24
Phalg, where probably first planted
10
Pharises whence they had their name
708. Their *Dagmata*, and Autho-
rity amongst the people 709
Pharos 916
Phaselus, whence so named 663
Phileni are 937
Philippicks given by *Tullie* for the
name of his Orations against *M.*
Antony 595
Phut, the son of *Cham*, father of the
Moors, or *Mauritanians* 14, 934
Phryges *sevo* *sapiunt* 653
Pistis what they were, and the story of
them 334
Pignitia, a strange Creature in *Ameri-*
ca 1006
Pied piper, the story of him 560
Pigeons Letter-carriers 770
Piesarra his birth, breeding, rise, and
death 1059
Pledging one another, why first used
in *England* 318
Pluto, why fancied by the Poets for
the God of Hell 598
Pompey's successful War against the
Cilicians 668
Polycrates for long time fortunate, dies
miserably 673
Pope, or *Papa*, what it signifieth 104.

Common at first to other Bishops
ib. the opportunities those of *Rome*
had to advance their greatness
103. the means and steps by which
they did attain to their temporal
power 110. and still keep the same
111. how ealie to be made Hre-
ditary 112. Their Forces and Re-
venue 113, 114
Portugals their Character 275. their
Antipathy to the *Cassilians* *ib.* *Por-*
tugals, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Italians*,
compared *ib.*
Poultry hatched in Ovens by heat
912
Predition of the *Moors* conquering
Spain 249
Pratorian guards, by whom instituted,
and by whom cashiered 61. Their
power, the great Authority of
their Caprains 51
Presbyter John, the name of the King
of *Tenduc* 844. erroneously ascrib-
ed by *Scaliger* to the *Abassine* Em-
perour *ib.* The ground of the m-
istake and right name of that Prince
976
Presbyterian Discipline, by whom first
framed 160. and how after propo-
gated 160, 161. The introduction
of it into the Seignory of *Geneva*
160. and the Realm of *Scotland*
332. why so importunately desired
by some in *England* 302
Priests of the *Jews* provided of a li-
beral maintenance 755. who they
were, whom they called the Chief
Priests 710. of the High-Priest,
and when made a saleable Office
ib. how *Annas* and *Caiaphas* were
High-Priests at the same time *ib.*
Their power and succession after
the Captivity 743
Printing, where first invented, and by
whom 384. how much abused in
these latter times 849. said to have
been long used in *China* 849
Prometheus, why feigned to be tor-
tured by a Vulture 809
Protestants, where first so called, and
why 400, 418. the whole story of
them 400, 401. the causes of the
great increase of their Doctrines
402. their principal over-light *ib.*
Psalm of *Dagrees*, how many, and why
so named 733
Pyramids of *Egypt* their vast great-
ness, by whom build, and why 915
Q.
Quivira, a strange beast there
which supplies them with most
necessaries 1023
R.
Rain falling turns to *Alabaster*
1041. Rain obtained by the
prayer of *Helena* 624
Rarities in *Aravia Felix* 758. in *Egypt*
915. in *America* 1006. in *Ngv*
Hispani,

A T A B L E.

Hispania 1032. in *Chiapa* 1040. in *Peru* 1051. in *Brasil* 1066. in *Cuba* 1084
How far extended by that name 760.
Regna the son of *Chnu* first planted on the shores of the *Persian* Gulf 12,759
Religion naturally ingrafted in the heart of man 31. how it standeth in relation to the parts of the World 31,32
Retiredness from the vulgar eye used by divers Princes 977
Red Romorum, what he is 481. by whom, and for what cause ordained 480,481
Richard the first, terrible to the *Turks* 690. taketh *Cyprus* 681. his speech concerning the Siege of *Pernville* 192. is slain by a shot from an *Arbalist* 208. the man that shot him set at liberty, and rewarded 10.
Riphab the son of *Gomer*, found in *Phlogonia* 14
Rivers, their use, and conditions requisite for Navigation 27. the banks of great Rivers how defensible 655
Rhabarb, or *Rhubarb*, where it groweth 837,841
Rhamnusia, why given for an adjunct unto *Nemesis*, and what *Nemesis* was 588
Rhene, the Fountain and course thereof 362,403. the several branches by which it falleth into the Ocean 362,363
Rochel 210
Rhodes taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent 676
Rhodian Laws, the rule in former times of all marine causes *ib.* and for how long they so continued *ib.*
Rome, of what circuit in her glory 101. the number of its inhabitants 102. the extent of her dominions 61. once made a Goddess, and by whom 660. Her Revenues computed at 150. millions of Crowns 61. Her Empire subverted by *Constantine*, and how 62
Roman Emperors, the succession of them 59. cut off by violent deaths till the time of *Constantine* 60. and the cause thereof 61. their negligence and degenerate stoth 63
Rosmond wife to *Albionius*, King of the *Lomards* procures her husband to be murdered, why 65. her death *ibid.*
Roy d'Ysilot, a French by-word, the meaning and occasion of it 193

S.

Sabeans of *Arabia Felix*, from what race they came 759

Sacrilege a Crime & unpardonable even amongst Heathens 594
Sadduces whence they had their name 708. their opinions and dogmata *ib.*
Salique Law, what it truly is 177. not so ancient as the *French* pretend it, but not at all was regarded by them, but to serve the turns of some usurpers 778. the inconveniences, and injustice of it *ib.*
Salmacida Spolia, a Proverb, and the meaning of it 661
Salvages lately found in *Spain* 270,271
Samia vasa, what, and how highly prized 673
Samaritans, what they were 723. their Religion, Tenets, and Sects 723,724. how hated by the *Jews*, and why 723,726
Saracens, why so called 751,754. their Character in former times 754. they resort to *Mahomet* 773. their successes, victories, and Caliphs 764
Sardanapalus an effeminate King, why he burnt his Treasure 777
Sardanicus Ritus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it 90
Scava's valour 599
Scanderbeg his life and story 600,601. what became of his body *ib.* & 553
Sclaves, or *Sclavonians*, whence so called 557. Their affairs and story *ib.* given as a name to Bond-men, and on what occasion 550
Schola Salerni, by whom written, and by whom dedicated 71
Scots, why so called 331. their proceedings in the Reformation 332. their Kingdom held in Vassalage to the Crown of *England* 339
Scrites, what they were when instituted, and of what Authority 710
Seythians, their Original, Antiquity, and Achievements 836. Their expedition into *Media* 816. and successes in *Lydia* 830
Sebe the son of *Jocktan*, planted upon the River *Indus*, or the *Golden Chersonese* 11
Selvians 724
Sela the son of *Arphaxad*, in what parts settled 70,803
Selencus a great builder 695. his strange rise and fortunes 702
Semiramis 776
Seminaries for the *English*, by whom first erected, and where 186
Semca's happy memory 244
Scriphia *Kanan* an old proverb, the occasion and meaning of it 618
Serpents worshipped by the *Samogites*, and *Lituanis* 529. the barbarous Customs of those people *ibid.*
Sforza, his strange rise and story 144
Sheba, *Saba*, and *Sabteca*, the sons of *Chnu*, all planted in *Arabia Felix*, and there the founders of the puissant Nation of the *Sabeans* 12,759
Silyls, what they were, how many, and where they dwelt 933. not counterfeited by the Fathers *ib.*
Sicula Gorra 83. *Vesperis Siculis* 88. *Siculi Tyranni* 87. three by-words, and the meaning of them.
Silks, why called *Serica* by the *Latines* 793
Silver and Gold where most plentiful 1052. the rich Mines of *Potosi* 1057. how vilified by the *Hispan* 1052. the causes of the darkness of things in our days 1053. not so advantageous to a State, as Trade and Merchandise *ib.*
Simeon the son of *Jacob*, how dispersed in *Israel*, as his father prophesied 729
Solacismus, whence 667
Solomon's Porch, mentioned *John* 10,23. where, and what it was 733
Sooth-saying, how many kinds thereof 777
Souldiers and great Commanders unfortunate for the most part, and why 588,589
Spa, Medicinal waters, where, and for what most useful 376
Spaniards from whence they do descend 247. by whom converted to the Faith 244. The dependance of the Popes on the Crown thereof 246. their aim at the fifth Monarchy *ib.* the greatness of their Empire, and weakness of it 290.
Spanish Nobility very serviceable to their King, why 291. *Spaniards* their cruelty towards the *Americans* 1005
Squillachi, a theivish beast 666
Sterling money, why so called 333
Streights of Mountains, not to be abandoned by the Defendants 667. the losing of such Passes of what fatal consequence 655
Stukely, where, and when slain 948
Styx, a River of *Greece*, the usual Oath of the gods 481
Sugars, when, and by whom first refined 993. what used instead thereof in elder times *ib.* the great quantities thereof sent yearly by the *Portugals* from the Isle of *S. Thomas* *ib.* and from the Sugar-works in *Brasil* 1066
Syrian language, what it was, and of what ingredients 687,709. when first made vulgar to the *Jews* 687
Syrian Goddess, what she was 695. her magnificent Temple *ib.* the deceipts and juggling of her Priests *ibid.*
Syrorum multa olera; *Syri contra Phoenices*; two Proverbs, and the meaning of them 694

T.

A T A B L E.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tails of Sheep (and of no beast else) why used in Sacrifice 694
Tameplane his Birth and Parentage 834. the sum and substance of his story *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of *Defenders of the Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Basilens*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Tobacco, where most plentiful 1052. why called the *Hobnane* of *Pern* *ibid.* the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the virtues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* 1052
Togama, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650

T.

Tholoseum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1006
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the story of it 1053. more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *ib.*
Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tartessus*, as some say 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* 825. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 844,845
Taxus, a Tree so called, &c. 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* *ib.* the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedis Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it 671
Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Ar-taxerxes* 638
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by God himself 740
Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thrasians* 16,607
Sir Thomas Moor no friend to the Friars 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 963. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Itiopians* 1052
Thracians their Customs 607
Tigranes his frankness 782
Timariots, what they be, their institution and number 793
Titus Bishop of *Crete* 621
Title of most Christian King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholic* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 289. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 320. of

	l.	s.	d.
H ebrew Talent in Gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Egyptian Talens	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Sesteritum of Rome	7	16	
A Shekel	00	2	
Argentum Mat. 26. 15	00	2	
A Drachma	00	00	
A Rubble	00	13	
A Sultany	00	7	
A Ducas	0	6	
A French Crown	0	6	
A Xeriffe	0	6	
A Rix Doller	0	4	
A Floren	0	3	
A Frank	0	2	
A Livre	0	2	
A Gulden	0	2	
A Spanish Real	0	0	
A Sou	0	0	
A Turkish Asper	0	0	
A Maravida	0	0	

	l.	s.	d.
H ebrew Talent in Gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Egyptian Talens	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Sesteritum of Rome	7	16	
A Shekel	00	2	
Argentum Mat. 26. 15	00	2	
A Drachma	00	00	7
A Rubble	00	13	4
A Sultany	00	7	6
A Ducas	0	6	3
A French Crown	0	6	6
A Xeriffe	0	6	0
A Rix Doller	0	4	3
A Floren	0	3	0
A Frank	0	2	0
A Livre	0	2	0
A Gulden	0	2	0
A Spanish Real	0	0	6
A Sou	0	0	1
A Turkish Asper	0	0	0
A Maravida	0	0	0

Ar

[illegible]

The TABLE.

<i>Ænons, u.</i>	554	<i>Amphrile, fl.</i>	577	<i>Arnhem, u.</i>	389	<i>Acadras, p.</i>	454	<i>Alani, p.</i>	827. m. 835
<i>Ænus, u.</i>	604	<i>Amphyfias, u.</i>	595	<i>Archamii, p.</i>	506	<i>Acamas, c.</i>	677	<i>Alanofii, p.</i>	835
<i>Æria, inf.</i>	614	<i>Amite, lodanum u.</i>	383	<i>Arce, inf. 491 u.</i>	578	<i>Acarnes, u.</i>	657	<i>Albania, pr.</i>	785
<i>Ætrix, p.</i>	600			<i>Arce, u.</i>	504	<i>Acballa, pr.</i>	840	<i>Albanis, u.</i>	ibid.
<i>Ætus, fl.</i>	443	<i>Amurgos, inf.</i>	618	<i>Arcas, u.</i>	367	<i>Accaben, p.</i>	774	<i>Albaria, u.</i>	695
<i>Æthra, inf.</i>	614	<i>Amyle, u.</i>	582	<i>Artcher, u.</i>	379	<i>Accad, u.</i>	771	<i>Alleppo, u.</i>	ibid.
<i>Ætolia, pr.</i>	595	<i>Anacthorium, u.</i>	619	<i>Artis, fl.</i>	551	<i>Accarnon, u.</i>	727	<i>Alexandri, inf.</i>	807
<i>Aganias, u.</i>	506	<i>Anaphe, inf.</i>	561	<i>Archeus, pr. u.</i>	488	<i>Acc, n.</i>	689	<i>Alexandria, u.</i>	651, 668
<i>Agathyrs, p.</i>	520	<i>Anachola, u.</i>	572	<i>Arctos, pr. n.</i>	366	<i>Accelines, fl.</i>	860	<i>Algiar, u.</i>	805, 809, 810, 814, 835
<i>Agernis, inf.</i>	491	<i>Anclara, u.</i>	459	<i>Aruncis, u.</i>	451	<i>Accamenides, p.</i>	803	<i>Alicodra, u.</i>	753
<i>Ageros, inf.</i>	491	<i>Andefort, u.</i>	497	<i>Arusberg, u.</i>	375, 412	<i>Acharara, u.</i>	851	<i>Aliga, fl.</i>	815
<i>Aggerhus, r. p.</i>	493	<i>Andersaeh, u.</i>	414	<i>Aruften, r.</i>	477	<i>Acchilliz, m.</i>	730	<i>Alitrophagi, p.</i>	839
<i>Agglitman, u.</i>	694	<i>St. Anders, inf.</i>	389	<i>Arx Britannica, u.</i>	384	<i>Acchillis Curfus, u.</i>	826	<i>Almats, fl.</i>	829
<i>Agryce, u.</i>	544	<i>Andros, inf.</i>	617	<i>Afand, u.</i>	466	<i>Acchillia, fl.</i>	805	<i>Alfadamus, m.</i>	700, 706
<i>Agonia Agrippias, u.</i>	544	<i>Castello St. Angelo, u.</i>	627	<i>Afcens, u.</i>	491	<i>Acon, u.</i>	689	<i>Altay, m.</i>	640. p. 840
<i>Alba, p.</i>	475	<i>Angellostadium, u.</i>	431	<i>Afciburgium, u.</i>	454	<i>Acre, m.</i>	731	<i>Aluncala, u.</i>	788
<i>Aichladium, u.</i>	449	<i>Angerburg, u.</i>	533	<i>Afcra, u.</i>	592	<i>Acra, u.</i>	689	<i>Altun, u.</i>	786
<i>Aiomamas, f.</i>	367	<i>Angernan, pr.</i>	504	<i>Afcuvium, u.</i>	553	<i>Acra, m.</i>	724	<i>Alydda, u.</i>	656
<i>Airc, u.</i>	410	<i>Angermund, u.</i>	411	<i>Aflia, u.</i>	526	<i>Acra, m.</i>	695	<i>Amadabat, u.</i>	872
<i>Aix, Azen, u.</i>	577	<i>Angien, u.</i>	370	<i>Afiocaftron, u.</i>	613	<i>Adada, u.</i>	699	<i>Amagane, pr.</i>	893
<i>Alaicmon, fl.</i>	577	<i>Angli, p.</i>	485, 489	<i>Aflia, u.</i>	494	<i>Adam, u.</i>	715	<i>Amale, m.</i>	725
<i>Alauni, p.</i>	425, 510	<i>Angra, fl.</i>	409, 457	<i>Aflrocafron, u.</i>	563	<i>Adana, u.</i>	667	<i>Amalekites, p.</i>	755
<i>Alba Gæca, u.</i>	544	<i>Angvavaria, pr.</i>	475	<i>Aflorus, u.</i>	587	<i>Adana, inf.</i>	760	<i>Amam, u.</i>	698
<i>Regalis, u.</i>	543	<i>Anbale, pr.</i>	466	<i>Aflorcu, u.</i>	366	<i>Adapa, u.</i>	698	<i>Amam, u.</i>	666, 706, 708
<i>Albania, u.</i>	599	<i>Anisus, fl.</i>	435	<i>Aflorus, u.</i>	604	<i>Adaf, u.</i>	715	<i>Anand, u.</i>	798
<i>Alberg, m.</i>	489	<i>Anniun, u.</i>	560	<i>Altirag, pr. u.</i>	518	<i>Adaf, u.</i>	715	<i>Anangaliqui, u.</i>	894
<i>Albis, fl.</i>	403	<i>Ansbach, pr. u.</i>	444	<i>Atypale, inf. u.</i>	619	<i>Aden, u.</i>	760	<i>Amariac, p.</i>	798
<i>Alborch, u.</i>	489	<i>Anseling, u.</i>	477	<i>Aty, m.</i>	370	<i>Aden, u.</i>	667	<i>Amariac, u.</i>	800
<i>Albona, u.</i>	489	<i>Anstus, u.</i>	494	<i>Athamans, p.</i>	596	<i>Adiabene, pr.</i>	771	<i>Amat, u.</i>	644
<i>Albus, fl.</i>	513	<i>Antandros, inf.</i>	617	<i>Athamun, pr.</i>	596	<i>Adiavas, fl.</i>	771	<i>Amastis, u.</i>	ibid.
<i>Alcmer, u.</i>	383	<i>Anteriacum, u.</i>	414	<i>Athelin, pr.</i>	506	<i>Adida, u.</i>	700	<i>Amatha, u.</i>	695
<i>Alderburg, u.</i>	417	<i>Antebati, u.</i>	553	<i>Athens, u.</i>	588	<i>Adifathri, m.</i>	862. p. 865	<i>Amathys, inf.</i>	677, p. 679
<i>Alefius, u.</i>	513	<i>Antegonia, u.</i>	598, 604	<i>Athetis, fl.</i>	577	<i>Adoniss, fl.</i>	689, 700	<i>Amavera, u.</i>	668
<i>Aleta, u.</i>	552	<i>Antirrhium, c.</i>	578	<i>Athos, m.</i>	604	<i>Adopiffus, u.</i>	664	<i>Amavias, fl.</i>	851
<i>Algow, pr.</i>	418	<i>Antoniina, u.</i>	387	<i>Athras, fl.</i>	608	<i>Adoram, u.</i>	730	<i>Amboinas, inf. u.</i>	851
<i>Alia, fl.</i>	513	<i>Antwerp, u.</i>	379	<i>Aticra, pr.</i>	588	<i>Adorne, u.</i>	864	<i>Amadanagar, p.</i>	874
<i>Alitendor, u.</i>	473	<i>Anticyra, u.</i>	593	<i>Atticra, pr.</i>	588	<i>Adrama, m.</i>	717	<i>Am, da, u.</i>	775
<i>Alitellus, inf.</i>	615	<i>Aocli, p.</i>	519	<i>Attrebates, p.</i>	363, 367	<i>Adramitiz, p.</i>	761	<i>Amilla, m.</i>	672
<i>Alluca, fl.</i>	559, 564	<i>Apia, p.</i>	578	<i>Avares, p.</i>	438	<i>Adramyctes, u.</i>	666	<i>Amiffus, u.</i>	646
<i>Almanis, pr.</i>	396, 419	<i>Apidan, fl.</i>	577	<i>Avatini, p.</i>	533	<i>Adraplia, u.</i>	813	<i>Ammonites, p.</i>	713
<i>Almelo, u.</i>	388	<i>Apus, fl.</i>	569	<i>Audomarus, u.</i>	367	<i>Adrafia, u.</i>	666	<i>Amoria, p.</i>	739
<i>Almenc, pr.</i>	597	<i>Apollonia, u.</i>	600, 604	<i>Avefe sex Hainault, u.</i>	371	<i>Adraffa, u.</i>	771	<i>Amoris, C.</i>	728
<i>Almence, fl.</i>	597	<i>Apialus, u.</i>	603	<i>Avelnes le fec.</i>	371	<i>Adrubeni, p.</i>	753	<i>Amplacis, u.</i>	830
<i>Almora, p.</i>	603	<i>Apus, fl.</i>	599	<i>Auf de Beine, u.</i>	409	<i>Ædoplis, u.</i>	786	<i>Anabafis, p.</i>	854
<i>Almoul, p.</i>	448	<i>Apulum, u.</i>	560	<i>Augst, u.</i>	451	<i>Æchera, u.</i>	687	<i>Anabi, p.</i>	840
<i>Aloft, pr.</i>	366	<i>Aquenn, u.</i>	410	<i>Augur, u.</i>	409	<i>Ægzi, p.</i>	761	<i>Anactoria, u.</i>	662
<i>Alpes Julize, m.</i>	432	<i>Aquigranum, u.</i>	410	<i>Augusta Tiberii, u.</i>	432	<i>Ægeum, u.</i>	646	<i>Anakims, p.</i>	727
<i>Rhæzice, u.</i>	438	<i>Arabon, u.</i>	543	<i>Augusta Veromanduor, u.</i>	373	<i>Ægypti Torrens, u.</i>	744	<i>Anarzi, m.</i>	838
<i>Suevi, u.</i>	419	<i>Arachthus, u. fl.</i>	596	<i>Augustow, u.</i>	532	<i>Ælam, u.</i>	699	<i>Anariz, p.</i>	761
<i>Alpheuz, fl.</i>	579	<i>Arasius Zeck, p.</i>	561	<i>Ælia, u.</i>	592	<i>Ælia, u.</i>	734	<i>Anarofa, u.</i>	813
<i>Allacia, pr.</i>	491	<i>Arapafci, p.</i>	548	<i>Ælon, u.</i>	600	<i>Æni, inf.</i>	760	<i>Anathemula, inf.</i>	673
<i>Allen, inf.</i>	490	<i>Araxum, c.</i>	575	<i>Æuricis, u.</i>	477	<i>Æolis, pr.</i>	757	<i>Anathoth, u.</i>	731
<i>Alze</i>		<i>Arbe, inf. u.</i>	556	<i>Ausberg, u.</i>	428	<i>Ærofa, inf.</i>	677	<i>Anatholia, pr.</i>	641
<i>lnuicus fl</i>	373	<i>Arbogel, u.</i>	504	<i>Austrafas, pr.</i>	390, 405, 424	<i>Æficæ, p.</i>	752	<i>Anchiola, u.</i>	667
<i>Alca Ripa, Altrip, u.</i>	421	<i>A'bo'n felix, u.</i>	427	<i>Aultra, pr.</i>	435	<i>Æfopus, fl.</i>	675	<i>Ancorabites, p.</i>	774
<i>Alciburgum, u. f.</i>	479	<i>Arcadia, u.</i>	581	<i>Awerbacz, u.</i>	449	<i>Æchre, u.</i>	675	<i>Ancyra, u.</i>	647
<i>Alcemark, pr.</i>	417	<i>Archangel, u.</i>	519	<i>Axele, u.</i>	366	<i>Æganagoc, u.</i>	881	<i>Andanuf, fl.</i>	893
<i>Alcena, u.</i>	412	<i>Arches, inf.</i>	614	<i>Axenun, mare</i>	612	<i>Ægir, fl.</i>	821	<i>Andiene, u.</i>	835
<i>Alckenburgh, u.</i>	543	<i>Archengen, u.</i>	417	<i>Axius, fl.</i>	603	<i>Ægricæ, p.</i>	832	<i>Andrac, u.</i>	649
<i>Alckik, u.</i>	422	<i>Arch-pelago, u.</i>	614	<i>Æx'opolis u.</i>	559, 468	<i>Ægathocli, inf.</i>	761	<i>Andragides, u.</i>	903
<i>Alcomara, u.</i>	622	<i>Arch-pelago, u.</i>	614	<i>Azozorium, u.</i>	602	<i>Ægbat'ana u.</i>	799	<i>Andramania, inf.</i>	ibid.
<i>Alctorf, u.</i>	449	<i>Arch-pelago, u.</i>	614	<i>Azul, p.</i>	544	<i>Ægem, m.</i>	870	<i>Andrap, u.</i>	647
<i>Amadori, m.</i>	513	<i>Archeus, p.</i>	583			<i>Ægena, u.</i>	902	<i>Andra, u.</i>	646
<i>Amager</i>		<i>Ardennon, n</i>	362, p. 364			<i>Ægra, u.</i>	869	<i>St. Andrea, c.</i>	677, 682
<i>igria inf.</i>	489		373, u. 365			<i>Ægracan, u.</i>	899	<i>Andrafi, u.</i>	ibid.
<i>Amalchium, mare</i>	495	<i>Ardium, m.</i>	551			<i>Ægram, p.</i>	753	<i>Angaur, u.</i>	879
<i>Amance, u.</i>	414	<i>Aredate, m.</i>	451			<i>Ægrispæ, p.</i>	808	<i>Angeli, u.</i>	879
<i>St. Amand, u.</i>	366	<i>Aredem, u.</i>	476			<i>Ægrinomas, u.</i>	647	<i>Anian, frectum, 843, pr. 844.</i>	
<i>Amberg, u.</i>	448	<i>Arenacum, u.</i>	389			<i>Ægrinomas, u.</i>	647	<i>Animachæ, p.</i>	884
<i>Ambidraunum, pr.</i>	435	<i>Arenacum, u.</i>	389			<i>Ægrispas, u.</i>	737	<i>Anich, u.</i>	737
<i>Ambilic, p.</i>	435	<i>Arethula, u.</i>	604			<i>Ægrispas, u.</i>	737	<i>Anibiz, m.</i>	839
<i>Ambifontes, p.</i>	435	<i>Argentoratium, u.</i>	413, 573			<i>Ægubeni, p.</i>	753	<i>Antandrus, u.</i>	610
<i>Ambra, fl.</i>	435	<i>Argolis, p.</i>	584			<i>Ægwans, pr.</i>	869	<i>Antaradus, p.</i>	691
<i>Ambra, u.</i>	438	<i>Argo, u.</i>	584, 598			<i>Æh, u.</i>	731	<i>Anchedon, u.</i>	737
<i>Ambroines, p.</i>	592	<i>Argafolis, m.</i>	626			<i>Æjalun, u.</i>	727, 728	<i>Anchemafia, pr.</i>	774
<i>Amelundabanne, u.</i>	479	<i>Argyro Caftro, m.</i>	598			<i>Æiazzo, u. f.</i>	668	<i>Anthrophagi, p.</i>	834
<i>Amerlander, pr.</i>	479	<i>Argyruum, u.</i>	514			<i>Æidin, u.</i>	658	<i>Anthiofi, fl.</i>	863, 884
<i>Amesfort, u.</i>	387	<i>Aria, inf.</i>	491, pr. 607			<i>Æilli, p.</i>	658	<i>Anicuf, fl.</i>	829
<i>Amiffus, fl.</i>	363, 404, 187	<i>Arii, p.</i>	536			<i>Æis, p.</i>	865. inf.	<i>Aniconia, u.</i>	643, 669
<i>Amplias, u.</i>	604, 612	<i>Arluno, u.</i>	373			<i>Æio, u.</i>	886	<i>Anicibanus, m.</i>	688
<i>Amphaxatis, pr.</i>	604	<i>Armenia, f.</i>	602			<i>Ælabanda, u.</i>	660	<i>Anicibanus, m.</i>	688
<i>Amphilochia, pr.</i>	603	<i>Armeniens, u.</i>	366			<i>Æladules, p.</i>	780	<i>Pifidiz, u.</i>	664
<i>Amphilopolis, u.</i>	603	<i>Armydus, n.</i>	387			<i>Ælabund, u.</i>	699	<i>Nigdeniz, u.</i>	774

The **T A B L E.**

Antiochia	814	Arfacia, u.	799	Lib. 4.	Alvarez, inf.	993	Ara Amoris, c.	988
Penes Taurum,	698	Arifarata, u.	784		Amaro, pr. u. m.	970	Palladis, inf.	920
Antiochiana, p.	650	Arifolacea, u.	784		Amari, l.	919	Aracofis, l.	1070
Antiochia, u.	720	Arifimote, u.	784		St. Amaro, u.	1067	Arampec, u.	1012
Antipacis, u.	725	Arifing, u.	699	St. A	Amata, u.	1068	Aras, m;	980, 995
Anticruata, m.	648, 780	Arifinot, u.	679, 780	Abad, f.	Amazons, pr.	983, 1070	Aras, Eu	
Anubingara, u.	902	Arifone, u.	686	Abadalenry, inf.			Aras, dcf.	956
Anurogrammum, u	902	Arifonca, p.	813	Abani, fl.			Arapous, l.	919
Aornus, u.	864	Arifonza		Abanis, fl.			Arar, u.	919
Apamra, u.	654, 770	Aratona, u.	812	Abax, pr. u.			Aray, c.	1075
Apamece, p.	695	Aratanda, u.	810	Abibes, m.			Aracadi, pr.	919, 925
Apachurum, u.	830	Aratani, fl.	815	Abugana, pr. u.			Archidona, u.	1059
Apantomera, pr.	672	Aratata, u.	800	Abundi, p.			Orbis Acticus, p.	1084
Aphect, u.	731	Araxata, u.	744	Aburic, u.			Aracquip, pr. u.	1055
Apipolis, u.	735	Araxilla, u.	788	Ades, u.			Arezibba, fl. u.	1082
Apharema, u.	732	Aru, p.	901	Abyla, m.			Ariza, u.	1057
Aphrain, u.	723	Arvad, inf.	694	Abzib, u.			Arimao, fl.	1084
Aphroditum, u.	680	Arvis, m.	865	Acachica, u.			Arma, pr.	1050
Apollonia, u. 651, 656, 772		Arxa, u.	784	Acano, u.			Herculis, m.	924
Apocopi, m.	862	Arxambrani, p.	790	Acachibne, inf.			Arnedo, u.	1055
Apphana, inf.	761	Araxum, pr. 773, u.	773	Acapulco, u.			Aroia de Corazon, pr.	1025
Arabia, pr.	751, u. 759	Aracalon, u.	727	Acadun, u.			Aronata, c.	968
Defecta	752	Acanus, fl. f. l.	642	Accadie, p.			Aronce, pr.	964
Felix	757	Acanus, m.	654	Acama, u.			Arotas, pr.	1073
Petrea	760	Acher, pr. 721, u.	719	Acas, u.			Arrowian, p.	1070
Arabicus, f.	803	Aharaffe, u.	719	Acas, u.			Arquie, inf. u.	961
Arabyllus, u.	650	Ahdod, u.	717	Acu, u.			Arway, fl.	1070
Aracca, u.	811	Afia, pr.	639	Acucos, u.			Arruga, fl.	982
Arach, pr.	881	Minor	641	Acucna, pr.			Artenaria, c.	742
Arachan, pr. u.	809	Proconularis	657	Trifidum de Acugna, u.			Arifnari, c.	961
Arachos, u. l.	809	Propria	660	Acufamil, inf.			Arifnos, u.	920, 925
Arad, u.	729	Afora, p.	831	Adagie, u.			Arvites, m.	964
Agedus, u.	691, 696, 696	Askenaz, m.	831	Ades, pr.			Aruba, inf.	1078
Arz, p.	806	Almiraz, m.	832	Adel, pr.			Port aux Anglois, u.	1012
Asam, pr.	884	Alphon, u.	724	Adendum, u.			Arzilla, u.	948
Sobati	685, 699	Alphabota, u.	835	Adrumcum, u.			Asbete, p.	925
Damaleck, p.	700	Alpendu, u.	665	Adulus, u.			Acenonius, inf.	992
Naheriani, p.	784	Alperia, inf.	677	Adulus, u.			Angia des Reyes, u.	1067
Maechuh	784	Alphalices, l.	711	Adymachyda, pr.			Aha-mahaga, fl.	1015
Aramathca, u.	715	Alpitii, m.	834	Aginarus, inf.			Affhouad, fl.	944
Ararat, m.	783	Alphica, u.	815	Agipus, K.			Alna, u.	922
Aravazi, p.	865	Alphara, fl.	850	Agula, u.			Alphar, l.	919
Aravena, pr.	650	Affa, u.	727	Agunus, inf.			Alpis, c.	968
Araxces, fl.	835	Affria, pr.	771	Aeris, pr.			Affam, u.	994
Araxes, fl.	783, 804	Affus, u.	651	Aeripani, p.			Affaw, p.	1075
Araxa, u.	830	Affeben, p.	813	Aerichia, pr.			Affociation, inf.	1078
Arabca, u.	809	Affaren, p.	810	Aethiopia, u.			Affumption, inf.	1012, 1064
Arabela, u.	723, 772	Affaroch, u.	717	inferior, p.			Affabotas, fl.	967
Arbelices, u.	772	Affarich, u.	670, inf.	675			Affapus, fl.	969
Arbis, u.	807	Affaricia, inf.	675	Aethiopia, c.			Affare	990
Arbituri, p.	808	Affarica, u.	789	Aethula, inf.			rata, inf.	9

The T A B L E.

Azali, u.	945	Hegorre, p.	213	Tormio, u.	171	Lib. a.	Biarmia, pr.	516
Azame, u.	945	Heia, u.	275	Holla, u.	90		Biblus, Inf.	
Azanaghi, p.	961	Belcairo, u.	76	Boyum, u.	323		Bibrach, u.	418
Azanages, p.	961	Bele, u.	157	Boviaum, u.	72		Bicla, u.	514
Azazad, des.	918	Beiga, u.	308	Boullenberg, C.	169		Bideloyfiero, l.	513
Azat, m.	923	Belgica-prima, pr.	181	Boullongne, u.	189		Biefce, u.	513
Azati, m.	945	Secundo, u.	183	Boulogne, u.	91		Bielfi, p.	521
Azna, u.	1083	Bellay, u.	224	Bourton, p. u.	202		Bieruliet, u.	365
Azun, u.	974	Belle-Isle, u.	230	Bourdeaux, u.	210		Befcid, m.	545
Azzecic, f.	1055	Belmont, u.	208	Bourges, u.	224		Bighu, u.	528
		Belleville, u.	203	Bourgfurlamer, u.	209		Bihigen, u.	528
		Bellinaana, u.	165	Bourges, c.	205		Billew, fl.	528
		Bellemont, u.	77-208	Boutonne, fl.	205		Bilfen, u.	485
		Bellocast, p.	193	Boynce, fl. 342, 343	209		Bineche, u.	370
		Belloval, p.	183	Boys du St. Pol.	210		Bings, u.	416
		Belzia, pr.	200	Vincennes, C.	185		Binger, u.	419
		Belzice, u.	150	Boylson, u.	208		Biponish, u.	458
		Belzin, p.	192	Nozila, u.	146		Biponish, Inf.	458
		Benacus, l.	118	Bracavia Augusta, u.	275		Bischoff, u.	491
		Benacium, u.	211	Bracciani, l.	130		Bischoffstett, u.	491
		Benventum, u.	72-157	Bracciano, u.	99		Bistrice, fl. u.	563
		St. Benner Le Chastow, u.	303	Brading, u.	312		Bisrefel, u.	430
		Berehaven, u.	345	Brage, u.	275		Bium, u.	495
		Bergama, u.	119	Bragan, u.	275		Black Sea,	603
		Bergel, p.	171	Brad Albini, p.	330		Towers,	613
		Bergerac, u.	208	Bradenium, u.	308		Blanch, fl.	370
		Berigonium, u.	334	Brocken, m.	344		Blancoftein, u.	459
		Beikes, u.	304, 308	Becknock, p.	344		Blangis, fl.	367
		St. Bernard minor, u.	153	St. Brice, u.	195		Blaut, fl.	419
		St. Bernardino, u.	171	Bremenium, u.	308		Bling, u.	492
		St. Bernard, u.	213	Bronca, fl.	118		Bliecia, pr.	492
		Bein, p. 164, u.	165	Bromociville, u.	264		Blida, u.	563
		Bernaio, u.	255	Brefcia, u.	118		Mokawes, u.	516
		Bernicia, p.	314	Bressi, p.	224		Black, fl.	475
		Berry, pr.	205	Bressi, u.	195		Bodenze, l.	507
		Berfonton, u.	228	Bregranes, pr.	194		Bodmin, C.	417
		Besignan, u.	76	Brotti, p.	77		Bodnerica, u.	504, p. 505
		Befons, u.	216, 217	Brionan, u.	223		Bodius, f.	505
		Beterenfes, p.	216, 217	Bridg. cafterton, m.	308		Bodobuca, m.	515
		Beverly, u.	308	Brio, p.	187		Bodon, m.	465
		Bevio, u.	171	Brig, pr.	162		Bodum, Inf.	488
		Beziers, m.	216	Brigant, u.	308, 346		Bogens, u.	490
		Biaia, u.	219	Brignoli, u.	219		Bogh, fl.	513
		Biel, u.	164	Brienne, u.	165		Bohemis, R.	513
		Bieles, l.	163	Brigiano, u.	223		Bohus, pr. fl.	494
		Bigerones, p.	213	Brionde, u.	274		Boiaris, pr.	494
		Bilibis, u.	256	St. Brioci faaum, u.	195		Boiem, p.	494
		Billon, u.	204	Brixellum, u.	148		Boiodunum, u.	432
		Binchester, u.	308	Briftol, u.	306		Boiotherum, u.	432
		Birar, u.	208	Britannia, prima & fecunda	309		Boion, u.	195
		Birgus, fl.	343	Britannia, Inf.	292		Bolduc, u.	478
		Birho, u.	255	Britanodunum, u.	334		Holla, fl.	370
		Biscay, p.	254	Brous la Gallia, u.	208		Boigano, fl.	437
		Bisfigli, u.	75	Bruck, u.	166		Bok, u.	437
		Biturum, u.	75	Brunaufium, u.	75		Bolgagrave, u.	563
		Bituriges Cubis	205	Bruno, f.	226		Bomel, u.	383

The T A B L E.

Brabant, <i>pr.</i>	378	Bagarda, <i>u.</i>	810	Benjamin, <i>pr.</i>	731	Beris, <i>u.</i>	717	Bermio, <i>fl.</i>	1064
Bracany, <i>u.</i>	366	Bagdar, <i>u.</i>	809	Bepithus, <i>m.</i>	884, 862	Byconi, <i>pr.</i>	647	Bernuda, <i>u.</i>	107
Brackaw, <i>u.</i>	530	Bagos, <i>m.</i>	810	Berabonna, <i>u.</i>	884	Byces, <i>fl.</i>	649	Bernudaz, <i>inf.</i>	107
Bradinglac, <i>u.</i>	444	Bagradas, <i>fl.</i>	780, 804	Beracines, <i>u.</i>	754	Bylax, <i>p.</i>	812	Beros, <i>u.</i>	108
Bragodonum, <i>u.</i>	448	Bahaman, <i>pr.</i>	781	Beraria, <i>u.</i>	754	Byra, <i>u.</i>	785	B. rectica, <i>pr.</i>	981
Braki, <i>u.</i>	476	Bala, <i>u.</i>	724	Beratus, <i>u.</i>	691	Byrta, <i>u.</i>	698	Biru, <i>fl.</i>	1040
Brala, <i>u.</i>	476	Balachium, <i>u.</i>	827	Berodexi, <i>u.</i>	700			Befecath, <i>pr.</i>	910
Bramsted, <i>u.</i>	486	Balaguata, <i>u.</i>	877	Berthexa, <i>m.</i>	695			Bathames, <i>u.</i>	910
Brandenberg, <i>pr.</i>	456, 533	Ballambua, <i>u.</i>	899	Berthy, <i>u.</i>	804			Bicar, <i>u.</i>	1050
Brando, <i>int.</i>	491	Balavanya, <i>m.</i>	903	Berfice, <i>u.</i>	721			Bidar, <i>u.</i>	973
Brasorianum, <i>u.</i>	491	Balanga, <i>u.</i>	884	Berzamina, <i>u.</i>	737			Biledalgared, <i>pr.</i>	973
Branki, <i>u.</i>	517	Barb, <i>c.</i>	701	Befor, <i>fl.</i>	727, 884			Bifam, <i>m.</i>	973
Braviovia, <i>u.</i>	564	Barbec, <i>u.</i>	824	B. fyna, <i>fl.</i>	884			Bifcaia Nova, <i>pr.</i>	1030
Bravfogovd, <i>c.</i>	560	Batfogovd, <i>c.</i>	824	Becah, <i>u.</i>	700			Bifcaia, <i>u.</i>	938
Bratupanium, <i>u.</i>	538	Balonce, <i>u.</i>	884	Becarampha, <i>u.</i>	715			Bizu, <i>pr.</i>	966
Braunberg, <i>u.</i>	573	Balfora, <i>u.</i>	770, 806	Becababua, <i>u.</i>	715			Bizu, <i>u.</i>	1046
Brazia, <i>inf.</i>	516	Baly, <i>inf.</i>	900	Bethel, <i>u.</i>	731			Blanca, <i>inf.</i>	1078
Breda, <i>u.</i>	379	Banath, <i>u.</i>	713	Bethelzob, <i>u.</i>	715			Blance, <i>c.</i>	961, 1025
Bredenberg, <i>u.</i>	486	Bamath Baal, <i>u.</i>	715	Betharam, <i>u.</i>	701			Blanch, <i>y.</i>	1009, 1013
Bredode, <i>u.</i>	386	Hanca, <i>inf.</i>	901	Edon, <i>pr.</i>	701			Blumim, <i>pr.</i>	910
Bredervode, <i>u.</i>	383	Bandan, <i>inf.</i>	896	Horon, <i>u.</i>	725			Blanco, <i>fl.</i>	1040
Bregon, <i>fl.</i>	429	Bandore, <i>u.</i>	873	Bethleni, <i>u.</i>	730			Blind townce, <i>u.</i>	1017
Breme, <i>pr. u.</i>	476	Bannaras, <i>u.</i>	880	Nimrah, <i>u.</i>	715			Boarufco, <i>pr.</i>	1082
Breslaw, <i>u.</i>	451	Bannaraw, <i>u.</i>	804	R. hob, <i>p.</i>	718			Bocanum, <i>u.</i>	945
Brest, <i>pr.</i>	519, 535	Banoam, <i>u.</i>	899	Saidav, <i>u.</i>	719, 722			Bogudimia, <i>pr.</i>	946
Bresty, <i>pr.</i>	531	Bancam, <i>u.</i>	894	San, <i>u.</i>	714			Bocadel Brago fiet.	1074
Brewers Haven, <i>u.</i>	384	Barab, <i>pr.</i>	753	Somes, <i>u.</i>	721, 728			Evolutium, <i>pr.</i>	919
Brill, <i>u.</i>	384	Barachus, <i>fl.</i>	901	Sora, <i>u.</i>	730			Bolus, <i>u.</i>	910
Brio, <i>u.</i>	414	Baracura, <i>u.</i>	884	Rechulia, <i>u.</i>	722			Bonben, <i>u.</i>	1056
Bulgarcus, <i>l.</i>	417	Barafic, <i>inf.</i>	881	Rechus, <i>fl.</i>	758			Bona, <i>u.</i>	934
arx Britanica, <i>C.</i>	384	Barathene, <i>u.</i>	700	Beczabde, <i>u.</i>	775			Bona Spei, <i>c.</i>	984
Brifch	428	Barathium, <i>l.</i>	736	Bezek, <i>u.</i>	724			Bonaure, <i>inf.</i>	1078
chus, <i>u.</i>	428	Baraza, <i>u.</i>	784	Bianco, <i>C. 677, 711, 1. 826</i>	836			Bona villa, <i>c.</i>	1009
Brigow, <i>pr.</i>	418	Baranilla, <i>u.</i>	645	Biani, <i>u.</i>	870			Bonaventure, <i>u.</i>	1050
Brizaues, <i>p.</i>	429	Baratius, <i>u.</i>	864	Biblis, <i>u.</i>	691			Borda, <i>def.</i>	958
Broick, <i>u.</i>	478	Barzakema, <i>u.</i>	865	Bichend, <i>u.</i>	834			Borealis, Terra incognita,	1089
Brookhurst, <i>u.</i>	389	Barfuithece, <i>u.</i>	813	Bidaples, <i>fl.</i>	863			Boreum, <i>c.</i>	925
Bros, <i>u.</i>	580	Bargo, <i>p.</i>	844	Bider, <i>m.</i>	873			Borigen, <i>inf.</i>	108

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The TABLE.

Agrippa Castro, u.	198	Cleium, u.	605	Coilla, u.	593	Calliohoe, u.	715	Callim, p.	722
Agroino, u.	506	Clarewary, u.	412	Croacia, pr.	552	Calae, u.	770	Calmer, fl.	681
Atena, Mundi, m.	573	Clagnefoot, u.	437	Crojo, u.	620	Calvarie, m.	711	Calpia, pr.	81
Catharo, f. u.	553	Clague, inf.	644	La Croix, m.	486	Calwalla, u.	871	Calpiz portz, m.	640
Catti, p.	441, 474	Clapoliis		Cronaberg, u.	506	Cambara, inf.	760	Calpius, u.	772
Catzenebogen, u.	441	Clauenberg, u.	560	Cronberg, u.	441, 489, 504	Cambira, pr.	871, u. 872	Calpiz, p.	861
Caulon, inf.	617	Cleceband, pr. u.	409	Cronst, u.	555	Cambis, fl.	839	Calpiz, pr.	861
Cazach, u.	512	Cliu, u.	409	Cronst, u.	555	Cambis, fl.	839	Calpiz mare, f.	781
Cebium, u.	564	Cliff, u.	552	Crolien, u.	595	Cambisum, fl.	863	Calpiz, p.	781
Cecropia, u.	588	Cnemis, m.	595	Crunitznach, u.	418	Camelorum, Regio, f.	839	Cassio, p.	81
Cel, l.	427	Cobandi, p.	489	Culemberg, m. 404, p. 389		Camilene, pr.	839	Casta, f.	82
Celidus fl.	597	Cobolentz, u.	415	Culm, u.	533	Camp, u.	649	Castamons, u.	649
Cella, u.	471	Cochina, u.	563	Culmbach, u.	464	Campare, u.	872	Castol-Gera, u.	671
Celeya, u.	436	Cochinios, u.	614	Cumanaz, m.	552	Campion, u.	841	Castrum Periginorum, f.	722
Cenchrea, u.	586	Coeyus, pr.	597	Curetes, p.	596	Canul, pr.	841	Regium,	
Centaui, p.	601	Codonanias, inf.	489	Curapegianaz, u.	464	Canaz Major, u.	721	Carabeda, m.	881
Centron, u.	376	Corten, u.	466	Curcium, u.	555	Minor,		Catamores, p.	671
Coos, inf.	618	Cognamus, m.	435	Curicta, inf.	555	Canaz, fl.	688, 707	Catamul, fl.	861
Cephalenia, inf. u.	616	Colambes, u.	565	Curland, pr.	537	Canaz, pr.	798	Catona, pr.	665
Cephale, u.	617	Colberg, u.	459	Curra, u.	543	Canara, pr.	874	Cataraches, fl.	656
Cestius, fl.	577, 587	Colen, pr. u.	414	Curzola, inf. u.	555	Candahor, pr. u.	872	Caracha, u.	872
Ceracus, u. fl.	622	Colchinium, u.	553	Curzolari, inf.	626	Candari, p.	833	Cathay, pr.	819
Cerani, p.	556	Colluga, u.	517	Custrine, u.	457	Candie, u.	902	Catharaxis, fl.	801
Cere, u.	603	Colmagro, u.	519	Cyclades, inf.	616	Cano, u.	657, 719	Catigai, u.	889
Cerigo, inf.	619	Colmar, u.	502	Cydonia, u.	622	Caniclu, l.	834	Cario, u.	731
Cerod, u.	592	de Colachino, f.	4215	Cythinium, u.	595	Canis, fl.	689	Caracacagaz, u.	831
Cesline, u.	451	Colceza, u.	544	Cynthus, m.	617	Canaz, u.	657, 664, 770	Catrabani, p.	761
Ceterigo, inf.	604	Colnamich, u.	568	Gynus, u.	595	Canlay, p.	840	de La Catti, c.	677
Cetius, u.	603	Colonia, u.	598	Cyparidii, u.	580	Cancharis, u.	805	Cattigara, u.	854
Chabris, fl.	604	Agripa, u.	414	Cytra, u.	593	Canthymus, u.	864	Caucasia portz, m.	649
Chalcidice, p.	595, 615	Trajana, u.	409	Cytha, pr.	619	Cancon, pr. 848, u.	852	Caucalus, m.	780, 800
Chalcis, u.	615	Colubra, fl.	566	Cythna, inf.	619	Capoco, u.	872	Caudriaces, fl.	819
Chali, p.	489	Columbella, u.	565	Cytia, fl.	612	Capotari, u.	872	Cauchin China, p.	889
Cham, u.	449	Comara, inf.	565	Cytnum, u.	595	Capernaum, u.	719	Cavilano, p.	889
Chaminia, u.	578	Comenolitaz, p.	565	Cyzicus, inf.	613	Capitolis, u.	701	Caulanitis, pr.	772
Charrani, p.	471	Comines, u.	365	Czandre, u.	518	Cappadocia, pr. fl.	648	Caximex, pr.	867
Chaoxia, pr.	597	Conadus, f.	489	Czermis, fl.	518	scunda,	649	Cayllur, fl.	863
Charafon, fl.	608	Conde, u.	370	Czefnigo, u.	514	Caprus, f.	772	Cecha, fl.	863
La Charbonniere, u.	362	Condora, pr.	516	Czibzo, u.	532	Caput Calidoni, c.	677	Ceder Nephthalin, m.	719
Charitini, p.	447	Confluentes, p.	415	Czyb, p.	561	Genis, u.	784	Cedre, p.	719
Charlemont, u.	378	Congel, u.	494			Caracensium, u.	864	Cedron, u. 718, fl.	718
Charudes, u.	48	Connieberg, u.	533			Caracoraz, u.	864	Cedar, m.	718
Chames, u.	444	Constance, l. u.	427			Canigü, m.	864	Ceila, u.	710
Calnari, p.	465	Constantinople, u.	609			Caramis, l.	868	Ceilan, inf.	901
Chatti, p.	473	Constaz, u.	446			Caramania, pr.	636	Cene, u.	657
Chauci, p.	472, 475	Contello, f.	603			Caramin, u.	775	Cephene, pr. 803, u.	809
Chedini, p.	497	Copenhagen, u.	489			Caratz, u.	864	Cepastis, inf.	677
Cheicheen, u.		Copperdale, pr.	594			Caraka, pr.	653	Ceralus, u.	645
Chelme, pr. u.	537	Corbach, u.	474			Caratz, p.	832	Ceraunia, m.	819
Cherona, u.	552	Corcira, u.	556			Cararaza, m.	864	Ceretes, f.	839
Cherfo, inf.	595	Cor fu, inf.	627, 556			Cararaz, pr.	841	Cerchano, p.	842
Cherof, u.	468, 472	Corelia, pr.	515			Carabalai, pr.	665	Cergeran, u.	843
Cheflire, c.	610	Corenberg, u.	516			Caracimicis, fl.	826	Cerghu, pr.	813
Chianene, u. c.	373	Corinth, pr. u.	586			Cardamine, inf.	841	Cerines, p. u.	680
Chiera, f.	378	Corius, u. c.	624			Cardantini,	861	Cerionis, u.	719
Chilonites, c.	580	Cornati, m.	464			Carcanus, u.	838	Cesh, inf.	616
Chilonium, u.	486	Co ona, u.	560			Caria, p. inf.	674	Cestrus, fl.	605
Chimay, u.	370	Corone, f. u.	580			Carithiarium, u.	728	Cethinia, inf.	677
Chironia, u.	613	Coronea, u.	591			Philippi u.	719	Cethlan, u.	719
Chifamo, m.	621	Cortica, u.	517			Carindaz, fl.	738	Cetium, u.	679
Chrißtenberg, u.	492	Cort China, m.	385			Carloth, u.	129	Ceraunia, u.	682
Chrißteendorp, u.	492	Cortina, u.	622			Cariphis, fl.	862		
Cmiliania, u. 492,		Cortu hufum, c.	580			Carmis, u.	759		
		Codvua, u.	569			Caricolan, p. u.	876		
		Coflin u.	459			Caicus, fl.	455		
		Cotubefu, u.	416			Caifung, u.	853		
		Coub, u.	418			Caillon, u.	895, inf. 881		
		Coviat, u.	565			Cainauz, inf.	881		
		Covray, u.	565			Cainda, u.	889		
		Crabuts, pr.	552			Caipumo, fl.	833		
		Cr. covid	536			Caition, u.	833		
		Cow, u.	540			Calacta, u.	772		
		Cracapack, m.	566			Calacine, p.	674		
		Cratova, u.	409			Calani, p.	889		
		Cravenberg, u.	536			Calamo, inf.	641		
		Crem	536			Calauran, u.	835		
		Crempe, u. fl.	485			Calba, u.	835		
		Cremier, u.	454			Calbis, fl.	641		
		Crenides, u.	603			Calcedoni, fl.	666		
		Crestena, pr.	607			Calibi, m.	901		
		Creta, inf.	619			Calicute, pr. u.	875		
		Crecanion Mare,	619			Caledoni, caput,	677		
		Cribizip,	569			Callinice, u.	695		
								</	

D d d d d

Chalvbar.

The T A B L E.

Corymbis, inf.	675	Ciparifica, inf.	673	Colmiz, p.	803	Calabinda, u.	1065	Cerne, inf.	922, 997
Chalyban, u.	695	Citane, pr.	879	Collicz, p.	891	Chagres, inf.	952	Chagres, inf.	1045
Chalyban tis, pr.	695	Circan, p.	887	Cota, u.	875	Chalce, p.	945	Chalce, p.	1036
Chalybes, pr.	788	Circassian, p.	887	Cotacene, p.	784	Chaleadonia Nova, pr.	1012	Chaleaqui, p.	1064
Chamatha, u.	699	Circum, u.	884	Cotiaris, fl.	861	Calen, u.	980	Chalutacu, pr.	1042
Chambel, fl.	863	Circutha, u.	884	Cotiaris, fl.	864	Calis, u.	1050	Chamalaco, fl.	1041
Chamdagrin, u.	878	Cilicium, u.	712	Couchu, pr. u.	880	Californica, pr.	1055	Chamaco, inf.	992
Champa, p.	886	Cilicium, u.	803	Coul, u.	886	Calpe, m.	962	Champlais, fl.	1012
Chathia, u.	816	Cilicium, pr.	679	Coul, pr. u.	876	D. for Camerones, fl.	1062	Chanc, p.	1055
Characene, pr.	803	Cilicium, u.	679	Coy, u.	784	Cambou, u.	968	Chanc, p.	1055
Charachia, u.	806	Cicet, u.	870	Cragus, u. m.	663	Camolaha, u.	1063	Chapal, fl.	1033
Charadrac, p.	812	Ciumbabon, inf.	895	Cragano, pr. u.	876	Camoni, p.	1019	Chapaz, fl.	1033
Charaz, u.	812	Climanienfes, p.	668	Cray, u.	714	Campeche, u.	1039	Chapaz Chicu, u.	1017
Thermac Chares, u.	725	Clamulom, u.	784	Cremam, u.	829	Camucuiara, p.	1067	Charcas, pr.	1030
Charife, u.	815	Clanur, u.	880	Creme, u.	788	Canada, pr. fl.	910	Charcas, i.	913
Charomichrene, p.	798	Clarus, inf.	674	Cremna, u.	664	Canaga, fl.	1060	Charente, fl.	992
Characharta, u.	815	Claudipolis, u.	644, 666	Cremna, u.	664	Canagadi, pr.	1019	Cape Charles, c.	1008
Chars, u.	784	Clizomene, inf. u.	618	Cressa, u.	661	Cananea, u.	1067	Fort de Charles, u.	1010
Chasdim, pr.	767	Clides, c. 677, inf.	683	Cretopolis, u.	665	Canaries, inf.	994	Golf de Chateaux, f. 1009	
Chaze, p.	837	Climachus, u.	646	Crim, m. pr.	827	Cansac, p.	1504	Chaus, pr.	967
Chathing, u.	843	Climax, u.	758	Crocus, fl.	851	Canchis, m.	979	Chelbi, inf.	952
Chathrapis, fl.	805	Cnidus, u. c.	662	Croon, u.	812	Candelari, u.	1064	Chelonidas, l.	916
Chatzarhevam, u.	718	Coc, fl.	883	Cruculos, pr.	678	Candlam, pr.	974	Chelonides, inf.	961
Charua, u.	875	Cocuz, fl.	809	Cruftine, u.	835	Canila, pr.	1012	Chelonides, inf.	990
Charzar, u.	710	Coch, fl. m.	771, 780	Cryptos, u.	835	Caniticum, fl.	919	Chemia, pr.	912
Charziel, p.	865	Cocmani, p.	815	Crylaoras, fl.	770	Cano, pr. u.	961	Chepor, fl.	1045
Charzor, u.	730	Cocmani, p.	815	Celyphos, u.	670	Canoas, pr. 1026, fl.	1075	Chercol, u.	923
Chaucabani, p.	713	Cocmani, p.	815	Cuculon, u.	684	Canopus, u.	910	Cheriguaris, pr.	1065
Chau, fl. p.	803	Cocmani, p.	815	Cudetes, p.	759	Cantaberes, m.	979, 985	Cherry, inf.	1030
Chau, fl. p.	803	Cocmani, p.	815	Cufa, u.	617	Canten, fl.	1060	Chelepacke, m.	1019
Chau, fl. p.	803	Cocmani, p.	815	Cuma, u.	872	Cantire, c.	945	Chelula, u.	948
Chaul, u.	873	Cocmani, inf.	876	Cumpanel, u.	772	Capana, u.	1040	Chiameta, pr.	1059
Chauzuan, u.	718, 840	Cochin, pr. u.	876	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chiapas, pr. u.	1040
Chavchin-china, p.	840	Cogni, u.	664	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chelonophagi, p.	806	Cois, u.	824	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chenao, fl.	863	Colian, u.	824	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chequari, p.	853	Coine, r.	781	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cheramil, p.	833	Colans, u.	853	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cheroneus, u.	826	Colchi, u.	864	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chifolus, pr.	887	Colchis, pr.	785	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chifus, fl.	831	Coli, u.	884	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chifus, pr.	841	Colinia, inf.	677	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chihuan, u.	841	Colmiz, u.	902	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chixupin, p.	814	Colobrafissus, u.	665	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chicacopac, u.	814	Cologenbar, u.	774	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chiamy, l.	884	Colen, u.	784	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chimar, m.	663	Colophon, u.	618	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
China, pr.	848	Colofa, u. 653, inf.	676	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chinchinales, p.	843	Colthene, p.	784	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chinchianzo, u.	853	Coliumbo, u.	902	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chios, inf. u.	672	Comagen, pr.	697	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chifon, fl.	687, 711	Comana, u. 645, 649	632	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chit, c.	677	Comari, c. 460, 832, u.	863	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chopap, u. fl.	809	Combultia, inf.	760	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cholnua, u.	784	Comodaz, p.	832	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cholobataene, pr.	814	Communia Extrema, c. 836	836	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Choraffin, p.	814	Comochietre, c.	832	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chorazim, u.	719	Conaploni, p.	831	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chornia, u.	719	Conata, u.	649	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Choredemus, c.	760	Conica, u.	649	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Choremandel, u.	878	Conicoe, u.	839	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chorfa, u.	784	Connelia, u.	679	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chorfuls, fl.	687, 711	Cononor, u. pr.	875	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chirindi, p.	613	Constantia, u. 680.	680	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chryfolpis, u.	843	Conceffiffa, u.	680	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chryforhas, fl. 700, 881	881	Cnos, c. 684, inf.	684	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chus, pr. 753, 803, 716	803	Cophorim, p.	727	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chufetan, p.	803	Coguinai, p.	894	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chufmur, u.	867	Coraz, u.	844	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Chyrmay, pr. 805, u. 806	806	Coraz, fl. m.	819	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Ciatie, u.	840	Coream, p.	813	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cian, u.	897	Cordizim, m.	784	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Ciandecan, u.	880	Corducne, pr.	784	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cianthalg, fl.	851	Cordyle, u.	846	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cidnus, fl.	667	Corea, inf.	654	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cilicia Alperis, p.	666	Corneaz, p.	666	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cilicia, pr.	666	Coronyum, c.	677	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Ciliciz ponz, m.	666	Cornoxyette, c.	677	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cimmeris, p.	666	Cornofum, u.	816	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cimmeris, u. c.	826	Cory, c.	826	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cinacodolpita, p.	761	Corydalla, u.	863	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cingon, c.	815	Corydalla, u.	863	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cingoroph, u.	815	Corydalla, u.	863	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017
Cingoroph, u.	815	Corydalla, u.	863	Cupressifolius, u.	772	Capanea, u.	1040	Chichamania, fl.	1017

The TABLE.

Clari, m.	955	Cube, u.	968	Dorcinea, u.	308	Delmenhorst, u.	478	Driana fl.	550
Clarus, l.	913	Cuechi, p.	985	Dordone, fl.	180, 208	Delol. inf. u.	616	Driana fl.	550
Cleopatra, u.	910	Cuenca, u.	939	Dordogne, fl.	304	Delphos, u.	993	Drinago, u.	168
Clypeus, u.	911	Cuenca, u.	944	Dordogne, fl.	277	Dentaria, u.	601	Drionis, pr.	602
Coanza, fl.	979, 989	Cualtravaca, u.	1038	Dove, fl.	226	Dender, fl.	366, 369	Drionis, pr.	602
Coava, fl.	981	Culhuan, u.	945	Dove, fl.	226	Dendermond, u.	366, 369	Drionis, pr.	602
Cocha bamba, pr.	1057	Culcus, u.	939	Doufenc, u.	308, 309	Dennack, fl.	366	Drionis, pr.	602
Coche, inf.	1077	Culican, pr.	1029	Downe, pr.	248	Dennack, fl.	366	Drionis, pr.	602
Cocite mucro, fl.	1083	Culpa, p.	1036	Doux, fl.	334	Dennack, fl.	366	Drionis, pr.	602
Cocktuway, p.	1070	Cumana, fl. pr. u.		Dragonago, inf.	284	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Cogemymne, u.	ibid.	Cumbinana, u.	1055	Dragonera, inf.	ib. pr.	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Colas, p.	1020	Curallos, inf.	1078	Drepanum, u.	308	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Colima, u.	1054	Curcentium caput, c.	982	Dreux, u.	200	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Collao, u. pr.	1056	Deorum Curus, u.	956	Drogheda, u.	343	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Collignia, u.	1067	Cusa, fl.	943	Droine, fl.	224	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Collo, fl.	937	Cusco, pr. u.	1055	Druentus, fl.	68	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Collobon, c.	968	Cuyocan, u.	1055	Duazo, fl.	255	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Color, l. 967, fl. 968		Cular Elcibir, u.	948	Dublin, pr. u.	343	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
De Colubros, fl.	1045	Cygena, inf.	992	Dubris, u.	308, 310	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Colymz, u.	1049	Cyniphus, fl.	973, 956	Dundalk, u.	310	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
De Comagos, f.	1045	Cyrene, pr. u.	924	Dundee, u.	333	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Comapayaras, pr.	1071	Cyropolis, u.	911	Ductus, fl.	247, 270	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075	Cyris, inf.	990	Dumma, inf.	349	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075	Cynaphanus, p.	910	Dumo, u.	ib.	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dunbritton, u.	334	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dundalk, u.	344	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dundee, u.	298	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dungall, u.	344	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dunholms, u.	344	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dunckeran, u.	315	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dunoi, p.	201	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dunstall, u.	308	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Dunwich, u.	313	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durance, fl.	153, 219	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durham, u.	314, 324	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Duria, fl.	281	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durias, fl.	304	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durnovaria, u.	308, 312	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durobrivis, u.	311	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durocarth, p.	186	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durolis, u.	308	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Durotriges, p.	308, 312	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075			Duroverges, u.	308	Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075					Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075					Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27
Commenagor, pr.	1075					Derbach, u.	491	Dubin, u.	27

The TABLE.

Diantha, fl.	863	Dios, m.	937	St. Evastus, u.	140	Epicariss, u.	600	Enbadda, u.	723
Dianu, u.	891	Dioscoridis, inf.	937	Eubartidis, inf.	137	Epichidius, fl.	622	Enodorus, m.	829
Dianga, u.	890	Dioscorum, portus, u.	928	Eub nia, inf.	530	Epichemidius, u.	595	Eodor, u.	723
Diarbeck, pr.	773	Diospolis, u.	968	Euganeis, p.	141	Epichemidius, u.	599	Engaddi, m.	730
Diarbement, pr.	813	Divesis, inf.	1088	Eugubium, u.	48	Epichemidius, u.	599	Eoritis, u.	809
Dianus, fl.	772	Diur, m. fl.	943	St. Euphemia, u.	77	Epichemidius, u.	599	Ephelus, u.	618
Diblaham, u.	713	Dobas, pr. u.	973	Eunymos, inf.	87	Epichemidius, u.	599	Ephra, u.	714
Didyim, m.	713	Doc, no, o. u.	973	Encrus, u.	192, fl. 203	Epichemidius, u.	599	Ephraim, p.	225
Dihon, u.	715	Dominica, inf.	1080	Europa, p.	31	Epichemidius, u.	599	Ephron, u.	717
Dilop, fl.	642	Domingo, fl.	1068	Eufedale, u.	334	Epichemidius, u.	599	Epictetus, pr. u.	611
St. Dimitri, u.	656	St. Domingo, inf. u.	1083	Ewe, u.	192	Epichemidius, u.	599	Epiphania, u.	696
Dindim, u.	654	Doradix, p.	1054	Ex, fl. u.	312	Epichemidius, u.	599	Epiphania, u.	667, 695
Dinhala, u.	737	Doradix, p.	952	Exeter, u.	308, 312	Epichemidius, u.	599	Episcopio, u.	679
Dio-Cafaria, u.	649	Dracoctus, inf.	972	Extremadura, pr.	263	Epichemidius, u.	599	Erech, u.	803
Dionysopolis, u.	864, 901	Baca del Drago, fret.	1074	Eyn, fl.	344	Epichemidius, u.	599	Ere, u.	799
Diospolis, u.	644	Lucas, p.	945			Epichemidius, u.	599	Etcherza, mare.	760
Dioscoria, inf. u.	761	Dulce, p.	1041			Epichemidius, u.	599	Ergimul, pr.	841
Dioscuria, u.	786	Durango u.	1030			Epichemidius, u.	599	Eri, pr. u.	810
Diospolis, u.	644, 785	Dardus, m.	943			Epichemidius, u.	599	Erean, u.	784
Diu, u.	871					Epichemidius, u.	599	Erythra, u.	618
Doceti, u.	869					Epichemidius, u.	599	Erzyrum, u.	649
Dogana, u.	981					Epichemidius, u.	599	Elchcia, u.	794
Deliche, inf.	673, u. 698					Epichemidius, u.	599	Edon-Geber, u.	745
Dons, fl.	825					Epichemidius, u.	599	Ethiopia, pr.	755
Dora, u.	714					Epichemidius, u.	599	Ethra, inf.	675
Doriat, fl.	884					Epichemidius, u.	599	Eucharz, u.	646
Doris, pr.	663					Epichemidius, u.	599	Eucradia, u.	815
Doris, pr.	814					Epichemidius, u.	599	Eucradia, p.	809
Doroctus, u.	654					Epichemidius, u.	599	Eulmus, fl.	602
Doryleum, u.	722					Epichemidius, u.	599	Euparaz, u.	806
Dothane, u.	810					Epichemidius, u.	599	Euphrates, fl. 650, 767, 793	
Drachmaz, p.	900					Epichemidius, u.	599	Euphrates, u.	697
Dragorian, u.	808					Epichemidius, u.	599	Euphrates, u.	800
Dragiana, pr.	ibid.					Epichemidius, u.	599	Eurymedon, fl.	665
Dragianus, fl.	677, u. 679					Epichemidius, u.	599	Euxinum, mare.	641
Drepanum, C.	833					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Drepanum, C.	839					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Droclack, u.	865					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Dryophthia, u.	673					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Dryula, inf.	805					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Duckee, cast.	805					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Dulcinda, pr.	867					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Dulinda, pr.	833					Epichemidius, u.	599		
Dymnus, fl.	833					Epichemidius, u.	599		

The **T A B L E.**

Lib. 3.	Foy, 214	Freifach, u. 437	Nova Francia, 1011	Giromes, u. 222
Faenza, u. 21	France, R. 171, inf. 184	Freifland West, 386	St. Francis, inf. 1991, c. 1009	Glaris, p. 313
Fage, u. 201	Francheville, u. 225	Freifland East, 437	St. Francis, p. 1035, u. 1069	Glaris, p. 313
Faigrech, u. 344	Franciscopolis, u. 195	Freistadt, u. 432, 436	St. Francisco, u. 1014	Glamorgan, p. 324
Faire Foreland, c. 344	Frank, u. 232	Frieburg, u. 442	Port de Francisco Draco, 438, 443	Glan, u. 219
Faire Mde, inf. 344	Francolin, fl. 231	Friedburg, u. 446		Glaris, p. 164
Falaife, u. 392	Fraxinetum, cast. 170	Friedland, u. 461		Glaris, p. 164
Falaris, u. 330	French County, pr. 228	Frischbasse, f. 133		Glaris, p. 164
Fallica, u. 130	Friburg, u. 165	Frisch, pr. 387		Glaris, p. 164
Falkland, u. 333	Fukli, p. 120	Majores, p. 390		Glaris, p. 164
Falmouth, u. 108, 111	Fröome, fl. 306	Minore, 363		Glaris, p. 164
Falo, u. 96	Fröfale, u. 210	Fröfing, u. 432		Glaris, p. 164
Falun S. Bjoft, u. 195	Fröpladaze, p. 211	Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Decidier, 186	Frumentaria, inf. 284	Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fortune, u. 95	Fluyentes, cast. 172	Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Reguli, u. 333	Fluyce, u. 72	Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Parfarus, fl. 98	Die Furcken, p. 162	Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Parfels, u. 99	Furlis, u. 91	Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Parnellus, u. 284	Furium, u. 212	Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Pato, u. 236		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fauciana, inf. 86		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Favencia, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Favognana, inf. 86		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fayal, inf. 277		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
St. Fel, u. 101		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Felina, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Felcia, u. 119		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
La Fere, u. 199		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Ferencan, p. 199		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Feriodis, u. 219		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Feris, u. 99		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Ferara, pr. 93, u. 284		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Ferazic, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fermanach, pr. 344		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
La Fere, u. 100		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fefulze, u. 119, 131		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fienner, u. 188		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Febres, u. 203		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fidenates, p. 100		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fife, pr. 333, 334		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Finale, u. 138		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fino, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fior, fl. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Augusta Firmia, u. 261		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Firmo, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flaminia, pr. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flannarius Sinus, 121		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flat-holme, inf. 351		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flav-Cafariensis, p. 309		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flaviobriga, u. 255		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flavianovic, u. 257		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flavium Brigantiu, u. 198		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
La Flech, u. 249		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Rint, pr. 334		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Florence, pr. 130, u. 131		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Flores, inf. 207		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Floure, u. 203		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fluicetes, p. 212		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Foglio, pr. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Foglia, u. 212		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fonterabia, u. 187		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Focelli, inf. 255		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fodlimpoli, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fornice, inf. 134		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fornice, u. 181, 121, 130		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fornaces, fl. 118		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
De Foro, c. 82		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fortore, inf. 73		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Forselt, 203		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Forum Cornelli, u. 120		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Julii, pr. 219		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Julium, u. 219		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Liivi, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Secufanorum, 225		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Sempreni, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Foffa Claudia, inf. 123		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Foffe mariana, fl. 219		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Foffign, p. 159		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Foffembrunc, u. 91		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Fountainbleau, u. 180		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Le Fource, u. 195		Fröfist, u. 437		Glaris, p. 164
Lib. 2.	Fabiana, u. 436	Famagusta, pr. u. 680		
Faborch, u. 490	Faborg, u. 369	Famur, u. 810		
De Fango, u. 465	Fabza, fl. 618	Famur, u. 810		
Fabz, u. 465	Falconora, inf. 455	Famur, u. 810		
Falconora, inf. 455	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u. 491	Famur, u. 810		
Falkenberg, u. 491	Falkenberg, u			

The TABLE.

Adres, u.	389	Grol, u.	389	Sari-Germanum, u.	827
Amund, u.	459	Gronneberg, u.	485	German, <i>ibid.</i>	
Armertheim, u.	418	Gronsfelden, u.	449	Gerra, u.	719
Gaunders Zee, u.	435	Groytholm, inf.	489	Gerz, p.	161
Gaappe, u.	381	Gudenhagen, u.	471	Gerri, p.	831
Gnechilar, u.	613	Grub, u.	527	Gerus, fl.	789
Gergenziel, u.	413	Gruinfulton, u.	465	Gerus, fl.	825
Gennep, u.	409	Gruunwald, u.	529	Geru, u.	830
St. Georges arme, c.	609	Grunderland, u.	529	Gellus, pr.	716, 718
St. Giorgio, u.	564	Gulch, p.	535	Gell, pr. u.	807
Gepino, u.	584	Gulike, pr. u.	410	Gecaras, u.	789
Gerpas, u.	613	Gurch, u.	437	Gech, u.	629
Gerebrevilles, u.	454	Gurdelen, u.	437	Gczes, u.	727
Mons. Gerhard, u.	366	Gurx, p.	491	Gibberhorn, u.	728
Germania inferior, <i>prims, 409, 416, 419</i>	360	Gyaro, u. inf.	617	Gibich, u.	731
<i>secunda, 380, 409, 413</i>	413	Gyriso, pr.	561	Gibcon, <i>ibid.</i>	
Germany, <i>prims</i>	336	Gythones, p.	533	Gihon, fl.	769
Gernia, u.	501	Gyula, u.	544	Gihos, m.	714, 722
Gerno, inf.	438			Gilead, u.	708
Gernard, m.	366	Lib. 3.		Ramoth, u.	708
Gers, inf.	464	Gabala, u.	711	Gilgal, u.	731
Gerspach, u.	447	Gabel, u.	695	Gilolo, inf.	819
Gersrutenberg, u.	379	Gaber, u.	714	Gingi, u.	878
Gerulius, u.	384	Gad, pr.	715	Gicala, u.	711
Gefike, u.	475	Gadai, u.	701, 718	Gilica, u.	788
Gefolunum, u.	435	Gades, c.	677	Goa, u.	873
Gefrica, pr.	504	Gaguamela, u.	706	Gocharra, u.	807
Gefern, u.	379	Galaad, m.	835	Golchonda, u.	898
Ghent, u.	481	Galahophagis, p.	835	Gomora, u.	711
Ginstandil, u.	569	Galtia, pr.	647	Gomfiar, inf.	761
Gistafica Oceanus, u.	495	Salutaris, pr.	649	Gonza, u.	838
Glan, fl.	436	Galico, p.	719	Gordiaz, m.	780, 783
Glatz, u.	455	Galcium, <i>ibid.</i>		Gordiene, pr.	784
Glagow, u.	1b.	Galle, u.	901	Gordium, u.	653
Glockstadt, u.	486	Gallim, u.	713	Gorgos, fl.	771
Gmund, u.	429	Gallio-Gracia, pr.	647	Sorneas, u.	650
Gmund, u.	435	Gama, pr.	718	Gouren, pr. u.	880
Gneffus, u.	613	Galthi, p.	902	Gouro, u.	881
Goor, u.	385	Gammarraris, u.	737	Goyam, u.	804
Goldeberg, u.	507	Gandoz, fl.	901	Gozalvia, u.	645
Goldenberg, u.	512	Ganardis, p.	884	Gozan, fl.	799
Golo, u. inf.	404, 484	Ganensis, p.	815	Pavia Grande, u.	881
Gomerini, u.	601	Gangeraco, fl.	875	Graticus, inf.	655
Gopla, i.	531	Gangos, fl. 767, u.	866	Gyrcis, p.	677
Gorichom, u.	383	Gangra, u.	806	Gyrcis, p.	812
Gortiz, u.	437	Gangape, inf.	865	Gutadarn, c.	879
Goff, fl.	471	Garducaraz, pr.	619	Gwangen, fl.	805
Gollars, u.	464	Gargala, u.	830	Gutene, u.	887
Gothin, p.	455	Garnizim, m.	725, 711	Gubronne, u.	805
Gothiani, p. 502, inf.	505	Garnace, u.	659	Cupi, u.	841
Gothones, p.	501	Gates, m.	840, 862	Gure-ur-tutta, u.	841
Gortenborg, u.	502	Gath, u.	717	Guzarate, pr.	871
Gortorp, c.	488	Gatrabao, u.	899	Gwaliare, pr. u.	870
Gorgeberg, u.	464	Gave, c.	677		
Goudo, u.	383	Gaulantici, pr.	774	Lib. 4.	
Graetz, u.	467	Gaulon, u.	718	Gamara, u.	956
Gradifco, u.	454, 553	Gaulonici, pr.	719	Gachepe, u.	1012
Gradingrac, u.	444	Gaulonia, u.	799	Gain, inf.	951
Gran, u.	544	Gaz, u. 717, fl.	887	Gago, u.	962
Grammont, u.	366	Gazaca, u.	810	De Galeza, c. 1026, 1029	
Grancion, f.	518	Gebah, u.	731	Galeico, pr.	1074
Grancionum, u.	444	Gebala, u.	665	Galle, p.	981
Gramis, p.	506	Egion Gef r, u.	755	Gallant Zee, 1062	
Gras, u.	422	Gedofia, pr.	807	Gallia Nova, p.	1028
Graveling, u.	379	Gegn meli, u.	772	Del Galle, inf.	1050
Gravenhague, u.	365	Gelan, u.	799		1024
Gravofa, inf.	384	Gendefarch, u. i. 711	721	Gambra Cambere, pr. fl.	962
Gratz, u.	436	Gemonia, u.	812	Gamofaphantic, pr.	910
Greges, p.	436	Capri Gensis, u.	784	Gamofaphantic, pr.	916
Greenland, inf.	497	St. George, u.	725, 839	Ganabara, f.	1067
Griek Weckenburg, u.	544	Caffie Gera, u.	787	Gangamar, p.	991
Griethufen, u.	409	Caffie Gera, u.	671	Gangsa, pr.	563
Grieaengens, u.	447	Ge anri, pr.	840	Garamantes, p.	916
Griiftbergen, u.	379	Gerar, u.	729	Garas, m.	924
Griifon, p.	429	Gerara, u.	701, 718	Garafu, u.	1068
Gripwald, u.	459	Geralf, u.	718, 739	Garbaha, u.	969
Grodick, u.	531	Geressif, pr.	718, 739	Pon Garcea, inf.	991
Grodna, u.	529	Geris, u.	691	Garen, pr.	948
Groining, pr. u.	390	Germancicopolis, u.	698	Gariphis, m.	934
		Germanopolis, u.	647	Garunna, fl.	1019
				Galpe, u.	1012

[illegible]

Hcy., u.	224, inf.	349	Heidelberg, u.
Hibernia inf.		349	Heidenkein, u.
Hibridae, inf.		349	Heininkfste, u.
Hiero, inf.		87	Heldering, u.
Hieracum, inf.		91	Helene, inf.
Sz. Hilary, u.		231	Helge, m.
Himera, fl.		84	Helice, u.
Hirpini, p.		72	Helicon, m.
Hispalis, u.		262	Hellas, pr.
Hispaniack,		241	Hellenis, inf.
Histria, pr.		121	Hellefont,
Holy cross		345	Helmitt, u.
Holy head,		351	Helfenberg, u.
Holy Island,		353	Helsing, cllac
St. Honoratus, inf.		230	Helsingens, u.
Honflow, u.		193	Hollingsen, pr.
Huelca, u.		286	Hollingsen, u.
Huine, fl.		198	Holveren, p.
Humana, u.		295	Helvoldi, p.
Humber, fl.		295	Hemodes, inf.
Huntington pr. 304.	u. 315		Henneberg, u.
Murk, C.		352	Hennegow, pr.
Hybla u.	82, m.	83	Hephazias, u.
Hydra fl.		120	Heraclea, u.
Hydruntum, u.		76	Herbipolis, u.
Hyperia, fl.		84	Herborne, u.
Hlabay, u.		516	Hercinia, n.
Haderflave u.		488	Hernastade
Haminontum, pr.		572	Hermas, u.
Hæmus u.	§ 67-572	601	Hernia, c.
Haffen			Hertuli, p.
Haffnia, u.		489	Hervorden, u.
Haffenfort, u.		496	Heldin, u.
Hagenow, u.		421	Hessi, p.
Hagenscheis, m.		447	Hettefeld, u.
Hagenshow, c.		490	Heufden u.
Hague, u.		382	Hexholm, u.
Haibum, u.		447	Heydebut, u.
Hailbrun, u.		444	Heylt, u.
Haimburg, m. u.		435	Hiarance, inf.
Maine, fl.		369	Hielso, u.
Hainault, pr.		ib.	Hieralus, fl.
Hal, u.		438	Hierke, u.
Halax, u.		496	Hildesham, u.
Halberstadt, u.		471	Hilgences, inf.
Hale, u.		465	Hillins, c.
Halen pot, u.		527	Hildeppen, u.
Halicz, u.		533	Hissagaga, c.
Hall, u.		370	Hiom, u.
Hallandia, pr.		481	Hipan, fl. 1
Hallin, pr.		506	Hippiuni, pr.
Halmstedt, u.		486	Hippolit, u.
Hamburg, u.		471	Hobenberg, u.
Hardenen, m. u.		494	Hochberg, u.
Hannar, u.		412	Hochstade, u.
Hammonc u.		489	Hoffe, u.
Haneret, p.		369	Hoffen, u.
Hania, fl.		369	Hocy, u. fl.
Mannoiv, pr.		441	Hohenberg, cast.
Hagnow, pr. u.		472	Hohenloe, u.
Häpsholm inf.		488	Hogerland, pr.
Haderwick, u.		389	Holland, pr.
Harland, pr.		516	Holm, u.
Harlem, u.		384	Holtlein, pr.
Harlengen, u.		386	Homburg, u.
Harmanduri, pr.		464	Hont ^a , inf.
Hartz, u.		ib.	Hornis, u.
Hartzholm, inf.		489	Horne, u.
Bafe, fl.		476	Horpach, u.
Hazford, u.		417	Hottela, i.
Haffe, u.		421	Str. Hubert, u.
Hassia, pr.		473	Huens, inf.
Hatceren, u.		412	Hulbenrade, pr.
Hatcen, u.		389	Hultt, u.
Hatroan, u.		544	Hungary, R.
Havel, fl.		457	Hunn, p.
Hebrus, fl.		608	Huris, u.
Hecatompolis, p. § 81.	inf.	620	Husen, u.
		367	Huy u. fl.
		427	Hydrusa, inf.
Heele, m.			Hymetus m.
Heidfort, u.			Hypata, u.
Hegow, Pr.		427	Hyperborii, m.

The TABLE.

417		Homericæ, p.	761	Hungaræ, fl.	1041
447		Honon, p.	848	Hydra, inf.	951
486		Honorat, pr.	647	Hydris pelagus,	990
466		Hophra, u.	754		
619		Hori, u. 713.	m 724		
466		Horeb, m.	754		
496		Horites, p.	737		
578		Hannes, p.	830		
591		Hajacan, pr.	868		
574		Hajaspis, fl.	780, 863		
491		Hydras, fl.	805		
613		Hyperboræ, p.	831		
471		Hyrcania, p. u.	813		
4912					
505					
504					
490					
536					
457					
491					
445					
369					
614					
501, 609					
441					
04, 450					
560					
619					
561					
476					
367					
473					
471					
313					
488					
485					
505					
559					
377					
471					
488					
386					
498					
438					
525					
584					
419					
418					
444					
543					
376					
429					
445					
533					
382					
504					
485					
475					
384, 477					
403					
384					
445					
506					
362					
490					
412					
366					
541					
578					
488					
376					
617					
587					
602					
513					

The TABLE

Ihancester,	313	Juglia		Ionis, p.	69
Iudecha, l.	123	Jubar, u.	516	Joppa, p.	71
Ivethni, u.	346	Juices, p.]	464	Jos, fl. 717, p. u.	81
Juga Aflurum, m.	247	Juidand, pr.	487	Jordan, fl.	68
Jubula, m.	114	Juilers,		minor, fl.	89
Juginium, u.	93	Juliacum, f. u.		Joropra, u.	89
Juidot, pr.	198	Julinum, f. u.	459	Jupus, u.	719, 7
St. Julian, m.	26	Julio Bona, u.	435	Ipus, u.	64
Juliz, m.	151	Julis, u.	418	Iris, fl.	69
Julia Lybica, u.	283	Juosis, u.	373	Ilaui, pr. u.	66
Julio-magus, u.	197	Jufstiniana Prima,	369	Iscopolis, u.	74
Jufstinopolis, u.	121	Secunda,	436	Ithmalice, p.	74
Jufupul, inf.	123	Juvania, u.	462	Ithrob, p.	74
Juremont, p.	163, 180	Juranograd, p.	515	Ithichs, m.	61
Jura, m.	180	Iwanowefero, p.	515		

Lib. 2.		Lib. 3.		libedon, u.	83, 84
Jada, fl.	477	Jaroonce, u.	803	Idius, u.	66
Jadole, u.	479	Jabadui, inf.	899	Idrigian, fl.	81
Jadera, u.	554	Jabelth Gilcad, u.	717	Iffrianus, fl.	82
Die Jadie, S.	477	Jaboc, fl.	711	Ica, C.	73
Jagendorf, u.	455	Jackheel, r.	754	Icamos, u.	75
Jakiz, u.	552	Jaffa, u.	728	Icarca, p.	71
Jamais, u.	373	Jahoor, u.	715	Ivah, u.	69
Japodes, p.	516	Jamboli, u.	817	Judth, pr.	71
Jaromir, u.	451	Jamema, fl.	863	Judza, pr.	707, 713
Jaroslav, u.	514	Jampia, u.	728	Julia Felix, u.	69
Jasili, p.	544	Janilapatan, u.	902	Julias, u.	71
Jasili, u.	563	Jangoma, pr.	886	Julipolis, u.	644, 656
Jatre, fl.	568	Janizarie, c.	670	Justiniana, u.	64
Javan, p.	598	Japan, inf.	893		
Jarine		Japha, u.	722		
Jaurinum, u.	543	Jarmuch, u.	ib.	Lib. 4.	
Jazyg, u.	552	Jartus, fl.	833	Jacho, fl.	108
Jazyges, u.	517	Jasli, p.	ib.	St. Jacobo, u.	99
Metanistz, pr.	559, 566	Jalonium, m.	798, 714	Jaguazua, p.	108
Ibac, fl.	559, 566	Jalques, u. c.	806	Jacn, u.	1042, 1048
Icacias, fl.	497	Jalfes, u.	729	Jafferin, u.	91
Ilda, m.	622	Jac rib, u.	759	Jaggcs, p.	98
Ilden, inf.	630	Java, inf.	898	St. Jago, inf.	994, 1002
Ildrein, u.	441	Jaxacres, fl.	833	1030, 1034, 1038, 1042,	
Ilegen, inf.	468	Jaxges, fl.	827	1060, 1065, 1069, 1075	
Ilegendorf, u.	465	Iberia, pr.	787	1084, fl.	1049, 1050
Iene, u.	454	Iberus, fl.	ibid.	St. Jago de Armas, u.	105
Iephapinologies,	513	Ibera, u.	646	de Coayaquil, u.	105
Ierde, inf.	491	Iccia, inf.	673	de Leony, u.	107
Iertia, pr.	527	Ich ar, inf.	761	de Mitanos, u.	107
Ietzebo, u.	486	Ichikalia, inf.	673	de Niza, u.	104
Ieurre, u.	478	Ichthopagi, p.	854, 5.	de Vaillos, u.	103
Iglaw, u.	414	Icopium, u.	758	Jaguana, u.	108
Iler, fl.	429	Ilda, m.	664	St. James, fl.	108
Ill, fl.	421	Ildalium, u. m.	651	Jamacia, fl.	108
Ilyricum Caad, pr.	437	Ilduma, p.	716	James, u.	1017, C. 1099
Ilyris, pr.	551	Iebulci, u.	719	Ja neiro	
Ilima, fl.	465	Iefleri, u.	719	Ja nuary, fl. p.	106
Ilimen, u.	513	Ielfpeta, u.	713	Jarzitha, u.	107
Ilistady, r.	432	Icmene, fl.	869	Jasculum, p.	965
Ilyva, u.	497	Icphythaphagorum, S.	758	Java, I.	1091
Inbrus, inf. u.	419, 419	Iericho, u.	731	Ichthyophagi, p.	979
Ina, fl.	577, 518	Iether, u.	739	Rein Jerzo, u.	945
Inachus, fl.	518	Iews, p.	707	Rein Jellitus, u.	945
Ingelheim, u.	431	Iezreel, u.	724	Ierichia, p.	908
Ingozdrat, u.	431	Ileron, inf.	674	Ighidi, defert.	955
Inpruchy, u.	432	Ilium, u.	651	Iguillinguiguil, u.	944
Instad, u.	432	Ilmene, fl.	808	Ilda, m.	945
Insula, u.	566	Ilaus, m.	640, 780, 834	Ildelfonzo, I.	1094
Inmergi, p.	419, 446	India, pr.	860	Ilhcos, I. u.	1067
Innucium, u.	431	intra Gangem,	863	St. Illefonzo, u.	1038, I. 1092
Innonum Mare,	624	extra,	883	Imbiani, p.	980, 984
Iostphaly, p.	475	Indicus Oceanus,	760	Imizizim, u.	944
Ips, fl.	435	Indian, u.	814	Imperial, u.	1001
I arus fl.	431	Indo Seythz, p.	865	Inavis, fl.	947
er,		Indus, fl.	780, 827	Les Infantes, u.	1067
Iland, inf.	466	Ingermenum, u.	812	Inierno, I.	995
Ileben, u.	455	Ingine, pr.	827	Inhaban, p.	982
Iifa, fl.	383	Jocabel, u.	891	Inbambis, fl.	1067
Ilfelmund, u.	595	Jogana, u.	908	Joguazua, p.	1020
Ilfers, fl.	627	Johor, pr. u.	822	St. Johans, fl.	1011
Ikhaca, inf.	519	Jonebam, u.	802	St. John, I, 1009, 1081.	
Iuch, fl.	525	Jonacapolis, u.	814	u. 1030, 1031	
Juga, fl.					

St. John de Cinaloa, u.	1029	Kirtomius, u.	490
de los Lianos, u.	1049	Kisfy, p.	561
de Ulla, u.	1038	Kitzgerod, p.	514
Iuli, u.	942	Kittim, C.	601
Ionii, p.	941	Klows, fr. u.	419
St. Joseph, u.	1074	Knyfin, u.	532
Ilabela, u. 1083. I.	1082	Koburg, u.	445
Ifidis, i.	960	Kockenham, u.	527
Ifigus, m.	937	Koldms, u.	488
De Ior Iffias, c.	1061	Kmos, inf. u.	543
Ifofa, u.	954	Koningsberg, m.	410, 494
Ifofa, u.	954	Kongcftall, m.	417
Izange, u.	1077	Koping, u.	491
St. Iwan, fl.	1049	Kolciien, u.	535
de Frontera, u.	1081	Kortim, u.	563
de O. o. u.	1056	Krain, p.	437
de Palo, u.	1050	Krivicne, m.	573
de Salinas, p.	1054	Krudwyl, u.	535
de Victoria, u.	1056	Kyel, u.	486
Iugur, u.	1088		

Julia Cirra, <i>u.</i>	940	<i>Lib. 3.</i>	
Constantia, <i>u.</i>	949		
Traducta, <i>u.</i>	948	Kadeth, <i>u.</i>	721
St. Julia, <i>f.</i>	1062	Barnes, <i>u.</i>	755
Junna, <i>fl.</i>	1083	Ka jangchew, <i>u.</i>	853
Junonia, <i>l.</i>	994, 996	Kapharalalama, <i>u.</i>	775
Junies, <i>p.</i>	1065	Kara Amida, <i>u.</i>	775
Justiniana, <i>u.</i>	938	Kedar, <i>pr.</i>	752
Juvaganava, <i>l.</i>	1061	Kedemeth, <i>u.</i>	712

K.		Kenniz, <i>pr.</i>	767
		Kings, <i>pr.</i>	755
<i>Lit. 1.</i>		Kingess, <i>pr.</i>	851
		Kirgess, <i>pr.</i>	831
K	Alin, <i>fl.</i>	Kirhalcreth, <i>u.</i>	713
	Kantiani, <i>pr.</i>	Kiratham, <i>u.</i>	741
	Kemper	<i>Sbenish</i> Kiratham, <i>u.</i>	713
	Corenin,	Kiray, <i>l.</i>	818
	<i>u.</i>	Kirasi, <i>pr.</i>	853
Kendal, <i>u.</i>	<i>u.</i>	Kukares, <i>pr.</i>	880
Kennet, <i>fl.</i>	314		
Kent, <i>pr.</i>	312		
Kerry, <i>pr.</i>	300		
Kerton, <i>u.</i>	345		
Kildare, <i>pr. u.</i>	313		
Kings County, <i>pr.</i>	312		
Kingston in Thames, <i>ib.</i>	311		
Kinleale, <i>u.</i>	343		
Kiuckwal, <i>u.</i>	349		
Knockfergus, <i>u.</i>	344		
Kyle, <i>pr.</i>	334		

<i>Lib. 2.</i>		<i>Lib. 1.</i>	
Kinach, <i>fl.</i>	436	L A Beaufe, <i>pr.</i>	200
Kala, <i>u.</i>	465	Laberus, <i>u.</i>	346
Kaluli, <i>pr.</i>	538	Labinia, <i>u.</i>	119
Kalla, <i>u.</i>	485	Laboria, <i>pr.</i>	69
Kammie, <i>fl.</i>	517	Labrelle, <i>u.</i>	225
Karinterci, <i>pr.</i>	436	La Bresse, <i>pr.</i>	214
Keles, <i>u.</i>	563	La Butte du mont, <i>u.</i>	217
Kelhajim, <i>u.</i>	449	Lacerani, <i>pr.</i>	286
Keltorp, <i>u.</i>	490	Lagina, <i>c.</i>	78
Kemberg, <i>u.</i>	463	Lactaxace, <i>pr.</i>	211
Kempenland, <i>pr.</i>	378	Lacus verbanus,	37
Kerfure, <i>u.</i>	544	Ladours, <i>fl.</i>	214
Keridbee, <i>u.</i>	505	Leztrigrions, <i>pr.</i>	82
Keromondce, <i>u.</i>	550	La Ferc, <i>u.</i>	191
Keromindce, <i>u.</i>	490	La Flexh, <i>u.</i>	200
Kethim, <i>u.</i>	601	La Flexh, <i>pr.</i>	198
Keykerks, <i>u.</i>	390	Lagiere, <i>fl.</i>	212
Kelsas Bery, <i>u.</i>	421	Lafanto, <i>fl.</i>	73
Laue n, <i>u.</i>	418	Lagenia <i>pr.</i>	343
Werdt,	411	Lagos, <i>u.</i>	267
Kexholme, <i>u.</i>	516	La Grace, <i>u.</i>	219
Kiburg, <i>u.</i>	428	La March, <i>u.</i>	208
Kien, <i>inf.</i>	527	L' Amballe, <i>u.</i>	195
Kies, <i>u.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	L' Amballiers, <i>p.</i>	195
Kimarorubath, <i>u.</i>	541	Lambecus, <i>u.</i>	187
Kinbrick, <i>fl.</i>	428	Lameficus finus,	77
Kiovia, Kiofs, <i>u.</i>	529, 569	Lamotte, <i>u.</i>	187
Kiratois, <i>u.</i>	566	Lambous, <i>fl.</i>	202

Lancaster, <i>p.</i>	304	wis,	
Lanciano, <i>u.</i>	72	Le-vissá, <i>inf.</i>	
Lancinco, <i>p.</i>	257	Libnius, <i>ß.</i>	
Landa, <i>u.</i>	143	Libora, <i>u.</i>	
Landaße, <i>u.</i>	343	Liburnum, <i>u.</i>	13
Lancelum, <i>inf.</i>	134	Libici, <i>p.</i>	
Langris, <i>u.</i>	187	Liboun, <i>u.</i>	
Languedoc, <i>pr.</i>	215	Lichh-id, <i>u.</i>	
		Liddelsale, <i>pr.</i>	
Languetis, <i>ß.</i>	ib.	Literan, <i>ß.</i>	
L' Anquillade, <i>inf.</i>	230	Lite, <i>ß.</i>	
Langrino, <i>u.</i>	72	Liga Cadi Dio, <i>pr.</i>	
Lasufi, <i>inf.</i>	134	Ditture,	
		Grißa,	
Laodunum, <i>u.</i>	190	Ligeris, <i>ß.</i>	
Lapidei Campi,	219	Ligni, <i>u.</i>	
La Plaisa, <i>u.</i>	277	Ligorne, <i>u.</i>	
La Puy, <i>u.</i>	216	Liguria, <i>pr.</i>	
Laredo, <i>u.</i>	215	Ligulica, <i>th.</i>	

Larius, <i>l.</i>	143	Limagne, <i>ff. pr.</i>	
La Roche, <i>u.</i>	2 8	Linnæum, <i>ff.</i>	
Larabacua, <i>u.</i>	255	Limerick, <i>pr.</i>	
Lactores, <i>p.</i>	211	Limoger, <i>u.</i>	
Latium, <i>pr.</i>	100	Limofin, <i>pr.</i>	
Lavada, <i>ff.</i>	275	Limavi, <i>p.</i>	
La Vals, <i>u.</i>	198	Lincoln, <i>p. 304.</i>	
Evant, <i>ff.</i>	311	Lindisfern, <i>inf.</i>	314
Lavardin, <i>u.</i>	204	Lindum, <i>u.</i>	308

Lavinium, <i>u.</i>	109	Lignoy, <i>p.</i>
Lavaro, <i>pt.</i>	69	Lions, <i>u.</i>
Laurea, <i>fl.</i>	205	Lipari, <i>inf. u.</i>
Laureciana, <i>u.</i>	97	Liris, <i>fl.</i>
Lauron,		Lisbon, <i>u.</i>
Ligi, <i>u.</i>	281	Lisieux, <i>u.</i>
Laulanna, <i>u.</i>	165	Lille, <i>fl.</i>
Laxol, <i>u.</i>	229	de Jourdain, <i>u.</i>
Leaf, <i>p.</i>	343	en-Dodon, <i>u.</i>
Lebreche, <i>u.</i>	245	Liliberach, <i>u.</i>

Leclercq, <i>n.</i>	214	Lixenes, <i>f.</i>
Leclercq, <i>n.</i>	214	Llanes, <i>n.</i>
Le four, <i>c.</i>	195	Llanvillain, <i>n.</i>
St. Legier, <i>n.</i>	227	Llobregat, <i>f.</i>
Legeris, <i>f.</i>	180	Locarna, <i>n.</i>
Legio, <i>n.</i>	257	Loches, <i>n.</i>
Legio vicesima Victrix, <i>n.</i>	308	Locknannier, <i>m.</i>
	308	Locris, <i>n.</i>
Leicester, <i>pt.</i> 304. <i>n.</i> 308,		Lodi, <i>n.</i>

Leith, p.	333	Loughkeagh, u.	
Leitman, <i>l.</i>	116	Loh, u.	180
Lenavai, p.	259	Lombardy, <i>pr.</i>	
Lenaulius, u.	216	Lombet, u.	
Lemonices, p.	209	Londons, u.	
Leumter, <i>pr.</i>	343	Lon, <i>fl.</i>	
Lennox, <i>l.</i> 332.	<i>p.</i> 334	London Deery, u.	
Lenicini, u.	85	Loncaster, u.	
St. Leon, u. 59.	<i>cash.</i> 96	Longford, <i>pr.</i>	
Leon, <i>pr.</i> u.	257	Longovicus, u.	
St. Pold de Leon, u.	195	Loughville, u.	
Leontium, u.	81, 85	Loquebaver, <i>pr.</i>	
Leponitz, <i>m.</i>	151	Lorca, u.	
Letida, u.	286	Lorette, u.	
Letrina, <i>inf.</i>	230	Lornp.	
Letrig, u.	138	Loc, <i>fl.</i>	
Lerna, u.	270	Lothan, <i>pr.</i>	
Letzer, u.	211	L'ouche, <i>fl.</i>	
Letcina, <i>l.</i>	74	Lough-caugh, <i>l.</i>	
Letorium, u.	345	Loventum, u.	
Lettoracium, u.	214	Loughleen, <i>l.</i>	
Letthes, <i>fl.</i>	275	Loughfole, <i>l.</i>	
Letrim, <i>m.</i> 342.	<i>pr.</i> u.	St. Loup, u.	
		Lourde, u.	
Leuco Petra, <i>c.</i>	77	Loxa, u.	
Leucopibia, u.	334	Loyt, <i>fl.</i>	
Luim, <i>fl.</i>	<i>ib.</i>	Leuth, <i>pr.</i>	
Leuku, <i>pr.</i>	162	Lozanna, u.	!
Lewis-Burg, u.	209	St. Luca de Baramed.	
Lezibit, <i>p.</i>	192		

The TABLE

	Lucani, <i>p.</i>	27	Lelow, <i>n</i>	536	Leibben, <i>n.</i>	456
349	Lucerici, <i>n</i>	274	Lemberg, <i>n.</i>	441	Lubeck, <i>n.</i>	438
342	Luccene, 163.	165	Lembro, <i>inf. n.</i>	614	Lublin, <i>n.</i>	536
268	Lucra, <i>n.</i>	135	Lemgo, <i>n.</i>	476	Luchtenberg, <i>n. p.</i>	445
1, 150	Luciferi futurum, <i>n.</i>	261	Lemnos, <i>inf.</i>	614	Lueemburg, <i>n.</i>	377
156	Lucopbia, <i>n.</i>	1334	Lemnos, <i>inf.</i>	622	Luceozia, <i>n.</i>	383
211	Lucotcia, <i>n.</i>	185	Lenovi, <i>p.</i>	527	Lugdunum Batavorum, <i>n.</i>	536
315	Lucyon, <i>n.</i>	207	Leña, <i>n.</i>	367	Laickland, <i>pr.</i>	377
334	Lucus Alu-um, <i>n.</i>	247	Leoburg, <i>n.</i>	468	Lumainge, <i>n.</i>	377
216	Ludow, <i>n.</i>	355	Leodium, <i>pr.</i> 375.	376	Lumburg, <i>n.</i>	468
342	Lugno, <i>pr.</i>	164	Leontari, <i>n.</i>	581	Luna, <i>n.</i>	464
170	Lugdunum, <i>n.</i>	225	Leopolis, <i>n.</i>	468	Lunden, <i>n.</i>	491
<i>ib.</i>	Lugduensis Primas, <i>pr.</i>	322	Lepanto, <i>f.</i> 577.	595	Lundenberg, <i>n. pr.</i>	471
<i>ib.</i>	Secunda,	391	Leardam, <i>n.</i>	383	Lunfild, <i>C.</i>	489
180	Teril,	197	Leñis, <i>l.</i>	581	Lufatia, <i>pr.</i>	455
186	Quarta,	183; 200	Letranland, <i>pr.</i>	527	Luten, <i>fl.</i>	518
132	Liquidof, <i>c.</i>	89	Leura, <i>inf.</i>	614	Luten, <i>fl.</i>	518
137	Luni, <i>n.</i>	136. 275	Levasis, <i>fl.</i>	436	Cefarea Lutra, <i>n.</i>	401
152	Lunagiana, <i>pr.</i>	136	Levanti, <i>p.</i>	592	Lutemburg, <i>pr.</i>	377

101.	Luparætha, <i>n.</i>	71	Leucofida, <i>inf.</i>	614	Lycus, <i>fl.</i>	564
119	Lupignan, <i>n.</i>	207	Leudra, <i>u.</i>	519	Lyer, <i>fl.</i>	445
341	Lutrania, <i>pt.</i>	248	Leudres, <i>u.</i>	582	Lytimachia, <i>n.</i>	609
208	Luffon, <i>n.</i>	207	Levonis, <i>p.</i>	506		
ib.	Lutici, <i>n.</i>	185	Leuwarden, <i>n.</i>	386		
259	Luzark, <i>n.</i>	181	Leu-wars, <i>fl.</i>	563		
315	Lymen, <i>n.</i>	341	Ley, <i>fl.</i>	515		
353	Lymni, <i>f.</i>		Lezina, <i>inf. n.</i>	555		
			Liberitis, <i>n.</i>	603		
					Lib. 3.	

[illegible]

101	Lamia, u.	580	Limers, u. 19.	615	Laos fl. pr.	695
157	Lambroek, u.	436	Limford, f.	488	Lapethia, pr.	386
223	Lancitia, pr.	436	Lincopon, u.	503	Turris Lapides, east.	479
233	Landifloron, u.	492	Lindaw, u.	477	Lapibus, u.	632
165	Landeluit, u.	432	Linges, fl.	378	Lac, fl. 78.	u. 680
197	Langeland, inf.	490	Linghen, u.	483	Laranda, u.	u. 680
170	Langere, inf.	556	Linkaw, u.	528	Larida, u.	695, 778
76	Landecy, u.	310	Lintz, u.	414, 435	Larry Joon, u.	684
143						

152	Land, <i>n.</i>	470	Lavie, <i>pr.</i>	861
195	Lapointe, <i>pr.</i>	504	Lavie, <i>pr.</i>	866
279	Lappa, <i>n.</i>	602	Lavi, <i>n.</i>	898
441	Larissa, <i>n.</i>	621	Lavi, <i>n.</i>	898
213	Larix, <i>n.</i>	621	Laviana, <i>p.</i>	950
133	Larza, <i>n. f.</i>	598	Laula, <i>n.</i>	903
305	Lasti, <i>m.</i>	612	Lawirabander, <i>n.</i>	903
204	Lau, <i>n.</i>	556	Leante, <i>i. 748.</i>	P. 748
344	Lau, <i>f.</i>	591	Leatons, <i>n.</i>	618
344	Lau, <i>f.</i>	591	Lebedus, <i>n.</i>	618
344	Lawland, <i>inf.</i>	490	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
342	Lawenburg, <i>pr. u.</i>	467	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
193	Lau Ferte, <i>n.</i>	373	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
344	Lavamunde, <i>n.</i>	437	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
344	Lavand, <i>fl.</i>	ib.	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
267	Lavia, <i>fl.</i>	531	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
97	Lauben, <i>n.</i>	435	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
334	Laubum, <i>n.</i>	435	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
210	Lauffers, <i>pr.</i>	415	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
336	Laufner, <i>n.</i>	418	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
226	Lauren, <i>n.</i>	418	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
342	Lebadia, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
342	Lece, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
342	Leceum, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
342	Lecky, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
183	Leconopolis, <i>n.</i>	363	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
213	Leccy, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
266	Leere, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
180	Leibnitz, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
344	Leiden, <i>n.</i>	592	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
165	Leige, <i>pr. 375.</i>	471	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
2, u.	Leine, <i>n.</i>	471	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619
261	Leinze, <i>pr.</i>	471	Leconius, <i>n.</i>	619

The T A B L E.

Limycus, *fl.*

645

Lindon, *u.*

679

Ling, *u.*

901

Lilipos, *u.*

874

Livias, *u.*

715

Lochius, *u.*

855

Locepp, *u.*

830

Loe, *u.*

961

Lombare, *fl.*

896

Lomcor, *u.*

841

Lop, *p. u.*

788

Lor, *u.*

788

Lubius, *u.*

889

Lugor, *u.*

889

Ludon, *l.*

895

Luz, *u.*

731

Lycania, *p.*

664

Lycia, *p.*

661

Lycas, *fl. 658, 678, 816*

771

Lydda, *u.*

725

Lydia, *p.*

659

Lymedus, *u.*

651

Lysinnia, *u.*

664

Lydra, *u.*

664

Lib. 4.

Laboradora, *p.*

1009

Lacta, *p.*

973

Laccari, *m.*

972

Latus, *l.*

919, 923

Latomedis, *l.*

923

Lay Ladrones, *l.*

1079

Laganici, *p.*

925

Lagaros, *fl.*

1015

Lagunus, *u.*

1057, 1065

Lankana, *l.*

1039

Lampida, *l.*

912

Lanquellungi, *p.*

997

Lanferotte, *l.*

985

Laques del Oro, *c.*

1055

Lache

Larisa, *u.*

948

Larupesia, *l.*

952

St. Laurence, *l.*

991, 1015

St. Laurence, *l.*

1015

St. Laurence, *l.*

1068

Laxus, *u.*

949

Leanda, *l.*

938

Leada

Leada, *fl.*

979, 987

Leapras, *fl.*

1041

Leopra, *des.*

958

De Santa Leona, *c.*

960

De las Leones, *pote.*

1062

Leons, *u.*

1042, 1055, 1076

Lepts magna, *u.*

938

Lept

Lept, *on fl.*

924

St. Lewis, *u.*

1014, 1030, 1069

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia, *p.*

909, 1055

Libia,

The TABLE.

Macrodurum, u.	410	Meuter, f.	423	Mulaberg, u.	463	Maly, p.	875	Megarenes, p.	643
Macronanni, p.	438, 444	Meydenburg, u.	467	Munchen, u.	431	Mamre Campus,	379	Megido, u.	749
Mariboane, u.	490	St. Michael, u.	519	Mund, inf.	490	Mamilla, p.	759	Megere, u.	805
Marienberg, u.	370	McKlois, pr.	533	Mundere, u.	487	Manabich, p.	717, 724	Megamphylas, inf.	694
Marienbourg, u.	533	Micko, inf.	618	Mundis, p.	476	Mancoff, u.	817	Megapugos, p.	674
Marienwerder, u.	533	Middlefar, u.	490	Munfler Eyphell, u.	415	Mangas, u.	789	Melange, u.	826
Mariß, f.	559	Middlefar, u.	383, 417	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melani, u.	734, 748
Mariza, f.	609	St. Mel, u.	434	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melanthis, inf.	673
Marß, p.	410, f.	Michlaw, pr.	529	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	642, 650
Marbora, inf.	435	M. lberg, u.	448	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	677
Macrodonum, u.	451	Mileum, u.	632	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	824
Maron Campi, u.	561	Milkenbach, u.	460	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	831
Marone Zeck, pr.	561	Milo, inf.	618	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	889
Marpur, u.	473	Milopotamos, u.	623	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	901
Marquatus Imperii, pr.	379	Mimel, u.	533	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	669
Marthow, u.	532	Mimnegen, u.	428	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Marß, p.	485	Minden, u.	476	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	785
Marignis, p.	459	Mimnack, f.	525	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	662
Mariperg, u.	437	Mimnos, u.	623	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	824
Marstrand, u.	494	Minois, inf.	617	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	831
Marß, f.	423	Minsk, pr.	529	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	775
Marxane, f.	423	Mirabello, u.	623	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	694
Marzenburg, u.	371	Mitcecu, u.	424	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	805
Marzenwald, u.	431	Mitina, pr.	519	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	813
Marziana, u.	404	Mitaw, u.	527	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	773
St. Martins Dike, u.	486	Mlaw, u.	535	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	731
Marul, u.	560	Mockern, u.	467	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	758
Marulch, f.	552	Modriß, u.	552	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	678
Maßch, u.	552	Modin, u.	490	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	642, 644
Maßch-mufter, u.	422	Moenland, inf.	468	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	671
Mallovja, pr.	531	Mxotiz, pal.	362	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	844
Maupain, p.	581	Mogus, u.	416	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Marium, u.	624	Mogus, u.	416	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Marcidiz, p.	363, 386	Mogunathum, u.	ib.	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Marzab, m.	542	Moldavik, pr.	562	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mawbaige, u.	369	Molmuck, u.	451	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
St. Maurice, inf. u. c.	598	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mawzi, p.	598	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mecklenburg, pr. u.	561	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Medemblick, u.	384	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Medicus	560	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mediolanum, u.	476	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mediomatrici, p.	423	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Medion, u.	553, 580	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Megalopolis, u.	461, 581	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Megaritis, pr. u.	591	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Meliffon, p. u.	463	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melanz, inf.	556	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melaplus, m.	608	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melas, f.	486	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Meldorp, u.	ib.	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melena, inf.	626	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melcr, f. f.	501, 504	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melibocus, m.	438	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melidia, inf.	556	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melipotamos, u. f.	623	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melissa, u.	585	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mellum, u.	479	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melos, inf.	618	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melingen, u.	473	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Melvin, u.	533	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Menapil, p.	363, 390	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Menebria, u.	568	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mengerhuiffe, u.	474	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mentz, pr. u.	416	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Meran, u.	438	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mercheren, pr.	454	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Merellus, u.	604	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mercks, f.	379	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Meroden, u.	410	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mersburg, u.	463	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Merspurg, u.	417	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mesumbria, u.	568	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Messenia, pr. u.	580	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Metroe, f.	608	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Metanidiz, p.	514	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Methon, u.	580	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Mets, u.	423	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Metz, pr.	363	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817
Meuß, f.	363	Mokkita, pr.	598	Mur, f.	436	Mandale, u.	848	Melchus, f.	817

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The TABLE.

[illegible]

The TABLE.

Omeali, u.	813	Ottavallu, u.	1054	Philippi-Town, u.	343	Poville, pr.	68	Petz via, u.	436
Omo, u.	732	Otronius, p.	1035	Philermus, f.	73	Piana, p.	74	Petra alba, u.	600
Onor, u.	874	Orcizian, u.	1040	Picardy, pr.	188	Powisland, pr.	351	Petrella, u.	58
Ophir, p.	887	Ozama, fl.	1083	Picentin, p.	277	Pracanis, p.	100	Petrocov, u.	535
Ophiuda, inf.	675			Pien, inf.	277	Pracneff, u.	131	Petrowa, u.	511
Oran, u.	760			Picetes, p.	206	Prato, u.	277	Pezze, fl. pr. fl. u.	516
Orbitas, p.	808			Piclavie, pr.	314	Prates, m.	131	Pezchum, u.	569
Orbitans, u.	810			Picli, p.	206	Prettegowsberg, m.	101	Pfaffenhofen, u.	442
Orchen, p.	753			Piclon, p.	155	Pricipate, pr.	71	Pfir, u. pr.	442
Orchibac, u.	803			Pied de Port, u.	133	Priverum, u.	101	Pfortheim, u.	447
Orel, u.	714			Piemonte, pr.	133	Prochira, inf.	78	Pfriend, u.	447
Oregan, inf.	761			Picenza, u.	133	Proence, p.	218	Pfulgnum, u.	557
Oregonales, u.	815			Piera St. u.	133	Province, u.	187	Phazacia, inf.	647
Oreginalis, pr.	640			Pierrefort, u.	286	Puglia, p.	75	Phazacia, inf.	647
Oriffa, u.	879			Pietas Julia, u.	131	Puliciano, u.	131	Phaznic, u.	598
Orifan	ib.			Pignatelli, u.	156	Punta del Gada, u.	270	Pharfalli, m.	602
Ormus, inf. u.	806			Das Pinas, c.	297	Puteolis, u.	240	Pharus, inf.	555
Orodin, u.	861			Pintia, u.	270	Pvenazi, m.	70	Phavonaz, p.	578, 681
Oromandus, u.	650			Piomunno, u.	133	S. Patricks Purgatory, l.	342	Phavia, u.	581
O. otes, fl.	687, 696			Piquigni, u.	130			Phibac, u.	684
				Piza Sanza, u.	133			Phile, u.	578
				Piza, p. u.	ib.			Philippe Ville, u.	370
				Pizaurum, u.	95			Philippi, u.	603, 630
				Pisa, fl.	95			Philippolis, u.	602
				Piscia, fl.	95			Philipsberg, u.	418
				Piscatillo, fl.	95			Philicandros, inf.	619
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phiniot, p.	505
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phini, p.	533
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phinopolis, u.	609
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phirzi, p.	506
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phlegia, pr.	604
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phocis, pr.	592
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phocula, inf.	619
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phrungsadion, p.	533
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phryotis, pr.	602
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phundufi, p.	489
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phylae, u.	604
				Piscia, fl.	95			Phyco, u.	578
				Piscia, fl.	95			Piacenzia, p.	569
				Piscia, fl.	95			Picardy Inferior, pr.	369
				Piscia, fl.	95			Picentia, p.	567
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pieria, pr.	603
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pierchille, inf. u.	384
				Piscia, fl.	95			Petersborn, u.	421
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pigiada, u.	589
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pigritium, u.	553
				Piscia, fl.	95			Piften, u.	451
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pimple, m.	593
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pindus, u.	607
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pinnegue, u.	519
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pippenberg, u.	486
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pirarus, u.	578
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pireuth, u.	567
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pisa, u.	580
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizina, fl. inf.	469
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.	95			Pizara, fl.	591
				Piscia, fl.					

The TABLE

Pont Sarvis, u.	415	Parenti, p.	810	Phanagoria, u.	830	Prom, p.	885	Penco, S.	1060
Pondsberg, u.	362	Parapamilius, m.	780	Phata, u.	774	Propontis,	641	Penga, u.	987
Pont a Molon, u.	362	Parapamilius, pr.	809	Phatamica, u.	737	Prophasia, u.	803	Pennon de vcles, u.	948
Pontico, inf.	611	Paras, p.	830	Phatan, def.	733	Procolimniz, p.	647	Pentapolis, pr.	924
Ponticum, mare,	612	Paraticene, pr.	804	Phatas, pr.	800, 803	Procolimne, u.	646	Penapia, pr.	1035
Pontus, pr.	569	Paravi, p.	878	Pharazana, u.	808	Pruis, u.	643	De les Perlas, pr.	1045
Populcar, fl.	629	Pharchoatras, m.	812	Pharga, u.	775	Psalhis, fl.	819	Penabiacas, m.	1067
Porphyris, inf.	619	Parfar, fl.	696	Pharmacia, u.	645	Psellis, fl.	830	Persofori, m.	956
Polna, u.	135	Pargeryca, p.	809	Pharphas, fl.	700	Pseudotom, fl.	863	Perphori, u.	ib.
Polonium, u.	143	Paridi, ardi	780	Phasifas, pr.	803	Pitaras, fl.	839	Peru, p. fl.	1051
Poidizes, u.	604, 608	Paridri, m.	646	Phasif, fl. u.	786, 901	Pierum, u.	649	Perwana, pr.	1044
Pouatolo, u.	517	Parium, u.	814	Phaffum, u.	786	Piockmais, u.	689	Pelcara, pr. u.	957
Poz via	515	Paroi, p.	809	Phara, u.	649	Punta Maleta, c.	677	Pecelani, pr.	1029
Poz u.	451	Paroeca, m.	809	Philadelphia, u.	660, 701	Pyrnus, fl.	666	St. Peter, u. 1043, fl.	1093
Prague, u.	164	Parfiana, u.	810	Philippine, inf.	895			Pueblo nuevo, u.	1056
Prailaba, u.	525, 532	Parfara, p.	808	Philippin, inf.	642, 644			Pharos, inf. cast.	947
Pregel, fl.	531	Parfara, u.	871	Phillis, fl.	647			Phu an wills, u.	937
Premilit, u.	543	Parfara, u.	805	Phillim, u.	647			Phile, u.	968
Presburg, u.	600	Parfara, u.	811	Philonia, pr.	647			St. Philip, u. 1030, 1034	1055
Prevalitana, pr.	598	Parfara, u.	812	Philonia, pr.	707, 716			1045, 1067, 1068	
Prevefa, u.	455	Parfara, u.	808	Phlocca, m.	617			St. Philip, S. Jacob, u. 1029	
Prignitz, pr. u.	566	Palacarta, u.	804	Phoclis, u.	809			Philippina, u.	1043
Pridden, u.	613	Palafaga, u.	805	Phradag, u.	808			Phorca, m.	934
Proconnefus, inf.	ib.	Palafaga, u.	805	Phrigia major, pr.	613			Phthia, u.	925
Proponcium, mare,	ib.	Palafara, u.	804	Phrigia minor, pr.	611			Phthuch, fl.	935
Propontis, fretum.	366	Palafara, u.	804	Phryx, fl.	ib.			Phut, pr.	943
Protop of Flanders, pr.	436	Palafara, u.	804	Phrunt, u.	753			Phuth, fl.	943
Prucis, u.	534	Palafara, u.	804	Phyllis, p.	865			Pibefech, pr.	1029
Prueth, fl.	563	Palafara, u.	804	Phyllis, p.	840			Piccesoli, pr.	1091
Psalis, cast.	418	Palafara, u.	804	Pieria, m.	687, pr. 698			Pichen, pr.	1074
Paffenhofen, u.	443	Palafara, u.	804	Sr. Pifano, c.	677			Pilabo, u.	1034
Pilort, m.	622	Palafara, u.	804	Pigrine, u.	672			Pilconayo, fl.	1061
Plirit, u.	422	Palafara, u.	804	Piliciz, m.	640, 667			Pincuria, inf.	995
Plow, pr. u.	581	Palafara, u.	804	Perfidis, m.	804			Piraf, fl.	1047
Plofent, u.	428	Palafara, u.	804	Sarmatiz, u.	829			Piura, u.	1054
Puente, i.	506	Palafara, u.	804	Pilgrims, cast.	723			De la Plata, fl. 1044, 1054	
Puellach, u.	446	Palafara, u.	804	Pinar, u.	698			u. 1083	
Puffozica, u.	516	Palafara, u.	804	Pirathon, u.	715			Las Plais, c. 1055, 1026	
Pydna, u.	603	Palafara, u.	804	Pirca, m.	864			Plaza, pr. u. 1057, 1064	
Eylos, u.	580	Palafara, u.	804	Pifag, m.	711, 715			Schaffan de la Plata, m. 1050	
Pyrene, font.	586	Palafara, u.	804	Pifidia, pr.	664			New Plimmouth, u.	1035
Pyrae, pr.	602	Palafara, u.	804	Pifon, fl.	767, 802			Plinthine, u.	925
Pytho, u.	593	Palafara, u.	804	Pifon, fl.	767, 802			Pluinaia, inf.	995
		Palafara, u.	804	Pifon, fl.	767, 802			Poincar, u. fl.	1068
		Palafara, u.	804	Pifon, fl.	767, 802			Port Antogil, m.	992

The TABLE.

Puepacampeche, m.	1015
Proadit, p.	914
Providence, inf.	2078
Pfclis, m.	967
Pfistocum terra,	1078
Pfylli, p.	916
Prelemaus, fl.	919
Prolemaus, m.	921, 924
Ferum, m.	968, 972
Puebla de los Angeles,	1037
Puebla de los Canos,	1016
Puna, inf.	1014
Puna de Lopez Gonzales, m.	960
De Terra plana, c.	1063
Puere, pr.	1019
Purification, u.	1014
Purificatio, p.	915
Pyrhais, p.	916
Pythionot, m.	1017

Ueens County, 343	
Quercu, m.	209
Quercu gulse,	111
Quercu, u.	116
Quercu, fl.	121
Quercu, m.	122
Quercu, p.	164
Quercu, m.	190

Quercu, p.	438, 454
Quercu, m.	426
St. Quarenta, m.	498
Quercu, m.	471
Quercu, f.	551, 554
Quercu, m.	466
Quercu, inf.	618
Quercu, m.	544

Quercu, p.	813
Quercu, m.	814
Quercu, m.	815
Quercu, m.	816
Quercu, m.	817
Quercu, m.	818
Quercu, m.	819
Quercu, m.	820
Quercu, m.	821

Quercu, p.	1014
Quercu, m.	1015
Quercu, m.	1016
Quercu, m.	1017
Quercu, m.	1018
Quercu, m.	1019
Quercu, m.	1020
Quercu, m.	1021
Quercu, m.	1022

Quercu, p.	980
Quercu, m.	981
Quercu, fl.	982
Quercu, p.	983
Quercu, m.	984
Quercu, p.	985
Quercu, m.	986
Quercu, p.	987
Quercu, m.	988
Quercu, p.	989
Quercu, m.	990
Quercu, p.	991
Quercu, m.	992
Quercu, p.	993
Quercu, m.	994
Quercu, p.	995
Quercu, m.	996
Quercu, p.	997
Quercu, m.	998
Quercu, p.	999
Quercu, m.	1000

Quercu, p.	1001
Quercu, m.	1002
Quercu, fl.	1003
Quercu, p.	1004
Quercu, m.	1005
Quercu, p.	1006
Quercu, m.	1007
Quercu, p.	1008
Quercu, m.	1009
Quercu, p.	1010
Quercu, m.	1011
Quercu, p.	1012
Quercu, m.	1013
Quercu, p.	1014
Quercu, m.	1015

Quercu, p.	1016
Quercu, m.	1017
Quercu, fl.	1018
Quercu, p.	1019
Quercu, m.	1020
Quercu, p.	1021
Quercu, m.	1022
Quercu, p.	1023
Quercu, m.	1024
Quercu, p.	1025
Quercu, m.	1026
Quercu, p.	1027
Quercu, m.	1028
Quercu, p.	1029
Quercu, m.	1030
Quercu, p.	1031
Quercu, m.	1032

Quercu, p.	1033
Quercu, m.	1034
Quercu, fl.	1035
Quercu, p.	1036
Quercu, m.	1037
Quercu, p.	1038
Quercu, m.	1039
Quercu, p.	1040
Quercu, m.	1041
Quercu, p.	1042
Quercu, m.	1043
Quercu, p.	1044
Quercu, m.	1045
Quercu, p.	1046
Quercu, m.	1047
Quercu, p.	1048
Quercu, m.	1049

Quercu, p.	1050
Quercu, m.	1051
Quercu, fl.	1052
Quercu, p.	1053
Quercu, m.	1054
Quercu, p.	1055
Quercu, m.	1056
Quercu, p.	1057
Quercu, m.	1058
Quercu, p.	1059
Quercu, m.	1060
Quercu, p.	1061
Quercu, m.	1062
Quercu, p.	1063
Quercu, m.	1064
Quercu, p.	1065
Quercu, m.	1066

Quercu, p.	1067
Quercu, m.	1068
Quercu, fl.	1069
Quercu, p.	1070
Quercu, m.	1071
Quercu, p.	1072
Quercu, m.	1073
Quercu, p.	1074
Quercu, m.	1075
Quercu, p.	1076
Quercu, m.	1077
Quercu, p.	1078
Quercu, m.	1079
Quercu, p.	1080
Quercu, m.	1081
Quercu, p.	1082
Quercu, m.	1083

N.	204	Rauragn
P.	252	Rednitz,
ville, u.	157	Rees, M.
ob,	314	Regen, fl.
Remont, M.	191	Regiaun
so, fl.	121	Regimon
lli, u.	71	Regius, M.
c, fl.	192	Rhichen
oghdium, u.	344	Rempen,
oretum, M.	144	Rendenbe
helle, u.	209	Renty, u.
esser, M.	310	Ressel, M.
falcon, u.	209	Reu, u.
st	209	

The TABLE.

Samonium, c.	619	Scriffen, u.	457	Silea, fl.	488	Stengnes, u.	504	Sabe, u.	759
Samothrace, inf.	614	Scriffa, u.	554	Slckfwick, pr. u.	514	Stendon, u.	543	Sabis, u.	806
Samorat Kafelsa, pr.	528	Scrupi, u.	553	Slodabo, u.	502	Stegman, u.	544	Sabora, u.	719
Samofe, inf.	488	Satari, u.	553	Slmalinda, pr.	564	Stegmon, u.	544	Sabran, u.	789
Samus, fl.	565	Swanck, u.	553	Slmalcald, u.	502	Stegmon, f.	577	Sacer finus, u.	824, 832
Santen, u.	402	Swanckwald, m.	404	Slmolensko, pr. u.	514	Stegmon, f.	603	Sachalite, f.	758, 761
Santi Quaranta, u.	598	Scuyl, u.	560	Snack, u.	386	Sifoni, p.	611	Sachian, u.	841
Satorini, inf.	618	Scuylus, inf.	617	Soelt, u.	421	Sivall, inf.	624	Sada, u.	884
Sapzi, pr.	611	Scythia, pr.	607	Soldin, u.	457	Sophades, inf.	ib.	Sadani, pr.	865
Sar, fl.	415	Scythia, m.	495	Solms, pr. u.	442	Suma, fl.	467	Sadus, fl.	584
Sapientia, inf.	580	Schiburg, pr.	559	Solwedel, u.	457	Sybia, inf.	619	Saeza, u.	840
Sarbrucken, u.	415	Sebenic, u.	553	Somerfide, inf. u.	384	Symon, fl.	603	Saffers, u.	722
Sardica, u.	609	Sebenic, u.	553	Sonera, u.	568	Sitzer, m.	464	Sigadana, u.	898
Sardoz, pr.	556	Seunum, pr. u.	373	Sophia, u.	514	Su Welenburg, u.	543	Sigallia, u.	664
Sarentine, u.	561	Segan, u.	455	Sopran, u.	543	Sugard, u.	446	Siganis, fl.	805
Sarmatia Euxina, p.	510	Segen, u.	485	Sorani, u.	423	Suylus, fl. 577. u. l.	581	Sigappas, fl.	862
Sarmatich, m.	525, 540	Sengenwatz, u.	566	Sorabiz, p.	464, 489	Suyl, fl.	581	Sigacus, fl.	865
Saronicus, f.	577	Seland, inf.	489	De Sorant, inf.	489	Suatores, p.	439	Sigattis, p.	800
Sarquis, inf.	65	Selbstadum, u.	421	Sore, u.	490	Suatores, p.	464	Sigadana, inf.	807
Savari, p.	519	Selucia, u.	603	Sorund, u.	429	Suatores, p.	481	Sageda, u.	864
Savarden, u.	424	Sclimbria, u.	609	Sound, fretum.	429	Suatores, p.	559	Sagua, u.	654
Saverne, u.	481	Selino, u.	623	Spa, u.	623	Sudria, pr.	513	Silze, p.	902
Savia, pr. fl.	541	Selle, fl.	423	Spachia, m. 622.	623	Sudman, pr.	514	Silambriz, m.	649
Sauromata, p.	510	Selte, u.	421	Spalato, u.	551	Sudria, m.	404	Silamine, inf.	677
Sau, u.	377	Sem, fl.	517	Spandau, u.	427	Sudria, m.	500	Silamiz, u.	805
Saulin, u.	372	Semigallia, pr.	517	Spandem, pr.	481	Sueto, p.	455	Silalaz, p.	815
Savus, fl.	436, 454	Semunder, u.	566	Spata, u.	566	Sueto, p.	485	Silchaltz, p.	761
Saxenfelte, u.	437	Sendorovia, u.	566	Speurdele, u.	566	Sueto, p.	427	Sildino, fl.	687
Saxenhausen, u.	445	Sendorin, pr. u.	536	Sperchius, fl.	566	Sueto, p.	427	Silice, inf.	909
Saxenbourg, u.	445	Senhunsen, u.	457	Spir, u.	418	Sueto, p.	439	Silize, p. u.	472
Saxony, pr. 462, 465, 466	465	Senia, u.	554	Spiracoma, fl.	557	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scacius, fl.	621	Senones, p.	456	Spiral, u.	439	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scalffhausen, u.	489	Senos, inf.	377	Sporades, inf.	618	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scagen, m.	533	Sepi, p.	561	Sprad, fl.	418	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schilvonia, pr.	533	Sephus, inf.	618	Spreben, u.	490	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schald, fl.	496	Sephus, inf.	618	Sprabocpen, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schalholt, u.	491	Septemcastensis, pr.	559	Stabul, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scandia, pr.	491	Servet, u.	466	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scandivania, pr.	491	Servia, pr.	566	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scania, pr.	491	Sestus, u.	609	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scanzia, pr.	491	Sethia, m.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scara, u.	502	Sethia, m.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scardina, m.	603	Sethia, m.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scardonia, u. 554. inf.		Sethia, m.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scardonich, m.	551	Sevenwalden, pr.	436	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scardus, u.	559	Soveria, pr.	517	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scarphia, u.	593	Soverin, u.	565	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scarhamla, u.	476	Servo, m.	553	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scharpe, fl.	366	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scheld, fl.	365	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schellink, inf.	389	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Scheburg, u.	560	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schin, u.	494	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schinula, inf.	619	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schleffad, u.	421, 444	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schleff, pr.	455	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schneberg, u. 464. m. 540		Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schon, u.	494	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schonen, pr.	491	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schonhuffen, m.	449	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schoonhoven, u.	383	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schwindorf, u.	447	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schwen, inf.	385	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schwaben, pr.	427	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schwannica, u.	552	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schwaz, u.	438	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schwartz, fl.	454	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schweinford, u.	431	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Schyre, pr.	615	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Sedathon, inf.	618	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Seilleum, c.		Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serari, u.	556	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Seravus, p.	451	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Seravonia, pr.	550	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serle, m.	366	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serolm, u.	513	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serombus, m.	573	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Seruri, u.	580	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serupelos, inf.	615	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serupis, p.	566	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serordici, p.	545	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofula, u.	603	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864
Serofinnia, pr.	505	Sethia, u.	612	Stad, u.	491	Sueto, p.	456	Silamiz, u.	864

The TABLE

Salmon, p.	815	Sichem, u.	7	Salina, pr.	813	Secomulco, pr.	1040
Salvar, u.	810	Sidam, u.	6	Seconagus, m.	803	Secorra, u.	1031
Sargam, u.	880	Side, m.	6	Sualia, u.	803	Secotara, inf.	1031
Satatos, u.	660	Sidon, u.	6	Sualius, fl.	803	Sejala, pr. u.	981
Satalia, u. f.	665	Sigam, u.	651, c. 6	Subleffan, pr.	809	De Sol, m.	985
Satyorium, p.	851, inf.	Sigan, u.	1	Subut, inf.	881, u. 895	Soldania, pr.	985
Savadi, p.	815	Sigan, u.	1	Secoth, u.	715	Solis, p. m.	984
Saubeni, p.	815	Sigancam, u.	6	Succu, u.	841	Solomonis, inf.	985
Saum, u.	803	Sigam, u.	9	Suechu, u.	153	Songo, pr. u.	987
Sauran, u.	872	Sigo, u.	8	Suehu, pr.	133	Songus, u.	987
Sautomatz, p.	827	Sigeflan, u.	6	Suente, u.	701	Sotbetes, fl.	914
Saulfene, pr.	868	Sihon, m.	16	Sueta, u.	760	Thon Soterm, u.	968
Sautu, u.	841	Silo, u.	15	Sueru, u.	718	Souriquois, pr.	1013
Sazotz, p.	806	Silvanpede, u.	91	Suila, pr.	789	Spiritus Sandi, fl.	978
Scamander, fl.	651	Simon, p.	18	Sultane puare, m.	868	1019, 1029, u. 1030,	1038, 1037
Scamandis, u.	652	Sinergam, u.	179	Sulcania, pr.	800	Stachiris, fl.	955
Scandeloro, u.	668	Similla, u.	164	Sumachia, u.	799	Seda, ones m.	1011
Scandione, u.	ib.	Simocis, fl.	951	Sunichania, pr.	842	Statenland, pr.	1029
Scargarizick, u.	831	Simocis, fl.	105	Sumatra, inf.	900	St. Stephen, post.	1048
Scarpanto, inf. u.	675	Simondi, inf.	902	Sun, u.	902	St. Steven del pucro, m.	1033
Secherufal, u.	773	Sin, u.	809	Sunda, u.	899	Sua, pr.	969
Sechur, p.	752	Sinaz, p.	848	Sundiva, u.	890	Suaschen, u.	972
Secepis, u.	656	Sinat, m.	754	Suntien, u.	852	Subeit, p.	945
Seernus, u. fl.	868	Sindas, fl.	871, 884	Sut, pr. u.	690, u. u.	Sud, fl.	943, 946
Schinds, fl.	863	Sindz, inf.	897	Sura, u.	699	Suechu, u.	972
Scianday, u.	853	Sinapura, u.	888	Surat, u.	871	Suechu, u.	972
Scimmitz, p.	832	Sinchi, p.	827	Surium, u.	786	Suic, pr.	919
Seitra, p.	774	Sindocanda, pr. u.	901	Surrabaia, u.	899	St. Saviour, u.	986, pr. u.
Scordz, p.	815	Singara, u.	775	Surungo, u.	894	1041, fl. 1064	1064
Scordicus, m.	642, 650	Singas, fl.	68 u. 698	Sufa, u.	803	Saymz, p.	1073
Scutari, u.	649	Sintacora, u.	873	Sufiana, pr.	808	Scandaria, u.	910
Scythia, pr.	822, 825	Sinthum, fl.	862	Sufnam, pr.	841	Scanieum, fl.	920
Extra Imaum,	840	Sio, u.	672	Suur, u.	650	Scoria Nova, pr.	1012
Intra Imaum,	830	Sion, m.	7, u. 897	Surzeli, u.	805	Scapodaz, p.	910
Seychicus Oceanus,	641	Sipilas, m.	659	Swalley, u.	878	St. Sebastian, fl. u.	1029
Seychopolis, u.	701, 719, 714	Sipparum, u.	770	Sybaris, u.	786	1047, fl. 1067, 1091	1091
Seychopolis, u.	745, 726, 784	Siphora, u.	812	Sychi, m.	834, p.	De La Plata, u.	1050
Sesbapolis, u.	657	Sirace, u.	736	Syeri, p.	836	Secatan, u.	1017
Schar, inf.	735	Sirbon, fl.	736	Syndaf, u.	812	Secfina, u.	1019
Schoim, u.	890	Siriangh, cast.	858, 891	Syndaga, u.	812	Segelmelle, pr. u.	957
Secanda, u.	813	Siriput, u.	880	Synarus, fl. m.	774	Segolcke, u.	1015
Seci, p.	813	Sirne, inf.	676	Synayada, u.	654	Segovia, u.	1042, 1076
Seci Aram, pr.	684	Sisnam, pr.	848	Synope, u.	644	Segura, u.	1067
Segui, u.	838	Sistan, u.	808	Syria, pr.	684	Seguro, pr. u.	1067
Seir, m.	736	Sitacene, pr.	771	Syria, pr.	684	Seio, pr.	948
Seia, u.	803	Sitrim, u.	715	Mafaceene, pr.	700	Seligus, m.	927
Seiahu, u.	754	Sizyges, p.	840	Damacha, pr.	697	Selich, u.	961
Selebes, inf.	897	Smyrna, u. f.	658	Salutaris, pr.	697	Senaga, fl.	973
Seleucia, u.	664, 666, 695	Soa, fl.	862	Secunda, pr.	ib.	Seneca, fl.	963
769, 814	Soana, fl.	79, 901, pr. 902	Transfluvialis, pr.	773	Seneca, u.	1031	Lib. 1
Seleucus, pr.	695	Aram Sobat, pr.	685, 699	Propria, pr.	693	Nestora Sennora, pr.	1061
Selge, u.	664	Sobura, u.	864	S			

The **T A B L**

Fds Ty, fl.	332	Froya, u.	74	inf. 134	Thracia, inf.	618	Tk, pr.	329	Tapyti, p.	800, 912
Techu, fl.	283	Fronto, fl.	69, 91		Thermacusa, f.	603	Tloduc, p.	369	Tarachi, u. pr.	90, 908
Tectolages, p.	176	Froya, u.	187		Thermopulz,	591	Thonion antrum,	492	Tarania, u.	703
Tecio, u.	178	Tedo, u.	259		Thermus, u.	196	Thonion, p.	412	Tarichza, u.	802
Tect Telamon, u.	133	Tedola, u.	251		Theroven, u.	367	Tie, fl.	369	Tarnadari, u.	878
Temid, fl.	314	Tedecum, u.	98		Thelapia, u. fl.	191	Tielin	495	Tarfiana, u.	802
Tenos, fl.	260	Tedich, u.	334		Thelapocis, pr.	597	heim	389	Tarfius, u.	667
Teranum, u.	776	Tetu, u.	259		Thelalonia, u.	604	Tirenburg, pr. u.	389	Tatar, pr.	844
Tercera, inf.	176	Tettes, u.	208		Thellaly, pr.	618	Turo, fl.	418, 443	Tartaria, pr.	834
Tercus, fl.	84	Tudulpi, p.	264		Thellaly, inf.	618	Tugen, p.	446	Antiqua, pr.	843
Tergestum, u. f.	120	Tudicani, p.	18		Thellud, pr.	616	Tuin, f.	388	Deferta, pr.	818
Ternay, u.	123	Turenne, u.	104		Thellun, p.	616	Tui, pr.	488	Precoipentis, pr.	821
Tertacioli, u.	123	Turin, u.	155		St. Thomas, u.	497	Tucana, regio.	412	Tafale, u.	884
Terna do Lavoro,	69	Turica, p.	197		Theda, u.	600	Tuo, pr.	502	Tarai, u.	884
Terrano,	75	Turica, u.	90		Thirac, pr.	607	Turtas, p.	404	Tavium, u.	647
Novo, u.	76	Turfaubica, u.	213		Thionium, u.	595	Tutbergs, u.	409	Tauri, p.	912
Thancr, inf.	310, 352	Tury, u.	200		Thulana, u.	582	Toll, u.	517	Taurica Cherfonelus, fl.	821
Thelis, fl.	283	Turany, pr.	129		Thuly, inf.	496	Tullu, u.	433	Tauru, u.	799
Thco, fl.	313	Tutali, p.	18		Thymis, fl.	598	Tunga, u.	376	Tauro Scythia, pr.	821
Thetford, u.	313	Tufulum, u.	401		Thyland, pr.	489	Tupan, u.	516	Taurus, u.	640, 661
Tholone, u.	208	Twedale, pr.	334		Thyras, pr.	607	Turcu, u.	431	Tawgebawu, u.	812
Tholofis, u.	178	Tweed, fl.	335		Thystad, u.	489	Turci, gi, pr.	461	Taxds, u.	881
Tholncy, u.	213	Twomond, pr. u.	341		Tiberina, u.	432	Turini, pr.	464	Taxiana, inf.	861
Thours, u.	207	Tyrenum, mare,	407		Tulur, u.	542	Turisi, u.	447	Taxipa, u.	802
Thulencel inf.	349	Tytic, fl.	324		Tubium, u.	568	Turont, fl.	513	Taxilla, u.	802
Thurles, u.	349				Tiel, u.	389	Tufingun, f.	497	Taybinco, pr.	841
Thrafymen, l.	99				Tilmont, u.	379	Tuver, f.	519	Tecoa, u.	729, 808, 900
Tilbur, u.	106				Tirangerz, p.	412	Tweratz, pr.	412	Tecolages, pr.	647, 831
Tibis, u.	99				Tirilis, pr.	438	Twerde,	478	Teffis, u.	781
Tielinus, f. u.	143				Tiffe, fl.	542	Twiff, fl.	474	Telega, u.	781
Tierfachie, pr.	191				Tircus, fl.	552	Tychenbe, u.	486	Telmedilla, u.	69
Tieraventum, fl.	120				Tockay, u.	543	opol.	486	Telmedius, u.	66
Tintavo, pr.	116				Togrop, u.	490	Tyddholm, inf.	489	Temala, fl.	881
Tintu, fl.	296, 314				Tolen, inf. u.	381	Tydiskin, u.	532	Tenduc, pr.	881
Tingitana, pr.	248				Tolbiacum, u.	414	Tyna, inf.	617	Tenedus, inf. u.	871
Tinavus, fl.	120				Tomikwar, u.	596	Tyras, fl.	525	Ten, u.	69
Tin, u.	171				Tomus, u.	169	Tyrinthia, u.	585	Tecoi, u.	66
Tiphendum, u.	98				Tonagra, fl.	417	Tyrlin, u.	603	Tercalla, u.	802
Tippary, pr.	345				Tongri, p.	363, 376			Terebinth, vallis,	731
Tironnel, pr.	344				Tonberg, u.	494			Terecar, inf.	89
Tir Oen, pr.	313				Tooma, u.	463			Ternelus, u.	66
Tirolis, pr.	353				Torgow, u.	516			Terulli, u.	89
Tivdale, pr.	134				Torneles, u.	580			Terna Incognita,	831
Tivolis, u.	100				Torona, u.	604			Sancta,	702
Toam, u.	345				Toronius, f.	603			Terra, inf.	861
Toam, u.	345				Towk, u.	483			Terfa, u.	66
Todis, u.	98				Tourney, u.	366			Terzah, u.	721
Toledo, pr. u.	168				Trabel, u.	456			Tercapolis, inf.	66
Tolofates, p.	216				Traczen, u.	585			Tevcla, l.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Tragalle, u.	501			Thammitina, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				gurium				Thata, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchonia, inf.	610			Thara, inf.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Tharacus, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thaxgin, cast.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thobes, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thobet, pr. u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thelbis, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thelbis, l.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Theman, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Themicyon, pr. u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Themas, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedor, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215				Telchoas, inf.	610			Thedoris, u.	731
Tolof, u.	215									

The TABLE.

Lib. 2.

Vaccia, u.	543	Villengen, u.	419	Unguens, u.	822	Wells, u.	312	Westenpo, pr.	4
Vada, u.	389	Vilna, fl. pr. u.	429	Valanus, fl.	688	Welckel, u.	308	Westf. Bou, pr.	5
Vagoch, pr.	566	Vindilici, p.	418	Vulgo, fl.	829	Welminter, u.	313	Westf. Wal, pr.	5
Valachia, inf.	385	Vils, fl.	417	Vulogelia, u.	770	Westmound, pr.	304	West France, pr.	5
Valadomine, u.	369	Vindebons, u.	431	Vorn, pr.	894	Westons, pr.	311	Westphal, pr.	5
Valencinnes, u.	374	Vindis, fl.	431	Vorochtha, inf.	870	Westf. j. a. pr.	173	Westphal, pr.	5
Valencour, u.	436	Vindomania, u.	553	Vorper, u.	816	Westf. j. a. pr.	173	Westphal, pr.	5
Valer, u.	467	Vindundria, u.	553	Uls, u.	774	Westf. j. a. pr.	173	Westphal, pr.	5
Valtenhoyen, u.	388	Virland, u.	526	Uls, u.	718	Westf. j. a. pr.	173	Westphal, pr.	5
Valtona, u.	600	Viridonenses, p.	424	Uls, u.	863	Westf. j. a. pr.	173	Westphal, pr.	5
Valpo, u. l.	544	Virhungu, p.	446	Uls, pr.	751	Westf. j. a. pr.	173	Westphal, pr.	5
Vance, u.	506	Vilchor, fl.	517						
Vandalis, pr.	489	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vandalis, fl.	525	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vandali, p.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vangioncs, p.	418	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vanziza, u.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vard, u.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, u.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl.	517						
Vardis, fl.	511	Vilfoma, fl							

THE TABLE.

Thymenes, p.	831	Tzoz, m.	699	Tzucuco, u.	1035	Trinity Bay.	1009	Ventceller, u.	311
Thyboncallus, u.	884			Tzerqui, u.	928	Trigolis, pr. u.	937	Venta Belgarum, u.	308
Thynis, p.	642			Tezala, u.	947	Triplis, pr. u.	936	Vermones, p.	271
Tibarcas, p.	647, 788	Lib. 4.		Tezzora, u.	948	Trifram de Acugna, u.	993	Venola, u.	75
Tiberias, u. l.	719, 722			Thagia, u.	946	Tucon, fl.	934 l. 937	Vesula, u.	266
Tiberiopolis, u.	654	Tabago, inf.	1074	Thala, m.	956	Tuogloitz, p.	965	Vera, u.	152
Ticuarinum, inf.	873	Tabalco, pr. 1038, 1169		Thallufis, p.	942	Tuota, m.	991	Verages, p.	37
Tidor, inf.	896	Tabraca, u.	918	Thambes, m.	914	Troigus, m.	918	Vercinus, l.	155
Tigado, u.	808	Tabraca, u.	939	Thchais, pr.	919, 921	Trois pentas, c.	963	Vercius, u.	217
Tigancetza, u.	784	Tacala, u.	38	Thc'o pr.	972	Troxillo, m.	1055, 976	Vérine, fl.	183
Tigris, fl.	767, 783	Tacalis, fl.	67	Thara, pr.	1018	Tucapan, pr.	1063	Vermines, p.	334
Tilada, pr.	884	Tacantepeque, u.	108	Thchucza, u.	940	Tucuman, m.	1076	Vernville, u.	192
Ticragramcum, u.	864	Tacupa, u.	103	Thchuisa, u.	939	Tucuy, u.	1085	Vernonandis, p. 183, 190	
Timagens, inf.	760	Tadacac, u.	103	Thchuisa, u.	940	Tudela, u.	1049	Vernon, m.	225
Timocani, u.	809	Tahicet, u.	*	Thcior-Sotcrum, u.	968	Tunis, pr. u.	ib.	Vernum, u.	119
Timor, inf.	896	Tanka, pr. u.	1048	Thizibi, m.	917	Tunis, pr. 938, u. 939	940	Vernumium, 308, 316	
Tima, u.	787, fl. 843	Targait, u.	944	Thchombamba, u.	1014	Tundromum, u.	940	Vesal, u.	229
Tindi, fl.	ib.	Targelle, u.	946	St. Thomas, inf. 993, u.	1026	Tureit, u.	948	Vescentio, u.	228
Tiphon, fl.	687	Tariona, m.	1047	Tureit, u.	1038	Tuzeteco, pr.	1033	Vesina, u.	208
Tippura, pr.	880	Targella, m.	944	De Castille, u.	1002			Veslini, p.	71
Tifa, u.	804	Taradufis, p.	942	Terificia, inf.	990			Vesulus, m.	253
Tifibic, u.	717	Taravera, u.	1065	Tarburica, m.	939			Vesulus, m.	76
Timulus, m.	659	Tamachala, fl.	1018	Thmondacana, u.	961			Vesere, fl.	208
Tob, u.	717	Tamaraca, inf.	1068	Thnla, u.	939			Viane, u.	251
Tob, pr.	693	Tamarind, u.	991	Thnra, u.	938			Kaxion, u.	209
Tolenchia, pr.	848	Tamarcilla, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Vademedius, l.	98
Tolbotti	647	Tamarcot, fl.	1015	Thnra, u.	938			Vademedius, l.	98
Toloboc, u.	678	Tampico, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Val de Noto, pr.	84
Tolus, fl.	788	Tanalamque, u.	1047	Thnra, u.	938			Valencia, u. 223, fl. 126	
Tomanis, u.	834	Tanap, u.	968	Thnra, u.	938			Valencia, p.	162
Toporius, m.	834	Tanchipa, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, pr.	280, 309
Torrens, Ægypti, fl.	754	Tanger, u.	948	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Tortora, u.	691	Tanque, u.	1034	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Tortola, u.	894	Taramamun, u.	1072	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Tota, inf. u.	784	Tapefip, u.	1008	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Tofarens, pr.	893	Tapequic, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Tou, pr.	893	Tapequic, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Toula, inf. u.	614	Tapequic, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Black Tower, u.	643	Tapequic, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Madden Tower, u.	643	Tapequic, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Trabezond, u.	643	Tapequic, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Trachonitz, m. 106, p. 716		Tapequic, u.	1033	Thnra, u.	938			Valentin, p.	221
Trachonopolis, u.	754	Tapequic,							

<p>Xara, fl. u. 1073 Xaromocni, u. 1017 White Bay, 1029 Xia, fl. 1070 Xiapoon, fl. 1071 Xiagomocni, pr. 1016 u. 1017 Wilketi, pr. 1073 Winneepore, m. u. ib. Womani, u. 1070 World in the Moon, 1095</p>	<p>Xares nova, u. 1076 de frontosa, u. 1030 1041 Xerolobia, pr. 923 Xicalapa, pr. 941 Xoa, pr. 972 Xylines, p. 964</p>	<p>Yare, fl. 1043 Yar Yacot, fl. 1037 Yacudi, fl. 1064 Yarza, u. 1013 Yucania, u. 1041 Yudger-Sa, 383 Yudgen, pr. u. 389 Yulpa, u. 414 Zurphen, pr. u. 389 ib. 477</p>	<p>Zacarcos, p. 948 Zacarcula, u. 1034, fl. 1032 Zagmani, u. 973 Zahuate, fl. 1027 Zaire, fl. 979, 985 Zalaga, u. 948 Zale, u. 946 Zama, u. 973 Zameta, u. 979 Zamor, u. 1014 Zanfra, pr. 964 Zanfrago, pr. 979 Zangetas, pr. 979 Zanus, pr. 979 Zapocasi, pr. 1018 Zarabani, inf. 1019 Zarbi, fl. 1046 Zarcaranna, fl. 1064 Zaron, m. 948 Zarza, inf. 1039 Zazelle, u. 974 Zeb, pr. u. 957 Zebaco, inf. 1043 Zegzeg, pr. 964 Zella, u. 973 Zellales, pr. 1040 Zembri, l. 979 Zemithus, u. 935 Zemposal, fl. u. 1037 Zenau, pr. 1046 Zenus, fl. ib. Zephirium, c. 924 Raal Zephon, u. 920 Zerby, inf. 913 Zeugantas, pr. 916 Zilia, fl. 943 Zingis extreme, c. 974 Zizoutia, u. 1014 Ziochi, u. 920 Zipha, u. 979 Zoanghi, p. 985 Zoaguta, p. 1040 Zoocata, u. 991 Zuchabatu, m. 938 Zungia, de, inf. 948 Zuld, fl. 1016 Zunh, p. 1014 Del Zuy mare, 1040, 1079</p>
---	--	--	---